TEXT FLY WITHIN THE BOOK ONLY

THE BOOK WAS DRENCHED

UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY
OU_172958
UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY

PRINCIPLES OF HUMAN PHYSIOLOGY

PRINCIPLES OF HUMAN PHYSIOLOGY

BY

ERNEST H. STARLING

C.M.G., F.R.S.

M.D., HON. SC.D. (CAMBRIDGE AND DUBLIN), F.R.C.P.

JODRELL PROFESSOR OF PHYSIOLOGY IN UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LONDON

THE CHAPTER ON THE SENSE ORGANS REVISED AND LARGELY REWRITTEN BY

H. HARTRIDGE, M.A., M.B. CANTAB.

THIRD EDITION

With 579 Illustrations, 10 in Colour

LONDON

J. & A. CHURCHILL

7 GREAT MARLBOROUGH STREET

1920

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION

EVEN during the five years of war, which have elapsed since the appearance of the last edition, physiology has continued to advance, and I have had, in revising this work, to introduce a number of alterations, especially in the latter half, in order to make the presentation of the material more in accord with our actual knowledge. The chief changes affect the section on Sense Organs, which has been revised and largely rewritten by Dr. H. Hartridge, who is entirely responsible for the Section on Vision, which is quite new. The fifty pages increase in the size of the book is due entirely to the more adequate treatment of this subject which I have secured by Dr. Hartridge's co-operation, room having been found for the other additions to the work by corresponding omissions.

In the preparation of this edition I have received valuable aid from my wife, who undertook not only the whole burden of proof correcting but also the arrangement of the index. I am also much indebted to many friends, known and unknown, who have pointed out mistakes and omissions in previous editions. I shall be glad to receive any suggestions as to points in which this text-book may be made more useful to students.

ERNEST H. STARLING.

University College, London,
March 1920.

PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION

PHYSIOLOGY, though dealing with the phenomena of living organisms, has to use the same tools, whether material or intellectual, as the sciences of physics and chemistry. Any advances which are made in these sciences not only increase our powers of attack upon physiological problems but at the same time alter the intellectual standpoint from which we view them. On the other hand, the investigation of the phenomena of living beings is continually attracting our attention and that of workers in the other branches of science to unexplored regions in physics and chemistry. This mutual stimulation and co-operation among the different sciences have as their result a continual modification of our attitude with regard to the fundamental problems of physiology. The present time has seemed to me, therefore, fitting for the production of a text-book which, while not neglecting the data of physiology, should lay special stress on the significance of these data, and attempt to weave them into a fabric representing the principles which are guiding physiologists and physicians of the present day in their endeavours to extend the bounds of the known and to increase their powers of control over the functions of living organisms.

In a science such as physiology, based on so wide a discipline and with so diverse a technique, it is almost impossible for any one man to attain to a personal acquaintance with all its branches. In the present book I have therefore not hesitated to avail myself of the work of masters of the science in fields which I had not myself explored. Thus, in the physiology of the nervous system, which has been transformed and built up on a new basis by the researches of Sherrington, I have endeavoured to follow this author as closely as possible. I am also deeply sensible of my obligations to the writings of Tigerstedt, Leathes, and Lusk on general metabolism, of Abderhalden and Plimmer on physiological chemistry, of Bayliss on general physiology, as well as to various authors of articles in the *Ergebnisse der Physiologie*, in Nagel's *Handbuch der Physiologie*, and in Dr. L. E. Hill's *Recent and Further Advances in Physiology*.

Although I have endeavoured to confine my demands on the previous knowledge of the student within the narrowest possible limits, I should recommend him in every case to read some primer on physiology in order to obtain a bird's eye view of the subject before beginning the study of this work. He will then be able to vary the order of chapters in this book according to the part of physiology which he is hearing about in his lectures or working at in his practical classes. Those of my readers who are entirely

unacquainted with physiology might do well on a first perusal to omit Book I., dealing with the general concepts of the science.

I have deemed it a hopeless and indeed a useless task to give any full account of the multifarious methods employed in the experimental investigation of the different organs of the body. In most cases I have consigned to small type a description of one or two typical methods, which would suffice to show how the questions may be approached from the experimental side.

Throughout the work I have sought to show that the only foundation for rational therapeutics is the proper understanding of the working of the healthy body. Until we know more about the physiology of nutrition, quacks will thrive and food faddists abound. Ignorance of physiology tends to make a medical man as credulous as his patients and almost as easily beguiled by the specious puffings of the advertising druggist. I trust therefore that the following pages will be found of value not only to the candidate for a university degree but also to the practitioner of medicine in equipping him for his struggle against the factors of disease.

In the selection of diagrams for the illustration of this book I am especially indebted to Professor Schäfer and to his publishers, Messrs. Longmans, for the permission to make use of a large number from Quain's *Anatomy* and from Schäfer's *Essentials of Histology*. I must also express my obligation to Professor Wilson for the use of certain figures from his admirable work on the cell, to the publishers of Cunningham's *Anatomy*, and to many physiological friends, especially to Dr. Mott and Dr. Gordon Holmes, for the use of original diagrams. The index was kindly made for me by Mr. Lovatt Evans.

ERNEST H. STARLING.

University College, London,
May 1912

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTION . . . . . PAGE 1

BOOK I

GENERAL PHYSIOLOGY

CHAPTER II

THE STRUCTURAL BASIS OF THE BODY . . 13

CHAPTER III

THE MATERIAL BASIS OF THE BODY

SECTION

I. The Elementary Constituents of Living Cells . . . 36
II. The Proximate Constituents of the Animal Body . . 45
III. The Fats . . 53
IV The Carbohydrates . 59
V. The Proteins . . 71
VI. The Mechanism of Organic Synthesis . . 107

CHAPTER IV

THE ENERGETIC BASIS OF THE BODY

I. The Energy of Molecules in Solution . . 121
II. The Passage of Water and Dissolved Substances across Membranes 129
III. The Properties of Colloids 137
IV. The Mechanism of Chemical Changes in Living Matter. Ferments 152
V. Electrical Changes in Living Tissues 169

BOOK II

THE MECHANISMS OF MOVEMENT AND SENSATION

CHAPTER V

THE CONTRACTILE TISSUES

I. The Structure of Voluntary Muscle 177
II. The Excitation of Muscle 185
III. The Mechanical Changes that a Muscle undergoes when it Contracts 194

CHAPTER V (*continued*)

SECTION		PAGE
IV.	The Conditions affecting the Mechanical Response of a Muscle	205
V.	The Chemical Changes in Muscle	212
VI.	The Production of Heat in Muscle	219
VII.	Electrical Changes in Muscle	224
VIII.	The Intimate Nature of Muscular Contraction	234
IX.	Voluntary Contraction	239
X.	Other Forms of Contractile Tissue	243

CHAPTER VI

NERVE FIBRES (CONDUCTING TISSUES)

I.	The Structure of Nerve Fibres	250
II.	Propagation along Nerve Fibres	253
III.	Events accompanying the Passage of a Nervous Impulse	256
IV.	Conditions affecting the Passage of a Nervous Impulse	258
V.	The Excitation of Nerve Fibres	262
VI.	The Conditions which Determine Electrical Stimulation	270
VII.	The Neuro-Muscular Junction	275
VIII.	Polarisation Phenomena in Nerve	280
IX.	The Nature of the Excitatory Process	284

CHAPTER VII

THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

I.	The Evolution and Significance of the Nervous System	288
II.	The Nervous System of Vertebrates	297
III.	General Characteristics of Reflex Actions	303
IV.	Nature of the Connection between Neurons	307
V.	Functions of the Nerve Cell	312

THE SPINAL CORD

VI.	Structure of the Spinal Cord	315
VII.	The Spinal Cord as a Reflex Centre	322
VIII.	The Mechanism of Co-ordinated Movements	338
IX.	Trophic Functions of the Cord	349
X.	The Spinal Cord as a Conductor	351

THE BRAIN

XI.	The Structure of the Brain Stem	361
XII.	The Functions of the Brain Stem	390
XIII.	The Functions of the Cerebellum	395
XIV.	Visual Reflexes	405
XV.	Summary of the Connections and Functions of the Cranial Nerves	409

CHAPTER VII (*continued*)

THE CEREBRAL HEMISPHERES

SECTION — PAGE

XVI. General Structural Arrangements of the Cerebrum . 415

XVII. The Functions of the Cerebral Hemispheres . . 433

XVIII. The Nutritive and Vascular Arrangements of the Central Nervous System 461

THE AUTONOMIC SYSTEM

XIX. The Visceral or Autonomic Nervous System . . . 466

CHAPTER VIII

THE SENSE ORGANS

PART

I. Introduction 478

II. Vision (by H. Hartridge) 486

SECTION

1. Properties of Light, Colour and the Spectrum . 486

2 Orbital Cavity and its Contents 493

3. Eyeball, its Histology. Pupil Reflex . . 500

4 Nutrition and Protection of the Eyeball . . 514

5 Optical Media of Eye, and Accommodation . . 519

6. Optical properties and Defects of the Eyes . 529

7. Retina, its Histology and Physiology . 540

8. Response to Light and Colour . 555

9. Subjective Phenomena of Vision . 566

10. Defects of Vision and their Detection . 577

11. Duplex Theory and Hypotheses of Colour Vision 583

12. Binocular and Stereoscopic Vision . . . 588

III. Hearing 595

SECTION

1. Properties of Sound 595

2. The External, Middle and Internal Ear . . 600

3. Hypothesis of Audition, and Appreciation of Direction 611

IV. Voice and Speech 618

V. Cutaneous Sensations 626

VI. Taste and Smell 639

VII. Sensations of Movement and Position 646

VIII. Labyrinthine Sensations 651

BOOK III

THE MECHANISMS OF NUTRITION

CHAPTER IX

THE EXCHANGES OF MATTER AND ENERGY IN THE BODY (GENERAL METABOLISM)

SECTION		PAGE
I.	Methods employed in Determining the Total Exchanges of the Body	660
II.	Metabolism during Starvation	670
III.	The Effect of Food on Metabolism	677
IV.	The Effect of Muscular Work on Metabolism	683
V.	The Significance of the Foodstuffs	688
VI.	The Normal Diet of Man	695

CHAPTER X

THE PHYSIOLOGY OF DIGESTION

	Changes undergone by the Foodstuffs in the Alimentary Canal	703
I.	Digestion in the Mouth	706
II.	The Passage of Food from the Mouth to the Stomach	721
III.	Digestion in the Stomach	728
IV.	The Movements of the Stomach	742
V.	The Pancreatic Juice	748
VI.	The Liver and Bile	759
VII.	The Intestinal Juice	764
VIII.	Functions of the Large Intestine	768
IX.	Movements of the Intestines	771
X.	The Absorption of the Foodstuffs	779
XI.	The Fæces	799

CHAPTER XI

THE HISTORY OF THE FOODSTUFFS

I.	Protein Metabolism	801
II.	Nuclein or Purine Metabolism	818
III.	The History of Fat in the Body	826
IV.	The Metabolism of Carbohydrates	839

CHAPTER XII

THE BLOOD

SECTION		PAGE
	General Characters of the Blood	853
I.	The White Blood Corpuscles	856
II.	The Red Blood Corpuscles	861
III.	The Blood Platelets	879
IV.	The Coagulation of the Blood	882
V.	The Quantity and Composition of the Blood in Man	897

CHAPTER XIII

THE PHYSIOLOGY OF THE CIRCULATION

I.	General Features of the Circulation	913
II.	The Blood Pressure at Different Parts of the Vascular Circuit	919
III.	The Velocity of the Blood at Different Parts of the Vascular System	931
IV.	The Mechanism of the Heart Pump	935
V.	The Flow of Blood through the Arteries	962
VI.	The Flow of Blood in the Veins	976
VII.	The Pulmonary Circulation	979
VIII.	The Causation of the Heart Beat	982
IX.	The Nervous Regulation of the Heart	1012
X.	The Nervous Control of the Blood Vessels	1025
XI.	The Circulatory Changes during Muscular Exercise	1051
XII.	The Influence on the Circulation of Variations in the Total Quantity of Blood	1058

CHAPTER XIV

LYMPH AND TISSUE FLUIDS 1061

CHAPTER XV

THE DEFENCE OF THE ORGANISM AGAINST INFECTION

I.	The Cellular Mechanisms of Defence	1070
II.	The Chemical Mechanisms of Defence	1079

CHAPTER XVI

RESPIRATION

I.	The Mechanics of the Respiratory Movements	1088
II.	The Chemistry of Respiration	1100
III.	The Regulation of the Respiratory Movements	1126
IV.	The Effects on Respiration of Changes in the Air Breathed	1148
V.	The Mechanisms of Oxidation in the Tissues	1155

CHAPTER XVII

RENAL EXCRETION

SECTION		PAGE
I.	The Composition and Characters of the Urine	1160
II.	The Secretion of Urine	1181
III.	The Physiology of Micturition	1205

CHAPTER XVIII

THE SKIN AND THE SKIN GLANDS 1216

CHAPTER XIX

THE TEMPERATURE OF THE BODY AND ITS REGULATION . 1219

CHAPTER XX

THE DUCTLESS GLANDS 1230

BOOK IV

REPRODUCTION

CHAPTER XXI

THE PHYSIOLOGY OF REPRODUCTION

SECTION		
I.	The Essential Features of the Sexual Process	1251
II.	Development and Heredity	1264
III.	Reproduction in Man	1269
IV.	Pregnancy and Parturition	1282
V.	The Secretion and Properties of Milk	1289

INDEX 1299

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTION

PHYSIOLOGY in its widest sense signifies the study of the phenomena presented by living organisms, the classification of these phenomena, and the recognition of their sequence and relative significance. Such a range would include many studies which are not generally grouped under the term physiology, and would in fact correspond to the comprehensive science of biology. Thus the study of the relations of living beings to one another and to their surroundings is the special object of the science of œcology. The aims of physiology in its restricted sense are the description, analysis, and classification of the phenomena presented by the isolated organism, the allocation of every function to its appropriate organ, and the study of the conditions and mechanisms which determine each function.

The fundamental phenomena of life are essentially identical throughout the whole series of living organisms. This continuity of function is the necessary correlation of the continuity of descent, which brings into relation all members of the animal and vegetable kingdoms. No living organism can therefore be regarded as outside the sphere of our investigations. The interest of mankind in this subject was, however, naturally awakened in connection with his own body, and the science, growing up as ancillary and preliminary to medical studies, has always taken man as its chief type of study. In the present work the elucidation of the functions of man will also be our first concern, and this for two reasons. In the first place, in physiology, as in all other sciences, the motive of man's activity is his social instinct to increase the power of his race in the struggle for existence, by the acquisition of control, either over the external forces of nature, which may be turned to his own benefit, or over the factors, intrinsic and extrinsic, which tend to his enfeeblement or extirpation by disease and death. Consciously or unconsciously, all our researches on physiology, whether on the higher animals or on the lowest protozoa, have the welfare of man as their ultimate object. In the second place, the choice of the higher animals as our chief objects of study receives justification from the fact that whereas morphology, or the science of structure, must proceed from the lowest to the highest organisation, the science of function presents its problems in their simplest form in the most highly differentiated organisms. In the unicellular animal all the essential functions which we associate with living beings are carried out, often simultaneously, in one little speck of protoplasm. An analysis of these functions, the determination of their conditions

and mechanism, is obviously impossible under such circumstances. It is only when, as in the higher animals, one part of the living body is differentiated into an organ which has one function and one function only as the outlet for its activities, that it becomes possible to peer into the details of the function with some chance of discovering its ultimate mechanism.

Our especial preoccupation with the physiology of man will not prevent our employment of examples from any part of the animal or vegetable kingdom, when light can be thrown by their study on fundamental physiological phenomena common to the whole of the living world. In many cases such a study will enable us to separate the essential features in a process from those which have been added as auxiliary, with increasing complexity of the structures concerned.

What are the fundamental phenomena which are wrapt up in our conception of living beings? When dealing with the higher animals, we are inclined to lay greater stress on the phenomena involving a discharge of energy. Thus we should say that a man was alive if his body were warm and if he were presenting spontaneous movements, such as those of respiration or of the heart. The life of a man in the ordinary sense of the term is made up of those movements which place him in relationship with his environment. For the production of these movements, as for the maintenance of a constant body-temperature, a continual expenditure of energy is necessary. Experience teaches us that these movements come to an end in the absence of food or of oxygen, and that an increased call on the energies of the body must always be met by a corresponding increase in the air and in the food supplied. Two further processes must therefore be included among those making up our conception of life, viz. the function of assimilation (the taking in and digestion of food), and the function of respiration, in which oxygen is absorbed and carbon dioxide is excreted into the surrounding atmosphere.

The substances which make up our foodstuffs are all capable of oxidation. Composed chiefly of carbon and hydrogen, with some oxygen, nitrogen, and sulphur, they yield on complete combustion carbon dioxide, water and small amounts of ammonia or allied bodies, and sulphates. In this process of oxidation there is liberation of heat. In the body a similar oxidation occurs, the products of oxidation being discharged into the surrounding medium. An amount of energy is thus set free which is available for the activities of the living organism. Before we can make any accurate investigations of the conditions which determine these activities, we must know whether the two great laws of chemistry and physics, viz. the conservation of mass and the conservation of energy, hold good for the processes within the living body. The many experiments which have been made on this point have decided the question in the affirmative. Thousands of experiments have been made, both on man and on animals, in which the total income of the body, viz. food and oxygen, has been weighed, and compared with the total output, viz. carbon dioxide, water, and bodies allied to ammonia (urea, &c.). In every case complete equality has been

obtained, and we can be certain that any matter found in the body must have been derived from without. There is no creation or destruction of matter in the body.

The determination of the equation in the case of the total energy of the body is rather more difficult. We have, in the first place, to measure the total income and output of the body, and to determine the total heat which would be evolved by the oxidation of the foodstuffs taken into the carbon dioxide, water, &c., that are given out. We must then compare the figure so obtained with the actual output of energy by the body. The latter can be measured in terms of heat by placing the animal inside a calorimeter. Many practical difficulties arise in the performance of the experiment, in consequence of the necessity of providing the animal with a constant supply of air to breathe, and of allowing for the continual loss of water by evaporation which is going on at the surface of the animal. The first accurate experiments of this nature were made by Rubner. This observer determined by means of the calorimeter the total heat loss of dogs. In the same animals the material income and output of the body were measured, and a calculation was made as to the amount of energy which would be set free in the body by the processes of oxidation involved in the change of material observed. The following Table represents a summary of Rubner's results:

Dog	Condition of dog	Calculated heat production	Heat loss determined calorimetrically	Duration of experiment
		Cal	Cal	Days
1.	Fasting	259·3	261·0	5
2	,,	545·6	528·3	2
3.	Fed with meat	329·9	333·9	1
4.	Fed with fat	302·0	299·1	5
5	Meat and fat	332·1	330·0	12
6.	,, ,,	311·6	331·0	8
7.	Fed with meat	375·0	379·5	6
8.	,, ,,	683·0	681·3	7

It will be seen that the average difference between the calculated and observed results amounts only to 1·01 per cent.—an amazing agreement considering the extreme difficulties of the experimental methods involved. The important deduction to be drawn from these observations is that the foodstuffs which are oxidised in the body develop in this process exactly the same amount of energy as when they are burnt up outside the body.

From one aspect, therefore, the animal body may be looked upon as a machine for the transformation of the potential energy of the foodstuffs into kinetic energy, represented by the warmth and movements of the body as well as by other physical changes involved in vital processes. In the living organism we cannot, however, distinguish between the source of energy and the machinery, as we can in the case of our engines. When we endeavour to trace the foodstuffs after their entry into the body, we lose sight of

them at the point where they are built up to form apparently an integral part of the living framework. During activity there is a discharge of the products of oxidation of the foodstuffs from this living matter, which therefore becomes reduced in mass. This reduction, or disintegration of the living matter, associated with activity, is always followed by a period of increased integration, during which the organism grows by the assimilation of more food. Our conception of life must therefore involve the idea of a constantly recurring cycle of processes, one of building up, repair, or integration, and the other, associated with activity, of destruction or disintegration. If the former process predominates, we obtain a steady increase in the mass of the organism, an increase which we speak of as growth, and in many cases, as in that of plants, it is this power of growth which we take as our criterion of the existence of life. In fact, the possession by the green parts of plants of the power of utilising the energies of the sun's rays for the integration of foodstuffs, such as starch, with a high potential energy, is the necessary condition for the existence of all higher forms of life on this earth.

Closely associated with the property of growth is the power possessed by all living organisms of repair, *i.e.* the replacement by newly formed healthy living material of parts which have been damaged by external events.

The process of growth does not, in the individual, proceed indefinitely. At a certain stage in its life every organism divides, and a part or parts of its substance are thrown off to form new individuals, each of them endowed with the same properties as the parent organism, and destined to grow until they are indistinguishable from the organism whence they were derived. In the lowest forms of life, the unicellular organisms, these processes of growth and division may go on until brought to an end by some change in the environment which will not allow the necessary conditions of life, viz. assimilation and disintegration, to proceed. In all the higher forms, however, after the process of reproduction has been completed, the parent organism begins to undergo decay, and the processes of assimilation and repair no longer keep pace with those of destruction, however favourable the environment, until finally death of the organism takes place.

All these phenomena, viz. assimilation, respiration, activity associated with the discharge of energy, growth, reproduction, and death itself, are bound up in our conception of life. All have one feature in common, viz. they are subject to the statement that every living organism is endowed with the power of *adaptation*. Adaptation may indeed receive the definition which Herbert Spencer has applied to life—"the continuous adjustment of internal relations to external relations." A living organism may be regarded as a highly unstable system which tends to increase itself continuously under the average of the conditions to which it is subject, but undergoes disintegration as a result of any variation from this average. It is evident that the sole condition for the survival of the organism is that any such act of disintegration shall result in so modifying the relation of the

system to the environment that it is once more restored to the average in which assimilation can be resumed. Every phase of activity in a living being must be not only a necessary sequence of some antecedent change in its environment, but must be so *adapted* to this change as to tend to its neutralisation, and so to the survival of the organism. This is what is meant by 'adaptation.' Not only does it involve the teleological conception that every normal activity must be for the good of the organism, but it must also apply to *all* the relations of living beings. It must therefore be the guiding principle, not only in physiology with its special preoccupation with the internal relations of the parts of the organism, but also in the other branches of biology, which treat of the relations of the living animal to its environment, and of the factors which determine its survival in the struggle for existence. The origin of new species and the succession of the different forms of life upon this earth depend on the varying perfection of the mechanisms of adaptation.

We may imagine that the first step in the evolution of life was taken during the chaotic chemical interchanges which accompanied the cooling down of the molten mass forming the earth, when some compound was formed, probably with absorption of heat, endowed with the property of continuous polymerisation and growth at the expense of surrounding material. Such a substance could continue to exist only at the expense of the energy derived from the surrounding medium, and would undergo destruction with any stormy change in its environment. Out of the many such compounds which might have come into being, only such would survive in which the process of exothermic disintegration tended towards a condition of greater stability, so that the process would come to an end spontaneously, and the organism or compound be enabled to await the more favourable conditions necessary for the continuance of its growth. With the continued cooling of the earth, the new production of endothermic compounds would become rarer and rarer; and in all probability the beginning of life, as we know it, was the formation of some complex substance, analogous to the present chlorophyll corpuscles, with the power of absorbing the newly penetrating sun's rays and utilising them for the endothermic formation of further unstable compounds. Once given an unstable system, such as we have imagined, the great principle laid down by Darwin, viz. survival of the fittest, will suffice to account for the production from it by evolution of the ever-increasing variety of living beings which have appeared in the later history of this globe. The 'adaptation,' *i.e.* the reactions of the primitive living material to changes in its environment, must become ever more and more complex, since only by means of increasing variety of reaction is it possible to provide for the stability of the system within greater and greater range of external conditions. The difference between higher and lower forms is therefore one of complexity of reaction, or of range of adaptation.

In all the physiological processes which we shall study in the course of this work, adaptation will be found the constant and guiding quality. The

naked protoplasm of the plasmodium of Myxomycetes, if placed on a piece of wet blotting-paper, will crawl towards an infusion of dead leaves, or away from a solution of quinine. It is the same property of adaptation, the deciding factor in the struggle for existence, which impels the greatest thinkers of our time to spend long years of toil in the invention of the means for the offence and defence of their community, or for the protection of mankind against disease and death. The same law which determines the downward growth of the root in plants is responsible for the existence to-day of all the sciences of which mankind is proud.

This " adjustment of internal to external relations " is possible, however, only within strictly defined limits, limits which increase in extent with rise in the type of organism, and in the complexity of its powers of reaction. Some of these limiting conditions we shall have to study in the next chapter. Among the chief of them are temperature, and the presence of food material and of oxygen. At the present time the limits of temperature may be placed between 0° and 50° C. Many organisms, however, are killed by the alteration of only a few degrees in the temperature of their environment. Every shifting of a cold or warm current in the Atlantic, in consequence of storms on the surface, leads to the destruction of myriads of fish and other denizens of the sea. In the higher animals a greater stability in face of such changes has been accomplished by the development of a heat-regulating mechanism, so that, provided sufficient food is available, the temperature of the body is maintained at a constant level, which represents the optimum for the discharge of the normal functions of the constituent parts of the body. The presence of food material in the environment of the living organism is a necessary condition for its continued existence. In some cases, and this we must assume to be the primitive condition, the food material must be of a given character and form a constant constituent of the surrounding medium. In the higher forms, the development of a complex digestive system has enabled the organism to utilize many different kinds of food, while the storage of any excess of food as reserve material, either in the form of fats or carbohydrates, provides for a constant supply of food to the constituent cells of the body, even when it is quite wanting in the environment. Since plants depend for their food in the first place on the carbohydrates produced within the chlorophyll corpuscles out of the atmospheric carbon dioxide by the energy of the sun's rays, necessary conditions for their existence will be sunlight and the presence of this gas in the surrounding atmosphere.

One other necessary condition for the existence of life is the presence of water. Although this substance cannot furnish any energy to the complex molecules of which the living matter is composed, it is an essential constituent of all living matter, and takes part in all the changes which determine the transformations of matter and energy in the organism.

This short summary of the chief characteristics of living beings would be incomplete without the mention of what is perhaps their distinctive feature, namely, *organisation*. Although little marked in the lowest members

of the living kingdom, where we can detect only a speck of structureless material containing a few granules, of which one or more, in consequence of its reaction to stains, is distinguished by the name of a nucleus, in the higher members this organisation becomes more and more marked. This increased complexity of organisation, which we often speak of as histological differentiation, runs parallel with increasing range of power of adaptation, and with increasing efficiency of adaptive reactions attained by the setting apart of special structures (organs) for the performance of definite functions. This parallelism between the development of function and structure justifies us in the assumption generally, though often only tacitly, made by physiologists, that the structure is the determining factor for the function. We might regard the histological differentiation as representing merely a continuation of the increasing molecular complexity, which we assumed must accompany and determine every widening in the range of the adaptive power of the organism.

To sum up :— our objects in the study of physiology include the description of the chief reactions of the body to changes in its environment, the analysis of these reactions into the simpler reactions of which they are made up, and the assignment to each differentiated structure of the organism its part in every reaction. We must determine the conditions under which each reaction takes place, so that we may learn to evoke any part of it at will by application of the appropriate stimulus, *i.e.* by effective change of environment.

A reaction involves expenditure of energy, and this can be derived only from chemical change in the reacting organ, and ultimately from the disintegration or oxidation of the foodstuffs. Our next task must be, therefore, the analysis of the energetic and material changes, with a view to determining the whole sequence of events, from the occurrence of the external exciting change to the finished reaction, which will alter in the direction of protection the relation of the organism to its environment. In short, it is the office of physiology to discover the routine sequence of events in the living organism under all manner of conditions. In attacking this problem our methods cannot differ fundamentally from those of the physicist and chemist. In every case our experiments will consist in the observation and measurement of movements of one kind or another which we shall interpret in terms of mass or energy. Physiology, if it could be completed, would therefore describe the *how* of every process in the body. It would state the sequence of events and would summarise these as so-called 'laws.' These laws would, however, no more explain the phenomena of life than does the 'law of gravitation' explain the fact that two masses tend to move towards one another with uniform acceleration. Nor can we hope to explain physiological phenomena by reference to the laws of physics and chemistry, since these themselves are only expressions of sequences, and not explanations. With every growth in science, however, its generalisations become wider and its laws summarise ever more extensive groups of phenomena. We have no reason for asserting that, in the course of research,

we may not finally succeed in describing vital phenomena in the " conceptual shorthand " * used by the physicist, involving his ideal world of ether, atom, and molecule. At present we are far from such a consummation. The principle of adaptation is the only formula which will include all the phenomena of living beings, and it is difficult to see how this principle can be expressed by means of the concepts of the physicist.

This difficulty, which must be felt with greater force the more deeply the physiologist endeavours to peer into the processes within the living cells, has led some, even at the present day, to the assumption of some special quality in living organisms which is designated as ' vital force ' or ' vital activity.' Such views are classified together under the term *vitalism*. From his beginning man has been accustomed to draw a sharp line of distinction between those phenomena which by their constant occurrence seemed to him natural, and therefore explicable, and those phenomena of which he could not see the determining antecedent, and which were to him, therefore, anomic and capricious. To the latter he set up graven images, and not perceiving his own springs of action, endowed them with a self-determining personality such as he imagined himself to possess. This procedure, though possessing certain advantages in allowing him to perform his common duties free from the ever-lurking fear of supernatural interference, suffered from the great drawback that it fenced off unknown phenomena as unknowable and not to be known. It has therefore acted as a continual check on the growth of man's knowledge and control of his environment. Such a graven image is vitalism. As a working hypothesis it must be sterile. Just as the hypothesis of special creation would impede all research into the relationships of animals and plants, so vitalism would stay the hand of the physiologist in his endeavours to determine the changes which occur within the living organism. In many cases, however, the terms ' vitalism ' and its antithesis ' mechanism ' are used unjustifiably. The production of energy within the body is due to the oxidation of the foodstuffs. In certain functions it is not yet fully established whether the changes involved take place at the expense of the energy, hydrostatic pressure or otherwise, of the fluids outside the cells, or whether energy is supplied to the process by the cells themselves at the expense of oxidative or other changes occurring in their living substance. Both views are possible, but the adoption of either by a physiologist does not justify the statement that he is a ' vitalist,' ' neo-vitalist,' or ' mechanist.' The office of the physiologist is the determination of the changes which occur in the living body and the establishment of the causal nexus (*i.e.* the routine of sequences) between them. For such a man to describe himself as a vitalist or mechanist is as germane to the subject as if he were to call himself a Trinitarian or a Plymouth Brother.

Throughout this chapter we have assumed no necessary dividing line between the different classes of phenomena in the conceptual universe, although in the present state of our knowledge we are far from being able to include the whole of them under the same general laws. It might be

* Karl Pearson, " Grammar of Science," p. 328 *et seq.* (2nd ed.).

objected that in taking up this attitude we had left out of account one supreme fact, viz. the existence of *consciousness* in ourselves. As a comparative and objective study, however, physiology is concerned, not with the study of consciousness, but with the conceptions in consciousness of the *phenomena* presented by living beings. Consciousness, in fact, we know only in ourselves. From the actions of other living beings similarly organised, we infer in them the existence of a similar consciousness. Again, from the fact that the reactions of the higher mammals are evidently determined, not by immediate impressions, but largely by stored-up impressions of past stimuli, we credit them also with a certain but lower degree of consciousness. As we descend the scale of animal life, evidence of the existence of consciousness, as we know it, rapidly diminishes and finally disappears, though it is impossible to draw a sharp line between those animals which possess consciousness and those in which it is absent. That it is a necessary accompaniment of life is certainly not the case. A man is living though he is asleep, anæsthetised, or stunned, and it would be absurd to speak of the consciousness of a cabbage. Consciousness is, in fact, connected with the possession of a highly developed central nervous system, and its activity is in proportion to the complexity of this system. Since the brain with all the other organs of the body is derived from a simple cell, the fertilised ovum, similar in its absence of differentiation to the lowest organisms, it might be argued that all types of life are endowed with something which is not consciousness, but which has the potentiality of developing into consciousness. To such a hypothetical property Lloyd Morgan has given the name 'metakinesis.' We have, however, no means of judging of the presence or absence of this hypothetical quality and still less of determining whether it is a property only of living substance, or is shared also by the atoms of so-called dead material.

BOOK I

GENERAL PHYSIOLOGY

CHAPTER II

THE STRUCTURAL BASIS OF THE BODY

THE CELL

ALL the higher animals and plants, when submitted to microscopic examination, are seen to consist of structural units which are spoken of as cells. In each organ we find a mass of these cells closely resembling one another in all respects, and we may therefore regard the function of any organ as the sum of the functions of its constituent cells. Indeed, any given reaction of the whole body is the resultant of the reactions of the unlike cells of which the body is composed. The cell is therefore the physiological as well as the structural unit, and it is necessary to commence our study of the functions of the animal body with some consideration of the functions and reactions which are common to all the structural units.

This composite structure is peculiar to the higher forms of life Amongst the lower forms, both animal and vegetable, an immense number of organisms consist only of a single cell In this cell are represented all the phenomena of life, all the adapted reactions which we associate with the life of the higher organisms That the unicellular condition represents the more primitive stage from which the higher organisms have been evolved in the course of ages is indicated by the fact that every one of these higher organisms in the course of its development passes through a unicellular stage, namely, the fertilised ovum. We may assume that the series of changes attending the development of the higher organism from the egg is a repetition in summary of the changes which have determined the evolution of the species from the primitive unicellular type.*

The general characteristics of the cell present important similarities, whether we are considering a cell which forms the whole of an organism or a cell which is but an infinitesimal part of a highly developed animal.

The name 'cell' was first applied by botanists to the structural units found by them in plant tissues, and involved therefore the idea of certain qualities which do not enter into our present conception of the term. A section through the stem of a growing plant shows it to be made up of an aggregation of *cells* in the etymological sense of the word, *i.e.* small sacs bounded by a wall of cellulose and containing cell sap. Immediately inside the cellulose wall is a thin layer, the primordial utricle, which encloses at one point a spherical or oval structure known as the nucleus. If the section be

* This assumption is often spoken of as the 'law of recapitulation.'

taken from the growing tip of a plant (Fig. 1), the cell sap is found to be wanting and the cells consist only of the substance known as protoplasm, which later on will form the primordial utricle. This with a nucleus is enclosed in a delicate cellulose wall. The wall is not an essential constituent, since it is absent from many vegetable cells at some period of their life and from animal cells generally.

A better conception of the essentials of a cell can be obtained by the study

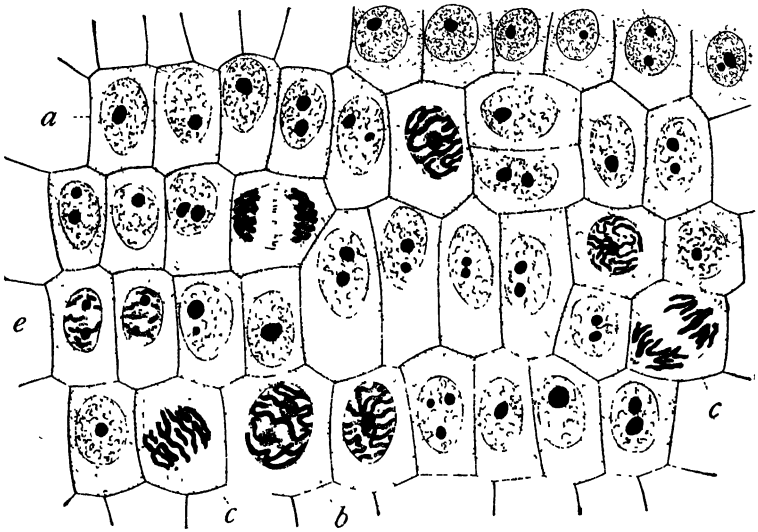


FIG. 1. General view of cells in the growing root-tip of the onion, from a longitudinal section, enlarged 800 diameters. (WILSON.)
a, non-dividing cells, with chromatin-network and deeply stained nucleoli; *b*, nuclei preparing for division (spireme-stage); *c*, dividing cells showing mitotic figures; *e*, pair of daughter-cells shortly after division

of a unicellular animal such as an amœba (Fig. 2). This is an organism frequenting stagnant pools, of varying size (from 0·1 to 0·3 mm in diameter), apparently of a semi-fluid consistence. When first examined it is generally spherical, but in a short time begins to change its form, putting out processes known as pseudopodia. By shifting the distribution of its material among these processes, it is able to move about and also to ingest particles of food or pigment with which it may come in contact Near its centre a differentiated portion can be distinguished which is known as the nucleus. The rest of the amœba, the protoplasm or cytoplasm, often presents further differentiation into an outer clear layer and an inner finely granular substance. The latter may contain coarser granules, some of food material, others apparently formed *in situ* by the surrounding protoplasm, and often small vacuoles ('contractile vacuoles') which are continually altering their size and serve to keep up a circulation of fluid in the interstices of the cytoplasm. In all cells, whether animal or vegetable, with which we are acquainted, this

twofold structure is also found. So we may define a cell as a small mass of protoplasm containing a nucleus.

Doubt has often been expressed whether a nucleus is to be regarded as essential to our conception of a cell. In many of the lowest forms of animals and plants, such as the Flagellata among the former and the Cyanophyceæ and Bacteria among the latter, no distinct nucleus can be demonstrated. In many of these forms the dimensions of the whole organism are too minute to allow of any definite statement being

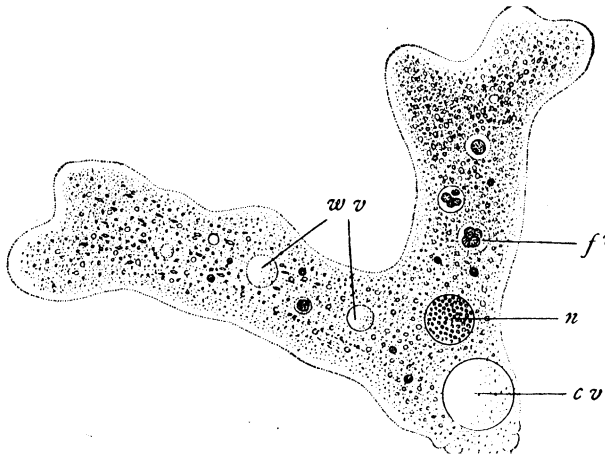


FIG. 2 *Amœba proteus*, an animal consisting of a single naked cell, ×280. (From SEDGWICK and WILSON'S Biology.)
n, the nucleus, *w v*, water-vacuoles, *cv*, contractile vacuole, *fv*, food-vacuole.

made as to the presence or absence of nuclear material. In the larger of them, however, the cytoplasm of the cell contains numerous scattered granules which stain with dyes in the same way as do the nuclei of the cells of higher animals, and these granules possess the resistance to the action of certain digestive fluids which is typical of nuclei. They may therefore be taken as representing the nucleus in the higher forms. Even in the latter at certain stages, namely, during the division of the cell, the nucleus breaks up into discrete parts, and there is no reason for believing that such a scattered condition of the nuclear material may not last throughout the whole life of the cell.

We have defined a cell as a small mass of protoplasm containing a nucleus. Since we shall have to use the term 'protoplasm' on many occasions in the course of this work, we must have a definite conception of what we mean by it. The term is often used by histologists as implying a substance of certain definite chemical and staining characters. When employed by physiologists it generally implies any material which we can, on a study of its behaviour to changes in its environment, regard as endowed with life. Huxley has defined it as "the physical basis of life." Though it may be convenient to have a word such as protoplasm signifying simply 'living material,' it is important to remember that there is no such thing as a single substance —protoplasm. The reactions of every cell as well as its organisation are the resultant of the molecular structure of the matter of which it is built up. The gross methods of the chemist show him that the composition of the

protoplasm ' of the muscle cell is entirely different from that of a leucocyte or white blood corpuscle. The finer methods of the physiologist show him that every sort of cell in the body has its own manner of life, its own peculiarities of reaction to uniform changes in its surroundings. No individual will react in exactly the same manner as another individual, even of the same species, and the reactions of the whole organism are but the sum of the

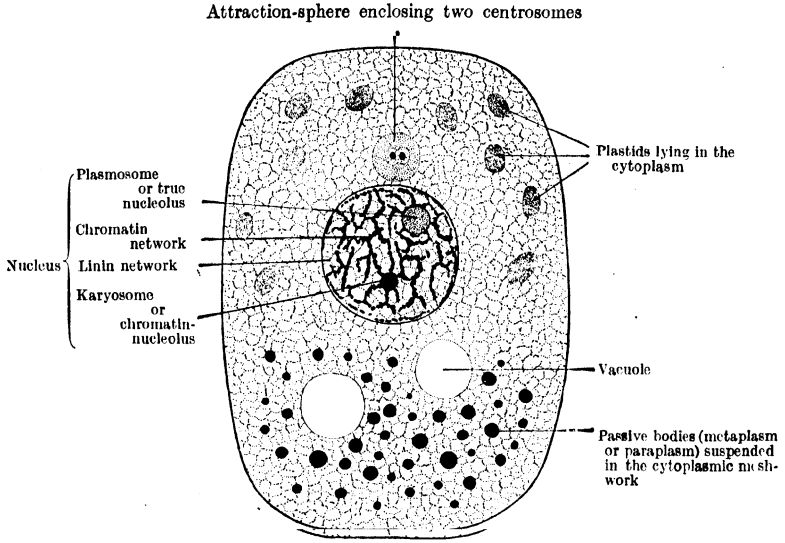


FIG. 3. Diagram of a cell. Its basis consists of a meshwork containing numerous minute granules (*microsomes*) and traversing a transparent ground-substance. (WILSON.)

reactions of its constituent cells. There is not *one* protoplasm therefore, but an infinity of protoplasms, and the use of the term can be justified only if we keep this fact in mind and use the word merely as a convenient abbreviation for any material endowed with life. Even in a single cell there is more than one kind of protoplasm. In its chemical characters, in its mode of life, and in its reactions, the nucleus differs widely from the cytoplasm. Both are necessary for the life of the cell and both must be considered, according to our present ideas, as ' living.' In the cytoplasm itself we find structures or substances which we must regard as on their way to protoplasm or as products of the breakdown of protoplasm ; but in many cases it is impossible to say whether a given material is to be regarded as lifeless or as reactive living matter. Even in a single cell we may have differentiation among its different parts, one part serving for the process of digestion while others are employed for the purpose of locomotion. Here again there must be chemical differences, and therefore different protoplasms. In this work the term protoplasm will be used in its broadest sense, namely, as the physical basis of living organisms.

STRUCTURE OF THE CELL. In every cell can be distinguished the two parts—nucleus and cytoplasm. The nucleus is generally an oval or

spherical body lying near the centre of the cell and bounded by a definite contour or nuclear membrane. In its interior it contains masses or filaments of a material known as chromatin, which are strung, so to speak, on a fine network of material known as linin. Besides the granules of chromatin, other masses are sometimes found which stain in a different manner and are called nucleoli. The material filling up the meshes of the network is the nuclear sap or nucleoplasm. The cytoplasm, which varies greatly in extent in different cells, varies also in its appearance, being sometimes homogeneous, sometimes alveolar, sometimes granular in structure. In it can be often distinguished differentiated parts which may be regarded as organs of the cell. Thus in the amœba we have the contractile vacuoles already mentioned. In the green parts of plants the cytoplasm contains green granules, the chloroplasts, whose special function it is to assimilate carbon dioxide from the atmosphere, and by means of the energy of the sun's rays to convert this into starch with the evolution of oxygen. Other parts of the plant have similar granules, the leucoplasts, whose office it is to build up sugar into starch, and it is possible that other kinds of these 'plastids' with special chemical functions are present in the cytoplasm of many cells. In addition to these cell organs, the cytoplasm may contain granules which represent stages in the metabolism of the cell and are either food material which is being assimilated or products of the disintegration of the protoplasm, formed either for the service of the cell itself or, in the case of the multicellular animals, for the service of other cells of the organism. Others of these granules may represent reserve material, *i.e.* excess of nourishment which has been put aside by the cell in an insoluble form, to serve for its subsequent needs in times of scarcity.

THE PHYSICAL STRUCTURE OF PROTOPLASM. Owing to the close similarities which exist between the fundamental properties of all living organisms, histologists have sought to discover some corresponding uniform morphological organisation of the physical basis of these phenomena, namely, protoplasm.

It is often impossible, even under the highest powers of the microscope, to make out any structure whatsoever in the cytoplasm, which is spoken of then as hyaline. In most cases examination of a cell, even unstained, shows some differentiation between a more or less regular framework or meshwork and a more fluid portion filling up its interstices, and these appearances are still more manifest when the cells have been fixed by various hardening fluids. All the results obtained in this manner must be regarded with some suspicion, since, as has been shown by Fischer and by Hardy, it is possible to imitate artificially the various structures, which have been assigned as characteristic of protoplasm, by hardening a homogeneous colloidal solution such as egg-white by different methods and with different agents. The theories of protoplasmic structure can be classified under three heads:

1. THE GRANULAR THEORY OF ALTMANN. By the use of certain hardening reagents, a dense mass of spherical or rod-shaped granules may be demonstrated in almost all cells of the body (Fig. 4). These granules have been

regarded by Altmann as the elementary particles of life, and he locates in them the various vital functions, the sum of which makes up the life of the cell. According to Altmann these granules can arise only from the division of pre-existing granules, and he has formulated the phrase *omne granulum e granulo*, which is a further extension of Virchow's sentence *omnis cellula e cellula*. It is probable that a number of different kinds of structures of varying importance are included among Altmann's granules. In some cases they

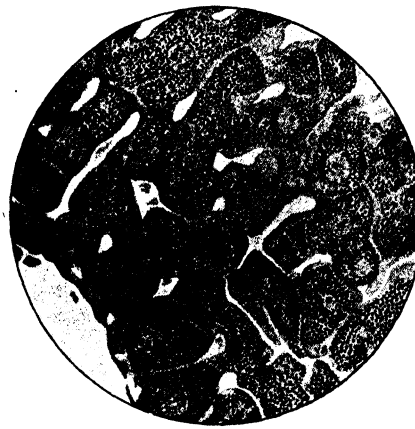


FIG. 4. Section of liver stained to show granules. (ALTMANN.)

are the products of the activity of the cytoplasm and, as in secreting cells, will be later on cast out with water and salts as the specific secretion. In other cases they may be cell organs or plastids with the special metabolic functions assigned to all granules by Altmann. In some cases no treatment whatever will display the existence of granules.

2. THE FIBRILLAR THEORY. By the employment of appropriate methods of hardening, it is easy in most cells to demonstrate a network or clusters of fibrils which form, so to speak, a denser part of the cell. This fibrillar network has been named the 'spongioplasm' in contra-distinction to the structureless material filling its meshes known as 'hyaloplasm.' A network is, however, one of the commonest pseudostructures produced in the coagulation of an albuminous fluid by any means whatever, and it is probable that in most cases the network which is seen in hardened cells is simply an artefact. Sometimes a large portion of the protoplasm may take a fibrillar form which can be detected even in the unstained and unfixed cell, and there is no doubt that, in certain phases at any rate, the fibrillar structure of the protoplasm is really present.

3. THE ALVEOLAR THEORY OF BÜTSCHLI. This theory may be looked upon as corresponding morphologically to the granular theory of Altmann. If we imagine a hyaline protoplasm which is continually manufacturing metaplasmic products and storing them up in its protoplasm, these products will be deposited as spherules gradually increasing in size, so that the proto-

plasm between them will be converted into alveolar partitions between the droplets. In many an egg cell, where there is a growth of protoplasm from this building up of food into reserve materials, the development of such an alveolar structure can be followed in the living protoplasm, and such cells when mature show a marked alveolar structure whether examined fresh or in the hardened and stained condition. Such a protoplasm would be practically an emulsion of one fluid in another, and according to Bütschli, artificial emulsions, made by mixing rancid oil with sodium carbonate solutions, may show under the microscope a very close resemblance to cell protoplasm (Fig. 6), and may even exhibit amœboid changes of form in consequence of the diffusion currents set up at the surface of the drop between its contents and the surrounding water. Most histologists are in accord that none of the above theories can be regarded as applicable to all forms of protoplasm, but that during the life of a cell its protoplasm, as observed under the microscope, may be either hyaline and structureless or may present any of the structural modifications described above, according to its state of nutrition and the form in which its metabolic products are laid down in the cell. Of course it is possible that, even in the apparently hyaline protoplasm, a structural differentiation is still present, but is invisible owing to the minute size of its constituent parts or an identity of refractive index between the alveolar walls and their contents. The fact that every chemical differentiation occurring within the colloidal mass will tend to cause differences of surface tension, and therefore formation of droplets, shows that an alveolar structure, *i.e.* one in which there is a large number of surfaces separating heterogeneous mixtures inside the cells, must be of very common occurrence, even in cases where it is not detectable under the microscope. Such a structure must be present, at any rate, in those cases where, apart

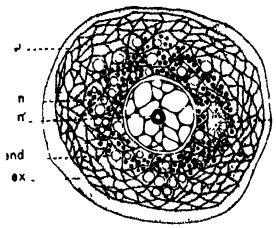


FIG. 5. Diagram of a cell, highly magnified. (SCHAFER) *p*, protoplasm, consisting of hyaloplasm and a network of spongioplasm, *ex*, exoplasm; *end*, endoplasm, with distinct granules and vacuoles; *c*, double centrosome; *n*, nucleus; *n'*, nucleolus.

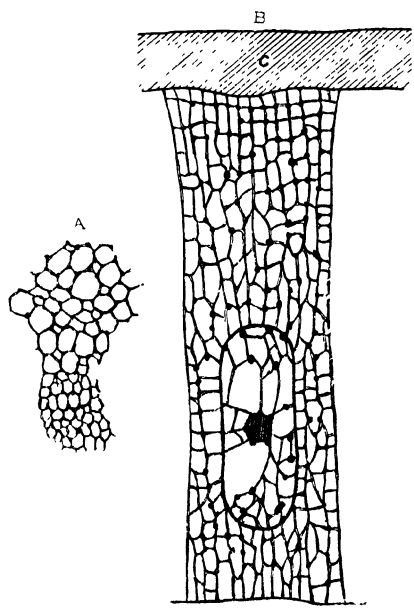


FIG. 6. A, protoplasm of an epidermal cell of the crayfish; B, foam-like appearance of an emulsion of olive oil. (BÜTSCHLI.)

from the existence of a solid cell wall, the cell presents a certain degree of rigidity and resistance to deforming stress.

ULTRAMICROSCOPIC STRUCTURE OF PROTOPLASM. Since the study of the behaviour of the cell shows that it must possess a much more complex structure or organisation than that which is revealed by the microscope, one, that is to say, which permits of the spatial differentiation of the different chemical processes that may occur at one and the same time in the protoplasm, many theories have been put forward of an ultramicroscopic cell structure. Though Spencer in 1864 spoke of physiological units out of which protoplasm could be regarded as made up, and Darwin (1868) conceived ultramicroscopic particles—gemmules—which might be discharged from every cell in the body and, passing into the reproductive organs, serve as the material basis of heredity, the first elaborate conception of such a structure was worked out by Nägeli (1884). According to Nageli all organised structures are made up of micellæ, minute particles arranged in definite order and surrounded with water. For growth to take place it was necessary that the system should be in a condition of 'turgor,' which was determined by the amount of water between the micellæ. These micellæ arose in every case from the division of pre-existing micellæ, and the vital properties of the protoplasm were to be regarded as the sum of the changes taking place in the individual micellæ. Similar conceptions have been put forward by numerous other observers, each of whom has applied a different name to the elementary living particle, such as 'pangene,' 'plasome,' 'biophor,' 'biogen-molecule,' and many others. The resemblance of these theories to that of Altmann is obvious, though the latter regarded the elementary particle as in many cases of microscopic size and capable of demonstration by appropriate methods of staining. That the cell possesses organs of smaller dimensions than itself, which may give rise to like organs by division, is shown by Schimper's observations on the plastids of plant cells. These apparently are not formed by a process of differentiation of the protoplasm, but are continuous from one generation to another and are reproduced by division. There is no doubt, however, that most of the granules to be observed in the cytoplasm are not of this character, but are elaborated by the general cytoplasm out of the foodstuffs which are supplied to it; and though conceptions such as those of De Vries and Verworn are often of value as a means of describing certain phenomena in the life of the cell and have played a great part in the description of the phenomena of heredity, they cannot be regarded as having any serious justification in fact. At the present time our knowledge of the properties of the colloidal and capillary systems, which must play so great a part in the organisation and reactions of living protoplasm, is much too meagre to justify weight being laid on any theory of the ultramicroscopic structure of protoplasm that can at present be put forward.

One question which has been much discussed relates to the physical condition of protoplasm. Is it to be regarded as a viscous fluid or as a soft solid? The perfect potential mobility of the protoplasm of many cells, as instanced by the flow of a substance of an amœba into its pseudopodia, or the occurrence of rapid streaming movements in the threads of protoplasm found in many plants, *e.g.* the root hairs of tradescantia, indicates a fluid character for the protoplasm. Against such a character has been urged the fact that in protoplasm we may have shape, organisation, and power of resistance to deformation—qualities which are generally associated with the possession of solidity. It must be remembered, however, that the absence of resistance to deformation, which is characteristic of a liquid, applies only to the internal molecules, and that the surface of any liquid is in a condition of tension which not only limits deformation, but presents considerable resistance to any enlargement of the surface. Small water animals take

advantage of this resistance to run freely over the surface of water, although their specific gravity may be greater than that of water. The continued existence of protoplasm in a watery environment shows that not only must its composition be different from that of its environment, but that there must be a distinct surface separating the two. The superficial layers of the protoplasm must therefore be in a condition of tension, and exercise pressure on the internal portions of the cell, which will tend to diminish the surface of the cell to the smallest possible extent, *i.e.* to bring it into the spherical form.

This form is characteristic of free cells in their conditions of inactivity, and the smaller the mass of protoplasm, supposing it to be homogeneous, the greater will be the pressure exerted by its surface layer on its contents and the greater resistance will it present to deformation of the spherical form. A fluid drop, if suspended in a fluid with which it is immiscible, will present greater rigidity the smaller its dimensions. Almost any degree of rigidity can also be imparted to larger masses of fluid protoplasm if their interior has undergone chemical differentiation so as to be made up of two or more immiscible fluids arranged as droplets within alveoli, as in Bütschli's theory. In such a case every droplet will present resistance to deformation and every surface will resist penetration or extension. The resistance of the surface in colloidal fluids is still further increased by a property common to all these fluids, namely, the aggregation in the surface of a greater concentration of the dissolved substance than is present in the underlying fluid. If, for instance, we take a beaker containing egg-white diluted 100 times, and drop a steel magnetised needle on to the surface, it will float although it is much heavier than the fluid, in consequence of the resistance of the surface. If the needle be greasy the same thing will occur on a glass of water. In this case the needle will lie N. and S. On the albumen solution, however, the needle will lie in the position in which it has been dropped. The aggregation of the albumen molecules on the surface of the fluid is such that it is practically solid and resists any turning of the needle. In consequence of the surface aggregation and solidification of the colloidal molecules, it is possible to throw out the greater part of the albumen in a solid form from a solution of this substance, if it be shaken up in a bottle with a little air so as to make a surface. As the fluid is shaken fresh surfaces are always being formed, and the albumen aggregating in each of these surfaces has not time to redissolve before a fresh aggregation occurs on a new surface, and the films thus produced gradually collect to form a solid mass of insoluble protein. Protoplasm may be regarded as essentially fluid in character, the form and rigidity which are acquired by most cells being due to chemical and physical differentiation occurring in the fluid.

THE SURFACE LAYER OF CELLS. Since it is by means of its surface layer that the organism enters into relation with its environment, this layer acquires a prime importance for the life of the cell, and we may therefore consider here at greater length some of the properties of this layer, the *Plasmahaut*, as it has been called.

The superficial layer of the protoplasm is not to be confounded with the

cell wall. The latter, which plays a great part in the building up of vegetable tissues, is formed by a process of secretion from the living protoplasm and is situated altogether outside the superficial *Plasmahaut.* The cell wall differs considerably in its chemical composition from the protoplasm out of which it has been formed. In most plants it consists of cellulose, a substance belonging to the carbohydrate group, and with a composition represented by some multiple of the formula $C_6H_{10}O_5$. In other cells the wall may be built up from calcium carbonate or other lime salts, from silica, from chitin. In many cases it is perforated to allow the passage of communicating strands of protoplasm between adjacent cells. It is generally freely permeable to all kinds of solutions, and in this case plays no part in regulating the interchanges of the cell with the environment.

The superficial layer of protoplasm represents that part of the living substance which stands in immediate relationship to the environment. Every change in the latter can only influence the living cell through this layer, and it is through this layer that substances must pass on their way into the cell for assimilation, or out of the cell for excretion. The retention of an individuality by the cell must be determined by chemical and physical differences between this layer and the surrounding fluid. Since it differs from the rest of the protoplasm in the changes to which it is subject, it must also differ in its chemical composition, apart altogether from the factors which, as we saw above, determine molecular differences between the surface and the interior of any colloidal solution. On this account one must assume the existence of a definite boundary layer of the protoplasm, even where it is impossible to see any differentiation between this layer and the deeper parts under the highest powers of the microscope.

A (living) cell, which leads its life in a liquid environment, must take up the greater part of its food material in the form of solution, and it is the permeability of the superficial protoplasm which will determine the passage of food substances from the surrounding medium into the body of the cell. The immiscibility of the protoplasm with the surrounding fluid shows that the permeability of the membrane must be a limited one. The qualitative permeability can be easily studied in vegetable cells. These present within a cellulose wall a thin layer of protoplasm (the primordial utricle), enclosing a cell sap. If the root hairs of tradescantia be immersed in a 10 per cent. solution of glucose or in a 2 to 3 per cent. solution of salt, a process of *plasmolysis* takes place. The cell sap diminishes in amount by the diffusion of water outwards so that the primordial utricle shrinks (Fig. 7). On immersing the cells in distilled water, water passes into the cell sap until the further expansion of the protoplasmic layer is prevented by the tension of the surrounding cell walls. This behaviour can be explained only on the assumption that the protoplasm is impermeable both to sugar and to salt, but is freely permeable to molecules of water, *i.e.* it behaves as a semi-permeable membrane. Similar experiments can be made on animal cells. The most convenient for this purpose are the red blood corpuscles. These also shrink when immersed in salt solutions with a greater molecular con-

centration than would correspond to the plasma of the blood from which the corpuscles were derived, whereas if placed in weak salt solutions or distilled water they swell up and burst, discharging their hæmoglobin in solution into the surrounding fluid. By comparison of various salts it is found that the strength of each salt solution which is just necessary to cause plasmolysis or hæmolysis, as the case may be, is determined entirely by its molecular concentration, *i.e.* a decinormal solution of sodium chloride will be equivalent

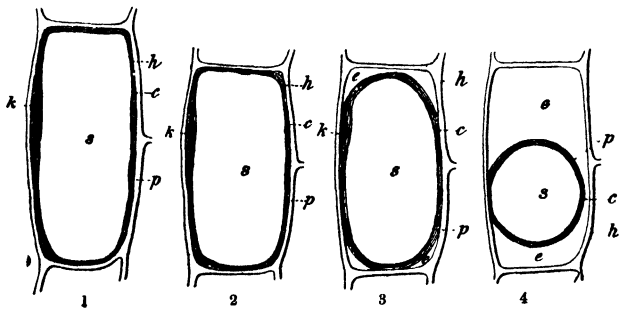


FIG. 7. Vegetable cells, showing varying degrees of plasmolysis. (DE VRIES.)

in its effect on the cells to a decinormal solution of potassium nitrate or of potassium chloride. The impermeability of the plasma skin does not apply to all dissolved substances. Overton has found that, whereas this layer is practically impermeable to salts, sugars, and amino-acids, it permits the easy passage of monatomic alcohols, aldehydes, alkaloids, &c. All these substances are more soluble in ether, oil, and similar media than they are in water. The passage of dissolved substances through a membrane wetted by the solvent depends on the solubility of these substances in the membrane, and Overton therefore concludes that the superficial layer of protoplasmic cells must itself partake of a 'lipoid' character, and that cholesterin and lecithin probably enter largely into its composition. Thus only those aniline dyes which are soluble in a mixture of melted lecithin and cholesterin have the property of penetrating the living cell, and only these dyes, such as methylene blue, neutral red, can be used for *intra vitam* staining. For the same reason substances which have the power of dissolving lecithin and cholesterin, such as ether or bile salts, also act as hæmolytic agents, *i.e.* they cause a destruction of the red blood cells by dissolving the superficial layer which is necessary for their preservation from the solvent effects of the surrounding fluid.

The semi-permeability of the plasma skin can be altered by changes in the saline concentration or other factors of the surrounding medium. Overton has shown that, whereas a 7 per cent. solution of saccharose produces plasmolysis in living cells, no plasmolysis is observed if they are treated with a solution containing 3 per cent. methyl alcohol *plus* 7 per cent. cane sugar. The superficial layer, therefore, is able to dissolve a mixture of methyl alcohol and cane sugar, although it has no solvent power on cane sugar in

pure watery solutions. It is possible that, in order to serve the nutrient needs of the cells, more extensive changes may take place in the permeability of the surface layer under limited conditions of time and space. There is no doubt, for instance, that dextrose, to which the surface layer is apparently impermeable, can yet serve as a very efficient food for the cell, and one might ascribe the fact that the cell assimilates only the food which it requires and no more, to such limited changes in permeability. An important factor in the process of assimilation, at any rate by lowly organised cells, must be the relative solubility of the absorbed substances in the cell and its surrounding medium respectively. When a watery solution of iodine is shaken up with chloroform, the latter sinks to the bottom, carrying with it the greater part of the iodine. If a watery solution of organic acid be shaken with ether, the latter fluid will extract the greater quantity of the acid. In no case will the extraction be complete, but there will be a definite ratio between the amount dissolved by the ether and the amount dissolved by the water, the so-called 'coefficient of partage,' depending on the different solubilities of the dissolved substance in the two menstrua. In the same way a mass of protoplasm will tend to absorb from the surrounding medium and to concentrate in itself all those substances which are more soluble in the colloidal system of the protoplasm than in the surrounding fluid, and this process of absorption may be carried to a very large extent, if the dissolved substances meet in the cell with any products of protoplasmic activity with which they form insoluble compounds so that they are removed from the sphere of action. It is probably by such a process as this that we may account for the accumulation of calcium or silicon in such large quantities in connection with the bodies of various minute organisms.

Whereas assimilation by a living cell is ultimately conditioned by the permeability of the surface protoplasm, its form is determined by the tension of this layer. If the tension is uniform at all parts of the surface the form of the cell will be spherical. Any diminution of the surface tension at one point must tend to cause a bulging of the fluid contents at this point, just as on distending a rubber tube with one weak spot in its wall this suddenly gives way with the production of a large balloon, which rapidly extends in size and ruptures unless the pressure be diminished. Diminution of the surface tension at one point of the cell will be attended by a contraction of all the rest of the surface and a driving out of the contents through the weak part. This process will not as a rule result in destruction of the cell; the resulting protrusion will be limited by the distortion of the internal alveolar structure of the protoplasm caused by any alteration of the spherical form of the cell. Change of form in living structures thus depends ultimately on alterations in surface tension, return to normal being effected by the elastic reaction of the structural arrangement of the protoplasm. This point we shall have to consider more fully when dealing with muscular contraction. At present it is sufficient to see how any slight alteration in the chemical environment, such as might be due to the presence of a particle of foodstuff, may cause local variations in the surface tension of the plasma-skin and thus

result in the protrusion of pseudopodia and the ingestion of the food particle.

VITAL PHENOMENA OF CELLS. A. *Assimilation.* The activity of every living being, whether uni- or multi-cellular, can be regarded as compounded of two phases, *assimilation* and *dissimilation.* By assimilation we mean the building up of the living substance at the expense of material obtained from the external world. In this process substances are formed of high potential energy, and this energy can be obtained only at the expense either of energy imparted to the system at the moment of assimilation, as, *e.g.* in the assimilation of carbon from carbon dioxide under the influence of the sun's rays, or of energy contained in the food-stuffs themselves. In all living organisms, except those provided with chlorophyll corpuscles, it is the latter method which is adopted, and a food-stuff therefore connotes some substance which can be taken in by the cell and can serve it as a source of chemical energy. The evolution of energy, which is required for the movements and other vital activities of the cell, is derived from a disintegration or dissimilation of the protoplasm and is generally associated with the process of oxidation. In assimilation, besides the building up of living protoplasm, there may also be a synthesis of more complex from less complex compounds, without their necessary entry into the structure of the living molecule. In the absence of any definite criteria by which we may judge as to the living or non-living condition of parts of the cell, it is a little dangerous to draw any hard-and-fast distinction between these two sets of processes. Assimilation requires the ingestion of food into the organism, and in the second place its digestion, *i e.* its solution in the juices of the cells. These two processes are succeeded, through stages which we cannot trace, by an actual growth in the living material In naked cells ingestion may occur either at any part of the surface, as in the amœba, or at a specialised portion, so-called 'mouth,' as in many of the infusoria Digestion is apparently effected in most cases by the production and secretion around the ingested food particle of solutions containing ferments, *i e* agents which have the power of hydrolysing the different foodstuffs and rendering them soluble

In the vast majority of living organisms the energy for their activities is derived from the oxidation, ultimately of the foodstuffs, but immediately of molecules attached to the living protoplasm. A necessary condition, therefore, for the life of these cells is the presence of oxygen in the surrounding medium, from which it is taken up in the molecular form. We may therefore speak of an assimilation of oxygen; but it is still a matter of dispute whether the oxygen is built up as such in the living molecule (so-called intra-molecular oxygen) to be utilised for the formation of carbon dioxide when a discharge of energy is necessary, or whether it is taken in only at the moment when the combustion of the carbon and hydrogen constituents of the food or protoplasm is necessary for the supply of energy. However this may be, products are formed as a result of this oxidation which are of no further value to the cell and are therefore excreted, *i e.* turned out of the cell. The chief of these are the products of oxidation of carbon and hydrogen, namely,

carbon dioxide and water. There are also many substances resulting from the oxidation of the nitrogenous portions of the protoplasm, which have to be excreted in the solid or dissolved form.

Although the assimilation of oxygen is so general a quality of living protoplasm, the presence of this gas, at any rate in the free form, does not seem to be necessary for all kinds of life. Thus a number of the bacteria are known which are anaerobic, *i.e.* exist only in the absence of oxygen. Examples of such are bacillus tetanus, and the bacillus of malignant œdema. In order to cultivate them it is necessary to displace all the air in the cultivating vessels by means of a current of hydrogen. It has been supposed that the ultimate source of the energy of these organisms is also derived from a process of oxidation, and that they differ from other organisms in being able to utilise for this purpose oxygen which is built up into the structure of their food substances. It is possible, however, that these organisms derive the energy for the building up of their protoplasm, for their movements, &c., not from a process of oxidation at all, but from processes of disintegration of the substances which they utilise as food. It is by such means that in all probability the intestinal worms, fairly highly organised animals, are able to exist in the intestine in a medium containing no oxygen, but rich in carbon dioxide. Here they are plentifully supplied with foodstuffs and can afford to adopt a wasteful method of nutrition, in which only a small fraction of the energy is obtained which would be produced by a total oxidation of the food.

B. *The Phenomena of Dissimilation.* The activities of a living cell or organism can be regarded in every case as dependent originally on environmental change, and are adapted to this change, *i.e.* are of such a nature that they tend to preserve the organism intact, to favour its growth, or prevent its destruction. The property of reacting in such a manner to changes in the environment is fundamental to all protoplasm and is spoken of as *excitability*, and the change which will influence an organism and cause a corresponding adaptive change in it is known as a *stimulus*. Stimuli may be of various kinds. Thus mechanical, thermal, chemical, electrical changes, light, and so on, may act as stimuli. The reactions which they evoke involve in every case chemical changes in the protoplasm, *i.e.* changes in the metabolism of the cell. Sometimes this change may be assimilatory in character, leading to an increased growth of the protoplasm, or at any rate to a cessation of dissimilation. In such a case the stimulus is spoken of as inhibitory, because it diminishes or prevents the output of energy by the organism. The frequent result of a stimulus is an increased output of energy, which may appear in the form of movement, in the form of heat, or as chemical change

A common feature of all dissimilatory changes evoked by the application of a stimulus is that the energy of the reaction is always many times greater than the energy represented by the stimulus, the excess, of course, being supplied at the expense of the potential energy of the food material which has been stored up in or built up into the living protoplasm. This disproportion between stimulus and reaction can be well illustrated on an excitatory tissue such as muscle. Thus in one experiment the gastrocnemius muscle of a frog was loaded with a weight of 48 gms. The nerve running to the muscle was placed on a hard surface and a weight of half a gramme was allowed to fall upon it from a height of 10 mm. The muscle contracted in response to this mechanical stimulus applied to the nerve and raised the weight 3·8 mm.

In this case the work performed by the muscle was $48 \times 3{\cdot}8 = 182{\cdot}4$ grm. mm., while the potential energy of the stimulus represented only $0{\cdot}5 \times 10{\cdot}0 = 5{\cdot}0$ grm. mm. Thus the work performed by the muscle was thirty-six times larger than the energy of the stimulus applied to the nerve.

In the case of unicellular organisms, definite classes of motor reaction to stimulus have been described. The ordinary retraction of a unicellular organism, such as the vorticella, in response to a touch is called *thigmotaxis*. Certain cells are influenced by gravity, tending to rise or fall in the surrounding medium according to the conditions which favour their existence. A similar sensitiveness to gravity is observed in the growing parts of plants, where the root always grows downwards and the stem upwards. This reaction to gravity is known as *geotaxis*, which is distinguished as 'negative' or 'positive' respectively, according as the plant grows in opposition or in obedience to the gravitational attraction. If growing plants be placed on the rim of a wheel and rotated so that the centrifugal force is greater than that of gravity, the stems all grow towards the centre of the wheel while the rootlets grow outwards. In the same way the reaction of micro-organisms to light is known as *phototaxis*, some organisms seeking the light while others shun it. Among the primitive reactions of cells perhaps the most important in the life of higher animals are those grouped under the term *chemiotaxis*. The fertilisation of the ovum in the prothallus of ferns is effected by the penetration of the antherozoids produced in the male organs at some little distance from the female organs. It was shown by Pfeffer that the movement of the antherozoids towards the ova is effected in response to a chemical stimulus, probably malic acid, since he found that antherozoids suspended in a fluid will always swim towards any locality where there is a greater concentration of this acid. In the same way aerobic bacteria are attracted by the presence of oxygen. If such bacteria are present in a solution with an alga, on exposure of the fluid to light there is an evolution of oxygen by the green alga, and a consequent congregation of the bacteria round the seat of production of the oxygen. The movements of the white corpuscles of the blood of the higher animals are also largely determined by their chemical sensibility, and various substances can be divided into (*a*) those which exercise positive and (*b*) those which exercise negative chemiotactic influence on the leucocytes. Thus the introduction under the skin of an animal of a capillary tube containing a solution of substances of the first class, such as peptone, tissue extracts, or the chemical products of certain bacteria, leads to an accumulation within the tube of leucocytes which pass to it from all the surrounding tissues. Other substances, such as quinine, exert a negative chemiotaxis. Tubes filled with these, after introduction into the subcutaneous tissue of a mammal, will be found many hours later to contain no leucocytes at all.

THE RELATIONS OF THE NUCLEUS TO THE CYTOPLASM. The universal existence in living cells of a differentiated nucleus indicates that the life cycle of assimilation and dissimilation must depend on an interaction between the nucleus and cytoplasm, and that each plays a distinct part in the sum of the changes which make up the life of the cell. The different staining reactions of nucleus and cytoplasm suggest a corresponding difference in their chemical composition, a suggestion which is confirmed by analysis. In the building up of protoplasm proteins play an important part. They are not present, however, as simple proteins, but built up with other complex bodies to form conjugated proteins. Whereas in the cytoplasm these conjugated proteins consist chiefly of compounds of protein and lecithin, in the nucleus the chief constituents belong to the class of nucleo-proteins The nucleo-proteins are of varying composition, and are distinguished chiefly by the

large amount of phosphorus in their molecule. A nucleo-protein can be broken down into nuclein and protein. Nuclein can be broken down into nucleic acid and a protein-like substance, protamine. Nuclei differ among each other and at different periods of their existence or in different conditions of activity according to the greater or less amount of protein which is

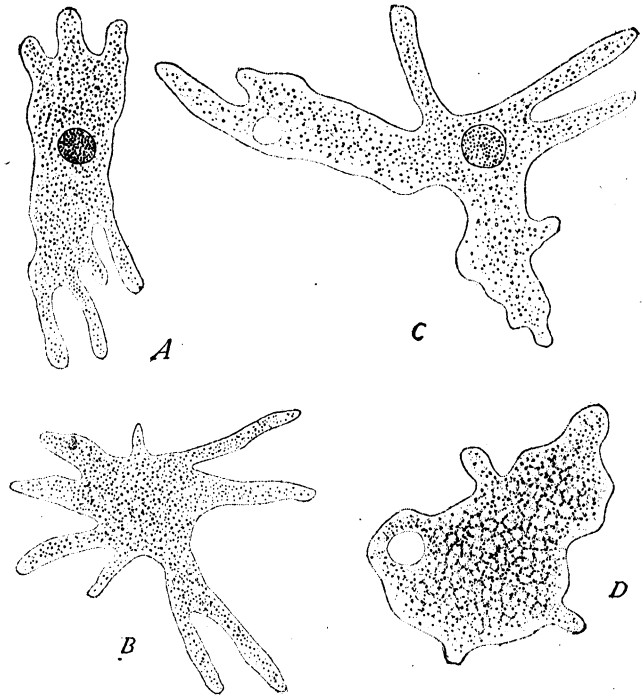


FIG. 8. Nucleated and non-nucleated fragments of *Amœba*. (WILSON after HOFER.) *A*, *B*. An *Amœba* divided into nucleated and non-nucleated halves, five minutes after the operation. *C*, *D*. The two halves after eight days, each containing a contractile vacuole.

combined with the nuclein. The latter seems to be the essential constituent of cell nuclei and to be present in only small quantities in the cytoplasm. The properties and reactions of these bodies will be dealt with at greater length in the next chapter.

In order to appreciate the part played by the nucleus in the ordinary cell processes, we must study the behaviour of cells or parts of cells deprived of a nucleus and compare it with that of similar cells or parts of cells still containing a nucleus. By means of a fine needle it is possible to divide the larger protozoa into two pieces, one with and one without a nucleus. Hofer, experimenting on the amœba, found that the fragment containing the nucleus quickly regenerated the missing part and pursued a normal existence. On the other hand, the non-nucleated fragments showed no signs of regeneration. They might, indeed, live as long as fourteen days after the operation (Fig. 8).

Their movements continued for a short time and then ceased, though the pulsations of the contractile vesicle were but little affected. The power of digestion of food was completely lost. Other observers have shown that Stentor, an infusorium which possesses a fragmented nucleus, may be broken up into fragments of all sizes. Nucleated fragments as small as one-twenty-seventh the volume of the entire animal are still capable of

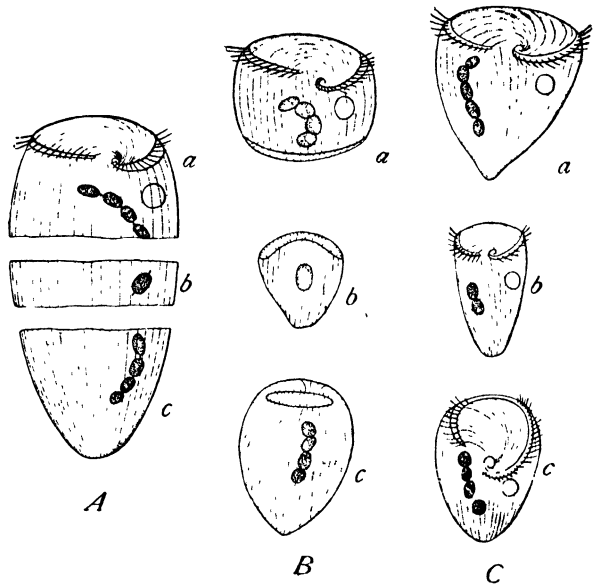


FIG. 9. Regeneration in the unicellular animal *Stentor*. (From GRUBER after BALBIANI.) *A*. Animal divided into three pieces, each containing a fragment of the nucleus. *B*. The three fragments shortly afterwards. *C*. The three fragments after twenty-four hours, each regenerated to a perfect animal.

regeneration. The wound quickly heals and the special organs—the mouth, with its surrounding cilia, and the contractile vacuole—are regenerated, but all non-nucleated fragments quickly perish (Fig. 9).

Many similar observations have shown that the non-nucleated cytoplasm, though it may survive for some time and perform normal movements in response to stimuli, such as those of ingestion of food particles, loses entirely the power of digestion, secretion, and growth. In animals possessing a shell, a small secretion of the lime salts may occur on the surface, but this process rapidly comes to an end as the store of material in the cytoplasm is exhausted. In vegetable cells it is possible to break up the protoplasm by means of plasmolysis into nucleated and non-nucleated parts. The nucleated part quickly forms a new cell wall. The non-nucleated part is unable to effect this formation, and soon dies unless it is in connection with an adjacent cell containing a nucleus by means of fine threads of protoplasm which pass through pores in the intercellular septa (Fig. 10). In the higher animals

we have, in the case of the nerve-cell, an example of the necessity of the nucleus for growth. Here division of the nerve fibre causes degeneration of the whole fibre separated from the cell containing the nucleus, and regeneration of the fibre, when it occurs, is effected by a down-growth of that part of the fibre which is still in connection with the nucleus. All these facts show

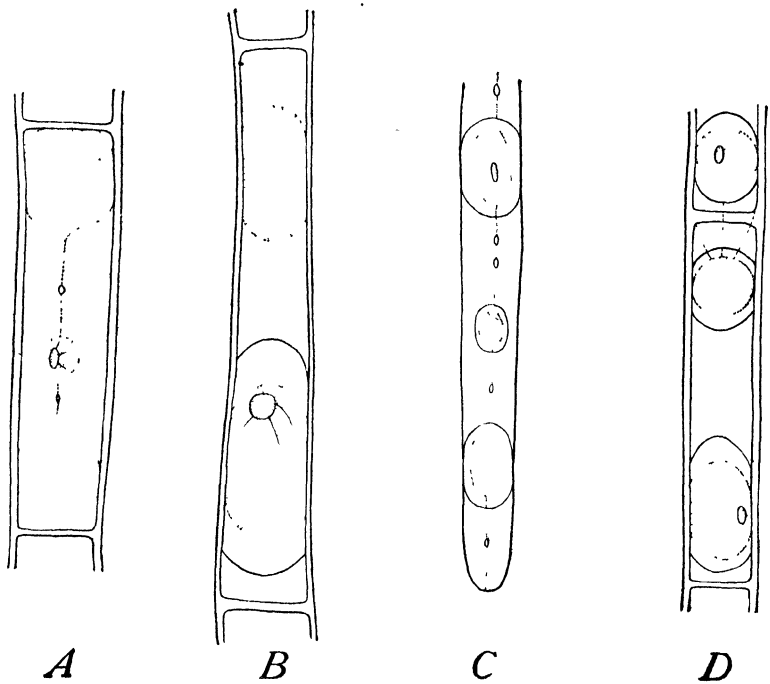


FIG. 10. Formation of membranes by protoplasmic fragments of plasmolysed cells (WILSON after TOWNSEND.)

A. Plasmolysed cell, leaf-hair of *Cucurbita*, showing protoplasmic balls connected by strands. *B*. Calyx-hair of *Gaillardia*; nucleated fragment with membrane, non-nucleated one naked. *C*. Root-hair of *Marchantia*, all the fragments, connected by protoplasmic strands, have formed membranes. *D*. Leaf-hair of *Cucurbita*, non-nucleated fragment, with membrane, connected with nucleated fragment of adjoining cell.

that the power of morphological as well as of chemical synthesis depends on the presence of a nucleus. On this account the nucleus, as we shall learn later on, must be regarded as the especial organ of inheritance. The transmission of the paternal qualities from one generation to the next is effected by the entrance simply of the nuclear material of the male cell, the spermatozoon, into the ovum. In the words of Claude Bernard, "the functional phenomena in which there is expenditure of energy have their seat in the protoplasm of the cell (*i.e.* the cytoplasm). The nucleus is an apparatus for organic synthesis, an instrument of production, the germ of the cell."

Similar conclusions may be drawn from a study of the changes in the nucleus which accompany different phases in the activity of the whole cell.

Thus in growing plant-cells the nucleus is always situated at the point of most rapid growth. In the formation of epidermal cells the nucleus moves towards the outer wall and remains closely applied to it so long as it is growing in thickness. When this growth is finished the nucleus moves to another part of the cell. In the formation of root hairs the outgrowth always takes place in the immediate neighbourhood of the nucleus, which is carried forward and remains near the tip of the growing hair. The active growth of cytoplasm, which accompanies the activity of secreting cells, is always associated with changes in the position and in the size of the nucleus. Where the nutritive activity of the cell is very intense, as in the silk glands of various lepidopterous larvæ, the nucleus is found to be very large and much branched (Fig. 11) so as to present the greatest possible extent of surface through which interchanges can go on between nucleus and cytoplasm.

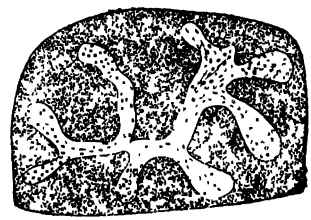


FIG. 11. Branched nucleus from the spinning gland of butterfly larva (*Pieris*). (KORSCHELT.)

The important changes which the nucleus undergoes in the process of cell division we shall have to consider more fully in the later chapters of this work In the function of assimilation it is natural to assume that it is those constituents of the nucleus which are peculiar to it both morphologically and chemically, namely, the chromatin filaments, which are most directly concerned. This assumption receives support from the changes which have been observed to occur in these filaments during various phases of nutritive activity of the cell. The staining powers of chromatin are in direct proportion to the amount of nuclein it contains In the eggs of the shark it has been shown that the chromosomes undergo characteristic changes during the entire growing period of the egg. At first they are small and stain deeply with ordinary nuclear dyes, but during the period of growth they undergo a great increase in size and at the same time lose their staining capacity,* their surface being increased by the development of long threads which grow out in every direction from the central axis. As the egg approaches its full size, the chromosomes diminish in size and are finally reduced to minute intensely staining bodies which take part in the first division of the egg preparatory to its fertilisation (Fig. 12). We must conclude that whereas the processes of destructive metabolism or dissimilation, which determine the activity of the cell, have their immediate seat in the cytoplasm, the processes of constructive metabolism which lead to the formation of new material, to the chemical and morphological building up of the cell, are carried out in or by the intermediation of the nucleus.

HISTOLOGICAL DIFFERENTIATION OF CELLS. Even within the limits of a single cell, differentiation of structure can take place by the setting apart of distinct portions of the cell for isolated functions. Thus in an organism such as vorticella the cell is shaped somewhat like a wine-glass,

* Rückert, cited by Wilson.

the stem being composed of a spiral contractile fibre which has the function of withdrawing the rest of the organism when necessary towards its point of attachment. The main portion of the cell presents at its free extremity a part which is the seat of ingestion of food, and is therefore spoken of as the 'mouth.' This is surrounded by a circle of cilia whose function it is to set up currents in the surrounding fluid and so favour the passage of food particles towards the mouth. Food when ingested at this end passes only a

FIG. 12. Chromosomes of the germinal vesicle in the shark *Pristiurus*, at different periods drawn to the same scale. (RÜCKERT)

A. At the period of maximal size and minimal staining-capacity (egg 3 mm. in diameter). *B*. Later period (egg 13 mm. in diameter). *C*. At the close of ovarian life, of minimal size and maximal staining-power.

short distance into the body of the vorticella. Here fluid is secreted around it which serves for its digestion. This portion of the cell may therefore be regarded as the alimentary canal or stomach. The indigestible residue of the food is excreted in close proximity to the mouth. In addition to these organs we have the usual differentiation of the protoplasm into an external and internal layer, and the development within the protoplasm of contractile vacuoles which serve to keep up a circulation of fluid and therefore to pass the products of digestion through all parts of the cell body. Within the limits of the single cell which forms the vorticella we may therefore speak of organs for contraction, for digestion, for circulation, and so on.

The organs which are thus formed in unicellular animals or plants can be divided into two classes, namely (1) temporary organs, which are formed out

of a common structural basis and can therefore be replaced at any time by the cytoplasm if destroyed. Examples of such organs are the cilia, the commonest motor apparatus of unicellular organisms; the pseudopodia, which, as we have seen, can be made and destroyed at will; the mouth of animals such as Volvox or Vorticella; and the stinging cells or nectocysts, which surround the mouth of many of these animals and serve to paralyse or kill the smaller living organisms brought by the cilia within reach in order that they may serve as food. In contradistinction to these organs are (2) a number of others which must be regarded as permanent. These cannot be formed by differentiation from the cytoplasm of the cell, but are derived by the division of pre-existing organs of the same character, and are therefore transmitted from one generation to another. As examples of such cell-organs may perhaps be mentioned the nucleus, with its chromosomes, and the plastids, of which the chloroplasts of vegetable cells are the most conspicuous. Certain cell organs may fall into either class. Thus the contractile vacuoles are sometimes derived by the division of the pre-existing vacuoles in a previous generation, at other times are certainly formed out of the common cytoplasm. The centrosome, a small particle generally situated in the cytoplasm, which plays an important part in cell-division, is generally derived by the division of a pre-existing centrosome, but under certain conditions and in some organisms can be developed *in situ* in the cytoplasm itself.

The possibility of histological differentiation and of the adaptation of structure to definite functions becomes much more pronounced as we pass from the unicellular to the multicellular organisms or metazoa. The lowest of the metazoa, such as the sponges, consist of little more than an aggregation or colony of cells. All the cells are still bathed with the outer fluid, and any differentiation of structure or function seems to be entirely conditioned by the position of the cell. In the cœlenterata the differentiation is already much more marked. The hydra, one of the simplest of the group, consists of a sac formed of two layers of cells and attached by a stalk to some firm basis. Round the mouth of the sac is a circle of tentacles. The inner layer, or hypoblast, represents the digestive and assimilatory layer, while the epiblast, or outer layer, is modified for the purposes of protection, of reception of stimuli, and of motor reaction. In the jelly-fish the differentiation of the outer layers leads to the formation of the first trace of a nervous system, *i.e.* a system fitted especially for the reception of stimuli and for their transmission to the reactive tissues, namely, the muscles.

In all these classes of animals the external medium of every cell forming the organism is the sea-water or other medium in which they live. This can penetrate through the interstices between the cells, and every cell is therefore exposed to all the possible variations which may occur in the composition of the surrounding medium. A great step in evolution was accomplished with the formation of the cœlomata, the class to which all the higher animals belong. In these, by the formation of a body cavity containing fluid, an internal medium is provided for all the working cells of the body. The com-

position of this internal medium is maintained constant by the activity of the cells in contact with it, and the stress of sudden changes in the chemical composition of the surrounding medium is borne entirely by the outer protective layer of epiblast cells. These are rendered more or less impermeable by the secretion on their surfaces of a cuticular layer, and only such of the constituents of the surrounding medium are allowed to enter the organism as can be utilised by it for building up its living protoplasm. Out of the cœlom is later on formed a circulatory system which, by the circulation of the cœlomic fluid or of blood through the whole body, can procure a still more perfect uniformity in the chemical conditions to which every cell is exposed. It is not till much later that the organism achieves an independence of external conditions of temperature. In the mammalia, by means of the reactive nervous system, the heat produced in every vital activity by the chemical changes of combustion and disintegration is so balanced against the heat lost through the external surface to the environment that the temperature of the internal fluid is maintained practically constant. One of the main results of the differentiation of function and structure is therefore a gradual setting free of the majority of the cells of the body from the influence of variations in the environment; and in the highest type of all animals, in man, this independence of external conditions is carried to a much further extent by conscious adaptations, such as the use of clothes, dwellings, artificial heating, and so on.

The differentiation of the cells which compose the organs of the body is determined in the first place by the different conditions to which they are exposed in virtue of their positions in the course of development. All the higher animals may be considered as built in the form of a tube, the external surface of which is modified for the purpose of defence and for adaptation to changes in the environment. From this layer there are developed not only the protective cuticle, but also the organs of motor reaction, namely, the special senses and the nervous system. The internal surface of the tube is modified for purposes of alimentation. From it are developed all those structures which serve for the digestion of the food-stuffs, for their absorption into the common circulating fluid, for their elaboration after absorption, and their preparation for utilisation by other cells of the body. Between these two surfaces are situated the supporting tissues of the body as well as the organs for the conversion of the potential energy of the body into motion and work, namely, the muscles. Here also is the cœlum or body cavity, represented in the higher animals by the pleural and peritoneal cavities. The alimentary canal projects for a considerable part of its course into this cœlum, being attached to the body wall only by one side. From the cœlom is also developed the blood vascular system, surrounded by contractile and connective cells which maintain a constant circulation of the blood throughout the body. By this differentiation the body becomes divided into a number of organs, each of which is composed of like cells, modified for a common function and bound together by connective tissue, the latter serving also to carry the blood-vessels which convey the common medium for the working

cells. In the study of physiology our task consists, firstly, in the description of the special part taken by each organ in the general functions of the body, and, secondly, in the determination of the limiting conditions of such functions and of the physical and chemical factors which determine them. Finally, we have to endeavour to form a complete conception of the chain of events concerned in the discharge of each function and of their causal nexus.

In the foregoing lines we have compared the higher animal to a colony of cells, and we often speak of an isolated cell of the body as if it were an independent elementary organism. A better term for such an aggregation of cells as presented by the higher animals is not however 'cell colony,' but 'cell state,' since, just as in the state politic, no cell is independent of the activities of the others, but the autonomy of each is merged into the life of the whole. With increasing differentiation there is increasing division of function among the various members of the state, and each therefore becomes less and less fitted for an independent existence or for the discharge of all its vital functions. The more highly civilised a man becomes and the greater his specialisation in the work of the community, the smaller chance would he have of existing on a desert island. Thus the life of the organism is essentially composed of and determined by the reciprocal actions of the single elementary parts. It is evident that, if the process of specialisation has gone far enough, a discussion whether each unit has or has not an independent life is beside the mark, since it cannot possibly exist apart from the activities of the other cells. Of late years histologists have brought forward evidence which seems to imply that an actual structural interaction exists, in addition to the functional dependence which is a necessary resultant of specialisation. Even in the case of plant cells with their thick cellulose walls, fine bridges of protoplasm can be made out passing from one cell to another through pores in the cellulose wall. In animals protoplasmic bridges are known to exist joining up adjacent cells in unstriated muscle, epithelium and cartilage cells, and in some nerve-cells. The conclusion has therefore been drawn that the morphological unit is not the cell, but the whole organism, and that the division of the common cytoplasm into cells is merely a question of size and convenience. There can be no doubt that the determining factor in the division of cells is their growth: the cell divides because it grows. With increased mass of living substance it is necessary to provide for increase of surface both of cytoplasm and of nucleus. Whether all the tissues of the higher animals remain in structural continuity by protoplasmic bridges, &c., must be to us a matter of indifference, since all that is necessary for the interdependent working of the different cells of the body is a functional continuity, and this in the higher animals is effected by the presence of a common circulating fluid and a reactive nervous system connected by conducting strands with all the cells of the body.

CHAPTER III

THE MATERIAL BASIS OF THE BODY

SECTION I

THE ELEMENTARY CONSTITUENTS OF PROTOPLASM

THE material basis of which living organisms are built up is derived from the surrounding medium, and the elements which compose the framework of the body must therefore be identical with those found in the earth's crust. Not all the elements are so utilised in the formation of living matter. Every living organism without exception contains the following elements: carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, sulphur, phosphorus, chlorine, potassium, sodium, calcium, magnesium, and iron. In addition to these twelve elements others are found in certain organisms, sometimes to a large extent, but it is not known how far they are necessary to the proper development of these organisms, and it is certain that they do not form an integral constituent of all organisms. Of these elements we may mention especially silicon, iodine, fluorine, bromine, aluminium, manganese, and copper. Dealing with the first class, which includes those essential to all forms of life, we find that their relative proportions in living organisms have little or no relation to their proportions in the environment of the organisms. Their presence, however, in the latter is a necessary condition of life. In the case of plants which have a fixed habitat and cannot move in search of food, the growth of the plant is limited by the amount of the necessary element which is present in smallest quantities in the surrounding medium. This is what is meant by the agriculturist's 'Law of the Minimum.' Of the elements derived from the earth's crust, those present in the smallest amounts in most soils are potassium, nitrogen, and phosphorus. The growth of a crop in any given soil is determined by the amount of that one of these three substances which is present in smallest quantities, and the aim of agriculture is to supply to every soil the ingredient thus present in minimal amount.

Carbon forms the greater part by weight of the solid constituents of living protoplasm. The proximate constituents of living organisms are practically all carbon compounds, so that organic chemistry, which was originally the chemistry of substances produced by the agency of living organisms, has come to be synonymous with the chemistry of carbon com-

pounds. The carbon compounds which make up the living cell are combustible, *i.e.* they can unite with oxygen to form carbon dioxide with the evolution of heat. In the inorganic world practically all the carbon occurs in a completely oxidised form, namely, carbon dioxide. A small amount, 4 parts in 10,000, is present in the atmosphere, while vast quantities are buried in the crust of the earth as carbonates of the alkaline earths, &c., in the form of chalk and limestone. In this condition the carbon dioxide is practically removed from the life cycle, the whole of the carbon contained in the tissue of living beings, whether plant or animal, being derived from the minute proportion of carbon dioxide present in the atmosphere. The energy for the conversion of carbon dioxide into the oxidisable forms with high potential energy, which make up the tissues of plants and animals, is furnished by the sun's rays. The machine for the conversion of the radiant energy into the potential chemical energy of the carbon compounds is represented by the chlorophyll corpuscles in the green parts of plants. In these corpuscles, under the influence of the sun's rays, the carbon dioxide of the atmosphere, together with water, is converted into carbohydrates, viz. starch ($C_6H_{10}O_5$), and the oxygen liberated in the process is set free into the surrounding atmosphere.

$$6CO_2 + 5H_2O = C_6H_{10}O_5 + 6O_2.$$

In this process a large amount of energy is absorbed, an energy which can be set free later by the oxidation of the starch to carbon dioxide. In the oxidation of one gramme of starch about 4500 calories are evolved, and this represents also the measure of the solar energy which must be absorbed by the chlorophyll corpuscle in the process of formation of starch from the carbon dioxide of the atmosphere. By this means the world of life is provided with a source of energy. At the expense of the energy of the starch further synthetic processes are carried out. By the oxidation of a part of the carbohydrates, sufficient energy may be supplied to deoxidise other portions of the carbohydrates with the production of fats. Thus

$$\underset{\text{(Glucose)}}{3C_6H_{12}O_6} - 8O_2 = \underset{\text{(Stearic acid)}}{C_{18}H_{36}O_2}$$

The potential energy of a fat is still greater than that of a carbohydrate, one gramme of fat giving on complete combustion to carbonic acid and water as much as 9000 calories. By the introduction of ammonia groups (NH_2) into the molecules of fatty acids, amino-acids may be produced, from which the complex proteins are built up to form the chief constituents of the living protoplasm.

The synthesis of carbon compounds from the inert carbon dioxide of the atmosphere can be effected only by chlorophyll corpuscles. All animals take in carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, oxygen, and sulphur in the form of the carbohydrates, fats, and proteins which have been built up in the living plants. In the animal organism these food-stuffs serve as sources of energy. They undergo a gradual oxidation, and finally leave the body in the form of

carbon dioxide, water, ammonia or some related compound, and sulphates. A sharp distinction has therefore often been drawn between the metabolism of plants and animals, plants being regarded as essentially assimilatory in character while animals are dissimilatory, utilising the stores of energy which have been accumulated by the plant. There is however no definite line of demarcation. Although, generally speaking, the green plant breaks up carbon dioxide, giving off oxygen and storing up carbon compounds, and the animal taking in carbon compounds oxidises them with the help of the oxygen of the atmosphere to carbon dioxide, which is redischarged into the surrounding medium and is available for further assimilation by plants, yet this process of respiration is common to all living organisms, whether plants or animals. In the green plant it may be masked by the assimilatory process occurring under the influence of the sun's rays, but in the dark all parts of the plant, and in the light all parts which are free from chlorophyll, display a process of respiration, *i.e.* they are constantly taking up oxygen from the atmosphere and using it for the oxidation of carbon compounds in their tissues, with the production of carbon dioxide.

The sum total of the processes of life tend therefore to maintain a constant proportion of carbon dioxide and oxygen in the atmosphere, the decomposition of carbon dioxide by the green plants being balanced by the oxidation of the carbon compounds and the continual discharge of carbon dioxide by animals. It is not certain however that this balance will be maintained throughout all time. As Bunge has pointed out, there are cosmic factors at work which are apparently tending to cause a constant diminution in the quantity of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere, which alone is of value to the plant. One of these factors is the variable affinity of the silica and carbon dioxide respectively for the chief bases of the earth's crust. At a high temperature silica can displace carbon dioxide from its compounds. Thus chalk heated with silica will give rise to calcium silicate with the evolution of carbon dioxide. At an early geological epoch therefore, it is probable that the greater part of the silica was present in combination with bases and that the proportion of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere was very much higher than it is now. At temperatures at present ruling on the earth's surface carbon dioxide is a stronger acid than silica. The action of water charged with carbon dioxide on a silicate is to cause its gradual decomposition with the formation of carbonate and silica. Both these products, being insoluble, are deposited as part of the earth's crust, the silica in the form of sandstone, the carbonate as chalk or limestone. The carbon dioxide is being constantly removed by water from the atmosphere and being locked up in this way in the earth's crust, the process of separation of calcium carbonate being aided to a marked extent by the agency of living organisms themselves. The whole of the extensive deposits of limestone and chalk have been separated from the sea-water by the action of living organisms. With the cooling of the earth's crust which is supposed to be going on, the discharge of carbon dioxide by volcanoes must get less and less, so that one can conceive a time when the whole of the carbon dioxide will be bound up

with bases in the earth's crust, and life, without any source of carbon, must become extinct.

Hydrogen exists almost exclusively in the form of water. In this form it is taken up by plants and animals, with the exception of a small proportion absorbed in the form of ammonia. In this form too it is discharged by living organisms. *Oxygen* is the only element which, in all the higher organisms at any rate, is taken up in the free state. It forms one-fifth of the atmosphere and, as the oxides of the various metals, a considerable fraction of the earth's crust. It takes a position apart from the other food-stuffs in that its presence is the essential condition for the utilisation of their potential energy. In the living cells it combines with the oxidisable compounds formed by the agency of the living protoplasm, with the production of carbon dioxide and water, and the evolution of energy. This process is spoken of as respiration.

Like the three elements we have already considered, *nitrogen* is also derived directly or indirectly from the surrounding atmosphere. In consequence of its feeble combining power for other elements and the instability of its compounds, very little nitrogen is to be found in the combined state in the earth's crust, whereas it constitutes four-fifths of the atmospheric gases. It can be taken up by most plants only in the form of ammonia, nitrites, or nitrates. To animals these compounds are useless, and their only source of nitrogen is the protein which has been built up by the agency of the plant cell. Since nitrogen in the free state is useless to nearly all living organisms, the existence of life must depend on the amount of combined nitrogen which is available. In view of the small tendency presented by this element to enter into combination, it becomes interesting to inquire into the source of the combined nitrogen which is the common capital of the living kingdom. There are certain cosmic factors which result in the production of combined nitrogen. The passage of electric sparks or of the silent discharge through moist air leads to the production of ammonium nitrite.

$$N_2 + 2H_2O = NH_4NO_2.$$

Every thunderstorm therefore will result in the production of small quantities of ammonium nitrite, which will be washed down with the rain and serve as a source of combined nitrogen to the soil. Every decaying vegetable or animal tissue serves as a source of ammonia, so that from various causes the soil may contain nitrogen in the form of ammonia or of ammonium nitrite. These forms of combined nitrogen are not however suitable for all classes of plants. Most moulds can assimilate ammonia as ammonium carbonate or as amino-acids or amines, provided that they are supplied at the same time with sugar, the oxidation of which will serve them as a source of energy. Some moulds, many of the higher plants, and especially the Gramineæ, which include the food-producing cereals, require their nitrogen in the condition of nitrates. It is necessary therefore that the ammonia or nitrites in the soil shall be converted into this highly oxidised form. This

conversion is effected by a group of micro-organisms. There are a number of bacteria (bacterium nitrosomonas) which have the power of converting ammonia into nitrites. Others (bacterium nitromonas) convert nitrites into nitrates. If sewage matter rich in ammonia is allowed to percolate through a cylinder packed with coke and the process be continued for several weeks, it is found after a time that in its passage through the filter the fluid has lost its ammonia and contains the whole of its nitrogen in the form of nitrate. If the cylinder be tapped (Fig. 13) half-way down, say at K, the fluid will be found to contain, not nitrates, but nitrites. In this conversion the two kinds of microbes mentioned above are concerned. At the top of the cylinder the nitrous bacterium is present, in the bottom of the cylinder the nitrate bacterium is present. The conversion of ammonia into nitrates by the agency of bacteria has been made the basis of a method of treatment of sewage which is now very largely employed. These different bacteria play an important part in all soils in preparing them for the cultivation of crops.

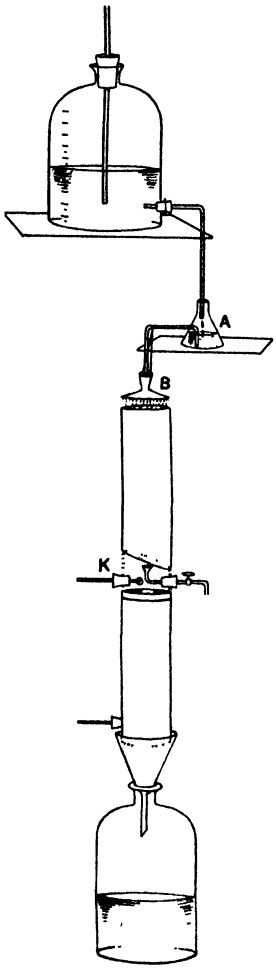


FIG. 13. Arrangement for studying the nitrification of sewage. (MISS H. CHICK.)

Is the total capital of combined nitrogen, which is worked over by these bacteria and utilised by the whole living world, confined to the small quantities produced by atmospheric discharges? Of late years definite evidence has been brought forward that such is not the case and that organisms exist which can utilise and bring into combination the free atmospheric nitrogen itself Thus certain soils have been found to undergo a gradual enriching in nitrogen although no nitrogenous manure has been applied to them. Winogradsky has shown that this fixation of nitrogen by soils is effected by a distinct micro-organism, which may be isolated by growing it on gelatinous silica free from any trace of combined nitrogen, so that the organism has to procure its entire nitrogen from the atmosphere. Under such conditions the numerous other micro-organisms of the soil die of nitrogen starvation, and only the microbe survives which is able to utilise free nitrogen. This organism, which he called *clostridium pasteurianum*, grows well on sugar solution if free from ammonia and enriches the solution with combined nitrogen. It is anaerobic, *i.e.* only grows in the absence of oxygen. In the soil, where oxygen is constantly present, it occurs associated in a sort of symbiosis with two species of bacteria which are aerobic and protect it from

the surrounding oxygen. The mechanism by which this organism is able to fix free nitrogen, and the nature of the first product of the assimilation are not yet ascertained. Such an assimilation will serve to the organism as a source of energy, since the application of heat is necessary for the dissociation either of ammonium nitrite or of nitrous acid into nitrogen and water, as is seen from the following equation:

$$HNO_2Aq. + 308\ Cal. = H + N + O_2 + Aq.$$
$$NH_4NO_2Aq. + 602\ Cal. = 2N + 4H + 2O + Aq.$$

In addition to this spontaneous fixation of nitrogen by humus, a method has long been known to farmers by which the fertility of a soil can be increased without the application of nitrogenous manures. If a plot of land is to be left fallow it is a very usual custom to sow it with some leguminous crop such as sainfoin. Careful experiments by Boussingault, Lawes and Gilbert, and others, have shown that the growth of almost any leguminous crop in a soil poor in nitrogen may result not only in the production of a crop containing much combined nitrogen, but also in an actual increase of nitrogen in the soil from which the crop is taken. It was then shown by the last two observers, as well as by Schloesing and Laurent, that the power of a leguminous crop to enrich the soil with nitrogen was dependent on the presence on the roots of certain small nodules which had been described long before by Malpighi (Fig. 14). They showed also that the production of these nodules took place only as a result of infection. Beans grown in sterilised sand produced a plant free from nodules, which however grew very scantily unless nitrogenous manure were added to the sand. Such a crop derived the nitrogen for its growth from the added nitrogen, the total amount of which in the soil was therefore diminished by the crop. If however the sterilised sand were treated with an infusion of root nodules from another plant without the addition of any combined nitrogen at all, the beans developed nodules on their roots and grew luxuriantly, and at the termination of their growth the soil was richer in nitrogen than at the commencement. On microscopic examination the protoplasm which makes up these nodules is found to be swarming with small rods (Fig. 15), and it was shown by Beyerinck that these rods are bacteria and can be cultivated in media apart altogether from the plant. We have thus an example of a class of bacteria which, like those of humus, are able to assimilate the free nitrogen of the atmosphere, but, unlike them, can only effect this assimilation in a condition of symbiosis, *i.e.* living in the growing tissues of a leguminous plant. Similar nodules have been described on the roots of other plants which can grow in a

Fig. 14. Root of vetch with nodules.

soil free from combined nitrogen, *e.g.* conifers, but it is in the leguminosæ that their presence is most widespread.

The source of the combined nitrogen, which can be built up by plants into proteins and utilised in this form by animals, is thus not only the ammonium nitrite produced by the agency of electric discharges in the

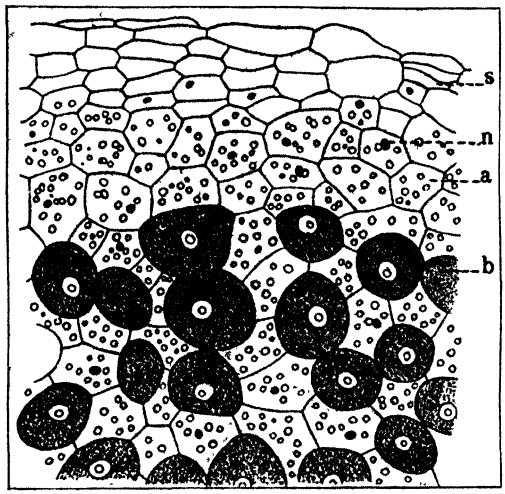


FIG. 15. Section of a root nodule of Dorychnium (VUILLEMIN)
a, cortical tissue; *b*, cells containing bacteria.

atmosphere, but also the free nitrogen of the atmosphere assimilated by various types of bacteria.

Sulphur is found in all soils in the form of sulphates, generally of lime. As sulphates it is taken up by plants. In the plant cell a process of deoxidation takes place at the expense of the energy derived either from the starch or, in the case of bacteria, from other ingredients of their food-supply. It is built up, together with nitrogen, carbon, and hydrogen, to form sulphur derivatives and amino-acids such as cystine, and these, together with other amino-acids, are synthetised to form proteins. Practically the whole of the sulphur taken in by animals is in the form of proteins. It shares the oxidation of the protein molecule in the animal body which it leaves in the form of sulphates. The output of sulphates by an animal can therefore be regarded, like the nitrogen output, as an index of the protein metabolism. It is returned to the soil in the form in which it was taken by the plant, and the cycle can be continuously repeated.

Iron, although forming but a minute proportion of the material basis of living organisms (the whole body of man contains only six grammes), is nevertheless indispensable for the maintenance of life. It is necessary, for instance, in two important functions, viz. the formation of chlorophyll in the green plant and the respiratory process in the higher animals. Although iron forms no part of the chlorophyll molecule, plants grown in the absence of this

substance remain etiolated, but form chlorophyll if the smallest trace of iron is added to the soil in which they are growing or even if the leaves are washed with a very dilute solution of an iron salt. In animals iron forms an essential constituent of hæmoglobin, the red colouring-matter of the blood, whose office it is to carry oxygen from the lungs to the tissues. It is probable too that the minute traces of iron in protoplasm exercise an important function in the processes of oxidation which are continually going on. Even in the inorganic world iron plays the part of an oxygen carrier. In the earth's crust it occurs as ferrous salts and as ferric oxide. The ferrous silicate, for instance, may be decomposed by water containing carbon dioxide into silica and ferrous carbonate ; the latter then absorbs oxygen from the atmosphere, liberating carbon dioxide and forming ferric oxide. In the presence of decomposing organic matter, the ferric oxide parts with its oxygen to oxidise the organic substances and is converted once more into ferrous carbonate, and this may be decomposed by the oxygen of the air as before. In the presence of sulphates and decomposing organic matter, ferrous sulphate, which is first formed, undergoes deoxidation to ferrous sulphide, and this may again be oxidised to sulphates and ferric salts on exposure to the atmosphere, so that both the sulphur and the iron act as oxygen carriers between the atmosphere and the organic matter. Iron is obtained by plants from the soil as ferrous or ferric salts. In the protoplasm it is built up into highly complex organic compounds, and in this form is taken up by animals. It is probable that the main requirements of the animal for iron, which are very small, may be satisfied entirely at the expense of these organic compounds, but there can be little doubt that the animal can, if need be, also utilise the iron salts present in its food. The animal proceeds extremely economically with its supply of iron. Any excess of iron above that needed to supply the iron lost to the body is excreted almost entirely with the fæces in the form of sulphide. In the soil this undergoes oxidation and returns once more to the form in which it was originally taken up by the plant.

Phosphorus is absorbed by the plant as phosphates. In the cell protoplasm it is built up with fatty acids and other organic radicals to form complex compounds such as lecithin, a phosphorised fat, and nuclein, a combination of phosphorus with nitrogenous bases of great variety. Both lecithin and nuclein are essential constituents of living protoplasm. Practically the whole of the phosphorus income of animals is represented by these lecithin and nuclein compounds. After absorption into the animal body they are broken down by processes of dissociation and oxidation, with the production, as a final result, of phosphates, which are excreted with the urine or fæces and return to the soil.

Chlorine, *potassium*, *sodium*, *calcium*, and *magnesium* are taken up by the plants in the form of salts. Although playing an essential part in all vital processes, they do not seem to be built up into organic combination with the protein and other constituents of the cell protoplasm. They are therefore taken up also by animals in the form of salts, and as such are again excreted with the urine.

Little is known about the significance, if any, of the other elements which I have mentioned as occasional constituents of living beings. *Silicon*, which is of universal distribution, is assimilated as silica, probably in colloidal solution, and is distributed in minute quantities through all plant and animal tissues. It forms a very large percentage of the mineral basis of grasses, but even here it does not seem to be indispensable, since these will grow in a medium devoid of silica as luxuriantly as under normal conditions.

Fluorine is found in the enamel of the teeth and in minute traces in other tissues of the body.

Bromine, though present in quantity in some seaweeds, appears to play no part in the economy of higher animals.

Iodine is found in large quantities in many seaweeds and is present as an organic iodine compound in the skeleton of certain horny sponges. An organic iodine compound is also found in the thyroid gland of the higher animals, and may possibly be the active principle by means of which these glands are able to affect the nutrition of the whole body. Iodine, therefore, would seem to be an essential constituent of the higher animals.

Aluminium is found in large quantities in certain lycopods. Whether it is essential to their growth is not known.

Copper is certainly not a necessary constituent of a large number of plants and animals. In one class, the cephalopods, it appears to take the part of iron in the formation of a blood pigment. The hæmocyanine, which was described by Frédéricq, plays the same part in the blood of cephalopods that is played by hæmoglobin in the blood of vertebrates. When oxidised it is of a blue colour, but gives off its oxygen and is reduced to a colourless compound on exposure to a vacuum.

Among these elementary constituents of the body, a definite line of demarcation can be drawn between the carbon and hydrogen on the one hand and all the other constituents on the other. The first two elements are built up in a deoxidised form into the living structure of the protoplasmic molecule. The products of their complete oxidation are volatile, namely, carbon dioxide and water, and leave the body in these forms. The nitrogen set free by the breaking down of the proteins will pass off as free nitrogen or as ammonia. The sulphuric acid formed by the oxidation of the sulphur combines with the basis to form non-volatile salts. We may therefore divide the ultimate constituents of the body into those which are combustible and are driven off on heating, and those which are left behind as the ash.

SECTION II

THE PROXIMATE CONSTITUENTS OF THE ANIMAL BODY

In spite of the enormous variety of the proximate constituents of living organisms, they are all members or derivatives of three classes of compounds. Since living organisms form the entire food of the animal kingdom, a study of these proximate constituents includes the study of all the food-stuffs. These classes are :

(*a*) Proteins, containing the elements carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, oxygen, and sulphur ; in some cases also phosphorus.

(*b*) Fats, containing carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen.

(*c*) Carbohydrates, containing carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, the two latter elements being present in the proportions in which they form water.

THE CHIEF TYPES OF ORGANIC COMPOUNDS OCCURRING IN THE ANIMAL BODY

The full consideration of the various modifications undergone by these three classes of food-stuffs in the body, especially if we include the by-products occurring both in plants and in animal metabolism, involves a wide knowledge of organic chemistry which indeed at its origin was simply the chemistry of the products of living (*i.e.* organised) beings. The most important substances with which we shall have to deal belong to a comparatively restricted number of groups. For the convenience of the reader a short summary of the relationships of these groups to one another and to the hydrocarbons is given here.

THE HYDROCARBONS (FATTY SERIES). These form a continuous homologous series, and may be saturated or unsaturated. Examples of the saturated series are

CH_4 methane
C_2H_6 ethane
C_3H_8 propane
C_4H_{10} butane, and so on,

the general formula for the group being

$$C_nH_{2n+2}.$$

These paraffins, the lower members of which are gaseous, while the higher members form the petroleum ether, the heavy petroleums, vaseline, and the paraffin wax with which we are all familiar, are entirely inert in the animal body. If taken with the food they pass through the alimentary canal unchanged. In order to render them accessible to the action of the living cell they must first undergo oxidation.

The unsaturated hydrocarbons have the general formulæ C_nH_{2n}, C_nH_{2n-2}, C_nH_{2n-4}, &c.

Examples of the first two groups are ethylene $CH_2 \| CH_2$

and acetylene $CH \equiv CH$

Derivatives of all these groups occur in the body.

THE ALCOHOLS. The first product of the oxidation of hydrocarbons is the series of bodies known as the alcohols. Examples of these are:

CH_3OH	methyl alcohol	
C_2H_5OH	ethyl	,,
C_3H_7OH	propyl	,,
C_4H_9OH	butyl	,,
$C_5H_{11}OH$	amyl	,,
$C_6H_{13}OH$	capryl	,, and so on,

the general formula for the group being

$$C_nH_{2n} + {}_1OH.$$

In all these alcohols the OH group is, so to speak, more mobile than the other atoms connected with the carbons, and can therefore be replaced by other substances or groups with comparative ease. In this respect therefore an alcohol can be compared to water HOH or to alkaline hydroxide NaOH or KOH. The best-known example of the group is ethyl alcohol, the ordinary product of fermentation of sugar. In these alcohols the H of the OH group can be replaced by Na. Thus, water with metallic sodium gives sodium hydroxide and hydrogen as follows:

$$2HOH + 2Na = 2NaOH + H_2.$$

In the same way alcohol treated with metallic sodium gives off hydrogen, and the remaining fluid contains sodium ethylate, thus:

$$2C_2H_5OH + 2Na = 2C_2H_5ONa + H_2$$
(sodium ethylate)

On the other hand, the OH group may be replaced by acid radicals. Thus, if ethyl alcohol be treated with phosphorus pentachloride, ethyl chloride is formed together with phosphorus oxychloride and hydrochloric acid. Thus:

$$Et.OH + PCl_5 = POCl_3 + HCl + Et.Cl$$
(ethyl chloride)

With concentrated sulphuric acid the reaction is similar to that which obtains between sodium hydrate and this acid, and we have formed ethyl hydrogen sulphate and water. Thus:

$$Et.OH + H_2SO_4 = Et.HSO_4 + HOH$$

If alcohol be warmed with acetic acid and strong sulphuric acid, among the products of the reaction is ethyl acetate, which is volatile, and therefore passes off. Thus:

$$Et.OH + HC_2H_3O_2 = Et.C_2H_3O_2 + HOH.$$

These compounds of the hydrocarbon group of the alcohol, such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, &c., with an acid, in which the ethyl takes the part of a base, are known as esters.

An ester treated with an alkali is decomposed with the formation of an alkaline salt of the acid, and the corresponding alcohol which, being volatile, is given off on warming the mixture. Thus:

$$\underset{\text{(ethyl acetate)}}{Et.C_2H_3O_2} + \underset{\text{(potassium acetate)}}{NaHO} = \underset{}{NaC_2H_3O_2} + \underset{\text{(alcohol)}}{Et.OH}.$$

This process of decomposition of an ester with the formation of the alkaline salt of an acid is often spoken of as *saponification, i.e.* soap formation, though the term 'soap'

is applied only to the compounds of alkalies with the higher fatty acids. The series of alcohols we have just dealt with containing one OH group replaceable by metals or acid radicals are known as monatomic alcohols. If in the molecule of the paraffin two or more atoms of hydrogen have been replaced by the group OH, we speak of diatomic or polyatomic alcohols. Thus, derived from the paraffin propane C_3H_8 we may have the monatomic alcohol C_3H_7OH, propyl alcohol, or the triatomic alcohol $C_3H_5(OH)_3$, which is known as glycerin, or glycerol.

Other alcohols of physiological importance are cholesterol and cetyl alcohol. *Cholesterol* is a monatomic alcohol with the formula $C_{27}H_{45}OH$. It is very complex in structure, and belongs to the aromatic series. Recent work points to an affinity of cholesterol with the terpenes, which have hitherto been found only as the product of the metabolism of plant cells. Cholesterol is a constant constituent of protoplasm. It occurs in large quantities in the medullary sheath of nerves; it is a normal constituent of bile and may form concretions (biliary calculi) in the gall bladder. In combination with fatty acids it is an important constituent of sebum and of wool fat.

Another alcohol—*cetyl alcohol*—$C_{16}H_{34}O = \begin{matrix} CH_3 \\ | \\ (CH_2)_{14} \\ | \\ CH_2OH \end{matrix}$ occurs in the feather glands of the duck and forms an important constituent of the wax, spermaceti, obtained from a cavity in the skull of the sperm whale.

ALDEHYDES. By oxidation of any of the alcohols we obtain another group of compounds—the aldehydes. From ethyl alcohol, for instance, by warming with potassium bichromate and dilute sulphuric acid, ethyl aldehyde is produced and given off. In these aldehydes the group $\begin{matrix} H \\ | \\ C-H \\ | \\ OH \end{matrix}$ is converted into the group $\begin{matrix} H \\ | \\ C=O \\ | \end{matrix}$, and it is the possession of this group which determines the aldehyde character of any compound, as well as the reactions which are typical of this class of compounds.

Some of the typical reactions of aldehydes may be here shortly summarised:

(1) They act as reducing agents, the CHO group being converted into the group COOH, which is distinctive of an acid. We may therefore say that on oxidation aldehydes are converted into the corresponding fatty acids as follows:

$$\begin{matrix} CH_3 \\ | \\ CHO \\ \text{(ethyl aldehyde)} \end{matrix} + O = \begin{matrix} CH_3 \\ | \\ COOH \\ \text{(acetic acid)} \end{matrix}$$

On account of the ease with which this oxidation takes place, aldehydes act as strong reducing agents. Warmed with an alkaline solution of cupric hydrate, they take up oxygen, reducing the cupric to a red precipitate of cuprous hydrate. If warmed with an ammoniacal solution of silver (*i.e.* silver nitrate solution to which ammonia has been added until the precipitate first formed is just redissolved), they reduce the silver nitrate with the formation of a mirror of metallic silver on the surface of the glass vessel in which they are heated.

(2) On warming with phenyl hydrazine, they give the typical compounds, hydrazones and osazones, which are also given by the sugars and will be mentioned in connection with these bodies.

(3) They also form addition products. With ammonia, they yield the group of compounds known as aldehyde ammonia. Thus:

$$\begin{matrix} CH_3 \\ | \\ CHO \end{matrix} + NH_3 = \begin{matrix} CH_3 \\ | \\ C-NH_2 \\ | \\ H \\ | \\ OH \end{matrix}$$

With sodium hydrogen sulphite the following reaction takes place:

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CHO \end{array} + NaHSO = \begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CH\langle \begin{array}{l} OH \\ SO_3Na \end{array} \end{array}$$

These compounds of aldehydes with sodium sulphite can be readily obtained in a crystalline form and furnish a convenient means of separating the aldehydes from their solutions.

(4) All the aldehydes possess a strong tendency towards polymerisation. Ethyl or acetic aldehyde treated with strong sulphuric acid gives the compound paraldehyde. Thus:

$$\underset{\text{(acetic aldehyde)}}{3C_2H_4O} = \underset{\text{(paraldehyde)}}{C_6H_{12}O_3}.$$

If warmed with strong potash the polymerisation occurs to a still further extent with the formation of resinous substances of unknown composition, but at any rate of a very high molecular weight, the so-called 'aldehyde resin.' Formic or methyl aldehyde, CH_2O, may in the same way undergo polymerisation with the formation of a mixture of substances belonging to the group of sugars, namely, the hexoses, as follows:

$$6CH_2O = C_6H_{12}O_6.$$

This formation of sugar from formic aldehyde probably plays an important part in the assimilation of the carbon from the carbonic acid of the atmosphere by the green parts of plants.

ACIDS. By the oxidation of the group CHO of the aldehydes we obtain the group COOH, which is characteristic of an organic acid. Thus, formic aldehyde on oxidation gives the compound HCOOH, formic acid. Ethyl or acetic aldehyde, CH_3CHO, with an atom of oxygen, gives the compound CH_3COOH, acetic acid.

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CHO \end{array} + O = \begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ COOH. \end{array}$$

Since these acids are derived from the paraffins a whole series of them exists corresponding to the series of paraffins, and known as the fatty acids. Examples of this group are:

Formic acid	Acetic acid	Propionic acid	Butyric acid
HCOOH	CH_3	CH_3	CH_3
	|	|	|
	COOH	CH_2	CH_2
		|	|
		COOH	CH_2
			|
			COOH.

In addition to these fatty acids, there are also unsaturated acids, derived from the unsaturated hydrocarbons.

DERIVATIVES OF THE FATTY ACIDS

AMINO-ACIDS are derived from the fatty acids by the replacement of one atom of hydrogen by the group NH_2.

Thus from propionic acid we may have:

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_2NH_2 \\ | \\ CH_2 \\ | \\ COOH \\ \beta \end{array} \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CH.NH_2 \\ | \\ COOH. \\ \alpha \end{array}$$

The second form, the α-amino acid, is the only one which occurs in the body.

OXYACIDS are formed by the replacement of one H atom by the group OH. Thus:

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CHOH \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}$$ is oxypropionic acid or lactic acid.

KETO-ACIDS. Oxyacids are formed by the oxidation of the group CH_2 or CH_3 If at the same time the H_2 group be removed by oxidation a keto-acid may be formed. This is probably the manner in which such acids arise in the body, though it is more usual to regard a keto-acid as the result of oxidation of a ketone. Thus:

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CO \\ | \\ CH_3 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CO \\ | \\ CH_2.OH \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CO \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}$$

(acetone) (pyruvic acid—a keto-acid)

ACID AMIDES are formed from a fatty acid by replacing the $-$ OH of the $-$ COOH group by $-NH_2$, *e.g.*:

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CO.NH_2 \end{array} \quad \text{from} \quad \begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ COOH. \end{array}$$

(acetamide) (acetic acid)

AMINES. These may be regarded as formed from ammonia NH_3 by replacing one or more of the H atoms by an organic radical. Thus we may have:

$$\begin{array}{l} \quad CH_3 \\ N \begin{cases} H \\ H \end{cases} \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{l} \quad CH_3 \\ N \begin{cases} CH_3 \\ H \end{cases} \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{l} \quad CH_3 \\ N \begin{cases} CH_3 \\ CH_3 \end{cases} \end{array}$$

(methylamine) (dimethylamine) (trimethylamine)

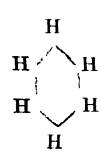
Under the action of living organisms primary amines may be formed from α-amino acids by a process of decarboxylation. Thus:

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CH.NH_2 \\ | \\ COOH \end{array} - CO_2 - \begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CH_2.NH_2 \end{array}$$

(α-amino-propionic acid) (ethylamine)

AROMATIC COMPOUNDS

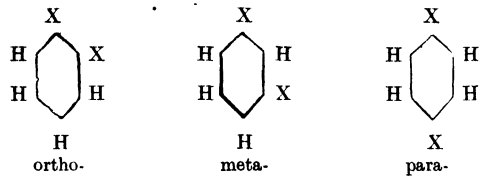
These all contain a nucleus, made up of six carbon atoms, which is extremely stable, so that processes of oxidation, reduction, &c., can be carried out in the compound without destruction of the nucleus. The simplest aromatic compound is benzene C_6H_6. It behaves as a saturated compound. It is represented as a hexagon with a hydrogen atom at each angle.



All the hydrogen atoms are of equal value. They may be replaced by other groups, such as OH, Cl, NH_2, or by more complex groups belonging to the fatty series, *e.g.* CH_3, C_2H_5, &c. Monosubstitution derivatives exist only in one form:

$$C_6H_5.X$$

Disubstitution compounds exist in three forms, according to the relative position of the substituted H atoms. These are known as the ortho, meta, and para compounds, and have the formulæ:



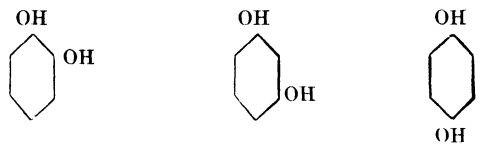
ortho- meta- para-

The following are some of the most important monosubstitution derivatives of benzene:

Nitrobenzene	$C_6H_5.NO_2$.
Aniline	$C_6H_5.NH_2$.
Benzene sulphonic acid	$C_6H_5.SO_3H$.
Phenol	$C_6H_5.OH$.
Toluene	$C_6H_5.CH_3$.
Benzyl alcohol	$C_6H_5.CH_2OH$.
Benzylaldehyde	$C_6H_5.CHO$.
Benzoic acid	$C_6H_5.COOH$.

Of the disubstitution compounds, we need mention only the following:
The *dihydroxybenzenes*:

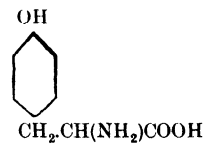
Pyrocatechin or catechol Resorcinol Hydroquinone



ortho- meta- para-

Salicylic acid (o-hydroxybenzoic acid) $C_6H_4\begin{matrix}OH\\COOH\end{matrix}$.

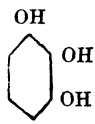
Tyrosin (parahydroxyphenyl alanine):



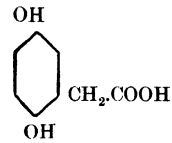
$CH_2.CH(NH_2)COOH$.

Examples of *trisubstitution derivatives* of benzene are:

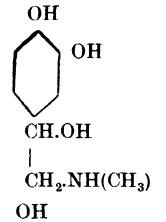
Pyrogallol



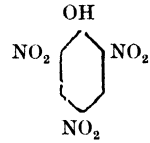
Homogentisic acid



Adrenaline



Picric acid



OPTICAL ACTIVITY

Most of the compounds produced by the agency of living organisms exhibit optical activity, *i.e.* have the property of rotating the plane of polarised light either to the right or to the left.

In an ordinary wave of light the vibrations of the waves take place in all planes perpendicular to the direction of its propagation. When such a ray is passed through a Nicol's prism (made of Iceland spar) it emerges as a plane polarised beam, *i.e.* waves in one plane only are transmitted. Another Nicol's prism will allow such a ray to pass only if it is parallel to the first prism. If it is rotated through a right angle, no light will pass. A Nicol's prism may thus be used to determine the plane of polarisation of any beam of light.

In the polarimeter two Nicol's prisms mounted parallel to one another are employed. One of them (the polariser) is fixed ; the other (the analyser) can be rotated round

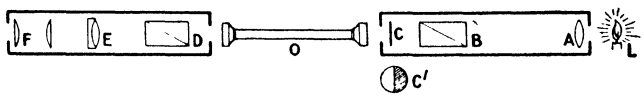


FIG. 16. Diagram of polarimeter.
B, polariser ; D, analyser ; O, tube containing solution under examination.

the axis of the beam of light passing through the first. When both prisms are parallel light passes through the analyser. On interposing a solution of an optically active substance between the two prisms, the plane of polarisation of the beam is rotated, so that the light passing through the analyser is diminished. The light may be brought to its original intensity by rotating the analyser either to the right (clockwise) or to the left. In this way the direction and degree of the optical activity may be determined. Optical activity is connected with the molecular arrangement of the substance exhibiting this property, and depends on the presence of one or more 'asymmetric carbon atoms' in the molecule.

Thus in lactic acid $\begin{matrix} CH_3 \\ | \\ H.COH \\ | \\ COOH \end{matrix}$, or in alanine $\begin{matrix} CH_3 \\ | \\ HC.NH_2 \\ | \\ COOH \end{matrix}$, the middle carbon atom is asymmetric, *i.e.* it is unequally loaded on the four sides.

We can imagine such a carbon atom as occupying the interior of a tetrahedron.

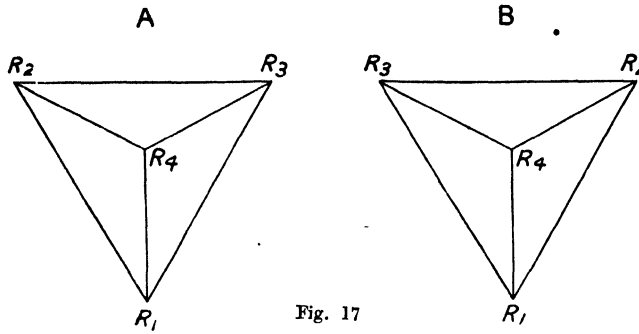


Fig. 17

In this tetrahedron, if we represent the four groups combining with the carbon by R_1, R_2, R_3, R_4, they can be arranged either as in A or B. It is evident that no amount of turning about will convert the tetrahedron A into tetrahedron B, but that, if we hold A before a mirror, its image in the mirror will be represented by B. One arrangement is therefore the mirror image of the other, and a compound containing one such carbon atom will be capable of existing in two forms, namely, one form corresponding to A, the other form corresponding to B. It is found that the unequal loading of the carbon atom, which is present in such an asymmetric arrangement, causes the compound containing the asymmetric carbon to have an action on polarised light. One of the varieties will rotate polarised light to the right, while its mirror image will rotate polarised light to the left. A mixture of equal parts of the two compounds will rotate equally to left and right, *i.e.* will have no action on polarised light.

The variety rotating to the right is dextrorotatory, and the other lævorotatory,' while the mixture of the two is known as the racemic or inactive variety. The three forms are said to be stereoisomeric, and are distinguished as the *d*, *l*, and *i* forms respectively. If two asymmetric carbon atoms are present in a compound, we may have four stereoisomers; and generally if there are *n* asymmetric atoms in a molecule, there will be 2^n possible stereoisomers. These will not all be necessarily optically active, since the dextrorotation due to one asymmetric carbon atom may be exactly neutralised by the lævorotation due to another, so that 'internal compensation' takes place and the substance is optically inactive. Thus in tartaric acid four forms are known, namely, *d*, *l*, racemic or *i*, and mesotartaric, also inactive, in which internal compensation occurs. These four varieties may be represented as follows:

COOH	COOH	COOH
HCOH	HOCH	HCOH
HOCH	HCOH	HCOH
COOH	COOH	COOH
d-tartaric acid	*l*-tartaric acid	mesotartaric acid
inactive tartaric acid		

Several methods may be employed to separate the racemic form into its two optically active components. One of these methods, first employed by Pasteur, is to grow moulds in the solution. One of the optical isomers is destroyed, leaving the other unchanged. Another method is the fractional crystallisation of the salts with alkaloids, *e.g.* strychnine in the case of lactic acid.

* The specific rotatory power of a substance is equal to the number of degrees through which the plane of polarisation is rotated when it passes through a 100 per cent. solution of the substance in a tube 1 decimetre long. Thus polarised light passing through such a tube of 10 per cent. glucose solution would show a rotation of 5·25 degrees, *i.e.* its specific rotatory power is + 52·5.

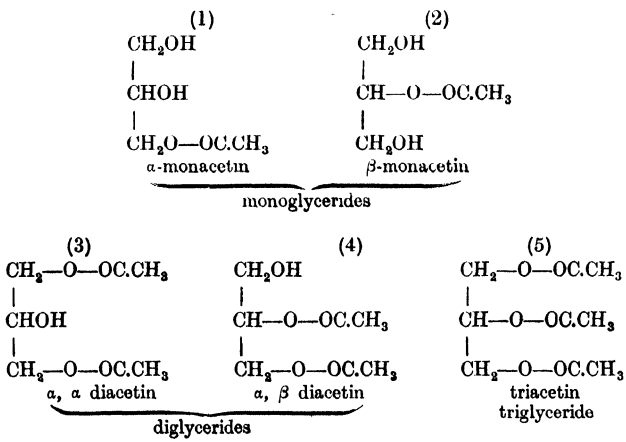
SECTION III

THE FATS

THESE substances are widely distributed throughout the animal and vegetable kingdoms. In the higher animals they are the main constituents of the fatty or adipose tissue lying under the skin and between the muscles, and often forming large accumulations around the viscera. In the marrow of bones they may amount to 96 per cent. They also occur in fine particles distributed through the protoplasm of cells and probably also in combination with the other constituents which make up protoplasm. Large amounts are also found in certain members of the vegetable kingdom, as, for instance, in the fatty seeds and nuts, *e.g.* linseed, olives, Brazil nuts.

CHEMISTRY OF THE FATS

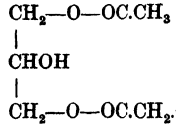
The fats are esters of glycerol and the fatty acids. Glycerol is a trihydric or triatomic alcohol and can therefore form esters with one, two, or three of its hydroxyl groups; thus with acetic acid the following compounds are known:



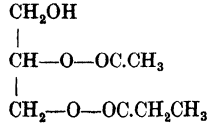
In these compounds the phenomenon of isomerism occurs owing to the presence of primary and secondary alcohol groups in glycerol. In the case

of the diglycerides and the triglycerides *mixed* esters, in which the fatty acid radical varies, are possible :

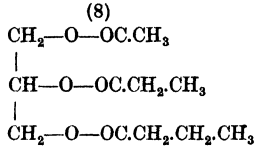
(6)



(7)



(8)



The glyceryl esters which compose the fatty material of living matter—whether animal or plant—are mainly triglycerides, the monoglycerides and diglycerides being seldom found in nature. The natural fat is usually found to consist of a mixture of triglycerides ; these triglycerides, instead of being mixed esters as in formula (8), are generally simple esters as in formula (5). The differences in the composition of the natural fats depend therefore on the variety of the fatty acid radical combined with the glycerol.

The fatty acids which enter into the composition of the triglycerides belong to two main homologous series :

A. The saturated fatty acids, namely :

Formic acid, $H.COOH$
Acetic acid, $CH_3.COOH$
Propionic acid, $CH_3.CH_2.COOH$
Butyric acid, $CH_3.CH_2.CH_2.COOH$
Valerianic acid, $CH_3.(CH_2)_3.COOH$
Caproic acid, $CH_3.(CH_2)_4.COOH$
Caprylic acid, $CH_3.(CH_2)_6.COOH$
Capric acid, $CH_3(CH_2)_8.COOH$
Lauric acid, $CH_3(CH_2)_{10}.COOH$
Myristic acid, $CH_3(CH_2)_{12}.COOH$
Palmitic acid, $CH_3(CH_2)_{14}.COOH$
Stearic acid, $CH_3(CH_2)_{16}.COOH$
Arachidic acid, $CH_3(CH_2)_{18}.COOH$
Behenic acid, $CH_3(CH_2)_{20}.COOH$
Lignoceric acid, $CH_3(CH_2)_{22}.COOH$

B. The unsaturated fatty acids, namely :

(1) Acrylic series, *e.g.* oleic acid ($C_nH_{2n-2}O_2$)
(2) Linoleic series, *e.g.* linoleic acid ($C_nH_{2n-4}O_2$)
(3) Linolenic series, *e.g.* linolenic acid ($C_nH_{2n-6}O_2$)

Of the long list of fatty acids given above only a few occur to any extent

in the animal body. In milk, although the greater part of the fat consists of the triglycerides of oleic, palmitic, and stearic acids, other members of the series given above are present in small amounts. On the other hand, the adipose tissue, strictly so called, consists almost exclusively of the fats derived from the fatty acids, palmitic, stearic, and oleic, *i.e.* tripalmitin, tristearin, and triolein. The great differences in the appearance of the fat of different animals are due to the varying amounts in the relative quantities of these three fats which may be present. While triolein is liquid at 0° C., tristearin and tripalmitin are solid at the temperature of the body. According to the relative amounts of these three substances therefore, we may have a fat which like mutton suet is solid at the body temperature, or a fat containing much olein which is still fluid and runs away when the body is opened after death, even when it has already cooled.

PROPERTIES OF THE FATS. The fats are colourless substances devoid of smell. They are insoluble in water, in which they float. They are soluble in warm absolute alcohol, but separate out into crystalline form on cooling. They are easily soluble in ether. If they are strongly heated with potassium bisulphate they give off pungent vapours of acrolein derived from the decomposition of the glycerin of their molecule.

$$C_3H_5(OH)_3 - 2H_2O = C_3H_4O$$

If they are heated with water or steam or submitted to the action of certain ferments, they undergo hydrolysis, taking up three molecules of water, and are split into three molecules of fatty acid and one molecule of glycerin, *e.g.*,

$$\underset{\text{(neutral fat—tripalmitin)}}{C_3H_5(C_{16}H_{31}O_2)_3} + 3H_2O = \underset{\text{(palmitic acid)}}{3HC_{16}H_{31}O_2} + \underset{\text{(glycerin)}}{C_3H_5(OH)_3}$$

This process may occur spontaneously when fat is left exposed to the air. Fat which has been artificially split in this way is said to be rancid. Most natural fats generally contain a small amount of fatty acid which gives them an acid reaction.

On boiling a neutral fat for a long time with an aqueous solution of potassium or sodium hydrate, or better still with an alcoholic solution of potassium or sodium ethylate, the fat undergoes saponification, giving the alkaline salt of a fatty acid and glycerin. The former compound is spoken of as a soap. In water the soaps form a sort of pseudo-solution on heating which sets to a solid jelly on cooling. From a dilute watery solution the soap can be thrown down in the solid form by the addition of neutral salts. Fats are insoluble in and non-miscible with water. If shaken up with water the droplets rapidly run together and rise to the surface, forming a continuous layer of the oil or fat. The same thing happens if an absolutely neutral fat be shaken up with a dilute solution of sodium carbonate. If however the fat be slightly rancid, *i.e.* if fatty acid be present, the latter combines with the alkali with the expulsion of CO_2 to form a soap. The presence of soap in colloidal solution in the water at once diminishes or abolishes the surface tension between the neutral fat and the water. Like many other colloidal

solutions, a soap solution presents the phenomenon of surface aggregation, *i.e.* the concentration of the soap at the surface is increased to such an extent as to form practically a solid pellicle of molecular dimensions on the surface of the fluid. The same pellicle formation occurs at the surface of every oil globule, so that on shaking up rancid oil with dilute sodium carbonate, the whole of the oil is broken up into fine droplets, which show no tendency to run together again and remain in suspension in the water. The suspension of fine oil droplets, which has the appearance of milk, is spoken of as an *emulsion*. It can be at once destroyed by adding acid. This decomposes the soap, setting free the fatty acids, which are insoluble in the water. The pellicle around each globule is destroyed, and the globules run together as neutral oil would in pure water.

In order to characterise any given animal fat or mixture of fats the following reactions are made use of:

(1) The 'acid number' of the fat, *i.e.* its content in free fatty acids, is determined by titrating it in ethyl alcohol solution $\frac{N}{10}$ with alcoholic solution of potash, using phenolphthalein as an indicator.

(2) The 'saponification number.' This represents the number of milligrammes of potassium hydrate necessary to saponify completely one gramme of fat.

(3) The percentage of volatile fatty acids is determined by saponifying the fat, then treating it with a mineral acid to set free the fatty acids and distilling over the volatile acids in a current of steam.

(4) The iodine number is the amount of iodine which is taken up by a given weight of fat. It is a measure of the amount of unsaturated fatty acid present, *i.e.* in ordinary fat, oleic acid.

Besides the glycerides, a certain number of substances occur in the body derived, not from a combination of fatty acids with glycerol, but from a formation of esters of the fatty acids and other alcohols, *e.g.* cholesterol or cetyl alcohol. Thus, spermaceti is a mixture of cetyl palmitate with small quantities of other fats. The fatty secretion of the sebaceous glands in man and the higher animals, which furnishes the natural oil of hair, wool, and feathers, consists of cholesterol esters with small traces of glycerides. Lanoline, which is purified wool fat, consists almost entirely of cholesteryl stearate and palmitate. These cholesterol fats are attacked with extreme difficulty by ferments or micro-organisms. It is probably on this account that they are manufactured in the body for protective purposes. So far as we know, when once formed, they are incapable of further transformation in the body. They are not appreciably altered by the digestive ferments of the alimentary canal, and the cholesterol is said to pass through the latter unaltered.* Cholesterol is also found in combination with fatty acids in every living cell. Whenever protoplasmic structures are extracted with boiling ether, a certain amount of cholesterol is present with the fats which are so extracted. In view of the great stability of this substance when exposed to the ordinary mechanisms of chemical change in the body, it seems probable that the part played by cholesterol is that of a framework or

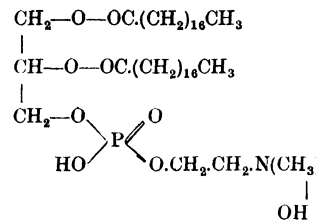
* According to Gardner, cholesterol may be absorbed from the intestine.

skeleton, in the interstices of which the more labile constituents of the protoplasm can undergo the constant cycle of changes which make up the phenomena of life.

PHOSPHOLIPINES OR PFOSPHATIDES

The fats form the chief constituent of the deposited and reserve fat throughout the animal kingdom and are also contained in the protoplasm of the living cell. The chief fatty constituents of protoplasm differ from the above fats in the following particulars : they contain phosphoric acid and an amine. On this account they have been called phosphorised fats. Thudichum, who isolated various compounds of this nature from brain, suggested the term phosphatides as a general name for them. The term lipoid has also been used, but it includes all the substances composing a cell which are soluble in ether, *e.g.* cholesterol, cetyl alcohol, and the fats. Leathes has suggested the term phospholipine for those compounds, for it denotes that the compound is partly fat (lip), that it contains phosphorus, as well as a nitrogenous basic radical (ine). The phospholipines comprise the substances lecithin, cephalin, cuorine, sphingomyeline. In brain and other tissues similar compounds, which contain no phosphorus, occur, and in the place of glycerol we may find galactose. Leathes has proposed calling these compounds lipines and galactolipines.

Lecithin, the chief phospholipine, is an ester compounded of two fatty acid radicals, phosphoric acid, glycerol, and the amine, choline. The various lecithins may be distinguished, according as they contain different fatty acid radicals, as oleyl-lecithin, stearyl-lecithin. The following formula represents distearyl-lecithin :



On warming with baryta water lecithin is broken down into fatty acid, glycerophosphoric acid, and choline. The latter base, which is trimethyl-oxethyl-ammonium hydrate, $N\begin{cases}C_2H_4OH\\(CH_3)_3\\OH\end{cases}$ must be distinguished from neurine, $N\begin{cases}C_2H_3\\(CH_3)_3\\OH\end{cases}$ which is trimethyl-vinyl-ammonium hydrate, and is much more poisonous than choline. Choline forms a salt with hydrochloric acid which, with platinum chloride, yields a double salt of characteristic crystalline form, insoluble in absolute alcohol. The universal distribution of lecithin seems to indicate that it plays an important part in the metabolic

processes of the cell. There is no doubt that it may serve, *inter alia*, as a source of the phosphorus required for building up the complex nucleo-proteins of cell nuclei. It seems to represent an intermediate stage in the utilisation of neutral fats by protoplasm, and its occurrence in the brain as a constituent of more complex molecules, which contain also a carbohydrate nucleus (galactosides, such as cerebrin), might be interpreted as indicating some share also in the metabolism of carbohydrates.

Lecithin may be extracted from tissues by boiling with absolute alcohol. On cooling the alcoholic extract in a freezing mixture, the lecithin separates out as granules or semi-crystalline masses. When dried *in vacuo*, it forms a waxy mass, which melts at 40° to 50° C. In water it swells up to form a paste which, under the microscope, is seen to consist of oily drops or threads, the so-called myelin droplets. In a large excess of water it forms an emulsion or a colloidal solution. Its power of taking up water on the one hand, and its solubility in alcohol and similar media on the other, give it an intermediate position between the water-soluble crystalloids and the insoluble fats, and enable it to play an important part both as a vehicle of nutritive substances and as a constituent of the lipoid membrane, which bounds and determines the osmotic relationships of all living cells.

The phospholipines are provisionally classified according to the proportions of N and P in their molecule, as follows:

(*a*) Mono-amino-monophosphatides, N : P = 1 : 1 (including lecithin and cephalin).

(*b*) Diamino-mono-phosphatides, N : P = 2 : 1 (*e.g.* sphingomyelin).

(*c*) Mono-amino-diphosphatides, N : P = 1 : 2 (*e g.* cuorin, a lipine extracted from heart muscle by Erlandsen).

(*d*) Diamino-diphosphatides, N : P = 2 : 2.

(*e*) Triamino-monophosphatides, N : P = 3 : 1 (an example has been reported as occurring in egg yolk).

All these bodies (except cuorin) are obtained by the extraction of the brain or of nerve fibres. Many also occur in egg yolk. The *galacto-lipines* include two substances extracted from the brain, viz. phrenosin and kerasin. Both these on decomposition yield galactose, a nitrogenous base called sphingosine and a fatty acid. We know little or nothing of their significance.

SECTION IV

THE CARBOHYDRATES

THE carbohydrates are a group of bodies of wide distribution and great importance in both the vegetable and animal kingdoms. In plants the first product of assimilation of carbon is a carbohydrate, and in animals these substances form one of the most important sources of energy. They consist of the elements carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, the two last-named being almost invariably in the proportions necessary to form water. It is on this account that the term carbohydrate has been given to the group. Their general formula might be expressed $C_nH_{2n}O_n$. Certain derivatives of the group, obtained by the substitution of methyl and other radicals for a hydrogen atom, though necessarily classified with carbohydrates on account of their reactions, do not conform to this general formula, *e g.* rhamnose, $C_6H_{12}O_5$. All the carbohydrates which are of importance in the animal economy contain six carbon atoms or a multiple of this number. Analogous substances however can be prepared containing less or more than this number of carbon atoms. A series of compounds exist which contain in their molecule 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9 carbon atoms, and are termed dioses, trioses, tetroses, pentoses, hexoses, heptoses, and so on ; the termination ' ose ' with the Greek numeral prefixed, indicating the number of carbon atoms, gives them a distinct designation. These are all oxidation products of polyatomic alcohols, being either ketones or aldehydes of these alcohols. Thus from glycerol we may obtain glyceryl aldehyde $\begin{matrix}\text{COH}\\|\\\text{CHOH}\\|\\\text{CH}_2\text{OH}\end{matrix}$ and dioxyacetone $\begin{matrix}\text{CH}_2\text{OH}\\|\\\text{CO}\\|\\\text{CH}_2\text{OH}\end{matrix}$. Both these substances behave as sugars and belong to the group of trioses. They are generally obtained together and are called glycerose. From the hexatomic alcohol $\begin{matrix}\text{CH}_2\text{OH}\\|\\(\text{CHOH})_4\\|\\\text{CH}_2\text{OH}\end{matrix}$ we may obtain either the aldehyde

$$\begin{array}{l} COH \\ | \\ (CHOH)_4 \\ | \\ CH_2OH \end{array} \text{ or the ketone } \begin{array}{l} CH_2OH \\ | \\ CO \\ | \\ (CHOH)_3 \\ | \\ CH_2OH \end{array}.$$

These two oxidation products of the polyatomic alcohols are known as aldoses and ketoses respectively. All these compounds are distinguished by the termination 'ose.' It is convenient to call those compounds containing six carbon atoms the sugars, because it is to this group that the natural sugars belong.

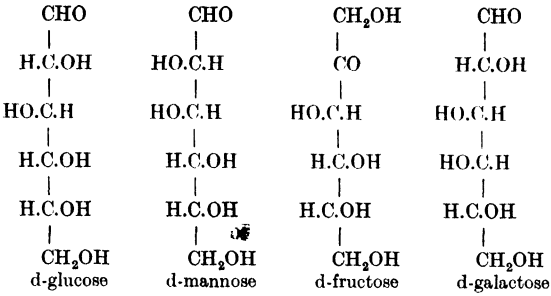
Stereoisomerism in the Sugars. It will be noticed that of the six carbon atoms contained in the sugar molecule, *e.g.* the aldose $\begin{array}{l} CH_2OH \\ | \\ (CHOH)_4 \\ | \\ COH \end{array}$, four are *asymmetric*, *i.e.* their four combining affinities are saturated with groups of different kinds, viz. several carbon atoms, one H atom, and one OH group.

$$\begin{array}{c} C \\ | \\ H—C—OH \\ | \\ C \end{array}$$

They must therefore present many stereoisomeric forms. If n represent the number of asymmetric carbon atoms in a compound, the possible number of stereoisomers is 2^n. Thus an aldehexose with four asymmetric carbon atoms $(CHOH)_4$ must present 2^4 isomers, *i.e.* sixteen isomeric compounds, so that there must be sixteen sugars all possessing the formula $CH_2OH(CHOH)_4COH$, in addition to the inactive sugars obtained by a mixture of two oppositely active members of this group. Of the sixteen possible sugars of this formula, as many as fourteen have been found or have been artificially prepared. Only a small number are however of any physiological importance. These include the aldoses, glucose, mannose, and galactose, and the ketose, fructose or levulose. All the other sugars are unassimilable by the animal cell and are not manufactured by plants.

Since these sugars can be divided into the optically active and the inactive varieties, an obvious mode of designation would be to represent them as d-, l-, and i- varieties respectively, *i.e.* dextro-rotatory, lævo-rotatory, and inactive. On Fischer's suggestion however, this mode of nomenclature has been altered in favour of representing, by the letter prefixed, not the optical qualities of the substance in question, but its relation to other substances, especially glucose. Thus, d-fructose means that fructose is the ketose corresponding to the dextro-rotatory glucose, d-fructose itself being lævo-rotatory, though its active asymmetric C atoms are identically arranged with those in glucose. With this limitation one may say that it is only the d-hexoses of a

particular form which are assimilable, and therefore of physiological importance. The small differences in the configuration of the four d-sugars can be readily seen if their graphic formulæ be compared :



THE PENTOSES. $C_5H_{10}O_5$

These bodies occur largely in plants in the form of complex polysaccharides, the pentosanes, which give pentoses on hydrolysis with acids. Two forms of pentose have been found in the animal body, namely, i-arabinose, which has been isolated from the urine in cases of pentosuria, and l-xylose (or d-ribose, Levene), which occurs built up into the nucleic acid molecule of the pancreas and perhaps other organs. The pentoses can apparently be utilised by herbivora as food-stuffs. We know nothing as to the part they play in the animal body or as to the causation of the rare condition of pentosuria. Since however they are reducing substances and the presence of pentose in urine might therefore lead to a suspicion of diabetes, it is necessary to mention the tests by which the presence of pentoses may be detected. The two following are the chief tests for pentoses :

(1) The solution supposed to contain a pentose is mixed with an equal volume of concentrated hydrochloric acid. To the mixture is added a small quantity of solid orcin and the whole is heated. If pentose is present the solution becomes at first reddish-blue and later bluish-green. The colour can be extracted on shaking the fluid with amyl alcohol, the solution, on spectroscopic examination, showing an absorption band between C and D.

(2) Instead of adding orcin, we may add phloroglucin to the mixture of hydrochloric acid and pentose. The solution on heating becomes first cherry red and then cloudy. On shaking with amyl alcohol a red solution is obtained which shows a band between D and E.

THE HEXOSES AND THEIR DERIVATIVES

The most important of the carbohydrates belong to this class and are either hexoses or formed by a combination of two or more hexose molecules. They are divided into three main groups :

(1) *Monosaccharides*, with the formula $C_6H_{12}O_6$, examples of which are glucose, fructose, &c.

(2) *Disaccharides*, which are derived from two molecules of a monosaccharide with the elimination of a molecule of water, as follows :

$$2C_6H_{12}O_6 - H_2O = C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}.$$

(Examples, maltose and cane sugar.)

(3) *Polysaccharides*, composed of three or more molecules of a monosaccharide. The number of molecules which are associated in the compounds of this group may be very large. We can regard their general formation as represented by the following equation:

$$nC_6H_{12}O_6 - nH_2O = (C_6H_{10}O_5)_n.$$

(Examples, starch, dextrin, &c.)

THE MONOSACCHARIDES

Only four hexoses out of the large number which have been synthetised are assimilable by the animal body. These are mannose, glucose, galactose, and fructose, the three former being aldoses, while the last is a ketose. All of them are derivatives of d-glucose. They may be synthetised in several ways. The most interesting, because it probably represents the mechanism of synthesis of hexoses in plants, is the formation from formaldehyde. In alkaline solutions formaldehyde polymerises with the formation of a mixture of hexoses known as acrose. From this mixture α-acrose can be isolated by the formation of its osazone and the reconversion of this osazone into sugar. It is found to be identical with i-fructose. If a solution of this i-fructose be treated with yeast, d-fructose is fermented, leaving l-fructose behind. For the preparation of d-fructose it is necessary to convert the inactive sugar into the corresponding acid, mannonic acid. This with strychnine or morphia forms salts which can be separated into the d- and l- groups by fractional crystallisation. From the d- modification d-mannose can be obtained, and this by conversion into the osazone and reconversion into a sugar gives d-fructose.

All the monosaccharides, however many carbon atoms they contain, present certain general reactions determined by their chemical composition.

(*a*) Like ordinary aldehydes and ketones, the sugars act as strongly reducing substances, and, like aldehydes, reduce ammoniacal solution of silver to metallic silver, and many of the higher oxides of metals to lower oxides. On this behaviour is founded the commonest of all the tests for the presence of reducing sugar—Trommer's test.

(*b*) On oxidising a monosaccharide the COH group becomes converted to COOH. Thus glucose on oxidation gives gluconic acid:

$$COH(CHOH)_4CH_2OH + O = COOH(CHOH)_4CH_2OH.$$

On further oxidation the end group CH_2OH also is affected, and we obtain a dibasic acid. Thus glucose gives saccharic acid.

(*c*) By means of nascent hydrogen the monosaccharides can be reduced to the corresponding polyatomic alcohol. Thus the three hexoses, glucose, fructose, and galactose give the corresponding three-alcohols, sorbite, mannite, and dulcite $C_6H_{14}O_6$.

(*d*) Another important general reaction of the monosaccharides depending on the COH or the CO group is the reaction with phenyl hydrazine. On warming a solution of sugar with a solution of phenyl hydrazine in acetic acid, the following reactions take place. The first reaction results in the production of a hydrazone:

$$CH_2OH(CHOH)_3CHOHCHO + H_2N.NH.C_6H_5 =$$
$$CH_2OH(CHOH)_3CHOH.CH : N.NH.C_6H_5 + H_2O.$$

The hydrazone then reacts with another molecule of phenyl hydrazine with the production of an osazone:

$$CH_2(OH)(CHOH)_3CHOH.CH : N.NH.C_6H_5 + H_2N.NHC_6H_5 =$$
$$CH_2OH(CHOH)_3C.CHN.NH.C_6H_5$$
$$\|$$
$$N.NH.C_6H_5 + H_2O + H_2.$$

The hydrogen formed in this reaction acts upon a second molecule of phenyl hydrazine, splitting it into aniline and ammonia. On this account it is always necessary to have an excess of phenyl hydrazine in the operation.

The osazones form well-defined crystalline products which are generally yellowish in colour and differ in their melting-point and in their crystalline form. They are therefore of extreme value in the separation and identification of different carbohydrates. They can be also used for the artificial preparation of certain sugars. Under the influence of acetic acid and zinc dust they form osamines, which on treatment with nitrous acid are reconverted into the corresponding sugar, generally a ketose.

GLUCOSE, DEXTROSE or GRAPE SUGAR, is the chief constituent of the sugar of fruits, especially of grapes. It occurs in the body as the end-product of the digestion of starch. When pure it forms white crystals which melt at 100° C., and lose the one molecule of water of crystallisation at 110° C. It is easily soluble in water, and the solution shows bi-rotation. Its final specific rotatory power at 20° C. is 52·74.

TESTS FOR GLUCOSE. Trommer's test depends on the power possessed in common with the other sugars of reducing cupric hydrate to cuprous oxide. The sugar solution is made alkaline with caustic potash or soda, and a few drops of copper sulphate solution added. On heating the blue solution thus obtained to boiling, it turns yellow, and a yellowish-red precipitate of cuprous hydrate is produced. This test is generally performed with Fehling's solution, which consists of an alkaline solution of cupric hydrate in Rochelle salt. The proportions in making the solutions are so arranged that 10 c.c. of Fehling's solution are completely reduced by ·05 gramme glucose. This reaction is made use of for the quantitative determination of glucose in solution. The determination may be carried out either volumetrically, as in Fehling's or Pavy's method, or gravimetrically, as in Allihn's method.

Moore's Test. A solution of glucose treated with a little strong caustic potash or soda and warmed, becomes first yellow and then gradually dark brown, and gives off a smell of caramel.

With ordinary yeast, glucose solutions ferment readily, giving off CO_2, and form alcohol with small traces of amyl alcohol, glycerin, and succinic acid.

With phenyl hydrazine glucose gives well-marked needles of glucosazone. These are precipitated when the liquid is still hot, the precipitate being increased as the liquid cools. The crystals form bundles of fine yellow needles which are almost insoluble in water, but are soluble in boiling alcohol. When purified by recrystallisation they melt at 204–205° C.

On treating a watery solution of glucose with benzoyl chloride and caustic soda and shaking till the smell of benzoyl chloride has disappeared, an insoluble precipitate is produced of the benzoic ester of glucose. This method has been often used for isolating glucose from fluids in which it occurs in minute quantities.

Molisch's Test. On treating 0·5 c.c. of dilute glucose solution with one drop of a 10 per cent. alcoholic solution of α-naphthol, and then pouring 1 c.c. of concentrated sulphuric acid gradually down the side of the tube, a purple ring is produced at the junction of the two fluids, which on shaking spreads over the whole fluid. This reaction depends on the formation of furfurol from the glucose.

In order to identify glucose in a normal fluid, the following tests may be applied, after removing any protein which may be present:

(1) Reduction of cupric hydrate or Fehling's solution.

(2) Estimation of reducing power of solution.

(3) Estimation of rotatory power of solution on polarised light.

(4) Formation of osazone crystals with phenyl hydrazine. These crystals must come down while the fluid is still hot. They must be purified and their melting-point taken. A determination by combustion of their nitrogen content will give direct information whether the sugar is a monosaccharide or disaccharide.

(5) The solution is made acid and boiled for some time. It is then made up to its former volume and its reducing power and effect on polarised light once more taken. In the case of a disaccharide, which would be converted into monosaccharide by boiling in acid solution, these two readings would be altered, whereas neither the rotatory power nor the reducing power of glucose would undergo any change.

(6) Fermentation with ordinary yeast.

A positive result would exclude glycuronic acid.

D-FRUCTOSE, or **LÆVULOSE**, occurs mixed with dextrose in honey and in fruit sugar. It is also, with glucose, formed by the digestion or inversion of cane sugar. It is crystallisable with difficulty. Its watery solution is lævo-rotatory, and reduces Fehling's solution somewhat less strongly than glucose, its reducing power being 92, if we take that of glucose as 100. It ferments readily with yeast; with phenyl hydrazine it gives the same osazone as is formed from glucose.

GALACTOSE is formed by the digestion or hydrolysis of milk sugar or lactose. It is also obtained on hydrolysing cerebrin, a constituent of the brain, with dilute mineral acids, and by the hydrolysis of certain vegetable gums. It is much less soluble in water than glucose. It is dextro-rotatory and shows marked bi-rotation. With ordinary yeast it ferments but extremely slowly. One species of yeast is known, namely, *saccharomyces apiculatus* which, while fermenting d-fructose and glucose, has no effect on galactose. This yeast can therefore be used to isolate galactose from a mixture of the monosaccharides. It reduces Fehling's solution, its reducing power being somewhat less than that of glucose. Yeasts can be trained to ferment galactose.

MANNOSE. Mannose, though an assimilable sugar, is of such rare occurrence in our food-stuffs that it plays practically no part in animal physiology. It is dextro-rotatory, reduces Fehling's solution, ferments easily with ordinary yeast, and gives an osazone which is identical with that derived from glucose.

DERIVATIVES OF THE HEXOSES

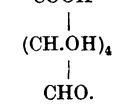
Two derivatives of glucose are of considerable physiological importance, namely, glucosamine and glycuronic acid.

Glucosamine, $C_6H_{13}NO_5$, has the structural formula:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_2OH \\ | \\ (CH.OH)_3 \\ | \\ CH.NH_2 \\ | \\ CHO \end{array}$$

It is obtained from chitin, which forms the exoskeleton of large numbers of the invertebrata, by boiling this with concentrated hydrochloric acid. It is stated to have been obtained as a decomposition product of certain proteins and their derivatives, such as the mucins. It is of special interest as affording an intermediate product between the carbohydrates and the oxy-amino acids which can be obtained by the disintegration of proteins. In solution it is dextro-rotatory, reduces Fehling's solution, and gives an osazone resembling that derived from glucose.

GLYCURONIC ACID. $C_6H_{10}O_7$, may be regarded as one of the first results of oxidation of the glucose molecule. The group which has undergone oxidation is not the readily oxidisable CHO group, but the CH_2OH group at the other end of the molecule. The formula of this acid is therefore:

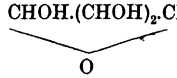


In the free state it does not occur in the animal body. It is constantly found in the urine after administration of certain drugs such as phenol, camphor, or chloral, and then occurs as a conjugated acid with these substances. These conjugated acids are lævo-rotatory, though the free acid is dextro-rotatory. In the free state it reduces Fehling's solution and gives an osazone which is not sufficiently characteristic to distinguish from glucosazone. It does not undergo fermentation with yeast. This test is therefore the best means of distinguishing the acid in urine from glucose.

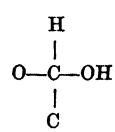
THE FORMATION OF GLUCOSIDES

The graphic formulæ given on p. 61 do not explain all the possible modes of arrangement of the groups of the sugar molecules. Many of these sugars, when dissolved in water, present the phenomenon known as multi-rotation. If their rotatory power be taken immediately after solution, it is found to be greater or less than the rotatory power taken some hours or days later. Glucose, for instance, immediately after solution, has a high specific rotatory power, which diminishes rapidly if the solution be boiled, and more slowly if it be allowed to stand. Finally, the specific rotatory power becomes constant at + 52·5° D. This change in rotatory power seems to be associated with a change in the arrangement of the groups, the aldose for example assuming, by the shifting of a mobile oxygen atom, what is known as a lactone arrangement.

Thus glucose $COH(CHOH)_2CHOH.CHOH.CH_2OH$ becomes

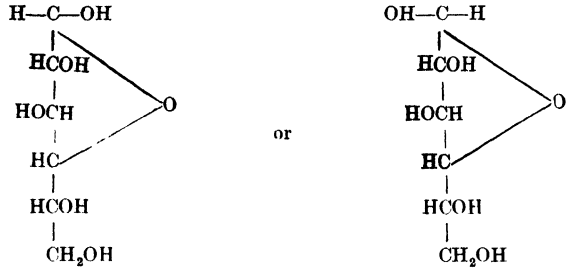


This change in the arrangement of the molecule renders a further stereoisomerism possible, owing to the fact that now the end group which was formerly COH becomes

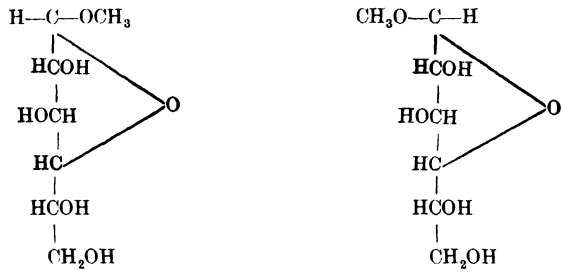


so that now there are five instead of four asymmetric carbon atoms. The two isomers

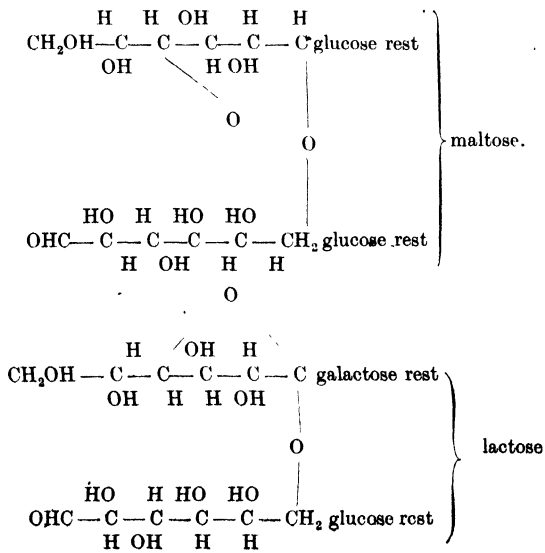
of glucose, which are thus rendered possible, are represented by the following structural formulæ:



In these molecules the OH attached to the end group can be replaced by other radicals, including other sugar molecules. In this way we get the formation of glucosides. Thus, if glucose be dissolved in methyl alcohol and be treated with hydrochloric acid, we obtain α and β methyl glucosides, the formulæ of which would be represented as follows:



Instead of methyl we might insert other groups, and even other hexose groups, such as glucose or galactose, obtaining the two sugars maltose and lactose, which may thus be regarded as glucosides—maltose as the α-glucoside of glucose, lactose as the β-galactoside of glucose. The mode of combination of the two hexose groups to form these disaccharides may be represented as follows:



A very large number of glucosides occur as plant products. Among these we may mention amygdalin, salicin, phloridzin, indican, &c.

THE DISACCHARIDES

The disaccharides are formed by the union of two molecules of monosaccharides with the elimination of one molecule of water, and can be regarded, according to the manner in which the molecules are combined, as glucosides, galactosides, &c. On hydrolysis, *e.g.* on heating with acids, they take up one molecule of water and are split up into the corresponding monosaccharides. Thus cane sugar gives equal parts of glucose and fructose, maltose gives equal parts of glucose and glucose, while milk sugar or lactose gives equal parts of glucose and galactose.

CANE SUGAR, sometimes known as saccharose, is widely distributed throughout the vegetable kingdom, and forms an important article of diet. It has no reducing power on Fehling's solution. It is strongly dextro-rotatory and has a specific rotatory power of + 66·5°. On hydrolysis it is converted into equal molecules of glucose and fructose. Owing to the fact that fructose rotates polarised light more strongly to the left than glucose does to the right, the mixture of the two monosaccharides so obtained is lævo-rotatory. On this account the change from free cane sugar to the mixture of monosaccharides is known as *inversion*, and the mixture is often spoken of as ' invert sugar.' The term ' inversion ' has since been loosely applied to the process of hydrolysis itself, so that we often speak of the inversion of maltose or of lactose, meaning thereby the hydrolysis of these sugars with the production of their constituent monosaccharides With yeast, cane sugar first undergoes inversion by a special ferment present in the yeast (*invertase*), and the mixture of fructose and glucose is then fermented.

MALTOSE is formed during the hydrolysis of starch by acids or by digestive ferments, and is also the chief sugar in germinating barley or malt. It is strongly dextro-rotatory, ferments easily with yeast, and reduces Fehling's solution; its reducing power is about 70 per cent. of that of glucose. With phenyl hydrazine it gives phenyl maltosazone, which forms definite yellow crystals with a melting-point of 206° C.

MILK SUGAR or **LACTOSE** is found only as a constituent of milk. It forms colourless rod-like crystals, which are much less soluble in water than are the two other disaccharides. On account of this solubility it is much less sweet than either cane sugar or maltose It is dextro-rotatory and shows bi-rotation. It is not fermented by ordinary yeast. Before fermentation can occur the lactose must be split by the agency of acids or by a ferment, lactase, which occurs in the animal body and in certain moulds, into the monosaccharides glucose and galactose. Lactose reduces Fehling's solution and gives with phenyl hydrazine lactosazone, which is easily soluble in hot water and therefore does not come down until the fluid is cold.

THE POLYSACCHARIDES

These play an important part throughout the whole vegetable kingdom, where all the supporting tissues of the plants, their protective substances,

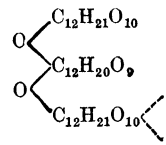
and many of their reserve materials consist of members of this group. In the animal body, where the supporting tissues are composed chiefly of derivatives of proteins, the sole significance of polysaccharides lies in their value as food-stuffs. In plants, anhydrides both of hexoses and pentoses occur in bewildering variety. Here however we may confine our attention to those members of the group of polysaccharides which are important as food-stuffs.

STARCH ($C_6H_{10}O_5$) is present in large quantities in nearly all vegetable foods, and is an important constituent of the cereals, from which flour and bread are derived, as well as of tubers, such as the potato. In the plant cells it occurs as concentrically striated grains within minute protoplasmic structures—the amyloplasts, the office of which it is to manufacture starch from the glucose present in the cell sap. When freed, by breaking up the cells and washing with water, it forms a white powder consisting of microscopic grains, each of which presents the characteristic concentric striation. It is insoluble in cold water. In hot water the grains swell up and burst, forming a thick paste, which sets to a jelly on cooling. This semi-solution, as well as the original starch-grains, gives an intense blue colour on the addition of iodine. On treating starch with cold alkalies or cold dilute acid, it is converted into a soluble modification, the so-called soluble starch or amylodextrin, which also gives a blue colour with iodine. This modification is also produced as the first stage of the action of diastatic ferments upon starch. On boiling with dilute acids, starch is converted first into a mixture of dextrins, then into maltose, and finally into glucose. On acting upon starch with various ferments, such as the diastase which may be extracted from malt or germinating barley, or with the amylase occurring in saliva or pancreatic juice, it undergoes hydrolysis, the final result of the action being a mixture of four parts of maltose to one part of dextrin. As to the intermediate stages in this reaction opinions are still divided. The first product is soluble starch, amylodextrin, giving a blue colour with iodine. This breaks up into a reducing sugar, and another dextrin, erythrodextrin, which gives a red colour with iodine; and this dextrin, on further hydrolysis, yields reducing sugar and achroodextrin, which is not coloured by the addition of iodine. Thus there are a series of successive hydrolytic decompositions of the molecule, each resulting in the splitting off of a molecule of sugar and the production of a lower dextrin.

The DEXTRINS are ill-defined bodies which are difficult to separate. They are amorphous white powders, easily soluble in water, forming solutions which, when concentrated, are thick and adhesive. They are insoluble in alcohol and ether. With cupric hydrate and caustic alkali they form blue solutions, which reduce slightly on boiling. They are not precipitated by saturation with ammonium sulphate. On boiling with dilute acids, they are converted entirely into glucose.

The changes undergone by starch during its hydrolysis by means of diastase have been used by Brown and his co-workers as a method of arriving at some idea of the size and structure of the starch molecule. Proceeding from the discovery that the end-products of this reaction consisted of 81 per cent. maltose and 19 per cent. dextrin,

they concluded that starch must consist of five dextrin-like groups, four of which are arranged symmetrically round the fifth. At each stage one of these groups is split off and hydrolysed to form malto-dextrin: $\left\{\begin{matrix} C_{12}H_{22}O_{11} \\ (C_{12}H_{20}O_{10})_2 \end{matrix}\right\}$ one molecule of water being taken up. The malto-dextrin group is then changed into maltose by the further assimilation of two molecules of water. The central dextrin-like group is attacked with great difficulty by the ferment, and therefore remains at the end of the reaction as achroodextrin. The malto-dextrin, the penultimate stage in the action of diastase, can be regarded as formed by the condensation of three molecules of maltose attached by the oxygen of two CHO groups, so that one CHO group remains free and determines the reducing power of the malto-dextrin molecule. Its formula may therefore be represented as follows:



the sign ⟨ being used to denote the open terminal CHO group.

They further found that the stable dextrin remaining at the end of the diastatic hydrolysis of starch probably had the formula of $40C_6H_{10}O_5H_2O$, and might be regarded as a condensation of forty glucose molecules with the elimination of thirty-nine molecules of water. The starch molecule cannot be less than five times that of the stable achroodextrin. Since the latter has a molecular weight of 6498, the molecular weight of starch cannot be less than 32,400, and its empirical formula can be represented by:

$$100C_{12}H_{20}O_{10}, \text{ or } (80C_{12}H_{20}O_{10}.40C_6H_{10}O_5).$$

INULIN. Another kind of starch, known as inulin, occurs in dahlia tubers. It is easily hydrolysed by weak acids, and is entirely converted into d-fructose, or lævulose.

GLYCOGEN, or animal starch, is found in the liver, muscles, and other tissues of the body, and occurs in large quantities in all fœtal tissues It is a white powder, soluble in water, forming an opalescent solution. It is precipitated from its solution on the addition of alcohol to 60 per cent., or by saturation with solid ammonium sulphate On boiling with acids, it is entirely converted into glucose. It is affected by the ferments diastase and amylase, in the same way as vegetable starch, giving first dextrins and finally a mixture of maltose and dextrin. With iodine it gives a mahogany-red colour which, like the blue colour produced in starch, is destroyed by boiling, to return again on cooling. We shall have occasion to consider its properties more fully when we are dealing with the functions of the liver.

THE CELLULOSES. Cellulose $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_x$ is a colourless, insoluble material, or mixture of materials, which forms the cell walls of the younger parts of plants, and is therefore a constituent of most of our vegetable foods. It is insoluble in water or dilute acids or alkalies, its only solvent being an ammoniacal cupric oxide solution. On boiling with strong acids, it gradually undergoes hydrolysis and yields sugar, the nature of which varies according to the source of the cellulose. In herbivorous animals cellulose undergoes digestive changes and forms an important constituent of their

food. The solution of the cellulose in this case is effected by the agency, not of ferments secreted by the wall of the gut, but of micro-organisms which swarm in the paunch of ruminants and in the cæcum of other herbivora. In some cases the effective agent is a cytase present in the vegetable cells themselves. Since this ferment is destroyed by boiling, cooked hay is much less digestible than hay in the raw condition. In certain invertebrata it seems probable that a true cellulose-digesting ferment, or cytase, is secreted by the walls of the alimentary canal. In man cellulose undergoes practically no change in digestion, and serves merely by its bulk to promote peristalsis and the normal evacuation of the bowels. A further consideration of its chemical properties, as well as of the closely allied vegetable materials, gums, pectins, mucilages, derived for the most part from the condensation of pentose molecules, may be dispensed with here.

SECTION V

THE PROTEINS

As sources of energy to the organism all three classes of food-stuffs are valuable in proportion to their heat equivalents, and it is often a matter of indifference whether the main bulk of the energy required is supplied at the expense of fat or at the expense of carbohydrate. The proteins however form the most important constituent of living protoplasm. On this account protein must always be present in the food to supply the material necessary for building up new protoplasm in the growing animal and for replacing the waste of living material which is taking place in the discharge of its normal functions. Regarding the complexity of reaction presented by living protoplasm as determined in the first instance by the chemical and physical complexity of this material itself, we should expect to find that the proteins forming its main constituents would themselves partake of some of this quality. The carbohydrates and fats, although in many cases made up of huge molecules, are nevertheless built up on a very simple type. Starch, for instance, with a molecular weight of over 30,000, is formed simply by the polymerisation of glucose molecules. The ordinary fats, stearin and palmitin, consist of fatty acids with long straight chains of CH_2 groups combined with the glyceryl radical. Their molecular weight is very large, but their molecules are simple in structure. When however we break up a protein molecule we meet with a great number of subsidiary groups, the presence of which is essential to the making of a nutritive protein.

Owing to this complexity of structure it is not easy to give a simple definition in chemical terms of what we mean by the term 'protein.' It is necessary rather to describe certain of the qualities presented by this group, the possession of which we regard as essential to the conception of a protein.

Elementary Composition. All proteins contain oxygen, hydrogen, nitrogen, carbon, and sulphur. The proportion of these elements in the various proteins may be represented as follows:

C	50·6–54·5	per cent.
H	6·5– 7·3	,, ,,
N	15·0–17·6	,, ,,
S	0·3– 2·2	,, ,,
O	21·5–23·5	,, ,,

Nearly all the proteins contain a small trace of phosphorus varying from 0·4 to 0·8 per cent. It is doubtful however how far this phosphorus forms an integral part of the protein molecule.

Physical Characters. The proteins are amorphous indiffusible substances belonging to the class of bodies known as colloids. Most of them are soluble either in water, weak salt solutions, or in dilute acids or alkalies. They are inert bodies and tasteless. Although they form compounds with various metallic salts, acids, or alkalies, these compounds are but ill defined, and the relative proportions of the ingredients vary according to the conditions under which the compound was formed. As is the case with most colloids when in solution or pseudo-solution, they can be brought into an insoluble form by various simple agencies, such as shaking, change of temperature, alteration of reaction, or addition of neutral salts. Coagulation by heat forms a distinguishing feature of a number of members of this class, which are therefore spoken of as 'coagulable proteins.' For instance, white of egg is a solution of different proteins. On diluting it with weak salt solution no precipitation takes place. If however the solution be heated to about 80° C. a precipitate of coagulated protein is formed. If a strong solution be boiled the whole fluid sets to a solid white mass (hydrogel). This change is irreversible, *i.e.* it is not possible by lowering the temperature to bring the white of egg again into solution, and many properties of the protein have been changed in the act of coagulation. With certain proteins and their allies the coagulation on change of temperature is a reversible process. Thus an alkaline solution of caseinogen, the chief protein of milk, if treated with a little calcium chloride and heated, undergoes coagulation and sets into a jelly, but on cooling the mixture the coagulum once more enters into solution. Ordinary gelatin, which is closely allied to the proteins, with water forms a solid jelly below 20° C., and a fluid solution above this temperature.

If a protein be heated in a current of air or oxygen it undergoes combustion. In all cases a certain amount of incombustible material is left, consisting of inorganic salts which were closely attached to the protein molecule. If a solution of protein be subjected to long-continued dialysis, the proportion of ash may be diminished very largely, but in no case has any experimenter succeeded in obtaining a preparation of protein absolutely ash-free. On this account it has been thought that the salts of the ash must be in chemical combination with the protein; but having regard to the physical character of colloidal solutions, which we shall study in the next chapter, and the power of adsorption of substances possessed by such solutions, there is no need to regard these salts as essential constituents of the protein.

Crystallisation of Proteins. Although the indiffusibility of protein solutions differentiates them from the crystalloid substances such as sugar or sodium chloride, under certain conditions it is possible to obtain crystals consisting, largely at any rate, of proteins. Thus in the seeds of certain plants, *e.g.* hemp seeds, Brazil nut, pumpkin and castor-oil seeds, the so-called aleurone crystals may be seen under the microscope enclosed in the protoplasm of the cells. These crystals consist of proteins belonging to the class of globulins. By chemical means they can be separated from the surrounding tissues and, after washing, dissolved in a solution of magnesia. Drechsel showed that on dialysing such a solution against alcohol, the fluid undergoes gradual concentration, and crystalline granules of the magnesia compound of the protein separate out. These

crystals contain 1·4 p.c. MgO. A better method of obtaining such crystals has been devised by Osborne. The ground seeds are extracted with 10 per cent. sodium chloride solution, and filtered. The filtrate is diluted with water heated to 50° or 60° C. until a slight turbidity forms. After warming the diluted solution until this turbidity disappears, and then allowing it to cool slowly, the protein separates in well-developed crystals. It is possible also to obtain crystals of animal proteins. Hæmoglobin, the oxygen-carrying protein of the red blood corpuscles, can be made to crystallise with extreme ease. With some animals, such as the rat, it is only necessary to bring the hæmoglobin into solution, by the addition of a little distilled water and ether to the blood, to cause the crystallisation of the liberated hæmoglobin.

Egg albumin and serum albumin may also be crystallised with ease by a method devised by Hofmeister and improved by Hopkins. If, for instance, we wish to crystallise egg albumin, white of eggs is treated with an equal bulk of saturated solution of ammonium sulphate in order to precipitate the globulin. It is then filtered, and the filtrate is treated with saturated ammonium solution until a slight permanent precipitate is produced. This precipitate is then just redissolved by the cautious addition of water, and dilute acetic acid (10 per cent.) is added drop by drop until a slight precipitate is produced. The flask is now corked and allowed to stand for twenty-four hours, when the precipitate, which will have increased in quantity, will be found to consist entirely of acicular crystals. A similar method may be used for serum albumin. In each case the crystals contain a considerable proportion of ammonium sulphate. This may be replaced by sodium chloride by washing the crystals with a saturated solution of this salt. By absolute alcohol the crystals may be coagulated and may be then washed practically free from salt, but it is not possible to obtain crystals of coagulable protein free from the presence of some salt.

Although by repeated crystallisation of egg albumin a product may be obtained which is absolutely constant in both its physical and chemical characters, we cannot ascribe to crystallisation the same importance in securing purity and homogeneity of the substance that we can when we are dealing with inorganic salts. This is due to the fact that these crystals take up other colloids with great ease. When hæmoglobin, for instance, is crystallised from blood, the first crop of crystals, although thoroughly washed from their mother liquor, always contain a considerable proportion of serum albumin. Indeed, the presence of colloidal material seems to render the production of the so-called mixed crystals much more easy. Thus Schultz has shown that in urine mixed inorganic crystals can be obtained. Human urine is allowed to stand twenty-four to forty-eight hours with dicalcium phosphate and then filtered. On allowing the filtrate to evaporate slowly, a crystalline precipitate is produced consisting of whetstone-shaped crystals which are doubly refracting. On treating these crystals with dilute acetic acid this acid extracts calcium phosphate from the crystals. The original shape of the crystals is however retained. The only difference under the microscope consists in the fact that they have now lost their doubly refracting power on polarised light. They consisted of a mixture of calcium sulphate and calcium phosphate from which, on treatment with acid, only the calcium phosphate was dissolved out.

The Molecular Weight of Proteins. We may arrive at an approximate idea of the minimum size of the protein molecule in various ways, though in all cases our calculations are apt to be vitiated by the difficulty of obtaining a preparation which is homogeneous, *i.e.* chemically pure, and by the ease with which molecules of the size which we must assume for proteins form adsorption combinations in varying proportions with other substances. If we assume that each molecule of the respective protein contains only one atom of sulphur, we can calculate its molecular weight. It is evident that the protein which contains 1 per cent. of sulphur will have a molecular weight

of 3200. In this way the following molecular weights have been arrived at (Abderhalden):

	Sulphur per cent.	Molecular weight.
Edestin	0·87	3680
Oxyhæmoglobin (horse)	0·43	7440
Serum albumin (horse)	1·89	1700
Egg albumin	1·30	2460
Globulin	1·38	2320

The greater part at any rate of the sulphur in the protein molecule occurs as a constituent of a substance, cystine, each molecule of which contains two atoms of sulphur. Each molecule of protein must also contain two atoms of sulphur, and we must regard double the molecular weight given in this Table as the minimum molecular weights of these various proteins. Some idea of the molecular complexity represented by these weights may be gained by writing out the empirical formulæ of the various proteins, *e g.*,

Egg albumin	$C_{204}H_{322}N_{52}O_{66}S_2$
Protein in hæmoglobin (from horse)	$C_{680}H_{1098}N_{210}O_{241}S_2$
Protein in hæmoglobin (from dog)	$C_{725}H_{1171}N_{194}O_{214}S_2$
Crystallised globulin (from pumpkin seeds)	$C_{292}H_{481}N_{20}O_{83}S_2$

With some proteins we may make use of other elements to arrive at an idea of the approximate molecular weight. Thus oxyhæmoglobin contains between 0·4 and 0·5 per cent. iron. If we assume that each molecule of oxyhæmoglobin contains one atom of iron, its molecular weight must be from 11,200 to 14,000.

Attempts have been made to solve the same question by studying the compounds of proteins with inorganic salts or oxides. Thus, the crystals of globulin from pumpkin seeds prepared with magnesia contain 1·4 per cent. MgO. Assuming that one molecule of protein has combined with one molecule MgO, the molecular weight of the protein must be about 2800.

(If x be the molecular weight

$$\frac{x}{40} = \frac{100 - 1{\cdot}4}{1{\cdot}4}$$

$$\therefore x = 2817)$$

Harnack has shown that many proteins are precipitated from their solutions as copper compounds by the addition of copper sulphate. Harnack found that this precipitate of copper contained either 1·34 — 1·37 Cu. or 2·48 — 2·73 per cent. Cu. The smaller percentage would correspond to a molecular weight of 4700, while the second number might be accounted for on the hypothesis that each molecule of protein was combined with two atoms of copper. Similar attempts have been made by determining the amount of acid or alkali necessary to keep certain types of protein in solution. We shall see later on however that the amounts vary largely with the physical condition and previous history of the colloidal substance. We are dealing here not with compounds in the strict chemical sense of the term, but with adsorption compounds, where the quantities taken up are determined not only by the chemical nature of the protein itself, but by the state of aggregation of its molecules. It is therefore impossible to lay any great stress on the determinations of the molecular weight which have been effected in this way.

Some clue to the size of the protein molecule is afforded by determinations of the osmotic pressure or molecular concentration of their solutions by physical methods. When we determine the freezing-point or boiling-point of protein solutions, the depression of freezing-point, or elevation of boiling-point is so small that it falls within the limit of experimental error or is no greater than can be accounted for by the inorganic salts present in the solution. Since however colloidal membranes, such as films of gelatin or vegetable parchment, are impervious to proteins, we can directly determine the osmotic pressure of their solutions. In many cases no osmotic pressure whatever is found. In other cases, *e g.* egg albumin or serum, the colloidal constituents of these solutions are found to give an osmotic pressure of such a height that 1 per cent. protein corresponds to about 4 mm. Hg. pressure. Such an osmotic pressure would indicate a molecular weight for the serum proteins of about 30,000. A determination of the osmotic pressure of hæmoglobin by Hüfner gave a molecular weight about 16,000. These results however must be received with caution, since we are not justified in applying to these gigantic molecules data derived from a study of smaller molecules such as salt or sugar. Even if we accept these determinations of osmotic pressure as indicating the molecular weights I have just quoted, it is evident that a very slight degree of aggregation of the molecules into larger complexes will bring the osmotic pressure below the point at which it is measurable, and would transform the solution into a suspension of particles in which one could not expect to find any osmotic pressure whatsoever.

THE STRUCTURE OF THE PROTEIN MOLECULE.

We can arrive at some idea of the manner in which the protein molecule is built up only by breaking it down bit by bit, employing methods which, while resolving the large molecule into its proximate constituents, will not act too forcibly in changing the whole arrangements of these constituents. The relation of the starches or polysaccharides to the sugars was found by studying the hydrolysis of the former, and it is by the hydrolysis of the proteins that we have arrived at most of our present knowledge of their constitution. Contributory evidence may also be gained by the use of oxidising agents or by employing the refined methods of analysis possessed by certain living organisms—bacteria, by which means we can effect limited oxidations or reductions or can replace an NH_2 group by H, or a COOH group by H.

ACID HYDROLYSIS OF PROTEINS. For this purpose rather stronger acids are used than for the hydrolysis of starch. The protein is heated for twenty-four hours in a flask fitted with a reflux condenser either with concentrated hydrochloric acid or with a 25 per cent. sulphuric acid. Hydrochloric acid was first made use of by Hlasiwetz and Habermann, who added a certain amount of stannous chloride to the mixture in order to prevent any oxidation taking place. We obtain in this way an acid fluid containing an extremely complex mixture of various substances, all of which belong to the

class of amino-acids, and must be regarded as the proximate constituents of the protein molecule.

A similar hydrolytic change may be effected by the use of digestive ferments obtained either from the alimentary canal of higher vertebrates or from certain plants. Thus we may use pepsin, the active constituent of the gastric juice, trypsin, the proteolytic ferment secreted by the pancreas, papain, or other vegetable ferments obtained from papaya, from pineapple juice, and so on. These ferments are all milder in their action than the strong acids. Pepsin for instance effects only a partial decomposition of the protein molecule. Its action results in the formation of substances which still present all the protein reactions and are classified as hydrated proteins or as proteoses and peptones. Trypsin carries the protein a stage further and gives a mixture of amino-acids. Certain groups however of the protein molecule present a considerable resistance to the action of trypsin, so that when its action is complete these groups are still found not yet broken down into their constituent amino-acids.

The putrefactive processes determined by the process of bacteria in solutions of proteins are somewhat too complicated in their results to throw much illumination on the structure of the protein molecule itself. This method is however of extreme value when it is applied to isolated constituents of the proteins. Under the action of these bacteria we may have a process of deamination which may be accompanied by simple hydrolysis or by reduction. In the former case an amino-acid may be converted into an oxyacid, in the latter case into a fatty acid.

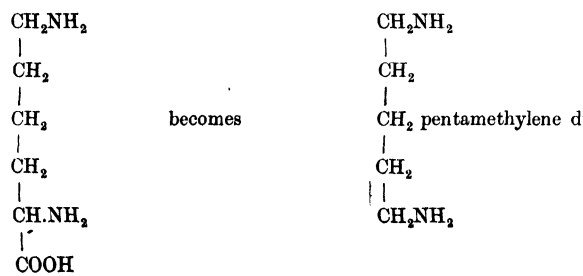
Thus tyrosine under the action of bacteria of putrefaction may split up into ammonia and oxyphenyl propionic acid.

$$OH.C_6H_4.CH_2.CHNH_2.COOH + H = HO.C_6H_4.CH_2.CH_2.COOH + NH_3$$

Under the action of yeasts an amine may become an alcohol.

$$\underset{\text{(amylamine)}}{C_5H_{11}.NH_2} + H_2O = \underset{\text{(amylalcohol)}}{C_5H_{11}.OH} + NH_3$$

On the other hand, the effect of the bacteria may be to split off carbon dioxide from the amino-acids. Thus, the diamino-acid, lysine,



Tyrosine becomes p. oxyphenylethylamine, a substance having marked

physiological effects, and an important constituent of ergot. Phenylalanine $C_6H_5.CH_2.CH.NH_2.COOH$, becomes phenylethylamine $C_6H_5.CH_2.CH_2.NH_2$. These reactions are therefore of value in determining the exact grouping of the atoms in the more complex of the proximate constituents of the proteins.

Since all the known disintegration products of the proteins belong to the class of amino-acids, it may be of value to point out some of the distinguishing features of this class of bodies.

PROPERTIES OF AMINO-ACIDS. An amino-acid is derived from an organic acid by the replacing of one atom of hydrogen by the amino group NH_2. Thus from the acids,

acetic acid

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}$$

propionic acid

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CH_2 \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}$$

we may obtain the mono-amino-acids,

amino-acetic acid

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_2NH_2 \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}$$

alanine or α-amino-propionic acid

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CH.NH_2 \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}$$

It will be noticed that in the fatty acids with more than two atoms of carbon the position of the NH_2 group may be varied. Thus, instead of alanine we may have another amino-propionic acid, namely:

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_2NH_2 \\ | \\ CH_2 \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}$$

This acid would be spoken of as β-amino-propionic acid, alanine being α-amino-propionic acid. This nomenclature is always used to distinguish the position of the NH_2 group, so that we may have mono-amino-acids α, β, γ, δ, ε . . . and so on. Practically all the amino-acids which occur as constituents of the protoplasmic molecule belong to the α group.

On inspection of the formula of glycine it is evident that only one isomer of this body is possible. In alanine, however, the carbon atom to which NH_2 is attached, is asymmetric, since its four combining affinities are each attached to different groups. Thus:

$$\begin{array}{l} \quad C \\ \quad | \\ H—C—NH_2 \\ \quad | \\ \quad C \end{array}$$

In this case, therefore, there is a possibility of stereoisomerism, and alanine must have an influence on polarised light. If the compound

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ HCNH_2 \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}$$

is dextro-rotatory, then its stereoisomer

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ H_2NCH \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}$$

will be lævo-rotatory, and it will be possible to obtain a racemic modification without any influence on polarised light by mixing equal molecules of these two isomeric forms. All the amino-acids derived from proteins are optically active, whereas those obtained by synthesis are inactive, and special means have to be devised in order to obtain from the artificially formed racemic amino-acid either the *d*- or *l*-amino-acid.

If more than one hydrogen atom in an organic acid be replaced by NH_2 we obtain diamino- and triamino-acids. Thus ornithine, obtained by the splitting up of arginine, one of the commonest disintegration products of protein, is α-δ-diamino-valerianic acid.

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_2NH_2 \\ | \\ CH_2 \\ | \\ CH_2 \\ | \\ CH\ NH_2 \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}$$

The presence in the amino-acids of the basic radical NH_2 and of the acid group COOH lends to these bodies a double character. In themselves devoid of strong chemical qualities, possessing neither acid nor alkaline reaction, they are able in the presence of strong acids or bases to act either as base or acid. When in solution by themselves it is possible that there is an actual closing of the ring by a soluble union between the NH_2 group and the COOH group, so that *e.g.* the formula of glycine may be:

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_2—NH_3 \\ |\quad\quad| \\ CO — O \end{array}$$

When such a neutral compound is treated with acid this bond is loosed and we have the salt of the amino-acid. Thus, with hydrochloric acid, glycine forms glycine hydrochlorate:

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_2NH_2HCl \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}$$

a salt which still possesses an acid group and which is therefore capable of combining with ethyl to form the hydrochlorate of the ester of the amino-acid. Thus:

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_2.NH_2HCl \\ | \\ COOC_2H_5 \end{array}$$

With bases the amino-acids form salt-like compounds such as potassium amino- acetate :

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_2NH_2 \\ | \\ COOK \end{array}$$

Amino-acids also combine with one another. This power of combination much increases the difficulty of separating the constituents from a mixture of amino-acids. Amino-acids, which singly are extremely insoluble, are readily soluble when in the presence of other amino-acids.

On account of the dual nature of the amino-acid molecule, these substances act as feeble conductors of the electric current, *i.e.* as electrolytes. The charge carried by an amino-acid and its ionisation depends upon the conditions in which it is placed. Since it may act either as the cation or the anion, it is spoken of as an *amphoteric* electrolyte.

One reaction of the amino-acids is of special interest in connection with the respiratory functions of the body, namely, the formation of carbamino-acids. If a stream of carbon dioxide be passed into a mixture of an amino-acid, *e.g.* glycine, with lime, the carbon dioxide is taken up. On filtering the mixture a clear liquid passes through which gradually in course of time deposits a precipitate of calcium carbonate. The filtrate first obtained contains a compound of calcium, calcium glycine carbonate. The formula is as follows :

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_2NH \\ | \quad \diagdown \\ | \quad\quad O.CO \\ | \quad \diagup \\ COO\ Ca \end{array}$$

METHODS OF SEPARATING AMINO-ACIDS. By the hydrolysis of protein by means of acid or of trypsin, we obtain a complex mixture of amino-acids. From this mixture certain amino-acids are separated with ease. Thus tyrosine, which is extremely insoluble, crystallises out on concentrating the fluid, and further concentration leads to the separation of leucine. The other acids, which keep each other mutually in solution, are however very difficult to-isolate. We owe to Fischer the first general method for their separation. We may take one experiment as an example.

Five hundred grammes of casein are heated for some hours under a reflux condenser with 1½ litres of strong hydrochloric acid. The liquid is then saturated with gaseous hydrochloric acid and allowed to stand for three days in the ice-chest. Crystals of hydrochlorate of glutamic acid separate out. The filtrate from these crystals is evaporated at 40° C. under diminished pressure to a syrupy consistence, and is then dissolved in 1½ litres of absolute alcohol. Hydrochloric acid is then passed into the solution to complete saturation, the mixture being warmed for a short time on the water bath, and the mixture is once more evaporated to a syrupy consistence By this treatment all the amino-acids have been converted into the hydrochlorates of their esters, *e.g.* :

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_2NH_2HCl \\ | \\ COOC_2H_5 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{l} C_2H_4NH_2HCl \\ | \\ COOC_2H_5 \quad \&c. \end{array}$$

From the hydrochlorates the esters are set free by the addition of potassium carbonate, the mixture being cooled in a freezing mixture. By this means the esters of aspartic and glutamic acids are separated and are extracted by shaking with ether The remaining esters are then liberated by the addition of 33 per cent. caustic soda together with potassium carbonate, and are again extracted by ether. The combined ethereal solutions are dried by standing over fused sulphate of soda and then evaporated, when a residue containing the free esters is obtained. These esters are then separated by fractional distillation under a very low pressure obtained by means of the Fleuss pump, the second receiver of the apparatus being cooled in liquid air. The various fractions of aminoesters obtained in this way are hydrolysed—the lower fractions by

boiling for some hours with water, the higher fractions by boiling with baryta. The acids obtained by the hydrolysis can then be further purified by means of fractional crystallisation.

THE DISINTEGRATION PRODUCTS OF THE PROTEINS.

By the methods just described the following substances have been isolated from proteins:

A. FATTY SERIES

(1) *Mono-amino-acids* (*Monobasic*)

GLYCINE or **GLYCOCOLL** This, the simplest member of the group, is amino-acetic acid:

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_2NH_2 \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}$$

It occurs in considerable quantities among the disintegration products of gelatin and to a slight extent among those derived from certain of the proteins. Like the other α-amino-acids, it has a sweetish taste, whence its name was derived ($\gamma\lambda\upsilon\kappa o\sigma$ = sweet, $\kappa o\lambda\lambda\eta$ = glue).

ALANINE is α-amino-propionic acid:

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CH.NH_2 \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}$$

It is optically active, the alanine derived from proteins being dextro-rotatory.

Closely allied to alanine is the amino-acid **SERINE**, which was first obtained by the hydrolysis of silk and has since been found as a constituent of a large number of proteins. Its formula is:

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_2OH \\ | \\ CH.NH_2 \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}$$

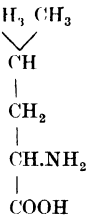
i.e. it is amino-oxypropionic acid. Its special interest lies in the fact that it was one of the first of the amino-oxyacids to be isolated, and it is possible in these acids that we must seek the intermediate stages between carbohydrates and proteins.

AMINO-VALERIANIC ACID has the formula

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_3\ CH_3 \\ \diagdown\ \diagup \\ CH \\ | \\ CH.NH_2 \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}$$

It occurs only in small quantities in the protein molecule.

LEUCINE, one of the oldest known members of the group of amino-acids, is obtained in large quantities from the disintegration of nearly all the animal proteins, of which in some cases it may form as much as 20 per cent. It has the formula



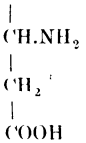
i.e. it is amino-isobutyl acetic acid On evaporating a tryptic digest of protein, impure leucine crystallises out in the form of imperfect crystals, the so-called ' leucine cones.'

Lately another isomer of leucine has been discovered, namely, α-amino-methyl ethyl propionic acid. This is called isoleucine.

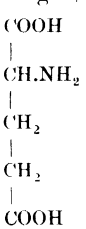
(2) *Mono-amino Derivatives of Dibasic Acids*

Of these two are known, namely, aspartic and glutamic acids.

ASPARTIC ACID is α-amino-succinic acid .

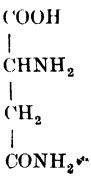


and glutamic acid is the next homologue, namely, α-amino-glutaric acid :



Owing to the possession of two carboxyl groups these amino-acids have a much more pronounced acid character than is the case with the other members of the group which we have been studying

Aspartic acid was first found in the shoots of asparagus in the form of the amide, asparagine :



This substance is very widely distributed throughout the vegetable kingdom and is present in seedlings in very large quantities, as much as 25 per cent. of the dried weight. In plants it apparently serves either as a reserve material or as the form in which the greater part of the nitrogen is conveyed from the reserve organs to be built up into the protoplasm of the growing parts of the plant.

(3) *Diamino-acids*

Of these two are known, namely, lysine and ornithine. Owing to the presence of two NH_2 groups in their molecule, they possess marked basic characters, and are precipitated from the acid solution obtained by the hydrolysis of proteins on adding phosphotungstic acid. Since lysine, arginine, and histidine (another amino-acid which will be described later) all contain six carbon atoms in their molecule, these three bodies were classed together by Kossel as the ' hexone ' bases. Apart however from their high content in nitrogen, the chemical resemblance between these bodies is no closer than between them and the other members of the amino-acid series.

Another body isolated by Fischer in small quantities is supposed to belong to this class and to have the composition diamino-trioxydodecoic acid.

LYSINE $C_6H_{14}N_2O_2$ is α-ε-diamino-caproic acid having the formula

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_2NH_2 \\ | \\ (CH_2)_3 \\ | \\ CH.NH_2 \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}$$

ARGININE, which was first discovered in plants (the cotyledons of lupins), is not a simple amino-acid, but a compound of an amino-acid with guanidin. If boiled with baryta water it splits up into urea and a substance reacting as a base which was called ornithine.*

ORNITHINE, diamino-valerianic acid, has the formula

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_2NH_2 \\ | \\ (CH_2)_2 \\ | \\ CH.NH_2 \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}$$

The constitution of arginine is analogous to that of creatine, one of the most abundant nitrogenous extractives of muscle, which has the formula

$$\begin{array}{l} HN = C \ -N(CH_3)CH_2COOH \\ \quad\ | \\ \quad H_2N \end{array}$$

It is methyl guanidine acetic acid. On boiling creatine with baryta water it takes up a molecule of water and splits in the situation of the dotted line in the formula, giving

* Ornithine had been previously discovered in the urine of fowls after the administration of benzoic acid, in the form of an acid known as ornithuric acid.

H_2N
$\diagdown$
CO (urea) and $NH(CH_3)CH_2COOH$ (methyl glycine).
$\diagup$
H_2N

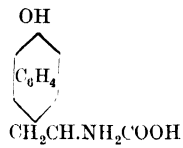
This latter substance is known as sarcosine and is derived from glycine by the replacement of one atom of hydrogen by a methyl group CH_3.

Arginine has a similar formula On the left-hand side of the dotted line the formula would be identical with that of creatine. On the right-hand side the sarcosine group is replaced by a diamino-acid of the fatty series, diamino-valerianic acid or ornithine.

DIAMINO-TRIOXYDODECOIC acid is, as its name implies, a derivative of a twelve carbon acid. Its constitutional formula has not yet been made out.

B. AMINO-ACIDS CONTAINING AN AROMATIC NUCLEUS

The best known of these is TYROSINE, which has the formula



It is paraoxyphenyl α-alanine. It is one of the first of the amino-acids to be split off from the protein molecule under the influence of hydrolytic agents. Owing to its insolubility it rapidly separates out as bundles of fine needle-shaped crystals at the sides and bottom of the vessel.

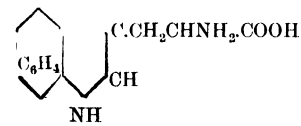
FIG. 18. Tyrosine crystals. (PLIMMER)

When tyrosine is treated with an acid solution of mercuric nitrate containing a little nitrous acid, a precipitate is produced, and on boiling, the precipitate and the supernatant fluid assume a deep red colour This reaction is given by all benzene derivatives in which one atom of hydrogen in the ring is replaced by one OH group This is known as Hoffmann's test, but is identical with Millon's reaction, which is given by all proteins containing tyrosine in their molecules.

Closely allied to the foregoing compound is another aromatic amino-acid namely, PHENYL α-ALANINE ;

It is an almost constant constituent of proteins.

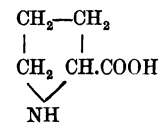
TRYPTOPHANE was known long before it had been isolated, owing to the fact that with bromine water it gives a rose-red colour. It had long been observed that this substance was to be obtained at a certain stage in the digestion of proteins by pancreatic juice, but nothing was known about its constitution until Hopkins succeeded in isolating it by precipitation with mercuric sulphate dissolved in 5 per cent. sulphuric acid. Cystine is also precipitated by this reagent, but comes down with a less concentration of the salt than tryptophane, so that it is possible to separate the two substances by a species of fractional precipitation. Tryptophane can be isolated by decomposing the mercury salt with sulphuretted hydrogen, and is obtained in a crystallised form. On distillation it gives an abundant yield of indol and skatol, bodies also obtained during the putrefaction of proteins. Tryptophane itself is indol amino-propionic acid :



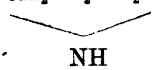
C. AMINO-ACIDS OF HETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDS

Three of the disintegration products of proteins can be grouped in this class. Two of them contain the *pyrrol* ring, namely, proline and oxyproline.

PROLINE, which was first isolated by Fischer, is α-pyrrolidin carboxylic acid and has the formula

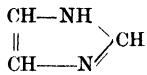


OXYPROLINE is the oxy-derivative of this body and has the formula $C_5H_9NO_3$, the exact position of the oxy-group having not yet been determined. Doubts have been expressed whether the pyrrol group is present as such in the protein molecule, or whether proline, for example, is not formed by the closing of an open chain of a compound belonging to the amino-acids in the fatty series. Thus from an oxy-amino-valerianic acid $CH_2OH.CH_2.CH_2.CH.NH_2.COOH$ we can by dehydration make the compound $CH_2CH_2.CH_2.CH.COOH$, the formula of which will be seen to be

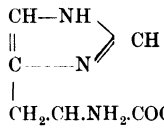


identical with that given for proline.

The third member of this group contains the *imnazol* ring ;



and is known as **HISTIDINE.** Its structural formula is as follows :

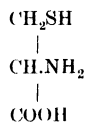


i.e. it is iminazol α-amino-propionic acid or iminazol alanine. Since it occurs in the phosphotungstic precipitate from the products of acid disintegration of proteins and contains six carbon atoms, it was formerly classified with lysine and arginine as a hexone base.

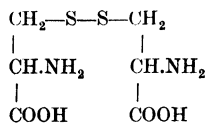
D. SULPHUR-CONTAINING AMINO-ACIDS

Sulphur forms an integral part of the molecule of all classes of proteins except protamines. In some substances allied to proteins, such as keratin, it may occur to the extent of 3 per cent. On boiling proteins with caustic potash or soda, a portion of the sulphur is split off to form a sulphide, which gives a black precipitate on addition of copper salts. On this account it was formerly thought that the sulphur must be present in two forms, the oxidised and the unoxidised, in the protein molecule. Recent investigation has shown however that practically the whole of the sulphur is present in the form of **CYSTINE**, and that this body on boiling with alkaline solutions gives up only a little more than half its content in sulphur.

This substance, which has been known for many years as the chief constituent of a rare form of urinary calculus and as occurring in the urine in certain cases of disordered metabolism, is again a derivative of the three-carbon propionic acid On reduction it gives a body known as cysteine, which is α-amino-thiopropionic acid.



Cystine itself is compounded of two cysteine molecules joined together by their sulphur atoms and has the formula



E. OTHER CONSTITUENTS OF THE PROTEIN MOLECULE

When we add together the total amino-acids obtainable by the acid disintegration of any given protein, a considerable proportion of the original protein remains unaccounted for. This remainder must have a greater content in hydrogen and oxygen than the amino-acids enumerated above,

and it has been suggested that among the missing unascertained constituents of proteins may be oxyamino-acids, of which serine would form one of the lowest members. The isolation of such substances would present considerable interest, in that it would supply the intermediate stages between the constituent groups of the protein molecule and the carbohydrates, the first product of assimilation by living organisms. Only one such intermediate body has so far been isolated, namely, glucosamine, an amino-derivative of glucose. It was first shown by Pavy that from the products of disintegration of a protein such as egg-white it was possible to obtain a reducing substance and to isolate an osazone resembling in its characters those derived from the sugars. Since then various observers have shown that this reducing substance is most probably glucosamine :

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_2OH \\ | \\ (CHOH)_3 \\ | \\ CH.NH_2 \\ | \\ CHO \end{array}$$

Although this substance may be obtained from crystallised egg albumin or crystallised serum albumin, authorities are not yet convinced that it forms an integral part of these proteins. Both egg-white and serum contain proteins belonging to the class of mucins, ovomucoid and serum mucoid, each of which yields on acid hydrolysis from 16 to 30 per cent. glucosamine. Since various observers have obtained results varying from 1 to 16 per cent. glucosamine for crystallised egg albumin, it seems possible that in every case the crystals carried down with them some of the carbohydrate-rich mucoid, and that the varying results were due to the different amounts of mucoid present in the crystals. By our ordinary methods it is impossible to prepare a specimen of either egg albumin or serum albumin which is entirely free from this amino-derivative of carbohydrate.

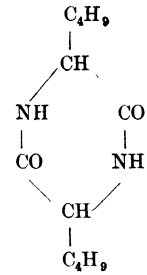
Connected with this group of proteins may be reckoned the diamino-trioxydodecoic acid already mentioned as occurring among the disintegration products of proteins.

THE BUILDING UP OF THE PROTEIN MOLECULE

By simple hydrolysis the protein molecule may be broken down into a large number of amino-acids. Analyses of various proteins show that these amino-acids are present in different proportions in the individual proteins, so that in many cases a large number of identical amino-acid groups must be present in the protein molecule with smaller numbers of other groups. In endeavouring to form an idea of the manner in which the amino-acids can be linked together into one gigantic molecule, Hofmeister first put forward the idea that the linkage follows the general formula :-

$$\begin{array}{ll} & —CH_2—NH—CO— \\ \text{or} & —NH—CH_2—CO—NH— \end{array}$$

This theory of the constitution of proteins was based on the fact that a similar grouping was known to occur in leucinimide, obtained by the condensation of two molecules of leucine,



and also by the fact that only a small proportion of the NH_2 groups present in the separated amino-acids exist free in the protein molecule. By the action of nitrous acid the terminal NH_2 groups are split off and replaced by OH. When proteins are treated with nitrous acid only a small proportion of the total nitrogen is split off in this way. The linking of the amino groups must therefore take place by means of the nitrogen, *i.e.* by NH groups. Synthetic experiments have fully confirmed this hypothesis. In 1883 Curtius obtained a substance giving the biuret reaction, the so-called 'biuret base,' by the spontaneous polymerisation of glycocoll ester. This base has been shown by recent researches to consist of four glycine molecules arranged together in an open chain The clue to the structure of this base was given by Fischer, who has devised a number of ingenious methods for combining together amino-acids of any character and in any number. Thus from two molecules of glycine we may obtain the compound glycyl glycine, as follows :

$$NH_2.CH_2\,COOH + HNH.CH_2.COOH - H_2O = NH_2\,CH_2\,CO.NH.CH_2.COOH$$

This may be prepared in various ways. In one method glycine is converted into its ester $CH_2.NH_2.CO.OCH_3$. In a watery solution this undergoes spontaneous conversion into glycine anhydride which belongs to the class of bodies known as diketopiperazins, as follows :

$$2NH_2.CH_2CO.OCH_3 = \underset{\text{methyl alcohol}}{2CH_3OH} + NH\left\langle\begin{matrix} CH_2\text{—}CO \\ CO\text{—}CH_2 \end{matrix}\right\rangle NH$$

On treating this with dilute alkali it takes up water, splitting in the situation of the dotted line and forming glycyl glycine, $NH_2CH_2CO.NH\,CH_2COOH$.

More general methods have been devised by Fischer for the same purpose, depending on the use of the halogen acyl chlorides.

Thus chloracetylchloride and alanine yield chloracetalanine :

$$Cl.CH_2.COCl + NH_2.CH(CH_3).COOH = Cl.CH_2.CO - NH.CH(CH_3)COOH + HCl.$$

By the subsequent action of ammonia, the halogen group is replaced by the amino group, and a dipeptide results :

$$Cl.CH_2.CO - NH.CH(CH_3)COOH + 2NH_3 =$$
$$NH_2.CH_2.CO - NH.CH(CH_3)COOH + NH_4Cl.$$

Different halogen acyl chlorides are used for introducing the various amino-acid radicals, *e.g.* chloracetylchloride for glycyl, α-bromopropionylchloride for alanyl, &c.

By various such methods Fischer has succeeded in combining compounds containing as many as eighteen amino-acids, *e.g.* alanyl leucine, glycyl tyrosine, dialanyl cystine, dileucyl cystine, leucyl pentaglycyl glycine, and so on. The last named would be built up out of one molecule of leucine and six molecules of glycine. These compounds have been designated by Fischer as *polypeptides*, to signify their close connection with the peptones produced by the agency of digestive ferments on the proteins. He distinguishes di-, tri-, tetra-, &c., peptides according to the number of individual amino-acids taking part in the formation of the compound. The polypeptides resemble in all respects the peptones. Most of them, even if derived from relatively insoluble amino-acids, are soluble in water, insoluble in absolute alcohol. They dissolve in mineral acids and in alkalies with the formation of salts, thus resembling in their behaviour the amino-acids. They have a bitter taste, although the amino-acids from which they are formed have a slightly sweet taste, in this way again resembling the natural peptones. The higher members of the series give certain reactions, such as the biuret reaction, which are regarded as characteristic of peptones, and like the latter are precipitated by phosphotungstic acid. Their behaviour with trypsin depends on the optical behaviour of the amino-acids from which they are formed. If synthetised from the amino-acids identical with those occurring in the disintegration of natural proteins, they resemble the peptones in undergoing hydrolysis and disintegration into their constituent amino-acids. Trypsin however has no influence on polypeptides compounded of the inactive amino-acids, or of the amino-acids which are the optical opposites of those which form the constituents of normal proteins. Though most of the amino-acids which occur naturally are lævo-rotatory, the polypeptides formed from them are generally strongly dextro-rotatory.

Thus in the building up of the protein molecule there is an almost indefinite coupling up of numerous amino-acid groups, the connecting element in each case being the nitrogen. Of the two or more optical isomers possible of each amino-acid containing more than two carbon atoms, only one is made use of for this purpose. A still further flexibility in its reactions to its environment is conferred on the protein molecule by changes occurring with great readiness in the intra-molecular grouping of its constituent atoms. Thus, if we take the simplest member of the class of polypeptides, glycyl glycine, four structural formulæ are possible, namely :

(1) $NH_2CH_2CO - NH.CH_2.COOH$

(2)
$$\begin{array}{l} NH.CH_2.CO \\ \quad | \qquad\quad >O \\ CO.CH_2.NH_2 \end{array}$$

(3) $NH_2.CH_2.C(OH) = N.CH_2.COOH$

(4) $$\begin{matrix} N.CH_2.CO \\ \| \\ C(OH)CH_2.NH_2 \end{matrix} > O$$

(2) and (4) being the intramolecular form of the formulæ (1) and (3). (3) and (4) are sometimes spoken of as the enolic form. If we consider that perhaps some hundred of the amino-acid groups may go to making up a single protein molecule, it is possible to form some conception of the enormous variability in reaction possible to such a compound.

THE CONSTITUTION OF DIFFERENT PROTEINS

All the proximate constituents of proteins, so far as we know, are amino-acids. Of these the following have been isolated, namely, glycine, alanine, amino-valerianic acid, leucine, isoleucine, proline, oxyproline, serine, phenyl

	Serum albumin	Egg albumin	Edestin (hemp seeds)	Gliadin	Ca-vinogen	Globin	Salmin		Gelatin	Keratin (from horse hair)
Glycine	0	0	3·8	0·9	0	0	0	—	16·5	4·7
Alanine	2·7	8·1	3·6	2·7	1·5	4 2	—	—	0 8	1·5
Serine	0 6	—	0·33	0·12	0·5	0·6	7·8	—	0·4	0·6
Amino-valerianic acid	—	—	present	0 3	7 2	—	4 3	—	1 0	0 9
Leucine	20 0	7 1	20·9	6 0	9 35	29 0	0	—	2 1	7·1
Proline	1 0	2 25	1·7	2·4	6·70	2·3	11·0	—	5 2	3·4
Oxyproline	—	—	2·0	—	0 23	1 0	—	—	3·0	—
Glutamic acid	7·7	8·0	6 3	36·5	15 55	1·7	—	—	0·88	3·7
Aspartic acid	3·1	1·5	4 5	1·3	1·39	4 4	—	—	0 56	0·3
Phenylalanine	3·1	4·4	2·4	2 6	3·2	4·2	—	—	0·4	0
Tyrosine	2·1	1 1	2·1	2 4	4 5	1 5	—	—	0	3 2
Tryptophane	present	present	present	1 0	1·50	present	—	—	0	—
Cystine	2 3	0·2	0·25	0·45	?	0·3	—	—	—	10+
Lysine	—	2·15	1·0	0	5·95	4·3	0	12 0	2·75	1·1
Arginine	—	2·14	11 7	3 4	3 81	5 4	87·4	58 2	7·62	4·5
Histidine	—	—	1·1	1 7	2 5	11 0	0	12 9	0·4	0·6

alanine, glutamic acid, aspartic acid, tyrosine, tryptophane, cystine, lysine histidine, arginine, and 'di-amino-trioxydodecoic' acid.

The question now arises whether all the different varieties of protein owe their peculiarities to the presence of different amino-acids or whether the greater number of the amino-acids above mentioned are present in all proteins, the differences between the latter being determined by differences in the arrangement and relative amounts of their proximate constituents. A large number of analyses of different proteins have been made by Abderhalden, Osborne, and others, utilising the methods for the isolation of amino-acids devised by Fischer. The constitution of some representative proteins as determined in this way is given in the Table above.

These results show that all the proteins contain a very considerable proportion of the total number of amino-acids which have as yet been isolated from acid digests of proteins. The differences in various proteins cannot therefore be determined by qualitative differences in their constituent molecules, but must depend on the relative amounts of the amino-acids which are present and on their arrangement in the whole molecule. As regards relative amounts of amino-acids we find very striking differences. Thus glutamic acid, which forms 8 per cent. of egg albumin and only 1·7 per cent. of globin (derived from hæmoglobin), amounts to 36·5 per cent. in gliadin, the protein extracted from wheat flour. Striking differences are also noticeable in the relative proportions of the diamino-acids and bases, the so-called hexone bases. Whereas in casein they form about 12 per cent. of the total molecule, in globin they form about 20 per cent.; and in the protamines, salmine and sturine, about 85 per cent. of the total molecule consists of these bodies. On this account the two last-named bodies have a strongly basic character. From these figures it is evident also that certain of the amino-acids must occur many times over in the protein molecule. Thus in globin, if we assume the presence of one tyrosine molecule, there must be at least thirty-two leucine and ten histidine molecules. On these data the molecular weight of hæmoglobin would come out at about 14,000, a figure which agrees with that derived from a study of the amounts of sulphur and iron respectively in its molecule.

THE DISTRIBUTION OF NITROGEN IN THE PROTEIN MOLECULE

Attempts have been made to differentiate among the proteins by a method which, while less laborious than the isolation and recognition of the individual amino-acids, may yet throw some light on the manner in which the nitrogen is combined within the molecule, and on the relative amounts of the different classes of nitrogen groups which may be present. One method, which was devised by Hausmann, is carried out as follows. One gramme of the protein is dissociated by boiling with strong hydrochloric acid The nitrogen, which has been split off as ammonia and is present in the solution as ammonium chloride, is then distilled off with magnesia and received into decinormal acid, where its amount can be determined by titration. This nitrogen is variously designated as amide nitrogen, ammonia nitrogen, or easily displaceable nitrogen. The remaining fluid, freed from ammonia, is precipitated with phosphotungstic acid. By this means all the diamino-acids and bases are thrown down. The nitrogen in the precipitate is determined by Kjeldahl's method and is called diamino- or basic nitrogen. In the remaining fluid, which contains mono-amino-acids, the total nitrogen, the mono-amino-nitrogen, is determined by Kjeldahl's method. Table I, p. 91, gives some of the results obtained in this manner, and shows that there are considerable differences in the distribution of the different kinds of nitrogen among the various classes of proteins. The method is however only a rough one as compared with the separation of the individual maino-acids.

TABLE I.

Group	Protein	Source	N per cent	Amide N	Amino N	Basic N	Humin * N
Protamines	Salmine	Salmon-roe	—	0		87 8	
	Sturine	Sturgeon-roe	—	0		83·7	
Histones	Histone	Thymus	—	3 3		38 7	
Albumins and phospho-proteins	Ovalbumin	Egg-white	15·51	8 64	68·13	21·27	1·87
	Caseinogen	Milk	15 62	10·36	66·00	22·34	1·34
Globulins	Globulin	Wheat	18·39	7 72	53·40	37·10	1·52
	Edestin	Hemp seed	18 64	10 08	57 83	31·70	0·64
Alcohol-soluble proteins	Zein	Maize	16·13	18·40	77·56	3·03	0·99
	Gliadin	Wheat and rye	17 66	23 78	70 27	5·54	0·79
Albumoses	Prot-albumose	Witte's peptone	–	7 14	68 17	25·42	—
	Hetero-albumose	Witte's peptone	–	6·45	57 4	38·93	—

TABLE II.—DISTRIBUTION OF THE NITROGEN IN VARIOUS PROTEINS (VAN SLYKE)

	Gliadin	Edestin	Hair (dog)	Gelatin	Fibrin	Hæmocyanin	Ox hæmoglobin
Ammonia N	25 52	9 99	10 05	2 25	8·32	5 95	5 24
Melanine N	0 86	1 98	7 42	0 07	3 17	1·65	3·60
Cystine N	1 25	1 49	6·60	0	0 99	0 80	0 ?
Arginine N	5 71	27 05	15 33	14 70	13 86	15 73	7 70
Histidine N	5 20	5·75	3 48	4 48	4 83	13·23	12·70
Lysine N	0 75	3 86	5 37	6 32	11·51	8·49	10·90
Amino N of the filtrate	51·98	47 55	47·50	56·30	54 30	51·30	57 00
Non-amino N of the filtrate (proline, oxyproline, ½ tryptophane)	8 50	1·70	3 10	14·90	2·70	3 80	2·90
Sum . .	99·77	99·37	99 85	99·02	99·58	100·95	100·00

An improved means of determining the distribution of nitrogen in the protein molecule has been devised by Van Slyke. Some of his results are given in Table II., above.

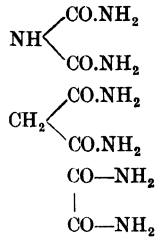
* When a protein is boiled for a long time with strong acid, a black precipitate may occur which contains nitrogen. This is known as humin nitrogen.

TESTS FOR PROTEIN

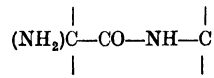
A. COLOUR REACTIONS OF THE PROTEINS

These are of importance since in many cases they are an indication of the nature of the groups present in the protein molecule.

(1) **THE BIURET REACTION.** When a solution of a protein is made strongly alkaline with caustic potash or soda, and dilute copper sulphate added drop by drop, a colour varying from pink to violet is produced. In the case of the proteoses and peptones (the hydrated proteins) the colour is pink; in the case of the coagulable proteins, violet. According to Schiff this colour is given by all compounds containing the following groups:



and the group



We have already seen that this grouping is typical of the protein molecule.

(2) **THE XANTHO-PROTEIC REACTION.** On adding strong nitric acid to a solution of protein and boiling, a yellow colour is produced which turns to a deep orange when excess of caustic alkali or ammonia is added. The production of this reaction points to the existence of benzene derivatives in the protein molecule, and it is therefore a general test for the presence of aromatic groups.

(3) **MILLON'S REACTION.** Millon's reagent is a solution of mercuric nitrate in water containing free nitrous acid. On adding a few drops of this to a protein solution a white precipitate is produced which turns a brick-red colour on boiling. It depends on the presence in the protein of a hydroxy-derivative of benzene, and is determined in the protein by the tyrosine, which is oxyphenylalanine.

(4) **SULPHUR REACTION.** On warming a solution of protein with caustic soda in the presence of lead acetate, a black colour is produced owing to the precipitation of lead sulphide. The depth of coloration gives a rough indication of the amount of sulphur in the protein under investigation.

(5) **THE HOPKINS-ADAMKIEWICZ REACTION.** It was stated by Adamkiewicz that on the addition of acetic acid and concentrated sulphuric acid to protein, a violet colour was produced. Hopkins and Cole showed that the success of this reaction depended on the presence of glyoxylic acid CHO.COOH as an impurity in the acetic acid used. The test is therefore performed now as follows:

Glyoxylic acid is prepared by the action of sodium amalgam on a solution of oxalic acid. A few drops of this solution are added to the solution of protein, and strong sulphuric acid poured down the side of the tube. A bluish violet colour is produced at the junction of the two fluids. This reaction is due to the presence in the protein of tryptophane.

The so-called Liebermann's reaction has been shown by Cole to be essentially a modification of the above, and is due also to the presence of tryptophane. In this test the protein is precipitated by alcohol, washed with ether, and heated with concentrated hydrochloric acid, when a blue colour is produced, glyoxylic acid being derived from the alcohol and ether.

(6) **REACTIONS INDICATING THE PRESENCE OF CARBOHYDRATES.** Molisch's test is applied as follows. A few drops of alcoholic solution of α-naphthol and then strong sulphuric acid are added to a protein solution. A violet colour is produced, which on addition of alcohol, ether, or potash turns yellow. The reaction is determined by the presence, either as an impurity or a constituent part of the molecule, of a carbohydrate radical which, under the influence of strong sulphuric acid, is converted into furfurol. The furfurol gives the colour reaction with the α-naphthol.

Another test for the carbohydrate radical is the orcin reaction. A small quantity of the dried albumin is added to 5 c.c. of fuming hydrochloric acid, and the mixture is then warmed. When the albumin is nearly all dissolved, a little solid orcin is added on the point of a knife, and then a drop of ferric chloride solution. After warming this mixture for some minutes, a green colour is produced which is soluble in amyl alcohol and gives a definite absorption spectrum.

B. METALLIC SALTS

The following metallic salts form double insoluble compounds with proteins, and therefore cause a double precipitation when added to solutions of these bodies: ferric chloride, copper sulphate, mercuric chloride, lead acetate, zinc acetate.

C. ALKALOIDAL REACTIONS

Proteins, like the polypeptides and the amino-acids of which they are composed, may function either as weak acids or as weak bases, according as they are treated with bases or acid radicals respectively. In the presence of strong acids therefore, proteins act like organic bases, and are thrown down in an insoluble form by the various alkaloidal precipitants. With certain proteins, such as the protamines, where there is a preponderance of basic groups, it is not necessary to add mineral acid in order to ensure the precipitation. The following are the principal alkaloidal precipitants which may be employed:

(*a*) Phosphotungstic acid.
(*b*) Phosphomolybdic acid.
(*c*) Tannic acid.
(*d*) Potassium mercuric iodide.
(*e*) Acetic acid and potassium ferrocyanide.
(*f*) Trichloracetic acid. (In order to precipitate all the coagulable proteins from a solution, it is treated with an equal volume of 10 per cent. trichloracetic acid, well shaken and filtered.)
(*g*) Metaphosphoric acid.
(*h*) Salicyl-sulphonic acid.

These two latter are generally employed in a 5 per cent. solution.

(*i*) Picric acid.

A mixture of picric and citric acids is largely employed, under the name of Esbach's reagent, as a precipitant for coagulable proteins in the urine.

D. TESTS DEPENDING ON THE COLLOIDAL CHARACTER OF THE PROTEIN

(1) **HEAT COAGULATION.** On boiling proteins in a very slightly acid solution some are coagulated and form an insoluble white precipitate. This test is applicable to albumins, globulins, and under certain conditions to the derived albumins. In order that the separation of protein in this way may be complete, it is necessary to provide for the presence of neutral salts and also for the maintenance of a slight acidity. The best method of carrying out this test therefore is to boil the protein in slightly alkaline or neutral solution after the addition of 2-5 per cent. of sodium chloride or sodium sulphate. While the solution is in active ebullition, 1 per cent. acetic acid is added drop by drop until the reaction is just acid to litmus. By this means a nearly perfect separation of all the coagulable proteins may be effected.

(2) **HELLER'S TEST.** On pouring a solution of protein carefully down the side of a test-tube containing strong nitric acid so as to form a layer on the top, a white layer of coagulated protein is produced at the junction of the two fluids. A similar coagulative effect is given by other strong mineral acids.

(3) **PRECIPITATION BY NEUTRAL SALTS.** On addition of a neutral salt in excess to a colloidal solution, the relation between the solvent and the particles which are in suspension or pseudo-solution is altered. It is therefore possible in many cases by the addition of neutral salts to separate out the dissolved colloid without otherwise altering its characters in any way, so that, on collecting the precipitate and separating the salt carried down with it, it can be dissolved again by adding water. Some classes of proteins can be salted out very readily, while others require a much higher concentration of salt before they are precipitated.

The salts which are generally employed for salting out proteins have been divided by Schryver into three classes :

Class I.	*Class II.*	*Class III.*
Sodium chloride.	Potassium acetate.	Ammonium sulphate.
Sodium sulphate.	Calcium chloride.	Zinc sulphate.
Sodium acetate.	Calcium nitrate.	
Sodium nitrate.		
Magnesium sulphate.		

The two calcium salts are however rarely employed, as they tend to render the precipitated protein insoluble.

The salts of the first class require much higher concentration for the precipitation of the proteins than those of the second, and these than those of the third. Since the degree of concentration of any salt necessary for the precipitation of any particular protein is characteristic for this body, it is possible to employ a fractional process of salt precipitation in order to separate mixtures of proteins into their components. Owing however to the tenacity with which different colloids adhere to one another, it is difficult, even after many repetitions of the process of fractional salting out, to obtain products which can be regarded as free from admixture. For the purpose of fractional precipitation the salts most frequently employed are those of the third class, namely, ammonium sulphate and zinc sulphate. We shall have to deal with results obtained by this method when treating of the separation of albumoses and peptones. The precipitability of different proteins with neutral salts serves also as the basis of the ordinary classification of these bodies.

THE CLASSIFICATION OF PROTEINS

It is possible that in the future, when we know all the disintegration products of the various proteins and the manner in which they are arranged in the molecule, the classification of these bodies will be based on their constitution. At the present time it is obviously impossible to make any classification on such a basis, since the necessary knowledge is wanting, and we have therefore to use a purely artificial classification, such as that adopted by the Chemical and Physiological Societies in 1907, based chiefly on the solubilities of the various proteins in water and salt solutions. We shall here only indicate the characters of the main groups into which proteins are conventionally divided, and leave the closer study of the individual proteins to be dealt with in connection with the organs or tissues in which they are found.

(1) **THE PROTAMINES.** These occur in the body only in combination with other groups. They are obtained from the ripe spermatozoa of certain

fishes, where they are in combination with nucleic acid. They are characterised by the very large amount of bases contained in their molecule, amounting to 85 per cent. of the total substance. It was formerly thought by Kossel that the protamines contained only diamino-acids and bases, but it has been shown later that a small proportion of mono-amino-acids may also be obtained from their disintegration (*v.* Table, p. 98). On account of their constitution they possess strongly basic characters and form well-marked salts, *e.g.* sulphates and chlorides, as well as double salts with platinum chloride. They contain no sulphur and do not coagulate on heating.

(2) **HISTONES.** This class of proteins, like the protamines, only occurs in combination with other groups, such for instance as nuclein and hæmatin They may be obtained from red blood-corpuscles, where they form the globin part of the hæmoglobin molecule, or from the leucocytes of the thymus gland, or from the spermatozoa of fishes. The histones are precipitated from their watery solutions by addition of ammonia, but are soluble in excess of this reagent. In the presence of salts they are coagulated on boiling. With cold nitric acid they give a precipitate which dissolves on warming, but is thrown down again on cooling The most characteristic feature of this class of bodies is however the high proportion of diamino-acids and bases contained in their molecule

(3) **ALBUMINS.** These are soluble in pure water and are precipitated by complete saturation with ammonium sulphate, zinc sulphate, or sodio-magnesium sulphate.

Egg Albumen forms the greater part of the white of egg. It gives the ordinary protein tests, coagulates on heating at about 75° C., and is precipitated from its solutions if shaken with a drop of dilute acetic acid in excess of ether. It is lævo-rotatory, its specific rotatory power being $-35{\cdot}5°$.

Serum Albumen occurs in large quantities in the blood plasma, serum, lymph, and tissue fluids of the body. It coagulates at 75° C., and is distinguished from egg albumen by its greater specific rotatory power, $-56°$, and by the fact that it is not precipitated by ether and sulphuric acid. Some vegetable proteins belong to this class, *e.g.* the *leucosin* of wheat.

(4) **GLOBULINS.** These bodies are insoluble in pure water and require the presence of a certain amount of neutral salt to dissolve them. They are precipitated from their solutions by complete saturation with magnesium sulphate or by half-saturation with ammonium sulphate. The chief members of this class are :

Crystallin, obtained from the crystalline lens by passing a stream of carbon dioxide through an aqueous extract of this body.

Serum Globulin or Paraglobulin, a constituent of blood plasma and blood serum.

Fibrinogen, which occurs in blood plasma and is converted into fibrin when the blood clots.

Paramyosinogen, a normal constituent of muscle.

Midway between these two groups may be placed the muscle protein, myosin (or myosinogen), which, though soluble in pure water, resembles the class of globulins in the ease with which it is precipitated by the addition of neutral salts.

In addition to the members of the globulins named above and derived from the animal body, proteins allied to this class form an important constituent of plants, and are found in large quantities in many seeds used as articles of food. These are vegetable globulins. Prominent members of the group are the *edestins*, which may be obtained from hemp seeds, cotton seeds, and sunflower seeds, *zein* from maize, *legumin* from beans.

(5) **GLIADINS**, contained in cereals, and soluble in alcohol.

(6) **GLUTELINS**, proteins also obtained from cereals and soluble in weak alkalies.

(7) **DERIVATIVES OF PROTEINS. A. METAPROTEINS.** These may be regarded as compounds of the protein molecule or of part of the molecule with acid or basic radicals.

ACID ALBUMIN, or acid metaprotein, is formed by the action of warm dilute acids or of strong acids in the cold on any of the preceding bodies. If a weak alkali be added so as nearly to neutralise the solution of acid metaprotein, this latter is precipitated. If the precipitate be suspended in water and heated, it is coagulated and becomes insoluble in dilute acids or alkalies.

ALKALI ALBUMIN, or alkaline metaprotein, is formed by the action of strong caustic potash on white of egg or on any other protein, or by adding alkali in excess to a solution of acid metaprotein. It is precipitated on neutralisation of its solution.

In close association with this group may be included the proteins as they occur in combination with the metallic salts, such as copper sulphate. On splitting off the copper moiety from these compounds, the protein left is practically free from ash, and behaves in many respects like an albuminate, being insoluble in absolutely pure water, but easily dissolved by the addition of a trace of free acid or alkali.

A group of protein derivatives described by Hopkins is produced by the action of the free halogens on protein solutions. We get in this way two definite classes of compounds. One class, which contains the largest percentage of halogen, is obtained by treating a protein solution with chlorine, bromine, or iodine, dissolving up the resultant precipitate in alcohol and pouring the alcoholic solution into ether, when the halogen compound is thrown down as a fine white precipitate. By dissolving this precipitate in weak soda and precipitating with acid, we obtain a series of compounds containing only about one-third as much of the halogen as is contained in the first precipitate, suggesting that the halogen forms both substitution and additive compounds with the protein molecule.

Albumins, globulins, and metaproteins are often associated together as the coagulable proteins, since they may be thrown down entirely from their solution on boiling in slightly acid medium in the presence of neutral salts.

B. HYDRATED PROTEINS. When proteins are subjected to the action of superheated water or steam, or heated with acids, or acted on at the body temperature by certain ferments, *e.g.* pepsin, trypsin, or papain, they undergo a change which is attended by the addition of a number of

molecules of water to the protein molecule (hydrolysis). This action, when carried to its end, results in the production of the amino-acids which we have already dealt with.

These hydrolytic changes proceed by a series of stages, so that the intermediate products still present many of the protein reactions. The hydrated proteins are divided into two groups, proteoses and peptones. The formation of these intermediate products is especially marked with the proteolytic ferments. Pepsin with hydrochloric acid, the ferment of the gastric juice, for example, only breaks down the protein molecule as far as the proteoses and peptones. Trypsin also gives rise to both proteoses and peptones as intermediate products. The action of these ferments on proteins is in fact closely analogous to the action of diastase on the great polysaccharide molecule of starch. In this case, as intermediate products we have first dextrins of various complexity, secondly maltose, and finally, if the ferment maltase be also present, dextrose. The monotony of the starch molecule determines a great similarity of composition between its various disintegration products. It may be regarded as an anhydride of many (100 or more) molecules of a hexose, and the intermediate stages in this hydrolysis are also hexoses and their anhydrides The protein molecule is distinguished by the variety of the groups which enter into its formation, and this heterogeneous character of the molecule renders possible a much greater variety of intermediate products than we find in the starches. Thus a protein molecule may consist of the groups, A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, &c. When hydrolysis occurs it may result in the immediate splitting off, say, of part of group A, while the residue breaks up into a series of proteoses whose composition may be represented as ABF, ABC, DFG, BDEF, &c. With further hydrolysis these groups are broken into still smaller ones, and the penultimate stages of the hydrolysis will be polypeptides similar to those which have been synthetised by Fischer from the ultimate products of protein hydrolysis. No sharp dividing line can be drawn between the proteoses, peptones, and polypeptides. Of the last group we have already seen that the higher members give the biuret reaction as well as the other protein reactions, if the necessary groups, *e.g.* tyrosine, tryptophane, are present in the molecule. The proteoses and peptones are however ill-defined bodies. We have at present no satisfactory means of isolating the different members of these groups and obtaining them in a state of chemical purity. Their classification is therefore, like that of the proteins generally, a conventional one, depending on their solubilities and their precipitability by neutral salts, especially ammonium sulphate. Both proteoses and peptones give the xanthoproteic and Millon's reactions common to all proteins, and, like these, are precipitated by such reagents as mercuric chloride, potassio-mercuric iodide, or phosphotungstic acid. On adding excess of caustic potash and a drop of dilute copper sulphate to solutions of either of these classes of bodies, a pink colour is produced which deepens to a violet on addition of more copper (the biuret reaction). Their solutions can be boiled without undergoing coagulation. Many of them may be thrown down from their solutions by absolute alcohol,

but are not rendered insoluble even by prolonged standing under the alcohol. The characters of the different members of these groups will be considered at greater length when dealing with the changes undergone by the proteins during the process of digestion. At present we may merely summarise the distinguishing features of these two classes.

(*a*) PROTEOSES, *e.g.* albumose from albumin, caseose from casein, elastose from elastin. All of these are precipitated from their solutions on saturation with ammonium sulphate. In the presence of a neutral salt they give a precipitate on the addition of nitric acid. This precipitate is dissolved on heating the solution, but reappears on cooling. All, with the exception of heteroalbumose, are soluble in pure water, and all are soluble in weak salt solutions or dilute acids or alkalies. They are slightly diffusible through animal membranes.

(*b*) PEPTONES, *e.g.* fibrin peptone, gluten peptone. These are all soluble in pure water, diffuse fairly readily through animal membranes, but otherwise give the same reactions as albumoses. From the latter class peptones are distinguished by the fact that they are not precipitated on saturation of their solutions either in acid or alkaline reaction with ammonium sulphate or any other neutral salt. Many of them are soluble in alcohol.

(8) THE PHOSPHOPROTEINS. In this class may be grouped a number of substances of very diverse properties, which however resemble one another in containing phosphorus as an integral part of their molecule. When subjected to digestion with pepsin and hydrochloric acid they are dissolved, but a small quantity of a phosphorus-containing complex may remain behind undissolved. This residue has been called paranuclein or pseudonuclein. It is in reality derived from nucleoprotein, which is present in the phosphoprotein as impurity and should be called simply nuclein. The phosphoproteins have markedly acid characters. They are insoluble in pure water, easily soluble in alkalies and ammonia from which the original body is thrown down again on addition of acid. Their solutions in alkali are not coagulated by heating. To this class belong caseinogen, the chief protein of milk, vitellin, the main protein in the yolk of egg, and the vitellins in the eggs of fishes and frogs. The vitellins are generally associated with a large amount of lecithin. The phosphoproteins differ from the nucleoproteins, which also contain phosphorus, in the facts that they are readily decomposed by caustic alkali with the liberation of phosphoric acid, and do not contain purine bases. The phosphorus of the nucleoproteins is not split off by alkali (1 per cent.), and on hydrolysis the nucleic acid constituent gives rise to purine bases.

(9) CONJUGATED PROTEINS. Various complex bodies which play an important part in building up cells and in the various processes of the body make up this group of compounds. They resemble one another only in the fact that in each of them a protein radical is combined with some other body, often spoken of as the prosthetic group.*

* By the Germans the term 'proteid' is often applied to this group. In English however the term 'proteid' has been generally used for the simple protein known

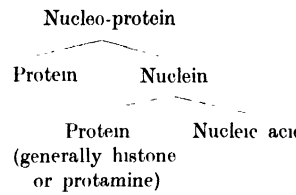
(*a*) CHROMOPROTEINS. Of this class, consisting of a colouring-matter combined with a protein, the most important is *hæmoglobin*. This substance, which is the red colouring-matter of the red corpuscles of the blood and plays an important part in the processes of respiration, acting as an oxygen carrier from the lungs to the tissues, is composed of the protein, globin, united with an iron-containing body, hæmatin. Oxyhæmoglobin contains from 4-5 per cent. hæmatin ($C_{32}H_{32}N_4O_4Fe$). It is easily crystallisable, and its physical and chemical characters have therefore been more precisely determined than is the case with most other members of the group of conjugated proteins. We shall have to deal more fully with its properties in the chapters on Blood and Respiration.

(*b*) THE NUCLEOPROTEINS. These are formed by the combination of a phosphorised organic acid, nucleic acid, with a protein which may belong to any of the classes we have enumerated above. Some of the best-marked members of this group consist of compounds of nucleic acid with basic histones or protamines. The combination between protein and the prosthetic group seems to take place in two stages. If a nucleoprotein be subjected to gastric digestion a large amount of the protein goes into solution as proteose or peptone, leaving an insoluble remainder. This precipitate is not however nucleic acid, but still contains a protein group, the compound being spoken of as nuclein. From the latter nucleic acid can be split off by heating with strong acids or other means. The nucleoproteins are soluble in water and salt solutions, and are easily soluble in dilute alkalies. They have acid characters and are precipitated by the addition of acids. The nucleins, on the other hand, are insoluble in water and salt solutions, but are easily dissolved by dilute alkalies. The nucleins and nucleoproteins form the chief and invariable constituent of cell nuclei. They may be therefore prepared from the most diverse organs. The heads of the spermatozoa of the salmon consist entirely of nuclein. Miescher and Schmiedeberg found that the nuclein obtained from this source contained 60·5 per cent. nucleic acid and 35·56 protamine, and was in fact a nucleate of protamine. The nuclein derived from the spermatozoa of echinoderms has been found to be a compound of nucleic acid and histone. From organs rich in cells, such as the thymus and the pancreas, and from nucleated red blood-corpuscles, nucleoproteins may be obtained which can be broken down into nuclein and protein, the nuclein again being composed of a protein residue with nucleic acid.

As first extracted from the animal cell the nucleoproteins are associated with a considerable proportion of lecithin, and in this labile compound form the 'tissue fibrinogen' of Wooldridge. To prepare this substance an organ rich in cells, such as the thymus, is minced and extracted with water or normal salt solution. After separating the cells by means of the centrifuge, the clear fluid is decanted off and acidified with acetic acid. A precipitate is produced consisting of 'tissue fibrinogen.' This substance is soluble in excess of acid and is easily soluble in alkalies. All the tissue

to the Germans as 'Eiweisskörper.' On account of the confusion which has risen from this double use of the term 'proteid,' I have attempted to avoid it altogether in this volume.

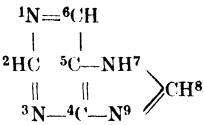
fibrinogens are highly unstable bodies and undergo changes in the mere act of precipitation and re-solution. When injected into the blood they cause intravascular clotting. On digestion with gastric juice they yield a precipitate of nuclein, and this precipitate contains a large proportion of the lecithin present in the original substance. In the nucleoproteins nucleic acid is combined with proteins in two degrees, a large portion of the protein being separable by gastric digestion, while the remainder needs stronger reagents for its dissociation. The relation of the two portions of the nucleoprotein may be represented therefore by the following schema:



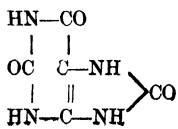
By various means, all of which involve hydrolysis, the nucleic acid may be broken up into its proximate constituents. These differ according to the source of the nucleic acid. Whatever the source, the disintegration products belong to closely allied groups of substances. These may be grouped as follows:

(1) *Phosphoric Acid.* The proportion of phosphorus varies within but narrow limits in the different nucleic acids, the average being about 10 per cent. It is probable that the phosphoric acid represents, so to speak, the combining medium for the groups contained in the nucleic acid molecule, as is the case with the various groups which make up the lecithin molecule.

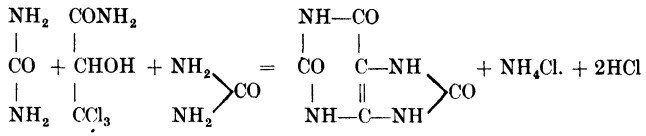
(2) *The Purine Bases.* Among the products of disintegration of nucleic acid we find constantly one of the bases adenine, $C_5H_5N_5$, and guanine ($C_5H_5N_5O$). These substances, with the products of their oxidation, xanthine, $C_5H_4N_4O_2$, hypoxanthine, $C_5H_4N_4O$, have long been known to be closely allied to uric acid, $C_5H_4N_4O_3$, but their true relationships have only been thoroughly known since the researches of Fischer on this group. According to Fischer they can be all regarded as derivatives of the body purine,



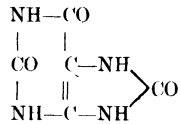
Each group in this purine ring is generally designated with a number indicated in the structural formula; in order that it may be possible to represent the position of any substituted groups in its derivatives. Uric acid itself is 2-6-8-trioxypurine with the following formula:



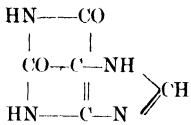
It can be synthetised by fusing together in a sealed tube trichlorolactamide and urea. Thus:



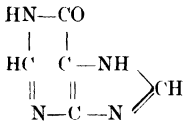
The relation of xanthine, hypoxanthine, guanine, and adenine to uric acid is shown by the following formulæ:



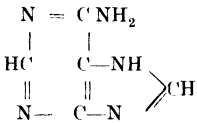
Uric acid
2-6-8-trioxypurine



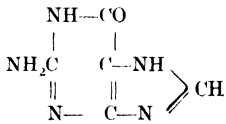
Xanthine
2-6-dioxypurine



Hypoxanthine
6-oxypurine

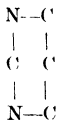


Adenine
6-amino-purine

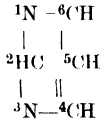


Guanine
2-amino 6-oxypurine

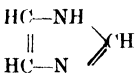
Closely allied to this group of bodies are the chief constituents of tea, coffee, and cocoa, namely caffeine, which is trimethyl dioxypurine, and theobromine, which is dimethyl dioxypurine. From the structural formulæ given it will be seen that the purine radical contains two nuclei. The nucleus



is spoken of as the pyrimidine nucleus, pyrimidine having the formula

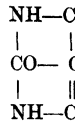


The other is the radical which we have met with already in histidine, a disintegration product of proteins, namely iminazol:

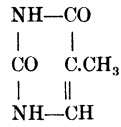


Besides the purine bases proper, we find among the disintegration products of nucleic acid a series of bases derived from the pyrimidine ring. These are uracil, thymine, and cytosine.

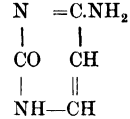
Uracil is 2-6-dioxypyrimidine,



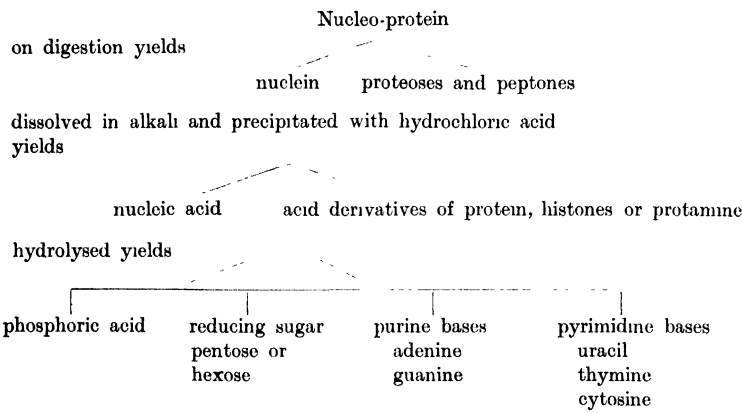
THYMINE is 5-methyl uracil,



while CYTOSINE is 6-amino-2-oxypyrimidine,



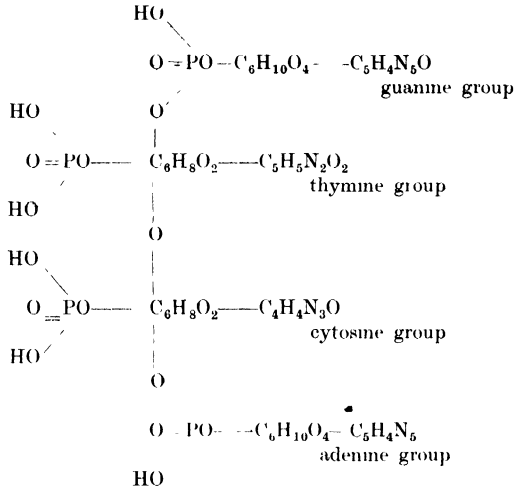
Besides these two groups of nitrogenous compounds derived from the purine and pyrimidine rings, many nucleic acids yield on hydrolysis a carbohydrate. Thus Hammarsten has isolated a pentose from the nucleoproteins of the pancreas. It is supposed that the nucleic acid of the thymus gland contains a hexose, since it is possible to split off from it lævulinic acid, which is one of the first products of the decomposition of a hexose. The complex constitution of the nucleic acids and nucleoproteins may be rendered clearer from the following schema :



It must not be imagined, however, that all these disintegration products are present in all nucleic acids. Thus the nucleic acid derived from the pancreas, the so-called guanylic acid, yields of the purine bases only guanine, and of the pyrimidine bases only thymine and uracil, and every variety is met with as we analyse the nucleic acids of different origin. The fact that nucleic acid is a characteristic and necessary constituent of all nuclei adds interest to the divergence of its constituent radicals from those which distinguish the proteins of the cell protoplasm. Further importance is lent to

this section of the chemistry of the body by the close relationship which we shall have to study later between the nuclein metabolism of the body and the production and excretion of uric acid.

The researches of Levene have thrown light on the manner in which these different groups are bound together to form nucleic acid. In the acid obtained from the thymus the carbohydrate group Hexose is joined to a nitrogenous ring compound, forming what is termed a 'nucleoside.' Four of these nucleosides, in thymic acid, join with four molecules of phosphoric acid to form a 'tetra-nucleotide.' The formula provisionally assigned to thymic acid is therefore as follows:



Other nucleic acids are simpler in constitution and may be composed of only one or two nucleotide groups. Thus the inosinic acid of muscle is a mono-nucleotide, consisting of phosphoric acid linked by a pentose group with hypoxanthine. The definition of a nucleotide would thus be a compound in which a carbohydrate group links a phosphoric acid group with a purine or a pyrimidine group. Nucleic acids are simple or compound nucleotides. The pentose in inosinic acid is d-Ribose. The same pentose occurs in yeast nucleic acid. The nucleic acid of the pancreas, also called Guanylic acid, consists of phosphoric acid linked with guanine by a molecule of d-Ribose.

(*c*) The Glycoproteins. In the glycoproteins the prosthetic group is represented by a carbohydrate radical, generally containing nitrogen, such as glucosamine or galactosamine. They are split into their two constituents, protein and carbohydrate radical, on prolonged boiling with dilute mineral acids or by the action of alkalies. They may be divided into the two main groups of mucins and mucoids.

The *mucins* play a large part in the animal kingdom as protective agents. They form the slimy secretion which covers the inner surface of the mucous membranes and the outer surface of many marine animals, and is secreted either by the goblet cells of the epithelium or by special groups of cells collected together to form a mucous gland. They may be precipitated from their solutions or semi-solutions by the addition of acids, and after precipitation need the addition of alkalies for their re-solution. They are not coagu-

lable by heat. The presence of their protein moiety causes them to give the various typical protein tests, such as the xanthoproteic, Millon's, the biuret reaction, and so on. Prolonged boiling with acids splits the molecule, with the production of acid metaprotein and albumoses and glucosamine. From the mucin of frogs' eggs a similar treatment results in the production of galactosamine.

With the mucins may be classified certain bodies which have been derived from ovarian cysts, namely, pseudomucin and paramucin. Pseudomucin occurs as a constituent of the colloid material from ovarian tumours. It forms slimy solutions which do not coagulate by heat and are not precipitated by acetic acid. It is precipitated by alcohol, the precipitate being soluble in water even after standing a long time under the alcohol. On boiling with acid it gives a reducing substance. Paramucin differs from the above in reducing Fehling's solution before boiling with acids. Otherwise it resembles pseudomucin. Leathes, in investigating this body, isolated from it a reducing substance which apparently was an amino-derivative of a disaccharide, perhaps in combination with glycuronic acid.

The *mucoids* include a number of substances which may be extracted from various tissues by the action of weak alkalies, *e g.* from tendons, bone, and cartilage. The best studied example of this group is the chondromucoid which, with collagen, forms the ground substance of cartilage. Chondromucoid is especially rich in sulphur and gives protein by long treatment with weak alkali. On boiling for a short time with acid it is decomposed into sulphuric acid and chondroitin, and this latter, on further action of the acid, is converted into a substance chondrosin, which is certainly an amino-derivative of a polysaccharide containing the elements of glycuronic acid and an amino-disaccharide. Chondroitin-sulphuric acid occurs not only in cartilage but also in bone, yellow elastic tissue, white fibrous tissue, and as a constant constituent of the lardacein or amyloid substance which occurs as a deposit in the middle coat of the blood-vessels as the result of syphilis or long-continued suppuration, and gives rise to the condition known as 'lardaceous disease.' Another example of this class of mucoids is ovomucoid, which is a constituent of egg-white. In order to prepare ovomucoid the globulin and albumin are precipitated by boiling diluted egg-white. From the filtrate ovomucoid can then be thrown down by alcohol. A similar body has been prepared from blood serum. Both these mucoids yield a large amount of reducing substance on hydrolysis. Thus from 100 grm. of ovomucoid it is possible to prepare 30 grm. of glucosamine.

(10) **THE ALBUMINOIDS OR SCLERO-PROTEINS.** Under this heading are grouped a number of diverse substances which play an important part in building up the framework of the body. Their value as skeletal tissue seems to be determined by their insoluble character. On this account it is practically impossible to speak of purifying them. In every case we can simply take the residue of a skeletal tissue which is left after extraction of the soluble constituents. When broken down by the action of strong acids, they yield a series of disintegration products which are included among those we have already studied as the disintegration products of proteins. Their difference from the proteins which are employed in metabolism for their

nutritive value is caused either by the absence of certain groups common to all the nutritive proteins, by the presence of an excess of one or two groups, or by the presence of certain polypeptides which present considerable resistance to the action of digestive ferments. This class plays the part in the animal economy which in the vegetable kingdom is filled by the anhydrides of the hexoses and pentoses, *e.g.* the celluloses, lignin, the pentosanes, &c. *Collagen* forms the main constituent of white fibrous tissue and the ground substance of bone and cartilage. It is insoluble in water, hot or cold, and in trypsin. Under the action of acids or when subjected to prolonged boiling with water, especially under pressure, it is converted into gelatin, which is soluble in hot water, forming a colloidal solution liquid at high temperatures, but setting to a jelly when cold. When subjected to acid hydrolysis it gives a series of amino-acids from which tyrosine and tryptophane are wanting. On this account gelatin does not give any reaction either with Millon's reagent or with glyoxylic acid. On the other hand, there is a preponderance of such groups as glycine and phenylalanine, and it is probable that glycine, phenylalanine, and leucine are joined together, perhaps with other amino-acids, to form a polypeptide which is not attacked by digestive ferments, and therefore determines the resistance of the original collagen molecule to solution. Gelatin is precipitated by tannic acid, but not by acetic acid. It is dissolved with hydrolysis by gastric juice or by pancreatic juice, whereas collagen, its anhydride, is unaffected by the latter. On prolonged boiling in water it is converted into a modification which does not form a jelly on cooling. Under the action of formaldehyde it is converted into an insoluble modification which does not melt on warming.

Reticulin. This name has been applied to the tissue which forms the supporting network of adenoid tissue, and has also been described in the spleen, the mucous membrane of the intestine, liver, and kidneys. It differs from collagen in resisting digestion by gastric juice, and also in containing phosphorus in organic combination. According to Halliburton there is no essential difference between reticulin and collagen.

The *keratins* are produced by the modification of epithelial cells and form the horny layer of the skin as well as the main substance of hairs, wool, nails, hoofs, horns, and feathers. They are distinguished by their insolubility in water, dilute acids or alkalies, and in the higher animals pass through the alimentary canal unchanged. Although differing in their elementary composition, according to the tissue from which they are prepared, they are all distinguished by the very large amount of sulphur present in their molecule. The greater part of this sulphur is in the form of cystine, of which as much as 10 per cent. can be extracted from keratin. They also yield, on acid hydrolysis, tyrosine in larger quantities than is the case with the ordinary proteins.

Neurokeratin, which forms the basis of the neuroglial framework of the central nervous system, must be grouped by its general behaviour as well as by its origin with the keratins. It resembles the other members of this class in its insolubility and in its high content in sulphur. It is extracted from nervous tissues by boiling these with alcohol and ether and then submitting

the tissue to prolonged tryptic digestion, which leaves the neurokeratin unaffected.

Elastin is a constant constituent of the connective tissues, where it forms the elastic fibres. In some localities, as in the ligamentum nuchæ, practically

	Fibroin of silk	Elastin	Keratin from horn	Keratin from horsehair	Keratin from feathers	Gelatin
Glycine	36·0	25·75	0·45	4 7	2·6	16·5
Alanine	21·0	6·6	1·6	1·5	1·8	0 8
Amino-valerianic acid	0·0	1·0	4·5	0 9	0·5	1 0
Proline	present	1·7				5·2
Leucine	1·5	21·4	15·3	7·1	8 0	2 1
Phenylalanine	1·5	3·9	1·9	0·0	0 0	0·4
Glutamic acid	0·0	0·8	17·2	3·7	2 3	0·88
Aspartic acid	present	present	2·5	0 3	1 1	0 56
Cystine	—	—	7·5		—	—
Serine	1·6	—	1·1	0 6	0·4	0 4
Tyrosine	10 5	0·34	3 6	3·2	3·6	0·0
Tryptophane	—	—	—	—	—	0 0
Lysine	traces	—	0 2	1·1	—	2·75
Arginine	1 0	0·3	2·7	4 5	—	7·62
Histidine	small amount	—	—	0·6	—	0 4
Oxyproline	—	—	—	—	—	3·0

the whole tissue is made up of these fibres. Elastin is insoluble in water, alcohol, or ether, or in dilute acids and alkalies. It is slowly dissolved on *prolonged* treatment with gastric juice, but is practically unaffected in the alimentary canal. It gives the xanthoproteic and Millon's tests.

Other members of this group are *fibroin*, which forms the main substance of silk, *spongin*, the horny framework of sponges, *conchiolin*, the ground substance of shells, and perhaps the amyloid substance or lardacein which we have already mentioned in connection with the mucoids. All these sclero-proteins present considerable differences in their qualitative and quantitative composition in amino-acids. Their proximate composition is shown in the Table given above (Abderhalden).

We have finally to mention a miscellaneous collection of bodies which are allied to the proteins and are distinguished by their extreme insolubility. They are often designated as albumoids. Of their composition we know practically nothing. Under this name are grouped such substances as those forming the membrana propria of glands, the sarcolemma of striated muscle, the albumoid of the crystalline lens, the ground substance of the chorda dorsalis, the organic basis of fish scales, and many similar substances. In every case the substance is characterised necessarily according to its place of origin, little or nothing being known as to its chemical composition.

SECTION VI

THE MECHANISM OF ORGANIC SYNTHESIS

THE ASSIMILATION OF CARBON

THE building up of protoplasm from the material which is available at the earth's surface must be an endothermic process. The food presented to the plant contains the necessary elements, but as a rule in a state of complete oxidation. The energy of the living plant, as of animals, is derived almost entirely from the oxidation of its constituents. The building up of unorganised into organised material must therefore be effected at the expense of energy supplied from without. The source of this energy is the sun's rays. The machine for the conversion of solar radiant energy into the chemical potential energy of protoplasm is the green leaf. Here a deoxidation of the carbon dioxide of the atmosphere takes place, with the production of carbohydrates, generally in the form of starch. The formation of starch must be regarded as the first act in the life-cycle, since this substance serves as a source of energy to the already formed protoplasm in its work of building up all the other constituents of the living cell. It is the solar energy captured by the green leaf which is utilised by all plants devoid of chlorophyll, as well as by the whole animal kingdom.

There are one or two exceptions to this statement. Thus the bacterium nitrosomonas, described by Winogradsky, grows on a medium devoid of all organic constituents, and derives the energy for its constructional activity from that set free in the conversion of ammonia into nitrites. The sulphur bacteria apparently derive their energy from the decomposition of hydrogen sulphide and the liberation of sulphur.

The fundamental importance of this process of assimilation for the whole of physiology justifies some account of the researches which have been directed to the elucidation of its mechanism. The production of oxygen by the green plant was discovered by Priestley in 1772, and a few years later Ingenhaus showed that this production occurred only in the light and was effected only by green plants. De Saussure (1804) pointed out that the essential process concerned was a setting free of the oxygen from the carbon dioxide of the atmosphere, and recognised that the co-operation of water was also necessary. Mohl in 1851 observed the formation of starch grains in the chlorophyll corpuscles, and regarded these as the first products of assimilation. The organs of carbon dioxide assimilation are the chloroplasts. These, which are responsible for the green colour of plants, are generally small oval bodies embedded in the cytoplasm, but sometimes, as in spirogyra, may have the form of spiral bands. In a plant which has been kept for some time in the dark, or in an atmosphere free from carbon dioxide, they present

no enclosed granules. Within three to five minutes after exposure to light in the presence of carbon dioxide, starch granules make their appearance within them, and grow rapidly, assuming the typical laminated structure. Engelmann has pointed out a means by which it can be proved that the chloroplasts carry out this process without the co-operation of the rest of the cytoplasm. Certain bacteria have a great avidity for oxygen and present movements only in the presence of this gas. If a filament of spirogyra be placed in a suspension of these bacteria and be examined under a microscope, the bacteria will be seen to congregate in the immediate neighbourhood of the chlorophyll bands. The same phenomenon is observed in the case of chlorophyll corpuscles isolated by breaking up the cells in which they were contained. These corpuscles therefore take up carbon dioxide and water, and form carbohydrate and oxygen, as follows:

$$n(6CO_2 + 5H_2O) = (C_6H_{10}O_5)_n + n(6O_2)$$

The whole structure of the green leaf is directed to the furthering of this process. Its cells contain chlorophyll corpuscles, which change their position according to the intensity of the illumination. A free supply of air to all the cells is provided by means of the stomata on the under surface of the leaf. Horace Brown has shown that the rate at which carbon dioxide diffuses through such fine openings is as great as if the whole leaf were an absorbing surface. We get therefore optimum absorption of carbon dioxide by the leaf, with the maximum protection of the absorbing tissue and the necessary limitation of loss of water by transpiration.

In view of the very small amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere, the extent of the assimilatory process is remarkable. One square metre of leaf of the catalpa can lay on 1 grm. of solid per hour, using up for this purpose 784 ccm. carbon dioxide. The rapidity of assimilation is increased within limits by increasing the intensity of the light falling on the plant, though an over-stimulation of the process is prevented by the movements of the chloroplasts just mentioned. It is also increased by raising the percentage of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere supplied to the leaf. The optimum percentage of carbon dioxide will of course vary with the other conditions of the leaf. In certain experiments Kreusler found the optimum to be about 1 per cent. Taking the amount of assimilation in normal air with ·03 per cent. carbon dioxide at 100, the assimilation in an atmosphere containing 1 per cent. was 237, and was not increased by raising the percentage of carbon dioxide to 7 per cent. Owing to the decomposition of the organic matter of the soil, the percentage of carbon dioxide near the ground is always greater than in the higher strata of the atmosphere—a fact which is taken advantage of by the low-growing plants and herbage. Other necessary conditions of assimilation are the presence of water and the maintenance of a certain external temperature. The absorption of the sun's rays by the leaf raises the temperature of the latter above that of the surrounding medium, and so quickens the process of assimilation.

The assimilation of carbon dioxide, the formation of starch, and the

evolution of oxygen will go on in the isolated chloroplast. In the absence of chlorophyll, as in an etiolated leaf, the formation of starch will take place if the plant be supplied with a sugar such as glucose, and this conversion represents the main function of the *leucoplasts* present in all the cells of the reserve organs of plants. In the absence of chlorophyll no decomposition of carbon dioxide takes place, so that this pigment is evidently essential for the utilisation of the sun's energy. Chlorophyll may be extracted from leaves by means of absolute alcohol. A solution is thus obtained which is green by transmitted and red by reflected light, *i.e.* chlorophyll is a fluorescent substance. It presents four absorption bands, the chief being an intense black band between Fraunhofer's lines B and C. If the chlorophyll is the means of conversion of the solar into chemical energy, the conversion must take place at the expense of the light which is absorbed by the pigment. One would expect therefore the process of assimilation to be most pronounced in those parts of the spectrum corresponding to the absorption bands an expectation which has been realised by experiment.

As to the exact chemical changes effected by these absorbed rays physiologists are still undecided. There can be no doubt that an early product of the process is a hexose, which is rapidly converted into cane sugar or into starch. It was suggested by Baeyer in 1870 that carbon dioxide was reduced to formaldehyde, which later by condensation yielded sugar. We know that formaldehyde easily polymerises to form a mixture of hexoses, but until recently no evidence had been brought forward of its presence as an intermediate product in the assimilatory process. For most plants, indeed, formaldehyde is extremely poisonous, though certain algæ, as well as the water-plant, *Elodea*, can stand a solution containing ·001 per cent. formaldehyde Bokorny stated that spirogyra could form starch out of such derivatives of formaldehyde as sodium oxymethyl-sulphonate, or from methylal. The difficulty in these cases is that possibly a spontaneous formation of sugar from the formaldehyde had taken place in the solution and that the plants were using up the sugar rather than the formaldehyde as the source of their starch.

One must assume, with Timiriazeff, that the function of chlorophyll in the process of assimilation is that of a sensitiser. Just as the addition of eosin to the emulsion used for coating photographic plates will render these sensitive to the red and green parts of the spectrum, *i.e.* will excite change in the silver salt when light from these parts of the spectrum falls upon it, so the chlorophyll serves as a means by which the absorbed solar energy can be utilised for the production of chemical change in the chloroplast. Attempts have been made to imitate this process outside the plant. Thus Bach passed a stream of carbon dioxide through a 1·5 per cent. solution of a fluorescent substance, uranium acetate, in sunlight. As a result there was a precipitate of uranium oxide and peroxide, with the formation of traces of formaldehyde. Usher and Priestley, on treating a solution of carbon dioxide with 1·5 per cent. uranium acetate or sulphate in bright sunlight, obtained uranium peroxide and formic acid, but no formaldehyde. The formation of peroxides

in these conditions suggests that the first change in the chloroplast may be as follows:

$$CO_2 + 3H_2O = 2H_2O_2 + CH_2O$$

Such a reaction must be regarded as reversible since the hydrogen peroxide first formed would tend to oxidise the formaldehyde again. Moreover it would have a destructive influence on the chlorophyll itself, which is easily oxidised. In order therefore that the reaction should go on in one direction only, *i.e.* that of assimilation, means must be present in the chlorophyll corpuscles for the removal of both hydrogen peroxide and formaldehyde as soon as they are formed. The removal of the hydrogen peroxide can be effected by a catalase, which is fairly widely distributed in plants and has been shown by the last-named authors to be present in the chloroplasts. In order to demonstrate the production of the first result of assimilation, *i.e.* formaldehyde, the further stages in its conversion must be stopped by killing the plant and the catalase it contains. They therefore placed leaves, which had been boiled, in water saturated with carbon dioxide and exposed them to bright sunlight. The leaves were bleached by the oxidation of the chlorophyll, and some substance of an aldehydic nature was produced, as shown by the red colour obtained on placing them in rosaniline, previously decolorised with sulphurous acid.

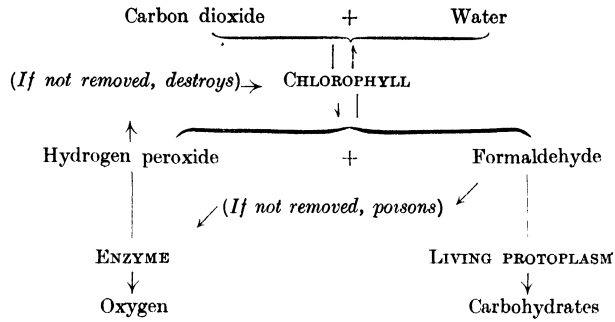
Two proofs were brought forward that this substance was formaldehyde:

(*a*) Some of the bleached leaves were soaked for twelve hours in aniline water. The chloroplasts under the microscope were seen to contain crystals resembling methylene aniline.

(*b*) The leaves were distilled in a current of steam. The distillate was shown to contain formaldehyde by the formation of methylene aniline crystals on treatment with aniline, and by the preparation from it of the characteristic tetrabrome derivative of hexamethylenetetramine.

Usher and Priestley conclude that the first products of the photolysis of carbonic acid are hydrogen peroxide and formaldehyde. Both these substances are rapidly removed from the reaction. The hydrogen peroxide is broken up by the catalase into water and oxygen which is turned out by the plant. The formaldehyde is at once polymerised in the protoplasm of the chloroplast with the formation first of a hexose and then of starch. The formaldehyde, if not removed in this way, destroys the catalase. The hydrogen peroxide, if not broken up by the catalase, destroys the chlorophyll.

The relations between the various factors in this process may be diagrammatically expressed thus:



In thus reducing certain of the stages in the assimilation of carbon to phenomena which can be imitated outside the living organism, we have made considerable strides in the ' understanding ' of the process. The stage for which the vitality of the chloroplast is absolutely essential is the formation of starch from formaldehyde. Outside the body, our polymerisation of formaldehyde results in the formation of a mixture of sugars which are optically inactive. The same process, in the living cell, leads to the production of optically active sugars which are connected stereochemically and mutually convertible one into the other, *e.g.* fructose and glucose. The derivatives of protoplasm, containing asymmetric carbon atoms, are in the same way optically active, and it seems that the asymmetry of the protoplasmic molecule conditions a corresponding asymmetry in the substance which it builds on to itself The protoplasm furnishes, so to speak, a mould in which polymerisation of formaldehyde can result only in the production of sugars of certain definite stereochemical configurations.

Few, if any, chemical reactions are pure. Nearly all are attended with by-reactions, so that the yield of end product never attains 100 per cent. of the theoretical yield. Even if the above mechanism be regarded as the chief one, it is probable that side reactions take place at the same time, so that we may have the formation of substances such as glyoxylic acid and other derivatives of the fatty acid series. Such by-products might play an important part in the other synthetic activities of the cell, and especially in the formation of fats and proteins.

THE FORMATION OF PROTEINS

Our knowledge of the mechanism by which proteins are synthetised in plants is still more incomplete than that of the synthesis of carbohydrates, and we are reduced in most cases to a discussion of the possible ways in which, from our knowledge of the chemical behaviour of the constituents of the protein molecule, we might conceive of its formation. We can at any rate state the problems which have to be solved and study the conditions under which the synthesis of protein is possible in plants and in animals.

We know that plants are independent of any organic food for building up their various constituents, whether carbohydrate, protein, or fat, provided only that they possess chlorophyll corpuscles and so are able to utilise

the energy of the sun's rays. Most plants will grow in the dark if supplied with sugar and with combined nitrogen either in the form of ammonia or of nitrates. The higher plants are especially dependent on the presence of nitrogen in the latter form, and it is on this account that the nitrifying bacteria of the soil acquire so great an importance for agriculture. From the carbon dioxide of the atmosphere or from the hexose formed by the assimilation of carbon, and from nitrogen, in the form either of ammonia or nitrates, together with inorganic sulphates, the plant cell is able to build up all the various types of protein which are distributed throughout the vegetable kingdom. Our study of the disintegration products of proteins has shown that this class of bodies contains a large number of the most diverse groups, having as a common character the possession of nitrogen in their molecule, generally as an NH_2 or NH group. These disintegration products can be classified as follows:

(*a*) Open chain amino-acids.
(*b*) Heterocyclic compounds, including:
  (1) Pyrrol derivatives.
  (2) Pyrimidine derivatives.
  (3) Iminazol derivatives.

These two last groups co-exist in all the purine compounds.

(*c*) Benzene derivatives.
(*d*) Indol derivatives.

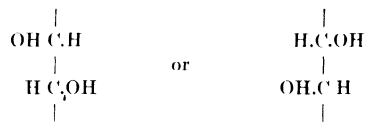
The first step in the synthesis of proteins is probably the formation of these constituent groups. Just as in digestion the protein molecule is taken to pieces with the formation of the different amino-acids, so in the synthetic action of protoplasm the reverse process of dehydration occurs, resulting in a coupling up of the different groups, as has been effected by Fischer in the case of the polypeptides. Wherever transport of protein from one part of the organism to another is necessary the protein is carried, not in its original form, but in the hydrolysed condition of amino-acids. Thus the germination of seeds which contain rich stores of protein is accompanied by a liberation of proteolytic ferments within the cells of the seeds, and the breakdown of the reserve protein into its constituent amino-acids. As amino-acids it is transported into the growing tip and leaves of the seedling, analysis of the latter showing a very large percentage of nitrogen in the form of amino-acids. This is especially the case if the synthetic functions of the growing tip are hindered by interference with assimilation, as, *e.g.* by keeping the plant in the dark. Under these circumstances, asparagine may form as much as 25 per cent. of the total dried weight of the seedling. In animals the greater part of the protein of the food is broken down into its constituent amino-acids in the intestine. These are absorbed and probably carried to the different organs of the body, where they are resynthetised, generally in different proportions from those of the original protein, into the protein specific for the organ or tissue. The same process of hydrolysis and subsequent synthesis occurs whenever the transport of protein is necessary from one organ to another. We shall later on have to discuss the

possibility of synthesis of the different amino-acids in animals. We need therefore at present deal only with the possible methods by which, from the glucose or substances produced in the assimilation of carbon and from the ammonia or nitrates derived from the soil, the plant is able to make the different groups which go to the building up of the protein molecule.

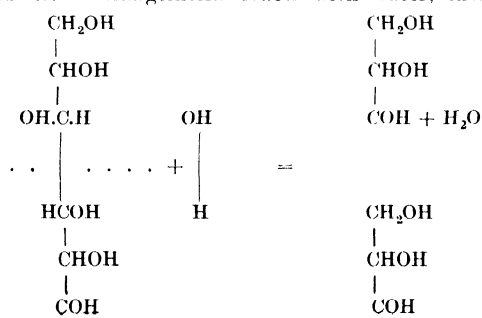
All the amino-acids contain the NH_2 group in the α position. We can therefore consider them as formed by the interaction of an α-oxyacid and ammonia. Thus:

This particular example, namely, the formation of alanine, may occur at the expense of the glucose produced as the first product of assimilation of carbon dioxide. If a solution of glucose together with lime be exposed to sunlight for a considerable time it undergoes decomposition with the formation of lactic acid. Thus:

This change of glucose to lactic acid under the catalytic influence of the alkaline calcium hydrate probably occurs by means of a shifting of the elements of the water, a process which in many long chains seems to occur with considerable facility, and is dependent on the spatial configuration of the molecule involved. Thus the change of sugar to lactic acid is readily effected by means of many micro-organisms in the case of glucose, fructose, and mannose, but with considerable difficulty in the case of galactose. In the three former sugars the atoms round the two middle carbon atoms of the chain are disposed thus:



When either of these arrangements reacts with water, thus:



we obtain two molecules of glyceric aldehyde, which then by a further shifting of the OH and H groups becomes

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CH.OH \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}$$

lactic acid

Lactic acid with ammonia and some dehydrating agent will give amino-propionic acid or alanine. The formation of the higher amino-acids involves a process of reduction of the sugar first formed in the chlorophyll granules. It is possible however that the starting-point for the amino-acid synthesis may be, not a hexose itself, but some other substances, formed, so to speak, as by-products in the assimilation of sugar from carbon dioxide. We have seen reason to believe that the first result of the action of the sun's rays within the chlorophyll corpuscle is formaldehyde. This substance in the presence of calcium carbonate when exposed to the light gives a mixture of glyceryl aldehyde and dihydroxyacetone. If we can assume that acetone is formed from the latter by a process of reduction, we might possibly derive leucine from an interaction of this substance with lactic acid and ammonia. Thus:

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CO \\ | \\ CH_3 \end{array} + \begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CH.OH \\ | \\ COOH \end{array} + NH_3 + H_2 \quad - \quad \begin{array}{l} CH_3 \quad CH_3 \\ \quad CH \diagup \\ \quad\quad | \\ CH_2 \\ | \\ CH.NH_2 \\ | \\ COOH \end{array} + 2H_2O$$

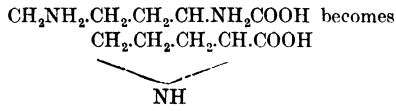
As an intermediate product in the synthesis of starch, glyoxylic acid $\begin{array}{l} CHO \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}$ has been described as occurring in the green parts of plants. This substance with ammonia gives formyl glycine, and by the splitting off of formic acid, glycine or amino-acetic acid. Why nitrates are necessary for certain forms of plants is not at present understood. In the proteins nitrogen always occurs in an unoxidised form as NH or NH_2, and the nitrates taken up from the soil must therefore undergo reduction before they can be built into the protein molecule. It is supposed that they may pass through a series of reductions, namely:

HNO_3	HNO_2	HNO	$H_2N—OH$
nitric acid	nitrous acid	hyponitrous acid	hydroxylamine

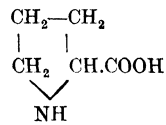
and that the latter substance then reacts with formaldehyde or other substance derived from the carbon dioxide assimilation to form amino-compounds. In general we may say that the probable mechanism of formation of amino-acids is the production of α-oxyacids, which then react with ammonia to form the amino-acids of the protein molecule; but of the

exact steps in this process we are at present ignorant. Knoop's work would point to the ketonic acids as forming one step, and as interacting with ammonia, with simultaneous reduction, to form amino-acids.

The pyrrol ring which occurs in proline and in oxyproline may possibly be derived from an open chain amino-acid, and it has in fact been suggested that the proline found in the products of the acid digestion of proteins is derived from ornithine by a process of condensation with the loss of ammonia. Thus :

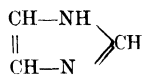


or, as it is generally written :

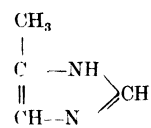


Its pre-existence in the protein molecule is however practically assured, and it plays an important part in the building up both of chlorophyll and of hæmatin, the prosthetic group of hæmoglobin

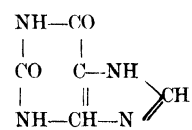
Iminazol



occurs in histidine (which is iminazol alanine), and can be formed fairly readily by the action of certain catalytic agents on a mixture of glucose and ammonia. Thus, if a solution of glucose with ammonia and zinc oxide be exposed to light, methyl iminazol is formed in large quantities. Windaus and Knoop imagined that in this process glyceric aldehyde and formaldehyde are first formed, and that these then interact with ammonia to form methyl iminazol.



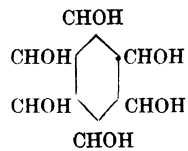
It is interesting to note that, if we attach to this compound carbamide or urea, we obtain a body belonging to the class of purines. Xanthine, for instance, would have a formula



Thus by the action of simple catalytic agencies on sugar and ammonia we can obtain the iminazol nucleus, and by easy transitions pass through

this to the purine nucleus with its contained ring, the pyrimidine nucleus, found in the bases cytosine, uracil, &c., which occur in the nucleins.

With regard to the formation of the aromatic constituents of the protein molecule, *i.e.* those containing the benzene and indol rings, we have at present very little indication even of the lines along which it might be possible to prosecute our researches. It has been suggested that inosite may represent some stage in the formation of the benzene ring from the open chain found in the carbohydrates. Inosite has the same formula as glucose, namely, $C_6H_{12}O_6$, but is a saturated ring compound:



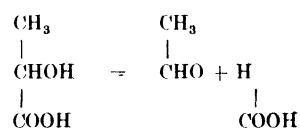
and may be expected to be formed as a result of polymerisation of formaldehyde. We have no evidence however of the possibility of such a formation, and the relations of this substance with the benzene compounds are by no means intimate. It is of such universal occurrence, both in plants and animals, that it is difficult to refrain from the suspicion that it may play some part as an intermediate stage between the fatty and the aromatic series.

Since plants are able to manufacture all these varied substances out of the products of assimilation of carbon and ammonia or nitrates, they must also find no difficulty in transforming one amino-acid into another, and we know that most plants can procure their nitrogen from a solution of a single amino-acid as well as from a nutrient fluid containing the nitrogen in the form of ammonia. In animals the power of transforming one amino-acid into another, of one group into another, is probably strictly limited. So far as we know, nearly all the amino-acids utilised in the building up of the animal proteins are derived directly from those contained in the food. On the other hand, we have evidence in the animal body of synthesis of the purine bodies, and therefore of the pyrimidine and iminazol rings. The hen's egg at the beginning of incubation contains very little nuclein, nearly the whole of its phosphorus being present in the form of phosphoproteins and lecithin. As incubation proceeds these substances disappear, their place being taken by the nucleins which form the chief constituent of the nuclei of the developing chick. In the same way the ovaries and testes of the salmon are formed during their sojourn in fresh water at the expense of the skeletal muscles, especially those of the back. Here again there is a transformation of a tissue poor in purine bases into a tissue which consists almost exclusively of nucleins and protamines. Whether in this case there is a direct conversion of the mono-amino-acids of the muscle proteins into the diamino-acids and bases typical of protamines, we do not know. It is more probable that only diamino-acids and bases previously existing in the muscle are utilised for the

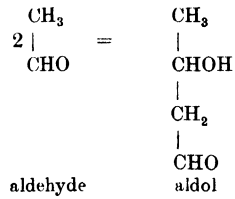
formation of the generative glands, the other amino-acids being oxidised and utilised for the ordinary energy requirements of the animal.

THE SYNTHESIS OF FATS

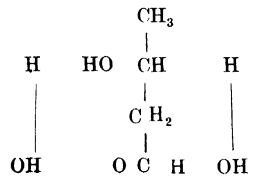
In some plants fat globules have been stated to appear as the first products of the assimilation of carbon dioxide under the influence of sunlight, but there is no doubt that as a rule the formation of fats as reserve material in seeds or fruits occurs at the expense of carbohydrates. In the higher animals too, although a certain amount of the fat of the body is derived from the fat taken up with the food, the organism can also manufacture neutral fat out of the carbohydrates presented to it in its food. The problem therefore of the synthesis of the fats is the problem of the conversion of a sugar such as glucose into glycerin and the fatty acids. Although this conversion is apparently so easily effected by the living organism, it is one which from the chemical standpoint involves considerable difficulties. On account of the fact that the higher fatty acids consist largely of oleic and stearic acids, *i.e.* acids containing eighteen carbon atoms in their chain, it has been thought that the synthesis might be brought about by the linking together of three molecules of a hexose. Such a change would involve a series of difficult chemical transformations. For instance, no less than sixteen out of the eighteen oxygen atoms present in the three glucose molecules would have to be dislodged in order to convert the chain into stearic acid. Moreover, although these two acids contain a multiple of six carbon atoms, a whole array of fats are found both in plants and animals which could not be derived by a simple aggregation of glucose molecules; and it is worthy of note that, of all the fatty acids which occur in nature, all those with more than five carbon atoms contain an even number of carbon atoms. Thus in milk, in addition to the three common fats, tristearin, tripalmitin, and triolein, we find the glycerides of caproic, caprylic, capric, lauric, and myristic acids, *i.e.* acids with 6, 8, 10, 12, and 14 carbon atoms. In all cases these acids are the normal acids with straight unbranched chains. It seems probable that in the transformation of carbohydrate into fatty acid the latter is built up, not by six carbon atoms, but by two carbon atoms at a time. It has been suggested by Magnus Levy and by Leathes that the transformation may occur by way of lactic acid. We have seen already that glucose and the sugars of analogous composition may be converted under the influence either of sunlight or of micro-organisms into lactic acid. Lactic acid breaks down with readiness into aldehyde and formic acid.



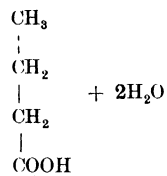
Aldehyde undergoes condensation to form aldol.



Aldol reacts with water and undergoes a shifting of its OH and H groups, in a manner with which we are already familiar as occurring in the conversion of glucose into lactic acid, forming butyric acid. We may represent the reaction in the following way, placing the water molecules opposite those groups of the aldol molecule with which they react:



gives



It will be seen that although water must enter into the reaction there is no addition of water to the aldol in order to form the butyric acid.

It has been suggested that similar reactions might account for the formation of the higher fatty acids, in which case one molecule of acetic aldehyde would be added to the fatty acid in order to build up the acid which is next highest in the series. Although certain of the higher acids have been prepared in this way, proof is still wanting that a continuous series of syntheses may be effected by the continuous addition of aldehyde. Such a hypothesis is however more probable than the direct conversion of three molecules of sugar into one molecule of stearic acid. The latter change would be associated with a very great absorption of energy, whereas a continuous building up of fatty acids, by the addition of aldehyde obtained through lactic acid from the disintegration of hexose molecules, requires only a small expenditure of energy, which could be obtained by the combustion of the formic acid formed as a by-product in the process. If we suppose that the synthesis of the higher fatty acids from sugar is carried out in this way, the energy equations would be as follows (Leathes):

$$\left.\begin{array}{c}\text{1 g. mol. glucose}\\ \text{677·2 cals.}\end{array}\right\} \longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{2 g. mols. aldehyde + 2 g. mols. formic acid.}\\ \qquad 2 + 275{\cdot}5 + 2 \times 61{\cdot}7\\ \qquad\qquad = 674{\cdot}4 \text{ cals.}\end{array}\right.$$

2 g. mols. aldehyde, 551 cals. → 1 g. mol. aldol, 546·8 cals. → 1 g. mol. butyric acid, 517·8 cals.

Or, tracing the same change on as far as palmitic acid:

4 g. mols. glucose, 2708 cals. → 1 g. mol. palmitic acid, 2362 cals. + 8 g. mols. formic acid, + 494 cals. = 2856 cals.

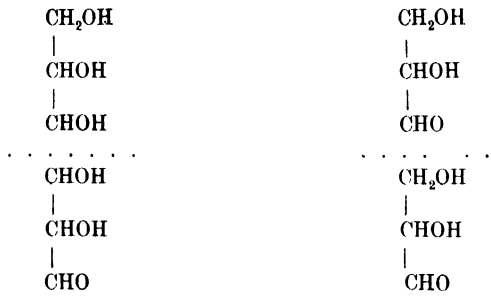
In the first stage of the synthesis, the reaction leading to butyric acid, the net result would be, supposing the formic acid to be oxidised, that some 160 calories or nearly 25 per cent. of the whole energy, would be rendered available for other purposes. In the latter stages leading to palmitic acid some of the energy derived from the oxidation of the formic acid would be required for effecting the synthesis, and only about 12·5 per cent. of the original amount contained in the sugar would be set free. It is worth noting that in the butyric fermentation of sugar by micro-organisms there is a production first of lactic acid, and this substance then disappears to give place to butyric acid. At the same time carbonic acid and hydrogen are evolved, both gases being derived from the decomposition of the formic acid. In the process a certain amount of caproic acid is always produced, and the crude butyric acid of fermentation is used as the source from which commercial caproic acid is derived.

Attempts to produce the higher fatty acids by the condensation of successive molecules of aldehyde have so far resulted only in the production of branched chains of carbon atoms, whereas the normal fatty acids of the body are straight chains; though Raper has shown that the normal caproic acid may be formed by the condensation of aldol with itself. Miss Smedley has suggested that a more probable line of synthesis lies through pyruvic acid. Pyruvic acid, which may be produced in the body from lactic acid, and so from carbohydrate, is fermented by yeast with the production of acetaldehyde and carbon dioxide, by means of a ferment carboxylase. If we assume the existence of a similar ferment in the cells of the body, it would split this acid into aldehyde and CO_2. Aldehyde however combines with a molecule of pyruvic acid to form a higher keto-acid, which might either be oxidised to the fatty acid containing one carbon atom less, or might be again transformed by enzymes into an aldehyde capable of reacting with another molecule of pyruvic acid. These changes are represented in the following equations:

$$CH_3CO.COOH = CH_3CHO + CO_2$$
$$CH_3CHO + CH_3CO.COOH = CH_3CHOH.CH_2.CO.COOH$$
$$CH_3CHOH.CH_2.CO.COOH + O = CH_3CHOH.CH_2COOH + CO_2$$

β-oxyacids would thus be a normal stage in the building up as well as in the breaking down of fatty acids.

The glycerin which enters into the formation of the ordinary neutral fats can be synthetised by both plants and animals, and there is every ground for believing that it, like the fatty acids, may be derived from carbohydrates. We have already seen that in the conversion of glucose into lactic acid the first step is the formation of glyceric aldehyde,



and it is easy to understand how by a process of reduction the aldehyde is converted into the corresponding alcohol, namely, glycerin. The synthesis of the neutral fat from glycerin and fatty acid is a change which can be accomplished by many ferments. It is one involving practically no absorption or expenditure of energy. The change is a reversible one, and we find both in plants and animals that a hydrolysis of neutral fat into fatty acid and glycerin always occurs when a transport of the fat is required, while the laying down of fat as a store of energy is always preceded by a resynthesis of the neutral fat. We shall have occasion to deal in greater detail with these questions when we have to discuss the formation and fate of the fat in the animal body.

CHAPTER IV

THE ENERGETIC BASIS OF THE BODY

SECTION I

THE ENERGY OF MOLECULES IN SOLUTION

EVERY vital act involves at the same time a transformation of the material basis of the living cell and a transformation of energy. The ultimate source of the energies displayed by the animal organism is the chemical energy of the substances taken in as food. In all the changes undergone by either matter or energy in the body there is neither destruction nor creation. The living organism may therefore be regarded in one sense as a machine, that is to say, a system for the conversion of one form of energy into another. Thus the steam-engine converts the potential energy of overheated steam into mechanical work; a gas-engine the chemical energy of an explosive mixture of gases into heat and mechanical energy; in a battery there is a transformation of chemical into electrical energy; in a dynamo, of mechanical into electrical energy, and so on. In the living cell the chemical energy of the food may undergo conversion into any of the other forms mentioned above, *i.e.* heat, work, electrical difference of potential, or it may be used for the production of other chemical substances possessing perhaps as much potential energy as or more than the food-stuffs themselves.

Protoplasm, which is the seat of all these changes in both plants and animals, is active only within fairly narrow limits of temperature, approximately between 5° and 40° C. In consistence it is slimy and wet, water forming from 70 to 95 per cent. of its bulk. No substance introduced into the protoplasm has any influence on it, unless it be soluble, and the first stage in the preparation of food-stuffs for assimilation always consists in a process of solution. The sole source of energy to the body being that conveyed with the food, it follows that all the energy with which we have to deal is the energy of *molecules in watery solution*, the playground of whose activities is a jelly-like mass of colloidal material, heterogeneous yet structurally continuous. It is important therefore at the outset to inquire into the nature of this energy and the methods by which it may be measured.

OSMOTIC PRESSURE. If we place two gas jars together, mouth to mouth, as in Fig. 19, the upper jar containing hydrogen and the lower jar some heavier gas, such as oxygen or carbon dioxide, within a very short time

the gases will have become intimately mixed, and each jar will contain an equal amount of both gases. We say that each gas has diffused into the other, and ascribe the diffusion to the movement of the gaseous molecules. In closed vessels the rapidly moving molecules are continually impinging on the walls of the vessels and rebounding, and it is this bombardment by the gaseous molecules which is responsible for the pressure exerted by a gas on its containing walls. If we double the amount of gas in a given space, we double the amount of molecules which strike a unit area of the wall in unit time, and therefore double the pressure exerted by the gas on the vessel wall. In this way we may explain the law of Boyle that the pressure of a gas is inversely proportional to its volume, or the product of pressure and volume at a given temperature is a constant, $PV=C$, or since the energy of the molecules is proportionate to the absolute temperature, $PV = RT$, the familiar gas equation.

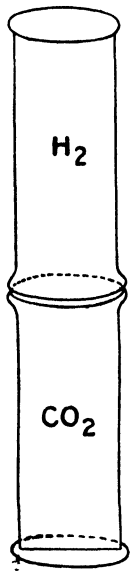


FIG. 19.

The molecules of substances in solution behave, *within the limits of the solution*, in a manner precisely similar to the free molecules of a gas. Thus, if a vessel be half filled with a 10 per cent. solution of sugar and be then filled up by carefully pouring distilled water, so as to form a distinct layer on the heavier sugar solution, the sugar at once begins to move upwards into the distilled water. In consequence of the resistance offered to the movement of the sugar molecules through the water, this process of *diffusion* is slow, but if the vessel be left undisturbed and free from any agitation for two or three months, the sugar will be found to spread gradually throughout the liquid, so that at the end of this time all parts of the fluid contain a uniform amount of sugar.

This process of diffusion, like that of gases, must be ascribed to a continuous translatory movement of the dissolved molecules. Since the molecules possess mass and are endowed with a velocity, it is evident that they can exercise a pressure on any membrane or dividing surface which tends to hinder their free passage within the limits of the solvent. Thus if we take a pig's bladder containing a 20 per cent. solution of dextrose and immerse it in distilled water, water will pass in and distend the bladder to such an extent that it may burst from the rise of pressure in its interior. This swelling of the bladder is due to the fact that the molecules of sugar pass through it only with difficulty, and therefore in their passage outwards towards the confines of the water exert a pressure on the walls, driving them apart and so causing a distension of the bladder. It is impossible however by this means to obtain the full osmotic pressure due to the pressure exerted by the sugar molecules, since the bladder wall itself is not absolutely impermeable to sugar. If we imagine the sugar solution confined in a cylinder and covered with a layer of distilled water, the movement of the sugar molecules will cause them to wander from the lower to the upper part, and

this process of diffusion will cease only when the concentration has become the same in all parts of the solution. Supposing however the two fluids are separated by a piston, P (Fig. 20), which is 'semi-permeable,' *i.e.* allows free passage to water, but not to the dissolved sugar, the molecules of sugar will now exert a pressure on the piston similar to that exerted on the walls of the containing vessel, and will tend to drive it upwards. The force which it is necessary to apply to the piston to prevent its upward movement will be the measure of the osmotic pressure of the sugar in the solution. If the piston be pressed down with a greater force, the sugar molecules alone are pressed together, since water can pass freely through the surface of the piston, and the sugar solution is therefore rendered more concentrated. Since force must be applied to the piston in order to press it down, work is done in the process, so that the concentration of any solution involves the performance of an amount of work determined by the initial and final osmotic pressures of the solution. If, on the other hand, a weight be applied to the piston which is less than the osmotic pressure exerted by the sugar solution, the piston with its weight will be moved upwards, and the solution will undergo dilution until its osmotic pressure exactly balances the weight on the piston. We see that the osmotic pressure of a solution represents a certain amount of potential energy, which can be utilised in an osmotic machine, such as that represented in the diagram, for the performance of work.

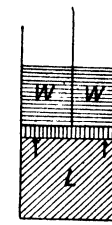


FIG. 20.

THE MEASUREMENT OF OSMOTIC PRESSURE. By a method differing but little from the one just sketched out, Pfeffer succeeded directly in measuring the osmotic pressure of certain solutions. For this purpose Pfeffer took advantage of the fact, discovered by Traube, that various precipitates, if deposited in the form of membranes, were impermeable to the substances producing them as well as to some other dissolved substances, though allowing a free passage of water. Thus, if a drop of a concentrated solution of potassium ferrocyanide suspended to a glass rod be introduced carefully into a more dilute solution of copper sulphate, it will be observed that at the junction of the drop and the surrounding fluid there is a brown membranous precipitate of copper ferrocyanide. In consequence of the greater concentration of the fluid in the drop, a constant passage of water takes place from without inwards through the membrane, and the drop therefore grows continually in size, sometimes sending out branches as a result of slight currents in the fluid set up by accidental vibrations. Sugar introduced into such a drop, although quickening its rate of growth, does not pass out into the surrounding copper sulphate solution, nor is there any passage of copper sulphate inwards or potassium ferrocyanide outwards. Pfeffer conceived the idea of depositing such a semi-permeable membrane within the interstices of a clay cell. Strengthened in this way, it is able to afford a resistance to pressure, and therefore to permit of the contained fluid reaching its full osmotic pressure. For this purpose a porous jar carefully cleansed and containing a solution of sugar mixed with a little copper sulphate is

dipped into a weak solution of potassium ferrocyanide. A semi-permeable membrane of copper ferrocyanide is thus produced in the pores of the filter, and this, while allowing the passing of water, is impermeable to the sugar. The tube is then fitted with a cork provided with a closed mercurial manometer and is immersed in distilled water, when it is found that water passes into the cell until the pressure within the latter is equal to the osmotic pressure of the dissolved substances. By this means Pfeffer obtained the following results with a 1 per cent. solution of cane sugar at different temperatures:

Temp. °C.	Pressure in atmospheres	
		Calculated
	Atm.	Atm.
6·8	0·664	0·665
13·7	0·691	0·681
22·0	0·721	0·701
32·0	0·716	0·725
36·0	0·746	0·735

It is always possible to calculate the pressure of a gas when its nature, its mass, and its volume are known. By Avogadro's hypothesis, equal volumes of gases at the same pressure contain equal numbers of molecules. On this account the molecular weight of any gas can be reckoned directly from its density. The figures obtained by Pfeffer show that the same laws apply to the osmotic pressure of substances in solution as to the pressure of gases in their free state. It is therefore possible to reckon the osmotic pressure which would be exerted by 1 per cent. sugar in solution at a given temperature.

This calculation is carried out as follows: A gramme molecule of any gas at 0° C. and 760 mm. Hg has a volume of 22·4 litres, therefore 342 grammes of cane sugar (the molecular weight of $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11} = 342$), if it could be converted into a gas at 0° C. and 760 mm. Hg, would have a volume of 22·4 litres. One gramme of sugar therefore at the same temperature and pressure would have a volume of $\frac{22{\cdot}4}{342}$ litres $= 65{\cdot}5$ c.c. In Pfeffer's experiment the gramme of sugar was dissolved in 100 grammes of water, making a total volume at 0° C. of 106·6 c.c. The gaseous pressure of the sugar molecules in this solution will therefore amount to $\frac{65{\cdot}5}{100{\cdot}6} = 0{\cdot}651$ atmosphere. At a temperature of 6·8 the pressure would be 0.667 atmosphere, as against the observed 0·664 atmosphere.

Pfeffer's method is difficult to carry out and is not applicable to all dissolved substances, since the cupric ferrocyanide membrane is permeable for many substances, such as potassium nitrate or hydrochloric acid. Other indirect methods have therefore been applied to the comparison of the osmotic pressures of different solutions.

DETERMINATION OF OSMOTIC PRESSURE BY PLASMOLYSIS.

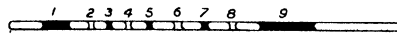
Solutions which have the same osmotic pressure are spoken of as isosmotic or isotonic. The method of plasmolysis, which we owe to the botanist De Vries, consists essentially in the comparison of the osmotic pressure of solutions with that of the cell sap of certain plant cells, and depends on the fact that the 'primordial utricle,' the layer of protoplasm enclosing the cell sap, while freely permeable to water, is impermeable to a large number of salts and other crystalloids, such as sugar. It is therefore, so far as concerns these substances, 'semi-permeable.' The cells which have been most used for this purpose are the cuticular cells on the mid-rib of the lower surface of the leaves of *tradescantia discolor*. If some of these cells are brought into a concentrated salt solution, which is 'hypertonic' as compared with the cell sap, water passes out of the cell into the salt solution, until the contents of the cell attain a molecular concentration equal to that of the surrounding medium. The protoplasmic layer therefore shrinks, leaving a space between it and the cell wall (Fig. 7, p. 23). If the outer solution has a smaller molecular concentration than the cell sap, water passes into the cell and causes here a rise of pressure which simply presses the protoplasm still more closely against the cell wall. If we determine the concentration of the salt solution at which the shrinkage of the protoplasm, the *plasmolysis*, just occurs, and another smaller concentration at which plasmolysis is absent, we know that the concentration of the cell sap lies between those of the two salt solutions. Thus, if plasmolysis occurs in a solution containing 0·6 per cent. sodium chloride and is absent in a solution containing 0·59 per cent. of the same salt, the concentration of the cell sap must be about equivalent to a 0·595 per cent. NaCl solution. Solutions of different salts, in which plasmolysis just occurs, must also be isotonic with one another. Thus a 1·01 per cent. solution of KNO_3 is found to be isotonic with a 0·58 per cent. NaCl solution.

DETERMINATION BY HAMBURGER'S BLOOD-CORPUSCLE METHOD.

The limiting external layer of red blood corpuscles resembles the primordial utricle of plant cells in being impermeable to a number of dissolved substances. If therefore it be placed in a solution of smaller concentration than the corpuscle contents, it will swell up and, since it has no supporting cell wall, the increase in size will go on until the corpuscle bursts, and its contained red colouring-matter, hæmoglobin, passes into solution in the surrounding fluid. If the corpuscles be then allowed to settle or be centrifuged, the fact that hæmolysis has occurred is shown by the red colour of the clear supernatant fluid. With a given sample of blood, the concentration of a potassium nitrate solution is found at which the first traces of hæmolysis occur. In order to determine the osmotic pressure of a solution, say, of sugar or of sodium chloride, these are also added in various dilutions to blood corpuscles until we get solutions in which hæmolysis just occurs. These solutions will then be isotonic with the first determined potassium nitrate solutions. As an example of this method may be adduced the following results:

	Concentration of the solution in which the blood corpuscles do not lose hæmoglobin	Concentration of the solution in which the blood corpuscles begin to lose hæmoglobin	Mean concentration
	Per cent	Per cent	Per cent.
Potassium nitrate . .	1·04	0·96	1·00
Sodium chloride . .	0·60	0·56	0·585
Cane sugar . . .	6·29	5·63	5·96
Potassium iodide . .	1·71	1·57	1·64
Sodium iodide . . .	1·54	1·47	1·505
Potassium bromide . .	1·22	1·13	1·17

OSMOTIC PRESSURE OF ELECTROLYTES. It will be noticed in the last Table that the isotonic solutions of different salts contain these salts in the proportion of their molecular weights, *i.e.* each solution contains the same number of molecules of dissolved salt. For the term isotonic we might therefore employ equimolecular. When however these salts are compared with solutions of sugar, it is found that the osmotic pressures of the salt solutions are double or nearly double those of equimolecular solutions of sugar. The osmotic pressure of a sugar solution is equal to the pressure which its molecules would exert if they occupied the same space in a gaseous form. A dilute salt solution therefore acts as if every one of its molecules were doubled. This deviation of salt solutions from solutions of sugar is bound up with the power of the former to conduct an electric current. A sugar solution conducts electricity little better than pure water. On the



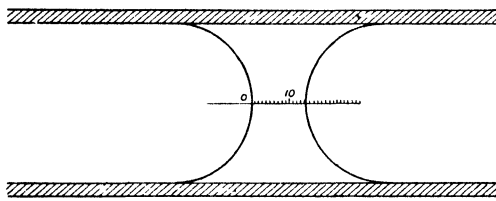


FIG. 21. Diagram to illustrate Barger's method of determining osmotic pressure. The upper figure shows the capillary tube with nine alternate drops of cane sugar and the substance under investigation.

other hand, the smallest trace of salt added to distilled water enormously increases its conducting power. As Arrhenius has shown, this increase of the osmotic pressure of a salt solution is determined by the dissociation which all these salts undergo in watery solution. A dilute solution of sodium chloride contains, not the molecule NaCl, but an equal number of the ions Na and Cl, Na carrying a positive charge while the Cl ions carry a negative charge. As regards osmotic pressure and various other properties, each of these charged ions acts as a whole molecule. It is the existence of these ions which confers on the salt solution the power of conducting electricity—a power the exercise of which is attended with a dissociation (an electrolysis) of the salt into its constituent ions, the electro-positive ion being deposited at the negative pole while the electro-negative ion is deposited at the positive pole. The molecular weight of NaCl is 58·5. The molecular weight of glucose is 180. If there were no dissociation, a 0·58 per cent. solution of NaCl would be isotonic or isosmotic with a 1·8 per cent. solution of glucose. On account of the ionic dissociation or *ionisation*, it is actually isosmotic with a glucose solution of about 3·5 per cent.

INDIRECT METHODS OF MEASURING OSMOTIC PRESSURE. Equimolecular solutions have the same osmotic pressures. Since the osmotic pressure of a solution is therefore directly dependent on the number of molecules it contains in unit space, any method which will give us information as to the number of molecules present will also enable us to determine the osmotic pressure. Other properties of solutions which, like the osmotic pressure, are functions of the number of molecules present, are vapour-tension, boiling-point, freezing-point. The presence of a substance in solution in water diminishes its vapour-tension at any given temperature, raises its boiling-point, and depresses its freezing-point, and the extent of the deviation from distilled water is proportional to the number of dissolved molecules present. The determination of the rise of boiling-point, though much employed by chemists, is of very little value in physiology, owing to the fact that nearly all the fluids of the body are seriously modified in character by a rise of temperature to 100° C. On the other hand, Barger has suggested an ingenious method in which the alteration of vapour-tension is made the basis of a method for determining the osmotic pressure of small quantities of fluids at ordinary temperatures. And this method may find important applications in physiology.

BARGER'S METHOD. Drops of the fluid, the vapour-tension of which it is desired to ascertain, are drawn up into a tube (1·5 mm. in diameter), so as to alternate with small drops of cane sugar solution of known content (Fig. 21) Water in a state of vapour will pass from the solution of which the vapour-tension is the higher. By observing the edge of a drop under a magnification of 65 diams., it can be easily seen whether it has grown or diminished in size. If the edge of the drop remains stationary, it shows that the vapour-tension and the osmotic pressure of the two fluids are equal. A series of trials is made with different strengths of salt solution until this equality is established. In this method only minimal quantities of material are required, and the determination of the aqueous tension is made at ordinary temperatures.

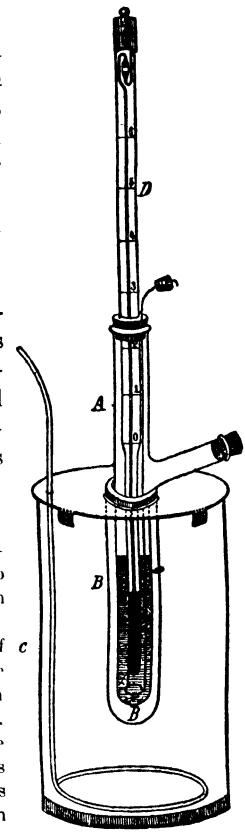


FIG 22. Beckmann's apparatus for determination of freezing-point.

The method however, which is of greatest value in physiology, is the measurement of the depression of freezing-point. The depression of freezing-point can be converted directly into osmotic pressure by multiplying the depression of freezing-point observed by the factor 122·7. Thus a 1 per cent. solution of sodium chloride with $\Delta = 0{\cdot}61$ will have an osmotic pressure of $0{\cdot}61 \times 122{\cdot}7 = 74{\cdot}847$ metres of water.

The determination is carried out in a Beckmann's apparatus with a thermometer reading to $\frac{1}{100}$° C. (Fig. 22). A solution freezes at a lower temperature than pure water,

and the depression of freezing-point is proportional to the number of molecules present. Thus the freezing-point of a 1 per cent. solution of NaCl is −0·61° C. The depression of freezing-point is generally represented by the Greek letter Δ. This method has the advantage that the fluids are in most cases in no wise altered by the process of freezing, and it can be applied to solutions containing coagulable proteins which would be irretrievably altered by any considerable rise of temperature.

Every substance in solution possesses therefore a certain amount of potential energy in the form of osmotic pressure. This pressure is independent of the nature of the substance dissolved and is determined merely by its molecular concentration. It can be used as a driving force for the movement by diffusion of the molecules themselves, or, by the use of appropriate mechanisms or 'machines,' for the performance of mechanical work, or, as will be seen later, for the production of electrical differences of potential.

In addition to this osmotic or volume energy every molecule in solution can be regarded as endowed with a chemical energy, which is dependent not only on the number of molecules present, but also on the nature of the molecules. In the case of electrolytes and of substances which are susceptible of ionisation, the potential or intensity of the chemical energy of each molecule is capable of measurement. On the other hand, the chemical energy of a substance such as glucose cannot be definitely expressed apart from consideration of the conditions under which it is present. If we take the whole course of transformations undergone by glucose in the body, we may speak of it as having a potential energy, which is measured by the total heat energy given out by this substance on its complete combustion with oxygen to carbon dioxide and water. In the intermediate changes which it undergoes during its metabolism in the cells of the body, this energy is probably set free by degrees, but its chemical energy in any given phase cannot be measured unless the conditions and the end results of the chemical changes which it is undergoing are known. This chemical energy may be utilised for the production of heat, for the performance of chemical work in the building up of other substances, or by the multiplication of the number of molecules in a solution, for the production of increased osmotic pressure, which in its turn may be converted into the energy of movement either of masses or of molecules.

SECTION II

THE PASSAGE OF WATER AND DISSOLVED SUBSTANCES ACROSS MEMBRANES

WE have already seen that if, in a solution, the concentration of the dissolved substance or *solute* is not uniform, there is a movement of the substance from the place of higher to the place of lower concentration, and this movement proceeds until the concentration is equal throughout the fluid. This movement of dissolved substances through a fluid is spoken of as diffusion, and is analogous in all respects with the process by which the intermixture of gases is attained. The movement in the case of dissolved substances, as of gases, takes place from the region of higher to the region of lower (osmotic) pressure. It can therefore be ascribed to differences of pressure, or rather to the factor which we regarded as responsible for the production of the pressure, viz. the movement of the molecules themselves. The rate of diffusion is not the same for all substances. In gases the rate varies inversely as the square root of the density of the gas. Thus hydrogen (density = 1) diffuses four times as rapidly as oxygen (density = 16). We find similar differences between the rates of diffusion of dissolved substances—differences which also are determined in all probability by the weight and size of the individual molecules, although the relation between molecular weight and rate of diffusion is not so simple as the ratio between these two quantities in gases. The diffusibility of a substance is given by its diffusion coefficient. The amount of dissolved substance, which diffuses in a unit of time across a given area of fluid, is proportional to the difference between the osmotic pressures at two cross-sections of the column of fluid at an infinitesimally small distance apart. If we take a cylindrical mass of solution which is one centimetre long and has a sectional area of one square centimetre (Fig. 23), and maintain a constant difference of concentration between A and B =1, the diffusion coefficient is the amount of substance which diffuses in a unit of time from A to B. Thus the statement that the diffusion coefficient of urea is 0·810 at 7·5° C. denotes that if A be continually filled with a 1 per cent. solution of urea, while in B a constant current of distilled water is kept up so as to maintain the concentration at zero, in the course of a

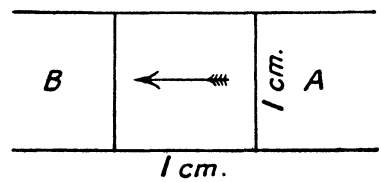


FIG. 23.

day 0·810 gramme of urea will pass from A to B through the cylinder of one centimetre in length and one square centimetre in cross-section. The determination of these diffusion coefficients presents many difficulties. The task is however rendered easier by the fact, first ascertained by Graham, that diffusion of salts occurs as rapidly through a solid jelly of gelatin or agar-agar as through water. It is therefore possible to make the plug in the diagram solid by the admixture of one of these two substances, and to maintain a constant concentration on the two sides of it by the circulation of fluid without affecting the rate of diffusion through the cylinder by setting up accidental currents.

More important from the physiological point of view than diffusion through fluids is the exchange of fluids (water and dissolved substances), which may take place across membranes. Such processes are of constant occurrence in all parts of the body and are concerned in such functions as the formation and absorption of lymph, the absorption from and secretion into the intestines, absorption from serous cavities, and so on. In many of these functions we shall have to consider later whether the transference across the membrane is determined solely by the nature and concentration of the fluids on the two sides of it or is effected by the active intervention, involving the expenditure of energy, on the part of living cells forming constituent elements of the membrane itself. It is worth our while therefore to consider at some greater length the purely physical factors which may be concerned in the passage of water and dissolved substances across membranes.

In the case of fluids containing only one substance in solution, the exchange across the membrane will be determined entirely by the osmotic pressures. Thus, if two watery solutions, with the same osmotic pressure, are separated by a membrane through which diffusion can take place, no change in volume occurs on either side of the membrane. If the solutions on either side of the membrane are of unequal osmotic pressure, water passes from the side where the pressure is lower to the side where it is higher, and there is a simultaneous passage of the solute from the side of greater to the side of less concentration.

If however the solutions on the two sides contain dissimilar substances, with different diffusion coefficients, the conditions are more complicated, and may tend even to produce a movement of fluid in apparent opposition to the difference of osmotic pressure. Under these circumstances the nature of the membrane itself is all-important. We may therefore shortly consider the various modes in which interchanges may take place across membranes of varying permeability. We shall see that the close analogy which exists between substances in solution and gases, when dealing with 'semi-permeable' membranes, is also borne out by experiment when used to predict the behaviour of solutions separated by such permeable membranes as occur in the body.

The simplest case is that in which two fluids are separated by a perfect semi-permeable membrane that permits the passage of water but is absolutely

impermeable to dissolved substances. In this case the transference of water from one side to the other depends entirely on the difference of osmotic pressure between the two sides.

If we suppose two vessels, A and B (Fig. 24), separated by such a membrane, A containing a solution of α and B a solution of β water will pass from A to B so long as the osmetic pressure of β is greater than the osmotic pressure of the solution of α. If B be subjected to a hydrostatic pressure greater than the osmotic difference between the two fluids, water will pass from B to A until the force causing filtration or transudation (the hydrostatic pressure) is equal to the force causing absorption into B (the difference of osmotic pressures). Under no circumstances will there be any transference of salt or dissolved substance between the two sides. Such semi-permeable membranes as this, however, rarely occur in the body over any extent of surface. The external layer of the cell protoplasm may resemble the protoplasmic pellicle of plant cells in possessing this ' semi-permeability ' ; but in nearly all cases where we have a membrane made up of a number of cells, it can be shown to permit the free passage of at any rate a large number of dissolved substances.

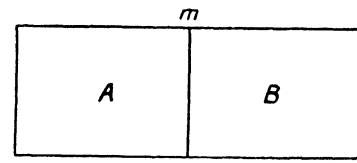


FIG. 24.

Let us now consider what will occur when the two solutions A and B are separated by a membrane which permits the free passage of salts and water. If the osmotic pressure of B be higher than A at the commencement of the experiment, the force tending to move water from A to B will be equal to this osmotic difference. But there is at the same time set up a diffusion of the dissolved substances from B to A and from A to B. The result of this diffusion must be that there is no longer a sudden drop of osmotic pressure from B to A, and the result of the primary osmotic difference on the movement of water will be minimised in proportion to the freedom of diffusion which takes place through the membrane. Now let us take a case in which A and B represent equimolecular and isotonic solutions of α and β. It is evident that the movement of water into A will vary as $Ap - Bp$ * $= 0$. But diffusion also occurs of α into B and of β into A. Now the amount of substance diffusing from a solution is proportional to the concentration, and therefore to its osmotic pressure, as well as to its diffusion coefficient.

Hence the amount of α diffusing into B will vary as $A\,p.\,ak$ (when k is the diffusion coefficient).

In the same way the amount of β diffusing into A will vary as $Bp.\,\beta k'$.

Hence, if ak is greater than $\beta k'$, *i.e.* if α is more diffusible than β, the initial result must be that a greater number of molecules of α will pass into B than of β into A. The solutions on the two sides of the membrane will thus be no longer equimolecular, but the total number of molecules of $\alpha + \beta$ in B will be greater than the number of molecules of $\alpha + \beta$ in A, and this differ-

* Ap = osmotic pressure of A, &c.

ence will be most marked in the layers of fluid nearest the membrane. The result therefore of the unequal diffusion of the two substances is to upset the previous equality of osmotic pressures. The layer of fluid on the B side of the membrane will have an osmotic pressure greater than the layer of fluid in immediate contact with the A side of the membrane, and there will thus be a movement of water from A to B. Hence if we have two equimolecular and isotonic solutions of different substances separated by a membrane permeable to the solutes, there will be an initial movement of fluid towards the side of the less diffusible substance.

We have an exact parallel to this in Graham's familiar experiment, in which a porous pot filled with hydrogen is connected by a vertical tube with a vessel of mercury. In consequence of the more rapid diffusion outwards of the hydrogen than of atmospheric air inwards, the pressure within the pot sinks below that of the surrounding atmosphere and the mercury rises several inches in the tube.

We must therefore conclude that, even when the two solutions on either side of the membrane are isotonic, there may be a movement of fluid from one side to the other with a performance of work in the process. In fact, osmosis may occur from a fluid having a higher *towards* a fluid having a lower osmotic pressure. If, for example, equimolecular solutions of sodium chloride and glucose be separated by a peritoneal membrane, the osmotic flow will take place from the fluid having the higher osmotic pressure—sodium chloride.* We might compare with this experiment the results of separating hydrogen at one atmosphere's pressure from oxygen at two atmospheres' pressure by means of a plate of graphite. In this case the initial result will be a still further increase of pressure on the oxygen side of the diaphragm—a movement of gas against pressure taking place in consequence of the greater diffusion velocity of hydrogen.

So far we have considered only the behaviour of solutions when separated by a membrane, the permeability of which to salts is comparable to that of water ; so that the passage of salts through the membrane depends merely on the diffusion rates of the salts. There can be no doubt however that we might get analogous movements of fluid against total osmotic pressure determined, not by the diffusibility of the salts, but by the permeability of the membrane for the salts—a permeability which may depend on a state of solution or attraction existing between membrane and salts. We have an analogue to such a condition of things in the passage of gases through an india-rubber sheet. If two bottles, one containing carbonic acid, the other hydrogen, be separated by a sheet of india-rubber, carbon dioxide passes into the hydrogen bottle more quickly than hydrogen can pass out into the carbon dioxide bottle, so that a difference of pressure is created, and the rubber bulges into the carbon dioxide bottle. We might, in the same way, conceive of a membrane which permitted the passage of dextrose more

* In consequence of ionic dissociation of the sodium chloride, a decinormal solution of this salt will have an osmotic pressure nearly twice as great as that of a similar solution of the non-ionised glucose.

easily than that of urea. The importance of the membrane in determining the direction of the osmotic passage of fluid is well illustrated by Raoult's experiments. When alcohol and ether were separated by an animal membrane, alcohol passed into the ether, whereas if vulcanite were employed for the diaphragm, the osmotic flow was in the reverse direction, and an enormous pressure was set up on the alcohol side of the diaphragm.*

The next point to be considered is the passage of a dissolved substance across membranes, in consequence of differences in the partial pressure of the substance in question on the two sides of the membrane. Stress has been laid by Heidenhain and others on the fact that in the peritoneal cavity, as well as from the intestine, salt may be taken up from fluids containing a smaller percentage of this substance than does the blood plasma, and they regard this absorption as pointing indubitably to an active intervention of living cells in the process. This argument requires examination. Let us suppose the two vessels A and B (Fig. 25) to be separated by a membrane which offers free passage to water and a difficult passage to salts. Let A contain 0·5 per cent. salt solution and B a solution isotonic with a 1 per cent. NaCl, but containing only 0·65 per cent. of this salt, the rest of its osmotic tension being due to other dissolved substances. If the membrane were absolutely 'semi-permeable,' water would pass from A to B until the two fluids were isotonic, *i.e.* until A contained 1 per cent. NaCl (we may regard volume B as infinitely great to simplify the argument). If however the membrane permitted passage of the dissolved substances, the course of events might be as follows: At first water would pass out of A, and salt would diffuse in until the percentage of NaCl in A was equal to that in B. There would now be an equal partial pressure of NaCl on the two sides of the membrane, but the total osmotic pressure of B would still be higher than A. Water would therefore still continue to pass from A to B more rapidly than the other ingredients of B could pass into A. As soon however as more water passed out from A, the percentage of NaCl in A would be raised above that in B. The extent to which this occurs will depend on the impermeability of the membrane. As the NaCl in A reaches a certain concentration it will pass over into B, and this will go on until equilibrium is established between A and B. Extending this argument to the conditions obtaining in the living body, we may conclude that neither the rising of the percentage of a

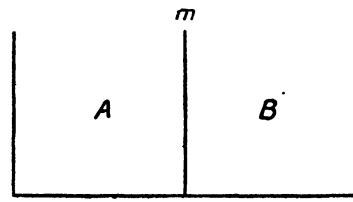


FIG. 25.

* Here we have a possible clue to the explanation of some phenomena of cell activity, to which the term 'vital' is often assigned. In the swimming-bladder of fishes, for instance, we find a gas which is extremely rich in oxygen, and the oxygen is said to have been secreted by the cells lining the bladder. It is, however, possible that the processes here may be analogous to Graham's atmolysis, and that the bladder may represent a perfected form of Graham's india-rubber bag.

salt in any fluid above that of the same salt in the plasma, nor the passage of a salt from a hypotonic fluid into the blood plasma, can afford in itself any proof of an active intervention of cells in the process.

In the case of the pleura, for example, we seem to have a membrane which is very imperfectly semi-permeable. It is permeable to salts, but presents rather more resistance to their passage than to the passage of water. Hence on injecting 0·5 per cent. NaCl solution into the pleural cavity, water passes from the pleural fluid into the blood, until the percentage of sodium chloride in the fluid is raised perceptibly above that in the blood plasma. The limit of the resistance of the pleural membrane to the passage of salt is however soon reached, and then salt passes from pleural fluid into blood; but in every case this passage is from a region of higher to a region of lower partial pressure. Hence at a certain stage of the experiment we find a higher percentage of salt in the pleura than in the blood-vessels, although the total amount of salt in the pleural fluid is less than that originally put in, or, in other words, salt has been absorbed.

We have already seen that the *effective* osmotic pressure of a substance, *i.e.* its power of attracting water across a membrane, varies inversely as its diffusibility, or as the permeability of the membrane to it. What then will be the effect if on one side of the membrane we place some substance in solution to which the membrane is impermeable?

We will suppose that A and B both contain 1 per cent. NaCl, but that B contains in addition some substance x to which the membrane is impermeable. Since the osmotic pressure of B is higher, by the partial pressure of x, than that of A, fluid will pass from A to B by osmosis. But the consequence of this passage of water will be to concentrate the NaCl in A, so that the partial pressure of this salt in A is greater than in B. NaCl will therefore diffuse from A to B, with the result that the former difference of total osmotic pressure will be re-established. Hence there will be a continual passage of both water and salt from A to B, until B has absorbed the whole of A. This result will be only delayed if the osmotic pressure of A is at first higher than B, in consequence of a greater concentration of NaCl in A. There may be at first a flow of fluid from B to A, but as soon as the NaCl concentration on the two sides has become the same by diffusion, the power of x to attract water from the other side will make itself felt, and this attraction will be proportional to the osmotic pressure of x. We shall have occasion to discuss a specific instance of this case when dealing with the mechanism of absorption of fluid by the blood-vessels from the connective tissue spaces.

A more familiar example is afforded by the process known as dialysis. Many animal membranes, all of which are colloidal in character, and others such as vegetable parchment, while freely permeable to salts, are impermeable to dissolved colloids. If therefore a fluid containing both colloids and crystalloids in solution, *e.g.* blood-serum, be enclosed in a tube of vegetable parchment, which is hung up in a large bulk of distilled water (Fig. 26), all the salts diffuse out, and if this be frequently changed, we obtain finally a fluid within the dialyser free from salts and other crystalloid substances, but containing the whole of the colloidal proteins originally present.

Thus the transference of fluids and dissolved substances across membranes is determined not only by the osmotic pressure of the solutions, but also by the diffusion coefficient of the solutes and the permeability of the membrane. This permeability may be of the same character as the permeability of water, in which case the rates of passage of the dissolved substances across the

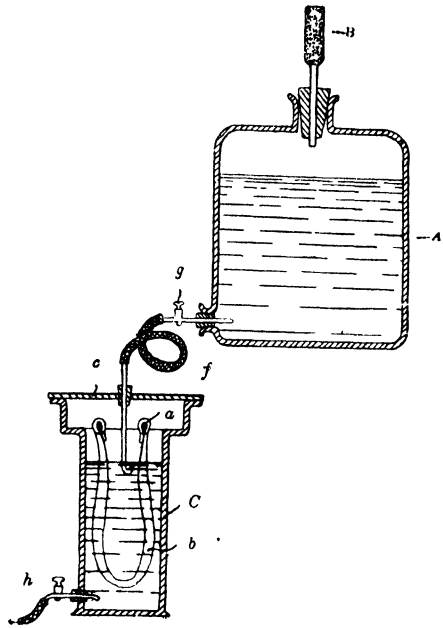


FIG. 26. Dialyser, consisting of a tube of parchment paper immersed in a vessel through which a constant stream of sterile distilled water can be passed. (WROBLESKI.)

membrane vary as their diffusibilities, and are therefore probably some function of their molecular weights. On the other hand, the membrane may exhibit a certain attraction for, or power of dissolving, some of the solutes to the exclusion of others, in which case there will be no relation between the diffusibilities and the rates of passage of the dissolved substances.

Bayliss has drawn attention to certain other factors which may determine permanent inequality of distribution of a salt on the two sides of a membrane permeable to the salt. If Congo red, which is a compound of an indiffusible colloid acid with sodium, be placed in an osmometer which is immersed in water, a certain osmotic pressure is developed. On adding sodium chloride either to the inner or outer fluid, there is a fall in the osmotic pressure if time be allowed for equilibrium to be established. At this point it is found that the outer fluid, which is free from dye, contains a larger percentage of sodium chloride than the inner solution of dye. This difference is permanent and is more marked the greater the concentration of the dye salt. In the following Table is given the concentrations of the two fluids with different percentages of salt. The numbers indicate the litres to which each gramme molecule of the salt is diluted. Apparently

Dye	Chlorine	
	Inside	Outside
30	52	30
30	465	73·6
30	<5500	180
100	32·9	29·5

the difference depends on the fact that the non-dissociated salt must be equal on the two sides of the membrane and that the dissociation is much impeded on the inner side on account of the presence there of another salt of sodium. A sodium salt of any other indiffusible substance, *e.g.* of a protein such as caseinogen, would behave in a precisely similar fashion.

SECTION III

THE PROPERTIES OF COLLOIDS

ALTHOUGH the chemical changes involved in the various vital phenomena occur between substances in watery solution, the solution in every cas is bound up within the meshes or adsorbed by the surfaces of a heterogeneous mass of colloids. The complex chemical molecules which make up protoplasm itself are all colloidal in character. The participation of colloids in chemical reactions introduces conditions and modes of reaction differing widely from those which have been studied in watery solutions. Our knowledge of these conditions is still very imperfect, but the important part played by colloids in the processes of life renders it necessary to discuss in some detail their properties and modes of interaction.

The term colloid, from κολλη, glue, was first introduced by Thomas Graham, Professor of Chemistry at University College from 1836 to 1855. Graham divided all substances into two classes, viz. crystalloids, including such substances as salt, sugar, urea, which could be crystallised with ease, diffused rapidly through water, and were capable of diffusing through animal membranes; and colloids, which included substances such as gelatin or glue, gum, egg-albumin, starch and dextrin, were non-crystallisable, formed gummy masses when their solutions were evaporated to dryness, diffused with extreme slowness through water, and would not pass through animal membranes. The process of dialysis was therefore introduced by Graham for the separation of crystalloids from colloids. Although the broad distinction drawn by Graham between colloids and crystalloids still holds good, some of the criteria by which he distinguished the two classes are no longer strictly applicable. For instance, it has been shown that many typ cal colloidal substances, such as hæmoglobin, can be obtained in a crystal.ine form. On the other hand, all gradations exist between substances, such as egg-albumin, which are practically indiffusible, and those, such as common salt, which are very diffusible. Graham pointed out that colloids exist under two conditions:

(1) In a state of solution or pseudo-solution, in which they form *sols*, and are distinguished as hydrosols, when the solvent is water; and

(2) In a solid state, in which a relatively small amount of the colloid sets with a large amount of a fluid, such as water, to form a jelly. This solid form is known as a *gel*. The most familiar instance is the jelly which is obtained on dissolving a little gelatin in hot water and allowing the mixture

to cool. Such a jelly is known as a hydrogel. In many of these gels the water can be replaced by other fluids, such as alcohol, without any alteration in the appearance of the solid, which is then known as an alcogel. An example of an alcogel is the jelly which can be made by dissolving soap in warm alcohol and allowing the mixture to cool.

A number of these colloidal substances can be shown on purely chemical grounds to consist of monstrous molecules. Thus the molecular weight of hæmoglobin is at least 16,000, and one must ascribe similar high molecular weights to such substances as egg-albumin and globulin. Still greater must be the molecular size of such substances as the cell proteins, which may be made up of more than one type of protein built up with various nucleins, with lecithin and cholesterin, to form a gigantic complex, to which it would probably not be an exaggeration to ascribe a molecular weight of over 100,000. This chemical complexity is not however a necessary condition of the colloidal state, as is shown by the existence of colloidal silica, of colloidal ferric hydrate and alumina, and even of colloidal metals.

On neutralising a weak solution of sodium silicate or water-glass by means of HCl, we obtain a solution which contains sodium chloride and silicic acid. On dialysing this mixture for some days against distilled water, the whole of the NaCl passes out, and a solution of silicic acid or colloidal silica is left in the dialyser. This solution can be concentrated over sulphuric acid. When concentrated to a syrupy consistence it becomes extremely unstable. The addition of a minute trace of sodium chloride or other electrolyte to the solution causes it to set at once to a solid jelly (gelatinous silica), the change being accompanied by an appreciable rise of temperature. The change is irreversible, in that it is not possible to bring the silicic acid into solution again by removal of the electrolyte by means of dialysis. If however it be allowed to stand with weak alkali for some time, it gradually passes into solution. Analogous methods are employed for the preparation of colloidal Fe_2O_3 and Al_2O_3.

Of special interest are the colloidal solutions of the metals. Faraday long ago pointed out that, on treating a weak solution of gold chloride with phosphorus, it underwent reduction with the formation of metallic gold. The gold was not precipitated, but remained in suspension or pseudo-solution, giving a deep red * or a blue liquid, according to the conditions under which the reaction was effected. This solution was homogeneous in that it could be filtered without change, and could be kept for months without deposition of the gold. The latter was however thrown down on addition of mere traces of impurity, though greater stability could be conferred on the solution by adding to it a little 'jelly,' *i.e.* a weak solution of gelatin. In 1899 Bredig showed how similar hydrosols might be prepared from a number of different metals, viz. by the passage of a small arc or electric sparks between metallic terminals submerged in distilled water. If, for example, the terminals be of platinum, the passage of the current is seen to be accompanied by the giving off of brown clouds, which spread into the surrounding fluid. These clouds consist of particles of platinum

* Ruby glass is a colloidal 'solid' solution of gold in a mixture of silicates.

of all sizes. The larger settle at the bottom of the vessel, the smaller—which are ultra-microscopic in size, *i.e.* from 5 $\mu\mu$ to 40$\mu\mu$*—remain in suspension, and we obtain a brown fluid which can be filtered through paper or even through a Berkefeld filter without losing its colour. It may be kept for months without any deposit taking place. The addition of minute traces of electrolytes precipitates the platinum particles, leaving a colourless fluid. We shall have to return later on to the consideration of the behaviour of these metallic sols.

Colloidal solutions or sols may be divided into two classes, *emulsoids* and *suspensoids*, according as they may be regarded as suspensions of liquid in liquid or as suspensions of solid particles.

Most protein solutions are emulsoids, while the metallic sols belong to the class of suspensoids. Dilute egg-white is an emulsoid, but if it be boiled, although no visible precipitation is produced, the fine particles are coagulated and it behaves as a suspensoid.

PROPERTIES OF GELS. A typical hydrogel is the firm mass in which a solution of gelatin sets on cooling. It is clear, hyaline, apparently structureless, and possesses considerable elasticity, *i.e.* resistance to deforming force. It may be regarded as formed by the separation of the warm pseudo-solution of gelatin into two phases: first a solid phase, rich in gelatin and forming a tissue or meshwork, in the interstices of which is embedded the second phase, consisting of a very weak solution of gelatin.

If the process be observed under the microscope, according to Hardy minute drops first appear which, as they enlarge, touch one another and form networks. In stronger solutions the first structures to make their appearance consist, not of the more concentrated phase, but of droplets of the dilute solution of gelatin; the stronger solution collects round these drops and solidifies to a honeycomb structure.

In many cases the more fluid part of the gel is practically pure water. In such a case immersion in alcohol causes a diffusion outwards of the water, which is replaced by alcohol with the formation of an alcogel. In a dry atmosphere the gel loses water and becomes shrivelled and dry, but in some cases, *e.g.* gelatin, it can resume its former size and characters on immersion in water. Other gels, such as silicic acid or ferric hydrate, lose the power of swelling up after drying. The change in them is therefore irreversible. A gel adheres to the last traces of water with extreme tenacity. In consequence of its structure, it presents an enormous extent of surface on which adsorption can take place. At this surface the vapour-tension of fluids is diminished, as well as the osmotic pressure of dissolved substances. On this account gelatin must be heated for many hours at a temperature of 120° C. in order to be thoroughly dried. When dry, it, as well as other solid colloids, can exert a considerable amount of energy when caused to swell up by moistening. This energy was made use of by the ancient Egyptians in the quarrying of their stone blocks by the insertion of wedges

* One μ is one-thousandth of a millimetre; one $\mu\mu$ is one-thousandth μ, *i.e.* one-millionth of a millimetre.

of wood; water was poured on the wood, and the swelling of the wedges split the rock in the desired direction.*

On account of the extent of surface it is practically impossible to wash out the inorganic constituents from a gel. The diminution of the osmotic pressure of many dissolved substances at surfaces causes the concentration at the surface of the solid phase to be greater than that in the surrounding medium. Thus if dry gelatin be immersed in a salt solution it will swell up, but the solution which it absorbs will be more concentrated than the solution in which it is immersed, so that the proportion of salt in the latter will be diminished. When however equilibrium is established between a gel and the surrounding fluid, it is found to present no appreciable resistance to the passage of dissolved crystalloids. Thus salt or sugar diffuses through a column of solid gelatin as if the latter were pure water. On the other hand, gels are practically impermeable to other colloids in solution. This impermeability is made use of in the separation of crystalloids from colloids by dialysis, membranes used in this process being generally irreversible and heterogeneous gels (*i.e.* vegetable parchment, animal membranes). Other gels, such as tannate of gelatin or copper ferrocyanide, are not only impermeable to colloids, but also to many crystalloid substances. These membranes therefore were used by Pfeffer for the determination of the osmotic pressure of such crystalloids as cane sugar.

PROPERTIES OF HYDROSOLS. Substances such as dextrin or egg-albumin may be dissolved in water in almost any concentration. If a solution of egg-albumin be concentrated at a low temperature, it becomes more and more viscous and finally solid. But there is no distinct point at which the fluid passes into the solid condition. Such solutions are known as hydrosols. Much discussion has arisen whether they are to be regarded as true solutions or as pseudo-solutions or suspensions. The chief criterion of a true solution is its homogeneity. In a solution the molecules of the solute are equally diffused throughout the molecules of the solvent, and it is impossible, without the application of energy, to separate one from the other. Thus filtration, gravitation leave the composition of the solution unchanged. It is true that, by the employment of certain kinds of membranes, *e.g.* the semi-permeable copper ferrocyanide membrane, it is possible to separate solute from solvent, but in this case the force required to effect the filtration is enormous and grows with every increase in the strength of the solution. The measure of the force required is the osmotic pressure of the solution, and it becomes natural therefore to regard the possession of an osmotic pressure as a distinguishing criterion of a true solution. Is there any evidence that colloidal solutions also display an osmotic pressure?

I have shown that it is possible to determine the osmotic pressure of colloidal solutions directly, taking advantage of the fact that colloidal mem-

* According to Rodewald, the maximal pressure with which dry starch attracts water amounts to 2073 kilo. per sq. cm.

branes, while permitting the passage of water and salts, are impermeable to colloids in solution.

The method originally adopted was as follows: In order to determine the osmotic pressure of the colloidal constituents of blood-serum, 150 c.c. of clear filtered serum are filtered under a pressure of 30–40 atmospheres through a porous cell which has been previously soaked with gelatin. The first 10–20 c.c. of filtrate, which contain the water squeezed out of the meshes of the gelatin and have also lost salt in consequence of absorption by the gelatin, are rejected. The filtration is allowed to go on for another twenty-four hours, when about 75 c.c. of a clear colourless filtrate are obtained, perfectly free from all traces of protein, but possessing practically the same freezing-point as the original serum. (Although the colloids, if they possess an osmotic pressure, must also cause a depression of the freezing-point, any such depression would be within the errors of observation, since a pressure of 45 mm. Hg would correspond only to 0·005° C.) The concentrated serum left behind in the filter is then put into the osmometer, the filtrate being used as the inner fluid. The construction of the osmometer is shown in the diagram (Fig. 27).

The tube BB is made of silver gauze, connected at each end to a tube of solid silver. Round the gauze is wrapped a piece of peritoneal membrane, as in making a cigarette. This is painted all over with a solution of gelatin (10 per cent.) and then a second layer of membrane applied. Fine thread is now twisted many times round the tube to

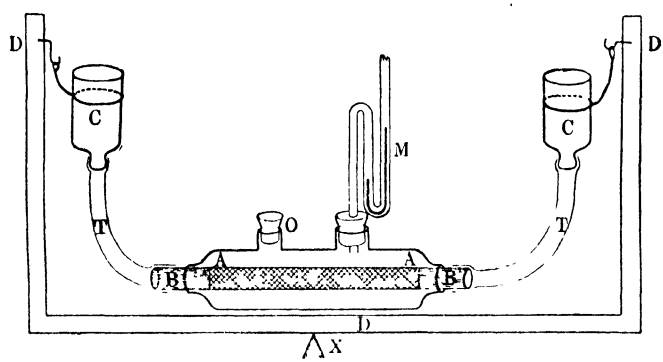


FIG. 27.

prevent any disturbance of the membranes, and the whole tube is soaked for half an hour in a warm solution of gelatin. In this way one obtains an even layer of gelatin between two layers of peritoneal membrane and supported by the wire gauze. The tube so prepared is placed within a wide tube, AA, which is provided with two tubules at the top. One of these, O, is for filling the outer tube; the other is fitted with a mercurial manometer, M. Two small reservoirs, CC, are connected with the outer ends of BB, by means of rubber tubes. The whole apparatus is placed in a wooden cradle, DD, pivoted at X, and provided with a cover so that it may be filled with fluids at different temperatures if necessary. The colloid solution is placed in AA, and the reservoirs, CC, and inner tube, BB, are filled with the filtrate, *i.e.* with a salt solution approximately or absolutely isotonic with the colloid solution. The apparatus is then made to rock continuously for days or weeks by means of a motor. In this way the fluid on the two sides of the membrane is continually renewed, and the attainment of an osmotic equilibrium facilitated. With this apparatus I found that the colloids in blood-serum, containing from 7 to 8 per cent. proteins, had an osmotic pressure of 25 to 30 mm. Hg, which would correspond to a molecular weight of about 30,000.

A more convenient form of osmometer has been devised by B. Moore, using parchment paper as the membrane. With this osmometer, the existence of an osmotic pressure in colloidal solutions has been definitely established both by Moore in the case of hæmoglobin, proteins, and soaps, and by Bayliss in the case of colloidal dyes, such as Congo red. The osmotic pressure of hæmoglobin was found by Hüfner to correspond to a molecular weight of about 16,000, *i.e.* a molecular weight already deduced from its composition and its combining powers with oxygen. Often however the osmotic pressure is very much smaller than would be expected from the molecular weight of the substance, owing to the fact that colloids in solution may be in many different conditions of aggregation. Thus the molecule of colloidal silica must be many, probably thousands of times larger than the molecule as represented by H_2SiO_3. The osmotic pressure being proportional to the number of molecules in a given volume of solution, the larger the aggregate the smaller would be the total number of molecules, and the smaller therefore the osmotic pressure of the solution.

It is in consequence of the huge size of the molecular aggregates that colloidal solutions, such as starch or glycogen. and probably globulin, display no appreciable osmotic pressure. We cannot divide colloidal solutions into two classes, viz. those which form true solutions and present a feeble osmotic pressure, and those which form only suspensions and therefore exert no osmotic pressure. In inorganic colloids, such as arsenious sulphide, Picton and Linder have shown that all grades exist between true solutions and suspensions. With increasing aggregation of the molecules, the suspension becomes coarser and coarser until finally the sulphide separates in the form of a precipitate.

The measurement of the osmotic pressure of the colloids of serum points to their having a molecular weight of about 30,000. Chemical evidence shows that hæmoglobin has a molecular weight of about 16,000, and we have every reason to believe that the much more complex molecules forming the cell proteins may have molecular weights of many times this amount. When however we arrive at molecular weights of these dimensions, the disproportion between the size of the molecules and those of the solvent, water, becomes so great that a homogeneous distribution of the two substances, solute and solvent, is no longer possible. The size of a molecule of water has been reckoned to be $\cdot 7 \times 10^{-8}$ mm. A molecule 10,000 times as large would have a diameter of $\cdot 7 \times 10^{-4}$ mm. $= \cdot 07\mu$, a size just within the limits of microscopic vision. Long before molecules attained such a size they would no longer react according to the laws which have been derived from the study of the behaviour of the almost perfect gases, but would possess the properties of matter in mass. They have a surface of measurable extent, and their relations to the molecules of water or solvent will be determined by the laws of adsorption at surfaces rather than by the laws of interaction of molecules. As a matter of fact we find that such solutions present an amazing mixture of properties, some of which betray them as mechanical suspensions, while others partake of the nature of the

chemical reactions such as those studied in the simpler compounds usually dealt with by the chemist.

OPTICAL BEHAVIOUR OF HYDROSOLS. Nearly all colloidal solutions present what is known as the Faraday-Tyndall phenomenon. When a beam of light is passed through an optically homogeneous fluid, the course of the beam is invisible. A beam of sunlight falling into a dark room is rendered visible by impinging on and illuminating the dust particles in i s course. Each of these particles, being illuminated, acts as a centre of dispersion of the light, so that the course of the beam is apparent to a person standing on one side of it. Tyndall showed that, if the particles were sufficiently minute, the light dispersed by them at right angles to the beam was polarised. This can be easily tested by looking at the beam through a Nicol's prism. If the prism be slowly rotated, it will be found that, while at one position the light is bright, in the position at right angles to this it becomes dim or is extinguished. The production of the Tyndall phenomenon may therefore be regarded as a test for the presence of ultra-microscopic particles, varying in size from 5 to 50 $\mu\mu$. The phenomenon is perhaps too sensitive to be taken as a proof that a fluid presenting it is a suspension rather than a solution. It is shown, for instance, by solutions of many bodies of high molecular weight, such as raffinose (a tri-saccharide) or the alkaloid brucine (Bayliss).

A particle having a diameter less than half the wave-length of light, *i.e.* about 300 Å or ·3 μ, cannot be clearly distinguished under any power of the microscope The fact that an ultra-microscopic particle may serve as a centre for dispersal of light may be used for rendering such particles visible under the microscope. For this purpose a strong beam of light is passed in the plane of the stage of the microscope through a cell containing the hydrosol, which is then examined under a high power. On examining with this apparatus a dilute gold sol, we see a swarm of dancing points of light, 'like gnats in the sunlight,' which move rapidly in all directions, rendering it almost impossible to count their number in the field The coarser particles present slight oscillations similar to those long known as the Brownian movements. The smallest particles which can be seen show a combined movement, consisting of a translatory movement, in which the particle passes rapidly across the field in one-sixth to one-eighth of a second, and a movement of oscillation of much shorter period. The representation of the course of such a particle is given in Fig. 28.

The size of the smallest particles seen in this way may amount to ·005 μ. Not all colloidal solutions show these particles in the ultra-microscope. In some cases this is due simply to the small size of the particles, and the addition of any substance, which causes aggregation and therefore increase in the size of the particles, will bring them into view. In others the absence of optical inhomogeneity may be due to the coincidence of the refractive indices of the two phases of the hydrosol, or to the absence of any surface tension and therefore dividing surfaces between the two phases.

ELECTRICAL PROPERTIES OF COLLOIDS

In the case of many hydrosols the ultra-microscopic particles of which they are composed carry an electric charge which, according to the nature of the solution, may be either positive or negative. On this account, the particles move if placed in an electric field, and the direction of their movement reveals the nature of their change. Thus colloidal ferric hydrate is electro-positive and travels from anode to cathode. Silicic acid, in the presence of a trace of alkali, is electro-negative, and the same is true of a hydrosol of gold. When a current is passed through these hydrosols, the colloidal particles travel to the anode, where they are precipitated. In certain colloids the charge varies according to the conditions under which they are brought into solution. If, for instance, egg-white be diluted ten times with distilled water, filtered and boiled, no precipitate occurs, but

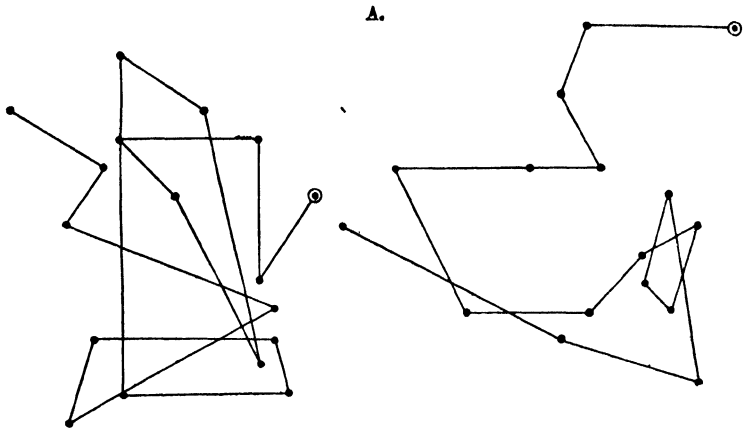


FIG. 28. Movements of two particles of india-rubber latex in colloidal solution, recorded by cinematograph and ultra-microscope. (HENRI.)

we obtain a colloidal suspension of albumin. When thoroughly dialysed, this protein is insoluble in pure water, but is soluble in traces of either acid or alkali. In acid solution the protein particles carry a positive charge, whereas in alkaline solution their charge is negative. The charged condition of these particles must play a considerable part in keeping them asunder and therefore in preventing their aggregation and precipitation. This is shown by the fact that any agency which will tend to discharge them will cause precipitation and coagulation. Among such agencies is the passage of a constant current, just mentioned. To the same action is due the coagulative or precipitating effects of neutral salts. Thus any of the colloids we have mentioned, ferric hydrate, silica, gold, or boiled albumen, are thrown down by the addition of traces of neutral salts, and it is found that in this process they carry with them some of the ion with the opposite charge to that of the colloidal particle. Thus, in the precipitation of the

electro-positive ferric hydrate the acid ion of the salt is the determining factor, the coagulative power increasing rapidly with the valency of the acid. On the other hand, in the precipitation of a gold sol the electro-positive ion is the effective agent, and here again the coagulative effect is enormously increased by a rise in valency. This is shown in the following Tables, where it will be seen that in the coagulation of gold, barium chloride with the divalent Ba'', is seven times as powerful as K_2SO_4 containing the univalent K'. On the other hand, in the precipitation of the electro-positive ferric hydrate, K_2SO_4 with a divalent SO_4'', is 400 times as effective as $BaCl_2$.

AMOUNT OF SALT NECESSARY TO PRECIPITATE COLLOIDAL SOLUTIONS

To coagulate Gold		To coagulate Fe_2O_3	
K_2SO_4 1 g. mol. in	4,000,000 c.c.	$BaCl_2$ 1 g. mol. in	500,000 c.c.
$MgSO_4$ „ „ „	4,000,000 „	NaCl „ „ „	72,000 „
$BaCl_2$ „ „ „	10,000 „	K_2SO_4 „ „ „	75,000 „
NaCl „ „ „	30,000 „		

The presence of a charge is not however a necessary condition for the stability of a colloidal solution. Thus the proteins of serum, globulin in a weak saline solution, or gelatin, present no drift when exposed to a strong electric field. In such cases one must assume the stability of the solution to be determined by the absence of any surface tension between the two phases in the solution, or between the particles of solute and solvent. Thus no force is present tending to cause aggregation of the particles

The charged condition of a colloidal particle makes it behave in an electric field in much the same way as a charged ion of an electrolyte, and this similarity extends also to its chemical behaviour, so that we have a class of compounds formed resembling in many respects chemical combinations, but differing from these in the absence of definite quantitative relations between the reacting substances This class of continuously varying chemical compounds has been designated by Van Bemmelen absorption compounds. Since however the interaction must take place at the surface layer bounding the charged particles, it will be perhaps better, as Bayliss has done, to use the term *adsorption*. The huge molecules or aggregates of molecules which distinguish the colloidal state form a system with a considerable inertia, so that we have a tendency to the establishment of conditions of false equilibrium. Once a configuration is established, it is necessary, in consequence of the inertia, to overstep widely the conditions of its formation in order to destroy it. Thus a 10 per cent. gelatin solution sets at 21°C., but does not melt until warmed to 29·6°C. Solutions of agar in water set at about 35°C., but do not melt under 90°C. A gel of gelatin takes twenty-four hours after setting to attain a constant melting-point.

The factors involved in the formation of adsorption or absorption combinations are therefore :

(1) Extent of surface. In a colloidal solution this must be enormous in proportion to the mass of substance in solution. Thus a 10 c.c. sphere

with a surface of 22 sq. cm., if reduced to a fine powder consisting of spherules of ·00000025 cm. in diameter, will have a surface of 20,000,000 sq. cm., *i.e.* nearly half an acre. At the whole of this surface adsorption may take place, involving the concentration of dissolved electrolytes, ions, or gases.

(2) Chemical nature of particle.

(3) Electric charge on the surface. The sign of this may be determined by the chemical nature of the colloid and its relation to the electrolytes in the surrounding medium.

Another factor which may determine the character of the charge on the particles has been pointed out by Coehn. This observer finds that, when various non-conducting bodies are immersed in fluids of different dielectric constants, they assume a positive or negative charge according as their own dielectric constants are higher or lower than the fluid with which they are in contact. For instance, glass (5 to 6) is negative in water (80) or alcohol (26), whereas in turpentine (2·2) it is positive. In water, as Quincke has found, nearly all non-conducting bodies take on a negative charge. Among these are cotton-wool and silk. Particles of these in water, exposed to an electric field, move towards the anode. The same is true, as Bayliss has shown, of paper.

The conditions which determine the formation of these adsorption compounds can be studied in their simplest form on the adsorption of dyestuffs by substances such as paper. If we take a series of solutions of a dye, such as Congo-red, in progressively diminishing concentration, and place in each solution the same amount of filter-paper, we find that a part of the dye is taken up by the paper, and the proportion taken up is larger the more dilute the solution. This relation has been spoken of by Bayliss as the law of adsorption. This is illustrated by the following Table of results of such an experiment:

Concentration of solution		Proportion of dye in solution	Proportion of dye in paper
Initial	Final	Per cent	Per cent
0·014	0·0056	40	60
0·012	0·0024	20	80
0·010	0·0009	9·3	90 7
0·008	0·0003	4	96
0·006	0·00008	1 3	98 7
0·004	—	trace	practically all
0·002	—	trace	practically all

If put into the form of a curve, where the ordinates represent the percentage of dye left in solution, and the abscissæ the original concentration of the solution, the curve only approaches the axis (*i.e.* zero concentration) asymptotically. In other words, however dilute the original solution may be, there will always be a certain amount of the dye left unabsorbed by the paper. Similar relations are found to exist between proteins and electrolytes. By continuously washing a protein or gelatin with distilled water,

the removal of electrolytes becomes slower and slower, but it is practically impossible within finite time to get rid in this way of the last traces of ash.

Although the chemical behaviour of colloids is largely determined by surface phenomena, it presents at the same time analogies with more strictly chemical reactions, since it is conditioned by the chemical structure of the colloid molecule as well as by the charge carried by the latter. A good example of these adsorption combinations is presented by globulin, the behaviour of which has been studied by Hardy. This may be obtained from diluted blood-serum by precipitation with acetic acid Four states can be recognised in both the solid condition and in solution, viz. globulin itself, compounds with acid or with alkali, and compounds with neutral salt. The amount of acid and alkali combining with the globulin is indeterminate, the effect of adding either acid or alkali to the neutral globulin being to cause a gradual conversion of an opaque, milky suspension into a limpid, transparent solution. On drying HCl globulin, the dried solid is found to contain all the chlorine used to dissolve it. The acid may therefore be regarded as being in true combination. Both acid and alkali globulins act as electrolytes, the globulin being electrically charged and taking part in the transport of electricity. In order to produce the same extent of solution, the concentration of the alkali added must be double that of the acid The relation of globulin to acids and alkalies is similar to that of the so-called amphoteric substances, such as the amino-acids. An amino-acid, such as glycine, can react as a basic anhydride with other acids, thus:

$$CH_2\begin{matrix}NH_2\\CO_2H\end{matrix} + HCl = CH\begin{matrix}NH_2HCl\\CO_2H\end{matrix}$$

or as an acid anhydride with bases:

$$\begin{matrix}CH_2.NH_2\\|\\COOH\end{matrix} + NaHO = \begin{matrix}CH_2.NH_2\\|\\COONa\end{matrix} + H_2O$$

Like these too, globulin forms soluble compounds with neutral salts. An amphoteric electrolyte thus acts as a base in the presence of a strong acid, and as an acid in the presence of a strong base.

From true electrolytes, colloidal solutions differ in the fact that their particles are of varying size according to the conditions in which they exist and carry varying charges of electricity, whereas an ion such as Na or Cl has a mass which is constant for the ion in question, and always carries the same electric charge. The charged particles of an acid- or alkali-globulin may be distinguished therefore as *pseudo-ions*.

In these adsorption combinations, although the chemical nature of the colloidal molecules is concerned, there is an absence of definite equilibrium points, such as we are accustomed to in most chemical reactions. The inertia of the system and the large size of the molecules determine the occurrence of false equilibria and of delayed reaction, so that the condition and behaviour of a colloidal system at any moment are determined, not entirely by the

quantitative relations of its components, but also by the past history of the system.

COMBINATIONS BETWEEN COLLOIDS

Besides the compounds between colloids and electrolytes, combination, or at least interaction, takes place between different colloids. Many colloids are precipitated by other colloidal solutions. This effect is always found to occur when the colloidal solutions carry different charges. Thus ferric hydrate in colloidal solution is precipitated by colloidal silica or colloidal gold, both colloids being thrown out of solution. On the other hand, certain colloids may exercise a protective influence on other colloidal solutions. Thus, as Faraday first showed, colloidal gold is much more stable in the presence of a little gelatin. The colloids of serum can dissolve a considerable amount of purified globulin. Although the latter in solution shows a drift in the electric field, the resulting solution is quite unaffected by the passage of a current through it. In these cases the protective colloids carry no charge, but the same protective effect may be observed if a large excess of, *e.g.* an electro-positive colloid be added to an electro-negative colloid. This interaction between different colloids probably plays an important part in many physiological phenomena. We have reason to believe that the reactions between toxin and antitoxin, and between ferment and substrate, which we shall study later, are of this character, and that the compounds formed belong to the class of adsorption combinations.

THE COAGULATION OF COLLOIDS

Most colloidal solutions are unstable, and the relations between the suspended particle or molecule and the surrounding fluid may be upset by slight changes of reaction or the presence of minute traces of salts. As a result the hydrosol is destroyed, the suspended particles aggregating to form larger complexes. These aggregations may settle to the bottom of the fluid as a precipitate, or may form a species of network, the result varying according to the nature of the colloid and its concentration. Thus gelatin changes from the condition of hydrosol to hydrogel with fall of temperature. The same is true of agar. On the other hand, by adding calcium chloride to an alkaline solution of casein, we obtain a mixture which sets to a jelly on warming, but becomes fluid again on cooling. Other agencies may lead to the production of changes which are irreversible. Thus a strong solution of colloidal silica sets to a solid jelly on the addition of a trace of neutral salt, and it is not possible to reform the hydrosol, however long the jelly is submitted to dialysis.

Two methods of bringing about coagulation of hydrosols deserve special mention. The first of these is heat-coagulation. If a solution of egg-albumin or globulin be heated in neutral or slightly acid medium and in the presence of neutral salt, the whole of it is thrown down in an insoluble form. This coagulated protein is insoluble in dilute acids or alkalies. The same coagulative effect of heating is observed in the metallic sols. With con-

centrated solutions of protein, heat coagulation results in the formation of a gel, *i.e.* a network of insoluble protein, containing water or a very dilute solution of protein in its meshes. In dilute solutions the result is the production of a flocculent precipitate.

Another method is the so-called mechanical coagulation. If a solution of globulin or albumin be introduced into a bottle, which is then violently shaken, a shreddy precipitate makes its appearance in the solution, and this precipitate increases, so that by prolonged shaking it is possible to throw down 80 or 90 per cent. of the dissolved protein in the coagulated form. Ramsden has shown that this mechanical coagulation is a surface phenomenon. It depends on the fact that a large number of substances in solution (viz. any which lower the surface tension of their solutions) undergo concentration at the free surface of the fluid. Such substances are proteins, bile-salts, quinine, saponin, &c. In the case of proteins the concentration reaches such an extent, and the molecules at the surface are so closely packed together, that they form an actual solid pellicle, which hinders the movement of any object, such as a compass needle, suspended in the surface. When the solution is violently shaken, new surfaces are constantly being formed, and as the older surfaces are withdrawn into the fluid, the solid pellicle on them is rolled up into a fine shred of coagulated protein, and this process will continue until there is no protein left to form a pellicle.

We must conclude that colloidal solutions, although differing so widely from true solutions in many of their properties, are connected with these by all possible grades. In a solution of an ordinary crystalloid or electrolyte the molecules of the dissolved substance are distributed equally and homogeneously among the molecules of the solvent. In the various grades of solution a colloid solution or hydrosol may be assumed to begin when the size of the molecule is increased out of all proportion to that of the molecules of the solvent. The 'dissolved' molecules now have the properties of matter in mass and to present surfaces with all their attendant attributes. The same sort of solution may be formed with smaller molecules, such as SiO_2, when these are aggregated together with adsorbed water into huge molecular complexes or, as in metallic sols, by the division of the solid metal into ultra-microscopic particles. The distinguishing features of a colloidal solution are due to this lack of homogeneity, and to the fact that in every solution there are two phases—a fluid phase, and a second phase which is either solid or a concentrated or supersaturated solution of the colloid The huge size of the molecules and the development of surface not only determine the formation of adsorption combinations but, on account of the inertia of the system, cause a delay in changes of state, and tend to the formation of false equilibria dependent on the past history of the system.

IMBIBITION

All colloids, even those such as starch or gelatin, which are insoluble in cold water, exhibit a phenomenon, viz. '*Quellung*' or imbibition, which in many cases it is impossible to distinguish from the process of solution.

This phenomenon, which was long ago studied by Chevreul and has been the subject of a series of careful experiments by Overton, is exhibited by all animal tissues and all colloids. Thus elastic tissue dried *in vacuo* absorbs from a saturated solution of common salt 36·8 per cent. of water and salt. If dried colloids be suspended in a closed vessel over various solutions, they will take up water in the form of vapour from the solution, and the osmotic pressure of the solution in question will inform us as to the amount of work which would be necessary in order to separate the water again from the colloids.

Thus it has been reckoned that to press out water from gelatin containing 28·4 parts of water to 100 parts of dried gelatin would require a pressure of over two hundred atmospheres. The imbibition pressure of colloids increases rapidly with the concentration of the colloid and at a greater rate than the latter. In this respect however imbibition pressure resembles osmotic, or indeed gaseous, pressure. At extreme pressures the pressure of hydrogen rises more rapidly than its volume diminishes. In solutions this effect is more marked the larger the size of the molecule. Thus a 6·7 per cent. solution of cane sugar has the same vapour-tension, and therefore the same osmotic pressure, as a ·67 per cent. NaCl solution. A 67 per cent. cane-sugar solution has however the same osmotic pressure as an 18½ per cent. solution of common salt. It is impossible to draw any hard line of distinction between imbibition pressure and osmotic pressure, or to say where a fluid ceases to be a solution and becomes a suspension. All grades are to be found between a solution such as that of common salt with a high osmotic pressure and optical homogeneity, and a solution such as that of starch, which scatters incident light and is therefore opalescent, and has no measurable osmotic pressure.

The close connection between the processes of imbibition and of solution is shown also by the fact that the latter occurs only in certain media, the nature of the media being dependent on the chemical character of the substances in question. Thus all the crystalline carbohydrates—such as grape sugar and cane sugar—are easily soluble in water, only slightly soluble in alcohol, and practically insoluble in ether and benzol. The amorphous carbohydrates which must be regarded as derived by a process of condensation from the crystalline carbohydrates—*e.g.* starch, cellulose, gum arabic, &c.—have a strong power of imbibition for water. This power may be limited, as in the case of cellulose, or may be unlimited, as in the case of gum arabic, so that a so-called solution results. On the other hand, they swell up but slightly in alcohol, and are unaffected by ether and benzol. In the same way proteins all take up water and in many cases form a so-called solution, but are unaffected by ether and benzol—a behaviour which is repeated in the case of the amino-acids, out of which the proteins are built up, and which are easily soluble in water but are practically insoluble in ether and benzol. On the other hand, india-rubber and the various resins take up ether, benzol, and turpentine often to an indefinite extent, while they are untouched by water. With this behaviour we may compare the easy solubility of the hydrocarbons, the aromatic acids, and esters in ether and benzol, and

their insolubility in water. As Overton has pointed out, the power of amorphous carbohydrates to take up fluids is modified by alteration of their chemical structure in the same direction as the solubility of the corresponding crystalline carbohydrates. Thus, if the hydroxyl groups in the sugars be replaced by nitro, acetyl, or benzoyl groups, they become less soluble in water, while their solubility in alcohol, acetone, &c., is increased. In the same way the replacement of the hydroxyl groups in cellulose by NO_2 groups diminishes the power possessed by this substance of taking up water, but renders it capable of swelling up or dissolving in alcohol and acetone.

SECTION IV

THE MECHANISM OF CHEMICAL CHANGES IN LIVING MATTER. FERMENTS

ALL the events which make up the life of plants and animals are accompanied and conditioned by chemical changes of the most varied character. In a previous chapter we have endeavoured to form an idea of the ways in which some of the synthetic processes that occur in the living body may be effected. We saw that, although it was possible to imitate in many respects the vital syntheses by ordinary laboratory methods, the imitation fell far short of the process as it actually occurs in the living cell, both in completeness of the reaction and in the ease with which it could be effected. We can, for instance, by passing carbon dioxide over red-hot charcoal, convert it into carbon monoxide, and this gas, acting on dry potassium hydrate, forms potassium formate. Formate of lime, on dry distillation, gives a small proportion of formaldehyde which, under the influence of dilute alkalies, will condense to the mixture of sugars known as acrose. The green leaf in sunlight absorbs the minimal quantities of carbon dioxide present in the atmosphere and converts it almost quantitatively into starch within a few minutes, and this change is effected in the absence of any concentrated reagents and at the ordinary temperature of the atmosphere. Many of the chemical transformations effected by living cells we have so far been quite unable to imitate. The problem of the synthesis of camphor, of the terpenes, of starch, of cellulose, is still unsolved; and even in the case of those substances which we can manufacture outside the living cell our methods involve the use of powerful reagents and of high temperatures, and result in most cases in the production of many side reactions, besides that reaction which it is our special object to imitate. The distinguishing characteristics of the chemical changes wrought by the living cell are:

(1) The rapidity with which they are effected at ordinary temperatures.

(2) The specific direction of the process, which is therefore almost complete, with a surprising absence of the side reactions which interfere to such an extent with the yield of the methods employed in a chemical laboratory.

This second characteristic may however be regarded as a consequence of the first, since an increase in the velocity of any given reaction will deter-

mine a preponderance of this reaction over all other possible ones. A fundamental question therefore in physiology must relate to the manner in which the cell is able to influence the velocity of some specific reaction.

In spite of the enormous diversity of chemical reactions occurring in the body, they may be divided into a relatively small number of types. Nearly all the reactions are reversible. The chief types of chemical change are as follows:

(1) HYDROLYSIS. In most cases this involves the taking up of water and a decomposition into smaller molecules. Thus the proteins are broken down in the intestine into their constituent amino-acids. The disaccharides, such as maltose or lactose, take up one molecule of water and give rise to two molecules of monosaccharide. The fats take up three molecules of water with the formation of fatty acid and glycerin. Hippuric acid is broken down into benzoic acid and glycine. The reverse change, that of dehydration, is also effected apparently with equal facility by the living cell, the hexoses losing water and being converted into a complex starch or glycogen molecule, while the amino-acids are built up first into polypeptides, and these again into the complex proteins of the cell. Besides the reactions in which there is a difference in the amount of free water on the two sid s of the equation, it seems probable that hydrolysis and simultaneous dehydrolysis at different parts of the molecule determine a number of chemical transformations, which at first sight seem to involve a simple splitting of the molecule. An example of such a process is afforded by the conversion of glucose into lactic acid described on p. 113.

(2) DEAMINATION. This process involves the splitting off of an NH_2 group from an amino-acid as ammonia, and its replacement by H or OH. Many tissues of the body appear to have this power. In most cases the nature of the change in the remaining fatty moiety of the molecule has not yet been ascertained. If, for instance, to a mass of liver cells some amino-acid, such as glycine, alanine, or leucine, be added, ammonia is set free in proportion to the amount of amino-acid which was added. This amm nia is therefore assumed to be derived from the amino-acid, and it has been suggested that here also the process of splitting off ammonia is a hydrolytic one and that the NH_2 group is replaced by OH. Thus—

$$\begin{array}{lcl} CH_3 & & CH_3 \\ | & & | \\ CH.NH_2 + H_2O & = & CH.OH + NH_3 \\ | & & | \\ COOH & & COOH \\ \text{(alanine)} & & \end{array}$$

Recent work by Neubauer tends to show that deamination is accompanied in the first place by oxidation, so that the first intermediate product formed is not an α oxy-acid, but an α ketonic acid. A second atom of oxygen is then taken up, and carbon dioxide is split off, with the production of the next lower acid of the series.

We might represent these changes as follows:

(1) $CH_3.CHNH_2.COOH + O = CH_3.CO.COOH + NH_3$

(2) $CH_3.CO.COOH + O = CH_3.COOH + CO_2$

Is the reverse change ever effected in the animal body? If it were possible to replace the OH group in an oxy-fatty acid by NH_2 or the O in an α ketonic acid by HNH_2, it ought also to be possible to nourish an animal from a mixture of carbohydrates and ammonia, or at any rate by supplying him with a mixture of the appropriate oxy-acids or ketonic acids and ammonia. Until recently there was no evidence that the animal body is able to utilise nitrogen, except in organic combination as amino-acids or the complex aggregate of amino-acids known as proteins. In the plant the process of synthesis of protein from ammonia and a carbohydrate such as hexose is continuously going on, and it is probable that the formation of amino-acid occurs by a process the reverse of that which we have just been studying. Knoop has shown that the same reversed change may occur even in a mammal, and that here again the intermediate substance is an α ketonic acid. On administering benzylpyruvic acid ($C_6H_5.CH_2.CH_2.CO.COOH$) to a dog, a certain amount of benzylalanine ($C_6H_5.CH_2CH_2CHNH_2.COOH$) appeared in the urine. The first phase of the oxidative deamination of amino-acids is thus a reversible one and may be represented:

$$R.CHNH_2.COOH + O \rightleftharpoons R.C(OH)(NH_2).COOH \rightleftharpoons R.CO.COOH + NH_3$$

(3) **DECARBOXYLATION.** Many amino-acids when subjected to the agency of bacteria lose a molecule of carbon dioxide and are converted into a corresponding amine.

For instance, lysine, which is diamino-caproic acid, is converted into pentamethylene diamine or cadaverine. Thus:

$CH_2.NH_2.CH_2.CH_2.CH_2.CH.NH_2.COOH$ becomes $CH_2.NH_2.CH_2.CH_2.CH_2.CH_2.NH_2$

In the same way ornithine derived from the breakdown of arginine is converted by putrefactive bacteria into tetra-methylene diamine or putrescine. Other examples of this process of decarboxylation are :

Isoamylamine from leucine, $(CH_3)_2.CH.CH_2.CH_2.NH_2$.
β phenylethylamine from phenylalanine, $C_6H_5.CH_2,CH_2.NH_2$.
Para-oxyphenylethylamine from tyrosine, $OH.C_6H_4.CH_2.CH_2.NH_2$.

A similar process has been supposed to take place as a step in the successive oxidation of the carbon atoms in the long chain fatty acids or carbohydrates, but a thorough study of this process as it occurs in the higher animals is still wanting, and its very existence is indeed still hypothetical. In the case of the fats the oxidation takes place chiefly or entirely in the β position. On the other hand, decarboxylation certainly takes place in substances such as the α amino-acids, where the first oxidation change occurs in the α group, and probably closely follows this oxidation change. The reverse reaction, namely, the insertion of the group CO.O at the end of the long carbon chain, is not known to take place, but would furnish a means by which the organism with apparent simplicity could build up long carbon chains and so imitate the process which in the laboratory is generally effected by attaching a CN group to the end of the molecule. In the case of the fats the building up, like the oxidative breakdown, appears to occur by two carbon atoms at a time ; hence all the fatty acids met with in the body have an even number of carbon atoms in their chain.

It is worthy of note that all the changes which we have been considering —changes which not only account for the greater part of the chemical reactions of the living body, but may lead to the production of the most complex substances known—are performed with little expenditure or evolution of energy. This is evident if we examine the heat evolved by the total combustion of one gramme molecule of the initial and final substances in a number of typical reactions. In the following Table these are given for the substances involved in typical instances of the three classes of chemical change that we have just been considering :

(1) HYDROLYSIS

Initial substance	Heat of combustion per gram molecule	Final substance	Heat of combustion
Maltose	1350	2 Glucose	1354
Glucose	677	2 Lactic acid	659
Hippuric acid	1013	Glycine	235
		Benzoic acid	773
			1008

(2) DEAMINATION

Initial substance	Heat of combustion	Final substance	Heat of combustion
Alanine	389·2	Lactic acid	329·5
Leucine	855	Caproic acid	837
Aspartic acid	386	Succinic acid	354

(3) DECARBOXYLATION

Initial substance	Heat of combustion	Final substance	Heat of combustion
Alanine	389	Ethylamine	409
Leucine	855	Isoamylamine	867

(4) OXIDATION AND REDUCTION. The fourth class of chemical reactions differs from those just described in being attended with a very considerable energy change. This class involves the processes of oxidation and reduction. In almost every living cell, by far the largest amount of the energy available for the discharge of the functions of the cell is derived from the oxidation of the food-stuffs, and even in the plant the energy is obtained from the oxidation of the food-stuffs, built up in the first instance at the cost of the energy of the sun's rays. If we take the final changes in the food-stuffs, the very large evolution of energy attending their oxidation is at once apparent. Thus in the conversion of glucose into CO_2 and water there is an evolution for each gramme molecule of 677 calories. In the combustion of glycerin 397 calories are evolved. In the oxidation of a fat such as trimyristin there are 6650 calories evolved. The change does not in the living cell occur all at once, but the molecule is oxidised step by step. In each step the heat change will however be probably greater than the heat changes in the other types of chemical change which we have been considering.

Since the mechanism of oxidation in the animal body will have to be discussed at length in a subsequent part of this work, we may at present confine our attention to the other types of chemical change. Of these, all which involve a splitting of a large molecule into smaller ones with the taking up of one or more molecules of water, as well as, in all probability, those in which the reverse change of dehydration and synthesis occur, are effected in the body by means of *ferments*. To the same agency are also ascribed the process of deamination which takes place in many organs of the body and, though with less certainty, the processes which involve decarboxylation.

FERMENTS

Under the name ferments we include a number of substances of indefinite composition whose existence is chiefly known to us by their action on other substances. A ferment has been defined as a body which on addition to a chemical system is able to effect changes in this system without supplying any energy to the reaction, without being used up, and without taking any part in the formation of the end products. It differs therefore from the reacting substances in the absence of any strict quantitative relationships between it and the substances included in the system in which its effects are produced. Minimal quantities of ferment can induce chemical changes involving almost indefinite quantities of other substances, the only result of increasing the quantity of ferment being to quicken the rate of the change. Since they are effective in minimal doses they occur in living tissues in minute quantities, and it is partly due to this fact that it has

hitherto proved impossible to obtain any preparation of a ferment which could be regarded as a pure substance. The difficulty in their isolation is increased by the fact that all of them are colloidal or semi-colloidal in character, and present therefore the tendency common to all colloids of adhering to other colloidal matter as well as to surfaces such as those presented by a precipitate. A common method of isolating, or rather obtaining a concentrated preparation of a ferment, is to produce in its solution an inert precipitate such as cholesterin or calcium phosphate. The ferment is carried down on the precipitate and may be obtained in solution on washing the precipitate with water. A further difficulty in their preparation lies in the unstable character of many members of the group. Although they are not coagulated by alcohol, they are nevertheless gradually changed, so that every act of precipitation of a ferment tends to rob it of some of its powers, *i.e.* of the only characteristic by which we can establish its identity.

Of these ferments a large number have already been described as taking part in the ordinary chemical processes of life. So wide is their dominion in cell chemistry that many physiologists have thought that the whole of life is really a continual series of ferment actions. The following list represents some of the ferments whose existence has been definitely established in the animal body. The greater part of them are involved in the processes of digestion in the alimentary canal. The preponderance however of digestive ferments in the list is due to the fact that we know more about digestion than about the other chemical processes taking place within the cells of the body.

LIST OF FERMENTS.

Ferment	Converting	Into
Amylase (of saliva, pancreatic juice, liver, blood serum, &c.)	Starch	Maltose and dextrin
Pepsin	Proteins	Proteoses and peptones
Trypsin	Proteins	Peptones and amino-acids
Enterokinase	Trypsinogen	Trypsin
Erepsin	Proteoses	Amino-acids
Lipase (of pancreatic juice, liver, &c.)	Neutral fats	Fatty acid and glycerin
Maltase	Maltose	Glucose
Lactase	Milk sugar	Glucose and galactose
Invertase or sucrase	Cane sugar	Glucose and lævulose
Arginase	Arginin	Urea and ornithine
Urease	Urea	Ammonium carbonate
Lactic acid ferment	Glucose	Lactic acid
Zymase (? present in the body)	Glucose	Alcohol and CO_2
Deaminating ferment (?), *v.* p. 153	Amino-acids	Oxy-acids (?)

Many other ferments will probably be distinguished with increase in our knowledge of cellular metabolism. The long list which is here given suffices to show how great a part these bodies must play in the normal processes of life. A study of the conditions of ferment actions is therefore essential if we would form a conception of the chemical mechanisms of the living cell.

It is important to note that all the changes wrought by ferments can be effected by ordinary chemical means. Thus the disaccharides can be made to take up a molecule of water and undergo conversion into monosaccharides. If a solution of maltose be taken and bacteria be excluded from the solution, it undergoes at ordinary temperatures practically no change. If the solution be warmed, a slow process of hydration takes place which is quickened by rise of temperature, so that if the solution be heated under pressure to, say, 110° C., hydrolysis occurs with considerable rapidity. If however a little maltase be added to the solution, the change of maltose into glucose takes place rapidly at a temperature of 30° C. In the same way a solution of protein may be kept almost indefinitely without undergoing hydrolysis, which however can be induced by heating the solution under pressure. The action of the ferments in these two cases is to quicken a process of hydrolysis which without their presence would take an infinity of time for its accomplishment.

In this respect their action is similar to that of acids, and indeed of a whole class of bodies which are spoken of as catalysers or catalysts. A catalyser is a substance which will increase (or diminish) the velocity of a reaction without adding in any way to the energy changes involved in the reaction, or taking any part in the formation of the end-products. Since the catalyser is unchanged in the process, a very small quantity is able to influence reactions involving large quantities of other substances. By adding acids to a watery solution of the food-stuffs, the process of hydrolysis is quickened in proportion to the strength and concentration of the acid. The effective catalytic agents in this process appear to be the hydrogen ions of the free acid. There are many other bodies, besides the free acids, which may act as catalysers, and a study of the conditions under which catalysis takes place may throw some light on the essential nature of the action of ferments.

The velocity of almost any reaction in chemistry can be altered by the addition of some catalytic agent, and there are few of the ordinary reactions in which catalysis does not play some part. Among such processes we may instance the action of spongy platinum on hydrogen peroxide. Hydrogen peroxide undergoes slow spontaneous decomposition into water and oxygen. If a little spongy platinum be added to it, it is at once seen to decompose rapidly with the evolution of bubbles of oxygen, and the action does not cease until the whole of the hydrogen peroxide has been destroyed. Spongy platinum is able in the same way to quicken a very large number of chemical reactions. Thus sulphur dioxide and oxygen when heated together will combine very slowly; the combination becomes rapid if a mixture of the

two gases be passed over heated platinum. The same reaction, namely, the combination of sulphur dioxide with oxygen, may be quickened by the addition of a small trace of nitric oxide, and this fact is made use of in the manufacture of sulphuric acid on a commercial scale by the ordinary lead-chamber process. Hydrogen peroxide and hydriodic acid slowly interact with the formation of water and iodine. This reaction may be quickened by the addition of many substances, among which we may mention molybdic acid.

There is moreover a specificity in the action of catalysers, though not so well marked as with ferments. Whereas all the disaccharides are converted by acids into the corresponding monosaccharides, a ferment such as invertase acts only on cane sugar, and has no action on maltose or lactose, each of which requires a specific ferment (maltase, lactase) to effect their 'inversion.' But we find many examples of a restricted action even among inorganic catalysers. Thus potassium bichromate will act as the catalyser for the oxidation of hydriodic acid by bromic acid, but not for the oxidation of the same substance by iodic acid. Iron and copper salts in minute traces will quicken the oxidation of potassium iodide by potassium persulphate, but have no influence on the course of the oxidation of sulphur dioxide by potassium persulphate. Tungstic acid increases the velocity of oxidation of hydriodic acid by hydrogen peroxide, but has no effect on the velocity of oxidation of hydriodic acid by bromic acid, and these examples may be multiplied to any extent. One cannot therefore regard the limitation of action of the ferments as justifying any fundamental distinction being drawn between the action of this class of substances and catalysts.

Whereas the influence of most catalysers on the velocity of a reaction increases rapidly with rise of temperature, in the case of ferments this increase occurs only up to a certain point. This point is spoken of as the *optimum temperature* of the ferment action. If the mixture be heated above this point the action of the ferment rapidly slows off and then ceases. This contrast again is only apparent. The ferments are unstable bodies easily altered by change in their physical conditions, and destroyed in all cases at a temperature considerably below that of boiling water. Thus ferment actions, like catalytic actions, are quickened by rise of temperature, but the effect of temperature is finally put a stop to by the destruction of the ferment. The same applies to those inorganic catalysers whose physical state is susceptible, like that of the ferments, to the action of heat. Thus the colloidal platinum 'sol' exerts marked catalytic effects on various reactions, *e.g.* on the decomposition of hydrogen peroxide and on the combination of hydrogen and oxygen. The reaction presents an optimum temperature, owing to the fact that the colloidal platinum is altered, coagulated, and thrown out of solution when this is heated to near boiling-point. We may therefore employ either class of reactions in trying to form some conception of the processes which are actually involved.

Very many theories have been put forward to account for this action of catalysers or of ferments. Many of them are merely transcriptions in

words of the processes which actually occur, and fail to throw any light on their real nature. The essential phenomena involved fall directly into two classes. In the first class we must place those which are determined by the influence of surface. In many cases the combination of gases can be hastened by increasing the surface to which they are exposed, as by passing them over broken porcelain or over powdered charcoal. This catalytic effect is certainly connected with the power of a solid to condense gases at its surface, and is therefore proportional to the extent of surface exposed. Thus the efficacy of platinum in hastening the combination of hydrogen and oxygen is in direct proportion to its fineness of subdivision, and is best marked when the metal is reduced to ultra-microscopic dimensions, as in the colloidal solution of platinum. Every colloidal solution must be regarded as presenting an enormous surface in proportion to the mass of substance in solution. There is therefore a direct proportionality between the power of a substance to condense a gas on its surface and its power to quicken the velocity of chemical changes in which the gas is involved. The same process of condensation may occur with dissolved substances. In all cases where the presence of a substance in solution diminishes the surface tension of the solvent, there is a diffusion of dissolved substances into the surface, *i.e.* a concentration of dissolved substances at the surface of contact. It was suggested by Faraday that the catalytic property of surfaces was due to this condensation of molecules, and the consequent bringing of the two sets of molecules within each other's sphere of influence. Whether this is the sole factor involved is doubtful, since mere compression of gases or increased concentration of solutions does not in the majority of cases result in such a quickening of the velocity of reaction as is brought about by the effect of the surface.

It is possible that this condensation effect or adsorption may be in every case combined with the second factor which we must now consider, namely, the formation of intermediate products. If we boil an alkaline solution of indigo with some glucose, the indigo is reduced with oxidation of the glucose. The mixture therefore becomes colourless. On shaking up with air, the colourless reduction product of the indigo absorbs oxygen from the atmosphere, and is re-transformed into indigo. These two processes can be repeated until the whole of the glucose is oxidised, and the process can be made continuous if air or oxygen be bubbled through a heated solution of glucose containing a small trace of indigo. In this case the indigo does not add to the energy of the reaction. It appears unchanged among the final products and a small amount may be used to effect the change of an infinite quantity of glucose. It therefore may be said to act as a ferment or catalytic agent. Instead of an alkaline solution of indigo, we may use an ammoniacal solution of cupric oxide for the purpose of carrying oxygen from the atmosphere to the glucose. This is reduced to cuprous hydrate on heating with the sugar, but cupric hydrate can be at once re-formed by shaking up the cuprous solution with air. It has been thought that many or all of the catalytic reactions occur in the same way by two stages, *i.e.*

by the formation of an intermediate product. Thus, in the old lead chamber process for the manufacture of sulphuric acid, the nitric oxide may be supposed to combine with the oxygen of the air to form nitrogen peroxide. This interacts with sulphur dioxide, giving sulphur trioxide and nitric oxide once more. The nitric oxide, which we alluded to before as the catalyser, may in this way be regarded as the carrier of oxygen from air to sulphur dioxide. It has been suggested that the action of spongy platinum or colloidal platinum rests on the same process, and that in the oxidation of hydrogen, for instance, PtO or PtO_2 is formed and at once reduced by the hydrogen with the formation of water.

There is a certain amount of experimental evidence in favour of this hypothesis. According to Engler and Wöhler,* platinum black, which has been exposed to oxygen, in virtue of the gas which it has occluded, has the power of turning potassium iodide and starch blue. This power is not destroyed by heating to 260° in an atmosphere of Co_2, or by washing with hot water. On exposure of the platinum black to hydrochloric acid, a certain amount is dissolved, and the substance loses its effect on potassium iodide. The amount dissolved corresponds with the amount of iodine liberated from potassium iodide, and also with the amount of oxygen occluded, the (soluble) platinum and oxygen being in the proportions necessary to form the compound PtO.

But why should a reaction take place more quickly if it occurs in two stages instead of one ? As Ostwald has pointed out, the formation of an intermediate compound can be regarded as a sufficient explanation of a catalytic process only when it can be demonstrated by actual experiment that the rapidity of formation of the intermediate compound and the rapidity of its decomposition into the end-products of the reaction are in sum greater than the velocity of the reaction without the formation of the intermediate body. In the case of one reaction this requirement has been fulfilled. The catalytic effect of molybdic acid on the interaction of hydriodic acid and hydrogen peroxide has been explained by assuming that the first action which takes place is the formation of permolybdic acid, and that this then interacts with the hydrogen iodide to form water and iodine. Now it has been actually shown—(1) that permolybdic acid is formed by the action of hydrogen peroxide on molybdic acid ; (2) that permolybdic acid with hydriodic acid produces water and iodine ; (3) that the velocity with which these two reactions occur is much greater than the velocity of the interaction of hydrogen peroxide and hydriodic acid by themselves.

Although we may find it difficult to explain why a reaction should occur more quickly in the presence of a catalyser by the formation of these intermediate bodies, certain simple analogies may help us to comprehend how a factor which introduces no energy can yet assist the process. Thus a man might stand to all eternity before a perpendicular wall twenty feet high. Since he cannot reach its top at one jump, he is unable to get there at all. The introduction of a ladder will not in any way alter the total energy he must expend on raising his body for twenty feet, but will enable him to attain the top. Or we might imagine a stone perched at the top of a high hill. The passive resistance of the system, the friction of the stone, and its inertia will tend to keep it at rest, even though it be on a sloping surface and therefore tending to slide or roll to the bottom. If however it be rolled to a point where there is a sudden increase in the rapidity of slope, it may roll over, and having once started its downward course, its

* Quoted by Mellor, "Chemical Statics."

momentum will carry it to the bottom. The amount of energy set free by the stone in its fall will not vary whether the course be a uniform one, or whether it falls over a precipice at one time and rolls down a gentle slope at another. It is evident that by a mere alteration of the slope or, in the case of a chemical reaction, of the velocity of part of its course, a change in the system may be initiated and brought to a conclusion which without this alteration would never take place.

Since the action of ferments, like that of catalysts, consists essentially in the quickening up of processes which would otherwise occur at an infinitely slow velocity, it is possible that in their case also the formation of an intermediate compound may be involved in the reaction. Light may be thrown upon this question by a study of the velocity of the reaction induced by the action of a ferment.

It is well known that the velocity of a reaction depends on the number of molecules involved. As an illustration, we may take first the case of a reaction involving a change in one substance. If arseniuretted hydrogen be heated, it undergoes decomposition into hydrogen and arsenic. This decomposition is not immediate, but takes a certain time, and the velocity with which the change occurs depends on the temperature. At any given temperature the amount of substance changed in the unit of time varies with the concentration of the substance. If, for instance, one-tenth of the gas be dissociated in the first minute, in the second minute a further tenth of the gas will also be dissociated. Thus, if we start with 1000 grammes of substance, at the end of the first minute 100 grammes will have been dissociated, and 900 of the original substance will be left. In the second minute one-tenth again of the remaining substance will be dissociated, *i.e.* 90 grammes, leaving 810 grammes. In the third minute 81 grammes will be dissociated, leaving 729 grammes. The amount changed in the unit of time will always bear the same ratio to the whole substance which is to be changed, and will therefore be a function of the concentration of this substance. Put in the form of an equation, we may say that ϕ, the amount changed in the unit of time, will be equal to KC, where K is a constant varying with the substance in question and with the temperature, and C represents the concentration of the substance. The equation $\phi = KC$ applies to a monomolecular reaction.

If two substances are involved, the equation will be rather different. In this case the amount of change in a unit of time will be a function of the concentration of each of the substances, and the form of the equation will be $\phi = K(C_x + C_y)$. In the case of the unimolecular reaction, halving the concentration of the substance will halve the amount of substance changed in the unit of time. In the case of a bimolecular reaction, halving each of the substances will cause the amount of change in the unit of time to be reduced to one-quarter of its previous amount. If now either a unimolecular or a bimolecular reaction be quickened by the addition of a catalyser or ferment, and the ferment enter into combination with one of the substances at some stage of the reaction, it is evident that our equation must take account also of the concentration of the ferment or catalyser. In the case of the catalytic effect of molybdic acid on the interaction between hydrogen peroxide and HI, there was definite evidence of a reaction taking place between the molybdic acid and the peroxide, resulting in the formation of an intermediate compound, namely, permolybdic acid. Brode has shown that the interaction of the molybdic acid is revealed in the equation representing the velocity of the reaction. Without the addition of molybdic acid the equation would be:

$$\phi = K(C_{H_2O_2} \times C_{HI})$$

After the addition of molybdic acid, the equation becomes:

$$\phi = K(C_{H_2O_2} + \gamma \text{ C molybdic acid})C_{HI},$$

when γ is another constant depending on the molybdic acid. If ferments act in a similar way by the formation of intermediate compounds, this fact should be revealed by a study of the velocity at which the ferment action takes place.

Various methods may be adopted for the study of the velocity of ferment action. If, for instance, we are investigating the action of diastase upon starch, we should take solutions of starch and of diastase of known concentrations, keep them in a water bath at 38°C., and at a certain point add, say, 20 c.c. of ferment solution to every 100 c.c. of the starch solution. At periods of five or ten minutes after the addition had been made, 5 c.c. of the mixture might be withdrawn by a pipette and at once run into boiling Fehling's solution. The precipitated cuprous oxide would be dried and weighed, and would give directly the amount of sugar formed by the action of the ferment. After obtaining a series of data in this way, a curve could be drawn, showing the amount of change of starch which had occurred in each unit of time. In the case of the action of invertase on cane sugar the investigation is still easier. Since the change from cane sugar to invert sugar is accompanied by a change in the rotatory power of the solution on polarised light, it is necessary only to put the mixture of ferment and cane sugar into a polarimeter tube, which is kept at a constant temperature by means of a water jacket, and read off at intervals of a few minutes the change in the rotatory power of the solution. From this change can be easily calculated the percentage of cane sugar still present, and therefore the total amount which has been converted into fructose and glucose.

In investigating the action of proteolytic ferments, as, *e.g.* that of trypsin on caseinogen, samples are taken at five-minute intervals and run into some substance such as trichloracetic acid, which will precipitate all the unchanged protein, but will leave in solution the products of hydration of the protein. From the amount of nitrogen in the filtrate from the precipitate can be determined the total amount of protein which has undergone hydration in the sample under observation. Or the amount of albumoses and peptones present in each sample may be estimated by the intensity of the biuret reaction which can be obtained. This method however suffers from the drawback that the albumoses and peptones, at any rate in the action of trypsin, are formed merely as a stage in the process, and the intensity of the reaction will first rise to a maximum and then gradually disappear. A very convenient method is that employed by Henri and by Bayliss in the investigation of the kinetics of tryptic action, namely, the determination of the conductivity of the solution. In the disintegration of the molecule caused by the action of the ferment, there is a continuous increase in the conductivity of the solution, and this increase can be regarded as an index to the rate of change in the substances undergoing disintegration.

By such methods it has been found that, when the quantity of ferment employed is very small in comparison with the *substrate* (the substance acted upon), the amount of change in a given time is proportional to the amount of ferment present, and is (within limits) independent of the concentration of the substrate. This is well shown by the two following Tables representing the action of lactase upon lactose (E. F. Armstrong):

PROPORTIONS HYDROLYSED IN 100 C.C. OF A 5 PER CENT. SOLUTION OF LACTOSE

Solutions containing—	1·5 hours	20 hours	45 hours
1 c.c. lactase . . .	0·15	2·2	3·9
10 c.c. „ . . .	1·6	23·3	38·6
20 c.c. „ . .	3·2	45·8	—

AMOUNT OF SUGAR (LACTOSE) HYDROLYSED

Solutions containing	24 hours		46 hours	
	Proportion	Weight	Proportion	Weight
10 per cent. lactose	14·2	1·42	22·2	2·22
20 „ „ .	7·0	1·40	10·9	2·18
30 „ „ .	4·8	1 44	7·7	2·21

Moreover, if we take only the earlier stages of the ferment action, it is found that, with small proportions of ferment, equal amounts of substrate are changed in successive intervals of time until about 10 per cent. has been hydrolysed. This is shown in the following Table:

2 PER CENT. LACTOSE WITH LACTASE

Time	Amount hydrolysed
½ hour	3.2
⅔ „	6.4
1 „	9.6
2 hours	16.4
3 „	20.8

These results can be interpreted only by assuming that the first stage in the reaction is a combination of ferment with substrate. It is only this compound which represents the active mass of the molecules, *i.e.* the molecules of substrate which are undergoing change. This compound, as soon as it is formed, takes up water and breaks down, setting free the hydrolysed substrate and the ferment, which is at once ready to combine with a further portion of the substrate. In such a case the velocity of reaction must be directly proportional to the amount of ferment, and the same absolute quantity of substance will continue to be changed in succeeding units of time. Supposing, for instance, we had a load of bricks at the bottom of a hill which had to be transferred to the top, and five men to effect the transference. The rate of transference would be directly proportional to the number of men employed; we could double the rate by doubling the men.

Moreover the number of bricks carried in each unit of time would be the same. Five men would carry as many bricks in the second ten minutes as they would in the first, and so on. On the other hand, the velocity with which the transference was effected would be independent of the number—that is, the *concentration*—of the bricks at the bottom of the hill. The *active mass* of bricks could be regarded as that number carried at any moment by the transferring factor, namely, the men. The equation of change would be $\phi = KC$, where C is the concentration of the ferment. This concentration is always being renewed, and kept constant by the breaking down of the intermediate product, so that the rate of change would be continuous throughout the experiment.

On the other hand, when the amount of ferment is relatively large, the rate of change, though at first very rapid, tends continuously to diminish. This is shown by the following Table representing the rates of change, during succeeding intervals of ten minutes, in a caseinogen solution to which a strong solution of trypsin had been added (Bayliss).

VELOCITY OF TRYPSIN REACTION

6 c.c. 8 per cent. caseinogen + 2 c.c. $\frac{N}{10}$ AmHO + 2 c.c 2 per cent. trypsin at 39°C.

1st 10 minutes	K = 0·0079
2nd ,,	0·0046
3rd ,,	0·0032
4th ,,	0·0022
5th ,,	0·0016
7th ,,	0·0009
&c	&c.

The cause of this rapid diminution in the velocity of change is probably complex. One factor may be an auto-destruction of the ferment, which is known to occur in watery solution. That this is not the only, or even the chief, factor involved is shown by the fact that, when the action of trypsin on caseinogen has apparently come to an end, it may be renewed by further dilution of the mixture or by removal of the end-products of the action by dialysis. It is evident that, in this retardation of the later stages of ferment action, the end-products are concerned in some way or other, and the retardation can be augmented by adding to the digesting mixture the boiled end-products of a previous digestion. The retarding effect of the end-products resembles in many ways that observed in a whole series of reactions which are known as reversible.

As an example of such a reaction we may take the case of methyl acetate and water. When methyl acetate is mixed with water, it undergoes decomposition with the formation of methyl alcohol and acetic acid. On the other hand, if acetic acid be mixed with alcohol, an interaction takes place with the formation of methyl acetate and water. These changes are represented by the equation:

$$\underset{\text{methylacetate}}{MeC_2H_3O_2} + \underset{\text{water}}{HOH} = \underset{\text{methylalcohol}}{MeOH} + \underset{\text{acetic acid}}{HC_2H_3O_2}.$$

Each of these changes has a certain velocity constant, and, since they are in opposite directions, there must be some equilibrium point where no change will occur, and

there will be a definite amount of all four substances present in the mixture, namely, water, alcohol, ester, and acid. This equilibrium point can be shifted by altering the amount of any of the four substances. Thus the interaction of methyl acetate and water can be diminished to any desired extent by adding to the mixture the products of the interaction, namely, methyl alcohol and acetic acid.

There is evidence that some of the ferment actions are reversible. Thus maltase acts on maltose with the formation of two molecules of glucose. If the maltase be added to a concentrated solution of glucose, we get a reverse effect, with the production of a disaccharide which has been designated as isomaltose or revertose. To this reverse action may be due a certain amount of the retardation observed in the action of trypsin on coagulable protein. A more important factor is probably the combination of the ferment itself with the end-products and the consequent removal of the ferment from the sphere of action. Several facts speak for such a mode of explanation. Thus the action of lactase on milk sugar is not retarded by both its end-products, namely, glucose and galactose, but only by galactose. In the same way the action of invertase on cane sugar is retarded by the end-product fructose, but not at all by the other end-product, glucose.

So far therefore a study of the velocity of ferment actions would lead us to suspect that the ferment combines in the first place with the substrate, and that this combination is a necessary step in the alteration of the substrate. In the second place, the ferment is taken up to a certain extent by some or all of the end-products, and this combination acts in opposition to the first combination, tending to remove the ferment from the sphere of action, and therefore to retard the whole reaction. Other facts can be adduced in favour of these conclusions. Thus it has been shown that invertase ferment, which is destroyed when heated in watery solution at a temperature of 60°C., can, if a large excess of its substrate, cane sugar, be present, be heated 25° higher without undergoing destruction. The same protective effect is observed in the case of trypsin. Trypsin in watery or weakly alkaline solutions undergoes rapid decomposition. At 37°C. it may lose 50 per cent. of its proteolytic power within half an hour. If, on the other hand, trypsin be mixed with a protein such as egg albumin or caseinogen, or with the products of its own action, namely, albumoses and peptones, it can be kept many hours without undergoing any considerable loss of power.

It has been found that, whereas maltase splits up all the α-glucosides, it has no power on the β-glucosides; that is to say, maltase will fit into a molecule of a certain configuration, but is powerless to affect a molecule which differs from the first only in its stereochemical structure. On the other hand, emulsin, which breaks up β-glucosides, has no influence on α-glucosides. This specific affinity of the ferments for optically active groups of bodies suggests that the ferment itself may be optically active. We cannot of course isolate the ferment and determine its optical behaviour; but that it is optically active is rendered probable both by these results and certain results obtained by Dakin on lipase, the fat-splitting ferment. Dakin carried out his experiments on the esters of mandelic acid. Mandelic acid is optically inactive, but this optically inactive modification consists of a mixture of equal parts of dextro-rotatory

and lævo-rotatory mandelic acid. The esters prepared from the optically inactive acids are themselves optically inactive. Dakin found that, when an optically inactive mandelic ester was acted upon by a lipase prepared from the liver, the final results of the action were also inactive; but if the reaction were interrupted at the half-way point, the mandelic acid which had been liberated was dextro-rotatory, while the remainder of the ester was lævo-rotatory. Thus the rate of hydrolysis of the dextro-component of the ester is greater than that of the lævo-component, a result which can be best explained by the assumptions (*a*) that the enzyme or a substance closely associated with it is a powerfully optically active substance; (*b*) that actual combination takes place between the enzyme and the ester undergoing hydrolysis. Since the additive compounds thus formed in the case of the dextro- and lævo-components of the ester would not be optical opposites, they would be decomposed with unequal velocity, and thus account for the liberation of the optically active mandelic acid.

We may conclude that in the action of ferments on the food substances, whether carbohydrate or protein, an essential factor is the combination of the ferment with the substrate. Only the part of the substrate, which is thus combined with the ferment, can be regarded as the active mass and as undergoing the hydrolytic change. What is the nature of this combination? Ferments, which are all of a colloidal or semi-colloidal character, cannot be dealt with in the same way as the catalysts of definite chemical composition, such as molybdic acid or nitric oxide. In many cases the substrate, *e.g.* starch or protein, is also colloidal, and the combination therefore falls into the class of combinations between colloids. In this we have an interaction between two substances in which the adsorption by the surfaces of the molecules of one or both substances plays an important part, though this adsorption is itself determined or modified by the chemical configuration of the molecules. The combination of ferments with their substrates belongs therefore to that special class of interactions, not entirely chemical and not entirely physical, but depending for their existence on a co-operation of both chemical and physical factors, which we have discussed earlier under the name of *adsorption compounds*.

FERMENTS AS SYNTHETIC AGENTS

If maltase, obtained from yeast, or from the so-called takadiastase (prepared from *Aspergillus oryzæ*), be added to a solution of maltose, the latter is hydrolysed to glucose. The process of hydrolysis stops short of complete inversion at a point varying with the concentration of the sugar solution. Thus in a 10 per cent. solution of maltose, inversion proceeds until 98 per cent. of the maltose is converted into dextrose, whereas in a 40 per cent. solution the change stops short when 85 per cent. sugar has undergone inversion. Croft Hill showed that if the maltase were added to a 40 per cent. solution of dextrose, a change took place in the reverse direction, which proceeded until 85 per cent. of the glucose was left. The sugar formed, which is a disaccharide, was regarded by Croft Hill as maltose. According to Emmerling, however, it is the stereoisomeric sugar, iso-maltose, which is formed; and Croft Hill in his later papers spoke of the sugar as *revertose*.

In the same way it has been shown by Castle and Loewenhart that the

hydrolysis of esters by lipase is a reversible reaction, the action of lipase being simply to hasten the attainment of the equilibrium point between the four substances—ester (or neutral fat), water, fatty acid, and alcohol. Similar reversible effects have been described for other ferments. Thus the addition of pepsin to a strong solution of albumoses causes the appearance of an insoluble precipitate, which is called *plastein*, and has been regarded as produced by the resynthesis of the original protein molecule.

If all ferment actions are in this way reversible, a possibility is opened of regarding the synthetic processes occurring in the living cell, as well as the processes of disintegration, as determined by the action of enzymes. It must be noted that these effects are obtained with distinctness only when dealing with concentrated solutions. The degree of synthesis which would be produced in the very dilute solutions of glucose &c. occurring in the animal cell would therefore be infinitesimal. But if a mechanism were provided for the immediate separation of the synthetical product from the sphere of reaction, either by removing it to a different part of the cell or by building it up into some more complex body which was not acted on by the ferment, the process of synthesis might go on indefinitely, and the infinitesimal quantities be summated to an appreciable amount.

Some experiments by Bertrand on fat synthesis have been interpreted as showing that the process of synthesis by ferments is not the mere attainment of an equilibrium point in a reversible reaction. It has long been known that watery extracts of the fresh pancreas split neutral fats into the higher fatty acids and glycerine. This observer has shown that, if the pancreas be dried with alcohol and ether and powdered, addition of the dry powder to a mixture of the higher fatty acids and glycerine brings about a rapid synthesis of neutral fat. The process of synthesis is at once stopped by the addition of water. In this case either there are two ferments present, one a synthetising, the other a hydrolysing, ferment, differing in their conditions of activity, or there is one ferment which may act either as a fat-splitting or fat-forming agent according to the conditions under which it is placed. In the latter case the effect of the addition of water would be simply to alter the equilibrium point of the mixture. It has been shown that in all reversible reactions the equilibrium position is the same from whichever side it be approached. The action of the ferment is to hasten the attainment of equilibrium, the position of the latter being determined by the relative concentration of the reacting molecules.

SECTION V

ELECTRICAL CHANGES IN LIVING TISSUES

THE material composing living cells and tissues is permeated throughout with water containing electrolytes in solution. All salts, as we have seen, undergo ionic dissociation in watery solution—a dissociation which, in the concentrations occurring in the animal body, must be nearly complete. When an electric current passes through the living tissues it is carried by the charged ions formed by the dissociation of the salts. Thus, n/10 solution of sodium chloride contains almost entirely $\overset{+}{\text{Na}}$ and $\overset{-}{\text{Cl}}$ ions. In addition to these charged inorganic ions, the cell protoplasm contains in solution or suspension various colloidal particles which in many cases are themselves charged. By the presence of these colloidal particles marked differences may be caused in the distribution of the inorganic ions owing to the power of adsorption possessed by the colloids for many inorganic salts. It is evident that any unequal distribution of the charged ions or colloidal particles in a tissue or on the two sides of a membrane may give rise to corresponding unequal distribution of electric charges, and therefore differences of potential between different parts of the tissue, which under suitable conditions may find their expression in an electric current. It is therefore not surprising that practically every functional change in a tissue has been shown to be associated with the production of differences of electrical potential. Thus all parts of an uninjured muscle are isopotential, and any two points may be led off to a galvanometer without any current being observed. If however one part of the muscle be strongly excited, as for instance by injury, so that it is brought into a state of lasting excitation, it will be found that, on leading off from this point and a point on the uninjured surface to a galvanometer, a current flows through the latter from the uninjured to the injured surface. Every beat of the heart, every twitch of a muscle, every state of secretion of a gland, is associated in the same way with electrical changes. In most cases the electrical changes associated with activity have the same general character, the excited part being found to be negative in reference to any other part of the tissue which is at rest. The uniform character of the electric response in different kinds of tissues suggests that an accurate knowledge of the changes in the distribution of charged ions responsible for the response ought to throw important light on the intimate nature of excitation generally. It may be therefore advisable to consider more closely the

conditions which determine differences of potential in a complex system of electrolytes.

As a simple case we may take an ordinary concentration cell. Two vessels (Fig. 29), A and B, are united by a glass tube C. A contains a 10 per cent. solution of zinc sulphate and B a 1 per cent. solution of the same salt. A rod of pure zinc is immersed in each limb. On connecting the zinc by a zinc wire to a galvanometer a current is observed to flow from A to B through the galvanometer, and therefore from B to A through the cell. A

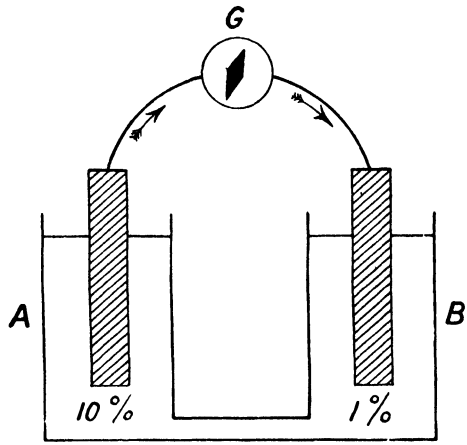


FIG 29

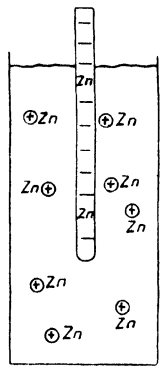


FIG 30.

solution of zinc sulphate contains partly undissociated $ZnSO_4$ and partly dissociated $\overset{+}{Zn}$ and $\overset{-}{SO_4}$ ions. If a rod of zinc be immersed in a watery fluid the zinc tends to dissolve. The Zn passing into the fluid is however directly ionised, and therefore carries a positive charge into the fluid, leaving the zinc negatively charged (Fig. 30). This process of solution will rapidly come to an end, since the positively charged ions in the fluid will repel back into the zinc any ions which may be escaping from the zinc. The amount of zinc actually dissolved in the fluid is infinitesimal, the process of solution ceasing when the pressure (osmotic pressure) of the Zn ions in the fluid equals what may be called the 'electrolytic solution pressure' of the zinc. The continued solution of the zinc is therefore possible only when means are supplied for the Zn ions in the fluid to get rid of their positive charges.

In an ordinary Daniell cell the Zn ions which leave the zinc are discharged by combining with the SO_4 ions passing to the zinc from the copper sulphate in the outer cell. It is a well-known fact that pure zinc does not dissolve in acid until some other metal, such as copper, is brought into contact with it, so as to set up an electric couple, *i.e.* to provide means for the discharge of the Zn ions passing into the solution. When the zinc is immersed in the two solutions of zinc sulphate in the concentration battery, the same change will occur. The $ZnSO_4$ solution in the two limbs of the

concentration cell already contains Zn ions. Since their pressure in the 10 per cent. solution is greater than in the 1 per cent. solution, fewer Zn ions will leave the zinc in A than in B. The negative charge on the Zn in A will therefore be less than that on the rod in B, and positive electricity will therefore flow from A to B. This will disturb the equilibrium at the surface both of B and A, so that Zn ions will be deposited from the fluid on the surface of the zinc in A and will continue to pass from zinc into solution in B. At the same time there is a movement of SO_4 ions, set free at the surface of A towards B. The ultimate result therefore is that the zinc in B dissolves and the same amount of zinc is deposited on A. The solution of zinc sulphate on A becomes progressively weaker, while that in B becomes stronger, until finally the concentrations in the two limbs are identical and the current ceases. In this process no chemical energy is involved, the energy set free by the conversion of zinc into zinc sulphate in B being exactly balanced by the energy lost by the deposition of zinc from zinc sulphate in A. Yet the current which is produced has a certain amount of energy which can be utilised for heating a wire through which it is made to pass. Since this energy must be taken from the cell, the cell is cooled during the passage of the current. We have here a close analogy with the case of compressed gases. If the 10 per cent. and 1 per cent. solutions were mixed together in a calorimeter, no change of temperature would be produced, since no work is done in the process. In the same way no cooling effect is observed if compressed gas be allowed to expand into a vacuum. If however the compressed gas be allowed to expand from a narrow orifice against the pressure of the external air, so that it does work in the process, it is cooled, and this cooling effect is made use of in the working of refrigerating machines or for the liquefaction of gases. We may therefore regard the concentration battery as a machine for making the substances in solution do work as they expand from a strong into a dilute solution.

The differences of potential obtained from an ordinary concentration cell are very small and would not suffice to account for such a high electromotive force as is set up, *e.g.* in the contraction of a muscle. We have seen earlier however that even in isosmotic solutions differences of pressure may be brought about by differences in diffusibility of the substances in solution, especially if the two solutions be separated by a membrane. Very large differences may be produced if this membrane be practically impermeable to one or other of the dissolved substances. In the same way a semipermeable membrane, *i.e.* a membrane with different permeabilities for the different ions of the two solutions, may suffice to bring the differences of potential of a concentration cell up to and beyond the extent

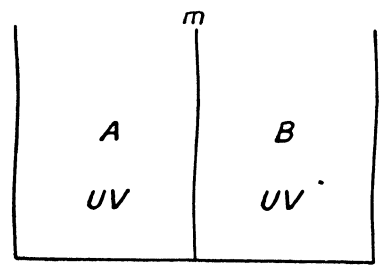


FIG. 31.

which is observed in living tissues. Supposing we have (Fig. 31) two solutions, A and B, each containing an electrolyte, UV, in different concentrations separated by a membrane m. If u represents the velocity of transmission of U through m, and v the velocity of V, then the electromotive force of the cell is given by the formula

$$\frac{u - v}{u + v} 0{\cdot}0577.\log._{10} \frac{c_2}{c_1} \text{ Volt.}$$

If v is taken as very small, the membrane may be regarded as semipermeable for the corresponding ion V. Supposing we take potassium chloride as the solution, we should have to make the concentration in B eight times that in A, in order to get a current of strength equal to that obtained from the olfactory nerve of the pike, for example. Macdonald has made such an assumption in order to explain the normal nerve current. He suggests that the axis cylinder contains an electrolyte which is equivalent to a 2·6 per cent. solution of potassium chloride. It is unnecessary however to assume such great differences of concentration if we regard the membrane as itself a solution of electrolytes, as has been suggested by Cremer, or if we take different substances on the two sides of the membrane. In the case of two electrolytes, U_1V_1, U_2V_2 (U being the cation in each case), separated by a membrane with varying permeability for the different ions, the electromotive force of the cell is given by the following formula:

$$0{\cdot}0577 \log._{10} \frac{u_1 + v_2}{u_2 + v_1}$$

where u_1, v_1, u_2, v_2, are the velocities of the corresponding ions. We assume that the concentrations of the two solutions are identical. Now it is evident that by making u_2 and v_1 very small, the expression $\log._{10} \frac{u_1 + v_2}{u_2 + v_1}$ may be made to attain any quantity, and in the same way by making $u_1 + v_2$ infinitesimally small, the electromotive force of the combination will also become correspondingly small. The thickness of the membrane does not come into the formula, so that membranes of microscopic or even ultramicroscopic thickness, which we have seen reason to assume as present in and around cells and their parts, could perform all the functions required of the hypothetical membrane in the above example. This is also the case when V_1 is the same as V_2—that is to say, there is a common anion or a common cation on the two sides of the membrane.

It must be remembered that the passage of a current through a membrane impermeable to one or other ion in the surrounding fluid will cause an accumulation of the ion at the surface of the membrane, so that this will become polarised. Such an accumulation at any surface will naturally alter the properties of the surface, including its surface tension. The construction of the capillary electrometer depends on this fact. When mercury is in contact with dilute acid or mercuric sulphate solution it takes a positive charge from the fluid, and the state of stress at the surface of contact between the mercury and the negatively charged fluid diminishes the surface tension of

the mercury. If the mercury be in the form of a drop in a tube drawn out to a capillary, the mercury will run down the capillary and the drop will be deformed until the surface tension tending to pull the mercury into a spherical globule is just equal to the force of gravity tending to make the mercury run out through the end of the capillary (Fig. 32). If the mercury be immersed in sulphuric acid it will descend to a lower level in the capillary owing to the diminution of its surface tension, If now the acid and the mercury be connected with a source of current so as to charge the mercury negatively, the effect will be to diminish the charge previously taken up by the mercury. The state of tension at the contact with the acid is therefore diminished, the surface tension is increased, and the mercury withdraws itself from the point of the capillary. If however the mercury be connected with the positive pole, its charge will be increased and its surface tension correspondingly diminished, so that the meniscus will move towards the point of the capillary. The movement of the meniscus to or away from the point may thus be used, as in the capillary electrometer, to show the direction and amount of any moderate electric change occurring in a tissue, two points of which are connected with the mercury and the acid respectively. It is possible that this electrical alteration of surface tension may be a determining factor in many of the phenomena of movement observed in the animal body. We shall have occasion to discuss this question more fully when endeavouring to account for the ultimate nature of muscular contraction.

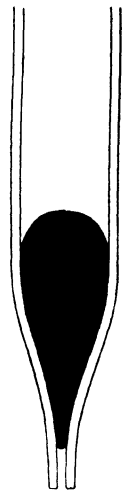


FIG. 32.

BOOK II

THE MECHANISMS OF MOVEMENT AND SENSATION

CHAPTER V

THE CONTRACTILE TISSUES

SECTION I

THE STRUCTURE OF VOLUNTARY MUSCLE

THE most striking features in the continual series of adaptations to the environment, which make up the life of an individual, are the movements carried out by contractions of the skeletal muscles. In fact, all the mechanisms of nutrition can be regarded as directed to the maintenance of the neuro-muscular apparatus, *i.e.* of the mechanism for adapted movement. With the growth of the cerebral hemispheres, which determines the rise in the scale of animal life, the skeletal muscles become more and more the machinery of conscious reaction. Even the highest of the adaptations possessed by man, those involving the use of speech, are impossible without some kind of movement. A man's relation to his fellows, and his value in the community, are determined by these higher muscular adaptations. It is not therefore surprising that the organs of the body which present in the highest degree the reactivity characteristic of all living things should have early attracted the attention of physiologists and have been the object of numberless researches directed to determining the ultimate nature of the processes generally described as vital.

The movements of the muscles are carried out in response to changes aroused in the central nervous system by events occurring in the environment and acting on the surface of the body. Every movement of an animal is thus in its most primitive form a reflex action, and involves changes in a peripheral sense organ, in an afferent nerve fibre, in the central nervous system, and in an efferent nerve fibre, before the actual process of contraction occurs in the muscle itself and gives rise to the resultant movement (Fig. 33). If we are to determine the nature of the changes involved in this reflex action, we must be able to study them as they progress along the different elements which make up the reflex arc. This analysis is facilitated by the fact that we are able to arouse a condition of activity in the different parts of the arc, even when isolated from one another. Thus we can excite any given reflex movement by stimulation of the periphery of the body, or of the afferent nerve passing from the surface to the central nervous

system. We can proceed further and cut the efferent nerve away from the central nervous system and still succeed in exciting a condition of activity in the efferent nerve or in its attached muscle. All parts of the reflex arc possess the property of excitability, and we are thus able to arouse the activity of each part in turn, to study its conditions, its time relations, and the physical and chemical changes concomitant with the state of activity.

It will be convenient for our analysis to begin with the tissue whose

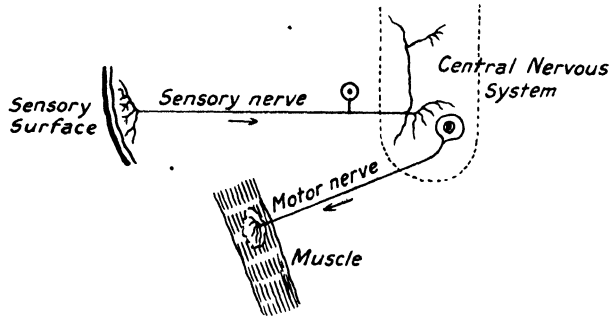


FIG. 33. Diagram of a reflex arc.

reaction forms an end link in the reflex chain, namely, the muscle, and to proceed from that to the consideration of the processes occurring in the conducting strand between central nervous system and muscle, namely, the nerve fibre, postponing to a future chapter the treatment of the more complex processes associated with the central nervous system.

In the higher animals we may distinguish several varieties of muscle. All movements that require to be sharply and forcibly carried out are effected by means of striated muscular tissue and, as these movements are in nearly all cases under the control of the will, the muscles are generally spoken of as *voluntary*. Unstriated or involuntary muscles form sheets or closed tubes surrounding the hollow viscera. By their slow, prolonged contractions they serve to maintain and regulate the flow of the contents of these organs. Such fibres are found surrounding the blood-vessels, the alimentary canal, the bladder, &c. Intermediate in properties as well as structure between these two classes is the heart muscle. This, like voluntary muscle, is striated, but presents considerable variations both in structure and function from ordinary skeletal muscle. Many of its properties will be considered in treating of the physiology of the heart.

The properties of contractile tissues have been most fully investigated in the voluntary muscles, almost exclusively on the muscles of cold-blooded animals, such as the frog. The choice of skeletal muscles for this purpose is justified by the fact that a function is most easily investigated in the organs in which it is most highly developed. The choice of cold-blooded animals is guided by the fact that it is possible to isolate the muscle from the rest of the body and to study its reactions during a considerable time without the research being interfered with by the death of the tissue. We may therefore deal at length with the properties of the skeletal muscles, pointing out inci-

dentally in what respects the heart muscle and involuntary muscle differ from the skeletal muscle.

The voluntary or striated muscles form a large part of the body, and are known as the flesh or meat. Each muscle is embedded in a layer of connective tissue, and is made up of an aggregation of muscular fibres, which are united into bundles by means of areolar connective tissue. The individual fibres vary much in length, and may be as long as 4 or 5 cm. At each end of the muscle the fibres are firmly united to tough bundles of white fibres, which form the tendon of the muscle, and are attached as

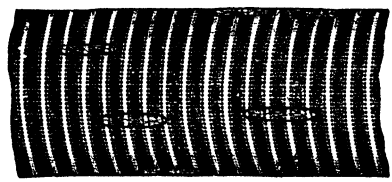


FIG. 34. Muscular fibre of a mammal, examined fresh in serum, highly magnified. (SCHAFER.)

a rule to bones. Running in the connective tissue framework of the muscle we find a number of blood-vessels, capillaries and nerves.

On examination of a living muscle, each fibre is seen to consist of a series of alternate light and dark striæ, arranged at right angles to its long axis, and enclosed in a structureless sheath- the sarcolemma. Lying under the sarcolemma are a number of oval nuclei embedded in a small amount of granular protoplasm. In some animals these nuclei occupy a central position in the fibre. Each band may be considered to be made up of a number of prisms (sarcomeres) side by side, with interstitial substance (sarcoplasm) between them. The muscle prisms of adjacent discs are connected to form long columns (primitive fibrillæ, or sarcostyles). Each muscle prism is more transparent at the two ends than in the middle, thus giving rise to the appearance of light and dark striæ. In the middle of the light band is a line or row of dots (often appearing double), called Krause's membrane.

The development of this regular cross and longitudinal striation is closely connected with the evolution and specialisation of the muscular function, *i.e.* contraction. Contractility is among others a function of all undifferentiated protoplasm. Undifferentiated cells, such as the amœba, can effect only slow and weak contractions. Directly a specialisation of function is necessary and some cell or part of a cell has to contract rapidly in response to some stimulus from within or without, we find a differentiation both of form and of internal structure. In many cases, as in the developing muscle of the embryo or the adult muscles of many invertebrates, this differentiation affects only part of the cell, so that while one part presents the ordinary granular appearance, the other half is finely and longitudinally

striated, the striation being apparently due to the development of special contractile fibrillæ. In the slowly contracting unstriated muscle of the vertebrate intestine, the longitudinal striation is with difficulty made out, but as the muscle rises in the scale of efficiency, the longitudinal striation becomes more apparent, and in the striated muscle of vertebrates, and still more in the wonderful wing-muscles of insects, which can perform three hundred complete contractions in a second, the longitudinal is associated

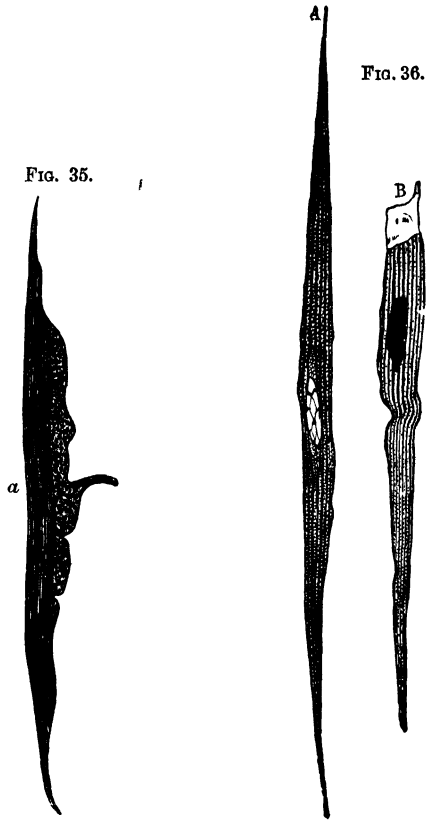


FIG. 35. FIG. 36.

FIG. 35. Muscle fibre of an ascaris. *a*, the differentiated contractile portion of the cell. (After HERTWIG.)

FIG. 36. Muscle fibres from the small intestine, showing the fine longitudinal striation. (SCHÄFER.)

with and often apparently subordinated to a transverse striation, due to the regular segmentation of the contractile fibrillæ or *sarcostyles*. Every muscular fibre, which presents any trace of histological differentiation, may be said to consist of contractile fibrillæ (sarcostyles), each composed of a series of contractile elements (*sarcous elements* or *sarcomeres*), and embedded in a granular material known as *sarcoplasm*. The great divergence in the aspect of muscular fibres from different parts of the animal kingdom is

largely conditioned by the varying relations, spatial and quantitative, of the sarcoplasm to the sacostyles. Thus in the higher vertebrates, two types of voluntary muscular fibre are distinguished, according to the

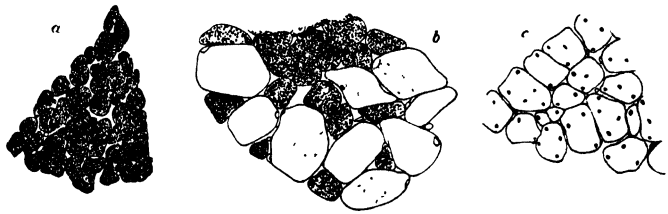


FIG. 37. Transverse sections of the pectoral muscles of *a*, the falcon, *b*, the goose. and *c*, the domestic fowl. It will be noticed that the relative amount of granular or red fibres present varies directly as the bird's power of sustained flight. (After KNOLL.)

amount of sarcoplasm they contain : one rich in sarcoplasm, more granular in cross-section, and generally containing hæmoglobin ; and the other poor in sarcoplasm, clear in cross-section, and containing no hæmoglobin. From the fact that the granular fibres are found chiefly in those muscles which have to carry out long-continued and powerful contractions, it seems reasonable to regard the interstitial sarcoplasm as the local food-supply of the active sarcostyles, although some authors have endowed the sarcoplasm with a contractile power of its own, differing only by its extremely prolonged character from the quick twitch of the sarcostyles. The connection between structure and activity of the muscle-fibres is well shown by Fig. 37.

FIG. 38. Fibrils of the wing-muscles of a wasp, prepared by Rollet's method. Highly magnified. (E. A. SCHÄFER.)

A, a contracted fibril. B, a stretched fibril, with its sarcous elements separated at the line o Hensen. C, an uncontracted fibril, showing the porous structure of the sarcous elements.

In some animals, such as the rabbit, we find muscles consisting almost entirely of one or other of these varieties ; but in most animals (amongst which we may reckon frog and man) the two varieties occur together in one muscle, so that what we have to say about the properties of voluntary muscle, which rests nearly entirely on experiments with frog's muscle, really has reference to a mixed muscle, *i.e.* muscle containing both red and white fibres.

Since the sarcous element represents the contractile unit of the muscle, a knowledge of its intimate structure should be of great importance for the theory of muscular contraction. Unfortunately however we are here at the limits of the demonstrably

visible. It becomes difficult to determine how far the appearances observed under the microscope are due to actual structural differences or are produced by the unequal diffraction of light by the various elements of the muscle fibre. All observers are agreed that the essential contractile element is the row of sarcous elements forming the muscle fibril or sarcostyle. Schäfer, working on the highly differentiated wing-muscle of the wasp, concludes that each sarcostyle is divided by Krause's membranes (the lines in the middle of each light stripe) into sarcomeres. Each sarcomere contains a darker substance near the centre divided into two parts by Hensen's disc. At each end of the sarcomere the contents are clear and hyaline. In the act of contraction, the clear material flows, according to Schäfer, into tubular pores in the central dark material.

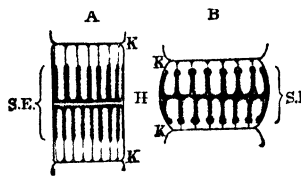


FIG. 39. Diagram of a sarcomere in a moderately extended condition, A, and in a contracted condition, B; K, K, membranes of Krause: H, line or plane of Hensen; SE, poriferous sarcous elements.
(SCHAFER)

Most histologists agree in assigning to the middle part of the sarcous element (the sarcomere) a denser structure than to the two ends. According to Macdougall, however, the lighter appearance at each end of the sarcomere is an optical illusion. He regards the sarcous element as a cylindrical bag with homogeneous contents, crossed only by one or three delicate transverse membranes. Krause's membrane would be rigid, while the lateral wall of the sarcous element is extensible, and is folded longitudinally, so that it can bulge out and produce a shortening and thickening of the whole sarcous element if by any means the pressure be raised in its interior. In favour of a differentiation within the sarcomere itself is the fact that under certain conditions it is possible to produce a precipitate, limited only to central part, *i.e.* to the sarcous element to which Schäfer assigns a tubular structure.

When a muscle fibre, killed by osmic acid or alcohol, is examined under the microscope by polarised light, it is seen to be made up of alternate bands of singly and doubly refracting material. The doubly refracting (*anisotropous*) substance corresponds to the dark band, and the singly refracting (*isotropous*) to the light band. If the living fibre be examined in the same way, it is found that nearly the whole of it is doubly refracting, the singly refracting substance appearing only as a meshwork with long parallel meshes corresponding to the muscle prisms. In short, in a living fibre the muscle prisms are anisotropous, the sarcoplasm isotropous.

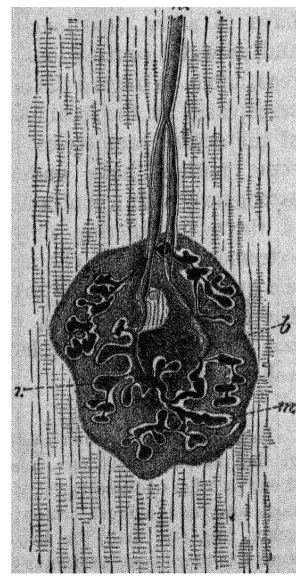


FIG. 40. Motor end-organ of a lizard, gold preparation (KÜHNE.)
n, nerve fibre dividing as it approaches the end-organ; *r*, ramification of axis cylinder upon *b*, granular bed or sole of the end-organ; *m*, clear substance surrounding the ramifications of the axis cylinder.

When a muscle fibre contracts, there is an apparent reversal of the situations of the light and dark stripes, owing to the fact that the interstitial sarcoplasm is squeezed out from between the bulging sarcomeres, and accumulates on each side of the membranes of Krause. The accumulation of sarcoplasm in this situation makes the previously light striæ appear dark, and the dark striæ by contrast lighter

than they were before. That there is no true reversal of the striæ is shown by examining the muscle by polarised light, the two substances, isotropous and anisotropous, retaining their relative positions.

Every skeletal muscle is connected with the central nervous system by nerve fibres, some conveying impressions from the muscle to the centre, the others acting as the path of the motor impulses from the centre to the muscle. These latter—the motor nerves—end in the muscular fibre itself, by means of a special end-organ—the motor end-plate. The neurilemma of the nerve fibre becomes continuous with the sarcolemma, the medullary sheath ends suddenly, while the axis cylinder ramifies in a mass of undifferentiated protoplasm, containing nuclei, and lying in contact with the

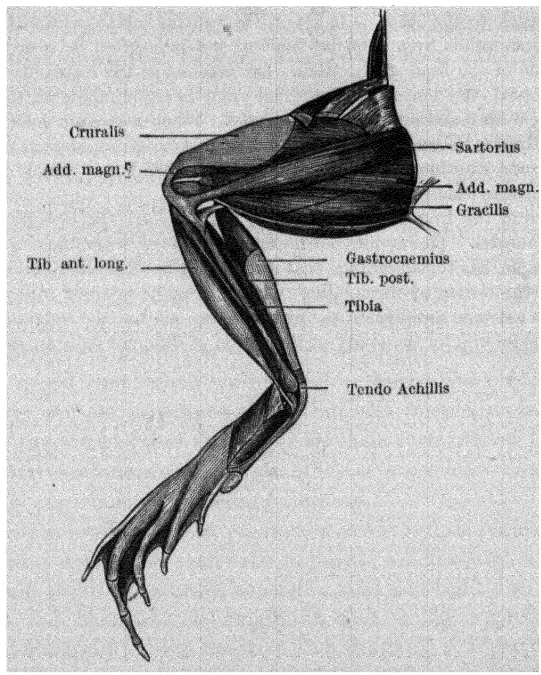


FIG. 41. Muscles of hinder extremity of frog. (After ECKER.)

contractile substance of the muscle immediately under the sarcolemma (Fig. 40). This mass of protoplasm is known as the 'sole plate.' It is not marked in all animals. Thus in the frog the axis cylinder ends in a series of branches at right angles to one another, distributed over a considerable length of the muscle fibre. The sole plate in this case seems to be limited to scattered nuclei lying in close contact with the terminal branches of the nerve fibre. So far as we can tell at present, the ultimate ramifications of the axis cylinder end freely and do not enter into organic connection with the contractile substance itself.

Most of our knowledge on the subject of muscle has been derived from the study of the gastrocnemius and sartorius muscles of the frog. The position of these muscles is shown in the accompanying diagram (Fig. 41). The gastrocnemius which, with the attached sciatic nerve, is most frequently employed as a nerve-muscle preparation, forms a thick belly immediately under the skin at the back of the leg, and arises by two tendons from the lower end of the femur and the outer side of the knee-joint. The two tendons converge towards the centre of the muscle, uniting about its middle, and from them a number of short muscular fibres arise, passing backwards and dorsally to be inserted into a flat aponeurosis covering the lower half of the muscle, which ends in the tendo Achillis. On account of this irregular arrangement of the muscular fibres, the gastrocnemius can be employed only when the contraction of the muscle as a whole is the object of investigation. The effective cross-area of the fibres is much greater than the actual cross-section of the muscle, so that, while the actual shortening of the gastrocnemius is but small, its strength of contraction is considerable.

The sartorius muscle consists of a thin band of muscle fibres running parallel from one end of the muscle to the other. It lies on the ventral surface of the thigh, arising from the symphysis publis by a thin flat tendon, and is inserted by a narrow tendon into the inner side of the head of the tibia. On account of the regularity with which its fibres are disposed, this muscle is of especial value in experiments on the local conditions of a muscle fibre accompanying its activity. When a greater mass of approximately parallel fibres is necessary, recourse may be had to a preparation consisting of the gracilis and semi-membranosus muscles together. This latter muscle lies dorsally to the gracilis muscle which is shown in the illustration.

Other muscles in the frog used for particular purposes are the mylohyoid and the dorsocutaneous muscles. The mylohyoid muscle of the frog, which lies on the ventral surface of the tongue, has the advantage that its fibres lie in close contact with a lymph-space occupying the centre of the tongue. If any drug be injected into this lymph-space it acts with extreme rapidity on the muscle fibres, so that the tongue-preparation of the frog is a useful one for the study of the action of different substances on muscle-fibres.

SECTION II

EXCITATION OF MUSCLE

A MUSCLE may be caused to contract in various ways. Normally it contracts only in response to impulses starting in the central nervous system and transmitted down the nerves. But contraction may be artificially excited in various ways in a muscle removed from the body. If we make a muscle-nerve preparation (*i.e.* a muscle with as long a piece of its nerve as possible attached to it), such as the gastrocnemius of the frog with the sciatic nerve, we find we can cause contraction by various forms of stimuli—mechanical, thermal, or electrical—applied to the muscle or the nerve (direct and indirect stimulation). Thus the muscle responds with a twitch if we pass an induction shock through it or its nerve, or pinch either with a pair of forceps. Or we may use chemical stimuli, and cause contraction by the application of strong glycerin or salt solution to the nerve.

These experiments do not prove conclusively that muscle itself is irritable. It might be urged that, when we pinched or burnt the muscle we stimulated, not the muscle substance itself, but the terminal ramifications of the nerve in the muscle, and that these in their turn incited the muscle to contract. But the independent excitability of muscle is shown clearly by the following experiment by Claude Bernard.

A frog, whose brain has been previously destroyed, is pinned on a board, and the sciatic nerves on each side exposed. A ligature is then passed round the right thigh underneath the nerve, and tied tightly so as effectually to close all the blood-vessels supplying the limbs, without interfering with the blood-supply to the nerve. Two drops of a 1 per cent. solution of curare are then injected into the dorsal lymph-sac. After the lapse of a quarter of an hour it is found that the strongest stimuli may be applied to the left sciatic nerve without causing any contraction of the muscles it supplies. On the right side, stimulation of the nerve is as efficacious as before. Both gastrocnemii respond readily to direct stimulation, showing that the muscles are not affected by the drug. Since both sciatic nerves have been exposed to the influence of the curare, it is evident that the difference on the two sides cannot be due to any deleterious effect on them by the curare. We have also excluded the muscles themselves; so we must conclude that the curare paralyses the muscles by affecting the terminations of the nerve within the muscle, and probably the end-plates themselves.

This experiment teaches us that muscle can be excited to contract by direct stimulation, even when the terminal ramifications of the nerve within it are paralysed, so that stimulation of them would be without effect.

The same fact may be demonstrated in a different way by means of chemical stimuli. It is found that whereas strong glycerin excites nerve fibres, it is without effect on muscle fibres, while on the other hand weak ammonia is a strong excitant for muscle, but is without effect on nerve. If the frog's sartorius be dissected out and the lower end dipped in glycerin, no twitch is produced. On snipping off the lower third of the muscle and then immersing the cut end in glycerin, a twitch at once occurs. The lower end contains no nerve fibres (Fig. 42), and it is only when a section containing nerve fibres is exposed to the action of glycerin that contraction takes place. On the other hand, mere exposure of muscle to the vapour of dilute ammonia causes contraction (and subsequent death), although the nerve to the muscle can be immersed in the solution without any excitation being produced.

FIG. 42. The ramification of the nerve fibres within the sartorius muscle of the frog, showing the freedom of the lower portion of the muscle from nerve fibres. (KÜHNE.)

Of all the different stimuli capable of exciting muscular contraction, the electrical is that most frequently employed. It is easy, using this form, to graduate accurately the intensity and duration of the stimulus. At the same time the stimulus may be applied many times to any point on the muscle or nerve without killing the part stimulated, whereas with other forms of stimulus it is difficult to obtain excitatory effects without injuring to a greater or less extent the part stimulated.

METHODS EMPLOYED FOR THE STIMULATION OF MUSCLE AND NERVE

The two commonest forms of electrical stimuli employed are (1) the make and break of a constant current, (2) the induction currents of high intensity and short duration obtained from an induction coil.

(1) CONSTANT CURRENT. As a source of constant current a Daniell's cell is generally employed. This consists of an outer pot containing a saturated solution of copper sulphate, in which is immersed a copper cylinder. To the cylinder at the top a binding screw is attached, by which the connection of the copper with a wire terminal is effected. Within the copper cylinder is a second pot of porous clay, filled with dilute sulphuric acid, in which is immersed a rod of amalgamated zinc. In this cell the zinc is the positive and the copper the negative *element*. Hence the current flows (in the cell) from zinc to copper, and if the binding screws of the two elements are connected by a wire, the current flows in the wire (outer circuit) from copper to zinc, thus completing the circuit. Since in the outer circuit the current flows from copper to zinc, the terminal attached to the copper is called the positive *pole*, and that to the zinc the negative pole. When the current is required to be very constant, the zinc may be immersed in a saturated solution of zinc sulphate instead of dilute sulphuric acid. A Daniell's cell, though very constant, gives only a small current, owing to its small electromotive force and high internal resistance.

When a stronger current is required it is best to use a storage battery. In this,

when charged, the two elements are lead and lead oxide, PbO_2. It has the advantage that it may be used over and over again, being recharged through a resistance from the electrical mains when it has run down.

Another useful type of cell is the Leclanché cell. This consists of a glass jar containing a solution of sal ammoniac. Into this dips an amalgamated rod of zinc, which is the positive plate. A piece of gas carbon forms the negative plate. This is surrounded by peroxide of manganese (MnO_2) which is kept in contact with the surface of the carbon by being placed in a porous pot. In some forms of Leclanché the manganese and carbon are ground up together and pressed into a cylinder which surrounds the zinc rod. When the cell is on open circuit—that is, when the terminals are not connected and no current is passing—very little action takes place; but when the circuit is closed and the current passes, the zinc dissolves in the sal ammoniac, forming a double chloride of zinc and ammonia, while ammonia gas and hydrogen are liberated at the carbon pole. The nascent hydrogen reduces the peroxide of manganese and so polarisation is prevented. On account of its great solubility in water the ammonia has no polarising action. The Leclanché is a convenient form of cell, as when once set up it requires a minimum of attention. If it is worked through a considerable resistance, it will keep in order for some time, particularly if the work is intermittent; but if it is used with a small resistance in circuit it polarises very rapidly. The E.M.F. of one Leclanché cell is 1·4 volt in the external circuit. The positive current is conventionally said to run from the zinc to the carbon in the cell, and from the carbon to the zinc in the circuit outside. The wire attached to the carbon is the *positive pole*, that to the zinc the *negative pole*. *Dry cells* are usually Leclanché cells, in which the solution of sal ammoniac is prevented from spilling by absorption with sawdust or plaster of Paris. The E.M.F. is the same as the Leclanché, but they polarise much more readily.

If the poles of a Daniell's cell be connected by wires with a nerve or muscle of a nerve-muscle preparation (as in Fig. 43), the current will flow from copper to the nerve at A, and along the nerve from A to K. At K the current will leave the nerve to flow to the zinc of the battery, so completing the circuit. The point at which the current enters the nerve (*i.e.* the point of the nerve connected with the positive *pole* of the battery) is called the *anode*, and the point at which the current leaves the nerve is called the *cathode*. The wires by which the current is conducted to and from the nerve are called the *electrodes*. As electrodes we generally employ two platinum wires mounted together on a piece of vulcanite.

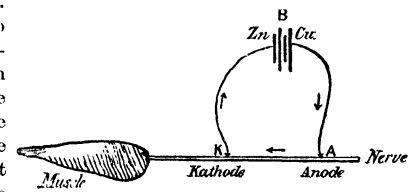


FIG. 43.

For the purpose of making or breaking the current at will, various forms of keys are employed. The ordinary make and break key consists of a hinged wire dipping into a mercury cup. When the wire is depressed so that it dips into the mercury, the circuit is complete. On raising the wire by means of the handle, the circuit is broken.

Du Bois Reymond's key consists of two pieces of brass, each of which has two binding screws for the attachment of wires. These are connected by a third piece, or bridge, which is jointed to one of the two side bits, so that it may be raised or lowered at pleasure (*v.* Fig. 44). It may be used either as a simple make-and-break key, or, as is more usual, as a short-circuiting key. In the first case one brass bank is attached to one terminal, the other to the other terminal. If the bridge be now lowered, the connection is made and the current passes. If the bridge be raised, the current is broken. Fig. 44 A and B shows the way in which the key is arranged for short-circuiting. It will be seen that four wires are attached to the key; two going to the battery, and two we may suppose going to a nerve. When the bridge is down, as in Fig. 44 A, the current from the cell on coming to the key has a choice of two routes. It may either go through the brass bridge, or through the other wires and nerve. The resistance of

the nerve however is about 100,000 ohms, whereas that of the bridge is not the thousandth part of an ohm. When a current divides, the amount of current that goes along any branch is inversely proportional to the resistance. Here the resistance in the nerve-circuit is practically infinite compared with that in the brass bridge, and so all the

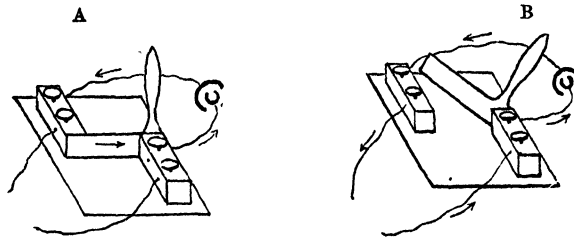


FIG. 44. Du Bois key, closed. Du Bois key. open.

current goes through the bridge and none through the nerve. We say then that the current is *short-circuited.*

It is often necessary to reverse the direction of a current through a nerve-muscle preparation or a galvanometer in the course of an experiment. For this purpose Pohl's reverser may be used. It consists of a slab of ebonite or paraffin or other insulating material, in which are six small holes filled with mercury. A binding screw is in connection with the mercury in each of these holes. Two cross-wires (not in contact with one another) join two sets of pools together, as shown in Fig. 45. A cradle consisting of two wires joined by an insulating handle carries two arcs of wire by which the pools at *a* and *b* may be put into connection with either *x* and *y*, or the corresponding pools on the opposite side. It will be seen that with the cradle tipped to one side, as in FIG. 45 A, the current from the battery enters the reverser at *a*; this proceeds up the wire of the cradle, down towards the right, then along the cross-wire to the pool at *x*. *x* is therefore the anode, and *y* the cathode. In Fig. 45 B the cradle has been swung over to the other side. Here the cross-wires are not used at all by the current, which passes from *a* up the sides and down the curved wire to *y*. In this case *y* is now the anode and *x* the cathode, and the direction of the current through the circuit connected with *x* and *y* is reversed. By taking out the cross-wires, Pohl's reverser may be used as a simple switch, by which the current may be led into two different circuits in turn.

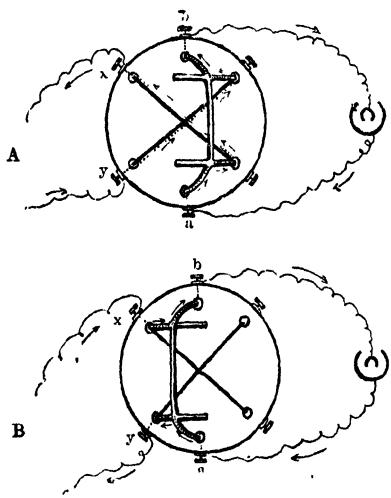


FIG. 45. Diagram of Pohl's reverser.

With this form of reverser difficulty is often experienced owing to dirt accumulating on the mercury and forming an insulating layer between it and the binding screw or copper wire. Several improved forms of reverser are now made where the mercury poles are replaced by brass banks, and these are generally to be preferred in practice.

(2) INDUCED CURRENTS. In using these the muscle or nerve is stimulated by the current of momentary duration produced in the secondary circuit of an induction-coil by the make or break of a constant current in the primary.

The construction of the induction-coil or *inductorium* is founded on the fact that if a coil of wire in connection with a galvanometer be placed close to (but insulated from)

another coil through which a current may be led from a battery, it is found that on make and break of the current of the second coil a momentary current is induced in the first. The induced current on make is in the reverse direction, that on break in the same direction as the primary current. The electromotive force of the induced current is proportional to the number of turns of wire in the coils. The induction-coil consists of two coils, each containing many turns of wire. The smaller coil (R_1, Fig. 46), consisting of a few turns of comparatively thick wire, is the primary coil, and is put into connection with a battery. It has within it a core of soft iron wires, which has the effect of attracting the lines of force, concentrating them, and so increasing its power of inducing secondary currents. The secondary coil, R_2, of a large number of turns of very thin wire, is arranged so as to slide over the primary coil. It is provided with two terminals, which may be connected with the nerve or other tissue that we wish to stimulate. Since the electromotive force of the induced current is proportional to the number of turns of wire, it is evident that the electromotive force of the current delivered by the induction coil may be many thousand times that of the battery current flowing through the primary coil. The induced currents increase rapidly in strength as the coils are approached to one another; the strength of these therefore may be regulated by shoving the secondary up to or away from the primary coil.

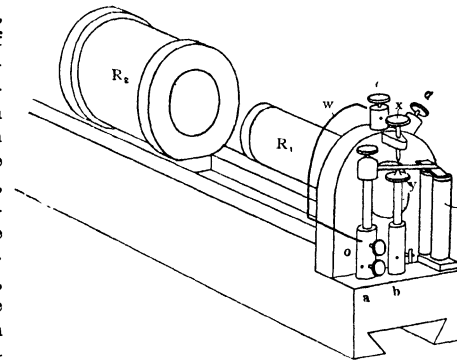


FIG. 46. Diagram of inductorium. R_1, primary; R_2, secondary coil. *m*, electro-magnet of Wagner's hammer. *w*, Helmholtz's side wire.

A short-circuiting key is always placed between the secondary coil and the nerve to be stimulated. If only single induction shocks are to be used, a make-and-break key is put in the primary battery circuit, and the two wires from the battery and key are attached to the two top screws of the primary coil (*c* and *d*, Fig. 46). It is then found that the shock given by the induced current on break of the primary current is much stronger than that on make.

In endeavouring to explain this difference in the intensity of the make-and-break induction shocks, it must be remembered that the intensity of the momentary current induced in the secondary coil at make or break of the primary current is proportional (1) to the number of turns of wire in each coil; (2) inversely to the mean distance between the coils (*i.e.* the nearer the coils, the stronger the induced current); (3) to the *rate of change* in strength of the primary current. Now, when a current is made through the primary coil, induction takes place, not only between primary and secondary coils, but also between the individual turns of the primary coil itself. This current of self-induction, being opposed in direction to the battery current, hinders and delays the attainment by the latter of its full strength, and so slows the *rate of change* of current in the primary coil. Hence the intensity of the momentary current induced in the secondary coil is less than it would have been without the retarding effect of self-induction. At break of the current, an extra current is also produced in the primary coil in the same direction as the battery current, and therefore tending to reduce the rate of change of the current from full strength to nothing. In this case however the primary circuit being broken, the current of self-induction cannot pass without jumping the great resistance offered by the air, so that its retarding effect on the rate of disappearance of the primary current may be practically disregarded. In Fig. 47 the line, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, will represent the changes occurring in the primary current at make and break, *a b* corresponding to the make and *c d* to the break. The lower line represents

the momentary currents induced in the secondary circuit, *m* being the current of low intensity and long duration produced by the make, and ∮ the shock of high intensity and short duration caused by the sharp break of the primary current.

When we desire to use faradic stimulation—that is, secondary induced shocks rapidly repeated 50 to 100 times a second—we make use of the apparatus attached to the coil, known as Wagner's hammer (Figs. 48A and 48B). In this case the wires from the battery are connected to the two lower screws (*a* and *b*, Fig. 46). Fig. 48A shows the direction of the current when Wagner's hammer is used. The current enters at *a*, runs up the pillar and along the spring to the screw *x*. Here it passes up through the screw, and through the primary coil R_1. From the primary coil it passes up the small coil *m*, and from this to the terminal *b* and back to the battery. But in this course the coil *m* is converted into an electro-magnet. The hammer *h* attached to the spring is attracted down, and so the spring is drawn away from the screw *x*, and the current is therefore broken. The break of the current destroys the magnetic power of the coil, the spring jumps up again and once more makes circuit with the screw *x*, only to be drawn down again directly this occurs. In this way the spring is kept vibrating, and the primary circuit is continually made and broken, with the production at each make-and-break of an induced current in the secondary coil.

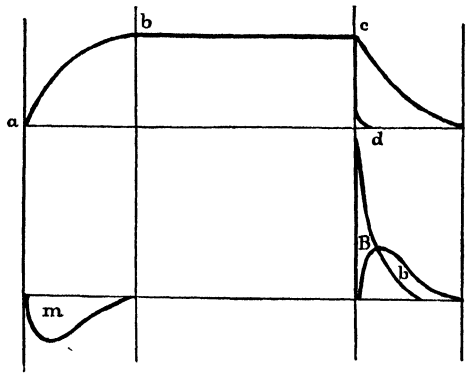


FIG. 47.

It is evident that, when the primary current is made and broken fifty times in the second, there will be a hundred momentary currents produced during the same period in the secondary coil. Every alternate one of these produced by the break of current

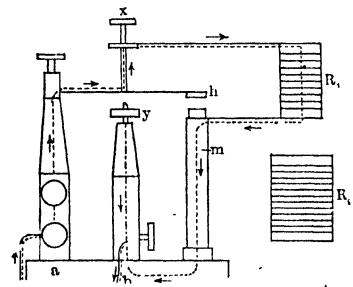


FIG. 48A. Diagram showing course of current in inductorium when Wagner's hammer is used.

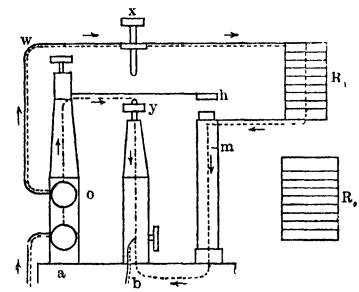


FIG. 48B. Diagram showing course of current when the Helmholtz side wire is used.

in the primary will be much stronger than the intervening currents produced by the make. In order to equalise make and break induction-shocks, so that a regular series of momentary currents of nearly equal intensity may be produced, the arrangement known as Helmholtz's is used. In this arrangement the side wire *w*, shown in Fig. 46, and diagrammatically in Fig. 48B, is used to connect the binding screw *o* with the binding screw *c* at the top of the coil. The screw *x* is raised, so as not to touch the spring, and the lower screw *y* is moved up till it comes nearly in contact with the under

surface of the spring. If we consider the direction of the current now, we see that it enters as before at the terminal, travels up the Helmholtz wire *w* to the screw *c*, thence through the primary coil R_1, then through the coil *m* of the Wagner's hammer, and so back to the battery. The coil *m*, thus becoming an electro-magnet, draws down the hammer *h*. In this act the under surface of the spring comes in contact with the screw *y*. The current then has a choice of two ways. It may either go through the coil as before, or take a short cut from the terminal *a*, up the pillar, along the spring, through the screw *y*, and down to the terminal *b* back to the battery. As the resistance of this latter route is very small compared with the resistance of the primary coil, &c., the greater part of the current takes this way. The infinitesimal current which now passes through the coil of Wagner's arrangement is insufficient to magnetise this, and the hammer springs up again ; thus the process is restarted, and the spring vibrates rhythmically. With this arrangement the primary current is never broken, but only short-circuited, and so diminished very largely. Hence the retarding influence of self-induction is as potent with break as with make of the current, and the effects on the secondary coil in the two cases are approximately equal. In Fig. 47 *ce* represents the change in the primary current when the current is short-circuited instead of being broken, and *b* represents the effect produced in the secondary coil. It will be seen that the currents *m* and *b* are practically identical in intensity and duration.

When the induction-coil is used for stimulating, it is usual to graduate the strength of the shock administered to the excitable tissue by moving the secondary coil nearer to or further away from the primary coil. It must be remembered that the strength of the induced current does not vary in numerical proportion with the distance of the two coils from one another. If one coil is some distance, say, 20 cms. from the primary coil, the induced current produced by make or break of the primary current is very small, and on moving the secondary from 20 up to 10 cms. the increase in strength of the current will not be very rapid. The increase will however become more and more rapid as the two coils are brought closer together Using the same strength of current in the primary coil and the same resistance in the secondary coil, we can say that the make or break current will be uniform so long as the distance of the coils remains constant. We are not able however to say by how much the current will increase as the secondary coil is moved, say, from 11 to 10 cms. distant from the primary coil. If it is required to know the exact increment in the exciting current which is used, it is necessary to graduate the induction-coil by sending the induction shocks, obtained at different distances of secondary from primary coil, through a ballistic galvanometer.

Another method which may be adopted for the excitation of muscle or nerve is the discharge of a condenser. The advantage of this method is that we can determine not only the amount of electricity discharged through the preparation, but the actual energy employed. If two plates of metal separated from one another by a thin insulating layer of dielectric such as air, glass, mica, or paraffined paper, be connected with the two poles of a battery, each plate acquires the potential of the pole of the battery with which it is connected, and receives therefrom a charge of electricity (positive or negative). If the connections be broken the two plates retain their charge. If now they be connected by a wire they discharge through the wire, and if a nerve be inserted in the course of the wire, it may be excited by the discharge.

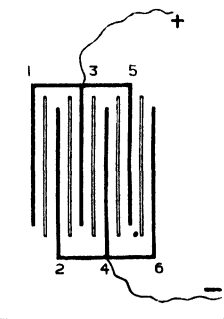


FIG. 49 Diagram to show the mode of construction of a condenser.

The amount of electricity that may be stored up in this way will depend on the extent of the plates and their proximity to one another, as well as on the E.M.F. of the charging battery. In order to get great extent of surface, a condenser is built up, as in the diagram (Fig. 49), of a very large number of plates of tinfoil, separated by discs of mica or paraffined paper. Alternate discs are connected together :

thus, 1, 3, 5 are connected to one pole, while 2, 4, 6 are connected to the other.

The *rheocord* is used to modify the amount or strength of current flowing through a preparation. One form of it is represented in Fig. 50. A constant source of current at B causes a flow of electricity from *a* to *b* through a straight wire. As the resistance of this wire is the same throughout its length, the fall of potential from *a* to *b* must be constant. The nerve, or whatever preparation is used, is connected with the straight wire at two points, at *a* and at *c*, by means of a sliding contact or rider. Supposing that there is an electromotive difference of one volt between *a* and *b*, it is evident that if *c* is pushed close to *b*, the E.M.F. acting on the nerve will be also one volt. The E.M.F. however may be made as small as we like by sliding *c* nearer to *a*. Thus if *ab* is one metre, and there is a difference of one volt between the two ends, then if *c* be one centimetre from *a*, the E.M.F. acting on the nerve will be $\frac{1}{100}$ volt. Thus we alter the current passing through the nerve by altering the E.M.F. which drives the current.

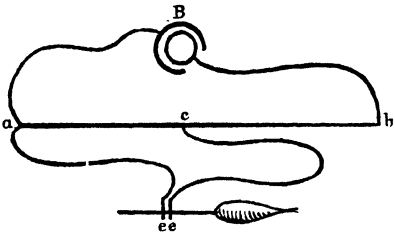


FIG. 50.

If a weak current from a Daniell's cell (or any other form of battery) be passed through a muscle or any part of its nerve, at the make of the current the muscle gives a single sharp contraction—a *muscle twitch*. In this contraction the whole of the muscle fibres may be involved. During the passage of the current no effect is apparently produced and the muscle seems to be quiescent, though on careful observation we may see that there is a state of continued contraction limited to the immediate neighbourhood of the cathode, which lasts as long as the current is passing through the muscle, and is not propagated to the rest of the muscle. If the current be now broken, the muscle may remain quiescent. If however the current is above a certain strength, the muscle responds to the break of the current with another single rapid contraction. With a current of moderate strength we may get a contraction both at make and break of the current, but the make-contraction may be stronger than the break contraction. Thus stimulation is caused by the make and break of a constant current, the make stimulus being more effective than the break stimulus. If the duration of the passage of the current is sufficiently short, no contraction is produced at the break of the current, however strong this may be. The same phenomenon of a single twitch may be evoked by the passage of an induction shock. This is the current of momentary duration produced in the second circuit of an induction-coil by the make or break of a constant current in the primary. Using this mode of stimulus, it is found that the contraction on break of the primary current is much stronger than that on make.

It must not be imagined however that there is any contradiction between this and the fact that the make of a constant current is a stronger stimulus than the break. When we put a muscle in the secondary circuit and make a current in the primary, there is a current of momentary duration induced in the secondary, so that there is a current *made and broken* through the muscle; and the same thing takes place again when the primary circuit is broken. It has been shown that, when we use currents of such short

duration, the break stimulus is ineffective; so in both cases, whether we make or break the current in the primary circuit, we are dealing with a *make* stimulus in the muscle. The difference in the efficacy of make and break induction shocks is purely physical, and depends on the fact that the current induced in the secondary coil on make is of slower rise and smaller potential than that produced at break.

In using either of these modes of stimulation we find that there is a certain intensity which the stimulating current must possess in order that any effect shall be produced. Any strength of stimulus below this is known as a *subminimal* stimulus. A *minimal* stimulus (sometimes known as *liminal* or *threshold* stimulus) is the weakest stimulus that will produce any result, *i.e.* in muscle a contraction. A *maximal* stimulus is one that produces the strongest contraction a muscle is capable of under the effects of a single stimulus. A *submaximal* stimulus is any strength of stimulus between these two extremes.

SECTION III

THE MECHANICAL CHANGES THAT A MUSCLE UNDERGOES WHEN IT CONTRACTS

If a skeletal muscle, such as the gastrocnemius, be stimulated either directly or by the intermediation of its nerve by any of the means mentioned in the foregoing chapter, it responds by a single short sharp contraction, followed immediately by a relaxation. The volume of the muscle does not alter in the slightest degree, but each muscle-fibre and the whole muscle become shorter and thicker. At the same time, if a weight be tied on to the tendon of the muscle, the muscle during contraction may raise the weight and thus perform mechanical work. In order to determine the time relations of the simple muscle contraction or the muscle-twitch, and to study its conditions, it is necessary to employ the graphic method, so as to obtain a record of the changes in shape of the muscle during contraction. We may use the graphic method either for recording the changes in shape or for registering changes in tension of a muscle which is prevented from contracting.

In order to record the contraction of the frog's gastrocnemius, the muscle is excised together with a portion of the femur to which it is attached, and the whole length of the sciatic nerve from its origin in the spinal canal to its insertion into the muscle. The femur, to which the gastrocnemius is attached, is clamped firmly, and the tendo Achillis attached by a thread to a light lever, free to move round an axis at one end. The point of this lever is armed with a bristle (anything that is stiff and pointed will do), which just touches the blackened surface of a piece of glazed paper. This paper is stretched round a cylinder (drum) which can be made to rotate at any constant speed required. If the drum is moving, the point of the bristle draws a horizontal white line on the smoked paper.

If a single induction shock be sent through the nerve of the preparation the lever is jerked up, falling again almost directly, and a curve is drawn like that shown in Fig. 52. A similar curve is obtained if the muscle be stimulated directly.

In all such graphic records we should have also—

(1) *A time record.* This is furnished by means of a small electro-magnet, armed with a pointed lever writing on the smoked surface. This electro-magnet (time marker or signal) is made to vibrate 100 times a second (more or less as may be required) by putting it in a circuit which is made and broken 100 times a second by means of a tuning-fork vibrating at that rate. The tuning-fork is maintained in vibration in the same way as the Wagner's hammer of an induction-coil.

(2) *A record of the exact point at which the nerve or muscle is stimulated.* This may be obtained in two ways:

(*a*) When using the pendulum or trigger myograph, in both of which the recording surface is a smoked flat surface on a glass plate, this latter is so arranged that it knocks

over a key as it shoots across, and so breaks the primary circuit and excites the nerve or muscle of the preparation. As we know the exact point that the plate reaches when it knocks over the key, we can mark on the contraction curve the exact moment at which stimulation took place.

(*b*) If we wish to make and break the primary circuit at will by means of a key, a small electro-magnetic signal, interposed in the circuit, is arranged to write on the revolving drum, and so mark the point of stimulation.

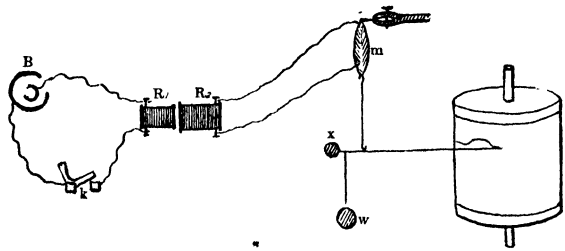


FIG. 51. Arrangement of apparatus for recording simple muscle-twitch.

In the figure (Fig. 52) the upper line is the curve drawn by the lever of the muscle as it contracts; the small upright line shows the point at which the muscle was stimulated; and the second line is the tracing of the chronograph, every vibration representing $\frac{1}{4}\frac{1}{4}$ of a second.

In the pendulum myograph (Fig. 53) a smoked glass plate is carried on a heavy iron pendulum. At each side the pendulum is armed with a catch, which fits on to

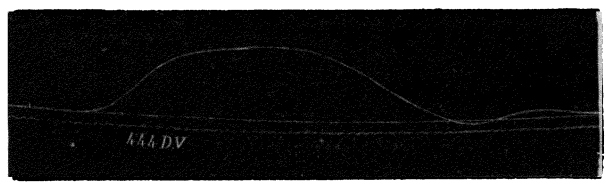


FIG. 52. Curve of single muscle-twitch taken on a rapidly moving surface (pendulum myograph). (YEO.)

other catches at the side of the triangular box, from the apex of which the pendulum is suspended. At its lower part the pendulum carries a projecting piece which can knock over the 'kick-over' key K, thus breaking a circuit in which is included the primary coil of an induction-coil. The lever attached to the muscle is arranged so as to write lightly on the glass plate. Everything being ready, and the key K closed, the pendulum is raised to A, the catch A is then released, and the pendulum falls at an ever-accelerating rate and then rises again, gradually slowing off until it is caught again at B. As it passes by the key it breaks the circuit. A break induction shock is sent into the muscle or nerve, which contracts, and a curve is obtained similar to that shown in Fig. 52. Since the rate of the pendulum is constantly varying throughout its course, it is necessary to have a tuning-fork, or time-marker actuated electrically by a tuning-fork, writing just below the muscle-lever.

In the spring myograph, otherwise known as the trigger or shooter myograph (Fig. 54), a smoked glass plate is also used. "The frame supporting the glass plate slides on two horizontal steel wires. To make the instrument ready for use, the frame is moved to one side, which compresses a short spring. When the catch holding it in this position is released by the trigger, the spring, which only acts for a short space,

gives the frame and the glass plate a rapid horizontal motion; and the momentum carries the glass plate through the rest of the distance, till stopped by the buffers. The

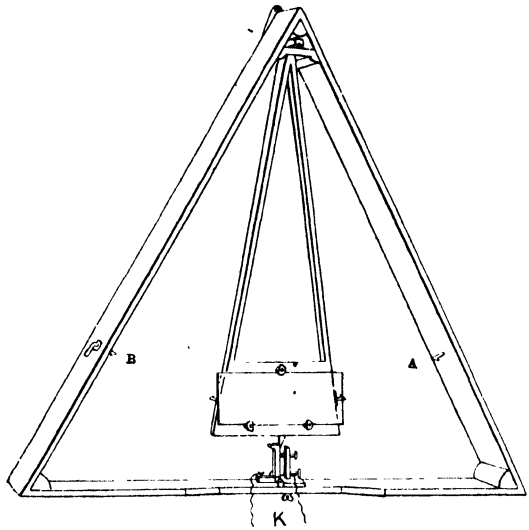


FIG. 53. Simple form of pendulum myograph.

velocity during this time is nearly constant, as the friction of the guides is small. Two keys are knocked over by pins on the frame and break electric circuits. The relative positions at which the circuits are broken can be altered by a convenient adjustment.

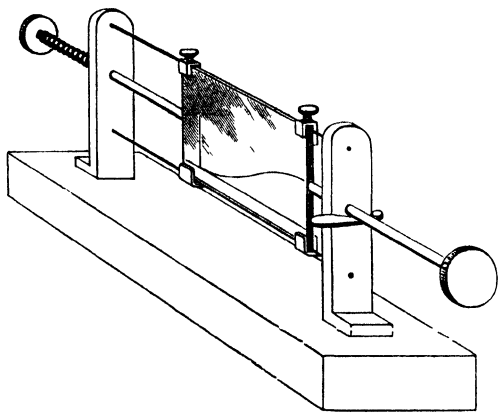


FIG. 54. Diagram of spring myograph, or 'shooter.'

A tuning-fork vibrating about 100 per second fixed to the base of the instrument marks the time; its prongs are sprung apart by a block between their ends, and the same action which releases the glass plate also frees the fork by removing the block and allows it to vibrate; a writing style then draws a sinuous line on the smoked surface of the moving glass plate. A muscle lever with a scale-pan attached also forms part of the instrument."

The record obtained in either of these ways may, in consequence of instrumental

inertia, be a very inaccurate reproduction of the true events occurring in the muscle itself. When the muscle begins to contract it imparts a very rapid movement to the lever, which therefore tends to overshoot the mark and deform the curve. This source of error may be almost avoided by making the lever as light as possible, and hanging the extending weight in close proximity to the axle of the lever, as shown in Fig. 55. Since the energy of a moving mass is proportional to the square of the velocity ($= \frac{1}{2} mv^2$,) and the tension due to the weight as well as the velocity on contraction is directly proportional to the distance of the weight from the axis, it follows that it is better to

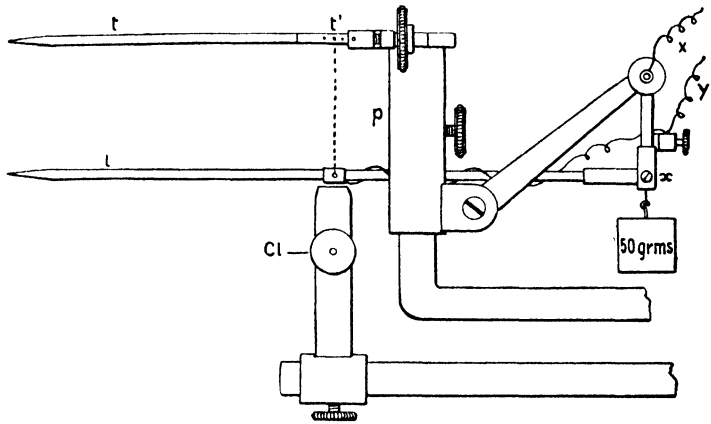


FIG. 55 Blix apparatus for recording isometric and isotonic curves synchronically. (MISS BUCHANAN.) *p*, the steel cylindrical support with jointed steel arm to bear the isotonic lever *l*, which consists of a strip of bamboo with an aluminium tip. *t*, the isometric lever, also of bamboo, except for a short metal part *t'*, in which are holes for fixing the muscle. The two wires from an induction coil are brought, one to ×, which is in connection with the support and hence with the metal bar *t'*, the other to *y*, which is insulated from the support but connected by a copper wire with a thin piece of copper surrounding the isotonic lever at the point where the muscle is attached to it. *Cl*, clamp for fixing the lower end of the muscle when an isometric curve is to be taken. The axis of the isotonic lever is at *x*, close to which is hung the weight of 50 grm.

load the muscle with 40 grams 1 millimetre from the axis than with 1 gram 40 millimetres from the axis, though the tension put on the muscle will be the same in both cases.

In the first case the energy of the moving mass will be proportional to $\frac{40 \times (1)^2}{2} = 20$, and in the second to $\frac{1 \times (40)^2}{2} = 800$, and it is this energy which determines the overshooting of the lever and the deformation of the curve. Since throughout the contraction in the latter arrangement the lever follows the muscle in its movement, the tension on the muscle remains the same throughout, and the method is therefore known as the *isotonic method.*

It is of importance to be able to record the development of the energy (*i.e.* the tension) of the active muscle apart from any changes in its length. For this purpose the muscle is allowed to contract against a strong spring, the movements of which are magnified by means of a very long lever. Thus the shortening of the muscle is almost entirely prevented, but the increase in its tension causes a minute but proportionate movement of the spring, which is recorded by means of the lever. Since in this case the length or measurement of the muscle remains approximately constant, while the tension is continually varying throughout the contraction, it is known as the *isometric method.* The great magnification necessary in this method introduces serious sources of error; but it seems that if all due precautions be taken to avoid these errors, the isometric

curve differs very little in form from the isotonic, displaying only a somewhat quicker development of energy at the beginning of contraction. It is better to eliminate the lever altogether and magnify the minute movements of the spring by attaching to it a small hinged mirror by which a ray of light is reflected through a slit on to a travelling photographic plate. Since the ray of light has no inertia, magnification of the movements may be carried to any extent without increasing the instrumental deformation of the curve (Fig. 56).

A simple muscular contraction or twitch, such as that in Fig. 52, produced by a momentary stimulus, consists of three main phases: (1) A phase during which no apparent change takes place in the muscle, or at any rate none which gives rise to any movement of the lever. This is called the *latent period.*

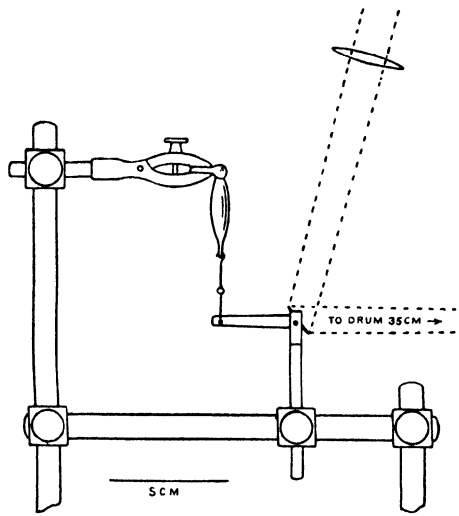


FIG. 56. Myograph for optical registration of muscular contraction. (K. LUCAS)

(2) A phase of shortening, or contraction.

(3) A phase of relaxation, or return to the original length.

The small curves seen after the main curve are due to elastic vibrations of the lever, and do not indicate any changes occurring in the muscle itself. From the time-marking below the tracing we see that the latent period occupies about $\frac{1}{100}$ second, the phase of shortening $\frac{4}{100}$, and the relaxation $\frac{5}{100}$ second.

Thus a single muscle-twitch is completed in about $\frac{1}{10}$ second. It must be remembered however that this number is only approximate, and varies with the temperature of the muscle and its condition, being much longer in a fatigued muscle. Moreover it is almost impossible to avoid some deformation of the curve due to defects of the recording instruments used. Thus the relative period during which no mechanical changes are taking place in the muscle must always be shorter than is apparent from a curve obtained

by the foregoing method. The elasticity and extensibility of the muscle must prolong the apparent latent period, since the first effect of contraction of any part of the muscle will be to stretch the adjacent part, and only later to

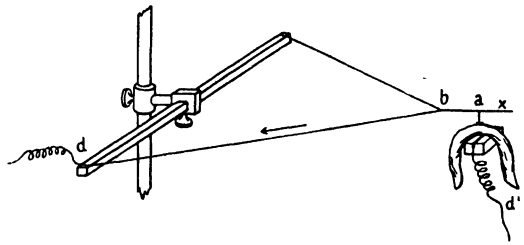


FIG. 57. Burdon Sanderson's method for photographic record of muscle-twitch The exciting shock is sent into the muscle by the wires *d* and *d'*.

move the tendon to which the lever is attached. Thus if we have a weight supported by a rigid wire, and suddenly pull the upper end of the wire so as to raise the weight, the latter will rise instantaneously. If however the weight be suspended by a piece of elastic, it will not follow the pull exactly, but will lag behind, the first part of the pull being occupied with stretching the india-rubber, and only when this is stretched to a certain degree will the weight begin to rise. The same retardation of the pull would be observed if, instead of india-rubber, we used a piece of living muscle.

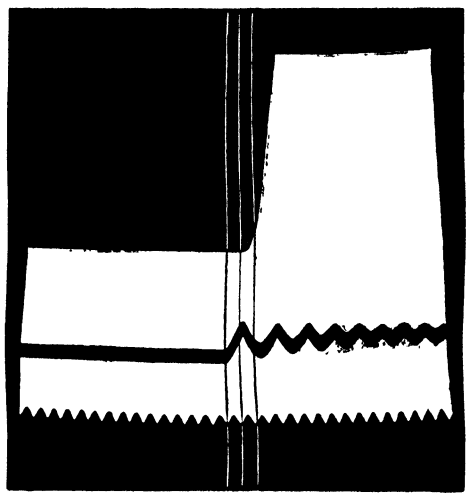


FIG. 58. Photographic record of muscle-twitch. (B. SANDERSON.) The upper curve is the movement of the muscle, the middle curve the signal showing the moment of excitation, and the lower curve is that of a tuning-fork vibrating 500 times a second

It is possible to obviate this instrumental inertia by employing solely photographic methods for the record and magnification of the muscle-twitch. In the experiments of Sanderson and Burch the thickening of the muscle at the point stimulated was recorded graphically by photographing the movement on a slit (Fig. 57), behind which was a moving sensitive plate. Thus avoiding all instrumental inertia, and diminishing the inertia of the muscle to a minimum, the mechanical latent period was found to be only 0·0025 second (Fig. 58). This figure we can take as the average latent period for the skeletal muscle of the frog at the ordinary temperature of the laboratory (about 16°C.). We shall have occasion later

on to consider the changes which occur in the muscle between the application of the stimulus and the moment at which the first mechanical change makes its appearance.

The relaxation of muscle is helped by a moderate load, and in a normal condition is complete. It is not active—that is to say, is not due to a con-

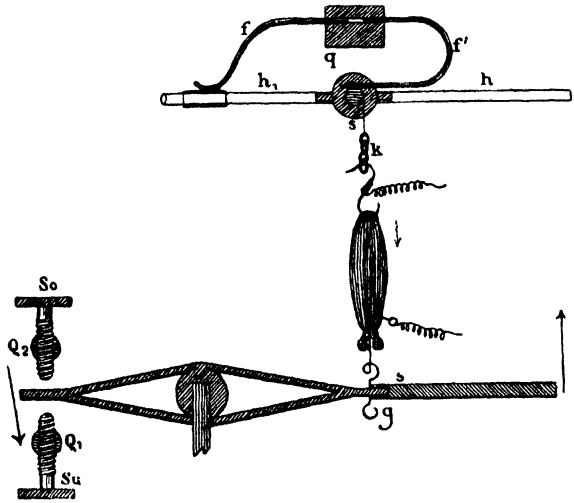


Fig. 59. V. Kries' apparatus for taking 'after-loading' and 'arrested contraction curves'

traction in the transverse direction—but is a passive effect of extension and elastic rebound. This may be shown by allowing a muscle to contract while floating on mercury. The subsequent lengthening on relaxation is very incomplete.

Even with the most careful arrangements for securing isotonicity in the record of the contraction there is probably a certain amount of over-shoot of the lever whenever, as at high temperatures, the contraction is sufficiently rapid. The effect of this is that one cannot assume the existence of an actual pull on the lever during the whole time of the ascent of the latter. We can therefore speak of a period during which there is contractile stress—that is to say, when the muscle is actually pulling on the lever, which will occupy only a part of the ascent of the curve. The duration of this period of contractile stress may be shown by recording what is known as 'arrested' contractions. One mechanism for this purpose is shown in the figure (Fig. 59). The stop Su is

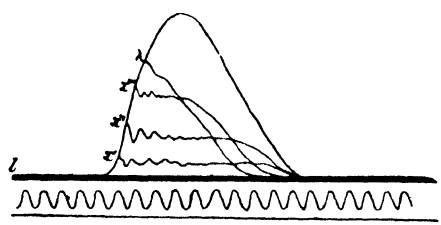


Fig. 60. Curves of isotonic and arrested contractions of an unloaded muscle (Kaiser)

used simply for after-loading the muscle so that the weight shall not act upon the muscle until it begins to contract. The stop So may be regulated so that it suddenly checks the movement of the lever at any desired height above the base line. We may thus get a series of contractions such as those shown in Fig. 60. It will be seen that at the points x', x'', and x''' the muscle was still pulling on the lever, and therefore held it up against the stop. At the point λ the arrested twitch returns rapidly to the base line, showing that the movement of the lever in the unarrested curve above this point was due to the inertia of the moving parts and not to the actual pull of the muscle. In this case the period of contractile stress was about 0·02 seconds.

THE ENERGY OF CONTRACTION. When a muscle contracts we may conceive of it as converted into a body with elastic properties other than those which it possesses during rest. Directly after it has been excited it possesses potential energy which can be measured by the isometric method as tension and which will degenerate in a few hundredths of a second into heat, or can be turned into work by allowing the muscle to shorten and to raise a weight, as in the isotonic method of recording muscular contractions. Under the conditions of an ordinary physiological experiment, a contracted muscle loaded only by a light lever is shorter than the non-contracted, but can be stretched to the length of the latter by a certain weight, when it will be in a condition of tension. In their natural position in the body muscles may possess any length between extreme shortening and extreme elongation whether they are in a resting or in an excited condition. Since the relaxed muscle requires only a minimal force to extend it to the maximal length possible in its natural relationships in the body, it is usual to speak of the different lengths of an excited and unexcited muscle, the lengths being in this case those which are impressed on the muscle by a minimal load. When we measure by means of the isometric method the maximum energy set free in a muscle as the result of excitation, we find, as Blix first pointed out, that this energy depends on the length of the muscle fibres during the period of contractile stress set up by the excitation. With increase in the length of the muscle the tension developed on excitation increases until the length of the muscle is somewhat greater than that which it possesses in its normal relationships in the body. To lengthen the muscle beyond this point a certain stretching force must be applied to it which rapidly increases. The tension developed on excitation however soon begins to diminish.

These relationships are shown by the diagram (Fig. 61), where the ordinates represent the length of the muscle and the abscissæ the tension on the muscle. The left-hand thick line represents the muscle in a state of rest, the right-hand curved line the muscle in a state of excitation. The horizontal distance between the two lines gives the increase of tension (as measured by the isometric method) produced when the muscle passes from the resting into the excited state as the result of stimulation by a single induction shock.

Since the tension set free on excitation depends on the length of the

muscle fibres during the production of the condition of tension, the tension developed will be diminished if the muscle be allowed to shorten before its maximum tension has been reached. This is the case with all isotonic records of muscular contraction, so that it becomes difficult to give any exact expression for the total energy changes in a muscle which is allowed to shorten. On the other hand, in the body the bony levers are so arranged that the muscles at their greatest length work at a maximum mechanical disadvantage which lessens continuously as the muscles shorten and approximate their points of attachment. The load on a muscle is thus lessened

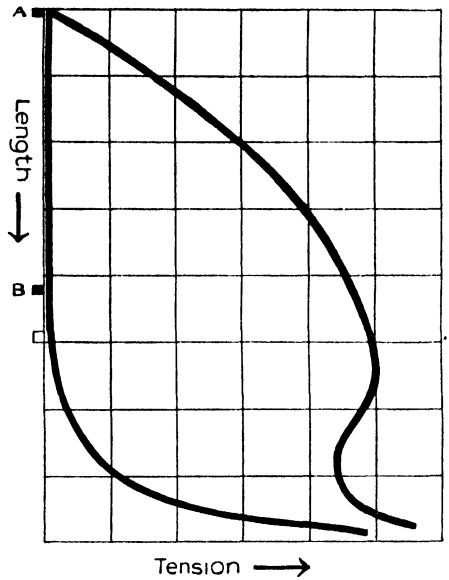


FIG. 61. Diagram to show the relation between the initial length of a muscle and the tension developed in it during excitation (as measured by the isometric method). The tension developed at each initial length is measured by the horizontal distance between the two thick lines, the left line representing the resting muscle, and the curved thick line on the right the contracted muscle. (From BLIX.)

continuously as the muscle contracts. A muscle is a machine primarily for developing tension, and the potential energy thus set up may be used for the production of work to any degree the conditions of loading allow. The work done by a muscle when it contracts is measured by multiplying the weight lifted by the height through which it is lifted, $w \times h$. Since however the result will vary according to the conditions of loading of the muscle, a much more useful quantity is obtained by measuring the tension produced in a muscle which is stimulated but not allowed to shorten. The potential energy available due to the new elastic conditions of the fibres is found to be approximately $\frac{1}{6}$ Tl, where T is the maximum tension developed in the twitch and l is the length of the muscle (A. V. Hill).

THE EXTENSIBILITY OF MUSCLE

Living muscle in a perfectly normal condition is distinguished by its slight but perfect elasticity; that is to say, it is considerably stretched by a slight force (in the longitudinal direction), but returns to its original length when the extending weight is removed. The length to which muscle is stretched is not proportional to the weight used, but any given increment of weight gives rise to less elongation the more the muscle is already stretched. The accompanying curves show diagrammatically the elongation of muscle as compared with a piece of india-rubber when the weight on it is uniformly increased.

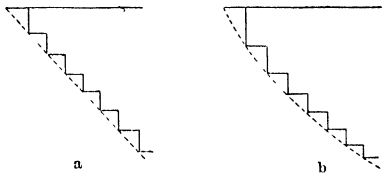


FIG. 62. Extensibility of india-rubber (*a*) compared with that of a frog's gastrocnemius muscle (*b*).

Dead muscle is less extensible and its elasticity is less perfect. A given weight applied to a dead muscle will not stretch it so much as when the muscle was alive, but the dead muscle does not return to its original length when the weight is removed.

A contracted muscle, on the other hand, is more extensible than a muscle at rest. A gramme applied to a contracted gastrocnemius will cause greater lengthening than if it were applied to the same muscle at rest. The relation between the excitability of a muscle under the two conditions of contraction and rest are shown in the diagram in Fig 63

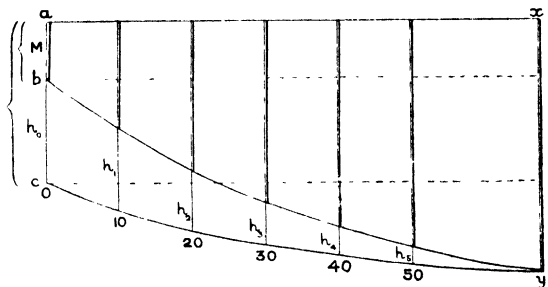


FIG. 63. Curve showing the length of a muscle under various loads in the contracted condition *by*, and uncontracted condition *cy*. The double lines *a*, *b*, &c., represent the contracted muscle, while the long single lines *a c*, &c., show the length of the inactive muscle.

At the point *y* the muscle is unable to shorten at all against a weight. It is evident from this diagram that the height of contraction of a muscle diminishes as the load is increased, very rapidly if the muscle is after-loaded, less rapidly if the weight applied to the muscle be allowed to extend it at rest. It is evident however that in either case the diminution in height is not in proportion to the load and that the work done by the muscle, $w \times h$, as the weight is increased, rises at first quickly, then more slowly to a maximum to sink finally to zero. By inspection of diagram (Fig. 63) it will be seen that

$$0.h_0 < 10.h_1 < 20.h_2 < 30\ h_3 > 40\ h_4 > 50.h_5,$$

so that in this case the maximal mechanical work is obtained when the muscle is loaded with about 30 gms.

PROPAGATION OF CONTRACTION. THE CONTRACTION WAVE

The whole muscle does not as a rule contract simultaneously. When excited from its nerve the contraction begins at the end-plates and spreads in both directions through the muscle. The rate of propagation of the contraction wave can only be measured by employing a curarised muscle, so as to avoid the wide spreading of the excitatory change by means of the intramuscular nerve-endings. For this purpose a curarised sartorius muscle

is taken, stimulated at one end, and the thickening of the muscle recorded by means of two levers placed one near the exciting electrodes and the second at the other end of the muscle, as shown in the diagram (Fig. 64). The difference between the latent periods of the two curves represents the time taken by the contraction wave in travelling from *a* to *b*. By measurements carried out in this way it is found that the rate of propagation of the contraction in frog's muscle is 3 to 4 metres per second; in the muscle of warm-blooded animals it may amount to 6 metres.

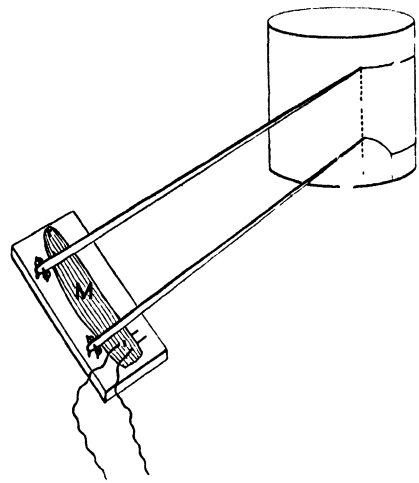


FIG. 64. Diagram of arrangement for recording the contraction wave in a curarised sartorius.

The actual duration of the shortening at any given point is necessarily smaller than that of the whole muscle, and amounts in frog's muscle to only 0·05–0·09 sec., about half the duration of the contraction of a whole muscle of moderate length. The *length of the wave* is obtained by multiplying the rate of transmission by the duration of the wave at any one point. It varies therefore in frog's muscle between 3000 × ·05 (= 150) and 4000 × ·09 (= 360) millimetres. Thus the muscle fibres in the frog are much too short to accommodate the whole length of the wave, and the contraction of the whole muscle must be made up of the summated effects of the contraction wave as it passes from point to point. Hence the longer the muscle, the more must the contraction be lengthened by the time taken up in propagation from one end to another.

SECTION IV

THE CONDITIONS AFFECTING THE MECHANICAL RESPONSE OF A MUSCLE

STRENGTH OF STIMULUS. If a series of single break-shocks be applied to a muscle or nerve at intervals of not less than five seconds, it will be found that beyond a certain distance of the secondary from the primary coil no effect at all is produced. The shocks are said to be subminimal. On pushing the secondary coil nearer the primary a point will be reached at which a small contraction will be observed. On then pushing in the coil a millimetre at a time the contraction will become greater for the next couple of centimetres (*e.g.* as the coil is moved from 12 to 10 cm distance). Further increase of current by approximation of the coils is without effect, although the current actually used may be increased a hundred times in moving the coil from 10 to 0. It was formerly thought that this limited gradation of the muscular response according to strength of stimulus was due to a similar gradation in the response of each individual muscle fibre of which the muscle is composed. It seems more probable however that, when a minimal or subminimal response is obtained, not all the fibres making up the muscle are contracting A minimal contraction is in fact a contraction in which *some* fibres of the whole muscle are stimulated. A maximal contraction is one in which *all* the fibres are stimulated. So far as concerns each individual muscle fibre every contraction is a maximal contraction. The fibre either contracts to its utmost or it does not contract at all. The rule of ' all or none ' which was first enunciated for heart-muscle is probably true for every contractile element. The difference between skeletal and heart muscle lies in the fact that in the former the excitatory process does not spread from one fibre to its neighbours. If for instance we take a curarised sartorius and split its lower end, as in Fig. 65, the stimulus applied to A causes a contraction only of the left side of the muscle, while a stimulus applied to B is in the same way limited to the right side. If a piece of ventricular or auricular muscle of the frog or tortoise were treated in the same way, a stimulus applied at A would cause a contraction which would travel across the bridge at the upper end and extend to B.

FIG 65

It was shown by Gotch that, if each of the three roots which make up the sciatic nerve and send fibres to the gastrocnemius be stimulated in turn, it is often impossible to evoke a maximal contraction of the gastrocnemius, however strongly each root be stimulated. Keith Lucas has shown that if stimuli in gradually increasing strength be applied to the motor nerve (containing only seven to nine fibres), which supplies the dorso-cutaneous muscle of the frog, the contraction of the muscle increases, not gradually, but by a series of steps. This can be explained only by assuming that the smallest effective stimulus excites perhaps four out of the seven nerve fibres, those immediately in contact with the electrodes. With increasing strength of current the stimulus becomes effective for the three fibres lying next to these, and finally still further increase of current may excite all the fibres making up the nerve (Fig. 66).

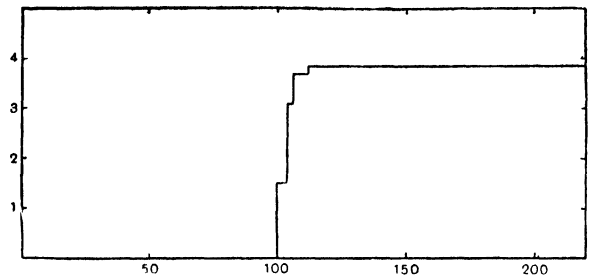


FIG. 66. Curve showing relation of height of contraction of dorso-cutaneous muscle to strength of stimulus. Ordinates = height of contraction; abscissa = strength of stimulus. (K LUCAS.)

THE REPETITION OF STIMULUS

SUMMATION. The response of a muscle fibre to a single shock, whether measured by the isotonic or the isometric method, *i.e.* as shortening or as tension, is independent of the strength of stimulus and varies only with the length of the fibre during the rise of the excitatory condition If however a second shock is sent in during this period a further evolution of energy is possible, and the effect is still further increased by putting a series of stimuli into the muscle or its attached nerve before the development of the contractile stress due to the first stimulus has reached its maximum. If two shocks at intervals of one hundredth of a second be sent into a muscle, the response, whether shortening or rise of tension, will be greater than that produced by one shock. If a series of shocks be sent in, the excitatory condition is maintained, so that instead of a simple muscle twitch rising to a maximum and then falling, the muscle lever rises to a given point, which in the muscle contracting isometrically may be double that due to a single stimulus, and then remains at this height during the continuation of the repeated excitations. If the muscle be allowed to contract isotonically, the continued contraction produced by a series of stimuli may with a heavy load be three or four times as considerable as that produced by a single stimulus. This condition of apparently continued stimulation brought about by continued application of stimuli is said to be summated.

REFRACTORY PERIOD. If the interval between two stimuli sent into a muscle be successively shortened in a series of observations, we finally arrive at a point at which summation is no longer apparent, *i.e.* the effect of

the two stimuli is no greater than the effect of a single stimulus. This means that the second stimulus has become ineffective, and this ineffectiveness we must ascribe to the condition set up in the muscle as the result of the first stimulus. For a very short period of time after stimulation a muscle is inexcitable to a second stimulus. The period during which it is inexcitable is known as the refractory period and amounts in skeletal muscle to about ·0015 second. The same phenomenon is better marked in certain other excitable tissues, such as the heart muscle, but it seems to be a common property of excitable tissues generally.

When a loaded muscle is made to record its contractions isotonically we may get summation of effects, though the interval between the stimuli is greater than that which corresponds to the duration of the rise of contractile stress Thus if the interval is just so long that the second becomes effective just as the contraction due to the first has commenced to die away, the second contraction seems to start from the point to which the muscle has been raised by the first (Fig. 67). By repeating these stimuli in a heavily loaded muscle, the contraction may be made three or four times as extensive as a single twitch. With slow stimuli the summation is however rather mechanical than physiological. The period of contractile stress, which lasts only about ·03 second, is so short that it has no time to raise the weight to the maximum height before it has passed away This is shown by the fact that if the muscle be after-loaded, so that the lever is raised to the top of the curve of a single twitch, application of the stimulus will make it shorten still more, and by repeated after-loading in this fashion, it is possible to make the muscle raise a weight in response to a single stimulus to the same height that it would if excited by a series of stimuli. This mechanical factor in summation is shown in Fig 68. It will be noted however that the tetanus is not a steady one and is probably due to stimuli repeated at intervals of about $\frac{1}{10}$ of a second. If the rate of stimulation were increased to 50 or 100 per second, a tetanus would be produced and the curve would be probably twice as high as that represented in the figure. We thus see that for the overcoming of a resistance a single twitch is not economical. It is doubtful whether any contractions of muscles which occur in the body are other than tetani of varying duration.

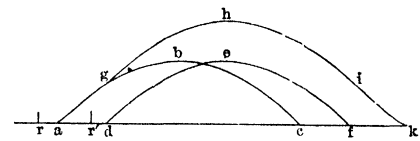


FIG. 67. Muscle curves showing summation of stimuli. r and r'. the points at which the stimuli were sent into the nerve. From the first stimulus alone the curve *abc* would be obtained. From r' the curve *def* is obtained. These two curves are *summated* to form the curve *aghik* when both stimuli are sent in at the interval $r\ r'$.

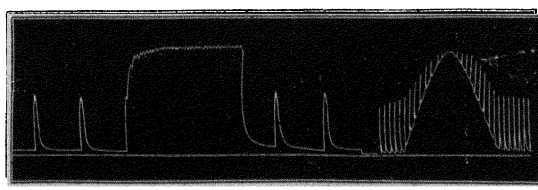


FIG. 68. Contractions of a frog's muscle. Two single twitches are followed by a tetanus, which is almost twice as high as a single contraction. After two more single twitches, the drum was made to rotate more slowly, and single shocks employed, at the same time as the 'after-loading' was continually increased. It can be seen that the curve obtained in this way is as high as the original tetanus. (V. FREY.)

TEMPERATURE. Speaking generally, the effect of warming a muscle

is to quicken all its processes. The latent period becomes shorter and the muscle curve steeper and shorter.

It is very often observed that the height of contraction of the warmed muscle is greater than that obtained at ordinary temperatures. It seems that this apparent increase in height is really instrumental in origin, the quicker-moving muscle jerking the lever beyond the real extent of the contraction. If proper means are taken to eliminate this overshooting of the lever, it is found that the height of contraction is unaltered between 5° and 20°C., the only change being in the time-relations of the curves. This is especially well shown in the so-called 'arrest' curves (Fig. 69).

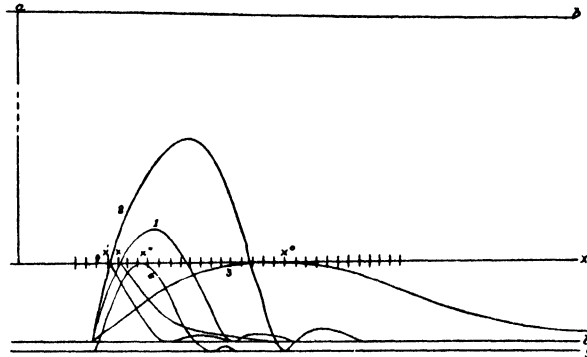


FIG. 69. Isotonic and 'arrest' curves of muscle-twitch: (1) unloaded at 14°C.; (2) at 25°C.; (3) at 0°C.; (4) loaded at 14°C. Note that the arrest curves attain the same height throughout. (KAISER.)

If a muscle be heated gradually (without stimulation) up to about 45°C., it begins to contract slowly at about 34°C., and this contraction reaches its maximum at 45°C., at which point the muscle has entered into pronounced *rigor mortis*.

Cold has the reverse effect. The intra-molecular processes which lie at the root of the muscular activity are slowed, so that the latent period and the contraction period are prolonged. The action of cold on the *excitability* of muscle is to increase it, so that any form of stimulus is more effective at 5°C. than at 25°C. Moreover, when maximal stimuli are being used, and the muscle is heavily loaded, the first effect of the application of cold may be to increase the height as well as the duration of contraction, for the same reason that a gentle push is more efficacious in closing a door than would be a heavy blow with a hammer. If however a muscle be cooled for a short time to zero or a little below, it loses its irritability, which returns if the muscle be gradually warmed again. Prolonged exposure to severe cold irrevocably destroys its irritability. Warming the muscle will now simply bring about *rigor mortis*.

FATIGUE. A muscle will not go on contracting indefinitely. If it be repeatedly stimulated, changes soon become apparent in the curve of contraction. The latent period is prolonged, as well as the length of the contractions; the absolute height and work done are diminished. At the same time the muscle does not return to its original length; the shorten-

ing which remains is spoken of as '*contraction remainder*.' After an initial rise during the first few contractions, these diminish uniformly in height till they are no longer apparent, so that the muscle is now said to have lost its irritability. At the same time there is a great prolongation of the curve, occasioned almost entirely by a retardation of the relaxation, so that after forty or fifty contractions several seconds may elapse before the lever returns to the base line (Fig. 70).

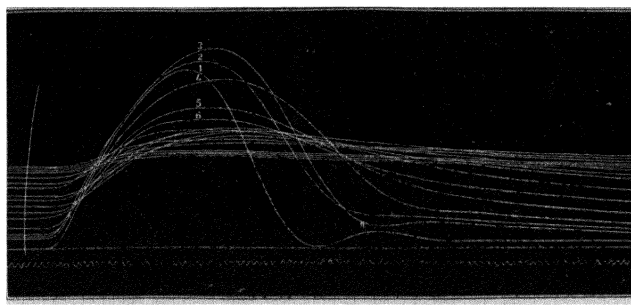


FIG. 70. Muscle curves showing fatigue in consequence of repeated stimulation. The first six contractions are numbered, and show the initial increase of the first three contractions. (BRODIE.)

The fact that the relaxation part of the muscle curve is affected by various conditions, especially fatigue, apparently independently of the contraction part, led FICK to put forward a theory that two distinct processes were concerned in the response of a muscle to excitation, one process causing the active shortening and the other the relaxation. (It must be noted that this is *not* the same as saying that the *lengthening* is an active process, a statement negatived by the behaviour of a muscle when caused to contract on mercury.) He suggested that the disintegration associated with activity might be conceived as occurring in two stages: the first resulting in the production of sarcolactic acid and the active shortening of the muscle; the second in the further conversion of the acid into CO_2, with a consequent relaxation. A retardation of this second phase would cause the prolonged curve with 'contraction remainder' observed in a fatigued muscle. We shall return to this point when discussing the chemical and heat changes which accompany contraction.

If left to itself, the muscle which has been exhausted by repeated stimulation will recover. The recovery is hastened by passing a stream of blood, or even of salt solution, through the blood-vessels of the muscle. Recovery in a muscle outside the body is never complete.

The phenomena of fatigue probably depend on two factors:

(1) The consumption of the contractile material or the substances available for the supply of potential energy to this material.

(2) A more important factor is the accumulation of waste products of contraction. Among these waste products the lactic acid is probably of great importance. Fatigue may be artificially induced in a muscle by 'feeding' it with a dilute solution of lactic acid, and again removed by washing out the muscle with normal saline solution containing a small percentage of alkali.

THE ACTION OF SALTS

The action of sodium salts on muscle is of considerable interest We are accustomed to use a 0·6 per cent. solution of NaCl as a 'normal fluid' to keep muscle preparations moist If however the solution be made with distilled water, it has a distinctly excitatory effect upon the muscle,

FIG. 71. A. Tracing of the contraction of a frog's sartorius, poisoned with veratrin, in response to a momentary stimulus. The time-marking indicates seconds.
B. Tetanic contraction of normal sartorius in response to rapidly interrupted stimuli. (The duration of the stimulus is indicated by the words 'on' and 'off.') It will be noticed that the two curves are practically identical. (MISS BUCHANAN.)

so that single induction shocks may cause tetaniform contractions. The same excitatory effect is still better marked with solutions of Na_2CO_3. If a thin muscle, such as a frog's sartorius, be immersed in a solution containing 0·5 per cent. NaCl, 0·2 per cent. Na_2HPO_4, and 0·04 per cent. Na_2CO_3 (Biedermann's fluid), the muscle enters into a series of frequent contractions, so that it may wriggle from side to side, or may even 'beat' for a time with the regularity of heart-muscle, though at a much greater rate.

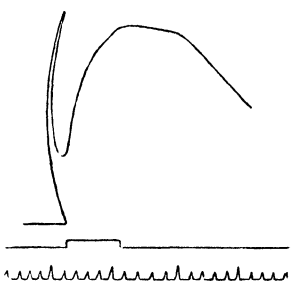


FIG. 72. Tracing of the contraction of a muscle poisoned by the injection of a strong solution of veratrin, showing the double contraction due to unequal poisoning of different fibres. (BIEDERMANN.)

This excitatory action of sodium salts is neutralised by the addition of traces of calcium salts. Hence the normal saline used in the laboratory should always be made with tap water, containing calcium salts.

Potassium salts, although forming so important a constituent of the ash of muscle, act as muscle poisons, quickly and permanently destroying its irritability. If a muscle be transfused with normal fluids containing minute traces of potassium salts, it at once shows all the signs of fatigue, signs which may be removed by washing out the potassium salts by means of 0·6 per cent. NaCl solution. It is possible that the setting free of potassium salts may be one of the factors involved in the development of the normal fatigue of muscle.

THE ACTION OF DRUGS

Of the drugs that have a direct action on muscle, the most remarkable is veratrin, which causes an excessive prolongation of a muscular contraction (produced by a single stimulus). Thus the 'twitch' of a muscle poisoned with veratrin may last fifty or sixty seconds, instead of the normal one-tenth of a second (Fig. 71).

Barium salts have a similar, though less marked effect.

In order to carry out the poisoning with veratrin, very weak solutions (1 in 100,000 or 1 in 1,000,000 of normal saline) should be used and the muscle exposed to its action for some time. We get then on a single stimulus a response lasting many seconds and exactly similar in height and form to a tetanus obtained by discontinuous stimulation. If stronger solutions be used, the action of the drug is apt to affect the fibres unequally, so that we may have a sharp normal twitch preceding the prolonged contraction (Fig. 72) If the muscle be excited several times immediately after the prolonged contraction has passed away, it responds with twitches like those of a normal muscle, but if allowed to rest a few minutes, stimulation is again followed by the peculiar long-drawn-out contraction.

SECTION V

CHEMICAL CHANGES IN MUSCLE

CHEMICAL COMPOSITION OF VOLUNTARY MUSCLE

VOLUNTARY muscle consists of elongated cells, the muscle fibres being embedded in a connective tissue framework; and, as in all cellular tissues, proteins form its chief chemical constituents. The contents of the fibres are semi-fluid and can be expressed from the finely divided muscle as a viscous fluid known as muscle-plasma.

Muscle-plasma is obtained in the following way. The living muscle of frogs is frozen, minced with ice-cold knives and pounded in a mortar with four times its weight of sand containing ·6 of common salt. The mixture is then thrown on to a filter kept at 0° C. when an opalescent fluid filters through. The filters soon become clogged and therefore must be frequently changed, and their temperature must not be allowed to rise above 2° to 3°C.

If the temperature of the muscle-plasma be allowed to rise, clotting takes place, the clot later on contracting and squeezing out a serum, as is the case with blood-plasma.

The muscle-plasma is neutral or slightly alkaline. When coagulation takes place however, it becomes distinctly acid, and this acidity is due to the formation of sarcolactic acid in the process. Arguing chiefly from analogy with the blood-plasma, the muscle-plasma has been said to contain a body, myosinogen, which is converted when clotting takes place into myosin.

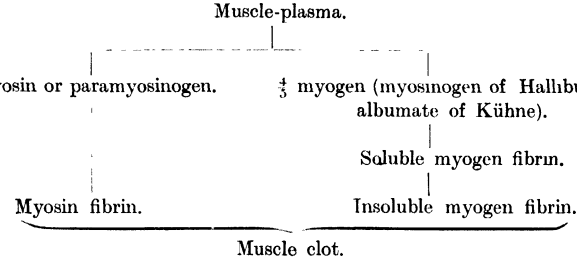
The exact nature of the proteins in muscle-plasma, as well as of the protein constituent of the clot, which we have called myosin, is still a subject of debate Kühne, to whom we owe our first acquaintance with muscle-plasma, described the clot as consisting of myosin, a globulin, soluble in 5 per cent. solutions of neutral salts, such as NaCl or $MgSO_4$, precipitated by complete saturation with $MgSO_4$, and coagulated on heating to 56° C. In the muscle-serum, obtained after separation of the clot, he found three proteins, one coagulating at 45°C., one he called an albumate (*i.e.* a derived albumen or metaprotein), and the third coagulating about 75°C., and apparently identical with serum albumen. Halliburton extended these researches to the muscles of warm-blooded animals. He described four proteins as existing in muscle-plasma, of which two, paramyosinogen and myosinogen, gave rise to the clot of myosin.

In no case however is it possible entirely to dissolve up the clot when once formed, and it seems that the so-called solution in dilute salt solutions was merely an extraction of still soluble protein in the meshes of the clot. Von Fürth has shown that if the muscles of a mammal are washed free of adherent lymph and blood, the plasma obtained by extraction with normal salt solution contains only two proteins. These proteins are extremely unstable, and are gradually transformed on standing into insoluble

protein, giving rise to a precipitate in dilute solutions, or forming a jelly-like clot in strong solutions. The properties of these proteins may be summarised as follows:

(1) Myosin (paramyosinogen of Halliburton). A globulin, coagulating at about 47°-50°C., precipitated by half saturation with ammonium sulphate or on dialysis. Transformed slowly in solution, rapidly on precipitation, into an insoluble protein, myosin fibrin.

(2) Myogen (myosinogen of Halliburton). A protein allied to the albumens in that it is not precipitated by dialysis. Coagulates on heating at 55°–60°C. It changes slowly into an insoluble protein, myogen fibrin, but *passes through an intermediate soluble stage* called soluble myogen fibrin. This latter body coagulates on heating to 40°C., being instantly converted at this temperature into insoluble myogen fibrin. It does not seem that any ferment action is associated with these changes, which we may represent by the following schema:



Soluble myogen fibrin, which in mammalian muscle-plasma forms only on standing, exists apparently preformed in frog's muscle. Hence the instantaneous clotting of frog's muscle-plasma on warming to 40°C.

The residue left after the expression of the muscle-plasma consists chiefly of connective tissue, sarcolemma, and nuclei, and as such contains gelatin (or rather collagen), mucin, nuclein, and adherent traces of the proteins of the muscle-plasma itself.

The muscle-serum contains the greater part of the soluble constituents of muscle.

OTHER CONSTITUENTS OF MUSCLE. A number of other substances are found in muscle in small quantities, those which are soluble being contained to a great part in the muscle-serum. It will suffice here to enumerate the chief of these.

(*a*) *Colouring-matter.* All red muscles contain a considerable amount of hæmoglobin. A special muscle pigment allied to hæmoglobin has been described by MacMunn as myohæmatin. The only evidence for its existence is spectroscopic.

(*b*) *Nitrogenous extractives.* Of these, the most important is creatine ($C_4H_9N_3O_2$) of which 0·2 to 0·3 per cent. may be found in muscle. Its significance will be the subject of consideration later. Other nitrogenous bodies occurring in smaller quantities are hypoxanthine, xanthine, and traces of urea and amino-acids.

(*c*) *Non-nitrogenous constituents.*

Fats, in variable amount.

Glycogen. This substance is invariably found in healthy muscle. Fresh skeletal muscle contains about 1 per cent. In the embryo the muscles may contain many times this quantity of glycogen.

Glucose is present in fresh muscle in minimal quantities, about ·01 per cent.

When muscle is allowed to stand, especially in a warm place, the glycogen undergoes partial conversion into glucose, so that the latter increases at the expense of the former.

Inosit ($C_6H_{12}O_6$ $2H_2O$) or 'muscle sugar' occurs in minute traces in muscle. It does not belong to the group of carbohydrates at all, being a hexahydrobenzene. It is nonfermentable and does not rotate polarised light nor does it reduce Fehling's solution. Its significance is quite unknown.

(*d*) *Inorganic constituents.* Muscle contains about 75 per cent. of water. Ash forms 1 to 1·5 per cent. and consists chiefly of potassium and phosphoric acid, with traces of calcium, magnesium, chlorine and iron.

RIGOR MORTIS

All muscles after removal from the body, or if left in the body after general death, lose after a time their irritability, and this loss is succeeded by the phenomenon known as *rigor mortis*. The muscle, which was previously flaccid, contracts, though the shortening is not very powerful and can be prevented by a moderate load on the muscle. Whereas the living muscle is translucent, supple, and extensible, it becomes in the process of rigor opaque, rigid and inextensible. When rigor has been established, the reaction of the muscle is also found to have changed from a slightly alkaline to a distinctly acid one, the acid being due to the presence of sarcolactic acid. From this condition of rigor there is no recovery. There can be no doubt that the change in consistence of the muscle and probably also its shortening in rigor are due to the coagulation of the muscle proteins. Both changes can be imitated by heating the muscle, as is indicated by Brodie's experiments. This observer found that, if a living muscle be lightly loaded and then warmed very gradually, a series of stages in the heat contraction could be distinguished corresponding to the coagulation temperatures of the different proteins described by von Fürth in muscle plasma. It seems likely however that the main contraction at all events, that which comes on spontaneously after death or immediately on warming the muscle to 45°C, has another component. In the coagulation of the separated muscle proteins there is no evidence of any appreciable formation of sarcolactic acid, whereas the formation of this substance seems to bear an important relation to the occurrence of rigor. Thus after severe muscular fatigue, as in hunted animals, where there has already been a considerable formation of the waste products of muscular contraction, rigidity may come on almost immediately after death. If a thin living muscle be plunged into boiling water, it undergoes instant coagulation, but *no chemical change*. The reaction of the scalded muscle, like that of fresh muscle, is slightly alkaline to litmus. No sarcolactic acid or carbonic acid is produced. On the other hand, in surviving muscle, after the cessation of the circulation, there is a steady formation of lactic acid which accumulates in the muscle. The actual coagulation of the muscle proteins occurring in rigor is largely, if not entirely, determined by the increasing acidity of the muscle thereby produced. In fact, it is the production of the acid which causes the onset of rigor, and not the rigor which causes a sudden formation of acid. Hence if the accumulation of lactic acid be prevented by perfusing the muscle with salt solutions, the onset of rigor may be postponed indefinitely, and the muscle may begin to putrefy without having undergone rigor.

THE PRODUCTION OF LACTIC ACID IN SURVIVING MUSCLE

The lactic acid formed in muscle (sarcolactic acid) is a physical isomer of the lactic acid formed in the fermentation or souring of milk. They both have the formula $CH_3.C\dot{H}(OH).COOH$, *i.e.* they are ethylidene lactic acids. The lactic acid of fermentation is optically inactive; sarcolactic acid rotates polarised light to the right; while a third isomer which is lævo-rotatory is produced by the action of various bacilli and vibriones on cane sugar. The sarcolactic acid can be extracted from the muscle by means of alcohol.

It was pointed out by Hopkins and Fletcher that most of the methods previously used for the extraction of lactic acid from muscle caused the formation of lactic acid in this tissue. To obviate this difficulty, they adopted the precaution of cooling the muscles before cutting them out of the body and then dropping them into alcohol cooled to 0°C. While in this ice-cold alcohol they were finely divided with scissors and then pounded up in a cooled mortar. In this way the tissue was destroyed at a temperature which did not allow of the changes responsible in surviving muscle for the production of lactic acid. It is generally separated in the form of the zinc sarcolactate, by boiling its partially purified solution with zinc carbonate. Its presence may be tested for by means of Uffelmann's reagent, which is made by the addition of ferric chloride to dilute carbolic acid. The purple solution thus produced is at once changed to yellow by the addition of even traces of lactic acid

A much more definite colour reaction for lactic acid has been introduced by Hopkins. The test is carried out in the following way. About 5 c c of strong sulphuric acid are placed in a test-tube together with one drop of saturated solution of copper sulphate, which serves to catalyse the oxidation that follows. To this mixture a few drops of the solution to be tested are added, and the whole well shaken. The test-tube is now placed in a beaker of boiling water for one or two minutes. The tube is then cooled under a water-tap, and two or three drops of a very dilute alcoholic solution of thiophene (ten to twenty drops in 100 c c) are added from a pipette The tube is replaced in the boiling water and the contents immediately observed. If lactic acid is present the fluid rapidly assumes a bright cherry red colour, which is only permanent if the tube be cooled the moment after its appearance.

A study of the lactic acid content of muscle by Fletcher and Hopkins, using the precautions described above, has shown that fresh muscle contains only minimal amounts of lactic acid, the quantity being smaller, the greater the care that is taken to avoid injury to the muscle and to keep its temperature low until sufficient time has elapsed for its vital chemical processes to be destroyed by the action of the cold alcohol If the muscle be left in the body after the death of the animal or be excised, a steady formation of lactic acid takes place, which is more rapid in the first few hours after death, but continues until the muscle passes into rigor. With the complete onset of rigor, frog's muscles are found to contain about ·4 per cent. lactic acid. After this time the amount does not increase. The onset of rigor and the rate of production of lactic acid are quickened if the muscle be kept warm. It is interesting to note that the amount of lactic acid found in rigid muscle is almost invariable whatever the previous history of the muscle. Thus, if the muscle be finely minced and then extracted with cold alcohol, it is found to contain about ·2 per cent. lactic acid. If however it be allowed to stand after mincing, there is a slow production of lactic acid up to the maximum ·4 per cent. Again, a muscle which has been tetanised to exhaustion contains about ·2 per cent. lactic acid. When allowed to undergo rigor, the amount rises to about ·4 per cent.

It has long been known that the onset of rigor is associated with an evolution of carbonic acid by the muscle. Fletcher has shown that this increased output of carbonic acid by a surviving muscle is due simply to the driving off of carbonic acid from the carbonates in the muscle as a result of the production of lactic acid. There is no evidence of a new formation of carbonic acid in the dying muscle as a result, for instance, of oxidative changes.

THE CHEMICAL CHANGES WHICH ACCOMPANY ACTIVITY

The principle of the conservation of energy teaches us that the energy of the contraction of muscle must be derived from chemical changes, probably processes of decomposition and oxidation, occurring in the muscle itself. In seeking out the nature of these changes three methods are open to us:

(1) We can examine the changes in the muscle itself, avoiding so far as possible reintegrative changes by working on excised muscles.

(2) We can investigate the changes in the medium surrounding the muscle. Muscle may be exposed in a vacuum or in a confined space of air, and its gaseous interchanges during rest and activity compared. Or we may lead a current of defibrinated blood through excised muscles, and determine the change in the composition of the blood in passing through the muscle under various conditions.

(3) A method, which although apparently complex has rendered the utmost service to the physiology of muscle, is to use the changes in the total metabolism of the animal during rest and muscular work as a clue to the muscular metabolism itself. In such a case the respiratory exchanges of the animal are determined (viz. its oxygen intake and its CO_2 output), and the urine and fæces are carefully analysed, in order to judge of the action of muscular work on the carbon and nitrogen metabolism of the body.

By the third of these methods we may show that muscular exercise increases largely the intake of oxygen and the output of carbon dioxide by the body. No corresponding changes are found in the nitrogenous metabolism, so that ultimately we may regard the energy of the muscular contraction as derived from the oxidation of the food-stuffs and especially the carbohydrates. That it is this class of bodies which is the immediate, or at any rate the most accessible, source of muscular energy, is shown by the rise in the respiratory quotient which occurs during muscular exercise, When the exercise is moderate there is no evidence of the production of any other substance than carbon dioxide as a result of the muscular metabolism, but with violent exercise it can be shown that lactic acid is not only produced in the muscle, but appears in the blood and is excreted in the urine.

It has been shown by Ryffel that normal urine contains 3 — 4 mg. of lactic acid per hour. In one experiment the urine passed after the observer had run one third of a mile with the production of severe breathlessness contained 454 mg. of lactic acid. In another experiment blood obtained before running contained 12·5 mg. per 100 c.c., and that obtained immediately after running one third of a mile contained 70 mg. lactic acid per 100 c.c. On the other hand, the examination of the urines of competitors in a twenty-four hours track walking race showed no increase in the output of lactic acid above the normal 4 mg. per hour.

The appearance of lactic acid thus seems to be attendant on a relative deficiency in the oxygen supply to the contracting muscle. The same conclusion may be drawn from experiments made many years ago by Araki, in which lactic acid was observed in quantities in the urine in cases where the oxidative processes of the body were interfered with by CO poisoning.

Similar results are obtained when we investigate the chemical changes accompanying the contraction of excised muscles of the frog. If frogs' muscle be hung up in an atmosphere of nitrogen and stimulated repeatedly with single shocks, it will give a series of contractions gradually diminishing in size (*v.* p. 209). After a time the muscle is completely fatigued, and no further response can be elicited on stimulation. On now examining it, it is found to be acid in reaction and to contain about 2 per cent. lactic acid. There is no evidence that under these conditions any carbonic acid is produced, though a certain amount may be liberated in consequence of the acidification of the muscle. Almost the same results are obtained when the muscle is stimulated in ordinary atmospheric air. The penetration of oxygen from the air through the body of the muscle is so slow that all the muscle except the thin layer on the surface may be regarded as cut off from the action of oxygen. By hanging the muscle, especially a thin muscle such as the sartorius, in an atmosphere of pure oxygen, the results are quite different. In the first place the muscle does not fatigue so soon. Moreover, a muscle which has been stimulated to exhaustion in an atmosphere of nitrogen, if restored to one of pure oxygen, will rapidly recover its power of contraction In pure oxygen no lactic acid is produced, and a muscle stimulated to exhaustion contains very little more lactic acid than does resting muscle. On the other hand, the intake of oxygen and the output of carbonic acid by the muscle is increased at each contraction. We thus find that a muscle during contraction may produce lactic acid or carbonic acid according as oxygen is absent or present. In both cases contraction takes place apparently normally, but fatigue supervenes much more rapidly in the absence of oxygen. The question arises whether we should regard the formation of lactic acid and carbonic acid as alternative processes, or whether lactic acid is first formed and is then removed under the action of oxygen, undergoing partial or complete oxidation to carbonic acid in the process. The evidence is distinctly in favour of the second hypothesis. Thus Hopkins and Fletcher have found that muscle possesses in itself a chemical mechanism for the removal of lactic acid. If a fatigued muscle be exposed to pure oxygen, 30 per cent. of the lactic acid present in the muscle may disappear within two hours and 50 per cent. within six to ten hours. Thus, even apart from the circulation which of course would remove large quantities of any lactic acid which might be produced in the muscles, these can deal with this metabolite locally. It has been found that a muscle may be fatigued several times and then placed in oxygen to recover, so that lactic acid is produced and removed also several times. If at the end the muscle be allowed to undergo rigor, it is found to contain ·4 per cent. lactic acid, *i.e.* exactly the same amount as if it had given

no contractions at all. Fletcher and Hopkins interpreted this result as showing that under the influence of oxygen, lactic acid is put back into the precursor from which it arose, and would assume that part of the lactic acid is completely oxidised to carbonic acid and water, the energy so evolved being employed in the building up of the precursor from the rest of the lactic acid. On the other hand it is possible that the lactic acid produced in the initial stage of contraction may be under normal circumstances completely removed by oxidation, and that the energy or part of the energy so made available is used to build up some precursor substance, not out of the lactic acid, but out of the glycogen already present in the muscle (Parnas). It is certain that prolonged activity of muscle, especially in the presence of oxygen, may be associated with a diminution in the glycogen store of the muscle. We cannot however discuss this question further without reference to the total energy changes in muscle contracting with or without oxygen, and the clue to these changes is given by a study of the heat production in muscle.

SECTION VI

THE PRODUCTION OF HEAT IN MUSCLE

THE experience of everyday life teaches us that muscular exercise is associated with increased production of heat. Thus a man walks fast on a frosty day to keep himself warm. In large animals the production of heat in muscular contraction can be easily shown by inserting the bulb of a thermometer between the thigh muscles, and stimulating the spinal cord. The rise of temperature produced in this way may amount to several degrees. This observation is confirmed when we investigate the contraction of an isolated muscle outside the body. If a frog's muscle is tetanised, its temperature rises from 0·14 ° to 0·18°C., and for each single twitch from 0·001° to 0·005°C.

It is evident that such small changes in temperature as 0·001° cannot be estimated by ordinary thermometric methods. By converting a heat change into an electrical change however, we can estimate differences of temperature with much greater accuracy and fineness than by the use of a thermometer. Two main principles are employed in measuring temperature by electrical methods. The thermo-electrical method depends on the fact that, when the junctions of a circuit made of two metals are at different temperatures, a current of electricity generally flows through the circuit This current can be measured by means of a galvanometer, and is proportional to the difference of temperature between the two junctions. Thus in the circuit (Fig. 73) composed of two metals, antimony and bismuth, if the upper junction be cooled, there will be a current flowing from antimony to bismuth in the direction of the arrow, and this current will within limits be proportional to the difference of temperature.

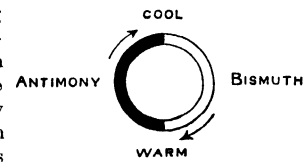


FIG. 73

To measure the production of heat during muscular contraction, a small flat thermopile (containing four or six elements composed of iron and German silver, or copper and 'constantan') is fixed with one of its ends between two frogs' gastrocnemii. Another exactly similar pile, but reversed, is placed between two other gastrocnemii, which are kept resting and at a perfectly constant temperature. So long as the two piles are at the same temperature no current flows; but, with a sensitive galvanometer, the slightest difference of temperature, such as that caused by the contraction of one pair of muscles, at once causes a deflection of the galvanometer, the extent and direction of which enable us to estimate exactly the seat and amount of heat produced.

When we are using such delicate detectors of temperature difference, we are met by the difficulty that every junction in the circuit tends to become the seat of an electromotive force in consequence of slight changes of temperature due to currents of air, &c. It is therefore advisable to use a plan adopted by Blix, of placing all the apparatus, the muscle included, within the galvanometer case. The arrangements of such an experiment as employed by A. V. Hill are shown in the diagram (Fig. 74).

In this instrument the junction of copper with the alloy constantan constitutes a thermo-electric couple. The magnet and mirror chamber are entirely separated off from the rest of the instrument by the walls of the tube containing the magnet. The grooves are usually filled with plasticine, and into them fit the edges of an outer case of brass constituting the walls of the muscle chamber. The inside of this case is lined with wet blotting-paper. The copper coil consists of many more turns than are shown in the figure; its ends, AA and BB, are separated by the celluloid plate, and are connected by the constantan plug; the points where the copper meets the constantan constitute the thermo-electric junctions. The tube containing the magnet hangs

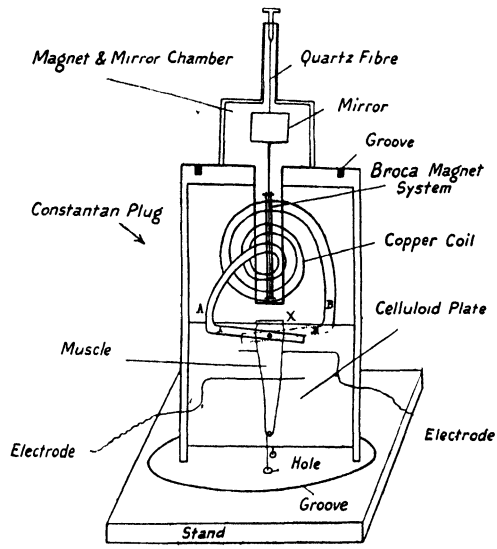


FIG. 74.

down through holes bored in the broad copper coil. The two semimembranosus muscles ride astride of the celluloid plate, one in contact with each end of the constantan plug. The small piece of bone at their upper ends which has been left connecting the two muscles is placed exactly on the top of the celluloid plate at x and held in position by a clamp (not shown in the figure). The copper terminals of the coil are coated with celluloid varnish to prevent short circuiting of the thermo-electric currents, and to prevent poisoning of the muscles. Each muscle is in contact with a pair of electrodes, made of fine platinum wire; the muscle lies over the upper end beneath the lower of these electrodes, as shown in the figure. The tendons at the lower ends of the muscles are tied to silk threads which pass through holes in the base of the instrument. These are then attached to recording levers which write on a drum beneath the table. When all is ready three heavy soft-iron cylinders are placed over the instrument: the latter is screwed to a wooden block which is fixed to a thick iron plate attached to the table. In the cylinders holes are bored to admit and let out after reflexion the light from a Nernst lamp. The lamp, which is about three metres away, shines upon the mirror, and a line in it, after reflexion, is focussed on to the screen, which is also three metres away. The line is brought on to the scale by the small field exerted by a control magnet placed outside the cylinders at a suitable position on the table: its position may be read easily to half a millimetre, and the movement due to a twitch is usually of the order of 80 mm. These soft-iron cylinders cut off entirely all external magnetism sufficient to cause harmful disturbance during an experiment. They lower very largely the

strength of the constant external field in which the magnet lies, and leave it chiefly supported in any position by the quartz fibre. Thus all the movements set up in the magnet by the thermo-electric currents are working against little more than the torsion of a quartz fibre only 6μ thick. This explains the great sensitivity of the instrument.

A second method depends on the fact that rise of temperature increases the resistance of a wire to the passage of an electric current. A current detector consists of a small grid of fine platinum wire which is placed against the muscle between two muscles. This grid is then made one limb of a Wheatstone's bridge (Fig 74A). A small current is passed through the circuit, and the resistances are so adjusted that no current flows through the galvanometer Any alteration in temperature of the grid will alter the balance of the resistance and will cause a current to flow through the galvanometer in a direction which will vary according as the resistance in the grid is increased or diminished It is possible to calibrate the arrangement so that a deflection of the galvanometer over one degree will correspond to a certain fraction of a degree of difference in temperature of the grid This method is employed in Callender's recording thermometers, and has been made by Gamgee the basis of an arrangement for the continuous record of the temperature of the human body

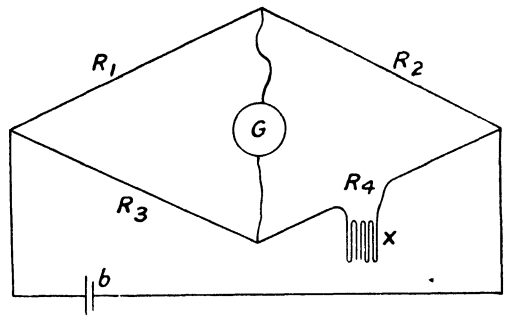


FIG. 74A. Arrangement of apparatus for measuring small differences of temperature.

Most of the earlier work on the development of heat in muscle had as its leading motive the discovery of the relation between the heat produced and the work performed by a muscle under varying conditions of load. When a loaded muscle contracts however, it is not easy to analyse its mechanical conditions, since part of the shortening of the muscle during contraction can be regarded merely as a recovery from the condition of extension induced by the weight, and the amplitude of the excursion may be largely conditioned by the inertia of the weight moved. Working on these lines, Heidenhain discovered that the heat production in muscle during contraction is not an invariable quantity, but varies according to the condition of the muscle and especially according to the tension developed in it during contraction. It was therefore at its maximum under isometric conditions when it was not allowed to shorten at all during contraction. As we have seen, the muscle changes, as the result of excitation, from a body having certain elastic properties to one having other elastic properties. The whole energy of the contraction is converted for a short period into a state of tension which can be used to do work by raising a weight. If it be not allowed to shorten, the state of tension passes off and the whole energy which has been set free must appear as heat. The potential energy developed in a muscle twitch is approximately equal to $\frac{1}{6}$ Tl, where T is the

tension developed and l the length of the muscle, and it is this amount which must be compared with the heat production measured in the muscle by one of the methods described. A. V. Hill has shown that the heat production in a contracting skeletal muscle occurs in two phases, a rapid production of heat which apparently is synchronous with the contraction itself, and a slow production of heat which continues for some time after the muscle has relaxed. The second phase of heat production depends on the presence of oxygen, and is observed at its best when the muscle is kept in pure oxygen. If the muscle be allowed to contract in nitrogen only the initial heat production is observed. The heat production of the second phase is stated by Hill to be approximately equal to that in the first phase. These results have been interpreted as showing that the initial change in muscular contraction is the development of lactic acid. The appearance of this lactic acid in some way changes the muscle and sets up potential energy at the surface of its ultimate fibrils, which will result in a shortening of the muscle if any movement of its ends be allowed. A comparison of the energy of the tension set up with the actual heat evolved in the initial stage when a muscle is not allowed to contract shows that the two quantities are approximately equal In a series of experiments Hill found that the ratio $\frac{1}{6}$ Tl : H in the sartorius muscle under low initial tensions and in comparatively weak contractions approximated to the value 1, the mean value being ·91. Under high initial tensions and in strong contractions of the sartorius muscle, it is lower, being roughly from 0·4 to 0·6. He concludes from this that under certain conditions the initial process of contraction consists largely, if not entirely, of the liberation of free potential energy manifested as tension in the muscle. This potential energy may be used for the accomplishment of work or for the production of heat. The efficiency of the initial stage of contraction is therefore almost 100 per cent.

If however a muscle is to go on contracting without rapidly showing signs of fatigue, it must be kept in oxygen, so that the processes of replacement or of removal of the lactic acid may take place. Under these circumstances there is a further evolution of heat after the contraction, equal to that set free during the initial stage. So that the total efficiency of a muscle kept in oxygen would not be more than 50 per cent.

This is assuming that the process of oxidation of the lactic acid and its replacement in whole or in part in the muscle molecule is completely carried out during the time of the observation It is improbable that such is the case, and it seems possible that the evolution of heat during the so-called recovery stage of the muscle has been under-estimated.

If a series of observations of the heat production and tension developed during isometric contractions be made with varying initial length of the muscle, it is found that while the ratio of tension developed to heat produced is approximately constant, both these quantities first increase and then finally diminish. The optimum of the heat production in some experiments seems to fall later than the optimum of the tension developed. Thus the longer the muscle fibre, within limits, when it is excited, the greater the ten-

sion and the greater the heat production developed, *i.e.* we may assume that increased length of muscle fibre increases the chemical changes, ensuing on excitation, which are responsible both for the development of mechanical energy and the production of heat. The significance of these results for the essential nature of muscular contraction we shall discuss in a later chapter.

SECTION VII

ELECTRICAL CHANGES IN MUSCLE

If a current from a battery be passed between two plates of platinum immersed in acidulated water or salt solution, *electrolysis* of the water takes place, bubbles of oxygen appearing on the positive plate (anode), and bubbles of hydrogen on the negative plate (cathode). If now we remove the battery, and connect the two plates (electrodes) by wires with a galvanometer, a current passes through the galvanometer and water in the reverse direction to the previous battery current. This current is called the polarisation current, and is due to the electrolysis of the water that has taken place. The vessel in which the electrodes are immersed has in fact become a galvanic cell, the platinum covered with oxygen bubbles being the positive *element*, and that covered with hydrogen bubbles the negative *element*. Exactly the same process of electrolysis or polarisation takes place when we pass currents through the tissues of the body by means of metallic electrodes.

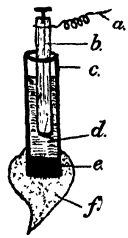


Fig. 75. Diagram of non-polarisable electrode.
a, covered wire; *b*, amalgamated zinc rod; *c*, glass tube; *d*, saturated $ZnSO_4$ solution; *e*, plug of zinc sulphate clay; *f*, plug of normal saline clay.

Hence before we can study accurately the delicate electrical changes that may occur normally in living tissues, it is necessary to have some form of electrodes in which this polarisation will not occur. The 'non-polarisable' electrodes which are most generally used for this purpose are made in the following way. A glass tube (Fig. 75) is closed at one end with a plug of kaolin made into a paste with a saturated solution of zinc sulphate. The rest of the tube is filled with a similar solution. Dipping into the zinc sulphate solution is a rod of pure zinc, amalgamated. Just before use, a plug of china clay made with normal saline solution is put on the end of the tube, so as to effect a connection between the zinc sulphate clay and the nerve or muscle which it is desired to stimulate or lead off. In these electrodes there is no contact of metals with fluids that can produce dissimilar ions (*e.g.* hydrogen or oxygen) at the surface of contact, and hence they may be regarded as practically non-polarisable. A more convenient form is that employed by Burdon Sanderson, in which the glass tube is bent into a U (Fig. 76). The mouth of the tube is closed by a smaller glass tube plugged with clay, and bearing a plug of normal saline clay.

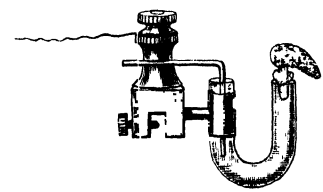


Fig 76 U-shaped non-polarisable electrodes.

In such electrodes the conduction of the current through the nerve or muscle to the metallic part of the circuit may be represented as shown on the opposite page (*see* Fig. 77).

If a muscle such as the sartorius be removed from the body, and two non-polarisable electrodes connected with a delicate galvanometer be applied to two points of its surface, there will be a deflection of the mirror attached to the galvanometer, showing the presence of a current in the muscle from

the ends to the middle, and in the external circuit from the middle (or equator) to the ends. It was formerly thought that this current was always present in all normal muscles, and it was spoken of as the ' natural muscle current ' ; the muscle was said to be made up of a series of electromotive molecules, the equator of each molecule being positive to the two poles (du Bois Raymond). It has been conclusively shown however (by Hermann and others) that this

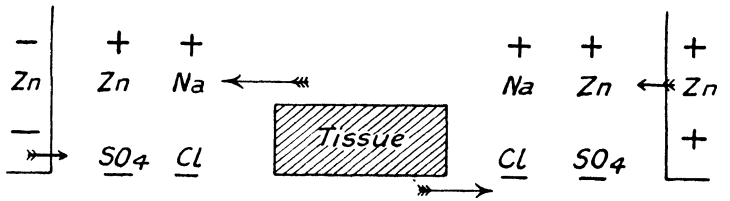


Fig. 77.

current of resting muscle is not a natural current at all, but is due to the effects of injury in making the preparation. The less the preparation is injured, the smaller is the current to be obtained from it, and in some contractile tissues, such as the heart, there may be absolutely no current during quiescence.

Hermann describes the fact of the existence of currents of rest thus ; " In partially injured muscles every point of the injured part is negative towards the points of the uninjured surface." Fig 78 shows the direction of the current in a muscle with two cut ends. When the whole muscle is quite dead, this current of rest, or ' demarcation current ' (Hermann), disappears The current is due to the electrical differences at the junction of living and dying (not *dead*) tissue If the sartorius of the frog be cut out and immersed for twenty-four hours in 0·6 per cent NaCl solution made with tap water (*i.e.* containing lime), all the injured fibres die, and the uninjured fibres are then found to be iso-electric and therefore currentless.

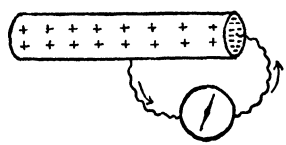


Fig. 78. Current of rest.

The existence of this current may be demonstrated without using a galvanometer If the nerve of a sensitive muscle-nerve preparation *a*, (Fig. 79) be allowed to fall on an excised muscle *b*, so that two points of the nerve are in contact with the cut end and with the surface of the second muscle *b*, the muscle *a* will contract each time the nerve touches *b* so as to complete the circuit.

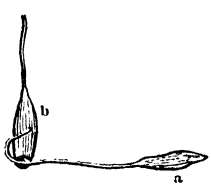


Fig. 79.
Rheoscopic frog.

Whatever be the explanation of this current of resting muscle, there is no doubt that a very definite electrical change occurs in a muscle when it contracts To show this change, we may lead off two points, one on the cut end and one on the surface of the muscle of a muscle-nerve preparation, to a galvanometer. We shall then obtain a deflection of the mirror of

the magnet, due to the current of rest or demarcation current. If now the nerve be stimulated with an interrupted current so as to throw the muscle into a tetanus, the ray of light from the galvanometer mirror swings back towards the zero of the scale, showing that the current which was present before is diminished. When the excitation of the nerve is discontinued, the galvanometer indicates once more the original current of rest. This diminution of the current of rest during activity of a muscle is spoken of as the '*negative variation*.'

In carrying out this experiment it is usual to compensate the demarcation current by sending in a small fraction of the current from a constant cell. The arrangement of the apparatus is represented in the accompanying diagram. Two non-polarisable

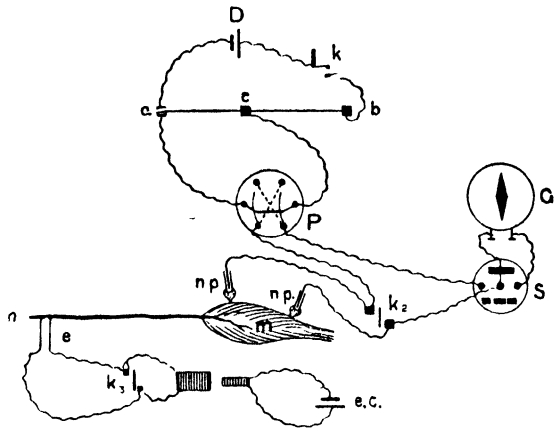


FIG. 80.

electrodes *np* are applied to the surface and cross-section of a muscle *m*. These are connected with the shunt of the galvanometer, one of the wires however being connected with a Pohl's reverser P, and this in its turn with the shunts. The two end-terminals of the reverser are connected with a rheochord, through the wire of which *ab* a constant current is passing from the Daniell cell D. By means of the rider *c* the fraction of current passing through the reverser can be modified to any extent. The key *k* being open, the muscle is connected with the shunt and galvanometer, and the direction and extent of the swing noticed. The key *k* is then closed, and by means of the reverser the current is sent through the galvanometer in the *opposite* direction to the demarcation current, and the rider *c* shifted until the two currents exactly balance one another, and the needle of the galvanometer returns to zero of the scale. This adjustment is first made, using only $\frac{1}{1000}$ of the total current, and then by means of the shunt, $\frac{1}{100}$, $\frac{1}{10}$, and finally the whole current is thrown into the galvanometer. If this precaution be not taken, much too large a current may in the first case be sent through the galvanometer, to the detriment of the instrument. If we know the difference of potential between the two ends of the wire, the proportion $\frac{ac}{ab}$ will give us the E.M.F. of the demarcation current. The galvanometer needle having by compensation been brought to zero, stimulation of the nerve at *e* by interrupted currents causes the needle to swing at once in the opposite direction to the first variation. This swing is the measure of the negative variation or current of action.

In order to study the electrical changes accompanying a single muscle twitch, it is necessary to employ some instrument which can react much more rapidly than the

ordinary galvanometer. For this purpose we may employ either the capillary electrometer or the string galvanometer of Einthoven.

The *capillary electrometer* is an instrument for recording and measuring difference of potential. That is to say, if connected with two points, it measures the force which would make a current flow between these two points if they were connected by a wire. Its structure is very simple. It consists of a glass tube drawn out to a fine capillary point. This tube with the capillary is filled with mercury. The point dips into a wide tube containing dilute sulphuric acid, at the bottom of which is a little mercury. Two platinum wires fused into the glass and dipping into the mercury serve as terminals. When the instrument is used, the meniscus of the mercury in the capillary at its junction with the acid is observed under the microscope, or a magnified image of it is thrown on a screen with the aid of the electric light. If now the capillary and acid be connected with two points, it will be observed that any difference in the potential of these two points causes a movement of the meniscus. If the point connected to acid be negative as compared with the point connected to mercury in capillary, the meniscus moves towards the point of the capillary. If the acid be positive as compared with the capillary, the meniscus moves away from the point. The extent of the excursion is proportional to the difference of potential. Since the capillary electrometer appears to have no latent period, and is free from instrumental vibrations, it is extremely useful in recording the quick changes in potential occurring in the diphasic electrical changes that accompany every contraction-wave in the body. The excursions lend themselves well to photography, so that we may obtain a graphic record of every electrical variation, and thus determine its extent and its time-relations.

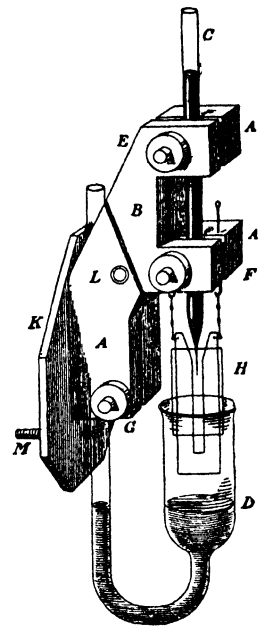


FIG. 81.
Capillary electrometer. (BURCH)

It must be remembered that this instrument is an electrometer (measurer of difference of potential), and not a galvanometer (current measurer). When the electrometer is connected with two points at different potential, current passes into it for a fraction

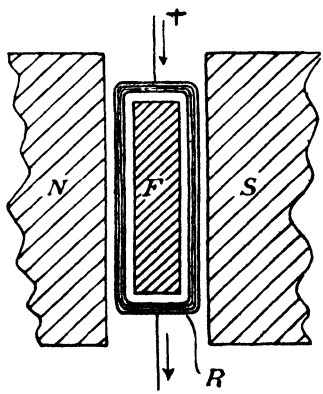


FIG. 82.

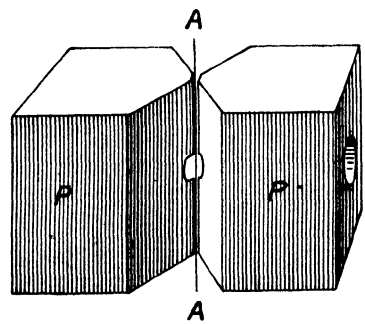


FIG. 83.

of a second, and polarises the surface of the mercury, so that it takes up a new position in the capillary. This polarisation causes an electromotive force which exactly balances the E.M.F., setting up the polarisation so that no current passes the surface. Hence the use of non-polarisable electrodes is not so essential in experiments with this instrument as when we make use of the galvanometer.

In the *D'Arsonval galvanometer* (Fig. 82) the current is sent through a coil of fine wire hung between the poles of a permanent magnet. The same principle is made use of in the string galvanometer of Einthoven (Fig. 83). In this a very delicate thread of silvered quartz or of platinum is stretched between the poles of a strong magnet. The poles of the magnet are pierced by holes so that the thread may be illumined by an electric light from one side, and from the other may be observed by means of a microscope; or a magnified image of the thread may be thrown upon a screen. Whenever a current passes through the thread it moves laterally, and the lateral movement may be photographed on a moving photographic screen. Owing to the minute dimensions of the thread the instrument is one of extreme delicacy. It will detect very minute currents and will respond accurately to very rapid changes in potential.

If a perfectly uninjured regular muscle (Fig. 84), such as the sartorius be stimulated with a single induction shock at one end, x, and two points, a and b, be led off to a capillary electrometer, each stimulus applied at x gives rise to an excursion of the meniscus of the electrometer, known as a' spike,' and shown in Fig. 85. Knowing the constants of the instrument used, we can analyse this spike, and we find that it represents a diphasic change.

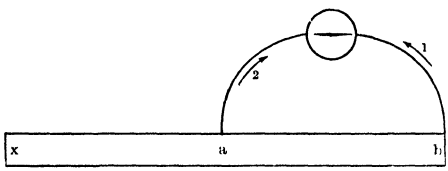


FIG. 84. Diagram showing diphasic variation of uninjured muscle.

Our study of the mechanical changes in muscle has shown that, when the muscle is stimulated at x, a contraction wave commences which travels down the muscle through a and b. The electrical investigation of the muscle shows that excitation of x arouses an electrical change which also passes down the muscle at the same rate as the mechanical change which it precedes. If we are leading off from x and a, the electrical change ensues immediately upon stimulus, *i.e.* there is no latent period to the electrical change. On leading off from a and b there is a latent period between the stimulus and the first change, representing the time taken for the change to travel

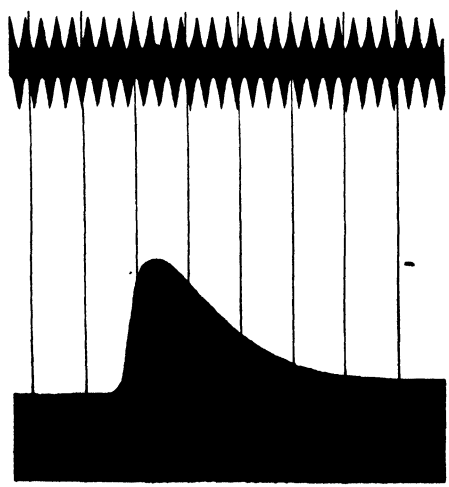


FIG. 85. A typical electrometer record from a sartorius muscle excited by a single induction shock. Time-marking=200 D.V. (KEITH LUCAS)

from x to a. When the change reaches a this becomes the seat of an electromotive force of such a direction that the current would pass in the outer circuit from b to a. We may say therefore that a is negative to b. A fraction of a second later the excitatory change has passed on to b and has died away at a. Now b is negative to a,* and the current therefore passes in the opposite direction. Between a and b therefore, there is a diphasic current, the first phase representing negativity of a to b, and the second phase

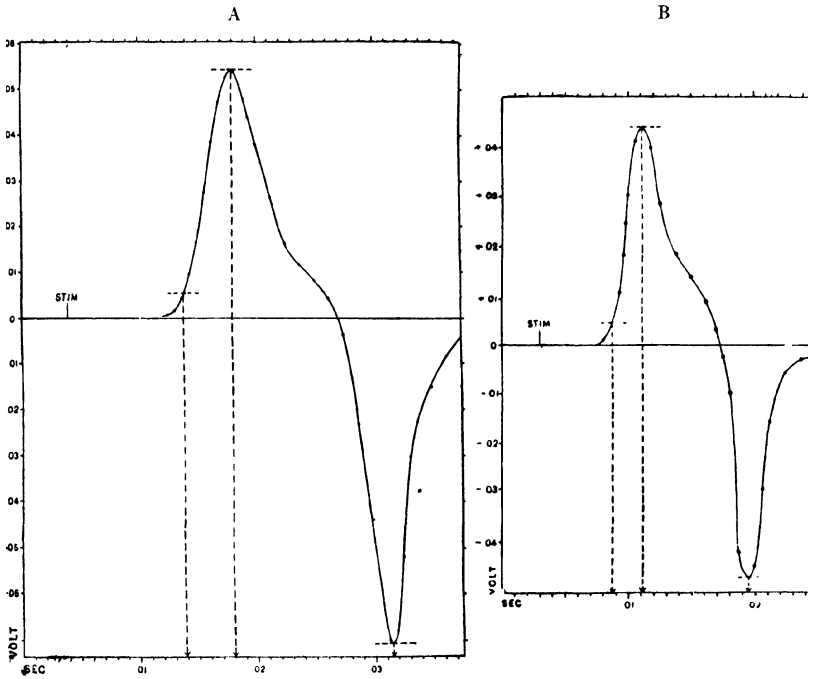


FIG. 86. Diphasic response of uninjured sartorius (obtained by analysis of curves such as Fig. 85). A, at 8°C.; B, at 18°C. (KEITH LUCAS.)

representing negativity of b to a. A diphasic change is thus also a sign of a propagated change. Every excitation of a normal muscle gives rise to a

* The statement that the excited portion of the muscle becomes 'negative,' though sanctioned by long usage, is not very exact and may give rise to misconception. When we lead off the terminals of a copper-zinc couple or cell to a galvanometer, a current flows outside the cell from copper to zinc and inside the cell from zinc to copper. In this case the zinc is said to be electropositive to the copper, and in the same way we must assume that the excited portion of a muscle is *electropositive* to the unexcited portions. When therefore we speak of any part of a tissue being negative, we are using a conventional expression to indicate the direction of the current in the outer circuit, and not the electrical condition of the tissue itself. In order to avoid the confusion which might result from an attempt to replace the loose expression 'negative' by the more correct expression 'electropositive,' Waller has suggested the employment of the term 'zincative' to indicate the electrical condition accompanying excitation. This term would also serve to emphasise the fact that the excited portion, like the zinc in a zinc-copper cell, is the chief seat of chemical change.

diphasic variation of such a direction that the point stimulated first becomes negative to all other points of the muscle, and this 'negativity,' to use a loose but convenient expression, passes as a wave down the muscle, preceding the wave of contraction and travelling at the same rate.

If one leading-off point be injured, *e.g.* at *b*, the change accompanying excitation is absent at that point. A single stimulus applied at *x* will in this case give only a monophasic variation in which *a* is relatively negative to *b*.

When we study the time relation of the electrical variation ensuing on a single stimulus, we find that the electrical change under the electrodes begins at the moment that the stimulus is applied. It takes about ·0025 sec. to attain its culminating point. At this point the mechanical change or contraction of the muscle begins. These time-relations vary with the temperature of the muscle. We have already seen that the effect of lowering the temperature is to increase that latent period of the contraction. In the same way it slows the rise of the electrical change and the rate of propagation of the wave of electrical change. This is shown in Fig. 86, in which are given the diphasic response of the sartorius first at 8°C. and secondly at 18°C. We are therefore justified in regarding the electrical change as an index to the chemical changes evoked in the muscle as the direct result of the stimulus. The flow of material, which is responsible for the change in form of each contracting unit, is secondary to these changes. As the result of stimulation, a chemical change is aroused at the point of excitation and travels thence along the muscle fibres at a rate of about three metres per second, *i.e.* the same rate as that of the following wave of mechanical change and, like this, varying with the temperature.

Under certain conditions an excitatory condition may be propagated without the presence of a visible contraction. Thus, if the middle third of the sartorius be soaked for a time in water, it passes into a condition known as 'water rigor,' in which it is incapable of contracting, although capable of transmitting an excitation from one end of the muscle to the other.

The connection of a diphasic current of action with an excited condition of the tissues passing as a wave from one end to the other is shown still more clearly on a slowly contracting tissue, such as the ventricle of the frog or tortoise. Fig. 87, A, is a photographic record of the variation obtained from the tortoise ventricle, which is led off to a capillary electrometer, one (acid) terminal being connected with the base of the ventricle, the other (mercury) with the apex. Each part of the ventricle remains contracted for a period of 1½ to 2 seconds, and then the contraction passes off, first at the base and later at the apex. The electrical events are an exact replica of the mechanical. Directly after the stimulus has been applied, the base becomes negative and the column of mercury moves up. A moment later the excitatory condition extends to the apex. There is thus a sudden equalisation of potential between the two terminals, and the mercury comes back quickly to the base line. Here it stays for 1½ to 2 seconds. During this time the whole heart is in an excited condition. Both base and apex are equally excited, and there

can be no difference of potential between them. The excitatory condition then passes off, first at the base and then at the apex. There is thus a small period of time in which the apex is still contracted or excited while the base is relaxed, and the apex is therefore negative to the base. This terminal negativity of the apex is shown on the photograph by the excursion of the column of mercury away from the point of the capillary. If one terminal, *e.g.* the apex, be injured, we obtain quite a different variation, which is shown in Fig. 87, B It is evident from this figure that the electrical sign lasts practi-

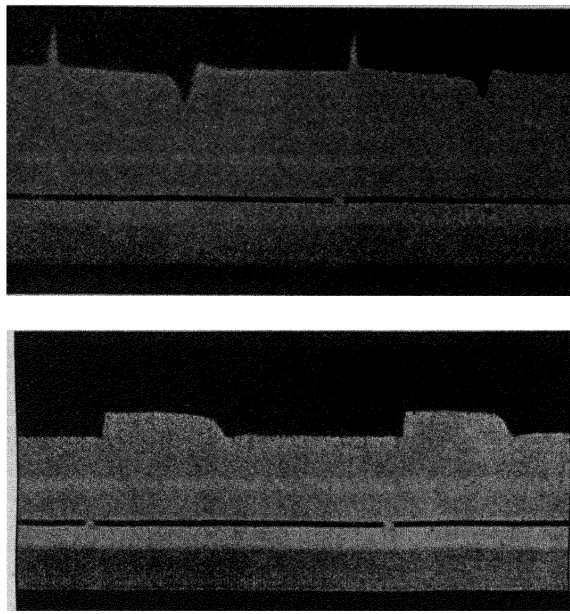


FIG. 87. Electrometer records of the electrical variations in a tortoise ventricle, excited to beat rhythmically by single shocks.
A, Ventricle uninjured. B, One leading spot injured. (B. SANDERSON.)

cally as long as the mechanical sign of the excited state, and that we are not justified in regarding the first spike of the diphasic variation as indicative of an excitatory wave attended by an electrical change which is independent of the succeeding mechanical change.

The only difference between the electrical changes in this case and in that of voluntary muscle is that in the latter all processes are very much quicker, so that as a rule the point *a* (Fig. 84) has ceased to be negative before the negativity of *b* has attained its full height, and there is thus no prolonged equipotential stage.

Although in the case of the slowly contracting ventricle of the tortoise, the record obtained of the electrical changes accompanying its contraction by means of the capillary electrometer shows with great clearness the diphasic nature of the variation, and therefore the wave character of the electrical change, considerable difficulty is experienced sometimes in recognising that the 'spike' record of the electrical change in voluntary

muscle or in nerve is also due to a diphasic variation. In this case the electrical change at any spot lasts only about $\frac{1}{200}$ second, and there is not a prolonged equipotential period, as in the case of the heart. The nature of the variation is however obvious, if we compare the electrometer record of an intact and therefore currentless muscle with that of a muscle in which one of the leading-off points has been injured, so as to give rise to a demarcation current. The two curves are given in Fig. 88, the upper shadowy tracing being that obtained from the injured muscle. It will be seen that the distinguishing character of an electrometer record of a diphasic variation in the rapidly contracting striated muscle consists in the fact that the down-stroke of the image of the meniscus is as rapid as the upstroke, whereas the monophasic variation of the injured muscle presents a slow fall produced by the gradual leakage of the charge imparted to the instrument back through the electrodes and muscle

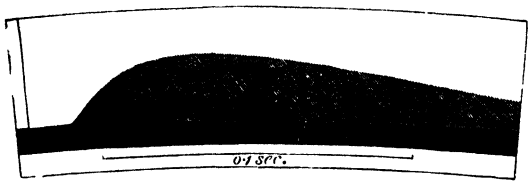


FIG. 88. Superimposed photographs of the electrical variation of the sartorius in response to a single stimulus. (BURDON SANDERSON.)

When such a record is analysed, we obtain a curve similar to those in Fig. 89, which represent monophasic variations of a sartorius injured at one end, under different conditions of temperature. A similar curve to the diphasic variation can be obtained by putting in a current of similar E.M.F. from a battery, first in one direction for $\frac{1}{200}$ second, and then in a reverse direction for another $\frac{1}{200}$ second. It must be remembered that a diphasic variation does not mean that one part of a muscle changes from normal in one direction, and then swings back past the normal in another direction, but that a change in one direction at one electrode dies away and is succeeded by a similar change in the same direction, which also dies away, at the second electrode: that is to say, a diphasic variation implies the progression of a wave of electrical change between the leading-off points. Using a string galvanometer, which reacts much more rapidly, the diphasic nature of the variation is immediately apparent from the photographic record even with voluntary muscle, or nerve.

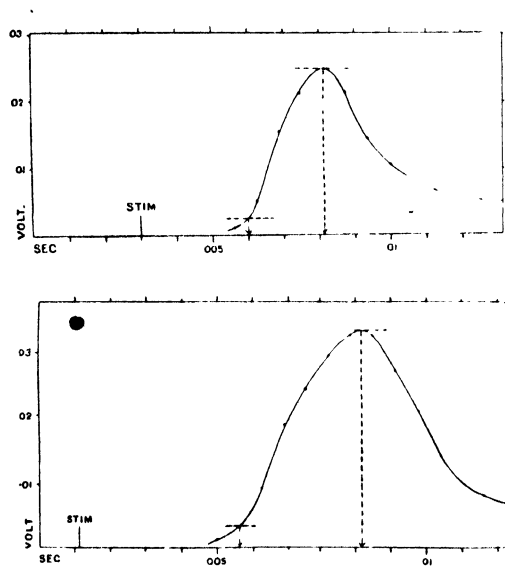


FIG. 89. Monophasic variations of an injured sartorius. A, at 18°C.; B, at 8°C. (KEITH LUCAS)

The electrical variation obtained by leading off a heart beating normally is a much more complex affair. The question will be discussed more fully in chapter xiii.

THE DEMARCATION CURRENT OR CURRENT OF INJURY

Muscle or nerve may become negative under two conditions: (1) During activity; (2) when dying as the result of injury. It is doubtful however whether these two conditions are really distinct. Section or injury of a muscle causes a prolonged stimulation of the adjacent parts of the muscle fibres. These parts therefore being excited, must be negative to the unexcited parts which are further away from the seat of injury so that a demarcation current is really an excitatory current. We thus come to the conclusion, paradoxical only in terms, that the so-called currents of rest are really currents of action and are due to excitation around the injured spot.*

SECONDARY CONTRACTION. RHEOSCOPIC FROG

The negative variation of one muscle may be used to make another contract.

If the nerve of the preparation *a* (in Fig. 90) be laid so as to touch at two points the cut end and surface of the muscle *b*, and the nerve of *b* then stimulated with single induction shocks, every contraction of *b* will be attended by a contraction of *a*, excited by the negative variation of the current passing through its nerve from the point touching the cut end to that in contact with the equator of *b*.

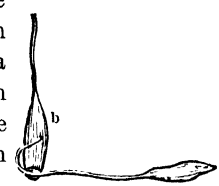


FIG. 90.
Rheoscopic frog.

If the nerve of *b* is tetanised, *a* as well as *b* enters into a continued contraction. This '*secondary tetanus*' is of interest as showing that, although the contractions of *b* are fused, the excitatory process and negative variations are still quite distinct.

* If the demarcation current is really due only to excitation, we should expect to find it weaker than the action current obtained by exciting the whole muscle to contract. And this is the case. The E.M.F. of the demarcation current of a sartorius equals about 0·05 of a Daniell cell. The action current of the same muscle may attain to an E.M.F. = 0·08 of a Daniell cell (Gotch).

SECTION VIII

THE INTIMATE NATURE OF MUSCULAR CONTRACTION

EXPERIMENTS on the metabolism of the body as a whole show that the energy of muscular work is derived from the oxidation of the food-stuffs. In man the performance of work involves an increase of the oxidative processes of the body with a corresponding evolution of energy, of which four-fifths will appear as heat while one-fifth may be transformed into mechanical work. In this respect the physiological mechanisms for the production of mechanical energy resemble the greater number of the machines employed by man for the same purpose. In nearly all these the prime source of energy is the oxidation of carbon and hydrogen in the form of coal or oil. In the steam-engine and internal-combustion engine the whole energy set free by the process of oxidation appears first as heat, and then a certain portion of the heat is converted into mechanical work. There is a limit to the efficiency of such heat engines, depending on the maximum differences of temperature available between the two sides of the working part of the machine. The efficiency of any heat engine is expressed by the formula $E = \frac{T - T^1}{T}$, where T is the highest temperature (in absolute measurement) obtained by the working substance and T^1 is the lowest temperature of the same substance. Ordinary engines rarely attain more than half this ideal efficiency, but it is evident that the greater the difference of temperature available the greater will be the efficiency of the machine. Internal-combustion engines, such as the gas engine or the oil-engine, therefore give a greater percentage of the total energy of the fuel out as mechanical energy than is the case with the steam-engine.

Engelmann has maintained that in muscle there is a similar transformation of heat into mechanical energy. He has found that non-living substances, which contain doubly refractive particles and possess the property of imbibition (*e.g.* catgut) when soaked with water, will contract on heating and relax again on cooling. He has constructed a model in which a thread of catgut in water, surrounded by a platinum coil, can be made to simulate muscular contractions and relaxations by passing a heating current through the platinum coil. He imagined that the chemical changes in the muscle liberate heat and that the effect of this heat upon the doubly refractive particles is to make them imbibe the surrounding water so that they change

from an oval to a spherical shape. It would be impossible however for any large changes of temperature to take place in the muscle without entirely destroying its chemical character, and with small differences of temperature it would be impossible to attain the efficiency of 50 to 100 per cent. which characterises muscle.

Under certain conditions we may obtain by a machine almost the entire energy of a chemical change. The condition is that the chemical change shall be susceptible of taking place in a galvanic battery. We may use, for instance, a series of Daniell cells to drive an electric motor and allow the motor to perform mechanical work. Under these circumstances we could theoretically obtain 100 per cent. of the total chemical energy available, and in conditions of practice the efficiency of the machine may attain to 70 or 80 per cent. A similar arrangement might be present in the ultimate contracting elements of the muscle fibre. The mechanism in the fibre must be one which will provide for a more or less direct transformation of chemical energy into mechanical energy without a previous conversion of the chemical into heat energy. In the living body, where everything is in solution, all the energies may be reduced to one of two kinds, osmotic energy and surface energy. The contractile machine must therefore be one which employs one or other, or both, of these forms of energy. We might with Macdougall, regard the contractile element as a cylindrical structure differing in its contents from the surrounding sarcoplasm. When the muscle is at rest the contents of the muscle prism will be in equilibrium with the surrounding sarcoplasm. We might imagine the excitatory process to consist in a sudden chemical change occurring in the contents of the muscle prism. The production of a number of new molecules within the muscle prism (*e.g.* of lactic acid) would raise the osmotic pressure within the prism and occasion a rapid flow of water from the sarcoplasm. As a result the pressure in the muscle prism would rise and cause a bulging of its lateral wall and a shortening of the whole element. The subsequent phase of relaxation may be due either to a secondary change, *e.g.* oxidation, leading to the formation of a substance to which the walls of the prism are freely permeable, or to the gradual leak of the primary products of oxidation or disintegration into the sarcoplasm. The substance or substances giving rise to the osmotic differences which determine contraction may be either products such as lactic acid and carbon dioxide, which are formed during contraction, or may possibly be of the nature of neutral salts set free from some condition of combination with the proteins of the sarcous element. Macdonald has brought forward micro-chemical evidence of the appearance of potassium salts in the sarcous element during the state of activity of the muscle.

On the other hand, Bernstein has suggested that the changes during muscular contraction are determined by alterations in surface tension. If a little mercury be spilt on a plate the particles form globules. They are kept from spreading themselves out in a thin film under the influence of gravity in consequence of the surface tension of the mercury. Any modification of the surface will alter the tension, and therefore state of expansion, of

the globule. Thus, if the globule be in sulphuric acid it undergoes a certain amount of polarisation, and becomes positively charged. By altering the charge of such a globule we can change its shape, as is shown diagrammatically in Fig. 91. If B represents the shape of the globule lying on the plate in some weak sulphuric acid, A will represent the shape of the globule when it is connected with the negative pole of a battery, while C will represent its shape when it is connected with the positive pole of a battery, the other pole in each case being connected with the acid. If we consider muscle as made up of a series of chains of oval particles, a chemical change in the surface of these particles, causing an increase of surface tension, will tend to make them assume the globular shape, and will therefore cause a shortening and thickening of the whole fibre.

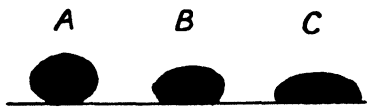


FIG. 91.

According to Schäfer, contraction is associated with a flow of the outer hyaline contents of the sarcous element into the tubular structure forming the middle portion Such a flow may be determined either by osmotic differences between the centre and periphery of the sarcous element, or by a change in the surface tension obtaining between the isotropic fluid at the ends and the anisotropic structures in the centre of the muscle prism.

The tendency of recent investigation is all in favour of the second hypothesis, namely, that the essential factor in the processes of excitation and contraction is an alteration of surface. In the first place the electrical changes accompanying the excitatory process denote a polarisation or accumulation of ions on the surfaces situated in the excited area. The chemical change which is responsible for the current of action, or the negative charge at the excited spot, takes place almost instantaneously and disappears somewhat more slowly. It would seem that the excitatory process consists essentially in the setting free of certain ions on the surface or surfaces in the contractile tissue, and that the passing away of the excitatory state is due to the disappearance of these ions, either by diffusion away into the surrounding fluid or by further chemical changes, such as oxidation. A study of the development of tension and of heat production in a muscle on excitation has shown that in both cases the yield of energy on excitation is increased by lengthening and diminished by shortening the muscle. Now alteration in length of the muscle will not alter its volume, but will alter the extent of its longitudinal surfaces, and it appears therefore that the production of heat as well as of mechanical energy is not a volume, but a surface effect. Finally the work of A. V. Hill on the heat production in muscle seems to show that the rise of tension in a muscle on excitation is due to the liberation of chemical bodies, of which lactic acid is certainly one, in the neighbourhood of certain longitudinal surfaces or membranes, and that the presence of these bodies changes the tension at such surfaces and thereby the longitudinal tension of the fibre. The extent and intensity of the production of these bodies must depend on the area of the chemically

active surfaces and therefore on the length of the muscle fibres. The muscle reacts at the end of the excitatory stage, not by any active process of lengthening, but by neutralisation, or simply physical diffusion of the active chemical bodies away from the interfaces or membranes. Later on, lactic acid is removed or replaced by its previously unstable precursor under the influence of oxygen with the production of some carbon dioxide and a certain amount of heat. We have seen already that the efficiency of the initial chemical change in which lactic acid is set free may approximate 100 per cent.

It must be noted that, although the oxidative processes are responsible ultimately for all the energies of the higher animal, no oxidative change is involved in the production of lactic acid from *e.g.* glucose, nor is the presence of oxygen necessary for the contraction of muscle to take place. On the other hand, if we wish to obtain the maximum amount of work from a muscle, we must supply it richly with oxygen, the presence of which seems essential not to the contractile process but to the stage of recovery. In this stage a certain amount of heat is evolved, set free by the oxidation of the lactic acid, and we must assume that part of the energy so available is utilised for building up the precursor from which the lactic acid is derived. It is as if the process of oxidation furnished the energy for winding up a spring, whereas excitation removed a catch and allowed the spring to run down, setting free this energy for the performance of work or for conversion into heat*

For many years it was imagined, as a result of experiments by Heimann, Pfluger, and others, that the oxygen supplied to a muscle was built up with its other constituents, especially carbohydrates, into a complex 'inogen' molecule. On stimulation this molecule underwent an explosive rearrangement, the carbohydrate and oxygen parts of the molecule combining to form carbonic acid, another product of the decomposition being lactic acid. The careful experiments of Fletcher have shown however that in the absence of oxygen there is no evidence of the formation of carbonic acid during contraction, and therefore no reason to assume the presence of oxygen in the muscle in an intramolecular form. Everything points to oxygen being taken in and applied forthwith to the purposes of oxidation, so that the output of carbon dioxide and water keeps pace with the intake of oxygen

It is at present quite impossible to come to any conclusion as to the nature of the

* Peters has shown that, if a muscle be stimulated to exhaustion under anaerobic conditions, about 0·2 per cent. lactic acid is formed with the evolution of 9 calories per gramme of muscle substance. The production of 1 gm. of lactic acid is therefore accompanied by the evolution of 450 calories. According to A. V Hill the 'recovery heat production' in oxygen is of about the same order as the initial heat production, so that in the oxidative removal of 1 gm. of lactic acid there would also be an evolution of about 450 calories. The oxidation of 1 gm. of lactic acid produces 3700 calories, about eight times as much as the quantity observed. Hill considers this amount far too large to have escaped detection in his experiments, and therefore concludes that the lactic acid is not oxidised but replaced in its previous position under the influence and with the energy of the oxidation either: (*a*) of a small part of the lactic acid itself, or (*b*) some other body. He regards the latter alternative as the more probable, and concludes therefore that the lactic acid is part of the machine and not part of the fuel of the muscle.

precursor from which the lactic acid is derived. The immediate precursor cannot be glucose or glycogen since the heat evolved in the initial stage of contraction is two or three times as great as could be derived from the mere conversion of either of these substances into lactic acid. We must therefore conclude that the oxidation of lactic acid which goes on during the process of recovery is used to yield the energy necessary for building up the active molecules, which are the precursors of lactic acid and which have a higher potential energy than glucose itself, so that when it rapidly decomposes sufficient energy is set free to account for the observed heat production. Some such utilisation of the energy of oxidation of the lactic acid is indicated by the results of Parnas, who found that the heat evolved during this recovery process corresponded to only about one half the heat which would be evolved by the formation of the carbon dioxide output of the muscle during the same time as a result of the oxidation of lactic acid.

SECTION IX

VOLUNTARY CONTRACTION

THE whole of our analysis of the processes accompanying the contraction of a skeletal muscle has so far had reference merely to the contractions evoked by artificial stimuli, mainly electric. These contractions have either been the simple twitch, with a duration of about one-tenth of a second, evoked by a momentary stimulus, or the tetanus, a continued contraction composed of a number of single twitches, summated and fused together. Under normal circumstances the contraction of skeletal muscles is brought about either reflexly, or in response to some stimulus descending from the cerebral cortex, the so-called 'voluntary contraction.' These contractions may have a duration of almost any extent. The quickest contractions carried out by man have a duration of about 0·1 sec. Considerable effort and training are required to reduce a muscular movement to this degree, and nearly all contractions, even the rapid ones, last considerably over 0·1 sec. Since we have no certain means of producing contractions of any given length, except by means of repeated stimuli, it is natural that physiologists have regarded voluntary contractions as similar to the artificial tetanus, and as like this composed of fused single contractions, and have endeavoured to determine the number of contractions per second, *i.e.* the natural rhythm of the tetanus. If however every muscular contraction in the body is to be regarded as of the nature of a tetanus, effected by rapidly repeating stimuli sent down the motor nerve from the central nervous system, we must assume a similar discontinuity for the process underlying the normal tone of muscles, and for the continued contraction of unstriated muscles, *e.g.* of the arteries. Is this discontinuity of muscles really essential for the production of a prolonged contraction? So far as our present knowledge of the intimate nature of muscular contraction goes, it would seem quite possible that the continuous state of contraction is dependent on a continuous evolution of energy in the muscle. We have seen reason to regard the chemical processes in a contracting muscle as presenting two phases, namely, (1) the production of a substance which increases the osmotic pressure within the sarcous elements, or raises the surface tension of the ultimate contractile elements of the muscle, thus causing a shortening and thickening of those elements; and (2) the further change of this substance into one which can escape by diffusion, or into a substance with a low surface tension, so that now the muscle relaxes and can be stretched by any extending

force. If these two phases went on continuously, but the first phase kept ahead of the second one, a continuous state of contraction would be produced in the muscle. Since the contraction of the muscle occurs only in response to impulses from the central nervous system, we should have to imagine also a continuous stream, *e.g.* of negatively charged ions, descending the nerve and evoking an excitatory change in the muscle fibres as they impinge on the neuro-muscular junction. We have evidence that a state of excitation of a nerve, which is apparently continuous, may excite a correspondingly continuous state of excitation in the muscle attached. During the passage of a constant current through muscle there is a continuous contraction in

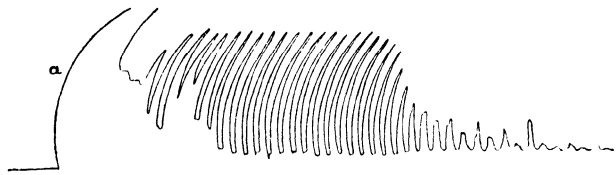


FIG. 92. Continued contraction followed by rhythmic contractions of a muscle in response to a constant stimulus. (BIEDERMANN.)

The muscle was excited by the passage of a constant current, the cathoda end having been moistened with a weak solution of NaCO3.

the neighbourhood of the cathode. If the irritability of the muscle at this point be increased by the application of a solution of sodium carbonate, Biedermann has shown that this excitation is propagated to the rest of the muscle, and on closure of the current we obtain a prolonged contraction followed by rhythmic contractions (Fig. 92). Moreover in frogs, the excitability of which has been heightened by keeping them at 2° to 3° C. for some days, the closure of a descending current through the sciatic nerve causes a prolonged contraction of the gastrocnemius; and in the same way there may be a prolonged contraction produced by the opening of an ascending current through the nerve.

The question however can only be decided by experiment. If a voluntary or reflex contraction is of the nature of a tetanus, we should be able, by a study of the mechanical and electrical phenomena combining the contraction, to obtain distinct evidence of this causation. It was shown by Wollaston that, on listening to a contracting muscle, a low sound was heard which, according to him, corresponded to a vibration frequency of 36 to 40 per second. The same observation was made by Helmholtz, and can be repeated by any one who will place the end of a stethoscope on a muscle, *e.g.* the biceps, and listen to the sound produced when it contracts. Helmholtz pointed out however that the tone heard corresponded to the resonance tone of the external ear, and was the same as that noted when listening to any irregular sound of low intensity. Thus the roar of London that we hear in the middle of Hyde Park has the same pitch as the muscle sound of the contracting biceps. The muscle sound therefore teaches us nothing as to the pitch or number of contractions per second making up the

voluntary tetanus. It merely points to an irregularity or discontinuity in this contraction. By bringing vibrating reeds of different frequency in contact with the contracting muscles of the frog, Helmholtz came to the conclusion that the chief element in the muscle sound was the first over-tone of a sound with a vibration frequency of 18 to 20 per second, which, according to him, was to be taken as representing the number of single contractions in every voluntary muscular contraction.

Nearly all voluntary contractions present a certain degree of irregularity, and the same irregularities are observed when a tetanic spasm in the muscle of the body is caused by strong excitation of the cerebral cortex, as in epilepsy. On taking a record of such contractions, Schäfer and Horsley showed that in nearly all cases the tracing presents superposed undulations repeated at the rate of eight to twelve per second. These observers concluded that this was the normal rate at which the impulses descend the nerve to arouse a voluntary contraction. One difficulty in this conclusion is that when human muscle is excited by eight to twelve stimuli per second, we obtain, not a tetanic contraction with a few irregularities superposed on it, but a series of single contractions, the so-called *clonus*. In order to produce a nearly continuous contraction we must employ a vibration frequency of about 30 per second. It has been suggested to get over this difficulty that under normal circumstances the discharge does not travel along all the nerve fibres at the same time, so that the different muscle fibres composing the muscle will be in different phases of contraction, and there will be never any large degree of relaxation between the individual contractions of the whole muscle. Von Kries has found that the duration of a muscle twitch may be lengthened by increasing the duration of the electrical change used to excite the nerve, and has suggested that the normal excitatory process may resemble the prolonged electrical change which can be produced electro-magnetically, rather than the short sudden shock represented by the induced current of an induction-coil. Attempts have been made to decide the question by recording the electrical changes accompanying the natural contractions of a muscle, *i.e.* those excited reflexly from the central nervous system It was long ago shown by Loven that a certain discontinuity could be seen in records of the electrical changes obtained from a frog's muscle in the tetanic spasms produced by an injection of strychnine, but according to Burdon Sanderson this discontinuity represents a series of spasms discharged from the central nervous system. Each discharge produces, not a twitch, but a continued contraction of short duration. On photographing the electrical changes of strychnine spasm as obtained by a capillary electrometer, he found that each individual spasm could be compared only to a short tetanus.

The most recent investigations of the question we owe to Piper, who made use of the string galvanometer, an instrument much more delicate in the reproduction of rapid changes than is the capillary electrometer. Piper led off two points in the fore-arm, one electrode being placed about two inches below the bend of the elbow, and the other about four inches above the wrist. A single stimulus of the median nerve was found by him to give a typical diphasic variation in the muscles. When the muscles were contracted voluntarily, well-marked oscillations of the galvanometer wire were obtained, indicating the existence in the muscle of forty-eight to fifty complete diphasic variations in the second (Fig. 93). Piper obtained similar records on leading off other muscles of the body when these were placed voluntarily in a state of contraction, and he concludes therefore that each voluntary contraction, short or long, is a tetanus composed of about fifty fused twitches per second. These results would indicate that

the impulse, which normally travels down the motor nerve from the anterior cornual cell to the muscle, is discontinuous, and therefore that on leading off a motor nerve to a galvanometer we ought to obtain electrical oscillations of fifty distinct stimuli per second. Dittler has investigated by means of the string galvanometer the electrical changes accompanying the ordinary contractions of the diaphragm, and also those occurring in the phrenic

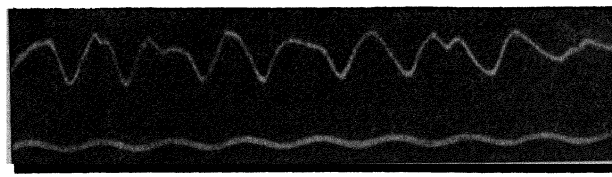


FIG. 93. Electrical variations produced by voluntary contractions of human muscle. (PIPER.)

nerve. He finds that both in the muscle and in the nerve there is evidence that each contraction is a fused series of single contractions, evoked by the discharge along the nerve of between fifty and seventy excitations per second. So far therefore the evidence is in favour of the view that voluntary contraction and, one must add, the tonic contractions of all skeletal muscles, are discontinuous in nature and analogous to the tetanus which we may evoke artificially by rapid stimulation either of muscle or of its motor nerve.

SECTION X

OTHER FORMS OF CONTRACTILE TISSUE

SMOOTH OR UNSTRIATED MUSCLE

THE little we know about the physiology of unstriated muscle is derived chiefly from experiments on the intestine, ureter, bladder, and retractor penis.* This tissue differs from voluntary muscle in containing numerous plexuses of nerve fibres (non-medullated) and ganglion cells, so that in all our researches it is difficult to be certain whether the results are due to the muscle fibres themselves, or to the nerves and nerve cells which are so intimately connected with them; especially as we have as yet no convenient drug like curare, by aid of which we might discriminate between action on muscle and action on nerve.

The differences between unstriated and voluntary muscle, although at first sight very pronounced, on further investigation prove to be in most cases differences of degree only, qualities and reactions which are marked in involuntary muscle being also present in a minor degree in the more highly differentiated tissue.

The contraction of smooth muscle is so sluggish that the various stages of latent period, shortening, and relaxation can be easily followed with the eye. The latent period may be from 0·2 to 0·8 second, and the contraction may last from three seconds to three minutes.

Smooth muscle preserves many of the properties of undifferentiated protoplasm, especially an automatic power of contraction, which is regulated by the condition of the muscle. Thus whereas the voluntary muscle is intimately dependent on its connection with the central nervous system, and in the absence of this is reduced to a flabby inert tissue, the smooth muscle, isolated from all its nervous connections, presents in many cases rhythmic contractions, and can carry out a peripheral adaptation to its environment. These rhythmic contractions are almost invariably observed if the muscular tissue be subjected to a certain amount of tension, after

* The *retractor penis*, which is found in the dog, cat, horse, hedgehog (but not in rabbit or man), is a thin band of longitudinally arranged unstriated muscle, which is inserted at the attachment of the prepuce, and is continued backwards in a sheath of connective tissue to the bulb, where it divides into two slips, which pass on either side of the anus. It is innervated from two sources, the *motor* fibres being derived from the lumbar sympathetic and running to the muscle in the internal pudic nerve, while the *inhibitory* fibres run in the pelvic visceral nerves (nervi erigentes) and are derived from the second and third sacral nerve-roots.

separation from the central nervous system. The rhythm of the contractions may vary from one (spleen) to twelve (small intestine) contractions in the minute.

The stimuli for smooth muscle are essentially the same as for striated. As we should expect however from the sluggish response of this kind of contractile tissue, the optimum rate of change of current which excites is very much slower than in the case of striated muscle. Thus in many instances a single induction shock, even if very strong, is powerless to excite contraction, and the make-induction shock of long duration and low intensity is always more efficacious than the short sharp break-induction current. A still better stimulus is the make or break of a constant current. When the latter form of stimulation is used, response occurs at the make sooner than at the break, and, just as in the voluntary muscle, the make excitation starts from the cathode and the break excitation from the anode.

An apparent exception to this statement is afforded by the behaviour of certain forms of involuntary muscle. In the intestine, in the skin of worms, and in many other muscular tubes the smooth muscle-fibres are arranged in two different sheets, one consisting of longitudinal, the other of circular fibres. If non-polarisable electrodes, connected with a constant source of current, be applied to the surface of the small intestine, when the current is made there will be apparently a strong contraction of the circular coat at the anode, which spreads up and down the intestine, and a linear contraction of the longitudinal coat at the cathode. The same result is observed in the earthworm and leech. But careful observation shows in each case that the irregularity is really only apparent, and that in the immediate neighbourhood of the anode there is relaxation of both coats, with a contraction of the circular coat on each side, and that at the cathode there is a contraction of both coats. The accompanying diagram (Fig. 94) will serve to show the condition of the circular coat at each electrode

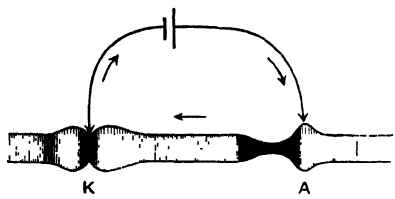


FIG. 94. At the cathode K there is a small line of constriction, surrounded by an area of relaxation. At the anode itself the muscle is relaxed, but is strongly contracted on each side of the anode, so that on rough observation it would be thought that contraction occurred at the anode itself.

As a matter of fact, in consequence of the arrangement of the fibres, we have in the neighbourhood of the anode a number of places (virtual cathodes) where the current is *leaving* the muscle-cells to enter inert conducting tissues, and in the same way there will be in the neighbourhood of the cathode a number of virtual anodes (Fig. 95). Thus if we take the ureter and lead a current through it while it is slung up in thread loops serving as electrodes, there is contraction of both coats at the cathode and relaxation of both at the anode. If however the ureter be packed in a pulp of blotting-paper

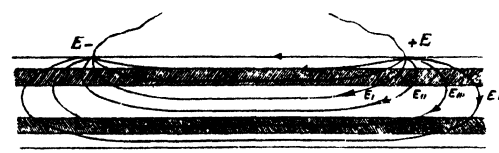


FIG. 95. Diagram to show the spread of current which occurs when a current is led through a tube such as the ureter by means of two electrodes applied to its surface. It will be noticed that while +E is the anode, there are immediately below and around it a number of cathodes, $E_{,}$, $E_{,,}$, $E_{,,,}$, $E_{,,,,}$ due to the current leaving the muscle to flow through indifferent tissues. (BIEDERMANN.)

moistened with normal saline, thus allowing the current to leave the contractile tissues anywhere along the ureter, we get the same aberrant results of stimulation as are obtained with the intestine.

In voluntary muscle, if one stimulus follows another at an interval which is not too large, a summated contraction is produced which is greater in amplitude than that due to a single stimulus. This summation may be mechanical or physiological, the former being observed when the stimulus is repeated during the decline of the excitatory process and being due simply to the after-loading of a muscle by the first contraction. It is best marked when the muscle is heavily loaded. If however the stimuli be sent in at sufficiently short intervals so that two stimuli fall within the period of rise of contractile stress, an increased height of contraction is obtained under all conditions, and under isometric conditions the tension developed is greater than that with a single stimulus. If the interval between two stimuli be so short that the second falls within what we have called the refractory period due to the first stimulus, no summation is obtained, the second stimulus being ineffective.

In the slow contraction of involuntary muscle we could hardly expect mechanical summation to come into play. Most types of this tissue show however the true summation, *i.e.* the increased liberation of energy due to repetition of the stimulus during the rise of the excitatory condition. As might be expected the refractory period is also longer in involuntary muscle, since all the processes of this muscle are slowed in comparison with those of voluntary muscle. In certain types of tissue, and especially in heart muscle, the refractory period lasts during the whole of the period of contraction. During this time therefore a second shock will be ineffective. As the contraction dies away the muscle fibre gradually recovers its susceptibility to stimulation, but it does not recover its full irritability until it has entirely relaxed. On this account it is impossible to obtain summation in or to tetanise heart muscle, the application of interrupted currents to this tissue producing only a series of rhythmic contractions.

In all involuntary muscle we may observe summation of the effects of stimuli even when the individual stimuli are insufficient to produce any excitation. Thus in a muscle such as the retractor penis, we may find a strength of induction shock which, applied singly, is just insufficient to evoke any response. If however the shocks are repeated at intervals of a second, it will be found that the first three or four stimuli are ineffective and then the muscle enters into a contraction which increases with each succeeding stimulus until it has attained its maximum. There is thus summation *before* any contraction has occurred, a *summation of stimuli*. Each stimulus, in fact, alters the state of the contractile tissue and makes it more ready to respond to the next stimulus, so that the stimuli become more and more effective. If time is allowed for the muscle to relax between successive stimuli, this summation is evidenced by a continually increasing height of contraction, the so-called 'staircase.' The same initial increase of

effect is observed when voluntary muscle is excited by continually recurring stimuli (*v.* Fig. 70, p. 209).

We shall meet with other examples of this summation of stimuli when dealing with the physiology of the central nervous system. It is indeed a fundamental phenomenon in the physiology of excitation.

CHEMICAL STIMULATION. Strong salt solution excites contractions just as in the case of skeletal muscle. Many drugs, such as physostigmine, ergot, salts of lead and barium, digitalis, may act directly on smooth muscle and cause contraction. As one would expect however from the greater independence of the smooth muscle, the action of these drugs varies from organ to organ, muscle-fibres, which apparently are histologically identical, reacting diversely according to their origin.

MECHANICAL STIMULATION. Smooth muscle may react to a local pinch or blow with a local or a general (propagated) contraction. The most important form of mechanical stimulation is that produced by tension. The effect of increasing the tension on smooth muscle may be twofold: causing in the first place relaxation and in the second excitation with increased contraction. These two effects may be illustrated by taking the case of the bladder. If this viscus (which is surrounded by a complete coat of smooth muscle) has all its connections with the central nervous system severed, it is when empty in a state of tonic contraction. If fluid be injected into it rapidly there is a great rise of pressure in its cavity, due to the forcible distension. If however the fluid be injected slowly, the bladder muscle relaxes to make room for it, so that a considerable amount of fluid may be accommodated in the bladder without any great rise of pressure. This process of relaxation has its limit. If the injection of fluid be continued, the walls begin to be stretched passively, and this increased tension acts as a stimulus causing marked rhythmic contractions of the whole bladder.

In the same way the response of a smooth muscle to an electrical stimulus is much increased by previous increase of the tension on the muscle fibres.

PROPAGATION OF THE EXCITATORY STATE, OR WAVE OF CONTRACTION. On stimulating any part of a voluntary muscle fibre, a wave of contraction is started which travels to each end of the fibre, but no further. There is no propagation from muscle fibre to muscle fibre, the synchronous contraction of the whole muscle being brought about by simultaneous excitation of all its fibres. It is doubtful whether this isolation of the excitatory state is found in smooth muscle. As a rule a stimulus applied to any part of a sheet of smooth fibres may travel all over the sheet just as if it were a single fibre. It seems probable indeed that there is protoplasmic continuity by means of fine bridge-like processes between adjacent muscle cells. And even in the absence of such bridges the propagation of the contraction could be easily accounted for. Although in the case of voluntary muscle the rule is isolated contraction, yet a very small change in the muscle, such as that produced by partial drying or by pressure, is sufficient to cause the contraction to spread from one fibre to another.

Indeed by clamping two curarised sartorius muscles together, as in the diagram (Fig. 96), it is found that stimulation of the muscle A causes contraction of the muscle B The current of action of A in this case has served to excite a contraction in B.

FIG. 96.

It must be remembered that in all unstriated muscle the fibres are surrounded by a network of non-medullated nerve fibres. Some physiologists are inclined to ascribe to these fibres an important part in the propagation of the contraction wave. In the case of the heart muscle however, it can be shown almost conclusively that the propagation takes place independently of nerve fibres, and probably the same is true for many kinds of involuntary muscle.

INFLUENCE OF TEMPERATURE. Smooth muscle is extremely susceptible to changes of temperature; as a rule warming causes relaxation, while application of cold causes a tonic contraction. The condition of the muscle at any given time depends not only on its actual temperature, but also on the rapidity with which this temperature has been reached. Thus a rapid cooling of the retractor penis muscle of a dog from 35° to 25° may cause a contraction as extensive as would be produced by a slow cooling to 5°C. On warming a muscle from 30° to 50°C. it lengthens gradually up to about 40°, and it may then undergo a marked heat contraction (varying in degree in different muscles) at about 50°C., which may pass off at a somewhat higher temperature. It is killed somewhere between 40° and 50°C. It seems very doubtful whether any true *rigor mortis* occurs in smooth muscle. The hard contracted appearance of the smooth muscle in a recently dead animal is chiefly conditioned by the fall of temperature. On excising the muscle and warming it up to body temperature it may again relax and show signs of irritability two or three days after the death of the animal. Different smooth muscles however vary very much in their tenacity of life.

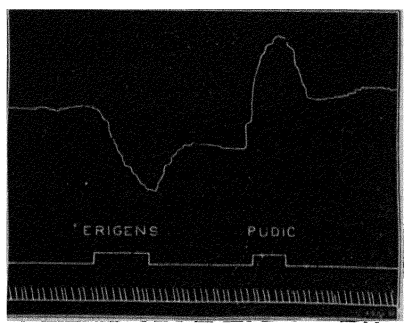


FIG. 97. Tracing from the *retractor penis* muscle of the dog, showing lengthening (inhibition) on stimulation of the nervus erigens, and a smart contraction on stimulating the pudic (motor) nerve. (Movements of muscle reduced ½.)

DOUBLE INNERVATION. Voluntary muscle is absolutely dependent for its activity on the central nervous system. Cut off from this it is flabby and motionless. Its sole function is to contract efficiently and smartly on receipt of impulses arriving along its nerve. It is only necessary therefore that these impulses should be of one character—motor, and we know that each fibre of a muscle, such as the sartorius, receives one efferent nerve fibre terminating in an end-plate.

In the case of smooth muscle we have a tissue which has an activity and reactive power of its own, and apart from its innervation may be at one time in a state of relaxation, at another in a state of tonic contraction.

In order that the central nervous system should have efficient control over such a tissue, it must be able to influence it in *two* directions: it must be able to induce a contraction or increase a contraction already present, and it must also be able to put an end to a spontaneous contraction, *i.e.* to induce relaxation. In order to carry out these two effects, smooth muscle receives nerve fibres of two kinds from the central nervous system, one kind motor, analogous to the motor nerves of skeletal muscle, the other kind *inhibitory*, causing relaxation or cessation of a previous contraction. All these fibres belong to the visceral or 'autonomic' system. They are connected with ganglion-cells in their course outside the central nervous system, and their ultimate ramifications in the muscle are always non-medullated. A typical tracing of the opposite effects of these two sets of nerves is given in Fig. 97.

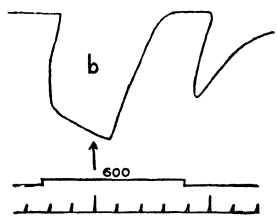


FIG. 98. Tracing of contraction of adductor muscle of claw of crayfish, showing inhibition resulting from stimulation of its nerve (at *b*) by means of a constant current. The break of the current causes a second smaller inhibition. (BIEDERMANN.)

In the invertebrata many 'voluntary' striated muscles probably possess a double innervation. Thus in the crayfish the adductor muscle of the claw consists of striated muscular fibres, every fibre of which is supplied with two kinds of nerve fibres. By exciting these fibres one may get, according to the conditions of the experiment, either contraction of a relaxed muscle or relaxation of a tonically contracted muscle (Fig. 98).

AMŒBOID MOVEMENT

Amœboid movement is seen in the unicellular organisms such as the amœba and in the white blood corpuscles. It can occur only within certain limits of temperature (about 0°C. to 40°); within these limits it is the more active the higher the temperature. At about 45° the cell goes into a condition resembling heat rigor.

The fluid in which the corpuscles are suspended is of great importance. Distilled water, almost all salts, acids and alkalies, if strong enough, stop the action and kill the cell.

The movements are also stopped by CO_2 or by absence of oxygen.

Artificial excitation, whether electrical, chemical, or thermal, causes universal contraction of the corpuscle, which therefore assumes the spherical form.

CILIARY MOVEMENT

Cilia are met with in man in nearly the whole of the respiratory passages and the cavities opening into them, in the generative organs, in the uterus and Fallopian tubes of the female, and the epididymis of the male, and on the ependyma of the central canal of the spinal cord and its continuation into the cerebral ventricles.

The cilia (Fig. 99) are delicate tapering filaments which project from the hyaline border of the epithelial cells. There are about twenty or thirty to each cell. The hyaline border is really made up of the enlarged basal portions of the cilia.

In action the cilia bend suddenly down into a hook or sickle form, and then return slowly to the erect position. This movement is repeated many (twelve to twenty) times a second, and thus serves to move forward mucus, dust, or an ovum, as the case may be. The movement seems to be entirely automatic, and it is quite unaffected by nerves, at any rate in all the higher animals.

There seems to be a functional connection between all the cells of a ciliated epithelial surface, so that movement of the cilia, started in one cell, spreads forward as a wave, just as, when the wind blows, waves of bending pass over a field of corn.

The conditions of ciliary action are the same as those for amœboid movement of naked cells.

The minuteness of the object has up to now prevented us from deciding whether the cilium is itself actively contractile, or whether it is simply passively moved by the action of the basal part situated in the hyaline border of the cell.

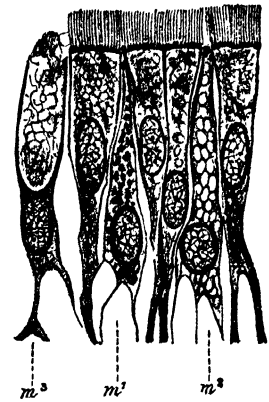


FIG. 99. Ciliated columnar epithelium from the trachea of a rabbit; m^1, m^2, m^3, mucus-secreting cells (SCHAFER.)

CHAPTER VI

NERVE FIBRES (CONDUCTING TISSUES)

SECTION I

THE STRUCTURE OF NERVE FIBRES

On stimulating the nerve of a nerve-muscle preparation at any part by electrical, thermal, or mechanical means, the stimulus is followed, after a very short interval, by a contraction of the muscle. This observation illustrates the two functions of nerve fibres, irritability and conductivity—that is to say, a suitable stimulus can set up changes in any part of the nerve, which are transmitted down the nerve without any visible effects occurring in it, and it is not until this nervous change has reached the muscle that a visible effect takes place in the shape of a contraction. In the animal body a direct excitation of the nerve fibre in its course never takes place under normal circumstances. The only function the nerve fibre has to perform is that of conducting impulses from the sense organs at the periphery to the central nervous system, and efferent impulses from this to the muscles and other of its servants. Hence it is absolutely essential that there should be vital continuity along the whole length of the fibre. Damage to any part, such as by crushing, heat, or any other injurious condition, infallibly causes a block to the passage of an impulse.

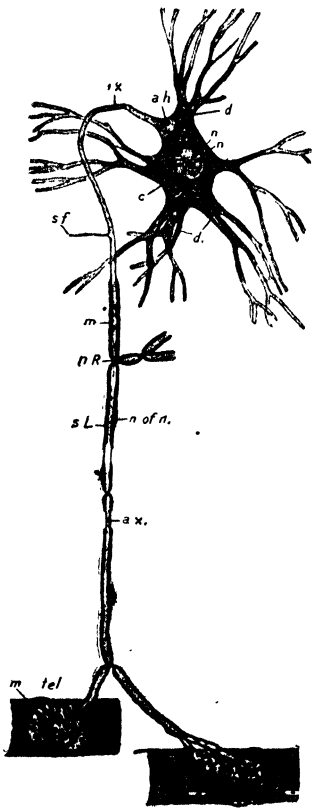


Fig. 100. Diagram of a motor nerve-cell with its nerve-fibre. (After Barker.)
a.h, axon hillock; *d*, dendrites; *a.x.* axis cylinder; *m*, medullary sheath; *n.R.* node of Ranvier.

A nerve fibre is essentially a long process or arm of a nerve-cell (Fig. 100). The cell may either be situated on the surface of the body or, as in most cases in the higher animals, may be withdrawn from the surface into a special collection of cells such as the posterior root ganglion, or may be one of the mass of cells and

interlacing processes making up a central nervous system. All nerves are alike in possessing as their conducting part the continuous strand of protoplasm produced from the nerve-cell and known as the axon or axis cylinder. By special methods the axon may be shown to be made up of fibrillæ or neuro-fibrils, embedded in a more fluid material (Fig. 101). These neuro-fibrils are supposed to be continuous throughout the cell and the axis

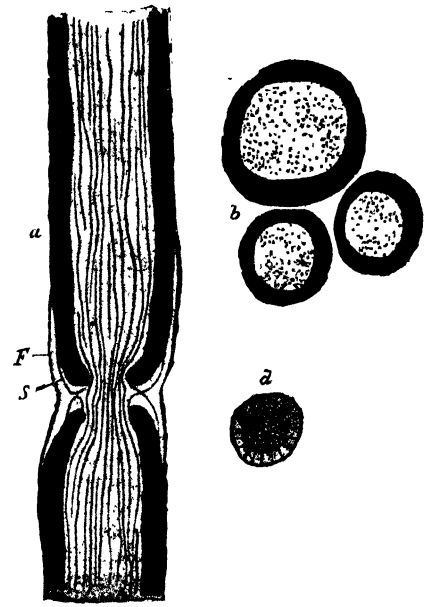


FIG. 101. Medullated nerve fibres, showing continuity of the neuro-fibrils across the node of Ranvier. (BETHE.)
a, longitudinal; *b*, transverse section.

cylinder and to represent the essential conducting constituents of the nerve. In the course of growth the nerves develop certain histological differences, which appear to bear some relation to the nature of the processes they conduct or to the character of their parent cell. Thus all the fibres which are given off from and which enter the central nervous system, *i.e.* the brain and spinal cord, belong to the class known as medullated. In this type the conducting core or axis cylinder is surrounded with a layer of apparently insulating material known as myelin, forming the medullary sheath, or the sheath of Schwann. This sheath consists of a fatty material composed largely of lecithin, and staining black with osmic acid, supported in the interstices of a network formed of a horny substance known as neurokeratin. The medullary sheath is surrounded by a structureless membrane, the primitive sheath or neurilemma. At regular intervals a break occurs in the medullary sheath, the neurilemma coming in close contact with the axis cylinder. This break is the node of Ranvier, the intervening portions of medullated nerve being the internodes. In each internode, lying closely under the neurilemma, is an oval nucleus embedded in a little granular protoplasm. The medullated nerve fibres vary considerably in diameter, the largest fibres being distributed to the muscles and skin, the smallest carrying impulses from the central nervous system to the viscera. The latter all come to an end in some collection of ganglion-cells of the sympathetic chain or peripheral ganglia, the impulses being carried on to their destination by a fresh relay of non-medullated nerve fibres.

The non-medullated fibres (Fig. 102) differ from the medullated simply in the absence of a medullary sheath. They possess, in many cases at any rate, a primitive sheath, under which we find nuclei lying closely on the side of the fibre and bulging out the sheath. In their ultimate ramifications they tend to form close networks or plexuses and appear to lose the last traces of a sheath.

The medullated nerves are bound together by connective tissue (endoneurium) into small bundles, which are again united by tougher connective tissue into larger nerve-trunks. These fibres as a rule branch only when in close proximity to their destination, and then the branching always occurs at a node of Ranvier.

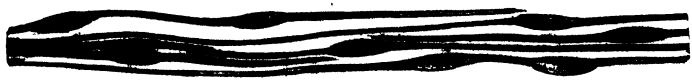


FIG. 102. Non-medullated nerve fibres. (SCHÄFER.)

As to the functions of the myelin sheath in the medullated nerve fibre very little is known. It does not make its appearance until the axis cylinder is formed, and is apparently derived from a series of cells which grow out from the spongioblasts of the central nervous system and form a chain surrounding the out-growing axons. In the regeneration of a nerve fibre after section the myelin sheath appears later than the axon in the peripheral part of the nerve. It has been supposed by some to act as a sort of insulator ensuring isolated conduction within any given nerve fibre. We have however no proof that equally isolated conduction is not possible in the non-medullated fibres of the visceral system, although it is certainly true that a finer ordering of movements is required in the skeletal muscles than in the visceral unstriated muscles. Moreover in the central nervous system the main tracts cannot be shown to be functional before the date at which they acquire their medullary sheaths, suggesting that previously any impulse making its way along the tract underwent dissipation before arriving at its destination. It is possible too that the myelin sheath may serve as a source of nutrition to the enclosed axis cylinder which, in the greater part of its course, is far removed from its trophic centre, namely the cell of which it is an outgrowth. This trophic function of the myelin sheath has a certain basis of fact in that the myelin sheath is as a rule larger in those fibres which take the longer course.

SECTION II

PROPAGATION ALONG NERVE FIBRES

THE velocity of propagation along a nerve fibre may be measured, although in early times it was thought to be as instantaneous as the lightning flash. To measure the velocity of propagation in a motor nerve, a frog's gastrocnemius is prepared, with a long piece of sciatic nerve attached. The muscle is arranged (Fig. 103) so that its contraction may be recorded on a rapidly moving surface, on which are also recorded, by means of electro-magnetic

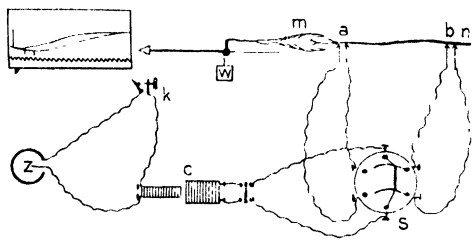


FIG. 103. Diagram of arrangement of experiment for the determination of the velocity of transmission of a motor impulse down a nerve.

The battery current passes through the primary coil of the inductorium c, and a 'kick over' key *k*. By means of the switch *s*, the break shock in the secondary circuit can be sent through the nerve *n*, either at *b* or at *a*. The muscle *m* is arranged to write on the blackened surface of a trigger or pendulum myograph, and is excited during the passage of the recording surface by the automatic opening of the key *k*. (The time-marker is not shown.)

signals, the moment at which the stimulus is sent into the nerve, and also a time-marking showing $\frac{1}{250}$ sec. Tracings are now taken of the contraction of the muscle : first, when the nerve is stimulated at its extreme upper end ; secondly, as close as possible to the muscle. It will be found that the latent period, which elapses between the point at which the stimulus is sent into the nerve and the point at which the lever begins to rise, is rather longer in the first case than in the second. The difference in the two latent periods gives the time that the nervous impulse has taken to travel down the length of nerve between the two stimulated points. Calculated in this way, the velocity of propagation in frog's nerve is about 28 metres per second.

In man and in warm-blooded animals the velocity has been variously estimated at from 60 to 120 metres per second. The higher of these figures is probably nearer the truth.

On the other hand, in invertebrata the velocity of propagation along nerve fibres may be quite slow. The following Table represents the velocity of transmission along a number of different fibres, as determined by Carlson, compared with the duration of a single muscle twitch in the same animal.

Species	Muscle		Nerve	
	Muscle	Contraction time in seconds	Nerve	Rate of the impulse in metres per second
Frog	Gastrocnemius	0·10	Sciatic (medullated)	27·00
Snake	Hyoglossus	0·15	Hyoglossal (medullated)	14·004
Lobster (Homarus)	Adductor of forceps	0·25	Ambulacral (non-medullated)	12·00
Hagfish	Retractor of jaw	0·18	Mandibular (non-medullated)	4·50
Limulus	Adductor of forceps	1·00	Ambulacral (non-medullated)	3·25
Octopus	Mantle	0·50	Pallial (non-medullated)	2·00
Slug (Limax)	Foot	4·00	Pedal (non-medullated)	1·25
Limulus	Heart	2.25	Nerve plexus in heart (non-medullated)	0.40

The velocity of propagation in sensory nerves is more difficult to determine owing to the fact that a sensory impulse, on arrival at the receiving organ—*i.e.* some part of the central nervous system—does not at once give rise to some definite recordable mechanical change, such as a muscular contraction. There is another method of determining the velocity of conduction, which may be used also with sensory fibres. The passage of a nerve-impulse down a nerve, just as the passage of a wave of contraction along a muscle fibre, is immediately preceded or accompanied by an electrical change, which also travels along the nerve as a wave of 'negativity.' The velocity of propagation of this wave may be measured, and is found to give the same numbers as the velocity determined by the preceding method.

The existence of this electrical change enables us to show that a nerve-impulse, excited at any point in the course of a nerve fibre, travels *in both directions* along the fibre. The power of nerves to transmit impulses in either direction is shown further by the experiment known as Kühne's gracilis experiment. The gracilis muscle of the frog is separated into two portions by a tendinous intersection, so that there is no muscular continuity between the two halves. The nerve to the muscle divides into two branches, one to each half, and at the point of junction *there is division of the axis cylinders themselves.* If the section *a* in the diagram (Fig. 104), which is quite isolated from the rest of the muscle, be stimulated, as by snipping it with scissors,

the whole muscle contracts. If the portion of the muscle which is free from nerve fibres be stimulated in the same way, the contraction is limited to the fibres directly stimulated, showing that in the first case the stimulus excited nerve fibres which transmitted the impulse *up* the nerve to the point of division and then *down* again to the other half of the muscle.

Since nerves have this power of conduction in both directions, it might be thought that a single set of nerve fibres might very well subserve both afferent and efferent functions, at one time conducting sensory impulses from periphery to cord, at another time motor impulses from cord to muscles. But this is not the case. As a matter of fact we find in the body a marked differentiation of function between various nerve fibres. Thus Bell and Majendie showed that the spinal roots might be divided into afferent and efferent, the anterior roots carrying only impulses from spinal cord to periphery, while the posterior roots carried impulses from periphery to central nervous system. The law known by the name of these observers states indeed that a nerve fibre cannot be both motor and sensory. We may find both kinds of fibres joined together into a single nerve-trunk, but the fibres in each case are isolated and conduct impulses only in one or other direction. Under normal conditions the afferent fibres are excited only at their endings on the surface of the body, while the efferent fibres are excited only at their origin from the spinal cord. The difference in the function of different nerve fibres depends therefore not so much on the structure of the nerve fibre itself as on the connections of the fibre. We can show this experimentally by grafting one set of nerve fibres on to another If the cervical sympathetic be united to the lingual nerve, stimulation of the sympathetic, instead of causing, as usual, constriction of the vessels of the head and neck, will cause dilatation of the vessels of the tongue and secretion of watery saliva. In the same way the finer functional differences between the various forms of sensory nerves seem to be determined by their connections within the central nervous system Stimulation of the optic nerve by any means whatsoever evokes a sensation of light. One and the same stimulus applied to different nerves will evoke different sensations, *e g* a tuning-fork applied to the skin will give a sensation of vibration, to the ear a sensation of sound. We shall have occasion to return to this question of the restricted function of nerve fibres when we deal with Müller's ' law of specific irritability ' in the chapter on Sensations.

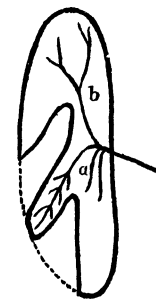


FIG. 104.
Kuhne's gracilis experiment.

SECTION III

EVENTS ACCOMPANYING THE PASSAGE OF A NERVOUS IMPULSE

In muscle we saw that the passage of an excitatory wave was accompanied or followed by electrical changes, production of heat, and mechanical change, all pointing to an evolution of energy from the explosive breaking-down of contractile material.

In nerve however which serves merely as a conducting medium, we should not expect so much expenditure of energy, or in fact any expenditure at all. All that is necessary is that each section of the nerve should transmit to the next section just so much kinetic energy as it has received from the section above it. And experiment bears out this conclusion. The most refined methods have failed to detect the slightest development of heat in a nerve during the passage of an excitatory process, and we know already that there is no mechanical change in the nerve. The only physical change in a nerve under these circumstances is the development of a current of action. A nerve becomes, when excited at any point, negative at this point to all other parts of the nerve and, just as in muscle, this ' negativity ' is propagated in the form of a wave in both directions along the nerve.

That the excitatory process in nerves is probably accompanied by certain small chemical changes is indicated by the facts that, in the complete absence of oxygen, the nerve fibres lose their irritability, and that this loss of irritability is hastened by repeated stimulation of the nerve. When the irritability has been abolished by stimulation in the absence of oxygen, it may be restored within a few minutes by readmission of oxygen to the nerve.

If we connect a galvanometer to two points of an uninjured nerve, no current is observed, all points of a living nerve at rest being isoelectric. On making a cross-section of the nerve at one leading-off point, a current is at once set up, which passes from the surface through the galvanometer to the cross-section. This is a demarcation current, set up at the junction between living and dying nerve. This current rapidly diminishes in strength and finally disappears, owing partly to the fact that the dying process started in the nerve by the section extends only as far as the next node of Ranvier and there ceases, so that after a short time the electrode applied to the cross-section is simply leading off an intact living axis cylinder through the dead portion of the nerve, which acts as an ordinary moist conductor. On making a fresh section just above the previous one, the process of dying is again set

up, and the demarcation current is restored to its original strength. If, while the demarcation current is at its height, we stimulate the other end of the nerve with an interrupted current, the needle of the galvanometer swings back towards zero, *i.e.* there is a negative variation of the resting current.

In order to demonstrate the wave-like progression of the electrical change from the excited spot along the nerve, it is necessary, as in the case of muscle, to make use of a very sensitive capillary electrometer or a string galvanometer. It is then found that the change progresses along the nerve at the same rate as the nervous impulse, *i.e.* 28 to 33 metres per second in the frog. But it lasts only an extremely short interval of time at each spot, viz. six to eight ten-thousandths of a second. Thus the length of the excitatory wave in nerve is about 18 mm.

SECTION IV

CONDITIONS AFFECTING THE PASSAGE OF A NERVOUS IMPULSE

TEMPERATURE. Below a certain temperature the propagation of the excitatory process in the nerve is absolutely abolished. The exact temperature at which this occurs varies according as we use a warm- or a cold-blooded animal. In the frog it is necessary to cool the nerve below 0°C. before conduction is abolished, whereas in the mammal it is sufficient to cool the nerve to somewhere between 0° and 5°C. Since cooling the nerve does not excite it, this procedure forms a convenient method for blocking the passage of impulses along a nerve without using the irritating procedure of section. On warming the nerve again the conductivity returns. The rapidity with which the excitatory process is propagated along either a nerve or a muscle fibre depends on the temperature. Thus the mean rate of conduction in the frog's nerve at 8° to 9°C. is about 16 metres per second. The temperature coefficient of the velocity of nerve propagation, *i.e.* $\frac{\text{velocity at Tn + 10}}{\text{velocity at Tn}}$ has been found by Lucas to be about 1·79. The same value was found by Maxwell for conduction in molluscan nerve, and in frog's striated muscle Woolley found the temperature coefficient for conduction of the excitatory process to vary between 1·8 and 2.

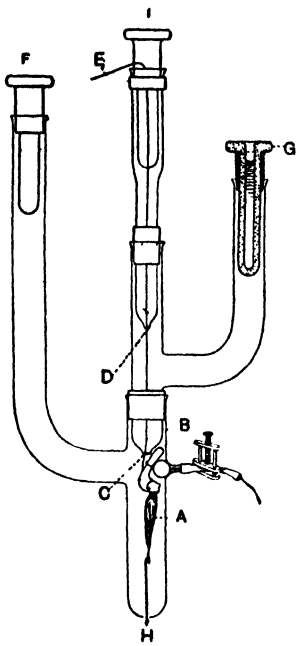


FIG. 105.

An ingenious method (Fig. 105) has been used by Keith Lucas for the determination of the conduction rates in nerve at different temperatures. The glass vessel represented in the figure is filled with Ringer's solution, in which the whole nerve-muscle preparation is immersed. The muscle used was the flexor longus digitorum, so that the whole length of the sciatic, tibial, and sural nerves could be used. The nerve is passed up through the constrictions in the inner glass vessels at C and D, and is attached to the thread E. F, I, and G are three non-polarisable electrodes composed of porous

clay, containing saturated zinc sulphate, in which a zinc rod is immersed. If the current is passed in at G and out at F the effective cathode is at the lower end of the constriction C, and similarly if the current is passed in at I and out at G, the effective cathode is at D. The tendon of the muscle A is attached by a thin glass rod H to a very light recording lever, the movement of which is magnified by placing it in the focal plane of a projecting eye-piece and recording its image on a moving sensitive plate. The whole apparatus, with the exception of the glass rod at H, can be immersed in a water bath at any given temperature. Two records are taken with the whole apparatus, first stimulating at C, and secondly stimulating at D. The difference between the latent periods in these two cases is the time taken for the excitatory wave to travel from D to C. The rate of propagation is similarly recorded when the water bath is raised to 18°C. or to any desired temperature. Since we are only dealing with differences in latent periods the effect of the rise of temperature on the latent period of the muscle itself does not affect the determinations.

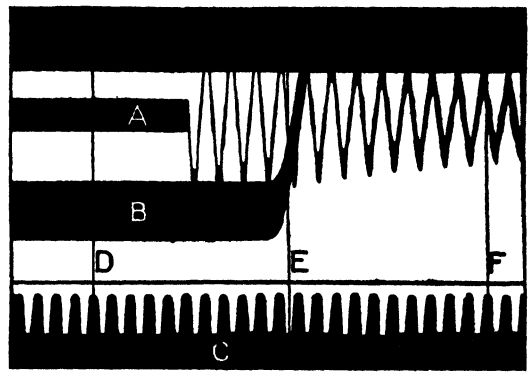


FIG. 106. Curve of muscle-twitch obtained by foregoing method. (KEITH LUCAS.)
A = moment of excitation. B = movement of muscle.
C = time-marker.

THE INFLUENCE OF FATIGUE. In the description of the phenomena of muscular fatigue given in the last chapter, it was assumed that the muscle was being excited directly. The same phenomena are observed when the muscle is excited through its nerve, though in this case fatigue comes on much more quickly. If, after the muscle has been excited in this way until exhausted, it be excited directly, it will respond with a contraction nearly as high as at the beginning of the experiment. We see therefore that the nervous structures are more susceptible to the influences causing fatigue than the muscle itself, and it can be shown that the weak point in the nerve-muscle preparation is not the nerve, but the end-plates. In fact it is not possible to demonstrate any phenomena of fatigue in the nerve-trunk.* This fact can be shown in *mammals* by poisoning the animal with curare, and then stimulating a motor nerve continuously while the animal is kept alive by means of artificial respiration. As the effect of the curare on the end-plates begins to wear off in consequence of its excretion, the muscles supplied by the stimulated nerve enter into tetanus. The action of the curare may be cut short at any time by the injection of salicylate of physostigmine, when the muscles will at once begin to react to the excitation.

The same fact may be shown on the excised nerve-muscle preparation of the frog. The gastrocnemii of the two sides with the sciatic nerves are dissected out, and an exciting circuit is so arranged that the interrupted

* Unless it be asphyxiated by total deprivation of oxygen.

secondary currents pass through the upper ends of both nerves in series (Fig. 107). At the same time a constant cell is connected with two non-polarisable electrodes (*np*, *np*) placed on the nerve of B, so that a current runs in the nerve in an ascending direction. The effect of passing a constant current through a nerve is to block the passage of impulses through the part traversed by the current. When the constant *polarising* current is made, the muscle may give a single twitch, and then remains quiescent. The exciting current is then sent through both nerves by the electrodes e_1 and e_2. The muscle A enters into tetanus, which gradually subsides owing to 'fatigue.' When A no longer responds to the stimulation, the constant current through the nerve of B is broken. B at once enters into tetanus, which lasts as long as the contraction did in the case of A, and gradually subsides as fatigue comes on. Since both nerves have been excited throughout, it is evident that the fatigue does not affect the nerve-trunk. We have already seen that a muscle will respond to direct stimulation when stimulation of its nerve is without effect, and must therefore conclude that the first seat of fatigue is the junction of nerve and muscle, *i.e.* the end-plates.

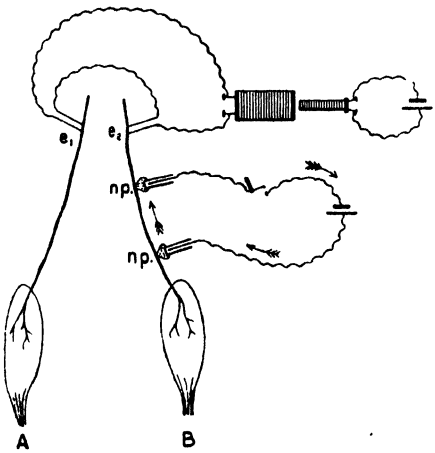


FIG. 107. Arrangement of experiment for demonstrating the absence of fatigue in medullated nerve fibres.
EC, exciting circuit; CP, polarising circuit.

In the normal intact animal the break in the neuro-muscular chain which is the expression of fatigue occurs still higher up, *i.e.* in the central nervous system, and is probably due to some reflex inhibition of the central motor apparatus from the muscle itself. Thus after complete fatigue has been produced in a muscle so far as regards voluntary efforts, direct stimulation of the muscle itself or its nerve will produce a contraction as great as would have been the case at the beginning of the experiment.

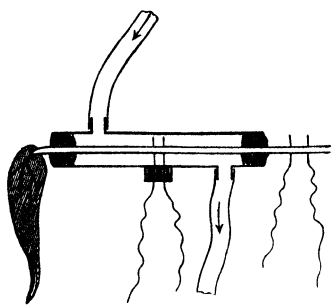


FIG. 108.

THE INFLUENCE OF DRUGS. The most important drugs with an influence on nerve fibres are those belonging to the class of anæsthetics. Of these we may mention carbon dioxide, ether, chloroform, and alcohol.

The action of any of these substances on the excitability and conductivity of a nerve may be studied by means of the simple apparatus represented in Fig. 108. The nerve

of a nerve-muscle preparation is passed through a glass tube which is made air-tight by plugs of normal saline clay surrounding the nerve at the two ends of the tube. By means of two lateral tubulures a current of CO_2, or air charged with vapour of ether or other narcotic, can be passed through the tube. The nerve is armed with two pairs of electrodes which are stimulated alternately, the pair within the tube serving to test the action of the drug on the *excitability*, while the pair outside the tube show the presence or absence of any effect on the *conducting power* of the nerve below it.

Of the gases and vapours mentioned above, CO_2 and ether both diminish and finally abolish the excitability and conductivity of the nerve fibres. The conductivity however persists after all trace of excitability has disappeared, before in its turn being also abolished. On removing the gas

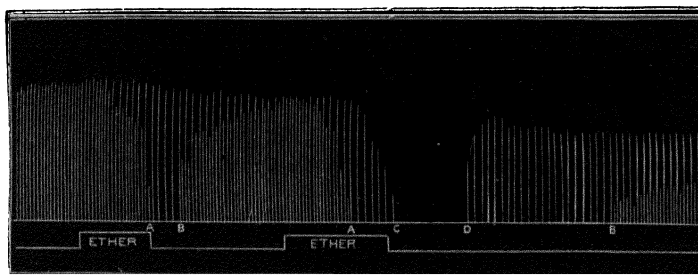


FIG. 109. Tracing to show the effect of ether on excitability and conductivity of nerve. Nerve excited by single induction shocks alternately within and above ether chamber. The vertical lines indicate contractions of the muscle (gastrocnemius.) The lower line indicates the periods during which the nerve was exposed to the action of ether.

A, disappearance of *excitability*; B, reappearance of *excitability*; C, disappearance of *conductivity*, D, reappearance of *conductivity*. (From a tracing kindly lent by PROF. GOTCH.)

or vapour by blowing air over the nerve, the conductivity and excitability gradually return in the reverse order to their disappearance (Fig. 109).

Alcohol is said to increase the excitability or leave it unaffected, while diminishing the conductivity of the nerve.

Chloroform rapidly abolishes both excitability and conductivity. It is a much more severe poison than the drugs just mentioned, so that in many cases its effects are permanent, and no, or only a very partial, recovery of the nerve is obtained on removal of the chloroform vapour from the apparatus.

SECTION V

THE EXCITATION OF NERVE FIBRES

MANY different forms of stimuli may be used to arouse the activity of an excitable tissue such as muscle or nerve. Thus we may use thermal, mechanical, or chemical stimuli. If the temperature of a motor nerve be gradually raised, no effect is noticed till about 40°C. is reached, when the muscle may enter into weak quivering contractions. Sudden warming of the nerve always gives rise to excitation. At about 45°C. the nerve loses its irritability and dies. On the other hand, a nerve may be rapidly cooled without any excitation taking place.

A nerve may be excited mechanically by crushing or cutting. These methods destroy the nerve. It is possible to excite a nerve mechanically, without any serious injury to it, by carefully graduated taps, and this method has been used in investigating the phenomena of electrotonus.

All chemical stimuli applied to the nerve have a speedy effect in destroying its irritability. The chemical stimuli most used are strong salt solutions, glycerin, or weak acids. If any one of these be applied to a motor nerve, the muscle enters into an irregular tetanus, which lasts till the irritability of the nerve is destroyed at the part stimulated.

None of these forms of stimuli can be adequately controlled either as to strength or duration. Moreover, owing to their destructive effects, any repetition of the stimulus will fall on a nerve or muscle more or less altered by the first stimulus. We are therefore justified in the use of electrical stimuli not only for arousing the activity of excitable tissues, but also for determining the conditions of excitation of muscle and nerve. For this purpose we may use either the make and break of a constant current, the induced current of short duration produced in a secondary coil of an inductorium by the make or break of the primary circuit, or the discharge of a condenser.

The last-named method of stimulation is especially useful when we desire to determine the total amount of energy involved in the electrical stimulation of a nerve or muscle. The arrangement of such an experiment is shown in Fig. 110. By means of the switch S the condenser can be put into connection either with the battery from which it receives its charge or with the nerve through which it can discharge. By knowing the capacity of the condenser and the electromotive force by which it is charged, we can estimate the energy of the charge sent through the nerve.

$$E \text{ (energy in ergs)}^* = 5FV^2$$

(F = capacity in microfarads; V = electromotive force in volts).

* An erg is the amount of work produced or energy expended by the action of one *dyne* through one centimetre. A dyne is the force which will give to a mass of one gram an acceleration of one centimetre per second.

In this way it has been found that the energy of a minimal effective stimulus for frog's nerve is about $\frac{1}{100}$ of an erg.

The amount of energy necessary to excite the nerve will vary with the rate at which the condenser is allowed to discharge through the nerve. Its rate can be modified by altering the resistance in the discharging circuit or by altering the electromotive force of the charge. This method has been adopted by Waller in determining the rate of change at which excitation is obtained with a minimal expenditure of energy, which he calls the "characteristic" of the tissue in question. To this point we shall have occasion to refer later.

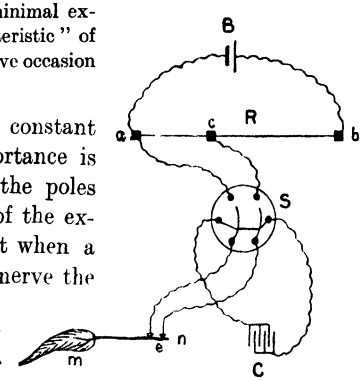


FIG. 110. Arrangement of apparatus for the excitation of a nerve by means of condenser discharges.
B, battery; R, rheochord; c, rider of rheochord; S, switch (Pohl's reverser without cross wires); C, condenser; *n*, nerve; *m*, muscle; *e*, non-polarisable electrodes.

When using the make and break of a constant current as a stimulus, the first fact of importance is the relation of the seat of excitation to the poles by which the current is led into or out of the excitable tissue. We have already seen that when a current is passed through a muscle or nerve the muscle contracts only at make or at break of the current, no propagated excitatory effect being produced during the passage of the current. The excitation at make is obtained with a smaller current than the excitation at break.

Besides this difference in intensity, there is a difference in the point from which excitation starts. *A make contraction starts from the cathode, a break contraction from the anode.* This is well shown by the two following experiments:

(*a*) A curarised sartorius muscle of the frog (Fig. 111), with its bony insertions still attached, is fastened at the two ends to two electrodes, which are able to swing when the muscle contracts, and are attached by threads to levers which serve to record the contraction. The middle of the muscle is then fixed by clamping it lightly. A circuit is arranged so that a constant current can be sent through the electrodes and the whole length of the muscle. It is found, on making the current, that the lever attached to the cathode—that is, to the electrode by which the current leaves the muscle—rises before the other lever. On the other hand, on breaking the current, the lever at the anode rises first, showing that the anodic half of the muscle contracts before the cathodic half.

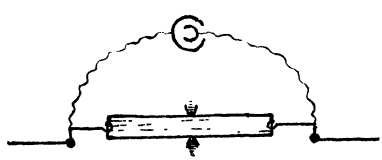


FIG. 111. Sartorius clamped in middle and attached to levers at either end.

(*b*) The irritability of a muscle, *i.e.* its power of responding to a stimulus by contracting, is intimately dependent on the life of the muscle. If the muscle be injured or killed at any spot, its irritability at this spot will be therefore diminished or destroyed. Hence, if we stimulate a muscle at the injured spot, no contraction will ensue. This fact may be used to demon-

strate the production of excitation at cathode on make, and at anode on break of a constant current.

A muscle with parallel fibres, such as the sartorius, is injured at one end, and a constant current passed, first from the injured to the uninjured end, and then in the reverse direction (Fig. 112). It is found in the former case, when the anode is on the injured part (which is therefore less excitable), that break of the current is ineffective, and in the latter, when the cathode is on the injured surface, that the make stimulus is ineffective, showing that the part excited corresponds to the cathode at make and to the anode at break.

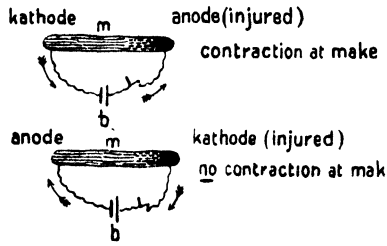


FIG. 112. Diagram to show the effect of local injury on the excitability of a muscle. *b*, battery; *m*, muscle. The arrows indicate the direction of the current.

With a current of very short duration no excitation is produced at break. Every induction shock can be therefore regarded as a make stimulus, and when such a shock is led through a muscle the contraction in each case will start at the cathode, *i.e.* the point at which the induction shock leaves the muscle. The results of stimulating nerve fibres are similar to those obtained by stimulating muscle fibres directly.

Under normal circumstances, if a constant current be passed through the nerve of a nerve-muscle preparation for a short time, the muscle responds only at the make and the break of the current, remaining perfectly quiescent all the time the current is passing. If the nerve be in a very excitable condition, it is possible that the muscle may be thrown into a tetanus or continued contraction during the whole time that the current is passing ('closing tetanus'). On the other hand, if a strong ascending current be passed through the nerve for a considerable time, the muscle when the current is broken may go into continued contraction, which may last some time Normally the muscle simply responds with a single twitch at the make and break of the current, although, on investigating the condition of the nerve *during* the passage of the current, we find that it is considerably modified. This modification in the condition of the nerve is spoken of as *electrotonus*, and includes changes in its irritability and its electrical condition.

To investigate these changes the following apparatus is necessary: two constant batteries, induction-coil, a reverser and keys, a pair of non-polarisable electrodes, and a pair of ordinary platinum electrodes. Fig. 113 represents roughly the arrangement of the experiment. A constant current from the battery is led through a part of the nerve by means of non-polarisable electrodes, which are about one inch apart. In this circuit we put a reverser, by means of which the direction of the current of the nerve may be changed at will, and a key to make or break the current. This is the polarising circuit. The other battery is arranged in the primary circuit of the coil, a key being interposed, so that we may use make or break induction shocks, which are applied to the nerve by means of the small platinum electrodes. The tendon of the muscle is connected by a thread with a lever, which is arranged to write on a smoked surface, so that the height of the contraction can be recorded.

We first find the position of the secondary coil, at which the break induction shock is a submaximal stimulus, and we employ this strength of stimulus throughout the experiment. The make induction shock is prevented from acting on the nerve by closing a shortcircuiting key in the circuit of the secondary coil. The nerve is now stimulated at various points with a single break induction shock, and the contractions recorded. The heights of these contractions serve to indicate the irritability of the nerve at the point stimulated. We now throw the polarising current into the nerve. At the make of this current the muscle will probably respond with a twitch which is not recorded. We then test once more the irritability of different points of the nerve, and we find that, when the stimulus is applied near *a*, the point where the current enters the nerve (anode), the stimulus, which before gave a moderately large contraction of the muscle, now has either no effect or else produces a very weak contraction. On the other hand, in the region of the cathode the stimulus, which before was submaximal, has now become maximal, as is shown by the increase in the height of the contraction evoked by the induction shock.

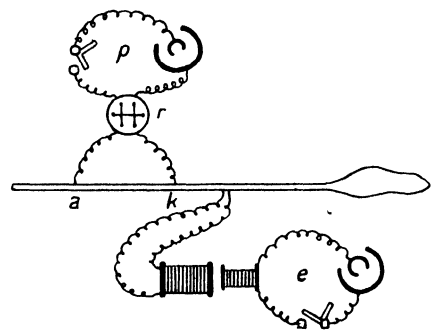


FIG. 113. Arrangement of apparatus for showing electrotonic changes in irritability.

e, exciting current; *p*, polarising current; *r*, Pohl's reverser.

We now reverse the direction of the polarising current, so that the current of the nerve runs from *k* to *a*. With this reversal of current there is also a reversal of the changes in the nerve; that is to say, the normally submaximal stimulus is maximal when applied near *a*, and minimal when applied near *k*. On break of the polarising current the condition of the nerve returns to normal, and the submaximal stimulus is once more submaximal throughout.

This return to normal conditions, is not immediate, since the first effect of breaking the current is a swing-back, so to speak, past the normal, the diminished irritability at the anode giving place to an increased irritability, which only gradually subsides. In the same way, immediately after the polarising current has ceased to flow, the neighbourhood of the cathode acquires a condition of diminished irritability, and this only gradually gives place to a normal condition.

This experiment teaches us that, when a constant current is passed through a nerve, there is increase in the irritability in the nerve near the cathode, and a diminution in irritability near the anode. These conditions of increased and diminished irritability are spoken of as *catelectrotonus* and *anelectrotonus* respectively. In muscle we have seen that a make contraction always starts from the cathode, and a break contraction from the anode. Now the event that takes place at the cathode on make and at the anode on break of a constant current is, as the last experiment shows us, a rise in irritability, in the former case from normal to above normal, in the latter from subnormal to normal. Hence we may say that the excitation is caused by a sudden rise of irritability, which may be due either to a sudden appearance of catelectrotonus or a sudden disappearance of anelectrotonus. I have said sudden because the steepness of the rise of irritability is a necessary factor in causing excitation. If the polarising current passing through

a nerve be slowly and gradually increased to considerable strength, it will give rise to no contraction. The degree of suddenness of the rise, which is most beneficial in causing contraction, varies with the nature of the tissue stimulated. Thus it is more rapid in nerve than in muscle, and in pale muscle than in red muscle, and in voluntary muscle than in unstriated muscle.

It is evident that there must be, somewhere between the anode and cathode, an indifferent point—that is to say, a region where the irritability

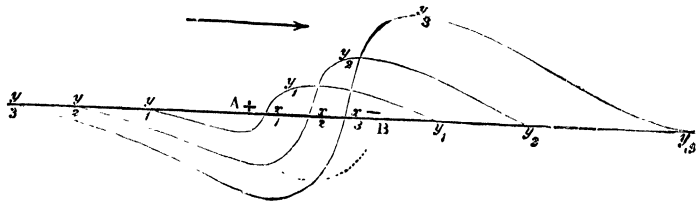


FIG. 114. Diagram to show the variations of irritability in a nerve during the passage of polarising currents of different strengths. The degree of change is represented by the distance of the curves from the base line; the part of the curve below the line signifying *decrease*, that above the line *increase* of irritability.

A, anode; B, cathode; y_1, effect of weak current, y_2, medium current; y_3, strong current It will be noticed that the indifferent point, x, where the curve crosses the horizontal line, approaches nearer and nearer the cathode as the current is increased in strength. (From FOSTER, after PFLÜGER.)

is neither increased nor diminished. We find experimentally that this indifferent point is nearer the anode when the polarising current is weak, and approaches the cathode as the current is strengthened, so that with very strong currents nearly the whole intrapolar length is in a condition of anelectrotonus (Fig. 114). When a strong polarising current is used, the depression of irritability at the anode is so marked that no impulse can pass

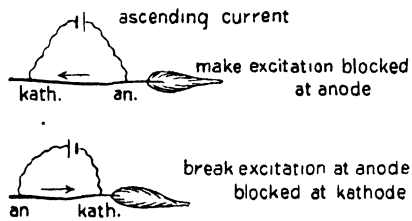


FIG. 115. Diagram to show the blocking effect of a strong constant current passed through the nerve of a nerve-muscle preparation.

this region. Thus if we send a very strong ascending current through the nerve, there is no contraction at make. This is owing to the fact that the impulse started at the cathode on make of the current cannot reach the muscle, its passage down the nerve being blocked in the region of the anode (Fig. 115, A).

The results of stimulating motor nerves by means of constant currents were studied by Pflüger and, embodied in a Table, make up what is known as Pflüger's law. The result of stimulating varies with the strength of a current.

LAW OF CONTRACTION

Strength of current	Ascending		Descending	
	Make	Break	Make	Break
Weak . . .	c	O	c	O
Medium . . .	c	c	C	c
Strong . . .	O	C or T	C or T	O

c = contraction. C = strong contraction. T = tetanus. O = no effect.

With the weakest currents excitation occurs only at make, since a make-stimulus, *i.e.* the rise of catelectrotonus, is always more effectual than a break-stimulus, *i.e.* the disappearance of anelectrotonus. With currents of moderate strength excitation occurs both at make and break, being better marked at make, especially in the case of

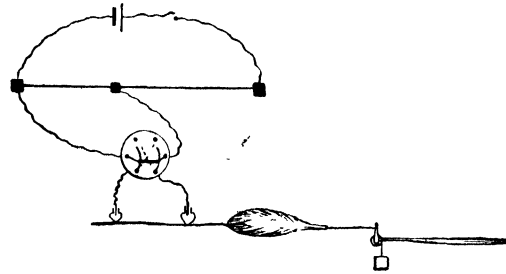


FIG. 116. Arrangement of experiment to demonstrate Pflüger's law of contraction.

descending currents. With very strong currents we get a contraction at make only when the current is descending, since, when the current is ascending, the excitation started at the cathode cannot pass the block at the anode. For the same reason a break contraction is obtained only with an ascending current, since at the break of a descending current there is a swingback of the nerve at the cathode to a condition of diminished irritability, which effectually blocks the excitation started higher up the nerve at the anode.

The arrangement of the experiment for demonstrating Pflüger's law is shown in Fig. 116. The strength of the current is graduated by means of the rheochord, the current being led into the nerve by means of non-polarisable electrodes. It is extremely important in these experiments to avoid any injury or drying of the nerves at either of the two electrodes, since the excitatory effect neither at make or break would be abolished by local injury.

These results, worked out chiefly on motor nerves, have been confirmed as far as possible experimentally on sensory nerve, and on muscle and contractile tissues generally, and probably hold good for all irritable living tissues.

It is said that an anelectrotonus takes some time to attain its full height, and a catelectrotonus reaches its maximum almost directly after the current is made, and that it is on this account that a current of very short duration excites only at the make, the break occurring before the anelectrotonus is developed enough for its disappearance to cause a stimulus.

Other things being equal, a current of given strength causes a stronger

excitation the greater the length of nerve that it flows through. It must be remembered however that the nerve offers considerable resistance to the passage of the current and so, to keep the current constant while increasing the length of intrapolar nerve, we must largely increase the electromotive force employed.

A very convenient method of showing the effect of the length of intrapolar nerve on excitation has been suggested by Gotch. The two sciatic nerves of a frog are dissected out, one of them being in connection with the gastrocnemius. These are first arranged as in Fig. 117. *a*, *b*, and *c* are three non-polarisable electrodes, the terminals of a constant battery being connected to *a* and *c*. The position of the rider on the rheochord is then ascertained at which make of the current just excites contraction in the muscle of nerve 2, the current in this case passing from *a* to *b* along nerve 1, and from *b* to *c* along a small piece of nerve 2. We will suppose that eleven units of current are necessary to produce excitation. *b* is then withdrawn and the nerve 2 laid on *a* (Fig. 117, B), so that the current can now pass from *a* to *c* entirely through a long stretch of nerve 2. On again seeking the minimal stimulus, it will be found that a smaller current is sufficient to excite, contraction being obtained with seven units. Since the length of nerve traversed, and therefore the resistance to the current, are the same in both cases, it is evident that a current is more effective the greater the length of excited nerve that it traverses.

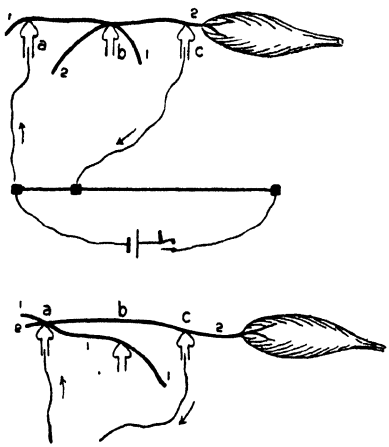


FIG. 117.

A nerve cannot be excited by currents passed transversely across it, since in such cases the anode and cathode lie so close to one another in a nerve-fibril, as it is traversed by a current, that their effects counteract one another.

ELECTRICAL STIMULI AS APPLIED TO HUMAN NERVES

When we attempt to apply the results gained on frog's nerves to man, we are met at once by the difficulty that we cannot dissect out the nerves and apply stimuli to them directly. So usually unipolar excitation is used, one electrode, either anode or cathode, being applied to the skin over the nerve to be stimulated, and the other to some indifferent point, such as the back. It is evident under these circumstances that the current is concentrated as it leaves the anode and reaches the cathode, and diffuses widely in the body, seeking the lines of least resistance. Thus it is impossible to get pure anodic or cathodic effects. If the anode be applied over the nerve, the current enters by a series of points (the polar zone), and leaves by a second series (the peripolar zone). The polar zone will thus be in the condition of anelectrotonus, and the peripolar zone in that of catelectrotonus. The current however will be more concentrated at the polar than at the peripolar zone, and so the former effect will predominate. These restrictions in the applica-

tion of the current cause slight apparent irregularities in the law of contraction as tested on man.

In stimulating the nerves of man for the purpose of determining the conditions of the different muscles, we may use either induced currents (generally called faradic stimulation) or the make and break of a battery current (galvanic stimulation). The electrodes are covered with chamois leather moistened with salt solution in order to diminish the resistance of the skin. When it is desired to stimulate any given muscle the stimulating electrode is brought as nearly as possible over the spot where the muscle receives its motor nerve. These 'motor points' have been mapped out, and reference is generally made to a diagram in determining the point for any given muscle. By reversing the current the stimulating electrode may be made either anode or cathode. It is found that stimulation occurs most easily on closure of the current when the stimulating electrode is the cathode; with the greatest difficulty when the current is broken and the stimulating electrode is the cathode. These different contractions are generally represented by capital letters, and the usual relationship is expressed by the statement that CCC is obtained most easily, then ACC and AOC, and finally COC.

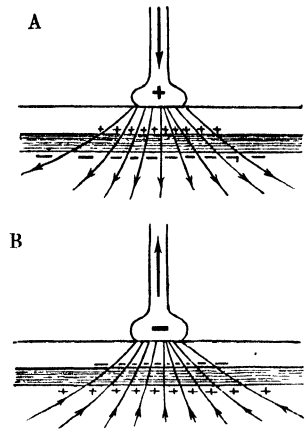


FIG. 118. Electrodes applied to the skin over a nerve-trunk. In A the polar area is anelectrotonic and the peripolar catelectrotonic. The former condition therefore preponderates, since the current here is more concentrated. In B the conditions are reversed, the polar zone corresponding in this case to the cathode. (WALLER.)

CCC = cathodal closing contraction.
ACC = anodal closing contraction.
AOC = anodal opening contraction.
COC = cathodal opening contraction.

When the motor nerve to a muscle has undergone degeneration the muscle also begins to degenerate, and we find certain alterations in its response to artificial stimulation. In the first place, the muscle may fail to respond to induction shocks, while it may show an increased irritability for galvanic shocks. In the second place, qualitative alterations in irritability may be present, so that ACC may be obtained with a smaller current than CCC. These alterations are spoken of as the 'reaction of degeneration.'

instead of increasing, begins to diminish and finally disappears, so that high-frequency currents of enormous tension can, as in Tesla's experiments, be led through tl ... any apparent physiological effect. On the other hand, by ... sh forms of irritable tissue, we may find that even inductior ... apid for effective excitation. Thus the red muscles of the slow-moving tortoise react better to the slow make than to the sudden break induction shock, and many forms of unstriated muscle are unaffected by either make or break shock. There is in fact for each tissue an optimum rate of change varying with the character of the tissue, at which the current necessary to produce a response is at a minimum. This optimum rate of change is spoken of by Waller as the ' characteristic ' of an irritable tissue.

A further investigation of the time relations of electrical stimuli by Keith Lucas has thrown important light on the character of the excitatory

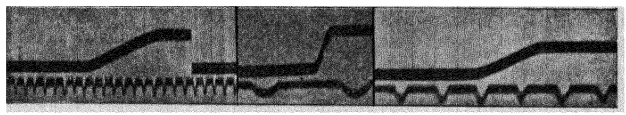


FIG. 120. String galvanometer records of the change of current obtained by opening the diaphragm in the rheonome (Fig. 119) at different rates. (K. LUCAS.)

response itself. The difference between various excitable tissues is perhaps best brought out by finding the minimum strength of current which will excite at make and then determining how much this current must be increased when it is broken at a very short interval of time after it has been made. The following Table represents the relation between duration and strength of current necessary to stimulate in the case of the sciatic nerve of the toad :

Duration of current (sec.)	Strength of current (volts)
∞	·086
·0070	·091
·0035	·119
·00087	·179
·00043	·245

If we slightly alter the use by Waller of the word ' characteristic ' we may take as the characteristic of the tissue the duration of the stimulus at which the current necessary to stimulate was just double the minimum. In the above case the minimal stimulating current was approximately doubled when the duration of the current was limited to about ·001 sec. From a number of experiments of this description, Lucas gives the following as the characteristic, or what he terms the ' excitation times,' of muscle and of nerve :

Muscle	·017	sec.
Nerve fibre	·003	,,
Nerve-ending (or intermediary substance)	·00005	,,

Similar differences are obtained when we attempt to determine by means of the rheonome the *minimal gradient* of current necessary to excite a nerve. In the case of the toad's nerve the minimal gradient must be ten times as steep as in the case of the toad's muscle, and is such that in one second the current must reach a strength forty-five times the minimal strength which is necessary to excite when the current is made instantaneously. In the frog's nerve the minimal gradient is still steeper, so that in one second the current must reach sixty times the strength of the minimal exciting current. We may interpret these results as signifying that the excitatory state produced in an irritable tissue involves the production of some change which passes away spontaneously. The rate of production of the change, and still more the rate of its spontaneous disappearance, differ from tissue to tissue. If the gradient of a current which is made through the tissue is too slight, the spontaneous disappearance of the excitatory change goes on as rapidly as the production in consequence of the rise of current. No excitation therefore takes place. The 'excitation time' of the tissue will thus be proportional to the duration of the excitatory change produced in the tissue as a result of the stimulus. We may compare the excitation time of three tissues with the duration of the electrical change produced in the same tissues by a single stimulus.

The excitation times were:

Frog's nerve fibre	·003	sec.
Muscle fibre of sartorius	·017	,,
Ventricular muscle of frog	2·000	,,

In the case of muscle, according to Burdon Sanderson, the electrical change reaches its culminating point in ·0025 sec., and may take perhaps eight times this interval before it dies away. In the cardiac muscle of the tortoise Sanderson found the electrical change to last between two and three seconds.

SUMMATION OF STIMULI. Closely associated with the excitation time of the tissues are the phenomena of 'summation of stimuli' and 'refractory period.' If two subminimal stimuli are sent in within a sufficiently short interval of time, their effect is summated, so that two stimuli, each of which would be ineffective, may together produce an excitation. In the case of striated muscles, in order that mechanical summation of contraction may take place, the second stimulus must become effective before the muscle has completely relaxed; the second contraction, that is to say, starts from the height to which the first contraction has brought the muscle. A similar condition of things appears to hold for summation of stimuli, if we substitute for mechanical change in muscle the molecular change which accompanies the excitatory state. For summation of two stimuli to take place, the second stimulus must occur at a time before the condition excited by the first stimulus has passed away. The maximum time at which summation of two stimuli can take place will therefore vary from tissue to tissue and will bear a relation to what we have designated the 'excitation time' of the tissue and also to the rapidity of current gradient necessary to excite the tissue. This will be evident if we compare the maximum summation intervals for different tissues with the excitation time of the same tissues.

	Stimulating current 5% above minimal stimulus	
	Summation interval sec.	'Excitation time' sec.
Frog's nerve	·0005	·003
,, sartorius	·0015	·017
,, heart	·0080	2·000

REFRACTORY PERIOD. The phenomenon of a refractory period has long been known in connection with the heart muscle and has often been regarded as characteristic of this muscle. If, in the isolated ventricle, a beat be evoked by a single minimal stimulus, subsequent repetition of the stimulus during the course of the contraction is ineffective, and becomes effective only when the contraction has passed away. The heart is said to be *refractory* to stimuli during this period. The duration of the refractory period is a question of the strength of the stimulus used. With strong stimuli the heart may be made to contract when the relaxation has only progressed half way, and with very strong stimuli one contraction may be made to follow the last at such a short interval that hardly any trace of relaxation is observable between the beats. The phenomenon seems to be common to all excitable tissues. Thus if two stimuli are applied to a nerve within a sufficiently brief interval, the second stimulus is ineffective, so far as can be determined by the response of an attached muscle or by means of a capillary electrometer. The period is longer the lower the temperature and varies from ·0006 sec. at 40°C. to ·002 sec. at 12°C. This critical interval is lengthened if the irritability of the nerve is depressed by narcotics We may ascribe it to the second stimulus being applied before the excitatory change due to the first stimulus has reached its culminating point.

THE EFFECT OF TEMPERATURE ON EXCITABILITY. It was found by Gotch that the excitability of a nerve within certain limits was increased by cooling the nerve and diminished by raising its temperature (Fig. 121). Thus, if a frog be cooled to 2°C. or 3°C. for a day, it will be found that simple section of the sciatic nerve may suffice to send the gastrocnemius into continued contraction, and under these circumstances 'closing tetanus' may be obtained with the greatest ease. This increase of excitability does not apply to all kinds of stimuli. In the case of nerve its irritability was found to be increased by warming, and diminished by cooling for induction shocks and for all galvanic currents of less duration than ·005 sec. In skeletal muscle Gotch found the excitability for all forms of stimuli increased by cooling. Lucas has shown that these paradoxical effects in nerve, namely, increase of excitability towards currents of long duration and the simultaneous decrease towards currents of short duration, are conditioned by two opposed changes in the tissue. The fall of temperature (1) delays the subsidence of the excitatory process, (2) renders more difficult the initiation of a propagated disturbance. The first of these effects reduces the current required for excitation in a ratio which varies with the duration of the current. The second increases the current

required in the same ratio for all durations. If the change of temperature is such that the two opposite effects are exactly balanced at a certain medium duration of current, it follows that for currents of longer duration the net result will be to reduce the current required for excitation, while for currents of shorter duration the net result will be to increase the current required. The effect of temperature therefore on the minimum exciting current will vary from tissue to tissue according as the two factors, rate of subsidence of excitatory change and the initiation of a propagated

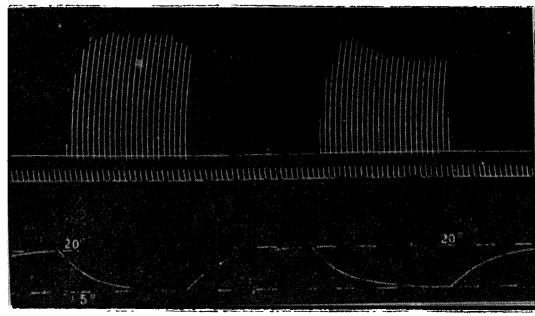


FIG. 121. Tracing of muscle contractions to show effect of cooling a nerve on its excitability. The lower line indicates the changes in temperature of the excited part of the nerve. The muscle responded only when the nerve was cooled, the stimulus becoming ineffectual when the nerve was warmed (GOTCH.)

disturbance as a result of the excitatory change, are relatively affected by change of temperature.

THE EFFECT OF INJURY. The irritability of the nerve of a muscle-nerve preparation is not equal in all parts of its course, but is greater at the upper end, probably in consequence of the proximity of the cross-section.

Some time after a motor nerve is divided the increased irritability at the upper end gives way to a decreased irritability, and this decrease goes on till the nerve is no longer excitable. The diminution in excitability gradually extends down the nerve fibre, so that the part of the nerve nearest the muscle remains excitable the longest. This progressive change in the irritability of a nerve after section is spoken of as the Ritter-Valli law. It is soon followed by definite histological changes in the nerve, which we shall describe later.

SECTION VII

THE NEURO-MUSCULAR JUNCTION

THE excitatory process travelling down a motor nerve has to be transmitted to the muscle by the intermediation of the nerve-ending or end-plate. We have learnt to regard the axis cylinder as the seat of the propagated excitatory process. In the end-plate however the axis cylinder comes to an end. When stained by methylene blue or by impregnation with chromate of silver or mercury, the axis cylinder, after passing through the sarcolemma of the muscle fibre, is seen to break up into a number of branches (in some cases forming a typical end-arborisation), which lie on or are embedded in a small amount of undifferentiated protoplasm containing nuclei (the 'sole plate'). A similar break in structural continuity seems to occur in the central nervous system wherever an impulse is propagated from the axon process of one nerve-cell to the body or dendrites of another nerve-cell. The end-processes of the axon come in contact with the next member in the chain of neurons, but no anatomical continuity is to be made out, at any rate in the higher animals. In the central nervous system the area of contiguity, where an impulse passes from one neuron to another, is spoken of as a *synapse*. The presence of the synapse, or end-plate, between muscle and nerve imposes certain new conditions on the conduction of the excitatory impulse. One of the most important of these lies in the fact that the conduction across the end-plate, and probably across the synapse of the central nervous system, is *irreciprocal*. An excitatory process started in the nerve travels easily across the end-plate to the muscle. On the other hand, an excitatory process started in the muscle does not extend through the end-plate to the nerve fibre. This fact may be shown on the frog's sartorius. If the lower tibial end of the muscle be split, as in Fig. 122, a mechanical stimulus, such as a snip with the scissors, applied to the lower nerve-free end of one of the limbs, *e.g.* at A, causes a contraction of the corresponding half of the muscle, which does not extend to the other half. On snipping the muscle a little higher up at B, where nerve-endings are present, the resulting

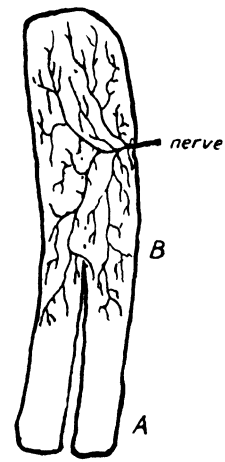


FIG. 122.

contraction involves the whole of the muscle, owing to the fact that the excitation started in the nerve-endings spreads in both directions through the branching nerve fibres.

It is possible that this irreciprocity of conduction may be of comparatively late appearance in evolution. So far as we know, an excitatory process in a sheet of muscle and nerve fibres, such as we find in lower invertebrata, *e.g.* in medusa, may travel with equal facility in all directions. We are probably not warranted from our experiments on skeletal muscle in concluding that the contraction of a cardiac muscle-cell may not set up an excitatory process in the surrounding network of nerve fibres. It is impossible however to put such a suggestion to experimental test, since in the heart there is no portion of muscle fibre sufficiently removed from nerves to allow of an excitation being applied which might not at the same time affect the nerve fibres.

There is evidence that the transmission of the excitatory condition across the end-plate, from nerve to muscle, involves a special excitatory process and the expenditure of energy. Thus there is a period of delay between the arrival of an excitatory impulse at the terminations of the motor nerve and the beginning of the electrical change which marks the moment of stimulation of the muscle fibre. If we compare the latent period of a muscle stimulated directly with its latent period when excited through the nerve, we find that there is an increased period of delay in the latter which is not wholly accounted for by the time taken for the impulse to travel from the stimulated spot down the nerve fibres to the muscle. The extra delay is due to the processes occurring in the end-plate. This end-plate delay amounts to ·0013 sec. We may take it roughly at a thousandth of a second. The end-plate seems to be the weakest point in the neuro-muscular chain. We have already seen that, when a nerve of a nerve-muscle preparation is stimulated repeatedly, the muscle very soon shows signs of fatigue, and that the seat of this fatigue is not in the nerve, nor in the muscle, but in the end-plate.

It has been suggested that the excitation of muscle through nerve depends on an electrical change or discharge at the nerve-ending. This discharge must originate in the terminations of the axon and must influence, in the first instance, the substance which forms the intermediary between the axon and the contractile material of the muscle. We have indeed direct evidence of the existence of a third substance, neither nerve nor muscle, at the point of junction of these two tissues. Thus, curare is generally said to paralyse the end-plates. Evidence for this statement has been given in the previous chapter. Kühne has shown that when the irritability of the frog's sartorius is tested at different points it is greater in the situation of the end-plates. This might be ascribed to the presence of the more irritable nerve-fibres passing into the muscle-fibres at these points. The unequal distribution of irritability is not however changed when the muscle is fully poisoned with curare, so as to block entirely the passage of any impulse from the nerve to the muscle. We must therefore regard curare as acting, not on the axon terminations, but on the substance intervening between these terminations and the contractile substance of

the muscle. Additional evidence of the existence of such a 'receptor' substance, as he calls it, has been furnished by Langley. Nicotine resembles curare in blocking the passage of impulses from the motor nerve to skeletal muscle, though inferior to curare in this respect. If 4 mg. of nicotine be injected into the vein of an anæsthetised fowl, the hind limbs become gradually stiff and extended in consequence of a tonic contraction of all their muscles. The effect slowly passes off, but can be reinduced by a second dose of nicotine. It is worthy of note that the stimulating effect of nicotine occurs even when sufficient is given entirely to paralyse the motor nerves. It might be thought that the stimulating effect of nicotine was a direct one upon the muscle fibre, but experiment shows that curare has a marked antagonising action on the contraction produced by nicotine. A sufficient dose of curare annuls the contraction produced by a small amount of nicotine and diminishes that caused by a large amount. The point of action of the nicotine must therefore be the same as that of the curare. After a muscle has been relaxed by curare it can be still made to contract by direct stimulation. On the other hand, nicotine will produce its stimulating effect when injected into a bird in which degeneration of all the nerve fibres of the muscle has been produced by previous section of the nerve-trunks. It is evident therefore that nicotine, like curare, acts, not on the axon terminations, but on a receptor substance, an intermediary substance intervening between the axon terminations and the contractile substance of the muscle.

Evidence in favour of such an intermediary substance has been brought by Keith Lucas from an entirely different standpoint. In determining the optimal electrical stimuli or the 'characteristic' of muscle and nerve by the condenser method (*v.* p. 271), Lucas finds that, even after moderate doses of curare sufficient to abolish the possibility of excitation through the nerve-trunk, the muscles show two optimal stimuli, pointing to the existence in them of two excitatory substances, one of which is not paralysed by moderate doses of curare. This result was confirmed when the tissue was investigated by determining the relation of current duration to the liminal current strength necessary to excite. In a normal sartorius he finds three substances, each distinguished by its own 'excitation time.' In the pelvic nerve-free end of the sartorius there is only one substance with an excitation time of ·017 sec. This may be regarded as the muscle substance proper. In the sciatic nerve-trunk there is a second substance with a much steeper characteristic and with an excitation time of ·003 sec. On experimenting on the middle region of the sartorius we find not only these two substances but a third substance, which Lucas calls the substance β, with an extremely rapid excitatory process. Its excitation time is ·0C005 sec. The presence of these three substances in the middle part of the toad's sartorius is shown in the diagrams (Fig. 123), which represent the relation of strength to duration of the currents necessary to evoke a contraction. In this curve α represents the muscle material, γ the nerve material, and β the curve of the intermediary substance.

Similar conditions are found in the visceral neuro-muscular system.

Here the nerve fibres leaving the central nervous system do not pass direct to the muscle fibres, but end in arborisations round ganglion-cells, which are collected to form the ganglia of the sympathetic chain or ganglia situated more peripherally and nearer the reacting tissue. Relays of fibres, for the most part non-medullated, arise from these ganglion-cells and pass to the unstriated muscles of the blood-vessels and viscera, where they end in plexuses or networks among the muscle fibres, possibly connected by short branches with the fusiform muscle fibres themselves. No structure is

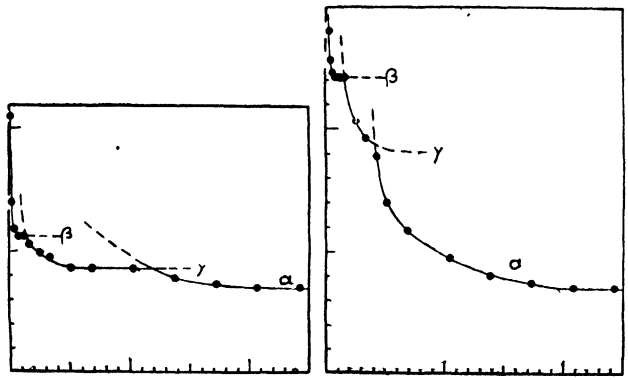


FIG. 123.

present at the periphery exactly analogous to the end-plate, and it is possible that, as Elliott suggests, the end-plate is really homologous with the whole of the sympathetic ganglion with its post-ganglionic fibres passing to the visceral muscles. At any rate, the action of curare and of nicotine on these peripheral ganglia is very similar to their action on the skeletal end-plates, nicotine however having a relatively stronger action than curare. Injection of nicotine stimulates and then paralyses the peripheral nerve-cells of the visceral system; curare in sufficiently large doses paralyses them. More instructive in relation to the presence of receptor substances is the action of adrenalin. This substance, which is produced by the medulla of the suprarenal glands, has a specific action on all tissues innervated by the sympathetic system. It causes almost universal constriction of the blood-vessels, dilatation of the pupil, acceleration of the heart, and inhibition of the intestinal muscles, with the exception of the ileo-colic sphincter (which it causes to contract), all of which effects can also be produced by stimulation of branches of the sympathetic nerve. The opposite effects of adrenalin on different unstriated muscles show that its action cannot be a direct one on muscle-fibre. It presents a marked contrast, for instance, to barium salts, which produce a contraction of every unstriated muscle-fibre in the body. On the other hand, we cannot ascribe this action to a stimulation of the sympathetic nerve-endings, since adrenalin is equally effective if applied after the whole of these nerve-endings have been made to degenerate

by section of the post-ganglionic sympathetic nerve-trunks. Its action therefore must lie at the junction between nerve and muscle, and must be on some intermediate or receptor substance developed at the myoneural junction, and having for its function the transference of the excitatory process from the nerve fibre to the contractile substance of the muscle fibre. Similar receptor substances may act as intermediaries in every case of propagation of an impulse across a synapse of whatever description, and may by their properties determine the peculiar qualities of the synapse. We may compare them to the fulminating cap which in a shell is used to transfer the process of combustion from the slow-match to the bursting charge. Their existence is of especial importance when we endeavour to investigate the mode of action of drugs. It is probable that they will be found to play a great part in determining the differential action of drugs on various tissues in the body.

SECTION VIII

POLARISATION PHENOMENA IN NERVE

ELECTROTONIC CURRENT. If a constant current be passed through a nerve fibre through the electrodes x and y,—x being the anode and y the cathode—and the extrapolar portions of the nerve ab, cd be connected with galvanometers, the needles of both are deflected, and the direction of the deflection shows the existence of a current in the extrapolar portions of the nerve a to b, and from c to d.

We thus see that a passage of a current through a part of a nerve gives

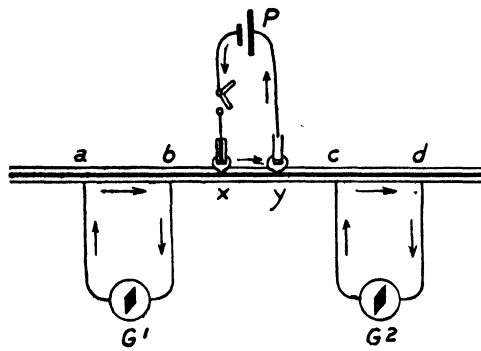


FIG. 124. Diagram showing electrotonic currents. P, polarising circuit; G^1, G^2, galvanometers.

The galvanometers will indicate, before the passage of the polarising current, the ordinary demarcation current of the nerve resulting from the cross-section at the upper end. This current flows, in the outer circuit, from equator to cut end, and therefore in the nerve fibre from a to b, and from d to c. The effect of closing the polarising current will be to increase the current of rest between a and b, and to diminish that between c and d.

rise to a current flowing through a considerable portion of the nerve fibre on each side of the polarising current and in the same direction. This current is called the electrotonic current. It must not be confounded with the current of action, which originates at one of the poles, only at make or break of the current, and is transmitted thence in the form of a wave with a measurable velocity (in the frog) of about 30 metres per second. The electrotonic current is developed instantaneously, and lasts the whole time that the current is flowing through the nerve. Its production is dependent

on the occurrence of polarisation between the sheath and the conducting part of the nerve fibre and may be exactly reproduced on a model consisting of a core of zinc or platinum wire in a casing of cotton soaked with ordinary salt solution. Although thus physical in origin, its production is dependent on the vitality of the nerve, and so is not to be confounded with the simple spread of current.

The polarisation phenomena resulting from the passage of a constant current through a medullated nerve can be studied on a model made up of a glass tube filled with normal salt solution, containing a platinum or zinc wire stretched through it (Fig. 125). On leading a current through *a* and *b*,

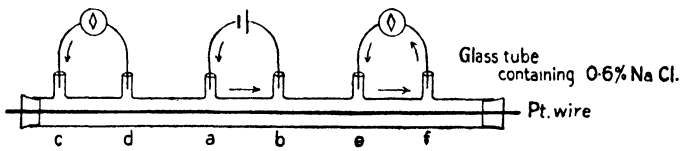


FIG. 125. Apparatus for imitating the polarisation phenomena in medullated nerve ('*Kernleiter*' model).

and connecting *c* and *d* with a galvanometer, a current will be observed in the extrapolar portion of the model in the same direction as in the intrapolar. That this spread of current is due to polarisation is shown by the fact that, if the model be made of zinc wire immersed in saturated zinc sulphate solution, so that no polarisation can occur, the spread of current to the extrapolar area is also wanting. If we examine the phenomena taking place at the anode, we see that a current passes here through an electrolyte to the conducting core. Every passage of a current through an electrolyte must be accompanied by dissociation, the current being carried by the ions. We get therefore a movement of negative ions up into the electrode, and a deposition of electropositive ions on the core (Fig. 127, *a*). In the same way at the cathode there will be a deposit of electro negative ions on the core (Fig. 126, *d*), so we may say that the core is positively polarised at the anode and negatively polarised at the cathode. This polarisation, while opposing the primary current, will set up currents in the surrounding electrolytic sheath, as shown by the arrows in Fig. 127, the current passing from *a* to *b* and from *b* to *c* in the electrolyte, returning towards *a* in the core. Hence if we lead off from the sheath in the neighbourhood of the anode from *a* and *c*, a current will pass in the galvanometer from *a* to *c*, that is along the core in the same direction as the intrapolar current. The same factors will cause an extrapolar current in the cathodic area, the catelectrotonic current.

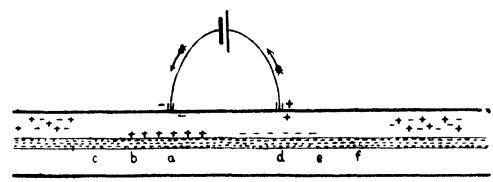


FIG. 126. Diagram to show polarisation at the surface between conducting core and electrolyte sheath in a '*Kernleiter*.'

This polarisation will not disappear at once on breaking the polarising current. The nerve or nerve-model will still be positively polarised at the anode and negatively polarised at the cathode. On connecting therefore these two points with the galvanometer, we shall get a current in the direction opposite to the previous polarising current, viz. from anode to cathode (Fig. 128). This is the so-called *negative polarisation* of nerve. Similarly in the extrapolar regions of the nerve we shall have currents in the *same*

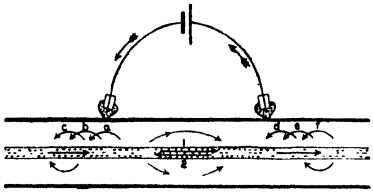


FIG. 127. Diagram to show polarisation currents in a '*Kernleiter*.' or in a medullated nerve.

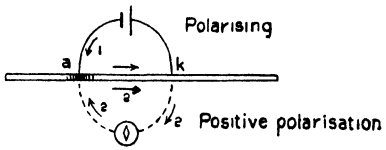


FIG. 128. Diagram to show direction of the negative polarisation current.

direction as the previous polarising current, as shown by the arrows. So far then the nerve behaves exactly like the mechanical model. If however we pass a very strong current through a nerve, and then quickly switch the nerve on to a galvanometer, we find a momentary current through the galvanometer in the same direction as the previous polarising current. This is known as *positive polarisation* of nerve. It is absolutely dependent on the living condition of the nerve, and is in fact an excitatory phenomenon due to the strong excitation which occurs at break of the current at the anode. Thus in the diagram (Fig. 129) a strong current is passing through the nerve from *a* to *k*. When this current is broken, excitation occurs, as we have already learnt, at the anode, and this excitatory state may, if the previous currents were strong, last two or three seconds. An excited

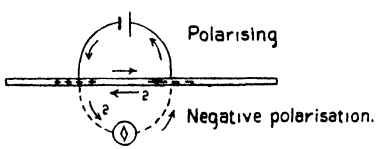


FIG. 129. Diagram to show direction of the positive polarisation current, due to a break excitation at the anode.

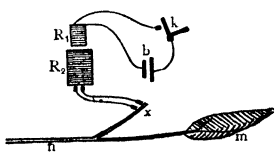


FIG. 130. Diagram of arrangement for showing paradoxical contraction.

tissue is however always negative towards adjacent unexcited tissue, and therefore if we connect *a* to *k*, there must be a current outside the nerve from *k* to *a*, and in the nerve from *a* to *k*, viz. in the same direction as the polarising current. We see therefore that negative polarisation is due to polarisation occurring between an electrolytic sheath and a conducting core, whereas positive polarisation is hardly a polarisation effect at all, but is a current of action.

PARADOXICAL CONTRACTION. If the sciatic nerve of a frog be

dissected out, and one of the two branches into which it divides be cut, and the *central* end of this branch stimulated, the muscles applied by the other half of the nerve contract to each stimulus. Ligature or crushing of the nerve x (Fig. 130) between the points stimulated and the point which joins the main trunk puts a stop to this effect, showing that it is not due to a mere spread of current. The fibres passing down n are in fact stimulated by the electrotonic current developed in x during the passage of the exciting current.

SECTION IX

THE NATURE OF THE EXCITATORY PROCESS

UNDER this heading we have really two questions to discuss, namely, (*a*) the nature of the change excited at the stimulated spot in an excitable tissue, and (*b*) the propagation of the excitatory change away from the excited spot, *e.g.* down a nerve fibre. That these two phenomena are more or less independent and may be dealt with separately is shown by the result of passing a constant current through a parallel-fibred muscle, such as the sartorius. In this case, as we have seen (p. 192), at make of the current an excitatory change occurs at the cathode and is transmitted throughout the whole length of the muscle, giving rise to a twitch of the muscle. During the passage of the current there is still an excitatory change at the cathode, but limited to a region within one or two millimetres of the cathode.

An attempt has been made by Boruttau and other physiologists to explain the nerve process, not as a wave of electrical change affecting the substance of the axis cylinder itself, but as a propagated catelectrotonic current. This observer found that, by working with a 'platinum core model' ('*Kernleiter*') (Fig. 125) of considerable length, the catelectrotonic current was developed at one end of the model some appreciable time after a current had been sent in at the other end, thus resembling a current of action. It is however impossible to explain all the electrical phenomena of nerve as due simply to polarisation. We might go so far as to assume that the excitatory effect at the cathode is due to negative polarisation, and that excitation at break, *i.e.* at the anode, is caused by the sudden coming into existence of a negative polarisation current; but then it would be difficult to understand how the excitation, so produced at the anode, should give rise to a current so much exceeding the current which produced it that it would appear in our external circuit as a current of positive polarisation.

The same objection would hold to the comparison of a nerve-fibre with a submarine cable. An electric disturbance produced at any part of a cable (*i.e.* a conducting wire in an insulating sheath) is propagated along the cable at a certain finite velocity which can be calculated when we know the conductivity of the core, the capacity of the cable, and the di-electric constant of the sheath. In all these cases there must be a decrement of the change as it is transmitted away from its seat of origin, a decrement for the existence of which there is no evidence in a nerve fibre or other excitable tissue.* Moreover the phenomenon of propagation of an excitatory process

* It might be urged, on the other hand, that one would not expect to find any appreciable decrement in a cable only 1 to 3 inches long.

is equally well marked in tissues, such as muscle and non-medullated nerve fibres, which show very little of the electrotonic effects described in the last section. The absence of decrement in the excitatory process has been taken as an indication that the axis cylinder of the nerve is the seat of energy changes which may be let loose under the influence of chemical or electrical changes, just as the energy of a contracting muscle is set free by the exertion of an infinitesimal force applied as a stimulus. The nerve on this view does not simply transmit the energy which is imparted to it, like a telegraph wire, but itself furnishes the energy of the descending nerve-process.

Against this view might be urged the absence of phenomena of fatigue in nerve, as showing that nervous activity is not accompanied by any expenditure of energy or using up of material. But it must be remembered that this absence of fatigue holds good only for *medullated* nerve fibres and is not found in non-medullated nerves,* and even in medullated nerves the persistence of irritability is dependent on the continual supply of a certain small amount of oxygen. It may therefore possibly be explained by a continual process of restitution taking place at the expense of the sheath. Fatigue is absent, not because nothing is used up, but because the assimilative changes exactly balance and make good the dissimilation involved in the propagation of a nervous impulse.

There is thus a certain amount of justification in the comparison of a nerve fibre to a chain of gunpowder, though in the nerve fibre the impetus to disintegration, imparted from each particle to the next in order, consists, not in a rise of temperature at the point of ignition, but in all probability in an electrical change; and the total evolution of energy is so small that it cannot be measured as heat by the most sensitive methods at our disposal. The excited condition at any segment of a nerve is associated with a development of electromotive forces at the junction of the segment with the adjacent resting segments. The current of action thereby produced can pass by the sheath of the nerve, so that it must enter the axon at the excited spot, and leave it at the adjacent unexcited segment. Hermann has suggested that in this way the current of action at any excited spot may excite the adjacent segments or molecules, causing them to become negative and thus setting up a current of action which in its turn excites the succeeding segments. In this way the excitatory process may travel the whole length of the nerve. Propagation would thus involve the successive setting up of an excitatory process all along the nerve or excitable tissue, though it is difficult to see why on this theory every excitatory state should not give rise to a propagated change.

We are as yet a long way from a comprehension of the changes involved in the process of excitation, though we are able to form some idea of many of the factors which must be involved. Any theory of the excitatory process must take into account the following phenomena:

(1) The excitatory state is attended with an electrical change of such

* This statement is based chiefly on experiments on the olfactory nerve of the pike. Halliburton and Brodie found no signs of fatigue in the non-medullated fibres of the sympathetic supply to the spleen, even after several hours' stimulation.

a nature that the excited spot is negative to adjacent unexcited spots. This electrical change rises rapidly to a maximum and dies away more slowly, the rate of its rise, and still more of its subsidence, varying largely according to the nature of the tissue under investigation.

(2) The excitatory change is aroused only at the poles of a current passing through the tissue, *i.e.* at those places where polarisation can occur in consequence of the electrical movement of ions.

(3) Excitation only occurs at the cathode at make of the current, and only occurs if the current attains a sufficient strength within a certain period of time, the relation of strength of current to rate of change varying in different tissues.

(4) All living tissues are made up of colloids, divided into compartments by membranes of various permeabilities and permeated with salts and other electrolytes in solution.

Disregarding for the moment all considerations of structure, it is possible to form a hypothesis of the nature of electrical excitation which takes into account the facts just mentioned and enables us to give a quantitative or mathematical expression to the factors involved. An electrical current passing through a tissue containing membranes, impermeable to the dissolved ions, will set up differences of concentrations at and near the membranes. Nernst, on the supposition that these differences of concentrations, when sufficiently large, would cause an excitation, arrived at a formula connecting the lowest current required to excite with its duration, and another formula connecting the lowest amplitude of an electrical current with its frequency. The mathematical investigation of the question has been continued by A. V. Hill in conjunction with Keith Lucas. For this purpose we may suppose that the excitable unit is represented by a cylindrical space closed at its two ends by the membranes A and B (Fig. 131) and filled with a solution of electrolytes. If a current be passed from B to A, the positively charged ions will move towards A and tend to accumulate there. The accumulation of the ions near the membranes will be limited by the tendency of the ions to equalise their concentration in all parts of the cell by diffusion. If we suppose that a necessary condition for excitation is that the concentration of the ions in the neighbourhood of one of the membranes shall reach a certain definite value, it becomes possible to calculate under what conditions of strength, duration, &c., an electrical current will just produce excitation. The *rise* of the excitatory state would here be determined by the rate at which the ions accumulate, the *subsidence* of the excitatory state by the rate of dispersal of the ions by diffusion. The formula arrived at by these observers has this form:

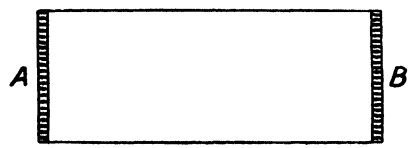


FIG. 131.

$$i = \frac{\lambda}{i - \mu\theta^t}$$

where i is the smallest current which will excite,
t is duration of the current;
while γ, μ, θ are constants which depend on:

(1) The distance between the membranes.
(2) The distance from the membrane at which the concentration changes are being considered.
(3) The diffusion constant of the ion.
(4) The number of ions by which a given quantity of electricity is carried.
(5) A constant expressing in general terms the ease with which a propagated disturbance is set up.

Investigation on these lines may give us in future sufficient information to form a material conception of the factors involved in excitation, factors which in the above formula have only a symbolic existence. Thus a determination of the distance between the membranes would give us some clue to the size of the ultimate excitatory units in the tissue involved.* The constant μ has reference only to the position relative to the membranes at which the changes of concentration are effective. From Lucas's experiments it would seem that the changes of concentration occur in the immediate neighbourhood of one of the membranes. Macdonald has brought forward evidence that the passage of a current through a nerve involves the setting free of certain inorganic ions. The subsidence of the excitatory state depends on the rate of diffusion of ions. If however we compare the rates of subsidence of the excitatory state in different tissues, we find much greater divergence than would be possible on the assumption that the diffusion is one affecting inorganic ions. Thus between the substance β (the intermediate substance) of the frog's sartorius and the ventricular muscle fibre of the same animal, the rate of subsidence of the excitatory state changes in the ratio 4000 : 1. If the ions concerned were simple ions, such as $H^{\cdot}$, $Ca^{\cdot\cdot}$, $Na^{\cdot}$, Cl', &c., it would be impossible to account for this wide variation, since their velocities differ in the ratio of 10 : 1 at most. Moreover the effect of rise of temperature on the rate of subsidence is greater than the effect of a similar rise on ionic velocities. It is evident therefore that the theory is one for use as a working hypothesis only. That excitation is associated with accumulation of ions in the region of the exciting electrode, that the subsidence of the excitatory state is due to disappearance by diffusion or otherwise of these ions, there can be little doubt. But the questions as to the nature of these ions, and their relation to the colloidal constituents of the excitatory tissue, or to other possible substances, changes in which may form an integral part in the excitatory state, must be left for future investigation.

* It would be premature at present to give any histological significance to Hill and Lucas's diagrammatic cylinder. As Hardy has pointed out, the nerve cannot consist of a row of such cylinders, otherwise excitation would occur throughout the whole intrapolar region, and not be confined to the cathode at make and the anode at break. It may be that we are dealing here again with the polarisable sheath of the '*Kernleiter*,' and that the membrane A corresponds to the surface of the axis cylinder or of its neuro-fibrils.

CHAPTER VII

THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

SECTION I

THE EVOLUTION AND SIGNIFICANCE OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

EVERY vital phenomenon may be regarded as a reaction conditioned by some change in the environment of the animal and adapted to its preservation. In the community of cells forming the whole organism, the defence of any one part must involve the co-operation of the whole community; no change in a cell of the body can be regarded as a matter of indifference to any of the other cells. For this subordination of the activities of each part to the welfare of the whole, as for the co-operation of all parts in maintaining the welfare of each, a means of communication is necessary between the various cells. For some of the lower functions the channel of communication is the blood, which serves as a medium for carrying food material from one part of the body to another, or for the transmission of chemical messengers which, elaborated by one set of cells, may affect the metabolism of cells in distant parts of the body. This method of correlating different activities would however be too slow and clumsy for the quick adaptation of the organism to sudden changes of environment. Such a rapid correlation can be effected only by a propagation of some molecular change from the seat of incidence of the stimulus, either to all parts of the body or to some mechanism controlling all parts of the body. The medium for the propagation of a state of excitation is furnished by the nervous system. We have seen that stimuli of various kinds, involving such various forces as thermal, chemical, and electrical energy, are transformed by a muscle or nerve fibre into what we call a state of excitation, which is propagated along the fibres, whether nerve or muscle, at a certain definite rate, its passage in the case of the muscle being followed by a wave of contraction.

In unicellular animals, such as the amœba and vorticella, there is no differentiation of any structure which can be regarded as peculiarly nervous. A stimulus applied to any part of the amœba may evoke responsive activity in all other parts. A slight touch applied to any point on a vorticella will cause an excitation which is rapidly propagated to the stalk, causing this to

contract and so withdraw the organism from any possible injury. In the lowest metazoa, such as the sponges, we find no special nervous structures. The cells forming the sponge may react to changes in their environment by contraction or by alteration of their relative positions. Many of the cells can move from one part of the sponge to the other in response to chemical changes occurring in the body of the sponge. So far however no cells have been distinguished as endowed above their fellows with the property of irritability or the power of reaction to stimulus. It is in the next class, that of the Cœlenterata, where we first find a definite nervous system. The object

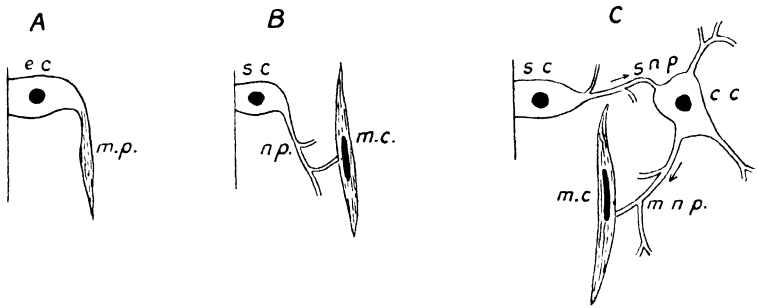


FIG. 132. Diagrammatic representation of evolution of a nervous system. (Modified from FOSTER.)

cc, epithelial cell; *mp*, muscular process; *sc*, sensory cell; *np*, nerve process or fibre; *mc*, muscle cell; *snp*, sensory nerve process; *mnp*, motor nerve process; *cc*, central cell.

of a nervous system is to ensure the co-operation of the whole organism in any reaction to changes in its surroundings. At its first appearance therefore we should expect a nervous system to be developed in connection with that layer of the animal which is in immediate relation to the environment, namely, the *epiblast* or external layer. In some species of hydra, though no typical nervous tissues have been detected, many of the epithelial cells lying on the surface are prolonged at their inner ends into a long contractile process (Fig. 132, A), so that stimuli applied to the surface and acting on the epithelial cells can cause, as an immediate response, a contraction of the underlying muscular processes. We may easily conceive that in such an animal, among the cells forming the epiblast, certain cells might become endowed with a special sensitiveness to external changes, other cells being developed, like those of the hydra just mentioned, into special contractile structures. If in the course of development the protoplasmic continuity between these two sets of cells had not become interrupted (and we have no ground for assuming that such an interruption occurs under normal circumstances), it is evident that we should have so produced the simplest form of a reflex arc (Fig. 132, B), namely, a sensory cell, which is stimulated by slight physical changes in its surroundings and is thereby thrown into a state of activity similar to that which we have already studied in muscle and nerve. This state of activity would be propagated by the protoplasmic channels to the muscular cell and

arouse there the specific function of the muscle, namely, contraction. In such a simple reactive tissue, lines of less resistance would be rapidly laid down through the protoplasmic continuum, and these lines, acquiring a specific structure or composition, would form a network uniting sensory and muscular cells. Thus a stimulus applied to any sensory cell would spread to the adjacent sensory and muscular cells, and the response of the muscle cells would be greatest near the stimulated spot, gradually dying away as the area of the excitation widened. A further step in the development of such a hypothetical elementary nervous system would occur when certain of the sensory cells (Fig. 132, c) developed a special sensitiveness, not to mechanical changes in the environment, but to the protoplasmic excitatory process arriving at them along the nerve network. These cells would act as relays of force, picking up the excitations arriving from the undifferentiated sensory cells, and sending them on with increased vigour along the nerve network. In such a manner a stimulus applied at one point could be sent on in successive relays from cell to cell throughout the whole reactive tissue on the surface of the body.

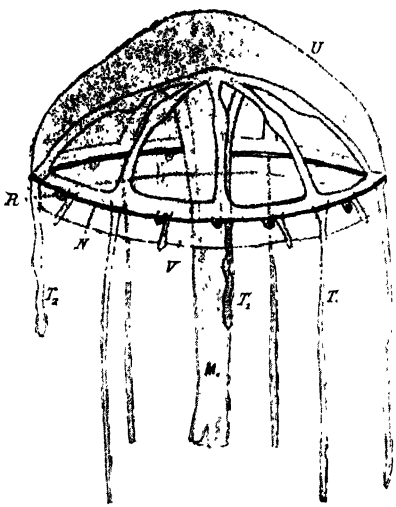


FIG. 133. Diagrammatic view of a jelly-fish. (HERTWIG.)
U, umbrella; M, manubrium; T_1, T_2, tentacles; V, velum; N, nerve ring; R. 'marginal body.'

We cannot point to any particular animal as presenting instances of either of the two types of elementary nervous system just described. If such exist, they have not yet been investigated, or the undifferentiated character of their nervous tissues has thwarted the efforts of zoologists to display their specific characters by staining reagents. In the lowest definite nervous system with which we are acquainted, namely, that of the jelly-fish, all three types of cell, the sensory cell, the reactive or central cell, and the motor cell, are already developed and have undergone among themselves a considerable degree of differentiation. In a jelly-fish or medusa, such as aurelia or sarsia (Fig. 133), the reactive tissue of the body is confined to the under-surface of the so-called umbrella with the tentacles and manubrium. A section through the umbrella shows a layer of epithelium containing differentiated sense cells, below which is a plexus or rather network of fine nerve fibres with a certain number of nerve cells at the nodes of the network. From this network fibres pass more deeply to end in a finer network situated among a layer of muscle fibres formed, like the sensory cells, by a differentiation of the primitive epithelium or epiblast (Fig. 134). Besides

this diffuse nervous system, there is a continuous ring of nerve fibres round the margin of the umbrella, thickened at intervals by the accumulation of nerve cells, which are in close relation to special collections of sensory cells in the ' marginal bodies.' These sensory cells present a differentiation among themselves, some being apparently determined for the reception of mechani-

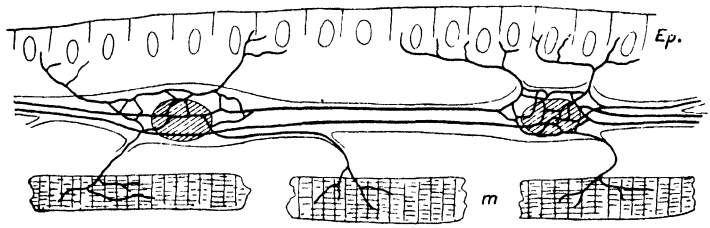


FIG. 134. Diagram of subepithelial plexus of nerve fibres and nerve cells, communicating on the one side with the sensory epithelium, and on the other side with the subumbrellar sheet of muscle fibres. (After BETHE.)

cal stimuli, others for the reception of light stimuli, while others again are found in close relation with little masses of calcium carbonate crystals, by the direction of the weight of which the cells are able to react to changes in the position of the animal in space In the jelly-fish therefore the nervous or reactive system has already acquired a considerable degree of differentiation.

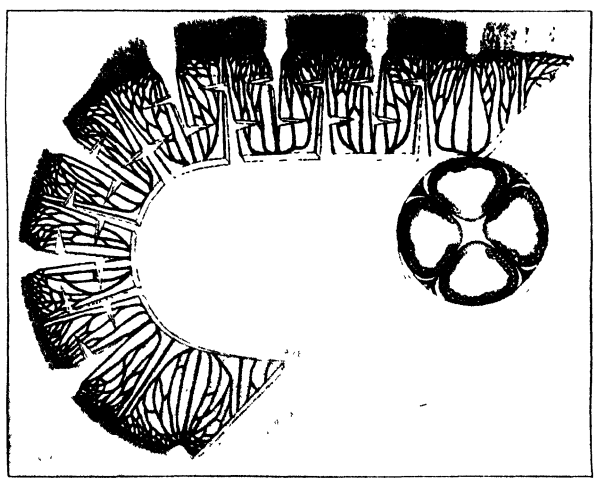


FIG. 135. Figure of a jelly-fish in which all the marginal bodies except one have been removed, and which has been incised in various directions so as to divide the nerve ring and all the 'long paths,' so that only the diffuse nerve network remains functional. (ROMANES.)

We may study the behaviour of a more primitive system if we remove the special sense-organs of the medusa by cutting off the whole of the marginal ring with its contained marginal bodies (Fig. 135). We have then a layer

of contractile tissue, innervated by a nerve network, and covered by a layer of epithelium containing sense cells. To this network is attached the manubrium, which represents the mouth and stomach of the animal. In such a mutilated jelly-fish it is easy to show that a stimulus applied to one spot on the surface travels outwards from the excited spot to all parts of the bell. The stimulus is propagated also to the manubrium, which in some species bends in the direction of the excited spot—that is to say, in the direction which represents the shortest possible path from the excited spot to the manubrium. This preparation rarely presents any automatic activity. It may react to a constant stimulus by a rhythmic series of contractions, but remains perfectly motionless in the absence of stimulus. The unmutilated

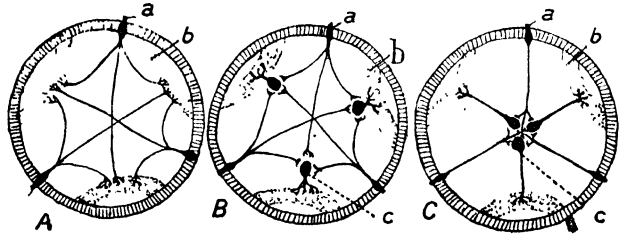


FIG. 136. Schema showing the utility of the multiplication of neurons and their grouping in central ganglia. (CAJAL.)

A, an ideal invertebrate with only cutaneous 'sensory' neurons.

B, invertebrate, such as a medusa, with sensory and motor neurons, but no central nervous system.

C, invertebrate (*e.g.* Annelid) in which the motor neurons are concentrated in central ganglia.

a, sensory neuron; *b*, muscle; *c*, motor neuron.

jelly-fish presents rhythmic contractions of its sub-umbrella tissue which are inaugurated in any or all of the marginal bodies and serve to drive the animal onwards through the water in which it is immersed. The rhythmic contractions may be initiated, augmented, or diminished, in response to stimuli of light, mechanical irritation, or changes in the position of the whole animal acting on the marginal bodies. In the reaction of an animal to external stimuli it must be an advantage if the energies of the whole can be concentrated in defence of any one part and be evoked by a stimulus applied at one point. Such a co-operation of the whole for the benefit of the part involves the existence of direct paths from the stimulated point to all parts of the animal if the reaction is to take place with any promptitude. In the medusa we find a beginning of such 'long paths.' The general direction of the fibres of the network is radial, and there is a concentration of such fibres in the neighbourhood of the marginal bodies, so that an excitation can pass more readily from a sense organ to the manubrium than it can laterally along the circumference of the animal. Moreover a stimulus which is too slight to excite a reflex contraction of the muscular tissue may travel along the nerve tissue to each of the marginal ganglia and arouse these to a discharge of motor impulses. We have therefore in the medusa sensory cells of different sensibilities; central cells specially adapted to reacting to and reinforcing a

nerve stimulus started by a small change in the environment: a general nerve network propagating the excitatory changes in all directions, but with special ease in certain directions; and a reactive muscular tissue which carries out movements at the end of the chain of excitation, all the elements forming the chain being derived from epiblastic cells.

A further differentiation of a nervous system, such as that just described, must in the first place involve the laying down of more 'long paths' and the collection of the special 'central' cells into closely connected masses (ganglia), so as to concentrate the control of the reactions of the body, and to permit of the ready subordination of every part to the needs of the whole. A special direction is given to this development by the evolution of animals, such as worms and crustaceans, which are segmented and capable of locomotion. The fact that these animals are segmented determines the collection of the central cells into a chain of ganglia, one ganglion or pair of ganglia being provided for each segment. In the act of locomotion it is of advantage to the animal that those sense-organs or sensory cells which are *projicient*, *i.e.* which are stimulated by changes in the environment originating at a distance from the animal, should be collected together near that part which goes first, namely, the head end. Thus the projected sensations of sight, those which are excited by chemical changes in the surrounding medium and represent the sense of smell, and those which are specially aroused by vibrations in the surrounding medium and correspond to those which we call the sense of sound, are in the majority of these animals subserved by organs situated near the head end.

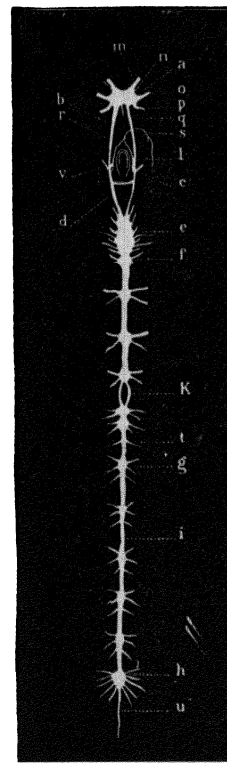


FIG. 137. View of central nervous system of crayfish. (After YUNG and VOGT.)

a, cerebral ganglion.
b, commissure.
e, subœsophageal ganglion.
g, first abdominal ganglion
l, œsophagus.
m, optic nerve.
p, antennary nerve.
s, stomato-gastric nerve.

The wisdom of a man is measured by his foresight The chances of an animal in the struggle for existence are determined by the degree to which the reactions of the animal to its *immediate* environment are held in check in response to stimuli arising from *approaching* events. An animal without power to see, smell, or hear its enemy will receive no impulse to flee until it is already within its enemy's jaws. It must therefore be of advantage to a segmented animal that the activities of the whole chain of segmented ganglia should be subservient to those central nerve-cells which are in direct connection with the projicient sense-organs at the head. The influence exerted by the head ganglia will be in the first place inhibitory of

the direct reaction excited in each segment by stimulation of its surface, and, for this influence to be propagated, long tracks must be laid down, joining up ganglion to ganglion and propagating impulses from the head ganglia to the most distant part of the chain. As a type of such a system we may refer to the crayfish.

In this animal the central nervous system (Fig. 137) consists of a chain of thirteen ganglia, namely, six abdominal ganglia, six thoracic ganglia, and one supraœsophageal or cerebral ganglion. In the abdomen and thorax the ganglia form a longitudinal series situated in the middle line of the ventral aspect of the body close to the integu-

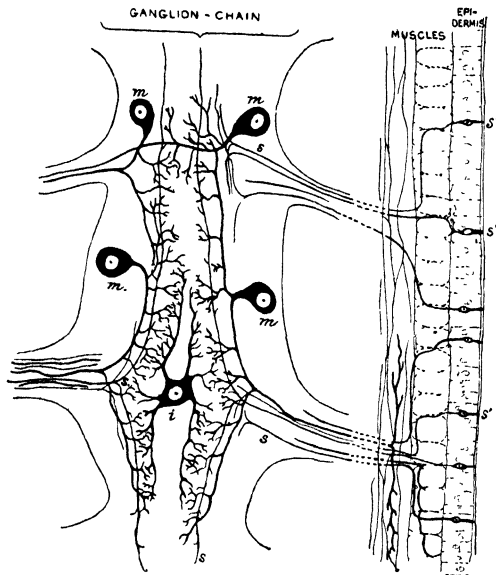


FIG. 138. Diagram of nervous system of a segmented invertebrate (earthworm or crayfish). (From SCHAFER, after RETZIUS)

s', sensory cells; *s*, afferent nerve fibres; *m*, motor neuron; *i*, central or intermediate cell.

ment. All give origin to a variable number of nerves, which are distributed partly to the muscles, partly to the skin and sense-organs. They are connected by longitudinal bands of nerve fibres or commissures, which are double, each ganglion being bilobed The most anterior of the thoracic ganglia, which is the largest, is marked at the side by notches, as if it were made up of several pairs of ganglia fused together. From this ganglion two commissures pass forward round the gullet to unite in front of this tube, behind the eyes, with the transversely elongated mass of ganglion cells and fibres called the supraœsophageal ganglion. This ganglion consists of three fused pairs of ganglia, which have been termed the *protocerebron*, the *deuterocerebron*, and the *tritocerebron*. The most anterior gives origin to the optic nerves, which run by the optic stalks to the eyes. From the middle ganglion on each side a tegumentary nerve passes to ramify in the integument and from the inferior surface the antennulary nerves pass to the internal antennæ. From these small branches are distributed to the organ of hearing. The posterior protuberance of the brain gives origin to the antennary nerves which pass to the large external antennæ of the animal. The first thoracic,

or subœsophageal, ganglion gives origin to ten pairs of nerves which are distributed to the mandibles, to the jaws or maxillæ, to the maxillipedes, and to the branchial appendages of the latter.

When we investigate the structural basis of such a nervous system we find that, as in medusa, the starting-point of the reflex arc is in certain *neuro-epithelial* cells (Fig. 138) lying on the surface of the body. These cells are spindle-shaped, and have one short process passing to the surface, and a long process which runs in a nerve fibre or collection of fibres towards the ganglion of the segment. Arrived at the ganglion it divides into two branches, which pass towards the two ends of the body and become lost in

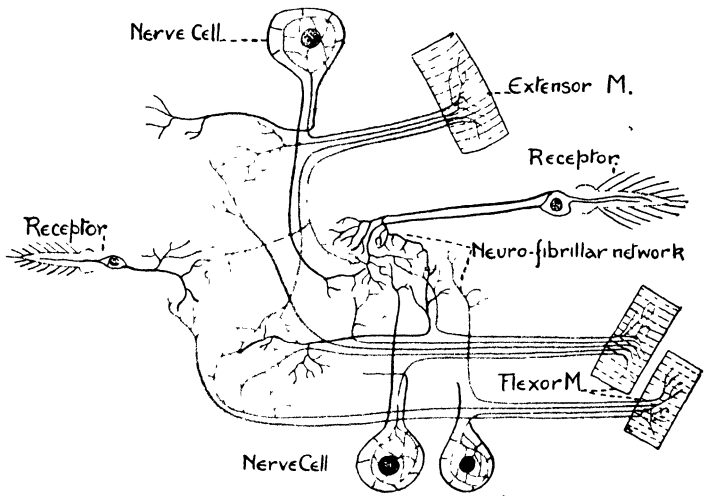


Fig. 139. Diagram of a reflex arc in a (neuro-fibrillar) invertebrate nervous system. (Bethe.) The efferent paths are coloured red, the afferent black.

the granular material forming the inner part of each ganglion The ganglia themselves consist internally of this 'punctuated substance' or granular material, and externally of a capsule of ganglion-cells Each of the ganglion-cells sends one thick process towards the centre, which rapidly divides, some of the branches passing into the granular material, while one branch passes outwards in a nerve to end in a network of fine fibrils within the muscles on the surface of the body. The nervous impulse excited in the sensory cell on the periphery travels therefore up a nerve fibre into the granular substance of the ganglion. From this granular substance it is collected by the fine branches of the ganglion-cells and is transmitted by them along the motor nerve fibre to the muscles. The central granular material consists entirely of a close felt-work of fibres, which may be regarded as processes either of the sensory nerve fibres or of the nerve cells. The typical reflex arc in this case therefore is formed by two nerve cells with their processes. Such a nerve cell with its processes is spoken of as a neuron. The first neuron, the recipient neuron, or receptor, is represented by the sensory cell with its

two processes in the granular material. The second neuron is formed by the ganglion-cell with its finely branched dendritic processes in the granular matter and its motor axon, which passes into the muscle fibres.

As to the manner in which the impulse passes from the branches of one cell into those of the other, opinions are still divided. The question will have to be more fully considered when we come to deal with the vertebrate nervous system. Many believe that there is no anatomical continuity between the two neurons, and that the excitatory change is transmitted by a mere contiguity, a change in one set of nerve-endings exciting a corresponding change in another set of nerve-endings in immediate contact with them By certain methods however it is possible to show the existence of an anatomical continuum throughout the whole nervous system in these invertebrate animals. Apathy and Bethe have demonstrated the presence of a continuous system of neurofibrils (much smaller than an individual nerve fibre), which, starting in a sensory cell, pass into a network of fibrils forming the greater part of the central granular matter. From this network neurofibrils run along the dendrites into the ganglion cells, forming there a small network through the centre of which a neurofibril is continued down the nerve processes again, and passes out along the motor nerve to end in a network of fibrils among the muscle fibres. In a system so constituted it is evident that, although an excitatory process passing along a given fibril may find certain paths easier than others, and so maintain a constant prescribed path through the nerve system, yet it will be possible, by sufficiently increasing the strength of the excitatory process, to cause it to travel in all directions in the central nervous system and to evoke in this way a general activity of all parts of the body, a condition in fact found to obtain in the normal animal. It is significant that, although a great number of fibrils pass into the bodies of the ganglion cells, yet in many cases, especially in crustaceans, fibrils are to be found sweeping from the *neuropilem* or nerve network of the granular substance into a nerve process, and thence into its motor axon without at any time entering the body of the cell (Fig. 139).

SECTION II

THE NERVOUS SYSTEM OF VERTEBRATES

In these, as in the invertebrata, the central nervous system is developed by an involution of the epiblast, revealing thereby its primitive relations to the surface of the body. At an early period in fœtal life, shortly after the formation of the two layers of epiblast and hypoblast, a thickening is observed in the epiblast. This thickening soon gives place to a groove, the neural groove (Fig. 140), and the walls of the groove folding over form a

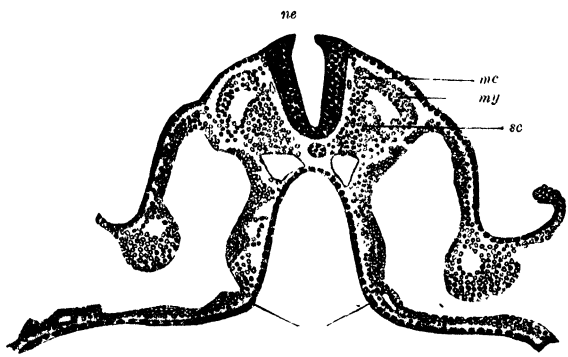


Fig. 140. Transverse section of human embryo of 2·4 mm. to show developing neural canal (T. H. Bryce.)

nc, neural canal; *mc*, muscleplate; *my*, outer wall of somite; *sc*, sclerotome.

canal, the neural canal, which is dilated at the head end of the embryo to form three enlargements known as the cerebral vesicles.

When first formed the canal is oval in cross-section, its wall being made up of a layer of columnar cells between the outer extremities of which are seen smaller rounded cells. The internal layer of columnar cells sends a process peripherally which branches at the end so as to form a close meshwork of fibres. These fibres branch more and more as development progresses, and eventually form the supporting tissue of the adult central nervous tissue, known as the neuroglia. As the wall of the canal grows in thickness, some of the cells may wander outwards and form neuroglia-cells with numerous radiating branches. In the adult nervous system little is left of these cells except their nuclei, so that the neuroglia appears as a close felt-work of fibres, to which here and there nuclei are attached. These cells

are formed from the most superficial layer of the invaginated epiblast, and are spoken of as *spongioblasts*. The deeper layer of cells, which are to give rise to the permanent nerve-cells, and are therefore known as *neuroblasts*, rapidly divide and form a thick layer surrounding the internal layer of spongioblasts, through which pass the peripheral processes of the latter. When first formed these cells have no processes. Later on each neuroblast acquires a pear shape, the stalk of the pear having a somewhat bulbous extremity (Fig. 142). The stalk continually elongates, and the elongated process may leave the spinal cord altogether and grow outwards to any part of the body of the embryo, or may pass to other parts of the central nervous system. This long process of the developing nerve cell is known as the axon Some time after its formation other processes grow out from the cell, which soon branch and end in the immediate neighbourhood of the cell. The axons of the cells near the ventral part of the neural tube grow out to the different muscles of the body, where they end in close connection with the muscular fibres by an arborisation which forms the end-plate. They provide an efferent path for impulses running from the central nervous system to the musculature of the body. The afferent channel is formed in a somewhat different manner. Even before the neural groove has closed in, a thickening of the epiblast is seen immediately external to the groove on each side This thickening becomes divided into a series of collections of cells lying immediately under the epiblast on the lateral and dorsal surface of the neural canal. The cells, which are at first round or oval, send off two processes in opposite directions so that they become bi-polar (Fig. 142). One process passes into the central nervous system, where it divides, some of its branches being distributed in the nervous system at the same level, while others run a considerable distance towards the head immediately outside the tube of nerve cells. The other process grows downwards, along with the processes from the ventral cells of the tube, towards the periphery of the body, where it ends in close connection with the surface in the various sense organs of the skin and muscles. These collections of bi-polar cells form the posterior root ganglia. In fishes they retain their primitive character throughout life, but in mammals the bi-polar cell is to be found only in the spiral and vestibular ganglia which give origin to the fibres of the eighth nerve. In all the other ganglia the shape of the cell becomes modified by an approximation of the points of attachment of the two processes until

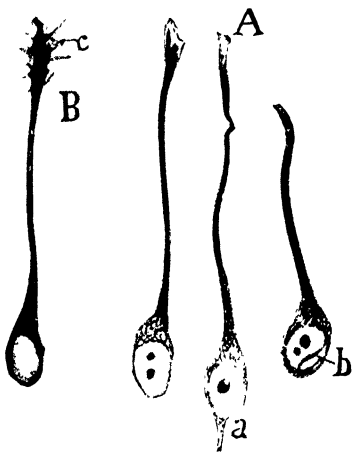


FIG. 141. Neuroblasts from the spinal cord of a chick embryo. (CAJAL.)
A, three neuroblasts stained to show neurofibrils; *a*, a bi-polar cell.
B, a neuroblast showing the 'incremental cone' *c*.

finally the cell becomes uni-polar, giving off one process which divides by a T-shaped junction into two, one of which runs towards the spinal cord, while the other takes a peripheral course as the afferent nerve fibre. The central nervous system thus becomes provided with a ' way in ' and a ' way out ' for the chain of impulses concerned in a nervous reaction or reflex action. The further development of the spinal cord is mainly determined by the exten-

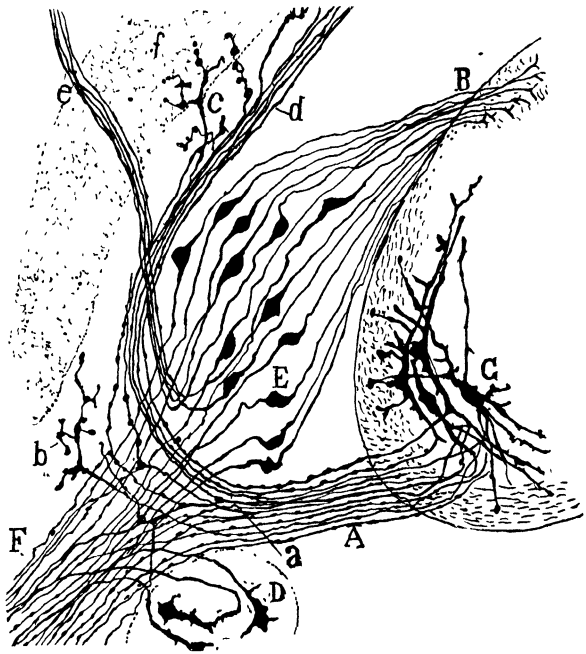


FIG. 142. Section through developing spinal cord and nerve roots from chick embryo of fifth day. (CAJAL)

A, ventral root; B, dorsal root; C, motor nerve cells; D, sympathetic ganglion cells; E, spinal ganglion cells still bi-polar; F, mixed nerve; *b*, *c*, *d*, motor nerve fibres to *f*, developing spinal muscles; *c*, a sensory nerve-trunk.

sion of the axons of the cells outside the tube of cells themselves, and by the provision of the ' long paths ' which are a necessary condition of increased efficiency of the reacting organ. Some time after the outgrowth of the axon a medullary sheath is formed, apparently by the agency of the axon itself, so that each group of axons leaving or entering the cord forms a bundle of medullated nerve fibres. The long branches of the posterior or dorsal roots running up towards the head form a mass of fibres behind the tube of cells known as the posterior columns. Fibres starting in the spinal cord itself run upwards and downwards to end in other parts of the cord, or in the more anterior divisions of the central nervous system forming the brain, and surround the neural tube on its ventral and lateral aspects with a sheath of white matter. To these white fibres are added others, which take origin in the brain and pass all the way down the cord. Meanwhile the cells

themselves become separated by the ramifications between them of the branches of axons entering the cord, as well as of the dendrites of the cells themselves. Thus, in its adult form, the spinal cord consists of a central mass of nerve cells and fibres, known as the grey matter, which is encased in a sheath of white matter formed of medullated nerve fibres. The cord itself is cylindrical in shape, and is divided into two symmetrical halves by the anterior and posterior fissures. In each half of the cord the grey matter on cross-section is crescentic in shape, presenting an anterior or ventral horn and a posterior or dorsal horn, and is connected with the corresponding mass in the other half of the cord by grey matter known as the anterior and posterior grey commissures. Between the two grey commissures is the central canal, relatively very minute when compared with the condition in the fœtus and lined by a single layer of columnar ciliated epithelium, the cells of which are directly descended from the neural epithelium lining the medullary canal.

THE STRUCTURE OF NERVE CELLS

In the adult animal a typical nerve cell, such as those forming a prominent feature in the anterior horn of the spinal cord, is a large cell with many branches. It has a large vesicular nucleus with very little chromatin,

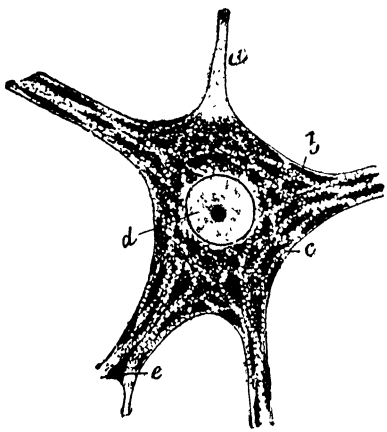


FIG. 143. Nerve cell from the spinal cord, stained by Nissl's method.
a, axis-cylinder process or axon; *b*, protoplasm of cell, consisting of *c*, fibrillated ground substance, and *e*, the granules of Nissl; *d*, nucleus. (LENHOSSEK.)

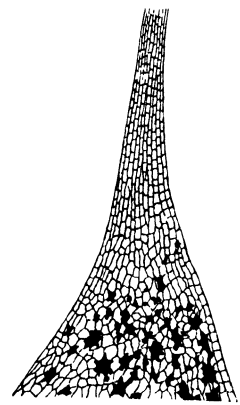
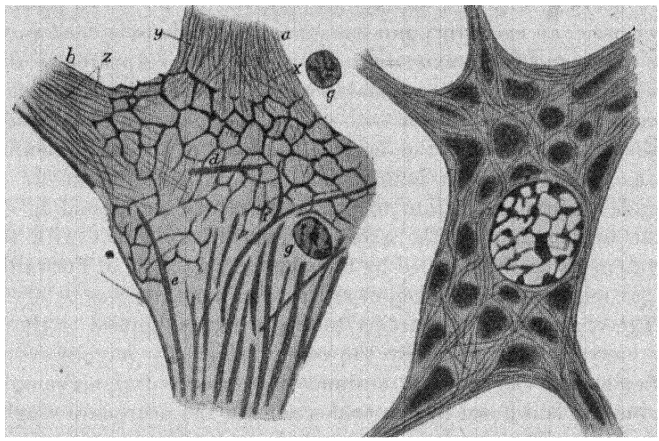


FIG. 144. The point of origin of the axon, the 'nerve-hillock, highly magnified, to show absence of Nissl's granules from the origin of the process. (HELD.)

which may be collected into one or two nucleoli. The body of the cell presents different appearances according to the manner in which it has been treated for histological examination. When separated from the surrounding tissues by means of dissociating fluids it may present traces of striation, the individual striæ running from one process to another of the cell. When treated fresh with methylene blue, or hardened by alcohol

or corrosive sublimate and stained with methylene blue or toluidine blue, the protoplasm is seen to contain angular masses which are deeply coloured with the dye (Fig. 143). These masses are known as the Nissl granules or bodies. By other methods it is possible to demonstrate that the whole protoplasm of the cell between the Nissl bodies is pervaded by fine fibrils, which enter the cell from the processes and may run out of the cell by the axon or may run into some of the other shorter processes (Fig. 146). The processes of the cell, as is evident from their development, are of two kinds. The axon which becomes continuous with the axis cylinder of the medullated



FIGS. 145 and 146. Nerve cells from spinal cord. (BETHE.)
Fig. 145, showing Golgi network, and neurofibrils · *d*, *e*, *f*, junctions of axons with Golgi network. Fig. 146, showing neurofibrils and Nissl bodies.

nerve fibre arises from a part of the cell body known as the *axon hillock*, which is the only part of the cell free from Nissl bodies (Fig. 144). The other processes, which may be very numerous, are known as the *dendrites*. They are generally thicker than the axon at their origin from the cell, but rapidly diminish in size as they give off branches, the branches apparently terminating freely in the grey matter in the immediate neighbourhood of the cell. In specimens stained by the Golgi method the dendrites may sometimes present a somewhat serrated outline. The Nissl bodies of the cell extend some way into the dendrites

A nerve cell with all its processes, axon, and dendrites is spoken of as a *neuron*. From the development of the central nervous system in vertebrates, it is evident that the nervous path of every reaction must be made up of two or more neurons. If we take, for example, the simplest possible reaction which might be effected through a single segment of the spinal cord, we see that the afferent impulse might be started by some stimulus applied to the ramifications in the skin of the distal processes of the posterior root ganglion cell (*cf.* Fig. 132). The nerve impulse so started is carried by the nerve fibre

past the T-shaped junction in the posterior root ganglion into the cord, and along a branch of the entering nerve fibre which runs right across the cord to terminate in the neighbourhood of the anterior horn cells Here the impulse must be transmitted in some way to the dendrites or body of one of the large motor nerve cells in the anterior horn, whence it is carried along the axon of the cell, leaving the cord by the anterior root and passing down a peripheral nerve to the end-plate on a muscle fibre. Here again by some means the arrival of the impulse excites the muscle to contract. This reaction never takes place in the contrary sense, *i.e.* no impulse started in the motor nerve can travel back through the spinal cord and along the sensory nerve. Although an impulse excited in the nerve passes easily to the muscle, an excitatory process started in the muscle itself is confined to this tissue and never extends to the nerve fibre. Apparently the same rule holds good within the grey matter of the central nervous system, where two neurons come into relation with one another. An impulse passes easily from the axon of one into the dendrites and cell of the other neuron, but, so far as we are aware, it is impossible by exciting an axon to cause a retrograde wave of excitation to pass through its corresponding cell and into the terminations of the axons in immediate contact with the cell. This statement has been called by Sherrington the ' Law of Forward Direction.' It might be also spoken of as the *irreciprocal conduction of the nerve arc*. The character of a reaction to any stimulus, applied to the surface of the body, is determined by the course which the impulse, excited in the afferent nerves, takes on entrance into the central nervous system. This course is laid down by the connections of the neurons through which the nerve impulse passes. In the central nervous system therefore, more than in any other part of the body, function is directly dependent on structure. Theoretically if we had a perfect knowledge of the connections of the neurons in the central nervous system and knew the nerve fibres affected by any given stimulus, we should be able to prophesy exactly the result of such stimulus. In the case of the simpler reactions this is already possible, but in the higher parts of the nervous system the enormous complexity of the systems of neurons excludes any possibility of our forming more than a general idea as to the nerve paths traversed in any given reaction : and the variations which exist from individual to individual must always prevent in the intact animal an absolute prediction of the results of any stimulus.

SECTION III

GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF REFLEX ACTIONS

THERE are certain features common to all reactions, carried out through the intervention of the central nervous system, which must be regarded as determined by the properties of the neurons, *i e* the conducting links in the chain of excitatory tissues intervening between the stimulated spot on the exterior and the reacting tissue, muscle or gland. These characteristics may be roughly classified as follows:

(1) **LOCALISATION.** In a simple system of neurons a given stimulus will nearly always produce the same reaction In a frog possessing only a spinal cord, the upper parts of the central nervous system having been destroyed, any harmful stimulus applied to a toe will cause a lifting of the leg. If the motor nerve to the gastrocnemius be excited, the whole muscle contracts. If one of the nerve roots entering into the formation of the sciatic nerve be excited, only certain fibres of the gastrocnemius contract, the locality of the reacting fibres being determined by their connection with the excited nerve fibres. In the same way the contraction of certain muscles of the leg, in response to a stimulus applied to the skin of the foot, is determined by the fact that the nerve fibres, which carry the impulses from the toe into the spinal cord, divide there and make connections with the motor neurons, whose axons are distributed to the several muscles involved in the reaction. The connection of the sensory with the motor neuron may be direct, but in most cases the impulse has to pass through intermediate neurons before arriving at the motor neurons The path of the impulse however, in spite of its enormous extension, is as definite as is the path from an excited motor nerve root to a muscle fibre.

(2) **DELAY.** Instead of one nerve-ending intervening between the stimulated nerve and the reacting tissue, there will be, in the case of the reflex action, two, three, or more nerve-endings interpolated in the path of the impulse. These nerve-endings are the fields of conjunction, the *synapses*, between the axon of one neuron and the dendrites and cell body of the neuron next in the chain.

We have seen that there is a distinct difference between the latent period of a muscle excited through its nerve as compared with the latent period when excited directly, and we ascribed this latent period to a delay in the motor end-plate. We should expect therefore to find that the delay or

latent period in the case of a reflex action, *i.e.* the lost time in the conversion of an afferent into an efferent impulse in the central nervous system, would be appreciable and would increase with the complexity of the response—that is, with the number of neurons involved in the reaction. Such is indeed the case.

In determining the actual 'lost time' in the central nervous system for any given reflex, it is necessary to subtract from the total delay, interposed between the application of the stimulus and the resultant movement, the time taken by the impulse in travelling to and from the central nervous system, as well as the latent period of the muscles themselves. The remainder is known as the 'reduced reflex time.' Wundt found in the frog, when a reflex contraction of the gastrocnemius was excited by a stimulation of a posterior root of the same side, that the reduced reflex time was ·008 sec. For a crossed reflex the delay was increased by ·004 sec. If we assume that one additional neuron is involved in the crossed reflex, the lost time at a synapse would be ·004 sec.; if two cells are intercalated, the synapse delay would be only ·002 sec. Since the uncrossed reflex has a delay of ·008 sec, at least two, and possibly four, synapses are involved in the path of this simple reflex.

The blinking excited by stimulation of the eyelid has a reduced reflex time of ·047 sec.

(3) **SUMMATION.** When contractile tissues, such as striated or unstriated muscle, are excited by single shocks, a certain minimal strength of stimulus is necessary in order to produce a contraction. Weaker stimuli are spoken of as sub-minimal, and when applied singly have apparently no effect on the muscle. In dealing with the properties of involuntary muscle we saw that a sub-minimal stimulus is not necessarily devoid of effect because it fails to evoke a contraction, since, if repeated at sufficiently frequent intervals, a *summation* of stimulus occurs, so that at the fifth or sixth application a stimulus, which was previously ineffective, becomes effective and a contraction results. The muscle will now continue to respond to each stimulus, but, if the excitations be discontinued for a time, reapplication of a stimulus of the same strength becomes once more ineffective. This summation of stimulus is a prominent feature in all reflex actions, so much so that it may be often impossible to evoke a reaction to a very strong single induction shock, whereas the application of a tetanising current too weak to be felt on the tongue may produce a marked reaction. We shall have occasion later on to deal with special examples of this summation of stimulus.

(4) **FATIGUE.** In the muscle-nerve preparation the weakest point and that which soonest suffers from fatigue is the end-plate, or rather the field of conjunction of nerve fibre and muscle fibre. In the central nervous system the synapses of the different neurons are equally susceptible, and since several of such synapses are involved in every reflex action, we should expect to find that the central nervous system would show signs of fatigue before the peripheral structures. If a given reaction be repeatedly elicited by applying a stimulus to a certain area of the surface, the reaction becomes

feebler and finally disappears altogether long before any signs of fatigue in the motor apparatus can be detected by stimulation of the motor nerve itself. The fatigue is produced equally well if the reaction be excited by stimulating a sensory nerve directly, and since we know that it is practically impossible to fatigue nerve fibres, we must conclude that the seat of fatigue is in the grey matter of the spinal cord itself.

(5) **'BLOCK' OR RESISTANCE.** In the central nervous system there is an absolute block to the passage of an impulse backwards through a synapse, *i.e.* from a nerve-cell or its dendrites into the end ramifications of an axon. The phenomena of fatigue show that there is a certain degree of resistance at the synapse to the passage of an impulse in the normal direction, and that this resistance is rapidly increased under the conditions which produce fatigue. When we study the structure of the central nervous system more fully, we find that although there are certain shortest possible paths, *i e.* ones involving few neurons, for every impulse arriving at the central nervous system, yet so extensive is the branching of the entering nerve fibres and so complex are the neuron systems with which they come in connection that an impulse entering along one given fibre could spread to practically every neuron in the spinal cord and brain. Such a result is indeed observed in animals poisoned by strychnine. In such animals the slightest stimulus applied to any part of the skin excites strong tonic spasms in the whole musculature of the body. Every single nerve fibre, that is to say, can discharge into every motor neuron of the cord. That this result does not ensue on localised stimulation in a normal animal is dependent on the varying resistance to the passage of an impulse into the several neurons with which the entrant fibre comes in relation. A small stimulus will discharge only along the few neurons where the resistance is lowest. Increase of the stimulus, either by increase of its strength or by summation of weak stimuli, will enable the impulse to spread along more neurons and therefore will elicit a more widespread response. Only when the 'blocks' are entirely removed by the administration of strychnine, or when the stimuli are abnormally powerful and long continued, will the impulse spread to all regions of the central nervous system, so that response becomes general and inco-ordinate instead of local and adapted to the stimulus.

(6) **FACILITATION OR 'BAHNUNG.'** The passage of a nervous impulse across a synapse or series of synapses in the central nervous system has a twofold effect. If the passage be too often repeated, phenomena of fatigue are produced and there is an increase of the block at each synapse. If however the stimulus be not excessive and the reaction not too frequently evoked, the effect of passage of an impulse once is to diminish the resistance, so that a second application of the stimulus evokes the reaction more easily. The process of summation in fact is chiefly in the direction of removal of block. We have a close analogy to this process of facilitation in the 'staircase phenomenon' observed in cardiac and unstriated muscle. In these tissues the repetition of a sub-minimal stimulus renders it in time effective, and then repetition of the now effective stimulus causes a gradually

increasing height of contraction, which depends on the state of the contracting tissue itself and cannot be evoked by changes in the strength of the stimulus. This process of facilitation or 'Bahnung' is of great interest in connection with the development of 'long paths' in the central nervous system, and more especially with the acquirement of new reactions by the higher animals. The Law of Facilitation is really the Law of Habit. When an impulse has passed once through a certain set of neurons to the exclusion of others it will tend, other things being equal, to take the same course on a future occasion, and each time that it traverses this path the resistances in the path will be smaller. Education is the laying down of nerve channels in the central nervous system, while still plastic, by this process of 'facilitation' along fit paths, combined with inhibition (by pain) in the other unfit paths. Memory itself has the process of facilitation as its neural basis.

(7) **INHIBITION.** The constant occurrence of a reaction in response to a given stimulus is obtained only if care be taken to isolate the segment of the central nervous system involved from the entry of other afferent stimuli. As a rule, if two stimuli be applied simultaneously at different points, the reaction which ensues will not be a combined one, the resultant of the reactions which would be normally conditioned by each single stimulus, but will be a response to one of the stimuli, which we must therefore regard as the more effective. The reaction to the other stimulus is either abolished altogether or comes on after a considerable period of delay. The central nervous system can apparently attend to only one thing at a time. In physiological terms we should say that every effective reaction inhibits every other reaction. In the spinal cord of the frog the normal withdrawal of the foot in response to stimulation of the toe of the same side can be inhibited by strong stimulation of the other sciatic nerve, by stimulation of the spinal cord at a higher level, or by stimulation of the optic lobes. Immediately after pithing the brain of the frog, the whole animal becomes flaccid and motionless, and for the next few minutes it is impossible to elicit any reaction by stimulation, however strong, applied to the skin of the body. In the production of this condition of 'shock' the inhibition of all the spinal centres, produced by the strong stimulation of the injury to the brain and medulla, plays at any rate an important part. We may say that the passage of an impulse through a chain of neurons diminishes the block for subsequent impulses at each synapse that it traverses, but increases during its passage the block in all the adjacent synapses.

In dealing with the special reactions of the spinal cord we shall have occasion to refer more fully and in greater detail to many of these properties which are characteristic of all reflexes. Before treating of the functions of the separate parts of the central nervous system in the higher mammals, it may be of interest to consider the exact nature of the structure intervening between neuron and neuron at each field of conjunction or synapse, as well as the significance of the two chief elements of the central nervous system, *nerve cell* and *nerve fibre*, in the production of co-ordinated purposive reactions.

SECTION IV

NATURE OF THE CONNECTION BETWEEN NEURONS

THE study of the development of the central nervous system in higher animals has shown that this system is made up of neurons, the connections of which determine the possible paths of impulses in the adult cord. The first stage in the development of the neuron is a single cell without processes, and it is only by the growth of these processes out from the cell that the spinal cord becomes capable of serving as an aggregate of conducting paths. Moreover the deferred acquisition of an influence of one neuron on the next neuron in the line of impulse, or at any rate on the peripheral tissue which receives the end arborisation of its axon, is shown by the fact that entire destruction of the spinal cord in the embryo at an early stage in its development does not prevent in any way the development of the voluntary muscles (Harrison); although, after birth, a severance of the connection between spinal cord and skeletal muscle leads to a rapid degeneration and atrophy of the latter. In the muscle-nerve preparation there is an apparent break of structure at the termination of the nerve in the muscle fibre, any continuity between nerve-ending and contractile substance being subserved by undifferentiated protoplasm There is therefore no difficulty in conceiving a propagation across a similar nerve-ending or synapse, between the axon of one neuron and the cell body or dendrites of another neuron. If however the conception we have formed above of the evolution of a nervous system from a continuous conducting protoplasmic network, by a process of 'facilitation' attended by histological differentiation, be correct, we should expect to find in the fully developed brain and spinal cord some traces at any rate of continuity throughout the whole system of neurons. The question as to the existence of anatomical continuity from neuron to neuron has been hotly discussed both for vertebrates and invertebrates. In the case of the latter, evidence in favour of the continuity of neuro-fibrillæ from sensory surface to reacting tissue is very strong. Many observers, especially Apathy, Bethe, and Held, have described a similar continuity in the nervous system of mammals. The last-named observer regards this continuity as a product of later development and as due to a process of concrescence occurring between the axon terminations and the bodies of the nerve cells with which they come in contact. It is easy to show the existence of a fibrillar structure both in the nerve cell and in the

nerve fibre (Fig. 147). The axis cylinder of the nerve fibre can be regarded as made up of fine fibrillæ embedded in an interfibrillar substance. At the nodes of Ranvier the interfibrillar substance is interrupted, the fibrillæ alone extending into the next internode and representing the continuous structure which determines the conducting power of the nerve fibre. In the nerve cell the fibrillæ occupy all the space between the Nissl bodies, passing from dendrite to dendrite, and many of them from all the dendrites and all parts of the cell sweeping through the axon hillock to form the fibrillæ of the nerve fibre. The existence of these fibrillar structures in nerve cell and nerve

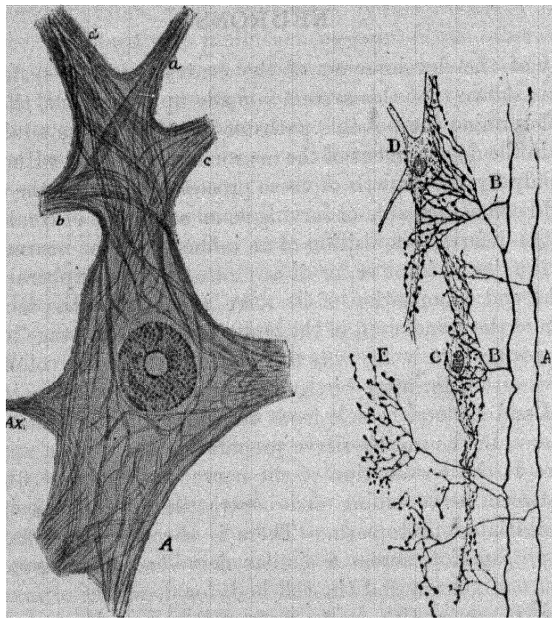


FIG. 147. Part of an anterior cornual cell from the calf's spinal cord, stained to show neurofibrils (BETHE.)

Ax, axon ; *a*, *b*, *c*. dendrites.

FIG. 148. Arborisation of collaterals from the posterior root-fibres round the cells of the posterior horn (RAMÓN Y CAJAL.)

fibre is accepted by most histologists. The question however of the connection between the fibrillæ of one axon and those of the next neuron, *i.e.* the histology of the synapse, presents much greater difficulties and has excited much difference of opinion. If we examine a nerve cell such as a cell of Purkinje of the cerebellum, or a cell of Clarke's column in the cord, we find that it is surrounded by a thick basket-work of fibres which are the arborisations or end terminations of the axons which pass to the cell to enter into functional relationships with it (Figs. 148 and 149). This pericellular network is of great extent and may equal in total diameter the diameter of the cell itself. Whether the basket-work is really a network,

or merely a felt-work in which the fine fibres intertwine among each other without becoming actually continuous at any points, is difficult to make out. On the periphery of the cell itself another network has been described and is known as the Golgi network (Fig. 150). This has been displayed both by the process of impregnation with silver chromate (Golgi method), as well as by staining with methylene blue. Some authors have regarded this network as an artefact due to precipitation of albuminous fluids on the surface of the cell. According to Bethe however, the Golgi network on the one hand receives fibres from the encircling pericellular basket-work of axons,

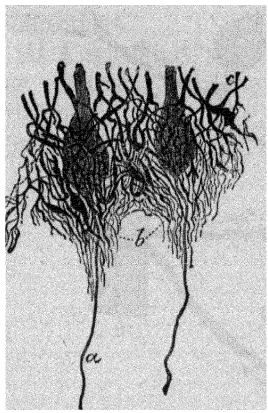
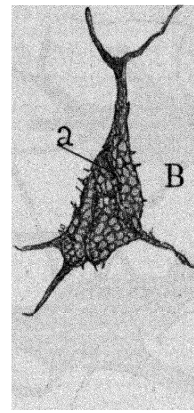


FIG. 149. Basket-work of fibres around two cells of Purkinje. (CAJAL.)

a, axis-cylinder or nerve-fibre process of one of the corpuscles of Purkinje; *b*, fibres prolonged over the beginning of the axis-cylinder process; *c*, branches of the nerve-fibre processes of cells of the molecular layer, felted together around the bodies of the corpuscles of Purkinje.



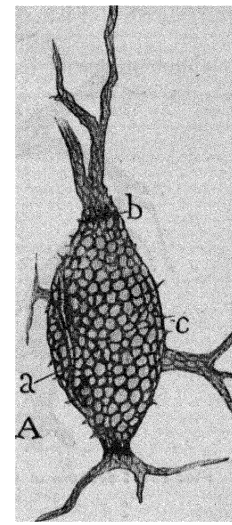


FIG. 150. Superficial network of Golgi surrounding two cells from the cerebral cortex of the cat; Erlich's method. (CAJAL.)

A, large cell; B, small cell; *a*, *a*, folds in the network; *b*, a ring-like condensation of the network at the poles of the larger cell; *c*, spinous projections from the surface.

and on the other hand gives off towards the interior of the cell fine fibrils, which are continuous with the neurofibrillæ of the cell and pass out in its axon. The diagrammatic course of a nerve impulse according to Bethe is represented in the accompanying diagram (Fig. 151). An impulse starting from the periphery of the body travels up the distal process of the posterior root ganglion-cell, passes either through the cell or directly to the central process, and travels along this to the terminations of the posterior root fibres round a posterior horn-cell. Here it passes into the peri-cellular basket-work or axon network, thence into the Golgi network and along the fibrillæ of the cell out by the fibrillæ of the axon and so to a fresh synapse with a cell of the anterior horn.

There are certain physiological difficulties in the acceptance of this

doctrine of continuity through the central nervous system. Even if it be true, it would not in any way upset the importance of the neuron theory. Every plant or animal individual must be regarded as a protoplasmic continuum. With growth of the living matter, its metabolic functions demand the dispersion of nuclear material through the protoplasm, and this is effected by division of the nucleus. Considerations of strength and rigidity demand the division of the protoplasm into compartments or cells which, at first at any rate, remain in protoplasmic continuity. This division has probably a further advantage in that lesions of parts of the individual entail merely the death of the cells immediately affected and do not necessarily

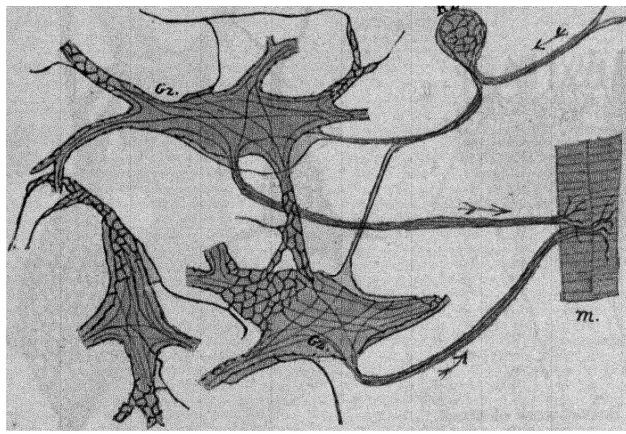


FIG. 151. Schema of the neurofibrillar *continuum*, involved in an ordinary reflex act, in a vertebrate nervous system. (BETHE.)

spread to the whole organism. Thus in the central nervous system injury to one axon causes degeneration of the axon below the point of section, but the degeneration stops short at the end arborisation and does not spread into the next neuron. If we assume that, in consequence of the straitness of the path, the propagation through the fibrillæ is especially difficult in the synapse, most of the phenomena described above as characteristic of the reactions which take place in the central nervous system can be easily explained on the theory of continuity of the fibrillæ The serious difficulty in the acceptance of this theory is however the ' Law of Forward Direction,' *i.e.* the fact that an impulse will pass from an axon to the next neuron, but will not pass backwards across the synapse from the cell body to the contiguous axon.

Bethe suggests that this rule of Forward Direction, which is possibly present only in the more highly developed nervous systems, may be due to a species of 'polarity' of the nerve fibril, of such a nature that an impulse is strengthened and so assisted on its passage in the normal direction, but is diminished and finally abolished when it passes in the opposite direction Such an explanation is unsatisfactory, since there is absolutely no experimental evidence of the existence of such polarity in a nerve fibre; all the evidence that we have at present points to a nerve fibre having the power of

propagating equally well in either direction. It is certainly more useful to regard a synapse as of the nature of a motor nerve-ending, in which an impulse arriving along the branches of an axon excites a fresh impulse in the excitable tissue, *i.e.* the nerve-cell, with which the branches of the axon come in contact. Moreover the neurons are formed without any structural connection with the future destination of their axons. These grow out as processes with thickened amœboid extremities. Harrison has shown that the growth of the axon from the cell may be observed under the microscope in a neuroblast separated altogether from the body, and kept on a warm stage in a thin layer of coagulated lymph.

It is possible that we may have to distinguish two types of nervous systems, viz. :

(*a*) A neurofibrillar type, peculiar to invertebrata, with conduction in all directions.

(*b*) A synaptic type, in which the Law of Forward Direction holds, of later evolution, and forming the greater part of the nervous system of vertebrata.

SECTION V

FUNCTIONS OF THE NERVE CELL

WHEN a unicellular organism, containing a single nucleus, is cut into two parts, both continue to live for some time, each performing active movements and evincing all the phenomena which we associate with activity and therefore with destructive katabolism. For the continued existence of a cell the processes of constructive metabolism, or anabolism, must take place *pari passu* with those of disintegration, and for this the presence of the nucleus is necessary. Hence, in a few days, the half cell with the nucleus has repaired its loss and become once again a normal individual, whereas the half without a nucleus undergoes degeneration and death. The axon of a nerve cell can be regarded as analogous to a long pseudopodium of an amœba. Like this, if cut away from that part of the cell containing the nucleus, though capable for a time of discharging its active function of propagation of excitatory impulses, yet it finally dies, death of the nerve fibre occurring in the mammal within three to five days after separation of the axon from the cell. Every nerve cell therefore may be looked upon as a trophic centre of the nerve fibre proceeding from it as well as of the medullary sheath, which is practically a product or secretion of the axis cylinder. But has the nerve cell any more important functions to discharge? It has long been customary to endow the nerve cell with all the properties which are distinctive of a nervous system, and to ascribe to it the active part in the origination of automatic actions, in the reflection of afferent impulses, and in the supply of energy to all nervous processes. That the passage of impulses through the nerve centres requires the expenditure of energy by these centres can be proved in various ways. In the first place, we have the fact that in all nervous systems, at any rate of the higher animals, arrangements are made for their free supply with oxygen. Very short deprivation of oxygen causes a complete block throughout the system, in many cases preceded by a short period of increased excitability or ease of transmission. If, in the rabbit, the thoracic aorta be clamped for a few minutes, the hind limbs become paralysed, and if the obstruction be continued for half an hour, there is widespread degeneration and death of the cells with their fibres in the grey matter of the lumbar and sacral cord. In the second place, the ready production of fatigue of the nervous system points to a considerable using up of material as a condition of the passage of nerve impulses. In many instances moreover, an infinitesimal stimulus travelling up a few nerve fibres may excite widespread activity of the whole central nervous system with the discharge of impulses along

practically every nerve of the body. Thus the presence of a crumb on the larynx will excite impulses travelling up the superior laryngeal nerve, which in themselves can involve but little expenditure of energy. The result however of their arrival at the central nervous system is the discharge of impulses along the motor nerves causing spasmodic contractions of almost every muscle in the body. It seems beyond doubt then that energy is evolved in the central nervous system as a result of metabolic changes, and that energy may be added to impulses passing through the central nervous

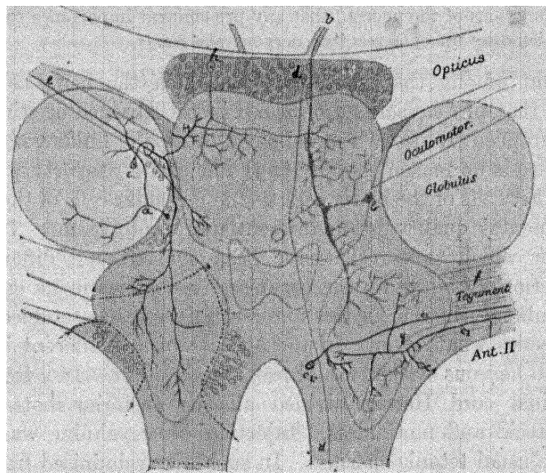


FIG. 152. Diagrammatic representation of the brain of Carcinus to show the parts involved in Bethe's experiment. The dotted line *x* shows the incision employed to isolate the neuropilem of the ganglion of the second tentacle.

system, which therefore acts as a relay of force. But this activity does not necessarily require the presence or co-operation of nucleated cells. In dealing with the nature of a nerve impulse we had reason to conclude that there may be an actual, though minimal, liberation of energy in the axis cylinder with the passage of each nerve impulse. The non-nucleated parts of a cell, whether the axon or the cell body, are equally capable of this evolution of energy, and we might conceive therefore of a nervous system which, existing for a few days, might act as a normal reflex centre in the entire absence of the nucleated cell bodies

This conception has been realised by Bethe in an experiment in the crab (Carcinus menas). In this animal the reflex movements of the tentacle are carried out by a ganglion situated at its base. As in the other crustacea, the cell bodies in this ganglion lie outside the mass of neurofibrils in the centre, forming a sort of capsule (Fig. 152). Bethe was able, under the dissecting microscope, to remove the cell bodies without interfering with the nerves entering or leaving the central mass of fibrils. All the nerve processes with their connections were therefore left intact. In animals, operated in this way, Bethe found that for two or three days the tentacle reacted normally to stimuli applied to its surface. The reflex functions of the ganglion were not in any way affected by the removal of the nucleated bodies of the cells. A similar experi-

ment would be impossible in the central nervous system of vertebrates, since impulses must of necessity pass through the cell body on their way from the termination of one axon to the beginning of the next. In the spinal root ganglion however, most of the cells lie on the surface. In the rabbit Steinach exposed a posterior root ganglion, separating it from all its vascular supply, but leaving its nervous attachments intact. The wound was opened every day for the next few days and an instrument passed under the ganglion so as to divide any newly forming vessels. As a result of the deprivation of blood-supply the ganglion-cells died. But Steinach found that nerve impulses were still conducted perfectly well through the ganglion at a time when microscopic examination showed a complete atrophy of all cells. It is therefore only in virtue of the fact that the nerve-cell is the seat of the nucleus, and therefore of the assimilative functions of the neuron, that any pre-eminent importance can be ascribed to it in the building up of a reactive nervous system.

Prominent among the functions with which the nerve cell has been endowed is that of *automaticity of action* in the absence of stimulus other than that supplied by its own metabolism or by the fluids which bathe it. *A priori* there is no reason to deny to the neuron a property which is possessed by other cells of the body, such as the muscular cells of the heart, and is a fundamental quality of undifferentiated protoplasm. The purpose however for which these cells have been evolved and differentiated is that of reaction, of adapting the organism to changes in its environment, and it is doubtful whether, in this differentiation, it has retained any automatic properties whatsoever. In the absence of any afferent impulse the whole central nervous system would probably be inert. In a frog retaining only the spinal cord Hering divided all the posterior roots. The frog remained flaccid and motionless. Injection of strychnine was powerless to evoke the usual tetanic spasms. In such a strychninised frog however, it was necessary only to open the wound and touch one of the divided posterior roots to throw the whole body into convulsions As shown by Sherrington and Mott, division of all the afferent nerves coming from the upper limb in monkey or man entirely abolishes all such contractions of the limb, as are usually affected through the intermediation of the cerebral cortex. Cutting off the major portion of the afferent impulses to the respiratory centre does not, it is true, abolish all respiratory discharges, but converts the rhythmic respirations into a series of inspiratory spasms which are repeated at long intervals and are entirely inadequate for the proper aeration of the blood. According to Sherrington a repetition on the mammal of Hering's experiment does not lead to the same results, since a spasmodic discharge is produced from the isolated spinal cord as a result of asphyxia. But it is doubtful whether in this case there was not some continuous excitation of the cord going on, as a result of the closure of the demarcation current in the cut ends of the posterior roots by the body fluids. It is possible that the neurons possess some automatic power, *i.e.* some power of initiating nervous processes, as a result of changes in the fluids surrounding them. This automaticity however is not a prominent feature of the nervous system, which has been evolved as a purely reactive mechanism to the afferent impulses resulting from the material changes continually taking place in the environment of the animal.

SECTION VI

STRUCTURE OF THE SPINAL CORD

In the higher representatives of the invertebrate class, the central nervous system consists, as we have seen, of a chain of ganglia, each ganglion or pair of ganglia presiding over the reactions of its own segment, but connected by long paths with the other ganglia and with the head ganglia. The latter, being especially developed in connection with the organs of special sense which are proficient in function, acquire a control over the rest of the ganglia (Fig. 153). The vertebrate spinal cord may be looked upon as a chain of ganglia which

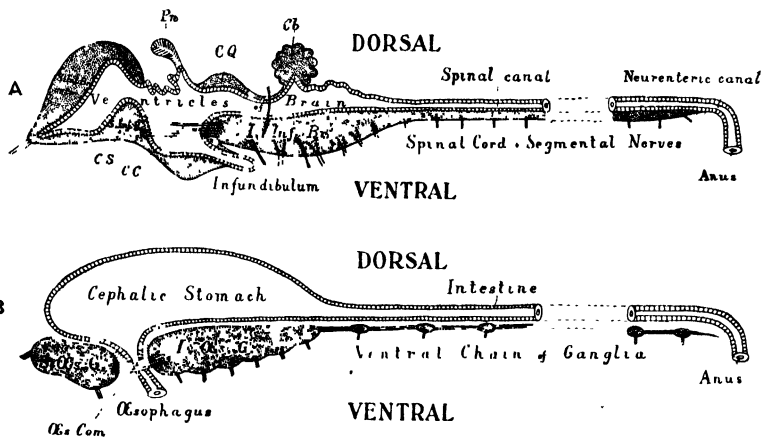


Fig. 153. Vertebrate central nervous system compared with that of the arthropod. (Gaskell.) (Note that according to Gaskell the ventricles of the brain and the primitive neural canal correspond to the invertebrate stomach and intestine.)

have become fused concurrently with a diminution in the importance of the local segmental reactions and with a growth in the solidarity of the whole system; so that in the higher vertebrates, at any rate, little trace of the primitive segmental arrangement is evident in the internal structure of the cord. Some remains of this arrangement still persist however in the origin from the cord of nerve roots, which are distributed roughly within the area of the corresponding segment of the body.

In man the spinal cord is an elongated cylindrical structure slightly flattened from before backwards and about eighteen inches long. It gives off a series of nerve roots, which are arranged in thirty-one pairs and are distributed symmetrically to the two sides of the body. Each

nerve arises by two roots, an anterior and a posterior, the anterior being composed of a series of rootlets spread over a considerable area of the cord, while the posterior roots arise as a compact bundle from a groove on the postero-lateral aspect of the cord. The posterior nerve-roots pass through a ganglion and join the anterior roots in the intervertebral foramina to form the mixed nerve. On section the cord is seen to consist of a core of grey matter surrounded on all sides by white matter. The white matter is made up of medullated nerve fibres which are devoid of a neurilemma, and run within tunnels or tubes in the supporting neuroglia. The grey matter has roughly the form of a letter H, and consists, in cross-section, of a comma-shaped mass on each side of the cord, joined across the middle line by a band of grey matter. On the anterior aspect of the cord is a furrow, the anterior fissure, which contains a process of the enveloping membrane of the cord, the pia mater, and is limited at its bottom by a band of white matter, the anterior white commissure, which unites the anterior columns of white matter.

On the hinder aspect of the cord is another fissure, the posterior fissure, which is very narrow and is built up chiefly by neuroglia. A third fissure at the point of origin of the posterior nerve-roots serves to divide the white matter of the cord into an antero-lateral column and a posterior column, and the former is imperfectly separated by the spread-out anterior rootlets into anterior and lateral columns. The cord in cross-section (Fig. 154) is circular in the dorsal region and oval in the cervical and lumbar regions. It presents two marked enlargements, namely, the cervical enlargement, corresponding to the outflow of the nerves going to the upper limb, and the lumbo-sacral enlargement, which gives off the nerves to the lower limb. In the sacral region it rapidly tapers off to a blunt point. In the centre of the band of grey matter, connecting the two masses on each side of the middle line, is the central canal of the cord, the remains of the primitive neural canal of the embryo. The grey matter in front of it is called the anterior grey commissure, that behind the posterior grey commissure. The comma-shaped mass of grey matter on each side of the cord presents in front the broad anterior cornu, and behind the narrower posterior cornu, which extends up to the postero-lateral groove in the line of emergence of the posterior roots. In the dorsal region of the cord the grey matter projects into the lateral column of white matter to form the lateral horn. The grey matter consists of a supporting tissue of neuroglia in which are embedded nerve cells and their processes and the endings of nerve fibres. The neuroglia is formed of a thick felt-work of fibres with here and there nuclei applied to the fibres. Occasionally we may meet cells provided with a very large number of branches and representing the cells from which all the fibres of the neuroglia have been derived. The neuroglia is present in specially large amount in two situations, namely, immediately around the central canal and as a capsule to the enlargement of the posterior cornu, known as the head or *caput cornu posterioris*. In this latter situation the neuroglia contains a large number of small richly-branched nerve cells and is spoken of as the *substantia gelatinosa* of Rolando. The nerve cells are arranged in

distinct groups. In the anterior horn we may distinguish three groups, a median group of cells near the middle line, many of which send their processes across to the other side in the anterior white commissure, and an external

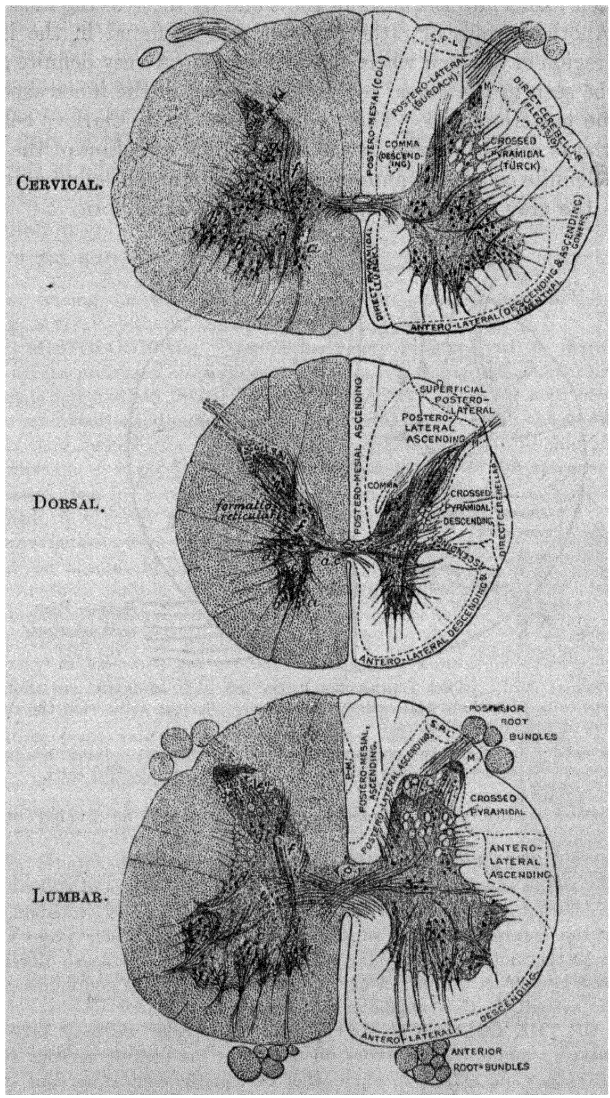


FIG. 154. Sections of human spinal cord from the lower cervical, mid-dorsal, and mid-lumbar regions, showing the principal groups of nerve cells, and on the right side of each section the conducting tracts as they occur in the several regions (magnified about 7 diameters). (E. A. SCHAFER.)

a, *b*, *c*, groups of cells of the anterior horn ; *d*, cells of the lateral horn ; *e*, middle group of cells ; *f*, cells of Clarke's column ; *g*, cells of posterior horn ; *cc*, central canal ; *ac*, anterior commissure.

group often subdivided into a postero-external and an antero-external. The latter group is especially developed in the regions of the cervical and lumbar enlargements and consists of very large multipolar cells with many dendrites which send their axons into the anterior roots and by these to the muscles of the limbs. Another group of rather smaller cells is found in the lateral horn, in that region of the cord where this is marked. A very definite group of cells may be seen in the dorsal region of the cord in the inner aspect of the root of the posterior horn. This, which is known as Clarke's column, is formed by large cells elongated in the longitudinal direction of the cord. Besides these definite columns a number of nerve cells are distributed irregularly through the grey matter, especially of the posterior horn.

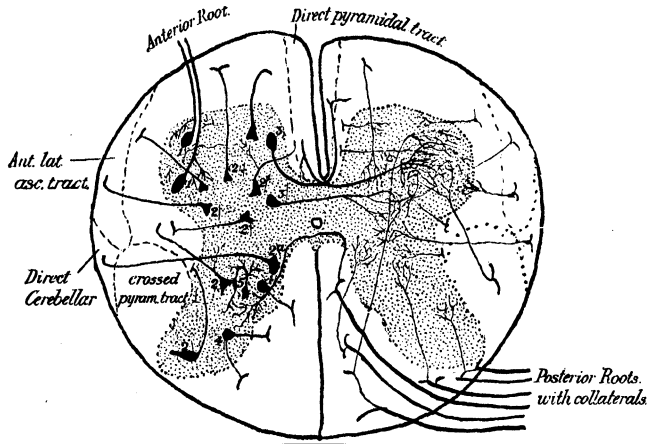


FIG. 155. Spinal cord (*After* LENHOSSEK.) On left side of figure are shown the nerve cells with their axis-cylinder processes. On the right side the distribution of the chief collaterals.

1, motor cells; 2, cells of the columns; 2*a*, cells of Clarke's column, sending processes across into direct cerebellar tract; 3, 4, and 5, commissural cells.

According to the destiny of their axons these nerve cells may be divided into four groups (Fig. 155).

(1) **THE MOTOR CELLS**, the largest of all, which send their axons into the anterior roots, where they run to supply skeletal muscle fibres. As a sub-group of these cells we may class the somewhat smaller cells of the lateral horn, which in all probability send their axons by the anterior roots to supply visceral muscles. Their axons can be distinguished from the motor axons by the smaller diameter of the nerve fibres they form. They pass later from the mixed nerve along a white ramus communicans into the sympathetic system, in the ganglia of which they end.

(2) **CELLS OF THE COLUMNS.** As typical of these cells we may take those which form Clarke's column. Their axons do not leave the central nervous system, but pass out into the white matter to some other part of the central nervous system, contributing thus to form the white columns of the cord.

(3) **COMMISSURAL CELLS.** These cells send their axon across the middle line to the opposite side of the cord, making up a great part of the anterior white commissure.

(4) **CELLS OF GOLGI.** These cells are found chiefly in the posterior horn. They are multipolar and are distinguished from all the other cells by the fact that their

axon does not pass far from the cell, but rapidly breaks up into a number of branches which terminate in the near neighbourhood of the cell giving off the axon. They may be regarded as association cells, *i.e.* as serving to establish a functional connection between many different cells at any given level of the grey matter.

The white matter of the cord is divided by the fissures already described into anterior, lateral, and posterior columns. The nerve fibres of which it is composed are all of them axons of nerve cells situated at different levels of the central nervous system or outside the cord. Since the whole object of the study of the anatomy of the cord is the tracing out of the systems of neurons of which it is made up, and therefore of the possible paths of any reflexes or nerve impulses through the cord, a mere anatomical differentiation of different columns is quite useless unless we can determine in each column the origin and destination of the fibres of which it is composed.

For tracing out the course of the different axon systems in the central nervous system several methods are available.

(*a*) **HISTOLOGICAL.** Two methods may be employed for staining a nerve cell with all its processes, namely, the *intravitum* staining with methylene blue and the impregnation method invented by Golgi. In the latter method, of which there are many modifications, the nervous tissue is hardened in some chromate or bichromate, and is then soaked in a solution of silver nitrate or mercuric chloride. In this way a precipitate of silver or mercuric chromate is formed within the nerve cells and their processes; but for some unexplained reason the impregnation is not general, and is confined to a small percentage of the neurons. If the precipitate were diffuse, even a thin section would be absolutely opaque; since it is partial, thick sections may be cut and, after clearing, allow the tracing of the processes of the few impregnated nerve cells through the whole thickness of the section. We may in this way get sections 0·1 mm. thick at the point of entrance of a posterior nerve root, and trace out the course and ending of a large number of the fibres composing the nerve root, or we may in a section involving the anterior nerve root trace the course of an axon of an anterior cornual cell out of the cord into the root. This method is of no use in tracing any given nerve fibre through the whole length of the cord. For this purpose however several methods are available.

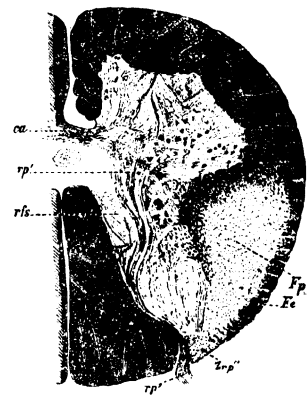


FIG 156 Section through the cervical spinal cord of a new-born child, stained by Weigert's method, to show absence of medullation in pyramidal tract.

ca, anterior commissure; *Fp*, crossed pyramidal tract; *Fe*, direct cerebellar tract. *Zrp*, posterior root zone; *rp'*, posterior root fibres. (BECHTEREW.)

(*b*) **MYELINATION METHOD OF FLECHSIG.** Nerve fibres at their first formation as axons of a nerve cell are non-medullated, the medullary sheath being formed later with the beginning of function of the nerve. It has been shown by Flechsig that the myelination does not occur simultaneously through all parts of the central nervous system, but that it is later in proportion as the nerve fibre is more recent in the phylogenetic history of the animal. The cord in its most primitive form can be regarded as a series of ganglia presiding over the different segments of the body. The most primitive fibres therefore would be those which run from the periphery of the body to each segment and from each segment out to the muscles, and so a medullary sheath is first formed in a number of the fibres entering and leaving the cord in the nerve-roots. Next in order of myelination are those

fibres which connect different segments of the cord, the internuncial or intra-spinal fibres. Next come those fibres which connect the spinal cord with the cerebellum. Last of all to receive a medullary sheath are the fibres which take a direct course from the cerebral cortex to the spinal cord. These are called the pyramidal tracts, and in man are not medullated until the first month after birth (Fig. 156).

(*c*) **THE WALLERIAN METHOD.** A nerve fibre, when cut off from the nerve cell of which it is a process, degenerates. This degeneration is marked by a breaking up of the medullary sheath and a conversion of the phosphorised fat, myelin, of which it is composed, into ordinary fat. Later on the fat is absorbed and the nerve becomes replaced by a strand of fibrous tissue in the case of peripheral nerves, of neuroglia in the central nervous system. If the white matter of one half of the spinal cord be divided in the dorsal region, and the animal be killed about three weeks after the operation, sections of the cord both above and below the lesion will show the presence of degenerated fibres. In order to display these fibres pieces of the cord are hardened in a solution containing bichromates and are then immersed in a mixture of osmic

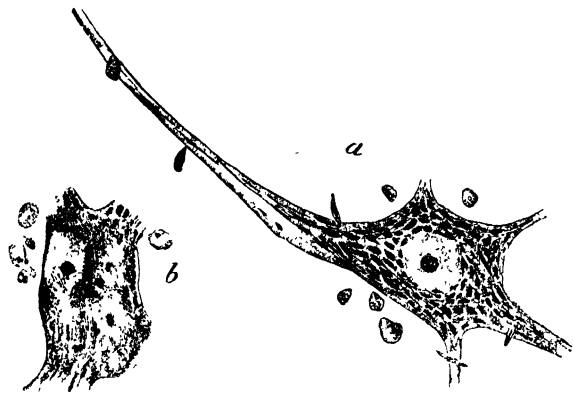


FIG. 157. Cells from the oculo-motor nuclei thirteen days after section of the nerve on one side.

a, cell from healthy side, *b*, cell from side on which nerve was divided (FLATAU.)

acid and bichromate. By this method ordinary fat is stained, but myelin is left unstained (Marchi's method). Degenerated fibres are therefore stained black in virtue of their content in fat. The black staining has different distribution according as we take a section of the cord above or below the lesion. The existence of the degeneration shows that those fibres which are degenerated in the cervical region are axons of nerve cells situated below the lesion, while the fibres in the lumbar cord which are degenerated must have their nerve cells in some part of the nervous system which is above the lesion. If the animal be kept alive for a considerable time, six months or more, before being killed, the occurrence of degeneration in any given area of the cord will be shown by the absence of normal nerve fibres in this area. In such a case some method of staining the medullary sheath, such as that of Weigert or Heller, is employed, when the degenerated area will be evident owing to its inability to take the stain. This method however is not so satisfactory as the Marchi method, since it is impossible in this way to detect in a section the presence of one or two degenerated nerve fibres, whereas by the use of the Marchi method they would appear as black dots in the unstained section (*cp.* Fig. 164).

(*d*) **METHOD OF RETROGRADE DEGENERATION.** When a nerve fibre is divided there is no degeneration as a rule in the part of the nerve fibre central to the lesion. The nerve cell is however affected, and the extent to which this occurs is

more pronounced according as the lesion is nearer to the cell (Fig. 157.) If, for instance, an anterior root be divided and three weeks later the animal be killed and sections made of the corresponding segment of the cord and stained with toluidine blue or methylene blue, a striking difference will be observed between the cells of the anterior horn of the two sides of the cord. On the side of the lesion the nucleus of the cells will be somewhat swollen, and may be displaced towards the periphery of the cell. The Nissl granules are no longer distinct, but the whole cell is diffusely stained blue. In some cases this change may go on to complete atrophy of the cell and consequent degeneration of the whole of its axon. Generally however the cell gradually recovers, so that six months after the lesion no difference will be observable between the cells on the two sides of the cord. This method must be used with some caution as a means of tracing out the connections of any given neurons in the central nervous system, since it has been shown by Warrington that somewhat similar changes may be produced in the anterior horn-cells by division of the posterior roots, thus cutting off those impulses by which their activity is normally excited. Here we have a lesion applied to one neuron causing a histological change in the cell body of another neuron which is next in the chain of the nervous arc.

The structure of the cord is closely connected with and determines its two-fold function, namely, as a series of reflex centres for the different segments of the body, and as a means of communication between the trunk and limbs and the higher parts of the central nervous system. An examination of the relative area of the white matter at different levels of the cord shows a steady increase from the lower to the upper end. The increase is not however proportional to the number of fibres which enter or leave the cord in the various spinal nerve roots. Of these fibres therefore a certain proportion are destined to serve merely the local segmental reflexes, while others are continued directly upwards to the brain or are connected with cells which themselves send their axons up to the brain (cells of the columns). All the motor fibres in the nerve roots arise from cells in the spinal cord near the point of origin of the root. Any direct influence of the brain on the motor mechanisms of the body is therefore effected through the intermediation of the segmental neural mechanisms of the grey matter of the cord. We will consider the function and related structure of the cord in these two aspects: first, as a reflex centre, and secondly, as a conductor of impulses to the higher parts of the central nervous system.

SECTION VII

THE SPINAL CORD AS A REFLEX CENTRE

In the evolution of the cord the primitive segmental arrangement has been especially interfered with by the development of the four limbs. Since the reactions of the limbs transcend in importance and complexity those of the rest of the body, a great enlargement of the cord has occurred in the region of the nerve roots which supply the limbs. Each limb must be considered as produced by the fusion of a number of body segments, in which the morphological segmental arrangement has entirely given place to a physiological one. Thus no single muscle of the limbs is innervated from one nerve root, every muscle being formed from elements belonging to several segments and innervated from several nerve roots. The segmental arrangement of the cord is hidden moreover by the increasing complexity of the spinal reflexes and the consequent involvement of many segments in even the simplest reactions. As we shall see later, practically no reflex can be evoked, even by stimulation of one nerve fibre or nerve root in any of the vertebrata, which does not involve in its response elements belonging to many segments.

Since the reactions, which can be carried out by any part of the nervous system, depend on the neurons of which the part is composed, it is necessary, before treating of the reactions of the spinal animal, to consider the 'way in' to and the 'way out' of the centre, as well as the connections between the entering and issuing paths. Each segment of the cord gives off a pair of nerve roots, subdivided into an anterior and a posterior root (Fig. 158). In mammals it is easy to show that the posterior root is exclusively afferent in function. Section of the root, either distal or proximal to the ganglion, produces no paralysis of any description. It may cause diminished sensation in the area supplied by it, and if two or three adjacent posterior roots be divided, complete anæsthesia results in the central part of the skin area supplied from these roots. Stimulation of the central end of a divided posterior root evokes in a conscious animal signs of pain. In an animal possessing only spinal cord and bulb, reflex effects are produced, *i.e.* movements of skeletal muscles as well as effects on visceral muscles, such as constriction of blood-vessels, relaxation of intestinal muscle, and so on. On the other hand, section of an anterior root causes paralysis of muscles or parts of muscles. Section of all the anterior roots going to a limb will produce complete motor paralysis of the limb. Stimulation of the central end of a divided

anterior root has no effect. Stimulation of the peripheral end evokes contraction of muscles, and if the root experimented on be in the upper dorsal region of the cord, certain visceral effects, *e.g.* dilatation of the pupil or augmentation of the heart beat, may result.

To this general law, the law of Bell and Magendie, which affirms the purely afferent function of the posterior roots and the purely efferent function of the anterior roots, certain exceptions must be noted. In the first place, in the lower vertebrata the separation of afferent from efferent fibres seems to be not so complete as in the higher vertebrates. Thus in the chick Cajal and others have described fibres given off as axons from the cells of the grey matter and leaving the cord by the posterior root. The function of these fibres is unknown. In the frog Steinach has stated that visceral

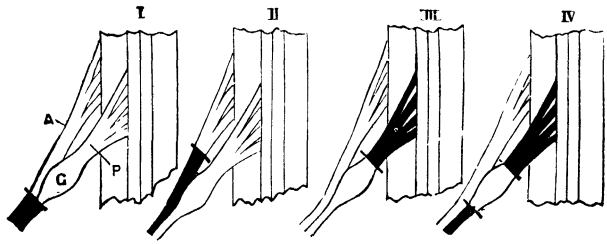


FIG. 158. Figures (from YEO) to illustrate the degree and direction of degeneration as a result of section of the spinal roots.

I, division of whole nerve below ganglion. II, division of anterior root. III, division of posterior root above ganglion. IV, division of posterior root above and below ganglion.

effects may ensue on stimulation of the lower posterior roots. This statement is controverted by Horton-Smith, who however has noticed contractions of fibres of voluntary muscles as the result of stimulating these roots.

In a class by themselves we must place the vasodilator effects observed by Stricker, Dastre and Morat, and Bayliss to follow excitation of the peripheral ends of the posterior roots. Bayliss has shown that the fibres, through which the vasodilatation is produced, must have their cell-station in the posterior root ganglia. It seems therefore that the same fibres provide for carrying both afferent impulses from skin to cord, and vasodilator impulses from the cord to the vessels of the skin. Bayliss has designated the impulses which effect the vasodilatation as *antidromic*, since they are opposed in direction to the normal impulses of the nerve fibre. Of the same nature are the curious trophic impulses which extend along the posterior roots and which must come into play when eruptions of erythema or herpes occur as the result of inflammation or hæmorrhages in the substance of the posterior root ganglia. Both these phenomena are at present but imperfectly understood; and their anomalous character is only intensified by the further fact elicited by Bayliss, viz. that it is possible, by stimulation of afferent nerves, to excite reflexly vasodilatation through the intermediation of the posterior roots. Unless this reflex dilatation is simply an example of an 'axon reflex' (*v.* p. 275) it would furnish an exception to the otherwise universal law of forward direction in the mammalian nervous system.

A third exception to the law of Bell and Magendie is only apparent. It is sometimes found that excitation of the peripheral end of a divided anterior root gives rise to manifestations of pain or to reflex movement. This has been shown by Schiff to be due to the presence, in the sheaths of the anterior roots, of fine fibres derived from the posterior roots and taking a recurrent course to end probably in the membranes of the cord. This recurrent sensibility is at once abolished by section of two or three adjacent posterior roots.

THE WAY IN

We may now consider the possible ways open to a nerve impulse entering the cord. Each posterior root on entering the cord divides into two bundles. The smaller bundle passes to the outer side of the tip of the posterior horn where its fibres bifurcate (Fig. 159), giving rise to fibres which pass up and down the cords in a small longitudinal band of fibres known as Lissauer's tract. The fibres run only a short distance before turning into the grey matter, and terminate in arborisations round the cells of the substantia gelatinosa in the head of the posterior horn. By far the greater number of the posterior root-fibres pass to the inner side of the posterior horn into Burdach's or the postero-external column. Here they also divide into two main branches, one running up and the other down in the white matter. The descending branch passes through two or three segments before turning into the grey matter of the posterior horn of a lower segment. Of the ascending branches, some end at different levels of the cord, but a certain proportion of the fibres from every root traverse the whole length of the cord in the posterior columns to terminate in the posterior column nuclei (nuclei gracilis and cuneatus) in the medulla oblongata. As we proceed up the cord the entering posterior root-fibres displace the long fibres of those below towards the middle line, so that in a section through the cord in the upper cervical region the posterior median column, or column of Goll, is made up almost exclusively of fibres from the hind limb, while the postero-external column consists of fibres from the fore limb.

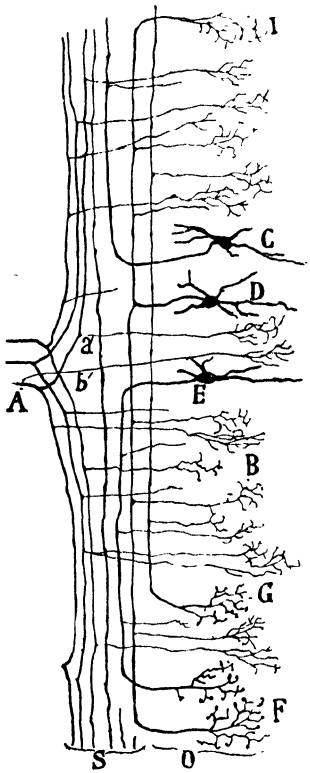


FIG. 159. Longitudinal section of spinal cord of chick, showing bifurcation of dorsal root-fibres, and the passage of their collaterals into the grey matter. Three cells of the dorsal horn are also seen sending their axons into the dorsal columns. (CAJAL.)

Besides these distant connections, every entering nerve fibre makes connection with all parts of the grey matter in and about its level of entrance by means of collaterals (Fig. 160). Five groups of these collateral branches can be distinguished, *i.e.*,

(1) Fibres which arborise round cells in the posterior horn of the same side.

(2) Fibres which pass through the dorsal grey commissure to the grey matter of the opposite side of the cord.

(3) Fibres terminating round the median group of cells of the anterior horn.

(4) Fibres which end in a rich basket-work round the cells of Clarke's column.

(5) The sensori-motor bundle, which passes forwards through the grey matter to end round the cells in the anterior horn of the same side of the cord.

Each entering posterior root fibre, besides these collaterals in the neighbourhood of its entrance, gives but few to higher segments of the cord before it terminates in the posterior column nuclei. Sherrington suggests that the cells of Clarke's column receive fibres mainly from the ascending branches of the nerve roots from the posterior limb, a corresponding station for the nerve fibres of the anterior limb being represented by the cells of the nucleus cuneatus.

That several different systems of fibres are included in these roots is shown by the different periods at which they acquire their myelin sheath. Among the earliest to acquire a sheath are the fibres which end in the posterior horn and those which pass to the anterior horn, while the long fibres in the dorsal columns do not become medullated until much later in fœtal life. Since the nerve fibres of the central nervous system do not become functional until they have acquired a medullary sheath, we must conclude that the reflex responses affecting the segment in which the fibres enter are developed earlier than those which involve also the activity of the cerebellum and medulla.

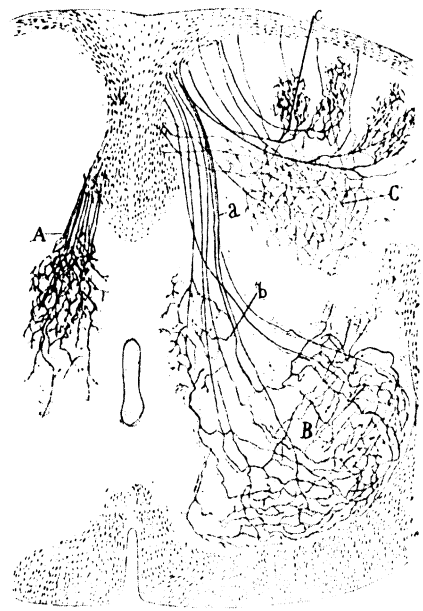


FIG. 160. Chief collaterals of dorsal column fibres from new-born mouse. (CAJAL.) A, intermediate nucleus; B, anterior (ventral) cornu; C, dorsal or posterior cornu; c, substance of Rolando.

The primitive segmental character of the central nervous system is retained in its pure form only in the segmentation of the dorsal spinal root ganglia. Each of these ganglia or afferent roots consists of the fibres from the sense-organs in a segmental area of the body surface as well as from the muscular and visceral apparatus in the same segment. Section of one dorsal posterior nerve root will cause a diminution of sensibility over a band-like area corresponding to the distribution of the fibres of the root, though to produce a complete insensibility the two adjacent nerve roots must be divided, in consequence of the overlap of fibres at the periphery. In the limbs the segmental distribution of the sensory fibres is distinguished with more difficulty. Each limb must be regarded as made up from a series of

fused segments, from five to seven in number. The accompanying diagram (Fig. 162) from Sherrington shows the manner in which the skin fields of

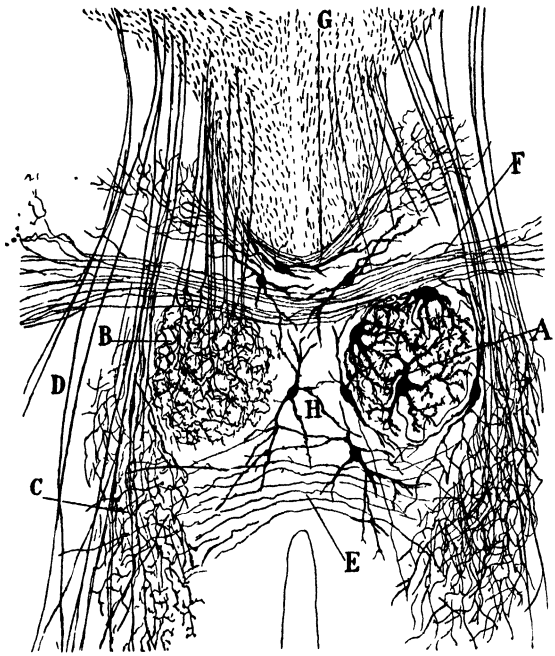


FIG. 161. Transverse section of spinal cord, showing collaterals terminating in a rich arborisation round the cells of Clarke's column (A, B), as well as others passing to the anterior cornua, and through the commissures. (CAJAL)

these segments are combined to make up the total skin area in the hind limb of the monkey.

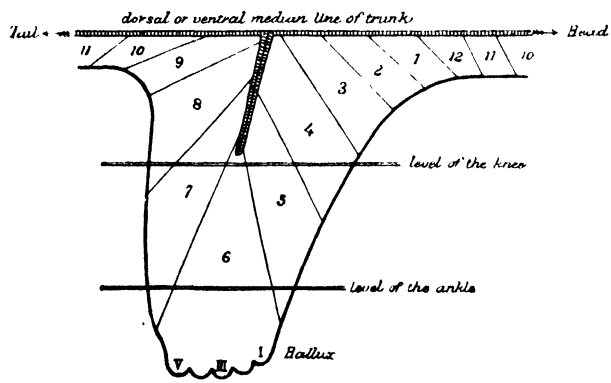


FIG. 162.

THE WAY OUT

Primitively the motor nerves also represent fibres passing from a collection of ganglion-cells to the muscles of the corresponding body segment. In the dorsal region this segmental arrangement of motor nerve fibres is still traceable in the adult animal. In all other parts the morphological has become subservient to a physiological arrangement. Every muscle of the limbs contains elements from several segments, and is innervated therefore from several anterior spinal roots. Hence it follows that stimulation of one anterior root produces no definite movement of a group of muscles, but partial contraction of a number of muscles which do not normally contract simultaneously. Thus stimulation of a sensory nerve may evoke either flexion or extension of a limb, but not both simultaneously. Stimulation of the motor roots will cause simultaneous contraction of both flexor and extensor muscles. It is this subordination of morphological to physiological arrangement in the limbs which has necessitated the formation of limb plexuses. The nerve root is a morphological collection of fibres; the nerve issuing from a limb plexus and passing to a group of muscles is a physiological collection. When it is stimulated it evokes a contraction of a group of muscles which are normally synergic, *i.e.* cooperate in various movements.

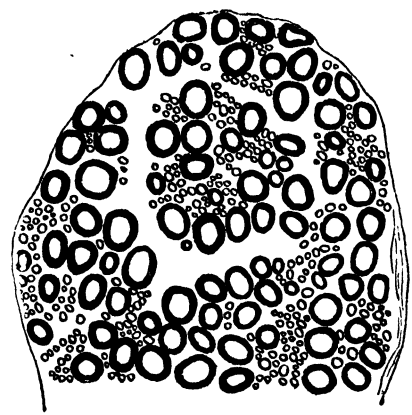


FIG. 163. Section across the second thoracic ventral nerve root of the dog (stained with osmic acid) to show varying sizes of the constituent fibres (GASKELL)

The fibres passing to the skeletal muscles are large, about 14 μ to 19 μ in diameter, and their axis cylinders represent the axons of large nerve cells in the anterior horn. In the dorsal region of the cord in man, from the second dorsal to the second lumbar nerve roots, the anterior roots contain, besides these coarse fibres, a number of fine fibres about 1·8 μ to 3·6 μ in diameter (Fig. 163). These fine fibres were shown by Gaskell to leave the nerve shortly after the junction of the two roots, to pass as a white *ramus communicans* to the sympathetic. Excitation of the white rami evokes various visceral effects, such as dilatation of the pupils, augmentation of the heart, contraction of blood-vessels, inhibition of the gut, erection of hairs, &c. Gaskell pointed out that the outflow of these fine fibres coincided with the existence of a prominent lateral horn in the grey matter, and suggested that cells of the lateral horn might be regarded as the origin of the visceral nerve fibres. This suggestion has been confirmed by Anderson, who has shown that section of the white *rami communicantes* brings about an alteration in the cells of the lateral horn as a result of retrograde degeneration.

CENTRAL PATHS OF SPINAL REFLEXES

The impulse entering the cord is thus able to affect immediately a number of systems of neurons, namely, cells in the anterior horn, in the posterior horn, in Clarke's column, in the substantia gelatinosa, in the lateral column of the same side of the cord, and the corresponding groups of cells on the opposite side of the cord either directly by crossing collaterals or indirectly through

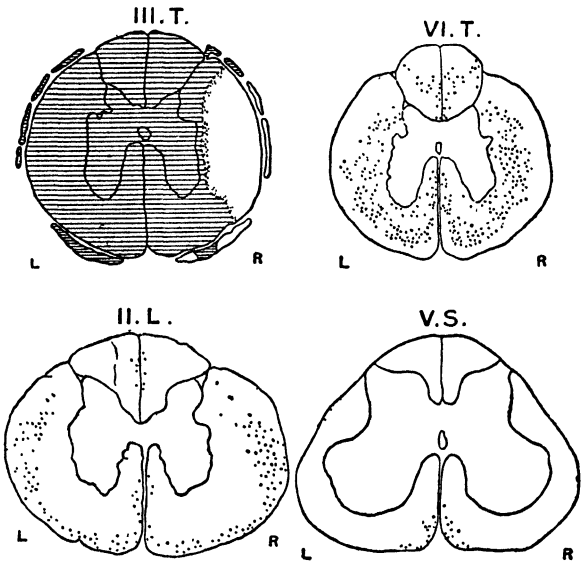


FIG. 164. Cross-sections of spinal cord of a dog, showing the descending nerve-tracts originating in the first three thoracic segments (method of 'successive degeneration'). The eighth cervical segment had been excised and 568 days later a cross-cut was made at level of the third thoracic nerve. The extent of the lesion is shown in the first figure (III. T). The other sections show the degenerations as revealed three weeks later by Marchi's method. (SHERRINGTON.)

cells which send their axons across the middle line. Through the ascending and descending fibres of the posterior columns it can also set into action the reflex mechanisms of adjacent segments of the cord. In addition to this direct spread of afferent impulses up and down the cord there is an anatomical basis for a co-ordination between the grey matter of different levels. This co-ordination is effected through the intermediation of the internuncial or intra-spinal fibres which pass up and down the cord from segment to segment.

The course of the descending fibres may be studied by carrying out a total transection of the spinal cord at the sixth cervical vertebra, and six months later, when all the fibres degenerating as a result of the section have disappeared, carrying out a further transection or hemisection a few segments below the first transection. If the animal be killed two or three weeks after the second operation it will be found that a number of fibres in the white matter are degenerated below the second section (Fig. 164). These fibres therefore must be derived from cells of the grey matter situated between the levels of the first and second sections, and they can be traced down the cord through a

large number of segments. Analogous methods may be used for tracing the course of the ascending intra-spinal fibres.

These intra-spinal fibres occur in the following situations:

(1) In the lateral columns immediately outside the grey matter, in the bay between the anterior and posterior horns.

(2) Close to the grey matter in the anterior basis bundle.

(3) In the posterior columns, united with the descending branches of the entering posterior roots in the comma tract, and also in the immediate periphery of the cord and abutting on the posterior fissure in the septomarginal tract.

(4) Mingled with the fibres of the pyramidal tract.

All these tracts are mixed, *i.e.* contain both ascending and descending fibres. As a rule, the longer the course of a fibre the more peripherally does it lie in the cord. The shortest of the fibres may only unite segment to segment, while the longest fibres may run through the greater part of the cord.

THE SPINAL ANIMAL

An animal possessing only a spinal cord contains a reflex neural apparatus which can be excited to activity by impulses of various qualities and from any part of the skin. Thus the afferent impulse may correspond to what in ourselves we call tactile and be provoked by mechanical stimulation, or may result from changes of temperature and correspond to those producing sensations of heat and cold. Strong stimuli of any kind may give rise also to afferent impulses which in the intact animal would have the quality of pain. Since these stimuli are such as to produce injury if continued, they may be named, when applied to the spinal animal, pathic or nocuous. The spatial distribution of the stimulus will determine the situation and number of nerve fibres set into action, so that there will be a great variation in the distribution of the excited neurons of the central grey matter according to the quality, distribution, and intensity of the stimulus. The efferent part of the reflex is provided for by the connection of the anterior cornual cells to the whole skeletal musculature of the body, as well as by the distribution of the axons of the lateral horn-cells to the sympathetic system and through this to the viscera. On the other hand, if the spinal cord be separated from the medulla oblongata and higher parts of the brain, it is deprived of all connection with the most highly elaborated sense-organs of smell, sight, hearing, and equilibration, and also of the important afferent and efferent impulses which pass between brain and viscera through the vagus nerves. In studying the reaction of the isolated spinal cord we are studying a nervous system cut off from its most complex components, but at the same time deprived of the initiation and guidance which it must normally be continually receiving from the higher sense-organs through the brain. A study of the spinal animal will therefore be instructive as a study of the mammalian nervous system in its simplest possible aspect. It will in all cases be the study of an incomplete and maimed system, the incompleteness becoming more evident as we ascend the scale of animals in our experimentation, owing to the increasing subordination of the lower to the higher centres, and of the immediate reflexes to the educated reactions of the anterior part of the brain.

SPINAL SHOCK

If the spinal cord of the frog be divided just below the medulla, for some minutes after the section all four limbs are perfectly flaccid, and it is impossible to evoke any reaction by the application of the strongest stimuli. If the animal be left to itself for half an hour there is a gradual return of reflex tone; the animal draws up its legs and assumes a position not far removed from that of the normal frog, the head being lower than under normal conditions. We may say that the phenomena of shock in the frog last only a short time. With increasing complexity of the nervous system the phenomena of shock become more lasting, so that among laboratory animals it is in the monkey that spinal shock is most apparent. It is interesting to note, as pointed out by Sherrington, that shock appears to take effect only in the aboral direction. Thus, even in the monkey, section through the lower cervical region, though causing profound paralysis of the lower limbs and part of the trunk, apparently has no influence at all on the reactions of the nervous system above the section. 'The animal immediately after the section will contentedly direct its gaze to sights seen through the window or, if the section has been below the brachial region, may amuse itself by catching flies on the pane. This is the more remarkable since the profound depression of the nerve-centres below the point of section extends also to the blood-vessels and viscera, so that there is a great fall of blood pressure and diminished production with increased loss of heat. The sphincters are flaccid or patulous, the skeletal muscles are toneless, and no reaction is evoked by the strongest stimulus to the skin or to a sensory nerve.'

Much discussion has arisen as to the duration of shock. Goltz and others imagined that the phenomena of shock may persist for months or even years. According to Sherrington, in the higher animals the phénomena of shock are complicated by the onset of an 'isolation dystrophy' which may occur before the condition of shock has entirely disappeared. In order therefore to examine the capabilities of the isolated spinal cord at their best, a time must be chosen when the sum of shock and isolation dystrophy together is at its minimum.

The occurrence of shock after complete transection of the cord in the cervical region cannot be ascribed to the fall of blood pressure which ensues as a result of the severance of the efferent vaso-motor tracts from the vaso-motor centre in the medulla. The centres above as well as those below the transection are equally exposed to the effects of the lowered blood pressure, but it is only those below the section which show signs of shock. Nor can it be regarded as operative shock due to the severity of the lesion; such an operative shock would be effective in either direction, and we do not find that the method of transection, whether by tearing across the cord or cutting it with a minimum disturbance, alters appreciably the amount of shock displayed by the segment of the cord situated below the lesion. On the other hand, if in a dog, which has undergone transection of the cord in the

lower cervical region and has been allowed sufficient time to recover from the shock, a second transection be carried out two or three segments below the site of the first operation, the influence of the second section is hardly noticeable on the lower segment of the cord. Apparently then the chief factor in determining shock in all those centres situated aborally of the lesion is the cutting off of the impulses which are continually streaming down from the higher centres and from the great sense-organs connected with the anterior portions of the nervous system. With every rise in the animal scale the impressions received by the special senses take an increasing part in the determining of all the reactions of the body, so that we might expect the effect of cutting off the impulses from the higher centres to be greater, the higher in the scale of life is the animal on which the experiment is carried out.

The state of profound shock produced in the spinal cord by the operation passes off gradually. The blood pressure, which may have fallen to 40 or 50 mm. Hg., rises within two or three days to its normal height, *i.e.* 90 to 110 mm. Hg. The sphincter muscles of the anus gradually recover their tone, and within a short time the reflex evacuation of the bladder and rectum may occur as in a normal animal. The skeletal muscles recover their tone within a few days, and after a short time co-ordinated movements can be brought about in the trunk and limbs by appropriate stimulation of sensory surfaces. At first the reactions thus produced are feeble and the reflex is rapidly fatigued. Of these reflexes those excited by noxious or painful stimuli are the first to make their appearance; a little later are seen those due to stimuli affecting the tactile organs in the skin, or the sense-organs of deep sensibility situated round the bones and joints and excited by deep pressure or changes in posture of the limbs.

In a dog which has undergone complete cervical transection two or three months previously, the tone of the muscles is somewhat increased. Although the dog is unable to walk, if it be raised and given a little push forward, so as to stretch the extensor muscles of its hind limbs, it may take two or three steps forward before its legs collapse. Although the locomotor apparatus is present, the nexus is lacking which determines the regulation of these movements through the organs of static sense, so that the spinal movements are insufficient to maintain the animal in such a position that a line drawn vertically from its centre of gravity shall fall between its points of support. On the other hand, swimming movements may be carried out regularly. The frog deprived of its brain can swim like a normal animal, but in consequence of the depression of its head tends to swim ever deeper in the water. If a 'spinal' dog be held up by the fore limbs, the hind limbs nearly always enter into alternating movements of flexion and extension ('mark time' movements), the two limbs acting alternately as in normal progression. The stimuli in this case seem to be started by the stretching of the skin and other structures at the front of the thighs. In such animals three reflexes, amongst others, can be excited almost invariably, viz.:

(1) *Scratch reflex.* Gentle stimulation, mechanical or electrical, of any point over a saddle-shaped area on the dorsum behind the shoulders (Fig.

165) causes rhythmic movements of flexion and extension of the hind limb of the same side, the effect of which would be to scratch away the irritant object. These movements are repeated at the rate of about four per second.

(2) *Flexor reflex.* Nocuous stimuli, such as the prick of a needle applied to any part of the foot, causes flexion of the leg and thigh, often accompanied by extension of the opposite hind limb.

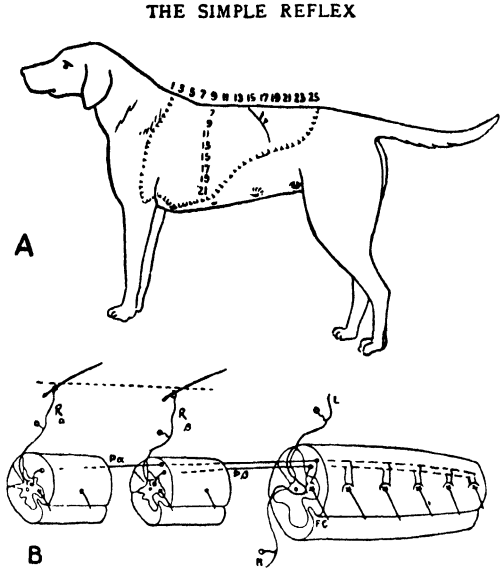


FIG. 165. A. The receptive field, whence the scratch reflex of the left hind limb can be evoked.

B. Diagram of spinal arcs involved. L, afferent path from left foot; R, afferent path from right foot; Rα, Rβ, receptive paths from hairs on 'scratch area'; FC, final common path (motor neuron); Pα, Pβ, proprio-spinal neurons. (SHERRINGTON.)

(3) *Extensor or 'stepping' reflex.* Gentle pressure applied to the plantar surface of the hind foot, especially if the limb is somewhat flexed, causes a movement of extension of the limb, accompanied sometimes by a flexion of the opposite hind limb.

In such an animal the carrying out of the visceral reflexes may be very efficient. The blood pressure has attained its normal height and may be altered reflexly in very much the same way as in a normal animal, although the medullary vaso-motor centre can no longer be concerned. Thus in the diagram (Fig. 166) is represented the effect on the blood pressure of exciting the central end of the digital nerve in a spinal dog. The pressure rises from 90 to 208 mm. Hg.—a pressor effect as great as any which can be obtained in an animal still possessing all the connections of the vascular system with the vaso-motor centre. The height of the rise shows that as regards the influence on the blood pressure the spinal cord must be acting as a whole. No effect on the blood-vessels confined to the segment, or segments, adjacent to that of the nerve stimulated would suffice to cause a rise of more than a few mm. Hg.

The reflex apparatus for other visceral functions seems to be equally perfect. The urinary bladder, when sufficient urine is accumulated, contracts forcibly, the contraction being accompanied by relaxation of the sphincter and followed by rhythmic contractions of the urethral muscles; accumulation of fæces in the rectum leads to their normal evacuation. With a little assistance impregnation may be effected in or by such a maimed

animal, and in the female may result in normal parturition which goes on to full term. Pregnancy is accompanied by hypertrophy of the mammary glands and is followed by secretion of milk, so that the young may be suckled

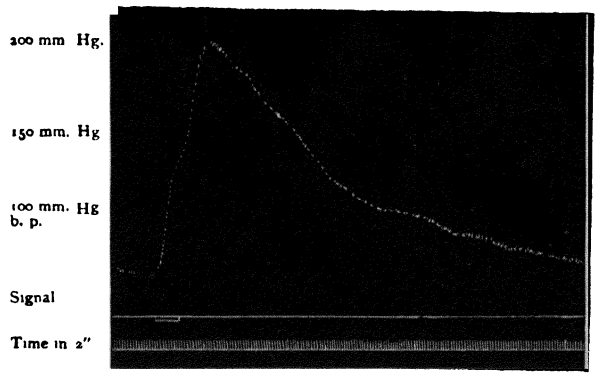


FIG. 166. Blood pressure tracing from a spinal dog. The signal indicates the time during which the afferent nerve was stimulated. (SHERRINGTON.)

as in a normal animal. Similar phenomena have been observed in the human subject.

Such an animal furnishes us with an opportunity of analysing the factors which are involved in the maintenance of muscle tone, as well as in the carrying out of the simplest reflexes involving contractions of the skeletal muscles.

MUSCULAR TONE

Every muscle in the body is in a condition of slightly continued contraction which keeps it tense, so that when it contracts in response to a stimulus there is, so to speak, no 'slack' to be taken up before the muscle begins to pull on its attachments. This tone is seen in the retraction undergone by muscles or tendons when they are divided in the living animal.

If a frog possessing only spinal cord be hung up by its jaw, the limbs will be observed to occupy a position which is short of complete extension. The tone of the muscles which is concerned in the maintenance of this attitude is at once abolished by the destruction of the spinal cord. It may be abolished on one side by section either of the anterior roots going to the muscles, or of the posterior roots coming from the muscles (Fig. 167). In the intact animal muscle tone is diminished by disease and may be abolished during profound anæsthesia, as it is indeed in the condition of shock.

Much light has been thrown on the factors which determine muscular tone by a study of the 'tendon phenomena' of which the knee-jerk is the most familiar example. If the leg is allowed to hang loosely in a position of slight flexion at hip and knee and the patellar tendon be struck, the extensor muscles of the thigh contract and raise the leg. This phenomenon is known as the knee-jerk. Similar 'tendon reflexes' can be obtained in

other muscles, such as the tendo Achillis, the triceps, and the extensor muscles of the wrist, but with not so great ease as is the case with the knee. The knee-jerk is not altered by rendering the tendon anæsthetic by section of all its nerves The essential feature is a slight passive increase of the tension to which the muscle is already subjected. Mere tension of the muscle is not however the only factor. The tone which is reflexly maintained in the muscle is necessary for this response to direct stimulation to take place. The knee-jerk is therefore of special importance as an index to the tonic condition of the muscles concerned, being brisk and easily elicited when the tonus is pronounced, and slight or absent when the tone of the muscle is depressed.

FIG. 167. Hind part of a spinal frog, hung up by the jaw. The posterior roots of the nerves to the left hind limb have been divided. (BECHTEREW)

The tone of the muscles, as well as the consequent tendon phenomena, is dependent on the integrity of the reflex arc governing the muscles in question. It has been shown by Sherrington that the afferent part of the arc is represented by the afferent nerves from the muscle itself, and that these nerves receive their sense impressions from the special nerve-endings characteristic of muscle—the 'muscle-spindles' Even in the purely muscular nerves a large proportion of the fibres are afferent in function and, after section of the appropriate posterior roots distal to the gangha, as many as 40 per cent. of the fibres going to a muscle may be found degenerated. Though most of these have the muscle-spindles as their destination, a certain number pass to the tendon and aponeuroses connected with the muscle, where they end in the end-organs known as the organs of Golgi and the organs of Ruffini. After section of the motor nerves the muscle fibres degenerate, with the exception of the modified fibres which, enclosed in a connected tissue sheath, are concerned in the formation of the muscle-spindles Muscle tone and tendon phenomena may therefore be abolished by lesions of afferent nerves, which leave a considerable part of the cutaneous sensibility of the limb intact. In man the spinal reflex mechanism connected with the knee-jerk is situated in the third and fourth lumbar segments. The jerk may be abolished by section of the third and fourth posterior nerve-roots, although to render the whole hind limb anæsthetic it would be necessary to divide all the roots from the second lumbar to the fourth sacral inclusive.

The extremely short period which elapses between the moment of striking the tendon and the contraction of the muscle, which was found by Gotch to be only about ·005 second, has been thought to prove that the tendon reflex must be due to direct stimulation of the muscle and could not be of the nature of a true reflex. It was therefore suggested that the func-

tion of the reflex arc was to keep the muscle in a state of wakefulness, ready to respond to the slightest local stimulation. No one has however succeeded in imitating, by a slight continuous stimulation of the motor nerve or otherwise, this reputed action of the reflex arc, and recent researches by Snyder and by Jolly indicate that, in spite of the rapidity of the response, the knee-jerk may nevertheless be a true reflex action, and in fact the most rapid reflex known.

Jolly, using the string galvanometer, has taken the current of action in the vastus internus muscle as an index of the commencing contraction of this muscle in the knee-jerk. He has also by the same method, by leading off the afferent and efferent nerves respectively, measured the lost time in the sense-organs and in the motor end-plates of the muscle. In the spinal cord he obtained the following electrical latencies in one case :

Latency of knee-jerk		$5{\cdot}3\sigma$ *
Afferent endings	$0{\cdot}4\sigma$	
Nerve conduction	$1{\cdot}4$	
Motor endings and action current . .	$1{\cdot}3$	
	$3{\cdot}1$	
Synapse time		$2{\cdot}2\sigma$

In this case the shortest latency determined for nerve-endings has been deducted from the shortest latent period obtained from the knee-jerk in the spinal cat. On the other hand, some decapitated preparations have been found to present considerably longer latent periods, *e.g.* 11 and 12σ. This variation in the latent period supports the view that the knee-jerk is a reflex of which the synapse time is very short, about 2σ, and that in certain cases there may be increased delay in the spinal cord. When the latencies of the knee-jerk and the homonymous flexor reflex are compared by the electrical method, it is found that the latter is roughly double the former, the average latency of the knee-jerk in the spinal cat being $6{\cdot}6\sigma$, and of the homonymous flexor reflex $13{\cdot}2\sigma$. Jolly suggests that this difference may be due to the fact that the knee-jerk mechanism involves only one spinal synapse or set of synapses, while the flexor reflex may involve two. In these estimates the rate of conduction in mammalian nerve has been taken at 120 metres per second.

Especially interesting is the relation shown by Sherrington to exist between the tonic condition of antagonistic muscles, *e.g.* between the hamstrings and the vastus internus of the quadriceps extensor muscle. Section of the hamstring muscles (so as to relax them) or even section of their nerve causes at once great increase in the jerk elicited by tapping the patellar tendon. On the other hand, the knee-jerk is abolished by stretching the hamstring muscles, or by weak stimulation of the central end of the cut nerve to the hamstrings (Fig. 168).

In this way a voluntary flexion of the knee by contraction of the hamstrings automatically abolishes the resistance which would be offered by the tonic contraction of the extensor muscles. In the absence of such an arrangement every movement of a joint, by stretching the antagonistic muscles, would automatically increase their tone, and thus set up a resistance to itself. The subject would thus be muscle-bound.

* $\sigma = {\cdot}001$ sec.

Very great exaggeration of the tendon phenomenon is observed in cases where the pyramidal tracts are degenerated, and indicates a heightened reflex excitability of the lower spinal centres, perhaps reinforced by impulses from the cerebellum. The importance of the latter impulses in determining the myotatic irritability of the muscles is especially marked in man, where total transverse lesion of the upper part of the spinal cord often abolishes permanently the tone of the muscles innervated from the lower portion of the cord, and especially the knee-jerk. How far this absence of tone is due to collateral changes in the cord has not yet been determined. In animals complete transverse section of the cord of the cervical region is followed by increase of the knee-jerk, which in the rabbit may be elicited within a quarter of an hour after the section has been carried out. In the increased myotatic irritability observed after removal of the cerebral cortex, or after degeneration of the pyramidal tracts coming from the motor cortex, a single tap on the patellar tendon may evoke a series of contractions of the extensor muscles of the thigh, giving rise to what is known as knee *clonus*. In the same way forcible flexion of the ankle causes a series of rhythmic contractions of the calf muscles (ankle clonus), varying in rhythm from six to ten per second. The heightened tone of the muscles under these conditions, and the ease with which any slight increase in their tension gives rise to clonic contractions, cause such patients to have a peculiar dancing gait, characteristic of pyramidal degeneration and known as the '*spastic*' gait; it is generally associated with a certain loss of voluntary control of the movements of the limbs, so that the whole complex of symptoms is called 'spastic paraplegia.'

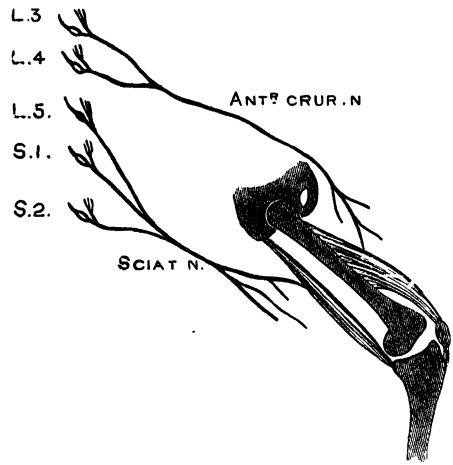


FIG. 168. Diagram to show muscles and nerves concerned in Sherrington's experiment on the reciprocal innervation of antagonistic muscles.

L3, L4, L5, third, fourth, and fifth lumbar roots; S1, S2, first and second sacral roots.

The value of the tendon phenomena as a means of diagnosis has tended to obscure their great importance in the normal individual. Every joint is protected by inextensible ligaments and by muscles. A sudden strain on a ligament either will have no effect, or will rupture some of its fibres and perhaps injure the adjacent joint surfaces. An ordinary reflex contraction would be powerless to prevent this, since the mischief would be done before the reaction could take place. But by means of the enormously rapid mechanism of the 'tendon reflex' the muscles are able to react to any sudden increase in their tension by an equally sudden contraction, which saves the joint before the individual has even become aware of the strain.

THE SPINAL MAN

During the last few years opportunity has been given for the study in man of the effects of complete isolation of the spinal cord. The results differ from those observed in the monkey, much in the same way as these differ from those in the dog or cat.

The results may be briefly summarised as follows:—

1. The period of shock lasts from one to three weeks; during this time, in addition to the complete abolition of voluntary movement and sensation in the parts below the lesion, the muscles are flaccid and toneless, and all reflexes are absent, except those affecting the sphincters of the bladder and rectum. These are found strongly contracted as early as the third day after the injury. There is in consequence retention of urine and fæces; the former, if not relieved, gives rise to distension of the bladder and a dribbling incontinence due to overflow.

2. As the shock passes away, certain reflex functions of the cord return. The first reflex which appears is the ordinary flexor reflex ensuing on painful stimulation of the sole of the foot. At its earliest appearance the first effect is adduction and flexion of the toes; but, with increased recovery of excitability, such a stimulus gives rise to a flexor reflex consisting of flexion at the hip, adduction of the thigh, flexion of the knee and the ankle, and extension of the toes.

In some cases this flexor reflex affects also the opposite limb, but there is little or no trace of the crossed extensor reflex observed in the spinal dog. Later on there is some return of reflexes also in the extensor muscles, specially marked as regards the deep reflexes, so that the knee-jerk may be obtained.

The visceral reflexes return shortly after the flexor reflex has made its appearance. Thus, if the bladder has been kept from over-distension, it begins to void itself naturally at a certain degree of distension, varying from 300 to 500 c.c. In this act of micturition, the contraction of the detrusor is associated with relaxation of the sphincter, so that the emptying of the bladder is complete. In the same way the rectum may empty itself when its distension attains a certain degree, and defæcation can always be elicited by the injection of 8 ozs. of fluid into the rectum.

Stimulation of the neighbourhood of the genitals, but especially of the glans penis, causes erection, which may be followed by emission of semen. This reflex of coitus is generally associated with strong movement of flexion of the lower limbs and contraction of the rectus muscles of the abdomen.

The main points in which the spinal man differs from the spinal dog are in the diminished localisation of response and in the almost complete suppression of the extensor reflexes. On account of the absence of local sign, almost any stimulus, if sufficiently intense, tends to evoke what has been termed a 'mass reflex,' in which there is flexion of both legs, and contraction of the abdominal muscles as well as of the bladder and rectum, and frequently profuse sweating over all parts of the body below the injury.

The diminution of the extensor reflex as compared with the spinal dog points to the gradual shifting of the postural reflexes towards the upper part of the central nervous system which accompanies the rise in the complexity of this system.

It should be noted that these reflex activities of the cord in man are only seen in their full development provided that means are taken to ward off septic disorder, either from bed-sores or infection of the urinary passages. Without extreme care general infection is apt to occur by one or other of these channels, and then the separated spinal cord very rapidly loses the whole of its reflex powers.

SECTION VIII

THE MECHANISM OF CO-ORDINATED MOVEMENTS

THE detailed study of the chief reflexes obtainable from a spinal animal has, in Sherrington's hands, yielded much information as to the linking of the various events which are concerned in the carrying out of every co-ordinated movement, and as to the conditions which determine the sequence and extent of the activities involved.

We may take, as the type of such a reflex, the flexion of the leg and thigh which ensues on the application of a painful stimulus to the ball of the foot, such as pricking with a needle or the application of the faradic current. Of course, in the spinal animal no pain can result from stimulation of any part below the level of section of the cord, and it is better therefore under such circumstances to speak of nocuous or pathic stimuli, since all stimuli which cause pain are such that, if their operation continued, they would result in damage to the material structure of the animal. This flexor reflex is also easily obtainable in the frog as a result of stimulating one of its toes by mechanical or chemical stimuli, but it is easier to analyse the different events involved in the reaction in the case of the larger animal.

The effect varies with the strength of the stimulus. The minimal effective stimulus causes simply movement of the foot. As its strength is increased this movement is attended by flexion of the leg on the thigh, and finally by flexion of the thigh on the body. With still further increase there is a spread to the opposite hind limb, which however performs the opposite movement of extension. Increase in the strength of stimulus causes not only an increase in the strength of contraction of the reacting muscles, but also an extension of the reaction to more and more muscles, or groups of muscles. The spread occurs always in definite order. The stimulus when represented by the prick of a needle can affect only one or two nerve fibres. The impulse carried along these fibres through a posterior root to the cord spreads in the cord, affects the motor neurons of the anterior horns, and causes these to discharge. The first discharge is as a rule limited to those in the immediate proximity of the entering impulses, but even when minimal, involves the simultaneous action of more than one anterior root. We may say that the motor response is determined to a certain extent by the spatial proximity of the afferent to the efferent tracts, but that it is always pluri-

segmental, the most important determining factor being the adaptation of the movement to the stimulus which is applied.

The gradual spread of the response with increasing strength of stimulus is spoken of as '*irradiation*.' The nature of the response is determined by the *locus* or place of application of the stimulus and by the quality of the latter. While a painful stimulus causes flexion of the leg, deep pressure on the plantar surface of the paw causes extension—the 'stepping' reflex. However extensive the irradiation, the muscles which are set into action are always such that their actions co-operate towards a given end. Thus, when the impulse spreads to the opposite limb and produces an extension, the reaction is such as would ensue when the dog steps on a sharp point and immediately retracts the irritated limb away from the injurious agent while it extends the other limb in the first act of progression or movement away from the dangerous spot.

A superficial study of this reflex would therefore lead us to the conclusion that, by the varying resistance in the different synapses on the course of the connections of the stimulated afferent nerves, the impulses are directed so as to affect solely and exclusively the muscles whose activity will co-operate and aid the primary reflex. Such a description would however represent only one half of the process. Every muscle in the body is in a state of tone varying with its extension. If this tone is not to interfere with the carrying out of a reflex movement, there must be some means by which it can be inhibited. Such an inhibition we have seen occur as the result of contraction of antagonistic muscles; but the remarkable fact has been brought out by Sherrington that the impulses, which start on the surface of the body and set loose a chain of motor impulses resulting in the co-ordinated contraction of certain muscles, spread at the same time to the motor mechanisms governing the muscles antagonistic to the movement, and exercise on these an inhibitory effect.

This inhibition can be easily shown in a spinal animal in the following way. The anterior thigh muscles are cut away from their attachments to the tibia and the patellar tendon is connected by a thread with a recording lever. On then exciting the flexor reflex by nocuous stimulation of the foot, the lever attached to the patellar tendon falls (Fig. 169B), showing that the extensor muscles have undergone actual elongation. The same effect is observed even when the hamstrings, the flexors of the knee, have been divided. The inhibition of the extensor tone is thus not only determined by the increased tension of the flexors, but is a direct result of the primary cutaneous stimulus.

From a broad standpoint the function of the nervous system is the co-ordination of all the activities of the body so that these may be combined to one common end, viz. the preservation of the organism. For this purpose there must be no clashing between opposing activities of different parts. If one part is engaged in any action this action must be the policy of the body as a whole. Yet the surface of the body is being continually played upon by ever-changing stimuli, tending to excite first

one reflex and then another, and the activities so excited would produce confusion in the conduct of the animal, if there were not some means by which at any one time only one reaction should be in the act of being carried out. The imperative stimulus should dominate the actions of the body as a

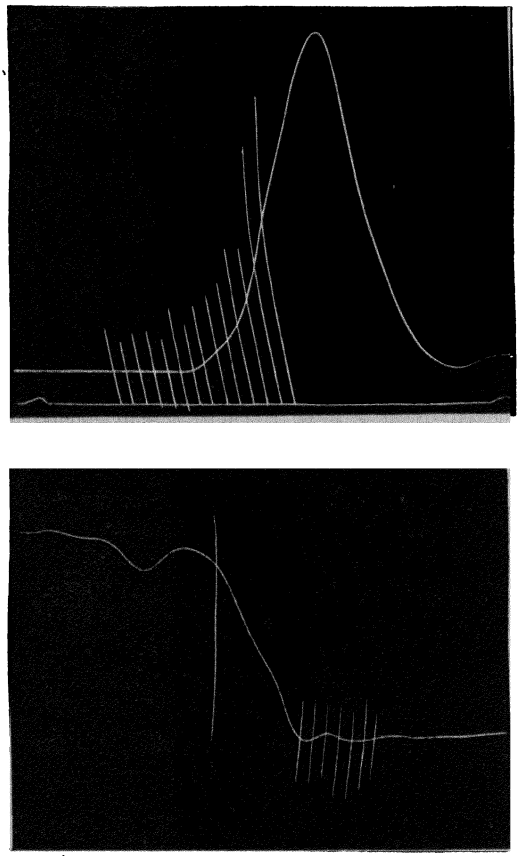


FIG. 169, A and B. (SHERRINGTON.)

The flexion reflex observed as reflex contraction (excitation) of the flexor muscles of the knee (A), and as reflex relaxation (inhibition) of the extensor muscle (B). The stimulus was a series of weak break induction shocks applied to a twig of the internal saphenous nerve below the knee. Observation B was made four minutes after A. Note the summation of stimuli, in each case six stimuli being required before the reaction was evoked.

whole. Just as, in the mental world, attention must be undivided if we are to avoid confusion of judgment, so in the lower nervous activities there must always be concentration on one act or another. There may be a struggle of different stimuli, but one must finally be prepotent and annul altogether the influence of the others. The study of the spinal animal

shows that this concentration of energy is obtained by the process of inhibition. Every successful reflex, *i.e.* one which actually occurs, inhibits all other reflexes which are not co-operative with the one which is taking place. We may, for instance, stimulate the area of skin which gives rise to the scratch reflex, and at the same time apply a painful stimulus to the foot. The result is not a movement compounded of the two reflexes, but as a rule the flexor reflex preponderates. If, for instance, the scratch reflex be proceeding and then the foot be pricked, the scratch reflex immediately comes to an end, and the flexor reflex occurs. When this in its turn has come to an end, the scratch reflex may be once more resumed (Fig. 170).

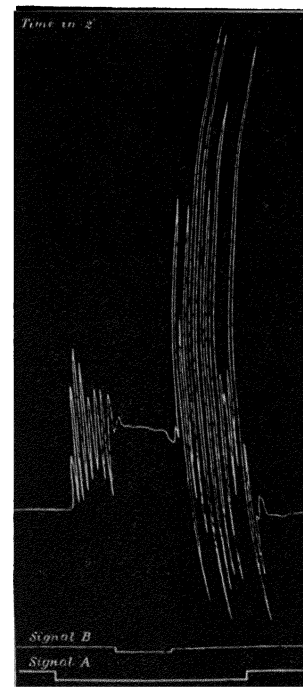


FIG. 170. Scratch reflex temporarily inhibited by application of a pathic stimulus to foot. Signal A, stimulation of scratch area. Signal B, stimulation of paw by strong induction shock.

One stimulus may reinforce another if the reactions ensuing on the two stimuli are allied—*i.e.* tend to co-operate one with another. In every other case however an afferent impulse entering the cord and spreading to a motor mechanism, so as to produce a co-ordinate contraction of various muscles, causes at the same time inhibition of the muscles antagonistic to the movement, and a block or inhibition in all other reflex arcs of the cord.

The anatomical basis of the various events involved in the carrying out of such a reflex as that just studied is shown in the diagram (Fig. 171). In this diagram the nerve fibre *a* represents the pain-receiving or nociceptive nerve from the skin of the foot. This passes by a posterior root into the spinal cord, where it divides and gives off a number of collaterals. These collaterals, as we have already seen, pass in various directions; some to the neighbouring grey matter, some to the centres in the higher parts of the nervous system. Neglecting the latter and any intermediate neuron which may be intercalated between the afferent fibre and the motor cell, we see that those collaterals which affect the motor cells of the muscles of the two hind limbs can be divided into two sets, one of which always produces during activity excitation in certain efferent neurons, whilst the other produces inhibition of the efferent neurons of the antagonistic muscles. The single afferent nerve fibre is therefore, with regard to one set of its central terminal branches, specifically excitor and, in regard to another set of its central endings, specifically inhibitor. In the case in point the central terminal branches of the nerve *a* are excitor for the flexor muscles

of the same side and inhibitor for the extensor muscles of the same side and for the flexor muscles of the opposite side.

The ascending branches of the nerve fibre in the same way will have endings which, while inhibitor for the greater number of other possible reflex changes, will be excitor in a slight degree for certain efferent neurons whose action is allied to that of the primary reflex. The diagram shows also that the contraction of the flexor muscle, set up as the result of stimu-

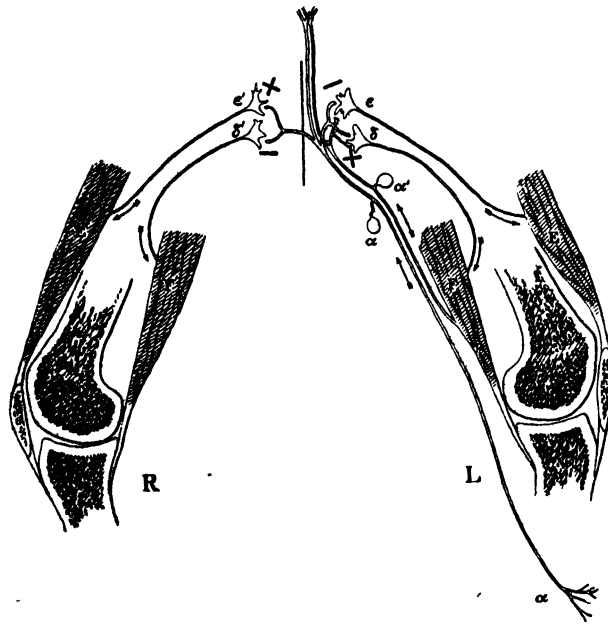


FIG. 171. Diagram indicating connections and actions of two afferent spinal root cells a and a′ in regard to their reflex influence on the extensor and flexor muscles of the two knees. The sign + indicates an excitatory effect the sign — an inhibitory effect. (SHERRINGTON.)

lating a, itself initiates a secondary reflex process from muscle up the nerve fibre a' and back again to the muscle by the efferent neuron. This muscular afferent nerve also has central terminations of two signs—excitor to itself and inhibitor to the antagonistic muscles. For the sake of clearness the diagram omits a number of other channels coming from other regions of the cord, or from other efferent nerves, the sign of which would be negative, *i.e.* which would tend to inhibit the activity of the whole reflex arc.

We see therefore that from every sensitive point on the surface of the body impulses can be initiated which will set into action whole chains of neurons, and will have a widespread influence throughout the central nervous system. It is important to note that the efferent path innervating, say, the flexor muscles of one side is common to many reflexes. It is used, for instance, by mutually antagonistic reflexes such as the scratch reflex and the flexor or

pain reflex. We must assume therefore that the mutual inhibition of different reflexes occurs, not in the 'final common path'—*i.e.* in the motor neurons which must always remain open—but further back in the arc probably near its afferent side.

We have reason to believe that the propagation of impulses through the central nervous system involves expenditure of energy, and that the seat of this expenditure may be located in all probability at the synapses. It follows that the result of any particular sensory stimulation will not be absolutely invariable, but that the spread of the nerve process in the nervous system,

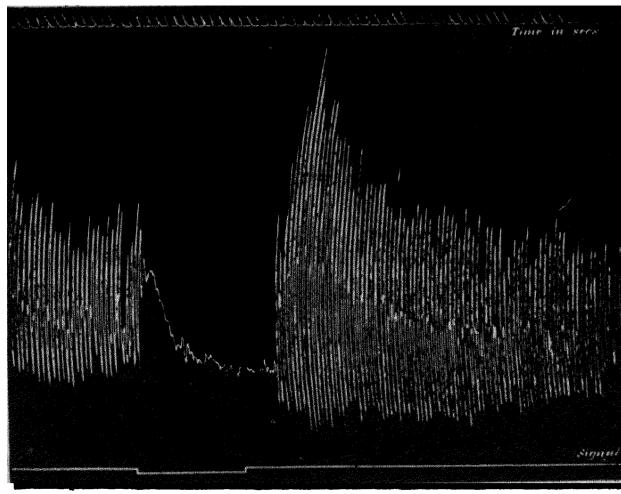


FIG. 172. 'Mark time' reflex in spinal dog, inhibited by slight stimulation of the tail (duration of stimulation shown by signal). Note the augmentation of the mark-time reflex following the inhibition (*successive spinal induction*) (SHERRINGTON)

and the degree of block presented by the various synapses and determining the potency of any given reaction, will depend on the condition of the various synapses at the time of the stimulation.

This condition may be altered in various ways. Repeated excitation causes in the synapses, just as in the nerve endings of the skeletal muscle, a condition of fatigue. Stimulation confined to a single point in the 'scratch area' of the spinal dog excites a scratch reflex which rapidly dies away. On shifting the exciting electrodes a little to one side the reflex act begins again, often with greater force than at first, and a very prolonged reaction can be induced by gradually moving the electrodes along the surface of the skin. A reflex arc therefore rapidly shows signs of fatigue, and the minute change in locus of stimulus which is required to reinduce a practically identical action, shows that the seat of fatigue must lie chiefly on the afferent side of the arc; perhaps in the first synapses through which the impulse has to pass. This easy incidence of fatigue tends to cut short any given reaction and to render it easier for other reactions to take its place.

Just as excitation causes fatigue and therefore furnishes a hindrance to repetition of the same act, so the reverse process of inhibition, which is a large component of every reaction, is followed by a condition of increased excitability, or diminished resistance to the passage of impulses. In each case there is a tendency for a 'swing-back' to take place from inexcitability to over-excitability, from excitation to inexcitability. This 'successive spinal induction,' as it has been termed, may be seen on inhibiting some movement by the excitation of an independent reflex. Thus the scratch reflex is excited, and then while the excitation is still continued the reaction is inhibited by excitation of the extensor or stepping reflex. As soon as the 'stepping' reflex has passed off, the scratch reflex returns with an intensity greater than before. This successive spinal induction explains the tendency which exists in the spinal cord to an alternation of response; every act tending to come to an end by fatigue and, as a result of negative spinal induction, inducing the opposed or antagonistic act. Thus if a spinal dog be held up in the vertical position, so that the hind limbs hang freely, these latter execute a series of alternate movements of flexion and extension. The starting-point of these is the stretching of the anterior thigh muscles. Once started they continue of themselves, each act exciting the alternating antagonistic act.

A reflex act has often been distinguished from other reactions, described as conscious or purposive, by its fatality—*i.e.* by the invariability with which it results on a given stimulus, whether the reaction be for the good of the animal as a whole or not. Thus a decapitated eel will wind itself with equal readiness around a stick or a hot poker. *All* reactions are however purposive. The machinery for them has been evolved and the paths laid down in the spinal cord under the action of natural selection, so that they must act, at any rate *in the average of cases,* towards the well-being of the animal as a whole. Since the nerve path involved in any reaction includes a number of synapses, each of which may be influenced from other parts of the body in a positive or negative direction, an absolute uniformity of response cannot be predicated for any one reaction. There will be changes in the facility with which it is evoked and changes in its extent, and these will become the more operative the greater the complexity of the arc, and the larger the number of other impulses to which it may be subject. The fatality of response is therefore shown only at its best in the very simplest of reflexes, or the most lowly organised nervous systems.

The purposive character of the reflexes obtained from the spinal frog has sometimes led writers, especially in pre-Darwinian days, to endow the spinal cord with a guiding intelligence. At the present time we recognise that every reaction of a living being must be purposive, in the sense of being adapted to the preservation of the species, if the latter is to survive in the struggle for existence. The question as to whether we are justified in predicating the existence of even a germ of consciousness or volition in the spinal animal must be decided in the negative. "Associative memory would seem to be a postulate for the very existence of perception. Where even simplest ideas are not, there cannot be consciousness. Animal movements that are appropriate not only for an immediate but also for a remote end indicate associative memory.

The approach of a dog in answer to the calling of its name, the return of an animal when hungry to the place where it has been wont to receive food, such movements may be taken as indicative of consciousness since they indicate the working of associative memory. Examined by this criterion all purely spinal reactions fail to evince features of consciousness" (Sherrington).

THE PART PLAYED BY AFFERENT IMPRESSIONS IN THE CO-ORDINATION OF MUSCULAR MOVEMENTS. Every reflex act is initiated in the first place by some form of sensory stimulus. In the carrying out of the muscular contractions and the resultant movements of the limbs, other impulses are set up in the structures which subserve deep sensibility, including those of muscles. These secondary afferent impulses in their turn affect the excitability and the activity of the motor neurons, and are important whether the movements be aroused by immediate sensory stimulation of the surface of the body, or through the higher parts of the brain, as in volitional movements.

Their significance is shown by the marked disorders of movement produced in a limb by section of some or all of its afferent nerves. Thus if all the posterior roots supplying one hind limb of the frog be divided, the posture of the desensitised limb is abnormal, whether the frog be suspended or be in a sitting posture. Such a frog generally swims with the desensitised limb in permanent extension. The complete absence of muscular tone under these circumstances has already been mentioned. When a contraction of the quadriceps extensor is induced by a single shock applied to the intact motor nerve, the curve obtained shows a relaxation line much slower and more prolonged than when the cut nerve is similarly excited. In the latter case, or when the posterior roots alone are divided, the lever at the end of relaxation dips below the base line with an inertia fling, which is never present while the nerve is intact. The contraction of the muscle, when its afferent path is intact, seems to develop reflexly in the muscle itself a condition of tone which damps the inertia swing of the contraction. In the dog, after section of the afferent nerves of one hind limb, this limb is not at first used for walking; it is kept more or less flexed at hip and knee, and later, when it is employed in walking, it is lifted too high with each step. After division of the afferent fibres of both limbs these appear as if they were affected with motor paralysis. At first, during walking, the fore limbs simply drag the hind limbs after them, though later, as the hind limbs are drawn along, they make alternate movements and may ultimately afford a certain amount of support to the body.

Still more striking effects are observed in complete apæsthesia of the fore limb in monkey or man. The limb is permanently paralysed; it is never used in climbing or in the taking of food. That the peripheral motor mechanism is intact is shown by the fact that stimulation of the appropriate area of the cerebral cortex in such animals elicits at once a perfectly normal movement of the hand or limb. It seems however impossible for the cortex to *initiate* such movements in the absence of all afferent impulses arriving from the limb. Similar paralysis was observed by Chas. Bell in the upper lip of the ass after

section of the corresponding branches of both fifth nerves, and was interpreted by him as indicating a possible motor function for these nerves.

In these phenomena of sensory paralysis we are dealing with the effects produced by the deprivation of two distinct classes of afferent impressions, viz. those from the skin and those from the deep structures and muscles. The phenomena due to these two factors may be studied separately. If in the monkey all the afferent brachial roots except the last cervical, which supplies cutaneous sensations to the whole hand, be divided, the monkey uses the arm and hand both in climbing and in taking food. A marked ataxy of the movement is however observed. Whereas the normal monkey, in taking grains of rice out of the observer's hand, exhibits perfect precision of movement so that he rarely touches the hand on which the grains are lying, the monkey with only cutaneous sensibility remaining grasps clumsily with the whole hand, and the arm sways as it is put out, often missing the object aimed at altogether. Cutaneous insensibility of the hind limb causes very little disturbance of locomotion, the alternate movements of which seem to be started by the stretching of the structures at the front of the thigh. On the other hand, a patient affected with such a loss may be the subject of 'static ataxy,' *i.e.* he is unable to stand with his feet together and his eyes shut. The afferent impressions from the skin of the feet appear therefore to be necessary for the maintenance of static equilibrium.

In the carrying out of co-ordinated movements, such as those of locomotion, the impressions from the muscles play a more important part. Division of the afferent nerves from the muscles gives rise to a condition of tonelessness, and the passive mobility of the joints is greater than usual, so that the hip with the limb extended at the knee may be flexed to an abnormal extent. The effect of this loss of tone is more apparent in the case of certain muscles. The disturbance of co-ordination resulting from the cutting off of afferent muscular impressions is well seen in cases of tabes dorsalis, or locomotor ataxy, in man, and to a slighter extent in cases of peripheral neuritis affecting chiefly the sensory nerves of muscles. The ataxic gait of such patient is characteristic. There is no loss of power in the muscles, but there is loss of control. The patient is unaware of the position of his limbs and has to guide his walk by visual impressions; even then the movements are inco-ordinated. The contraction of every muscle is exaggerated, so that in walking the leg is first raised too high and then is brought down on to the ground with a stamp. As the disease progresses the loss of control becomes more and more pronounced, so that attempts to walk simply give rise to a profusion of disordered movements, the legs being thrown in all directions with the patient's efforts, but with no effective result. The centres are no longer informed of the degree to which each muscle is contracted, and the impressions are wanting which should cut short the contraction of a muscle when it has attained its optimum, and which should inhibit the antagonists during the contraction and induce activity of the antagonists in successive alternation to those of the other muscles. In such a patient therefore walking finally becomes impossible and, with well-

nourished muscles and a motor path which is intact, he is condemned to pass the rest of his days in bed.

THE EFFECT OF POISONS ON THE SPINAL CORD

The reflex functions of the spinal cord may be abolished by the same drugs, such as ether, chloral, &c., which abolish conductivity in a nerve fibre. The central effect of these drugs is obtained with much smaller con-

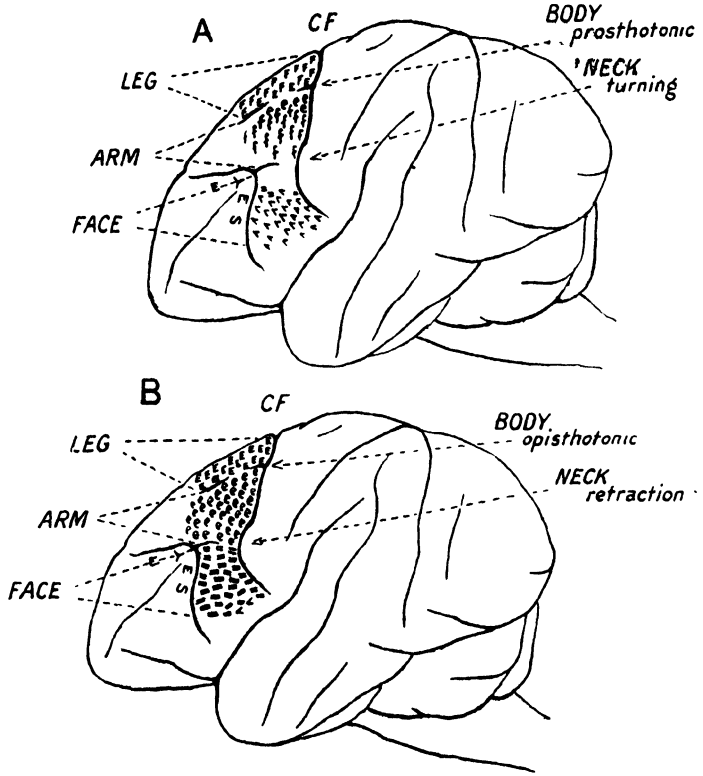


FIG. 173. Diagram by Sherrington to show influence of tetanus toxin on the response to excitation of the motor area of the cortex in the monkey.

A, normal animal. B, after poisoning with tetanus. F and *f* = flexion of leg and arm respectively. E and *e* signify extension. < signifies opening of mouth; = signifies closing of mouth.

centrations than is the case with the peripheral nerves. Hence their value as general anæsthetics.

More interesting from the point of view of the physiologist is the action of such a drug as strychnine, or the somewhat similar action of the toxin formed by the tetanus bacillus. If a small dose of strychnine be injected into a spinal frog, after a short period of heightened irritability the slightest stimulus applied to the surface will cause spasms, which may affect every

muscle in the body. Pinching the foot, instead of causing it to be drawn up now causes the legs, arms and back to be rigidly extended. The extension is not a co-ordinated act, but is associated with strong contraction of the flexors, the final position of the limbs being determined by the preponderating strength of the extensor muscles. The real meaning of this condition is seen if, in a spinal mammal, the extensor muscles be connected with a lever and the flexor muscles cut. On exciting the flexor reflex by pricking the foot, there is instantaneous relaxation of the extensor muscles. A small dose of strychnine is now given, insufficient to cause general convulsions. It is now found that on pricking the foot the extensor muscles respond, not with inhibition, but with a contraction. Strychnine acts by abolishing the inhibitory side of every co-ordinated act and converting the process of inhibition into one of excitation. Co-ordination therefore becomes an impossibility, and stimulation of any spot excites contractions not only of the appropriate muscles but also of the antagonists of these muscles, the direction of the resulting movement being determined simply by the relative strength of the two sets of muscles.

The same effect is produced by tetanus toxin and, since the action of this toxin may be confined in its early stages to one limb, it is possible to show the abolition of the inhibitor side of the reflexes in this one limb while the limb of the other side reacts normally to the stimulus. The same abolition of inhibition is found whether the response be excited by stimulation of the skin or by voluntary excitation from the cortex of the brain. Thus in the monkey, on stimulating the cortex, opening of the mouth may be excited from all the spots marked "$<$" in the diagram, closure being obtained only from those spots marked "$=$" (Fig. 173). Under the influence of the tetanus toxin excitation of every one of the spots, whether "$<$" or "$=$," causes closure of the jaw. It is impossible for a patient under these circumstances to open his mouth, because every willed impulse for opening innervates at the same time the stronger masseter muscles and effectively closes the mouth.

SECTION IX

TROPHIC FUNCTIONS OF THE CORD

THE reflexes which are excited by painful or nocuous stimuli must be regarded as prepotent in that their inhibitory effect on other reflexes is more marked than that produced by any other quality of stimulus. In the struggle for existence the reaction to nocuous stimuli must predominate over those due to any other kind, since it is essential for the survival of the animal that the stimulus should be removed or avoided, so that the animal should escape from its injurious effects.

It is natural therefore that after complete section of the afferent nerves from any part of the surface of the body there should be a tendency to trophic disturbances, such as the formation of ulcers, &c. Such ulceration is frequently observed in patients suffering from spinal disease. After section of the first division of the fifth nerve ulceration of the cornea is often produced. These effects are however merely due to the absence of the normal protective reactions of the part, and can be prevented by scrupulous cleanliness and protection of the apæsthetic part from all possible injuries. There are other trophic effects caused by nerve lesions which cannot be ascribed to the mere absence of protective reflexes. Thus inflammation of the posterior root ganglia often sets up herpes zoster, or 'shingles,' in the region of cutaneous distribution of the corresponding sensory nerve. Changes in the skin ('glossy skin') nails and hair are often seen after irritative injuries of nerves to the part. Section of a motor nerve causes rapid changes in the skeletal muscles supplied, which become smaller and after months or years may disappear altogether, being replaced by connective tissue. The changes in the excitability of the muscles produced under these circumstances have already been described.

It seems that the nutrition of a tissue is determined by its activity, and this in turn is under the control of some nerve path. Section of the nerve path, by cutting away the impulses which normally maintain the activity of the part, must at the same time seriously affect its nutrition. Thus the muscles which, though striated, are not so immediately under the control of the central nervous system, such as the sphincter ani, do not undergo degeneration after section of their nerves, or after extirpation of the lower part of the spinal cord.

On the other hand, it is only during post-fœtal life that the activity of the skeletal muscles is determined by the motor nerves of the cord. Thus

they may be developed normally even in the complete absence of a central nervous system. Whether we are justified in assuming the existence of trophic nerves exercising an influence on the nutrition of the part they supply, apart from any influence on its other functions, the experimental evidence before us is not sufficient to decide; nor can we as yet give a physiological analysis of the changes in nutrition which may be brought about in hysterical patients under the influence of emotion.

SECTION X

THE SPINAL CORD AS A CONDUCTOR

THE nervous system is built up of chains of neurons which subserve reactions of varying complexity. The complexity increases with the interference of the higher parts of the brain in the reactions and becomes therefore more and more marked as we ascend the animal scale. Whatever the course taken by the impulses in the central nervous system they must all finally make use of the motor common path, represented by the anterior spinal roots and by the motor roots of the cranial nerves.

The co-operation in any co-ordinated movement of widely separated portions of the central nervous system necessitates the existence of long paths, *i.e.* the axons of certain nerve cells must extend through a considerable distance in the central nervous system before they arrive at the next relay in the chain of which they form part. During this course the axons run in the white matter of the central nervous system and are surrounded by medullary sheaths. The white matter of the cord consists almost exclusively of medullated nerve fibres running for the most part longitudinally. These are of various sizes, some of the smaller fibres being collaterals, which have been given off from the larger ones and which will shortly turn into the grey matter. In section they resemble closely the fibres of an ordinary peripheral nerve, but differ from these in that they have no primitive sheath or neurilemma. Each consists of an axis cylinder surrounded by a thick sheath of myelin, the whole embedded in a tube formed by the neuroglia.

Of these fibres part belong to the spinal cord, the proprio-spinal or internuncial fibres, which we have studied previously. The greater number serve to establish connection between the grey matter of the cord or the afferent roots entering the cord and the different levels of the brain, and these fibres may carry impulses either up towards the brain or down towards the spinal cord; they may be ascending or afferent, so far as the brain is concerned, or descending and efferent. No fibre takes an isolated course on its way through the cord; practically every one sends off fine branches or collaterals, which run into the grey matter at various levels, there making connection or having synapses with the local reflex mechanisms contained in each segment.

On inspection the white matter is seen to be divided by the anterior and posterior fissures of the cord into two symmetrical halves, and the nerve roots divide each half into anterior or ventral, lateral, and posterior

or dorsal columns. On account of the scattered distribution of the anterior root fibres over a considerable area of the surface of the cord, the division between the anterior and the lateral columns is ill defined, and the whole region is often called as the antero-lateral column. In the cervical and upper dorsal region of the cord, slight grooves on the surface of the cord indicate a division of the anterior column into the antero-median and antero-lateral columns, and of the posterior column into the postero-median and postero-lateral columns. These two posterior columns are often designated as the columns of Goll and Burdach. In order to determine the origin, course, and destination of the fibres which make up these white columns, we must have recourse to the indirect methods of development and of degeneration which were described on p. 319. By these means we may divide the white matter into ascending and descending tracts. An 'ascending' tract means, not that the direction of conduction of the impulse is necessarily in the upward direction, *i.e.* from spinal cord to brain, but that the nerve cell which gives off the fibres sends its axons towards the brain, while a descending fibre in the cord is the axon of a nerve-cell situated in the upper part of the cord or in some part of the brain. If the assumption which we have made as to the normal direction of conduction in axons and dendrites be correct, an ascending fibre will also conduct impulses in an ascending direction. After section of the cord, say in the mid-dorsal region, transverse sections of the cervical and lumbar regions of the cord, taken at the appropriate period after the lesion has been inflicted, show patches of degenerated fibres in the white matter. The fibres which are degenerated above the section represent the ascending tracts, whereas those which degenerate below the section, *i.e.* in the lumbar region, are the descending tracts of the cord (*cp.* Figs. 174 and 175).

In this way the following tracts have been distinguished:

A. DESCENDING TRACTS

(1) **PYRAMIDAL TRACTS.** If the spinal cord be divided in the upper cervical region, degeneration of two distinct tracts on each side, in the anterior and postero-lateral columns, is produced. These are the anterior or direct and the crossed pyramidal tracts. The fibres composing these tracts are derived from large nerve-cells in the motor area of the cerebral cortex, and therefore degenerate if the motor area of the cortex is destroyed. The pyramidal tracts are derived from the cerebral cortex of the opposite side, having crossed the middle line at the lower level of the medulla oblongata in the pyramidal decussation. The anterior pyramids represent a certain number of fibres which have not crossed with the others, but continue the course of medullary pyramids for a time, crossing gradually by the anterior commissure on their way down the cord, so that as a rule they come to an end in the mid-dorsal region, all the fibres having passed into the lateral columns of the opposite side. A few fibres of the pyramids on their way from the cerebral cortex pass into the lateral columns of the same side; these are the uncrossed pyramidal fibres. The greater number of the fibres however finally reach the crossed pyramidal tracts, in which they can be traced as far as the lower end of the cord. They end in the spinal cord by turning into the grey matter where they break up into a fine bunch of fibrils in close connection with the motor cells of the anterior horn or, according to Schafer, with the cells of the posterior horn.

On their way down the cord they give off fine side branches or collaterals, which run into the grey matter, thus establishing connections between one cortical cell and the anterior cornual cells of several different segments of the spinal cord. These fibres carry voluntary motor impulses from the cerebral cortex to the reflex motor mechanisms of the cord. Their destruction by disease, or otherwise, causes the abolition of voluntary control over the muscles, without however interfering with the reflex motor functions of the cord which, as a matter of fact, are increased in cases where these tracts have undergone degeneration.

(2) **RUBRO-SPINAL OR PRE-PYRAMIDAL TRACT** (also called Monakow's Bundle). This is a fairly compact group of fibres which degenerate downwards after section of the cord. It is situated, in cross-section, ventral to the pyramidal tracts. Its fibres can be traced up to the cells in the red nucleus, a mass of grey matter in the mid-brain lying ventrally to the nucleus of the third nerve. They are probably chiefly concerned with carrying motor impulses involving maintenance of posture, and are the main efferent channels of the cerebellum—red nucleus co-ordinating mechanism.

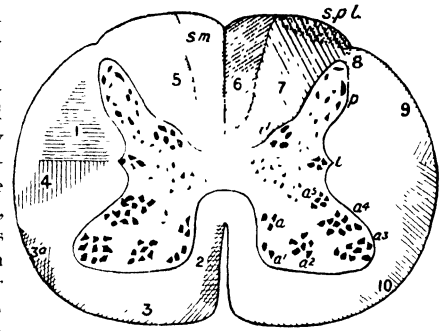


FIG. 174. Diagram (*from* SCHAFER) showing the ascending (right side) and the descending (left side) tracts in the spinal cord.

1, crossed pyramidal; 2, direct pyramidal; 3, antero-lateral descending; 3*a*, spino-olivary descending (bundle of Helweg); 4, pre-pyramidal (rubro-spinal); 5, comma; 6, postero-mesial; 7, postero-lateral; 8, Lissauer's tract; 9, dorsal (ascending) cerebellar; 10, antero-lateral ascending; *sm*, septo-marginal; *spl*, dorsal root zone; *a*, anterior horn-cells; *i*, intermedio-lateral horn; *p*, cells of posterior horn; *d*. Clarke's column. The fine dots represent the situation of the 'internuncial' or 'endogenous' fibres of the spinal cord

(3) **VESTIBULO-SPINAL TRACT.** This consists of scattered fibres in the antero-lateral column, which degenerate in the downward direction. They were formerly supposed to be derived from the cerebellum of the same side, but it has been shown that they are in all probability derived from Deiters' nucleus in the medulla—an important transmitting station between the cerebellum and cord.

(4) **OLIVO-SPINAL AND THALAMICO-SPINAL TRACTS** (Bundle of Helweg). This tract is also situated in the antero-lateral column, opposite the head of the anterior horn. It consists mainly of fibres which pass from the thalamus (the fore brain) through the inferior olive of the medulla downwards in the cord as far as the lower cervical region.

(5) **COMMA TRACT.** This tract lies in the posterior columns at the junction of the postero-median and postero-lateral portions. It consists for the most part of the descending branches of the afferent dorsal nerve roots. These divide as they enter the cord, and their descending branches pass down for two or three segments in the comma tract before turning into the grey matter. The tract, however, contains fibres of other origin, some of which begin and end in the spinal cord itself.

(6) **TRACT OF MARIE.** This, also in the anterior column, contains both descending and ascending fibres and is largely a continuation of the posterior longitudinal bundle, the connections of which we shall have to study later on. A small tract of fibres, which degenerate in the descending direction, is also found in the posterior part of the cord adjoining the posterior longitudinal fissure.

(7) **SEPTO-MARGINAL BUNDLE.** This is largely proprio-spinal, but may contain fibres coming from the mid-brain.

B. ASCENDING TRACTS

These may be divided according as they are situated in the posterior, the lateral, or the anterior columns.

(*a*) **THE POSTERIOR COLUMNS.** Almost the whole of the fibres making up these columns are exogenous, being axons of cells in the posterior root ganglia. They can be divided into long, medium, and short fibres, all of which, on their way up, give off collaterals, which pass into the grey matter and ramify round nerve-cells, especially in the posterior horns (*cp.* Fig. 160). The longest fibres pass to the upper end of the cord, where they end in the posterior column nuclei, the nucleus gracilis and the nucleus cuneatus of the medulla. These fibres remain entirely on the side of the cord on which they have entered. As they pass up they are displaced towards the middle line by each incoming and higher placed root. Thus in the cervical region, and indeed from the fifth dorsal segment upwards, two columns can be distinguished in the posterior part of the cord, viz. the postero-median and postero-lateral columns, the division between which is indicated by a small groove on the surface. The postero-median column contains from within outwards the fibres from the sacral region, those from the lumbar region, and those from the inferior dorsal region. The postero-lateral column, or column of Burdach, contains mesially the four upper dorsal root fibres and more laterally the fibres from the cervical nerves.

(*b*) **THE LATERAL COLUMNS.** In these columns are found the two cerebellar tracts, as well as scattered fibres passing to the fore- and mid-brain.

(1) THE DIRECT OR DORSAL CEREBELLAR TRACT arises from the cells of Clarke's column on its own side. It consists of large fibres, which pass through the grey matter to the lateral columns of the same side, and ascend in the cord immediately ventral to the incoming posterior root fibres, and external to the crossed pyramidal tract. In the medulla they are joined by a bundle of fibres from the opposite inferior olive and pass with the restiform body into the cerebellum, where they terminate in the superior vermis of this organ.

(2) THE VENTRAL OR ANTERIOR CEREBELLAR TRACT, often called the tract of Gowers, arises in cells scattered through the grey matter, chiefly of the posterior horn of the opposite side, though a few fibres are derived from cells of the same side. The tract consists of fine fibres which pass upwards in the peripheral margin of the lateral column, extending from the direct cerebellar tract behind to the level of the anterior roots in front; it passes upwards through the cord, the medulla, and the pons, then turns round to enter the cerebellum through the superior cerebellar peduncle, ending chiefly in the ventral portion of the superior vermis.

(3) THE SPINO-THALAMIC AND SPINO-TECTAL TRACTS. These fibres form a scattered bundle lying internally to the anterior cerebellar tract, and are practically part of Gowers' tract. They may be traced through the cord, medulla, and pons, and end partly in the anterior corpora quadrigemina of both sides, but to a greater extent in the optic thalamus of the same side.

(*c*) **ANTERIOR COLUMNS.** A number of scattered fibres pass up the anterior columns, mingled with the descending fibres of the tract of Marie in the angle of the anterior fissure. Others pass up partly to end in the olivary body, partly to run on with the mesial fillet towards the thalamic region.

The white matter of the cord can thus be regarded as made up of short and of long tracts, which maintain direct connection between the following parts of the central nervous system:

(1) Different levels of the cord itself by means of the proprio-spinal fibres.

(2) Hind-brain and spinal cord, by the anterior and posterior cerebellar tracts, the posterior columns, and the spino-olivary fibres among the ascend-

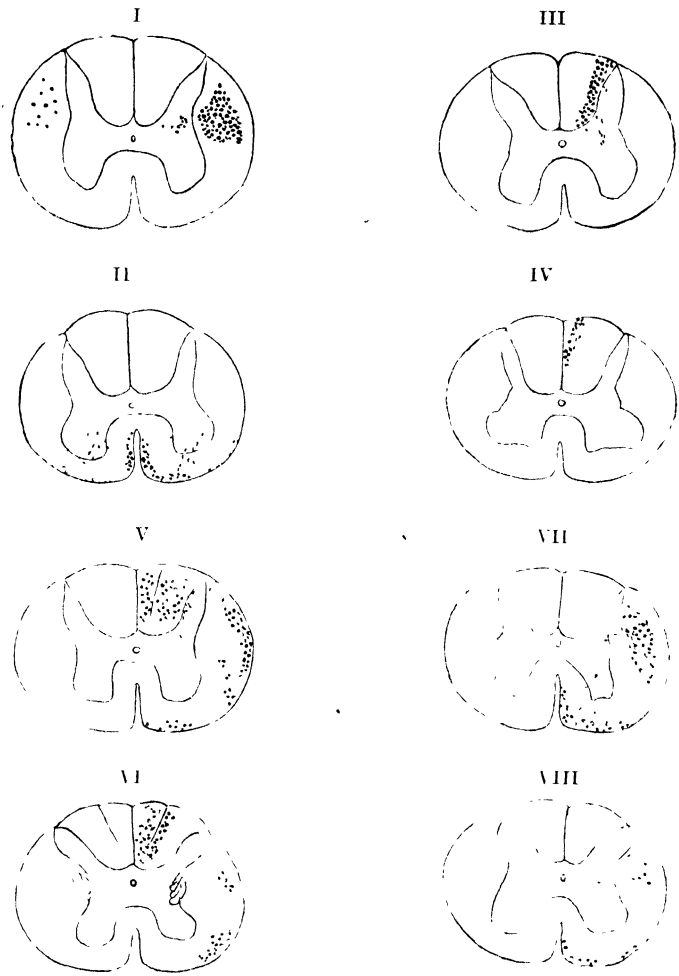


FIG. 175. Diagram of sections of the spinal cord of the monkey showing the position of degenerated tracts of nerve fibres after specific lesions of the cord itself, the afferent nerve roots, and of the motor region of the cerebral cortex. (SCHAFER.) (The degenerations are shown by the method of Marchi.) The left side of the cord is at the reader's left hand.

I. Degenerations resulting from extirpation of the motor area of the cortex of the left cerebral hemisphere.

II. Degenerations produced by section of the posterior longitudinal bundles in the upper part of the medulla oblongata.

III and IV. Result of section of posterior roots of the first, second, and third lumbar nerves on the right side. Section III is from the segment of cord between the last thoracic and first lumbar roots; section IV from the same cord in the cervical region.

V to VIII. Degenerations resulting from (right) semi-section of the cord in the upper thoracic region. V is taken a short distance above the level of section; VI higher up the cord (cervical region); VII a little below the level of section; VIII lumbar region.

ing tracts, and the vestibulo-spinal and olivo-spinal among the descending tracts.

(3) The mid-brain and cord connections are represented by the spino-tectal tracts in the lateral columns as a direct ascending path, and by the rubro-spinal tract which furnishes a direct efferent connection between mid-brain and cord.

(4) The fore-brain, viz. the thalamus, receives the spino-thalamic fibres which, though scattered, are of considerable importance. They run chiefly in the lateral and anterior columns. Its efferent fibres cannot be traced below the lower cervical region.

(5) The cerebral cortex, the master tissue of the body, receives no fibres directly from the cord or periphery of the body, but by the pyramidal tracts is able to influence directly the activities of the motor mechanisms at every level of the cord. These fibres, so far as is known, exist only in mammals, and show a great increase in relative extent when traced from lower to higher types. While in the rabbit the pyramidal tract is hardly perceptible, in the monkey it is the best marked of all the tracts, and in man is still more highly developed. This relative increase, which is probably associated with the shunting of more and more of the reactions of the body from the region of the unconditioned reflex to that of the educatable reaction, is shown not merely by the tract occupying a larger proportion of the transverse area of the cord, but by its fibres being more densely set within that area

THE PATHS OF IMPULSES IN THE CORD

The greater part of the white matter is thus concerned in transmitting impulses to nerve cells in the brain, and from the brain towards the cord. The complex reactions determined by these impulses are in many cases as unconscious and automatic as those we have studied in the spinal cord, even though they may involve the activity of the cerebral cortex itself. Others however influence consciousness, so that their afferent side appears in consciousness as sensations of various qualities, and their efferent side as the result of volition, *i.e.* as willed or emotional movements

The posterior spinal (sensory) roots at their entrance into the cord divide into two bundles. The smaller of the two, situated more laterally and consisting of fine fibres, enters opposite the tip of the posterior horn and turns up at once in Lissauer's tract, a bundle of fine longitudinal fibres close to the periphery of the cord. The fibres seem to pass into and end in the substance of Rolando. The larger median bundle of coarse fibres passes into the postero-external column. Here each fibre divides into a descending and an ascending branch, the former running in the comma tract, the latter in the posterior columns up as far as the gracile and cuneate nuclei of the medulla. Both of these branches give off collaterals in the whole of their course, most numerous near the point of entry of the nerve. These collaterals may be divided into four sets according to their destination:

(1) Fibres ending round cells of anterior horn on same side or crossing by posterior commissure to grey matter on other side.

(2) Fibres ending in grey matter of posterior horns.
(3) Fibres ending round cells of Clarke's column.
(4) Fibres to lateral horn.

Since the motor nerves arise from the anterior horn-cells, the first set, the ' sensori-motor ' collaterals, represents the shortest possible spinal reflex path. The second group may also represent a spinal reflex path with two relays of cells, and therefore greater choice of response and longer reaction time. The third set puts into action the cerebellar tracts which arise from the cells of Clarke's column, and therefore calls into play a much more complicated mechanism, the limits of whose action it would be difficult to define. The collaterals to the lateral horn probably represent the afferent tracts of the various visceral and vaso-motor reflexes which we shall study later.

We find no special tracts devoted to those impulses which affect consciousness as sensations. All tracts going towards the cerebral hemispheres are interrupted by cell relays, in the medulla, cerebellum, or optic thalamus, and must serve as afferent channels for unconscious as well as for conscious reactions. The quality of an afferent impulse can be defined only by its origin, or by its effect on consciousness, and much discussion has arisen as to the exact path of the various cutaneous and muscular sensations in the cord.

It is evident that an impulse might travel to the cortex by way of the two cerebellar tracts through the cerebellum, or by way of the posterior columns through the intermediation of the bulbar nuclei, or by the spino-thalamic fibres, or by a series of relays from one segment of the cord to another through grey and white matter alternately It is supposed that all of the ascending tracts may convey afferent impulses from the posterior spinal roots to the brain, although evidence as to the part taken by each tract is very conflicting. The following account represents the views which may be regarded as the most probable (Page May) (Fig. 176) : Pain impulses, on entering the cord by the posterior roots, cross to the other side at once, and then pass up, chiefly in the antero-lateral column, by the spino-thalamic fibres as far as the optic thalamus. Sensations of heat and cold take a very similar course. Hence they are generally affected by lesions of the cord in the same way as pain sensations. Impulses of touch and pressure, after entering the cord, pass up in the posterior column of the same side for four or five segments, then cross gradually and pass up in the opposite anterior column. Impulses serving muscular sensibility, including the impulses from joints and tendons, take two courses. Those which do not reach consciousness and are involved in the involuntary guidance of muscular movements, run up chiefly in the anterior and posterior cerebellar tracts of the same side. Those which furnish the material for conscious sensations and give information as to the position of the limbs, &c., are entirely homolateral, and travel up in the posterior columns of the same side of the cord. All impulses which reach the brain cross finally to the optic thalamus and thence to the cerebral cortex of the opposite side.

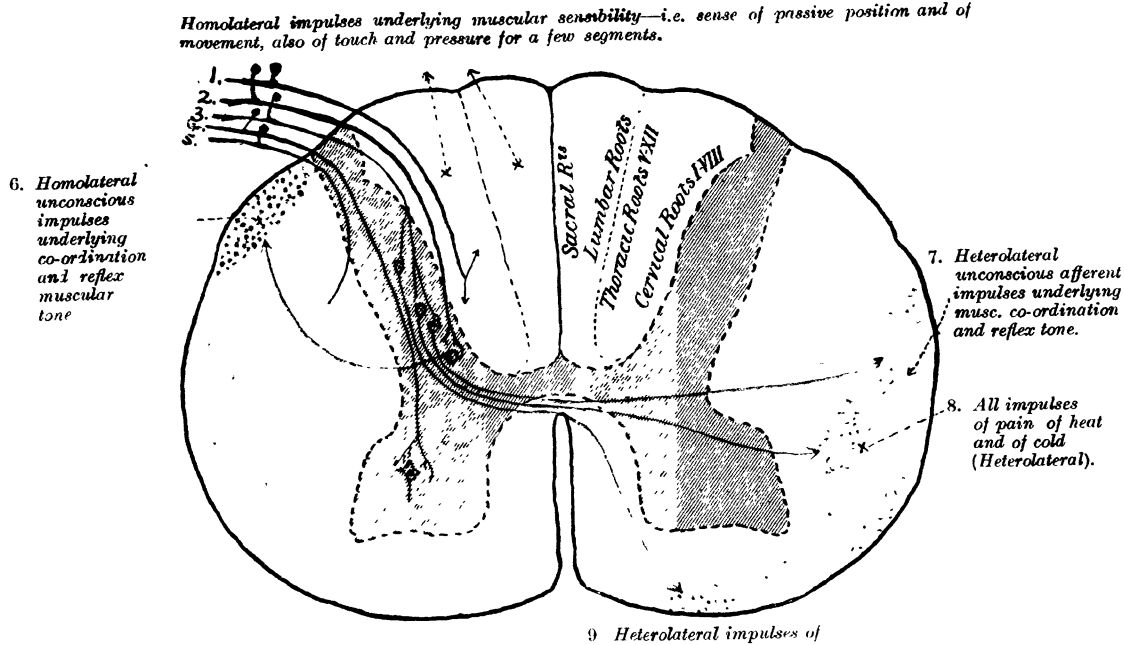


FIG. 176. Diagram to illustrate the termination of peripheral afferent fibres in the spinal cord, and the origin of the secondary central paths, with a brief summary of their function

1, bundles of fibres passing up in the posterior column—many myelopetal (to sp. cord) and the remainder bulbo-petal (to p. col. nuclei); 2, fibres terminating around the cells of Clarke's column; 3, fibres arborising around cells in the posterior horn, and intermediate grey matter; 4, ditto around the anterior horn-cells; 5, ditto swerving into the lateral column to neighbouring grey matter; 6, direct, or dorsal spino-cerebellar tract; 7 and 8, Gowers' tract, *i.e.* (7) ventral spino-cerebellar tract, (8) spino-thalamic and tectal tracts, 9, ascending tract in the anterior column (W PAGE MAY)

Hemisection of the cord on one side, as was first pointed out by Brown Sequard, causes the following symptoms:

(1) Paralysis of the voluntary motor conductors on the same side.

(2) A paralysis also of the vaso-motor conductors on the same side and, as a consequence, a greater afflux of blood and a higher temperature. There may be some degree of hyperæsthesia on this side.

(3) There is anæsthesia affecting all kinds of sensibility, excepting the muscular sense, in the opposite side to that of the lesion, owing to the fact that the conductors of sensitive impressions from the trunk and limbs decussate in the spinal cord; so that an injury in the cervical region of that organ in the right side, for instance, alters or destroys the conductors from the left side of the body.

(4) There is some degree of anæsthesia also on the side of the lesion, in a very limited zone, above the hyperæsthetic parts, and indicating the level of the lesion in the cord. This anæsthesia is due to the fact that the conductors of sensory impressions, reaching the cord through the posterior roots, at the level or a little below the seat of the alteration, have to pass through the altered part to reach the other side of the cord

The only direct unbroken cortico-spinal fibres are those contained in the pyramidal tracts. Motor impulses, which start from the cerebral cortex on one side, pass down that side till they reach the lower part of the medulla. Here the greater number of the fibres cross over in the pyramidal decussation to run down in the crossed pyramidal tract on the other side of the cord. The few fibres which do not cross over in the pyramidal decussation are continued as the direct or anterior pyramidal tract. These however also cross to the other side in their passage down the cord before becoming connected with the anterior cornual cells. Hemisection therefore of the spinal cord in the dorsal region will produce paralysis of voluntary movement and loss of or impaired muscular sensation in the parts supplied by the nerves on the same side below the lesion.

A great part of the white matter of the cord is concerned then in maintaining connection between the brain and higher parts of the nervous system and the periphery, through the intermediation of the cells of the grey matter of the cord. Corresponding to this function we find a gradual increase in the number of fibres in the white matter as we ascend from the sacral part of the cord to the medulla, the white matter being continually reinforced as it ascends the cord by fibres establishing connection with the ganglion-cells forming the nuclei of the nerve roots.

Vaso-motor impulses to the limbs travel down the lateral columns of the cord on the same side.

THE BRAIN

SECTION XI

THE STRUCTURE OF THE BRAIN STEM

THE physiology of the brain falls naturally into two main divisions, namely, that of the brain stem, including the medulla, the pons, Sylvian iter, corpora quadrigemina and third ventricle, and that of the cerebral hemispheres. It is usual, in treating of the structure of the brain stem, to consider it as a prolongation forwards of the spinal cord and as consisting, like this, of a central tube of grey matter surrounded by a tube of white matter. Like the spinal cord, the brain stem may be regarded as originating primitively by the fusion of a series of ganglia presiding over the local reactions of their respective somites. The modifications in this segmental arrangement, which have occurred in the course of evolution, have been so profound that little trace of the primitive segmental arrangement is to be observed. At the fore end of the body have been developed the organs of special sense, which are the most important in determining the reactions of the animal in response to present or approaching changes in its environment. Indeed the whole course of evolution is conditioned by the development of the brain stem in the first place, and of its outgrowth, the cerebral hemispheres, in the second. Hence we cannot expect to find in the brain stem the regularity of arrangement of grey and white matter that we have studied in the cord. The typical division of the grey matter into cornua becomes altogether lost. While some nerves take their origin from or terminate in the central tube of grey matter, in other cases the collections of nerve cells and fibres forming the nuclei of the cranial nerves have become more or less separated from the central axis. Moreover the central grey matter is by itself quite inadequate to deal with the flood of afferent impressions entering the central nervous system through the organs of special sense, or to co-ordinate these with one another or with those arriving from the skin and lower part of the body. Masses of grey matter, which have no representative in the cord, make their appearance, and may be regarded as additional sorting stations or fields of conjunction for the afferent and efferent impulses which determine the nervous activities of the animal.

The general features of the structure of the brain will be best understood by reference to the mode of development of this part of the central nervous system. At the front end of the body, the primitive neural tube, formed by the invagination and growing over

of the epiblast, is somewhat enlarged and is marked off by two constrictions into the three primitive cerebral vesicles, which are named respectively the fore-, the mid-, and the hind-brain, or the prosencephalon, the mesencephalon, and the rhombencephalon (Fig. 177). At their first formation the walls of these vesicles are composed of simple epithelial cells, and show no trace of nervous structure. A little later the cells forming the walls present a differentiation into neuroblasts and spongioblasts, the former developing into nerve cells, while the latter form the neuroglial supporting tissues of the brain and probably also furnish the cells of the sheath of Schwann to the outgrowing cranial nerves. In some places the wall of the vesicles remains undifferentiated: no nervous tissues develop in it, and it forms a layer of epithelium known as *ependyma*. By the varying growth of nervous tissue in different parts of the wall, the typical structure of the adult brain is brought about (Fig. 178). Thus in the hind-brain, or rhombencephalon, the roof of the neural canal posteriorly fails to develop, so that in the adult brain there is merely a layer of epithelium covering the expanded central canal, here known as the fourth ventricle. This back part of the hind-brain is often called the myelencephalon, the anterior portion being the metencephalon. The floor of the myelencephalon undergoes considerable thickening and forms the future medulla oblongata. In the metencephalon, nervous tissue is developed all round the canal, the floor of the canal forming the pons Varolii, while the cerebellum is developed by an outgrowth of the dorsal wall. In the region of the constriction between the hind- and mid-brain known as the isthmus, the roof or dorsal wall forms the superior cerebellar peduncles at the side, and between them a thin layer of nervous matter known as the valve of Vieussens, or superior medullary velum. The cavity of the third vesicle corresponds in the adult brain to what is known as the fourth ventricle.

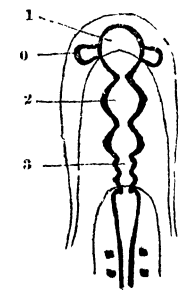


FIG. 177. Diagram of the cerebral vesicles of the brain of a chick at the second day. (CADIAT.) 1, 2, 3, cerebral vesicles; 0, optic vesicles.

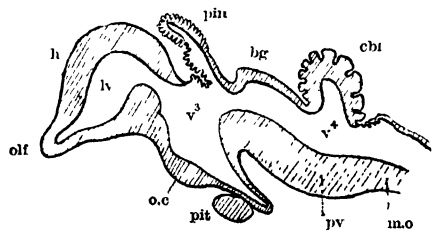


FIG. 178. Longitudinal section through brain of chick of ten days (After MIHALKOVICZ.)

olf, olfactory lobes; *h*, cerebral hemisphere; *lv*, lateral ventricle; *pin*, pineal gland, *bg*, corpora bigemina, *cbl*, cerebellum; *oc*, optic commissure; *pit*, pituitary body; *pv*, pons Varolii; *mo*, medulla oblongata. v^3, v^4, third and fourth ventricles.

The mesencephalon, or second cerebral vesicle, takes a relatively small part in the formation of the adult human brain, though very conspicuous in many of the lower types of brain. The whole of its wall is transformed into nervous tissue, the roof or dorsal wall forming the corpora quadrigemina, while the two crura cerebri are developed in its ventral wall. The cavity of the second cerebral vesicle is retained as a narrow canal known as the aqueduct of Sylvius, and connects the fourth ventricle with the third ventricle.

Very soon after its first appearance the first cerebral vesicle is modified by the formation of lateral expansions, known as the optic vesicles, which later on are constricted off from the central part of the cavity so as to be connected with this by two short tubular passages, the optic stalks. From the optic vessels are ultimately developed the retinæ of the eyes. By the development of nerve cells in the optic cup the ganglion-cell layer of the retinæ is produced, and from these cells fibres grow back along the optic stalk and make connection with the grey matter developed in the lateral wall of the fore-brain and with the adjacent parts of the mid-brain, viz the superior corpora

quadrigemina. The large masses of nervous tissue developed in the lateral walls of the fore-brain are the optic thalami, which represent the head ganglia of the brain stem. The front portion of the first cerebral vesicle expands in a forward and downward direction, and from the upper and lateral aspects of the outgrowth thus formed the cerebral hemispheres are produced as two hollow pouches. The original back part of the fore-brain is sometimes spoken of as the diencephalon, while the anterior part of the cerebral hemisphere growing from it is the telencephalon. The floor or ventral

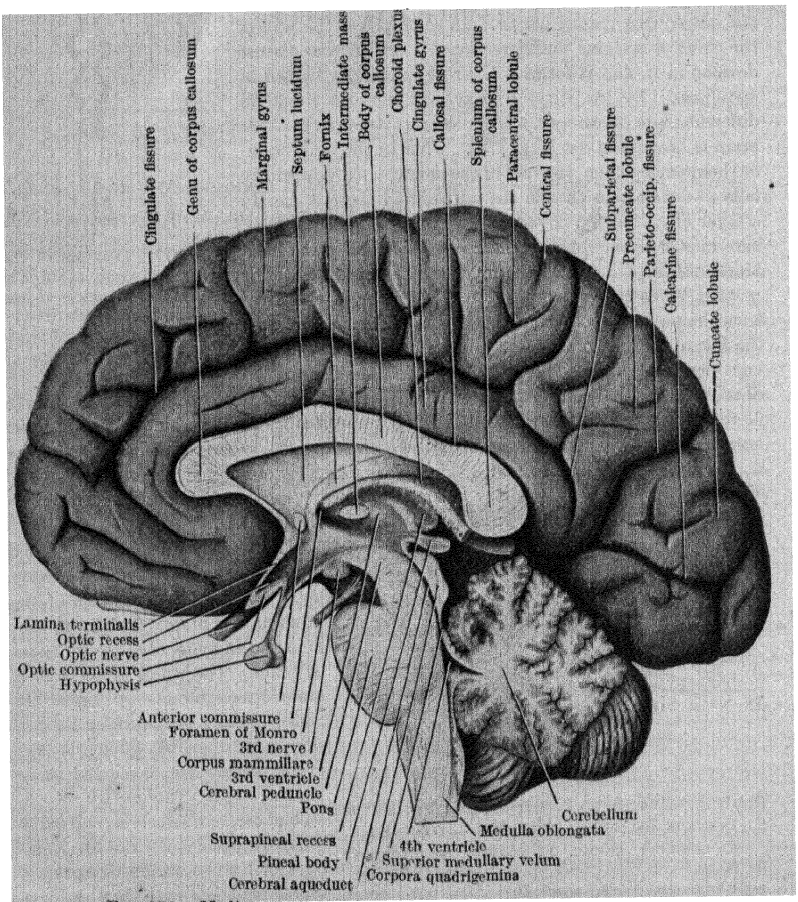


FIG. 179. Median section of an adult human brain. (J. SYMINGTON.)

wall of the fore-brain undergoes moderate thickening to form the nervous structures which occupy the 'interpeduncular space' at the base of the brain, viz. the posterior perforated spot, the corpora mammillaria and the tuber cinereum. The roof of the first cerebral vesicle remains thin and in its primitive epithelial condition, like the roof of the back part of the fourth ventricle.

In the course of development the cerebral hemispheres become larger than the whole of the rest of the brain put together, growing backwards over the latter as far as the middle of the cerebellum (Fig 179). Their dorsal and lateral walls become much

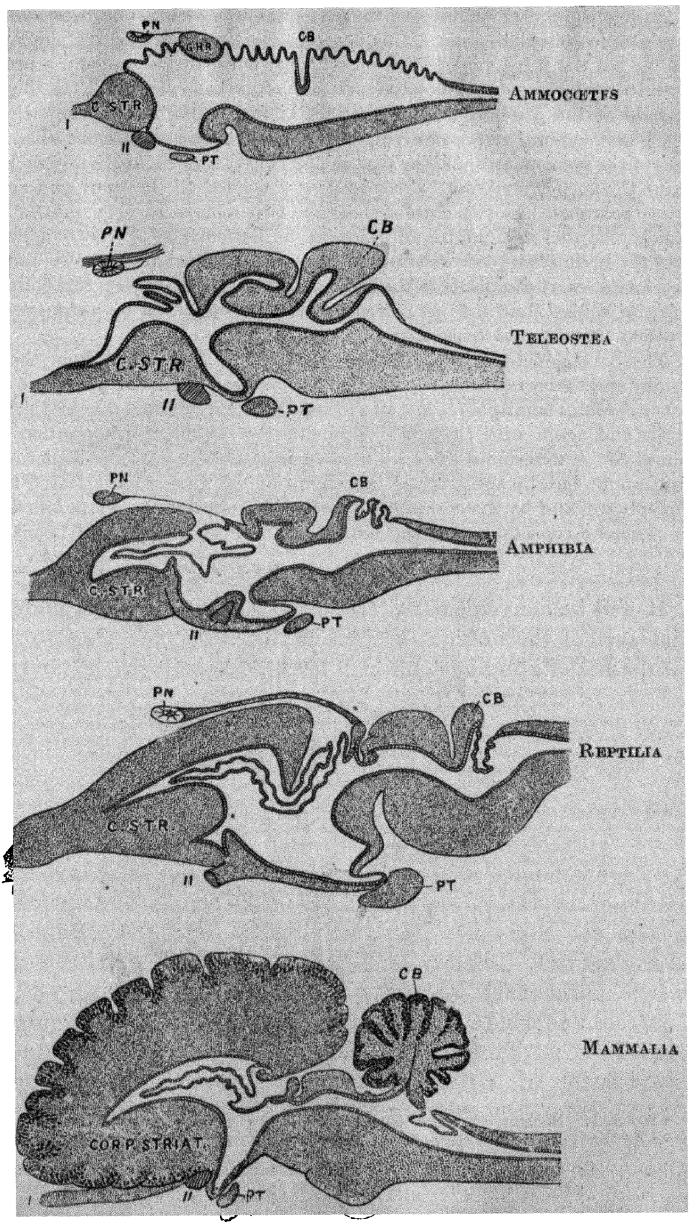


FIG. 180. Diagrammatic view of the brain in different classes of vertebrates. (GASKELL.)

CB, cerebellum; PT, pituitary body; PN, pineal body; C.STR, corpus striatum; GHR, right ganglion habenulæ; I, olfactory, II, optic nerves

thickened and consist of white matter internally and grey matter externally. The part of the hemisphere which lies over the first cerebral vesicle is undifferentiated and remains as a simple epithelial layer. This becomes closely applied to the similar layer forming the roof of the third ventricle, from which it is separated only by a process of the pia mater carrying numerous blood-vessels (the *velum interpositum*). In the adult brain the cavities of the cerebral hemispheres are known as the lateral ventricles, the remains of the first cerebral vesicle receiving the name of the third ventricle. The lower and outer part of the hemispheres, *i.e.* the part which is first formed, becomes much thickened and forms the corpus striatum, which is closely applied to the front and outer part of the optic thalamus. In the corpus striatum two masses of grey matter are developed, namely, the nucleus caudatus and the nucleus lenticularis. A layer of nerve fibres ascends from the brain stem to be distributed throughout the whole of the cerebral hemispheres. This forms a sort of capsule to the optic thalamus, lying between this body and the corpus striatum behind, but in front piercing the corpus striatum between its two nuclei. It is called the internal capsule.

The development of the different parts of the brain stem from the three cerebral vesicles and their gradual subordination and overshadowing in the course of development by the cerebral hemispheres is well shown if we compare the brain of a fish with that of a reptile and again with that of a mammal (Fig. 180). Man's position in the scale of animal life is determined not by increasing complexity of the structures forming his brain stem, but by the gradual subordination of these to the latest formed cerebral hemispheres, and by the enormous growth of his capacity to adapt himself to a varying environment consequent on the increase in size of his cerebral hemispheres.

THE HIND-BRAIN

It will be convenient to trace first the modifications undergone by the axial part of the nervous system in the brain, and then to deal with the new masses of grey matter which have no homologies in the spinal cord, as

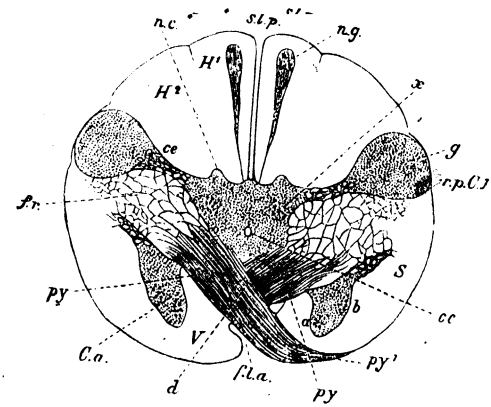


FIG. 181. Section through the lower border of the medulla oblongata, at the pyramidal decussation. (BECHTEREW.)

fla, anterior fissure; *d*, decussation of the pyramids; *V*, anterior columns; *Ca*, anterior cornu; *cc*, central canal; *S*, lateral columns; *fr*, formatio reticularis; *ce*, neck, and *g*, head of the posterior cornu; *rpCI*, posterior root of first cervical nerve; *nc*, beginning of nucleus cuneatus; *ng*, nucleus gracilis; H^1, funiculus gracilis; H^2, funiculus cuneatus; *slp*, posterior fissure.

well as the long tracts of white matter serving to connect different levels or different sides of the brain.

In examining successive sections from the spinal cord up through the medulla, the first change which makes its appearance is due to the decussation of the pyramids (Fig. 181). Throughout the spinal cord, fibres have been crossing from one side to the other through the anterior white commissure, many of them belonging to the pyramidal system. But at the lower border of the medulla we see a large mass of fibres crossing between the anterior columns and the postero-lateral columns, at first cutting off the head of the anterior horn and later on breaking this up altogether, so that the only definite collection of grey matter left in this situation is a small part of the lateral column of grey matter known as the lateral nucleus In this way are formed the big anterior columns of the medulla, which are known as the pyramids, and contain all the fibres that in the cord are represented by the direct and crossed pyramidal tracts.

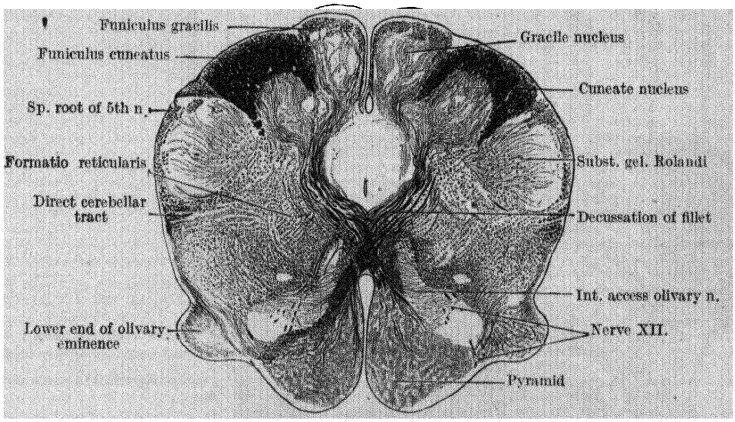


FIG. 182. Transverse section through medulla of fœtus, immediately above pyramidal decussation. (CUNNINGHAM.) Stained by Pal-Weigert method.

The next change is due to the ending of the posterior columns (Fig. 182). These are the central ascending branches of dorsal nerve roots, having therefore an origin outside the cord. On their way up the cord they send in collaterals to end in the grey matter of the posterior horn. The main mass terminates in the medulla, just above the pyramidal decussation, in two collections of grey matter—the nucleus gracilis and the nucleus cuneatus—which are formed by a great hypertrophy of the grey matter at the root of the posterior horn. The effect of this development in the dorsal region of the medulla is to push the head of the posterior horn outwards. At the same time this mass of gelatinous substance becomes enlarged, so that in section we have three grey masses from within outwards, the nucleus gracilis, the nucleus cuneatus, and the nucleus of Rolando.

The fibres of the postero-median column, which are derived chiefly from the lower limb, end in arborisations round the cells of the nucleus gracilis, while those of the postero-external column, or column of Burdach, of which the majority is formed by fibres from the upper limbs, terminate in the

grey matter of the nucleus cuneatus. The cells of these two masses of grey matter of course give off axons, which can carry on the impulses brought to them by the fibres of the posterior columns. These axons speedily leave the dorsal aspect of the medulla, bending round, as the *arcuate fibres*, to the deeper parts of its structure. Thus nothing is left to take the place of the posterior columns on the posterior aspect of the cord. With the disappearance of these columns and the development of the pyramids we get a practical obliteration of the anterior fissure and a displacement of the central canal towards the dorsal surface. A little higher up (Fig. 183) the canal opens out altogether, forming the fourth ventricle, covered on its dorsal surface only by a thin layer of ependyma, a simple epithelium representing

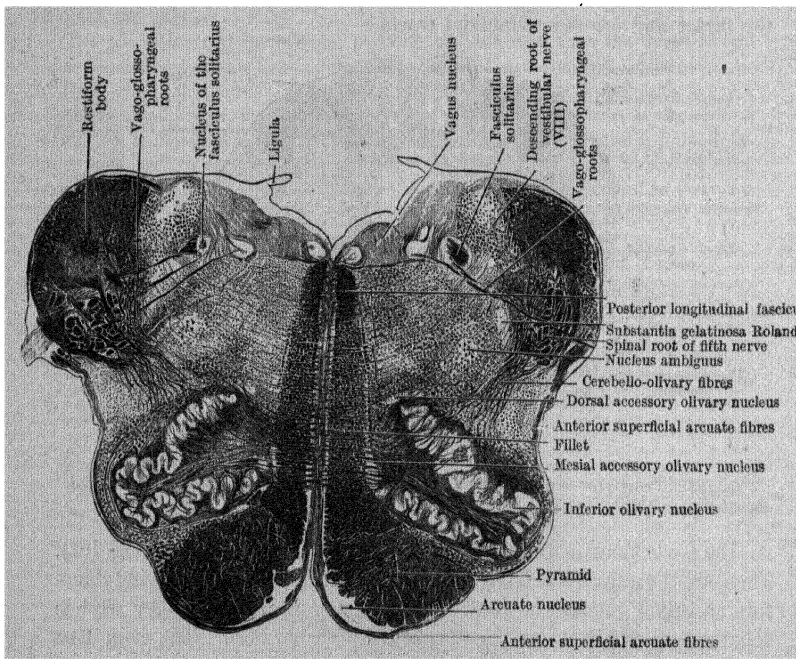


FIG. 183. Transverse section through the middle of the olivary region of the human medulla. (CUNNINGHAM.)

all that is left of the dorsal wall of the primitive cerebral vesicle. The appearance of the section is now modified by two structures. In the first place, a new mass of grey matter, consisting of a thin layer shaped like a flask with its orifice directed inwards, is developed in the lateral part of the medulla, between the pyramids in front and the tubercle of Rolando behind. This is the *olivary body*, and has on its inner and dorsal sides two little grey masses which are the *accessory olivary bodies*. The other feature is the new relay of sensory fibres which start from the dorsal nuclei, the nuclei gracilis and cuneatus. These fibres run outwards and forwards from the nuclei

right round the medulla. Some fibres pass into the restiform body of the same side. A larger number, forming the superficial arcuate fibres, pass superficially to the olive to join the restiform body of the opposite side, while others, the deep arcuate fibres, pass deeply to the olives, and crossing in the median raphe turn upwards in the broken mass of grey and white matter which lies between the olives and the superficial grey matter of the

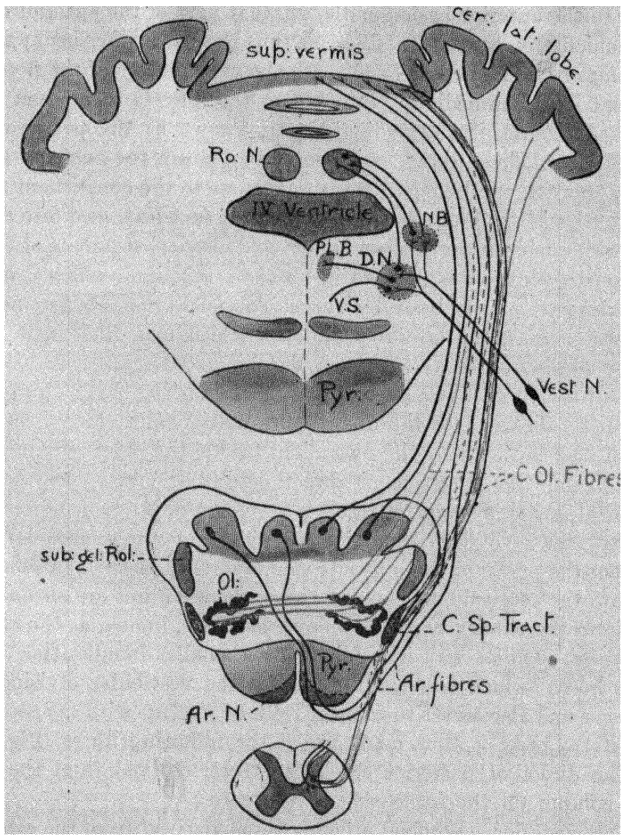


FIG. 184. Diagram to show the sources of the fibres making up the restiform body. Ar.N. arcuate nucleus; Ar fibres, arcuate fibres; Pyr, pyramid; C.Sp. Tract, direct cerebellar tract; C.Ol fibres, cerebello-olivary fibres; Pl.B, posterior longitudinal bundle; DN, nucleus of Deiters; NB, nucleus of Bechterew; Ro.N, roof nuclei; Vest. N, vestibular nerve.

fourth ventricle. This decussation, which is known as the 'decussation of the fillet' or the sensory decussation, takes place immediately above the level of the decussation of the pyramids In its upward course it forms a conspicuous strand of fibres, lying close to the mesial plane and separated from its fellow of the opposite side simply by the median raphe. To this collection of fibres is given the name of the *fillet* or *lemniscus*. It is perhaps

the most important of the afferent tracts of the brain stem, receiving as it does continuations of the posterior columns of the cord as well as contributions from the various sensory cranial nerves. It may be traced forwards as far as the thalamus and subthalamic region, where its fibres terminate. The region corresponding to the anterior column of the spinal cord is thus invaded in the medulla by two great longitudinal tracts of fibres namely, the pyramids and the tracts of the fillet. The region corresponding to the anterior basis bundle, *i.e.* that part of the anterior columns occupied chiefly by intra-spinal fibres, is thus pushed further backwards and finally comes to lie immediately beneath the grey matter of the floor of the fourth ventricle. Immediately dorsally to the fillet is to be seen another well-marked bundle of longitudinal fibres, known as the posterior longitudinal bundle. These fibres, which serve to connect the nuclei of many of the cranial nerves, can be regarded as analogous to the constituent fibres of the anterior basis bundle in the cord, and can in fact be traced into this part of the anterior columns in the first and second cervical segments of the cord.

The fourth ventricle is covered in by the cerebellum, which is attached to the axial part of the brain by three peduncles, the inferior peduncles or restiform bodies, the lateral peduncles, which form the great mass of transverse fibres known as the pons Varolii, and the superior peduncles, which run forward to the posterior corpora quadrigemina The restiform bodies can be regarded as the direct continuation forwards of the lateral columns of the cord, *minus* the pyramidal tracts, the chief remaining tract therefore being the posterior or direct cerebellar tract. In the region of the dorsal nuclei however, it receives accession of fibres from the gracile and cuneate nuclei of the same side and, through the superficial arcuate fibres, from the nuclei of the opposite side, and thus passes as a thick white bundle into the cerebellum. Among these arcuate fibres are also a number derived from the olivary body of the opposite side, known as the cerebello-olivary fibres. On its way it is joined by a smaller bundle, the 'internal restiform body,' which conveys fibres from the vestibular division of the eighth nerve and also serves to connect Deiters' nucleus with the cerebellum. The restiform body is thus made up of the following fibres (Fig. 184):

(1) The direct or posterior cerebellar tract, derived from the cells of Clarke's column on the same side of the cord.

(2) The posterior superficial arcuate fibres, derived from the gracile and cuneate nuclei of the same side.

(3) The anterior superficial arcuate fibres, from the gracile and cuneate nuclei of the opposite side.

(4) The cerebello-olivary fibres.

(5) The vestibulo-cerebellar fibres.

A section through the pons shows the fourth ventricle widely dilated, with a floor formed of grey matter as in the medulla. The chief difference in the appearance of the section is due to the great masses of transverse fibres which pass into the pons by the lateral peduncles of the cerebellum, cross by the median raphe, and turn either upwards or downwards on the

opposite side or end in connection with the nerve cells which are scattered throughout the white fibres. The pyramids can still be seen as thick longitudinal bundles on each side in the midst of the transverse fibres. They are considerably larger than in the medulla and become larger as we trace them up towards the mid-brain, owing to the presence of a number of fibres which are derived from the cortex cerebri and end in the grey matter of the

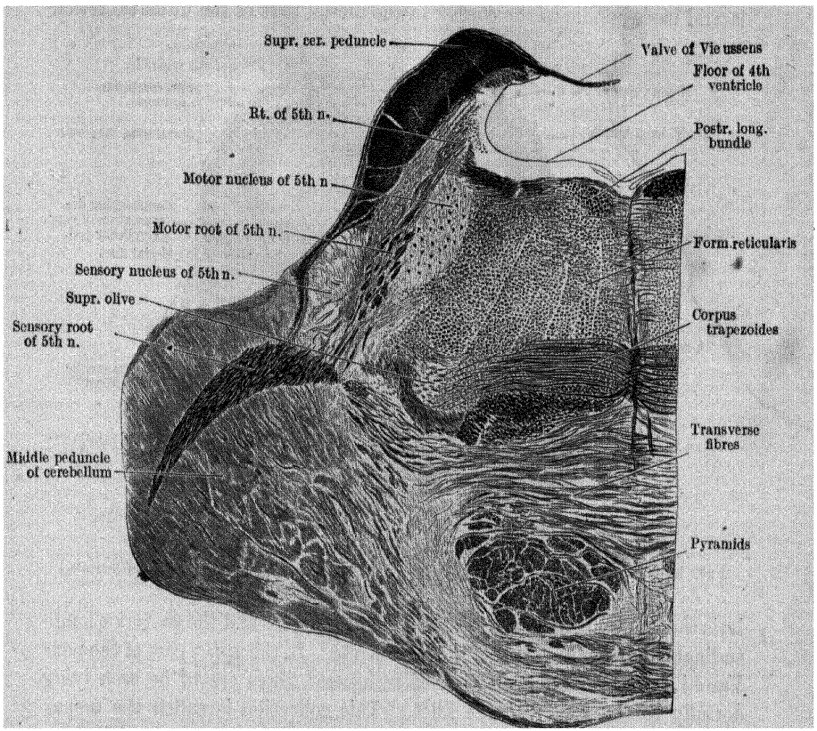


FIG. 185. Transverse section through middle of pons Varolii of orang on level of nuclei of fifth nerve. (CUNNINGHAM.)

pons. The tract of the fillet lies on each side of the middle line dorsally to the transverse fibres. A little to the outside of the fillet is seen a special mass of grey matter, known as the superior olive. The nervous mass lying behind the transverse fibres of the pons, between them and the grey matter of the floor of the fourth ventricle, is known as the formatio reticularis. It is divided into a lateral and mesial part by the fibres of the hypoglossal nerve. In the lateral portions there is a considerable quantity of grey matter, which can be regarded as continuous with the grey matter of the lateral horns of the cord. The ' lateral nucleus ' is simply a condensed part of this grey matter, lying between the olive and the gelatinous substance of Rolando. The mesial part of the formatio reticularis is almost free of nerve cells. The reticular appearance of this part of the pons is due to the inter-

section of fibres which run longitudinally and transversely. The transverse fibres are a continuation of the deep arcuate fibres. The longitudinal fibres in the outer part of the formatio reticularis are the representatives of the lateral columns of the cord after the removal of the direct cerebellar and the crossed pyramidal tracts. They include therefore the antero-lateral ascending tract (tract of Gowers) and a number of other fibres corresponding to the lateral basis bundle in the cord. In the mesial part of the formatio reticu-

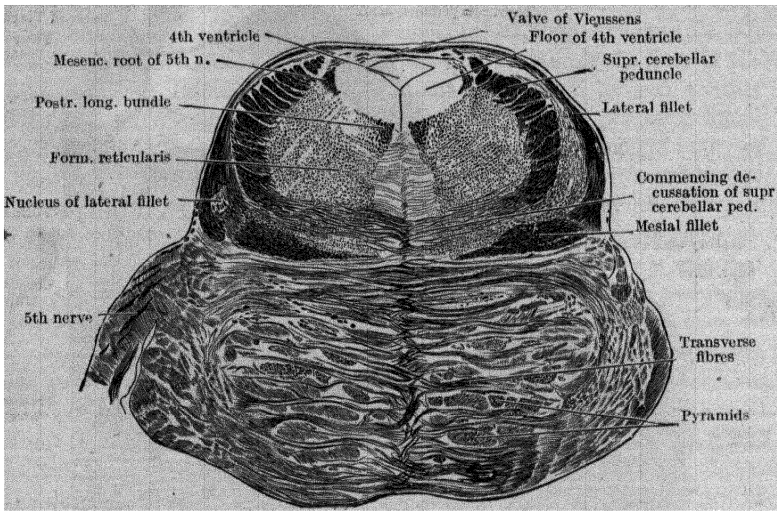


FIG. 186. Section across upper part of pons Varolii of the orang. (CUNNINGHAM.)

laris the longitudinal tracts are the tract of the fillet and the posterior longitudinal bundle on each side of the middle line. In the upper part of the pons Varolii a well-marked collection of transverse fibres are to be seen lying dorsally to the tracts of the fillet. This collection is called the *corpus trapezoides* and is made up of ascending fibres derived from the nuclei of the cochlear nerve, the auditory part of the eighth nerve.

A little further forward a section will escape the cerebellum altogether, being bounded ventrally by the upper or anterior part of the pons and dorsally by a thin mass of grey matter, the valve of Vieussens (Fig. 186). On each side of the valve of Vieussens may be seen the superior peduncles of the cerebellum. As these peduncles are traced upwards they sink gradually deeper into the pons until they lie on the outer side of the tegmental region or formatio reticularis. They are made up of fibres which run from the dentate nucleus of grey matter in the cerebellum to the mid-brain, where they decussate below the Sylvian iter and end in the red nucleus and in the thalamus of the opposite side. They also contain the continuation upwards of the antero-lateral ascending tract which, passing up in the superior peduncles, bends dorsally round the fourth nerve and then, turning backwards, ends in the superior vermis of the cerebellum. In a section through

the upper part of the pons, the division into the formatio reticularis or tegmentum and the part made up of transverse and longitudinal fibres, the pedal portion, is well marked (*v.* Fig. 186). The fourth ventricle has now become constricted to a narrow canal triangular in section and closed above by the valve of Vieussens. It is surrounded, especially on its ventral side, by grey matter containing the cells of origin of the fourth nerve. In the

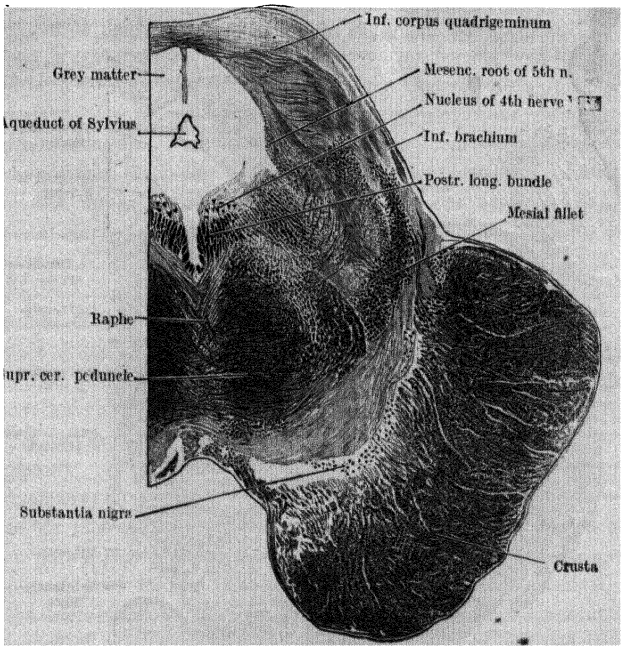


FIG. 187. Transverse section through human mid-brain, on level of the inferior corpora quadrigemina. (CUNNINGHAM.)

tegmental portion we may distinguish on each side the superior cerebellar peduncle. Outside the longitudinal fibres of this peduncle are a number of transverse fibres derived from the corpus trapezoides seen in the previous section. To these fibres is given the name of the 'lateral fillet.' They are on their way to end in the roof of the mid-brain in the posterior corpora quadrigemina. The posterior longitudinal bundle lies near the middle line, immediately under the grey matter of the floor of the fourth ventricle, while the longitudinal fibres of the fillet, now called the mesial fillet, form a distinct mass in the ventral portion of the formatio reticularis. The pedal portion contains the longitudinal fibres of the pyramids, now much increased in amount, cut up into bundles by transverse fibres derived from the middle peduncles of the cerebellum.

The cerebellum, which covers in the fore part of the fourth ventricle, will have to be described in greater detail later on. At present it will suffice to say that it consists of a middle and two lateral lobes. The surface of the

middle lobe turned towards the fourth ventricle is known as the inferior vermis, the dorsal surface forming the superior vermis. Each vermis and each lateral lobe is subdivided into a number of smaller lobes. The intimate structure of all parts of the cerebellum is however very uniform. It consists of a mass of white matter internally, covered by a layer of grey matter, the extent of grey matter being largely increased by the formation of numerous parallel and more or less curved grooves or sulci which give the whole organ a laminate appearance. In the mass of white matter, which forms the

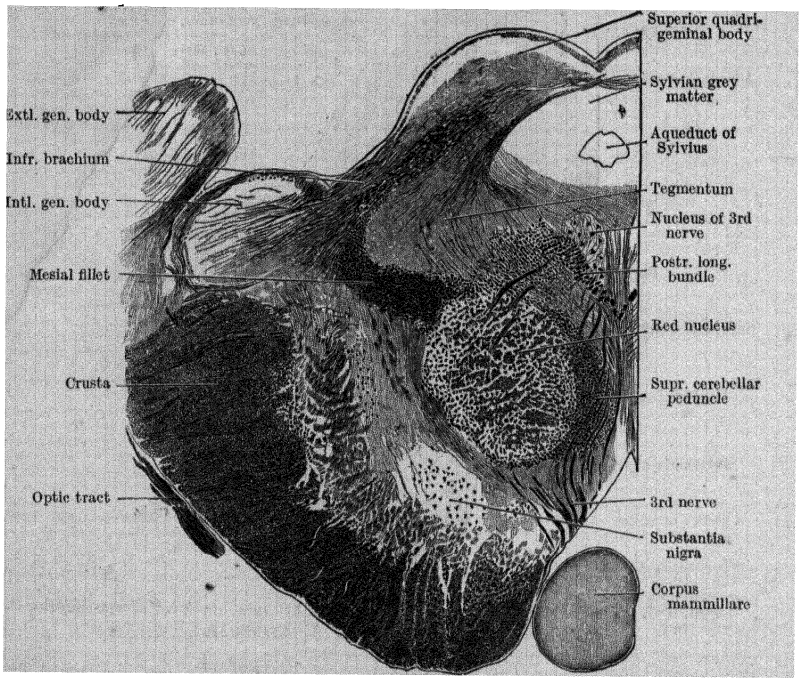


FIG. 188. Transverse section through human mid-brain at the level of the superior corpus quadrigeminum. (CUNNINGHAM.)

core of each lateral hemisphere, is an isolated nucleus of grey matter known as the *corpus dentatum*. In the white matter of the middle lobe is another mass of grey matter known as the roof nucleus or *nucleus fastigii*. Between the nucleus fastigii and the nucleus dentatum are two other nuclei, the *nucleus globosus* and the *nucleus emboliformis*.

THE MID-BRAIN

A little further forward the fourth ventricle comes to an end, and the section passes through the mid-brain (Fig. 187), the cavity of the second cerebral vesicle being represented by the narrow Sylvian aqueduct, bounded dorsally by the corpora quadrigemina and ventrally by the crura, the stalks of the brain. The crura are divided by an irregular mass of grey matter, the *substantia nigra*, into two parts. The ventral portion is known as the *pes* or

crusta. It is composed almost entirely of longitudinal white fibres, among which is the continuation forwards of the pyramids of the medulla. The pyramids however form only about two-fifths of the total mass of white fibres, the rest consisting of fibres which run from the different parts of the cerebral cortex, especially from the frontal and temporal lobes, to end in the formatio reticularis of the pons, probably in relation with the grey matter in this situation and with the endings of the transverse fibres derived from the cerebellum and forming the middle peduncles of the cerebellum. The dorsal part, the *tegmentum*, is a direct prolongation forwards of the formatio reticularis of the medulla and pons, and like this contains much scattered grey matter. On a level with the inferior corpora quadrigemina a number of decussating fibres are to be seen in the tegmentum, which are derived from the superior cerebellar peduncles. Their decussation is complete at the level of the upper border of the inferior corpora quadrigemina. Here each peduncle turns upwards, and a large proportion of its fibres end in the *red nucleus* (Fig. 188), a mass of grey matter forming a conspicuous feature of sections through the anterior part of the mid-brain. Many of the fibres pass round the red nucleus, forming a sort of capsule over it, to the ventral part of the optic thalamus, in which they probably end. It is possible that a certain proportion pass through the optic thalamus and run straight to the cerebral cortex of the Rolandic area. The lateral fillet has disappeared from the region of the tegmentum and passed into the inferior corpora quadrigemina. The mesial fillet forms a flat band lying to the outer side of the red nucleus and comes into close relation with a ganglion of the fore-brain, known as the *internal geniculate body*. The roof of the mid-brain is formed by the corpora quadrigemina. The inferior corpora quadrigemina are composed of central grey matter encapsulated by white matter, derived chiefly from the lateral fillet. The superior corpora quadrigemina are composed of several layers of grey matter traversed by nerve fibres, derived partly from the fillet, partly from the optic tract, and partly from the occipital lobe of the cerebral hemisphere.

THE FORE-BRAIN

In the fore-brain the most important feature is the optic thalami, the two head ganglionic masses of the brain stem (Fig. 189). In this region the central neural canal, which in the mid-brain forms the Sylvian iter, widens out to the third ventricle, in the lateral walls of which are developed the two optic thalami. It is a narrow cleft, rapidly increasing in depth from behind forwards. As we trace sections forwards we see that the two crura cerebri diverge from one another. The floor of the third ventricle is thus left thin. It is formed from behind forwards by a thin layer of grey matter with numerous vessels, the *locus perforatus posticus*, two small eminences, he *corpora mammillaria*, and in front of these another lamina of grey matter known as the *tuber cinereum*. In front of the tuber cinereum is the *infundibulum*, which leads to the posterior lobe of the pituitary body. In front of the infundibulum the optic chiasma is closely attached to the lowest part of the anterior wall of the ventricle. The front wall is formed by a thin layer

of nervous matter, the *lamina cinerea*, at the upper border of which, projecting slightly into the ventricle, is a strand of white fibres connecting the anterior parts of the two optic thalami and known as the anterior commissure. The roof of the third ventricle is formed entirely of epithelium, the ependyma,

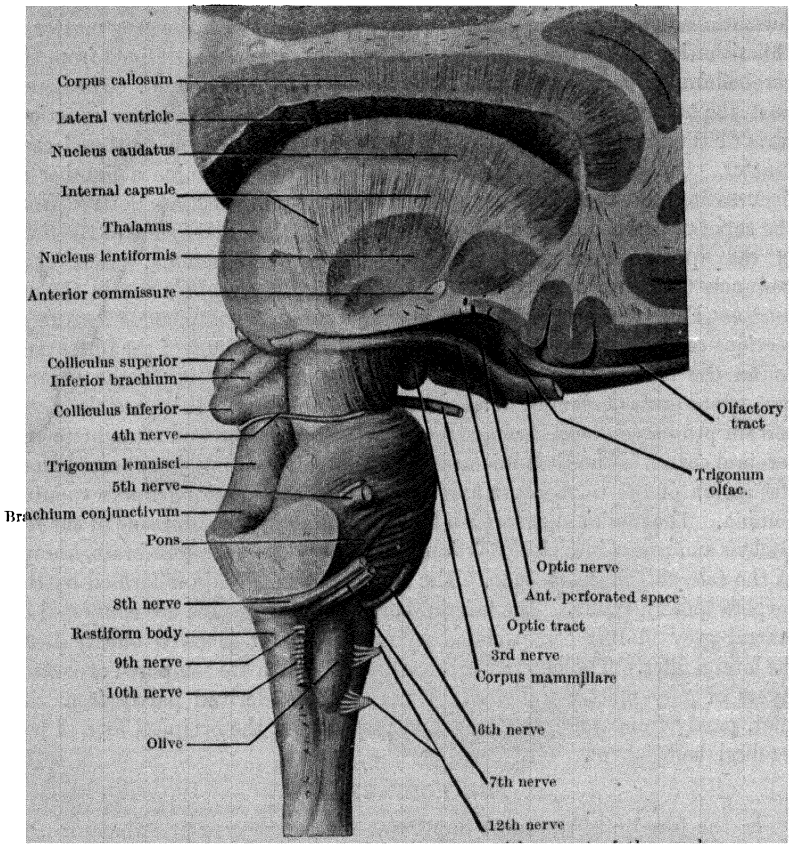


FIG. 189. Right lateral aspect of brain stem, with a part of the cerebrum. (J. SYMINGTON.)

along the upper surface of which is the layer of pia mater, the velum interpositum. The roof is invaginated into the cavity by two delicate vascular fringes, the *choroid plexuses*. At the back part of the roof is attached the stalk of the pineal body, and behind this stalk, between the anterior parts of the anterior corpora quadrigemina, is a small space known as the *trigonum habenulæ*, which contains a well-marked collection of nerve cells known as the *ganglion habenulæ*. The lateral walls are formed entirely by the *optic thalami*. The upper surface of the optic thalamus looks into the lateral ventricle of the cerebral hemispheres, from which it is separated by the velum interpositum and by the ependyma, the epithelium completing the inferior wall of the lateral ventricle in this region. It consists of three

masses of grey matter—the anterior nucleus, the lateral nucleus (the largest of the three), and the mesial nucleus. Its outer surface is in contact with the layer of nerve fibres formed by the crusta of each crus cerebri as it diverges from its fellow to pass up into the cerebral hemispheres. Into this layer, 'the internal capsule,' fibres proceed from all parts of the thalamus to pass to the cerebral cortex. The anterior extremity of the thalamus, known as the anterior tubercle, forms a marked projection into the lateral ventricle. In front of this, the foramen of Monro leads from the third ventricle into the lateral ventricle. This foramen is bounded anteriorly by a strand of fibres, known as the 'anterior pillar of the fornix,' which lies just behind the anterior

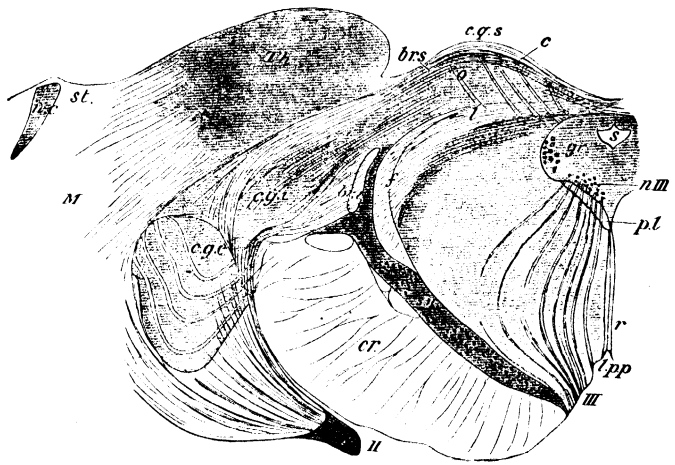


FIG. 190. Transverse section through upper part of mid-brain.
Th, thalamus; *brs*, brachium superior; *cgs*, anterior (or superior) corpus quadrigeminum; *cgi*, *cge*, internal and external geniculate bodies; *f*, fillet; *s*, aqueduct; *pl*, posterior longitudinal bundle; *r*, raphe; *III*, third nerve; *nIII*, its nucleus; *lpp*, posterior perforated space; *sn*, substantia nigra; *cr*, crusta; *II*, optic tract; *M*, medullary centre of the hemisphere; *nc*, nucleus caudatus; *st*, stria terminalis.

commissure and forms a conspicuous feature in the anterior part of the lateral wall of the third ventricle. It passes in the wall down to the corpus mammillare. From the corpus mammillare a well-marked bundle of fibres passes up into the optic thalamus to end round the large cells in the anterior nucleus of the thalamus. The posterior extremity of the thalamus forms a definite prominence, the *pulvinar*. To the outer and back part of the pulvinar two bodies are developed, known as the *geniculate bodies*. These may be regarded as special outgrowths of the grey matter of the optic thalamus, one of which, the external geniculate body, is in close connection with the fibres from the optic tracts, while the other, the internal geniculate body, receives fibres from the lateral fillet ultimately derived from the organ of hearing. In a section through the fore part of the mid-brain (Fig. 190) these two bodies may be seen lying to the outer side of the anterior corpora quadrigemina, so that the fore-brain, to a certain extent, enfolds the anterior part of the mid-brain. Below the thalamus at its back part is the

prolongation forwards of the tegmentum of the crus. This is often spoken of as the subthalamic region. The red nucleus is a conspicuous object in sections through the back part of this region, but gradually diminishes as we proceed forwards, and disappears before the level of the corpora mammillaria is reached. The mesial fillet, which in the mid-brain lies on the lateral and dorsal aspect of the red nucleus, is prolonged upwards together with fibres from the superior cerebellar peduncle into the ventral part of the thalamus, where probably all of the fibres end in connection with the thalamic cells. The substantia nigra gradually disappears. Before it has disappeared we may see on its outer side a special collection of grey matter called the nucleus of Luys or the *corpus subthalamicum*. In addition to the anterior and posterior commissures already described as connecting the two optic thalami at the front and back of the third ventricle, the two sides are connected about the middle of the cavity by the middle or soft commissure. The optic thalamus is often described together with the corpus striatum as forming the basal ganglia. The corpus striatum is however genetically, and probably functionally, part of the cerebral hemispheres, and its connections will therefore be best dealt with when describing the latter bodies.

THE AXIAL GREY MATTER

In the spinal cord we could distinguish between the anterior grey matter giving origin to the motor nerves, the posterior grey matter serving as an end

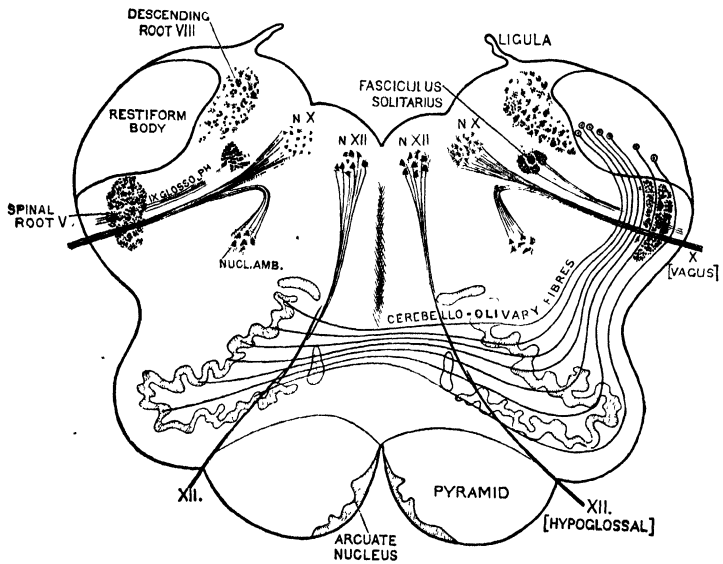


FIG. 191. Cross-section of medulla showing nuclei of nerves X and XII. (CUNNINGHAM.)

station for a number of the sensory posterior root fibres, and a lateral horn, less well marked, probably giving origin to the visceral system of nerves. As the central canal widens out to form the fourth ventricle, the relative

position of these various parts becomes altered, the anterior grey matter being now nearest the median line, while the posterior grey matter lies more laterally. Part of the lateral grey matter seems to lie deeper than the rest, from which it is separated by the tangle of fibres and cells known as the formatio reticularis. All the cranial nerves from the third to the twelfth arise or end in the axial grey matter, or in close proximity to it. So great however is the complexity of this part of the nervous system, and so involved are the genetic relations of the various nerves, that it is difficult or

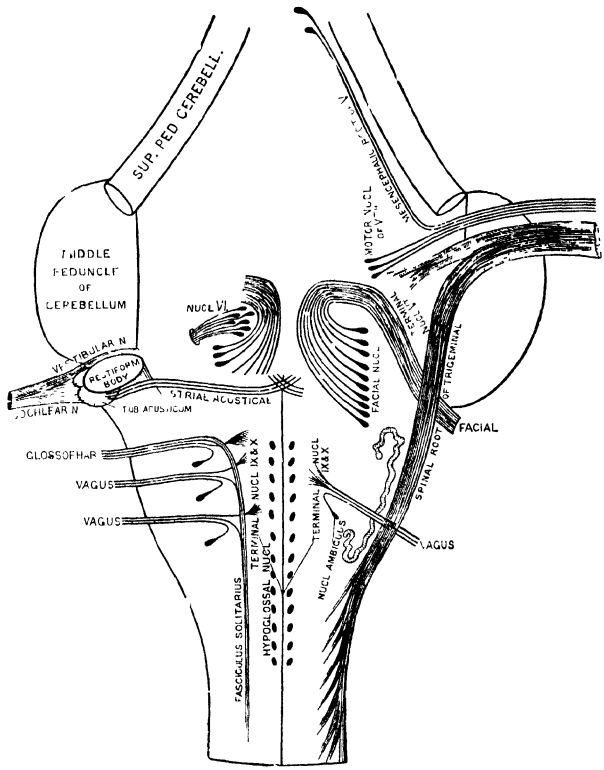


FIG. 192. Diagram showing the brain connections of the vagus, glosso-pharyngeal, auditory, facial, abducent, and trigeminal nerves. (CUNNINGHAM after OBERSTEINER.)

impossible in many cases to state definitely the spinal analogies of these nerves.

The cranial nuclei (of origin or termination) may be roughly classed as follows:

(1) *Motor Somatic Nuclei.* These consist of an almost continuous column of multipolar cells, lying close to the middle line on each side in the floor of the fourth ventricle, the Sylvian iter, and the back part of the third ventricle. From below upwards these groups of cells give origin to the fibres of:

(*a*) The hypoglossal nerve.
(*b*) The sixth nerve.
(*c*) The fourth nerve.
(*d*) The third or oculo-motor nerve.

(2) *Splanchnic Sensory Nuclei.* Immediately outside the column of motor cells is a column of grey matter which receives the terminations of the afferent fibres belonging to the ninth, tenth, and eleventh nerves, and is sometimes called the vago-glossopharyngeal-accessory nucleus. This grey

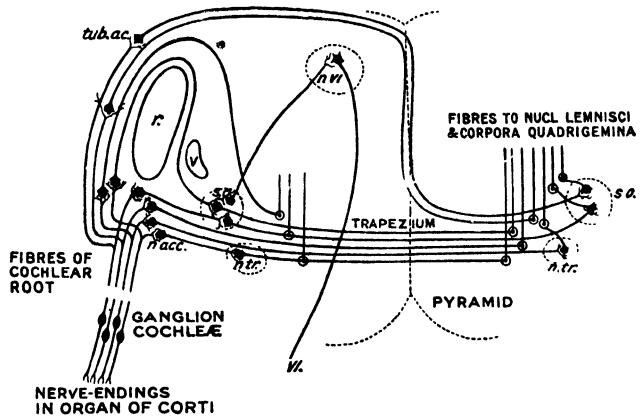


FIG. 193. Plan of the course and connections of the fibres forming the cochlear root of the auditory nerve. (SCHAFER.)

r, restiform body; *V*, descending root of the fifth nerve; *tub.ac*, tuberculum acusticum; *n.acc*, accessory nucleus; *s.o*, superior olive; *n.tr*, nucleus of trapezium; *n.VI*, nucleus of sixth nerve; *VI*, issuing root-fibre of sixth nerve.

matter of course does not give rise to the fibres of these nerves which, like other sensory nerves, are axons of ganglion-cells lying outside the central nervous system.

(3) *Splanchnic Motor Nuclei.* These lie more deeply at some distance from the middle line, and include the *nucleus ambiguus* for the efferent fibres of the vaso-glossopharyngeal, the nucleus of the seventh or facial nerve (originally splanchnic or branchial, now typically somatic), and the motor nucleus of the fifth nerve with its prolongation into the mid-brain.

(4) *Sensory Somatic Nuclei.* The chief representative of this group is the great sensory root of the fifth nerve. The fibres of this nerve arise from the Gasserian ganglion, pierce the fibres of the pons Varolii, and run to the dorso-lateral part of the pons, where they divide into ascending and descending fibres. These fibres form a cap to the substantia gelatinosa, the descending branches, which are longer, being conspicuous in sections of the medulla as low down as the first or second cervical nerve. This nerve gives common sensation to practically the whole of the head.

It is doubtful in what group we should place the fibres of the eighth nerve. This nerve really consists of two parts very different in function, the cochlear or auditory nerve, and the vestibular or labyrinthine nerve.

The fibres of each are derived from ganglion-cells in the internal ear, pass to the medulla at its widest part and then, dividing into two, terminate in masses of grey matter situated at the extreme lateral part of the floor of the fourth ventricle.

The branches of the cochlear nerve (Fig. 193) make connection with two collections of cells, the dorsal nucleus, apparently embedded in the fibres of the root itself, and the accessory nucleus, a little triangular mass of grey matter situated in the angle between the cochlear and vestibular nerves.

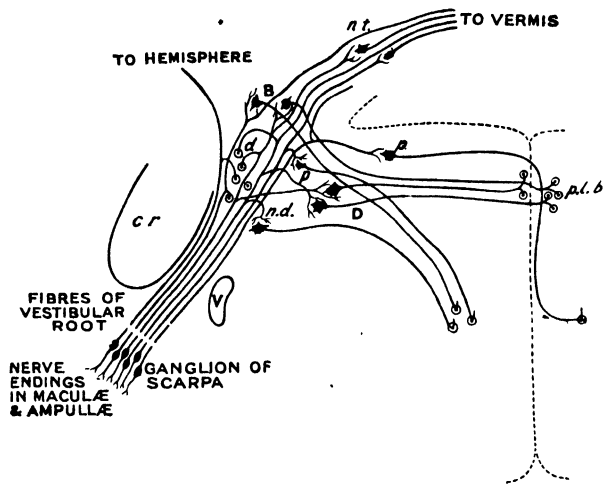


FIG. 194. Plan of the course and connections of the fibres forming the vestibular root of the auditory nerve. (SCHAFER.)

r, restiform body; V, descending root of fifth nerve; *p*. cells of principal nucleus of vestibular root; *d*, fibres of descending vestibular root; *nd*, a cell of the descending vestibular nucleus; D, cells of nucleus of Deiters; B, cells of nucleus of Bechterew; *nt*, cells of nucleus tecti (fastigii) of the cerebellum; *plb*, fibres of posterior longitudinal bundle. No attempt has been made in this diagram to represent the actual positions of the several nuclei. Thus a large part of Deiters' nucleus lies dorsal to and in the immediate vicinity of the restiform body.

From these nuclei fibres are given off which take two courses. Some, following the previous course of the cochlear nerve, pass across the surface of the fourth ventricle as the *striæ medullares* or *striæ acousticæ*, and then bending inwards pass into the tegmentum of the opposite side. Others pass deeply and form a mass of transverse fibres in the ventral part of the tegmentum, the *corpus trapezoides* or *trapezium*. After making connections with the superior olivary body and a special nucleus, they join the superficial set of fibres, and run up in the tegmentum to the inferior corpora quadrigemina, forming the lateral fillet.

The *vestibular nerve* (Fig. 194) also has two nuclei of termination, the *median nucleus* with small cells, and the *lateral* or *Deiters' nucleus* with large cells. Some fibres pass also to the *nucleus of Bechterew*, which is in close relation with the roof nuclei of the cerebellum. The descending fibres end chiefly in the median nucleus, while the ascending fibres end in Deiters'

nucleus. From the latter a distinct band of fibres passes up to the cerebellum, forming the median division of the restiform body, while other fibres run across to the tegmentum of the opposite side, where they take part in the formation of the *posterior longitudinal bundle.*

In a section through the fourth ventricle through the middle of the pons, a group of large cells is seen in the position occupied by the nucleus of the hypoglossal below. These cells give rise to the fibres of the sixth nerve. Another group is seen lying laterally and more deeply, evidently belonging to the lateral horn system. This is the nucleus of the seventh or facial nerve, the fibres of which pass dorsally and anteriorly, looping round the sixth nerve-nucleus, before issuing as the root of the seventh nerve

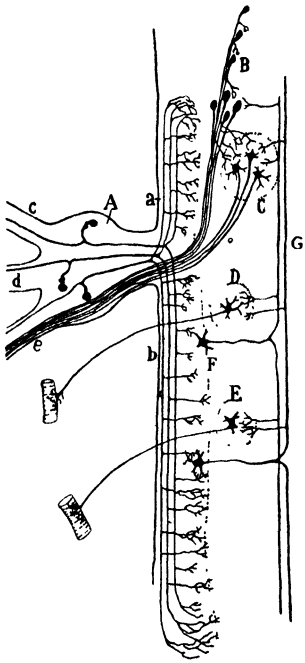


FIG. 195. Diagram showing central connections of fifth nerve. (CAJAL.)
A, Gasserian ganglion; B, accessory motor nucleus; C, main motor nucleus; D, facial nucleus; E, nucleus of hypoglossal; F, sensory nucleus of fifth nerve; G, cerebral tract (fillet) of fifth nerve.

In the upper part of the pons we find the fifth nerve (Fig. 195) with its two roots. The fibres of the sensory root derived from the cells of the Gasserian ganglion bifurcate. The upper divisions, which are short, end in a mass of grey matter at the lateral part of the *formatio reticularis*, the so-called sensory root, while the descending divisions form a long strand of white fibres passing down as far as the second cervical nerve and lying over the *substantia gelatinosa* of Rolando, around the small cells of which the fibres finally terminate. The motor fibres arise partly from the motor nucleus, a mass of cells lying internally to the sensory nucleus, and belonging probably to the lateral horn system. A large number are derived from a long column of cells, which stretches forward from the nucleus as far as the level of the anterior corpora quadrigemina. These fibres are known as the descending motor root of the fifth nerve.

In the region of the mid-brain, besides the root of the fifth nerve just mentioned, we find only the motor nuclei of the third and fourth nerves, which are situated near the median line in the ventral part of the central grey matter, corresponding in situation to the sixth and twelfth nerves lower down.

INTERMEDIATE GREY MATTER OF THE CEREBRAL AXIS

The masses of grey matter which are found throughout this region may be regarded as extra shunting stations (or association centres for various

systems of nuclei and conducting paths), which have arisen in consequence of the great complexity of reaction required of the nerve mechanisms in connection with the organs of special sense. We must confine ourselves here to little more than the enumeration of the chief masses, though we shall have occasion to refer to some in more detail when dealing with the co-ordinating mechanisms of the cerebral axis. From below upwards we may enumerate the following grey masses:

In the medulla is the large *olivary body*, with the *accessory olive* lying on its inner side. Each olive sends fibres across the middle line to the opposite cerebellar hemisphere, and must be regarded as connected with this body in its functions, since atrophy or removal of one side of the cerebellum is followed by atrophy of the opposite olive.

In the pons we find a similar but smaller body, the *superior olive*, in the neighbourhood of the nucleus of the seventh nerve. The superior olive is closely connected with the co-ordination of visual and auditory impressions with the eye movements.

Deiters' nucleus, which occurs in the same region, although described as one of the nuclei of the eighth nerve, might equally well be included in this class owing to its manifold connections with both afferent and efferent mechanisms.

In close connection with Deiters' nucleus are a number of grey masses in the cerebellum, the *roof nuclei* in the roof of the fourth ventricle.

In the mid-brain we must mention the superficial grey matter covering the corpora quadrigemina.

On the ventral side of the Sylvian iter are the various masses of grey matter in the crura, the *red nucleus*, a large mass in the tegmentum just below the oculo-motor nucleus, and the *substantia nigra*, which divides each crus into two parts, the dorsal *tegmentum* and the ventral *pes* or *crusta*.

Finally at the fore part of the cerebral axis we come to the great ganglionic mass already described, the optic thalamus and the geniculate bodies. The geniculate bodies may be regarded as outgrowths of the optic thalamus which have developed in connection with the terminations of the auditory and the optic nerve fibres. The optic thalamus is connected by fibres with all parts of the cortex and represents the termination of the whole tegmental system, so that in many ways it may be regarded as a sort of foreman of the central nervous system, controlling the activities of the lower level centres and bringing all parts of this system in relation with the supreme cerebral cortex.

THE CHIEF LONG PATHS IN THE BRAIN STEM

In dealing with the spinal cord we were able to treat it as one organ, very largely on account of the uniformity of the afferent and efferent mechanisms connected with its various segments. Every afferent impulse arriving at the cord has many possible paths open to it, on account of the branching of the nerve fibres as they enter the cord and the connection of these branches with different neurons of varying destination. The exact

path taken by any given impulse under any given set of circumstances is determined by the varying resistance at the synapses which intervene between the terminations of the afferent fibres conveying the impulse and the next relay of neurons. These resistances in their turn are altered by the process of facilitation and inhibition, which may be due to contemporaneous or previous events. A conspicuous example of these conditions is afforded by the phenomena of simultaneous and successive spinal induction.

The uniformity of afferent and efferent mechanisms disappears when we include the brain stem with the spinal cord. The main efferent channel of impulses is still through the spinal cord, since here are found the efferent mechanisms for all the skeletal muscles of the trunk and limbs, the chief servants of the central nervous system in the daily events of life. Other efferent channels are added, which acquire special importance with the growth of the upper brain or cerebral hemispheres. These mechanisms include those for the movements of the eye muscles, those concerned in facial expression, and those responsible for the movements of the mouth in mastication and deglutition, and in man, in speech. Important visceral efferent fibres are also contained in the vago-glossopharyngeal nerves, which leave the brain stem at its hindmost part in the region of the medulla oblongata, and influence the condition of the heart and the alimentary canal with its accessory organs. On the other hand, the *afferent* mechanisms of the brain stem far transcend in importance, *i.e.* in their influence on the reactions of the animal, those of the spinal cord. Among these afferent mechanisms are those which we have spoken of as 'projicient' sense organs or organs of foresight, the impulses from which must predominate over all reactions determined by the immediate environment of the animal. Into the medulla oblongata are poured the impulses from the greater part of the alimentary canal and from the heart (the chief factor in the circulation) and the lungs. At the junction of the medulla and pons is the great eighth nerve, really consisting of two, one of which, the cochlear nerve, carries impulses from the projicient sense-organ of hearing, while the other, the vestibular nerve, has its terminations in the labyrinth, the sense-organ of equilibration. To the impressions received from this organ all the complex co-ordinating motor mechanisms of the spinal cord have to be subordinated, in order that they may co-operate in the maintenance of the equilibrium of the body as a whole. Into the pons enters the fifth nerve, carrying sensory impressions from the whole of the head, while in the mid- and fore-brain we find the endings of the optic tracts derived from the eyes and carrying visual impressions. From the front of the fore-brain are produced the olfactory lobes.

At each segment or level in the brain stem the afferent fibres from these various sense-organs enter and join afferent tracts, carrying impulses on from the spinal cord—impulses originally derived from the muscles and skin of the trunk and limbs. At each level there may be an immediate 'reflection' back to the cord, so that the spinal afferent impressions may co-operate with the cranial afferent impressions in the production, through the spinal

cord, of reactions affecting the viscera or the skeletal muscles. On the other hand, both kinds of afferent impressions may pass on up the brain stem to involve higher centres and, mingling with impulses from other afferent nerves or from the projicient sense-organs, may result at some higher level in an efferent discharge, which may include reactions not represented in the cord, or reactions of far greater complexity than are possible in the purely spinal animal.

In consequence of the endless complex intermingling of afferent impulses, any diagrammatic representation of tracts is apt to be misleading, unless it be remembered that at each break or synapse in the chain of neurons there are numerous possibilities of branching discharge, and that in our diagrams we can only give the course of such impulses as, by the frequency of repetition in the average life of the animal, have involved the grouping of a large number of nerve paths of similar function into tracts. The constituent elements of these tracts will present similar destinations and possibilities of interruption, *i.e.* of reactions involving the motor mechanisms at the different levels in the brain stem. It is thus much more difficult in the brain stem than in the spinal cord to describe a 'way in' and a 'way out.' In a chain consisting, say, of six neurons, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*, *f* (Fig. 196), though *a* is certainly afferent and *f* efferent, it must always be more or less a question of words whether we regard neurons *c* and *d* as afferent or efferent in character. It is usual in our classifications to be guided chiefly by the direction of such impulses in relation to the cerebral hemispheres. All tracts going up to the cerebral hemispheres may be involved more or less in the production of such changes in the nervous matter of these hemispheres as are associated with conscious sensation. In the same way there is a possibility that the chains of neurons which carry impulses in a descending direction may be involved in the production of voluntary movement. It is therefore usual to classify these two sets of tracts as ascending and descending, or as afferent and efferent. If we adopt such a classification it must be with a distinct reservation that tracts which apparently are going downwards may play a greater part in the determination of sensation than in the determination of movement, and that there may, and indeed must, be a reverberation of impulses through these ascending and descending tracts, so that it must be difficult to dissociate the various elements in the extremely complex neural events which are involved, say, in the simplest kind of conscious sensation.

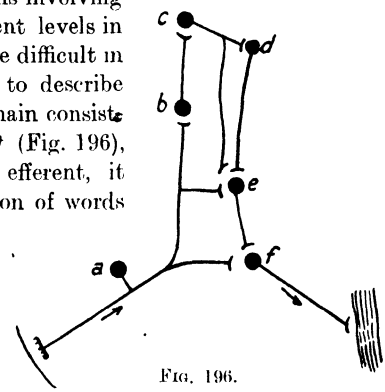


FIG. 196.

As we trace out the evolution of the brain we find an ever-increasing subordination of the lower to the higher centres, so that in man himself many reactions which in the lower animals are carried out by the spinal

cord alone, involve the educated co-operation of the cerebral hemispheres. With this increased control there is a corresponding increase in the development of long paths. In the brain of a fish, for instance, the cerebral hemispheres are connected only with the fore-brain; a little higher in the scale there are connections between the hemispheres and the mid-brain as well. The chief long tracts are those which run between the thalamus, the mid-brain or the hind-brain, and the spinal cord. With the huge development of the cerebral hemispheres in man there is also development of long paths, the pyramidal tracts, from the hemispheres down to all the motor mechanisms of the cord, and of tracts which connect all parts of the cortex with the grey matter of the pons and indirectly with the cerebellum. The tracts which in the lower animals were of supreme importance in determining subordination of lower to higher centres, of immediate reactions to those determined by the organs of foresight, dwindle therefore in importance. Those tracts, such as the thalamo-spinal, tecto-spinal, vestibulo-spinal, which form the main mass of the white matter of the brain stem in lower types of vertebrates, become reduced to a few scattered fibres in the brain of man and are insignificant as compared with the great cerebro-bulbar and cerebro-spinal tracts.

ASCENDING TRACTS

The Tracts of the Fillet. The fibres which enter the spinal cord by the posterior roots pass into the posterior columns and along these to the dorsal column nuclei, the nucleus gracilis and the nucleus cuneatus, where they end by arborisations among the cells composing these nuclei. From these nuclei the axons of the cells pass in various directions, the chief mass of them forming the deep arcuate fibres. These emerge from the inner side of the nuclei and pass through the raphe to the other side of the medulla where they join the spino-thalamic fibres and form the definite collection of longitudinal fibres, lying dorsally to the pyramids, which is known as the main tract of the fillet or, often, the mesial fillet. As these fibres traverse the pons they are joined at the outer side by a number of bundles which are derived from the central continuation of fibres connected with those derived from the cochlear nerve. This part is known as the lateral fillet. The cells of the accessory and lateral nuclei of the cochlear nerve send their axons by the trapezium to the superior olivary nucleus and other small masses of grey matter on the other side. In these nuclei the fibres for the most part terminate, but a fresh relay of neurons carries on the impulses and forms the main part of the lateral fillet. These pass up, getting more dorsal as they ascend, and finally terminate in the inferior corpora quadrigemina. The mesial fillet, which we can regard as a continuation of certain spinal tracts upwards, is reinforced throughout the whole extent of the medulla and pons by fibres originating from the masses of grey matter in which the sensory cranial nerves terminate. Certain of these fibres may form a distinct tract in the formatio reticularis, known as the central or thalamic tract of the cranial nerves. Another similar tract in the formatio reticularis is derived from the central terminations

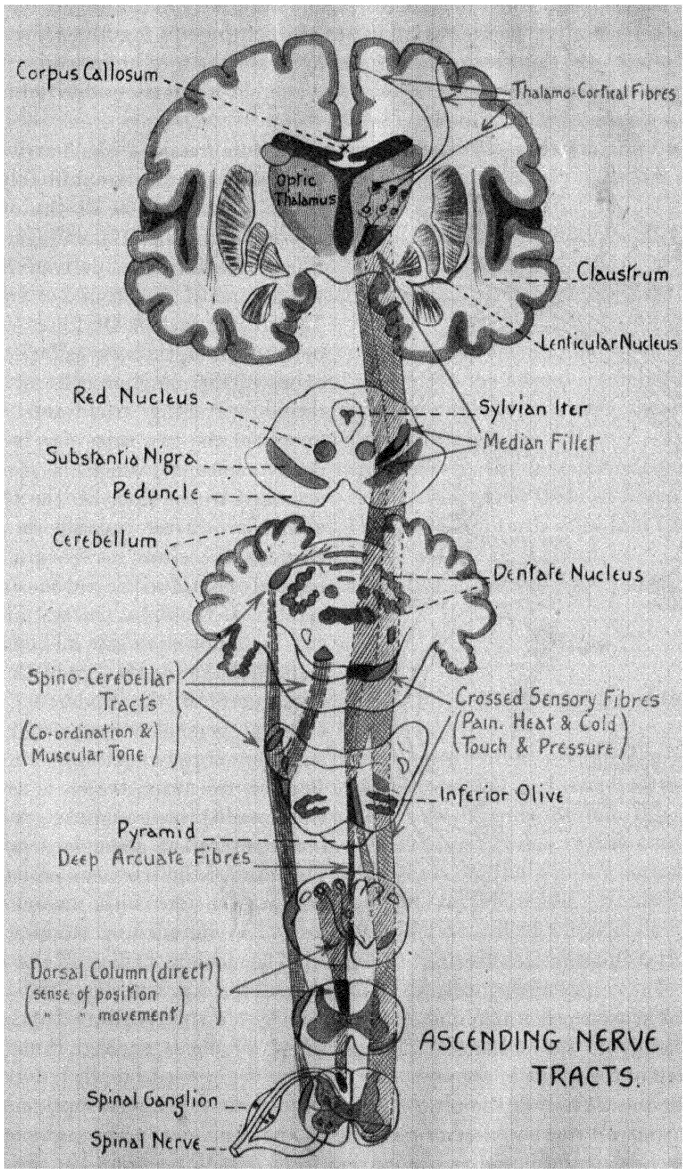


FIG. 197 Diagram of ascending tracts between the spinal cord and brain (GORDON HOLMES), with the probable path of sensory impulses.

of the fifth nerve, and is known as the trigemino-thalamic tract. All these fibres pass up in the tegmentum of the mid-brain and finally end, partly in the grey matter of the subthalamic region and partly in the grey matter of the thalamus itself. To the thalamus are also continued a few fibres from the lateral fillet. By this means the head ganglion of the fore-brain is in a position to receive, so to speak, samples of the afferent impressions derived from every sense-organ of the body.

THE VISUAL PATHS. Two classes of afferent impressions which arrive at the optic thalamus are probably of equal importance to all the other afferent impressions taken together. These are impulses derived from the organs of vision and of smell. The greater part of the fibres composing the optic nerves arise as axons of the ganglion-cells of the retinæ. Passing backwards, the nerves of the two sides join in the optic chiasma, which is closely attached to the floor of the third ventricle. After joining in the chiasma the optic nerves are apparently continued round the crura cerebri as the optic tracts. These pass round on each side and can be seen to make connection with the back part of the thalamus, the external geniculate body, and the superior corpus quadrigeminum. Part of the tract, which is sometimes called the mesial root, passes into the internal geniculate body. This part of the tract has probably nothing to do with vision and forms a commissure running in the optic chiasma connecting the internal geniculate bodies of the two sides. The course of the optic fibres is shown in the diagram (Fig. 198). In man and in some other mammals, *e.g.* dog, monkey, the nerve fibres decussate incompletely in the chiasma. The uncrossed bundle is derived from the outer half of the retina of the same side, whereas the crossed bundle is derived from the mesial half of the retina on the other side. The right optic nerve thus carries all the impulses originating in the right eye. The right optic tract carries all the impulses originating from stimuli occurring in the left field of vision. It must be remembered that vision in man is binocular, both retinæ being concerned in the perception of each field of vision. The external and internal geniculate bodies may be regarded as extensions of the optic

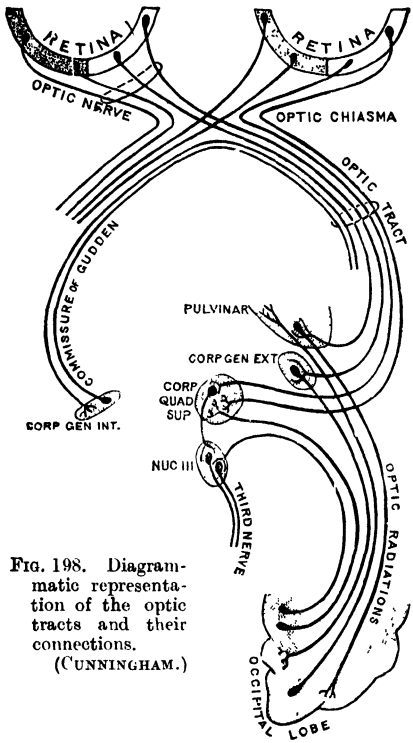


FIG. 198. Diagrammatic representation of the optic tracts and their connections. (CUNNINGHAM.)

thalamus, the former in special relation with the organ of vision, the latter with the organ of hearing.

The olfactory bulb is also connected by tracts with the thalamic region, probably through the column of the fornix and the bundle of Vicq d'Azyr. Since however the chief connections of the olfactory lobe are with the more primitive portions of the cerebral hemispheres, the olfactory tracts will be more conveniently treated of in connection with the latter.

THE CEREBELLAR PATHS. We have already traced out the course of spinal fibres which terminate in the cerebellum. They may be shortly summarised as follows:

(1) The posterior or direct cerebellar tract, originating in Clarke's column of cells of same side, passing up in the lateral columns and by the restiform body into the superior vermis of the middle lobe of the cerebellum.

(2) The anterior cerebellar tract or tract of Gowers, originating in the grey matter of both sides of the cord and passing in the lateral columns through the lateral part of the medulla and pons, and finally attaining the superior vermis through the superior cerebellar peduncles.

(3) The posterior columns, ending chiefly in the homolateral posterior column nuclei. From these nuclei, though the great mass of fibres passes into the fillet, a certain number from the nuclei of both sides join the restiform body to pass into the middle lobe of the cerebellum.

In the medulla these afferent tracts of the cerebellum are joined by the following sets of fibres:

1. The olivo-cerebellar.
2. The vestibulo-cerebellar.
3. A few fibres from the chief sensory nuclei, including those of the vago glossopharyngeal nerves.

All these fibres terminate in the cortex, chiefly of the middle lobe. From the cortex of this lobe fibres pass to the central and roof nuclei of the cerebellum, namely, the nucleus dentatus, the nucleus emboliformis, the nucleus fastigii, and the nucleus globosus. The efferent tracts of the cerebellum start from these central nuclei, no fibres which originate in the cortex of the cerebellum apparently leaving the precincts of this organ. Some of these efferent fibres of the cerebellum will be better described with the descending tracts of the brain stem. Of those which take an ascending direction, the great bulk are contained in the superior cerebellar peduncles. These originate for the most part in the dentate nucleus and the nuclei emboliformis and globosus. As the superior peduncles run forwards they sink below the posterior corpora quadrigemina, and in the tegmentum, below the Sylvian iter, decussate with the tract of the opposite side to pass to the red nucleus. In the red nucleus many of the fibres end some however passing through the nucleus together with fibres derived from the cells of the red nucleus itself to end in the thalamus and in the grey matter of the subthalamic region.

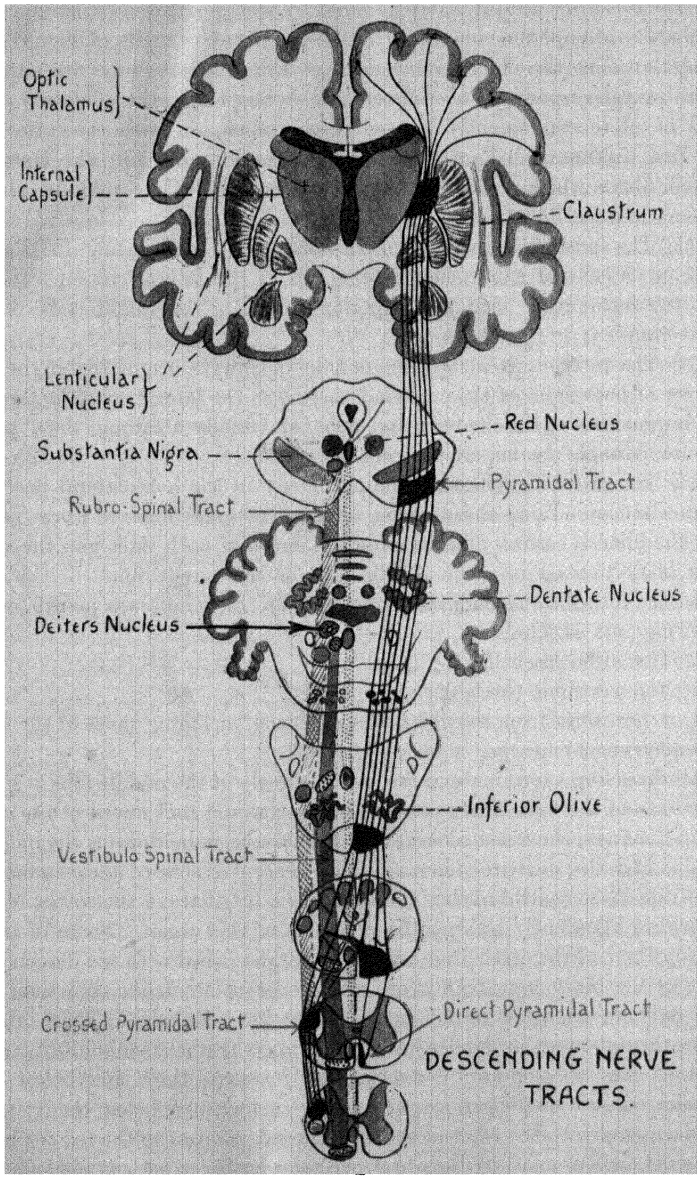


FIG 199. Schema of course taken by chief descending tracts of brain stem (GORDON HOLMES.) The tract in red, to the right of the rubro-spinal tract, includes the posterior longitudinal bundle, together with the fibres of the thalamo-spinal and tecto-spinal tracts

DESCENDING TRACTS

The chief descending tracts having their origin in the brain stem are the rubro-spinal bundle or bundle of Monakow, the complex system of fibres known as the posterior longitudinal bundle, and the vestibulo-spinal fibres from the upper part of the medulla.

(1) The RUBRO-SPINAL FIBRES originate in the red nucleus. They cross the median line and run down, at first in the tegmentum and later in the lateral column of the medulla oblongata and cord. In their passage they communicate with the various motor nuclei of the cranial nerves. They can be traced to all segments of the cord, where they terminate in connection with the anterior horn-cells.

(2) The POSTERIOR LONGITUDINAL BUNDLE. This bundle is to be seen in all sections through the brain stem below the level of the oculo-motor nucleus. It consists of fibres, some of which pass upwards, while others pass downwards. Most of the fibres take origin in the cells of Deiters' nucleus and of the reticular formation of the pons, medulla, and mid-brain, as well as from certain cells in the sensory nucleus of the fifth nerve. The fibres traced upwards can be seen to send collaterals to end in the various parts of the nuclei of the third, fourth, and sixth nerves. Lower down it becomes continuous with the anterior basis bundle of the spinal cord and merges in the internuncial fibres which serve to connect the various levels of the cord. Some of the fibres, which are descending, are derived from a small nucleus, the so-called nucleus of the posterior longitudinal bundle, which is found in the grey matter at the side of the posterior part of the third ventricle. This bundle also receives fibres from the superior olivary body. It is one of the earliest to undergo myelination in the fœtus (*cp.* also Fig. 205, p. 407).

(3) The VESTIBULO-SPINAL TRACT takes origin for the most part in the cells of Deiters' nucleus. The fibres pass down in the anterior part of the spinal cord and terminate in the anterior horns. They are sometimes known as the antero-lateral descending tract. It is probably through this tract that the cerebellum is able to affect indirectly the activity of the motor mechanisms of the cord.

Two other descending tracts which are important in the lower vertebrates are insignificant in man. These are the thalamo-spinal tract, consisting of descending fibres derived from the optic thalamus, and the tecto-spinal tract, containing fibres derived from the roof of the mid-brain. In the mid- and hind-brain these fibres run in the tegmentum. In the cord they are found in the anterior columns. The olivo-spinal tract, which is supposed to originate in the olivary body, forms a small tract in the cervical region near the surface, opposite the lateral angle of the anterior horn.

SECTION XII

THE FUNCTIONS OF THE BRAIN STEM

THE brain stem may be taken to include all those parts lying between the cerebral hemispheres and the spinal cord, from the optic thalamus in front to the medulla oblongata behind. The brain may be divided into the following parts from before back:

(1) Thalamencephalon, including the corpus striatum, the cerebral hemispheres and rhinencephalon, or olfactory lobes.

(2) Diencephalon, *i.e.* the fore-brain, especially the optic thalamus.

(3) Mesencephalon, or mid-brain, including the quadrigemina, the iter of Sylvius, and the crura cerebri.

(4) Metencephalon, composed of the pons Varolii, the upper part of the fourth ventricle, and cerebellum.

(5) Myelencephalon, or bulb, consisting of the medulla oblongata.

We may get some idea of the part played by these different regions of the brain in determining the reactions of the individual as a whole by examining the behaviour of the animals in whom all the rest of the brain in front of the part in question has been removed. If however we take into account the numberless connections existing between the different levels in the central nervous system, the interdependence between the different portions, and the subordination, especially in the higher animals, of the functions of the lower to those of the higher levels, we must acknowledge that such experiments can give us but an imperfect idea of the possibilities of each level when in connection with all other portions of the nervous system.

THE FUNCTIONS OF THE MEDULLA OBLONGATA OR MYELENCEPHALON

The possibilities of any given nervous centre are determined by the afferent impressions which enter it, and by the connections made by the nerves carrying these impulses with the motor tracts within the centre. The bulb receives afferent impressions of 'taste' from the tongue through the nervus intermedius, from the alimentary canal as low as the ileocolic sphincter, from the lungs, the heart, and the larger blood-vessels, *i.e.* from the most important of the viscera of the body, by the fibres of the vago-glossopharyngeal nerves. Its only skeleto-motor centre is that for the muscles of the tongue (the hypoglossal). It sends also to the viscera efferent fibres, which arise from cells in the nucleus ambiguus. These fibres carry motor impulses

to the muscles of the larynx and bronchi and to the œsophagus stomach and intestines, secretory fibres to the stomach and inhibitory fibres to the heart.

At the upper border of the bulb enter also the fibres of the eighth nerve, carrying important impressions from the organ of hearing and the organ of static sense. These will be in all probability divided or injured in isolating the bulb from the higher portions of the brain. While in connection with the upper portions of the brain, the bulb receives also afferent impressions from the skin of the face, and the mucous membrane of the nose and mouth through the descending branches of the root of the fifth nerve, which pass down superficially to the tubercle of Rolando. When in connection with the cord, the medulla receives afferent impressions from the whole surface of the body and from all the muscles and joints through the posterior column nuclei

The bulbo-spinal animal, *i.e.* one in whom a section has been carried out at the upper boundary of the medulla, differs from the spinal animal chiefly in the maintenance of the nexus between the visceral functions and the skeleto-motor functions of the body. After removal of all the brain in front of the bulb, the animal still continues to breathe regularly and automatically. The blood pressure and the pulse rate remain normal, and all three mechanisms, respiration, pulse rate, blood pressure, may be affected reflexly by appropriate stimuli, or may be altered in consequence of central stimulation of the medulla.

In addition to the reflex mechanisms of locomotion, which are evident in the spinal animal, the bulbo-spinal animal shows a greater degree of solidarity in its responses. It is easier to evoke movement of all four limbs. In the frog, if the eighth nerve has been left intact, there is a certain power of equilibration left, and the animal when laid on its back tries to right itself and usually succeeds.

It is in this portion of the central nervous system that have been located the great majority of the so-called centres. By a statement, that the centre of such-and-such movement or function is situated in the medulla, we mean merely that the integrity of the medulla, or certain parts of it, is essential for the carrying out of the function. Every function, for instance, in which impulses passing up the vagus nerves are involved, is necessarily dependent on the integrity of these nerves and their central connections, and, since these are situated in the medulla, the centres for these functions are also located in this region. From a broad standpoint the medulla or bulb may be looked upon as a ganglion, or a collection of ganglia, whose main office is to guard and preside over the working of the mechanisms at the anterior opening of the body; by means of which food is seized, tasted, taken into the alimentary canal, and finally digested. The respiratory apparatus belongs to the same system and is innervated through the same nerve channels. Hence the various events in alimentation, such as deglutition, vomiting, mastication, or in the allied respiratory functions, such as phonation, coughing, and respiration itself, are endowed with centres in this part of the brain. In

connection with the termination of the vagus nerves of this part of the brain is the location here of the chief vaso-motor centre, *i.e.* in a region which is in close proximity to the endings of the chief afferent nerves from the heart and larger blood-vessels and to the nucleus of the efferent controlling nerve to the heart.

THE METENCEPHALON (PONS VAROLII AND CEREBELLUM)

Destruction of the brain at the front of the fourth ventricle and just behind the posterior quadrigemina will leave the animal with a central nervous system, which is in connection by efferent nerves with the whole musculature of the body (with the exception of certain eye muscles) and which receives impressions through the spinal cord from the whole surface of the trunk and limbs, and through the fifth nerve from the face and head, and also the higher specialised impressions from the organ of hearing and the organ of static sense. The impressions from the two great projicient senses of smell and sight would be wanting.

Such an animal presents considerable advance in the complexity of its reactions above one possessing only spinal cord and bulb. The frog, for instance, after such an operation, can still walk, spring, and swim; when placed on a turntable it reacts to passive rotation by turning its head in the opposite direction. On stroking its back it croaks. If the cerebellum be also removed, the animal becomes spontaneously active and crawls about until it is blocked by some obstacle. In this condition there is great activity of the swallowing reflex. Anything which touches the mouth is snapped at. If placed on its back the frog at once rights itself.

In the mammal a similar increase of reflex activity is observed though the power of progression is not retained.

THE MESENCEPHALON OR MID-BRAIN

A section in front of the anterior corpora quadrigemina would leave the animal with the nervous system receiving all normal sensory impressions, with the exception of the olfactory, and with efferent paths to all the muscles of the body, including those of the eye. In the mammal such an operation brings about a condition known as 'decerebrate rigidity.' Though respiratory movements continue normally, the whole musculature is in a cataleptic condition, the elbows and knees being extended and resisting passive flexion; the tail is stiff and straight, the neck and head retracted. This condition seems to depend on an over-activity of the reflex tonic functions of the lower centres. That it is reflex is shown by the fact that the rigidity is at once abolished in a limb on dividing the appropriate posterior roots. The position of the limbs may be also modified by sensory stimuli. A similar condition of increased tonus is observed in the frog.

The apparatus for emotional expression is still intact though somewhat modified, and an impression which would give rise to pain in the intact animal may cause vocalisation in an animal in whom the brain above the mesencephalon has been destroyed.

THE BRAIN STEM AS A WHOLE (INCLUDING THE THALAMENCEPHALON, OR OPTIC THALAMI)

The introduction of the head ganglia of the brain stem, viz. the optic thalami, completes in the lower animals at all events the apparatus for immediate response to stimulus. The powers of such an apparatus may be studied by examining the behaviour of an animal in whom the cerebral hemispheres have been destroyed. The result of this operation varies according to the type of animal chosen, though all types present certain common features. When a frog's cerebral hemispheres have been excised, a casual observer would not at first notice anything abnormal about the animal. It sits up in its usual position, and on stimulation may be made to jump away, guiding itself by sight, so that it avoids any obstacles in its path. Movements of swallowing and breathing are normally carried out. The animal thrown on to its back, immediately turns over again. If put into water, it swims about until it comes to a floating piece of wood or any support when it crawls out of the water and sits still. If it be placed on a board and the board be inclined, it begins to crawl slowly up it, and by gradually increasing the inclination may be made to crawl up one side and down the other. But a striking difference between it and a normal frog is the almost entire absence of spontaneous motion—that is to say, motion not reflexly provoked by changes immediately taking place in its environment. All psychical phenomena seem to be absent. It feels no hunger and shows no fear, and will suffer a fly to crawl over its nose without snapping at it. "In a word, it is an extremely complex machine, whose actions, so far as they go, tend to self-preservation; but still a machine in this sense, that it seems to contain no incalculable element. By applying the right sensory stimulus to it, we are almost as certain of getting a fixed response as an organist is when he pulls out a certain stop."

According to Schrader and Steiner, if care be taken not to injure the optic thalami, spontaneous movements may be occasionally observed after removal of the cerebral hemispheres. On the approach of winter such a frog has been observed to bury itself in order to hibernate, and with spring to resume activity and to feed itself by catching insects. The behaviour of such decerebrate animals depends on the part taken in the initiation of movement and adapted reactions by stimuli entering through the higher sense-organs. Thus an ordinary bony fish after ablation of the cerebral hemispheres maintains its normal equilibrium in water. It is continually swimming about, stopping only when it reaches the side of the vessel or when worn out by fatigue. Here again, if the thalami and optic lobes be intact, the fish has been observed to show very little difference from a normal animal and to possess the power of distinguishing edible from non-edible material. On the other hand, in the elasmobranch fishes, which depend mainly upon their olfactory apparatus as a guide to movement, the removal of the cerebral hemispheres with the olfactory lobes, or of the latter alone,

produces complete immobility and absence of spontaneous movement, even though the optic thalami and optic lobes may be intact.

In the bird the cerebral hemispheres may be removed with ease. A decerebrate pigeon, if its optic lobes be intact, walks about avoiding all obstacles, and may even fly a short distance. In the dark, *i.e.* in the absence of visual impressions, it remains perfectly still. The bird however is unable to recognise food, or enemies, or individuals of the opposite sex; it shows no fear and responds to stimuli like the brainless frog described above.

Goltz has succeeded in the dog in removing the whole of the cerebral hemispheres in three operations. The dog was kept alive for eighteen months after the final operation. It was able to walk in normal fashion and spent the greater part of the day in walking up and down its cage. At night it would sleep and then required a loud sound to awaken it. It reacted to stimuli in a normal fashion, shutting its eyes when exposed to a strong light, shaking its ears in response to a loud sound. On pinching its skin it attempted to get away, snarling or turning round and biting clumsily at the experimenter's hand. It had no power to recognise food and had to be fed by placing food in its mouth, though, if this food were mixed with a bitter substance such as quinine, it was at once rejected. The dog never showed recognition of the persons that fed it, nor any signs of pleasure or fear. Removal of the hemispheres had thus produced loss of all understanding and memory. There was no sign of conscious intelligence, and all the actions of the animal must be regarded as reflex responses to immediate excitation.

With the development of the cerebral hemispheres in the higher mammals there is a considerable shifting of motor reactions from those which are immediate and 'fatal' or inevitable to those which are educatable. The cerebral hemispheres in man take a large part in the determining of even the common reactions of everyday life. Ablation of the hemispheres therefore, or even part of the hemispheres, in the ape and man gives rise to much more lasting symptoms than is the case in the animals we have just studied. These defects we shall have to consider more fully later. The results however obtained on the lower animals, from the dog downwards, show that the brain stem, from the head ganglion of the optic thalamus back to the medulla, with the spinal cord, represents a complex mechanism which can be played upon by impulses received through all the sensory apparatus of the body, and is able to adjust the motor and visceral reactions to the immediate environment of the animal.

Certain of these immediate reactions are susceptible of further physiological analysis. We have seen that the spinal cord contains the co-ordinated mechanism for the movement of the limbs. We may now discuss how the movements of the limbs are co-ordinated with those of the trunk and head in the maintenance of the unstable position of the animal in standing and in locomotion. For this purpose there has been developed the great mass of nerve matter in the roof of the metencephalon, viz. the cerebellum.

SECTION XIII

THE FUNCTIONS OF THE CEREBELLUM

THE carrying out of co-ordinated movements is associated with and regulated by afferent impressions which can be divided into two main groups.

In the first group may be placed those due to the changes in the environment of the animal, working on sensory structures or 'receptors,' of varying qualitative sensibility, in the surface of the body. These receptors may be excited by the mechanical stimuli of pressure, by changes of temperature, or by nocuous or harmful impressions, such as would, in the presence of consciousness, give rise to pain. At the fore end of the body we have in addition the special receptor organs excited by waves of light or of sound. The action of any of these impressions, if of sufficient intensity, is to evoke an appropriate reflex movement, such as the flexor reflex in response to nocuous stimulus applied to the foot, or the stepping, or extensor, reflex excited by steady pressure on the sole of the foot.

The integrity of the nerve paths carrying these afferent impressions and of the motor paths to the muscles is not however sufficient. A secondary set of afferent impulses is essential in order to guide and regulate the extent of the resultant discharge. These secondary afferent impulses start in the deep tissues, viz. the muscles, joints, and ligaments, which are provided with special sense-organs capable of being stimulated by the mechanical changes of tension or pressure set up by the movements themselves. The importance of these impressions for the carrying out of muscular movements is shown by the ataxia which is the result of injury to the corresponding afferent nerves. Degeneration of the nerves to muscles, or section of the afferent roots, causes marked ataxia of the movements of the limb, whereas no such result follows section of all the cutaneous nerves supplying the surface of the limb with sensibility. To this system of afferent nerves Sherrington has given the name of the 'proprioceptive' system, since it is excited, not directly by changes in the environment, but by alteration in the animal itself. It is responsible for reactions differing in many respects from those which are the immediate result of stimulation of the other system, the 'exteroceptive,' which is distributed over the surface of the body. Since it is excited by the movement of the muscles themselves, *i.e.* by the first result of the reaction to external stimulus, it serves as a governing mechanism to regulate the extent of each motor discharge. Its excitation not only prevents over-action of the muscles, but may evoke a compensatory reflex in an opposite direction to the reflex immediately excited from the skin. A marked feature of this

system is its tendency to continued or tonic activity. The steady slight contraction, or 'tone,' which is observable in most skeletal muscles, is independent of the surface sensibility and depends entirely on the proprioceptive system of the muscles and their accessory structures.

In the decerebrate animal the rigidity of a limb disappears at once after section of its afferent roots, though it is unaltered by division of the main skin nerves. This tonus does not affect all muscles to an equal degree. In every limb there is a predominance of tonus in certain muscles, so that the result on the whole limb is an attitude or posture which is typical of the limb or the animal. Thus the spinal frog takes up an attitude which is very different from that which would be impressed on it by gravity in the absence of muscular activity. If one of its hind limbs be extended gently, it soon draws it up to reproduce the same crouching position. The posture of the limb is therefore a result of afferent impressions continually ascending its proprioceptive nerves and exciting a tonic activity which predominates in certain definite muscles. This posture, as carried out by the spinal cord, is a segmental response. It determines the relation of the limb to the trunk, and to a less extent of the four limbs to one another. It is not concerned with the relation of the animal as a whole to its environment, and only to a slight extent with the maintenance of equilibrium in the presence of the continually acting force of gravity.

In the evolution of the nervous system there has been a continual subordination of the hinder parts to the head end, in consequence of the development at this end of the all-important distance receptors, the impulses from which take a predominating part in determining the reactions of the body as a whole. In fact the subordination of one part of the central nervous system to another is in direct relation to the importance of the afferent impulses arriving at each portion of the system. Thus the vaso-motor centres segmentally distributed throughout the spinal cord are subject to the vaso-motor centre in the medulla, which is developed at the point of entry of the vagus nerves, *i.e.* the chief afferent nerves from the heart and large blood-vessels. The collections of grey matter presiding over the segmental reactions of the intercostal muscles are entirely subordinated to the grey matter in the medulla around the entry of the vagus fibres from the lungs.

This subordination of the hinder to the anterior sense-organs is paralleled in the case of the proprioceptive system. Entering the hind-brain at the upper border of the medulla is the eighth nerve, composed of two parts which differ widely in functions, viz. the cochlear division and the vestibular division. The former is entirely concerned with the reception of sound waves, and is therefore the auditory nerve. The vestibular nerve, which is distributed to the rest of the membranous labyrinth, must be assigned to the proprioceptive system. The labyrinth is practically a double organ. The primitive auditory sac arises as a simple involution of the surface. In the course of development the front part is modified to form the canal of the cochlea, which is set apart entirely for the reception of sound. From the

back part there are formed two sacs—the saccule and utricle—and the three semicircular canals. The saccule and the utricle, which receive each a large branch of the vestibular nerve, represent the otolith organ, which is found in almost all classes of animals. The crayfish, for instance, at the base of its antennæ presents a small sac lined with hairs and richly supplied with nerves. In this sac a small calcareous particle rests on the hairs. It is evident that the incidence of the pressure of the small stone or otolith on the hairs will vary according to the position of the animal (Fig. 200), so that any change in the position of the head will be attended by altera-

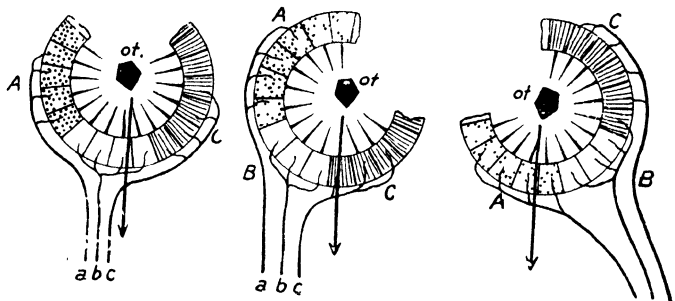


FIG. 200. Diagram of an otolith organ, to show how alterations in its position will cause the weight of the otolith (*ot.*) to press on different sense cells, and therefore to affect different nerve fibres.

tion in the nerve fibres which have been stimulated by the pressure of the otolith, and therefore in the nature of the impulses flowing to the central nervous system. The importance of these impulses in regulating the locomotion and the maintenance of the equilibrium of the animal is well shown if the otolith be replaced by a small fragment of iron. Under normal circumstances the iron particle will act quite as well as an otolith. If however a powerful magnet be brought in the neighbourhood of the animal, the pressure of the particle will not be determined simply by gravity and therefore by the position of the animal, so that there will be a discordance between the impulses arriving from the otolith organ and those arising from the sense-organs of the body, and marked disorders of equilibrium are the result.

In the saccule and utricle the vestibular nerve ends in similar otolith organs known as the maculæ acousticæ. These are small elevations covered with long hairs and supplied with nerves. One or two calcareous secretions or otoliths are embedded in the hairs, so that any change in position will cause a corresponding change in the nerve fibres which are being excited by the weight of the otoliths. The semicircular canals, which lie in the three planes of space, are also provided with end organs, somewhat similar in structure to the maculæ acousticæ, but devoid of otoliths. The end organs are excited by mass movements of the fluid endolymph, which are set up by rotation of the head.

Since the nervous apparatus of the labyrinth is excited not by changes in the environment, from which it is carefully shielded, but by changes in the

animal itself, we are justified in assigning it to the proprioceptive system, of which indeed it represents the most important receptor. Just as the proprioceptive nerves of a limb are responsible for the tonus of the limb muscles, so, as Ewald has shown, each labyrinth is responsible to a considerable degree for the tonus of the corresponding side of the body. Extirpation of one labyrinth causes a lasting loss of tone in the muscles of the same side. A further functional resemblance lies in the part played by the labyrinth in the determination of posture. The resultant effect of the impulses arising in it is to maintain a reflex posture of the head and eyes, so that the optic axes in a position of rest are directed towards the horizon. Stimulation of the labyrinth causes therefore movements of the eyes which may or may not be associated with correlated movements of the head.

As in the case of the other sense-organs of the anterior end of the body, the reflexes excited from the labyrinth dominate over those evoked by proprioceptive impulses from the hinder portions of the body. At the entry of its nerve into the brain stem, a mass of grey matter is developed which must be regarded as the head ganglion of the proprioceptive system, and the chief co-ordinating organ of all the reflex systems which determine posture of the limbs and of the whole animal, and therefore the maintenance of equilibrium both at rest and during locomotion This organ is the cerebellum, associated with the grey matter in the upper part of the fourth ventricle at the point of entry of the vestibular nerves. The cerebellum commences in early fœtal life as a small elevation in the dorsal wall of the neural tube, where the eighth nerve enters. Simple in structure and small in extent in most of the fishes and amphibia, it grows in extent with increasing complexity of the animal's motor reactions, and attains its greatest development in the mammalia. In this class the cerebellum, like the cerebrum, is most highly developed in man and the higher apes. It is generally described in man as consisting of a middle lobe, composed of the superior and inferior vermis, with two lateral hemispheres, and these are subdivided by anatomists according to the situation of the chief sulci. From the physiological point of view the structure of the organ is relatively simple, as is shown by the uniformity of its structure throughout all parts. It may be considered as formed of two main structures, viz. the cortex and the central or roof ganglia.

The surface of the cerebellum is increased by being thrown into folds or laminæ, so that a section of this organ has a tree-like appearance. A section through a lamina shows three distinct zones: an outer molecular layer presenting a granular appearance with a few nuclei; internal to this a granule layer composed of many nuclei of nerve cells; and most deeply a central core of white matter. Between the molecular and granular layers are situated the cells of Purkinje, large flask-shaped cells each with one apical dendrite, distinguished above all other dendrites of the central nervous system by the richness of its branching, and with one axon, which leaves the base of the cell and passes down into the central white matter, giving off collaterals in its course. In preparations made by Golgi's method we are able to distinguish the various elements composing these layers and their relations. The molecular layer, besides neuroglia-cells and the branching dendrites of the cells of Purkinje, contains certain star-shaped cells (*a* Fig. 201), which give off an axon running parallel with the surface in the molecular layer. From this axon branches dip down towards the cells of Purkinje,

where they end in a rich basket-work of fibres around the body and beginning of the axon of these cells. The nuclear or granular layer presents two kinds of cells The most numerous is a small cell with a few short dendrites, each of which terminates in a claw-shaped arborisation, and a single long axon, which passes straight up into the molecular layer, where it bifurcates. The two branches run parallel with the surface in a direction at right angles to the plane of expansion of the dendrites of Purkinje's cells, apparently resting against the serrations on the edges of these processes. The second kind of cell in the granular layer is the so-called Golgi's cell—a large cell

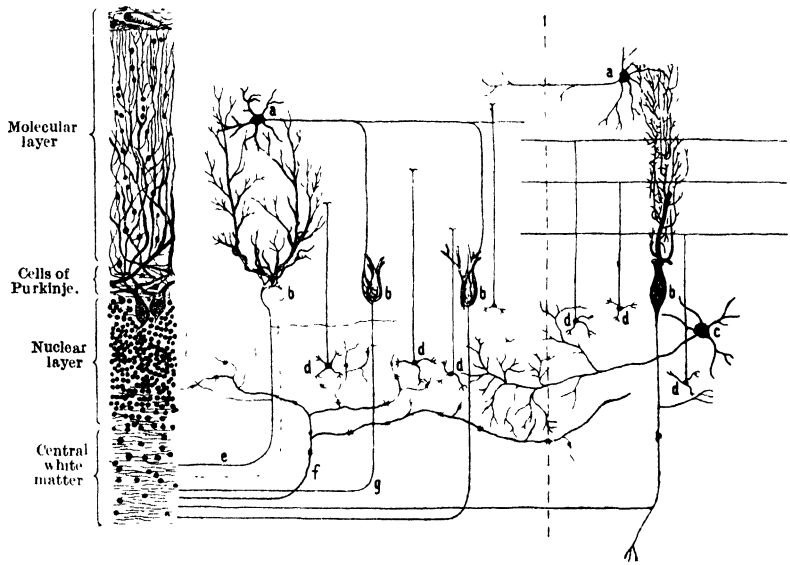


FIG. 201. Schema of constituent elements of cerebellum. (Modified from BOHM and DAVIDOFF.) On the left is a section of the cortex as it appears when stained by ordinary methods. The middle portion represents diagrammatically a section at right angles to the laminæ, while to the right of the dotted line the section is taken in the same plane as the laminæ.

a, star-shaped cells of molecular layer; *b*, *b*, cells of Purkinje; *c*, 'Golgi cell'; *d*, small cells of nuclear layer; *e*, 'tendril fibre'; *f*, 'moss fibre'; *g*, axon of cell of Purkinje.

with many dendrites and an axon which terminates by frequent branches in the neighbouring grey matter.

The fibres making up the white matter are of three kinds—two afferent and one efferent. The *moss fibres*, so called from the curious thickenings they present in the nuclear layer, pass up into the grey matter and terminate by frequent branches in this layer. The *tendril fibres*, also afferent, end in a rich arborisation which surrounds the distal part of the bodies and the bases of the dendrites of the cells of Purkinje. The efferent fibres are represented by the axons of the cells of Purkinje, which acquire a medullary sheath and run down into the white matter.

This slight sketch of the anatomy gives us a conception of the extreme complexity of choice presented to nervous impulses traversing the cerebellar cortex. Thus a discharge along an axon of the cell of Purkinje may be excited (1) by an impulse ascending the tendril fibres; or (2) by one ascending the moss fibres through the granule cells, and then passing by their bifurcating axon to the dendrites of the cells of Purkinje; or (3) by the star-shaped cells of the molecular layer and their basket-work round the body of Purkinje's cells.

The *roof ganglia* consist of the nuclei fastigii near the middle line, the nuclei emboliformes situated just dorsal to these, and the nuclei dentati, large crenated capsules of grey matter lying in the middle of each lateral lobe. The cells composing the grey matter of the central nuclei are large and multipolar, resembling those found in the nuclei of motor nerves.

The cerebellum receives fibres from all the receptor apparatus of the body which can be classed in the proprioceptive system. The greater number of these fibres run directly to the cortex, especially of the vermis, and there is no evidence of the passage of any efferent fibres from the cortex directly to the motor apparatus of the cord.

The connections of the cerebellum are established by means of its three peduncles, and may be classified as follows:

AFFERENT TRACTS. INFERIOR PEDUNCLE. By this peduncle afferent fibres pass to the superior vermis:

(1) From Clarke's column of the same side by the posterior cerebellar tract.

(2) From the dorsal column nuclei, viz. the nucleus gracilis and nucleus cuneatus of each side, so that connection is established in this way with the prolongations of the posterior sensory roots which run into the posterior columns of the cord.

(3) By the internal restiform body from the vestibular division of the eighth nerve, part of the fibres passing through, and perhaps making connections with, Deiters' nucleus.

(4) A strong band of fibres passes from the inferior olivary body into the opposite cerebellar hemisphere. Atrophy of one side of the cerebellum induces a corresponding atrophy in the opposite olivary body.

MIDDLE PEDUNCLE. The broad mass of fibres making up these peduncles is partly afferent and partly efferent. Many fibres originate in the cells in the formatio reticularis of the pons, cross the middle line, and pass up into the lateral cerebellar hemisphere of the opposite side. Fibres also pass from the cerebellum to the pons to end round cells in the same region. By this means connection is established between the cerebellar hemispheres and the corticopontine fibres which pass by the crura cerebri between the pons and the frontal and temporal portions of the cerebral cortex of the opposite side. On account of this connection there is a close association between the development of each cerebellar hemisphere and the contralateral cerebral hemisphere. Atrophy of one half of the cerebrum brings about atrophy of the opposite hemisphere of the cerebellum.

THE SUPERIOR PEDUNCLE. By this path fibres from the superior corpora quadrigemina, *i.e.* from the terminations of the optic nerve, pass into the cortical grey matter of the cerebellum (Fig. 202).

EFFERENT TRACTS. The cerebellar cortex must be regarded as a receiving rather than as a discharging station. Stimulation of it has little effect unless strong currents are employed, and a motor response is obtained more easily the deeper the electrodes are sunk below the grey matter. The fibres which form the axons of the cells of Purkinje pass partly towards the pons by the middle peduncle, largely, however, towards the roof nuclei, where they terminate. These nuclei form the efferent stations of the cerebellum. From them fibres pass in various directions. A large bundle leaves the dentate nucleus, runs into the superior peduncle, or brachium, and passing deeply across to the tegmentum of the opposite side, traverses the red nucleus to end in the subthalamic region of the opposite side of the brain. A certain number of fibres, chiefly derived from the central nuclei, such as the nucleus fastigii, pass forward to the corpora quadrigemina chiefly on the same side. From the cerebellum itself no direct tract runs into the spinal cord. The nuclei of Dieters and of Bechterew (the paracerebellar nuclei), which are connected with the endings of the vestibular nerve, are, however, closely associated with the roof nuclei, and give rise to descending fibres which pass into the antero-lateral region of the cord as the vestibulo-spinal tract.

The cerebellum is a receiving station, not only for impulses which arise in the skin and eyes, *i.e.* on the surface of the body, but especially for those which have been defined as proprioceptive and originate either in the muscles and tendons or in the labyrinth. Activity of this apparatus is roused as a rule by the movement of the organism itself, and is only a secondary result of the environmental stimulation which provoked the original movement. By its efferent tracts starting in the roof- and paracerebellar nuclei, the cerebellum is able to affect the musculature of the same side of the body by a direct influence on the anterior horns. It also enters to a much greater extent into relation with the opposite cerebral hemispheres, so that it is in a position to control or modify the activity of these, whether excited on their sensory or on their motor sides.

STIMULATION OF THE CEREBELLUM. It was first shown by Ferrier that movements of the same side of the body can be excited by stimulation either of the cerebellar hemispheres or of the superior vermis. These results have been confirmed by subsequent observers, and point to each half of the cerebellum being connected functionally with the skeletal muscular apparatus of the corresponding side of the body. The cortex cerebelli is not excited with ease. To evoke movements much stronger stimuli are necessary than *e.g.* for the excitation of the motor area of the cerebral cortex. This again is in accordance with what we should expect from the anatomy of the organ, knowing as we do that the cortex is an end-station for a number of afferent paths, but has no direct efferent paths from it to the lower motor mechanisms of the cord. On the other hand, movements are excited by minimal stimuli from the intrinsic nuclei of the cerebellum.

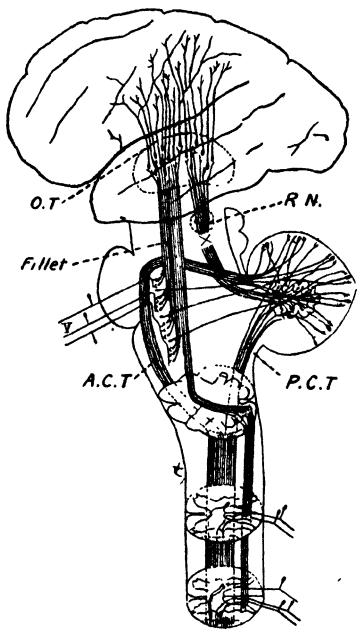


FIG. 202. Diagram of afferent and efferent tracts of cerebellum. (After v. GEHUCHTEN.) OT, optic thalamus; RN, red nucleus; PCT, posterior cerebellar tract; ACT, anterior cerebellar tract; v. fifth nerve.

As a result of his experiments Horsley concluded that the cortex cerebelli must be regarded as an afferent receptive centre from which axons pass to the ventrally placed efferent nuclei, viz. the nuclei dentati, fastigii, emboliformes, as well as Deiters' nuclei. Whereas excitation of the roof nuclei produces more especially movements of the eyes and head, the paracerebellar (*e.g.* Deiters' nucleus) are responsible more especially for the movements of the trunk and limbs. The movements of the body which are thus

evoked are those concerned in maintaining equilibrium and are involved in every alteration in the position of the body.

EFFECTS OF ABLATION OF THE CEREBELLUM. Complete unilateral extirpation of the cerebellum, after the irritative effects of the lesion itself have passed away, brings about a condition of the animal characterised by :

(1) Slight loss of power on the same side of the body.

(2) Considerable loss of tone on the same side.

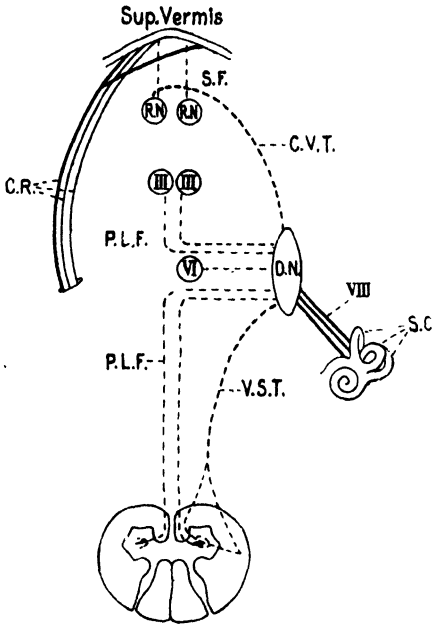


FIG. 202A. Schema of connections of Deiters' nucleus. (BRUCE.)

CR, restiform body ; RN, roof nuclei ; SF, sagittal fibres from cortex to roof nuclei ; CVT, cerebello-vestibular tract ; DN, Deiters' nucleus ; III, VI, nuclei of third and sixth nerves ; PLF, posterior longitudinal bundle ; VIII, vestibular division of eighth nerve ; SC, semicircular canals ; VST, vestibulo-spinal fibres.

(3) Tremors or rhythmical movements of the muscles on the same side accompanying any willed movements.

These three symptoms are denoted by Luciani as *asthenia*, *atonia*, and *astasia*. At first the animal is quite unable to stand, and lies on the side of the lesion with neck and trunk curved in the same direction ; when it attempts to stand it always falls to the same side. After two or three weeks the power to stand is regained, though when it attempts to walk the hindquarters drag and tremors accompany every effort. The animal endeavours to correct the tendency to fall towards the side of the lesion by an exaggerated abduction of the limbs to that side, and is always ready to take advantage of the support of a wall to enable it to maintain its equilibrium. Swimming is much better carried out than walking, the contact of the water with the skin furnishing guidance to the spinal mechanism which is lacking when the animal attempts to walk.

When the whole cerebellum is removed the animal is unable to walk, sometimes for months. After a time it gradually learns to walk, but this is carried out by an alteration of the method of progression. The disorders of locomotion are quite distinct from the spinal ataxia observed after interference with the afferent tracts from the muscles. The difficulty now is that each diagonal movement of the limbs in progression tends to throw the centre of gravity to one side or other of the basis of support, and it is the mechanism for maintaining the right position of the centre of gravity, *i.e.* the

posture of the body as a whole in relation to its environment, which is at fault. The animal, in the case of the dog, therefore attempts to correct the tendency to fall to one side or other at each step by making its basis of support as wide as possible, and gradually acquires a peculiar gait, consisting of a series of springs, in which the two fore limbs and two hind limbs act together, the diagonal movements of the fore limbs being practically abandoned. That the compensation, which is slowly acquired after extirpation of the cerebellum, is of cerebral origin is shown by the fact that subsequent removal of the cerebral hemispheres, or even of the motor areas of the hemispheres, at once abolishes the power of movement which has been reacquired; and after the motor areas are destroyed on both sides, the loss of power of progression is permanent.

These experiments show that the cerebellum, in Sherrington's words, must be regarded as the head ganglion of the proprioceptive system, acting as a centre where arrive the afferent impulses from the cord, the fifth nerve and especially from the labyrinth. It influences, through the superior peduncle, the cerebral cortex and furnishes the subconscious basis for the guidance of the motor functions of the latter organ. Through its connections with the nuclei of the bulb and the efferent tracts arising therefrom, it augments the tonic activity of all the muscles of the body, especially of those concerned in the maintenance of posture, an effect which is especially marked in the absence of the cerebral hemispheres and is responsible for the condition known as decerebrate rigidity. As a centre of conjunction for the afferent impressions from the muscles and those from the labyrinth, it co-ordinates the segmental reflexes, which determine the relative posture of each limb, with those originating in the labyrinth and determining the position of the head. Thus the whole mechanism provides for a maintenance of equilibrium of the body as a whole, and for the proper balancing of the reflex movements of the different limbs with those of the trunk during all the changes in the position of the centre of gravity attending locomotion.

The view here put forward really includes the various descriptions of the functions of the cerebellum which have been given by different authorities. Thus Luciani describes the cerebellum as an organ which by unconscious processes exerts a continual reinforcing action on the activity of all the spinal centres. Munk ascribes to the cerebellum the function of maintaining bodily equilibrium. Lewandowsky regards the cerebellum as the central organ of the muscular senses. Hughlings Jackson expressed many years ago an important characteristic of the cerebellum when he wrote that the cerebellum is the centre for continuous movements, and the cerebrum for changing movements. All these descriptions come under Sherrington's conception of the cerebellum as head ganglion of the proprioceptive system.

DESTRUCTIVE LESIONS OF THE CEREBELLUM IN MAN

The general results of the lesions of the cerebellum in man are broadly similar to those described for animals. As in these, the effects of unilateral lesions are always limited to the same side of the body.

One invariable result is diminished tone of the muscles on the same side of the body. This does not necessarily involve diminution or absence of the tendon reflexes; in fact,

there may be some exaggeration of these reflexes accompanying the diminished tone. The loss of tone is easily perceived on lifting up the leg and letting it drop, or on taking the fore-arm and shaking the hand. The knee-jerk in these circumstances differs from the normal jerk in the absence of the tonic contraction which ordinarily follows and continues the short sharp contraction; the leg thus falls after the jerk, instead of being held up for a short time by the continued contraction of the quadriceps muscle.

Associated with this *atonia* is a loss of voluntary power—*asthenia*— which is generally more marked in the arm than in the leg. The initiation and the execution of voluntary movements are slower than normal, and the end of the movement is delayed, so that there is a tendency to over-action of the muscles. Sustained effort is difficult, the contractions becoming intermittent, or giving place to coarse tremor—so-called *astasia*. There may be defective maintenance of equilibrium in walking, so that a staggering gait is produced, closely resembling that of a drunken man. There is a tendency to fall or deviate to the injured side, but this defect is not nearly so marked as in the case of the dog, already described.

Even when the cerebellar gait is not marked, there is always some ataxy of the arm or hand muscles; the usual co-operative antagonism of opposing muscles is faulty, and these may contract together instead of alternately, or the wrong muscles may be used. When, for instance, the man tries to approximate one finger to the thumb, he tends to move all the others.

Speech is often slurred, drawling, or 'scanning' in character, and the difficulty experienced by the man in articulation frequently gives rise to explosive utterance. The head is generally inclined towards the injured side and rotated to the opposite side. Abnormal position of the eyes is always a prominent symptom. Both eyes are deviated to the opposite side, and there is nystagmus owing to the difficulty experienced in moving the eyes towards the side of the lesion. When a patient with a lesion on the right side attempts to look towards the right, the eyes move slowly towards the right and then drop back rapidly towards their position of rest, to be slowly moved up again towards the right. The movements are similar to those which may be seen in any person looking out of the window of a rapidly moving train.

There is no loss of sensation or of muscular sensibility.

SECTION XIV

VISUAL REFLEXES

FOREMOST among the afferent impulses determining the reactions of higher animals are those arising in the eyes. Each retina, or rather the two retinæ acting together as a single organ, can be regarded as a sensory surface, every point of which corresponds to a point, or series of points, lying in a given direction outside the body. Each optic nerve contains about half a million nerve fibres, *i.e.* as many as enter the cord by the posterior roots from the whole of the body. The two optic nerves coming from the retinæ meet together in the floor of the fore-brain and form the chiasma. At the chiasma a decussation of fibres takes place which, in animals such as the rabbit with no fusion of the fields of the two eyes, is practically complete. In man only those fibres which arise in the mesial half of each retina cross the mesial plane; these, together with the uncrossed fibres from the temporal half of the other retina, form the optic tract of the opposite side (Fig. 203). The optic tract passes backwards across the crus cerebri and finally divides in the roof of the mid- and fore-brain into three branches, which end in the grey matter of the anterior corpora quadrigemina and in the external geniculate body and the pulvinar of the optic thalamus. Running in the optic tract are also fibres which are simply commissural; these form the mesial root of the optic tract. They cross in the optic chiasma and serve to connect the two internal geniculate bodies. In addition to the afferent fibres from the retina to the brain the optic tract contains a certain number of efferent fibres which pass out and end in the retinæ.

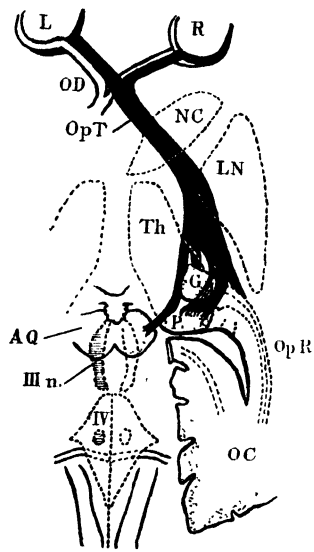


FIG. 203. Diagram to show connections of optic tracts. (After SHERRINGTON.)

L, left, and R, right retina; OD, optic decussation (chiasma); OpT, optic tract; NC, nucleus caudatus; LN, lenticular nucleus; Th, optic thalamus; G, external geniculate body; AQ, anterior corpus quadrigeminum; P, pulvinar; OpR, optic radiations running to OC, the occipital cortex; IIIn, nucleus of third nerve in floor of Sylvian aqueduct; IV, fourth ventricle.

It is evident from these connections that whereas section of one optic

nerve, say the right, will only cause loss of vision in the right eye, section of the right optic tract will divide the fibres coming from the right halves of both retinæ. This portion of the retina in each eye is stimulated in the normal position of the eyes by rays of light coming from the objects lying to the left of the field of vision. Section of the right optic tract therefore causes blindness to all objects to the left of the median line, left *hemianopia*. Section of both optic tracts of course causes complete blindness.

Every movement of the head involves compensatory movements of the eyes, and conversely, in any change in the environment of the animal which demands its attention, there is a movement of the eyes so as to turn the gaze on to the origin of the disturbance as an antecedent to any body movement. In the absence of normal regulative impulses from the skin or from the semicircular canals, the afferent impressions from the eyes may serve for the maintenance of fairly well co-ordinated movements—a compensation which is rendered possible by the power of the cerebral cortex to learn new reactions by experience.

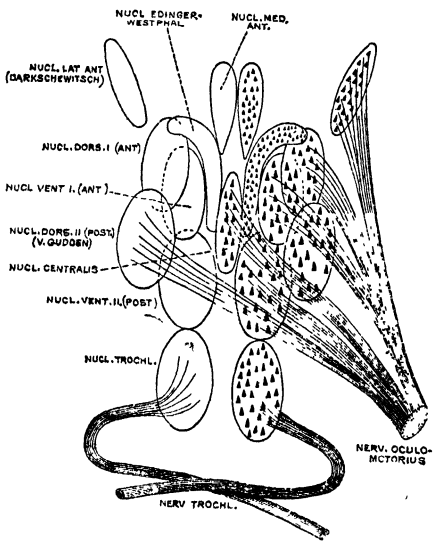


FIG. 204. Diagram to show origin of the different fibres of the third and fourth nerves from the oculo-motor nuclei.

The centres for the eye movements are contained in the grey matter in the floor of the back part of the third ventricle and of the iter of Sylvius. Here we find the nucleus of the third or oculo-motor nerve. The oculo-motor nucleus consists of several divisions, viz. a lateral part containing large motor cells, a superficial median nucleus with small cells, and a deeper median nucleus with large cells. By localised stimulation it has been found possible to differentiate the functions of the various parts of the nucleus (Fig. 204). Stimulation of the back part of the third ventricle causes contraction of the ciliary muscles, and of the part immediately behind this contraction of the pupil. On stimulating the floor of the iter from before backwards, we obtain contractions in order of the rectus internus, the rectus superior, the levator palpebræ superioris, the rectus inferior, and the inferior oblique muscle. On stimulating more laterally, or exciting the corpora quadrigemina, dilatation of the pupil is obtained.

It seems probable that the optic thalamus and the closely related external geniculate body are mainly concerned with the reception of visual impulses and their forwarding to the cerebral cortex. On the other hand, the anterior or superior corpora quadrigemina are mainly concerned with the co-ordination

of visual impressions and visual movements with the movements of every part of the body, and especially with the complex mechanism we have already studied in connection with the labyrinth and cerebellum. Stimulation of the corpora quadrigemina therefore evokes movements of the eyes and of the head; extirpation of this part, even when bilateral, though it may interfere with co-ordination, does not necessarily involve loss of sight.

The multifarious intercourse which is continually taking place between

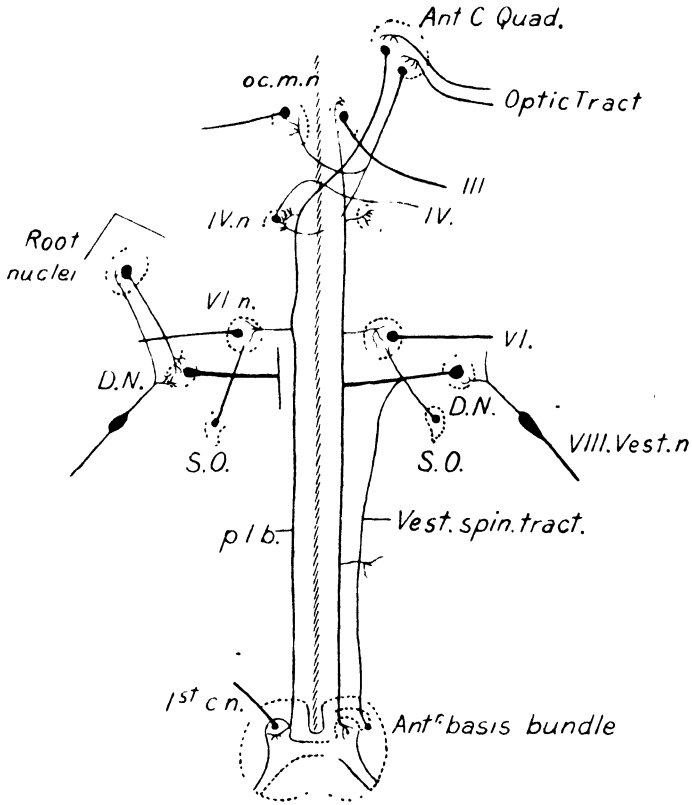


FIG. 205. Diagram of connections of posterior longitudinal bundle.

Ant.C.Quad, anterior corpus quadrigeminum; oc.m.n, oculo-motor nucleus; IV.n, nucleus of fourth nerve; VI.n, nucleus of sixth nerve; D.N, Deiters' nucleus; S.O, superior olive; VIII. Vest.n, vestibular nerve; p.l.b, posterior longitudinal bundle; 1st c.n, first cervical nerve.

the eye centres and those for the movements of the body, and between afferent impressions from the eyes and those from the semicircular canals and the proprioceptive system generally, is effected to a large extent through the intermediation of the posterior longitudinal bundle, which extends throughout the whole length of the mid-brain and the hind-brain, and in the spinal

cord becomes continuous with the anterior basis bundle of the anterior columns. Receiving fibres above through the anterior commissure from the optic thalamus and from the superior corpora quadrigemina, it is associated in its course with the three motor nuclei that give origin to the nerves supplying the muscles of the eyeball, viz. the third, fourth, and sixth nerves. Fibres enter the posterior longitudinal bundle from the auditory system and from the superior olive, and connections are also established between this bundle and the facial nucleus, and the nucleus of Deiters, representing the central station of impulses from the labyrinth. The general connections of the bundle are shown in Fig 205.

SECTION XV

SUMMARY OF THE CONNECTIONS AND FUNCTIONS OF THE CRANIAL NERVES

Cranial nerves. The cranial nerves are generally reckoned as twelve in number: 1st, olfactory; 2nd, optic; 3rd, oculo-motor; 4th, or trochlear; 5th, or trigeminus; 6th; 7th, or facial; 8th, auditory; 9th, glossopharyngeal; 10th, vagus or pneumogastric; 11th, spinal accessory; 12th, hypoglossal.

Of these the first two stand on a different footing from the rest which, like the spinal nerves, are outgrowths of nerve fibres from the central tube of grey matter surrounding the neural canal or from ganglia corresponding to the spinal posterior root ganglion.

The olfactory bulb and the retinæ, from which the majority of the fibres forming the olfactory tract and the optic nerve respectively take their origin, are analogous rather to lobes of the brain than to peripheral sense-organs. Thus in the retina there are three relays of neurons through which the visual impulse must pass before it arrives at the optic nerve. The olfactory tract and optic nerve are thus comparable with the association or commissural fibres connecting different parts of the central nervous system. The connections of these sensory fibres have already been fully dealt with, and the structure of the peripheral sense-organ will be treated of under the physiology of the special senses. Among the cranial nerves proper we may therefore reckon the third to the twelfth.

The *third or oculo-motor* arises from an elongated nucleus which extends on either side from the back part of the third ventricle along almost the whole length of the ventral part of the aqueduct of Sylvius close to the middle line (Fig. 204). The anterior part is composed of small cells which give origin to the fibres innervating the intrinsic muscles of the eye, namely, the ciliary muscle and the sphincter pupillæ. The rest of the nucleus is made up of large multipolar cells, arranged in groups, and gives origin to the fibres passing to most of the extrinsic muscles of the eye. The fibres of the third nerve pass through the tegmentum to emerge at the inner margin of the crusta of the same side. The fibres from the posterior large-celled nucleus supply the following muscles; levator palpebrarum, superior rectus, inferior rectus, internal rectus, and inferior oblique.

Stimulation of the trunk of the third nerve causes the eyeball to look

upwards and inwards, with contraction of the pupil and spasm of accommodation.

The nucleus of the *fourth nerve* is situated, just behind that for the third, in the floor of the Sylvian aqueduct, on a level with the inferior corpora quadrigemina. The fibres run from here down towards the pons, then turn sharply backwards to pass into the valve of Vieussens, which they cross horizontally, decussating with the nerve of the opposite side. The superficial origin is therefore from the valve of Vieussens. This nerve supplies the superior oblique muscle of the eyeball. Its stimulation causes the eyeball to look downwards and outwards.

The *sixth nerve*, the motor nerve for the external rectus muscle of the eyeball, arises from a group of large multipolar cells lying on each side of the middle line in the floor of the fourth ventricle. The fibres of the nerve pass directly outwards to emerge from the anterior ventral surface of the medulla between the pyramids and the olivary eminence, at the lower border of the pons. Stimulation of this nerve causes the eyeball to look directly outwards. All these three oculo-motor nuclei receive collaterals from the fibres forming the posterior longitudinal bundle, many of which are axons of cells in Deiters' nucleus. It is by this means that the contractions of the muscles moving the eyeball are co-ordinated. Sherrington has shown that, although the third, fourth, and sixth nerves arise directly from the brain stem and have no ganglion on their course, they are really mixed afferent-efferent nerves. Their afferent fibres, which must arise from the cells in the central nervous system itself, run to the receptor nerve endings with which all the extrinsic eye muscles are richly provided. They are exclusively proprioceptive, and supply no organs outside the muscles innervated by the motor fibres. The occurrence of afferent fibres in these nerves explains the fact previously observed by Sherrington that, after total desensitisation of the eyeball by means of cocaine, or by section of the first division of the fifth nerve, the ocular movements are carried out with as much precision as in the normal animal. As we have seen, such precision of movement requires the co-operation of afferent impressions from the muscle, and the only possible channels for these impressions are the proprioceptive sense-organs and the afferents of the third, fourth, and sixth nerve pairs themselves.

The *fifth nerve, or trigeminus*, resembles a spinal nerve in that it has a motor as well as a sensory root. The motor root is much the smaller of the two. The fibres of the sensory root take their origin in the cells of the Gasserian ganglion, which is in all respects similar to the ganglion of a posterior spinal nerve root. The sensory root represents the somatic afferent part of all the motor cranial nerves from the third to the hypoglossal and has a correspondingly wide field of termination in the brain stem. The afferent fibres of the fifth nerve, as they enter the pons, bifurcate, like a spinal afferent nerve, into ascending and descending branches. The ascending branches are short and pass to an upper sensory nucleus, situated below the lateral part of the fourth ventricle in the upper part of the pons. The

descending branches, which are much longer, are collected into one or more bundles which pass downwards in the lateral part of the reticular formation, accompanied by the downward extension of the sensory nucleus known as the substantia gelatinosa. The descending root can be traced down in the upper part of the cervical cord, its fibres in this region forming a cap to the gelatinous substance of Rolando. From the cells of the sensory nucleus fibres pass towards the median raphe, crossing to the other side to take part in the formation of the tract of the fillet (the trigemino-thalamic tract). The efferent fibres forming the motor root arise from two nuclei. The chief motor nucleus consists of large pigmented multipolar cells situated just below the surface of the lateral margin of the fourth ventricle at the upper part of the pons. The accessory or mesencephalic nucleus is composed of large unipolar cells, situated in the central grey matter along the lateral aspect of the anterior end of the fourth ventricle, and in a corresponding position in mid-brain as far as the upper border of the inferior corpora quadrigemina.

The fifth nerve is the motor nerve for the muscles of mastication, and for the tensor tympani and tensor palati muscles It is the sensory nerve for the whole of the face (including eyeball, mouth, and nose). It also contains dilator fibres to blood-vessels derived from the chorda tympani, and is said to have *trophic* functions. The latter conclusion is from the fact that section of the fifth nerve in the skull is followed by ulceration and sloughing of the cornea, and finally by destructive changes involving the whole eyeball. Since however these results may be prevented by carefully shielding the eye from all dust and deleterious influences, it is probable that the ulceration is merely a secondary consequence of the anæsthesia. The cornea being anæsthetic, foreign objects that fall on its surface are allowed to remain there, and so give rise to injurious changes and ulceration.

The fifth is also said to be the nerve of taste for the anterior third of the tongue, but it is probable that the taste fibres which run in the fifth are derived from the glossopharyngeal or from the nervus intermedius.

The *eighth nerve* and its connections have been discussed already on several occasions. We may here briefly summarise what has already been stated. In describing the eighth nerve it is necessary to consider separately its two divisions, the dorsal or cochlear division and the ventral or vestibular nerve. The fibres of the *cochlear nerve* originate in the bipolar cells of the spiral ganglion of the cochlea. They carry impulses from the auditory end-organ. On entering the medulla they bifurcate into ascending and descending branches which terminate in two nuclei, the ascending branches in the ventral nucleus, the descending branches in the dorsal nucleus. The ventral or accessory nucleus lies between the cochlear and vestibular divisions ventrally to the restiform body. The dorsal nucleus, often called the acoustic tubercle, forms a rounded projection on the lateral and dorsal aspects of the restiform body. From these two nuclei new relays of fibres start, pass to the other side, by crossing the median raphe (where they form the trapezium) to run up in the lateral fillet of the opposite side. From the ventral nucleus the fibres pass directly to the opposite side, forming the greater part of the

trapezium, making connection on their way with the nucleus of the trapezium and with the superior olive. From the dorsal nucleus most of the axons pass dorsally, forming the striæ acousticæ at the middle of the floor of the fourth ventricle. On arriving at the middle line they dip down and join the fibres of the trapezium of the opposite side. The further course of these fibres up to the internal geniculate body, the posterior corpora quadrigemina, and the auditory radiations of the cerebral cortex, have been described on p. 378.

The ventral division of the eighth nerve, or *vestibular nerve*, originates in the bipolar cells of the vestibular ganglion or ganglion of Scarpa. These cells, like those of the spiral ganglion, retain the primitive bipolar character. The fibres divide into ascending and descending branches which become connected with two nuclei. The dorsal or vestibular nucleus, or principal nucleus, which receives the ascending fibres, is a mass of grey matter lying laterally of the vago-glosso-pharyngeal nucleus and corresponding to the lateral triangular area, the *trigonum acoustici*, which is seen on the surface of the fourth ventricle outside the ala cinerea. The descending vestibular nucleus, receiving the descending branches of the vestibular nerve, lies below but continuous with the principal nucleus. The fibres of the vestibular nucleus send also collaterals to the nucleus of Deiters and the nucleus of Bechterew, two accumulations of large multipolar cells lying ventrally and internally to the vestibular nucleus, both nuclei being in close relation to the roof nuclei of the cerebellum. Many fibres of the vestibular nerve pass apparently through these various nuclei on the inner side of the restiform body into the cerebellum, where they make connection with the roof nucleus or nucleus fastigii. By the nuclei of Deiters and Bechterew the vestibular nerve is connected through the dorsal longitudinal bundle and the descending vestibulo-spinal tract with the motor nuclei of the cranial and spinal nerves.

The use of the vestibular nerve is entirely connected with the function of equilibrium. It is probably not concerned in conveying auditory impressions, all its nerve fibres being derived ultimately from the nerve-endings in the saccule and utricle and semicircular canals.

The *seventh cranial nerve* or *facial nerve* emerges from the brain at the inferior margin of the pons, lateral to the point of exit of the sixth nerve. It is almost entirely a motor nerve, but carries also some sensory fibres for taste and general sensibility which it receives from the *nervus intermedius* of Wrisberg. The motor nucleus of the seventh nerve lies in the reticular formation, dorsally to the superior olive, at some depth below the floor of the fourth ventricle. From this nucleus the fibres first pass inwards and dorsally towards the floor of the ventricle, where they collect to form a bundle which runs upwards in the grey matter for a short distance and then turns sharply in a ventro-lateral direction to emerge on the lateral aspect of the pons. The fibres from the motor nucleus supply the muscles of the face, the scalp, and the ear. Secretory fibres also run in the chorda tympani, which is a branch of the facial. These are probably derived, like the sensory fibres, from the nerve of Wrisberg. The sensory fibres of the nerve of Wrisberg originate in the nerve cells of the geniculate ganglion, and

passing inwards with the main root of the facial, divide into ascending and descending branches and end in the upper part of the column of grey matter which receives also the sensory fibres of the ninth and tenth cranial nerves.

The *ninth and tenth cranial nerves* arise by a series of bundles of nerve fibres from the side of the medulla. Both the ninth and tenth are mixed visceral sensory and motor nerves. The sensory nucleus is a column of grey matter lying laterally to the hypoglossal nucleus just below the prominence on the floor of the fourth ventricle known as the ala cinerea. The descending fibres of these nerves form a well-marked bundle of white fibres known as the fasciculus solitarius, or sometimes, from its supposed connection with the regulation of respiration, the 'respiratory bundle of Gierke.' It may be traced down as far as the uppermost part of the cervical cord, its fibres losing themselves on their way down among the cells of the enclosing grey matter. The efferent fibres of the ninth and tenth nerves are derived partly from the dorsal nucleus of the vagus and accessory nerves lying externally to the nucleus of the twelfth nerve, and partly from the nucleus ambiguus, a mass of grey matter lying deeper in the medulla (Fig. 206).

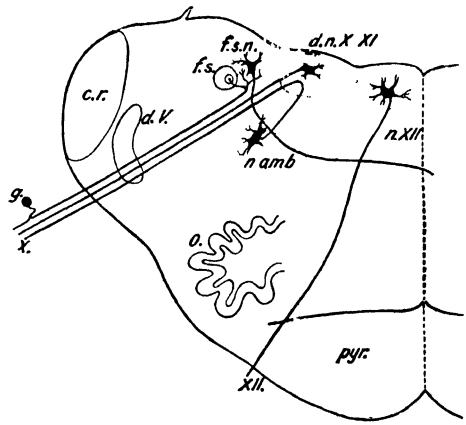


FIG. 206. Plan of the origin of the tenth and twelfth nerves.

pyr. pyramid; *nXII*, nucleus of hypoglossal; *XII*, hypoglossal nerve; *dnX, XI*, dorsal nucleus of vagus and accessory; *n.amb*, nucleus ambiguus; *fs*, fasciculus solitarius (descending root of vagus and glossopharyngeal); *fsn*, its nucleus; *X*, crossing motor fibre of vagus; *g*, cell in ganglion of vagus giving origin to a sensory fibre; *dV*, descending root of fifth; *cr*, corpus restiforme, *o*, olivary nucleus.

The *ninth or glossopharyngeal* nerve supplies motor fibres to the muscles of the pharynx and the base of the tongue, and secretory fibres to the parotid gland. The sensory fibres convey impulses from the tongue, the mouth, and pharynx, the fibres originating outside the central nervous system in the ganglion cells of the ganglion petrosum and the ganglion superius. It also contains inhibitory fibres to the respiratory centre.

The *tenth nerve, vagus or pneumogastric*, is joined by the accessory part of the spinal accessory, so that the two nerves may be considered together. It has both afferent and efferent functions:

Efferent functions:

Motor to levator palati and three constrictors of pharynx.
Motor to muscles of larynx.
Inhibitory to heart.
Motor to muscular walls of œsophagus, stomach, and small intestine.
Motor to unstriated muscle in walls of bronchi and bronchioles.

Secretory to glands of stomach and to pancreas.

Afferent functions :

Regulate respiration. Stimulation of central end may quicken respiration and promote inspiration, or may inhibit inspiration. Stimulation of central end of superior laryngeal branch causes stoppage of inspiration, expiration, cough.

Depressor and pressor (from heart to vaso-motor centre)

Reflex inhibition of heart

Its afferent fibres arise from cells in the ganglia on the trunk of the vagus, namely, the jugular ganglion and the ganglion trunci vagi. The spinal accessory nerve arises partly in connection with the vagus, partly by a series of roots from the lateral region of the spinal cord as low as the sixth cervical segment The spinal portion of the nerve is purely motor and supplies fibres to the sterno-mastoid and trapezius muscles

The *twelfth or hypoglossal* nerve arises from a collection of large multipolar cells in the floor of the fourth ventricle at its lower end close to the middle line. The nerve-trunk issues from the ventral part of the medulla in the groove between the anterior pyramid and the olivary body. The hypoglossal is purely motor in function, supplying the muscles of the tongue, the extrinsic muscles of the larynx, as well as those moving the hyoid bone

Since the integrity of the nuclei of the cranial nerves is a necessary condition for the carrying out of various reflex acts in which those nerves are involved, the grey matter of the fourth ventricle and aqueduct is often spoken of as if it were cut up into a series of centres distinct for every act The chief of these are the respiratory and the vaso-motor centres Other centres that may be enumerated are :

Centres for movements of intrinsic and extrinsic ocular muscles

Cardiac inhibition.

Mastication, deglutition.

Sucking.

Convulsive (connected with respiratory).

Vomiting.

Diabetic (connected with vaso-motor)

Salivary.

Centres of phonation and articulation

We shall have to consider the action of these centres more fully in treating of the several functions of the body. It must be remembered however that, when a dozen or more centres are enumerated as being situated in the fourth ventricle, it is not meant that we can anatomically distinguish a group of cells for each act or group of actions named. When we say that a part of the nervous system is a centre for any action, we merely mean that this part forms a necessary link, or meeting of the ways, in the complicated directing of nerve impulses that takes place in every co-ordinated act.

THE CEREBRAL HEMISPHERES

SECTION XVI

GENERAL STRUCTURAL ARRANGEMENTS OF THE CEREBRUM

THE cerebral hemispheres form the most important part of the brain. It is to the development of this part that is due the rise in type in vertebrates. In development they are formed as two diverticula from the front part of an outgrowth of the first cerebral vesicle. In the lowest vertebrates these outgrowths are connected entirely with the olfactory sense organs, and we may regard the olfactory part of the brain as a fundamental part on which has been built up all the rest of the cerebral hemispheres. In a cartilaginous fish the whole of the upper brain is connected with the organ of smell, and consists of a thickening in the floor of the outgrowth from the fore-brain.

FIG. 207. Section through cerebral cortex of the frog. (After EDINGER.)

The roof of the outgrowth is formed of simple epithelium. With the development of the visual sensations in the bony fishes there is still very little corresponding growth of the fore-brain, most of the fibres from the optic nerves going to the roof of the mid-brain (the optic lobes). The beginning of the cerebral hemispheres is associated with the development of nervous tissue in the roof of the prosencephalon. At its first appearance this higher brain material still receives chiefly olfactory impressions. But the structure of the cerebral cortex thus laid down differs from that of the centres forming the brain stem or the olfactory lobe itself in that it provides for a very rich association of impulses between all its parts. The fibres entering the cortex break up into a fine meshwork of fibres which run tangentially to the surface and come in contact with innumerable dendrites of nerve cells situated at some little distance below the surface (Fig. 207). We have here the first germ of an apparatus in which the nerve paths can be determined by education, *i.e.* in consequence of inhibitions by pain, rather than by the limits set by heredity. In the amphibian brain, and still more in the brain of the reptile, the cerebral

cortex extends over the whole of the roof of the cerebral hemispheres, though even here a very large proportion of it is devoted to the association of olfactory impulses. The importance of these olfactory association fibres is well shown in the figure (Fig. 208) of a diagrammatic section through a lizard's brain. Above the reptiles there is a divergence in the course of development. The wider reactive powers of birds are based chiefly on an enormous development of the corpus striatum, whereas in mammals the corpus striatum remains relatively small and the chief development occurs in the roof of the cerebral hemispheres, the so-called pallium or mantle. With the increased entry of fibres from the optic thalamus into the cerebral hemispheres, carrying impulses from the eyes, ears, and all the other sense organs of the body, the olfactory part of the brain diminishes in importance,

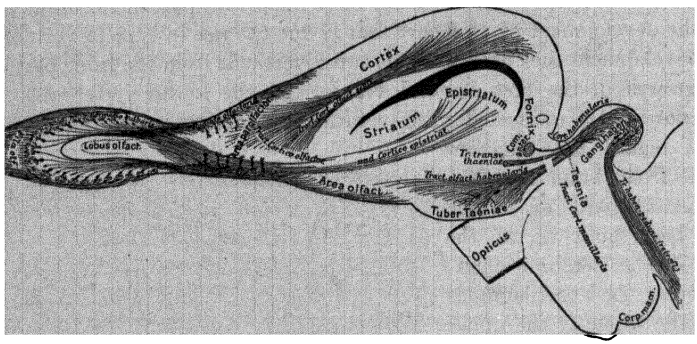


FIG. 208. Schematic section through brain of lizard showing the chief nerve tracts. (After EDINGER.)

and in the higher mammals and man is altogether overshadowed by the newly formed structures of the pallium. On this account those parts of the cerebral hemispheres in special connection with the olfactory sense organs are often spoken of as the *archipallium*, in distinction to all the rest of the more newly formed brain substance, known as the *neopallium*.

In man the cerebral hemispheres form a great ovoid mass exceeding in size all the rest of the brain put together. The two hemispheres are separated by a deep fissure, the great longitudinal fissure. Before and behind, this fissure extends to the base of the cerebrum, but in the middle the two hemispheres are connected by a mass of transverse fibres known as the corpus callosum. On the outer side each cerebral hemisphere presents a deep cleft, the Sylvian fissure. The whole surface of the brain is thrown by fissures (or sulci) into convolutions, by which means a very large increase of the surface grey matter is obtained. By these fissures the brain surface is divided into lobes. The general arrangement is shown in Figs 209 and 210. The chief lobes are the frontal, the parietal, the occipital, the temporal, the insular, the limbic, and the olfactory. On the inner side, from before backwards, we have the marginal, the paracentral, the pre-cuneus, the cuneus, and in close proximity to the corpus callosum, the cingulum or

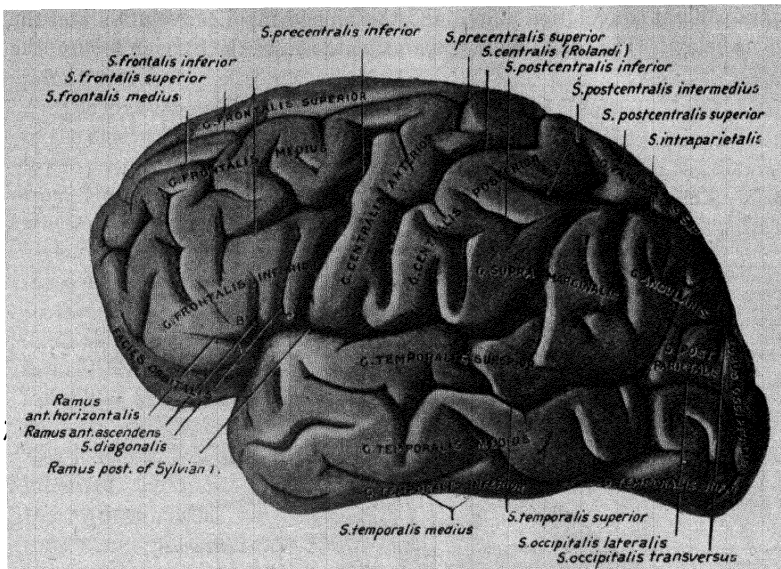


FIG. 209. Left cerebral hemisphere of man, lateral aspect. (SYMINGTON.)

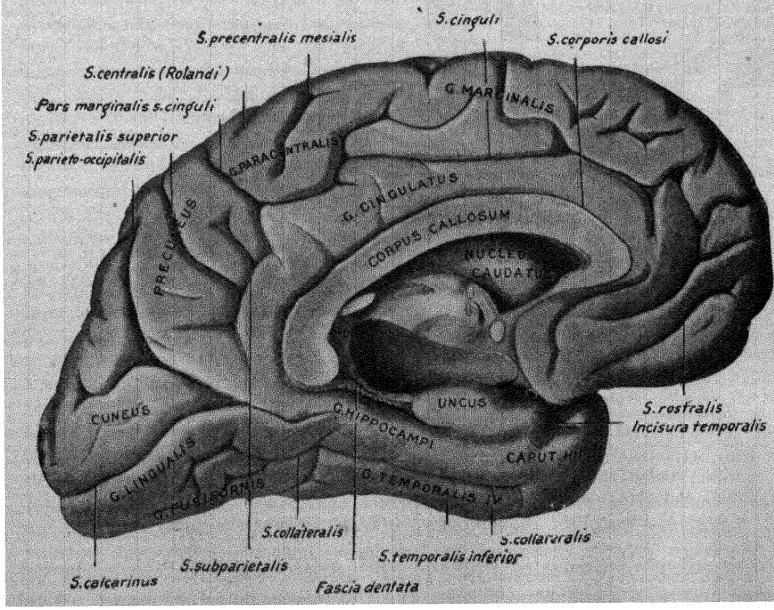


FIG. 210. Left cerebral hemisphere of man, from the mesial aspect. (SYMINGTON.)

supra-callosal convolution above, and the hippocampal convolution and the uncus below The chief fissures separating these are the Sylvian fissure, the

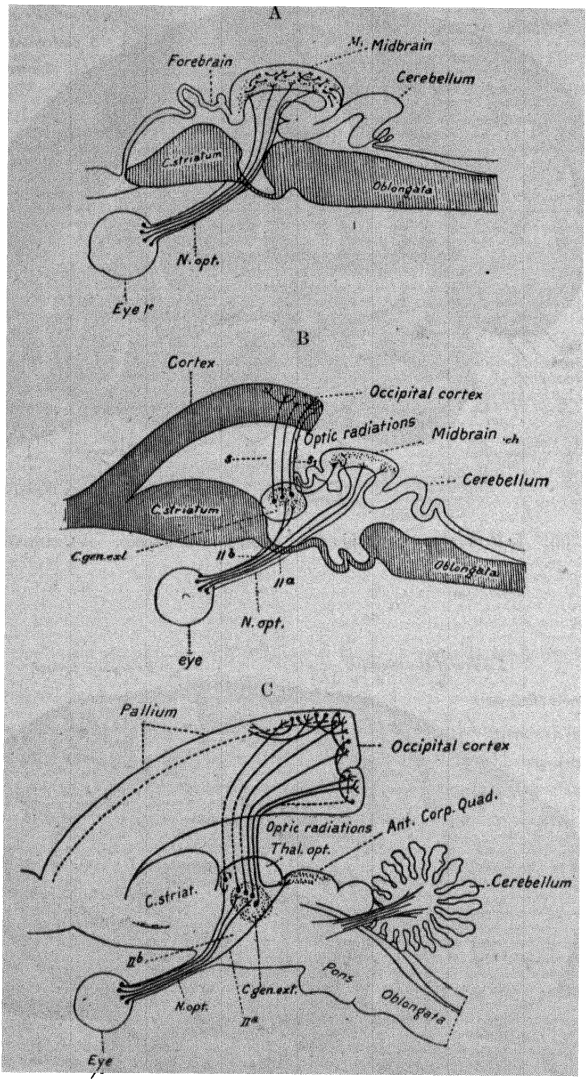


FIG 211 Diagrams from Monakow, showing the evolution of the neopallium, and the gradual shifting of the visual sensory tracts from the mid-brain to the fore-brain, and thence to the occipital cortex.

A, a bony fish. B, brain of a lizard. C, brain of a mammal (cat).

central sulcus or fissure of Rolando, the parieto-occipital fissure, the calcarine fissure, the collateral fissure, and the calloso-marginal fissure. Each of the main lobes (or gyri) mentioned above is further subdivided by smaller

fissures. The extent of these secondary fissures varies from brain to brain, the higher types of brain being richer in convolutions than those of the more primitive races.

The gradual evolution of the cerebral cortex, and the concomitant shifting of the chief afferent impulses, arising in the projicient sense organs, from the lower ganglia to the higher educatable cortex, is well shown in the diagrams from Moankow (Fig. 211, p. 418). In the lower fishes practically all the reactions to visual impressions are carried out by the optic lobes In the higher types the reflexes through these lobes become subordinated, first to the more complex organ of the optic thalamus (where representatives from all the afferent tracts of the body assemble), and later to the still more complex occipital cortex, when the reactions are determined not only by inherited nerve paths but also by the various blocks and facilitations imprinted on the nerve paths by the experience of the individual himself.

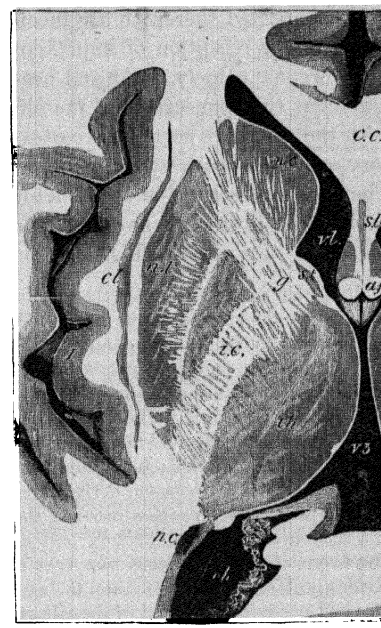


FIG. 212. Horizontal section through the optic thalamus and corpus striatum, the 'basal ganglia.' (Natural size.) (QUAIN.)

vl, lateral ventricle, its anterior cornu; *cc*, corpus callosum; *sl*, septum lucidum; *af*, anterior pillars of the fornix; *v3*, third ventricle; *th*, thalamus opticus; *st*, stria medullaris; *nc*, nucleus caudatus, and *nl*, nucleus lenticularis of the corpus striatum; *ic*, internal capsule; *q*, its angle or genu; *nc*, tail of the nucleus caudatus appearing in the descending cornu of the lateral ventricle; *cl*, claustrum; *I*, island of Reil.

The original cavities of the hemispheres form the lateral ventricles, each of which, in the adult brain, is prolonged into the main divisions of the hemispheres as the anterior horn, the posterior horn, and the inferior horn. Each lateral ventricle is roofed over by the corpus callosum and the adjoining white matter of the hemispheres. On opening the ventricle we see on its floor the body of the fornix, a flattened tract of white matter with longitudinal fibres, which in front bifurcates into two cylindrical bundles which pass vertically downwards in front of the foramen of Monro into the mesial part of the subthalamic tegmentum. Internal to the fornix is a layer of pia mater, including the choroid plexus. On removing this the third ventricle is opened, so that in this region the wall of the cerebral hemispheres, like the roof of the third ventricle, is limited to a simple layer of ependyma. At the margin of the choroid plexus can be seen a part of the superior surface of the optic thalamus, separated however from the cavity of the ventricle by a layer of ependyma. Outside and in front of the optic thalamus are the masses of nervous material constituting the corpus striatum. These present two nuclei of grey matter, known as the nucleus caudatus and the nucleus lenticularis (Fig. 212). The crusta of the crura cerebri as it ascends to the cerebral hemispheres passes behind between the optic thalamus and the corpus striatum, and in front between the nucleus lenticu-

laris and nucleus caudatus of the corpus striatum. Outside the corpus striatum we find another mass of white fibres, known as the external capsule, and this is separated from the white matter of the cortex cerebri by a thin layer of grey matter known as the claustrum. In a horizontal section through the brain, the part of the internal capsule which pierces the corpus striatum forms an angle with the posterior part separating the optic thalamus from the lenticular nucleus. The part where the two limbs come in contact is known as the *genu* of the internal capsule (Fig. 212).

THE OLFACTORY APPARATUS OF THE BRAIN

In man the olfactory sense is but feebly developed, and the parts of the brain connected therewith are inconspicuous in comparison with those engaged in the reception of impressions from the other two main projicient sense organs, namely, sight and hearing. On this account it is not easy to make out the connections of the olfactory lobe proper, the *rhinencephalon*, with the primitive part of the cortex, the *archipallium*, subserving the olfactory sense and probably the allied sensations derived from the mouth cavity. The wide connections of the olfactory sense organs with the different parts of the brain in the lower vertebrate are shown in the diagrammatic figure of the brain of a reptile (Fig. 208, p. 416).

It is interesting to note that the olfactory nerve fibres are derived from cells situated actually on the surface of the body. These are bilateral, spindle-shaped cells, lying in the olfactory mucous membrane at the upper part of the nasal cavity. The peripheral process is short and passes towards the surface, while the deep process passes as a non-medullated nerve fibre through the cribriform plate of the ethmoid to sink into the olfactory bulb. The bulb, in man, is a greyish enlargement at the anterior end of the olfactory tract. In sections stained by Golgi's method of impregnation it may be seen that the olfactory fibres terminate in an arborisation in close connection with a thick end arborisation derived from a dendrite of a large nerve cell, known as a mitral cell. The synapses between these two sets of fibres are prominent objects in a section through the olfactory bulb and form the 'olfactory glomeruli' (Fig. 213). The axons of the mitral cells pass back in the olfactory tracts. Each olfactory tract divides posteriorly into two roots, the mesial root which curves inwards behind Broca's area and passes into the end of the callosal gyrus, and the lateral root which runs backwards and over the outer part of the anterior perforated spot. Its fibres pass into the uncinate extremity of the hippocampal gyrus. The small triangular field of grey matter between the diverging roots of the olfactory tract is known as the olfactory tubercle. The primitive rhinencephalon includes in the adult human brain the olfactory bulb and tract, together with the anterior perforated space, the anterior part of the uncinate gyrus, the subcallosal gyrus, the septum lucidum, and the hippocampal convolution. The two sides of the rhinencephalon are united by fibres passing through the anterior commissure. Other tracts subserving this apparatus include the habenula passing from the fornix to the ganglion of the habenula, the fasciculus retroflexus passing from this to the interpeduncular ganglion, and the corpus mammillare which is connected with the column of the fornix on the one hand and through the bundle of Vicq d'Azyr with the thalamus on the other.

THE CHIEF TRACTS OF THE CEREBRAL HEMISPHERES

We may divide the tracts of the upper brain or cerebral hemispheres into three classes:

I. Tracts connecting the brain with lower levels of the central nervous system.

II. Tracts connecting different parts of the cortex of one hemisphere and serving as a means of association between these different parts.

III. Tracts (commissural) connecting the two cerebral hemispheres together.

I. THE PROJECTION FIBRES

These are the fibres which connect the cerebral cortex with the different lower levels of the central nervous system. They form a great part of the

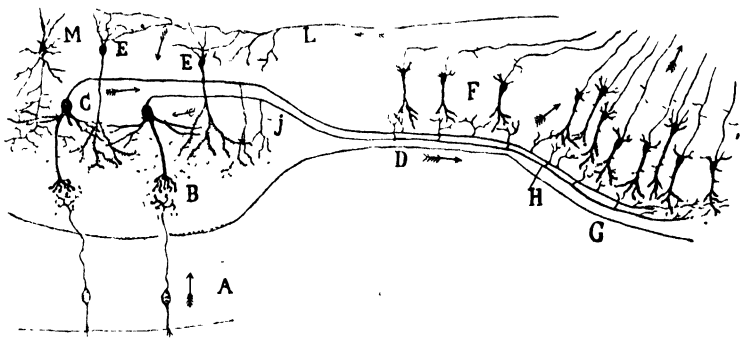


FIG. 213. Schema of course of olfactory impulses. (RAMÓN Y CAJAL.)
A, olfactory mucous membrane; B, olfactory glomeruli; C, mitral cells; E, granule cells; D, olfactory tract; L, centrifugal fibres.

fibres of the corona radiata and are condensed at the base of the brain into the broad band of fibres known as the internal capsule. A few of the fibres of the projection system may gain the cortex through the lenticular nucleus and by the external capsule. The projection fibres may be divided into two groups according as they conduct impulses to or away from the cerebral cortex: the afferent or corticipetal, and the efferent or corticifugal.

A. AFFERENT TRACTS OF THE CEREBRUM.

(1) THE THALAMO-CORTICAL. From all parts of the optic thalamus fibres arise as axons of the cells of its grey matter and, streaming out from its outer and under surfaces, pass to every part of the cortex. Although there is no division of them into distinct groups as they leave the thalamus, they are often described as constituting a frontal, a parietal, an occipital, and a ventral stalk. The front fibres pass through the anterior limb of the internal capsule to reach the cortex of the frontal lobe, many of the fibres however terminating in the caudate and lenticular nuclei. The parietal fibres issuing from the lateral surface of the thalamus pass through the internal capsule to be distributed chiefly to the parietal lobe. The occipital fibres issue from the outer part of the pulvinar and the external geniculate body and constitute the so-called 'optic radiation,' passing outwards and backwards to be distributed to the cortex of the occipital lobe. The ventral fibres pass downwards and outwards below the lenticular nucleus and end partly in the

latter nucleus and partly in the cortex of the temporal lobe and of the insula or island of Reil.

(2) THE FILLET SYSTEM OF FIBRES. This great mass of ascending fibres has been already described (*cp.* Fig. 197) as gathering up the impulses from the different sensory nerves of the cerebro-spinal system and terminating in the thalamus and subthalamic region.

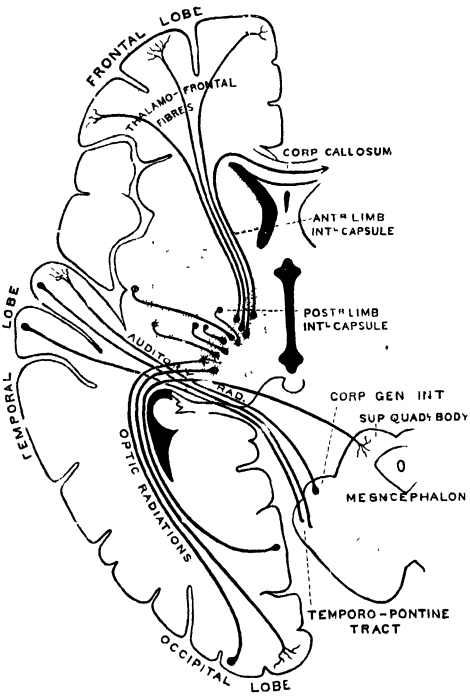


FIG. 214. Schema of projection fibres of cortex. (CUNNINGHAM.)

(3) THE SUPERIOR CEREBELLAR PEDUNCLE. These fibres, from the central ganglia of the cerebellum, terminate for the most part in the thalamus and subthalamic region. It is possible that some of them may pass through the hinder end of the internal capsule, without interruption in the thalamus, to end in the Rolandic area.

(4) THE OPTIC RADIATION. These diverging fibres in the back part of the corona-radiata are mixed up with fibres which are partly corticifugal. The corticipetal fibres arise in the pulvinar and the external geniculate body and end in the occipital cortex.

(5) THE AUDITORY RADIATION. These fibres consist of the axons of cells situated in the internal geniculate body. They pass through the posterior limb of the internal capsule under the lenticular nucleus to end in the temporal lobe.

B. THE EFFERENT PROJECTION FIBRES.

(1) THE PYRAMIDAL TRACT. This is composed of fibres which arise from the large Betz cells in the ascending frontal convolution, the 'motor area.' They pass through the corona radiata into the internal capsule, where they occupy the genu and the anterior two-thirds of the posterior limb. Hence they pass into the crusta, where they occupy the middle two-fifths of this structure, and are continued as the pyramids of the pons and medulla to the upper part of the spinal cord, where most of them decussate to the other side to form the crossed pyramidal tracts. Some of the fibres do not cross

at the pyramidal decussation, but are continued down in the same position in the anterior columns of the spinal cord of the same side, forming the direct or anterior pyramidal tracts. These fibres cross for the most part lower down in the cord, so that the direct pyramidal tract is not seen below the cervical region. The pyramidal tracts are not found in lower vertebrates, and make their first appearance in the mammalia. Their development corresponds with the gradual increase in the direct interference of the cerebral cortex in the reactions of the organism as a whole and is an index to the gradual shifting of these reactions from the inevitable to the educated reflex. The fibres of the pyramidal tract end at various levels of the spinal cord and can be traced to the lower end of the sacral region. According to Schafer they end in the posterior cornua, so that their action is to set going a reaction which could otherwise be elicited by stimulation of the afferent fibres entering by the posterior root at the level of the cord where they end.

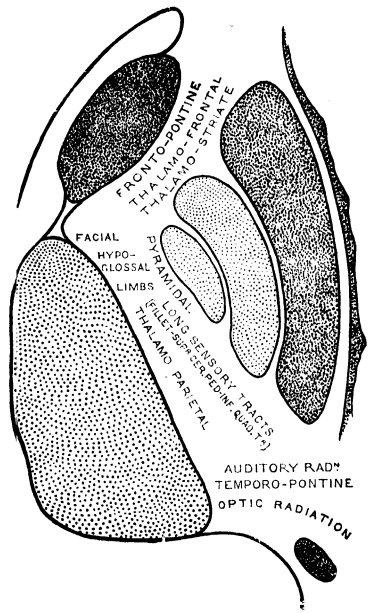


FIG. 215. Diagrammatic representation of the internal capsule, as seen in horizontal section. (CUNNINGHAM.)

(2) THE FRONTO-PONTINE FIBRES. These arise from cells in the cortex of the frontal lobe, and pass down in the anterior limb of the internal capsule to gain the mesial part of the crusta of the crus cerebri. The fibres end in the grey matter of the formatio reticularis of the pons, the nucleus pontis.

(3) THE TEMPORO-PONTINE FIBRES. These arise from the two upper temporal convolutions, especially from that area which is associated with hearing. They pass inwards under the lenticular nucleus through the hinder limb of the internal capsule to gain the outer part of the crusta. In this situation this tract passes down into the pons, where it ends in the nucleus pontis.

As part of these projection fibres we ought probably to reckon the fibres which take origin or end in the corpus striatum. The afferent fibres of this body are derived chiefly from the thalamus, forming the thalamo-striate fibres. Other fibres arise in the nuclei of the corpus striatum and pass down in the dorsal portion of the crusta to end for the most part in the pons, the strio-pontine fibres.

The relative position of these various fibres in the internal capsule and in the crusta is shown in the accompanying diagrams (Figs. 215 and 216).

The fronto-pontine and temporo-pontine fibres, which end in the nucleus

pontis, come there in relationship with the fibres forming the middle peduncles of the cerebellum and derived chiefly from the lateral lobes of the cerebellum. These fibres may therefore be regarded as the efferent side of the great cerebro-cerebellar connections of which the afferent side is represented by the fibres—efferent so far as concerns the cerebellum—which pass from the cerebellar cortex to the dentate nucleus and thence by a fresh relay in the superior cerebellar peduncles to the red nucleus, optic thalamus, and cortex of the opposite side. The development of these fibres, as of the lateral lobes of the cerebellum, is largely proportional to the growth of the cerebral hemispheres. In cases where there has been congenital atrophy of one cerebral hemisphere, the crusta of the same side and the lateral lobe of the cerebellum of the opposite side also fail to develop.

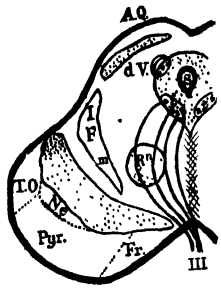


FIG. 216. Transverse section through mid-brain to show position of fillet and pyramid.

AQ, anterior corpus quadrigeminum; dV, descending root of fifth nerve; F, fillet (I, lateral, and m, mesial fillet); Pyr, pyramid; Fr. fibres from frontal lobe to pons; TO, fibres from temporal and occipital lobes to pons; Ne, fibres from nucleus caudatus to pons; III, root of third nerve; S, Sylvian iter; Rn, red nucleus.

II. ASSOCIATION FIBRES

These fibres serve to unite different portions of the cortex of the same hemisphere and may be classified into short and long association fibres. The short association fibres pass round the bottom of the sulci in U-shaped loops connecting adjacent convolutions. These fibres are some of the latest to acquire a medullary sheath and probably first become functional

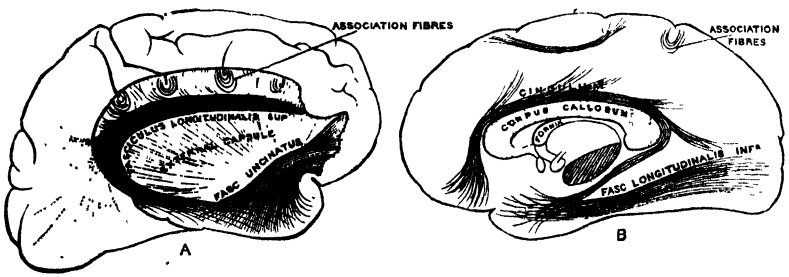


FIG. 217. Chief association bundles of the cerebral hemispheres. (CUNNINGHAM.)
A. Outer aspect of hemisphere. B. Inner aspect of hemisphere.

as associated activity between the various portions of the cortex is gradually acquired by education.

The long association fibres may be divided into five groups as follows:

(*a*) The *uncinate fasciculus* passes from the orbital convolutions of the frontal lobe to the front part of the temporal lobe round the stem of the Sylvian fissure (Fig. 217).

(*b*) The *cingulum* is closely associated with those parts of the cerebral cortex known together as the limbic lobe. In front it originates in the neighbourhood of the anterior perforated space, passes round the genu of the corpus callosum, and then is carried backwards over the upper surface of this body to its hinder end, where it turns round and is distributed to the hippocampal gyrus and to the temporal lobe.

(*c*) The *longitudinal superior fasciculus* lies in the base of the frontal and parietal lobes, and passing from before backwards connects the frontal occipital, and temporal parts of the cerebral cortex.

(*d*) The *longitudinal inferior fasciculus* runs along the whole length of the occipital and temporal lobes, being situated behind on the outer aspect of the optic radiation.

(*e*) The *occipito-frontal fasciculus* lies on the inner aspect of the corona radiata in intimate relation to the caudate nucleus, and projects out over the upper and outer aspect of the lateral ventricle immediately outside the ependyma.

III. THE COMMISSURAL FIBRES

These are arranged in three groups :

(*a*) The corpus callosum forms a great mass of white fibres passing transversely in both directions between the two hemispheres. Its fibres are

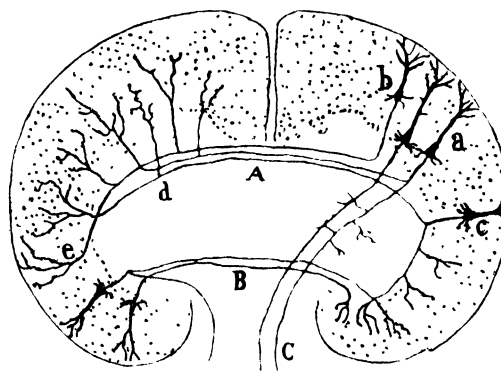


FIG. 218. Schematic section through cerebral hemispheres, to show chief classes of nerve tracts. (After RAMÓN Y CAJAL.)

A, corpus callosum ; B, anterior commissure ; C, pyramidal tract ; *a*, cell giving off projection fibre ; *b*, cell giving off commissural fibre ; *c*, cell with axon forming association fibres.

derived from every part of the cerebral cortex with the exception of the olfactory bulb and the hind and fore parts of the temporal lobe. As the fibres cross the middle line they become gradually scattered, so that they tend to connect wholly dissimilar parts of the cortex of opposite hemispheres. Each callosal fibre arises in one hemisphere and ends by fine arborisations in the opposite hemisphere. It may represent either the axon of one of the cortical cells or a collateral from a fibre of association or a collateral from a projection fibre (Fig. 218).

(*b*) The anterior commissure is situated in the anterior wall of the third ventricle in front of the two pillars of the fornix. It connects together the two olfactory lobes and portions of the opposite temporal lobes. In lower vertebrates it is almost entirely olfactory in function, but in man the olfactory

fibres form only a small proportion of the total number making up the bundle.

(*c*) The psalterium or hippocampal commissure is a thin lamina formed of transverse fibres filling up the small triangular space on the under surface of the hinder part of the corpus callosum formed by the divergence of the posterior pillars of the fornix. Like the anterior commissure, the hippocampal commissure is closely associated with the sense of smell. Its fibres arise from the pyramidal cells in the cornu ammonis or hippocampus and pass for the greater part to the cornu ammonis of the opposite side.

MINUTE STRUCTURE OF THE CEREBRAL CORTEX

The cortex of the cerebral hemispheres consists of a layer of grey matter covering a central mass of white fibres. With the growth in size of the brain, which accompanies the development of increased intelligence and powers of adaptation, the necessary increase in cortex is rendered possible by the folding of the surface into convolutions and fissures. The chief of these convolutions have already been indicated in the sketch of the anatomy of the brain (Fig. 209).

On section the grey matter is seen to consist of many layers of nerve cells embedded in neuroglia and nerve fibres, both medullated and non-medullated. The nerve cells vary in size and shape; one kind of cell is however typical of this part of the central nervous system. This is the *pyramidal* cell (Fig. 219), a cone-shaped or pear-shaped cell with one large apical dendrite which runs towards the surface and breaks up in the most superficial layer into a number of branches. Dendrites are also given off from the sides and lower angles of the cell. The axon, which arises from the axon hillock in the middle of the base of the cell, passes downwards into the white matter, giving off collaterals in its course. Some of these axons pass by the corona radiata into the internal capsule and into the crura cerebri, including those which form the pyramidal tracts; others, or their collaterals, may pass into the adjacent regions of the cortex, or across by the corpus callosum into the opposite hemisphere.

Although varying in structure at different parts, it is generally possible to distinguish four or five layers in the cortex.

(1) The most superficial layer, known as the outer fibre lamina, or *molecular* layer, contains very few cells. It is composed generally of the dendrites of cells from the deeper layers. It contains a few cells which are spindle-shaped and are provided with several processes running parallel to the surface. These are sometimes called *association cells*. It is probable that afferent fibres, entering the cortex, pass up towards the surface and end for a large part in this molecular layer.

(2) Below this is a layer of pyramidal cells, the *outer cell lamina*, which is divided by some observers, *e.g.* Campbell, into three, viz.:

(*a*) The small pyramidal cells.

(*b*) Medium-sized pyramidal cells.

(*c*) Internal layer of large pyramidal cells.

(3) Below the pyramidal layer we find a stratum of small cells, most of which are stellate in form. This is known as the stellate or granule layer, or *middle cell lamina.*

(4) Internal to the granule layer is the *inner fibre lamina.* In the motor cortex and in certain other parts of the brain this contains large solitary cells, which in the motor area receive the name of the *cells of Betz.*

(5) Most internal of all, lying next to the white matter, is the *poly-*

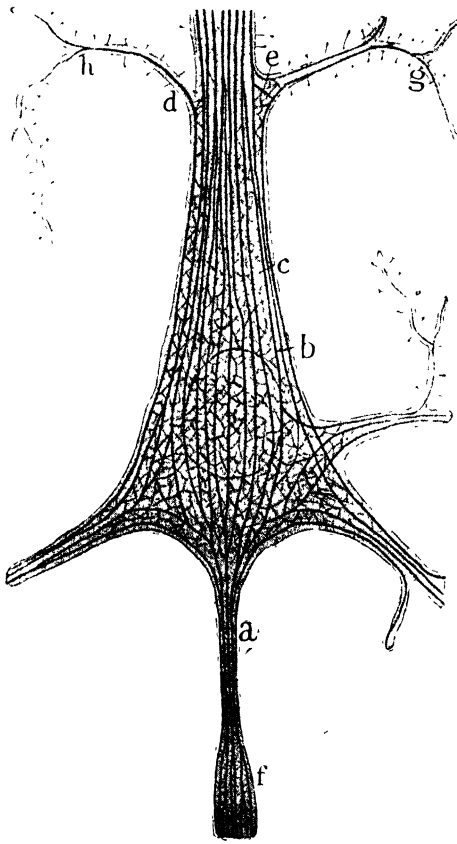


FIG. 219. Schematic representation of the neuro-fibrillar apparatus of a cortical pyramidal cell. (After CAJAL.)

a, axon; *dh*, dendrites.

morphous layer or *inner cell lamina*, composed of many types of cells, among which spindle-shaped cells predominate. Other cells are also found resembling pyramidal cells of the more superficial layer, but directed in the reverse direction, so that their axons take a course towards the surface. These are the *cells of Martinotti.* We also find Golgi cells with a freely branching axon, which terminates in the adjacent grey matter.

If sections of the cortex be stained by some method such as Weigert's, which displays medullated nerve fibres, sheaves of radial fibres may be seen running from the white centre towards the surface and giving off a rich

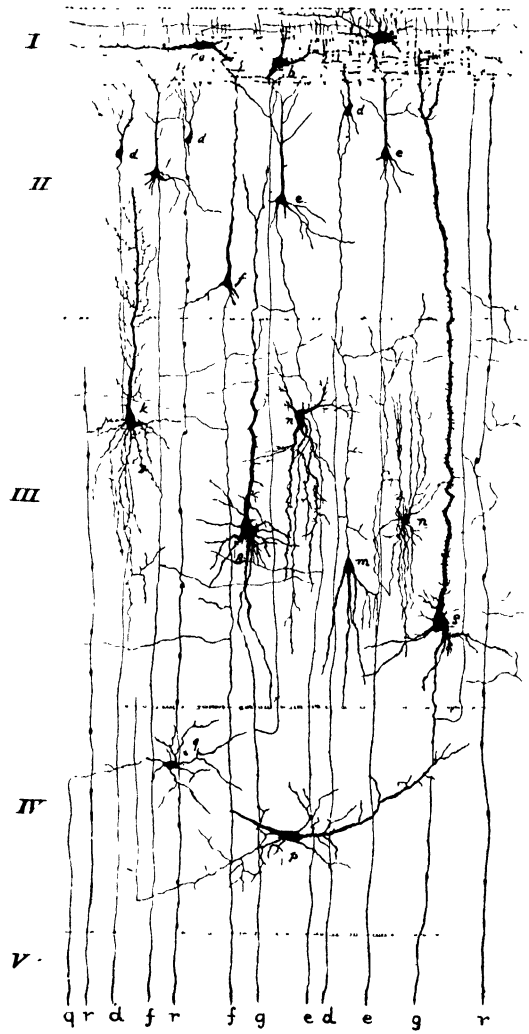


FIG. 220. Diagrammatic section of cerebral cortex. (From BARKER after STARR, STRONG, and LEAMING.)

I, molecular layer with *a*, bipolar cell; II, layer of small pyramidal cells; III, layer of large pyramidal cells; IV, polymorphous layer; V, white matter.

meshwork of fibres to the intervening portions of the grey matter. In addition, bands of tangential fibres are seen running parallel to the surface in certain situations, viz.:

(*a*) A layer of very fine fibres just under the surface of the cortex. This layer is especially marked in the hippocampal convolution and is but slightly developed in other regions of the cortex.

(*b*) A layer between the molecular layer and the layer of pyramidal cells, known as the *outer line of Baillarger*.

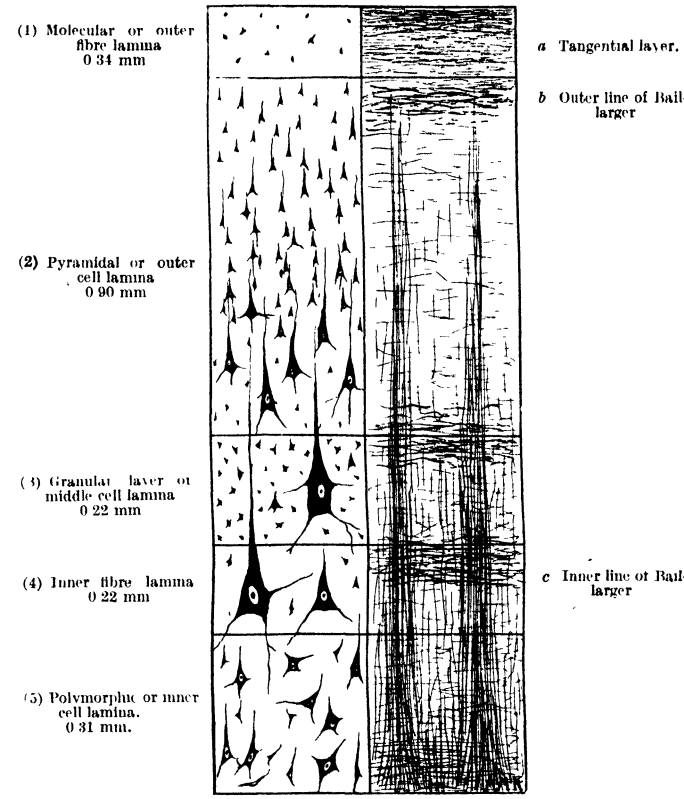


FIG. 221. Motor leg area.

(*c*) Internal to the granule layer is another zone of fibres, the *inner line of Baillarger*, giving its name to the inner fibre lamina.

(*d*) In the part of the occipital cortex, distinguished as the visuo-sensory area, which receives fibres of the optic radiations, a special layer of tangential fibres is observed running through the middle of the granular layer and dividing it into two parts. This is known as the *line of Gennari* (Fig. 222).

A careful study of the histology of the different parts of the cortex in man enables us to distinguish certain types of structure characteristic of various regions of the grey matter. In attempting by such means an histological localisation of functions we have to take into account;

(*a*) The thickness of the cortex.

(*b*) The relative thickness of the various layers.

(*c*) The character of the cells found in the various layers.

(*d*) The arrangement and degree of development of the systems of medullated fibres, both radial and transverse.

The possibilities in such a method are at once apparent if, as in Figs. 221, 222 and 223, we compare the structure of the cortex from, *e.g.* the pre-central

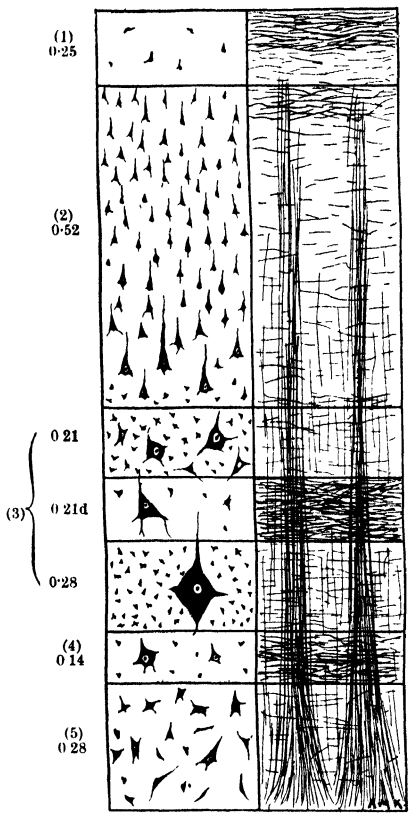


FIG. 222. Visuo-sensory.

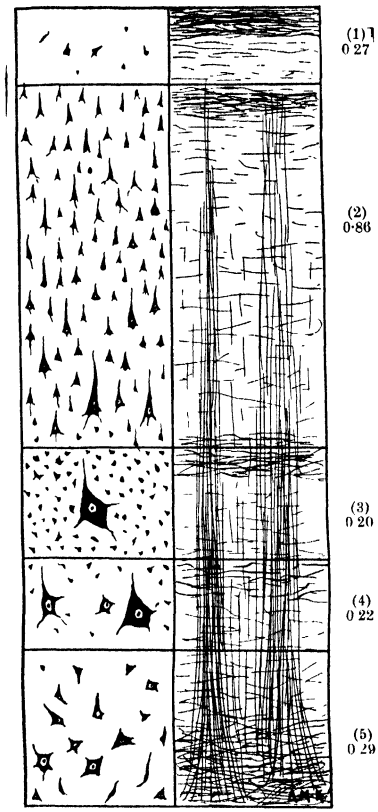


FIG. 223. Visuo-psychic.

motor convolution, the visuo-sensory area of the occipital convolution, and the ' visuo-psychic ' area. The finer differences are not so readily perceptible without careful study and measurement of the various layers and the elements constituting them. By this method we can mark out the cortex into areas, which agree closely with the localisation of functions as arrived at by experimental methods or by a study of the systems of fibres in the brain or of the functional defects observed under pathological conditions.

The localisation arrived at in this way is represented in the diagrams taken from Campbell (Fig. 224). Thus in the motor area, the precentral

or ascending frontal convolution, we find below the granular layer the well-marked pyramidal cells or Betz cells, which are larger than any other element in the cerebrum. The layer of pyramidal cells is also very thick, while

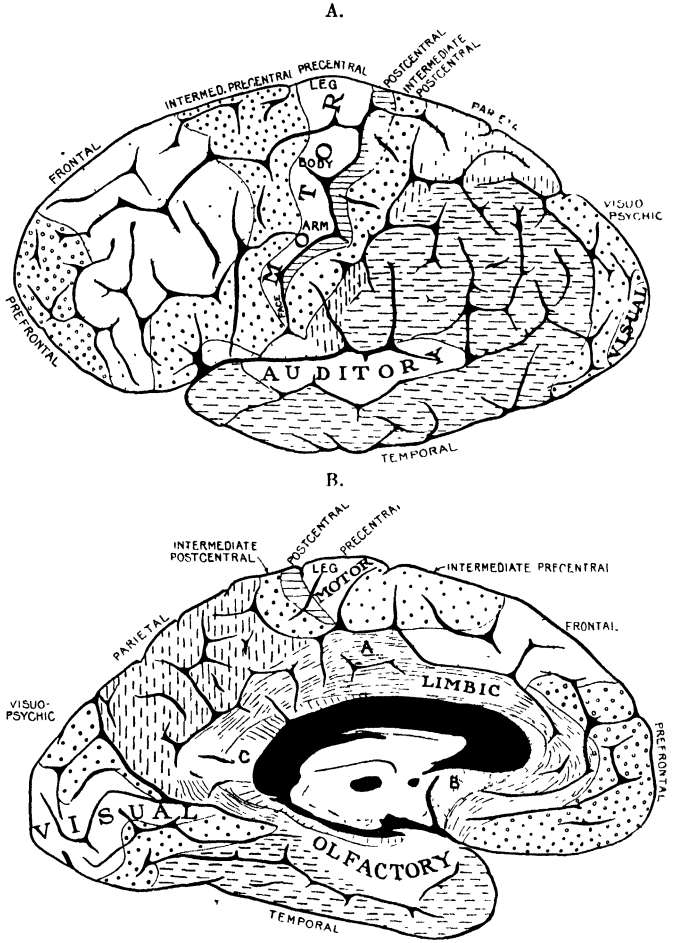


FIG. 224. Human brain showing outer (A) and mesial (B) surfaces, and the situation of the chief motor and sensory areas. The different shading represents the extent of each of these areas as determined by a study of the histological structure of the cortex. (CAMPBELL.)

the granular layer is but slightly developed. In this area the actual average thickness of the different layers is as follows:

Molecular or outer fibre lamina	0·34 mm.
Pyramidal or outer cell lamina	0·90 mm.
Granular or middle cell lamina	0·22 mm.
Betz or inner fibre lamina	0·22 mm.
Polymorphous layer or inner cell lamina	0·31 mm.

In the visuo-sensory area the granular layer is the thickest, and is divided into two layers by the band of tangential fibres forming the line of Gennari. In the association areas (both those, such as the intermediate precentral and visuo-psychic, which are normally associated with motor or sensory processes, as well as the higher association centres of Flechsig, *i.e.* the frontal, parietal and temporal lobes), the most marked feature in the section is the great development of and the large number of cells observed in the outer cell lamina or pyramidal cell layer. It will be noticed too that the audito-sensory area is but small in extent and lies almost entirely within the lips of the fissure of Sylvius, while the greater part of the superior temporal convolution, which on the left side is associated with the auditory images and associations necessary for the comprehension of speech, partakes of the character of an intermediate or psychic sensory area.

The same method may be applied to a comparison of the relative development of the cerebral functions in different types of animals. A comparison of the brain of the dog, ape, and man shows that, while the absolute amount of brain substance devoted to the elementary functions of movement and sensation remains practically the same throughout, in man these areas are, *relatively* to the whole brain, very much diminished in size, the greater part of the brain surface being taken up with the nervous material of the type which is connected with the functions of association involved in the higher processes of reflection, intelligence, and volition.

If we draw still lower animals into the sphere of our observations, we are enabled to form some idea as to the relative significance of the various elements of the cortex. Thus in an animal, such as the rabbit, the polymorphous layer is three times the thickness of the pyramidal layer; whereas in man, with an infinitely greater range of reaction, it is only one-third of the thickness of this layer. If we may roughly assign a function to each of the types of cells found in the cortex, we may say that the pyramidal cell layer is generally associative in functions. The large pyramidal cells of Betz are motor; the granular layer is sensory, while the polymorphous layer presides over the lowest cortical functions, such as those concerned in the getting of food, the sexual instincts, and so on.

The description given above applies to the whole of the neopallium. In the more primitive part of the brain, the archipallium, represented by the hippocampus, we find only two cell laminæ which are homologous with the middle (granule) and the inner polymorphous cell layers of the neopallium.

SECTION XVII

THE FUNCTIONS OF THE CEREBRAL HEMISPHERES

In an animal possessing cerebral hemispheres it is impossible to foretell with certainty what particular reaction may be evoked by any stimulus. The animal which has been deprived of its hemispheres can, as we have seen, be played on at will, whereas the intact animal is an individual whose actions—to judge by our own experience—are guided by intelligence, and influenced by motives or by feelings of fear, hunger, pain, and the like. In short, its behaviour is analogous to that which in man we associate with conscious feeling and volition. This association of the volitional manifestations with the cerebral hemispheres has long been assumed, and is borne out by the exact parallelism existing between the degree of intelligence with which an animal is endowed and the extent of development of its cerebral hemispheres. Moreover in man himself there is a proportionality between the average size of the brain, *i.e.* of the cerebral hemispheres, and the average intelligence of the race.

Earlier attempts to analyse the factors entering into the sphere of consciousness and to associate with these factors localised parts of the brain failed, largely on account of a faulty psychological analysis and the absence of any proper experimental groundwork for the conclusions put forward. Gall, the founder of phrenology, recognised more clearly than previous authors that the cerebral hemispheres must be regarded as the material basis of consciousness. Impressed however by the fact that there was no proportionality between the acuteness of the senses and the degree of development of the cerebral hemispheres, he considered that any division of functions among different parts of the hemispheres must relate to highly complex psychical conditions, and therefore on very slender grounds he allotted to parts of the brain functions such as those of intelligence, memory, judgment, amativeness, and so on. These conclusions of Gall were overthrown by Flourens on both theoretical and experimental grounds. In the first place, Flourens pointed out that the mental faculty of man cannot be divided up into a number of different independent qualities or faculties, such as those proposed by Gall. In the second place, he showed that in the pigeon, although loss of the whole cerebral hemispheres destroyed intelligence and associative memory with the actions founded on such endowments, removal of portions of the brain caused simply a lowering of these functions, and it

was a matter of indifference whether the brain substance was taken from the anterior or from the posterior portions of the hemispheres. Flourens therefore concluded that the cerebral hemispheres acted as a whole as the seat of the will and intelligence. There is no doubt that Flourens was so far perfectly correct, since all parts of the brain must co-operate in determining the psychical condition of any individual in any given moment. He was however, as later researches showed, in error in thinking that no difference could be distinguished between the parts contributed by the various convolutions of the brain to the organic whole which is called consciousness.

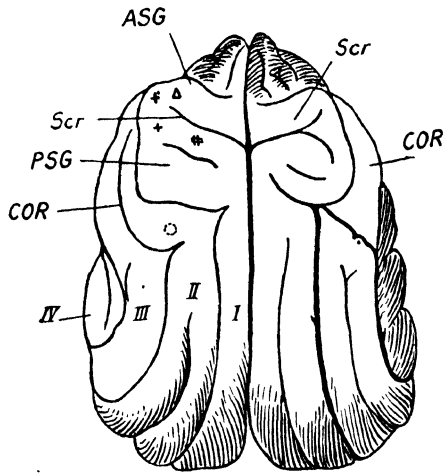


FIG. 225. Upper surface of dog's brain, showing results of excitation. (FRITSCH and HITZIG.) Δ, neck muscles; +, movements of fore limb; ⁂, movements of hind limb; O, movements of face; *ASG*, anterior sigmoid gyrus; *PSG*, posterior sigmoid gyrus; *COR*, coronary fissures; *Scr*, crucial sulcus.

As we have seen, histological evidence, which in the case of the cerebellum displays a marked uniformity throughout the whole cortex, in the case of the cerebrum reveals striking differences between its various areas. The demarcation of the cerebral cortex into areas according to the histological structure of their grey matter agrees with, and in many cases supplements, the results procured by an experimental inquiry into the functions of the different parts.

That there is a localisation of function in the cortex so far as concerns the movements of the two sides of the body was known to Galen, who mentions the occurrence of paralysis on one side of the body as a result of lesions in the brain of the opposite side. In 1861 a French physician Broca, confirming older statements by Dax and Bouillaud, maintained that aphasia, *i.e.* loss of power of speech, when it occurred in right-handed people was always associated with a lesion of the third frontal convolution of the left hemisphere, which has ever since that time been known as Broca's convolution. Hughlings Jackson in 1864 drew attention to the connection of localised spasms (Jacksonian epilepsy) with lesions of certain parts of the central convolutions. On anatomical grounds Meynert considered that the posterior portions of the hemispheres were probably more nearly connected with sensation, and the anterior with the power of movement; but direct evidence of motor localisation was first brought by Fritsch and Nitzig in 1870. These observers pointed out, in contradiction of the then received idea, that the grey matter of the cortex was excitable, and that it was possible to evoke co-ordinated movements of the limbs on stimulating the

front part of the hemispheres in dogs with weak currents. The results of their experiments are shown in Fig. 225. These experiments were soon after repeated and confirmed by Ferrier, who extended his observations to the monkey, and more lately by Horsley, Schäfer, Beevor, Sherrington, and others in the higher apes and man. It was formerly a subject of dispute whether the movements resulting from stimulation of the cortex were due to the excitation of the grey matter or of the underlying white matter. The following facts show that the seat of the excitation is in the grey matter:

(1) A smaller strength of current is required to excite the grey matter than the underlying white matter, after removal of the grey matter.

(2) In animals poisoned by chloral the grey matter is inexcitable, though movements can still be aroused on stimulating the white matter. A similar inexcitability of the grey matter can be produced by painting it with cocaine.

(3) The latent period elapsing between the beginning of the stimulation and the occurrence of the movement in the corresponding limb is longer when the grey matter is excited than when the stimulus is applied to the white matter. The results obtained by François Franck give a latent period of ·065 sec. for the grey matter and ·045 sec. for the white matter (Fig. 226).

Whether the stimulus acts directly on the pyramidal cells of the cortex, or whether, as seems more likely, it is the endings of the afferent nerves to the cortex which are really excited by the stimulus, we cannot at present determine.

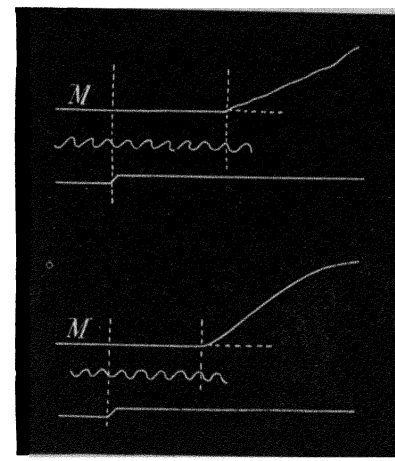


FIG. 226. Tracings to show latent periods of movements obtained by stimulating: A, grey matter; B, underlying white matter of cortex. Time-marking = $\frac{1}{100}$ sec. (F. FRANCK.)

When we compare different animals, such as the dog, monkey, and man, we find there is a much finer differentiation of movements evoked by stimulation of the cortex in the higher than in the lower type. Whereas in the dog the excitable areas shade into one another, in the higher ape and man the areas are much more circumscribed and are often separated from adjoining areas by an inexcitable zone. The localisation of motor functions in the cortex of the chimpanzee is indicated in the accompanying diagrams by Sherrington (Figs. 227, 228). It will be seen that the motor cortex is limited, on the convex side of the brain, to the precentral convolution, or ascending frontal convolution, situated immediately in front of the fissure of Rolando. On the inner aspect of the hemispheres only the corresponding part of this convolution gives motor responses on excitation. We may say broadly that,

from above downwards, by stimulation of the precentral convolution we get movements of the leg, arm, and face; though, as is shown in the diagram, within these larger areas smaller areas can be distinguished for definite co-ordinated movements of the different parts of the body.

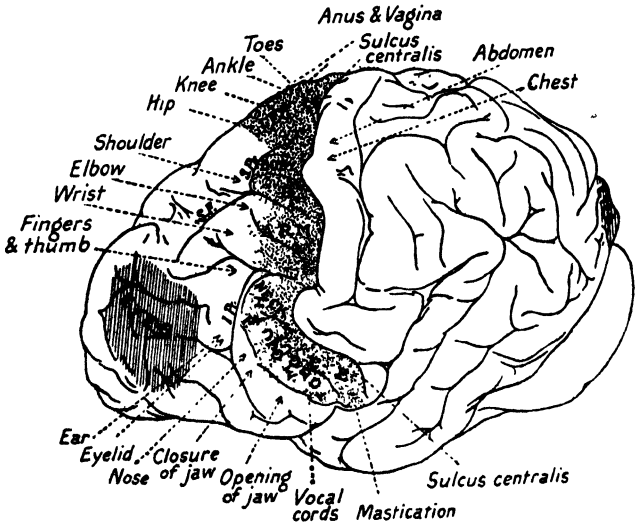


FIG. 228.

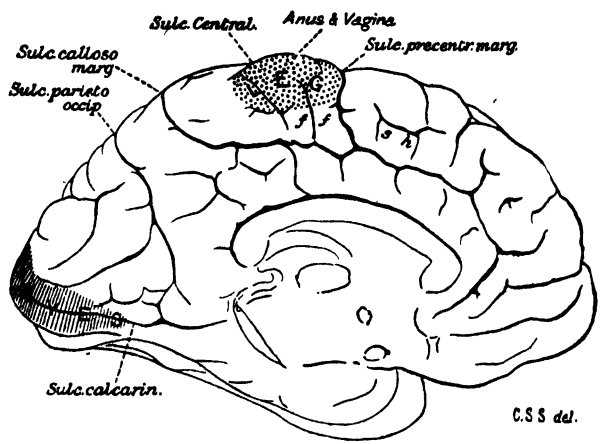


FIG. 227, outer surface; FIG. 228, inner surface of brain of chimpanzee, showing movements obtained by excitation of the motor areas. (SHERRINGTON.)

NATURE OF MOVEMENTS EXCITED. The movements obtained by excitation of these areas resemble in every respect the co-ordinated movements observed during the normal willed or spontaneous activity of the animal. Like the movements evoked by stimulation of a sensory surface

they involve the reciprocal innervation of antagonistic muscles. Never do we find simultaneous contractions of antagonists, even where two opposing centres are excited simultaneously; one reaction is prepotent, as is the case with cutaneous excitation, and this reaction is attended and brought about by ordered contraction of certain muscles accompanied by an ordered relaxation of their antagonists. Thus the movement of opening the jaw, which can be excited from a fairly large area of the cortex, involves a relaxation of the normal tone of the masseter muscle. Flexion of the leg demands relaxation of the extensor muscles. As in the case of the spinal reflexes, this relaxation or inhibition can be abolished under the action of strychnine or the toxin of tetanus. After administration of either of these it is impossible to evoke inhibition of any muscle. Excitation of the cortical centre for the movements of the jaw causes contraction of both closers and openers of the jaw, *i.e.* a strife in which the stronger masseter muscles predominate, so that the jaw is firmly closed.

The part played by muscular relaxation in the response to cortical stimulation is also well seen in the case of the eye muscles. Stimulation of the centre for eye movements on the convex surface of the frontal lobes on the right side causes 'conjugate deviation' of both eyes to the left. This movement involves contraction of the right internal rectus and left external rectus and a simultaneous inhibition of the tone of the right external rectus and left internal rectus. If all the muscles of the right eye be divided except the external rectus, this eye looks permanently towards the right side, *i.e.* a right external strabismus or squint is produced. On now exciting the right cortex *both* eyes move to the left, although the right internal rectus is divided. The movement of the right eye stops at the middle line, and is brought about simply by a relaxation of the tone of the right external rectus muscle (Sherrington).

This movement of both eyes on stimulation of one side of the brain shows that the function of each hemisphere is not entirely unilateral with regard to the muscles of the body. As a rule the response to excitation of the motor area for limbs is strictly unilateral. In the case of those movements however which are normally carried out by co-operation of the muscles of the two sides, such as the movements of the trunk, neck, and eyes, stimulation of the motor area in one hemisphere evokes a movement involving the muscles of both sides of the body, *i.e.* the cortical representation is one of movement rather than one of muscles. Where an action is carried out by similar contractions of corresponding muscles on the two sides, the movement itself is bilaterally represented in the cortex. Types of such reactions are found in closure of the mouth, contractions of the abdominal muscles, erection or flexion of the trunk. It seems that under such circumstances there is a free communication between the lower motor centres of the two sides, since the bilaterality of the response is not altered by extirpation of the cortex of the hemisphere opposite to that which is being stimulated.

CORTICAL EPILEPSY. When electrical excitation of any strength over the minimum effective stimulation is applied to the motor area of the

cortex, the movements evoked tend to persist for a short time beyond the duration of the stimulus. On still further increasing the strength of the current, the contraction spreads to adjoining muscles, and finally may affect all parts of the body, giving rise to the phenomenon known as an epileptic convulsion. The same effect may often be caused by weak stimuli, if the irritability of the cortex be raised in consequence of repeated previous stimulation. A typical fit consists of two parts. The first effect of the stimulation is a strong tonic contraction; this outlasts the stimulus for some time, and then gives way to a series of clonic contractions, repeated at first at intervals of from six to ten per second, but gradually getting slower as the fit dies away. The tracing of such a contraction is given in Fig. 229.

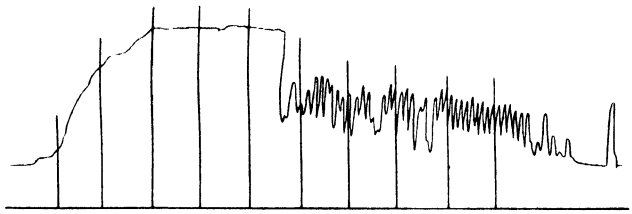


FIG. 229. Tracing of muscular contractions during an epileptic convulsion aroused by strong stimulation of the motor area. (HORSLEY and SCHAFER.)

The main phenomena of a fit, due to irritation of any portion of the motor area, were described by Hughlings Jackson in 1864, even before the experimental proof of cortical localisation had been brought forward by Fritsch and Hitzig. A similar condition may occur in the human subject as a result of irritative lesions of this part of the cortex, such as that due to the presence of a tumour or a spicule of bone pressing on the brain. Jackson showed that in this condition the convulsive movements follow a certain order or 'march.' Thus if the thumb area be the seat of stimulation, the fit begins by a contraction of the thumb muscles, then spreads to the muscles of the hand, fore-arm and shoulder of the same side, and then to the face, trunk, and leg. If it begins in the toes the order would be up the leg and down the arm. The same 'march' is observed in artificial stimulation of the motor area. If the convulsions are very strong they spread to the leg of the opposite side and then to the whole body. The spread to the other side of the body is not prevented by division of the corpus callosum, nor by isolating the centres from one another, so that the sequence seems to be maintained through the mediation of the sub-cortical centres. Complete excision of the cortical centre for any given movement excludes this movement from participation in the fit. In man this type of epilepsy is, in the milder cases at any rate, generally unattended with loss of consciousness. In animals epileptic convulsions can be excited by stimulation of any portion of the cortex, though it is obtained by a weaker stimulus applied to the motor cortex than to any other part. Jacksonian epilepsy is often preceded by a sensation of numbness or tingling, the 'aura,' in the part in which such convulsions begin. In ordinary idiopathic epilepsy tactile or visual sensory

auræ may precede the attack; but in this case loss of consciousness is always a prominent symptom, even in the milder form of the disease. Universal epileptic convulsions can be excited in animals by the injection of absinthe into a vein. During the convulsion there is a rise of blood pressure and a quickening of the pulse; the respiration is very often stopped during the tonic part of the spasm, so that the patient becomes livid. The universal condition of excitation affects also the centres from which the secretory nerves originate, so that there is an excessive flow of saliva which, in the idiopathic case, is responsible for the characteristic frothing at the mouth.

EFFECTS OF ABLATION OF THE MOTOR CENTRES

We have seen that a dog may preserve complete power of movement after a total ablation of both cerebral hemispheres. We should not expect therefore to find any lasting paralysis as a result of extirpation of portions of the brain, such as the motor centres. Ablation of the motor areas in these animals, during the first few weeks after the operation, gives rise to considerable disorders of movement, the muscles on the side of the body opposite to the lesion being markedly weaker than those on the same side. These symptoms however gradually pass off, so that after a time not only are both limbs employed in the ordinary automatic movements of progression, but the animal can be taught new movements in the limb, the cortical centre for which has been excised. We must conclude therefore that in the dog all the movements, including those which are voluntary and conscious, can be carried out in the absence of the motor centres, although destruction of these centres may impair the accuracy with which some of the finer movements are regulated.

In the monkey (Macacus) the effect of ablation is more marked, corresponding to the greater degree of localisation in these animals. If the whole of the motor area on the external surface of the brain be excised, *e.g.* on the right side, there will be almost complete paralysis of the left arm and the left side of the face, and weakness of the muscles of the left leg. The animal will continue to use the leg in walking and in climbing. If the lesion extends to the medial side of the hemisphere, paralysis of the leg is more marked, and the muscles of the left side of the trunk are also affected. Many of these symptoms disappear in the course of time. In a monkey, in which Goltz had destroyed the greater part of the left side of the cerebral hemispheres, it was found that the right arm and hand could be still employed alone for such purposes as taking food, although the movements were much more awkward than those of the left hand.

Still less complete is the recovery from lesions of the motor area in man. We possess now a considerable number of typical histories of cases in which part of the motor cortex has been destroyed by disease or by operation, and the seat of the lesion verified by post-mortem examination. In all these cases there has been a loss of voluntary movement corresponding in distribution to the seat of the lesion and proportionate in its severity to the extent of the lesion. On the other hand, equally extensive lesions outside the

ascending frontal convolution have been shown to have no effect on voluntary movements. The loss of movement is chiefly confined to those which we regard as volitional. Although, for instance, the arm may be paralysed, it can be still raised in association with a movement involving the other arm. A certain degree of recovery from the immediate effects of the lesion may be observed, but the recovery is never complete.

The difference in the reaction of various animals to lesions of the motor cortex is connected with the gradual shifting of functions from the sphere of fatal necessary reactions to the sphere of educatable adaptations (*i.e.* from the lower centres to the cerebral cortex), which is a characteristic of the evolutions of the higher type of nervous system, and is a concomitant of the increased adaptability which distinguishes man from all the lower animals. In the animal without hemisphere the motor mechanisms for all the movements of the body are present and can be set into action from any point on the sensory surface of the body. The first effect of adding the cerebral hemispheres to this mechanism is to increase the range of reactions, to modify them or to inhibit them, by diverting the stream of nervous impulses into channels which have to a large extent been laid down in the cortex by the past experience of the individual. In the frog and bird we notice an automaticity and a 'conscious' adaptation of movements to purpose, although the hemispheres have no direct connection with the motor centres of the cord, and present no areas which we can designate as motor. In the dog, although a portion of the brain is in direct connection with the spinal motor centres, and can therefore initiate movements without making use of the mid-brain motor machinery, these movements play only a small part in the motor life of the animal, and the removal of the corresponding centres takes away but little of the conscious functions of the animal. In man the enormous power of acquisition of new movements is rendered possible by the shifting of one motor function after another to the sphere of influence of the cerebral hemispheres. Almost every act of life in man has become one involving co-operation of the cerebral cortex. For many years after birth man is helpless and far inferior, as a reactive organism, to animals much lower in the scale. Even the lower motor functions, such as those of locomotion or defence, have to be painfully learnt, and this learning implies the laying down of paths (Bahnung) in the cortex. On this account the subcortical centres in man are no longer complete. Acting in every instance of life as a subordinate or adjunct to the cerebral hemispheres, they are unable to carry out even the simpler motor reactions of the body after removal of those portions of the hemispheres especially engaged in the control of voluntary movement. The motor defect therefore which is brought about in man, as a result of destruction of one or more of the motor centres, is to a large extent permanent.

If the lesion in man be strictly limited to the motor areas in the ascending frontal convolution, it is impossible to detect any loss of sensation in the affected parts of the body. On the other hand, some loss of sensation is often found where the paralysis is widespread and occasioned by extensive

lesion in the neighbourhood of the Rolandic area. Moreover, even in localised lesions in man, an epileptic fit may be preceded by a sensory aura in the part which is the starting-point of the convulsive movements. Much discussion has taken place as to the exact significance to be assigned to these slight sensory phenomena. By some observers, *e.g.* Munk, it has been thought that the motor centres were the end-stations of the fibres subserving muscular sensations, and that the movements resulting from their stimulation were due to the revival of such sensations. Bastian insisted on the important part played in voluntary actions by afferent impressions, and these centres have sometimes been spoken of as 'kinæsthetic' or sensori-motor. The discussion has however now resolved itself practically into one of terms. There is no doubt that, when the lesion is strictly localised in the motor area, paralysis may be present without any loss of sensation whatsoever. The paralysis therefore cannot be classed with the sensori-motor paralysis distinguished earlier as the result of division of sensory roots. On the other hand, when we say that this part of the brain represents a 'centre for voluntary movements,' we do not mean that the volitional motor impulses arise *de novo* from the pyramidal cells in its grey matter. Every neuron in the nervous system is part of an arc, and it is generally difficult to label any given neuron as definitely sensory or motor. In a reaction involving a chain of neurons we can assign the name of motor to that neuron which sends its axon to the muscle, and of *sensory* or *afferent* to that neuron which receives the impulses at the periphery of the body. Where in the chain we are to draw the dividing line and to say "these neurons are sensory and those motor," it is difficult to decide. The motor areas in the cortex give origin to the long fibres of the pyramidal tract, which passes right through the central nervous system to the segmental centres of the cord. We know that the integrity of these tracts is essential for the carrying out of voluntary movement. It is therefore convenient to speak of them as motor or efferent tracts, and their origin as motor centres; although these tracts have the same relation to the motor cells of the spinal segment as have the afferent fibres from the posterior roots by which similar movements may be evoked.

On the other hand, the activity of the pyramidal cells of the cortex, like those of the motor cells of the spinal cord, is determined by the arrival at them of afferent impressions. In the absence of these afferent impressions no spontaneous discharge of motor impulses takes place. Thus in the spinal frog we have seen that complete inactivity is brought about by section of all the posterior roots. In the same way paralysis of the arm is induced by section of all its posterior roots, although it can be shown that the motor cortex is still excitable, and that the application of an induced current to the motor centres of the arm evokes a movement as easily as in the normal animal. The motor cells in the cortical motor centres are normally played upon and aroused by impressions arriving at them from all other parts of the brain and nervous system, and determined originally by impressions falling on the surface of the body.

THE FUNCTIONS OF THE CORPUS STRIATUM

The mass of grey matter known as the corpus striatum, which consists of the nucleus lenticularis and the nucleus caudatus, is the basal part of the outgrowth from which each cerebral hemisphere is formed and in the lowest vertebrata represents almost the whole of the telencephalon. For many years the corpus striatum was classed with the optic thalamus as the 'basal ganglia,' and these two ganglia were regarded as relay stations between the cerebral cortex and the lower parts of the central nervous system. This view was correct so far as concerns the optic thalamus, in which end all the afferent tracts and from which afferent impressions are carried on by fresh relays of fibres to the cortex In the higher mammals the motor cortex has a direct connection with the motor nuclei of the bulb and spinal cord through the pyramidal tracts, which are not interrupted anywhere on their course. On destroying the corpora striata, degenerated fibres are found running to the optic thalamus, to the red nucleus, and from the latter to the posterior longitudinal bundle. On the other hand the corpus striatum receives fibres from the olfactory tracts and from the optic thalamus. These connections would tend to show that the corpus striatum serves in no way as an intermediary between the cortex and the lower parts of the central nervous system, but is an independent mass of grey matter, receiving impulses from the same source as the cortex and sending impulses which may join in the stream of impressions which play upon the lower motor mechanisms of the bulb and cord.

Isolated excitation of the caudate and lenticular nuclei has no visible effect, provided the current is not so strong as to spread to the adjoining pyramidal fibres in the internal capsule. A study of the evolution of the central nervous system in different classes of animals points to a diminishing importance of these bodies in the normal life of the animal. In the cartilaginous fishes it probably serves to a greater or less degree the same functions in the determination of educated reflexes as the cerebral hemispheres in mammals In birds the corpus striatum attains its greatest relative development, the increased powers of adaptation in these animals being apparently procured by development of the corpus striatum instead of the pallium or cerebral hemispheres as is the case in mammals. In the monkey Kinnear Wilson found no definite results to follow destruction of the grey matter in these bodies. The animals were however allowed to survive the operation of destruction only three weeks, and the same observer has pointed out that destruction of the corpora striata in man may give rise to a morbid condition, characterised by tremor in the execution of willed movements and increased tonicity of the muscles. He therefore ascribes to these bodies, or rather to the sensori-motor mechanism which has its chief meeting-place in their nuclei of grey matter, a steadying effect on the motor system, and places this system by the side of the other systems which we have already studied, namely, the vestibular, the cerebellar, and the pyramidal systems.

According to Meyer and Barbour, the anterior part of the corpus striatum plays an important part in the regulation of body temperature. In the experiments a metal tube, closed at one end, was introduced through the brain so as to lie in or on the corpus striatum. Through this tube water at any temperature could be passed. It was found that cooling the water gave rise to shivering and increased heat production in the body with a rise of body temperature, while warming the water had the reverse effect. They are therefore inclined to regard this part of the nervous system as representing the chief thermo-taxic mechanism of the body.

THE LOCALISATION OF SENSORY FUNCTIONS IN THE CORTEX

It was pointed out by Ferrier that movements might be obtained on electrical excitation of regions of the cortex cerebri other than those we have described as motor. Thus excitation of the superior temporal convolution on the right side causes the animal to turn its head and eyes to the left and to prick up its ears. In the same way stimulation of the right occipital lobe causes movement of both eyes and head to the left side. These portions of the brain cannot be regarded as having a direct relationship to the motor mechanisms involved in the above movements, since their ablation leads to no defect of movement but does, in many cases, lead to defect of sensation. Thus excision of the right occipital lobe in the monkey, though leaving the eye movements intact, causes a loss of power to discern objects lying to the left of the middle line. The obvious explanation therefore of the movements obtained on excitation of this portion of the cortex is that they are due to the revival or arousing of sensory impressions, that these portions of the cortex represent the cortical receiving-stations for the impulses from definite sense-organs, and that the movements obtained are simply those which are normally associated with a corresponding sensory excitation.

This conclusion is borne out by the fact that to excite movement it requires a greater strength of stimulus when applied to the sensory areas than is necessary if the stimulus be applied to the Rolandic area. Moreover Schafer has shown that the latent period which intervenes between the stimulus and the resulting movement is considerably longer when the stimulus is applied to the sensory centre than when it is applied to the motor centre, suggesting that more neurons are interpolated between the point of stimulus and the discharging motor neuron in the first case than in the latter. Thus in one experiment the latent period between the stimulus and the resulting movement of the eyes amounted to 0·2 sec. when the frontal lobes were stimulated and 0·4 sec. when the occipital lobes were stimulated. Finally the anatomical investigation of the course of the fibres in the white matter of the cerebral hemispheres points to a concentration of sensory fibres from different sense-organs towards certain regions of the cortex. The diagrams (Fig. 230 and 231) show those portions of the brain to which the endings of the sensory tracts of the central nervous system are directed.

From the purely anatomical standpoint we may designate as ' sensory areas ' of the cortex :

(1) An area including both central convolutions, *i.e.* the ascending frontal and the ascending parietal, and spreading forward into the frontal lobes.

(2) An area occupying the hinder portion of the occipital lobe and the greater part of its inner surface.

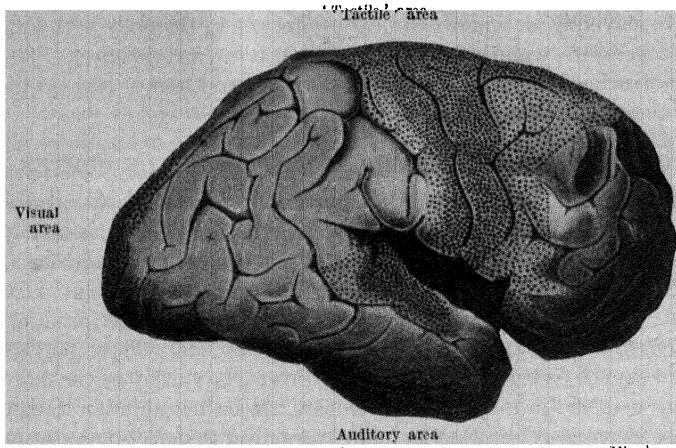


FIG. 230. Outer side of right cerebral hemisphere, according to Flechsig. The dotted surface indicates the regions where the majority of the afferent (sensory) fibres end.

(3) An area occupying the superior temporal convolution and extending well into the fissure of Sylvius.

(4) An area on the inner side of the hemisphere, occupying the hippo-

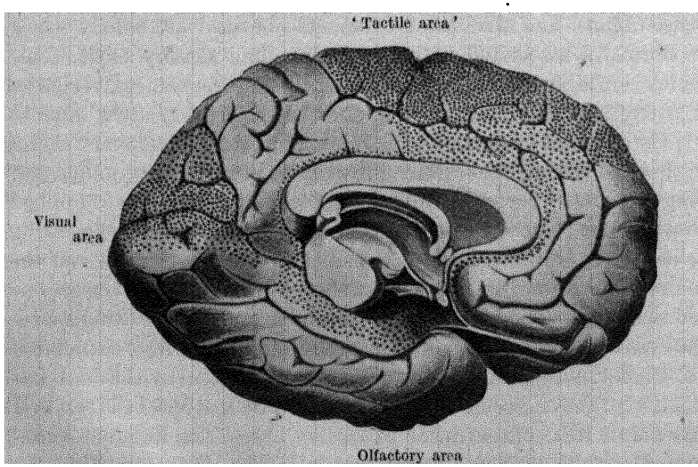


FIG. 231. Inner surface of the same hemisphere. (FLECHSIG.)

campal gyrus and the margin of the gyrus fornicatus close to the corpus callosum.

Let us see how far experimental evidence bears out this localisation

TACTILE AND MOTOR SENSIBILITY

A lesion limited to the ascending frontal convolution may produce paralysis of definite movements or groups of muscles without any detectable interference with sensation. When however in man a widespread injury, involving both the Rolandic area and the adjacent portions of the brain, occurs as the result of some morbid condition, such as blockage of the middle cerebral artery, the resulting *hemiplegia* is almost always associated with a greater or lesser degree of *hemianæsthesia*. We are therefore justified in locating tactile and muscular sensibility somewhere in the region of the central convolutions, and it is probable that, while it may include the motor area, its chief representation is to be found in the post-central gyrus, *i.e.* the ascending parietal convolution.

The sensory aura which precedes an attack of Jacksonian epilepsy points to the motor area itself having some degree of sensory functions, and it has been observed that faradisation of the central convolution in man may produce tingling sensations in the part of the body which is the seat of the muscular contractions induced by stimulation. No pain is however felt as a result of the stimulation. The impulses which subserve cutaneous and muscular sensibility travel up to the brain in the mesial fillet. This tract comes to an end in the ventro-lateral portion of the thalamus and the subthalamic region. The new relays of fibres, which carry on impulses to the cortex, arise in the thalamus and pass through the hinder limb of the internal capsule to be distributed to the central convolutions. Their area of distribution is however much wider than the area of origin of the pyramidal fibres. We may therefore conclude that tactile and muscular sensibility are chiefly subserved by the central convolutions, including the motor area, but are especially dependent on the integrity of the post-central gyrus. Flechsig has shown that fibres from the thalamus, which may probably be regarded as continuations of the fillet system, are also distributed to other portions of the cortex, *i.e.* the temporal, the frontal, and the occipital lobes. It is therefore not surprising that the hemianæsthesia produced by lesions in the central convolutions is rarely or never complete.

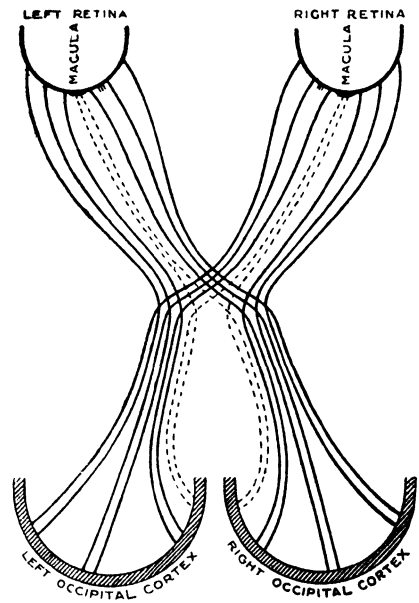


FIG. 232. Diagram showing the probable relations between the parts of the retinæ and the visual area of the cortex. (SCHAFER)

The term 'tactile and motor sensibility' is very inadequate as describing the complex afferent impressions which proceed from all parts of the body to the brain. They may perhaps be better grouped under the term 'somatic impressions,' and include three main classes, viz.:

Exteroceptive . .	From the surface of the body
Enteroceptive . .	From the viscera
Proprioceptive . .	From the muscles and joints, aroused by changes occurring within the organism itself.

Of these, the exteroceptive are the most important in giving information as to the external world, and predominate among those impressions which reach and affect consciousness. The enteroceptive under normal conditions very rarely rise to the conscious level. The proprioceptive impressions are also for the most part unconscious, yet those, which do reach consciousness, play a great part, in conjunction with the exteroceptive, in forming the basis of our schema of the material world.

We find—as Head has shown—a constant regrouping of somatic impressions as we trace them from their origin, at or near the surface of the body, through the spinal cord and nerve tracts to the cerebral cortex. At the periphery these impressions are divided into superficial and deep sensations, and the former again into the *epicritic*, which determine localisation, discrimination and the finer gradations of pressure, heat, and cold. and the *protopathic*, comprising pain, the coarser degrees of heat and cold, and tactile sense with defective localisation.

When these various impulses reach the cord, they are regrouped, so that the pain, heat and cold, and tactile sensations are collected each in a separate bundle, with no distinction between the coarser kinds of tactile sense and the finer qualities involved in discrimination and localisation. This grouping persists as far as the thalamus, and even beyond the thalamus a similar grouping is observed in the sub-cortical white matter through which the tracts run from the thalamus to the sensory cortex. Lesions at any part of these paths may therefore affect one or more of these qualities of sensation separately.

On arrival at the cortex cerebri all these different kinds of sensation are poured into the grey matter to form the basis of the schema of the external world and the relations thereto of the individual. The cortical type of loss of sensation differs therefore profoundly from the loss produced by a lesion in any other part of the sensory tracts. It may occur as the result of lesions of the pre- and post-central convolutions, of the internal part of the superior parietal lobule and of the angular gyri. The chief feature of this cortical loss of sensation is a defect, not in one or other of the different sensations which have been described, but in the appreciation of the meaning of these sensations, *i.e.* the loss appears to be rather psychical than physiological. Thus, it is not a question of recognition of touch, pain, heat and cold, but of certain discriminating faculties which can be classed as :—(*a*) recognition of

spacial relations, (*b*) appreciation of intensity of stimuli, and (*c*) appreciation of similarity and difference in external objects which are brought into contact with the surface of the body.

It is not surprising therefore that in such cases the answers of the patient, when his sensibility is tested, seem to be confused, and it is this confusion of judgment which is more apparent than definite loss of sensibility With regard to sensory localisation, it should be noted that the functions rather than the anatomical relations of any one part of the body, are represented on the cortex ; hence, as in the motor functions of the brain, those portions, such as the hand, which are endowed with the highest powers of discriminative sensibility, are most extensively represented, and next in order comes the sole of the foot. Thus, after a cortical lesion, sensibility of the hand and foot may be disturbed without there being any alteration in that of the elbow, shoulder or knee.

VISUAL IMPRESSIONS

Each optic tract, carrying impulses arising as a result of events occurring in the opposite field of vision, ends in the pulvinar of the optic thalamus, the external geniculate body, and the superior corpora quadrigemina The last named is apparently not concerned in vision, but represents a centre for the co-ordination of visual impressions with those from other regions of the body in influencing bodily movements. From the pulvinar and external geniculate body arises a sheaf of fibres, which pass through the extreme hinder end of the posterior limb of the internal capsule and diverge in the *centrum ovale* to be distributed to the occipital lobes, being here known as the optic radiations. The anatomical connexion of the occipital lobes with vision is confirmed by evidence derived from experiment. Movements of the eyes result from stimulation of almost any part of this lobe. If the upper surface of the right occipital lobe be stimulated, both eyes move downwards and towards the left. Excitation of the posterior part causes movement of the eyes up and to the left ; while between these two parts there is an intermediate zone, most marked on the mesial surface, stimulation of which evokes a purely lateral deviation of the eyes to the left. It is therefore concluded not only that there is representation of visual impressions in the occipital lobes, but that there is a certain amount of localisation within the visual area itself, as is represented in the diagram (Fig. 232).

These conclusions are fully borne out by the results of ablation. While extirpation of the whole occipital lobe on one side in animals causes crossed hemianopia, *i.e.* has the same effect as division of the corresponding optic tract, extirpation of these lobes on both sides causes complete blindness. It seems that the fovea centralis—the region of distinct vision—is bilaterally represented, so that central vision is usually retained in both eyes after destruction of one occipital lobe (Fig. 233).

The area connected with vision seems to be smaller in man than in the ape, and in the ape than in the dog. Thus in man complete blindness has been observed as the result of localised bilateral lesions of the internal sur-

faces of the occipital lobes, and we find the same relative limitation of area as we proceed from lower to higher forms in the case of the other sensory areas of the cortex.

THE AUDITORY AREA

Anatomical study indicates a connexion of auditory sensations with the superior temporal lobe. The impulses, started by the arrival of sound waves at the ear, travel by the cochlear nerve to the medulla. From the two auditory nuclei a well-marked set of fibres passes across to the opposite side in the corpus trapezoides, then turns up into the tegmentum of the opposite side to form the tract known as the lateral fillet. The fibres of this tract end

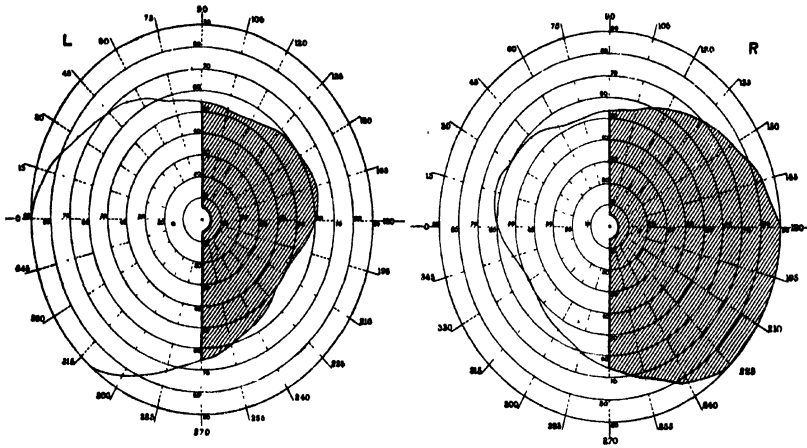


FIG. 233. Perimeter charts from right and left eye, showing the limitation of the field of vision (right hemianopia) produced by a lesion of the left occipital cortex. (BECHTEREW.)

partly in the inferior corpora quadrigemina, partly in the internal geniculate body. From the latter, fibres pass into the internal capsule, and thence as 'auditory radiations' directly to the superior temporal convolution.

In the monkey stimulation of the upper two-thirds of this lobe of the brain causes pricking of the opposite ear, dilatation of the pupils, and rotation of the head and eyes to the opposite side. It was stated by Ferrier that ablation of the superior temporal convolution causes deafness, but Schafer found that, even after extirpation of the superior temporal convolutions of both sides, monkeys showed signs of hearing quite distinctly, and of understanding the nature of the sounds heard. One must conclude therefore that the function of auditory perception is not entirely confined to the temporal lobe, though its focal point may be located in the superior temporal convolution, especially in that part which is seated within the fissure of Sylvius. This conclusion is strengthened by the results of clinical evidence in man, in whom cerebral lesions, which have produced disturbances of auditory perception, are found almost invariably to be closely associated with the superior temporal convolution.

SMELL AND TASTE

The course of the fibres from the olfactory lobe may be used to throw light upon the localisation of olfactory sensation in the cerebral cortex. There is a great divergence between different animals in the degree to which the olfactory sense is developed, and with this divergence we find corresponding variations in the development of certain portions of the brain. In those species with highly developed olfactory sense the following parts of the brain show special growth:

(1) The olfactory lobe, including the olfactory bulb, and the olfactory tract.

(2) The posterior part and the inferior surface of the frontal lobe.

(3) The hippocampal gyrus and the dentate convolution.

(4) A convolution termed the gyrus supracallosus and forming that part of the gyrus fornicatus closely encircling the corpus callosum.

(5) The anterior commissure.

The olfactory lobe is connected almost exclusively with the cerebral hemispheres of the same side. Ferrier found that electrical excitation of the hippocampal region causes contortion of the lip and nostril on the same side, *i.e.* a reaction such as that actually induced in these animals by application of an irritative or pungent odour direct to the nostril. Ablation experiments have not yielded very definite evidence on the question of localisation of the olfactory sense. So widespread are the connexions of the olfactory tract throughout the brain that it would be extremely difficult, if not impossible, to extirpate all those parts which receive fibres from this tract. It is usual to regard the sense of taste as associated with that of smell, but here again experiment and clinical evidence have yielded very little that is definite.

GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF CORTICAL MOTOR FUNCTIONS

The motor phenomena, which may be observed as the result of artificial excitation of the motor and sensory areas in the cortex, constitute a very small fraction of the activities which must be associated with the cerebral hemispheres. An animal with its cerebral hemispheres intact differs markedly from a decerebrate animal in the variety of combined movements which it may exhibit, either spontaneously or in response to external stimuli. When however we excite the motor areas directly, we obtain movements which are practically identical with those which we may elicit from a bulbospinal animal by appropriate peripheral stimulation. The movements thus excited from the skin may be looked upon as variations from the tonic postural activity of the musculature of the body. We have seen that from the end-organs subserving deep and muscular sensibility (the proprioceptive system), as well as from the labyrinth, impulses are continually arising which travel up to the spinal cord, bulb, cerebellum, and mid-brain, and excite a tonic activity of these centres. The normal attitude of the animal depends on the tonus thereby produced in certain muscles. Muscular tone is indeed a quality specially found in certain groups of muscles. If the cere-

bral hemispheres be removed, as by a section through the crura cerebri or in front of the mid-brain, this postural tonus is increased and the animal enters into the condition of ' decerebrate rigidity.' Destruction of one labyrinth diminishes the tone on the same side of the body ; section of all the afferent nerves from a limb abolishes the tone in that limb, so that its posture thereafter depends entirely on gravity.

The movements which are excited in such animals by cutaneous stimulation involve as a necessary factor inhibition of the postural tone as well as co-operative inhibition of the antagonistic muscles. In the same way excitation of the motor area of the cortex has as its most essential feature an inhibitory action on the postural tonus in addition to its excitatory action on the muscles concerned in the movement. A certain antagonism is evident between the total action of the cerebral hemispheres and that of the proprioceptive part of the central nervous system. Whereas in the decerebrate animal there is increased tonus in the masseters, in the neck muscles, the muscles of the trunk, and the extensor muscles of the limbs, stimulation of the cortex produces opening of the mouth, flexion of the fore limb or of the hind limb, more easily than any other movements. That an essential part of this action is inhibitory is shown by the effects of exciting the motor area of the cortex after exhibition of strychnine or during the local action of tetanus toxin. Whereas in the normal animal closure of the jaw and extension of the fore limb are obtainable only from one or two points on the surface of the brain, after the injection has taken place, every part of the jaw area gives closing of the jaw, every part of the arm area gives extension of the limb (*cp.* Fig. 173).

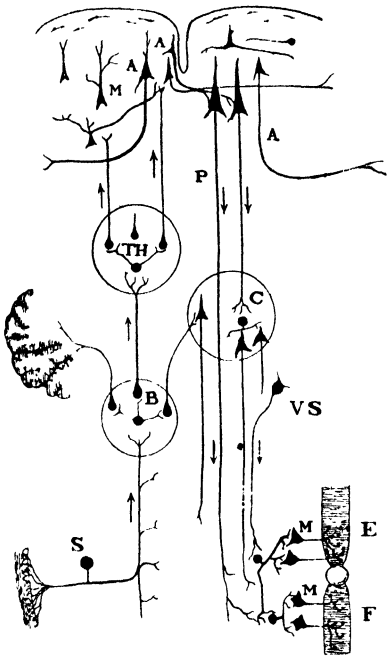


FIG. 234. Diagram (from MOTT after MONAKOW) to show the interaction of the different levels in the central nervous system in the production of co-ordinated ' volitional ' movements.

S, sensory neuron ; B, bulb ; TH, thalamus ; MA, motor area ; P, pyramidal fibre ; C, cerebello-pontine nuclei ; VS, vestibular neuron (Deiters' nucleus).

Since the predominant influence of the motor cortex is therefore inhibitory of the stronger muscles of the body, as well as of the tonus, which is continually and reflexly maintained, it is not surprising that excision of both hemispheres should give rise to decerebrate rigidity, or that destruction or division of the chief direct tracts from the cortex to the motor spinal

mechanisms, viz. the pyramidal tracts, should determine increased tonus and rigidity of the limbs—the so-called 'spastic' condition observed in cerebral paralyses.

Two separable systems of motor innervation appear thus to control two sets of musculature. One system exhibits the transient phases of heightened reaction which constitute reflex movements; the other maintains that steady tonic response which supplies the muscular tension necessary to attitude. Hughlings Jackson long ago called attention to this contrast between the two systems. He pointed out that while the cerebrum innervates the muscles in the order of their action from the most voluntary movements (the limbs) to the most automatic (trunk), the cerebellum, or, as we should say now, the whole proprioceptive system, innervates them in the opposite order. The cerebellum therefore he regarded as the centre for continuous movements and the cerebrum for changing movements. The increased tone of the paralysed muscles, observable after hemiplegia, he ascribed to unbalanced cerebellar influence. While there is no doubt that the cerebellum must play, and does play, a considerable part in the production of decerebrate rigidity and of the spastic condition of hemiplegia, it is not the only element involved; nor is it essential, since decerebrate rigidity may continue after extirpation of the cerebellum and an exaggerated knee-jerk may result from section of the spinal cord in the lower cervical region.

HIGHER ASSOCIATIVE FUNCTIONS OF THE CORTEX

The simple and uncomplicated nature of the movements elicited on cortical stimulation shows that we cannot regard these motor centres as responsible for the whole, or even the greater part, of the motor functions of the cortex. They are in fact simply the starting-point for the motor impulses which run down the long pyramidal tracts, but which result from the activities of the cerebral hemispheres as a whole. In the lower mammals they do not even represent the only starting-point, as is shown by the almost perfect recovery of volitional motor power in a dog deprived of its motor cortex. The distinguishing feature of the response of an animal possessing cerebral hemispheres is that it is not determined solely and exclusively by the nature and position of the peripheral stimulation, but involves elements connected with the past experiences of the animal, and including therefore the results of previous stimulation of many of the sense-organs, either directly, or indirectly as a result of reflex movements. The animal's reactivity is determined by its past history, and this modifying influence on the brain must involve parts connected with all its sense-organs. In any conscious motor act we may say therefore that the brain functions as a whole, or nearly as a whole.

In endeavouring to arrive at some idea of the neural processes concerned in volitional movements, *i.e.* movements of the intact animal, we are dealing with events which in ourselves come within the sphere of consciousness, so that some assistance is derived by appealing to our own mental experiences. Especially is this necessary in the case of the sensations. It might be

imagined that a simple sensation would ensue as the result of local stimulation, say of the visual centre on one side. Our knowledge of the properties of the systems of neurons composing the central nervous system would teach us that no excitatory process could remain confined to one portion of the brain, but must diverge in many directions. It is true that excision of the occipital lobes on one side causes blindness to objects in the opposite half of the field of vision. This is however merely a result of localisation of the end of visual fibres, and the same effect can be brought about by division of the right optic tract, or damage to the right half of both retinæ.

On the other hand, an appeal to our own experience shows that no sensation can be regarded as simple, *i.e.* as following merely stimulation of visual fibres or visual centres. Thus the sensation of a luminous point has connected with it not only luminosity but also colour and intensity. Moreover the apparent position of the luminous point comes into consciousness at the same time as the consciousness of the luminosity itself, and this location of the stimulation involves muscular impressions from the eyeballs and an association between certain points on the retina and certain corresponding muscular movements of the eye muscles, of the head and neck, and even of the body and arm—movements which would be necessary to bring the image of the spot on to the fovea centralis and to approach the whole body to the site of the stimulating object.

As the visual sensation becomes more complex, the associated sensations and experiences which it evokes become more numerous. Thus the image of a chair falling on the retina excites a long train of nervous processes. At once we become aware not only of a visual impulse but of an object which possesses colour, extension, or size in three dimensions, solidity, hardness, distance or position in space, etc. These qualities are founded on past experiences—visual, muscular, and tactile. Moreover we are at once aware of the uses of the chair, and of its name both spoken and written, a mental activity connoting revival of higher visual and auditory sensations. The higher in the scale of intelligence, the greater is the development of the cerebral hemispheres and the more extensive are the associations arising in connexion with any single sense impression.

Besides the portions of the brain which send out the motor paths and which receive the endings of the sensory paths, there may be whole regions taken up by the interconnecting neurons which subserve the association of the activities of all parts of the cerebral hemispheres, and the higher the animal is in the scale of intelligence the larger must be the relative amount of brain substance set apart for these functions of association. This is very evident if we compare the brain of three animals, such as the dog, the ape and man. Although as we ascend to man there is an absolute increase in the amount of brain substance involved—say in the motor areas or in the sensory areas—the increase is very small as compared with that in those portions of the brain which give no response on stimulation, and in man these 'silent' parts of the brain form the greater part of the cerebral cortex. Although every phase of cerebral activity, every conscious event, involves

co-operation of a large number of distant portions of the brain substance, in most of them there will be some seat of sense impressions which will be predominant, and a train of ideas may be specially visual, or auditory, or tactile. It is therefore not surprising that, in the immediate neighbourhood of the cortical areas which receive the endings of the sensory tracts association areas are developed which may be labelled according to the sense-organ with which they are most nearly in relation. Thus we may speak of the visual-sensory and the visual association, or psychic area, the auditory-sensory and the auditory-psychic, and so on. The limits of these areas are indicated in Fig. 224, p. 431.

Conditioned reflexes. Until recently, our study of the processes of association and therewith all the higher functions of the cerebral hemispheres was chiefly carried out in man, and in most cases by the introspective method. Even when carried out on other men, it was chiefly by using speech as an index to the introspective experiences of those who were being investigated. During the last few years a method has been introduced by Pawlow for investigating the higher cerebral functions by an objective method which is capable of very wide application. When a hungry animal is shown food, we say that 'its mouth waters,' *i.e.* there is a secretion of saliva; and if the animal be provided with a salivary fistula the extent of the emotion of appetite may be gauged in cc. of saliva flowing from the fistula. It is found in such an animal that a flow of saliva may be excited, not only by the sight or administration of food, but also by any other event which has become associated, as the result of experience, with the taking of food. We may use this method in order to determine the sensitiveness of the animal's perception of pure tones. Thus if we wish to know whether the animal can recognize the difference between middle C and middle C♯, as produced by tuning-forks, we can for some days or weeks allow him to hear both these sounds frequently but always follow up one of them, say C, by giving him a piece of meat. After a time it is found that not only can he distinguish between the two sounds, but that he has a memory of the absolute pitch, so that whenever the note middle C is sounded or any note differing from it by not more than 8 d.v. per second, there is a flow of saliva from the fistula, whereas the note C♯ is heard without producing any response. Such an acquired reaction is designated by Pawlow, a 'conditioned reflex' and the method has been applied by him to study the association between the most widely different impressions and the condition which we can regard as appetite and which is associated psychically with the idea of food.

THE FUNCTION OF SPEECH

The acts of a conscious individual, *i.e.* one possessing cerebral hemispheres, are determined by his experience. The wider the range of past sense impressions which can be called up and taken into the chain of processes involved in any reaction—the more, that is to say, the individual weighs his acts in the light of past experience—the more fitted will these acts be to his maintenance amid the ever-changing stresses of the environment. In this guiding of behaviour by experience man, as well as the higher mammals, may profit also from accumulated racial experience. The increased complexity of the neural processes concerned in every reaction of the body, and the excessive 'lost time' brought about by the intercalation of one neuron after another in the chain of the excitatory process, would finally counteract the advantages derived from the growth in complexity of the brain, were it not

that, as a result of education or training, *short cuts* are laid down, by means of which reactions adapted to the maintenance of the individual can be carried out immediately, without thought and without correlated calling up of numberless sense impressions. Education in fact consists in laying down these 'short cuts' which, as habits, are the basis of the behaviour of the animal. The more complex the central mechanism and the wider the range of environmental change to which adaptation is necessary, the longer must be the time involved in this process of road-making within the cerebral hemispheres. The behaviour of man is therefore a product of many years' training, during which time he is in a state of subjection and unfit, from the absence of habit, to maintain himself as a unit in the human community. The neural short cuts of habit are however of advantage to the individual only in dealing with those events which are of everyday occurrence. Every novel circumstance must involve a revival of past sense impressions and a calling up of activities of the most diverse portions of the brain in order to arrive at the safest or most advantageous mode of action adapted to the circumstances. Here again the complexity of the process would, by the very delay involved, put a stop to a further rise in intellectual, *i.e.* associative, capacities, were it not for the invention of SPEECH.

In speech we have a symbolism which acts as an economy of thought or of cerebral activities. An object, such as a table, with its associated properties of colour, consistence, spatial extension, and resistance, with the connoted acts associated with its use, can now be evoked as a word, involving comparatively simple auditory and motor processes, which itself may be employed as a unit of thought and brought into connexion with other words, each of which in the same way is the symbol for a whole series of sensory and motor processes. The training of the cultivated man consists in a constant extension of the range of this symbolism, and the acquisition of words including wider and wider groups of neural processes, so that finally we arrive at those short verbal collections which, as the so-called *natural laws*, summarize the experience not only of the individual but such as is common to the whole race of mankind. All science may in fact be regarded as an extension of the process of representation of neural experience in symbolic shorthand, which in the child begins with the utterance of such a simple word as 'mamma,' and from which speech has arisen. A study of the nervous mechanisms involved in speech is therefore of interest in its relations to the development of the intelligence, and helps us to realize more completely the conditions which determine the activity and functioning of the cerebral hemispheres. Much light is thrown upon this mechanism by the study of disorders in man grouped together under the name *Aphasia*.

It has been usual to divide the disorders of speech known as aphasia into various groups, as follows:

(1) *Motor aphasia, or aphasia of Broca.* In this condition, which was described fully by Broca and referred by him to a lesion of the third left frontal convolution, the patient is unable to speak, although he understands what is

said to him and has been stated to suffer from no impairment of his intelligence.

(2) *Sensory aphasia, or aphasia of Wernicke.* This condition was connected by Wernicke with the existence of lesions in a fairly wide area, known as the area of Wernicke, which involves the supramarginal and angular gyri and the hinder portions of the first and second temporo-sphenoidal convolutions. In these cases there may be limited power of speech, but there is serious impairment of the intelligence and especially of the power of appreciation of spoken words, so that the patient does not understand what is said to him. This condition may or may not be attended with *alexia*, loss of power to read. Any impairment of the motor processes of speech which is present is due rather to the inability of the patient to appreciate what he himself is saying, so that there is here a species of sensory paralysis in the higher sphere of neural processes.

(3) *Anarthria.* This is a condition in which there is marked impairment of the motor powers of expression, although intelligence and appreciation of speech, both spoken and written, may be unaltered. This condition is generally associated with lesion of the white matter of the external capsule as it passes round the lenticular nucleus.

There are however considerable difficulties in the acceptation of this traditional classification. Microscopic examination of Broca's convolution shows a type of cortex entirely different from that part, viz. the psychomotor area of the ascending frontal convolution, which is concerned with the higher cerebral processes resulting in movement. Its structure is in fact identical with that described by Campbell as the 'intermediate precentral area' and regarded as characteristic of the association areas. Moreover it is difficult to comprehend how a function such as speech, with its enormously complex mechanism, could be limited to so small a portion of the brain as Broca's convolution. The neural basis of language must in fact be coextensive with the sensory centres (the projection spheres) and with the whole region of lower association. We might indeed speak of auditory and visual word-centres as located in the visuo-psychic and auditory psychic centres. There is probably however no word, still less a collection of words, expressing an idea, which does not involve the activity of practically all parts of the cerebral cortex. As Bolton* points out, "a word, such as 'mouse,' at once sets in effect processes of association which pass to every projection sphere with the solitary exception of the gustatory, and even this may be aroused in a person who has eaten a fried mouse in the hope of thereby recovering from an attack of whooping-cough."

A careful examination of an extensive series of cases by Marie has shown, in fact, that Broca's aphasia does not exist as a result of lesions of Broca's convolution. This part of the brain may be destroyed without any disorder of speech. The cases described by Broca of motor aphasia are really cases of sensory aphasia from lesion of Wernicke's area, combined with anarthria due to subcortical injury of the fibres of the external capsule. The statement

* In his admirable article in Hill's "Further Advances in Physiology."

that there is no loss of intelligence in these cases of so-called motor aphasia does not bear investigation. Although as patients they may comport themselves reasonably, as soon as they have to perform any duties which have been learnt by them in connexion with their ordinary avocations they show their deficiency. They are incapable of transacting ordinary busi-

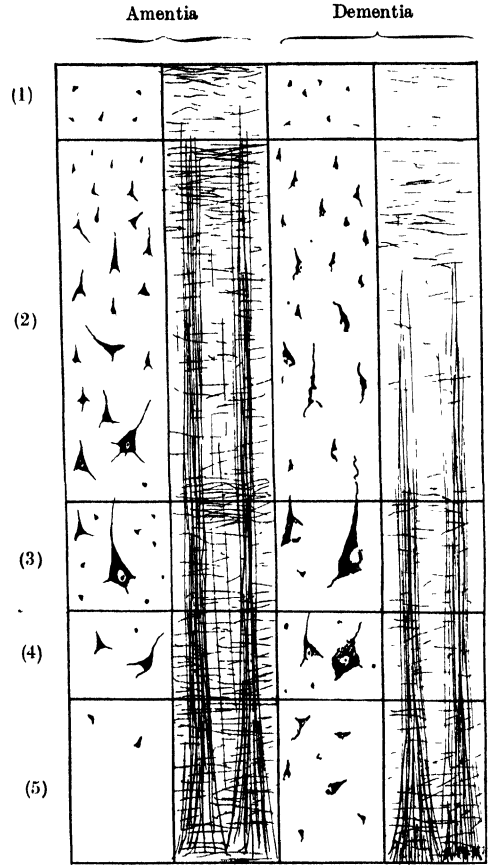


FIG. 235. Types of lesions giving rise to deficient intellectual power. In amentia, the deficiency is due to failure of development; in dementia, to atrophy of the cells (especially small pyramidal) previously present in the cortex. (MOTT.)

ness, at any rate to the extent to which they were before the lesion. The amount of impairment of intelligence will vary in different cases according to the extent of the lesion. Thus softening affecting the occipital lobe may, with hemianopia, cause 'word-blindness' or alexia, a loss of power of appreciating the meaning of written words. In most individuals, and certainly in the uneducated, this power may be cut out altogether without interfering considerably with the mental powers. On the other hand, from babyhood upwards we have learnt the meaning of words and their

grouping by auditory impressions. If the whole of the auditory associations be destroyed by an extensive lesion in the first and second temporal convolutions, the resulting loss of word appreciation, sensory aphasia, will be attended with great diminution of mental powers. It must be remembered that the area of Wernicke is not a sensory centre, but a centre of association between the various sense-impressions, especially those of hearing and sight. It may therefore be spoken of as an intellectual centre. Pure motor aphasia of course exists, but is always anarthria and is due to a lesion in the lenticular zone, *i.e.* in the lenticular nucleus and its neighbourhood, in the anterior part and the genu of the internal capsule, and possibly in the external capsule.

It is important to make a distinction between loss of sanity and loss of intellectual powers. The essential factor of sensory aphasia is the existence of intellectual impairment, though in his behaviour the patient may appear perfectly normal. On the other hand, in insanity there may be perfect retention of the intellectual processes, which depend on the proper working of the lower association centres. The personality of the individual, and therefore finally his behaviour, involves a further association on a higher plane of these intellectual processes and therefore *control* in accordance with the relation, past, present, or future, of the individual to his environment. The prefrontal region is in all probability the seat of this highest plane of association. Insanity always involves alteration of personality and depends on failure of development or on disintegration processes (subevolution or dissolution of this region) (Fig. 235). In monkeys and cats Franz has found that destruction of the frontal lobes causes a loss of recently formed habits. He concludes from his experiments that the frontal lobes are the means by which we are able to learn and to form habits, *i.e.* to regulate our behaviour in accordance with the needs of our position in society.

THE TIME RELATIONS OF CENTRAL NEURAL REACTIONS

In the spinal animal a stimulus of any particular quality and localisation always evokes an appropriate reaction. A certain period of time necessarily elapses between the moment at which the stimulus is applied and the moment at which the resulting reaction takes place. This interval is spoken of as the simple reaction time, and in the spinal animal is entirely independent of consciousness. Many reactions, even in the intact animal, are also, as we may say, involuntary and are not modified perceptibly by our consciousness of their occurrence: such reflexes as the withdrawal of the hand when it comes in contact with a hot surface, the shutting of the eyelid when the conjunctiva is touched, the drawing up of the leg when the sole of the foot is tickled. Not only are these carried out in the absence of voluntary impulses, but in many cases it is almost, if not quite, impossible to check the reaction by any effort of the will.

When the leg is drawn up in response to a painful or nocuous stimulus applied to the foot, a certain amount of time is involved in each of the following links in the chain of processes which determine the reaction:

(1) The conversion in the peripheral sense organ of the mechanical stimulus into a nerve process.

(2) The passage of a nerve impulse up the nerve from the end organ to the spinal cord.

(3) The passage of the impulse across two or more synapses in the grey matter of the cord.

(4) The passage of the impulse down the motor nerve fibres from the spinal cord to the muscles.

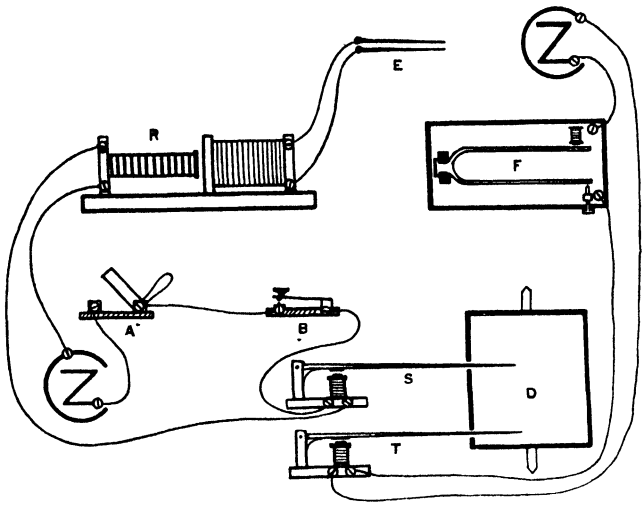


FIG. 236. Arrangement of apparatus for determination of reaction time. (ALCOCK and ELLISON.)
R, coil; E, exciting electrodes; F, tuning-fork; A, B, keys; S, T, electromagnetic signals; D, drum.

(5) The processes occurring in the end organs of the muscle.

(6) The latent period in the muscle fibre itself.

With a weak stimulus No. 1 is impossible to measure. With a strong stimulus it may be so short as to be practically negligible. (2), (4), (5) and (6) represent quantities for the measurement of which we have all the necessary data.

In any given reflex therefore we may add these periods together and subtract them from the total reaction time; we thus get a 'reduced reaction time,' which represents the time involved in the passage of the impulse through the central nervous system, and in the conversion of an afferent impulse into an aggregate of co-ordinated motor impulses. It is found that the reduced reaction time accounts for the greater part of the total reaction time. Since we have no reason to assume that the rate of passage of an impulse through the intra-spinal course of a nerve fibre differs appreciably from the rate at which it is conducted by the same nerve fibre outside the

cord, the extra delay which occurs in the passage of the impulse through the cord must take place either in the nerve cells themselves, or in the synapses, through which the impulse passes from one neuron to the next in the chain of reflex elements.

The rate of passage of an impulse through the nerve cell can be determined only in one part of the body, viz. in the posterior spinal root ganglia, since only in these is it possible to detect the moment of passage of an impulse across a given section of a nerve fibre on both sides of the ganglion cell in which the nerve fibres arise. Experiments on this point have been made by Steinach and by Moore. In each case the time occupied in the passage of the impulse through the ganglion was not appreciably longer than if the impulse had passed through a corresponding stretch of uninterrupted nerve fibre. We are therefore justified in concluding that the relatively great delay in the passage of an impulse through the central nervous system has its seat in the synapses across which the impulse has to pass. This conclusion is in accordance with our experience on the latent period of muscle, the greater part of which is due to changes occurring in the nerve endings, *i.e.* in the synapses between motor nerve and muscle. The greater the number of synapses involved in any given reaction, *i.e.* the greater the complexity of the reaction, the longer will be the period which elapses between the moment of application of the stimulus and the moment at which the response takes place. Especially is this the case when the complex meshwork of neurons of the cerebral hemispheres is involved, or when the occurrence of the reaction is associated with the conscious processes of sensation and volition. In the latter case the determination of the reaction time has the added interest that it gives information as to the time relations of the psychical processes which are the representation in consciousness of the physiological changes occurring in the neurons of the central nervous system.

Many methods are employed for the measuring of the reaction time of conscious processes. In most methods the application of the stimulus is arranged so as to close the circuit of a current which flows through an electro-magnet activating a lever which writes on a rapidly moving blackened surface. The reaction of the individual who is the subject of experiment is arranged so that the resulting movement activates a key by which the same current is opened. We thus obtain a tracing on the blackened surface showing the moment of application of the stimulus and the moment at which the reaction takes place. Thus, if the reaction time for an auditory stimulus is to be determined, the electric current is arranged so as to pass through:

(1) A spring contact key which can be pressed so as to make a noise.

(2) An electric signal writing on a rapidly moving surface.

(3) A second key which the subject will release as soon as he hears the noise of the first key and so break the current.

The recording surface may be a drum, a pendulum myograph, or a spring myograph, such as the 'shooter' of du Bois-Reymond. If the sensory impression is to be from the skin, the current may be made to pass through the primary coil of an inductorium and wires be taken from the second coil to some part of the surface of the skin. In this case the signal may be started by opening the circuit, and the subject of the experiment will respond by closing the circuit by means of a spring key directly he feels

the shock caused by the break of the primary circuit. If the reaction period is to be determined for sight, a white piece of paper may be placed on an electro-magnet in the primary circuit and the person will respond directly he sees this move. Many other instruments have been devised for the same purpose.

The average reaction times obtained with the different senses are as follows:

Sight.	Hearing.	Electrical Stimulation of Skin.
0·186 to 0·222 sec.	0·115 to 0·182 sec.	0·117 to 0·201 sec.

The two figures given for each case are the extremes obtained in different series of observations.

The times vary according to the condition of the person that is the subject of the experiment. They are lengthened by fatigue; they are shortened up to a certain point by continued practice. Within limits also they are shortened by increase of the strength of the stimulus.

DILEMMA. When the subject has to make a deliberate choice between the parts of the body stimulated, the reaction time is considerably longer. To show this, the wires from the secondary coil are connected by a switch to two pairs of electrodes which are applied, one to the right and one to the left half of the body. It is agreed beforehand that the subject shall react only to stimulation, say, of the right side. The switch is removed from the observation of the subject and the stimulus is applied irregularly to one side or to the other. It is found that the additional neural processes involved in determining whether the stimulus is on the right side, and therefore should be followed up as agreed, adds considerably to the length of the reaction time (on an average ·006 sec.). It is possible to complicate the dilemma to almost any extent. Thus the experiment may be so arranged that either a red or a white disc appears and the subject has to react with the right hand to the red disc and with the left hand to the white disc. In such an experiment the reaction time was found to be be 0·154 sec. longer than the simple reaction time. A still more complex process would be involved in the experiment in which a word was spoken, and the subject had to speak some other word which had some association with the word which formed the stimulus, *e.g.* horse—mammal; paper—pen, &c. In such an experiment the reaction time was found to be as long as 0·7 to 0·8 sec.

We see that the recording of the time of occurrence of any physical event can occur only after a certain lost time, which represents the observer's reaction time for the stimulus in question. This applies however only to movements carried out in response to single stimuli or to stimuli repeated at irregular intervals. When the stimuli are rhythmic the lost time applies only to the first one or two of the stimuli. The observer or subject is conscious of the interval elapsing between the physical event and his reaction, and anticipates the later stimuli so that his reaction becomes synchronous with the stimulus. This synchronism of stimulus and reaction characterises all rhythmic movements, such as dancing or the playing of an orchestra in time with the beat of the conductor's bâton.

SECTION XVIII

THE NUTRITIVE AND VASCULAR ARRANGEMENT OF THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

THE brain and spinal cord are enclosed within three membranes or meninges, named from without inwards, the dura mater, the arachnoid membrane, and the pia mater. The dura mater consists of a strong fibrous membrane, smooth and lined with endothelial cells on its inner surface. In the head its outer surface is closely attached to the bones forming the cranium, of which it represents the periosteum. Strong fibrous partitions are sent from the dura mater into the cavity of the cranium to support the chief parts of the brain. One of these, the falx cerebri, supports the two cerebral hemispheres; a second, the tentorium cerebelli, forms a horizontal division between the cerebral hemispheres and the cerebrum; and a smaller one, the falx cerebelli, passes a short distance inwards between the cerebellar hemispheres. In the spinal canal the bones have their own periosteum, and the dura mater, which is closely attached round the margins of the magnus, forms a loose sheath round the spinal cord, being slung up in the vertebral canal by the tubular prolongations which it sends along each nerve root to form the outer sheath of the nerve. The dura mater in the cranium may be separated with greater or less difficulty into two layers, and between these two layers are found the venous sinuses, which receive the whole of the blood returned from the brain. These venous sinuses are angular clefts, the chief of which lie along the attached margin of the falx cerebri and the tentorium cerebelli. Most of the blood leaves the skull by the internal jugular veins. In the spinal cord the place of these venous sinuses is taken by a plexus of thin-walled veins, imbedded in fat, lying on the outside of the dura. Under the dura mater we find the subdural space, which is rather potential than actual. It can be regarded as a large lymph space and any contents are drained off into the lymph spaces of the nerve roots and adjoining tissues.

The arachnoid is a delicate transparent membrane which covers the whole of the brain and spinal cord. Superficially it presents a layer of endothelial cells which bound the subdural space. On its deep surface it is connected with the pia mater by fine fibres. It bridges over the inequalities in the surface of the brain so that in various localities a space is left which is filled with cerebro-spinal fluid and is known as the subarachnoid space. In certain situations it sends prolongations into the fissures of the brain. Thus a marked expansion passes by the transverse fissure between the cerebral hemispheres and the third ventricle, sending prolongations into the

lateral ventricles. This layer of connective tissue is covered on one surface by the ependyma of the ventricles, on the other surface by the ependyma forming the roof of the third ventricle. It carries a rich plexus of blood vessels known as the choroid plexus, and the ependyma covering the vascular fringes which dip into the cerebral ventricles consist of clear columnar or cubical cells, often spoken of as the epithelium of the choroid plexus. Similar vascular fringes are found in the roof of the fourth ventricle.

The pia mater is a layer of connective tissue which serves to carry the blood-supply to the whole surface of the brain. It is closely applied to the surface and follows all the irregularities of the latter, dipping down into the various fissures and crevices on the brain. In the spinal canal the pia mater sends out a series of processes on each side of the spinal cord, the *ligamentum denticulatum*, the outer extremities of which are attached to the dura mater and serve to sling the spinal cord in its dural sheath.

The brain is richly supplied with blood. Its chief supply is derived from the two carotids and the two vertebral arteries. The vertebrals unite on the lower surface of the bulb to form the basilar artery, which divides again at the anterior extremity of the pons varolii into two branches which unite with the two carotid arteries to form the circle of Willis, so that the pressure in this arterial circle can be maintained indifferently by any three out of the four arteries by which it is supplied. From these vessels three main arteries, the anterior, middle and posterior cerebral, pass up to supply the corresponding regions of the outer surface of the brain, while the inner parts of the brain, *e.g.* the corpus striatum, optic thalamus, &c, are supplied from arteries arising from the circle of Willis and passing straight into the substance of the brain. The connection between the vascular supply of the different parts of the brain is slight and effected only by the capillaries; hence obstruction of any one vessel, such as the middle cerebral, permanently cuts off the blood supply to the greater part of the area supplied by it and the result is death and softening of the brain substance. The arteries supplying the surface of the brain divide up into arterioles and capillaries within the pia mater, and the capillaries run into the brain substance surrounded by a so-called lymphatic sheath, which apparently communicates with the subarachnoid space.

In certain cases of disease these perivascular sheaths may be found to contain leucocytes often filled with products of disintegration of the nervous tissues.

THE CEREBRO-SPINAL FLUID

The subarachnoid space contains a thin transparent colourless fluid, known as the cerebro-spinal fluid. In composition this fluid resembles blood plasma minus its protein constituents. It contains a mere trace of coagulable proteins but it has the same molecular concentration as the blood plasma and its salts are identical with those of the blood plasma. It also contains other diffusible constituents of blood plasma, *e.g.* small traces of sugar and of urea. It may be collected by introducing a cannula through the

atlanto-occipital membrane into the ample subarachnoid space lying over the fourth ventricle. Another method is to introduce a glass cannula through a slit in the sheath of a nerve root up into the subarachnoid cavity of the spinal canal. In man it may be obtained in small quantities for examination by introducing a hollow needle directly into the spinal canal in the lumbar region between the laminæ of the vertebræ. On introducing a cannula into the subarachnoid space, the fluid may spurt out, showing that it is under a certain pressure (about 100 mm. H_2O). After the first rush the fluid begins to drop away, at first rapidly, but more slowly with lapse of time. If the fluid be allowed to drain off for some hours, signs of interference with the functions of the central nervous system are evinced. The cerebro-spinal fluid appears to be formed chiefly in the neighbourhood of the choroid plexus. Although its composition would suggest that it was merely a transudation from the blood, the amount formed does not seem to run parallel with the pressure in the capillaries of the brain. Moreover, it has been shown by Dixon and Halliburton that a considerable increase in the flow of cerebro-spinal fluid may be brought about by injecting an extract of the choroid plexus itself. It has therefore been concluded that this fluid is really a secretion by the modified ependyma cells covering the fringes of the choroid plexus.

Although the method of formation of the cerebro-spinal fluid is still not clear, there is no question that its removal from the subarachnoid space is brought about by simple physical factors. The subarachnoid space communicates with the ventricles by means of openings in the roof of the fourth ventricle. The pressure of the fluid is ordinarily about equal to the pressure in the venous sinuses of the cranium. If salt solution be injected into the subarachnoid space, it escapes with extreme ease, and it is found that its channel of escape is into the veins and especially into the venous sinuses of the dura mater. Its removal by these sinuses is facilitated by the existence of peculiar structures, known as the Pacchionian bodies. Each of these bodies is a bulbous protrusion of the arachnoid membrane into a blood sinus. It remains connected with the arachnoid by a narrow pedicle, through which a continuation of the sub-arachnoid space is prolonged into the interior of the sinus. It is therefore a little sac of arachnoid membrane separated from the blood stream only by an invagination of the endothelium lining the sinus. Filtration of the cerebro-spinal fluid will occur into the venous sinuses whenever the pressure of the fluid rises above that of the blood in the sinus. The fluid can also escape, but with greater difficulty, along the sheaths of the spinal nerve roots, by which it will pass into the lymphatics outside the spinal canal.

THE NUTRITION OF THE BRAIN

The grey matter of the brain is very richly supplied with blood vessels. Any interference with the blood flow through the brain rapidly checks the functions of the central nervous system in consequence of

deprivation of oxygen. Although so susceptible to slight deprivation of oxygen it does not seem that the brain tissues have a very rapid gaseous metabolism; that is, they need oxygen supply at high tension but do not deprive the blood of any very large amount of the oxygen which it contains. Nor does it seem probable that the brain requires a large supply of food material. It must be remembered that in all parts of the brain a peri-vascular lymphatic intervenes between the capillary and the brain tissue. Since these 'lymphatics' communicate with the subarachnoid space, they must contain a fluid which differs little if at all from the composition of the cerebro-spinal fluid obtained from the subarachnoid space. The nutrient fluid of the brain is therefore practically salt solution with a trace of sugar and possibly minute traces of amino acids.

Our study of the events which accompany the propagation of a nervous impulse down a nerve fibre has prepared us for the conclusion that very little energy is involved in ordinary nerve activity. It is true that extreme fatigue causes changes in the Nissl granules of the nerve cells and is therefore associated with the using up of some material constituent. But even though material changes in the nerve cells and in the synapses may be larger in amount than those in nerve fibres, they are probably not to be compared in extent with those taking place in a contracting muscle or in an active liver cell.

THE CEREBRAL CIRCULATION

In all higher animals the brain is enclosed in a rigid case formed by the bony cranium. In the child, before the cranial vault is fully ossified, part of this vault consists of membrane, known as the anterior fontanelle. It is easy to see that the fontanelle pulsates with each heart-beat as well as with rise of venous pressure, such as that produced during strong expiratory efforts. When ossification is complete, such alterations in the volume of the cranial contents are impossible. And yet the pressure in the arteries within the cranium must be still pulsatile, the rise of pressure at each heart-beat must make the arteries expand, but room for this expansion has to be found by contraction of some other part of the cranial contents. We find that each arterial beat is associated with a corresponding expulsion of some of the contents of the veins and a contraction of these vessels. If, for instance, a cannula be introduced through the occipital bone into the torcular Herophili, the venous blood is seen to pulsate and to be pressed out with each beat of the heart. If there is a rise of arterial pressure, although the arteries may expand somewhat at the expense of the veins, there can be no dilatation of the whole organ. The only effect of the rise of pressure will be to cause an increased pressure fall in the cranial vascular system, and therefore augmented velocity of flow through the system. A prolonged rise of pressure may cause a certain amount of dilatation of the vessels, but only at the expense of the cerebro-spinal fluid. Since this is only small in amount, any expansion of the brain due to vascular causes must be very limited.

BRAIN PRESSURE. If by means of a tréphine an opening be made into

the cranial vault, the brain bulges into the opening. By screwing a tube covered with a membrane into the trephine opening, we can find the pressure necessary to force the brain back to its previous position. This is known as the brain pressure, and is approximately equal, as might be expected, to the cerebro-spinal pressure and to the pressure in the venous sinuses. It is closely dependent on the latter. Forced expiratory efforts, such as may occur in the convulsions of strychnine poisoning, may raise the pressure from 30 to 50 mm. Hg. In the vertical position in man, the pressure may be slightly negative in consequence of the tendency of the venous blood to run downwards towards the heart.

REGULATION OF THE BLOOD SUPPLY TO THE BRAIN

No satisfactory evidence has been brought forward of the existence of vaso-motor nerves controlling the calibre of the cerebral blood vessels. Nor indeed are such nerves necessary. The brain, as the master tissue of the body, controls through the medullary centres the circulation through all other parts of the body. It is therefore able to regulate the blood supply through its arteries by allowing less or more blood to pass through other parts of the body. For the exercise of its normal functions it requires a certain blood supply, which again will depend simply on the pressure in the carotid arteries and circle of Willis. If this pressure fails, the functions of the brain are affected and loss of consciousness rapidly ensues. This is what occurs when a person who is weak from long illness faints on suddenly getting up from bed. In the normal individual the change in the circulation with alteration of bodily position, which would be produced by the action of gravity, is at once counteracted through the vaso-motor system. The splanchnic area is contracted or dilated according to the necessities of the case, but the pressure in the carotid and the circulation of the brain remains unaltered. Even when the heart in consequence of disease is scarcely able to carry on the circulation, the arterial pressure undergoes little or no alteration. Any other tissue of the body, even the heart itself, may suffer, but the brain at all costs must receive its proper supply of blood.

SECTION XIX

THE VISCERAL OR AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM

In the medulla oblongata it is easy to differentiate the central grey matter connected with the peripheral nerves into two categories, viz. splanchnic and somatic. Each of these two sets of nerves possesses both afferent and efferent fibres. Gaskell has suggested that the same arrangement would hold for any typical segmental nerve, which would therefore have four roots, viz. two somatic—the motor and sensory roots distributed to the skin and skeletal muscles—and two splanchnic roots, also motor and sensory, and composed of small fibres distributed to the viscera or structures which are visceral in origin (*e.g.* developed from the branchial arches). In the medulla the somatic efferent fibres, such as the sixth and twelfth nerves, arise from the column of large cells lying in the floor of the fourth ventricle close to the middle line. The splanchnic fibres, *e.g.* those of the facial and vago-glosso-pharyngeal nerves, arise from a column of cells—the nucleus ambiguus and facial nucleus, lying more laterally and deeper, below the surface of the ventricle. The motor root of the fifth would also belong to the same system. In the spinal cord the visceral fibres arise in the cells of the lateral horn, *i.e.* from a situation corresponding to the splanchnic motor nuclei of the pons and medulla. Whereas however the splanchnic afferent nerves, such as the glossopharyngeal, and perhaps the sensory nucleus of the fifth, form a well-marked splanchnic system of nuclei in the medulla, in the cord the afferent fibres from the viscera pass in with the other afferent somatic fibres, and their immediate connections in the cord are as yet unknown.

The autonomic system of nerves include the sympathetic system (properly so called) and some of the cranial and sacral nerves. The sympathetic system (Fig. 237) is composed of a chain of ganglia lying each side of the vertebral column, there being as a rule one ganglion to each spinal nerve root. In the cervical region these ganglia are condensed into two, the superior and inferior cervical ganglia, united by the cervical sympathetic trunk; and the upper three or four thoracic ganglia on each side are condensed to form the 'stellate' ganglion. At the bottom of the chain there is only one coccygeal ganglion for the coccygeal vertebræ.

In the abdomen is a second system of ganglia, in special connection with the abdominal viscera, lying in front of the aorta and surrounding the origins of the large arteries to the alimentary canal. These are the semi-lunar or solar ganglia, the superior mesenteric and the inferior mesenteric ganglia.

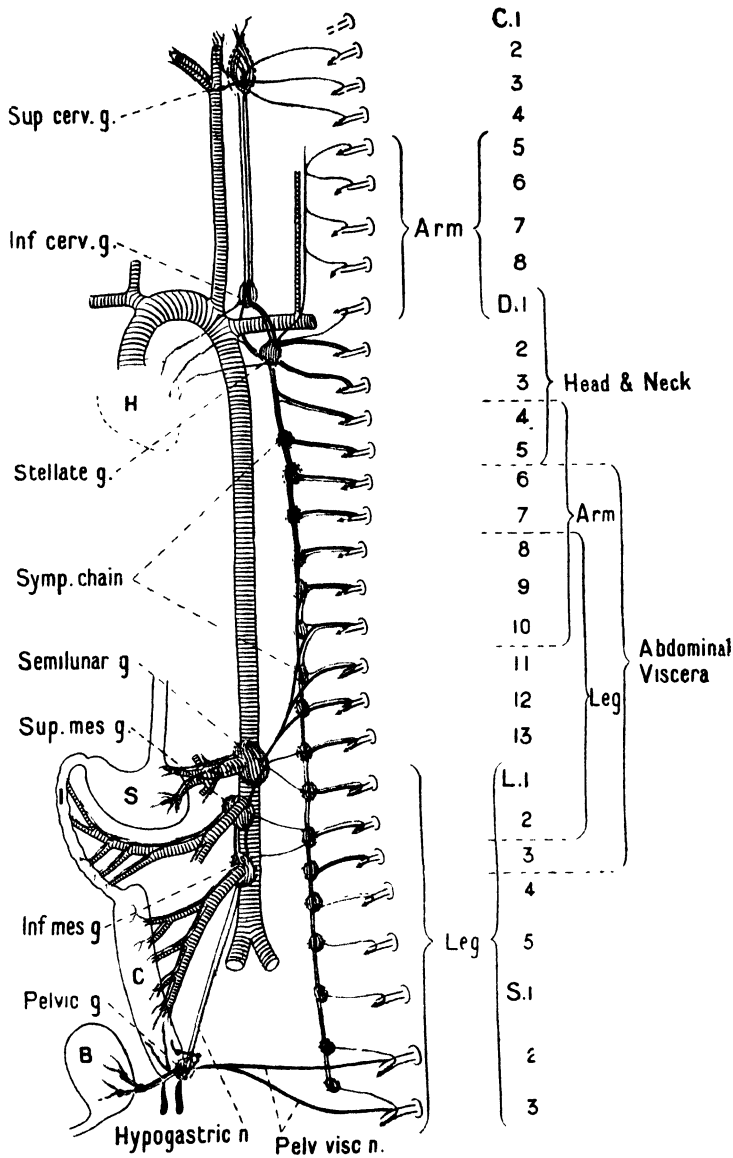


FIG. 237. Diagrammatic representation of the distribution of the sympathetic system. The black lines represent the medullated pre-ganglionic fibres, such as those making up the white rami communicantes, while the post-ganglionic fibres are printed in red. On the extreme right of the figure is indicated the general distribution of the white rami arising from the several nerve roots, while the double brackets point to the nerve roots making up the limb plexuses. H, heart; S, stomach, I, small intestine; C, colon; B, bladder.

In the organs themselves we find a third system of ganglion cells, either scattered or collected to form small ganglia. These isolated ganglion cells as a rule have no connection with the fibres of the sympathetic system, but, as we shall see later, lie on the course of the impulses descending by other nerves of the autonomic system, *e.g.* the vagus or the pelvic visceral nerves. The three systems of ganglia have been distinguished as the *lateral, collateral,* and *terminal* ganglia.

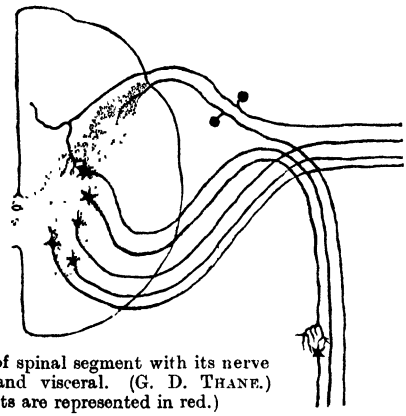


FIG. 238. Diagram of spinal segment with its nerve roots, somatic and visceral. (G. D. THANE.) (The visceral roots are represented in red.)

The ganglia of the sympathetic chain are connected with all the spinal nerves, just after they have given off their posterior divisions, by means of the *rami communicantes.* These rami communicantes are of two kinds: white rami consisting of small medullated fibres, and grey rami composed almost exclusively of non-medullated nerves. It has been shown by Gaskell that the white rami are formed by fibres which have their origin in the spinal cord and perhaps in the posterior root ganglia; whereas the grey rami represent fibres which, arising in the sympathetic ganglia, run back to join the spinal nerves. The visceral outflow represented by the white rami is limited to a distinct region of the cord, viz. from the first thoracic to the third or fourth lumbar nerve roots; whereas the grey rami pass from the sympathetic to all the spinal nerve roots. It is found by experiment that stimulation of a limited number of white rami produces all the effects that can be evoked by stimulation of the grey rami, showing that the impulses leaving the cord pass upwards and downwards in the sympathetic system and are broken somewhere in their course, being transferred to a fresh relay which, by means of non-medullated nerves, carries them on to their destination.

Finally, in certain organs of the body are to be found sheets of nerve structures, including both ganglion cells and fibres, which must be regarded as local nerve centres, capable of carrying out co-ordinated acts in response to stimuli, independently of the central nervous system. It seems probable that these systems are to be regarded as analogous rather to the diffuse neurofibrillar system of an animal, such as the medusa, than to the synaptic nervous structures characteristic of the central nervous system of vertebrates.

In the latter the direction and effect of any impulses are determined by the synapses intervening between various systems of neurons and allowing the passage of the impulse only in one direction. This law of forward direction has not been proved to hold good for the primitive nerve systems; an impulse apparently spreads equally well in either direction. As a type of this peripheral diffuse nerve system may be cited the Auerbach's and Meissner's plexuses in the wall of alimentary canal. How far we are to regard the nerve nets in other viscera, such as the heart and the bladder, as conforming to this type is still a moot point, and will be discussed in dealing with the origin of the heart beat.

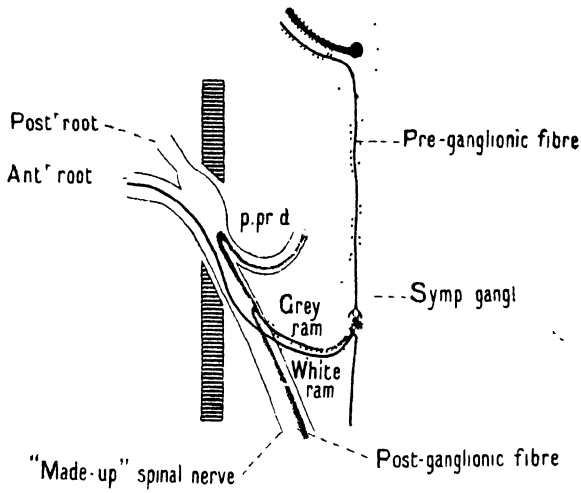


FIG 239. Diagram (after LANGLEY) to show the manner in which a spinal nerve is completed by the entry of a grey ramus, containing fibres derived from cells in the sympathetic chain

p.pr d, posterior primary division. (The post-ganglionic fibres are represented red.)

The relationships of the white and grey rami are strikingly illustrated in the case of the pilomotor systems of nerves. These in the cat arise from the cord by the anterior roots from the fourth thoracic to the third lumbar inclusive. Passing by the white rami to the sympathetic system, they travel upwards and downwards and end by arborisations in the various ganglia of the main chain. From the cells of each ganglion a fresh relay of fibres starts, which runs as a bundle of non-medullated nerves (the grey ramus) to the corresponding spinal nerve, with which it is distributed to its peripheral destination. Each grey ramus causes erection of the hairs above one vertebra, whereas stimulation of one white ramus causes erection over three or four vertebræ, showing a distribution of the fibres of the white ramus to the cells in several successive ganglia.

These pilomotor fibres in the cat have the following distribution:

(1) For the head and upper part of the neck the fibres arise by the fourth

to the seventh thoracic anterior roots, and have their cell stations in the superior cervical ganglion. They travel as small medullated nerve fibres from the white rami up the sympathetic chain, through the stellate ganglion and ansa Vieussenii and up the cervical sympathetic.

(2) The next set of nerve fibres have their cell station in the stellate ganglion. The white rami arise from the fifth to the eighth thoracic nerves, while the grey rami pass to the nerve roots from the third cervical nerve to the fourth thoracic nerve.

(3) The remaining nerves, supplying all the rest of the body and tail, arise by the white rami from the seventh thoracic to the third or fourth lumbar nerve, and are distributed as grey rami to all the spinal nerves below the fourth thoracic.

We thus see that, in speaking of the functions of a spinal nerve root, we must clearly distinguish whether we mean the root as it arises from the spinal cord, in which case its visceral functions will include those of its white ramus, or whether we mean the made-up or complete spinal nerve after it has received its grey ramus (Fig. 239). In the latter case the visceral functions of the root will be more restricted than in the former case, and will have a different distribution. In stimulating the nerve roots in the spinal canal it is sometimes possible, by weak stimuli, to display the functions of the corresponding white ramus, and then by increasing the stimulus to get superadded the effects due to the excitation of the grey ramus in the made-up nerve, in consequence of the spread of current.

"When, for example, the eleventh thoracic anterior roots are stimulated in the spinal canal with weak shocks, a fairly long strip of hairs in the lumbar region will be erected, the maximum movement of the hairs being near the middle of the strip. This marks the area of distribution of the pilomotor nerves given by the eleventh thoracic nerve to the sympathetic. If then the strength of the shock be increased to a certain point, the hairs in the long strip will of course be erected as before, but in addition there will be energetic erection of hairs in a short strip a little distance above the long strip, and separated from it by a quiescent region. This short strip is the same as that affected by stimulating the grey ramus or the dorsal cutaneous branch of the eleventh thoracic nerve. It marks the area of distribution of the pilomotor fibres received by the spinal nerve from the sympathetic." (LANGLEY.)

We may now indicate briefly the main course and functions of the fibres of the sympathetic system.

(1) The head and neck are supplied by fibres leaving the spinal cord by the first five dorsal nerves (chiefly by the second and third). They all have their cell station in the superior cervical ganglion. They convey:

Vaso-constrictor impulses to the blood vessels.

Dilator fibres to the pupil.

Secretory fibres to the salivary glands and sweat glands.

Vaso-dilator fibres to the lower lip and pharynx (?).

(2) The *thoracic viscera* (heart and lungs) are supplied by the same five nerve roots. The cell station of these fibres is however situated in the stellate ganglion. They convey:

Accelerator or augmentor impulses to the heart.

(3) The *abdominal viscera* receive fibres from the lower six dorsal nerves and the upper three or four lumbar. Most of these fibres run through the sympathetic chain without making any connection with the ganglia, and have their cell stations in the collateral ganglia of the solar plexus, the semi-lunar and superior mesenteric ganglia. On their way to these ganglia they form the greater and lesser splanchnic nerves. Their functions are:

Vaso-constrictor for stomach and small intestine, kidney, and spleen.

Probably vaso-dilator for the same viscera.

Inhibitory for both muscular coats of stomach and small intestine.

Motor for ileocolic sphincter.

(4) The *pelvic viscera* are supplied by the lower dorsal and upper three or four lumbar nerve roots. These fibres also pass by the main chain to

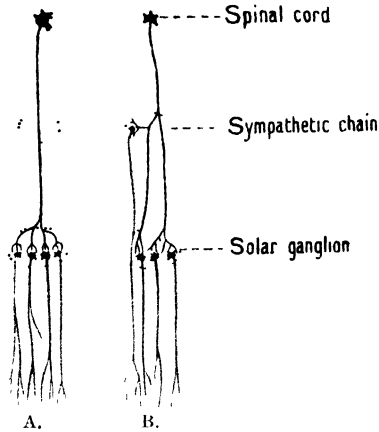


FIG. 240. Figure (after LANGLEY) to show the probable mode of connection of the fibres of the splanchnic nerve with nerve-cells.

A, usual type, all the fibres passing through the lateral chain to end in the collateral ganglia of the solar plexus; B, alternative condition, in which a small minority of the fibres have their cell-stations in the sympathetic chain. The pre-ganglionic fibres are black, the post-ganglionic red.

make connections with the cells, chiefly in the inferior mesenteric ganglia. They convey:

Vaso-constrictor impulses to pelvic viscera.

Inhibitory fibres to colon (both coats).

Motor and also inhibitory fibres to bladder.

Motor fibres to retractor penis.

Motor and inhibitory fibres to uterus and vagina.

(5) The fore limb receives nerves from the white rami of the fourth to the tenth thoracic nerves. All these fibres are connected with cells in the stellate ganglion. They convey:

Vaso-constrictor impulses to the blood vessels.

Secretory nerves to the sweat glands.

(6) The hind limb is supplied by the nerve roots from the eleventh thoracic to the third lumbar inclusive. The cell stations of these fibres

are situated in the sixth and seventh lumbar and first sacral ganglia. They convey:

Vaso-constrictor impulses.

Secretory nerves to the sweat glands.

Every fibre of the sympathetic system is thus in some point of its course interrupted by a nerve cell, and Langley has shown that this is the only cell-break in the fibre. This applies not only to the sympathetic fibres but also to the fibres of the other visceral nerves. Each fibre therefore can be regarded as made up of two sections—a pre-ganglionic fibre arising in the central nervous system and passing down to a ganglion as a fine medullated nerve fibre, and a post-ganglionic fibre arising in this ganglion and continued generally as a non-medullated fibre to its peripheral distribution.

This transference from one system to another involves the passage across a synapse and a nerve cell. The situation of this nerve cell may be easily revealed by utilising the action of nicotine, first studied by Langley. If nicotine be applied to a sympathetic ganglion, it first stimulates and then paralyses any junction between axon termination and nerve cell which may lie in the ganglion. Intravenous injection of nicotine therefore causes a primary general excitation of all visceral ganglion cells. There is an enormous rise of blood pressure, which may be accompanied by other sympathetic effects, such as dilatation of the pupil, secretion of saliva, erection of the hairs, and so on. This rise rapidly passes off, and it is then found impossible to evoke any reflex visceral effects or any contraction, *e.g.* of the blood vessels, by stimulation of the spinal cord; the passage of the impulses is blocked in every one of the visceral ganglia. By observing the effects of stimulation of a nerve before it enters a ganglion and then painting the ganglion with nicotine and again trying the effects of excitation, it is easy to determine whether the nerve fibres which were excited in the first case form any connections with the nerve cells of the ganglion. In the strength in which it is usually applied nicotine is without effect on nerve fibres.

THE CRANIAL AUTONOMIC FIBRES

In the course of development the greater part of the fibres of the facial nerve have lost their special visceral functions and have the aspect and functions of ordinary somatic fibres. Visceral fibres are contained in the following cranial nerves—the third, seventh, ninth, tenth, and eleventh.

Third nerve. The visceral fibres of this nerve pass to the ciliary ganglion in the orbit where they end; the post-ganglionic fibres from this ganglion form the short ciliary nerves which innervate the sphincter pupillæ and the ciliary muscles.

Seventh nerve. The autonomic fibres of the facial arise from the medulla in the intermediate nerve of Wrisberg, which is practically the anterior continuation of the ninth, tenth, and eleventh nerves. From the seventh nerve is derived the chorda tympani nerve, which supplies vaso-dilator nerves

to the tongue, the submaxillary and sublingual glands, and secretory fibres to these glands.

The cell stations of these nerves lie peripherally, those of the sublingual gland in the so-called submaxillary ganglion; those of the submaxillary gland in the hilus of this organ. It is probable that the seventh sends also pre-ganglionic visceral fibres to the spheno-palatine ganglion, whence a fresh relay of fibres—post-ganglionic—run with the branches of the fifth nerve, to supply secretory fibres and possibly vaso-dilator fibres to the mucous membrane of the nose, soft palate, and upper part of the pharynx. The glossopharyngeal or ninth nerve sends fibres, which evoke secretion as well as vaso-dilatation in the parotid gland, viâ the otic ganglion. Probably also dilator fibres leave this nerve to supply vessels at the back of the tongue.

THE VAGUS

The efferent visceral fibres of the tenth and eleventh nerves arise in the same column of cells as the two nerves just considered. Most of the fibres run in the vagus. They include motor fibres to the œsophagus, stomach, and small intestines as far as the ileocolic sphincter; inhibitory fibres to the heart; motor fibres to the unstriated muscles of the bronchi; and secretory fibres to the gastric glands. The cell stations of these fibres are apparently situated peripherally, the jugular ganglion and the ganglion of the trunk of the vagus being in all likelihood responsible only for the afferent fibres in this nerve. Nicotine therefore abolishes any effect of stimulating the vagus in the neck, though inhibition of the heart can still be produced on excitation of the post-ganglionic fibres arising from the cells in the sinus venosus.

SACRAL AUTONOMIC FIBRES

These all run in the pelvic visceral nerve, also called *nervus erigens*. This nerve is connected with a collection of ganglia lying in the hypogastric plexus at the base of the bladder. It has the following functions:

Dilator to vessels of the penis (hence its name of nervus erigens).

Motor to bladder, colon, and rectum.

Inhibitory to sphincter muscle of bladder.

Inhibitory to retractor penis.

It will be observed that in many cases the viscera get their nerve-supply from both sets of visceral nerves, and that in such cases the two sets of nerves are antagonistic in function. It is impossible however to draw a sharp line between the functions of the two sets, since the same nerve may be motor for one set of muscular fibres and inhibitory for another set in the same viscus. Thus the colonic branches of the inferior mesenteric ganglion are motor (constrictor) for the blood vessels and inhibitory for the muscular walls of the colon. While the sympathetic nerve supply is inhibitory for nearly the whole intestinal muscles, it produces strong contraction of the band of muscle forming the ileocolic sphincter. In the bladder there is no doubt that the sympathetic supply includes both inhibitory and motor fibres, the predominating effect on excitation of the nerve varying from one species of animal to another.

FUNCTIONS OF THE SYMPATHETIC AND PERIPHERAL GANGLIA

These ganglia consist of a mass of nerve cells embedded in connective tissue, each cell being surrounded by a special capsule of endothelial cells. The nerve cells, though in section resembling those in a posterior root ganglion, differ from these in being multipolar, each cell probably possessing one axon and several dendrites. The dendrites end in little arborisations round adjacent cells.

Since the main nervous system is characterised by the possession of nerve cells, it was formerly thought that any collection of nerve cells must partake of the co-ordinating and reflex functions of the central nervous system, *i.e.* must act as local nervous centres. All efforts have failed however to prove the existence of such a function, and we must conclude that the sole use of these ganglia is to serve as distributing centres. We may assume that one pre-ganglionic fibre divides, and the branches arborise round several cells (Fig. 240), whence new fibres arise to carry the impulse to the periphery —an impulse in the case of which there is no need for any minute localisation. Indeed the essential part of a nerve centre is not the nerve cells at all, but the presence of a complex tangle of fibres, rendering possible the passage of impulses in all directions, the passage of an individual impulse being limited by reason of the varying strength of the impulse and the varying resistance of the many possible tracts. In many invertebrata the nervous system consists of a punctated material composed of a dense interlacement of fibrils, while the cells lie outside the centres and have one thick process dipping into the nervous mass, from which process both axon and dendrites arise. In this case, as we have seen, extirpation of the cell bodies does not destroy the capacity of the remaining fibrillar substance to act as a reflex centre. Such a complex of fibres is found in mammals in the plexuses of Auerbach and Meissner, which act as local nerve centres for the intestine. But all such mechanism is wanting in the sympathetic ganglia, which contain neither association fibres between different cells of a ganglion nor commissural fibres between the cells of adjacent ganglia. All the fibres in a sympathetic ganglion have either entered it from the white rami or are destined to leave it as fibres of grey rami.

Several reflexes formerly described in peripheral ganglia, as, *e.g.* the 'submaxillary' ganglion, have been proved to be fallacious. There is however a certain group of phenomena which can be elicited in sympathetic ganglia, and which have been termed by Langley and Anderson pseudo-reflexes or, better, *axon reflexes*. If, for instance, we divide all the nerves going to the inferior mesenteric ganglion, leaving the bladder connected with the inferior mesenteric ganglion only by the hypogastric nerves, and then after dividing the left nerve stimulate its central end, we obtain a contraction of the right half of the bladder. This effect is abolished by painting the inferior mesenteric ganglion with nicotine, showing that the activity of the cells of this ganglion is involved in the process. It has been

shown however by Langley and Anderson that this is not a true reflex, but is rather analogous to Kühne's gracilis experiment (*cf.* p. 255). A pre-ganglionic fibre arriving at the inferior mesenteric ganglion branches, one branch ending round the cells of the ganglion, while the other branch passes down in the left hypogastric nerve to a cell situated near the base of the bladder (Fig. 241). When therefore we stimulate this nerve we are stimula-

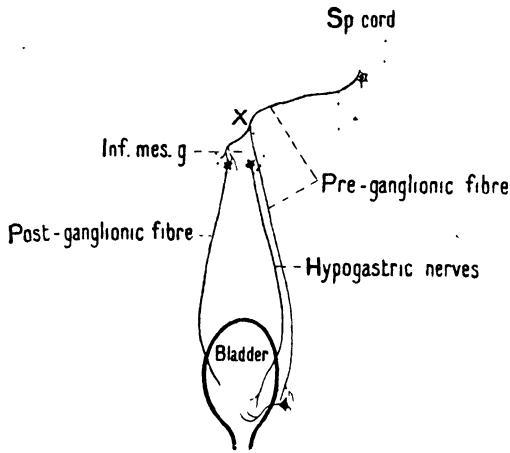


FIG. 241. Diagram to illustrate Langley and Anderson's explanation of the hypogastric reflex as an axon reflex.
The division of the axon where the propagation or 'reflexion' takes place is at **X**.

ting a pre-ganglionic fibre, and the excitation spreads up to the point of junction of the two branches and then down the other branch to excite the cell in the inferior mesenteric ganglion. We thus obtain an apparent motor reflex by stimulation of a nerve which is itself motor. Similar pseudo-reflexes can be obtained along the abdominal chain on the pilomotor nerves, but furnish no grounds for ascribing the property of reflex centres to peripheral ganglia. On the other hand, these axon reflexes are very similar to the spread of the excitatory process which occurs in the diffuse nerve network of an animal such as the medusa. Irreciprocity of conduction would seem therefore to be the most useful criterion of a true reflex.

INHIBITION IN PERIPHERAL GANGLIA

The existence of ganglion cells in the course of the nerves to visceral muscles has often been supposed to account for certain peculiarities in the innervation of visceral, as compared with skeletal, muscle. Chief among the differences between these two kinds of muscles is the frequency with which inhibition may be brought about in visceral muscle by stimulation of peripheral efferent nerves. In skeletal muscle inhibition is known only as the result of alteration of the activity of the motor centres from which it is supplied. It has therefore been thought that the peripheral ganglia of visceral muscle play the part of the motor spinal centres of skeletal muscle, and that when we excite an inhibitory nerve, say to the intestine, we are interfering with and diminishing

a tonic state of activity which has its seat in a peripheral ganglion cell connected with the visceral muscle.

This view, which was first put forward by Claude Bernard, has been specially defended by Dastre and Morat. These observers point out that vaso-dilator action diminishes or disappears as nerve strands are stimulated more and more peripherally, and conclude that the vaso-dilator fibres run to the sympathetic ganglion and inhibit their tonic action. The untenability of this view has been demonstrated by Langley. Thus the chorda tympani fibres run to a local nerve 'centre' in the hilum of the submaxillary gland. On Bernard's theory stimulation of the fibres peripherally to the centre should cause contraction of the arteries; but it is found that, after paralysis of the ganglion by nicotine, stimulation of the post-ganglionic fibres causes dilatation, so that the nerve fibres given off from the local centre are not vaso-constrictor but vaso-dilator. Moreover it can be shown that the sympathetic fibres which do cause constriction make no connection with the cells in the hilum of the gland, but run on the walls of the arteries to their distribution. These fibres are connected, not with cells of the submaxillary ganglion (the local nerve centre), but with cells in the superior cervical ganglion.

We must conclude that the inhibitory nerves in these visceral structures exert their influence directly on the peripheral tissue, and not by a diminution of activity of a tonically acting peripheral centre.

AFFERENT FIBRES AND THE AUTONOMIC SYSTEM

(Referred Pain)

The supply of afferent fibres to the viscera is very small in proportion to the supply to the outer surfaces of the body. According to Langley, in a visceral nerve, such as the hypogastric, only about one-tenth of the medullated fibres are afferent, and the proportion of afferent fibres in the splanchnic nerves is probably not very different from this. At the two ends of the alimentary canal, *i.e.* at the mouth and anus, the afferent visceral fibres become of more importance, since through their means co-operative somatic reflexes have to be excited as well as the simple visceral reflexes. Thus in the pelvic visceral nerve about one-third of the fibres are afferent, and the vagi contain a large number of afferent fibres from the lungs as well as from the other viscera innervated by it.

According to Dogiel, afferent visceral fibres arise from sensory cells of the sympathetic ganglia and, passing in to the posterior spinal ganglia, divide and form pericellular endings round a special type of posterior root cells, the axon from which divides again into a number of branches which end in connection with typical unipolar cells. Thus, according to this observer, a few afferent sympathetic fibres can stimulate a considerable number of posterior root cells. Langley however has not been able to obtain any experimental confirmation of the origin of branching afferent fibres from cells of the sympathetic system.

It is probable that the afferent fibres of the visceral nerves arise, like those of the somatic system, from ganglion cells of the posterior spinal ganglia. Every white ramus contains afferent fibres, stimulation of which may evoke a rise of blood pressure as well as movements of the skeletal muscles. In spite of the supply of afferent fibres to the viscera, most of these organs are very insensitive to ordinary stimulation such as handling or cutting. In operations on man for resection of the gut, if the abdominal cavity

be opened under local or general anæsthesia, subsequent cutting and suturing of the gut may be conducted without any anæsthetic and without causing any pain to the patient. On the other hand, impulses may arise in the afferent nerve-endings of the viscera, as a result of disease or certain forms of stimulation, *e.g.* stretching or compression, which may reach consciousness and give rise to the sensation of pain. This pain is not localised in the viscera, but is referred to certain parts of the surface of the body. When the afferent autonomic fibres of a nerve are the seat of pain, the primary referred pain is in the area of the cutaneous somatic fibres of the nerve. It has been shown by Mackenzie and by Head that visceral disease may cause hyper-sensitivity of the corresponding areas of the skin, and a method has been elaborated by these observers for utilising this referred pain or skin tenderness as a means of localising the site of the disease.

CHAPTER VIII

THE SENSE ORGANS

	PAGES
PART 1.—Introduction	478
PART 2.—Vision	486
PART 3.—Hearing	595
PART 4.—Speech and voice	618
PART 5.—Cutaneous sensations	627
PART 6.—Taste and smell	640
PART 7.—Movement and position sense	647
PART 8.—Labyrinth sense	652

PART I

INTRODUCTION

THE ability to originate sensations is common to almost all parts of the body. Thus the muscles, joints and viscera send nerve impulses to the brain, which record their well-being and activities. We can classify the sense organs into two main groups, those which belong to the common sensibility of the body, and those which form the special senses. The characteristics of the former are (1) that they rarely send impulses, other than those of pain, which pass the threshold of consciousness; (2) that they play a very large part in the initiation of the numerous reflex actions; (3) that when their impulses do reach consciousness they lack definition. The characteristics of the special senses on the other hand are (1) that they very frequently send impulses which reach consciousness; (2) that the connection between the stimulus and the resulting response on the part of the individual (as expressed by movements of limbs, etc.) is usually not of a reflex nature; (3) that the information supplied to consciousness is very definite both as to quality and intensity.

The indefiniteness of the connection between stimulus and response causes us to depend almost entirely on introspection in our study of the sense-organs. But introspection as a method of research has grave disadvantages, for we cannot measure our sensations in terms of physical units. We cannot say how red a rose is or how nice it smells. Neither can we compare the intensity of a beam of light when we feel its warmth on our skin with the strength of the stimulus which we receive when it enters our eye. Still less can we judge accurately of the sensations evoked in other individuals or animals when we apply stimuli to them. Because of this difficulty

of measuring sensations two methods of investigation have been developed which to a great extent avoid it, namely the *method of threshold values* and the *method of comparisons.*

In the method of threshold values gradually increasing stimuli are applied to the sense organ under investigation, until a sensation is just perceived. Thus increasing weights are applied to the skin until their pressure is felt, or a light of increasing intensity is presented to the eye until its presence is seen. Such threshold values give definite information concerning the sense organ to which they refer, and allow us to compare the same effects in one and the same sense organ under different conditions, and also in different individuals.

In the method of comparisons two separate stimuli are applied, and one or both are varied until the sensations caused by them are equal. Thus a ray of yellow light may be compared with a ray mixed from red and green light, and the intensities of the two adjusted until the sensations caused by both are similar. Both these methods give concordant results if care be taken to make the conditions standard, and both are for this reason largely used for studying the sense organs.

A careful study of these organs is necessary and important because it is only through their agency that we derive information about ourselves, one another, and the world in which we live. The limitations of our sense organs therefore restrict our knowledge of the many transformations of energy that are going on around us, except in so far as we are able to devise means of extending them artificially. Thus our knowledge of the existence of ultra-violet light began only with the discovery of photography. Wireless waves circulated through the ether around unknown to us before the invention of the coherer.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENSE ORGANS. Sense organs differ in their anatomical position and structure and also according to the nature of the stimulus to which they react and the kind of sensation which they cause. Any of these differences might be used as a basis of classification, but the latter is found to be the best.

Structure.	Kind of Sensation	
Skin	Touch, Pain, Heat, Cold	Feeling
Eye	Light, Colour, Shape, Distance	Sight
Ear	Tone, Harmony, Position	Hearing
Tongue	Acid, Sweet, Bitter	Taste
Nose	Smell	

Stimuli adequate for one sense organ are found to be inadequate for

another. Thus sound applied to the ear is adequate but to the eye is not.

The sense organs appear to be elaborated from a very simple type, and the higher they are developmentally the more is one kind of stimulus adequate and the less are all others.

Thus the end organs in the cornea react alike by a sensation of pain to touch, electricity, heat, inflammation, &c., while the ear reacts to sound waves only. This specific property of the end organs is also attended by an increase in the strength of response to the chosen stimulus. Thus the retina of the eye can be stimulated mechanically and electrically, but has its greatest sensitiveness to light. It is estimated that the eye is 30,000 times as sensitive to light as any instrument that has been so far constructed. This specialisation of the end organs makes the information which we obtain from them more detailed and complete, but at the same time sets a limitation to the range of stimulus to which each can respond. Thus a pain end organ can react alike to heat rays, visible rays and ultra-violet rays, while the retina of the eye responds to visible rays only.

THE LAW OF SPECIFIC IRRITABILITY. A very little consideration suffices to show that there is no resemblance between a sensation and the stimulus, and that one and the same physical event applied to different sense organs will evoke absolutely distinct sensations; while different modes of stimuli applied to one sense organ will always evoke the same sensation. Thus if light falls on the retina it causes a sensation of light. If the same radiant energy, consisting of transverse vibrations in the ether, be allowed to fall on the skin, it either produces no sensation at all or, if concentrated by means of a burning-glass, may give rise to a sensation of warmth, heat, or pain. If we take a tuning-fork which is vibrating 100 times per second and apply it to the surface of the skin, we get simply a sensation of vibration, *i.e.* a series of tactile impressions repeated at rapid intervals. If the same tuning-fork be applied to the head, its vibrations are imparted to the bones of the skull and thence to the auditory nerve endings and arouse in our consciousness a tone sensation of a certain note. The same thing happens if the vibrations of the tuning-fork are conducted by the ear to the auditory nerve endings in the ordinary way through the external and middle ear. On the other hand, a sensation of light may be aroused not only by the incidence of radiant energy of a certain wave length on the retina, but also by electrical or mechanical stimulation of the retina. If the eye be turned inwards and the finger be pressed on the eye through the outer canthus of the lids, a sensation of light is aroused and we see a coloured circle which we refer to some spot lying to the nasal side of the eye stimulated. The character of the sensation bears therefore no resemblance to the physical events by which the sensation is evoked, but depends entirely on the nature of the sense organ which is stimulated. A sensation of light may be produced by any stimulation of the retina, or of the optic nerve, or of the terminations of the optic nerve in the brain. In the same way stimulation of an auditory nerve or its intracranial endings gives rise to sensations of sound.

Where the question has been investigated it has not been found possible

to evoke different qualities of sensation by different modes of stimulation of nerve fibres, and it has therefore been concluded that the quality of any sensation depends simply and solely on the termination of these nerves in the central nervous system, and that where sensations of different quality are produced there must be also difference of nerve fibres. This idea was formulated by Müller, and is often alluded to as Müller's 'law of specific irritability.' The law states that every sensory nerve reacts to one form of stimulus and gives rise to one form of sensation only, though if under abnormal conditions it be excited by other forms of stimuli, the sensation evoked will still be the same.

Although the different forms of sensation must be regarded as dependent on the integrity of the brain, and of its connections with the peripheral sense organs, sensations are not referred to the brain, but are localised as proceeding from some part of the body or from some region outside of the body. Thus the sensation of taste is always localised in the mouth; sensation of touch at the skin or surface of the body; while the sensations of hearing and of sight are 'projected,' *i.e.* are interpreted as coming from the environment outside ourselves. Even the organic sensations of posture or fatigue are referred to the peripheral reacting parts of the body and not to the central nervous system. A sensation therefore cannot be interpreted as a reproduction of external events, but as a *symbol* of these events evoked by stimulation of the sense organs of the body.

CONSCIOUSNESS. How the physiological excitatory process in nerve fibres, with its concomitant chemical and electrical phenomena, is able on arrival at the brain to excite a conscious sensation we are unable to decide, or even to discuss, since we are dealing here with processes of two different orders. We should not arrive any nearer to the solution of this riddle if we were able to follow out the whole of the events occurring in the body as the result of the application of any given stimulus to its surface. We might under these circumstances be able to predict with certainty the behaviour of any animal, if we knew its past history and the comparative resistance of every path in its central nervous system which might possibly be traversed by any given nerve impulse. Such knowledge would be purely objective and could not be used to explain the 'epiphenomenon' of consciousness. One might in fact imagine a machine which would react like a living animal, but would be perfectly devoid of self-consciousness, and we should be unable in such a case to decide whether consciousness were or were not present. Each one of us only knows consciousness as it exists in himself.

It is indeed impossible by a purely intuitive study of sensations to arrive at any correct idea of their origin or of the factors concerned in their production. No sensation is the immediate and sole product of a stimulus applied to the peripheral end of a nerve fibre, but the simplest sensation involves a judgment, *i.e.* complex neural activities which are the resultant of innumerable past and present streams of nervous impulses aroused by peripheral events and poured into the central nervous system. It is important therefore not to regard a sensation as in any way constituting an elementary

unit, by the aggregation of a number of which a conscious state is produced. As we have seen, the primitive function of the whole nervous system is reaction. The neural life of an animal is composed of a series of reactions, some simple, some complex, and becoming ever more complicated as we ascend the animal scale. The first reactions of a baby, for instance, will be those by which it procures nourishment and satisfies a need. The earliest event in its dawning consciousness will be, not a sensation of sweetness or of colour, but that of a *thing* which can satisfy its needs. It will have had to try many gustatory experiments before, out of the sum of its material experiences, it will be able to choose a number of like factors which can be grouped together as ' sweet.' Judgment of quality of sensation involves a power of abstraction and of classifying similar elements in different neural events or reactions and the referring of these elements to the external world. It is very difficult however to divest ourselves of the mental standpoint reached as the result of many years' continual trials, successes and failures, and constant care has to be exercised if we are not to fall into the common conception of the *ego*, the personality or soul, as a sort of sentient god sitting somewhere in the brain or, as Descartes suggested, in the pineal gland, and receiving by means of one part or other of his servile material brain a blue sensation from the eyes, or an auditory impression, or a tactile impression, and then, if he feels so inclined, pressing the stop in a pyramidal cell to let out a voluntary motor response. An elementary unit in psychical life, as in neural life, must be a complete reaction. It is from the reaction and not from the sensation that a constructive psychology will have to be built up.

RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN STIMULUS AND SENSATION. Although the sensation is not a reproduction of the stimulus, it is a symbol of the stimulus, and can be used to inform us of events occurring in the world around. Like stimuli, falling on the same end-organ, always evoke like sensations, other conditions being equal. An orderly sequence of sensations may therefore be interpreted as indicating a corresponding orderly sequence of physical occurrences in the world around us. Since our sensations are merely symbols of the physical conditions which give rise to them, it is important to inquire how far they correspond *quantitatively* to differences in the energy of the afferent stimuli, *i.e.* how alterations in the strength of stimulus will affect the intensity of the resulting sensation. Whatever form of stimulus be applied and whatever sense organs be affected, a certain minimum intensity of stimulus is necessary for it to be effective, *i.e.* to produce a minimum sensation. This strength, which varies with different sense organs, is spoken of as the ' liminal intensity,' or ' threshold value ' of stimulus or sensation respectively. As the strength of the stimulus is increased above this minimal amount the resulting sensation also increases. The change in intensity of sensation does not however continue indefinitely. When the stimulus is increased to a certain amount the resultant sensation becomes maximal, and a further increase in the stimulus evokes no further increase in sensation. In fact fatigue of the sense organs or recipient centres of the brain rapidly sets in, so that the sensation diminishes even

with increasing strength of stimulus. In each sense organ we can measure the amount of energy which must be applied to it in order to evoke a minimum sensation. This figure varies considerably with the physiological condition of the animal. In dealing with reflexes we have seen that the motor result of stimulation of a receptor organ varies in the same manner. Thus a minimal stimulus is more effective if repeated a few times at definite intervals (summation of stimulus): the stimulus which is submininal may become minimal and effective as a result of repetition.

Another factor which intervenes is that known as 'adaptation'—a process associated to a certain extent with the phenomenon of fatigue. Adaptation is best studied in the case of the eye. Here the dark-adapted eye, *i.e.* one that has been kept from light for half an hour, will react, and give a visual sensation, to a strength of stimulus which is only one-fiftieth of the minimal stimulus required to evoke sensation in the eye that has been lately exposed to light.

Another phenomenon which may alter the strength of the liminal intensity of stimulus is that known as 'contrast.' A finger plunged into mercury feels a ring of constriction at the level of the surface of the mercury, *i.e.* where there is a contrast between the pressure of the mercury and the absence of pressure as the finger emerges into the air.

The strength of the effective stimulus depends also on the number of nerve-endings simultaneously excited. Thus when dealing with tactile sensations, or sensations of pressure, in determining the minimal stimulus, we must take into account the area stimulated, and we express the stimulus just sufficient to produce a threshold sensation, as 'weight per square millimetre of surface.' Moreover the rapid 'fatigability' or adaptation of all sense organs makes the rate at which the stimulus is applied of considerable importance.

WEBER'S LAW. It is an interesting question how far the strength of sensation may be regarded as an index to the strength of stimulus. Although it is easy to measure in absolute terms the intensity of a stimulus, *i.e.* of a purely physical process, there is no means by which we can express in absolute measure the strength of a sensation. We cannot even compare the strengths of two sensations differing in quality or modality; and although we can say that such and such a light is stronger than another light, it is impossible to say that the sensation resulting from the stronger is two, three, or more times that of the weaker. In measuring the effect on sensation of increasing the stimulus we are therefore reduced to using the *smallest appreciable increase of sensation* as our unit of sensation. The question as to the relation between the intensity of stimulus and the intensity of sensation resolves itself into an inquiry as to what increase in a given stimulus is necessary in order that it may evoke an appreciable increase in sensation. Weber's law states that the increase of stimulus which is necessary to produce an appreciable increase in sensation must always bear the same ratio to the whole stimulus. Thus if we found that we could just distinguish the difference between a weight of 10 oz. and a weight of 9 oz., it would not be sufficient

to add one ounce to a weight of 10 lb. in order to produce a distinct difference in sensation. In the latter case we should not be able to appreciate any difference until we had added a pound, *i.e.* one-tenth of the whole stimulus to the weight. We can distinguish between 10 oz. and 11 oz., or between 10 lb. and 11 lb., but not between 10 lb. and 10 lb. 1 oz.

Several methods have been proposed for testing the limits of the applicability of this law. Of these the most important are:

(1) The method of minimal difference.

(2) The method of average error.

In the first method we find by trial how much a given stimulus must be increased in order to evoke an appreciable increase of sensation, and this determination is made for a number of stimuli of different intensity. In the second method it is sought to find a strength of stimulus which is just equal to another stimulus of given intensity. It will be found that errors will be made on both sides, and the average error is taken as representing the minimum difference, which is just sufficient to cause a distinct difference of sensation.

In all sense organs Weber's law is applicable only between limits which vary with each sense organ, and it does not hold either for very weak or for very strong stimuli. Within these limits the ratio which an increase of stimulus must bear to the whole stimulus in order to produce an increase of sensation may be given approximately as follows for the different sense organs:

When weights are placed on corresponding points of two sides of the body, *e.g.* on the two hands, we can appreciate differences of about one-third; if the contrast be successive, *i.e.* if the weights be placed on the same spot in succession, we can appreciate differences between one-fourteenth and one-thirtieth. The range over which this amount of accuracy is attained extends from 50 to 1000 grammes. In judging of weights with the help of

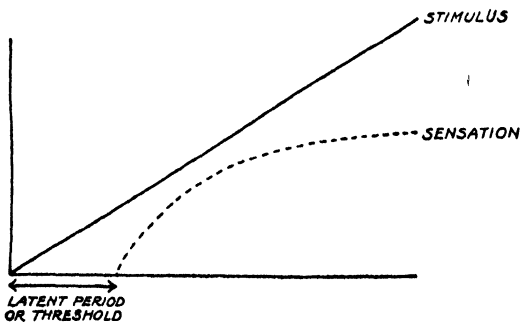


FIG. 242. Diagram to show relationship between stimulus and sensation.

movement (the method one ordinarily adopts) the limit of accuracy is about one-twentieth; for sounds the appreciation of difference amounts to about one-ninth. The organ which is most susceptible to slight changes of intensity

is the eye ; by this organ we can appreciate differences of one one-hundredth to one one-hundred-and-sixty-seventh in the total illumination.

FECHNER'S LAW gives the result of an attempt to state Weber's law in mathematical terms. It states that the sensation varies as the natural logarithm of the stimulus. This relationship is shown diagrammatically in Fig. 242.

In view of the fact however that Weber's law holds good only between certain limits, not much practical value can be attached to such a mathematical expression. Moreover Fechner's calculation is based on the unprovable and unjustifiable assumption that, within the limits of applicability of Weber's law, the smallest appreciable increase in sensation is always the same, *i.e.* that the increased sensation which is evoked by the addition of 6 grammes to a weight of 100 grammes is identical with the increased sensation called forth by adding 60 grammes to an initial weight of 1000 grammes. Such an assumption does not, as a matter of fact, agree with our own experience ; and it is probably premature here, as in many other departments of biology, to attempt to include the complex of variable phenomena presented by animal functions within the Procrustean bed of a mathematical formula.

PART II

VISION

By H. Hartridge.

	PAGES
Section 1.—Properties of light, colour, and the spectrum	486
,, 2.—Orbital cavity and its contents	493
,, 3.—Eyeball, its histology. Pupil reflex	500
,, 4. Nutrition and protection of the eyeball	514
,, 5.—Optical media of eye, and accommodation	519
,, 6.—Optical properties and defects of the eye	529
,, 7.—Retina, its histology and physiology	540
,, 8.—Response to light and colour	555
,, 9.—Subjective phenomena of vision	566
,, 10.—Defects of vision, and their detection	577
,, 11.—Duplex theory and hypotheses of colour vision	583
,, 12.—Binocular and stereoscopic vision	588

SECTION I

PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF LIGHT

Light is a form of energy, and consists of electro-magnetic waves which travel with great velocity through the ether. Since we receive light from the stars, we conclude that the ether permeates the whole of space. We know also from electrical experiments that the ether also permeates matter. We might expect therefore that light would freely pass through matter, or in other words that all matter would be transparent. This is not the case however, because most forms of matter have the property of absorbing light energy; and therefore the property of transparency is relatively rare.

LIGHT IS A FORM OF WAVE MOTION. Because of this, one of its characteristic properties is amplitude. But since this depends on the amount of light energy present, it is equivalent to what is known as intensity. The other characteristic property of wave motion is wavelength. In the case of ordinary light it is found by experiment that a whole gamut of waves varying greatly in length is present. Those falling between certain limits are able to stimulate the eye, and are therefore called visual rays. These limits are slightly less than 8000 Angstrom units* for the longer limit and 4000 A.U. for the shorter. Rays whose wavelength falls outside these limits are invisible to the eye, and are called infra-red rays when they are too long, and ultra-violet when they are too short. Since the infra-red rays are able to stimulate the sensory end organs of the skin, which respond to heat, they are also called heat rays; while the ultra-violet rays from their ability to perform certain chemical reactions, and notably those used in photography, are called actinic rays. There is however no sharp line of demarcation between the three groups, which the use of these terms might be thought to imply.

THE SPECTRUM. It is possible by suitable apparatus to cause the constituent rays in a beam of light to arrange themselves according to their wavelength. When thus arranged they are said to form a spectrum. The apparatus is therefore called a spectroscope. The visible rays thus arranged are seen as a coloured band which has

* An Angstrom unit = one ten-millionth of a millimeter.

the following appearance. Visibility usually begins at about 8000–7800 A.U., the rays of longest wavelength being red. As the wavelength becomes shorter the colour gradually changes to orange, the transition being at 6500 A.U. nearly. From orange the colour changes to yellow, at 6000 A.U. nearly. From yellow to green at 5500 A.U., to blue-green at 5000 A.U., to blue at 4500 A.U., and to violet at 4000 A.U. The violet extends to 3800 A.U., where visibility ceases. The spectrum exhibits therefore a gradual change of colour with wavelength. Above the red is the invisible region occupied by the infra-red or heat rays, and below the violet the invisible ultra-violet or actinic rays, as explained above.

The colours of the spectrum have important properties which form the foundation of the science of colour mixture. If the spectrum produced from white light is caused to fold up again, it is found that white light is reformed. But white light is produced if certain pairs of colours only are caused to combine in the correct proportion. Thus red (6562 A.U.) and blue-green (4921 A.U.) when mixed correctly form white light, so also do yellow (5636 A.U.) and violet (4330 A.U.). Such pairs are called *complementary colours.* But since there is in the spectrum a gradual transition from one colour to the next, so there are between red and yellow an infinite number of rays of different wavelength, each of which has its complementary colour, between blue-green and violet. If therefore from white light we remove one of a pair of complementary colours the other member of the pair will be left unneutralised, and the light therefore becomes tinted with its colour. Green rays do not possess a complementary in the spectrum ; but it is found by experiment that, by combining red and violet to form purple, the required colour may be produced. If we include purple with the spectral colours, we can imagine these colours to form a closed ring. Each colour will then have its complementary opposite to it.

THE SPECTRUM COLOURS have another important property, for if red and yellow are caused to combine, they are found to produce orange, the intermediate colour. If red and green are mixed, then again the intermediate colour, yellow, may be produced. It is found that by varying the intensities of the two components, it is possible to produce orange, or yellow-green, or in fact any other intermediate colour at will. Careful experiment shows that the intermediate colour thus formed is no mere approximation but an exact match. If red and green are thus able to combine to form the intermediate colour, while red and blue-green are complementaries producing white by their mixture, the question arises as to the effect produced by mixing red with a colour intermediate between green and blue-green. Experiment shows that a range of colours is produced containing an amount of white light, which varies with the intensities and wavelengths of the combining colours. Colours diluted with white light are spoken of as *unsaturated.* In order that the colours produced by a mixture of red and green rays shall be fully saturated, and thus be able to match the colours of the spectrum exactly, the green must not be shorter in wavelength than 5400 A.U. Similar phenomena are to be found at the other end of the spectrum ; green and violet, when mixed in various proportions, form colours which match the intermediate spectral colours. With red, green and violet, it is therefore possible to match the whole spectrum. But since red and violet, when mixed, form the intermediate purples, with the three coloured rays it is possible to imitate the whole range of colours. Now the purple formed from red and violet is, as we have seen, the complementary colour to green ; by means of these three colours it is thus possible to produce white light. It should therefore be possible to match an unsaturated colour as easily as a saturated one. Experiment shows that such is the case. The third property beside colour and saturation, is *intensity,* which depends on the amplitude of the waves. The intensity of the mixture formed by red, green and violet, can therefore be readily adjusted by varying the intensity of each of the three component rays. We may summarise the above facts by stating that by varying the intensities of the red, green and violet rays it is possible to match every shade and colour. This statement has been put to the test by Maxwell, Abney and other observers, and has been found to hold good in all cases but one, spectral blue being slightly more

saturated than the mixture of green and violet. In describing the complementary pairs of colours, we have mentioned that if the spectral colours are placed in a closed ring, complementary pairs are found to be opposite to one another. If now the three fundamental colours are placed at equal intervals round the ring, we may regard white as occupying the centre, because it is equidistant from the three fundamentals, and at the same time lies on the diameter between the various colours and their complementaries. If the other spectral colours are arranged in position relatively to the three fundamentals, they form a figure that in shape resembles a triangle more closely than it does a ring. This is due to the facts already mentioned (1) with regard to the exact matching of the spectral colours between red and green, by mixtures of those two fundamental colours; (2) with regard to the approximate matching of the region between green and violet by the mixtures of those colours, and (3) with regard to the exact matching of mauves and purples by mixtures of red and violet. The colour triangle which is shown in figure 243 therefore has a purely experimental basis, and has no association whatever with theories of vision.

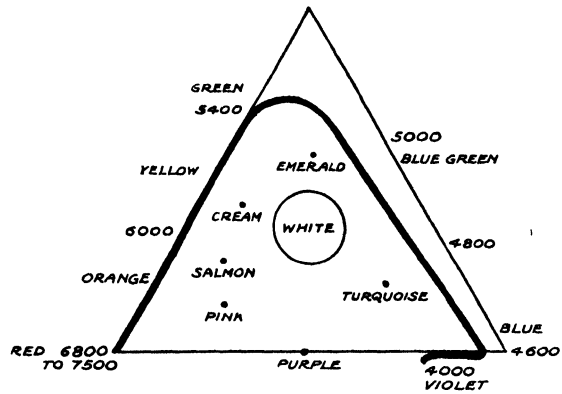


FIG. 243. Colour triangle.

The black line shows the shape of the curve along which the different rays of the spectrum fall for white to occupy the central position.

THE OPTICAL PROPERTIES OF MATTER

Since matter is permeated by the ether, we should expect matter to be transparent to light. We find however that all matter absorbs light to a greater or less extent; even substances that are called transparent, like glass and water, absorb strongly when in sufficient thickness. Beside substances which may be classed as transparent or opaque, there is a large class of bodies which reflect light. When the body presents a smooth surface to the light rays, the reflected ray forms a compact bundle, and the surface is therefore said to reflect light. If on the other hand the surface presented to the light rays is rough, the light bundle is split up into a number of separate units which scatter diffusely in every direction. Such a surface is therefore said to diffuse or scatter light. If light is incident on matter, there are thus four different processes that may occur, viz. the light may be partially absorbed, it may be partially transmitted, it may be partially reflected and lastly it may be partially scattered. In the great majority of cases, all these processes take place to a certain extent, and are found to affect the different parts of the spectrum differently. For example, while the colours of short wavelength are absorbed, those of long wavelength may be almost completely reflected. (A polished copper surface is found to have these properties.) Another example would be a substance which while absorbing colours of long wavelength, scatters almost

completely all colours which belong to the other end of the spectrum. (Basic acetate of copper, *i.e.* verdigris, has this property.) Lastly the case of a fluid may be given which absorbs colours in the middle of the spectrum, while it transmits freely those at the ends. The light transmitted is therefore violet in colour, (as the appearance of a solution of potassium permanganate or methyl violet shows.) Colour is thus due in every case to some difference in the behaviour of the substance towards the various rays of the spectrum. In order to complete the description of colour formation, two other methods should be described by which colour may be produced, namely *fluorescence* and *phosphorescence*. The former term is applied when a substance absorbs light of one colour, and at the same time emits light of another. The latter is applied when a substance emits light for an appreciable time after the exciting light stimulus has ceased.

LIGHT SOURCES fall into two classes, those which emit radiant energy because of the high temperature to which they have been raised, and those which are excited in other ways. The light from the former class as a rule consists of rays of all wavelengths, from the longest heat rays to the shortest ultra-violet. The light from the latter class on the other hand, is frequently found to consist of rays corresponding to characteristic regions of the spectrum. The mercury vapour lamp may be mentioned as an example of the latter type of light source, which has come into general use. If the visible spectra obtained from a few light sources of the first type are carefully measured, it is found that although rays of all wavelength are present, there are considerable variations in the intensities of the different rays. This causes variation not only in the colour of the light as a whole, but also affects the colour of objects and the ease with which the eye can judge colours. This variation in the distribution of intensity in the spectrum is found to be accompanied by corresponding changes in the infra-red and ultra-violet. For equal visual intensity, as the temperature of the source is increased, the greater is the amount of ultra-violet light and the less is the infra-red. Moreover as the temperature is raised, the whiter, and therefore the more like daylight, does the light become. Measurements of the energy present in different parts of the

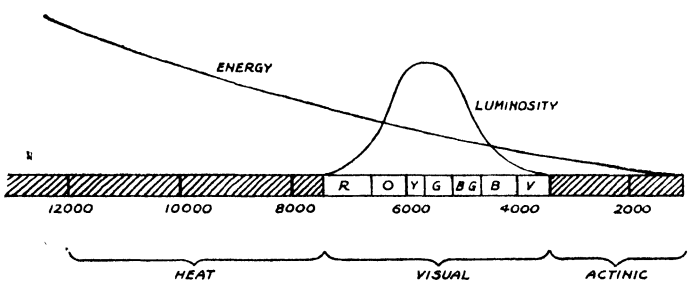


FIG. 244. Curves shewing relative energy and luminosity of different regions of the spectrum.

spectrum show that much the greater part of the energy is present in the infra-red. These heat rays play no useful part in vision, and may in fact do harm; the greater part of the energy is thus wasted, and for this reason the efficiency of this class of light source is very low. Since raising the temperature of the light source causes the light to approximate more closely to daylight and at the same time reduces the relative amount of the infra-red rays, it effects considerable advantage because it increases efficiency.

THE ENERGY IN THE SPECTRUM is present in greatest amount at the red end, and least at the violet. In spite of this the part of the spectrum with the greatest luminosity to the eye is the yellow. The values obtained by Abney are shown in figure 244.

DIFFRACTION AND REFRACTION. Beside the properties of light that have

been already considered, namely, the relationship between actinic, visual, and heat rays, and the effects of colour mixture, there are others of importance to vision. (1) The property of travelling in straight lines; (2) of suffering refraction; (3) of causing chemical change. The first property can be easily demonstrated by investigating shadow formation. But it should be noted that straight line propagation is only approximate, for it can be shown that at the edge of a light ray there may be considerable deviation. This effect is called diffraction, and will be considered in greater detail later. The second property, namely that of suffering refraction, is found to take place whenever light travels from a medium of one optical density (refractive index) into that of another. Briefly, refraction consists of a deviation of the light rays towards the normal to the surface, when entering a denser medium, and away from the normal on entering a lighter. Rays of long wavelength tend to keep their original direction more than those of short wavelength. Red rays are therefore less refracted than orange rays, and orange less than yellow, and so on according to wavelength. It is in this way that the spectrum is formed in the special apparatus for experiments on colour mixture referred to above. But the most important effect of refraction, from the point of view of vision, is the formation of an image by a lens. This action may be briefly explained by considering what will happen to a beam of light, when it encounters a mass of high optical density having a convex spherical surface. Since the rays on entering are deviated towards the normal to the surface, it is clear that rays that have entered near the edge of the lens will be bent towards one another, and will therefore approach as they travel through the lens substance, till they ultimately meet at the focus with all the other rays that have entered the lens from the same source as themselves. But if there be a number of different sources, then the rays from each are found to form their own focus, at a position that may be determined either by experiment or by the rules of geometry. The positions of the different foci are found to bear the same relationship to one another as those of the original sources, or in other words an image is produced. This important subject will be found referred to again in greater detail in section 5.

PHOTO-CHEMICAL CHANGE, which is the third property of light mentioned above, is well illustrated by photography. The most important principle of light action is that light, to cause chemical change, must be absorbed (Draper's law). For example, an ordinary photographic plate which is found to be opaque to blue violet and ultra violet rays, and to be transparent to the rest of the visible spectrum, is therefore sensitive to the former rays but inactive to the latter. Further by colouring the plate by a dye which absorbs red, yellow and green, it is possible to make the plate react to these rays. Draper's law is therefore obeyed. Chemical reactions caused by light are of many types, but may be divided into reversible and irreversible. The former type of reaction occurs only so long as the light acts (the change from CO to oxyhæmoglobin may be given as an example), while the latter type remains in the final state that has been reached (the changes in a photographic plate may be given as an example). There is further another and more complicated type which, when once started by an incident beam of light, goes on automatically with an evolution of energy until the reaction is completed. These effects of light are probably of great importance in connection with vision and will therefore receive further consideration later.

THE MECHANISM OF VISION

The organ of vision makes use of the properties of light which have been above described, and we may briefly consider the form that such an organ would take. To commence with, there must be some method of causing light to stimulate the end of a nerve. One possible scheme would be to connect the nerve to a modified taste bud, which had been selected for its sensitiveness to the presence of a chemical substance called A. If this substance A is formed when light acts on another substance B, so long as light is incident A is being formed and the end of the nerve is being stimulated. With cessation of the light however B is reformed from A, and the stimulus to the nerve at once ceases. The

mechanism must now be further elaborated in order to permit of the separate appreciation of at least three different fundamental colours. Two courses are open to us: we may either provide three chemical reactions instead of one, each of which responds to light of one fundamental colour, and may assume that the end organ is able accurately to determine the amount of each of the three breakdown products present; or we may provide three times the original number of nerves and end organs and place them behind colour filters, similar to those used in three-colour photography. Whichever method be adopted, we should find we had added considerably to the complexity of the sensitive apparatus. Such an apparatus by itself would form a very inefficient organ of vision because it would record only the average quality of the light which fell on it. Some additional mechanism is required by which the direction from which the light rays come may be inferred. Probably the simplest method would be to place each end organ at the bottom end of a narrow box, the top end of which is open while the sides are covered with a black material in order to prevent reflections. By arranging these boxes radially in relation to a common centre, the apparatus would be capable of localising the direction of a light source. (This is roughly the arrangement found in the faceted eyes of insects.) (See Fig. 251c.) Although such a visual organ can be astonishingly efficient (one need only mention the case of certain dragon-flies, in which the faceted elements number 12,000 to 17,000), yet there can be no question that the use of some sort of optical system which could produce a focussed image of external objects on the sensitive surface or retina would be better still. The employment for this purpose of a mass of high refractive index with a spherical anterior surface at once suggests itself. Certain complications are however introduced at the same time, namely the necessity of changing the focus or accommodating for images at different distances, and of automatically controlling this mechanism in order that no mental effort may be required for focussing. In order that such an apparatus may be employed with light of different intensity, it is necessary to be able to control the amount of light allowed to reach the sensitive surface. This could be effected by introducing a semi-opaque screen such as the nictating membrane of the bird; a better plan would be however to employ an opaque screen with an aperture of adjustable size in it, because, as will be shown later, by this means we can reduce the effects of chromatic and other aberrations. Since the rays which pass through the centre of the refracting body, or lens, pass through undeviated and therefore with the least amount of aberration, the best place for the aperture would be immediately opposite the centre of the lens, and for similar reasoning its best shape is found to be circular. The diameter of this aperture must be automatically adjustable, according to the intensity of the illumination falling on the sensitive surface of the eye, in order that its action may be independent of mental effort. We may now conveniently consider for a moment the utility of such an organ of vision to its owner. In the first place he will be able to recognise the presence of objects sending light of different intensity and colour into his organ of vision. Movement on their part, relative to himself, will be at once perceived, because of changes in the size and position of the area of the retina which is receiving stimulation. Owing further to the way that their images either intercept, or are intercepted by, the images of other objects near them, he will be able to infer their relative position in space, and the distance at which they are placed from him. This estimate will however be very vague, and therefore the judgment of size will be equally uncertain. In the second place we must assume that the whole of the retina, which we have described, is equally sensitive everywhere, and that further the image formed on it by the lens system is equally sharp throughout. There will thus be a very complicated picture of external objects presented to the consciousness of its owner, and it will be correspondingly difficult for him to concentrate his attention on some particular part of the visual field to the partial exclusion of the rest. His organ of vision therefore requires two further improvements, one to increase the efficiency of the appreciation of distance, the other to increase his power of concentration. The first might be obtained by greatly increasing the sensitiveness of the mechanism of accommodation, since the focus is altered according

to the distance at which an object is placed. Such a method would be found ineffective except for relatively near objects however, because of the small change of focus which is involved. A superior method would be to endow a particular part of the retina with increased sensitiveness, next to provide two complete organs of vision instead of one, both capable of rotation in all directions, and then to mount them as far apart as possible, so that as they are turned relatively to one another, in order to view near or distant objects, the amount of such relative deviation may be estimated and so a means be provided of appreciating distance. But the provision of increased sensitiveness in a particular part of the retina also tends to diminish the disturbing effects of the rest and therefore improves at the same time the power of concentrating the attention on a particular object. This in its turn greatly simplifies the task of producing the lens system, which forms the image of external objects, since only a part of the image is required to have the maximum sharpness, namely that corresponding to the most sensitive region of the retina, this part being always used whenever an object of particular interest is being examined. In order to employ a simple lens system to the greatest advantage, that part of the image should be used which lies immediately in front of the axis of the lens; for it is here that the best definition is found. The most sensitive part of the retina should be placed therefore in this position. It remains to describe a further improvement which may be effected in the perception of distance, when a pair of eyes are used which move in co-ordination. Suppose, for example, that there are two objects one more distant than the other, which appear to the right eye to be in line. Then to the left eye the more distant one will appear to lie to the left of the other. There is thus a relative displacement of the two images of the objects, which will be found to increase as the distance between the objects increases. If the objects do not appear in line to either of the eyes, it will still be found that there is a constant difference between the positions of the two images formed on the retinæ. If there be a suitable mechanism for estimating the amount of this displacement, there is at once provided a very accurate method of judging distance. One form which this mechanism could take will be considered later.

In the development of a hypothetical organ of vision, which has been traced above from a simple and inefficient to an elaborate and improved type, we have seen that each modification had to be introduced in order to make use of the application of some well-known physical property; not once has the impossibility of obtaining some obvious beneficial feature to be faced. The eye as we find it in man is almost identical with this organ which we have developed as it were from first principles. The eye therefore provides an excellent example of the efficiency with which evolution has been controlled by natural laws, and of the small extent to which the limitations of the materials available have prevented the introduction of desirable features.

SECTION 11

EYE MOVEMENTS

ANATOMY OF THE ORBIT

THE eyeball and its accessory structures lie in the bony orbital cavity, surrounded and padded by a mass of semiliquid fat. The cavity is pierced by several apertures, through which pass various vessels and nerves. The optic nerve enters through an aperture of its own, the optic foramen, together with the ophthalmic artery. Most of the other nerves and vessels concerned with vision pass through the sphenoidal fissure. These are the 3rd, 4th and 6th motor nerves which innervate the muscles controlling eye movement, sensory branches of the upper division of the 5th nerve, connected with the cornea, conjunctiva, lids, etc., and the ophthalmic veins. In order to allow the eye free movement the surrounding structures form with it a ball-and-socket joint. The joint cavity is formed by a pouch-shaped structure called the capsule of Tenon. This pouch surrounds the posterior four-fifths of the eyeball, in fact its folded margin touches the ocular conjunctiva. The pouch is made of a tough smooth membrane, and contains synovial fluid so as to allow the eye the greatest freedom of movement. Since the six muscles which cause the eye movements are attached to the bony wall of the orbit behind and to the front portion of the globe in front, it is clear that the tendons of the muscles must pierce the capsule. This is done in a very admirable manner, so as to allow free movement and at the same time to prevent escape of synovial fluid. Moreover the edges of the apertures, through which the tendons enter, form strong, bands which are attached to the bony walls of the orbit. These bands act as check ligaments, preventing excessive movement on the part of the muscles. Tenon's capsule contains numerous smooth muscle fibres which are innervated by sympathetic nerves from the cavernous plexus, viâ the ciliary (lenticular) ganglion and the long ciliary nerves. Stimulation of the nerves described causes contraction of these muscle fibres, protrusion of the eyes and rise of intraocular pressure. But the most important function of these fibres is that by their tone they prevent the eye from being dragged back into the socket by the contraction of the external muscles. One of the explanations of the protrusion of the eyes in exophthalmic goître is given to be the stimulation of the sympathetic nerves in the neck by the local pressure of the thyroid tumour, and it is said that removal of the superior cervical ganglion relieves the condition.

With regard to the position of the centre of rotation of the eye it might

be thought that, since the eye forms a ball-and-socket joint, the centre of rotation would be at the geometrical centre of the eyeball. Careful measurement shows that such is very nearly the case. The amount of rotation of the eyes is considerable, being 88 degrees in a horizontal, and 80 degrees in a vertical plane. If the sphericity of the globe of the eye is destroyed through disease, myopia for example, then it is found that rotation is impaired.

ANATOMY AND FUNCTION OF THE EXTERNAL MUSCLES OF THE EYEBALL

The six external ocular muscles produce rotation of the eyeball; four are called recti and two oblique. The recti arise from a fibrous ring attached to the margin of the optic foramen, and pass forward to meet the eyeball at its equator, where they form tendons. These having passed through Tenon's capsule are attached to the sclera about 6 mm. behind the corneal margin. From the positions they occupy they are called superior, inferior, external and internal. When they contract they will cause upward, downward, outward and inward rotation of the eyeball respectively. In the case of the first two muscles there is a turning movement inwards at the same time; this is due to the muscle attachment round the optic foramen being on the inner side of the back of the orbit, since the muscles can cause rotation only in the directions which their tendons take. In addition to the above movements, and for the same reasons, there is a very small amount of rotation of the eye about the visual (antero-posterior) axis in the case of the superior and inferior recti, the directions in both cases

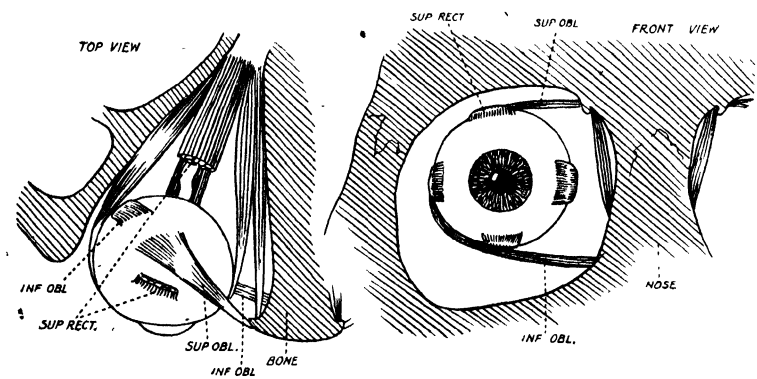


FIG. 245. The anatomical position of the external muscles in respect to the eyeball.

being obvious from the directions of the pull of the muscles. Figures 245 and 246 show the above diagrammatically. The two oblique muscles, the superior and inferior, are both smaller than the recti. The former arises near the optic foramen, and passes forward to the upper and inner side of the orbit, forming on its way a round tendon. It here passes through a narrow fibrous ring, and then turns downwards and backwards under the superior

rectus and becomes attached to the eyeball. The inferior arises from the nasal side of the orbit, just within its lower margin. It passes outwards and backwards beneath the inferior oblique to become attached to the eyeball nearly opposite to the attachment of the superior oblique. On contraction of the superior oblique the upper side of the eye is rotated towards the nose; at the same time the pupil is directed slightly downwards and out-

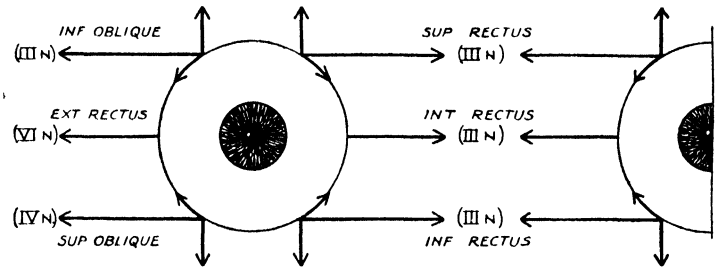


FIG. 246. Diagram shewing the directions in which the different external eye muscles rotate the eyeball.

wards. The inferior oblique also causes rotation about the visual axes, but in the opposite direction; it at the same time produces upward and outward movement of the pupil. The function of these two small muscles appears to be to prevent the eyes from rotating about their visual axes, and in particular to prevent the rotation inwards which is associated with the contraction of the superior and inferior recti. For this purpose the superior rectus is associated with the inferior oblique and vice versa. In this action the oblique muscles appear to be very efficient; for if the eye is first fatigued by looking at a brilliant line of light, *e.g.* a long straight electric lamp filament, and is then directed upwards or downwards at a white surface, the after image thus produced is always found to keep its vertical direction.

On tilting the head suddenly about a transverse axis, it is found that the eyes rotate in the opposite direction, so that in fact the image formed on the retina shall still keep in the same apparent meridian. This rotation is called compensatory, and is largely effected by the oblique muscles.

CO-ORDINATED MOVEMENTS OF THE EYES

The notable feature of the eye movements is the close association which exists between the muscles of the two eyes. For so perfectly has this mechanism been developed that the eyes are able to glance rapidly from place to place without there being any obvious doubling of the images. The eye movements are therefore of such a kind that the image of an object conveys a single impression to consciousness. But objects vary in the distance at which they are placed and therefore, beside movements of the eyes in which the visual axes remain parallel, there are also movements in which there is a certain amount of convergence. In the latter case there is usually some

associated accommodation of the lens for near objects, and at the same time some contraction of the pupil. By experiments in which prisms are placed in front of the eyes, thus calling for convergence or divergence without accommodation, and by others in which lenses are placed there instead, thus requiring accommodation without change in the angle between the axes, it can readily be shown that the association between the functions of accommodation and convergence is not very rigid. The co-ordinated deviations of the eyes appear to be much more closely connected. Thus Donders found co-ordinated deviations both in the newly born and in congenital blindness. This is probably due to the close anatomical relationship which exists between the nerve centres of the muscles on the two sides. This relationship may be explained with the help of Figure 247, which shows roughly the relative positions of the various nerve centres in the central part of the Sylvian grey matter at the level of the quadrigeminal bodies.

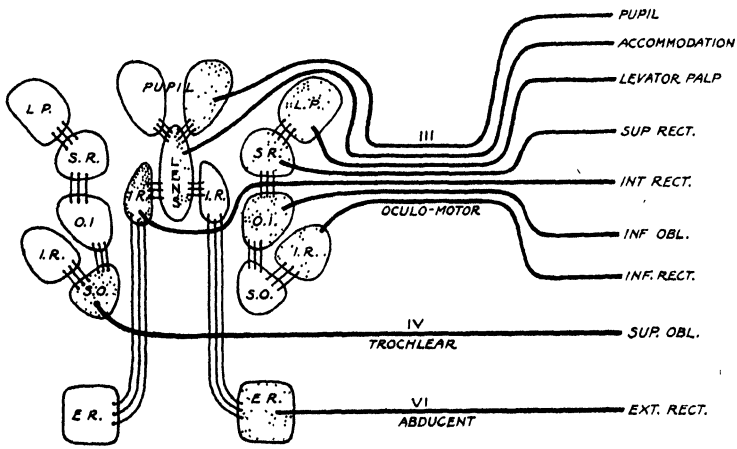


FIG. 247. Diagram to shew relationships of different parts of oculo-motor nuclei, and the principle connections between them.

It will be seen that the third or oculo-motor nerve supplies all the external eye muscles except three, viz.: Tenon's capsule, which is supplied by the sympathetic; the superior oblique, which is supplied by the fourth or trochlear nerve; and the external rectus, which is supplied by the sixth or abducent nerve. Further, while most of its nuclei supply muscles on the same side, two are found to go to muscles on the opposite side, namely the internal and inferior recti. Another eye muscle also has a crossed connection, namely the superior oblique (4th nerve). Of the many bundles of association fibres which connect these different nuclei, the following may be mentioned as being of special importance:—(1) From the external rectus of one side through the posterior longitudinal fasciculus to the internal rectus of the other; thus allowing conjugate deviation of the eyes. (2) Between the nuclei of the pupil sphincter, of the mechanism for accommodation, and of the

internal rectus; thus co-ordinating the adjustments required for near vision, namely convergence, accommodation for near objects, and reduced pupil diameter. (3) Between the superior recti muscles of the two eyes; thus causing symmetrical upward deviation. (4) Between the inferior recti of the two eyes for similar reasons. (5) Between the superior oblique of one eye and the inferior oblique of the other; thus permitting conjugate rotation of the eyes. (6) Between the superior rectus and the inferior oblique of the same eye; thus permitting the deviation caused by the one to be corrected by the other. (7) Between the inferior rectus and the superior oblique of the same eye for a similar reason. (8) Between the nucleus of the superior rectus and that of the levator palpebræ of the same eye. This association permits simultaneous raising of the eyelid with the upward deviation of the eyes, thus preventing any restriction of vision.

Besides these connections between the muscles producing like or associated action there are others equally important between the brain and these centres, namely those which connect antagonistic muscles. Sherrington showed that, as the muscle on one side of a limb contracts, its antagonist at the same time relaxes, so as to allow the movement to take place smoothly and without waste of energy. This is called 'reciprocal innervation.' The eye muscles show the phenomenon very well. If the right frontal cortex be stimulated, the eyes perform co-ordinate deviation to the left. If now all the muscles of the right eye are divided except the external rectus, it is found that this eye still moves in co-ordination as far as the middle line, through the relaxation of the external rectus muscle.

The orbicularis palpebrarum is also supplied by the 3rd nerve, for in lesions of its nucleus paralysis of this muscle is found. The fibres innervating it probably travel all the way with the 7th nerve.

CAUSES AND DIAGNOSIS OF STRABISMUS

Squint or strabismus may be caused by a number of conditions: (1) by congenital abnormality; (2) by interference with the proper rotation of the eyeball; (3) by injury to one of the external eye muscles; (4) by injury to or stimulation of one of the nerves supplying these muscles; (5) by the presence of certain errors of refraction. With regard to nerve injury the following description may be given. Injury to the third nerve causes (*a*) drooping of the upper lid owing to paralysis of the levator palpebræ; (*b*) external strabismus from paralysis of the upper, inner and lower recti and the unopposed action of the external rectus; (*c*) rotation of the eye about its visual axis from paralysis of the superior oblique and therefore unopposed action of the inferior; (*d*) dilatation of the pupil from paralysis of its sphincter and the unopposed action of the dilator fibres which are innervated by the sympathetic; (*e*) loss of the power of accommodation from paralysis of the ciliary muscle; (*f*) exophthalmos or protrusion of the eye, caused by the paralysis of so many of its muscles and the unopposed action of the smooth muscle fibres in Tenon's capsule. Owing to the fact that for a considerable portion of its course the 3rd nerve lies beside the 4th, 5th and 6th nerves, there is usually also some associated symptoms of paralysis in the structures which these nerves supply. Injury to the 4th nerve causes paralysis of the superior oblique, which shows itself by defective movements in a downward and outward direction. Injury to the 6th nerve causes internal strabismus owing to paralysis of the external rectus. This frequently occurs when tumours, hæmorrhage or injuries involve the base of the brain.

Experimental stimulation of these nerves causes the converse effects to paralysis, which therefore do not require specific description.

When strabismus due to the complete paralysis of one of the recti is present, there is not as a rule any difficulty in ascertaining which muscle is affected. When however one of the oblique muscles is paralysed or when the paralysis is only partial, there may be some difficulty in diagnosing the exact condition. It is found however that there is a simple method by which the affected muscle may be found. This depends on the principle that if the eyes are rotated in that direction which requires complete contraction of the affected muscle, the strabismus will be found to get worse, owing to the failure of that muscle being made more pronounced; if on the other hand the eyes are turned in the opposite direction, the injured muscle is relaxed and the strabismus vanishes. The following example will show the way the method is used: a man complains of double vision following an injury to the eyes; by directing the gaze in different directions it is found that the double vision increases in amount as the eyes are turned to the right. The injured muscle must therefore be clearly a dextro-rotator, that is, the external rectus of the right eye, or the internal rectus of the left. Fig. 248 will

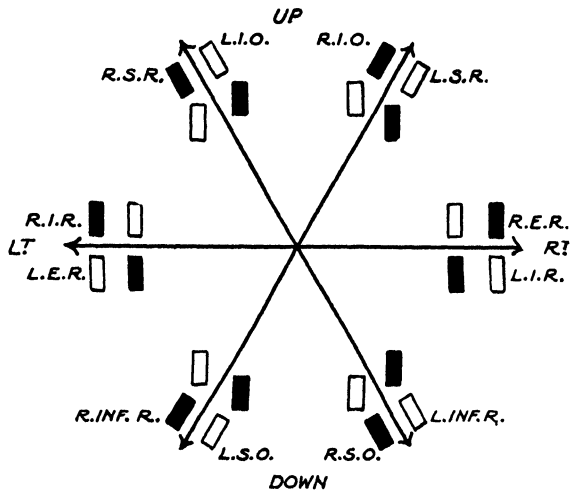


Fig. 248. Showing the direction in which paralysis affecting the different eye muscles produces diplopia and the relative positions occupied by the true and false images (Hartridge). Black shows image of right eye, white shows image of left eye. The false image is always the one placed furthest from the centre.

be found of assistance, because the arrows which show the directions in which the diplopia increases, point to the names of the muscles the injury of which will set up the condition which is found to exist. Experience shows that the injured eye is always that to which the more deviated image belongs, and this fact may be readily ascertained by placing in front of the right eye a slip of coloured glass. If the coloured image is found to be the one that is the more deviated, then it is the right eye that is involved in the injury, and therefore in the case that we have been considering, the right external rectus is the injured muscle. Conversely if the uncoloured image is found to be the more deviated, then the injured muscle was the left internal rectus. In fact it is found in every case that the injured muscle is the one which would give by its contraction that position to the more deviated image which it is actually found to occupy.

TREATMENT OF STRABISMUS. This consists either in the use of suitable prismatic spectacles which will cause a recombination of the double images, or in operative measures. In the latter, either the tendon of the paralysed muscle is shortened, or that of its antagonist is lengthened, or better still a combination of both methods of treatment. Lastly there is a type of strabismus which is found to accompany the refractive errors which cause long and short sight. This type of strabismus, which is called concomitant, is eliminated by correcting the refractive error. (This important subject will be referred to again later on page 537.)

SECTION III

THE STRUCTURE OF THE EYEBALL

THE EYEBALL is a sphere, about 20 mm. in diameter. It lies near the front of the orbital cavity protected by the eyelids. The greater part of its external surface is formed by a firm white membrane called the sclera. In front this is replaced by a transparent structure called the cornea. This has a greater curvature than the rest of the eye, the radius of its surface being about 8 mm. Attached to the eyeball behind and slightly to the inner

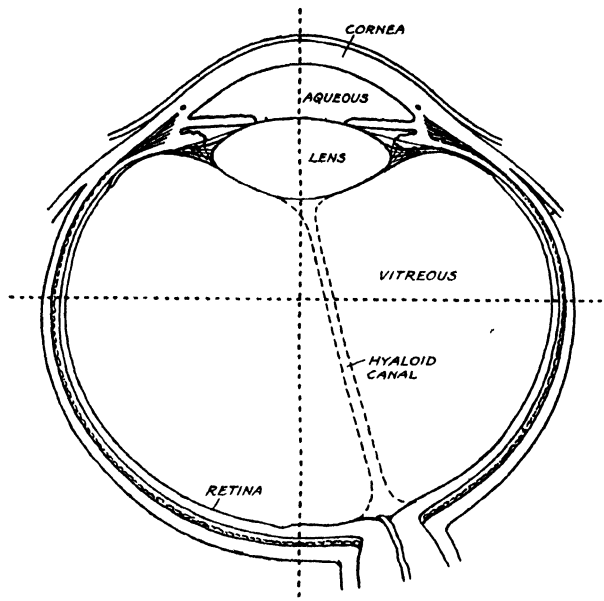


FIG. 249. Transverse section through equator of left eye seen from above.

side is the optic nerve, the function of which is to convey to the brain the light impressions received by the eye. Attached to it also, about 6 mm. from the corneal margin, are the tendons of four of the ocular muscles, as described in Section II. The sclerotic is lined within by a highly vascular and deeply pigmented coat called the choroid. In front this coat has a circular aperture, in relationship with which the choroid becomes modified into several important structures, namely the iris, ciliary muscles and ciliary glands. Spread

out within the hollow cup formed by the sclera and choroid is a soft delicate membrane of nervous tissue, the retina, which is connected with the optic nerve. The spherical cavity thus formed is entirely filled by three transparent structures, the lens, the aqueous humour and the vitreous humour. The lens is a biconvex body of high refractive index, which is situated symmetrically behind the opening in the iris, being held in place by the suspensory ligaments. The aqueous is the fluid which fills the cavity in front of the lens, while the semi-solid vitreous fills the cavity behind it. The eye is therefore a solid organ having considerable rigidity.

DEVELOPMENT OF THE EYE. The period at which the development of the eye commences in the embryo follows rapidly after the invagination of the epiblast to form the central nervous system, namely at about the first week in the human fœtus. It shows itself by a bulging outward of a pair of buds from the nervous layer towards the sides of the head. During its advance each bud becomes folded on itself to form a hollow cup which remains in connection with the central nervous system through a hollow tube, the future optic nerve. As the optic cup approaches, the epiblast becomes thickened, and this portion sinks inwards till it comes to lie in the mouth of the optic cup. The epiblast now becomes folded over it, and the edges coalesce, leaving the thickened mass as a nearly spherical body (the future crystalline

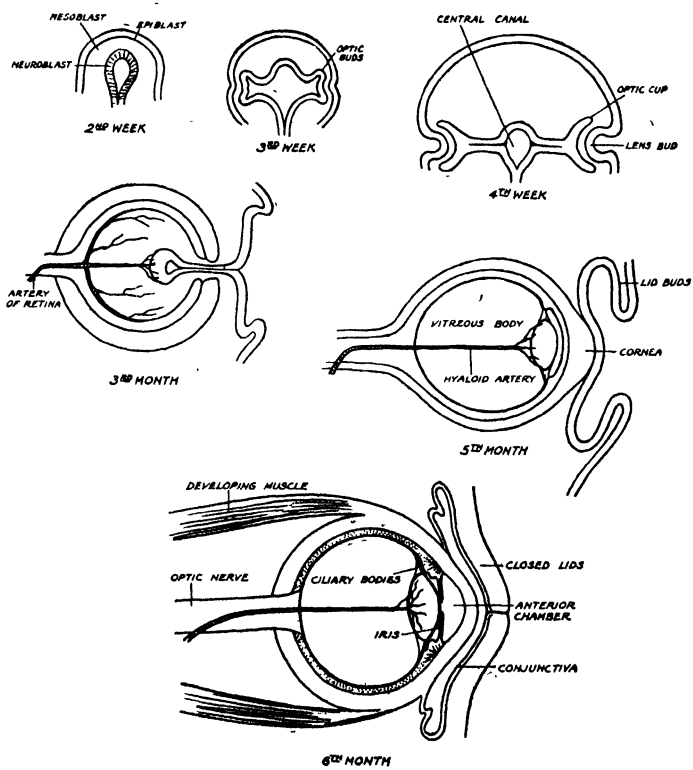


FIG. 250. Diagram to show the different stages in the development of the eye.

lens) at the mouth of the optic cup. The two layers of the optic cup now become contiguous, and the outer develops pigment, while the inner increases greatly in the complexity of its structure to form the adult retina. Through a special cleft in the optic cup (the choroidal cleft) enters a bud of mesoderm to form the vitreous body. This carries with it blood vessels which form the central artery of the retina and those which nourish the lens and iris during their development, namely the hyaloid artery and its branches. These vessels are accompanied by corresponding veins. During these changes the mesoblast surrounding the optic cup has condensed to form the highly vascular choroid and outside it the dense and hard sclera. The latter becomes at the same time transparent in front to form the cornea. Behind the cornea a cleft-like aperture appears which develops into the anterior chamber, and thus separates the cornea from the iris. The anterior chamber becomes lined by endothelium, and is filled with fluid, the aqueous humour. The iris thus becomes composed of three layers: (1) the posterior pigmented layer which is the continuation of the retina; (2) the iris tissue proper developed from mesoderm, and containing the two muscle layers and elastic tissue; (3) the anterior layer of endothelial cells. The iris is thus at first a continuous sheet of tissue, but its structure is thinner at the part corresponding with the pupil, thus forming the pupillary membrane. This disappears shortly before birth. The ocular muscles are formed from the mesoderm in a similar way to other muscles. The lids form as two buds growing out from the epiblast; they advance till they meet and then fuse together, to reopen again about the time of birth. The nervous layer appears to take a very important part in the development of the eye, and this is borne out by experiment; for if the outgrowing optic cup be diverted during its advance to the epiblast towards some other part of the embryo, it is found that a normal organ of vision develops in this new and entirely abnormal situation.

COMPARATIVE ANATOMY OF THE EYE. The types of light-receiving organ in the animal kingdom make an elaborate study because of the variety of form that is met with. We may however effect an approximate classification,

The most primitive type of all light organs consists of a single pigmented spindle-shaped cell such as is found in the epidermis of certain amphibia and cœlenterata (see Fig. 251A). In cases where the creature is transparent, the end organs may be developed in connection with the nervous system. The functions of such organs may be to inform their possessor if a part is exposed to light, and therefore also liable to be noticed and attacked by passing enemies. In the next type of light organ, a number of such cells are grouped together, often to form a hollow cup in the epidermis, as shown at B. These cups retain their connection with the nervous system by means of an optic nerve. This type of organ (B) is found in Platyhelminthes and in the mollusc Patella. In the next type (C) the cup becomes deeper and its mouth small, the epidermis round it becoming deeply pigmented. This organ therefore functions like a pinhole camera, allowing its possessor to observe a rough image of external objects; it should be noticed however that this image formation occurs at the expense of brightness. This type (C) is found in most annelida and in the mollusc Nautilus. The next type (D) is a modification of the last, in that the centre of the optic cup is filled with a spherical highly refractile body. This permits a larger opening to be used for the admission of light without at the same time causing too much confusion in the image. This is the arrangement met with in the mollusc Helix and the arthropod Scorpio. In the next type of light organ (E) the highly refractile lens becomes separated from contact with the retina, and the space between is filled by liquid or a mass of transparent cells which form a vitreous humour. This interval between the lens and retina allows the former to produce a focussed image on the latter, so that for the first time we find an eye having the property of defining external objects. This type of eye (E) is found in the cœlenterate Charybdea and in the ocellus of insects. In the mollusc Sepia the eye is further improved by possessing an adjustable iris. The eye of Pecten (F) has another interesting feature, namely that the optic nerve spreads out over, and

becomes connected with, the retina on the side nearest to the lens, an arrangement similar to that found in vertebrates. The insect eye (G), which is also found in crustacea, is arranged on an entirely different plan. It may be regarded as being formed by packing an exceedingly large number of elongated ocelli together, with their lenses

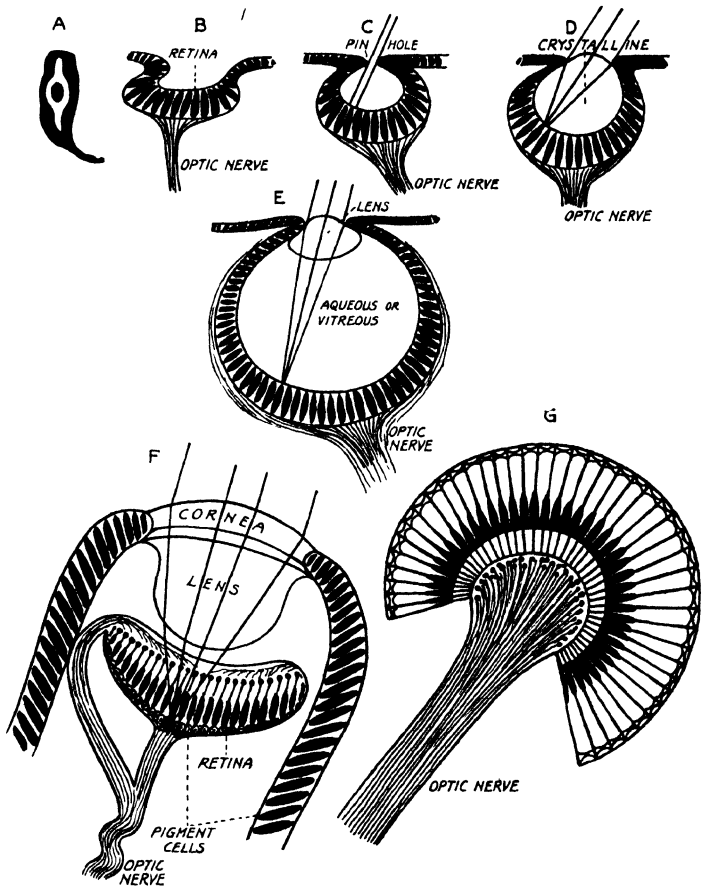


FIG. 251. Comparative anatomy of the eye.

(A) Single cell as in amphibia and cœlenterata. (B) Mollusc Patella. (C) Mollusc Nautilus. (D) Mollusc Helix. (E) Cœlenterate Charybdea and ocellus of insects. (F) Mollusc Pecten. (G) compound eye of insect.

anterior and their retinæ posterior, to form a solid hemispherical body. It is this formation from a number of separate elements which gives the eye of the insect its faceted appearance. Exner and others have shown that the refracting media of the separate elements cannot form a focussed image on the sensitive end organ which each contains, but that vision must consist of a mosaic, as Johannes Müller had suggested. It is said that such vision is well adapted to observing movement. The eyes of vertebrates may be considered to be of the same type as that found in man, for the differences that are met with chiefly concern detail, except as regards the mechanism used for accommodation.

In man, as we shall see later, this is accomplished by adjusting the power of the lens. In fish the eye, which is normally focussed for near objects, is caused to focus objects at a distance by movement of the lens closer to the retina. This is brought about by the contraction of a muscle called the retractor lentis (see Fig. 252A). In snakes the eye at rest is also far-sighted. It is accommodated for near vision by the contraction of a circular ring of muscle which compresses the eye and makes the lens travel forward (Fig. 252C). In birds the eye at rest is long-sighted. The focussing of near objects is obtained by increasing the curvature of the cornea. This is caused in the following manner. Attached to the inside of the sclerotic, which forms a complete bony ring round the eye, is a radially arranged muscle (Crampton's muscle). (See Fig. 252B.) The other end of this muscle is attached to the corneo-scleral junction. Therefore when the muscle contracts it draws the periphery of the cornea backwards. But this tends to cause an increase in the intraocular tension, since the total volume of the eye tends to be decreased. This increased tension causes a bulging of those external eye structures which are most elastic, namely to a slight extent the sclerotic where it

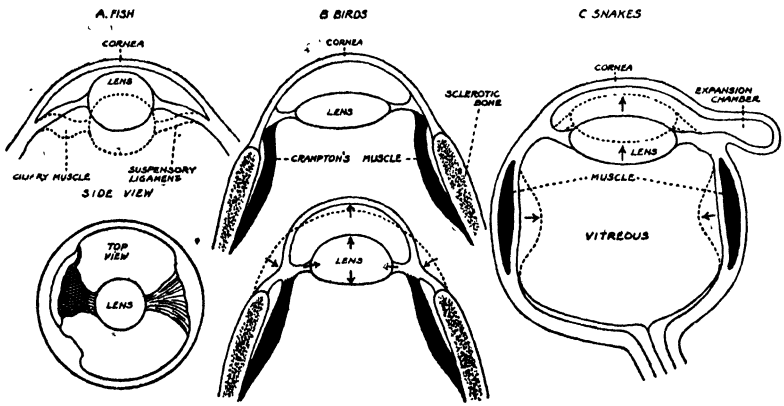


FIG. 252. The methods of accommodation used in fish, birds and snakes.

does not contain bone, but to a much greater extent the front of the cornea, because of its thinness and greater elasticity. The curvature and therefore the refracting power of the cornea very greatly increase, thus causing light rays from near objects to be focussed sharply on the retina. The increase in the distance of the cornea from the retina still further assists this process. It should be noted that Crampton's muscle contains voluntary fibres and is under the direct control of the will. This probably serves two purposes: it allows the bird to rapidly accommodate as it swoops towards the ground, and at the same time it may assist the judgment of distance.

In describing the comparative anatomy of the visual organs it should be remembered that the pineal gland is, in mammalia, the rudiment of one of a pair of median eyes or ocelli, which were functional in the vertebrate ancestors.

MINUTE ANATOMY OF THE EYE. THE CORNEA forms the transparent anterior convex front of the eye. Its curvature has a radius of nearly 8 mm. and a diameter of 11 mm. Its thickness is 1·1 mm., and is composed of the following five layers: (1) Stratified epithelium continuous with that covering the conjunctiva. Superficially the cells are nucleated squares, deeply they are nucleated columnar cells, and

the layers between are a gradual transition from one type to the other. (2) The anterior elastic lamina of Bowman. This is not true elastic tissue, but a layer of modified substantia propria. (3) Substantia propria which consists of a special type of fibrous connective tissue. The fibres are arranged in parallel rows to form laminæ, and the laminæ are built one above the other, leaving cell spaces or lacunæ between. The fibres of each lamina are cemented together by an amorphous substance of nearly the same optical density so that the laminæ form one homogeneous structure. It is on this arrangement that the transparency of the cornea depends. If an excised eye be squeezed so as to produce a high intraocular tension, the cornea is seen to become partially opaque. This is caused by the tension in the corneal fibres making them become doubly-refracting in a similar manner to that set up by the contraction in a striated muscle fibre. But owing to this double refraction the laminæ of the cornea cease to form one homogeneous structure, and therefore opacity is the result. Within the lacunæ are to be found the corneal corpuscles, which are flat nucleated star-shaped cells. (4) The posterior elastic lamina of Descemet. This is a clear structureless membrane which splits at its periphery into three layers. The first enters the sclera, the second gives attachment to the ciliary muscle, while the third enters the iris as the ligamentum pectinatum and gives attachment to it; the intervals between its fibres are called the spaces of Fontana. (5) A layer of endothelium. This consists of a single layer of flat nucleated cells which line the spaces of Fontana and the anterior surface of the iris.

The cornea is nourished during health by a flow through the cell spaces of lymph which comes from the peripheral vessels. During its development and when diseased it is supplied by capillaries which run in from its edge. Its sensory nerve supply is extremely rich, but pain end organs alone appear to be present.

Histologically the sensory nerve filaments are found to ramify actually in the surface layers of the stratified epithelium, a condition not found in any other part of the body. This ar-

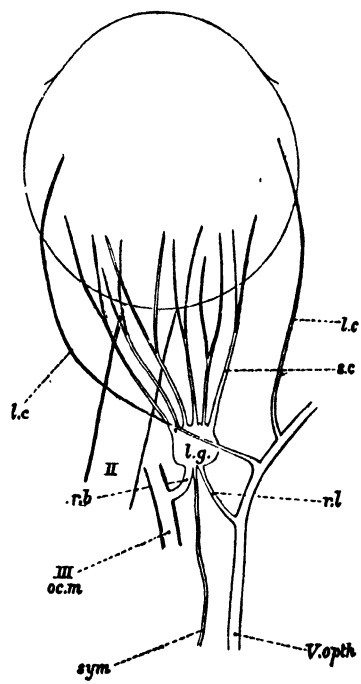


FIG. 253. Nerve supply to the eyeball. (After FOSTER.)

l.g, lenticular ganglion with its three roots, viz.: *r.b*, radix brevis or short root; *r.l*, radix longus or long root; *sym*, sympathetic root; *V. opth.* ophthalmic division of *V* nerve; *III oc.m*, oculo-motor nerve; *II*, optic nerve; *l.c*, long ciliary nerves; *s.c*, short ciliary nerves.

rangement and the acute pain response, which even the smallest foreign body can initiate, obviously has for its object the protection of this important surface from injury. The pain impulses are conveyed to the brain either viâ the perichoroidal nerve plexus and the long ciliary nerves to the nasal branch of the 1st division of the 5th nerve, or from the plexus by the short ciliary nerves to the ciliary ganglion, and from this through the radix longa to the nasal nerve. In either case the nerves appear to have their cell station in the Gasserian ganglion.

THE SCLERA, which forms the tough shell of the eyeball, consists of three layers: (1) a thin layer of endothelium in contact with the capsule of Tenon; (2) numerous interlacing bundles of white fibrous connective tissue; (3) a layer of flat endothelial cells and a network of fine pigmented connective tissue cells, forming the lamina fusca.

Beside the optic nerve the sclera is perforated by the short and long ciliary nerves and by the ciliary arteries. The four venæ vorticosæ leave it at the equator. At the corneo-scleral junction the two structures are continuous. A space is left however which forms a ring round the cornea. This is called the canal of Schlemm; it communicates with the anterior chamber through the spaces of Fontana and also with the scleral veins. The presence of these canals renders the sclero-cornea weak and therefore liable to be ruptured by violence.

THE CHOROID forms the vascular and pigmentary lining of the eye. It intervenes between the sclera and the retina. Histologically it consists of three layers: (1) the lamina supra-choroidea, which is similar in its structure to the lamina fusca of the sclera: (2) the lamina propria which consists of connective tissue, richly supplied with blood vessels, capillaries, veins, and nerves: (3) the basilar membrane of Bruch. This is a thin transparent structureless layer like that of Descemet in the cornea. A highly reflecting surface, called the Tapetum, is present in certain animals. This is formed by a layer of iridescent cells in the lamina propria.

THE CILIARY BODY connects the choroid to the iris. It consists of three parts: (1) the ciliary muscle, the function of which is to cause the accommodation of the lens; (2) the ciliary glands which secrete the aqueous humour; and (3) the orbiculus which is the part of the ciliary body connecting it with the choroid. The ciliary bodies are covered by a thin pigmented layer which is a continuation of the retina. This also covers the posterior surface of the iris and ends there.

THE IRIS consists of three layers: (1) the endothelium continuous with that on the posterior surface of the cornea: (2) the stroma of the iris, which consists of connective tissue (especially elastic fibres), two thin sheets of muscle, some pigment cells, vessels and nerves; (3) the pigmented layer continuous with the retina.

It should be noted that the posterior elastic lamina of Descemet in the cornea, after its division into three parts, forms by its posterior portion the ligamentum pectinatum iridis, by which the iris gains attachment to the sclero-corneal junction.

THE FUNCTIONS OF THE IRIS. The iris contains two layers of unstriated muscle fibres, the anterior which is circularly arranged so that by its contraction it acts as a sphincter, while the posterior is arranged radially, stretching from the attachment of the iris to the rim of the pupil so that by its contraction it causes the pupil to open. Because of the numerous pigment cells which it contains the iris is opaque to light. Contraction of the pupil thus causes the following effects: (1) reduction in the amount of light entering the eye, so that an image of less intensity is formed on the retina; (2)

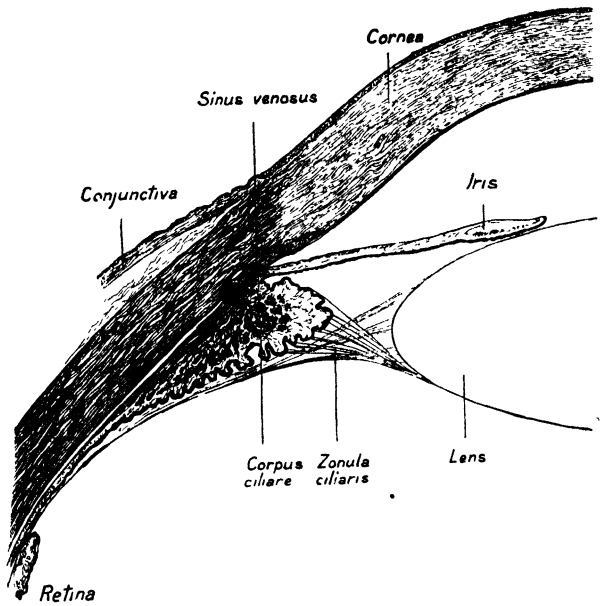


FIG 254. Section through anterior part of eyeball to show relations of iris and ciliary bodies to corneo-scleral junction and lens.

the use of the more central zones of the lens system only. The advantage of this lies in the fact that, as will be described later, the more peripheral zones suffer from errors of refraction to a much greater degree than do the central ones: the contraction of the pupil therefore improves the definition of the image; (3) an increase in the depth of focus of the eye, which is of great value for near vision. The way that depth of focus is obtained will be described later (see page 530).

CONTRACTION OF THE PUPIL occurs under the following circumstances:

(1) When light falls on the retina. This movement, which is known as 'the light reflex,' is determined by a contraction of the sphincter pupillæ, together with a relaxation of the dilatator muscle. The contraction ensues within a period of 0·04 to 0·05 sec. after the moment at which the light has

access to the retina, and attains its maximum within 0·1 sec. In man as well as in other animals which have binocular vision, and in which there is a partial decussation of the fibres of the optic nerves in the optic chiasma, the reflex is bilateral, *i.e.* light falling into one eye causes simultaneous contraction of both pupils. In the higher animals this reaction of the pupil to light demands the integrity of the nervous paths between the eye and the brain; but in many of the lower animals, *e.g.* in the frog and eel, the reflex nervous mechanism is aided by a local sensibility of the iris to light. In these animals the contraction of the pupil in response to illumination takes place even in the excised eye, and seems to be determined by a direct stimulation of the pigmented contractile fibres of the sphincter pupillæ by means of the light.

The effect of light on the pupil varies considerably according to the condition of adaptation of the eye. The dilatation of the pupil is maximal when the eye has been in the dark for some time and may amount then to 7·3 to 8 mm. In one experiment, on exposing the eye to a feeble light, *e.g.* 1·6 candles at a moderate distance, the pupil diminished in size to 6·3 mm.; with an illumination of 50 to 100 candles the size of the pupil was 3·7 mm., and with 500 to 1000 candles, 3·3 mm. This effect was obtained by a *rapid* change in the illumination of the eye. When the change in illumination is sufficiently slow no alteration of the pupil takes place, and when the illumination, which has at first caused a maximal constriction of the pupil, is continued the pupil gradually relaxes with the adaptation of the retina to light. This relaxation occurs within three or four minutes after exposure to light has taken place. The same influence of adaptation will be observed if two individuals are brought into a moderately lighted room, one from bright daylight and the other from a dark room. The pupils of the first will dilate widely, while those of the second will constrict to their maximum extent. In each case the change will pass off regularly, so that at the end of five or ten minutes there will be no difference observable between the eyes of the two persons.

(2) When vision is directed to a near object the functions of accommodation of the lens and of convergence of the visual axes which result, are associated with contraction of the pupil. The sharpness of vision is thereby improved together with an increase in the depth of focus. Results are very beneficial for the close examination of detail. Since it is possible by experiment to cause accommodation without convergence and vice versa, we may ascertain which function is the more closely associated with the pupil mechanism. The evidence appears to be in favour of convergence.

(3) In sleep the pupils are always contracted. This behaviour may enable us to distinguish feigned from real sleep. This contraction of the pupils, in spite of the fact that no light is entering the eyes, has been held to be caused by association with the upward and inward direction of the eye axes which was said to be found in sleep. There now appears to be irrefutable evidence that the eyes during sleep may occupy any position; another explanation of the constricted pupils must therefore be found.

(4) Contraction of the pupils is a marked effect of certain drugs such as Morphia or its crude extract Opium; other examples are Pilocarpine, Muscarine, Physostigmine and Cocaine. The parts of the pupillo-motor mechanism on which these drugs act will be considered later (see page 513).

(5) Constricted pupils are also met with in excitable conditions of the central nervous system, and therefore during the induction of chloroform and other anæsthesia.

(6) Small pupils which do not react to light are also met with in injuries to the spinal cord which involve the cervical region. The explanation of this will be given later (see page 511).

(7) Contracted pupils are found to accompany agony. This is probably due to the powerful flow of efferent impulses which leave the brain in this condition, affecting the 3rd nerve nucleus which controls the pupil.

(8) The pupil contracts when the aqueous is allowed to escape from the anterior chamber. The cause of this is said to be the dilatation of the vessels of the iris, owing to the fall of the surrounding pressure.

DILATATION OF THE PUPIL (1) Occurs on removal of a light stimulus from the eyes. If the removal be complete the pupil remains dilated, but if there be any light at all the pupil gradually contracts again as the eye becomes dark adapted.

(2) Occurs on accommodation for distant vision because the associated reflex stimulation of the pupilo-motor centre with accommodation is no longer called into play.

(3) Reflex dilatation of the pupil can be excited by the stimulation of any sensory-nerve. This may be due to some of the afferent impulses reaching the cilio-spinal sympathetic nerve centre in the cord.

(4) The pupils are frequently found to dilate in such emotional states as fear, anxiety, exhaustion and dyspnœa, and also at the moment of death.

(5) Dilatation is also found to accompany extreme exhaustion of the central nervous system, when the activity of all nerve centres is low, such as in deep chloroform anæsthesia, and in the coma produced by alcohol poisoning. Many other drugs such as atropine and homatropine cause dilatation, as will be described later.

(6) Dilated pupils inactive to light are found in injuries of the 3rd nerve, or its nucleus.

(7) Dilated pupils are also found when the intraocular pressure is abnormally high, as in glaucoma. This appears to be due to constriction of the vessels of the iris owing to the high external pressure to which they are subjected.

(8) Dilated pupils inactive to light are found in compression and severe concussion of the brain. This is probably due to the abolition of the normal nervous impulses to the muscles, so that the pupil dilates under the influence of its radial elastic fibres.

(9) Dilated pupils are found to accompany hyperactivity of the suprarenal glands, owing to the presence of considerable amounts of adrenaline in the blood. This occurs for example in oxygen want, dilated pupils being one of the characteristic signs of that condition.

INNERVATION OF THE IRIS. Before the work of Langley and Anderson on the iris there was doubt as to the method by which dilatation was brought about: some thought that it was due to inhibition of the sphincter, thus allowing the iris to open because of the radial elastic fibres which it contained; others that it was due to the emptying of the iris of blood from the contraction of the arterioles following stimulation of the sympathetic; others again that the cause was the longitudinal contraction of the radial arteries. But Langley and Anderson showed that a radial strip of iris, isolated except at its ciliary attachment, shortened to half its length when the cervical sympathetic was stimulated. It has been found further that local stimulation of the iris near its periphery causes a local dilatation of the pupil, and that cutting the sympathetic causes lasting constriction of the pupil.

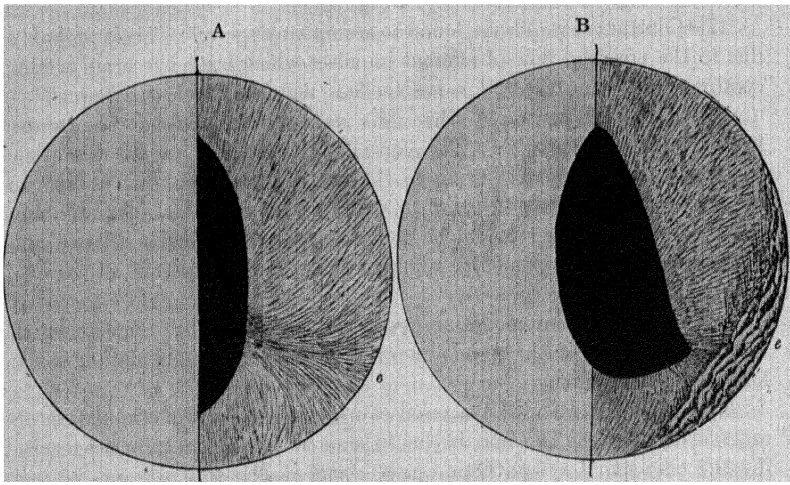


FIG. 255. Effect on iris of cat of local stimulation.

The first effect, as in A, is to cause contraction of the constrictor pupillæ below the electrodes, and this is succeeded in B by a strong localised contraction of the radiating fibres. (LANGLEY and ANDERSON.)

During these experiments they proved by microscopic examination that the dilatation of the pupil was wholly independent of the contraction of the blood vessels of the iris, and that draining the animal of blood did not influence the contraction of the iris. Later it was proved by histological technique that there are radial muscle fibres in the iris. These are poorly developed in mammals but are well marked in birds and in the otter. These facts together prove definitely that there exists a dilator muscular mechanism in the iris.

The sphincter muscle is supplied by nerve fibres which arise from the upper portion of the 3rd nerve nucleus in the ventral part of the Sylvian grey matter (see Figure 247). They travel down in the nerve as far as the ciliary (or lenticular) ganglion which is situated behind the eye close to the optic nerve. Here a branch from the nerve enters the ganglion to anastomose with its nerve cells. These nerve cells send off numerous small nerves called the short ciliary nerves (Fig. 253) which enter minute apertures in the sclera arranged in a ring round the optic nerve. Having entered the perichoroidal lymph space the nerves form a plexus from which are supplied the local blood vessels, the ciliary muscle (thus causing accommodation) and

the sphincter of the pupil. The dilator muscle of the iris is supplied by nerve fibres which originate in nuclei situated near that part of the 3rd nerve nucleus which supplies the sphincter fibres; this must be the case in order to explain the reciprocal innervation of the two antagonistic sets of muscles. From these nuclei nerve fibres travel down the cord as far as the 8th cervical and 1st dorsal ventral nerve roots, with which they leave the cord. They then proceed as part of the white rami communicantes to the superior thoracic ganglion, and thence by the sympathetic chain to the superior cervical ganglion, with the cells of which they anastomose. From these nerve cells the terminal nerve fibres for the dilator muscle of the iris arise; they appear to travel by two distinct routes: (1) from the superior cervical ganglion to the Gasserian ganglion of the 5th nerve, along the nasal branch of its 1st division, to turn off with the two long ciliary nerves to end by entering the sclera and joining the perichoroidal plexus, and thence to the dilator muscle; (2) from the superior cervical ganglion grey rami are given off which travel with and form plexuses on the various branches of the internal carotid artery. One of these is the cavernous plexus which sends a fine branch to the ciliary ganglion. From here the fibres travel with the short ciliary nerves as already described.

It is clear therefore that the short ciliary nerves contain both pupil-constrictor (3rd nerve) and pupil dilator (sympathetic) fibres, so that when these nerve fibres are stimulated electrically both the sphincter and the radial muscles of the iris will contract. But the sphincter fibres being the more powerful will overcome the others and therefore cause contraction of the pupil.

The nerve paths above described and the effects on the pupil which excitation of the nerves produces have been ascertained by the employment of the well-known methods of cutting the nerves, stimulating the cut ends, and also by following the tracts marked by degeneration. Thus cutting the sympathetic anywhere causes contraction, while cutting the 3rd nerve produces dilatation. Stimulation of the peripheral cut ends causes the opposite effects. The course of the dilator impulses down the cord to the cervico-dorsal region explains the contraction of the pupil which sometimes accompanies injuries to the cervical spine, and explains the origin of the term cilio-spinal centre.

Since the dilatation of the pupil is accompanied by contraction of the radial fibres on the one hand, and inhibition of the sphincter fibres on the other, and vice versa when contraction takes place, it would seem almost necessary to assume that there is some system of reciprocal innervation, like that found by Sherrington in the case of the limbs. Experimental evidence would point to such being the case. Thus stimulation of a part of the sensori-motor area of the brain is followed by dilatation of the pupil, which occurs even when the sympathetic has been cut. Since this excludes the possibility of an active contraction of the radial fibres (their nerve supply having been cut) it appears to prove that a reciprocal inhibition of the sphincter has been produced. The existence

of this reciprocating mechanism must greatly increase the efficiency with which the pupil works.

The above experiment also shows that there is a connecting nerve path between the pupilo-motor centre and the cortex of the brain. The reaction of the pupil to light and the association which exists between pupil, accommodation and convergence indicate that there are a number of other important connections between the pupilo-motor and other centres. The more important of these will be therefore traced.

The light reflex in certain animals such as frog and eel is assisted by a local sensibility of the iris to light, while in birds on the other hand it is to a considerable extent under voluntary control; but in man and in most other higher vertebrates the control is involuntary and unconscious, the size of the pupil being determined by the intensity of the light which is reaching the retina. Thus in bright light the pupil may be less than 0·6 mm. in diameter, while in the dark it may be larger than 10 mm.; such a change will cause the intensity of the light with the pupil contracted to be nearly one two-hundredth part of the intensity when the pupil is dilated. This indicates an extraordinary range of variation in the length of the sphincter muscle fibres. The reaction of the pupil to light varies with the rate at which change of intensity occurs. When the alteration is sudden the amount of contraction was found by Haycraft to be equal to the logarithm of the intensity of the light. When however the alteration is so gradual that the retina can become adapted to the change as it proceeds, then little or no change in the size of the pupil occurs. The function of the pupil appears rather to protect the retina from any sudden change of intensity, than to control the actual intensity of the light. With regard to the reflex arc the connection of the iris with the pupillo-motor centre has already been described. The connections of the retina with this centre appear to traverse the following course. Starting from the retina on one side the impulses travel up the optic nerve as far as the chiasma, where they travel on without decussating, and end by anastomosing with nerve cells in the anterior corpora quadrigemina. These nerve cells correspond with second order neurons and proceed to the pupillo-motor centres of both sides. It is found by experiment in monkeys that dividing the chiasma in the middle line does not stop either the pupil reflex in the eye stimulated or in the other eye. This shows that the nerves concerned with the pupil reflex go to the anterior corpora quadrigemina of the same side, and that the consensual reflex is due to the fibres from each anterior corpus quadrigeminum supplying the pupillo-motor centres of both sides. The appreciation of light by the retina is exceedingly rapid, whereas the response of the pupil to light action is very delayed. This is due in part to the fact that the muscles of the iris are composed of involuntary, smooth fibres. There is however a pathological condition called Hippus, in which the pupil alternately expands and contracts at a rate that would be impossible if the attempt were made to produce this effect by alternately exposing the eye to light. This proves that the muscle fibres can react more quickly and therefore that there is somewhere in the reflex arc a delay action mechanism. The object of this mechanism would appear to be to render the pupil stable and to prevent 'hunting.' When this mechanism is diseased Hippus results.

The accommodation reflex has been already considered. The close anatomical association of the 3rd nerve centres for pupil sphincter, accommodation and convergence by the internal recti is shown in Figure 247. When volitional impulses therefore come down viâ the frontal lobes of the cerebral hemispheres, they are conveyed to this group of centres, and the associated reflex results.

ARGYLL-ROBERTSON PUPIL. The diagnosis of interference with the pupillo-motor reflex is of considerable practical importance, because these paths appear to be particularly sensitive to

the presence of certain specific toxins in the blood. The commonest type is one in which there is contraction of the pupil on accommodation, but little or no reaction to the stimulus of the retina by light. This condition of the pupil is called the Argyll-Robertson pupil. The seat of the injury appears to be either in the fibres travelling from the retinæ to the anterior corpus quadrigeminum or those coming from these centres and travelling to the 3rd nerve nucleus.

ACTION OF DRUGS. The following Table shows the action of certain drugs on the pupil:—

TABLE TO SHOW ACTION OF DRUGS ON PUPIL.

Name of Drug	Pupils	Action
Morphia Opium	Small	Stimulate 3rd nerve nucleus.
Pilocarpine Physostigmine. Eserine	,,	Stimulate 3rd nerve endings in sphincter pupillæ.
Chloroform Ether	,,	At first act like morphia. In larger doses cause paralysis and therefore large pupils.
Atropine Homatropine	Large	Paralyse 3rd nerve endings in sphincter pupillæ
Adrenalin Cocaine	,,	Stimulate the sympathetic nerve endings in the radial muscle fibres.
Curare Nicotine	Small or Large	By paralysing the synapses in the ciliary or superior cervical ganglia if painted on them.

SECTION IV

THE NOURISHMENT AND PROTECTION OF THE EYE

ANATOMY OF THE LIDS. Closing the orbit in front and in close relationship to the eyes are the lids or palpebræ. The upper, which is the larger and the more movable, is provided with a special muscle, the levator palpebræ superioris. This is supplied by a branch of the oculo-motor (3rd) nerve. The two lids meet at an angle on both sides, forming the inner and outer canthi. They are stiffened by two plates of dense fibrous tissue, parallel to their edges, which are called tarsi. Near these and embedded in the substance of the lids are two sets of glands, the Meibomian glands and those of Moll. These secrete a greasy material which spreads over the lids. Superficial to these structures but under the skin is a ring of smooth muscle fibres which is common to both lids, the orbicularis palpebrarum, innervated by the 7th nerve. Its contraction closes the lids. Lining the inner surfaces of the eyelids is a thin layer of mucous membrane, the conjunctiva, which is reflected on to the front of the eye, and is continuous over the cornea as the anterior epithelial layer.

CLOSURE OF THE LIDS occurs: (1) during sleep; (2) if a very bright light enters the eyes; (3) by the sudden approach of some foreign body; (4) by contact of a foreign body with the lashes; (5) by irritation of the cornea or conjunctiva; (6) in sneezing; (7) in order to renew the fluid film on the cornea and conjunctiva. The reflex closure of the lids is therefore a very important function in affording protection to the eyes. The reflex apparently can be initiated by the stimulation of any of the branches of the ophthalmic (1st) division of the 5th (trigeminal) nerve. From the nucleus of this nerve in the pons Varolii fresh fibres take the impulses, it is believed, to the upper part of the facial nuclei of both sides (7th nerve), and from these to the orbicularis palpebrarum. This reflex is one of the last to be abolished by anæsthetics and is therefore used as a convenient test. It is called the corneal reflex.

The conjunctivæ and the cornea are kept in a moist condition by the tears, which are secreted by the lachrymal gland, situated in the upper and outer part of the orbit. This is a small acino-tubular gland, in microscopic structure similar to the parotid. Its secretion issues through several ducts, the mucous linings of which are continuous with that of the conjunctiva. Normally the secretion is just sufficient to keep the surfaces of the lids and

cornea moist, the evaporation keeping pace with the production. Under certain circumstances there is excess, and tears are produced.

TEAR FLUID consists chemically of an aqueous solution of sodium chloride and carbonate containing mucus, albumen and débris. It is found to have a bactericidal power which is lost if the fluid is boiled. Its functions are to keep the surfaces of the conjunctiva and cornea moist, and to remove foreign bodies and organisms. The secretion of tears is increased (1) by irritants and foreign bodies coming in contact with the cornea, conjunc-

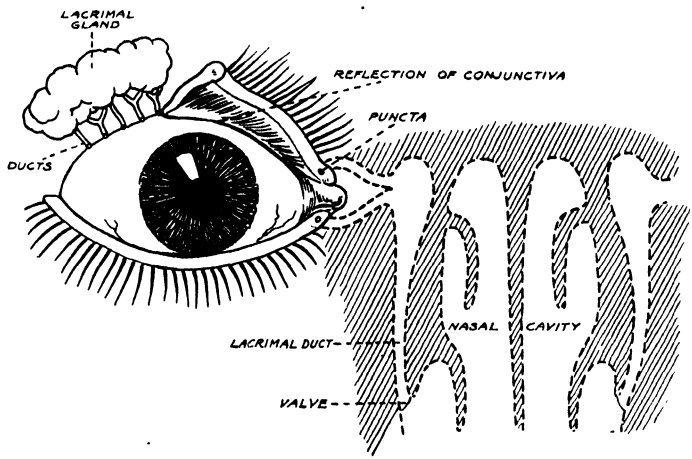


FIG. 256. Diagram to show origin and fate of tear fluid.

tiva or lids; (2) by irritation of the nasal mucous membrane; (3) by powerful illumination of the eyes; (4) By the incidence on the eye of infra-red (heat) and ultra-violet (actinic) rays; (5) under the influence of emotion. When excessive tear formation occurs the fluid either escapes over the front of the lids, or is drained away through the lachrymal duct into the nasal sinus. Three theories have been advanced to explain the latter: (1) syphoning, owing to the mouths of the ducts being at a higher level than their exit into the nose; (2) capillarity, owing to the tendency of the liquid to flow into the ducts through surface tension; (3) active removal by the act of blinking. It is not at the present time definitely known how this occurs. Some say that on closing the eye the internal palpebral ligament tends to be pulled on, and that this dilates and fills the lachrymal sac; others that the sac fills automatically through having been previously emptied by the contraction of Horner's muscle. It is possible that both processes occur.

The eyes of some fish and nearly all birds are provided with a nictitating membrane, a semi-transparent shutter which can be brought over the surface of the cornea. In the fish its possible function is to prevent the irritation of fine sand particles when swimming in rough water, without at the same time disturbing vision. In the case of the bird it might be used (1) to moisten the cornea during flight without interrupting

vision; (2) to reduce the light intensity when flying at high altitudes or when travelling towards the sun; (3) to reduce the irritation caused by ultra-violet orinfra-red rays which are present in excessive amount at high altitudes.

NUTRITION OF THE EYE

The eyeball is richly supplied with blood vessels, which form numerous anastomoses. Among these may be mentioned the arteries of the optic nerve sheath, the long and short posterior ciliary arteries, the anterior ciliary arteries which are branches from the muscular vessels, and the conjunctival arteries. These pierce the sclera to ramify freely in the choroid and the ciliary bodies. The iris is supplied by two concentric vessels, the circulus major and the circulus minor. Between the two pass a number of radial fibres. The retina, as will be shown later, has a separate blood supply through the central artery of the optic nerve. Other structures, notably the transparent optical media of the eye, have no direct blood supply and therefore depend on the flow of lymph from neighbouring structures for their nutrition. This fluid is formed principally by the ciliary bodies, and is called aqueous humour.

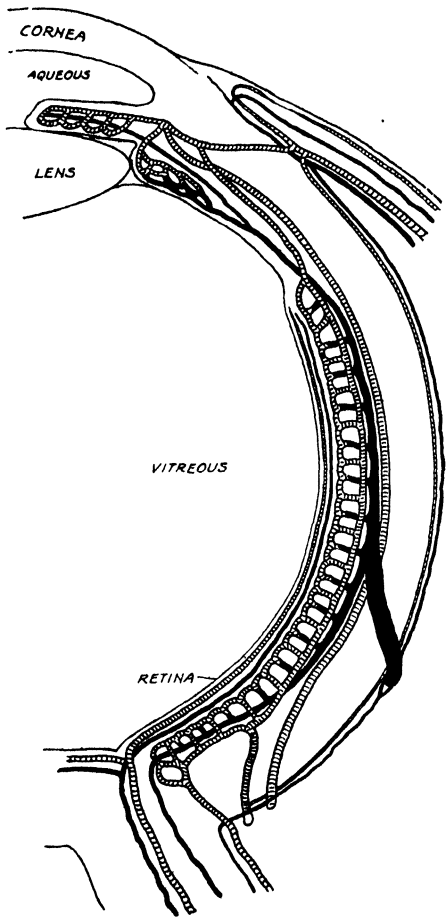


FIG. 257. Diagram to show the blood supply of the eyeball. Arteries 'lined,' veins 'black.'

AQUEOUS HUMOUR. The chemical composition of this fluid is water containing salts, traces of albumin and globulin, and a reducing sugar; it is probably freely oxygenated. This fluid after secretion leaves the eye in one of three ways. (1) By travelling through the pupil into the anterior chamber of the eye and then through the spaces of Fontana at the edges of the iris (the so-called filtration angle) into the canal of Schlemm and thus into the ciliary veins. (2) Through the crypts in the anterior surface of the iris into the veins of that structure,

(3) Between the suspensory ligaments of the lens, to the anterior surface of the vitreous, then down the hyaloid canal to the papilla of the optic nerve, and thus out via the lymphatics of the nerve sheath or the retinal vessels. But whatever the fate of the liquid may be, it is clear that the amount secreted must be the same as that which leaves, because otherwise there would be a variation in the intraocular pressure. Insufficient pressure will tend to disturb the correct relationship between the internal structures of the eye, and at the same time will prevent the proper action of the ciliary muscle in causing accommodation, because the suspensory ligaments of the lens will already be relaxed. Too great a pressure on the other hand will interfere with the proper blood supply to eye, and will prevent accommodation because the tension in the choroid will be too great for the ciliary muscles

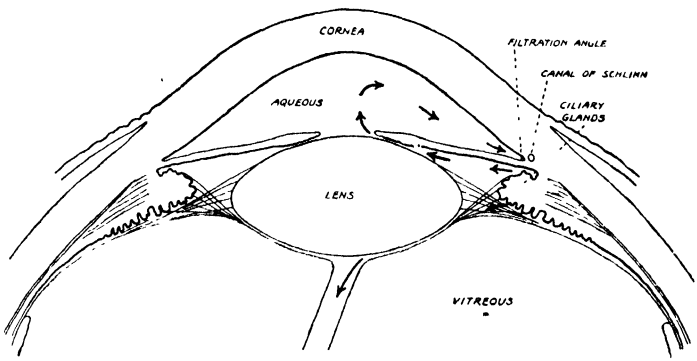


FIG 258 Diagram showing origin and fate of aqueous humour.

to overcome (see page 526). It is therefore important that there should be a proper control of the intraocular pressure. Experiments by Starling and Henderson in which the intraocular pressure was determined by a null method showed that such a mechanism exists, because as the arterial pressure increased, so also did that in the eyeball.

Whereas the arterial pressure varied between 70 and 180 mm. (by a difference of 110 mm.) the intraocular pressure was found to vary between 23 and 40 mm. (that is by 17 mm. only). The change in intraocular pressure is therefore less than one-sixth that taking place in the blood; the control mechanism would therefore appear to have very considerable efficiency.

GLAUCOMA. The normal intraocular pressure in man is found to be between 25 and 30 mm. of mercury. The tension thus set up in the walls of the eyeball is principally borne by the sclera; to some extent however assistance is rendered by the choroid owing to its elasticity, and by Tenon's capsule owing to the tonic contraction of its smooth muscle fibres (innervated by the sympathetic).

In abnormal conditions the efferent channels may become closed, either from pressure of the lens on the iris (as in hypermetropia), or from the presence

of epithelial débris in the anterior chamber. The intraocular pressure under these circumstances becomes very high, the disease being known as glaucoma. The principal symptoms of glaucoma are pain and impaired vision. The chief diagnostic signs are a stone-hard eyeball, sluggish rather dilated pupils, and the retina when examined through the ophthalmoscope is found to show cupping of the optic disc, and vessels which are thin and show pulsa-

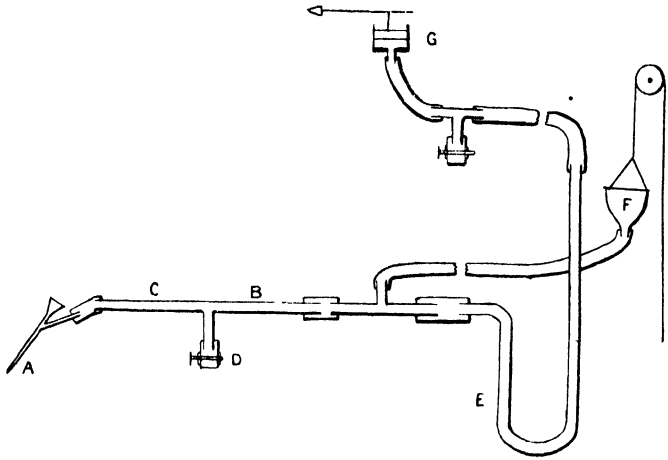


FIG. 259. Arrangement of apparatus for measurement of intraocular pressure (HENDERSON and STARLING.)
G is a piston-recorder for recording graphically the changes in pressure.

tion. In treating glaucoma operative measures to lower the pressure should be taken immediately, because the high pressure interferes with the proper blood supply to the eye. Since all hypermetropes (persons with long sight) have a tendency to suffer from glaucoma, care should be taken against giving drugs such as atropine which cause dilatation of the pupil, since this increases the resistance to the escape of fluid at the filtration angle, and therefore predisposes to an attack of glaucoma.

MALNUTRITION OF THE EYE shows itself in many ways: (1) as phlyctenular conjunctivitis in young children; (2) as myopia in school children in whom the sclera being ill-nourished is unable to withstand the intraocular pressure, so that the sphericity of the eyeball is destroyed; (3) as night blindness in middle age, the rod elements of the retina being affected; (4) as cataract in old age. In this condition the nutrition of the crystalline lens is impaired, and as a result it loses its normal transparency. The opacity develops sometimes at the centre (nuclear), sometimes in the cortex. The condition is treated by removing the lens (extraction of cataract).

SECTION V

THE OPTICAL SYSTEM OF THE EYE

THE optical system of the eye consists of those structures which together focus an image of external objects on the retina. In the mammalian eye there are four concerned: the cornea, the aqueous humour, the crystalline lens and the vitreous humour. The histology of the cornea has already been considered. The aqueous humour is a structureless liquid. The vitreous humour consists of anastomosing trabeculæ of collaginous material, the interstices of which are filled by a slowly circulating fluid similar to aqueous humour. The vitreous is enclosed in the hyalcid membrane, and through the middle of it runs the hyaloid artery during fœtal life, which goes from the central artery of the retina to the posterior surface of the lens.

THE CRYSTALLINE LENS is a biconvex transparent elastic body, enclosed in an elastic membrane called the capsule. To the periphery of the capsule are attached the suspensory ligaments of the lens, which are formed by the anterior radial fibres of the thickened portion of the hyaloid membrane (the zonula of Zinn). Between

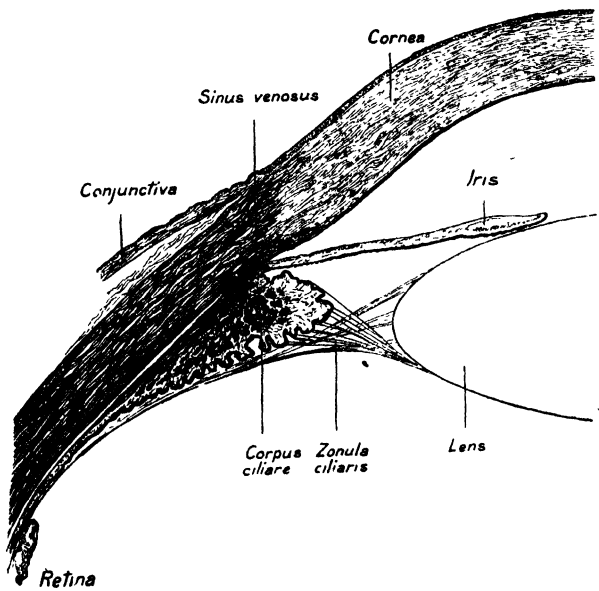


FIG. 260. Section through anterior part of eyeball to show mode of suspension of lens. (After MERKEL and KALLIUS.)

the suspensory ligaments are shallow pockets into which the ciliary processes fit closely. In this way the lens is held firmly in position, while at the same time by the movement of the ciliary processes under the action of the ciliary muscle, traction can be applied to the suspensory ligaments, thus effecting the change in curvature of the lens, which will be shown later to be necessary for accommodation.

Histologically the lens is composed of a number of radially arranged fibres each of which is a modified epithelial cell. These fibres are arranged in concentric layers, the more peripheral being soft, nucleated and of low refractive index, while the central form a dense non-nucleated mass of high refractive index, the fibrous layers between having an intermediate structure and index.

REFRACTION BY THE CRYSTALLINE LENS. Refraction occurs whenever light passes from a medium of one optical density into another. It is due to the fact that the waves of which the beam of light is composed travel more slowly in a dense medium, than they do in one of less density. Some of the effects which this produces are shown in the diagram below.

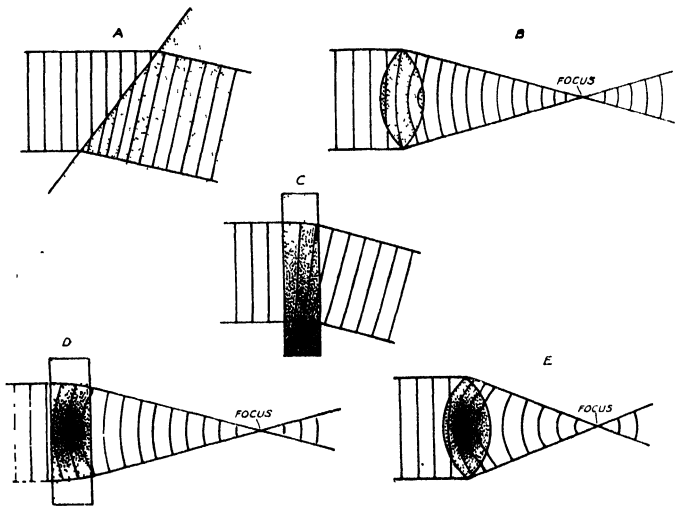


FIG. 261. Diagram showing refraction of light.

(A) By an inclined surface, (B) by a lens, (C) by a plate of greater density at its lower end than at its upper, (D) by a plate of greater density at its centre than at its edges, (E) by a lens of greater density at its centre than at its edges.

At A plane waves are seen entering a dense medium at an angle. At B the medium is lens shaped. At C the medium has a plane surface but has a greater density on the right than on the left. At D the medium has a plane surface but a greater density at its centre than at its edges. At E the medium is lens shaped as at B, and also varies in density as at D. The very great refracting power of such a structure is well shown. Since

this is the arrangement found in the lens of the eye, the power of refraction is very much greater than an ordinary lens would possess of the same curvature as the lens and the same refractive index as the average density of its substance. The optical properties of the lens are therefore unique, and it is interesting to find the same chemical substance in the lens of different morphological groups of animals. This would point to the substance with the required optical properties being somewhat rare. To show the effect which the increasing density of the lens produces, the refractive indices of its parts may be compared with its equivalent R.I. (that is the refractive index of a glass lens of the same size, shape and focal length). The refractive index of the periphery of the lens is 1·37, and that of the central nucleus 1·41, the mean being about 1·39. But the equivalent density of the lens is found to be 1·42, that is, greater by ·03 than the mean refractive index of its substance. The lens lies in contact with two transparent media both of which have an approximate refractive index of 1·34. The power of the lens if its composition was uniform would therefore be proportional to the difference between its own mean R.I. (1·39) and that of its surroundings (1·34), that is to 0·05. Owing to its peculiar structure its equivalent R.I. is 1·42, and therefore its power is proportional to the difference between that and 1·34, that is to 0·08. Owing to its structure the lens has therefore increased in power in the ratio of 0·08 to 0·05. Now since the range of accommodation depends, other things being equal, on the power of the lens, we see that the peculiar structure of the lens has nearly doubled its range. The graduation in the densities of the different layers of the lens has a further advantage which will be described later, in that it reduces the spherical aberration of the eye as a whole (see page 531) and also reduces the amount of scattered light within the eyeball.

THE OPTICAL CONSTANTS OF THE EYE. In the case of the crystalline lens, two methods are available for the determination of the radii

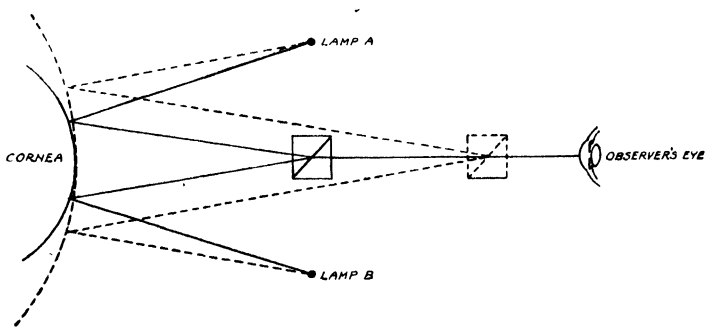


FIG. 262. Diagram to show a method of determining the curvature of the anterior surface of the cornea. The images of the lamps A and B are caused to coincide by shifting the position of the double image prism. The greater the curvature of the cornea the closer must the double image prism be to the eye.

of curvature of the anterior and posterior surfaces, namely measurements on the excised lens, either in the air or preferably suspended in a fluid of

known optical properties, or by estimating the apparent size of the images of an object which are formed by reflection at its surfaces. In order that the latter method shall succeed, a device must be employed for eliminating the effect of chance movements of the eye while under observation. This was first done by Thomas Young, by employing a method used in astronomy, namely that of doubling the image to be measured and then adjusting the lower edge of one image to be in coincidence with the upper edge of the other. If the eye moved during the determinations, both images moved together and therefore difficulties in adjustment were avoided. In the case of the cornea this method is alone available because only in the living state is the true curvature preserved. In the case of the lens the determinations are complicated by the fact that the refraction of the cornea has to be allowed for. Further, the images that are seen are neither bright nor sharply defined; but in spite of this considerable accuracy is attainable. The following are the approximate values given by these methods.

Radius of cornea	8 mm.
Radius of lens, anterior surface	10 mm.
Radius of lens, posterior surface	6 mm.

THE REFRACTIVE INDICES (optical densities) of the eye media are determined on the excised eye by means of the Abbe refractometer. It is found that the cornea and aqueous are so nearly alike that for all practical purposes they may be regarded as one, particularly as the posterior corneal surface has nearly the same centre as the anterior. The refractive indices may therefore be given as follows:—

Refractive index of cornea and vitreous	1·34
Refractive index of lens (equivalent)	1·42
Refractive index of aqueous humour	1·33

THE APPLICATION OF GAUSS' THEOREM. In addition to the above data we require to know the distance between the principal surfaces; these are found to be:—

Distance from cornea to anterior lens surface	3·6 mm.
Distance from cornea to posterior lens surface	7·6 mm.
Distance from cornea to the retina	22·6 mm.

These values being known it is possible by calculation to determine the path of any ray through the eye. The problem is however made very much simpler by the application of Gauss' theorem, which may be briefly stated as follows. Any system of spherical optical surfaces, the centres of which lie along a straight line, possesses six cardinal points, namely—two principal points h and h′, two nodal points K′ and K′, and two focal points, the anterior ϕ and the posterior ϕ'. It is found that these have certain properties which may be summarised as follows:—

An object placed at the first principal point is found after refraction to be at the second. Further, the image and its object are found to be of the same size. A ray passing through the first nodal point on its way into the system appears to come from the other on its way out, but its direction

is still parallel to the path which it travelled initially. A ray passing through either focus leaves the lens system on the other side parallel to the axis. It is further found that the distances between some of these points are equal, for example:—$\phi h = K'\phi'$ and $h'\phi' = \phi K$. Also $hh' = KK'$. The positions of these cardinal points has been determined in the case of the eye with considerable accuracy; the following approximate values may be given:—

Distance from front of cornea	to first principal point	h	1·7 mm.
	to second principal point	h′	2·0 mm.
	to first nodal point	K	7·0 mm
	to second nodal point	K′	7·3 mm.
	to anterior focus	ϕ	13·6 mm.
	to posterior focus	ϕ'	22·6 mm.
	to retina		22·6 mm.

The position of these points being determined, the direction of the rays of light through the eye can be easily obtained, and is shown diagrammatically in Fig. 263.

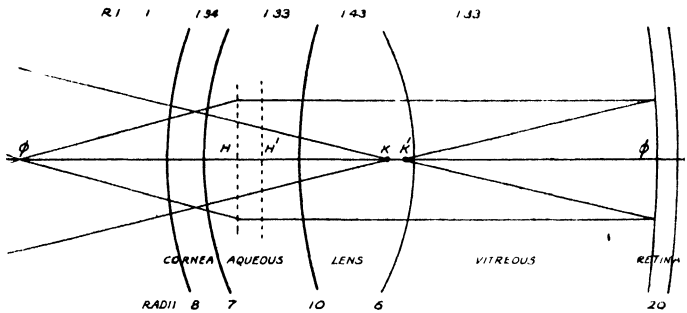


FIG. 263 The optical system of the eye shown diagrammatically. H and H′ principal points. K and K′ nodal points ϕ and ϕ' anterior and posterior foci.

It is of some interest to know the relative part taken by the various refractive media of the eye in the formation of the image. By far the greater part is performed by the cornea. The following values in mm. and dioptres may be given:—

	Mm	Dioptres
Focal length of the cornea	24	42
of the lens	44	23
of the whole eye	15·5	65

When opacities form in the lens (cataract) this structure is removed by operation. It is then found that a lens of approximately 23 dioptres has to be worn by the patient in order that he may see distinctly. When the eye is placed under water the refraction of the cornea is necessarily abolished because water has approximately the same refractive index. Under these conditions the eye becomes too long-sighted for distinct vision. The eye of the fish has met this difficulty by the provision

of a small, nearly spherical lens of very great density. In the fish therefore the lens takes the principal part in the refraction of the light so as to form an image.

REDUCED EYE. It is an interesting fact that, owing to the closeness of the principal and nodal points to one another, it is possible to imagine the media of the eye replaced by a single optical surface without introducing any appreciable error. To this system is given the title 'reduced eye.' Its constants are given in the following Table:—

Radius of surface	5 mm.
Position of principal point	2·3 mm.
Position of nodal point	7·1 mm.
Position of retina	22·6 mm.
Refractive index	1·33 mm.
Focal length	15·5 mm.

THE ACCOMMODATION OF THE EYE

The above description has been made on the supposition that the rays entering the eye consist of parallel bundles, or in other words that the objects seen are at an infinite distance from the eye. But during near vision such is by no means the case. If there were no means of varying the focus of the eye it would not be possible for divergent rays (those coming from near objects) to be brought to a focus on the retina. The mechanism for varying the focus of the eye is called the accommodation.

THE THEORIES OF ACCOMMODATION. Of these three are of historic interest only. (1) That during accommodation the cornea increases in curvature (similar to the bird's eye). This was disproved by Thomas Young who placed his eye under water, replaced the corneal refraction by a convex lens, and then found the amplitude of accommodation unaffected. (2) That the eye elongates in near vision, thus causing the rays from near objects to focus on the retina (similar to the arrangement in the mollusc

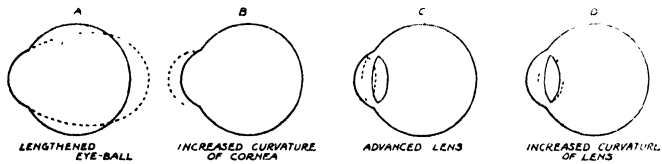


FIG. 264. Methods by which accommodation of the refraction of the eye for objects at different distances could be effected.

(A) By lengthening the eyeball (B) By increasing curvature of cornea. (C) By moving lens forward. (D) By increasing curvature of lens.

Pecten). This also Thomas Young disproved by placing two iron rings which could be clamped together, one in front of and one behind the eyeball. Having very prominent eyes he could do this if the eye being tested were rotated strongly inwards. The phosphene caused by the pressure of the posterior ring, which extended to the fovea, did not change in appearance during accommodation. He thus found no evidence for an elongation of the eye during accommodation. (3) That the lens during near vision advances towards the cornea (similar to the mechanism in the fish's eye). This view was disproved by Tscherning, who calculated that the lens would have to advance nearly 10 mm. in order to give the full amplitude found for the eye, whereas the anterior

chamber of the eye is, as we have seen, approximately, 2·6 mm. only. This brings us to the two modern theories, that of Helmholtz and Tscherning. The theory of the former (which is the one most generally accepted) supposes that the lens when removed from the eye is strongly convex and is accommodated for near vision. When in the eye however, it is caused to become flatter through the traction of the zonula of Zinn (suspensory ligaments) on the edges of its capsule, and is therefore focussed for distance. But when the ciliary muscle contracts, it removes the tension on the zonula and therefore allows the lens to return by its elasticity to its more spherical form. Before describing the rival theory it would be well to examine the principal evidence on which Helmholtz' theory has been based. During near vision measurement by means of the ophthalmometer shows that the anterior surface of the lens advances slightly and becomes at the centre of much greater curvature (10 mm. radius for distant vision, to 6 mm. for near). There can thus be no question that the change in the curvature of the lens is responsible for accommodation. The posterior surface is found to change

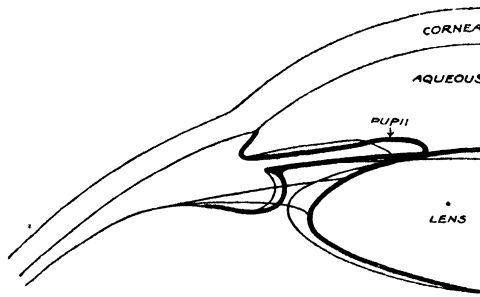


FIG. 265. Diagram to show the changes in the position and shape of the eye structures during accommodation. Thin line at rest, thick line during accommodation.

but little; almost the whole range is therefore produced by the anterior surface. The changes found to occur in the lens may therefore be summarised as follows:—

	Distance	Near
Radius of anterior surface . . .	10 .	6
Radius of posterior surface .	6 ..	5·5
Thickness of lens	3·6 ..	4
Focus of lens in mm.	44 ..	30
Focus of lens in dioptres	23 ..	33

If the lens in near vision becomes more spherical owing to the relaxation of the zonula, as Helmholtz supposed, we should expect a lens removed from the eye to be more spherical still, that is in a state of strong accommodation. Tscherning stated that the changes in the curvature of the lens are much more complex than those given above. During accommodation not only is there, he says, an increase in the curvature near the centre of the lens, but at the same time a decrease in the curvature at the periphery. This view he supported by quoting the careful measurements which Young made by means of his optometer, and which have been confirmed by other observers. There is found to be a zone about 1·4 mm. from the centre of the lens where the curvature does not change appreciably. Inside this zone the curvature increases during accommodation, whereas outside the lens becomes flatter.

Tscherning supposed that these changes of curvature are produced by increase in the tension of the zonula during accommodation, in other words exactly the opposite action to that which Helmholtz supposed to occur. This question as to whether contraction of the zonula is associated with near or distant vision can therefore be used as a criterion between the rival theories. Experiments have shown that the choroid moves

forward during accommodation in both man and animals; further, Hess has shown that, when full accommodation has been performed, the lens is only loosely supported, so that gravity can act on it and cause it to sink slightly in relationship to the other eye structures. These effects appear to be definitely in favour of Helmholtz' theory, and against that of Tscherning. The way in which the contraction of the ciliary muscles causes slackening of the zonula may therefore be given with some degree of confidence on Helmholtz' theory.

THE MECHANISM OF ACCOMMODATION. The ciliary muscle consists of two separate sets of unstriated muscle fibres, the more superficial set of radial or longitudinal fibres, the deeper of bundles of radial fibres. The former take their origin from the sclero-corneal junction, and are attached to the anterior part of the choroid coat behind the ciliary processes. When these fibres contract, they draw the choroid forward and inward, the ciliary processes tending to occupy a smaller circle. The circular fibres lie in the substance of the base of the ciliary processes so that, when they contract, they cause the apices of the processes to come together. In addition to these two sets of fibres a third set has been described as meridional. These are however part of the radio-longitudinal set from which there does not appear to be much object in differentiating them. The ciliary muscles therefore have a common action, causing the ciliary processes to form a smaller circle. The zonula of Zinn, or suspensory ligament, is formed of a large number of very fine fibres which run from the ciliary processes to the capsule of the lens. Further those which arise posteriorly are attached anteriorly and vice versa. When the ciliary muscle is in a state of rest, the tension in the choroid set up by the intraocular pressure causes the ciliary processes to be pulled in an outward and backward direction and therefore puts tension on the lens capsule through the zonula. The lens therefore tends to be flattened and accommodated for distance. On stimulating the ciliary muscle the tension in the choroid is opposed and the ciliary processes approximated. The zonula thus becomes slack, and the tension of the lens capsule decreases, allowing the lens to take up its more natural spherical shape, and thus to focus the rays from nearer objects.

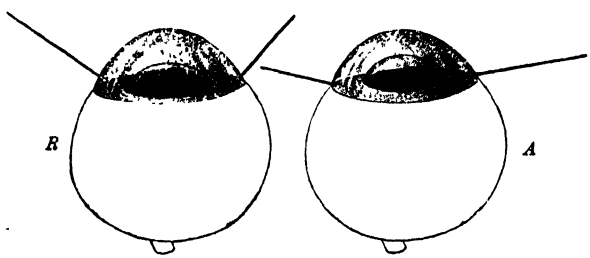


FIG. 266. Accommodation in the cat's eye. R, distance; A, for near vision. (After BEER.)

Two needles have been passed through the edge of cornea into the ciliary bodies, to show forward movement of the latter during accommodation.

INNERVATION OF MECHANISM OF ACCOMMODATION. The ciliary muscle is innervated through the 3rd nerve, its nucleus being situated near the mid line under those of the pupils. Owing to the close association of the nuclei on the two sides it is impossible to cause accommodation of the eyes separately. From these nuclei the fibres travel down with the rest of the nerve through the outer wall of the cavernous sinus, and when they reach the orbital cavity are given off to the ciliary (lenticular) ganglia, where they anastomose with nerve cells the processes of which then proceed through the short ciliary nerves to the eyeball.

The position of the higher centres connected with the nuclei concerned in accommodation are not definitely known ; it is believed that they come from the occipital cortex. But since it is possible to carry out willed changes of focus as well as subconscious ones, there must be connections with other parts of the brain as well.

THE AMPLITUDE OF ACCOMMODATION in the emmetropic (normal) eye is measured by ascertaining the nearest point from the eye at which perfect vision can be obtained. Since it is possible that the eyes, when examined separately, can focus nearer objects than they can when used together (owing to the limitation in the power of convergence), one of the eyes should be closed when making the determination. In the ametropic (abnormal) eye it is necessary to determine the far point as well as the near, since the former is not at infinity as it is in the emmetropic eye. But other difficulties are encountered, because in the case of hypermetropic (long-sighted) eyes an object placed at infinity still requires some accommodation in order to focus it. Lastly there comes the personal equation of the patient, because it is found that even when apparently fully relaxed, the instillation of atropine usually causes some further relaxation of the accommodation ; so in the same way the instillation of eserine is usually followed by a definite increase in the accommodative effort over that which can be voluntarily exerted. To obtain the maximum amplitude of the accommodation these drugs should therefore be used. Where a comparative and relatively inaccurate value is alone required they may be omitted. Of the many methods that may be employed probably the simplest is by the use of the set of trial lenses, which vary in their curvature by small uniform amounts from strongly convex (plus) to strongly concave (minus). The test object consists of a pin placed vertically in a board at any fixed distance from the eye, a white surface being arranged behind it. A pair of spectacles to hold the trial lenses are placed before the eyes, and in them are inserted two metal plates with two vertical slits in them, so that each eye in turn may look at the test object through the slits in the plate opposite it. To determine the near point, minus (concave) lenses of gradually increasing power are placed before one of the eyes, the other being closed, until one is found that just causes the image of the pin to appear double. The power of the next weaker lens is therefore taken to be the correct one. To determine the far point, plus (convex) lenses of increasing power are tried in a similar manner, and that one taken which just does not cause appreciable doubling. The difference between the power of the two lenses found in this way gives in dioptres the value of the amplitude of the accommodation. Care should be specially taken to see that the value found for the concave lens has the minus sign placed in front of it. Thus if it was found that the far point was reached by the use of a convex lens of 2·25 dioptres, and that the near point required a concave one of 7·5 D., then the amplitude is not 5·25 D. but 9·75 D. Careful measurements made in the above manner show that there is for different ages an average amount of accommodation. In youth the amplitude is large, but it decreases uniformly to old age, and this decrease is called presbyopia (old-sight). The amplitude found as a rule at different ages is approximately constant and is given in the Table below.

Age in years.	Accommodation in dioptres.
10	13·8
15	12·6
20	11·5
25	10·2
30	8·9
35	7·3
40	5·8
45	3·7
50	2·0
55	1·3
60	1·1

This gradual reduction in the amplitude of the accommodation is caused by the hardening of the crystalline lens, which with the advance of years robs it of the elasticity of youth. As a rule the change goes on unheeded till the time comes when the near point of vision has receded so far from the eye that the book has to be held at a distance, in order to be focussed clearly. Then it is found that the print, particularly if it is fine, becomes unreadable, and convex glasses have to be worn. It is at that time that presbyopia may be said to begin, usually at an age of 45 to 50, in emmetropia. In hypermetropia, presbyopia shows itself earlier than normal, and in myopia (short-sight) later. The reason for these differences will be described later when dealing with these conditions.

The mechanism of accommodation is affected in a number of pathological conditions; the principal ones will be given. Paralysis of the ciliary muscles frequently occurs after diphtheria and influenza: it is probably due to bacterial toxins circulating in the blood. The paralysis usually disappears during convalescence. Loss of accommodation is frequently one of the first symptoms of glaucoma: in this case the cause is the abnormally high intraocular pressure, since that will cause so great an increase in the normal tension of the choroid that the ciliary muscles have not sufficient power to draw the edges of the choroid and ciliary bodies into a circle of smaller radius, and thus to allow the lens to accommodate. Apparent diminution of the amplitude of accommodation combined with apparent myopia (short-sight) occurs in patients who have spasm of the ciliary muscles. This is found in two types of cases, children with eye-strain, and women with hysteria. In both the employment of atropine yields the normal amplitude and at the same time removes the apparent myopia, thus indicating the cause of the trouble. Occasionally the amplitude of accommodation is different in the two eyes, and is accompanied by unequal pupils. Such a condition may follow an accident or be caused by specific toxins.

THE EFFECT OF DRUGS on the accommodation has already been alluded to. In ophthalmic practice three are used in order to paralyse the ciliary muscle, namely atropine (one-half per cent. solution), homatropine (2 per cent.) and scopolamine (one-fifth per cent.). One of these drugs is placed within the conjunctival sac, and from here it slowly travels by an at present unknown route to the ciliary and iris muscles, both of which are paralysed. This fact is of the greatest importance, for if this path did not exist the use of these valuable drugs would hardly be possible. Contraction of the ciliary muscles and of the sphincter pupillæ is caused by the three drugs eserine, pilocarpine and physostigmine. One of these is often used to counteract the effects of the atropine group,

SECTION VI

THE REFRACTION OF THE EYE

SINCE the eye forms an image of external objects by means of its refracting media, it is found to have properties and to suffer from defects similar to those met with in the case of other optical systems. We may therefore treat the eye as if it were an optical instrument and estimate its efficiency from that point of view. In the first place therefore we must consider what kind of an image it would form if it were a perfect lens system, suffering from no kind of aberration. Our experience of other lens systems, well-nigh perfect, has shown us that the image of a distant point source of light is not a mathematical point, as geometrical optics would have us believe, but is on the contrary a definite pattern of quite considerable size, the shape and dimensions of which can either be calculated from the conditions, or may be seen, measured and photographed by appropriate means. The formation of this pattern is due not to any defect of the lens, but to the fact that light is a form of wave motion, which exhibits a property called diffraction.

DIFFRACTION OF LIGHT. When a broad wave of light surges through the ether from a distant source of light, its front travels straight and inflexible under the influence of certain well-known laws. These in popular language restrain the tendency of a portion of the wave front to deviate, because of an equal effort of a neighbouring portion of the wave front to do the same thing, only in the opposite direction. At the edges of the wave on the other hand there is no neighbouring portion from which to obtain support, and therefore these edge portions tend to spread sideways more and more from the main wave. A narrow ray of light therefore after passing through the pupil of an optical system, will show this phenomenon to such a marked extent that only a small portion of the total amount of light will actually reach the goal defined by the original wave front. The smaller the pupil and therefore the narrower the beam of light, the greater the amount of spreading that we should expect to find. And experiment shows that this is the case. Further, we should suppose that in the case of any one beam the more spreading would occur the further the ray has to travel. This also is found to be the case. Lastly if waves of different wavelength were tried, we would expect a short wave to suffer more than a long, because to the short wave the distance travelled would seem relatively greater. And so it is. We can therefore summarise the above by saying that the size of the diffraction pattern formed by any lens system varies directly as the focal length of the system and the wavelength of the light, and inversely as the diameter of

the pupil through which the light passes. In the case of any lens system such as the eye, in which the pupil is circular, experiment and calculation are agreed that the image of a point source consists of a series of concentric rings of light, having a bright spot at their centre. The diameter of this spot in the case of the eye is found to be 0·01 mm. with a pupil of 2 mm. diameter. No matter how perfect the eye be as an optical instrument, diffraction sets a limit in this way to the perfection of the image that can be formed. This should not however be thought of as a defect but as a property, since it is caused by the nature of light itself. In the consideration of the principal optical errors of the normal eye we have to decide in each case not only to what extent the defect is present, but whether the defect produces any noticeable change in the diffraction pattern which may affect definition.

DEPTH OF FOCUS, like diffraction, is a property of a lens system and not an aberration. Its origin may be explained as follows:—Suppose objects 100 metres away to be forming sharp images on the retina, then objects at 200 metres will form images which come to a focus slightly in front of the retina, and objects at 50 metres images that are slightly behind. If however the focussing points are only a short distance in front of or behind the retina, the image of a distant point which fell on a single cone would still do so because the cone has a certain diameter, although its distance from the eye had been altered. Depth of focus in the case of the eye is the greatest distance through which a point can be moved, and still produce an image which falls exactly on a cone without spreading at all on to neighbouring ones. For example, in the above case the distance moved was from 200 to 50 metres, that is, the depth of focus was 150 metres. Now it is found in the case of any lens system that depth varies with the aperture of the pupil. Thus in the case of the eye the following values are obtained.

Pupil diameter	Depth at infinity	Depth at 25 cms
1 mm.	From inf. to 8 metres	3·2 cm.
2 „	„ „ 16 „	1·6 „
3 „	„ „ 24 „	1·1 „
4 „	„ „ 32 „	·8 „

We see therefore that not only does depth decrease as the aperture of the pupil increases, but that it also decreases as the mean distance of the objects from the eye decreases. Thus with a pupil of 3 mm. the eye if focussed sharply on objects 24 metres away, would also be in focus for objects at infinity and also for objects at 12 metres. Depth of focus is therefore considerable at this distance. But if the eye is working at the ordinary reading distance (25 cm.) depth would be 1·1 cm. only. At a pupil diameter of 1 mm. depth would be increased threefold, and therefore the closure of the pupil, which accompanies accommodation and convergence for near objects, has the valuable property of increasing the depth of focus at the same time.

CHROMATIC ABERRATION OF THE EYE. It was shown in Section I that white light consists of a number of rays of different wavelength, and that the short rays on refraction are more bent than the long. When therefore white light is incident on a lens, the rays of short wavelength come to a focus in front of those of longer wavelength. This difference of focus for rays of different colour is called chromatic difference of focus. Experiment shows that, when such a series of foci are formed by the eye, the accommodation is so adjusted that the rays of greatest intensity (usually yellow rays) form the most sharply focussed image, and the colours of longer and shorter focus form blurred discs of light of

relatively low intensity on top of this. Under these conditions it is found that quite well defined images are produced. Thus, with a pupil of 2 mm. diameter, approximately 70 per cent. of the light falls in an area of 0·005 mm. diameter. Further it may be shown that a lens system such as the eye, which suffers from chromatic aberration, produces an image that is only just appreciably worse than one that is perfectly corrected, when the effects of diffraction are taken into account in both cases. But since the effects of chromatic aberration increase as the pupil enlarges, while those caused by diffraction decrease, it is clear that the larger the pupil the more does chromatic aberration tend to spoil definition. But as this is accompanied by decrease in diffraction, the two changes taken together have the effect of leaving the actual definition practically unchanged. This important conclusion will be referred to again more fully in the last section. Beside effects on definition, chromatic aberration causes small bright points of light on a dark ground to form images which are largely composed of yellow rays, and on the other hand small black objects on a bright ground to be purple in colour. The reason for these colours being unnoticed in ordinary circumstances is due to the recognition by the eye of the presence of the complementary colour which forms a fringe round the central point.

SPHERICAL ABERRATION OF THE EYE. The employment of spherical surfaces to bound optical media leads to a difference in the position of the foci of rays that have passed through the centre of the lens and those that have passed through the more peripheral parts. The latter usually form a focus nearest to the lens. Since the eye is bounded by nearly spherical curves it has been assumed that this aberration must be present in this organ. It should be remembered however that the crystalline lens has a structure quite different to that found in the lens systems of optical instruments. For the presence of a graduation of optical density, culminating in a nucleus of relative great curvature, causes rays passing through the centre of the eye to be refracted to a greater extent than more peripheral rays, or in other words exactly the opposite effect to that produced by spherical aberration. Measurements on the eyes of different individuals therefore show the presence both of small amounts of under correction (when the correcting effect of the lens nucleus has not been enough) and also actually of over correction (when the lens nucleus has had too big an effect). In quite a number of cases the amount of spherical aberration is negligible even with pupils of 4 mm. diameter. With larger pupils there is probably a certain amount of under correction, but this again is less than would be found in the case of spherical surfaces because the more peripheral parts of the cornea are flattened and therefore refract less (as Gullstrand has shown). We may say therefore that in everyday life the effects of spherical aberration are altogether negligible, compared with those of diffraction and chromatic aberration.

PERIPHERAL ABERRATIONS OF THE EYE.

So far the definition of an image lying on the principal axis of the lens has alone been considered. When this is not the case other conditions are encountered which introduce less favourable conditions. In the first place the rays that form images on the peripheral parts of the retina make considerable angles with the surfaces of the eye media. This will cause chromatic difference of magnification, since blue rays will be more bent and will therefore form smaller images than red rays. It will also introduce 'comma,' that is, the effect due to disobedience of the sine condition. It is seen at once therefore that the image formation by the periphery of the eye is altogether more imperfect than it is at the centre. The presence of the nucleus of the lens still further impairs the marginal definition. In fact we may say that in the eye, as in the microscope objective, the marginal images have been sacrificed in order thereby to improve the central ones. That this has been a very valuable policy will be shown later. It will be shown in the next section that the most sensitive region of the retina is not exactly in correspondence with the optical axis of the lens system of the eye, being displaced approximately 0·5 mm. to the temporal side. We must therefore consider briefly to what extent the peripheral aberrations of which we have just spoken will interfere with the definition.

THE SINE CONDITION (COMMA). This aberration is found to show itself in optical instruments by a difference in the position of the various parts of the image produced by the separate zones of the lens. Instead of rays from a point source coming to a focus at one and the same point, they are found to form a fine line or comma, the tail of which points towards the optical axis. If the optical system obeys a rule called the sine condition, comma is corrected. The eye appears to obey this condition exactly, and therefore so far as comma is concerned the displacement of the fovea to one side of the optical axis is no disadvantage.

CHROMATIC DIFFERENCE OF MAGNIFICATION, like chromatic difference of focus, is caused by the unequal refraction of light rays of different wavelength. But since on refraction violet rays are more bent than red rays, their foci form not only at different distances from the cornea, but also at different angles with the optical axis. It follows from this that objects, subtending a considerable angle at the eye, produce images which are smaller for violet rays than they are for yellow rays, while those for red rays are larger still. Images produced by rays of different wavelength therefore vary in size. Since that part of the retina which possesses the best vision (the fovea) is situated to one side of the optical axis, all images formed on it must suffer from this error. Far from this being a disadvantage however, it is surprising to find that there is because of this an actual diminution of the effects of chromatic aberration, and that the displacement is therefore a wholly beneficial one. That this is probably the explanation of the development of the most sensitive part of the retina at this point hardly requires indication.

RADIAL ASTIGMATISM must, according to optical theory, be present in the image formed on the fovea. Experiment shows however that its effects can be to a considerable extent neutralised by positive axial astigmatism such as is found in the eye of emmetropes. The presence of this aberration may therefore be ignored so far as the fovea is concerned.

STRUCTURE OF FOVEAL IMAGE may be determined approximately by considering in turn the effects of different aberrations on the light rays which enter the eye. For this purpose the only errors of importance are chromatic differences of focus

and magnification. In addition however we must take into account the very important effects of diffraction. The final results of such a calculation show that the images of rays of different wavelength overlap one another. At the centre of the image is seen the sharp yellow focus of the highest intensity. Eccentric to it and overlapping one another are seen the diffuse red and green foci, which are of much less intensity. Where these overlap they produce a compound yellow according to the rules of colour mixture. Further outwards is the still more diffuse image of the blue rays, which is of almost negligible intensity. It is seen therefore that the centre of the image is entirely occupied by the sharp and intense focus of the yellow rays. Not only are these rays the brightest in the spectrum, but they are also those nearest to white light in their physiological properties. It is because of this structure of the image that the acuity of vision is so great at the fovea.

PERIPHERAL IMAGES have, as stated above, been to a considerable extent sacrificed, so far as their definition is concerned, in order to obtain the best possible conditions at the fovea. We find therefore at the periphery, images that in no way compare with those formed near the optical axis of the eye. Even here however there is evidence that the eye has been designed to give the best results obtainable. The two aberrations which most concern us other than those already mentioned are curvature of the field and distorsion.

CURVATURE OF THE FIELD is found in all positive lens systems of simple formula. Since the photographic plate is flat it is one of the principal errors to be corrected in the photographic lens. In the eye on the contrary the effects of the aberration have been avoided not by correcting the lens system but by curving the sensitive surface to correspond. Calculation shows that, for correction, the radius of the surface of the retina should be somewhat shorter than the equivalent focal length of the lens system. But we know that the radius of the retina is approximately 10 mm., while the focal length of the eye is 15·5 mm. The required conditions therefore appear to have been fulfilled.

DISTORSION shows itself in photography by a curving of lines which are known by experience to be straight. But this straightening, which can be readily effected by suitably designing the lens system and by using a flat plate, is found to be accompanied by a change in the size of an image, according as it is formed at the centre or the edge of the plate. But such a change in size would be most disadvantageous in the case of the eye, because not only would the apparent size of objects vary, according as their images fell on the centre or the periphery of the retina, but also the perception of perspective, which, as we shall see later, depends on the correct estimation of the differences between the position of near and distant objects, would be seriously interfered with. In the eye it is very much more important that images should keep the same size, than that distortion should be corrected by optical means. In order that images shall be constant in size, the retina must be curved to approximately the same extent as is required for the correction of curvature of field. We see therefore that the shape of the retina has a very important effect on peripheral vision, and further that, so far as we are able to judge, the best shape has been adopted.

OTHER OPTICAL DEFECTS. The analogy between the eye and the photographic camera shows that there are a number of other defects from which the eye may suffer; these are (1) the presence within the eyeball of light scattered from one part of the retina to another (equivalent to shiny bellows in the camera); (2) the spreading of the image formed on one part of the retina to neighbouring portions (equivalent to halation); (3) the illumination of the retina by light internally reflected at the different optical surfaces (known in photography as flare); (4) the exposure of parts of the retina close to those receiving the image because of imperfection in the optical system (called irradiation).

Scattered Light. In describing the histology of the retina it will be shown how generously the layer of cells lying immediately under the sensitive layer of rods and

cones is supplied with pigment; the object of these is clearly to absorb scattered light. In spite of this however we find considerable amounts of light being reflected back again by the retina; in fact it is this light that enables us to see the retinal nerves and vessels through the ophthalmoscope (see page 554). The spherical shape of the eyeball will cause the greater part of this reflected light to travel towards the front of the eye, and to fall on an insensitive layer of iris or retina anterior to the ora serrata. From here it will be reflected again on to the retina, but with such reduced intensity as not to cause stimulation. Light reaching the anterior part of the retina through the pupil would after reflection tend to travel towards the posterior part of the retina, that is the part most sensitive to light. The intensity of these peripheral rays is however diminished in a number of ways: firstly by the eyebrows, cheeks and nose; secondly by the eye-lashes when the lids are approximated, as they are when looking towards a bright light; thirdly by the relative smallness of the pupil for oblique rays (the pupil being a slit-shaped instead of a circular opening for such rays). The effect of scattered light in the eye is therefore eliminated in this way. It should be noted that in certain animals, which have very acute night vision, the pigment cells of the choroid at the posterior pole of the eye are iridescent, and form a highly reflecting surface behind the retina, which is called the tapetum. The object of this would seem to be to increase the stimulus of a given intensity of light, but the presence of this reflecting layer must increase the amount of scattered light in the eye, and would therefore appear to be of disadvantage in day vision.

Halation. This is caused in the camera by the image that has formed on the plate being reflected back again on to the plate from the internal surface of the glass. This is not apparent in the photographic film, because owing to the thinness of the gelatin film the reflected image falls back on to the same part of the plate again. In the case of the retina the reflecting layer must be exceedingly close to the sensitive layer, if indeed the two are not identical; halation in the eye would therefore appear to be negligible in amount.

Flare. The amount of light reflected by the surface bounding two optical media increases as the difference between their refractive indices increases, and also with the angle which the light makes with the surface. Therefore, other things being equal, the smaller the angle of incidence and the more nearly the refractive indices are identical, the less the amount of flare will be. In the eye the lens system is as it were immersed in a medium of almost the same refractive index as itself: and further even that difference is reduced by the fact that the actual refractive index of the crystalline lens is very much less than its equivalent R.I. owing to its peculiar structure. Flare in the eye must therefore be quite inconsiderable in amount.

Irradiation. That this phenomenon is present in the eye may be shown directly by experiment. If for example an electric light filament be looked at before and after the switching on of the current, the increase in thickness on illumination is obvious. Its cause appears to be imperfect definition, spreading of the light from one retinal element to its neighbours, or spreading of the nerve impulse either at the retina or even in the brain itself.

ABNORMAL REFRACTION OF THE EYE

It would almost be anticipated that such a complicated organ as the eye would be found to show individual abnormalities. A further consideration would probably suggest to us that, considering the smallness of the change that is necessary in any one of the optical media in order completely to destroy definition, it is nothing short of astonishing that abnormality of refraction is relatively so uncommon. In the newly born the eye is almost always long-sighted (hypermetropic); this is due to the eyeball being too small for the optical system which it contains; the image formed by the latter is therefore focussed behind the retina. As age advances the eyeball grows until

the point is reached at which the eye is emmetropic (normal). If however the child is allowed to use its eyes too much for near work, the eyeball goes on increasing in size until it has overshot the mark and has thus caused the eye to become short-sighted (myopic). There would appear to be some kind of automatic control, which causes the eye to grow till it is in adjustment with the conditions most frequently encountered. This hypothesis is confirmed by the fact that if a child which is beginning to develop short-sight is prevented from using near vision for a year or two, the development of short-sight stops. The importance of the early detection of the onset of short-sight therefore cannot be too strongly urged.

THE METHODS OF DIAGNOSIS. The detection of errors of refraction in the eye may be effected in various ways, each of which is said to possess advantage. Some of these have come into such general use that they may be briefly considered as an introduction to the description of the more important types of error which they are used to investigate.

THE DETERMINATION OF THE VISUAL ACUITY. It has been found by experiment that persons with normal sight can distinguish between objects when the angle separating them is not much less than one minute. Test type has therefore been prepared in which the letters are composed of lines which subtend this angle at the eye, when the type is placed at a standard distance of six metres. Persons who are able to read the type at this distance are said to have normal vision. Above these standard letters are placed a series of larger letters, which at two, three or four times the standard distance would subtend the standard angle. A person with reduced acuity might be able to read at six metres the type that should be read at sixty. He therefore has vision which is one-tenth the normal. Such a person might have long-sight, short-sight or astigmatism: to determine which is present a pair of spectacles is placed before his eyes into which can be inserted any two of a large selection of glasses of different power, which are known as trial lenses. These are tried in turn in an orderly manner until some are found which allow the man to read the standard type at the standard distance. His visual acuity is now at the normal and the strength and shape of the glasses in front of his eyes is carefully noted, so that others of the same power may be fitted to spectacles for him to wear. If the glasses are found to be convex (plus), then he was suffering from long-sight (hypermetropia), and if concave (minus) from short-sight (myopia). But if on the other hand cylindrical lenses had to be used, then he had astigmatism, either alone or in conjunction with long- or short-sight.

THE METHOD OF RETINOSCOPY. Such a method as that just described could only succeed if the person tested were an intelligent adult, because we depend entirely on his giving the correct answer when we ask, if the substitution of a different lens to the one we have already placed before him makes vision better or worse. With a child such a method could never succeed. Another method is therefore practised, which has the great advantage of being independent of the patient; in fact for the purpose of the test he might be blind. This method consists in throwing into each of his eyes in turn, a beam of light reflected off a plane mirror, in the centre of which is a hole, through which the doctor looks. When the beam of light is directed into the patient's eye the doctor sees a pink reflected beam of light coming to him through the patient's pupil. As the mirror is gently tilted, so as to throw the beam slightly upwards and slightly downwards, so the pink beam appears to move up and down behind the patient's pupil. If it moves down as the mirror is tilted down the movement is said to be WITH the mirror, and the patient is hypermetropic, requiring plus spectacles. If on the other hand the beam moves AGAINST, minus spectacles are required since the patient is short-sighted. By placing glasses of different power in front of his eye until one is found which causes the pink beam to move neither with nor against the mirror, the actual power for the spectacles required by the patient is ascer-

tained. It should be carefully noted however that, since the doctor is standing at about a meter distance from the eyes of his patient, plus one D must be subtracted from the power of any glasses that are found to be necessary. Thus if the patient was found to be myopic and minus 7 D spherical lenses were required to neutralise the movement of the beam, then the power that should be ordered is minus 8 D spherical. This test is found to work admirably in practice. It is better to have paralysed the pupil reflex and the accommodation of the patient previous to the test by the use of atropine, but some say that this is unnecessary.

OTHER METHODS. Of other methods of testing vision little requires to be said: some require the use of special instruments such as the optometer and the refractometer. Another again depends on the determination of both the far and near points. This is of distinct value because it at once gives the amplitude of the accommodation, which is an important determination. Others are based on the use of the ophthalmoscope. But none of these methods are so simple or accurate as the method of retinoscopy described above.

STENOPÆIC APERTURE. Often in practice the question arises as to whether low visual acuity is due to defect in the optical media of the eye, or to disease of the retina. This question can be readily answered by placing in front of each eye in turn a metal disc in which has been drilled a one-third millimeter hole. If this improves acuity the defect is not in the retina; if it does not it is. This test should be done in a good light because of the small amount of light passed by the hole. A hole used in this way is called a stenopæic aperture.

HYPERMETROPIA OR LONG-SIGHT. There are two principal varieties of long-sight, firstly that in which the eyeball is too small and too short for the normal optical system, secondly that in which the eyeball is normal but the refracting power of the lens below the normal. The first variety is found in childhood, because the optical system reaches its adult size much earlier than does the eyeball. In the majority of children the eyeball continues to grow until it is the correct size, and therefore long-sight disappears. In a certain number of cases this does not happen and therefore long-sight remains through life. The second variety is found in old age, and appears to be due to the absorption of water by the lens; the result in both cases being that the rays of light from distant objects are brought to a focus behind the retina, and therefore in order to focus them the accommodation has to be used (see Fig. 267). It follows from this

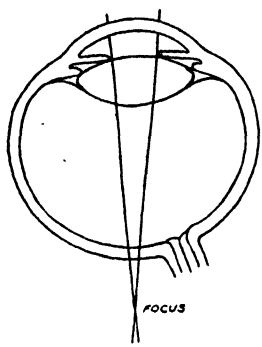


FIG. 267. *Hypermetropic* eye.
The eyeball is too short and therefore rays from a distant object come to a focus beyond the retina.

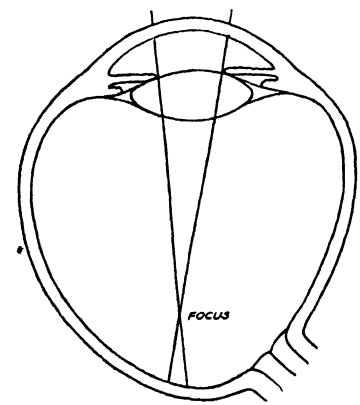


FIG. 268. *Myopic* eye.
The eyeball is too long and therefore rays from a distant object come to a focus in front of the retina.

that there is less accommodation remaining for the focussing of near objects, and therefore an inability to see distinctly at relatively short distances from the eye. Thus the use of the term long-sight.

Hypermetropia in adults is therefore more an abnormality than a disease; it causes a disposition however to three more serious conditions, namely glaucoma, internal strabismus and eye-strain. Glaucoma has already been described (see page 517); it is due to an abnormal rise in the intraocular pressure, which occurs owing to the free escape of the aqueous humour at the filtration angle being checked. Now in hypermetropia we have seen that the eyeball is too small for its optical apparatus, and therefore the lens occupies too much of the space in the small anterior and posterior chambers. This causes the ciliary bodies and roots of the iris to be squeezed and greatly reduces the space at the filtration angle. An attack of glaucoma is therefore more liable to occur in the hypermetrope than in a person with normal refraction.

Internal strabismus is caused in hypermetropia by the accommodative effort that is made in order to focus an image on the retina, because, as we have seen above (page 497), convergence and accommodation are associated actions. When therefore the long sight has been corrected by means of spectacles, and the accommodation is no longer called into play for seeing at a distance, the associated convergence no longer occurs and the strabismus disappears.

Eye-strain is caused in hypermetropia by the continual call for accommodation. Further, this must occur without convergence, for otherwise diplopia (seeing double) and strabismus develop as just described. A special strain is therefore placed not only on the ciliary muscles but also on the external eye muscles. This state of affairs very rapidly causes fatigue, headaches are therefore common.

The treatment of long-sight consists in prescribing suitable convex spectacles. It should be noted that the amount of long-sight actually present is shown only when the accommodation has been paralysed by atropine, because the patient has grown so accustomed to use his accommodation in ordinary vision that he is unable voluntarily to relax it. There is a certain amount of spasm of the accommodation. Because of this the glasses prescribed should be less strong at first than the full correction shown to be necessary. These may be substituted by more powerful ones later.

MYOPIA OR SHORT-SIGHT. In this condition parallel rays, that is those coming from distant objects, come to a focus so far in front of the retina that the image appears blurred (see Fig. 268). Myopia may be caused in two ways, which are similar to, but opposite in action to those that cause hypermetropia; the first type is caused by the eyeball being too long, and the second by the refraction of the lens being too high. The former, which is the more common, usually develops in youth, particularly at the school age when the growth of the body makes special demands on the system, and at the same time feeding is usually bad. The constant use of the eye for near work causes them considerable strain which they are unable to withstand owing to their being unable to compete for nourishment with the rest of the body. The choroid and sclera therefore become thin, are no longer able to stand the tension set up by the intraocular pressure, and therefore expand, causing the eyeball to become larger than normal, and taking the retina beyond the focus of the optical system. The treatment of myopia is therefore not only the wearing of spectacles, but the absolute prohibition of near work or close study, the administration of extra-nourishing food and an open-air life for a year or more. If these steps are taken at once, the myopia may get no worse, and may in fact get better. But if neglected the condition will almost certainly get worse. As myopia is a disease, particularly liable to occur at the school age, schoolmasters and others associating with children should be on the look out for conditions likely to cause it, such as bad light, bad food and poor ventilation, and for its presence in any of the children. Glasses should always be prescribed and care taken that the child wears them constantly, because it is found that beside assisting good definition and relieving eye-strain, they actually tend to check the further development of the trouble.

Certain complications sometimes attend myopia; these are divergent strabismus, eye-strain, and spasm of the accommodation.

The divergent strabismus has a similar origin to the convergent strabismus met with in hypermetropia, namely association of deviation of the eye axes with the adjustment of the accommodation. Now since in the normal individual the relaxation of the accommodation of the eye is associated with parallel axes of the eyes (in order to look at distant objects), in myopia the disuse of the accommodation for near vision causes the eye axes to remain straight and therefore produces the effects of an external strabismus. The use of glasses introduces again the necessity of accommodation, exactly as if the eye was normal, and therefore abolishes the strabismus. In the majority of cases an actual strabismus does not develop, but there is nevertheless a strong tendency to diplopia, especially when the eyes are tired. The eye-strain which frequently accompanies myopia probably has its origin in the effort to converge the eye axes without at the same time calling the accommodation into play

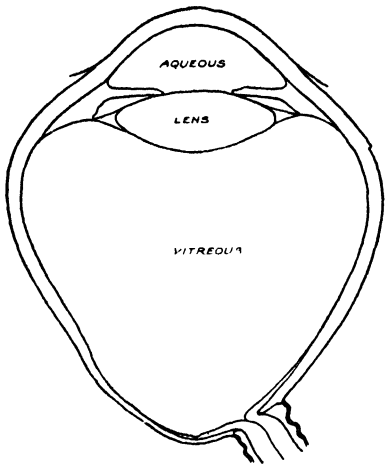


FIG. 269. The asymmetry of the eyeball and kinking of the optic nerve caused by high myopia.

Spasm of accommodation frequently accompanies myopia, and has the effect of making the myopia seem greater than it actually is. The true state of affairs is at once found when atropine is used, because the accommodation is thus abolished. Sometimes in children spasm of accommodation occurs without any actual abnormality of refraction. Such cases should be treated with the same care as those that are already developing myopia.

ASTIGMATISM. The condition of the eye called astigmatism is one in which parallel rays are not brought to a focus in a single plane, but in a number of different planes. There are two different varieties of astigmatism. In the first or irregular variety the separate parts of one meridian of the eye form different foci. This is found to occur during the development of cataract in the crystalline lens, and also after ulceration of the cornea. The effects of this form of astigmatism on vision vary with the severity of the condition; in moderate cases a frequent phenomenon is the formation of a double image in the affected eye. Glasses as a rule do not give benefit. In severe types the use of a stenopæic aperture may improve definition.

In the second variety, or regular astigmatism, the parts of any one meridian give the same focus, but the different meridians have different foci. There are however two meridians at right angles to one another, one of which has the longest and the other the shortest focus, the meridians in between showing an orderly sequence between these two extreme values. Thus the use of the term regular astigmatism. Two types of patient are found to suffer from this condition, those who have inherited and those who have acquired it as a sequence to injury, operation or disease. The effects on vision are varied, but the characteristic features are distortion of objects looked at, and indistinctness of lines in one direction, while those at right angles are quite sharp. Headaches, eye-strain and dimness of vision are very common. Many types are met with because the maximum and minimum meridian may occupy any angle so long as they are at right angles to one another, and they may have any degree of myopia or hypermetropia.

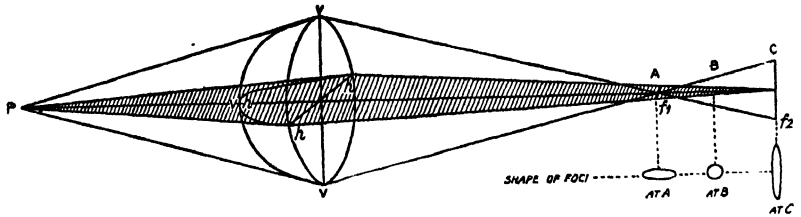


FIG. 270 Showing the shape of foci at different positions in cases of astigmatism.

The diagnosis and measurement of astigmatism presents no difficulties. Its existence may be readily proved by causing the patient to look at a figure consisting of a series of lines radiating from a common centre. It is then found that while some of the lines are sharp those at right angles are indistinct. This test also shows the axes of the principal meridians. By retinoscopy (see page 535) the axes and the amounts of the abnormality in those axes may be readily determined. The treatment consists in giving spectacles which have been ground on one side to a cylindrical surface. The axis of this cylinder is adjusted to correspond with one of the principal meridians of the eye of the patient. The curve given to the cylinder is that which will cause the focus of the meridian with which it corresponds to be equal to the focus of the other meridian. The other side of the spectacle lens is ground to that spherical surface which will make the eye emmetropic after it has been corrected by the cylinder.

ANISOMETROPIA. The last abnormality of refraction, which we have to consider, is called anisometropia. It simply means difference between the refraction of the two eyes. The effect on vision is very slight, since it is found that as a rule one eye does all the work and the image of the other, which is necessarily indistinct, is prevented from reaching consciousness. The result in course of time is that the unused eye loses to a considerable extent its power of seeing and as a result strabismus develops. Treatment consists in giving glasses which correct each eye separately, and then instituting exercises for the poorer eye, in order to improve its vision. The results of this treatment are good.

SECTION VII

HISTOLOGY OF THE RETINA

THE retina is a delicate membrane lying inside the choroid coat of the eye. Its internal surface lies in contact with the hyaloid membrane of the vitreous body. It is thus supported on both sides. The retina itself consists of two layers, the outer or pigmented, and the inner or nervous. Whereas embryologically the retina covers the whole internal surface of the eye including the ciliary processes and the iris, this is not the case with the nervous layer, because this stops near the equator of the eye at the ora serrata, and is here replaced by a layer of columnar epithelium. Opposite the pupil a yellow spot is seen on the retina, the macula lutea, and in the centre of this there is an oval depression, the fovea centralis. The optic nerve enters the eyeball through an aperture in the sclera and choroid, and then passes through the posterior surface of the retina to spread out over the internal surface. In the fovea however this is not the case, for the depression at this point is caused by the absence of nerve fibres. The point at which the optic nerve enters the eye is easily recognised from inside the eyeball because the numerous white nerve fibres, as they bend over the edge of the aperture in the retina, form a characteristic white mound called the colliculus, at the centre of which is a depressed portion called the optic cup. It is in the centre of this cup that the central artery of the retina and the corresponding vein first make their appearance. These have the important function of nourishing the retina; the additional blood supply through the intimate contact between the retina and the vascular choroid, although important, is quite insufficient to supply the needs of vision, as is shown by the immediate and permanent blindness which follows blocking of the central artery of the retina.

When sections of the retina are examined under the microscope it is found that they consist of the following layers from within outwards:—

1. Layer of nerve fibres and vessels
2. Layer of ganglion nerve cells
3. Inner molecular or plexiform layer
4. Inner nuclear or granular layer
5. Outer molecular or plexiform layer
6. Outer nuclear or granular layer
7. Layer of rods and cones (bacillary layer)

Developed from anterior layer of optic vesicle.

8. Layer of pigmented epithelium .. .. Developed from posterior layer.

In order to understand the structure of these layers, it is necessary to keep the fact in mind that the optic nerve and cup are outgrowths of part of the

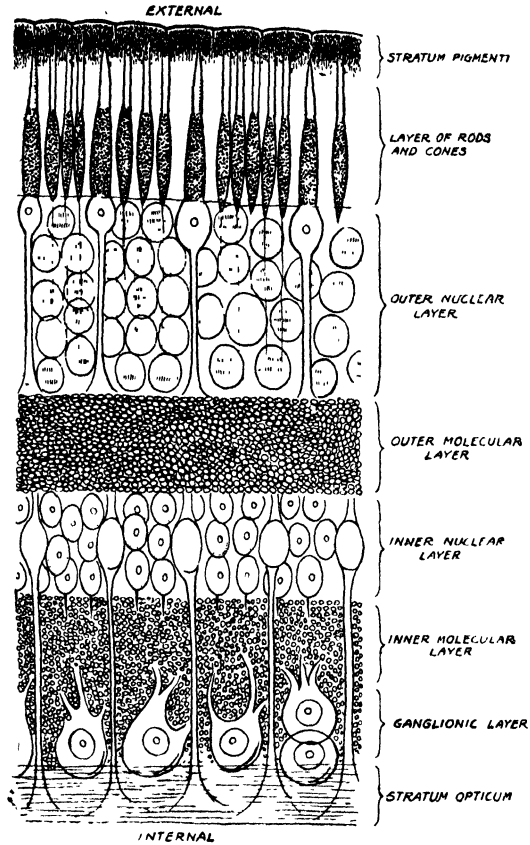


FIG. 271. Diagram of transverse section of retina.

brain. We must therefore be prepared to find in the retina the presence of all those structures which are found in the case of every sensory nerve to intervene between the sense cell and the brain nucleus. Be it taste-cell or touch-cell, or sensory cell of any other kind, the stimulus is conveyed in every case through three sets of neurons or relays before it reaches the brain. We must therefore expect to find in the retina all these three sets of neurons represented.

THE NERVE FIBRE LAYER (stratum opticum) consists of the non-myelinated (non-medullated) axons of the large ganglion cells found in the second layer. These axons are the third order neurons which become myelinated after they have passed out of the eyeball and travel by paths to the occipital cortex described on page 532. Beside the fibres conveying visual impressions there are others which belong to the pupillo-motor reflex. Others again bring impulses from the brain to the retina; their functions will be considered below.

THE GANGLION NERVE CELL LAYER consists of a single layer of large oval cells. These are nucleated and give off the axons which we have already described

and a bunch of dendrites which ramify with others in the inner molecular layer. Only at the macula is more than one layer of ganglion cells present; this is due to their almost complete absence at the fovea. The macula therefore not only has its own relays but those of the fovea as well.

THE INNER MOLECULAR LAYER consists of a felt-work made up by the interlacing dendrites of the ganglion cells with those of the inner nuclear cells or second order neurons. There are also the dendrites of horizontal cells or spongioblasts. These possibly serve to associate the impulses from different parts of the retina, such as is supposed to occur in the brain. It should be noted that they appear to be absent in the fovea and macula.

THE INNER NUCLEAR LAYER largely consists of bipolar second order neuron cells. There are however also present the nuclei of the horizontal cells, and also the nuclei of similar cells, whose dendrites travel in the outer molecular layer. The bipolar cells, which are fusiform in shape and nucleated, are of three kinds: (*a*) those which connect with rods, (*b*) those which connect with cones, and (*c*) giant bipolars which connect with either.

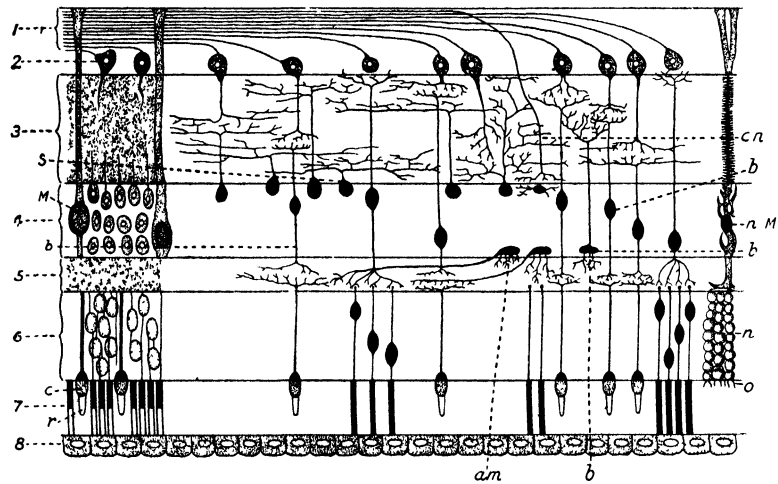


FIG. 272. Diagram to show the different cellular structures found in the retina.

THE OUTER MOLECULAR LAYER is much like the inner; it consists of the dendrites of the second order neurons and the first.

THE OUTER NUCLEAR LAYER consists of the cells of the first order neurons or the granules of the rods and cones. The cells are nucleated, somewhat smaller than the bipolar cells, and their nuclei are striated. They give off two processes, one of which forms dendrites in the fifth layer, the other connects with either a rod or cone as the case may be.

THE BACILLARY LAYER of rods and cones is separated from the previous layer by the external limiting membrane. Both rods and cones consist of an outer and inner limb, the forms of which are well shown in Fig. 273. It will be seen that the outer limbs are striated, the cones coarsely, the rods finely. Like some types of striated muscle they tend after hardening to break up into discs. The inner limbs of both rods and cones have a strong affinity for dyes.

THE STRATUM PIGMENTI is the only one that is developed from the external layer of the embryonic optic cup. The epithelium consists of a single layer of hexagonal nucleated cells containing numerous pigment granules. The cells send fine processes

between the limbs of the rods. The bases of these cells are firmly attached to the choroid and thus give support to the rest of the retina.

The object of these cell processes and the pigment granules which they contain would appear to be either the prevention of an image formed on one part of the retina from spreading to the sensitive elements of surrounding portions, or else the protection of these elements from excessive light action. But it has been definitely proved that the cells themselves have another and important function to perform, namely the secretion of the pigment called visual purple (rhodopsin). The important functions of this pigment will be described later.

It should be noted that beside the structures described above, which have the functional activities of the retina to perform, there are a number of connective tissue elements which form the retina into one coherent structure. Since the retina is developed from an outgrowth of the brain, these structures are similar in type to those met there; we therefore find neuroglia and also long cells which extend through the first seven layers and hold them together, namely the fibres of Müller.

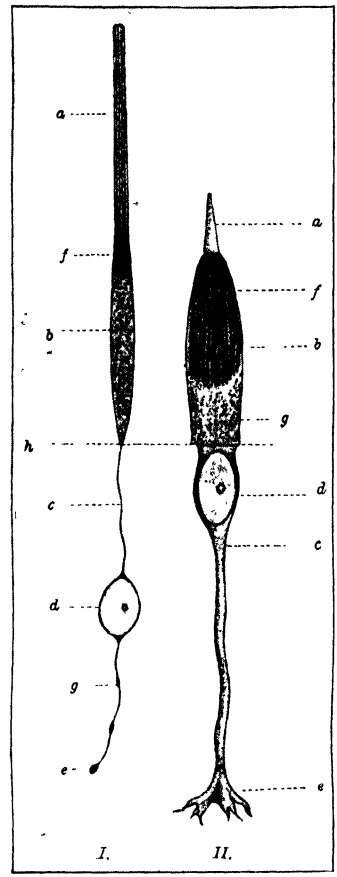


FIG. 273

I, a rod; II, a cone of mammalian retina; h, external limiting membrane (R. GREEFF)

THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE RETINA. The complex series of layers of which the retina consists are developed from the two walls of the primitive optic cup, which grows as a hollow bud from the anterior cerebral vesicle of the embryo. At first the two layers are of the same thickness, but the outer becomes reduced to a single layer of flattened cells, which become pigmented, forming the stratum pigmenti. The inner layer consists at first of a single layer of elongated nucleated cells, which become differentiated into spongioblasts, germinal cells and neuroblasts, similar to those found in the development of the spinal cord. The spongioblasts form the inner and outer limiting membranes, and a groundwork within which the functional elements develop. The germinal cells give rise to three series of neuroblasts in all. The first set are much larger than the others, and become the ganglion cells (these appear to be formed by mitotic division). The next two sets are much smaller, and become the first and second nuclear layer (these seem to be formed by amitotic division). Lastly the germinal cells themselves become transformed into the rods and cones. The molecular layers are formed of the arborisations of the processes of the cells between which they lie. The innermost layer of nerve fibres is formed by the growth of long processes from the ganglion cells, which make their way from the retina into the brain.

THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF THE RETINA show marked variation in detail. At the fovea cones alone are found; each of these connects to one axon only.

Other structural differences are found beside (1) absence of rods, namely (2) the cones are longer, more highly developed, and some say more rod-like than

those found elsewhere. They are very closely packed, so that their inner limbs are seen in transverse section to have a hexagonal shape, the flat surfaces being in contact with those of their neighbours. (3) The rows of nerve cells and dendrites, which in the rest of the retina lie approximately in line with the rod or cone to which they belong, are in the fovea pressed to one side, in a direction away from the centre. In this way a cone may have the nerve cells to which it is connected placed at a considerable distance away in the surrounding macula. It is this displacement of the nerve fibres and their cells that causes the fovea to appear hollow. The

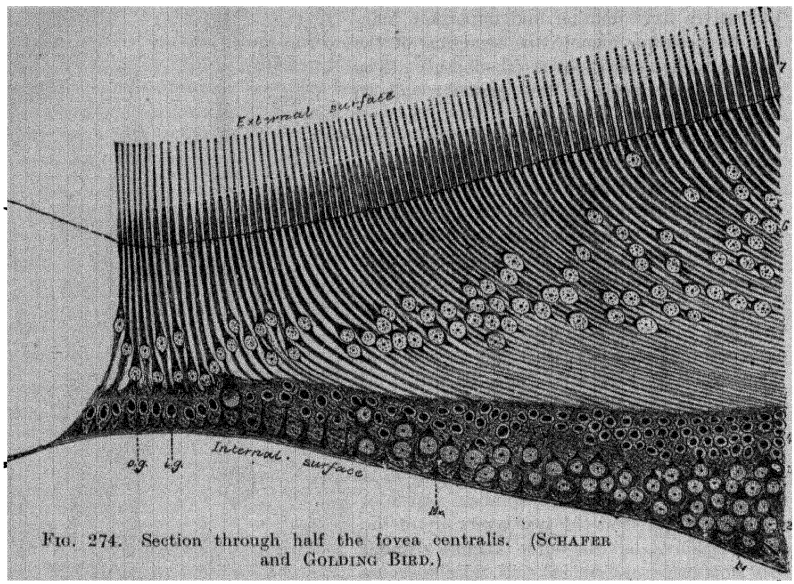


FIG. 274. Section through half the fovea centralis. (SCHAFER and GOLDING BIRD.)

purpose of this physiological arrangement would appear to be without question the avoidance, at this important region of the retina, of the scattering of the image which passage through the nerve cell layers would introduce. (4) The fovea unlike the rest of the retina is devoid of blood vessels. The purpose of this arrangement would appear to be similar to that just given. (5) Visual purple is said to be absent from the fovea. This would appear to be connected with the absence of rods.

Round the fovea is a ring in which rods and cones are present in almost equal number. In still more peripheral regions cones are relatively few, and several rods connect with each axon, this reduces the relative number of nerves.

CHANGES IN THE RETINA ON EXPOSURE TO LIGHT

A light stimulus falling on the retina causes a number of changes to occur which may be classed as structural, physical, chemical and physiological.

STRUCTURAL CHANGES occur on exposure of the eye to light: firstly, movement of the pigment from the outer epithelial layer into the space between the rods and cones, secondly, shortening of the cones themselves. These changes occur only when the connections of the eye with the brain are intact. The rate of movement appears to vary with intensity, and violet light is said to be better than red. It is interesting to find that electrical stimulation of the optic nerve or the falling of light on the other retina to that of the eye observed also causes these cone move-

ments. It is supposed that the impulses which effect these movements travel through the nerve fibres already described as descending from the brain to the retinæ; it is for this reason that Engelmann called these fibres 'retinomotor.'

Other structural changes that are found, by histological investigation, to follow exposure of the retina to light, are swelling of the outer limbs of the rods, and the disappearance of chromatin granules from the ganglion cells. Both these changes are said to occur more rapidly under the action of rays of short wavelength.

PHYSICAL CHANGES are also found when the retina is stimulated by light, namely an electrical response somewhat similar to the current

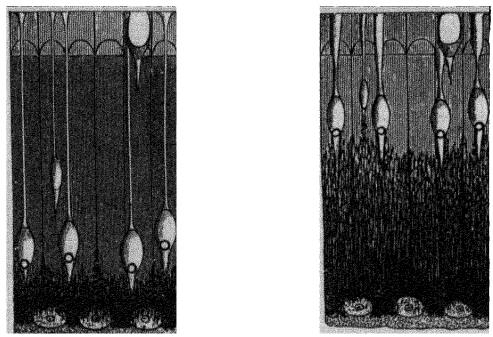


FIG. 275. Sections of the frog's retina.

A kept in the dark, B, after exposure to the light, showing retraction of the cones, and protrusion of the pigmented epithelium between the outer limbs of the rods. (ENGELMANN.)

of action in nerve. Three typical curves and the conditions under which they were obtained are shown in Fig. 276. One point of particular interest should be noted, namely the response to darkness. The complicated nature of these curves has been explained on the supposition that there are three substances present in the retina of different reaction time. It has not however been found possible to identify any of them. The difference in the electric response to light of different colour and intensity has been found to give the following results. With light of any one colour a geometric rise of intensity causes an arithmetic increase in the current. With coloured rays of apparent equal intensity yellow rays are said to give a larger current in the light adapted eye, and green in the dark adapted eye. It is interesting to observe that the current commences after a latent period which is of the same order as that found for the perception of light by the eye. This and other facts mentioned above, would seem to point to the currents observed being the accompaniment of the passage of the nervous impulses to the brain.

CHEMICAL CHANGES in the retina on exposure to light are of two kinds, firstly a tendency of the retina as a whole to become acid in reaction, as is shown in the change in its behaviour to certain stains, and secondly the bleaching of two pigments, namely, the visual purple and fuesin. With regard to visual purple (or rhodopsin) a large number of facts

have been made out. In the first place it is found in association with the rod retinal structures only, and is therefore absent from the human fovea centralis. It is bleached on exposure to light, both in the retina and also in

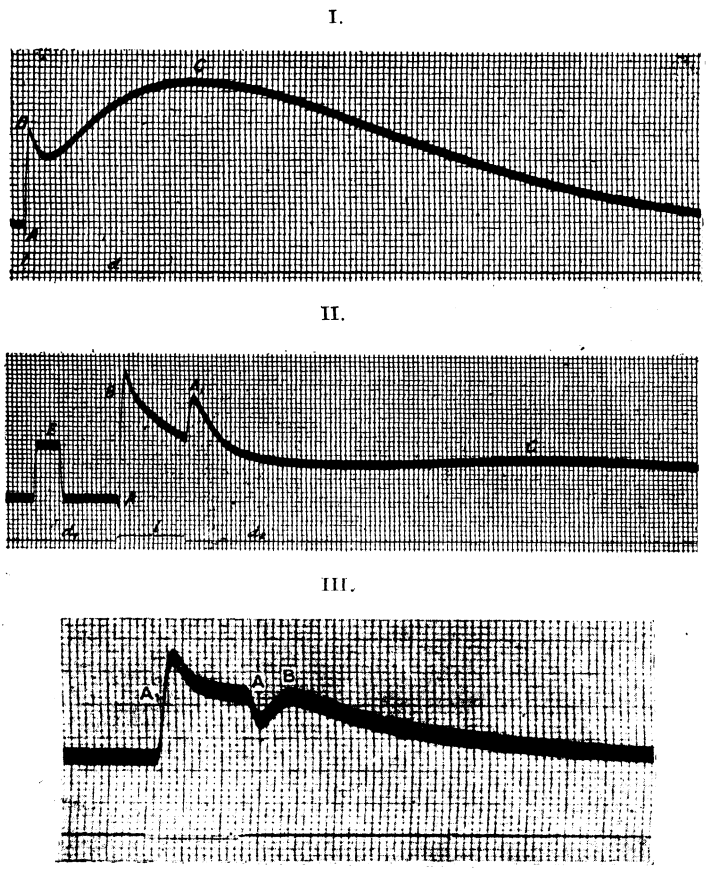


FIG. 276. Electrical variation in frog's eye as recorded by the string galvanometer (EINTHOVEN and JOLLY.)

I, on exposure to a single flash; II, on exposure to light of moderate duration; III, effect on a light eye of momentary darkening.

solution. The absorption of light by visual purple is greatest for the middle of the spectrum; the transmitted colour is therefore composed principally of red and violet rays. Small variations of colour are found however in samples obtained from different animals; some are even rose pink in colour. In the second place the most potent colours in producing bleaching are those near the centre of the spectrum, that is the rays which are most strongly absorbed. This pigment therefore obeys Draper's law, which states that those rays that are absorbed are those which produce chemical change.

It will be shown below that the retina when adapted for vision in dim light is not only colour-blind, but also that the green rays of the spectrum appear to have to it the maximum luminosity. It will be also shown that the rod containing parts of the retina, where visual purple is to be found, are the only regions that react to light of low intensity. Moreover the curve which represents the rate of bleaching of visual purple by rays of different colour is very similar in shape to that which shows the visibility of lights of low intensity, as shown in Fig. 277. The obvious inference is that visual purple is the pigment concerned with twilight

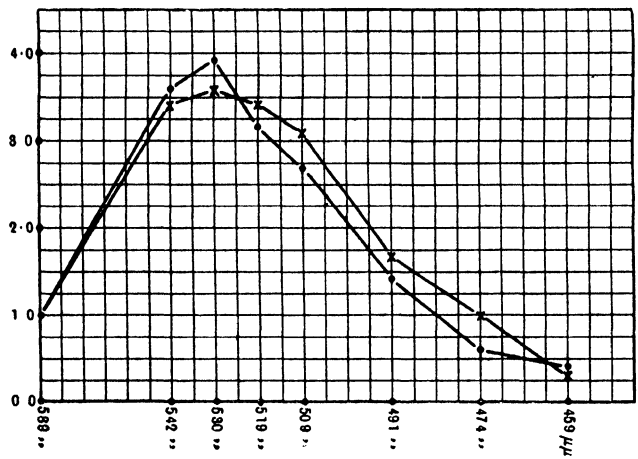


FIG. 277. Shows the similarity between the curves representing the rate of bleaching of visual purple by light of different wavelength and the luminosity curve of twilight vision

vision. When the visual purple in the retina has been bleached by exposure to light, there follows a gradual reformation of purple which is independent of nerve connections, but occurs only so long as the stratum pigmenti is in contact with the rod epithelial layer. If we suppose that the product formed by the bleaching of the visual purple stimulates the rod apparatus, causing it to send impulses to the brain, we have at once obtained some idea of the mechanism used for night vision. This we may briefly describe as follows:—when light falls on the retina certain rays, particularly those near the middle of the spectrum, are absorbed by the visual purple. The pigment is bleached in proportion to the light absorbed, forming a new product: this acts on the rods, causing them to send impulses to the brain which continue so long as the light falls. When the light stops the stimulating product is no longer formed, therefore the stimulus to the rods ceases.

It is stated that in diseases of the liver, in which there are bile salts circulating in the blood, twilight vision is found to be impaired. This condition is ascribed to the solubility of visual purple in bile salts, and it is thought that the removal of the pigment from the retina prevents the rod apparatus from functioning.

at the fovea and the ability to react to light of low intensity without colour vision which is possessed by the periphery of the retina. The presence of rods scattered between the cones naturally impairs to some extent however the appreciation of fine detail. At the white papilla where the optic nerve enters the eye, there are neither rods nor cones, and therefore as we should expect this region is quite blind. This fact can be readily proved by looking

FIG. 278 Look at cross with right eye, hold book at about 10 inches.

with the right eye at the cross in Fig. 278. If now the book be held about 10 inches from the eye the white disc will be found to disappear. By a simple calculation it is found that the disc corresponds with the papilla of the optic nerve.

THE VISUAL FIELDS. Since the appearance of an external object will vary to a considerable extent according to the region of the retina on which its image falls, it is a matter of considerable interest to determine the positions at which the appearances undergo change. This is also of practical value because the positions are found to be affected by disease. The determinations are usually made by means of an instrument called a perimeter.

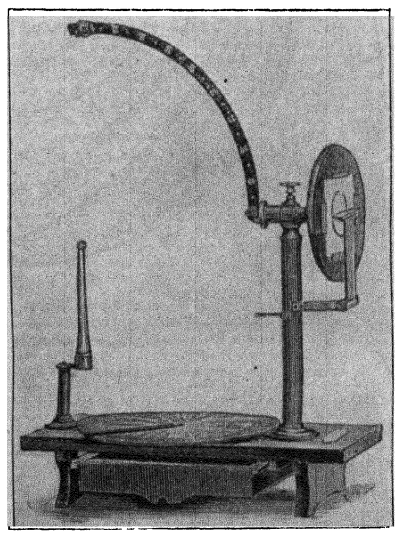


FIG 279 Priestley Smith's perimeter.

This will beseen from Fig. 279 to consist of a metal arm bent to the segment of a circle. This is so mounted in relationship to a horizontal bearing that the segment always has its centre in correspondence with a fixed pointer which is seen on the left of the diagram. If the eye of the patient is placed close to this pointer and looks towards the centre of the bearing, the degrees marked on the metal segment show the actual angle at which an index is situated in relationship to the eye axis, no matter what meridian the metal segment may be in. The index mark usually consists of a small disc 2 mm. diameter either of white or of coloured paper, according to whether the rod or cone area is to be determined.

The values obtained by means of this instrument are shown in Fig. 280, which gives a typical curve for the right eye. The shaded area on the left of the diagram is due to the obstruction of the eyebrow, nose and cheek of the patient. The visual field on the outer side will be seen to extend actually 14 degrees beyond the right angle. This result, which at first sight appears to be impossible, is in fact due to the considerable refraction of the

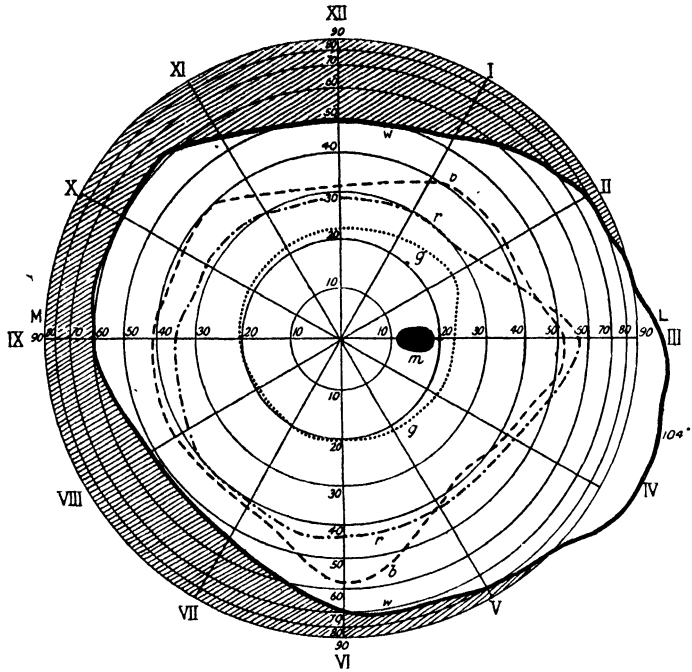


Fig. 280. Field of vision for white and colours of a normal right eye as obtained by the perimeter. (Hartridge.)

light rays that occurs at the extreme edge of the cornea. The direction of the beam of light entering the eye under these circumstances is shown in Fig. 281 X below.

It will be observed that even when looking straight in front, a man can see to a considerable angle behind himself. By deviating the eyes only slightly to either side, this angle can be increased to 40 degrees in the average case as shown at Fig. 281 Z. This ability to see to a considerable extent behind him is due to the narrowness of the head between the frontal processes and zygomatic bones. In those animals in which the eyes are placed on the sides of the head, and the visual axes are diametrically opposite to one another, the visual fields will actually overlap a short distance from the head, so that there will be no direction from which an enemy can attack without being observed (Fig. 281 Y).

UTILITY OF PERIPHERAL VISION. The high visual acuity of the fovea and the great facility with which the eyes can be directed, so that images form on this region, might raise the question as to the utility of peripheral vision. This question may be investigated experimentally by placing restricting screens in front of the eyes, or by ascertaining the experience of persons who are suffering from blindness in the periphery as the result of disease, *e.g.* retinitis pigmentosa. Both methods show that the periphery is of great value in directing attention to outlying obstacles. Our attention being excited we direct the gaze in the direction indicated, in order to bring into action the greater power of analysis of the fovea.

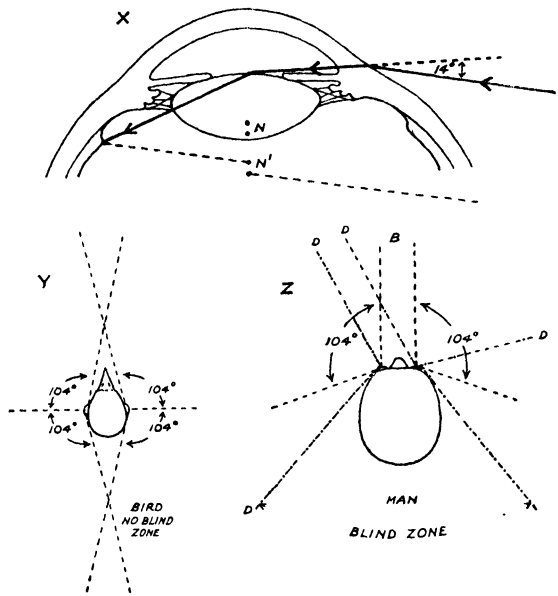


FIG. 281. Diagram Z shows size of blind zone in man. (HARTRIDGE.) Diagram X shows how extremely peripheral rays enter the eye and reach the retina. Diagram Y shows absence of blind zone in certain birds and animals.

CENTRAL CONNECTIONS OF THE RETINA. The connecting paths between the retina and the brain are formed by the optic nerves. At first these are hollow tubes to which the optic cups are attached. After the retinal artery has found its way through the cleft in the optic cups, the nerves fold round it and become solid, and through their substance the nerve fibres from the ganglion cells of the retina grow toward the brain. The primitive groundwork of the nerve is also invaded close to the optic cup by mesoblast forming the cribriform plate of the sclera. Through the meshes of this plate the nerve fibres have to pass. Traced backwards the optic nerves leave the orbit through the optic foramen accompanied by the ophthalmic artery. The optic nerve has sufficient slack in order to permit free motion to the eyes. Having entered the cranial cavity the nerve pierces the dura mater, and meets its fellow from the other eye; with this it connects, forming the chiasma, and the fibres partially decussate. The fibres thus form the optic tracts

which travel round under the crura cerebri and then divide to end in cells in three different nuclei, (*a*) the anterior corpus quadrigeminum, (*b*) the external geniculate body and (*c*) the pulvinar. The optic nerve contains four different sets of fibres: (1) those which convey visual impressions to the brain; (2) those going to the pupillomotor centres; (3) those which come down from the brain to the retinæ, the so-called retinomotor fibres, which may have trophic fibres associated with them; (4) nerves travelling from one retina to the other. The courses of these separate fibres must now be traced.

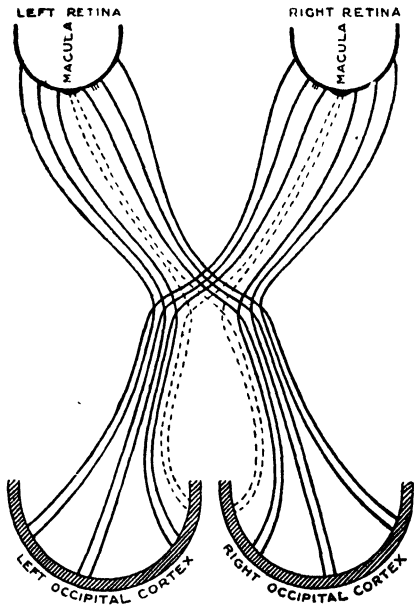


FIG. 282. Diagram showing the probable relations between the parts of the retinæ and the visual area of the cortex. (SCHAFER.)

(1) From each retina three separate bundles of visual fibres arise: (*a*) those from the right halves of the retinæ, which join at the chiasma and travel to the brain via the right optic tracts; (*b*) those from the left halves of the retinæ which travel via the left tracts; and (*c*) those from the foveæ centrales (in man and monkey only) which partly travel via the tract of their own side and partly cross to that of the other. The right optic tract thus contains all the visual fibres from the right sides, and half those from the centres of the two retinæ, which travel to the right occipital cortex through the pulvinar and external geniculate body of that side. The left tract travels to the left occipital cortex in a similar manner. These connections are represented diagrammatically in Fig. 282.

(2) The pupillomotor impulses travel up without crossing, as I have already described on page 510, to the anterior corpora quadrigemina (see also Fig. 203 and page 406).

(3) Nothing is I believe known as to the fate of these so-called retinomotor fibres; some of them may, in fact, be trophic or vaso-constrictor fibres.

(4) The function of these inter-retinal fibres are not known definitely. It has been suggested that they cause changes in one retina when light falls on the other, as for example cone movement. It has also been supposed that the sympathetic inflammation which occurs in one eye after certain injuries to the other, is due to impulses which have travelled via these nerves; lastly binocular contrast and after images have been ascribed to them.

It is of practical importance to be able to locate an injury to the visual

nerve paths. Injury to the optic nerves causes blindness of the eye to which the nerve belongs, and stimulation of the eye by light will not then elicit the pupil reflex. Injury to the optic tract causes blindness of the halves of both retinæ on the same side as the lesion, that is to say blindness to external objects on the opposite side to the injury. It is interesting to note that, whereas, in most other nerve paths, crossing of the impulse occurs from one side to the other as it travels to the brain, so that the left side of the brain corresponds to the right side of the body, this is not the case with the optic impulses. These are already crossed by the optical apparatus of the eye and therefore crossing of the impulses is rendered unnecessary. Injury to the optic radiation or the occipital cortex will cause blindness of both retinæ on the same side, but will not affect the pupil reflex, because these fibres have already turned aside to go to the anterior corpora quadrigemina. Injury of the middle of the chiasma, such as may occur in tumours of the pituitary body, affects the nasal halves of both retinæ and produces double temporal hemianopia.

THE OPHTHALMOSCOPE. If the retina of a patient be illuminated by causing a beam of light to enter the pupil, the reflected light will cause the interior surface of the retina to be visible. In order to see the image distinctly it is necessary either that both the eye of the patient and also that of the observer should be focussed for infinity (the direct method) or that both eyes should be focussed for one and the same intermediate plane (the indirect method). The former has many disadvantages which are not found in the case of the latter, and therefore will not be considered further. The indirect method is carried out as follows:—A bright source of light having been placed behind and slightly to one side of the patient, the observer standing about half a meter in front of him reflects by means of a convex mirror an image of the light into his pupil. At the centre of the mirror is an aperture through which the doctor sees the light which is reflected back from the patient's retina. The observer now holds a biconvex lens of about 6 cm. focal length about 8 cm. in front of the patient's eye, while he still directs the beam of light into the pupil as before. The image of the retina, which would normally be focussed by the lens system of the patient's eye at infinity, is now brought to a focus by the convex lens, forming what is called an aerial image (see Fig. 283). It is this image that the observer sees, and in it are shown all the particular features of the vessels and nerves of the patient's retina. Beside its very great utility to the oculist, the ophthalmoscope is a very valuable instrument to the physician, for retinal vessels and nerves frequently show the evidences of constitutional disease, which are of great assistance to diagnosis. Ophthalmoscopes are usually fitted with a number of small lenses of graduated power, which may be introduced as required behind the mirror. For the indirect method they are seldom required. The magnification of the retina given by the direct method is usually about 3, while that provided by the direct is 12. If a higher magnification is an advantage it may be obtained by using a biconvex lens of longer focal length (say 12 cm.).

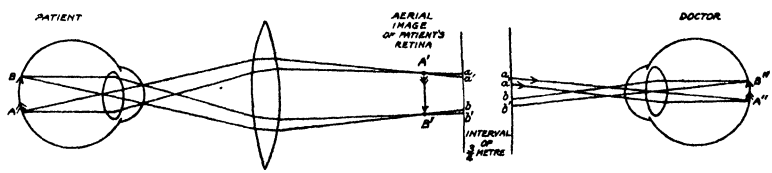


FIG. 283. Diagram to show paths of rays from eye of patient to doctor when the indirect method of ophthalmoscopy is in use. (HARTRIDGE.)

The image seen in the ophthalmoscope is shown in Fig. 284.

On examining the back of the eyeball by either of these methods, the most prominent object is the optic disc or optic nerve-papilla, which marks the point of entrance of the optic nerve. It is seen as a pale oval disc surrounded by a deep red background (Fig. 284). From the middle of the papilla the retinal vessels pass into the eyeball, and they are seen diverging from the papilla to ramify over the rest of the retina. The arteries can be distinguished from the veins by their brighter red colour as well as by the stronger reflection of light from their surfaces. The yellow spot is very difficult to see, except in atropinised eyes, since it comes into view only when the observed eye is looking straight into the ophthalmoscope. Under these conditions there is a strong 'light

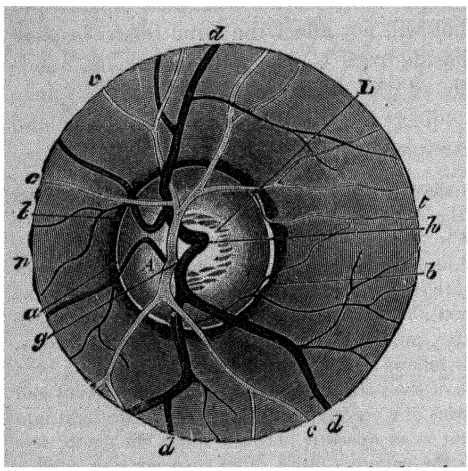


FIG. 284 Ophthalmoscopic view of fundus of eye, showing the optic disc or point of entry of the optic nerve, with the retinal vessels branching from its centre.

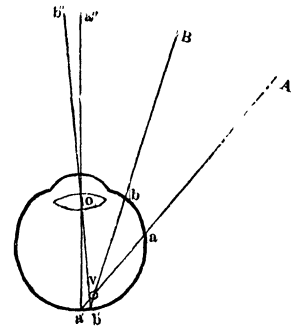


FIG. 285 Diagram of the path of the rays of light in the formation of Purkinje's figures.

v represents a retinal vessel. When this is illuminated from A, a shadow is formed on the hinder layers of the retina at *a'*. This is projected along a line passing through the optic axis, and appears to come from a point (a'') on the wall. On moving the light from A to B, the image of the vessel appears to move from a'' to *b*.

reflex,' and the pupil contracts up to a pin-point, unless paralysed by means of atropine. In order to see the blind-spot, or optic disc, the observed eye must be directed inwards, thus if A is looking at the right eye of B, B must be told to look over A's right shoulder.

By projecting a highly concentrated beam of light on to the side of the eyeball, it is possible to cause sufficient light to pass through the wall that the retina perceives the stimulus. When that is the case it is found that the retinal arteries and veins are seen as dark images on a bright ground (Purkinje's figures). By moving the point of illumination and then measuring the apparent shift of the vessels which occurs, it has been found possible to estimate the depth below the vessels at which the receptive surface of the retina is placed, namely ·17 to ·36 mm. Now the average distance between the vessels and the layer of rods and cones is found to be ·2 to ·3 mm.; it must therefore be the layer of rods and cones which forms the sensitive layer. The directions taken by the light rays are shown in Fig. 285.

Another method of viewing the vessels in one's own eye is to look through a small hole in a metal plate at a smooth white surface. On oscillating the aperture in relationship with the pupil about once a second, the vessels will be seen as shadows on the bright background.

SECTION VIII

THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN STIMULUS AND SENSATION

In the introduction I have pointed out that, since we are unable to express our sensations in terms of physical units (we cannot say, for example, when one source is twice as bright as another), two methods of investigation are alone available, namely, that which involves the determination of threshold values, and that which depends on the making of comparisons.

In order that a source of light shall be perceived, the image which is formed on the retina must have certain properties. In the first place it must last for a certain finite time, for if it be of shorter duration than this it will not be perceived. Secondly it must be larger than a certain size. Thirdly its intensity must be greater than a certain limiting quantity. Fourthly the rays which it emits must have wavelengths which lie between certain limits. So that in the case of each of these four properties there are limiting values which must be exceeded; these values are called thresholds. The retina has distributed over its surface two different types of sensitive organ, the cone apparatus, which has the function of perceiving colours and is used in day vision, and the rod-visual purple apparatus, which is colour-blind but very sensitive to light of low intensity and is therefore used for twilight vision. Owing to the fact that the distribution of these organs is not uniform, we have to state the part of the retina which is being stimulated when assigning a value to any of the above-mentioned thresholds. For example, the threshold for intensity may be that which just actuates the rods, that is the achromatic limit, or that which is sufficient to affect the cones and therefore causes an appreciation of colour. Moreover the value of any one threshold is to a considerable extent controlled by the value of the other factors which I have mentioned; for example, the time threshold is shorter the greater the size and intensity of the light source. The exact conditions must therefore be carefully stated in quoting the value of a threshold. Lastly we must consider the personal equation of the observer, and also the state of his vision, for both are affected by constitution, health, fatigue, &c., to an important extent.

INTENSITY THRESHOLD FOR LIGHT (ACHROMATIC)

If a spectrum be gradually reduced in intensity, it loses its colour and finally appears to the eye as a bright band which has its greatest luminosity in the green region of the spectrum and gradually fades towards both

the red and violet ends. Since the band is colourless, any one part may be matched by any other part by suitably adjusting the intensities. But compared with the appearance under ordinary intensity, the red region of the spectrum has become greatly reduced in visibility, while the blue has become relatively brighter. The part of the spectrum with maximum luminosity is found to be the yellow when the intensity is high, but to be the green when it is low. It is therefore this shifting of the position in the spectrum of the maximum which has caused red to darken and blue to become lighter. The relative forms and positions of the luminosity (apparent brightness) curves for spectra of various intensity are shown in Fig. 286.

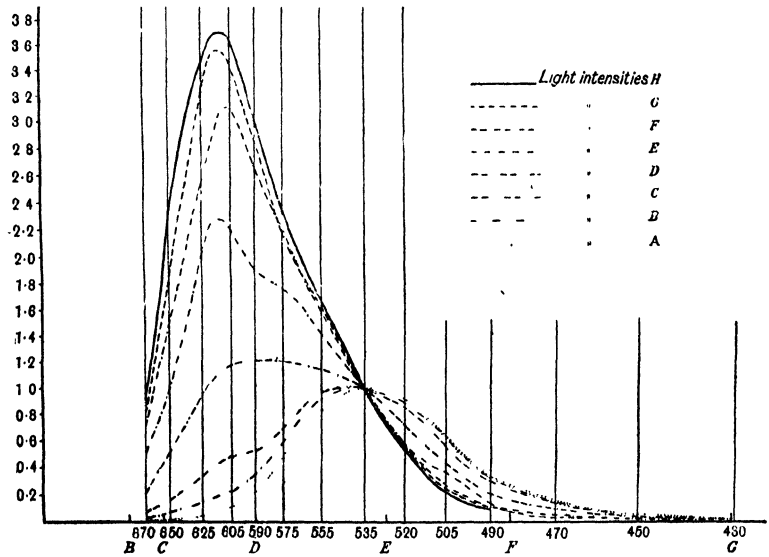


FIG. 286. Luminosity curves for spectra of different intensity. A = highest, H = lowest. Abscissae = wavelengths, ordinates = luminosities (KÖNIG). The maximum of curve for light of high intensity is seen to be at 6100 A.U. that at low intensity 5150 A.U.

If the spectrum of low intensity be still further decreased, a point will be reached at which the different parts become invisible to the eye; this will occur first with the ends, and last with the middle (at about 5271 A.U.). It is found however that the intensity values at which visibility ceases decrease the longer the eye is kept in the dark, that is to say the retina gradually becomes 'dark adapted.' The curves obtained for different degrees of dark adaptation are also shown in Fig. 286.

We must now consider the effects on the achromatic threshold of size of light source, duration of stimulus and part of retina illuminated. With regard to size, experiment shows that as the size of the source decreases so the intensity at which extinction occurs increases, in fact that the area of the source multiplied by its intensity is constant. With regard to the region of the retina that is stimulated, it is found that the

rod-visual purple apparatus is responsible for the appreciation of the light of low intensity; it is therefore found in all parts of the retina other than the fovea centralis from which rods are absent. The effect of time of stimulus will be considered shortly.

INTENSITY THRESHOLD FOR COLOUR

If a spectrum of low intensity which appears colourless to the eye be gradually increased in brightness, a point will be reached at which the colours begin to be recognisable, first yellow and green, then blue and lastly red and violet. If the intensity at which the colour just vanishes is measured, the curve obtained is similar to that shown in Fig. 287. As the

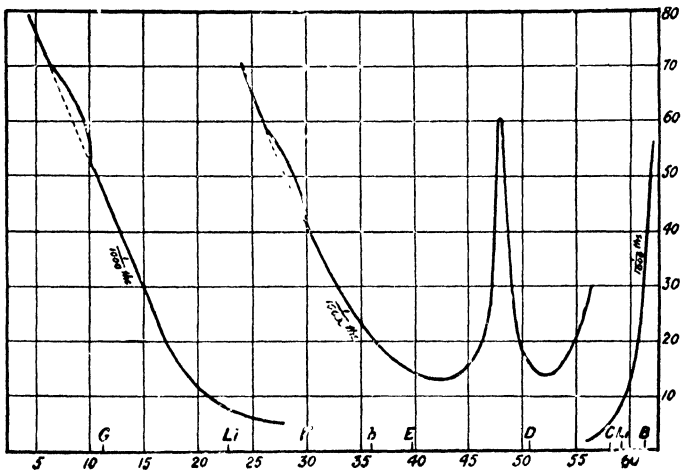


FIG. 287. 'Extinction of colour' curve. Abscissae = wavelengths; ordinates = intensity in candle feet when colour just vanishes. (ABNEY.)

intensity is increased, the point of maximum luminosity gradually shifts from the green to the yellow. As a coloured object is gradually increased in intensity, it is first seen without colour, but after an interval the colour also is recognised; this is called the photochromatic interval. It follows from what we have said that the interval is greatest for colours of short wavelength (blue) and least for long (red) (the Purkinje phenomenon). The thresholds for light and colour differ in another important respect, namely that whereas that of light varies with the degree of dark adaptation, that of colour is found by experiment to be nearly constant. With regard to the effect of area of light source, it is found that the same type of relationship exists in the case of colour as for light, namely, that as the area is decreased, so the intensity must be correspondingly increased. The area and intensity, multiplied together, do not however equal a constant as they do in the case of light. The appreciation of colour is associated with the cones and is therefore most highly developed at

the fovea. As the periphery of the retinæ is approached the number of the cones very rapidly decreases, and we should therefore expect to find a limit to the size of the visual field for different colours. This may be tested by means of the perimeter (Fig. 279) and small coloured discs, or more accurately by suitable apparatus for employing spectral colours. By these methods it is found that the colour fields are smaller than those for light, but more or less concentric with them (Fig. 288). The actual size of the fields varies with the intensity and size of the test light source or object. The order in which the colours disappear varies somewhat but appears to be usually as follows:—First green, then yellow, then red, and lastly blue. The determination of the size of the colour fields is a technique of considerable practical importance, because they are found to become restricted in those progressive lesions of the optic nerves which may finally lead to total blindness, and also in inflammatory conditions of the retina and choroid. Careful examination of the apparent limits of the blind-spot by means of similar apparatus was found by Haycraft to show that there is a similar variation in the relative sizes of the fields for different colours (Fig. 288). The same phenomenon is also found round the blind-spots formed in the retina by disease.

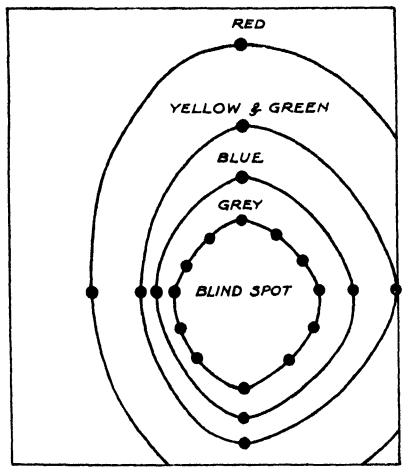


FIG. 288. Limitation of colour fields round the blind spot. (HAYCRAFT.)

SIZE THRESHOLD OR VISUAL ACUITY

If a small source of light be gradually reduced in size, a point is soon reached at which it becomes invisible. If it is a coloured source, it as a rule shows a well-marked photochromatic interval, that is, it first loses its colour and then disappears later. If the intensity of the source is very great, the size has to be greatly reduced before it becomes invisible: it is because of this that we see the stars. If the size and intensity at the point of disappearance be measured, it is found that when multiplied together they equal a constant, so that as in the case of the light threshold the determining factor appears to be the amount of light which falls on the retina. In the case of intermittent illumination a similar relationship is found.

Visual acuity is the ability to see as separate the images of small bright light-sources of any shape placed very close together. Experiment shows that the distance between the sources must be increased as their distance from the eye is increased. In other words that the angle which

they make at the eye must be greater than a certain limiting value. The angle usually obtained is an angle of one minute, and on this the lettering used in practice for testing the visual acuity of patients is based (see page 525). Persons with exceptionally good vision are able to see the images separated when the angle which the sources make at the eye is very much less than this, namely 24 seconds. Assuming that the posterior nodal point is 15·6 mm. from the retina (this being the distance in the normal eye, see page 523) 24 seconds corresponds with a distance between the images at the retina of ·0018 mm. The diameter of the cones is between ·0020 and ·0030 mm., and in the fovea they are very closely packed so as to present a hexagonal section. The maximum visual acuity is therefore certainly as great as the size of the cones would lead us to suppose possible.

The case of a dark spot on a bright ground is similar to the case just considered, because for the dark spot to be recognised it must subtend at the eye the minimal angle mentioned above. Increasing the intensity of the ground or the blackness of the spot will make a very small difference. The case of the black spot is therefore very different to that of the white in which an increase in the intensity is sufficient to make up for a difference of size.

TIME THRESHOLD

In considering the time threshold two different sets of conditions require description, firstly the minimum time during which a given stimulus must act in order to reach consciousness, and secondly the minimum rate at which a series of stimuli must follow one another in order to give a uniform impression without flicker. Both are of considerable importance since the first enters such problems as the determination of the length of time during which a lighthouse beam should be caused to travel in a given direction, the second because it gives a reliable method of comparing the intensity of lights of different colour. Experimental investigation of the first type of time threshold is effected by measuring the length of stimulus necessary to cause a source of a certain intensity to affect the retina, and it is found that the lower the intensity the longer must the image fall on the retina. But if the eye be dark adapted, if the time and the intensity values be multiplied together, then within limits a constant is obtained. On the other hand, in the light adapted eye, the value is found to vary somewhat, but is sufficiently constant to show that the relation between intensity and time is approximately the same. Within limits therefore we find that at the threshold the total amount of light is constant whether it be of high intensity for a very short period of time or of low intensity for a correspondingly longer one. This relationship ceases to be true if the time of stimulation is longer than about one-tenth of a second, and this is apparently due to the fact that the retinal apparatus reaches a steady state in about one-quarter of a second in the dark adapted eye (rod-visual purple apparatus). A lighthouse flash should therefore be visible to the eye for this

length of time in order to make the greatest impression possible. For coloured lights approximately the same values are found, provided that allowance is made for the comparative intensity of the colour. Since the time required for the retina to reach a steady state is nearly that at which a series of stimuli must fall on the retina in order to produce a uniform sensation, for intensities near the threshold the rate at which flicker disappears is one stimulus every quarter of a second. But it is found that as the intensity rises the rate must be increased in order to abolish flicker. The rule which most nearly expresses the relation appears to be that geometrical increase in the intensity requires an arithmetic increase in the rate. Sherrington showed however that the results are affected by simultaneous contrast. This phenomenon of flicker is, as I have said, used in practice for measuring the intensities of light sources. Two methods are employed, firstly that in which the two light sources to be compared are measured separately for the intensity at which flicker ceases when the same rate of stimulation is used for both; and secondly that in which the two sources are caused to fall alternately on the eye, and are adjusted in intensity until flicker ceases. Of the two methods the latter is the more accurate. The value of these methods lies in the fact that they measure brightness independently of colour. The shape of the curves obtained by plotting the luminosity of different parts of the spectrum has been shown in Fig. 286.

Lastly we have to consider the relationship between time intensity and apparent brightness in the case of an intermittent source, the rate of which is sufficiently great to avoid flicker. Experiment shows that the brightness increases in proportion as either the intensity or the time is increased, and further that equal brightness is obtained if the time multiplied by the intensity is constant. This statement is true of both the cone and the rod apparatus, and is known as the Talbot Plateau Law. Use is made of this law in the sector method of controlling intensity (see page 564) because the intensity is proportional to the time during which the light is allowed to pass through, which is in its turn controlled by the angle between the blades of the sector.

COLOUR THRESHOLD

On testing the violet end with a photographic process, or the red end by a thermopile, it can readily be shown that the spectrum extends at both ends far beyond the visible limit. The visible limit at the red end under the most favourable conditions has been found to be 8350 A.U., while under ordinary circumstances it is difficult to go beyond 8000 A.U. Since rays beyond this reach the retina in considerable amount, the limit cannot be caused by opacity of the eye media, and must therefore be due to an actual inability on the part of the retina to record their presence.

Of several hypotheses which might be advanced for this inability, the most probable is that the retinal pigments are unable to absorb rays in the infra-red part of the spectrum, and therefore according to Draper's law such

rays cannot produce photochemical change and cannot be perceived by the eye. It may be mentioned in this connection that few organic pigments absorb strongly in the infra-red.

The limit at the violet end is less easy to determine because the eye media, in common with a large number of other bodies, have the property of fluorescing when the ultra-violet rays fall on them, *i.e.* they convert them into rays of longer wavelength and therefore make them visible. The resulting impression is however quite different because, since these rays are generated in the eye media themselves, they are spread over the retina as a haze without there being any proper image formation. The limit of the visibility of the violet end of the spectrum appears to be at about 3800 A.U., while the portion which is seen because of the fluorescence which it produces, and which appears a pale lavender, ends at about 3200 A.U. Since the wavelength of the extreme red rays is a little more than double that of the extreme violet, the eye is sensitive to a little over an octave. The range of appreciation of the eye is therefore very much smaller than that of the ear, which is about 10 octaves. As age increases the eye media become yellow in colour: this change particularly affecting the lens, the violet end of the spectrum becomes shortened owing to absorption. On removing the lens of the eye as in an operation for cataract, the sensitiveness to the violet end of the spectrum is considerably increased. It would therefore seem certain that the limitation of the spectrum of the violet end is largely due to absorption by the eye media and not to inappreciation on the part of the retina. The causes of the limitation of the two ends of the spectrum are therefore different.

DIFFERENCE THRESHOLDS

Beside the thresholds for light, colour, time, and wavelength, which we have considered above and which may be called absolute thresholds, there are certain difference thresholds that must be considered. Thus, for example, a certain finite difference must exist between the intensities of two sources of light of the same colour for a difference between them to be appreciated by the eye. There are four principal types of difference threshold, that of intensity, that of colour, that of saturation, and that of size.

Difference Threshold of Intensity

It is found by experiment that a just perceptible difference between the intensities of two surfaces varies with the mean value of their intensities. Thus supposing that it had been found by one experiment that a difference of intensity of one foot candle was necessary in order that two sources should be just distinguishable, the average intensities of which were one hundred foot candles, then in another case in which the average was 25 F.C. the least perceptible difference would be found to be one-quarter F.C. This condition is known as Weber's law. It appears to be true for light of medium intensity and for sources not separated by more than a small interval. But the least perceptible difference is found by most observers to be less than that taken for purposes of illustration above, namely one-hundredth part of the mean

intensity; thus Helmholtz found it to be a $\frac{1}{167}$th, other observers have obtained even higher fractions. It is interesting to find that the results are not influenced by the size of the pupil.

Difference Threshold of Colour

If the range of colours exhibited in the spectrum be carefully examined, it will be seen that there are certain parts, notably at the red and violet ends, at which the change of colour with wavelength is a very gradual one. At other parts on the contrary the change of hue is very rapid, the yellow region at 5800 A.U. may be given as example. If therefore we determine by experiment what difference of wavelength is just perceivable by the eye, we find that it varies with the part of the spectrum under observation. We may therefore conveniently express the difference threshold in different parts of the spectrum in the form of a curve, as in Fig. 289. In persons with normal vision the total number of different hues in the spectrum is calculated to be 165. In persons with colour-blindness the number is greatly reduced.

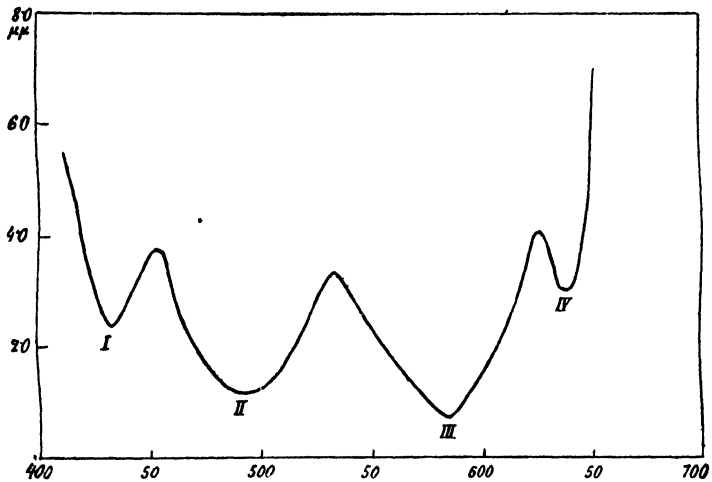


FIG. 289. Curve showing difference threshold for colour at different parts of the spectrum.

Abscissae = wavelengths. Ordinates = difference between wavelengths capable of being discriminated. (STEINDLER.)

This fact has been applied by Edridge Green for the detection of colour-blindness; details of the method will be given later. It should be pointed out that, since in this method the spectrum itself is presented to the observer so that there is a gradual change from one colour to the next, it is the threshold of rate of change of colour that is determined, and not difference threshold of colour.

Difference Threshold of Saturation

By saturation is meant the amount of white light which is present with and is therefore diluting a colour. The threshold would appear to be

of the same order as that of intensity given above, namely, that a difference in the amount of white light diluting a colour by $\frac{1}{160}$th of the total intensity present can be just appreciated by the eye.

Difference Threshold of Size

If two objects are the same distance from the eye, and are close to one another and in similar positions, a difference of one-hundredth the mean size can as a rule be appreciated. If, they are at different distances from the eye, or are far apart, or are not in similar position (*e.g.* one perpendicular and the other horizontal), then considerable errors may occur.

THE METHOD OF COMPARISONS

In the application of this method three different series of investigations have been carried out. (1) To determine the intensities of three primary colours which when mixed together will match the different spectral colours or white light. (2) To determine the intensities and wavelengths of the complementary colours. (3) To ascertain the intensities and wavelengths of red and green rays which when mixed together match a pure spectral yellow.

The colour box in some form or other is used for these tests. Abney's apparatus may be described as a typical example. Light from an arc lamp is focussed on to the slit of a powerful spectroscope, which consists of a collimator, a train of prisms and a telescope. The spectrum thus produced is caused to fall on three slits, one of which corresponds with the red, another with the green, and the third with the blue. The light having passed through the slits falls on a lens which forms an image of the prism faces on a screen. The light from the slits thus recombines on the screen to produce a bright patch, the colour of which alters according to the intensities of the three components. To one side of the patch a second patch of light can be thrown from the arc lamp, and this also may be varied in different ways according to the nature of the experiment. The intensities of the different beams could be modified by altering the widths of the slits; a preferable method is to employ rotating sectors, the angles between the blades of which can be varied at will (see Fig. 290).

COLOUR MIXING EXPERIMENTS performed with this apparatus give results that have already been briefly considered in Section I. It is found that, not only do the three primary colours when mixed together in the right proportions form a white light that is indistinguishable from ordinary white light, but they can also be made to match the whole range of colours both of the spectrum and of pigments. It was also described how that certain pairs of colours when mixed in the right proportions are able to match white, and that these pairs are called complementary colours. If the colours that are mixed are further apart than are the complementary colours, then the mixed colour is found to be a shade of purple; but if nearer together than the complementaries, then the colour formed by the mixture corresponds to an intermediate part of the spectrum. Thus, if the colours mixed are red and green, the intermediate yellow and orange portions of the

spectrum can be matched. As a rule the mixed colour is not so pure as the corresponding spectral colour, being less saturated (that is diluted with a certain amount of white light). The mixture of red and green is an exception because it is found that accurate matches with spectral yellow can be

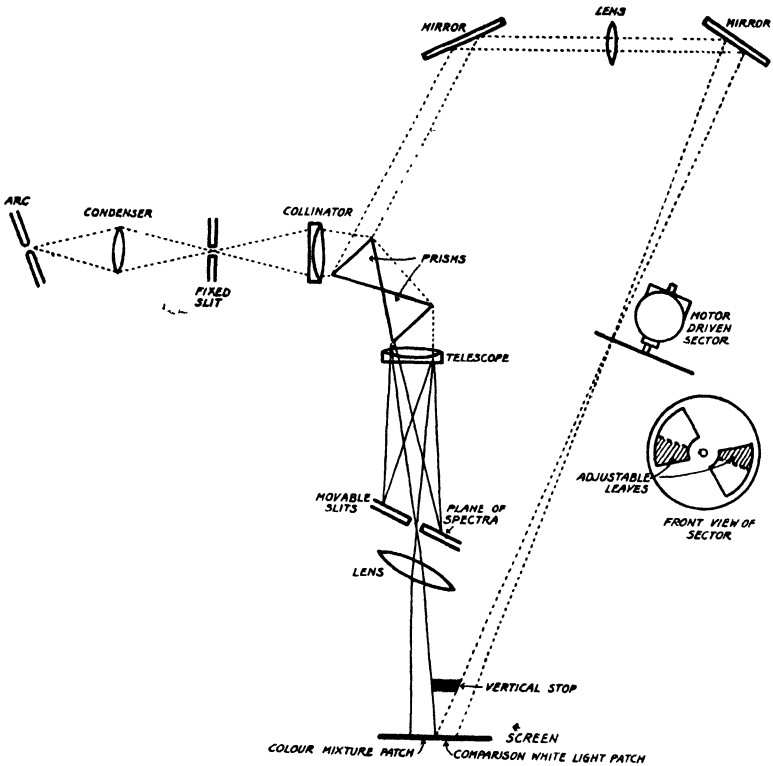


FIG. 290. Colour patch apparatus for mixture and comparison of pure spectral colours. (ABNEY.)

made if the green component be not shorter in wavelength than 5400 A.U. These facts can be expressed diagrammatically in the form of a geometrical figure, the colour triangle, in which the three fundamental colours occupy the corners and white the centre (see Fig. 243). Matches made by light of one intensity require readjustment if the intensity be changed, and matches made by one observer are different to those made by another. The variation with intensity is readily explained by the shifting of the centre of the luminosity curve from the yellow towards the green, as the intensity is lowered. The amount of red required in a match will become increasingly greater, and that of the blue less, as the intensity is lowered. The variation with the observer, when small, is explained by individual peculiarity in the pigmentation of the eye media or the fovea centralis; but when considerable, by abnor-

mality in the response of the retina to colours. Because of this the method of colour mixtures forms a very valuable technique for the investigation of colour-blindness.

THE FLICKER METHOD. The majority of observers can only obtain consistent measurements of intensity with the above method when the colours of the two patches are exactly alike. Thus it is difficult to adjust a green light to be of equal apparent brightness (luminosity) with a red because the difference in colour makes the judgment of brightness inaccurate. Abney found that in his own case practice greatly increased the certainty with which the measurement could be made. A more reliable technique is given by the flicker method (see page 559). The two patches are viewed through a rotating sector, the speed of rotation of which can be controlled. The intensity of one of them is now adjusted so that, when the speed of the sector is altered, both commence to show and to cease showing flicker at the same time. By applying this method to the colour-mixing apparatus the luminosity of the different parts of the spectrum can be determined. The curves obtained at different luminosities have already been given in Fig. 286. Tested by this method different observers show individual peculiarities, which amount in some cases to a greatly diminished perception of a certain part of the spectrum. Some of the types met with will be described later.

SECTION IX

THE SUBJECTIVE PHENOMENA OF VISION

By 'subjective' we mean that the sensations under consideration cannot be directly traced to the stimulus which initiated them. Thus at a certain rate, intermittent stimuli presented to the eye form a continuous sensation, so that flicker appears to have ceased. But the carrying on of the sensation from one stimulus to the next is performed by some part of the visual mechanism, and has nothing to do with any physical peculiarity of the light. It is therefore an example of a subjective phenomenon.

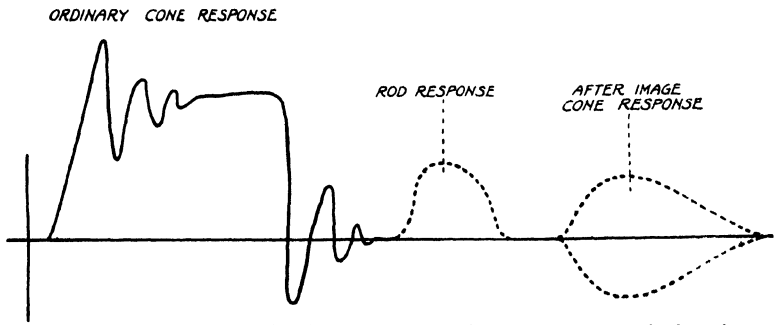


Fig. 291. Curve representing diagrammatically the sensations aroused when the eye has been stimulated by a flash of light. Intensity of sensation-vertical. Time-horizontal. (Hartridge.)

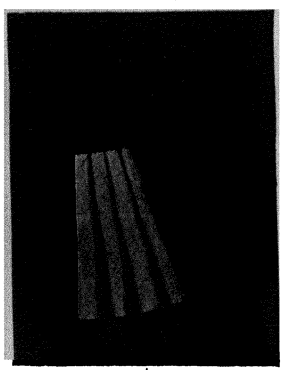


Fig. 292. Charpentier's bands as seen when a disc with a narrow radial slit is rotated in front of an illuminated screen about once a second.

THE SENSATION CURVE. When a light stimulus enters the eye a certain period of time elapses before a sensation is perceived. This latent period may be compared with that which occurs between the stimulus and contraction of a muscle. After its commencement the sensation rapidly rises to a maximum (see Fig. 291) and then shows several rapid fluctuations as it reaches its mean value. These fluctuations are called Charpentier's bands, and are well seen after stimulating the eye by means of the flash from an electric spark. They have been compared to the oscillations which occur when an electric current is passed down a telegraph cable, and which are caused by the inductance and capacity of the circuit.

Similar oscillations occur when the telegraph circuit is broken; these oscillations also have been witnessed and described by Bidwell at the end of the primary visual response. The time taken for the sensation to reach its maximum varies from 0·16 to 0·07 secs., being shorter the greater the intensity of the stimulus. This so-called primary image is followed under certain conditions by a less definite and less intense image, which has the following characteristics: (1) It is not seen when the eye is light adapted. (2) It is strongest for green light, and is absent for red. (3) It is absent from the fovea. (4) It is not seen by persons suffering from night blindness. (5) It is always of a bluish grey colour. All the above facts fit in with the view that, whereas the primary response corresponds with the reaction of the cones to the stimulus, the image which is sometimes seen to follow belongs to the rod apparatus.

THE AFTER IMAGE. Following these responses of the cone and rod end-organs is the so-called secondary image, which certainly concerns the cones and may concern the rods as well. This image is of longer duration than those already considered, and it is of much lower intensity. It has however the peculiarity that, so long as it lasts, the part of the retina affected gives a diminished response to a stimulus of the same type as that which it had previously received. For exampe, if the first stimulus was one of white light, then a second white light stimulus falling in the period occupied by the after image of the first, would not be recorded by the retina with the normal intensity. It has been pointed out that the after image period in some ways resembles the refractory period which follows the activity of muscle and nerve. If the second stimulus occupies a larger area of the retina than that on which the first stimulus fell, the first area stimulated appears dark on the bright ground corresponding to the second area. If the first stimulus is coloured, and no stimulus follows, the secondary image is found to have the same colour; but if a second stimulus of the same colour falls on the retina during the secondary image, then as before the area first stimulated appears dark on the bright area occupied by the second area. If on the other hand the second stimulus be one of white light, the sensation received is one of the complementary colour, the reason being that the red constituents of the white light are partially excluded by the after image of the first stimulus, but not so the other spectral colours, and the image which is seen is therefore a blue-green one. Because of these peculiar properties the after image is said to have two phases: being called positive when the eye receives no second stimulus, and the appearance of the after image is the same as that of the first stimulus; and being called negative when, owing to the incidence of a second stimulus, the after image shows the opposite intensity or colour to the stimulus which originated it. Since absence of the second stimulus causes the after image to be positive and the presence of a second stimulus makes it appear negative, we should expect a second stimulus of the right intensity to cause the after image to disappear altogether, since it would stimulate the surrounding retina with the same intensity as does the after image of the first stimulus. Experiment

shows that this result can be achieved. Because of the importance of these properties of the after image we may with advantage recapitulate as follows: —As a result of a stimulus the region of the retina affected gives a response which is followed by a second or after image. During this after image this area is incapable of reacting with the normal intensity to a like stimulus, but shows increased excitability to a stimulus of the opposite kind. For example, after a green stimulus the retina is unable to respond fully to another green stimulus unless it falls either before or after the period of the after image. Therefore if during that period a white stimulus be caused to fall on the retina, it will cause a purple sensation (purple being white minus green) in that part of the retina first stimulated. The duration of the after image is variable, but is found to correspond roughly with the intensity and duration of the stimulus. Thus after a few seconds' exposure to a bright light the after image may be noticeable for two or three minutes, its intensity waxing and waning in an irregular manner. Successive images are often found to show a series of colours, a common series is bluish-green, violet, rose, and finally orange or green; the phenomenon is however very variable. The colours may be explained by assuming a difference in the rate of oscillation for the after images of the different colours. For example the above series would point to green being more rapid and red less rapid than blue.

FLICKER AND VISUAL PERSISTENCE. A study of the characteristics of the sensation curve provides an explanation of a number of the subjective phenomena of vision. For example, if a cardboard disc marked as shown in Fig. 293 be caused to rotate slowly, while the black and white sectors are readily recognised, their radial margins appear blurred. This blurring is due to the slow rise and fall of the primary image of the sensation curve. If the speed be increased, a point is reached at which the disc gives an unpleasant glittering appearance; this would appear to be due to one stimulus occurring during the after image of the previous one and thus becoming suppressed, but being followed in its turn by a fresh stimulus which is caused by contrast (see later) to have a greatly increased intensity. If the rate of rotation of the disc be still further increased, a point is reached at which a stimulus falls during the primary image of the previous one. The persistence of the primary image after the cessation of the stimulus causes the stimuli to fuse to give a uniform sensation without flicker, which may be compared to the complete tetanus of a muscle. Since the primary response is more abrupt the greater the intensity of the stimulus, a more rapid rate of rotation is required to produce fusion at high intensities than at low.

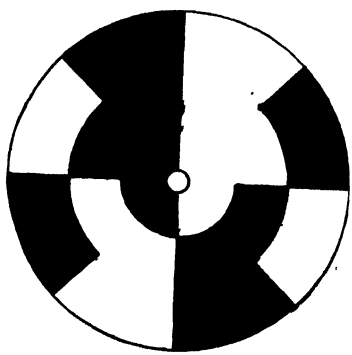


FIG. 293.

PERIODIC STIMULI. We have seen that, if a stimulus falls during the after image of a previous one, its character is altered. If the two stimuli are similar the second tends to be suppressed, but if dissimilar the second appears to be increased. If on the other hand the second stimulus falls either before or after the after image, it appears to be unaffected. But the experiments on flicker show us more than this, because even in a case where a second stimulus comes before the after image of the first, it is clear that the third would at a certain speed coincide with it and would therefore be modified. Experiment seems to show no evidence for such an effect, and we must therefore conclude that the occurrence of the second stimulus in some way inhibits the after image of the first, so that its effects are not apparent. Further evidence for this view is to be obtained from continuous stimuli, for we do not find a sudden diminution in the intensity of the response a moment or two after a continuous stimulus has begun, such as we should expect if the after image of the commencement of stimulus were suddenly after a short interval to assert itself. What happens to these suppressed after images; are they entirely destroyed, or are they caused to accumulate until the end of the stimulus ? The evidence appears to be in favour of the latter view, because an after image has a more definite character the longer the stimulus. Moreover if the gaze be directed towards a fixation point, and the inclination to blink be rigidly suppressed, after a few seconds the images of objects which fall on the periphery of the retina begin to appear milky, particularly in the shadows. At the same time the brightness of the high lights seems to be reduced so that it approximates more and more closely with the milkiness of the shadows. When this stage is reached objects appear in outline, the contours being produced and renewed by imperfect fixation. If fixation can be retained for a short period, it will be found that the whole field becomes blank with the exception of the fixation mark. If this also disappears momentarily, then fixation is lost, the eye makes an involuntary movement and the whole field immediately fills with detail again. In this experiment, two processes seem to be going on : firstly, in the shadows, the disappearance of the after images of previous impressions, the replacement of the visual purple previously bleached, and possibly also the recovery of these parts of the retina from the effects of previous stimulation, all of which will increase the sensitiveness of the retina so that it now responds to the light reflected by the shadows; secondly, in the high lights, the accumulation of after images, the bleaching of the visual purple, and possibly the effects of fatigue, all of which tend to reduce the intensity of the impression. So that these processes, tending to increase the brightness in the shadows and to decrease that of the high lights, finally brings them to the same level. In these processes the accumulation and removal of after images would appear to take a considerable part. The conclusion to which we are forced is that at the beginning of a continuous stimulus the after images are effectively removed until such time as the stimulus shall cease, when they can be permitted to assert themselves. But if the stimulus be prolonged the suppression becomes more and more difficult, until the accumula-

tion of after images is so extensive that they begin to obtrude more and more on the impression conveyed to consciousness.

FATE OF AFTER IMAGES. If the conclusion drawn from the above experiments is valid, the question arises as to the apparent unimportance of the after image in ordinary vision. The answer is to be obtained from experiments like the following:—If fixation be continued until the images formed on the retina appear in outline as in the previous experiments, and the gaze be then quickly turned to a second fixation mark placed some distance from the first, it is found that, on returning to the first mark, some time has to elapse before the appearance in outline is obtained again; in fact the time taken is not very different to that required to reach this stage at the beginning of a new experiment. The second impression had effected an almost complete removal of the after image of the first, so that on returning to the first again, the slate had as it were been wiped clean, and the first impression therefore acted as if it were a new one. This conclusion is entirely in agreement with our previous conclusions with regard to the after image, namely that it corresponds to a period in which a stimulus, similar to that to which the after image belongs, is inhibited, while that of a different kind is favoured. If therefore during fixation the gaze be directed elsewhere momentarily, the after image that had been set up is quenched by the new impression, and on returning the gaze to the fixation point the old image behaves almost like a new one. The non-intrusion of the after image in ordinary vision is therefore due to a considerable extent to the continual and rapid replacement of one impression by another, by the shifting of the gaze, and also to the spreading of the accumulation of partially effaced after images more or less uniformly over the retina. It has been suggested that impulses may be originated from the external eye muscles on movement, which on reaching the brain assist in the removal of the after images of previous stimulation.

ADAPTATION. If the eye after being in the dark is rapidly removed to the light, at first the sight is confused and the eye dazzled in spite of the powerful constriction of the pupils. The eye however very quickly becomes accustomed to the greater intensity, or as we say, it becomes light adapted. In a similar manner on entering the dark from the light the eye can at first see nothing, but by degrees it becomes accustomed to the new conditions and objects begin to be recognised; the eye has therefore become dark adapted. In the first case the initial light stimulus reduced the sensitiveness of the eye to light to such an extent that the eye ceased to react to an excessive degree as it had done at first. Dark adaptation appears to consist of two separate processes: (1) the removal of after images from the cone light-receiving mechanism, and (2) the replacement of visual purple for the rod apparatus; the former predominating at high intensities and the latter at low.

FATIGUE OF THE RETINA. If the eye has been exposed to a very bright light for a considerable time, there is at first inability

to see with the dazzled part of the retina. If a field is looked at, a black spot appears to lie in front of it; if on the other hand the field subsequently looked at is dark, this same area of the retina appears to be filled by a bright haze. If the dazzling light be restricted to one colour, there is an inability to see the same colour, if of lower intensity, immediately afterwards. The power to see other colours is apparently quite unaffected; in fact, Burch stated that the complementary colour actually appears to be more vivid than usual. These changes are similar to those caused by after images. The negative after image causes diminished appreciation of colours similar to itself, while the positive shows itself as a bright image similar in colour to the original stimulus when a dark field is looked at.

SUCCESSIVE CONTRAST. Visual impressions are affected by the previous history of the retina; thus after the eyes have been directed towards a red surface, a grey surface appears to be tinted green, a green surface seems a more vivid colour than normal, while a red colour is relatively dull. In other words, after stimulation by one kind of source, another of a similar nature is inhibited, while that of a different nature is either unaffected or may be even increased. This effect is called successive contrast. Experiment shows that the change of the second stimulus is such that it favours the colour complementary to the first stimulus. These effects are similar to those already described under adaptation and fatigue, and the causation of the phenomenon is the same as that given above, being due to the presence of an after image.

SIMULTANEOUS CONTRAST. If the retina is stimulated by two separate impressions, any differences between the impressions will be found to be accentuated. Thus if a small grey surface be placed on a white ground, the grey will become darker and to a less extent the white ground will become lighter. If now the same grey surface be placed on a dark ground, it will be found to become lighter and the field darker. The nearer the surfaces are together the greater are the effects of contrast, the edges shewing the effects of contrast most. In the case of colours similar changes take place; thus two similar colours of different intensity placed together appear to be more different; two colours of different saturation change, the one to greater, the other to less saturation; while two colours of different wavelength appear under the influence of contrast to suffer a variation towards the complementary colour. A similar change is observed if contrast is occurring between a colour and a grey surface of approximately the same intensity, for we find that the grey is very obviously tinted with a colour that is very nearly the complementary of the colour in question. It has been stated that the light which reaches the eye other than through the pupil (*e.g.* the sclera) and which is coloured an orange-pink in consequence of its partial absorption by the blood pigment in the capillaries, is responsible for the contrast colours not being strictly complementary to those which produce them. It is also found that separation of the

surfaces, or the demarcation of the junction of the two surfaces by means of a narrow black or white line, or even the existence of small marks or creases, reduces the effects of contrast to a considerable extent.

We can summarise the effects of simultaneous contrast in the following way :—if one part of the retina is being stimulated, the part surrounding it not only tends to discourage a similar stimulus but also favours one of a complementary nature (black in this connection being considered as being complementary to white). But this statement is similar to that which we have already made with regard to the effects of the after image on the same part of the retina which has received stimulation. Simultaneous contrast would therefore appear to be simply an extension of the after image phenomenon into a region of the retina outside the confines of the original stimulus. Experiment shows that this extension does not go far from the excited area, for the contrast effects, which may be considerable near the contour, rapidly decrease as the distance from the contour increases.

BIDWELL'S EXPERIMENT. If a short white light stimulus be caused to fall during the after image period of a previous red stimulus, we should expect the white light to be tinted blue-green, because red light is suppressed and its complementary increased. If the intensity and time intervals are carefully chosen, the blue-green sensation may be made stronger than the original red stimulus to which it owes its colour. The persistence of vision causes this blue-green response to last an appreciable time, and therefore if another red stimulus rapidly succeeds the white one

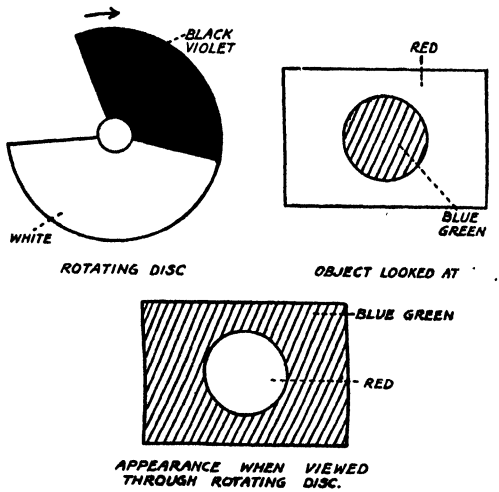


FIG. 294. Bidwell's rotating disc; an object looked through it appears in complementary colours.

(the one which is coloured blue-green) it will tend to be suppressed from consciousness. But the white stimulus succeeding this second red one will be

coloured blue-green by its after image, because it has left its impression on the visual mechanism, although that impulse has not been conveyed to consciousness. If therefore a series of such red and white impulses be caused to fall on the retina, each white one will be tinted blue-green, and each red one will be suppressed, the result being that the complementary colour is alone seen. This interesting phenomenon was discovered by Bidwell. He took a disc of tin plate about 8 inches in diameter, and arranged so that it could be rotated by an electric motor 6 to 8 times a second. From this disc a sector was cut of approximately 60 degrees ; half the remainder was covered with black velvet and the other half with white paper. Behind the disc were mounted two pieces of silk, one red, the other blue-green. The order in which the images were presented to the eye on rotation of the disc were : (1) coloured silks, (2) white sector, (3) black sector, and so on. The result was found to be that the red silk appeared pale blue-green, and the other pink ; that is in both cases the complementary colour was alone seen. This experiment brings out very clearly the fact that the after image process is entirely subconscious. The following observations confirm this conclusion.

BURCH'S EXPERIMENT. It has been much discussed in the past whether contrast phenomena are due to errors of judgment as Helmholtz supposed, or due to physical or physiological changes taking place in the retina or in the conducting paths leading from it to consciousness. Burch disproved Helmholtz' view by the following simple experiment. A box (Fig. 295) is divided into two long compartments, *a b* and *c d*. At *a* the compartment is closed by a red glass-plate and at *c* by a blue glass-plate. Apertures are provided at *b* and *d* for the observer's eyes. At + and + two small grey crosses are fixed about the middle of the compartment on sheets of transparent glass.

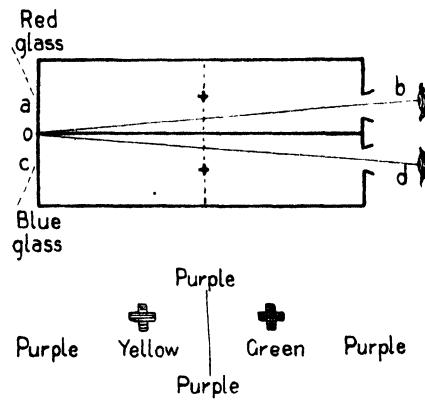


FIG. 295.

On looking through the openings *b* and *d* and converging the eyeballs, so as to fix the line *o*, we get a fusion more or less complete of the two colours red and blue, so that the background appears purple ; or there may be a struggle between the colours, at one time blue, at another red predominating. To the judgment however, there is one background and not two, and therefore, according to the theory of Helmholtz, the grey crosses should by contrast both acquire the same induced colour, which would be complementary for purple. But it is found that the two crosses are perfectly distinct in colour, that which is seen by the eye against the blue ground being yellow, while that on the red ground is green, showing that the phenomena of simultaneous contrast are not due to an error of judgment.

SHERRINGTON'S EXPERIMENT. The same fact is very definitely established by the following experiment devised by Sherrington. The disc (Fig. 296) presents two rings, each half-blue and half-black. The outer ring is intensified when at rest by

simultaneous contrast, the black half being seen against the surrounding yellow, while the luminosity of the blue half is increased by the effect of the surrounding black. In the inner ring the blue half is darkened by contrast with the surrounding yellow, while the black half is not evident at all. If the disc be rotated, we get two concentric rings on an apparently homogeneous field. It is found however that the outer ring flickers long after complete fusion has taken place in the inner ring, showing that the stimulation of the retina by the outer ring is increased under the influence of contrast.

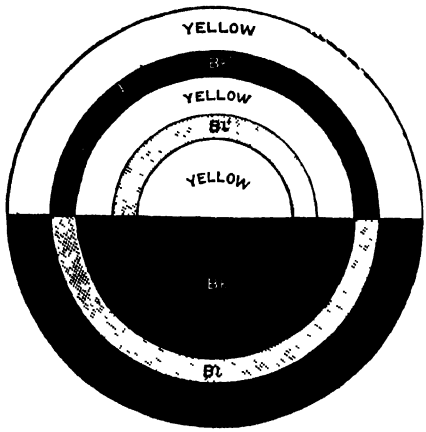


FIG. 296.

CAUSE OF AFTER IMAGE. Sherrington has shown that in the case of muscles there is what is called reciprocal innervation. Thus stimulation of the cortex which causes the contraction of one muscle also brings about a corresponding relaxation of its antagonist, in order that a rapid and economical motion may take place. The contraction and corresponding relaxation are therefore analogous to the response of one part of the retina, which is accompanied by an inhibition of the surrounding parts of the retina to the same kind of stimulus (simultaneous contrast). In a similar manner the inclination to extension which is found to accompany the prolonged flexion of a limb, finds its analogy in the phenomena of after images and adaptation of the eye, since the tendency is to suppress a similar stimulus in the part of the retina stimulated and to encourage its complementary. The inference to be drawn from these analogies is that the after image and its allied phenomena are caused by changes in the conducting paths of visual impressions which are similar to those found to exist in paths belonging to the motor system. What the nature of these changes in the conducting paths may be is at the present time undecided. McDougall has suggested that they are fatigue effects in the synapses of the higher conducting paths. If this view is correct it would seem difficult to explain why after images and contrast phenomena are best seen with a rested eye.

UTILITY OF THE AFTER IMAGE. We have seen that the effect of the after image is to inhibit the possible repetition of a similar stimulus, and at the same time to favour the reception of one of a different nature. The process is therefore one which favours change, for not only is there a tendency to efface an old impression but also to welcome a new one. Such effects must be of great value to an organ such as the eye the function of which is to a considerable extent, in everyday life, to present to consciousness the greatest number of impressions in a given time. For example, by measuring the time taken to read a passage in which almost every word was of importance, it was found that on an average eight words were

read in each second, and that the eight words had an average of forty letters. It is clear from this that between eight and forty different impressions must be presented to consciousness in each second. The function of the after image in preparing the retina for the reception of new impressions would therefore appear to be a very important one. The effects of simultaneous contrast are equally important to vision, because the changes produced by it are such that the images falling on contiguous portions of the retina are made as unlike as possible. Not only are the intensity and colour of adjacent parts of the image made more definite (this process being comparable to the effects of intensification on a photograph), but the blurring at the edges of contours due to imperfections in the image formed on the retina are also largely eliminated (this comparing with retouching in photography).

BINOCULAR RIVALRY must be briefly referred to here because of the similarity which it shows with the phenomena described above. If for any reason the images formed on the retina have dissimilar contours, rivalry ensues, first one image and then the other reaching consciousness. This process usually occurs independently in different parts of the field, so that the visual impression consists of a patchwork

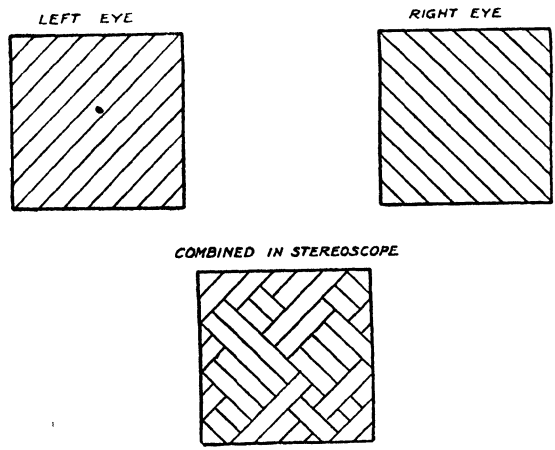


FIG. 297. Diagram to show how the binocular combination of two dissimilar images produces a fluctuating image containing parts of both of them.

of the two images. Seldom if ever are both images seen in the same part of the retina at the same time. It is found that a number of factors can cause one image totally to suppress the other; these are interest, novelty, and brightness. The importance of this suppression can be appreciated by picturing the confusion which would occur if two different images were simultaneously presented to consciousness, as would happen in animals in which different images are formed in the two retinæ and in cases of strabismus in man. The parallelism between this process and those which we have already described can be traced by regarding for one moment one of the images as

the primary one. This causes impulses to travel to the visual centres unaffected at first by the effects of other images, but these tend to accumulate more and more until the primary image is overcome, and that of the other eye put in its place. But this image in time suffers in the same way, so that the images alternate. The fact that a new image can suppress an old is due to the absence of after images in the first and their presence in the second. The predominance of a bright image can be explained by the longer time required for the after image to reach such a level as shall cause suppression. The preference for an image with contours would seem to be due to the greater ease with which the after image may be removed by small deflections of gaze.

SECTION X

ERRORS OF APPRECIATION

UNDER this heading we include all types of abnormality in the retinal apparatus or in its central connections. The class therefore includes cases in which the image formed on the retina is in every way normal, and those in which the optical defects do not adequately explain the whole of the visual disability, which experiment shows to be present. The class is found to include cases which range from slight impairment to complete blindness.

The following classification may be used:—

Group 1. Both rod and cone vision are affected, and there is thus both night blindness and total colour blindness.

Group 2. Rod vision is either affected alone, or there is slight defect in cone vision as well.

Group 3. Rod vision is unaffected, while cone vision is either altogether absent or is found to show abnormality, which affects certain colours only.

Note that any one of the above groups may be found to affect either one or both eyes, and may involve the whole or only a limited part of the retina.

COMPLETE BLINDNESS (group 1) may affect the whole of one or both eyes, or may occur in half the visual fields only. It may be limited to irregular-shaped islands or patches, or it may be found associated with central or peripheral vision. The shape of the affected area frequently gives a direct clue to the cause of the condition. The shape is best determined by means of the perimeter (Fig. 279).

(*a*) The whole of one or both eyes is found to be blind. The disease may be congenital or may be the result of inflammation affecting the posterior parts of the eye (ophthalmoscope will confirm). Injury involving the whole of the optic nerve trunk will also cause blindness of the corresponding eye.

(*b*) The blindness involves the right or left halves of one or both retinæ only. The lesion in such cases involves the optic tracts. Tumours are the commonest cause.

(*c*) The blindness is limited to a segment of the retina when the retinal vessels are affected (*e.g.* by embolism). The ophthalmoscope will confirm.

(*d*) Blindness which affects the periphery of the retina only is due either to deficiency of blood supply (as may occur in glaucoma), defective blood (severe anæmia), or the presence of poisons in the blood.

(*e*) If blindness affects the centre of the retina chiefly, the cause is probably poisoning by either tobacco, alcohol, or both. At first vision is impaired for certain colours only, but the blindness quickly becomes complete if the absorption of the poison continues.

(*f*) If irregular blind islands called *scotomata* are found in the visual fields, the cause may be inflammation of the choroid or of the retina itself, or the detachment of the retina from the choroid.

NIGHT BLINDNESS (group 2) is found in four different types of case. (*a*) As an inherited condition. (*b*) In diseases of the liver in which bile salts are found to circulate in the blood, since these dissolve the visual purple out of the retina and therefore impair rod vision. (*c*) As a symptom of insufficient food. (*d*) In disease of the retina or choroid (*e.g.* retinitis pigmentosa). In the last two cases it is usual to find colour vision affected to some extent.

The symptoms of night blindness are well described by the name. The eye does not possess the power of becoming fully dark adapted, and even a moderate degree is only attained after a prolonged stay in the dark. A photochromatic interval is not found, that is to say, when the intensity of a colour is reduced it does not pass through an uncoloured stage (due to the rods). Purkinje's phenomenon is usually poorly developed or not seen at all. There is no cure in the congenital cases.

COLOUR BLINDNESS. The detection of this condition is important because of the use of coloured signals in the railway and marine services. The employees of such services should be tested at stated frequent intervals, because colour blindness may develop (*e.g.* from tobacco or alcohol poisoning) in a relatively short space of time.

The methods of testing colour blindness fall roughly into three classes: (1) those of historic interest; (2) those used by ophthalmologists for practical tests; (3) those used for research. Holmgren's wool test is an example of the first class. It consists of a large series of coloured worsteds, the number of different shades being very great. In using the test the doctor hands to the patient selected skeins which have been found by experience to give difficulty to colour-blind persons. He then instructs the patient to select from the box all the skeins that appear to him to have the same colour. His visual defect is judged by the mistakes which he makes. Since coloured wools readily fade and get dirty in use, slips of coloured glass or beads, &c., have been used in a similar way. These tests are however no longer used, because it is found that colour-blind persons may be able to pass them without detection.

Of practical tests the lantern test would appear to yield the best results, because it gives a close imitation of a signal light as seen at different distances and under various atmospheric conditions. In using the test, the doctor shows the patient in turn a series of different coloured lights, and in each case asks him to state what he sees. If he makes no mistakes, the colours are shown through modifying glasses which give the effect of a signal when seen through mist, fog, rain, &c., and the answers noted. One definitely wrong answer should reject the patient, particularly if red, green, or white be one of the signals misnamed. Objections have been raised to this test, because it is possible for a man ignorant of colour names to be failed even if he has normal colour vision. The objection is readily met however. When the

driver of a train sees a signal, he says to himself " that is a green signal and therefore my train may proceed." But supposing all the time it were a red

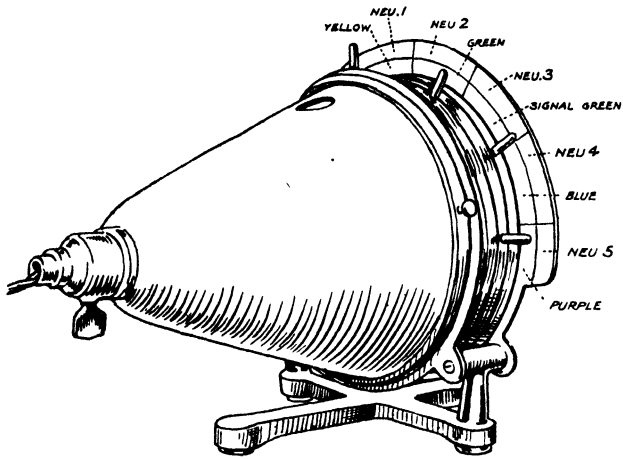


FIG. 298. The lantern used in practice for the detection of colour blindness.. (EDRIDGE GREEN.)

signal, and that he called it green through colour ignorance, that man is as much a danger to the community as if he in fact were colour-blind. No test can be too searching, and no borderline case should ever be passed; the risk is too serious.

Of tests of theoretical importance some have already been described, namely the measurement of the thresholds for light and colour, the colour-mixing apparatus and the flicker method of photometry. There is however another test which is found to give valuable information, namely the spectroscope test of Edridge Green. The instrument consists of a spectroscope to which is fitted two shutters, one of which may be caused to obscure the spectrum from the red end and the other from the violet. The patient commences the test by placing the shutter on the red side at the place where he sees the red begin. The doctor notes this position on the wavelength scale of the shutter. The patient is then told to move the other shutter until it reaches the place where red changes to orange. This wavelength also is noted. The red side shutter is now moved until it occupies the position of the violet side shutter, and the violet side shutter is now moved until a difference in colour at the two sides of the spectral area which is thus isolated is just not able to be seen. The wavelengths are again noted, and the next area measured off, and so on until the violet end of the spectrum is reached. A person with normal vision will with this instrument map out between 20 and 30 distinct areas. Abnormal vision may be shown in two ways, firstly by the ends of the spectrum being found in abnormal positions, the spectrum being shortened at the red or the violet or both, secondly by the isolated areas being too large and too few, and thirdly by wrong names being applied to some of them. The value of the method is considerable because it shows the presence of all three classes of defect, those due to blindness, those caused by ignorance of colour names, and those in which the appreciation of colour is deficient.

Cases of colour blindness, when tested by the above methods, are found to show every possible variation between complete blindness and slight impairment of the colour sense. Their classification is as a rule complicated by the fact that cases are usually described in terms of one of the theories of colour vision. Most varieties of colour blindness are inherited, and are commoner in men than in women. But it may also be acquired, as explained above, in poisoning by alcohol and tobacco. Cases of colour blindness may be grouped as follows :--

1. Cases in which the cone mechanism of the retina is not functioning. The patient is found to be colour and day blind, red is not seen at all, while the other colours are seen as different shades of grey. Vision at night is good, vision by day is complicated by the fact that the patient must not expose his eyes to a bright light, for otherwise his visual purple will become bleached and his rod apparatus therefore cease to function. Owing to the absence of rods from the fovea, this part of the retina is blind. Visual acuity is low therefore. When tested by the flicker method his luminosity curve is found to correspond to that of twilight vision. His condition may be improved by using neutral tinted glasses fitted with a sky shade.

2. Cases in which the cone apparatus is apparently normal, that is to say, there is no avoidance on the part of the patient of strong light, no diminished visual acuity, no foveal blindness and no inability to see red light. Yet there is absolute inability to recognize all colours, any one part of the spectrum being able to be matched by any other. Tests by means of the flicker method show a luminosity curve which corresponds to that of day vision. It would seem clear that the retinal apparatus is in every way normal; one is therefore forced to the conclusion that the defect concerns the brain centre which subserves the appreciation of colour. This view is supported by the fact that, between this extreme type and normal colour perception, there are a large number of cases which show various grades of defect. Some, for example, see two colours at the ends of the spectrum only, the intermediate portion being a neutral colour; others see three only, at red, green and blue, and so on. Since in all these cases the cones are apparently normal, there would appear to be a parallel with cases in which there is no trace of deafness, and yet there is an inability to appreciate harmony or to tell when two notes are in tune. In both types of cases it would seem that the higher centres of perception and appreciation are either absent or are undeveloped. As might be anticipated therefore, instruction and practice at colour naming and colour matching benefit a certain number of these cases, so that it is sometimes found that after such instruction the less abnormal cases are not readily detected. If however they are tested in a poor light, they are found to make mistakes which a person with normal vision would not commit. But these are the circumstances under which signals have frequently to be recognised, and it is for this reason that the lantern test with its modifying glasses is so valuable.

3. Cases in which certain parts of the spectrum are not seen at all. This

condition frequently affects the red end of the spectrum, but it may be found in other parts. The principal effects to be noted are : (1) an abnormal type of luminosity curve, as examined by means of the flicker method ; (2) the requirement of different amounts of the primary colours in order to match a given spectral colour, as compared with individuals with normal vision ; (3) inability to recognise the normal number of different hues in the part of the spectrum affected, as shown by the spectroscope test ; (4) shortening of the spectrum, if either of the ends of the spectrum is affected. The condition would appear to be directly traceable to abnormality in the colour receiving apparatus of which the cones form an important part. These cases therefore show quite distinct features which at once differentiate them from those of class 2. For in that class, so far as can be ascertained, the peripheral receiving apparatus is normal, and the error lies with the higher centres in which the resulting nerve impulses are interpreted. A typical example of a case belonging to class 3 will now be described, namely, that in which there is shortening at the red end of the spectrum. The flicker test shows that the luminosity curve for different parts of the spectrum has its maximum in the green, instead of in the yellow. Further, the curve does not extend so far into the red, or show such high values in the orange as the normal curve. This curve therefore explains the apparent shortening of the spectrum. Colour mixture experiments show that the patient can match mixtures of green and blue with white light. When required to match yellow, he uses an excessive amount of red, and correspondingly less green than the normal sighted ; this test again shows the deficiency of the red sensation. Tested by the spectroscope it is found that, beside the shortening at the red end of the spectrum, there is also an inability to distinguish the normal number of hues at the green and yellow. This effect is readily explained, because the difference between green and yellow shades largely depends on the varying extent to which they stimulate the red sensation. When the red sensation is absent, it is clear that the differentiation of greens and yellows must suffer.

EFFECT OF INTENSITY ON COLOUR VISION. It is well known that there is a certain range of intensity over which the appreciation of colour is a maximum, and that at high and low intensities appreciation is diminished. Thus at low intensity the spectrum will appear shortened at both red and violet ends, and with the spectroscope test perhaps 10 monochromatic areas will be mapped out instead of the normal 20 to 30. At high intensity on the other hand, the spectrum appears to extend further than usual at both red and violet ends, but again it is found that the number of apparently monochromatic areas is considerably reduced. In the one case it would seem that the impulses received by the brain from the cone mechanism are so feeble that appreciation is diminished, and in the second that a powerful colour stimulus arouses all three sensations indifferently and therefore makes the differentiation of colour difficult.

PERIPHERAL VISION. Experiments with the perimeter show that there is under ordinary circumstances a reduced appreciation of colour in

the periphery of the retina. Thus in an annular zone round the macular region there is red-green blindness but full appreciation of yellow and blue. Outside this area coloured objects are seen in different shades of grey. More careful experiments show firstly, that there is no hard and fast line limiting the zones, but a gradual diminution of colour perception on passing in any direction from the centre to the periphery; and secondly, that intensity plays a most important part, an increase being sufficient to effect normal colour perception even in quite peripheral vision. The red-green blindness found at one intensity might be due either to an absence or more probably to a weakness or deficiency of either the red or the green sensations, or to defective appreciation on the part of the higher centres in the brain. In the first case there would be an abnormal shape to the luminosity curve, such as is found, in fact, in red or green blindness, whereas in the second case the luminosity curve would be similar to that of normal vision. Experiments are said to show that the curve is normal, and therefore the cones in the periphery must be in every way normal, a supposition which is borne out by the correct appreciation of colour at high intensity Why then it may be asked is colour vision reduced at the periphery if the cones are normal ? The answer is, I think, firstly that the number of cones is greatly diminished, and secondly that the effective area of the pupil is much less at the periphery than it is at the centre of the retina. We have seen in a previous section (1) that the threshold necessary for the appreciation of colour depends on the size of the area of the retina which is receiving stimulation. The larger the area the lower can the intensity be. Therefore one unit of intensity falling on 100 cones is equivalent to 100 units falling on one cone. Now consider the relative conditions of the fovea and the periphery ; at the fovea let us suppose there to be 100 units of intensity falling on 100 cones, then at the periphery there will be but 50 units (because the effective area of the pupil is less owing to the rays entering obliquely), and these will fall on perhaps two cones only. Whereas in the first case there are 10,000 cone-units, in the second there are 100 cone-units only, and it is therefore to be expected that appreciation of colour would be decreased in the same way as it is at the fovea under reduced illumination.[1] That blue is perceived at a greater angle than yellow is probably due to the greater refraction of blue than yellow rays when they strike the eye surfaces obliquely. For a blue ray and a yellow ray to meet on the retina, the angle subtended by the blue must be 5 per cent. larger than that of the yellow.

[1] The above explanation does not however adequately account for the fact that peripheral vision does not lose its colour appreciation for blue and yellow so readily as it does that for red and green. The phenomena of peripheral vision still require further investigation.

SECTION XI

THEORIES OF COLOUR VISION

THE value of a theory to science is as much due to the fresh lines of research which it indicates, as to the explanation which it offers of the already ascertained facts. The theories of vision therefore are of value in spite of the fact that they do not at the present time offer a complete account of the retina and its functions.

THE DUPLEX THEORY of von Kries states that there are in the retina two entirely separate mechanisms, namely that used for twilight vision which is colour blind, and that used for day vision which responds to colour. The view that the rods with the visual purple supply the former whereas the cones provide the latter, is already familiar because it has been made the basis of the description already given in previous sections. The evidence on which this opinion is based may with advantage be repeated because of its importance.

Twilight vision is found in those parts of the retina where there are rods; it is not found therefore at the fovea centralis (because cones alone are to be found there). If a spectrum be examined it is found that the colour with the greatest luminosity is the green, but that red rays are not seen at all. The form of the luminosity curve is identical with the bleaching curve of visual purple, and this pigment is found only where there are rods. The visual acuity of twilight vision is low, and is explained by the fact that many rods as a rule send their impulses through one and the same nerve fibre. In addition to this experimental evidence, there is the statement that animals (*e.g.* bats and hedgehogs) and birds (*e.g.* owls) which are nocturnal in habit, have rods in their retinæ and not cones.

Day vision is found most highly developed in the fovea, from which rods are absent. Not only are the cones at the fovea placed very closely together, but it would appear that each cone connects to one nerve fibre only; in this way the high visual acuity is explained. Further it is stated that animals (*e.g.* tortoises) and birds (*e.g* hens) which are diurnal in habit, have cones only in their retinæ

It has been suggested recently that the following modifications should be made in the duplicity theory of von Kries:—

1. That the cones do in certain cases function to some extent in night vision, thus retaining one of their primitive rod characteristics, from which on morphological grounds they appear to have been developed.

2. That the fovea contains some visual purple, being necessary in order that the cones may function in night vision as above, or possibly for the green sensation of day vision.

3. That the rods play some part in day vision, adding their response to that of the cones.

These modifications of the duplicity theory concern detail more than they do the basis of the theory, and do not appear to detract at all from the strength of its position. So that so far as the relative rôles of the rods and cones are concerned there would not appear to be any room for speculation. Such is not the case however with regard to colour vision, because, of the various hypotheses that have been so far advanced, none have been found to offer a feasible explanation of all the known facts, or to leave no other possible alternative. A brief account of the rival theories may be given with advantage.

YOUNG'S HYPOTHESIS states that there are in the retina three different types

of cone, each being so made as to respond to one of the three fundamental colours, namely red, green and violet. The impulses from these cones are so combined in the brain that they give a complete picture of the separate coloured images. When all three types of cone are equally stimulated, a colourless sensation results. Each visual unit may therefore be regarded as consisting of three cones, one of which responds to each of the fundamental colours. From this we should expect that the limit to the acuteness of vision would be reached when the separation of the images on the retina is not less than the diameter of such a unit. But the diameter of the foveal cones is approximately 0·0025 mm., and therefore that of a unit would be roughly 0·004 mm. Now it is found by experiment that the limit to the acuteness of vision is reached when the retinal images are separated by about 0·002. It is therefore clear that the unit cannot be larger than one cone, and that in consequence each cone must be capable of responding to all three fundamental colours. In consequence of this Helmholtz made the suggestion that there are three different chemical substances, each of which undergoes alteration under the influence of one of the three fundamental colours. The breakdown products thus formed stimulate the cones in proportion to the amount in which they are present, their function in this respect being comparable to the taste buds of the tongue. In this way each cone can respond to all three colours and also to white light, and therefore the requirements of visual acuity are satisfied. As to what these chemical substances are, we at present know nothing; it has been suggested that the substance responsible for the perception of blue is a pigment discovered by Kühne called visual yellow, and visual purple might from its absorption curve provide the pigment for the green, but at present we have no evidence for this. It should be noted that the three sensations are brighter and more saturated than the three fundamental colours with which they may be said to correspond. This follows from the researches of Maxwell and Abney, which showed that each of the fundamental colours stimulates to some extent the other sensations beside its own. Thus blue light stimulates the green and red sensations to a certain extent, green similarly the red and blue sensations, but red the green slightly, and the blue not at all. This view as to the greater saturation of the sensations finds some confirmatory evidence from the increase which the saturation of a colour undergoes after the eye has been stimulated by its complementary.

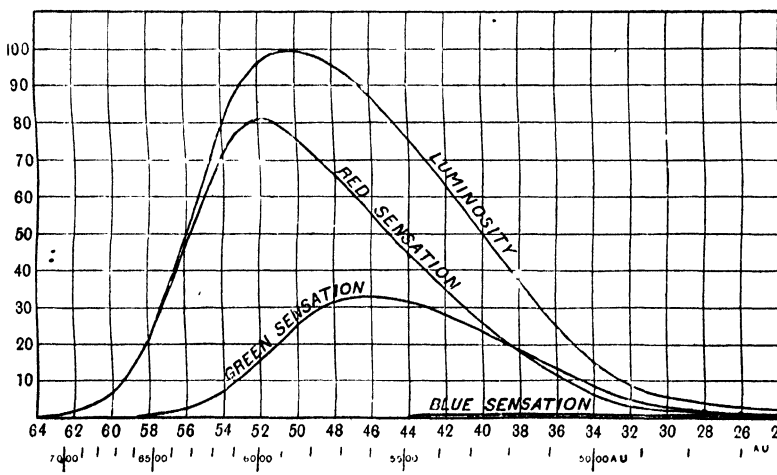


FIG. 299. The red, green and blue sensation curves and the luminosity curve of white light. Luminosity vertical wavelengths horizontal. (ABNEY.)

Having thus briefly outlined the hypothesis of Young and Helmholtz, the relationship with the results of experiment may receive consideration.

1. The results of colour mixture are all adequately explained. Since to each of the fundamental colours there is a corresponding sensation, and since mixtures of the fundamentals can produce the whole range of colour, it follows that corresponding stimulation of the sensations and their resynthesis in the brain fits in with the facts.

2. The various classes of colour blindness which show abnormal types of luminosity curve, abnormal colour mixture values, and possibly also a shortening of the spectrum, are readily explained by supposing one of the sensations to be defective or absent. For example, cases which show a shortening of the red end of the spectrum are stated by the theory to have a deficient red sensation. The luminosity curve calculated on this basis is found to fit closely the curve found by experiment in these cases of colour blindness. The hypothesis would appear therefore to be able to fully explain the various cases which fall in this class. Certain objections have however been advanced which it would be well to examine. (*a*) That it does not explain why the red blind and the green blind state that the ends of the spectrum as they see them are yellow and blue, whereas it would be expected that they would say green and blue if red blind, and red and blue if green blind. An explanation of this behaviour can be readily obtained by examining the forms of the red and green sensation curves, Fig. 299, for in both red and green blindness a yellow light is that which stimulates the remaining sensation most strongly, without at the same time involving the blue. In both types of case therefore both red and green are regarded as being but degraded yellows, and the spectrum is therefore named accordingly. (*b*) That the hypothesis does not explain why these same cases call white white, instead of bluish green or purple.

This is explained by the fact that a colour-blind person will call white what his fellows who have normal colour vision call white, because he has learned his colour names from them. In the same way a green-blind person will not call the leaves of a tree by a wrong colour, although he will readily err if a piece of paper of the same colour as a leaf be handed to him.

The various types of colour blind which have normal luminosity curves cannot be explained by the hypothesis without some further elaboration. As I have indicated however they fit in well with the supposition that it is not the eye but the higher centres which are at fault. The impulses which travel up the optic nerve are in every way normal; the error occurs in their interpretation. This would appear to be a reasonable explanation which fits in with the other postulates of the hypothesis. It has been advanced by Edridge Green as part of another hypothesis of colour vision, which will be given later.

3. Contrast, after images, and allied phenomena have not been adequately dealt with. Helmholtz regarded contrast as an error of judgment, but Hering showed conclusively that such could not be the case. McDougall's hypothesis, which is to a large extent founded on that of Young, will be found to add the features that are required for the explanation of after images and contrast.

HERING'S HYPOTHESIS states that there are in the retina three substances which are all the time tending to dissociate into their components. They are however either replaced or built up again from substances in the blood, as quickly as they are destroyed. There is therefore equilibrium between anabolism and catabolism, when the eye is unstimulated, and while this is the case no nerve impulses travel to the brain. Now each of these substances is dissociated by one of the following colours, red, yellow, white; and is built up when green, blue or black fall on the retina. Thus one substance will break up when red light falls on it, and will recombine when green does. There is thus a red-green, a yellow-blue, and a white-black substance. When a coloured light falls on the retina these three substances are broken down or are built up in varying amounts and corresponding impressions sent to the brain. Tested by experiment this view is found to acquit itself as follows:—

(1) The results of colour mixture are readily explained, with the possible exception of the formation of grey, by the simultaneous anabolism and catabolism of one and the same substance.

(2) Contrast, after images and adaptation are readily explained as follows:—While a stimulus falls on the retina, the three visual substances which were previously in equilibrium with their breakdown products, are caused to take up a new position of equilibrium. On cessation of the stimulus however there is a return to the old position, and therefore the impulses sent to the brain are those which correspond to a sensation of an opposite character, thus causing a negative after image. Contrast is explained by supposing that anabolism in one area is accompanied by a stimulus to catabolism in the same area, but the effect is not sharply limited but tends to spread for a short distance over surrounding areas, and thus causes a change in their equilibrium point which is of an opposite nature to that of the stimulus which originates them. Thus blue light falling on a part of the retina causes anabolism in that area, which is followed by an increased tendency to catabolism. This process affects the surrounding area, producing the same change and therefore the same sensation as would a yellow image. Adaptation is explained as the taking up of a new equilibrium point, for one or all of the three substances.

(3) Colour blindness is explained as follows:—Total colour blindness by the presence of the black-white substances only. Red-green blindness by the deficiency of this substance, and yellow-blue blindness in a similar way. But we find by experiment that there are two classes of red-green blindness, namely those which are red deficient, and those which are green. The Hering hypothesis is incapable of explaining their causation in its present form.

EDRIDGE GREEN'S HYPOTHESIS states that the function of the rods is to secrete visual purple. This pigment under the action of light stimulates the ends of the cones and causes them to send impulses to the brain which vary according to the wavelength of the light and its intensity. The rods are on this view merely secretory organs, and take no other part in vision. The impulses having reached the brain go first to a light perceiving centre, and then to another especially developed for the appreciation of colour. In this colour centre there are three separate mechanisms, which correspond roughly with the red, green and blue fundamental colours, but which may respond to other frequencies than those to which they approximately correspond. Suppose, for example, that a monochromatic yellow light is falling on the retina, then it is absorbed by the visual purple, and thus stimulates the ends of the cones. These then send up the optic nerve impulses which have a mean frequency corresponding to yellow light, but at the same time contains impulses of other frequencies on either side, to a degree which depends on their closeness with the mean. For example in the above case, beside impulses of frequency of yellow light there are also some which correspond to green and red. These impulses having reached the colour centre stimulate the red and green mechanisms respectively, while those corresponding to the yellow also stimulate these same mechanisms, but in proportion to the energy which each receives. This view may now be examined in the light of experiment.

(1) The results of colour mixture would appear to be explained by it with the exception that the mechanisms in the colour centre must have very definite mean frequencies, for otherwise mixed colours will not be able to match the whole of the spectral range.

(2) Simultaneous contrast and after images are explained by Edridge Green in a way which I find difficult to understand; it would therefore be best not to attempt to discuss it.

(3) Colour blindness was initially explained as being due to defective appreciation in the colour perceiving centre. The shortening of the red end of the spectrum would be due not to the inability of the retina to react to the stimulus, but to fault on the part of the colour centre when receiving the nerve impulses. A different explanation has been offered by Houston, who has recently elaborated the hypothesis. He states that colour blindness is due to the excessive reaction on the part of the retinal apparatus, which causes the energy of the stimulus to be spread over too wide a range of frequencies. If such were the case one would expect a low appreciation of colour, as is found in a number of examples of colour blindness, but there would be difficulty

in finding an explanation of these cases which show an inability to respond to a part of the spectrum. Although there does not seem to be any special difficulty in so modifying this hypothesis that it fits in with all the varieties of colour blindness, yet it would seem that this would cause it only to be more and more like the theory of Young, with this important difference, that according to Young's theory the three substances by which light is selectively absorbed, according as its wavelength corresponds to the red, green or blue part of the spectrum, is in the retina, whereas the three mechanisms required by Edridge Green are in the brain. Changing their situation would not appear to have added to our knowledge of them, but would on the other hand appear to add greatly to our difficulties, for it is impossible to understand how impulses of the enormous frequency of light could be transmitted intact up the optic nerves, as Edridge Green requires.

McDOUGALL'S HYPOTHESIS is not antagonistic to Young's theory, as the two previous views have been, but adds valuable suggestions as to the causation of contrast and after image phenomena, points to which the original theory gave little or no attention. McDougall also accepts the duplicity theory. He commences by stating that there are four centres for the two eyes, namely red, green, blue and white (the mechanism of which is the rods), and that these centres are distinct and have no anatomical identity. Between these centres there is antagonism, the red centre of one eye against the green and blue centres of the other and also to a less extent against those of itself. In this way one can explain not only binocular, but also monocular rivalry. Contrast is explained in a somewhat similar manner; thus if the object looked at consists of a red area on a grey field, the red stimulus inhibits the appreciation of red in the surrounding field, and therefore causes it to have a blue-green colour, a deduction which is confirmed by experiment. After images are dealt with in a somewhat similar manner.

With the evidence that has accumulated up to the present before us, there appears to be more in favour of Young's hypothesis than is to be found for its rivals. Further than that, it is not at present advisable to go.

SECTION XII

BINOCULAR VISION

BINOCULAR vision may be defined as the co-ordinated employment of two separate visual organs in order to produce a single mental impression. The advantages of binocular as opposed to monocular vision are :—

1. Optical defects of one eye are less important, since they are masked by the well-defined images of the other eye.

2. Defective vision in parts of the visual fields of both eyes is hidden so long as the defects do not affect the same parts of both fields. Thus the blind spots do not obtrude themselves under ordinary circumstances, because the corresponding field of the other eye contains normal retina.

3. The combined fields of the two eyes are larger than either alone because, while the features restrict the nasal halves of the fields of both eyes, the combined field contains the unrestricted temporal areas of both retinæ.

4. Binocular vision under certain circumstances provides a very accurate perception of depth, size and distance, which is called stereoscopic vision.

In order that there should be binocular vision the following conditions should be complied with :—

1. The fields of the two eyes must overlap. Animals in which the eye axes are parallel have the greatest overlap, and therefore possess the completest binocular vision.

2. Approximately similar images must be formed on the retinæ, because if this condition is not satisfied, antagonism between the images will occur, as described above, and first one image and then the other will be presented to consciousness.

3. The retinæ must possess physiologically corresponding points in order that similar images formed on them may produce one conscious impression.

4. The external eye muscles must so adjust the visual axes that the centres of the fields of the two eyes coincide with the images of one and the same object. This adjustment is called fixation. It is sometimes described as the intersection of the visual axes at the point fixated.

5. The oblique muscles must rotate the eyes about their axes until corresponding retinal points occupy corresponding meridians.

The rotation adjustment is necessary because otherwise identical points of the retinæ might not correspond, even when the centres did, so that one image would appear tilted at an angle with the other. Fixation is partly a voluntary act and partly a reflex process. The former is shown by the fact that the eyes may be directed towards an imaginary object a short

distance from the face, so that the eye axes are strongly converging and the accommodation correctly adjusted to the same plane. The presence of a reflex phase is well shown by the fact that no effort of the will is required to sustain fixation on an object in which we are interested, and also by those cases in which when once an object has been fixated, there is found to be considerable mental difficulty in turning the gaze elsewhere. Rotation fixation on the other hand appears to be entirely reflex. In order that fixation should be obtained when the gaze is directed in different directions, it is necessary that there should be close association between the corresponding muscles of the two eyes. This is at all events assisted by the anatomical arrangement of the 3rd, 4th and 6th cranial nerve nuclei which has been described previously (see page 496).

Not only are the corresponding nuclei on the two sides connected by transverse fibres so that *e.g.* either the superior recti or the inferior recti move together, but the external rectus nucleus of one side is joined to the internal rectus nucleus of the other by the dorsal longitudinal bundle, so that the eyes deviate together to right and left. Similar connections are to be found between the nuclei of the superior and inferior obliques. The relations of these nuclei to the cerebral cortex have been ascertained by electrical stimulation. It has been found that stimulation of the median third of the limb of the angular gyrus on either side causes both eyes to be turned to the opposite side. The right gyrus therefore connects with the nuclei of the right internal rectus (3rd) and the left external rectus (6th). Since both these nuclei are on the left, the fibres from the gyri must cross in order to reach their corresponding nuclei: this they do at the level of the anterior corpora quadragemina. The angular gyri are connected to both the frontal and occipital parts of the cortex, so that voluntary movements of the eyes, and also movements under the action of light, can be carried out. Experimental stimulation of the semicircular canals is found to cause conjugate deviations of the eyes. But stimulation of the canals is effected naturally by a rotation of the head, as will be described later. The conjugate deviation of the eyes would appear to be initiated in order that the gaze might remain stationary on external objects in spite of the head movements.

The way in which involuntary fixation is brought about may be described as follows:—when an image falls on the periphery of the retina an impulse reaches the oculo-motor nuclei in the manner described above. Thus, suppose the image to come from the right, it will fall initially on the left halves of both retinæ, and impulses will therefore travel to the left occipital cortex. From here they will pass to the left angular gyrus, causing impulses to travel to the left internal and the right external recti. Both eyes are therefore directed to the right, the movement being such as to bring the image on the fovea. But as the fovea is approached, the impression sent to consciousness becomes increasingly distinct, owing to the higher acuity of the fovea. If the fovea is passed the image begins to become indistinct again, and therefore the movement of the eyes is checked as soon as the image

has reached the fovea. In this way fixation is effected. If the acuity of the fovea is reduced by disease or by working in a bad light, the definition of the image does not sharply improve as the fovea is reached, and therefore the movement of the eyes is not checked until the image has reached the periphery again. But here the degradation of the image calls for the reverse process, which again causes the image to pass over the fovea. Repeated oscillations of the eyes therefore occur, which are called *nystagmus*. The condition is met with in the day blind, since cone vision is defective, in persons whose visual acuity has been lowered by working in a dull light, *e.g.* miners, and in cases of poisoning by tobacco and alcohol.

THE HOROPTER. Theory shows that, even when fixation is properly effected so that corresponding retinal points occupy the same meridians, images formed on the retinæ do not necessarily fall on corresponding points. For this to be the case, it is necessary also that the objects from which those images are formed should occupy certain definite positions in relationship with one another. For example, if an object 10 feet from the eye is fixated, the images of other objects on either side will fall only on corresponding points if these lie on a circle of 5 feet radius, the centre of which lies between the observer and the object fixated. For calculation shows that only then are the images formed on the two retinæ the same distance from the centre. The form of the curve which is called the horopter is found to change with the different directions of the gaze. When the gaze is directed to a point on the floor it is stated that the horopter almost corresponds with the plane of the floor.

MONOCULAR DEPTH PERCEPTION. The perception of depth with the single eye is found to depend on a number of different factors which as a rule operate together :—

1. The apparent size of objects, the dimensions of which are known. Thus the size of a man being approximately known, his distance away is known from the size of the image which is formed on the retina. The further away he is the smaller his image will appear.

2. The colour of an object being known, the effect of distance in modifying that colour is used in depth perception. Thus trees which, when near, look yellow-green, when seen at a distance through an intervening layer of haze appear blue-green or even blue. This fact is made use of by artists for expressing distance.

3. The partial obstruction of a distant plane by objects nearer to the observer.

4. The shadows which one plane casts upon another.

5. The intensity of the light which is reflected by the object frequently varies with its shape and position. For example, the shape of a solid sphere can be accurately inferred from the distribution of intensity over its face.

6. By perspective, which may be defined as the geometrical arrangement of lines in the image formed on the retina. Thus the lines of a tennis court seen diagonally from one side are all found to converge to one or other of two points on the horizon.

7. By the intersection of objects with the horizontal plane. Thus the positions of trees in a field may be inferred with some accuracy, if the positions of the roots of the trees in relationship with the boundaries of the field be observed.

8. By parallax, that is the rate of movement of objects in relationship with one another. Thus if a middle plane be looked at, it will be noticed that objects in a plane behind appear to move in the same direction as the observer, while those in a plane in front appear to move the opposite way. Even when we are standing still, we are all the time making involuntary movements which cause the development of parallax. This process is probably one of the most important in producing the monocular effect of depth.

9. By the effort of accommodation required to sharply focus an object. In man the accommodation is found by experiment to give little or no perception of depth, possibly because the function is involuntary. It is thought that in birds, in which the ciliary muscles are striated and are under voluntary control, the accommodation may give valuable information of distance.

All the above factors operate together to produce an appreciation of distance which as a result of experience reaches a very high order, and with the exception of the last two, are used by the artist to produce the effect of solidity and realness. Any good picture shows us that the result can be very convincing.

STEREOSCOPIC VISION is the binocular perception of depth. It consists of all the factors which operate in the case of each eye separately, and in addition uses :—

1. The convergence of the eye axes which is necessary in order to cause images of near objects to form on the fovea simultaneously.

2. The dissimilarity between the images which are formed on the two retinæ

That convergence has very little effect on the perception of distance can be proved by placing weak prisms, either base in or base out, in front of the eyes and in this way changing the convergence of the eye axes without changing any other condition. It is found that the apparent positions of objects are unaffected.

That there is dissimilarity between the images formed on the retina can be easily proved by experiment. Thus if the gaze be directed towards a distant point, and the finger be held a short distance from the nose, the finger appears to be to the right of the distant point with the right eye and to the left with the left. If two photographs be taken of the same scene, but with the camera, for the second photograph, three inches to one side of its position for the first, it is found that, when the two negatives are placed so that objects on the horizon correspond, there is a lateral difference of position in the case of all other objects situated nearer to the camera. Measurement shows that the nearer the object the greater the difference in position. Since this is the case it is clear that only images in one plane can be formed on corresponding retinal points; images in all other planes must fall points

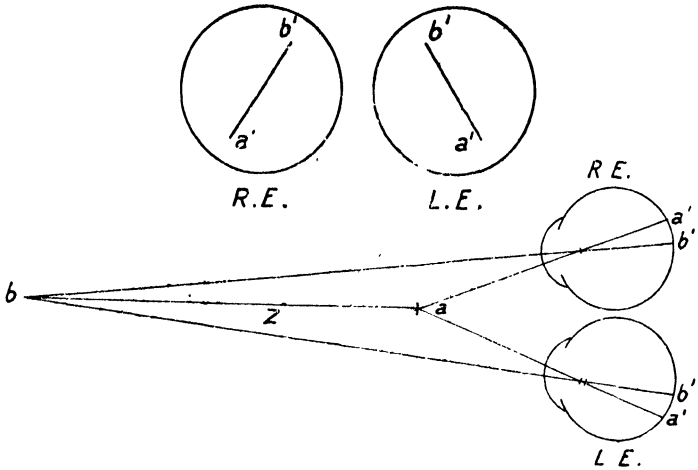


FIG. 300. The eyes are directed to the point *b* A thread hung obliquely at *a* under these circumstances gives rise to the images shown in the upper figures —*i.e.* two images which do not lie on corresponding points Nevertheless the thread is seen as single.

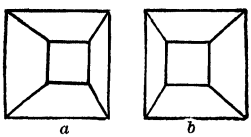


FIG 301. To show the difference in the images of a truncated pyramid as given by the right and left eyes.

which are discrepant. Two questions therefore arise: (1) do we see such objects doubled? (2) if we see a single image only, is it because one of the images is displaced from consciousness by the antagonism of the other? An answer is given by the following experiment:—a Brewster's stereoscope is taken, the optical arrangement for which is shown in Fig. 302. At B and B′ two similar lantern slides are placed which show a view of any distant objects. On looking through the instrument at the point S the directions of the rays are changed so that the images of the slides are seen to overlap one another. By shifting one of the slides the images may be made to fall on corresponding points of the retinæ, and they then form a single combined picture. In front of these slides are now placed another pair of slides which show the photograph of an index mark. If the indices are adjusted so that they occupy corresponding positions in relationship with the objects on the slides below them, on looking into the instrument it will be seen that these marks appear to lie in the same plane as the distant objects placed on the slides below them. If one of the index marks be moved towards the axis of the instrument, it will be seen on looking into the eyepieces, that the indices now appear to lie in a plane considerably in

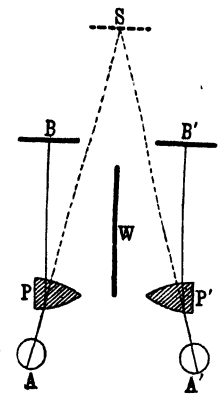


FIG. 302. Brewster's stereoscope.

front of their previous position, in fact that the closer they are placed together, the nearer do they appear to the observer. But the indices do not show double images, unless they are moved a considerable distance together, and then the effect of distance ceases. If one of the index slides be removed and the other be moved towards and away from the axis of the instrument, the index is not found to shift its plane towards or away from the instrument. This shows that for position to be appreciated both images must be presented to consciousness simultaneously without appearing double.

THE ACUITY OF STEREOSCOPIC VISION has been investigated in such a way that other factors which normally assist distance perception were excluded. Two methods have been used: (1) to adjust the position of a thread which lies between and parallel with two other threads until they all appear at the same distance from the observer; (2) to observe the fall of small coloured bodies of unknown size, and then to state the position of the line of fall in relationship with a fixation mark. The former method at 2 metres distance shows an average error of 1·5 mm., the latter method at the same distance an error of 40 mm. The difference between the results of the two methods is considerable; but it should be noted that in the fall method the object is seen only for ·02 sec. If in the thread method the threads be placed horizontal it is found that the appreciation of distance is greatly impaired. The greatest acuity is found when the threads are vertical. If however the head is turned so that the line joining the two eyes is vertical, the greatest acuity is found when the threads are horizontal. This would be expected if the appreciation of distance is greatest when the parallax of the objects at the two eyes is greatest. Experiment shows that the recognition of position in relationship with a definite fixation mark is much more accurate than recognition of absolute distance in which there is no point of reference. Thus it is well known how inaccurate the estimation of the distance of a single source of light at night may be.

HYPOTHESES OF DEPTH PERCEPTION. Javal's view was that the movements of the eye muscles, which are necessary in order to direct the gaze from objects in one plane to those in the next, caused impulses to travel to the brain which are interpreted in terms of distance. This view was ruled out by the fact that images which are formed on the retina for a short length of time only (·02 sec.), are able to be perceived in relief.

HERING'S HYPOTHESIS was that it is the formation of similar images on points of the retinæ that do not correspond which causes distance perception. If the disparation is crossed the object appears nearer than the fixation mark by an amount which depends on the amount of the disparation. If on the other hand the disparation is uncrossed the object is recognised as being further away. Hering supposed further that crossed disparation acts as a stimulus to convergence and accommodation, while uncrossed produces the reverse effect. We may now inquire how this hypothesis fits in with the facts. To commence with, if depth depends on disparation it is clear that, when we perceive objects lying in different planes, we must subconsciously group them according as they fall on corresponding retinal points, or on points which are discrepant by one, two, three or more cone widths, and whether the discrepancy is crossed or uncrossed. The amount of the discrepancy must be some whole number of cone widths, because it is clearly impossible to stimulate half a cone with one impression and the other half of the same cone with a different one and obtain two distinct sensations. It is clear that space must be divided so far as stereoscopic vision is concerned into a number of concentric shells, the centres of which correspond with the position of the observer. Now the thickness of these shells can be readily calculated: at 1 metre they are found to be 2 mm. thick, at 10 metres 200 mm. thick, and at 100 metres 17 metres thick. If we are looking at a fixation mark 10 metres away, objects

100 mm. nearer to and 100 mm. further from the observer will lie in the thickness of one and the same shell, and will therefore appear the same distance from the observer. Objects between 100 and 300 mm. nearer to the observer will lie in the shell corresponding to one cone discrepancy, and will therefore be appreciated as being at a different distance from the observer, appearing nearer if crossed, and further if uncrossed. The same reasoning applies to objects at other distances. If this calculation is correct it should be necessary to place objects more than 100 mm. from a fixation mark, which is itself placed at 10 metres, in order that a difference in the distance from the observer should be appreciated. Greeff found by experiment that $\frac{1}{30}$th the distance of the fixation mark was necessary (*i.e.* 200 mm.), the observations being instantaneous ones. If time be allowed for prolonged observation, greater accuracy in the appreciation of distance is obtainable, because different points of fixation can be used. Suppose, for example, that two objects 20 mm. apart be examined at a distance of 10 metres, under instantaneous observation they will appear identical as described above; but if the examination be made more carefully, it will be found that, on fixating a point a mean distance of 100 mm. away from the objects, the distance between the two is suddenly appreciated because the demarcation between two shells now falls between them. It is in this way that the accuracy of extended observation becomes greater than that obtainable with instantaneous. The limit reached by experiment is stated to correspond to a displacement at the retina corresponding to the $\frac{1}{10}$th diameter of a cone. The corresponding values for the acuity of stereoscopic vision would be $\frac{1}{10}$th those given above, namely ·2 mm. at 1 metre, ·20 mm. at 10 metres, and 1·7 mm. at 100 metres. Hering's view would therefore appear to agree well with the results of experiment. It remains to consider the type of cortical mechanism that would be necessary for the estimation of the discrepancy between the images. One type may be briefly described as follows:—To a number of parallel planes in the left side of the cortex are connected the terminal ends of the nerve fibres from the left halves of the two retinæ. At the middle plane fibres from exactly corresponding retinal points are connected together. At planes which lie superficially to the middle plane are connected other terminations from the same fibres but with a crossed lateral discrepancy of one cone in the 1st plane, two cones in the 2nd plane, three cones in the 3rd plane, etc. At planes which lie deep to the middle one, other terminations from the same fibres are connected but with an uncrossed lateral discrepancy of one, two, three, etc., cones as the case may be. On looking at a fixation mark on a uniform background therefore, a series of impressions of the mark will be formed on all these planes, but in the central one only will they exactly agree, for in all the others the lateral discrepancy will cause the impressions to be duplicated. In all these other planes there will thus be antagonism, first one image and then the other predominating. When these images are combined in consciousness, the stable image from the central plane will suppress the unstable ones from all the other planes, the result being a single picture of the fixation mark. If there are in front of the fixation mark other objects lying in planes at different distances from the observer, the impulses sent up by the cones to the cortical plan will not correspond at the central plane, because their images no longer fall on corresponding points, but they will correspond in the superficial planes where the discrepancy of their images agrees with the discrepancy of the nerve connections. These other planes will therefore predominate according as each contains the identical images, and when they are combined in consciousness these planes will suppress all the others. Since each cortical plane represents a certain lateral discrepancy, it must also represent a certain distance from the fixation mark. If consciousness recognises the plane in which stable image is formed, it also must appreciate the distance of the object lying in that plane from the fixation mark. This would not seem any more difficult than the localisation of a touch on the skin. So far as we are able to judge there is nothing inherently impossible in the arrangement of the hypothetical cortical mechanism which has been outlined above, and therefore Hering's theory would appear to be very plausible.

PART III

HEARING

	PAGES
SECTION 1.—Properties of sound	595
,, 2.—Structure of Auditory Apparatus	600
,, 3.—Auditory Sensations	611

SECTION I

PROPERTIES OF SOUND

SOUND is propagated by waves consisting of alternate compressions and rarefactions which travel through the medium. Any medium which has the properties of elasticity and mass can conduct sound; thus solids, liquids and gases are all efficient conductors. Since sound is a form of wave motion it exhibits many of the properties which are found in the case of light, namely Reflection, Refraction, Diffraction, etc. But owing to the long wavelengths of sound waves compared with those of light, the effects of diffraction are relatively of greater importance. Therefore sound does not form sharp shadows, such as light does, and is found to bend round obstacles and to be conducted down speaking tubes, etc., in a way that would be impossible if sound were of shorter wavelength.

SOURCES OF SOUND are so well known to us that the fundamental property of a source of sound tends to be forgotten, namely that, to produce sound, motion has to be initiated in a sound conductor which has a velocity the same or greater than that of the transmission of sound. Thus when a book is closed with a snap, the book becomes a source of sound when the velocity at which the air is squeezed from between its pages is equal to the velocity of sound in air. A stick stirred in water becomes a source when the ripples (eddies) it produces have the necessary velocity to cause a wave motion. Sounds have been divided arbitrarily into two classes, namely tones and noises; the former produce pleasant and the latter unpleasant (harsh, grating, screeching, etc.) sensations. Between the two extremes fall the sounds of everyday life. Thus music as a rule consists of tones, but may be found to consist of chords which examined singly could be grouped as noises. And so at the other end of the scale, when we strike a single stick with a hammer the effect is that of a noise. If however we take a series of sticks of different lengths and strike them in succession, it will be noticed that the sound produced by

each stick corresponds to a distinct note, and tunes may be played on such a collection of sticks.

SOUND ANALYSIS can be performed in a number of ways; possibly the simplest method is to record the excursions of a flexible diaphragm on a rotating wax cylinder, as in the phonograph. When thus recorded, sound waves are found to have a regular sequence when they consist of tones and an irregular sequence when they are noises. Sources of sound which produce the former therefore vibrate in a regular manner (for example the limbs of a tuning-fork, or the air in an organ pipe), while those which produce the latter vibrate irregularly (*e.g.* a cart over cobbles).

INTENSITY AND PITCH. In a similar manner loudness or intensity is found to depend on amplitude (as in the case of light), while pitch depends on the wavelength, short waves having a high, long waves a low pitch. This can be proved in other ways: thus, if a violin string be bowed forcibly the excursion of its string at each vibration is greater than when it is bowed gently, and the amplitude of the corresponding alternating waves of sound varies in proportion to that of the vibrating body by which they are started. By attaching a pointed slip of paper to the end of a tuning-fork and so recording its vibrations on a blackened surface, it is easy to see the connection which exists between the amplitude of vibrations and the loudness of the sound produced by the vibrating fork.

That the pitch of a tone depends on the frequency of the vibrations, is shown by means of the syren and the klaxon. As the speed of rotation increases, and therefore also the number of impulses imparted to the air per second, so the note appears to us to be rising. Since sounds of high and low pitch travel with the same speed, the distance between the waves decrease as the number of impulses per second increases.

LIMITS OF PITCH. The ear is unable to perceive tones the pitch of which falls above or below certain fairly well-defined limits. If the number of vibrations is less than about thirty per second no musical tone is produced, the individual vibrations being perceived as a series of pulses in the surrounding air, and it is only when we increase the number to about forty per second that we are able to appreciate the pitch of the note produced. As the number of vibrations per second is increased the note rises steadily without break till we arrive at 40,000 to 50,000 vibrations per second. Above this number of vibrations the human ear is incapable of perceiving any note at all, though it is probable that small animals can perceive notes still higher in the scale. In music neither the lowest nor the highest tones are used. The lowest tone of large organs, that of the sixty-four foot pipe, is 16 vibrations per second, and one can hardly speak of its effect as that of a musical tone. The highest notes employed in music are *a*4 and *c*5 with 3520 and 4224 vibrations per second on the piano, and *d*5 with 4752 vibrations on the piccolo flute. In music therefore we only employ between 40 and 4700 vibrations per second, *i.e.* about seven octaves.

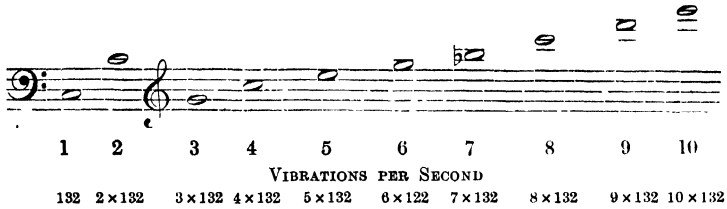
SOUND AUGMENTORS. Experiment shows that the intensity of the

tone produced by a sound source can be considerably increased by the use of sound augmentors. These are called resonators, sounding boards or trumpets according to the form they take or the sound source (musical instrument) to which they are applied. If from any string instrument (*e.g.* violin) the box be removed, the tones generated are found to be greatly reduced in intensity. The function of these sound amplifiers appears to be to transmit the vibrations of the source (*e.g.* the stretched wire) to the greatest possible volume of air, *i.e.* to turn into sound as much of the kinetic energy of the vibrating wire as possible. In the case of the trumpet or horn, there is in addition the effect of increasing the volume of sound in some chosen direction at the expense of that in others. This effect is well illustrated in the gramophone. In most musical instruments the amplifier must be capable of responding to a large range of tones indifferently, and the more perfectly it can do this the better is the instrument. Such perfection is difficult to obtain, and more usually it is found that in spite of all care one note is accentuated more than others, *e.g.* 'the wolf note' of the violin. Sound amplifiers for the reed stops of the organ are on the contrary made as sharply selective as possible, in order that of the many tones emitted by the vibrating reed, the chosen one shall alone be augmented. This form of amplifier is called a resonator, although the term is strictly speaking applicable to other classes of sound amplifier, *e.g.* the sounding board. This power of augmenting one chosen tone has great value, because in a musical chord it is possible at once to detect the presence of any particular tone, by ascertaining whether its resonator responds when the chord is sounded. For such analysis the resonators of Helmholtz are generally employed. These are hollow vessels open at one end and having a tube at the other to which the ear may be applied. A series of graduated sizes are used, each of which has a definite period of vibration (pitch).

TIMBRE OR QUALITY. When the same note is sounded on different instruments, *i.e.* tuning-fork, violin, piano, trumpet, human voice, every person, whether he has an educated musical ear or not, can say at once what kind of instrument is being used. This fact shows that the sound wave produced by these instruments must differ, altogether apart from any differences in amplitude or in number of vibrations per second, and if the sound waves produced by these instruments be recorded an actual difference is found in the shape of the curve.

If a stretched wire be plucked so as to set it into transverse vibrations it will give out a certain note, dependent on its length, its thickness, and the tension to which it is subjected. If its length be halved it will give out a note which is of double the number of vibrations per second. If only one-third of the wire be set into vibrations the sound wave produced will have three times the number of vibrations of that of the whole string. When the string is free to vibrate as a whole the segments of it tend to vibrate even while the whole string is vibrating. If therefore we take the note given out by the whole string, the 'fundamental tone,' as corresponding to 132 vibrations per second, there will also be a series of notes superadded to the funda-

mental tone with vibrations per second in the ratio of 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6, etc. Thus if the fundamental tone be *c*, the overtones, or harmonics, will be produced as is shown below:



Nearly all musical instruments, as well as the apparatus for producing the human voice, resemble a stretched wire in giving out overtones in addition to the fundamental tones, and the difference in the quality of various instruments is chiefly determined by the varying predominance of the different overtones. In some the higher overtones may be most marked, in others only the lower overtones. The tuning-fork is practically the only instrument the note of which is pure, *i.e.* free from harmonics or overtones. It must be remembered that these different tones arrive at the external ear simultaneously. We do not have some particles of air vibrating at one rate and other particles at another rate, but all the simple vibrations of which each component tone is composed are combined together to form a compound wave, the shape of which differs according to the constituent vibrations of which it is made up, and to the time relationship (phase) between them.

Thus in the diagram (Fig. 303) the wave shown by the continuous line

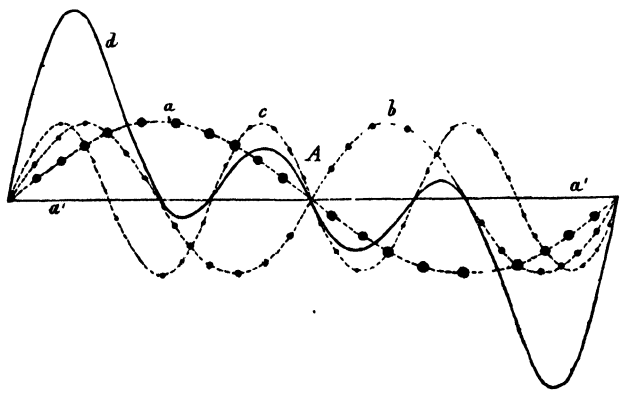


Fig. 303. *d*, a compound sound wave, which may be analysed into *a*, the fundamental tone, and *b* and *c*, the first and second overtones. (Hensen.)

is compounded of the series of simple vibrations represented by the different dotted lines. The component fundamental overtones and harmonics can be readily identified in a tone experimentally by employing the series of resonators described above. By practice it is possible to train the ear to recognise strong overtones without the use of resonators.

THE ORGAN OF HEARING

From a knowledge of the fundamental properties of sound it is possible to infer the probable features of the organ of hearing. In its simplest variety the organ would take the form of a sounding board or diaphragm which would be set into vibration by the incident sound waves. The vibrations of this plate would be identified by touch cells similar to those found in he skin, which would be so placed that the diaphragm during its motion should come into contact with them. Such an apparatus would respond to and estimate the total intensity of sound. To identify the pitch a series of resonators would be required, each of which would be sharply tuned to one of a series of tones. Of the many types of resonator that could be employed a series of stretched wires would appear to be the simplest and most compact. The receiving apparatus would therefore take the form of a harp with a touch cell and its respective nerve attached in close approximation to every chord.

In order that such a mechanism may be formed of organic material and be kept nourished during life, it is necessary that it be immersed in a liquid similar to that which bathes the eye media. The sound waves must therefore be transmitted from the air to this fluid. In order that this may occur it is necessary that the sound waves reach the apparatus either (1) through the walls of the chamber containing the apparatus, *i.e.* bone conduction, or (2) through a membrane separating the liquid from the air, or (3) by means of suitable levers which would impart to the liquid the vibration of an external diaphragm. The advantage of the latter method would be that the intensity of sound reaching the apparatus could be considerably increased. This desirable result could be still further achieved by concentrating the sound waves on to the diaphragm by means of a trumpet and by causing the trumpet to be adjustable in different directions. The position of the source of sound could then be ascertained.

Such an organ of hearing would therefore consist of three different parts: (1) the horn or trumpet with its adjusting muscles, called the external ear; (2) the diaphragm and levers for receiving the sound vibrations and for transmitting them to the internal mechanism, called the middle ear; and (3) the internal mechanism consisting of the resonators with their respective touch cells and nerves called the internal ear.

SECTION II

STRUCTURE OF AUDITORY APPARATUS

EXTERNAL EAR

The external ear consists of two parts: (1) that external to the skull called the pinna and (2) that internal, called the meatus. *The pinna in animals* is a horn-shaped structure which is provided with two sets of muscles. The immediate response to a slight sound is a pricking of the ears by means of the intrinsic muscles, and the directing of the orifices towards the source of sound, through the action of the extrinsic muscles. The functions of the pinna are firstly to ascertain approximately the direction of the source of sound, and secondly to concentrate the sound waves into the meatus. It may also be said to have a third function, namely to protect the internal structures; the stiff hairs with which it is provided must prevent to a considerable extent the entrance of foreign bodies

In man the pinna is undergoing retrogression; not only has it lost its trumpet shape but also it has become almost entirely immobilised from disuse. It is improbable therefore in man that pinna has any power of accentuating sound waves; this is borne out by experiments in which the undulations are filled with wax, and by cases in which the pinna has been cut off.

The form of the pinna in man may have a slight influence in the judgment of the direction from which sounds proceed. It has been noticed that a compound tone changes slightly in quality as its position in relation to the ear is altered. This is partly due to the fact that the auricle may reflect a fundamental tone more strongly than the partial or the converse. According to Rayleigh this difference in quality is determined chiefly by the fact that diffraction of the sound waves occurs as they pass round the head to the ear remote from the source of the sound, so that the partial tones reach the two ears in different degrees of intensity and determine a difference in quality of the sound as heard by the two ears.

: **THE EXTERNAL AUDITORY MEATUS** in man is about one inch long and directed forwards, inwards, and slightly upwards. Its general function, other than as a mere conductor of the sound waves, is to protect the delicate vibrating *membrana tympani* which closes its inner end. This it does partly because of its narrow tubular shape and partly owing to its considerable curvature. Opening on the skin of the meatus are special sebaceous glands which secrete a yellow wax (*cerumen*) with bitter taste and peculiar odour. The wax not only protects the cuticle of the ear and the membrana tympani from drying but, together with the hairs at the orifice of the meatus, serves to repel insects and prevent their entering. By the length of the meatus moreover the drum is protected from draughts and its temperature is maintained constant.

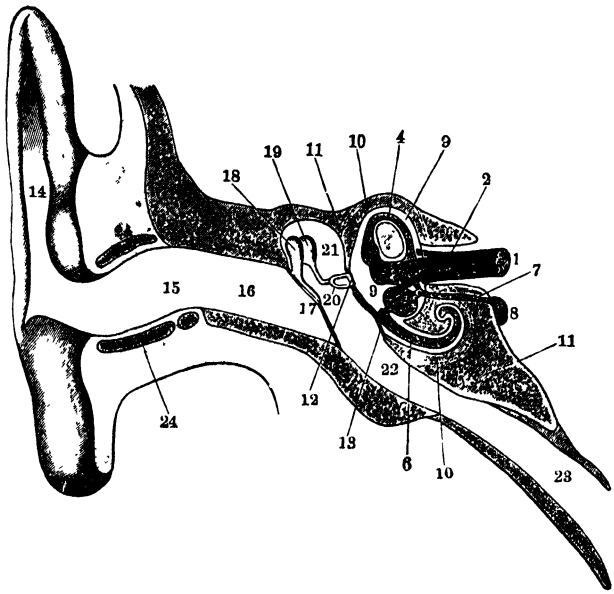


FIG. 304. Diagrammatic view of auditory organ. (After SCHAFER.)

1, auditory nerve; 2, internal auditory meatus; 3, utricle; 5, saccule; 6, canalis media of cochlea; 9, vestibule containing perilymph; 12, stapes; 13, fenestra rotunda; 19, incus; 18, malleus; 17, membrana tympani; 16, external auditory meatus; 14, pinna of external ear; 23, Eustachian tube.

In animals the junction between the pinna and meatus is so fashioned that the orifice can be restricted by means of a constrictor muscle. This permits the intensity of sound reaching the internal mechanism of the ear to be controlled as light by the iris in the case of the eye.

THE MIDDLE EAR

This consists of a cavity hollowed out of the temporal bone, which communicates externally with the meatus, internally by two windows, one circular and the other oval, with the series of chambers forming the internal ear, below by means of a long duct called the Eustachian canal with the throat. At the junction with the meatus is a special bony ring to which is attached a thin diaphragm, the membrana tympani (or drum), which completely closes the orifice.

THE MEMBRANA TYMPANI. The sound waves which pass down the external meatus impinge on the drum of the ear and set this into vibration. The vibrations are thence transmitted by a chain of three small bones, the auditory ossicles, across the cavity of the tympanum to the fluid which bathes the terminations of the auditory nerve in the internal ear. Since the drum of the ear has to pick up and transmit vibrations of every frequency, and to reproduce accurately in its movement the finest variations of pressure in the course of the wave, it is

essential that it should be devoid of any periodicity, *i.e.* a tendency to vibrate at a certain frequency. If such periodicity were present the ear would pick out and magnify, to the exclusion of the other overtones, some particular overtone present in the compound tones reaching the ear. The perfect aperiodicity of the tympanic membrane is secured by its structure and attachments. The membrane is composed of a thin layer of fibrous tissue covered externally with skin and internally by the mucous membrane of the tympanum. To its inner surface along its whole length is attached the handle of the malleus, the first of the auditory ossicles. This attachment of an elastic membrane to a mass of bone would itself tend to damp any vibrations of the membrane. By the attachment of the tendon of the tensor tympani muscle to the inner surface of the handle of the malleus, the middle of the membrane is drawn inwards, so that it forms a cone whose walls are convex outwardly. The membrane is built up of circular and radial fibres, the circular being best marked towards the periphery. By the dragging inwards of its central part it follows that the tension of its constituent fibres varies from point to point so that each bit of the membrane has a different periodicity, and the membrane as a whole be aperiodic.

By exposing the tympanum from above it is possible with a microscope to observe the actual movements of the handle of the malleus when sound waves fall on the tympanic membrane. The maximum movements at the apex of the cone may be taken as about ·04 mm., but sounds are easily audible which would produce movements of the tympanic membrane quite imperceptible under this method of examination.

THE OSSICLES. Stretching across the tympanum, from the membrana tympani to the outer wall of the internal ear, is a chain of ossicles, which are named respectively the malleus, the incus, and the stapes. These ossicles are articulated together, so that a movement inwards of the malleus causes a movement inwards of the base of the stapes. The *malleus*, or hammer bone, consists of a thickened head, from which two processes run, viz. the *manubrium*, which is attached to the tympanic membrane, and the *processus gracilis*, by which it is anchored to the walls of the tympanic cavity. By means of three ligaments it is so fixed that it is capable of rotating only around a horizontal axis, which passes through the anterior ligament, the head of the malleus, the body of the incus, and the short process of the incus When the manubrium is pushed inwards, the part of the malleus above this axis must move outwards. The *incus*, sometimes known as the anvil bone, is articulated with both the stapes and the malleus, and a ligament passes from its short process to the posterior wall of the tympanic cavity. The posterior surface of the rounded head of the malleus fits into the saddle-shaped cavity on the anterior surface of the incus, while the tip of the long process of the incus is articulated with the stapes. Movement inwards or outwards of the head of the malleus causes rotation of the incus round an axis which passes from the tip of the short process through its body. Thus when the handle of the malleus moves inwards the greater part of the body of the incus and of the head of the malleus moves outwards together, while the

long process of the incus moves inwards. The *stapes*, or stirrup bone, is fixed in the fenestra ovalis of the internal ear, in the inner surface of the tympanum,

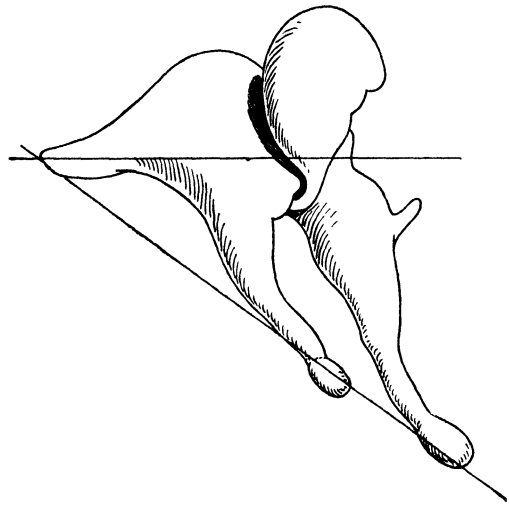


FIG. 305. To show the relations of the malleus and incus to one another. The shaded area between the two bones shows the articular surfaces which connect them. The overlapping of the two bones at the lower part of these surfaces is well shown. It is this arrangement which causes motion to be conveyed from one to the other.

by the annular ligament. It is placed almost at right angles to the long process of the incus, and therefore is pressed into the foramen ovale when this process moves inwards.

THE MUSCLES found in the tympanum are the tensor tympani, which is attached to the handle of the malleus, and the stapedius attached to the base of the stapes. The tensor is innervated by a motor branch of the 5th cranial nerve, and when it is stimulated it draws the handle of the malleus inwards and so increases the tension of the tympanic membrane. At the same time the plunger of the stapes is displaced into the oval window, thus putting compression on the contents of the internal ear. The contraction of the tensor has been supposed to have a protective function and has been compared to the sphincter pupillæ (Helmholtz). Others hold that it modifies the response to low and medium tones, but even here there is a divergence of opinion, because while some hold (I think correctly) that the tensor by its contraction decreases the natural period of the drum and thus enables it to respond to rapid changes of phase and high tones, others have held the opposite view. Observation shows that contraction occurs when sounds (particularly tones of high pitch) fall on the drum, and that the contraction is bilateral even if the stimulus be only unilateral. The reflex therefore travels via the auditory nerve to the motor centre of the 5th nerve.

Since the tensor tympani is uncontracted when no sounds are falling on

the ear, it allows the drum to go slack and therefore tends to prevent this membrane from becoming stretched through being continually in tension.

The stapedius muscle is innervated by a twig from the facial. Its function is problematical. Some say it antagonises the tensor by decreasing the tension on the drum, others that it reduces the tension on the contents of the internal ear by reducing the pressure of the stapes on the oval window. Hartridge's view is that the function of this muscle is to cause the body of the incus to engage with the spur of the malleus with sufficient force to prevent chattering and lost motion when the vibrations are being transmitted from one bone to the other.

THE EUSTACHIAN CANAL is a tube about 35 mm. in length which connects the middle ear with the pharynx. Normally it is kept closed in order that the respiratory rhythm may not affect the pressure in the tympanum, and that the noise set up by the flow of air and the voice may not be heard. When the canal is closed the middle ear becomes a closed chamber which appears to increase the response to low tones. Since variations in barometric pressure would not be communicated to the middle ear if the canal were always closed, the air pressure on the two sides of the drum would be found to vary. This is avoided by a periodic opening of the canal which accompanies the act of swallowing. When the throat is infected the inflammation often spreads to this canal which then becomes blocked either by mucus or the swelling of its mucous lining. The air in the middle ear is then gradually absorbed and the difference in air pressure on the two sides of the drum decreases its response to sound, and the affected ear thus becomes partially deaf.

Temporary deafness also occurs if the barometric pressure is suddenly altered by a rapid change of level (as in an aeroplane) or by the application of external pressure (as in a caisson or submarine). The deafness is however immediately relieved by swallowing, because the altered pressure is communicated to the other side of the drum through the opening of the Eustachian canal.

FUNCTIONS OF TYMPANUM. The function of the tympanic apparatus (consisting of drum, bones and muscles) is to transform the energy of the aerial vibrations incident on the drum into a series of mechanical movements of the plunger of the stapes, by which the pressure within the internal ear is rapidly varied. The evidence may be summarised as follows. (1) If in man the external ear be made to form a gas chamber which is connected to a manometric flame, the flame shows vibration when sound falls on the drum, which could only be caused if the drum were set into vibration. (2) If the drum be gilded and a beam of light be caused to fall on it, the extensions of the beam caused by vibrations of the drum can be recorded photographically, and are found to accompany the incidence of sound waves. (3) If to the chain of ossicles a light writing lever be attached, the point of which travels over a rotating smoked drum, when sounds fall on the drum the vibrations are recorded showing that the ossicles are set into movement. (4) By opening the middle ear from

above and sprinkling with starch grains the ossicles as they lie within the movements of the different parts can be readily followed under a low power microscope. When the drum is set into vibration by sound waves it is readily seen that the whole chain of ossicles vibrates so as to convey the vibrations to the plunger in the oval window. Many experimenters have noted the remarkable way in which the apparatus responds to vibrations varying very greatly in rate. Tones of low and high pitch appear to be recorded with equal impartiality and fidelity. Experiment therefore confirms our sensations which show that the ear responds to vibrations varying from 40 to 40,000 per second. It is stated that the natural period of the ossicles and drum, owing to their small size, is very much more rapid even than $\frac{1}{40,000}$ second, and it is because of this that the system is able to respond faithfully to the vibrations of longer period used in audition.

Direct observation therefore shows that the ossicles form levers which together conduct the vibrations from the drum to the plunger of the oval window. It is necessary to consider the effect of this lever system on the amplitude and force of the vibration. Motion is applied to the manubrium of the malleus and is communicated to the long process of the incus. The former is one and one-half times the length of the latter and therefore the stapes moves with two-thirds the amplitude of the drum. If the levers moved without friction this would be accompanied by an increase in the force of the vibrations of one and one-half times. But owing to the air which surrounds the levers and thus damps their vibration and to the energy required to set them in vibration on account of their mass, it is probable that the force of the vibrations which reaches the oval window is not more than half that incident on the manubrium. The drum on the other hand has an area which is about twenty times that of the oval window, and the energy incident on the drum and communicated to the manubrium is that much greater than if the sound waves were incident on the oval window direct. But owing to the energy absorbed by the levers the magnification is probably not greater than ten times, that is one-third of the calculated amount. Two other features of the chain of ossicles should be mentioned. In the first place it will be observed that the axis, about which the malleus and incus rotate, passes through the bones, so that the big mass formed by the articular surfaces is above and the levers below the axis of rotation, and the ossicles are approximately balanced. Secondly the articulation between the malleus and incus is saddle-shaped and there is a spur on the malleus which engages with the body of the incus, so that, when the tensor tympani muscle relaxes and the malleus travels outwards, the spur disengages and the incus is therefore not forced to follow. When on the other hand the stapedius muscle is in tonic contraction, the spur is in engagement and vibrations are therefore communicated from one bone to the other. If however the force applied is excessive, owing for example to a box on the ear, then the two bones separate slightly like the limbs of a compass, and the spur passes the body of the incus without communicating the blow to it. In this way rupture of the annular seal between the plunger of the stapes and the oval window is prevented.

INTERNAL EAR

Within the petrous portion of the temporal bone are two mechanisms anatomically in close relationship but physiologically entirely separate. One of these mechanisms, which is called the cochlea, belongs to the auditory organ; the other, called the vestibule, consists of a series of organs which concern equilibration and have no connection with hearing.

THE LABYRINTHS lie one within the other; the outer or osseous labyrinth is hollowed out of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, and it conforms roughly with the shape of the membranous labyrinth within it. Between the two is liquid so that, as in the case of the brain, no constraint is put by the external wall on the soft structures which it contains. This liquid is called perilymph. The membranous labyrinth consists of a series of hollow ducts and sacs which are filled with liquid called the endolymph. The parts of the membranous labyrinth and the relative positions which they occupy are shown in Fig. 306. From before backwards they will be seen to consist of a spiral tube called the cochlea, the saccule, and the utricle to which are connected the three semicircular canals.

Of these structures the cochlea alone is concerned with hearing, as the following evidence shows.

(1) Destruction of the utricle and canals causes disturbed equilibration, nystagmus and vomiting, but no deafness.

(2) Destruction of the cochlea causes deafness but no disturbance of equilibration.

(3) Fishes, in which no evidence of hearing can be found, possess utricle, saccule and canals, but no cochlea.

THE COCHLEA is a tube 20 to 30 mm. long which is spirally wound round a cone of bone called the modiolus, through the centre of which enters the auditory nerve. From the modiolus a spiral lamina of bone extends about two-thirds the way across the spiral cochleal canal so as partially to divide it into two equal portions. From the outer edge of this lamina two membranes extend to the walls of the canal, so that the latter is divided throughout its length into three separate ducts. The upper duct is called the scala vestibuli, the middle duct between the two membranes the scala media, and the lower the scala tympani. The two membranes dividing off these ducts are quite different in structure; whereas the upper, called Reissner's membrane, is a thin layer of cells only, the lower is of complicated arrangement and is called the basilar (base) membrane. To the latter is attached a series of sensitive hair cells, called the organs of Corti, connected to the fibres of the auditory nerve, which run through the osseous spiral lamina to the body of the modiolus. To the upper edge of the spiral lamina is attached a projecting ledge called the lamina tectoria; this is so mounted that it projects over but probably does not quite touch the tips of the hair cells. If however the basilar membrane is displaced upwards, the hairs touch the membrana tectoria, and the resulting stimuli are communicated to the auditory nerve. To prevent damage to the hairs, owing to excessive motion of the basilar membrane, rods of Corti are placed between

the hair cells in such a way that, when they come in contact with the membrana tectoria, further movement of the basilar membrane is prevented.

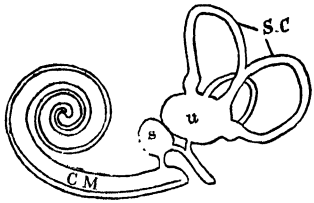


FIG. 306. The membranous labyrinth. CM, canalis or scala media of the cochlea; *s*, saccule; *u*, utricle; SC, semicircular canals.

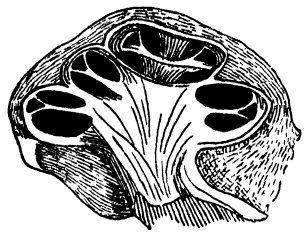


FIG. 307. Vertical section through the cochlea.

The way in which motion is imparted to this membrane by the ossicles may be described as follows. The osseous labyrinth communicates with the middle ear by means of two openings, the oval window and the circular window. The oval window connects with the upper of the three cochlear canals, via the vestibular. The upper canal is therefore called the scala vestibuli. The lower canal connects with the round window only, and since the round window is fitted with a membrane, the canal gets the name scala tympani (drum or membrane). Fitting into the oval window is the plunger of the stapes, and between the two is the annular seal which permits motion of the plunger without allowing escape of the perilymph from the labyrinth.

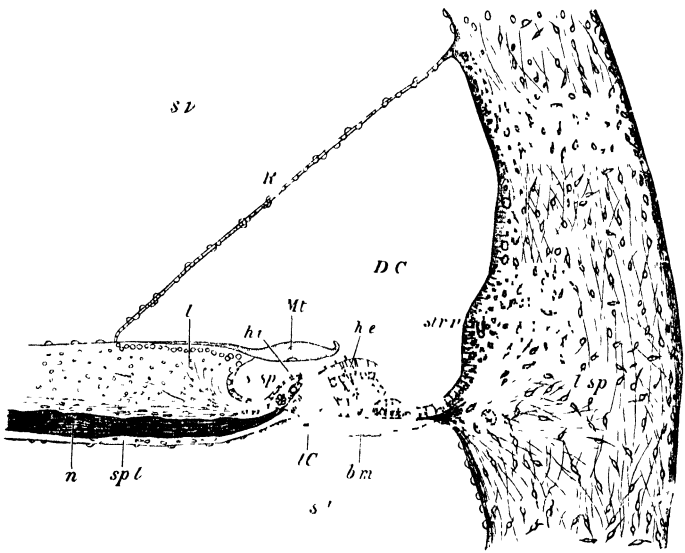


FIG. 308. Vertical section of the first turn of the human cochlea. (G. RETZIUS.)

s.v. scala vestibuli; *s.t*, scala tympani; *d.c*, scala media; *sp.l*, spiral lamina; *n*, nerve fibres; *l.sp*, spiral ligament; *str.v*, stria vascularis; *s.sp*, spiral sulcus; *R*, section of Reissner's membrane; *l*, limbus laminæ spiralis; *m.t*, membrana tectoria; *tC*, tunnel of Corti; *b.m*, basilar membrane; *h.i*, *h.e*, internal and external hair-cells.

The circular window is also closed by its membrane, in order that leakage of perilymph may be prevented. When the plunger of the incus is moved inwards under the influence of sound waves on the drum, the perilymph being incompressible is driven inwards into the vestibule. From the vestibule a corresponding volume of liquid is displaced into the scala vestibuli of the cochlea. This drives Reissner's membrane downwards, and thus increases the pressure on the endolymph in the scala media. The basilar membrane therefore moves downwards and the hair-cells are drawn further away from the membrana tectoria. But this movement of the basilar membrane presses on the fluid contents of the scala tympani which communicates with the round window, and therefore causes bulging of the membrane closing that aperture. Movement inwards of the plunger is therefore accompanied by movement downwards of the basilar membrane and movement outwards of the membrane of the round window and *vice versa*. Vibrations of the ossicles are in this way communicated to the basilar membrane and to the hair-cells, causing stimulation of the auditory nerve. The basilar membrane is composed principally of radial fibres, and varies in width from end to end of the cochlea. The way in which these fibres vibrate under the influence of sound vibrations will be considered in the next section, but one further point remains for consideration here, namely the compensation of the cochlea against the effects of gravity and acceleration. This may be explained by considering a cochlea formed of a straight tube having the fenestra rotunda at one end and the fenestra ovale at the other, the basilar membrane forming a diaphragm in the middle. If this tubular cochlea were so placed in the skull that the two windows were at the same level, gravity acting on the contained liquid would not cause flow to occur to either end. But if the head were tilted so that one window was below the other, the fluid would tend to run towards the lower window. This would draw the basilar membrane over to that side, causing either the distance between the hair-cells to decrease so that they would come into contact with the tectorial membrane and thus cause stimulation of the auditory nerve with a sensation of sound, or such an increase in the distance that response to feeble sounds would be impaired. It will be seen at once that such an effect of gravity would seriously reduce the efficiency of the organ of hearing. Compensation could be to a considerable extent effected by bending the tube so that the two windows were as close together as possible. The hydrostatic pressure would thus be reduced to its smallest amount in the event of the head being tilted so as to bring one window vertically over the other. Such a bent tube would be compensated to a considerable extent against gravity and linear accelerations in different directions, but not against angular acceleration, for on turning the head quickly from side to side a sound would be generated in the ears. In order to compensate for this effect it is necessary to bring the two limits of the tube in close apposition so that they form a U. A still higher degree of correction would be obtained if the U tube were now wound into a close spiral. But if the two limits of the U tube were joined with the basilar membrane forming the diaphragm between

them, a very close mechanical model of the cochlea would have been obtained. The peculiar shape of the cochlea would therefore appear to be explained on the supposition that it is compensated against accelerations and gravity.

THE ORGAN OF CORTI. The end-organ of the auditory nerve is represented by the organ of Corti, which rests on the basilar membrane (Fig. 309). It consists of a double row of stiff cells, the inner and outer rods

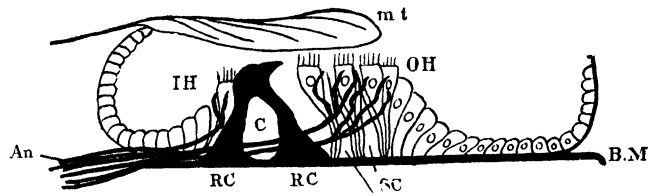


FIG. 309. Section through the end-organ of the auditory nerve in the cochlea (organ of Corti).

BM, basilar membrane; C, canal of Corti; RC, rods of Corti; IH and OH, inner and outer hair-cells; SC, sustentacular cells; An, auditory nerve, mt, membrana tectoria.

of Corti, which run throughout the whole length of the scala media and are surrounded by sense epithelium, the hair-cells. On the inner side of the rods of Corti there is a single row, on the outer side three rows of hair-cells. Between the hair-cells are the sustentacular cells, or cells of Deiters, the peripheral processes from which join together so as to form a reticulate membrane over the hair-cells, the hairs themselves projecting through orifices in the membrane. Resting on the upper surface of the membrana reticularis is the membrana tectoria. To this membrane is often ascribed a damping effect on the vibrations of the structures below. Any movement of the basilar membrane would be transmitted to the rods of Corti, and by these to the overlying hair-cells. With every vibration these would move in the line of their long axis so that their hairs would move up and down and possibly strike against the under surface of the membrana tectoria.

Other views have however been advanced as to the way in which the hair cells become stimulated. Thus Wrightson states that there is a to and fro movement between the hair-cells and the membrana tectoria so that the hairs are bent first to one side and then to the other. Keith suggests on the other hand that the hairs are embedded in the membrana tectoria and that the stimuli are set up by the pulling and bending of the hairs which must occur when the basilar membrane is moved. Further research is required to elucidate this point. The fibres of the auditory nerve pass up through the column of the cochlea, through the bipolar ganglion cells which form the spiral ganglion, and then out along grooves in the spiral lamina to end in arborisations, partly in the inner hair-cells and partly among the outer hair-cells.

NUTRITION OF COCHLEA. The organ of Corti and the surrounding structures appear to obtain nutrition from three different sources. (1) Arterial twigs pass

with the cochlear branch of the auditory nerve and traverse the foramina in the spiral lamina alongside the outgoing nerve fibres, to join with several arteries which run round the inside of the cochlea. The largest of these vessels is found in the scala media. Minute branches pass from these to the hair-cells, etc.; the venous blood being collected in corresponding veins. (2) The outer wall of the scala media is highly vascular, a network of capillaries lying under the epithelium. It is probable that oxygen and food pass by osmosis into the endolymph through the epithelium and that waste products are removed in the same way. (3) Perilymph excreted in the utricle and saccule pass up the scala vestibuli to the top of the cochlea, then through a minute pore called the helicotrema into the scala tympani below and back along this canal to escape from the internal into the middle ear by a minute opening below the round window. The helicotrema is apparently large enough to insure that the mean pressure in the scala vestibuli shall be equal to that in the scala tympani, but not so large that the momentary differences in pressure, caused by the movements of the stapes, are obliterated.

SECTION III

AUDITORY SENSATIONS

HYPOTHESIS OF HEARING

HELMHOLTZ' HYPOTHESIS was that the organ of Corti and the basilar membrane form together a series of automatically recording resonators. In the same way that each of the strings of a piano can be set into vibration by the sounding of a note which corresponds with it in pitch, so also can the different fibres of the basilar membrane vibrate to a certain note, and so cause stimulation of the hair-cells which are attached to it.

Four objections have been made to this hypothesis. (1) That the fibres of the basilar membrane are so short that they could not respond to the low notes which the ear is able to hear. The answer to this criticism is that not only the length but also the tension and weight of a cord determine its vibration rate. In the case of the basilar membrane the tensions in the fibres are probably minute, while the weights of the arches of Corti and the hair-cells must make the period of vibration so much the longer.

(2) That the separate fibres of the basilar membrane are bound together so that vibration of the separate fibres would be impossible. This objection Helmholtz met by calculating that a uniform membrane, in which the tension was greater from side to side than longitudinally, would be able to respond in the manner required.

(3) That the difference in length of the fibres is not sufficiently great for the short ones to vibrate to notes of 4000 vibrations per second, while the long ones vibrate to 40 vibrations per second only. This objection also fails when we reflect that not only length but also tension and weight determine the period of vibration of a stretched cord. However accurately we can determine length and weight by histological examination, the method tells us nothing concerning tension. This objection therefore must fail.

(4) That if the cochlea depends for its action on the resonance of the basilar fibres, we should expect a musical note to seem to go on sounding after the note has actually ceased. Since on the other hand we know from our own experience that words such as 'utter,' in which there is an interval of silence between the two "ts," are quite different from 'udder,' in which there is no interval of silence, it follows that the fibres of the basilar membrane have not been in vibration after the sound ceased, and therefore probably resonance of the basilar membrane is imaginary. If on the other hand we suppose the fibres to be highly damped so that they come to rest at once when the note ceases, how comes it that they can so readily be set in motion so that in only three or four vibrations a note is distinctly heard. The answer is, I

think, to be obtained from the fact that the cochlea is filled with liquid. This liquid makes the basilar membrane 'dead beat' because its movements, when the liquid is still, set up eddies which quickly check the motion owing to the viscosity of the liquid. On the other hand when a sound is entering the ear and the fluid is therefore in motion, this movement is the more rapidly imparted to the basilar membrane because of its continuity, but even if it consisted of separate fibres it would still be set rapidly into vibration owing to the viscosity of the liquid. In this way one can explain both the rapid response and the rapid damping of the cochlea.

In favour of Helmholtz' theory we have the following evidence:

(1) In boiler-makers' disease we have inability to hear high notes, and we find that it is the short fibres of the basilar membrane which are degenerated.

(2) In experiments in which the ears of animals have been stimulated for long periods to the same note, subsequent examination has shown the localisation of degeneration to one part of the organ of Corti. With a high note the short fibres are affected, with a low note the long.

(3) If one of the ears be fatigued by prolonged stimulation to a constant note, its response to the same note is found to be inhibited, but notes of slightly longer or shorter pitch are found to be unaffected. This shows clearly that the response to a given rate of vibration must affect a certain limited number of hair cells and nerve fibres only, and is therefore strongly in favour of Helmholtz' theory.

(4) Animals whose calls have a small range of pitch (*e.g.* birds) have short basilar membranes which vary but little in length.

(5) Animals, in which different parts of the cochlea have been destroyed, appear to give definite evidence for deafness to high notes when the fine basilar fibres are damaged, and deafness to low notes when the long fibres have been removed.

(6) Patients are found in whom there are islands of deafness, that is, they are deaf to a limited part of the musical scale. The Helmholtz theory readily explains these cases as being due to local disease of certain basilar fibres or their corresponding hair-cells. Further there are cases in which the two ears give different notes, a condition called double disharmonic hearing. This is easily explained by a change in the natural period of the fibres of the basilar membrane in the diseased ear, either as the result of stretching or the increased mass due to inflammation.

(7) McKendrick was able to produce a model of the cochlea with basilar membrane and organs of Corti. He found that parts of the membrane can be made to vibrate to a certain pitch and not to others as the Helmholtz hypothesis requires.

(8) McKendrick calculated that the number of fibres in the auditory nerve, the number of fibres in the basilar membrane and the number of hair-cells and arches of Corti were sufficient to give the total number of different pitches (about 11,000) in the auditory scale.

It would appear therefore that the evidence in favour of Helmholtz' hypothesis

is very convincing. Other theories have been proposed however which will now receive brief consideration.

RUTHERFORD'S HYPOTHESIS compares the cochlea to a telephone. In the same way as the diaphragm of the receiver is set into vibration by the sound waves, and starts corresponding variations in the strength of the current conducted to the transmitter, so the vibration of the basilar membrane as a whole causes impulses to be sent up the auditory nerve which correspond with the air vibrations received by the ear. Analysis does not take place in the cochlea at all but in the brain. Wrightson, who has restated this theory and added much detail to it, states that the cerebral analysis is effected by differences between the time intervals of the points of zero pressure and of the maximum plus and minus pressures.

The following objections may be stated against the Rutherford-Wrightson hypothesis.

(1) It assumes that the auditory nerve can conduct complicated wave forms, intact as to pitch and amplitude, at rates up to 40,000 vibrations per second. Rutherford in this connection pointed to the motor nerves of the bee's wing which are capable of responding to transmitted impulses at 460 per second. Between 40,000 and 460 is however a big gap which will certainly have to be bridged before this view as to the transmission of the vibrations intact to the brain can be accepted.

(2) We cannot picture a cerebral apparatus which can analyse these complicated nerve impulses even if they could reach it, and neither Rutherford nor Wrightson assist us to do so. The relegation of the powers of analysis to the cerebral cortex is, at the present at any rate, equivalent to giving up any attempt to explain the power of analysis possessed by the organ of hearing.

(3) It would seem that a very much simpler organ than that of the cochlea would be sufficient to convert sound waves into nerve impulses if no analysis of the stimulus took place there.

(4) It would be very difficult to explain on this hypothesis the localisation of degeneration to certain notes, or the deafness to certain notes which accompanies disease of part of the organ of Corti.

(5) This hypothesis does not explain why fatigue to one note leaves the response to all other notes apparently unaffected in intensity.

The objections to this hypothesis are therefore of a formidable character. Much additional evidence in its favour would be necessary to place it even on a par with the theory of Helmholtz.

WALLER'S HYPOTHESIS stated that the basilar membrane vibrated in the form of pressure patterns which are similar to those which may be seen on a vibrating plate. Ewald who has elaborated this view found by experiment that the patterns take the form of equidistant stationary nodes or ridges, the distance between which varies with the pitch of the note entering the mechanism. The distance between the nodes is measured by the hair-cells and corresponding impulses are sent to the auditory centre. The advantage of this hypothesis is that like Helmholtz' it places the analysis of the sound waves in the cochlea and therefore does not, like Rutherford's hypothesis, require the transmission by the auditory nerve of rapid impulses or the analysis of such impulses by the brain. It is clear however that so far as our present knowledge goes the evidence is all in favour of Helmholtz' view.

BEATS AND DISSONANCE. The overtones of any sound, at any rate the lower ones, are at considerable distance from one another on the musical scale, and therefore differ considerably in the number of vibrations of which they are composed. If two tuning-forks be sounded, the vibrations of which differ only by one or two per second, the phenomenon known as 'beats' is produced. This is due to the summation or interference of the waves from the two tuning-forks. Let us suppose we have tuning-forks vibrating one at 100

and the other at 101 times a second, and that they begin vibrating together. At first the waves of compression started by each fork will coincide, so that the total compression of the air at each beat will be the compound effect of the compression produced by the two forks. The two forks will reinforce one another. After the lapse of half a second the tuning-forks will be at different phases of their excursion. The 101 fork will be moving in one direction while the 100 fork is moving in the other, so that the compression produced by one fork coincides with the expansion of the air produced by the moving backwards of the other fork. The sound produced by one fork is therefore diminished by the sound produced by the other fork, and the total sound is less than either of the two forks. At the end of one second, the phases of the two forks once more corresponding, we shall get the sound increased in loudness; thus there is an alternate waxing and waning of the sound which recurs once a second and is spoken of as a 'beat.'

The number of beats per second may be used to determine the differences in the vibration frequencies of two forks. Thus two forks vibrating one at 100 and the other at 110 will give ten beats per second. As the number of beats increases the effect produced on the ear becomes more and more disagreeable, just as the rapid alternation of illumination produced by a flickering light is disagreeable to the eye. This objectionable character of the sound is most marked when the beats recur at about thirty-three times per second; the individual beats are not then distinguished, but we speak of the sound as discordant or *dissonant.*

CONSONANCE. The opposite condition of *consonance* or harmony involves therefore, in the first place, an absence of beats, *i.e.* of rhythmic oscillations of amplitude of sound waves which reach the ear. The constituent tones and overtones must be capable of being combined into a compound wave of regular amplitude and rhythm. In the most complete consonance the component notes are identical as concerns at any rate the greater number of their overtones. The most complete consonance is attained when the two notes which are sounded together are identical. Almost as complete is the consonance obtained when a note is sounded together with its octave. The other consonant intervals which are employed in music are as follows:

1 : 2	Octave
2 : 3	Fifth
3 : 4	Fourth
4 : 5	Major third
5 : 6	Minor third
5 : 8	Minor sixth
3 : 5	Major sixth

It will be noticed that in all these consonant combinations the vibration frequencies of the notes are in proportion to small whole numbers. If we put down not only the fundamental tones of these notes but also their overtones, we shall see that there is considerable identity as regards the latter. In the case of the octave the two are almost identical, the only difference

being the ground tone of the lower note, and the identity diminishes as we pass from the octave through the thirds to the sixths. The overtones which are identical are shown by black type:

Fundamental tone	Overtone
Octave 1 : 2 . .	1 . 2 . 3 . **4** . 5 . **6** . 7 . **8** . 9 . **10** 2 **4** **6** **8** **10**
Fifth 2 : 3 . .	2 . 4 . **6** . 8 . 10 . **12** . 14 . 16 . **18** . 20 3 **6** 9 **12** 15 **18**
Fourth 3 : 4 . .	3 . 6 . 9 . **12** . 15 . 18 . 21 . **24** . 27 . 30 4 8 **12** 16 20 **24** 28
Major third 4 : 5 .	4 . 8 . 12 . 16 . **20** . 24 . 28 . 32 . 36 . **40** 5 10 15 **20** 25 30 35 **40**
Minor third 5 : 6 .	5 . 10 . 15 . 20 . 25 . **30** . 35 . 40 . 45 . 50 6 12 18 24 **30** 36 42 48
Major sixth 3 : 5 .	3 . 6 . 9 12 **15** . 18 21 . 24 . 27 **30** 5 10 **15** 20 25 **30**
Second 8 : 9 . .	8 . 16 . 24 32 40 . 48 . 56 . 64 **72**. 80 9 18 27 36 45 54 63 **72**
Seventh 8 : 15 .	8 . 16 24 32 40 . 48 . 56 . 64 . 72 . 80 15 30 45 60 75 90

In the second and seventh, which are discordant, it is only the eighth overtones which are identical, while the fundamental tones will, as a rule, be so close together that beats will be produced of a number calculated to give dissonance. Since the phenomenon of beats depends on the absolute number of vibrations per second, they are more easily produced by two notes near together at the lower end of the scale than at the upper end. Thus the dissonance is quite perceptible in a major third at the lower end of the piano, but disappears at the upper part, since here the beats produced are so rapid that they become imperceptible.

The various notes used in music are obtained by employing the consonant intervals which we have given above. The major chord is composed of the fundamental tone, the major third and the fifth. If we take '*c*' as the fundamental tone, the notes of the chord are *c*, *e*, *g*, with vibration frequencies corresponding to 1, $\frac{5}{4}$, $\frac{3}{2}$, *i.e.* 4, 5, 6, the major chord from *g* is *g*, *b*, *d*, *i.e.* three notes with vibration frequencies corresponding to $\frac{3}{2}$, $\frac{15}{8}$, $\frac{9}{4}$, *i.e.* 4, 5, 6. The major chord from the fourth, *f*, is *f*, *a*, *c*, with the vibration frequencies $\frac{4}{3}$, $\frac{20}{12}$, $\frac{12}{6}$, *i.e.* 4, 5, 6. The C major scale is therefore as follows:

C	D	E	F	G	A	B	C
1	9	5	4	3	5	15	2
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
	8	4	3	2	3	8	

Different instruments are tuned to one normal note, *i.e.* to A with 440 vibrations per second (this note varies somewhat in different countries). Taking this as the normal, the vibration frequencies of the various notes used in music are given in the following Table:

Notes	Vibrations per second						
C . . .	33	66	132	264	528	1056	2112
D . . .	37·125	74·25	148·5	297	594	1188	2376
E . . .	41·25	82·5	165	330	660	1320	2640
F . . .	44	88	176	352	704	1408	2816
G . . .	49·5	99	198	396	792	1584	3168
A . . .	55	110	220	440	880	1760	3520
B . . .	61·875	123·75	247·5	495	990	1980	3960

COMBINATION TONES. If two tuning-forks, with an interval of one-fifth between them, are sounded together, we may hear a weak lower tone, the pitch of which is an octave below that of the lower fork. This is known as a 'combination tone.' The combination tones are divided into two classes : (1) 'difference tones,' in which the frequency is the difference of the frequencies of the generating tones ; (2) 'summation tones,' which have a pitch corresponding to the sum of the vibrations of the tone of which they are composed. By means of appropriate resonators these tones can be reinforced, showing that they have an objective existence and are not produced in the ear itself.

Not only can the ear appreciate differences between different musical instruments, dependent on the varying overtones present in the sound produced by each instrument but, when a number of these instruments are sounded simultaneously, the ear can pick out from the compound sound the notes due to the individual instrument, and a person with a trained ear can with ease name notes composing any chord struck on an instrument such as the piano.

OHM'S LAW. This power of analysis, which is possessed by the ear, or at any rate by the auditory apparatus, may be stated in the form of the law, known as Ohm's law, which is as follows :

"Every motion of the air which corresponds to a composite mass of musical tones is capable of being analysed into a sum of simple pendular vibrations, and to each single vibration corresponds a simple tone, sensible to the ear and having a pitch determined by the periodic time of the corresponding motion of the air."

SOUND LOCALIZATION. Experiment shows that man and animals can appreciate with fair accuracy the direction from which a sound is coming. There has been considerable speculation as to how this information is obtained, and although the subject has not been completely elucidated it appears to have been established that the following factors are important.

(1) The intensity of the sounds entering the two ears. When a sound is coming from one side the ear on that side receives the more powerful stimulus.

(2) The relative intensities of the components of high and low pitch vary with direction, because the notes of long wavelength (low pitch) will be

diffracted the more readily round the head to the ear away from the sound, than will those of short wavelength (high pitch).

(3) The sounds reaching the nearer ear will arrive earlier than those stimulating the other, because of the time taken to travel round the head. The nerve impulses from the two ears will not therefore arrive at the same instant, and by an appreciation of the difference in time the approximate position of an external object can be gauged.

That this factor is of great importance can be shown by experiment in the following manner. A stethoscope with two earpieces is fitted in position, and to its mouthpiece is applied a loud tuning-fork. The tube connecting the mouthpiece to one of the earpieces has an adjustable U-piece like a trombone so that the distance travelled by the sound in reaching that ear can be varied. The other tube has a length which is equal to that of the others, with the U-piece in its mid position. When a note is sounded and the U-piece altered, the position of the sound appears to move from one side to the other according to which ear has the shorter tube.

(4) The sounds reaching the ears travel not only through the air but also through the bones of the skull. This can be proved by placing a tuning-fork, which has been sounded and allowed to fade until its note is inaudible, on one of the teeth; the sound will be conveyed by the root of the tooth to bone, and by bone conduction to the ears. Therefore when a sound enters the right ear, it will travel by bone conduction to the left, and owing to its rate of travel being different to that of sound in air, it will reach the left ear at a different instant to which the sound travelling round the head will reach it. If one ear is facing the sound, the bone-conducted sound will probably reach the other ear before the air-conducted does. On the other hand when both ears are equidistant, it is clear that the air-borne sound will arrive first at both ears, and the bone-conducted sound very much later. By an appreciation of the difference in time of the arrival of the two sounds it is probable that localisation is effected.

(5) In animals, the ability to turn the ears in different directions and so find the direction of maximum intensity, must be of the utmost possible value in sound localization.

PART IV

VOICE AND SPEECH

THE development of the analytical powers of the auditory apparatus is so closely connected with that of the faculty of speech that we may conveniently deal with the latter at this point rather than relegate it to a chapter on special muscular mechanisms. We may first consider the mechanism of production of *voice*, which man shares with many other animals, before discussing the mechanism of the wholly human faculty of speech.

Voice is produced in the larynx, a modified portion of the wind-pipe, by the vibrations of two elastic bands, the vocal cords, which are set into action by an expiratory current of air from the lungs. In many respects the larynx resembles a reed instrument, in which a current of air is caused to vibrate by the vibrations of an elastic tongue. Whereas however the period of the vibrations in such an instrument, and therefore the note, is determined by the length of the tube which is attached to the reed and by the lengths of the reeds themselves, in the larynx the note produced by the blast of air is modified partly by alterations in the tension of the vocal cord, and partly by varying the strength of the blast of air.

ANATOMICAL MECHANISM OF THE LARYNX. The essential framework of the larynx is formed by four cartilages, viz. the cricoid, the thyroid, and the two arytenoid cartilages. The cricoid cartilage, which lies immediately over the uppermost ring of the trachea, is shaped like a signet ring, the small narrow part being directed forwards and the broad plate backwards. The thyroid cartilage consists of two parts or alæ, joined together in front and forming the prominence known as Adam's apple; behind, it presents four processes or cornua, the superior of which are attached by ligaments to the hyoid bone, while the inferior cornua articulate with the postero-lateral portion of the cricoid cartilage. By means of this articulation very free movement is permitted between the two cartilages, the general direction of movement being one of rotation of the cricoid cartilage on the thyroid, round a horizontal axis directly through the two articular surfaces between the two cartilages, while movements of the thyroid upon the cricoid are also possible in the upward, downward, forward, and backward directions. The two arytenoid cartilages are pyramidal in shape. By their bases they articulate at some distance from the middle line with convex articular surfaces situated in the upper margin of the plate of the cricoid cartilage. The anterior angle of the base is the vocal process, while the external angle is the muscular process of the arytenoid. The crico-arytenoid joints permit of two kinds of movements of the arytenoid cartilages, viz.:

(1) Rotation on their base around their vertical long axis, so that the anterior vocal process is rotated outwards and the muscular process backwards and inwards or conversely.

(2) Sliding movements of the whole arytenoid cartilage either outwards or inwards, so that their inner margins may be drawn apart or approximated.

The larynx is covered internally by a mucous membrane continuous with that of the trachea. It is lined with ciliated epithelium, except over the vocal cords, where the epithelium is stratified. The two vocal cords, or thyro-arytenoid ligaments, consist of elastic fibres which run from the middle of the inner angle of the thyroid cartilage to be inserted into the anterior angle of the arytenoid cartilages. Their length in man is about 15 mm., in woman about 11 mm. The cleft between them is known as the glottis, or *rima glottidis*.

Two ridges of mucous membrane above and parallel to the vocal cords are the false vocal cords (Fig. 310). Between the true and the false vocal cords on each side is a recess known as the ventricle of Morgagni. This ventricle permits the free vibration of the vocal cords. The false cords take no part in phonation, but help to keep the true cords moistened by the secretion of the numerous mucous glands with which they are provided. The false cords are also used in holding the breath. For this purpose they function in a similar manner to the mitral valve of the heart. It is found that animals who need the thorax to be fixed in order that they may climb or strike have well developed false cords. The position and tension of the vocal cords are determined by the action of the intrinsic muscles of the larynx. The part taken by the various muscles in each movement cannot be directly ascertained. We can in most cases study only the direction of the fibres, and judge, from this direction and consequent isolated action of the muscles, the part taken by any given muscle in the production of voice. The chief muscles (Fig. 311) are as follows:

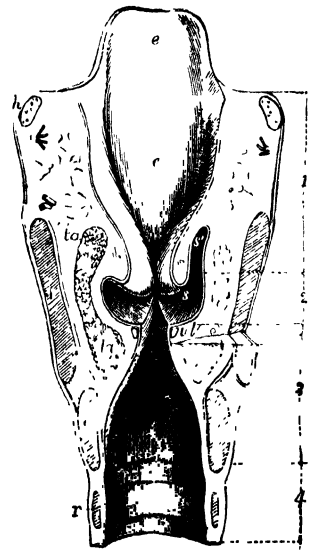


FIG. 310. Anterior half of the larynx, seen from behind. The section on the right side is somewhat in front of the left side.

e, epiglottis; *e'*, cushion of epiglottis; *t*, thyroid cartilage; *s*, *s'*, ventricle of larynx; *h*, great cornu of hyoid bone; *t a*, thyro-arytenoid muscle; *vl*, vocal cords. Above the ventricles are the false vocal cords, *r*, first ring of trachea.

(A THOMSON)

(1) The *crico-thyroid* muscle is a short triangular muscle attached below to the cricoid cartilage and above to the inferior border of the thyroid cartilage; the fibres pass from below upwards and backwards. When this muscle contracts, the cricoid cartilage is drawn up under the anterior part of the thyroid cartilage, so that its broad expansion behind, with the arytenoid cartilages, is drawn downwards and backwards, thus putting the vocal cords on the stretch. This muscle is probably the most important in determining the tension of the vocal cord.

(2) The *posterior crico-arytenoid* muscle arises from a broad depression on the corresponding half of the posterior surface of the cricoid cartilage. It passes upwards and outwards, its fibres converging, to be inserted into the outer angle of the arytenoid cartilage. These muscles rotate the outer angle of the arytenoid cartilages backwards and inwards. They thus cause a movement outwards of the anterior angles, so that the glottis is widened. During every act of inspiration there is a widening of the glottis, which is probably effected by contraction of these muscles. If they are paralysed the vocal cords are approximated and tend to come together during inspiration, so that dyspnœa may be produced.

(3) The *lateral crico-arytenoid* muscle arises from the upper border of the cricoid cartilage and passes backwards to be inserted into the muscular process of the arytenoid cartilage. These muscles when they contract pull the muscular process of the arytenoid

cartilage forwards and downwards, thus approximating the vocal cords at their posterior ends and antagonising the action of the posterior crico-arytenoid muscles.

(4) The *arytenoid* muscles consist of transverse fibres, some of which decussate, uniting the posterior surface of the two arytenoid cartilages. When they contract they draw the arytenoid cartilages together.

(5) The *thyro-arytenoid* muscles consist of two portions. The outer fibres rise in front from the thyroid cartilage and pass backwards to be inserted into the lateral border and the muscular process of the arytenoid cartilage. Some of the fibres pass obliquely upwards towards the aryteno-epiglottidean folds. These are often spoken of as a separate muscle, the *thyro-epiglottidean*. By their action they tend to draw

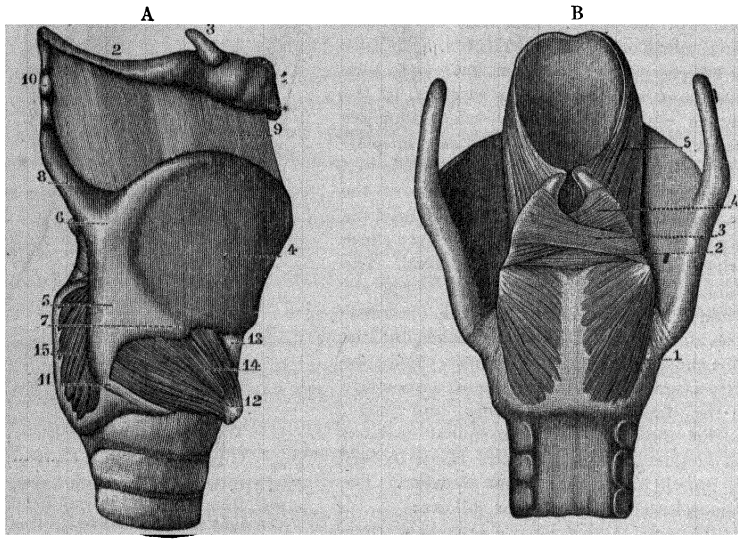


FIG. 311. Muscles of the larynx. (SAPPEY.)

A, as shown in a view of the larynx from the right side.

1, hyoid bone; 2, 3, its cornua; 4, right ala of thyroid cartilage; 5, posterior part of the same separated by oblique line from anterior part; 6, 7, superior and inferior tubercles at ends of oblique line; 8, upper cornu of thyroid; 9, thyro-hyoid ligament; 10, cartilago triticea; 11, lower cornu of thyroid, articulating with the cricoid; 12, anterior part of cricoid; 13, crico-thyroid membrane; 14, crico-thyroid muscle; 15, posterior crico-arytenoid muscle, partly hidden by thyroid cartilage.

B, as seen in a view of the larynx from behind.

1, posterior crico-arytenoid; 2, arytenoid muscle; 3, 4, oblique fibres passing around the edge of the arytenoid cartilage to join the thyro-arytenoid, and to form the aryteno-epiglottic, 5.

the arytenoid cartilages forwards and to relax the vocal cords. The upper fibres may also assist in depressing the epiglottis. The inner fibres are called the *musculus vocalis*. They arise from the lower half of the angle of the thyroid cartilage, and passing backwards in the vocal cords are attached to the vocal processes and to the adjacent parts of the outer surfaces of the arytenoid cartilages. Many fibres do not run the whole distance, but end in an attachment to some part of the vocal cord. Although their action must be to draw the arytenoid cartilages forwards, yet, since they are contained in the vibrating portion of the vocal cords, they cannot by their contraction relax these cords. It is probable that they play a great part in determining the tension of the vocal cords after these have been put on the stretch by the action of the crico-thyroid muscles. They may possibly act as a sort of fine adjustment of the tension, the coarse adjustment being represented by the crico-thyroids.

THE PRODUCTION OF VOICE

In order to study the changes in the larynx which are associated with voice production we must make use of the laryngoscope. The principle of this instrument is very simple. A large concave mirror with a central aperture is fixed before one eye of the observer, sitting in front of the patient or person to be observed. The latter is directed to throw his head slightly backwards and to open his mouth. In order to keep the tongue out of the way the patient is made to hold the end of it by means of a towel. The mirror is then so arranged as to reflect light from a lamp into the cavity of the mouth. A small mirror fixed in a handle is then warmed, so as to prevent the condensation of the patient's breath, and passed to the back of the mouth until it rests upon and slightly raises the base of the uvula. By this mirror the light reflected into the mouth from the large mirror is again reflected down on to the larynx, and a reflection of the larynx and trachea is seen in the mirror. By laryngoscopic examination we can see the base of the tongue, behind which is the outline of the epiglottis. Behind this again in the middle line are seen the two vocal cords, white and shining (Fig. 312). The cords appear to approximate posteriorly; between them is a narrow chink, the diameter of which varies with each respiration, being wider during inspiration. On each side of the true vocal cords are seen the pink false vocal cords. In some cases the rings of the trachea, and even the bifurcation of the trachea itself (Fig. 312, c), may be seen in the interval between the vocal cords.

In order that the vocal cords may be set into vibration, they must be put into a state of tension and the aperture of the glottis narrowed, so as to afford resistance to the current of air. In the dead larynx it is possible to produce sounds by forcing air from bellows through the trachea, after the vocal cords have been put on the stretch by pulling the arytenoid cartilages backwards. By experimenting on patients on whom tracheotomy has been performed, it has been found that the pressure of air in the trachea, necessary to cause production of voice, is, for a tone of ordinary loudness and pitch, between 140 and 240 mm. of water, and with loud shouting the pressure rises to as much as 945 mm. of water. This pressure is furnished by the contraction of the expiratory muscles, *i.e.* of the abdomen and of the thorax. Since the pitch of the note produced rises with increasing force of the blast, while the tension of the cords remains constant, it is evident that, in the act of 'swelling' on a note, the increased pressure necessary for the crescendo must be associated with diminishing tension of the cords. It is the failure to secure this muscular relaxation that so often causes a singer to sing sharp when swelling on any given note.

The voice, like the sound produced on any musical instrument, may vary either in pitch, loudness, or in quality or timbre. The range of any individual voice is generally about two octaves. The pitch of the voice usually employed is determined chiefly by the length of the vocal cords. Thus in children the voice is high-pitched. Before and at puberty there

is a considerable development in the size of the larynx in both sexes. This is especially marked in the male, and accounts for the sudden drop in pitch ('breaking') of the voice. In the female the increased size of the larynx is chiefly perceptible in the increase in fulness and richness of the voice which occurs at this age. Even when we take all the voices together,

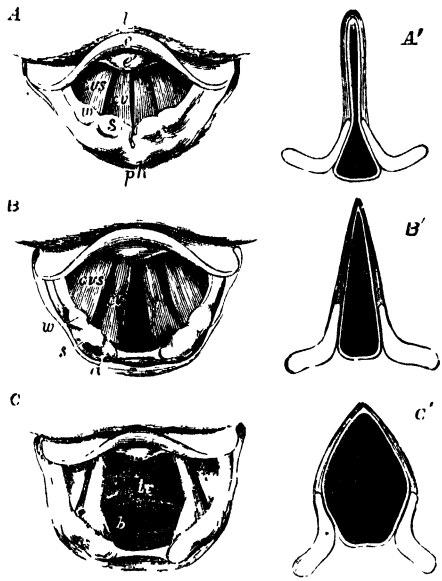


FIG. 312. Three laryngoscopic views of the superior aperture of the larynx and surrounding parts in different states of the glottis during life. (From CZERMAK)

A, the glottis during the emission of a high note in singing. B, in easy or quiet inhalation of air. C, in the state of widest possible dilatation, as in inhaling a very deep breath. The diagrams A′, B′, C′ have been added to Czermak's figures to show in horizontal sections of the glottis the position of the vocal ligaments and arytenoid cartilages in the three several states represented in the other figures. In all the figures so far as marked, the letters indicate the parts as follows, viz.: *l*, the base of the tongue; *e*, the upper free part of the epiglottis, *e′*, the tubercle or cushion of the epiglottis; *p h*, part of the anterior wall of the pharynx behind the larynx; in the margin of the aryteno-epiglottidean fold *w*, the swelling of the membrane caused by the cuneiform cartilage; *s*, that of the corniculum; *a*, the tip of the arytenoid cartilages; *c v*, the true vocal chords or lips of the rima glottidis; *c v s*, the superior or false vocal cords: between them the ventricle of the larynx; in C, *t r* is placed on the anterior wall of the receding trachea, and *b* indicates the commencement of the two bronchi beyond the bifurcation, which may be brought into view in this state of extreme dilatation.

bass, tenor, alto, and soprano, the total range for ordinary individuals does not exceed three octaves. In singing the voice may be produced in various ways, *i.e.* in different registers. Thus we distinguish the chest register, the middle register, and the head register. The deeper notes of any individual voice are always produced in the chest register. Observation of the vocal cord shows that when producing such notes the glottis forms an elongated slit, all the muscles which close the glottis and increase the tension of the cords being in action. The vocal cords are relatively thick and broad and can

be seen to vibrate over their whole extent. When singing with the head voice, the vibrations of the cord are apparently confined to their inner margins; the aperture of the glottis is wider in front than behind, so that more air escapes during phonation by this method than in the production of the chest voice.

In order to change the pitch of the note the following means are probably employed in the larynx:

(1) Alteration in the tension of the vocal cords.

(2) Alteration in the length of the part of the vocal cords that is free to vibrate, which can be accomplished by the approximation of the arytenoid cartilages to one another, or by their approximation to the thyroid cartilage.

(3) The alteration in the shape of the vocal cords, which is determined by the activity of the different portions of the internal thyro-arytenoid muscles.

(4) The varying pressure of the blast of air passing through the glottis.

The loudness of the tone produced is practically proportional to the force of the blast of air employed. The quality or timbre of the voice depends not so much on the vocal cords as on the accessory resonating apparatus, represented by the trachea and chest and by the cavities of the mouth and nose. The greater part of the education involved in voice training is directed to the modification of the shape of the mouth cavity, so as to secure the greatest possible fulness, *i.e.* richness in overtones, of the tone produced in the larynx.

THE MECHANISM OF SPEECH

The sounds employed in speech, viz. vowels and consonants, are produced by modifying the laryngeal tones by changes in the shape of the mouth and nasal cavities. In whispering speech there is no phonation at all, but the sound is produced by the issue of a blast of air through a narrow opening between the lips, between the tongue and soft palate, or between the tongue and the teeth.

VOWEL SOUNDS are continuous, whereas the consonants are produced by interruptions, more or less complete, of the outflowing air in different situations. The simple vowel sounds, U, O, A, E I, (pronounced as in Italian oo, oh, ah, eh, ee), are tones, *i.e.* are produced by a regular series of vibrations. These tones take their origin in the mouth cavity, as can be shown easily by the fact that we can whisper these sounds distinctly without any phonation whatever. To each of them corresponds one or two distinct notes, the pitch, *i.e.* the resonance, of which is regulated by the shape of the cavity in which they are produced. There has been much controversy as to whether the pitch of these notes changes at all with the pitch of the voice, or varies in different individuals. Some said that they did not change, others that their pitch kept in constant ratio with the pitch of the note sung: if the note doubled in pitch, so also did that (or *those* in the case of E and I) of the vowel. Several methods have been employed for investigating this point:

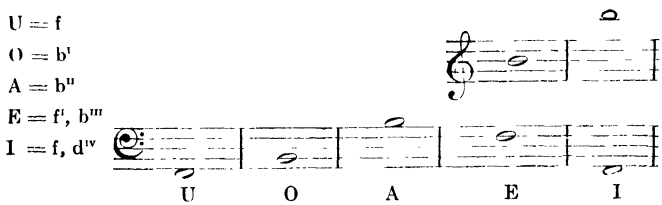
(1) By recording the vibrations emitted by the voice by means of the manometric flame.

(2) By recording the vibrations by means of a gramophone.

(3) By measuring the intensity of vibration of series of resonators. All the above methods show that there must be some change, even if it is slight.

(4) By running a gramophone record of a bass voice at an increased speed so that the notes were those of a treble. If now the pitches of note and vowels were in constant ratio the quality of the vowels should not change when the speed is thus increased. Experiment shows that the words are greatly altered, losing their O's and A's and taking E and I instead. This shows clearly that change in pitch of the vowels is not nearly as great as that of the note sung with them. We must conclude therefore that neither those who say there is no change, nor those who say there is constant ratio, are right, but that the truth lies between the two extremes. The pronunciation even of the simplest vowel sound differs in different individuals. For instance, those pronounced by a Londoner differ from those pronounced by a man from Manchester or from Yorkshire, and the French vowels differ somewhat in pitch from those employed by the German, and these again from those employed by the avêrage Englishman.

The characteristic notes were given by Helmholtz as follows:



If the five vowels are whispered loudly, the gradual rise in pitch of the tone is easily perceptible. We do not in this way however note the lower component of the sound in the E and I; this can be brought out by a simple device (Fig. 313). If we place the mouth in the position necessary to produce these different vowels, and then percuss over the cheek, we obtain the typical note for each vowel, the air in the mouth cavity being set into vibration by the percussion. Now shift the finger, which is to be

FIG. 313. Shape of the oral cavity in the production of the vowel sounds, *A*, *U*, *I*. (GRÜTZNER.)

percussed, so that it lies over the pharynx, just behind the angle of the jaw, and percuss again. The note will be observed to rise with U, O, A, and then fall with E, I. With the three vowels U, O, A, we have a single cavity formed by the lips, the palate, and the tongue; this cavity is longest and narrowest with U and shortest and most open with A. With E and I the dorsum of the tongue comes up against the front part of the soft palate, so that the mouth cavity is divided into two, the anterior short narrow cavity, and the posterior broader cavity between the soft palate and the base of the tongue. We therefore have two notes produced, one in each cavity. The change in shape of the mouth cavity is shown in the figures. With U and A the cavity seems to be single; with I the development of a pharyngeal resonating cavity is well shown. Diphthongs are produced by changing the form of the mouth cavity from that of one vowel sound to another, thus AI (the English I) = ah-ee run together and abbreviated.

CONSONANTS are sounds produced by a sudden check being placed in the course of the expiratory blast of air by closure of some part of the pharynx or mouth. They are classified into labials, dentals, or gutturals, according as the check takes place at the lips, between teeth and tongue, or between back of tongue and soft palate. Each of these again can be divided into soft and hard consonants as they are accompanied or not with phonation. Thus when we pronounce D the production of the laryngeal sounds goes on during the check of the sound produced at the teeth, whereas with T there is an absolute interruption of phonation during the pronunciation of the consonant. It is thus practically impossible to make any marked difference between hard and soft consonants when whispering.

In the production of nasal sounds such as NG the mechanism is the same as for the production of B, D, G, except that the posterior opening of the nares is not kept shut by the soft palate, so that part of the sound comes continually through the nasal passages, when it acquires a peculiar resonance. These sounds are on this account often spoken of as 'resonants.' The aspirates are produced by the passage of a simple blast of air through a narrow opening which may be at the throat as in H, between tongue and teeth as in TH, or between lips and teeth as in PH or F.

The vibratives, such as R, are formed by placing the tip of the tongue or the uvula, or the lips, in the path of the blast of air so that they are set into vibration by the blast. In English the vibrative R employed is entirely due to the tongue.

The sibilants, which may be voiceless as in 'S' or accompanied with phonation as in 'Z,' consist of continuous noises produced by a narrowing of the path of the air between the tongue and the hard palate. They are therefore similar in production to the aspirates. In the production of the sound 'L' the tongue is applied by its edge to the alveolar process of the upper jaw, so that the air or voice escapes by two small apertures in the region of the first molar and between the inner side of the cheek and the teeth. The acoustic characters of these various consonants are still but imperfectly studied.

PART V

CUTANEOUS SENSATIONS

THE skin, being the outermost layer of the body, represents the tissue or organ by which the organism is brought into relationship with its environment. In the widest sense of the term the skin is protective. This function it discharges by virtue not only of its physical properties but also of its rich endowment with sense organs, by means of which the intracorporeal events can be correlated with those occurring outside and immediately affecting the organism.

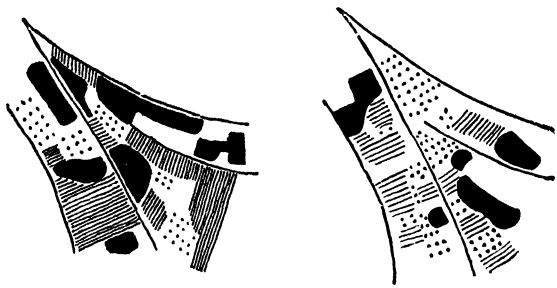
We are accustomed to distinguish several qualities of sensation among those having their origin in the skin, the chief of which are the sense of touch, including that of discrimination, the sense of pain and the sense of temperature. The very different qualities of sensation included under these three classes suggest that there may be a special mechanism, or class of mechanism, for each sense, and a careful investigation of the sensory qualities of the skin surface bears out this idea. Isolated stimulation of minute areas on the skin does not excite all the sensations together, but only a sense of touch or of pain, or a sense of cold or warmth. We are therefore justified in dealing with each of these sensations separately.

THE TEMPERATURE SENSE

By means of the skin we can appreciate that a body coming in contact with the skin is either cold or warm. If the body is at the same temperature as the skin, as a rule no sensation of temperature is excited. It was formerly thought that the sensations both of heat and cold were determined by the excitation of one and the same end organ. Warming of this end organ would produce a sensation of warmth, while a diminution of its temperature would produce the sensation of cold. Careful investigations by Blix and Donaldson of the distribution of the temperature sense has shown that this opinion cannot be maintained. If a small surface warmed to a few degrees above the temperature of the skin be moved over any part of the surface of the body, *e.g.* the back of the hand, it is found that the warmth of the instrument is not appreciable equally at all parts of the surface of the skin. At some points the sensation of warmth will be very pronounced, but between these points the sensation of warmth may be entirely wanting and the instrument may be judged to be of the same temperature as the hand itself. In this way a series of ' warm points ' may be mapped out. On now cooling the instrument a few degrees below the

temperature of the surface of the body and then moving it over the surface in the same way, it will be found again that the coolness of the instrument is appreciated only at certain points which can be regarded as ' cold points ' and as containing the nerve-endings by the excitation of which the sensation of cold is produced. If the warm points be pricked out in red ink and the cold points in blue ink, it will be seen that they do not in any way correspond.

A convenient instrument for this purpose is the one invented by Miescher, consisting of two tubes cemented together and communicating at a small flattened extremity, which is applied to the surface of the skin; through the tubes water can be led at any desired temperature, which is read off by a thermometer placed within the tube. Having mapped out the warm spots it may be shown that they are excitable by means of mechanical or electrical stimuli and that the sensation produced is the same as if they had been excited by their adequate stimulus, viz. a rise of temperature.



Cold spots. Heat spots.

FIG. 314. Heat and cold spots on part of palm of right hand.

The sensitive points are shaded, the black being more sensitive than the lined, and these than the dotted parts. The unshaded areas correspond to those parts where no special sensation was evoked. (GOLDSCHEIDER.)

EXACT LOCATION of the spots is rendered difficult by the irradiation of the sensation produced, so that it is difficult to refer the sensation of warmth or cold definitely to the point stimulated. An investigation of the topography of these warm and cold spots shows that the apparatus for the appreciation of cold is much more extensively distributed over the body than that for the appreciation of warmth, as is evidenced from the diagram (Fig. 314) giving the topographic distribution of the cold and warm sense-organs on the palm of the hand. The temperature sense is best marked in the following regions of the body: the nipples, chest, nose, the anterior surface of the upper arm and the anterior surface of the fore-arm, and the surface of the abdomen. It is much less marked on the exposed parts of the body, such as the face and hands, and is but slight in the mucous membranes. Thus it is possible to drink hot fluid, such as tea, at a temperature which would be painful to the hand, and still more to any other part of the body. The scalp is also very insensitive to changes of temperature. The acuteness of the temperature sense varies considerably with the condition of the skin and with the previous stimulation of the sense organs. The sense is most acute at about ordinary skin temperature, *i.e.* between 27° and 32° C. At this temperature the skin can appreciate a difference of $\frac{1}{5}$° C. When the

skin is very cold or very hot the temperature sense is not nearly so delicate. This sense presents the phenomenon of adaptation in a marked degree. It is a familiar experience that, on coming from the external air on a cold day into a warm room, a sensation of warmth is experienced all over the body. In a few minutes this sensation wears off. On now leaving the room to go outside again, the sensation of cold is at once appreciated, to disappear in its turn after a few minutes. The effect of adaptation is still better shown by the experiment of taking three basins of water, *a*, *b*, and *c*; *a* contains cold water, *b* tepid water, *c* hot water. The left hand is immersed in the cold water and the right hand in the hot water for a few minutes. On now placing both hands into the basin of tepid water it feels hot to the left hand and cold to the right hand. Such experiences as this led Weber to the conclusion that the essential stimulus for the temperature sense was not the actual temperature to which the sense organs were subjected, but the fact of a change of temperature. He imagined that, while the temperature sense-organs were being warmed, a sensation of warmth was produced, and when their temperature was being lowered, a sensation of cold. Such a theory would not however account for the fact that, above a certain temperature, water may feel warm and the feeling may continue so long as the skin continues to be stimulated. On a cold day the air may feel cold to the face and the feeling may last the whole time that the face is exposed. Moreover we have in the temperature sense conditions which remind one of the after images which occur in the eye. If a penny be pressed on the forehead and then removed the sensation of cold lasts some little time after the penny has been removed. In this case a sensation of cold is produced although the end organs are being gradually warmed up after the removal of the penny. In order to account for these facts Hering, at a time when the differentiation of hot and cold spots had not yet been effected, suggested that the temperature sense organs could be regarded as having a zero point at which no sensation was produced. If their temperature was raised above this point a sensation of warmth was produced and *vice versa*. The zero point however was not a fixed one, but could move upwards to a certain extent on prolonged exposure to high temperature, or downwards on prolonged exposure to a low temperature. In the light of the researches of Blix and Goldscheider we should have to apply Hering's theory of a zero point to each of the temperature end organs separately.

A cold pencil passed over a warm spot evokes no sensation whatsoever. If however a pencil considerably warmer than the skin be passed over a cold spot, this may be excited so that the paradoxical result is produced of a sensation of cold as the result of stimulation by a warm body. It is a familiar fact that the immediate effect of entering a hot bath is very much the same as that of entering a cold bath, viz. a rise of blood pressure and contraction of the unstriated muscles of the skin and hair follicles with the production of 'goose skin.' It has been suggested that the distinctive quality of a sensation of *hot* as compared with that of *warm* is due to the

simultaneous stimulation of warm spots and cold spots. When testing the distribution of the temperature sense, it is found that the sense of cold is evoked more promptly than that of warmth. This is interpreted as showing that the end organs for the warm sense are situated more deeply than those for cold. We have no evidence as to the histological identity of these organs.

THE SENSE OF TOUCH

By means of the sense of touch we arrive at a conclusion as to the qualities, such as shape, texture, hardness, &c., of the bodies with which the skin is in contact. In this judgment however, very many other sensations are involved besides those which can be regarded as strictly tactile. Thus the hardness of an object signifies its resistance to deformation, besides its power of deforming the skin surface with which it is in contact; the former quality, *i.e.* of resistance, is one which involves the muscular sense, since we judge of it by the extent to which we can move our muscles without causing any alteration of the surface of the object.

The tactile sensibility of the skin as a whole, like its temperature sensibility, is due to the presence in it of a number of touch spots, *i.e.* small areas which are extremely sensitive, separated by areas almost or entirely insensitive to pressure. The tactile sensibility of any part is proportional to the number of such touch spots present. If the calf of the leg be shaved and then tested by pressing on it with a fine bristle or hair it will be found that the minimal stimulation used evokes sensation only at certain definite points, the 'touch spots.' In a square centimetre of such skin there may be about fifteen touch spots. On thrusting a fine needle into one of these spots a sharply localised sensation of pressure is produced unaccompanied by any painful quality and often described as having a 'shotty' character, as of a little hard object embedded in the skin and there pressed upon. These touch spots are arranged chiefly around the hairs, lying usually on the side from which the hair slopes. They vary in number according to the part of the body which is the subject of investigation. Thus the dorsal surface of the finger contains about seven times as many touch spots as an equal area between the shoulders. In some regions, such as the skin over subcutaneous surfaces of bone, as much as one centimetre may intervene between two neighbouring touch spots. They have no relation to the warm and cold spots; they are entirely absent from the cornea, the glans penis, and the conjunctiva of the upper lid.

RESPONSE TO DIFFERENT STIMULI. The adequate stimulus for these tactile nerve endings is not so much pressure as deformation of surface. It appears to matter little whether the surface be deformed by pulling it or by pushing an instrument into it. The ineffectiveness of mere pressure is shown by dipping the finger into a vessel of mercury. The sensation of pressure is noted only at the point where the finger passes through the surface of the mercury, and this is the only part where there is an actual deformation of the skin, due to the sudden

passage from the pressure of the mercury to the negligible pressure of the outside air. The tactile apparatus is smarter in its response than any other of the sense organs. On this account stimuli are still perceived as discrete, when they are repeated at a rhythm which would result in complete fusion in the case of any of the other sense organs. Thus if a bristle be attached to a tuning-fork and allowed to press on the skin, the vibrations of the fork are perceived by the ear as a continuous sound and by the skin as a series of discontinuous taps. Faradic currents when applied to the skin can be perceived as separate when repeated at the rate of 130 per second. The sensations evoked by placing the finger against the edge of a cog-wheel do not become continuous until the wheel is revolving at such a rate that the stimulation on the skin by the serrations occurs at a greater rate than 500 or 600 per second. The tactile apparatus resembles all the other skin sense organs in showing adaptation. A stimulus after continuing for some time may become ineffective. We are usually entirely unaware of the stimulation of our skin by the pressure of the clothes, and even an unwonted stimulation, such as that of the mucous membrane of the mouth by a plate carrying artificial teeth, though almost unbearable during

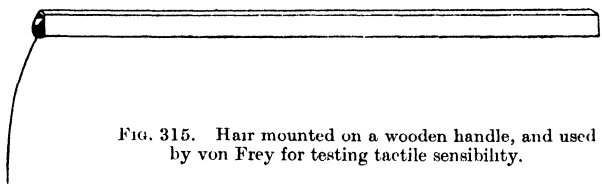


FIG. 315. Hair mounted on a wooden handle, and used by von Frey for testing tactile sensibility.

the first day, rapidly becomes less, and in a few days it is not perceived at all.

In order to test the sensitiveness of touch we may use the method introduced by Hensen, viz. the bending of a glass-wool fibre. We can determine the pressure at which any given fibre will bend, and if we find by trial the fibre which just evokes sensation when pressed on the skin, we know exactly the force which we are applying to the skin. Von Frey employed hairs of different thickness for the same purpose (Fig. 315). The following represents the minimal excitability of the surface of different parts of the body when tested in this way.

	Grm. per sq mm
Tongue and nose	2
Lips	2·5
Finger-tip and forehead	3
Back of finger	5
Palm, arm, thigh	7
Fore-arm	8
Back of hand	12
Calf, shoulder	16
Abdomen	26
Outside of thigh	26
Shin and sole	28
Back of fore-arm	33
Loins	48

The sensitiveness of the sense organs in the skin is probably much greater than that of the nerve trunks themselves. Thus Tigerstedt found that the minimal mechanical stimulus necessary to excite the exposed nerve amounted to 0·2 grm. moving at 140 mm. per second. For the touch spots von Frey found that 0·2 grm. moving at 0·17 mm. a second is an adequate stimulus.

In testing the sensibility of any surface it is important to remember that the hairs themselves form very effective tactile organs. The touch spots are distributed in greatest profusion around hair follicles, and there is a rich plexus of nerve fibres round the root of each hair. A slight touch applied to the hair acts on these as on the long end of a lever, the hair being pivoted at the surface of the skin, so that pressure on the hair is transmitted, increased five or more times in force, to the hair follicle and the surrounding nerve endings. The actual sensibility of any part is therefore much diminished by removal of the hairs. On 9 sq. mm. of the skin, from which the hairs had been shaved, the minimal stimulus necessary to evoke a tactile sensation was found to be 36 mg., whereas on the same surface before it was shaved 2 mg. was effective.

WEBER'S LAW. The smallest increment or decrement of stimulus which determines a perceptible difference of sensation must, according to Weber's law, always bear the same ratio to the whole stimulus. In measuring such differences it is best to apply the stimulus successively to the same surface of the skin rather than simultaneously to adjoining areas. The time interval between two successive stimuli should not be more than five seconds and the duration of the stimuli should be equal. Weber found that in the terminal phalanx of the finger the minimal perceptible difference was about one-thirtieth, but the ratio was not the same for all regions of the skin nor for all individuals. The following represents the liminal difference in various skin regions:

Forehead, lips, and cheeks . . .	1/30th to 1/40th
Back of fore-arm, of leg, and of thigh; back of hand, and first and second phalanx of finger, &c. . . .	1/10th to 1/20th
All parts of the foot, surface of leg, and thigh	more than 1/10th

THE SPATIAL QUALITY OF TOUCH. DISCRIMINATION. If any part of the skin be stimulated the subject of the experiment can tell at once the exact situation of the excited spot. If two points be stimulated simultaneously excitation is perceived as double, *i.e.* as proceeding from two points, provided the distance between the points exceeds a certain amount, varying in different parts of the body. The power of discrimination, *i.e.* of judging whether a stimulus is single or double, can be tested by arming the points of a pair of compasses with small pieces of cork and then seeing how far apart the points must be when pressed on the skin in order that the stimulus may be perceived as double. The following Table represents this distance for various regions of the body:

DISTANCE IN MM.

Skin region.	mm.
Tip of tongue	1·1
Volar surface of finger tip	2·3
Dorsum of third phalanx	6·8
Palm of hand	11·3
Back of hand	31·6
Back of neck	54·0
Middle of back, upper arm, and thigh	67·1

When touch spots are sought out for stimulation with the points of a compass, the distance at which the excitation is perceived as double is much diminished, as is shown by the following Table of distances for the touch spots in millimetres:

Skin region.	Distance of touch spots.
Volar side of finger tips	0·1
Palm of hand	0·1
Fore-arm (flexor side)	0·5
Upper arm	0·6
Back.	0·4

The compass points are perceived to lie apart with a special distinctness when they are applied to touch spots lying on different lines which radiate from the hair follicles. The figures given in the first Table have no relation to touch spots, but show the average distance over which an excitation can be perceived as double.

The delicacy of discrimination of any part is largely associated with its mobility. Thus in the arm the delicacy increases continuously from the shoulder to the finger-tip. If the localising power for touch on the shoulder be taken as 100, that of the finger tips will be represented by 2582. In the same way there is a continuous decrease of the distances of discrimination as we pass along the cheek from the ear to the lip, *i.e.* from the non-mobile to the mobile part. The power of discrimination is increased to a certain extent by practice and largely diminished by fatigue. Any factor which diminishes the tactile sensibility of the part, such as cold, will also diminish the power of discrimination.

LOCALIZATION OF TOUCH. The fact that we can localise the point of stimulation shows that every tactile sensation derived from the surface of the body, besides the qualities of intensity and extensity, has also associated with it a characteristic quality dependent on its position. This localised quality of a tactile sensation was called by Lotze 'local sign.' Among psychologists there has been much discussion as to how far this 'local sign' is an inborn attribute of the sensation of every point on the body surface, or how far it is acquired by experience and based on memory of movements and muscular impressions. In the retina we have a sense organ which, like the skin, possesses local sign, but in far higher degree, the power of discrimination of the retina being three thousand times as great as that of the most sensitive part of the skin. Cases of congenital cataract occur in which the subjects have been blind from birth. By extraction of the cataract we can give such

persons the power of sight. It is found that at first there is no power of localising visual impressions. The 'local sign' is developed only in response to experience, by comparing simultaneous visual, tactile, and motor sensations. By analogy we might ascribe the local sign of cutaneous sensations to a similar causation. Our study of the spinal animal has indeed given us a physical or histological conception of local sign. We know that stimulation of any part of the body evokes an appropriate reaction, the nature of which is determined by the central connections of the entering nerve fibres. A fibre entering at one segment must therefore come into relation with a different set of motor cells from those which are set into action by a fibre entering one segment lower down. Every nerve fibre from the skin will therefore have an appropriate complex of motor paths in functional connection with its central endings, and when the activity of these reflex paths comes to be represented in consciousness, it is evident that the sensation derived from each point must differ from that derived from any other point of the skin by virtue of the differing motor events actually or potentially excited from the two points. In ascribing therefore 'local sign' to coincident muscular sensations, and to the memory and experience of past movements, we are giving but an imperfect explanation; since the difference between the sensations from different parts, which are at the bottom of our powers of localisation, has its origin in the structure of the central nervous system itself and is present from the very beginning of the evolution of a reactive nervous system.

PROJECTION OF TOUCH. Since the alterations in the surface of the skin which give rise to tactile sensations are habitually caused by contact with external objects, we come to regard the sensations themselves, not as changes in the skin, but as qualities of the object which touch the skin, *i.e.* we project the sensation. The projection is however not so great as in the case of visual sensations. Cutaneous sensations we always consider as qualities of an object immediately affecting and altering the condition of ourselves, whereas the visual sensations are referred at once to objects lying right away from ourselves, so that we are not aware that any change has taken place in our bodies as a result of the entering of rays of light into the eye.

It is remarkable to what extent projection of touch sensation may occur. Thus a surgeon actually lengthens his fingers by using a probe. When he is probing for dead bone he feels the grating of the bone, not at his finger-tips, but he projects the sensation to the end of the probe. In the same way tactile sensations evoked by the contact of bodies with the insentient endings of hair are referred to the ends of the hairs rather than to the hair follicles where the nerve impulses actually come into being.

The dependence of local sign on habitual experience is shown by the various tactile illusions, such as the well-known experiment of Aristotle. If with the eyes shut we cross the first and middle fingers and bring them in this position in contact with a pea, we should at once say that two peas lay under the fingers. This is especially marked if the pea be rolled

between the fingers. The two sides of the fingers which come in contact with the pea usually touch two different objects, and these parts of the skin would have to be re-educated, *i.e.* their local sign would have to be changed in accordance with the changed conditions, before the pea would be perceived in its true state as single.

THE PAIN SENSE

When the pressure of a hard object on the skin is increased beyond that necessary to evoke a tactile sensation, at a certain pressure the quality of sensation changes and it becomes painful. For the evolution of the race as well as for the preservation of the individual this pain sense is all-important; it is the expression in consciousness of the reflexes of self-preservation which can be evoked in the spinal animal by stimuli which are nocuous, *i.e.* calculated to do actual damage to the tissues of the body. Thus when a sharp point is pressed on the skin the sensation becomes painful just before the pressure is sufficient to cause penetration. The so-called trophic lesions which occur in parts devoid of sensation are determined for the most part by the lack of the pain sense and the consequent failure of the preservative reflexes of the part. It is remarkable that pain may result from changes in organs which are devoid of ordinary sensibility. Thus the intestine may be cut, sewn, or handled without arousing any sensation whatsoever. A strong contraction of the muscular wall or increased distension of the gut will however evoke a griping pain. In the same way the ureters, which are normally devoid of sensation, can give rise to excruciating agony when they are contracted firmly on a retained calculus.

We are accustomed to distinguish many different qualities of pain, but on analysis it will be found that these qualities depend on the nature of the sense organ which is simultaneously stimulated. Thus a burning pain denotes simultaneous stimulation of the pain sense and of the nerve endings to the warm spots. A throbbing pain results when the vessels of the part are dilated and the part is tense with effused lymph, so that each pulse of the vessels causes an exacerbation of the painful stimulation and perhaps also stimulation of the tactile end organs.

The sense of pain has often been ascribed to over-maximal stimulation of any form of sensory nerve. Although it is true that over-stimulation of the auditory or optic nerve by a loud sound or a bright light may be extremely unpleasant, the sensations evoked do not partake of the characters of painful sensations such as would be produced by pricking or burning the skin. Moreover a careful investigation of the sensory points on the skin brings out the fact that there are besides the tactile and temperature spots, other spots from which only painful sensations can be evoked. We have seen already that over-stimulation of a touch spot does not, as a matter of fact, cause pain. The pain spots which are distributed among the touch and temperature spots are insensitive to a low grade of stimulus. As the strength of the stimulus is increased a point is suddenly reached at which the sensation evoked is painful. Moreover in parts of the body tactile and

temperature sense are entirely wanting, though painful impressions can be easily evoked. The best example of this is seen in the cornea, minimal stimulation of which evokes pain, but nothing which can be regarded as a tactile sensation. The specific quality of pain sensation is shown moreover by the fact that in many cases of disease the sense of pain may be abolished without the sense of touch. Such a patient is said to suffer from analgesia, but not anæsthesia. When pricked on an analgesic part the patient can say that he is pricked, but has no objection to any amount of repetition of the stimulus, since the sensation is entirely devoid of painful character. In the case of the skin the sense organs concerned in pain appear to be the free intra-epithelial nerve endings. Pain is found to differ somewhat from the other skin sensations in being much more uniformly distributed, more difficult to locate accurately, and more hardy. Thus while most sense organs are rendered less sensitive by cutting off blood supply, pain at first reacts more violently.

THE WORK OF HEAD ON CUTANEOUS SENSIBILITY

In a long series of researches on man Head has shown that three different classes of sensations may be evoked by stimuli applied to the surface of the body. In order to study the functions of the afferent nerves Head has investigated not only the condition of patients, the subjects of accidental division of cutaneous or other nerves, but also (in conjunction with Rivers) the effects of nerve section on himself. In the first place, it is necessary to differentiate deep sensibility from cutaneous sensibility proper. After desensitisation of any given area of the skin it is still possible in this area to appreciate deep pressure and pain, and the localisation of the situation of the pressure is fairly accurately carried out. On the other hand, the sensations of light touch, as well as of temperature and the pain evoked by a light pin prick, are absent. The sensations of pressure, as well as of deep pain or pressure pain, are therefore carried by the nerves of deep sensibility. These nerves are not the cutaneous nerves, but are derived from the sensory elements in the muscular nerves. To the fingers, for instance, they run in the tendons of the muscles. Simultaneous division, as by a circular-saw cut, of the cutaneous nerves and tendons to the fingers will abolish deep as well as superficial sensibility. Deep sensibility must therefore be classified, anatomically at any rate, with the ' organic sensations ' of muscular effort and of position, which will be dealt with in a subsequent section.

Cutaneous sensibility proper Head divides into two categories, namely, *protopathic* and *epicritic* sensibility. These two forms of sensibility may be studied separately on an area of skin, which has been desensitised by section of its cutaneous nerves, during the process of regeneration of these nerves.

Protopathic sensibility returns to the skin at an interval of seven to twenty-six weeks after the nerve section. At this time it is possible to appreciate in the area under investigation the sensation of *pain*, and

to recognise *roughness* of an object rubbed on the skin. Localisation is still somewhat diffuse and inaccurate, so that the sensation evoked by stimulation of the protopathic area may be referred to some adjoining normal part of the skin. The temperature sense is also present, but of a low grade. Thus heat over 38° C. and cold under 24° C. can be appreciated as such, but the intervening temperatures produce no sensation. Sensations evoked in the protopathic area are strongly endowed with what may be termed 'affective' character. Thus painful stimulation is much more unpleasant when applied to this area than would a similar stimulation be when applied to a normal area of skin.

In contradistinction to the deep sensibility which is diffuse, protopathic sensibility is distributed in spots, so that heat and cold spots for instance may be distinguished as on the normal skin. It is interesting that the glans penis is normally provided only with protopathic sensibility.

Epicritic sensibility does not return to the desensitised area until one to two years have elapsed since the division of the nerves. With its return the affective character of the protopathic sensations at once disappears and is replaced by an accurate discrimination of the nature and extent of the stimulus; the tactile sense proper, *i.e.* the appreciation of the lightest touch applied to the skin and its accurate localisation, belonging entirely to the epicritic sensations. The power of discriminating the distance between two points applied to the skin simultaneously is also a function of the epicritic sensibility.

With the discriminating tactile sense returns also the power of appreciating fine differences of temperature, *i.e.* differences between 26° and 37° C.

This classification may be summed as follows:

Deep sensibility . . .	including	Pressure sense Pressure pain
Protopathic sensibility . . (characters: high threshold, painful and indefinite)	,,	Skin pain Heat over 38° C Cold under 24° C.
Epicritic sensibility . . (characters: accurately localised, low threshold)	,,	Tactile sense proper Pain localisation Discrimination Heat and cold between 26° and 37° C.

Head and Thompson have shown that on entering the cord these various sensations undergo a new grouping. Thus the pain impulses, which arise in and are carried by the muscular nerves, the nerves of deep sensibility, unite with those which run in the protopathic system, so that a lesion of the cord affecting the pain tracts will abolish all forms of pain, whether arising from the skin or from the underlying tissues. In the same way all temperature sensations, whether the fine ones of the epicritic system or the coarser ones of the protopathic system, run together in the cord. If the

heat sense is affected by a lesion of the cord all forms and all degrees of the sensation are affected in like measure, and the same applies to the sensations of cold.

The conduction paths of these different sensations in the cord are shown in Fig. 176 on page 358.

THE HISTOLOGICAL CHARACTER OF THE ELEMENTS INVOLVED IN CUTANEOUS SENSATIONS

A very large number of different forms of sensory nerve endings have been described in relation to the skin. Their exact allocation among the different cutaneous senses presents considerable difficulties.

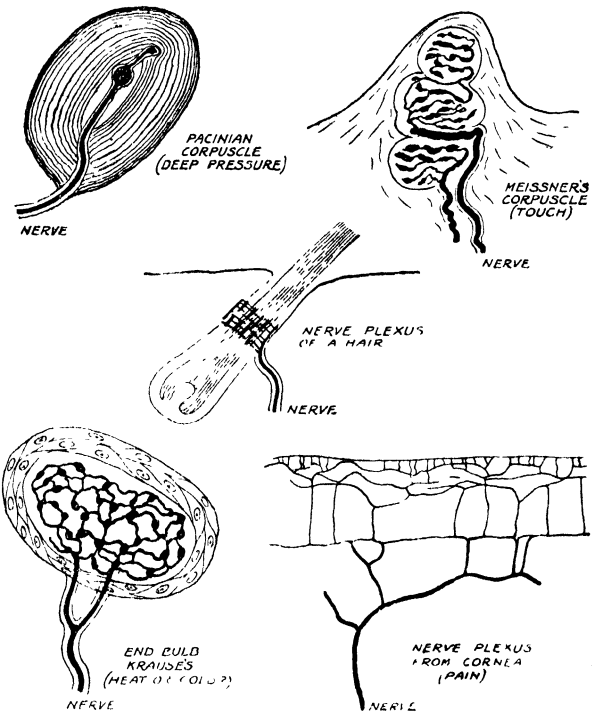


FIG 316. Skin end organs and the sensations which they arouse.

As regards touch, two kinds of elements are probably involved. In the first place, the most sensitive tactile apparatus are the follicles of the short hairs. Around these follicles we find a sheaf of nerve fibres, some of which end in the hair papilla and others form a ring near the level of the openings of the sebaceous glands. The other tactile end organ is Meissner's corpuscle. The distribution of these in the skin is not however dissimilar to that of the power of *discrimination*, with which they may be specially

connected. Other end-organs which are supposed to be stimulated by changes of pressure and therefore to be tactile, are the organs of Ruffini which occur in the papillæ of the palm and fingers and, lying more deeply, the elastic tissue spindles as well as the Golgi corpuscles and the Pacinian corpuscles in the subcutaneous tissue.

As regards pain, we know that in the cornea, which possesses only the pain sense, the sensory nerve-endings are in the form of branches of axis cylinders among the epithelial cells. Similar free nerve endings occur in the epidermis all over the body, and it is therefore imagined that these have the special function of subserving the pain sense. We have at present no evidence as to the histological character of the organs by which the sensations of heat and cold are aroused.

PART VI

SENSATIONS OF SMELL AND TASTE

EVERY living organism shows a susceptibility, *i.e.* a power of reaction, to chemical stimuli. Thus the plasmodium of myxomycetes, placed on a strip of filter-paper of which one end is immersed in an infusion of dead leaves and the other in distilled water, will crawl along the paper towards the infusion of leaves. If the infusion of dead leaves be replaced by a weak solution of quinine, the plasmodium will be repelled and will travel along towards the vessel of water. These movements of attraction and repulsion are spoken of as positive and negative chemiotaxis respectively. A similar chemical sensibility accounts for the clustering of aerobic bacteria towards the surface of a fluid, *i.e.* where the density of oxygen is greater, or around chlorophyll-containing algæ which are giving off oxygen in the sunlight. The aggregation of leucocytes round microbes or other foreign particles in the tissues is also determined by their chemiotactic sensibility. *Chemiotaxis* then represents the faculty by means of which these minute organisms are able to adapt themselves to chemical changes in their environment and to react to chemical substances at a considerable distance from themselves. If we could endow these elementary organisms with consciousness and with a sense of their surroundings, we should have to say that they became aware of the presence of some harmful or attractive material at some distance from themselves. The sensation they received from these distant objects would be therefore a projected sensation.

On the other hand, a chemical sensibility of the body surface or part of it furnishes the criterion by which particles are accepted and ingested as food or rejected as useless or harmful. Consciousness in this case would be of something affecting and in contact with some part of the organism itself. The sensation would not be projected further than the periphery of the body.

These two kinds of chemical sense—the projected and the surface sense—are found throughout almost all classes of the animal kingdom, and in the higher animals at least are known as the senses of smell and taste. The former sense in many animals attains a high degree of complexity and is prepotent in determining the behaviour of an animal in response to the changes in its surroundings. In the elasmobranch fishes the olfactory lobes form the greater part of the higher brain, and extirpation of them produces a loss of spontaneity and of delayed reactions similar to that which can be brought about in higher types by extirpation of the whole of the cerebral hemispheres.

The sense of taste, on the other hand, is used only for sampling the nature of substances taken into the mouth and determining their ingestion or rejection. It is therefore much simpler in its extent and more susceptible of analysis.

THE SENSE OF TASTE

The end organs which subserve the function of taste are represented by the taste buds. These are oval bodies (Fig. 317) embedded in the stratified epithelium, which occur scattered over the tongue, a few being also found on the hard palate, the anterior pillars of the fauces, the tonsils, the back of the pharynx, the larynx, and the inner surface of the cheek. On the tongue they are found chiefly in the grooves around the circumvallate papillæ of man, and in the grooves of the papillæ foliatæ of rabbits. A few are also present on many of the fungiform papillæ. They consist of medullary and cortical parts, the former being composed of columnar or sustentacular cells, the latter of thin fusiform cells, the taste cells proper. The nerve fibres concerned with taste end in arborisations among these taste cells. The peripheral end of the fusiform cell projects as a delicate process through the orifice of the taste bud, so that it can come in contact with the fluids contained in the cavity of the mouth. A sapid substance, to stimulate these organs, must be in solution; hence quinine in powder is almost tasteless, owing to its slight solubility in neutral or alkaline fluids.

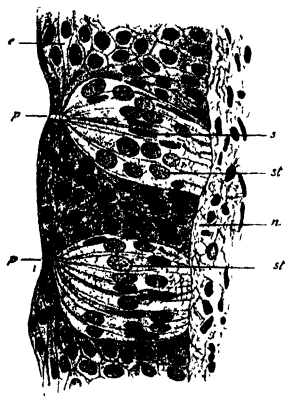


FIG. 317. Two taste buds from the tongue.

e, Stratified epithelium; *p*, opening or pore of taste bud; *s*, gustatory cells; *st*, sustentacular cells. (KÖLLIKER.)

DIFFERENTIATION OF TASTE. The number of different tastes is very limited. We distinguish four primitive taste sensations, viz. sweet, sour, bitter, and salt, some authors adding to this an alkaline taste and a metallic taste. Many substances owe their distinctive character when taken into the mouth to the fact that they stimulate not only the taste nerves but also the nerve endings of common sensation. Thus acids, when in weak solution, have an astringent character besides their sour taste, and if strong produce a burning sensation. The primitive taste sensations can affect one another if excited simultaneously. With weak stimulation one taste may practically annul another. Thus a dilute solution of sugar is rendered almost tasteless by the addition to it of a few grains of common salt. If the primitive taste sensations are more strongly excited we get a mixed sensation, in which the components can still be distinguished. Thus, adding sugar to lemon juice not only diminishes its acidity but produces a mixed sensation, the quality of which

is pleasant and in which the components, sour and sweet, can be easily distinguished. We get no such fusing of sensations as in the eye, where a sensation of white light may result from stimulation of the retina by two complementary colours. Stimulation of one kind of taste organ heightens the sensibility of the other taste organs. Thus after the application of salt, distilled water may taste sweet.

That these primitive taste sensations are served by different nerve endings is shown by the following facts:

(*a*) The tongue is not equally sensitive at all points to all four tastes. Thus the back of the tongue is more sensitive to bitter, while the tip and sides of the tongue react more easily to sweet and sour substances. A difference may be detected between even the circumvallate papillæ themselves; a mixture of quinine and sugar applied to one papilla may excite chiefly a bitter taste, while with an adjacent papilla a sweet taste may predominate.

(*b*) By certain drugs we can depress the sensibility of the taste organs, and we then find that the various tastes are affected to different degrees. Thus on painting the tongue with cocaine the first effect is a diminution of tactile and pain sensibility, so that the application of acid evokes a very sour taste without any of the astringent or stinging sensations normally aroused by the contact with the acid. After this point the taste sensations are also abolished. The bitter sensation disappears first, then the sweet, and then the sour, while the taste of salt appears to remain unaffected. On the other hand, if the leaves of Gymnema sylvestre be chewed, the sensations of bitter and sweet are abolished, leaving intact the acid and salt tastes, and also the general sensibility of the mucous membrane.

TASTE AND CHEMICAL CONSTITUTION. There is no doubt that the stimulating effect of any chemical substance on the taste nerves has relation to its chemical constitution. Thus a sour taste is determined by the presence of H ions; the alkaline taste by that of OH ions. The fact that certain acids, *e.g.* acetic, have a stronger sour taste than would correspond to their dissociation, *i.e.* to the number of H ions present, is due to the fact that these acids penetrate more easily into the gustatory cells than the mineral acids with a larger dissociation coefficient. All the α-amino-acids have a sweet taste. On the other hand, the polypeptides produced by the combination of these amino-acids, as well as the peptones derived from the hydrolysis of proteins, have a bitter taste. Most of the alcohols and sugars have a sweet taste, while the metallic derivatives of these substances are bitter. We do not yet understand the law which determines whether any given substance shall have a taste at all, and what its taste should be.

The nerves of taste are the glossopharyngeal, which supplies the back part of the tongue, and the lingual branch of the fifth nerve and the chorda tympani, which supply the front part. All these fibres are probably connected with a continuous column of grey matter in the brain stem, which represents the splanchnic afferent nucleus of the fifth nerve, the nervus intermedius, and the glossopharyngeal. Some authors have stated that

all the taste fibres of the fifth nerve are derived from the glossopharyngeal by the communication through the tympanic plexus and the chorda tympani nerve, while Gowers has recorded a case of complete unilateral loss of taste in which there was a lesion destroying the fifth nerve, the glossopharyngeal being intact. It seems possible that the actual region of the taste nerve may vary, the fibres running to the splanchnic column of grey matter being contained sometimes in the fifth, sometimes in the glossopharyngeal, and sometimes in both.

Most of our so-called tastes should rather be designated flavours, and are dependent, not on the gustatory nerves, but on the sense of smell.

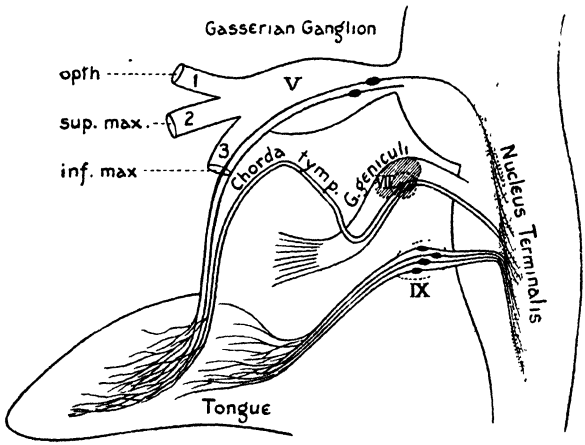


FIG. 318. Diagram showing origin and course of the nerve fibres of taste.

When the olfactory sense is destroyed very little difference is to be perceived between an onion and an apple. The epicure with a fine palate has really educated his sense of smell and would be but little satisfied with the simple sensations derived from his four sets of gustatory end organs.

THE SENSE OF SMELL

The psychical analysis of olfactory sensations is rendered difficult by the fact that this sense in man plays but a small part in his usual adaptations. We have thus to deal with a sense which is in many respects vestigial. We see traces of great complexity in its possibilities of performance, but are baffled in our endeavours to reduce the whole of the phenomena to the simpler factors of which they are composed. Moreover, like all vestigial functions, the extent to which the sense is developed varies from one individual to another. Many for instance are unable to appreciate the smell of vanilla, of hydrocyanic acid, or of violets. On the other hand, in animals such as the dog, the olfactory sense seems to play a great part in determining behaviour, and the nervous associations, which are the physiological basis of ideas, must in these animals be largely connected with olfactory im-

pressions. Another factor which diminishes the importance of olfactory sensations in man is the ease with which the sense organ becomes fatigued. It often happens that the inmates of a room are perfectly comfortable and may perceive no fault in the ventilation, although a newcomer from the outside at once remarks that the air is foul.

THE ORGAN OF SMELL is situated at the upper part of the nasal cavities. Here the mucous membrane covering the superior and middle turbinate bones and the corresponding part of the septum is different from that covering the rest of the nasal passages. Over the lower parts of the nasal cavities the mucous membrane is of the ordinary respiratory type, and is composed of ciliated columnar epithelium containing a number of goblet-cells. In the olfactory part the epithelium is much thicker, of a yellow colour, and apparently composed of a layer of columnar cells resting on several layers of nuclei. These nuclei belong to the olfactory cells proper, true spindle-shaped nerve cells with one process extending towards the mucus covering the free surface, while the other is continued along channels in the bone, and through the cribriform plate as one of the non-medullated olfactory nerve fibres. These nerve fibres dip into the olfactory lobes,

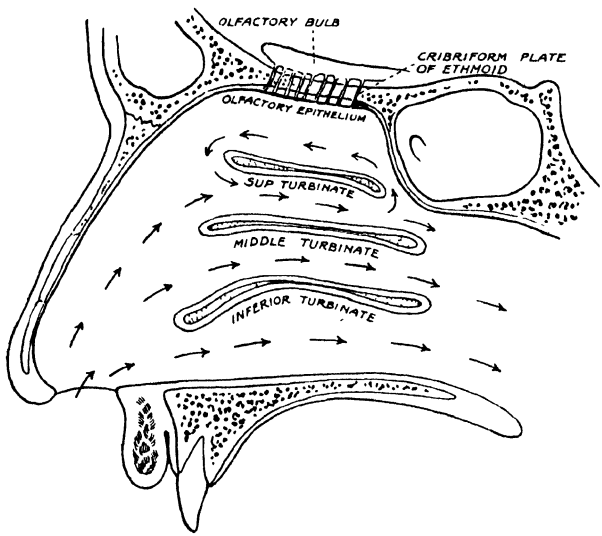


FIG. 319. Antero-posterior section through the nasal fossa. The arrows show the direction of the air currents during inspiration.

where they terminate by a much-branched arborisation or end basket in the so-called olfactory glomeruli, in close connection with a similarly branched dendrite of the large 'mitral' cells of the olfactory lobe. The axons from these latter carry the olfactory impulse towards the rest of the brain. In the connective tissue basis (dermis) of the mucous membrane are a number of small mucous or serous glands (Bowman's glands) whose office it is to keep the surface of the membrane constantly moist.

In ordinary respiration the stream of air never passes higher than the anterior inferior border of the superior turbinate bone, so that it does not come in contact with the olfactory mucous membrane. The sensations of smell which are aroused during ordinary respiration depend on diffusion from the respiratory air into the still air of the upper olfactory portion of the nasal cavity. The direction of olfactory attention is achieved by sniffing; in this act the nostrils are dilated and the direction of the anterior part of the nasal respiratory chamber altered, so that the stream of entering air is directed towards the upper olfactory portion of the cavity.

The fact that the air, which enters the nasal cavity during respiration, does not come into direct relationship with the olfactory epithelium has the following advantages:

(1) The cold inspired air does not come into contact with and cause damage to the sensory surface.

(2) Foreign particles carried by the air (including bacteria) do not get deposited there. The position of the epithelium at the very top of the nasal cavity is an additional safeguard.

(3) The olfactory epithelium is not dried by the rush of dry air across it.

(4) Noxious vapours only reach it indirectly and therefore do not cause permanent damage as they otherwise might.

The fact that we are able to perceive smells when breathing normally shows that the odorous substance must be diffusible, *i.e.* gaseous in form. The amount of substance necessary to excite sensation is extremely minute. Thus ·01 mg. of mercaptan diffused in 230 cubic metres of air is still distinctly perceptible. In this case a litre of air would contain only ·00000004 mg. of the substance, and the amount actually in contact with the olfactory epithelium would be still smaller. It is possible however to show the presence of these odorous substances in air by physical means. Tyndall pointed out that air containing a small proportion of odorous substances absorbed radiant heat to a much greater degree than did pure air. Thus in one experiment air containing patchouli absorbed radiant heat thirty-two times as strongly as the pure air. Most odorous substances possess large molecules and have therefore high vapour densities. On this account the smell tends to hang about objects, the rate of diffusion of the vapour being only small.

MODE OF ACTION OF SMELLS. Since the endings of the olfactory cells are bathed in fluid, it is evident that the odorous substances must be dissolved by this fluid before they can excite the olfactory nerve fibres, and in the case of aquatic animals we know that the projected chemical sense, which we call smell, can be aroused only by substances in solution. It is difficult to show in man that the nerve endings can be excited by solutions. Most of the experiments have been made with solutions which had an injurious effect upon the olfactory epithelium. According to Aronsohn it is possible to excite sensations of smell if the nasal cavity be filled with normal saline fluid, containing

a very small proportion of the odorous substance. To this experiment it has been objected that it is almost impossible to fill the nasal cavities without leaving some air spaces, so that the olfactory sensation obtained might have been due to stimulation of the olfactory cells in such a space. There is however no *a priori* reason to deny the probability of Aronsohn's conclusions.

Many olfactory stimuli owe their peculiar character to the simultaneous stimulation of other kinds of nerve endings. Thus a pungent smell, as that of ammonia, chlorine, &c., involves stimulation of the nerves of common sensibility, *i.e.* the fifth nerve, besides stimulation of the olfactory nerve.

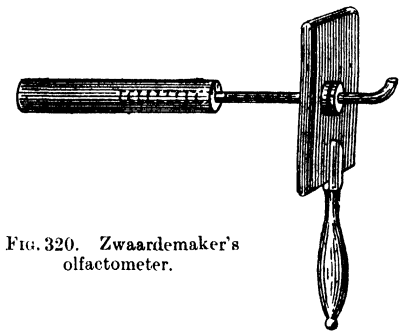


Fig. 320. Zwaardemaker's olfactometer.

No satisfactory classification of smells has yet been made. The following facts tend to show that there are a number of primitive sensations of smell, as of other sensations:

(*a*) Certain individuals, whose olfactory sense is in other respects normal, have no power of distinguishing some odours.

(*b*) The olfactory sense is easily fatigued. If it be fatigued so as to be absolutely insensitive for one kind of smell, it is still normally excitable for other smells.

(*c*) It is possible by mixing odoriferous substances in certain proportions to annul their effect on the olfactory organ. Thus 4 grm. of iodoform in 200 grm. of Peruvian balsam is almost odourless, and the same neutralisation of odours is obtained if the odour of each substance be allowed to act separately on each side by tubes inserted into each nostril.

For this purpose we may use the instrument invented by Zwaardemaker, called the olfactometer. This consists of a porous cylinder into which is inserted a tube. The porous cylinder is first immersed in the fluid whose porous qualities are to be tested, and when it is thoroughly soaked it is taken out, dried outside by a cloth, and inside by drawing air through it for a short time. One end of the bent tube is then inserted into the cylinder, which it must accurately fit, while the other end is placed in one nostril. The small wooden screen shown in Fig. 320 serves to shut off the smell of the fluid from the other nostril. When the observer breathes through the bent tube, the amount of vapour taken up from the cylinder will depend on the amount of surface exposed, and therefore can be diminished or increased by pushing the bent tube further in, or by drawing it out. If the tube is pushed in so far that the smell is only just perceptible, the length of the tube may be measured and taken as the liminal intensity of stimulus for the given substances, in its action on the olfactory nerve endings. This unit was called by the inventor of the instrument an 'olfactie.' By this means it is possible to make quantitative estimations of the olfactory sense on one individual and to compare them with observations made on other individuals. By using two such instruments it is possible to present different smells to the two nostrils. One obtains in this way combination effects which can be compared to the phenomenon which we have studied in dealing with binocular contrast.

PART VII

SENSATIONS OF MOVEMENT AND POSITION

In studying the phenomena of reflex movements, as presented by the spinal animal, our attention was drawn to the importance of the afferent impulses transmitted to the central organ by means of a special system of sense organs, called by Sherrington the proprioceptive system. These afferent impressions intervene at a later period in every reflex action than do the initiating sensory (exteroceptive) impulses. They arise as a result of the reflex movement itself, and serve to regulate the extent of this movement as well as the co-ordinated changes in the other muscles of the body. Whether they be synergic or antagonistic, the abolition of the impulses arising in this system has an effect similar to that of the destruction of the governor of an engine. The movements excited by peripheral stimulation become excessive and conflicting; there is no longer the give-and-take of the antagonistic muscles surrounding the joint, and the result is a state of disorder and inco-ordination, termed *ataxy*.

Of the proprioceptive impulses a certain proportion reach the cerebral cortex and arouse states of consciousness which we speak of as sensations of position, movement, or resistance, and which form the basis of judgments as to these conditions. In consciousness they are contrasted with the sensations arising from the other sense organs in the same way as they are in the subconscious regulation of the motor adaptations of the body. All the senses which we have so far considered give us information of *things*, *i.e.* of a material world which can affect ourselves, but which we conceive of as existing altogether apart from our sensations of it. Indeed the visual and auditory sensations we project to distances remote from the body. The sensations on the other hand, which are aroused through the intermediation of the proprioceptive system, we refer entirely to ourselves. By them we receive information of the condition of the material 'me,' *i.e.* of ourselves as things apart from the objects which surround us and the changes in which ordinarily excite our activity.

VOLITIONAL MOVEMENTS. Consciousness we have seen to be developed in proportion to the differentiation of the educatable association centres, which are responsible for our powers of ideation, and by means of which the different reflex movements which we call volitional are carried out, guided, augmented, or inhibited, according to the past experience of the individual. Volitional movement is therefore a movement determined by previous neural events, of which a part

at any rate is represented in consciousness as feeling, emotion, or desire. Where an act is involuntary, *i.e.* does not need the guidance of experience, individual or racial, for its performance, the afferent impulses which arouse it are also, as a rule, devoid of representation in consciousness. Thus we have no sensation of the passage of a bolus along the œsophagus. The proprioceptive impulses also only affect consciousness where they are necessary for the guidance of volitional movement. The tactile and gustatory impressions from the tongue have a very full representation in consciousness. Volition however only interferes for the rejection or acceptance of the food taken into the mouth, and is not required for the minute direction of the movements of mastication and deglutition. The *muscular* sensibility of the tongue, and therefore our voluntary control of its movement, is extremely slight, although there must be a continual flow of afferent impressions from the tongue to the lingual motor centres to guide the complex movements both of mastication and deglutition. In the case of the palate muscles, as of the œsophagus, muscular sensibility is not highly developed

It has been suggested that afferent impressions from the muscles can play only a subordinate part in our sensations of movement, since we are not aware of the part taken by each individual muscle in any given movement. Such a statement is absurd. We have no objective phenomenal experience of our muscles. All that we are aware of and can judge of by our other senses is the movement as a whole, and our sensation of movement is therefore referred to the whole movement and not to the individual muscles

The sensations arising in the proprioceptive system can be divided into two main classes :

(1) The sensation of the relative positions of parts of the body.

(2) The sensations which inform us of the position of the head, with regard to its surroundings, *i.e.* with regard to the direction of the pull of gravity. (It must be remembered that 'downwards' always means towards the centre of the earth, 'upwards' away from the centre of the earth, *i.e.* against the gravitational forces.) This orientation sense depends on the integrity of a special sense organ contained in the labyrinth of the internal ear. It is therefore sometimes spoken of as the labyrinthine sense.

THE SENSE OF RELATIVE POSITION, INCLUDING THE MUSCULAR SENSE

Without using our eyes we are able at any moment to tell the position of our limbs. If one arm be moved passively into any position we can without difficulty move the other arm into an exactly similar position. We thus know the extent to which we move the limb and the static position attained as the result of the movement. If the movement is resisted, we are able to adjust the force of the muscular contraction to the resistance, and to form therefore a fair idea as to the strength of the resistance.

(*a*) **PASSIVE MOVEMENTS.** A large number of different sense organs contribute to the formation of these judgments. In the appreciation of

passive movement the chief end organs involved are those in connection with the joints and their ligaments, though it is probable that the deeper sense organs in the soft parts around the joints also contribute to the total sensations. Cutaneous sensations apparently play but little part in the judgments of passive movement. It is true that the alternating movements of the hind limbs, which occur in a spinal animal when it is held up by the hands under the fore limbs, are started, partly at any rate, by the stretching of the skin of the thighs; but this effect is one rather of initiation of movement, and can hardly be regarded as proprioceptive in character.

The strength of the sensation of passive movement depends on the extent of the movement as well as on the rate with which it is carried out. The delicacy of perception varies in different joints. Thus in some joints a movement of 0·25° per second is appreciated as a movement, while in other joints the movement must be as extensive as 1·4° per second. It is more easily appreciated when the joint surfaces are pressed together than when they are pulled apart, showing that the nerve-endings in the joint surfaces play a part in the origination of the sensations.

(*b*) **THE SENSE OF MOVEMENT (MUSCULAR SENSATION).** This term is applied to those sensations by which we judge of the extent and force of any active movement which we may have carried out. Many authors have ascribed an important part in this act of judgment to the so-called 'sense of innervation,' *i.e.* a sense of the actual energy which is being discharged from the motor cells of the central nervous system to the muscles, and have thought that when we raise a weight we judge of its amount, not by the degree of stretching of the muscle or pressure on sensory nerves in the muscle, but by the amount of force we voluntarily put out to raise the weight. The fact however that we can judge of weights, when the muscles are made to contract by electrical stimuli and not by voluntary impulses, shows that this sense is in large part, if not entirely, peripheral. It is however very complex in nature, and is served by a whole array of different end-organs in the skin, joints, tendons, and muscles. The muscles themselves are known to be well supplied with afferent nerves. Stimulation of the central end of a muscular nerve may reflexly excite or inhibit movements of other muscles. Sherrington has shown that, after section of the motor roots, over one-third of the fibres in a muscular nerve remain undegenerated, proving their connection with the posterior root ganglia. The sensory nerve-endings in the muscle are represented partly by the tendon nerve endings and partly by the muscle spindles. The former are richly branched end arborisations of nerve fibres on the surface of the tendon bundles. The muscle spindles consist of one or more muscle fibres, often continuous with normal fibres, enclosed in a sheath composed of several layers of fibrous tissue with intervening lymph spaces. One or more nerve fibres pierce this sheath and, after making many spiral turns round the muscle fibres, branch freely and terminate in little knobs on the surface of the fibres (Figs. 321, 322). The cross striation of the muscle fibres within the spindle is but faintly marked. It is evident that the continuity of these sense organs with the

contracting muscle ensures in the best possible way that the organs should be affected by the slightest change of tension of the muscle, and should

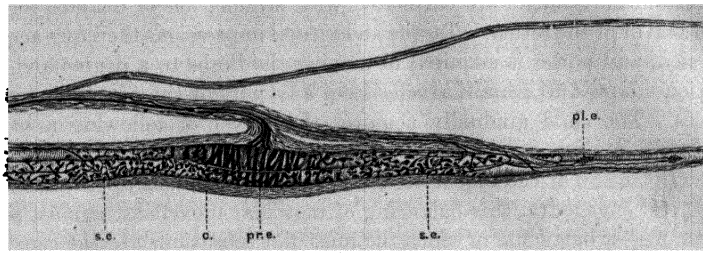


FIG. 321. A neuro-muscular spindle of the cat. (RUFFINI.)

c, capsule; *pr.e*, primary ending; *s e*, secondary ending; *pl.e*, plate ending (all these are probably sensory in function).

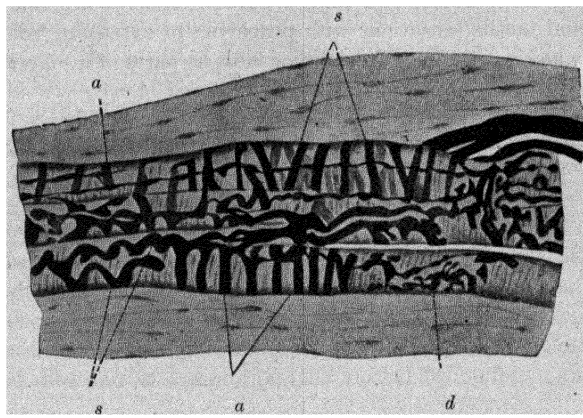


FIG. 322. Part of a muscle spindle more highly magnified

n, nerve fibres passing to spindle, *a*, annular endings of axis cylinders, *s* spiral endings, *d*, dendritic endings; *sh*, connective-tissue sheath of spindle (RUFFINI.)

transmit information of the state of tension to the central nervous system.

THE PSYCHOLOGICAL SIGNIFICANCE OF SENSATIONS OF MOVEMENT. Not only are these organic sensations of importance as affording us information of the condition of our own bodies as distinct from the objects in the world around, but they enter into and qualify our judgments derived from all the sensations which arise in the special sense organs

When we regard the continuous aimless activity of a healthy baby, we see that all ideas of space, of extension, of relative position are wanting, or at any rate are not present to guide the movements. Bit by bit muscular experience is acquired. The child learns that a given movement of the right arm will bring the hand in contact with something which is exciting the left side of the retina. The surface of the thing, if of sufficient extension, can excite tactile sensations in all the fingers of the right hand. By moving one finger over the object the tactile sensations are found to be continuous, by moving the whole hand forwards the thing is found to possess extension in

a direction away from the body, and therefore in the third plane of space. Thus gradually are acquired not only ideas of extension, distance, and space, but certain movements are correlated with stimulation of definite regions of the skin or of the retina. Tactile and retinal impressions therefore acquire local sign, and power is acquired of moving the limbs to a degree and in a direction adapted to stimuli arising from any part of the tactile or retinal surfaces. The child gradually acquires the power of following a bright object with its eyes, *i.e.* of contracting the ocular muscles so as to keep the retinal image of the object on the fovea centralis, and up to adult age we are still engaged in this balancing of muscular movement against sense impressions—a balancing in which the muscular sensations are the constant guide and criterion of success. Only by the muscular sensations are we informed whether our willed movement has been carried out or not. It is in virtue of the muscular and allied sensations that we are able to clothe our visual and tactile sensations with properties of extension, solidity, and resistance, which create them in consciousness as parts of a material world.

PART VIII

THE LABYRINTHINE SENSATIONS

THROUGHOUT almost the whole of the animal kingdom, and in practically all freely moving metazoa, we find a sense organ which has often been designated as an auditory organ. This organ, which is situated in the integument, is in the form of a small sac generally open to the exterior, and lined by cells provided with hairs and richly supplied with nerves. Resting among the hairs is a small concretion, generally of carbonate of lime, which is known as an otolith. These sacs have generally been regarded as auditory in function, hence the term otolith applied to the concretion. The evidence for audition, *i.e.* the power of appreciating vibrations in the elastic medium surrounding them, is scanty. Thus in fishes this power has been stated to be absent unless the vibrations are of sufficient amplitude to affect the sense-organs of the skin.* On the other hand, there is evidence that these otolith organs are connected with equilibration. Section of the nerves going to them in the crayfish causes disturbance of locomotion. Steinach has succeeded in the crayfish in replacing the concretion by a small particle of iron. The animal's behaviour and movements were perfectly normal until it was brought within a powerful magnetic field. Under the influence of this field the effect of gravity on the iron particle was annulled and replaced by a force of attraction in another direction, and the effect was at once seen as pronounced disorders of locomotion, the animal swimming in an abnormal position.

From a sac, such as that present throughout the lower animals, the organ of hearing in the higher vertebrata is developed. Arising as a pit in the epiblast in the neighbourhood of the hind-brain, the auditory sac becomes shut off from the exterior, and then, by an outgrowth in various directions, forms the complex membranous labyrinth of the internal ear. This membranous labyrinth, as we have seen, can be divided into two parts, viz. the canalis media of the cochlea in front, and the saccule, utricle, and semicircular canals behind. The canalis media of the cochlea is concerned with the reception and analysis of sound waves. In the lower vertebrates in which auditory sensations are wanting the cochlea is absent, and in fishes is represented merely by a small diverticulum known as the lagena. With the development of air-breathing vertebrates we see the first signs of a special organ of hearing. Thus a primitive cochlea is present in the amphibia, and especially in the anura, and in some of the reptiles as well as in birds it acquires a bend and shows the beginning of a spiral arrangement Only in the mammals does it attain a degree of development at all comparable with

* Piper, however, has detected an electrical variation in the eighth nerve of fishes in response to a sound stimulus.

that found in man, and characterised by the formation of one and a half to four spiral turns in the cochlea as well as in the canalis media.

This development of auditory functions cannot involve any abrogation of the important part played by the otolith organ throughout all the lower classes of the animal kingdom. In man, as in the crayfish, it is the otolith organ which determines his behaviour in relation to the force of gravity, and is therefore responsible not only for the maintenance of equilibrium but also for the sensations which enable him consciously to orientate himself and to know the position in which he happens to be at any given moment. With the increasing importance of visual sensations in determining the behaviour of the animal, close connections are established between the central connections of the nerves running from the otolith organ and the parts of the brain concerned with the innervation of the eye muscles By this means the position of the eyes is constantly adapted to the position of the head.

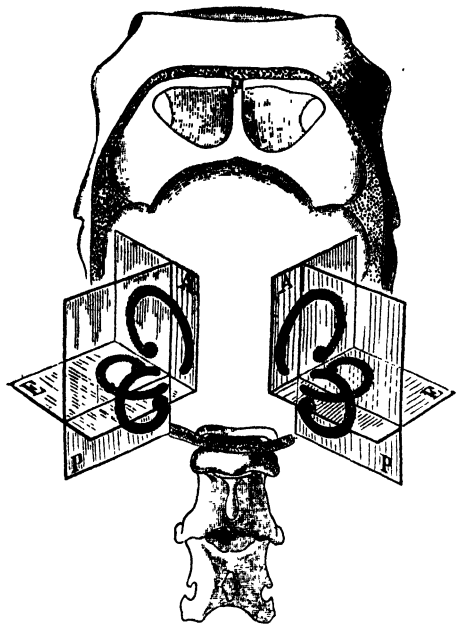


FIG. 323. Figure from Ewald showing the situation of the three semicircular canals in the skull of the pigeon.

The auditory part of the internal ear has already been described. That part of the labyrinth which represents the primitive otolith organ consists of a bony framework containing perilymph, in which is contained the membranous labyrinth with the endings of the vestibular division of the eighth nerve. The osseous labyrinth consists of a cavity, the vestibule, into which open behind the three bony semicircular canals. In the vestibule are contained two little membranous sacs, the utricle and saccule, the cavities of which are connected by means of the *saccus endolymphaticus*. Into the utricle open the three semicircular canals, the three canals having five openings. These semicircular canals are arranged in three planes, each of which is at right angles to the other two, so that in the organ are represented the three planes of space. We may distinguish on each side an external or horizontal canal, an anterior or superior vertical canal, and a posterior vertical canal. The two outer canals lie always exactly in the same plane, which is practically horizontal in the normal position on the head. Each posterior vertical canal lies in a plane which is parallel to that of the superior vertical canal of the opposite side. We thus see that these semicircular canals form together three planes —one horizontal and two vertical, the two latter being at right angles to one another (Fig. 323). The membranous canal lies within the osseous canal, a considerable space intervening between the two canals. At one end the osseous canal is dilated and the

membranous canal undergoes a corresponding dilatation so as to fill up the whole bony canal. In this dilatation, which is known as the ampulla, we find the ending of a branch of the vestibular nerve in a special sense epithelium forming the *crista acustica* (Fig. 324). The crista is composed of hair-cells with sustentacular cells between them. The fibres of the vestibular nerve end in arborisations among the hair-cells, the hairs of which

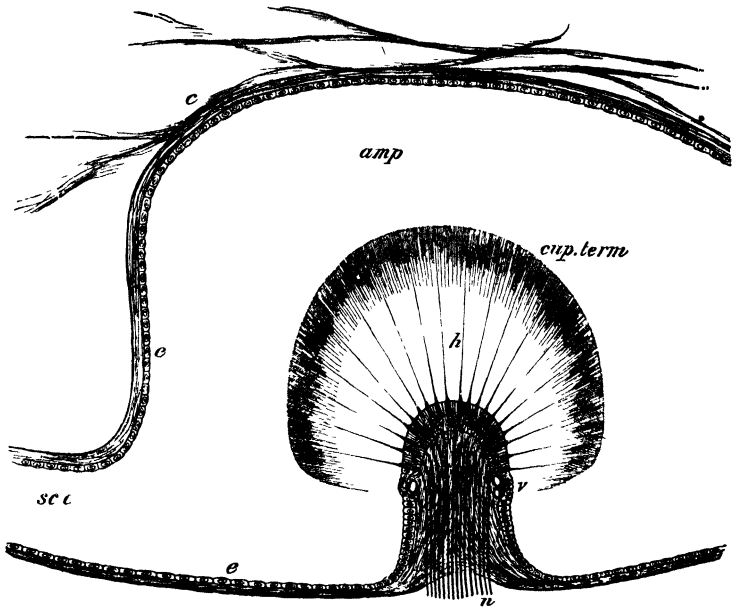


FIG. 324. End organ of vestibular nerve in ampulla of semicircular canal ('crista acustica').

project into the endolymph filling the ampulla. In the utricle and saccule we also find special sense-organs, known as the *macula acustica*, the structure of which is very similar to that of the crista in the ampullæ. Among the hairs, however, of the macula is found a small concretion of carbonate of lime, the otolith.

The first accurate experimental investigation of the functions of these different parts we owe to Flourens. This observer showed that, whereas extirpation of the cochlea caused deafness, extirpation of the vestibule and semicircular canals left the auditory sense intact, but caused marked disorders of equilibration. That the peculiar arrangement of the semicircular canals in the three planes of space was connected in some way with the functions of these structures was also indicated by Flourens' observation that destruction of the horizontal canals on each side gave rise to continual movements of the head from side to side in the plane of the injured canals. By many physiologists the results obtained by Flourens were ascribed to continued irritation of the peripheral sense organs or of the central parts of the brain in consequence of the lesion. The accurate experiments of Goltz, and especially those of his pupil Ewald, showed that these effects might last twelve to eighteen months, or be permanent, and must therefore be regarded

as an *Ausfallserscheinung, i.e.* as due to *abolition* of a function and not to the arousing of a function by abnormal stimulation.

Most of the experiments on this subject have been carried out on pigeons on account of the easy accessibility of their semicircular canals. Confirmatory observations have, however, been made on mammals. After destruction of all the canals or of the whole membranous labyrinth on both sides, disturbances of equilibrium are aroused which may last for a considerable time. The animal can neither stand, nor fly, nor maintain any fixed attitude, but is constantly moving about incoherently and often so violently that it is necessary to pad its cage in order to prevent it from injuring itself. Although the movements are so violent, very little guidance suffices to stop them altogether. Any support given by the hand enables the animal to rest quietly. After some months these disorders gradually disappear, and the animal learns to guide its movements by sensations of touch and sight alone; but they are instantly brought back in all their severity if the eyes be bandaged, so as to deprive the co-ordinating centres of the guiding visual sensations.

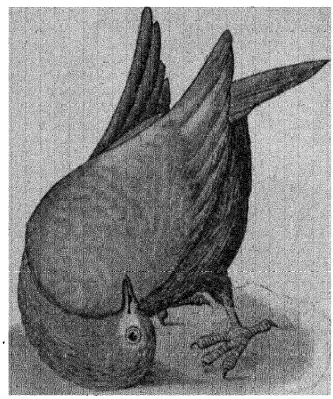


FIG. 325. Abnormal posture of pigeon, in which the labyrinth had been extirpated on one side five days previously. (EWALD.)

The same effect is produced if that part of the brain which alone is educatable, viz. the cerebral cortex, be excised. Extirpation of the cerebral hemispheres in pigeons causes no disorders of equilibrium, but extirpation, after destruction of the labyrinth, brings back the disorders which were noted during the first days after the operation, and these disorders are now permanent. Recovery even in the presence of the cerebral hemispheres is, however, never really complete. Although the animal may be able to walk and fly very fairly, it suffers from a loss of power and loss of tone which affect all its muscles, but especially those moving the trunk and neck. If the labyrinth has been extirpated only on one side, then this loss of tone is noticed chiefly on the opposite or contralateral side of the body (Fig. 325). Loss of tone after complete destruction is well shown in the following experiment devised by Ewald:

A small lead bullet is hung by a thread to the beak of the pigeon. As the bird moves about the bullet swings, the head following its movements; finally the bullet happens to fall over the beak of the animal—the head is now found to be fixed in the position shown in the figure (Fig. 326). The anterior muscles of the neck are too weak and toneless to restore the head to its normal position against the weight of the bullet. No such phenomena are presented by a normal bird.

The same absence of tone is seen in mammals. A dog with both labyrinths destroyed may jump down from a table once, but will not repeat the experiment, since the muscles of the fore limbs are too toneless to support the head against the shock of the jump, and he knocks his head against the ground as his legs collapse under him. If only one canal be put out of action, as, for instance, by stopping it with dentist's amalgam, the head is thrown into oscillations in a corresponding plane, or perhaps rather we should say that when the head oscillates in this plane there are no corresponding sensations set up which tend to inhibit the movements. The same effect may be produced temporarily by painting any one of the canals with cocaine so as to paralyse its nerve endings. The converse experiment of isolated stimulation of one canal has also been effected by Ewald. For this purpose Ewald, by means of a dentist's burr, opened one bony canal at two spots. By the hole furthest away from the ampulla he introduced an amalgam stopping, so as to prevent any current of fluid backwards through the canal. Over the second hole he fixed, by means of plaster of Paris, a tube which was connected by a flexible rubber tube with a rubber ball. By this means, while the bird was sitting quietly on its perch, he could suddenly blow upon the exposed membranous canal without disturbing the bird in any way. By the air pressure thus produced on the canal a stream of endolymph was caused in the direction of the ampulla. Every time this was done he found that the animal moved its head and eyes in the direction of the current and always exactly in the plane of the canal which was being stimulated. By this means proof was brought of the correctness of the theory put forward by Breuer and Mach, viz. that the specific stimulus of the nerve endings in the ampulla is afforded by the current of the endolymph in the semicircular canals.

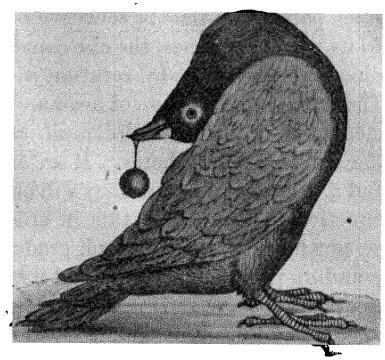


FIG. 326 After complete destruction of the two labyrinths the neck muscles become so weak that they are unable to overcome the weight of a bullet attached to the beak.

Since the endolymph is a fluid with inertia it will not immediately follow a rotational movement of the bony walls of the semicircular canals. Thus a sudden turning of the head from left to right will cause movement of endolymph towards, and therefore increased pressure on, the ampullary nerve endings of the right horizontal canal, and movement of endolymph away from, and therefore diminished pressure on, the corresponding ampulla of the left side. In this way, for movement in any given plane, the two corresponding semicircular canals of the two sides are synergic, and unite in sending impulses which guide the equilibrating centres, and inform us of

the position of our head in space. "One canal can be affected by and transmit the sensation of rotation *about one axis in one direction only*: and for complete perception of rotation in any direction about any axis *six* semicircular canals are required in three pairs, each pair having its two canals parallel (in the same plane), and with their ampullæ turned opposite ways. Each pair would thus be sensitive to any rotation about a line at right angles to its plane or planes, the one canal being influenced by rotation in the one direction, the other by rotation in the opposite direction" (Crum Brown). These reflex movements of head and eyes are the invariable result of movements set up in the endolymph, and occur equally well in the absence of the cerebral hemispheres. If an animal or man be placed on a turntable and rotated, his first tendency will be to turn his head and eyes in the opposite direction to that of rotation in order to preserve fixation. If the rotation be continued, the endolymph gradually takes up the movement of the surrounding parts of the head, and if the eyes be closed, no movement of head or eyes is observed. If now the rotation is stopped, the endolymph will tend to go on moving, and the effect will be the same as if a movement of rotation were suddenly begun in the opposite direction. Head and eyes will now be turned, without any voluntary impulse, in the direction of the previous rotation, and in consciousness there will be an actual sensation of rotation in the opposite direction. This sensation is in opposition to the sensations derived from other parts, and hence the feeling of giddiness and the actual disorders of equilibrium which are its concomitants.

That this feeling of giddiness on rotation is due to impulses started in the semicircular canals is shown by the fact that, in a large number of deaf-mutes where these organs are imperfectly developed, it is impossible to produce giddiness and the associated eye movements by passive rotation.

THE FUNCTION OF THE OTOLITHS

The semicircular canals are, as we have seen, a higher development of the otolith organ. The primitive part of this organ is represented by the maculæ in the utricle and saccule. It is to these organs that we must ascribe our powers of appreciating the static position of the head, as well as, to a slight degree, movements, not of rotation, but in one plane forwards or backwards.

A consideration of the structure of the otolith organ shows at once that the incidence of the weight of the otoliths on the hairs of the macula will vary according to the position of the head. Thus in the diagram (Fig. 200, p. 397) in A (normal position) the chief weight of the otolith falls on the hairs from *b* to *c*, whereas, when the head has been rotated round a right angle so that the man, for instance, is lying on his right side, the chief weight of the otoliths will fall on the hairs at C. The nerve-endings stimulated by the weight of the otoliths will therefore vary according to the position of the head. The cerebellum and its associated structures represent a mechanism for the regulation of the movements of the trunk as a whole and the position of its centre of gravity in relation to the position of the head.

BOOK III

THE MECHANISMS OF NUTRITION

CHAPTER IX

THE EXCHANGES OF MATTER AND ENERGY IN THE BODY

GENERAL METABOLISM

ALL the energy which leaves the body as heat or work is derived from processes of oxidation, the carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, and sulphur of the foodstuffs uniting with oxygen in the body and being eliminated in the form of carbon dioxide, water, urea and allied substances, and sulphates. In a starving animal this discharge of energy must be associated with a loss of body substance. The necessity for taking food is determined by the need of replacing this loss. The foodstuffs cannot, like the coal or fuel of a steam-engine, be utilised directly as a source of energy, but must be built up to a greater or less degree into the structure of the living protoplasm. The total amount of living material in the body, though maintained fairly constant in the adult animal, may yet undergo alterations under varying conditions, and these alterations are naturally more marked in the growing animal. We have in this chapter to inquire into :

(1) The nature and amount of the substances which may serve as foodstuffs and are necessary for maintaining the weight of the body constant or providing for its growth;

(2) The relation between the total amount of material taken up by the body and the total amount given out;

(3) The variations in the total chemical exchanges determined by variations in the output of energy by the body; and

(4) The significance of the various classes of foodstuffs as sources of energy and in the replacing of tissue waste.

We have therefore to make balance-sheets of two kinds, namely : (1) an accurate comparison of the ingesta (food and oxygen) and the egesta (carbon dioxide, water, urea, etc.); and (2) one showing the amount of potential energy introduced into the body compared with the amount of energy set free in the body.

SECTION I

METHODS EMPLOYED IN DETERMINING THE TOTAL EXCHANGES OF THE BODY

THE determination of the material exchanges of the body involves an accurate comparison of its income and output. The income consists of the foodstuffs and oxygen. The foodstuffs may be divided into two classes, namely, (1) the organic foodstuffs, which on oxidation may serve as sources of energy, and (2) the inorganic foodstuffs, such as salts and water.

The latter class neither add to nor subtract from the total energy of the organism, but their presence is a necessary condition of all vital processes, and as they are contained in the various excreta a corresponding amount must be present in the food in order to make good this loss.

In spite of the bewildering complexity of the nature of the foods taken by man, their essential constituents can always be assigned to the three classes, proteins, fats, and carbohydrates, and any analysis of the food must give the relative amounts present of these three classes of substances. The approximate analysis of the foodstuffs presents little difficulty. The nitrogen is determined by Kjeldahl's method. The figure thus obtained is multiplied by the factor 6·25, and the resulting figure is taken to represent the total protein in the food. Of course such a valuation may give too high a value when the foodstuff is one that is rich in nitrogenous extractives. The total fat is determined by extracting the food in a Soxhlet apparatus with ether. It is advisable to precede this extraction by an extraction with boiling alcohol. The total ethereal and alcoholic extract obtained is reckoned as fat. The amount of water is determined by drying the foodstuffs at 110° C., and the amount of inorganic constituents by ashing the dried remainder. Carbohydrates may be determined directly by boiling the food with dilute acids in order to convert all its disaccharides and polysaccharides into hexoses, which are then reckoned as glucose, and estimated by their copper-reducing power. In most cases however, the total protein, fat, and ash are subtracted from the dried weight of the food and the remainder is taken as carbohydrate.

Although the methods for the analysis of foodstuffs are by no means difficult, the total analysis of the food during a metabolism experiment may become extremely tedious on account of the very large number of analyses which have to be performed. The labour is lightened by the fact that nearly all the ordinary foodstuffs have been subjected to analysis and their average composition published by the Agricultural Board of the United States. Since however the foods vary in composition, especially in water content, from time to time, a calculation of the total income of proteins,

fats, and carbohydrates from data given by workers in other lands must present a considerable margin of error. In order to attain greater accuracy, some observers have made in the form of biscuits or of preserve a complete food which is prepared in large quantities at the beginning of the experiment and used as the sole diet throughout the experiment. Pflüger, for instance, converted the horse-flesh, with which he desired to feed his dogs in a metabolism experiment, into sausage meat which was sealed up in cases and sterilised. The sausage meat having been analysed at the beginning of the experiment, it was only necessary thereafter to weigh the amount eaten by the dog in order to know accurately the total amount of protein, fat, and carbohydrate ingested by the animal. In experiments on man it has been endeavoured to obtain the same result by limiting the food to a few articles of diet which could be accurately analysed in each case. The monotony of such a diet tends to interfere with the success of the experiment, since the subject of the experiment loses his appetite and his processes of nutrition are not normally carried out. It is usually possible to steer a middle course between the two extremes of too much and too little variation of diet, and so to obtain values for the composition of the ingesta which cannot differ very largely from their true composition.

The material output of the body consists of the products of combustion of the foodstuffs, which are turned out by the various channels of excretion, namely, the kidneys, the alimentary canal, the lungs, and the skin. These excreta must therefore be collected and analysed. In addition to the main sources of excretion, small quantities of material are lost by the shedding of the cuticle, by the growth and cutting of the hair and nails, and so on. In most cases the losses in this way are so small that they may be disregarded. The nitrogen of the foodstuffs and that derived from the disintegration of the tissues of the body is excreted almost exclusively in the urine, a small amount being thrown out by the alimentary canal. The total nitrogen must be therefore determined both in the fæces and in the urine. The nitrogen in the fæces is derived from two sources. Part represents those nitrogenous constituents of the tissues which have resisted the digestive processes of the alimentary canal. There is in addition a certain amount derived from the intestine itself. During complete starvation fæcal masses are formed in the intestine, and it has been calculated that in a normal individual about one gramme of nitrogen a day is excreted by the mucous membrane of the gut and contributes to the formation of the fæces. It is usual therefore to regard one gramme of the nitrogen of the fæces as belonging to the *output* of the body and representing the result of nitrogenous metabolism, while the balance is taken as belonging to undigested foodstuffs, and is subtracted from the total nitrogen of the latter in reckoning the real *income* of the body. A small amount of nitrogen is also lost by sweat, but this can be disregarded unless the sweating is profuse, when the loss of nitrogen by this channel may rise to as much as 4 per cent. of the total nitrogenous output of the body. Although a trace of ammonia has been described as occurring in the expired air, the amount is so minute that any loss of nitrogen by the lungs can be neglected. That the loss both by lungs and skin under ordinary circumstances can be disregarded is shown by the fact that it is possible to account directly for the whole nitrogen of the body by a comparison of the composition of the food with that of the urine and fæces. If, for instance, an animal is kept on a sufficient diet which contains a perfectly regular amount of

nitrogen, after a few days a condition known as *nitrogenous equilibrium* is set up, *i. e.* the total nitrogen of fæces and urine is exactly equal to the total nitrogen of the food. The same thing applies to the sulphur, as is shown in the following Table (quoted by Tigerstedt):

Days of experiment	Nitrogen of food	Nitrogen excreted	Per cent. difference	Sulphur ingested	Sulphur excreted
1–7 . .	154·81	153·02	— 0·51	—	—
8–17 . .	213·72	213·26	— 0·21	12·77	12·79

In order to express the nitrogenous metabolism in terms of protein, we use the factor employed in estimating the amount of protein in the food, *i. e.* we multiply the total nitrogen of the excreta by 6·25. This will give the total protein which has been broken down during the period of the experiment. Much more important from the energy standpoint is the determination of the total processes of oxidation of the body, information on which is given by a comparison of the oxygen intake with the output of

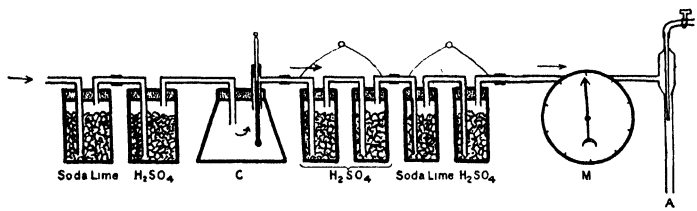


FIG. 327. Haldane-Pembroy respiration apparatus.
C, chamber for animal; M, gas meter.

carbon dioxide and water. The estimation of these substances presents much greater difficulties than the investigation of the nitrogenous exchange and involves the use of some form of respiration apparatus.

The following are the chief methods which have been employed for this purpose:

I. THE METHOD OF HALDANE. This method is extremely convenient when dealing with the gaseous exchanges of small animals, such as mice, rats, guinea-pigs or rabbits. The animal is placed in the chamber C, which may be simply a wide-mouthed bottle (Fig. 327). This chamber is supplied with a thermometer, and can be kept at any desired temperature by immersion either in warm or cold water. On the inlet side of the bottle is a series of tubes or bottles, some of which contain sulphuric acid and pumice-stone, while the others contain soda lime. On the outlet side of the vessel is a corresponding series of vessels for the absorption of water and of carbon dioxide. On the further side of these vessels is a gas meter. During an experiment air is sucked through the whole apparatus by means of an aspirator or a water pump, the amount of air passing through the apparatus being measured by the meter. The animal is thus supplied with pure air freed from water vapour and from carbon dioxide. Any water or carbon dioxide produced by the animal is absorbed by the vessels interposed in the course of the outgoing air. These vessels are weighed at the beginning of the experiment and at the end, and the difference in weights will therefore give the amounts of carbon dioxide and water which have been discharged by the animal.

The intake of oxygen by the animal is determined indirectly. Since it gives off

only carbon dioxide and water, and absorbs only oxygen during its stay in the chamber, the loss of weight of the animal during its stay in the chamber, subtracted from the total amount of carbon dioxide plus water it gives off, will represent the amount of oxygen absorbed.

The advantage of this apparatus is that it can be fitted up in any laboratory, and is accurate for the purposes to which it is applied. It is not however appropriate for long-continued experiments or for experiments on larger animals or on man himself. Most of the data with regard to the respiratory exchange under various circumstances have therefore been obtained by one of the following methods.

II. THE METHOD OF REGNAULT AND REISET. The principle of this method consists in placing the animal that is to be the subject of investigation in a closed chamber containing a given volume of air. The carbon dioxide produced by the animal is absorbed by means of caustic alkali, and the oxygen consumed by the animal is made good by allowing oxygen to flow into the chamber from a gasometer. The inflow of oxygen is regulated so as to keep the pressure of air in the chamber constant. At the end of the experiment the alkali is titrated and the amount of carbon dioxide absorbed thus determined. The air in the chamber is also analysed so as to be certain that it contains an excess neither of carbon dioxide nor of oxygen. The amount of oxygen absorbed by the animal is known already, the oxygen which has been allowed to flow in having been measured.

A modification of this method has been devised by Benedict and is especially applicable to clinical purposes. In this method the individual who is the subject of the experiment breathes through a nose-piece into a wide metal tube, the mouth being kept closed. The metal tube forms part of a closed system through which a current of air is maintained by means of a pump. In the course of the current of air are interposed vessels for the absorption of carbon dioxide and of water, and the volume of gas in the system is maintained constant by admitting oxygen to it in proportion as the oxygen of the system is used up in respiration.

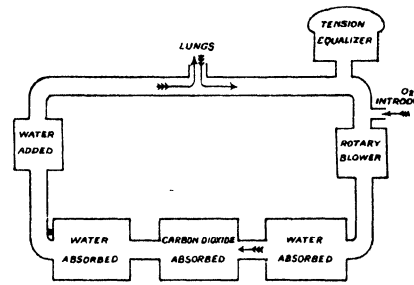


FIG 328. Air circuit in Benedict's respiration apparatus.

In Fig. 328 is given a diagrammatic scheme of the air circuit, and in Fig. 329 a diagram of the arrangement of the whole respiration apparatus, showing the nose-piece for breathing, the tension equaliser, the air-purifying apparatus, and the oxygen cylinder. The tension equaliser, A, is attached to the ventilating pipe near the point of entrance of the air into the lungs. It consists of a pan with a rubber diaphragm (which may be conveniently made from a lady's bathing-cap). As the air is drawn into the lungs the rubber diaphragm sinks, to rise again with expiration. The respiratory movements can thus proceed without altering appreciably the pressure within the closed system of tubes. By the admission of oxygen the supply of oxygen is adjusted so as to keep the bag from becoming either too much distended or too much flattened. As the air leaves the lungs and passes into the constantly moving current of air, it is carried along by the pump and flows through two Wolff's bottles containing strong sulphuric acid and pumice for the removal of water vapour. It then passes through a brass cylinder, C, filled with soda lime for the absorption of carbon dioxide. From here it passes again through sulphuric acid in a Kipp generator for the absorption of water given off by the soda lime. Since the air so deprived of moisture would be uncomfortable to breathe, it is then carried through another Kipp generator containing water with a trace of sodium carbonate for the neutralisation of any acid fumes which may be given off by the sulphuric acid. It then passes back to the tube from which the subject is breathing. In this way it is possible to determine very accurately the amount of oxygen used up and the amount

of carbon dioxide given off in the course of an experiment lasting one to three hours or longer. The oxygen consumption is measured by weighing the cylinder of this gas, chosen small for this purpose, before and after the experiment.

III. PETTENKOFER'S METHOD. In the apparatus designed by Pettenkofer the animal or man was placed in a chamber through which a constant current of fresh air was passed. The amount of air passing through the chamber was measured by means of a meter. Throughout the experiment continuous samples both of the air entering the chamber and of the air leaving the chamber were taken. The analyses of these samples served to show the composition of the whole air entering and leaving the chamber, and therefore the changes in the air caused by the presence of the animal. The advantage of this apparatus is that an adequate ventilation can be kept up, and the apparatus can be built of any size. In the apparatus of Tigerstedt built on this plan the chamber had a capacity of 100·6 cubic metres, and was, in fact, a small room. A small respiratory apparatus has been built by Atwater.

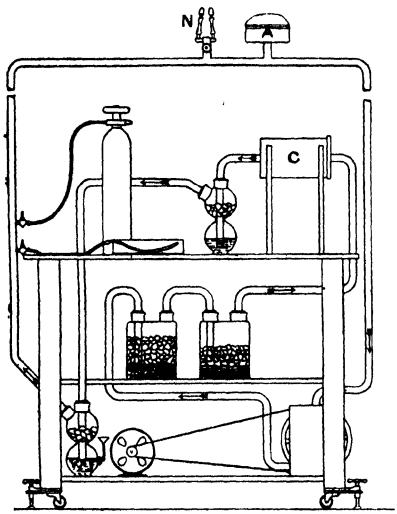


FIG. 329. Arrangement of apparatus in Benedict's method for determination of respiratory exchange.
N, tubes inserted into nostrils of patient; A, tension equaliser; C, cylinder containing soda lime for adsorbing CO_2.

IV. ZUNTZ AND GEPPERT'S METHODS. For many purposes the methods devised by Zuntz and Geppert present many advantages, especially when it is desired to take the respiratory exchanges in man or any animal during a limited period of time. The subject of the experiment has his nostrils clamped and breathes into and out of a face-piece. This face-piece is provided with valves either of aluminium or of animal membrane, which serve to separate the in-going from the out-going current of air. In the course of the out-going current is placed a very delicate gas meter which presents practically no resistance to the air current. A branch from the efflux tube passes to a gas analysis apparatus. By an ingenious method it is arranged that an aliquot part of the whole of the out-going air is drawn off into this apparatus, so that the experiment can be interrupted at any time, and the analysis of this sample will give the average composition of the expired air, and therefore, on multiplication by the total gas passing through the gas meter, the total output of carbon dioxide during the course of the observation. One advantage of this method is that the apparatus is portable, and can be applied to the investigation of the respiratory exchanges of patients in hospitals or of man or animals while they are walking about. It has been used, for instance, by Zuntz and his pupils in an interesting series of researches on the gaseous metabolism of men at high altitudes.

V. THE DOUGLAS BAG. By far the most convenient method for estimating the respiratory exchanges of man under varying conditions is the use of the Douglas Bag. In this method the subject for experiment breathes through a mouthpiece provided with valves into a bag of about 100 litre capacity. The valves are so arranged that he inspires from the external air and expires into the bag. After from two to ten minutes the bag is removed, the time being accurately noted. The amount of air expired during this time is measured by emptying the bag through a gas meter. A sample of its contents is analysed and the oxygen and CO_2 in it determined. Since the composition of the external air is known, the analysis and measurement of the

expired air gives the respiratory metabolism during the time of the observation. The bag is carried on the back of the individual, so that it does not interfere with his movements. This method has been used for determining the metabolism of soldiers in training, of munition workers, etc.

By means of one or more of these methods we may arrive at a correct idea of the total income and output of an individual for periods of many days. The following details by Tigerstedt may serve as an example of the results obtained in such an experiment. The experiment lasted two days. The subject was a man of twenty-six years of age, weighing about 65 kilos, who had previously taken no food for five days. The following Tables represent his material income and output.

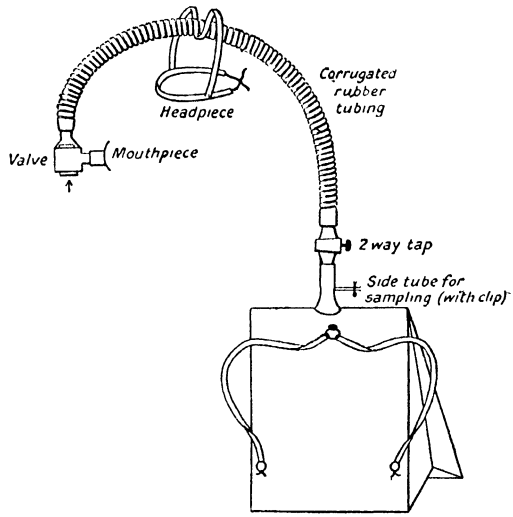


FIG. 330. Douglas' Bag for determining respiratory exchange in man.

TOTAL INCOME

Food	Total amount	N	C	Water	Solids	Protein	Fat	Carbohydrate	Ash	Alcohol
Bread	373	7·3		36	337	46	4	278	9	—
Butter	388	0·4		37	351	3	337	4	7	—
Cheese	116	4·3		56	60	27	35	—	5	—
Salt meat	26	1·1		16	10	9	—	—	2	—
Milk	2313	11·3		2047	266	71	85	95	16	—
Broth	658	11·8		580	78	74	—	—	9	—
Beer	1413	1·2		1273	77	8	—	67	3	59
Beef steak	700	20·6		533	167	129	33	—	7	—
Potatoes	452	0·9		359	93	6	1	82	5	—
Water	2335	—		2335	—	—	—	—	—	—
Totals	8773	59·3	831·6	7275	1439	371	497	525	61	59

TOTAL OUTPUT

	Total amount	N.	C.	Water	Solids	Protein	Fat	Carbohydrate	Ash
Respiration . .	2701	—	453·0	2248	—	—	—	—	—
Urine . . .	2564	41·5	32·5	2490	—	—	—	—	21
Fæces . . .	455	4·8	43·8	363	91·6	30	20	27	15
Totals . .	5720	46·3	529·3	5101	91·6	30	20	27	36

As we should expect in a man who had previously fasted five days, this balance-sheet shows a marked retention of the food taken in, *i. e.* a marked excess of income over output. Thus of the nitrogen ingested, 13 grm., which is equivalent to 81·3 grm. of protein, was retained; of the carbon, 302 grm. was retained. Of this 302 grm., 42·7 grm. would be contained in the 81·3 grm. of protein, so that the rest of the carbon, namely, 259·6 grm., was probably laid down in the form of fat. This would correspond to 339 grm. of fat. Of the salts contained in the ash of the food, 25 grm. were retained in the body. The carbon and nitrogen reappearing in the excreta serve as an index of the amount of metabolism of the foodstuffs which had occurred during the two days. In order to supply the energy requirements of the body during the time of the experiment, 498 grm. of carbohydrate, 59 grm. of alcohol, and 138 grm. of fat had been completely oxidised. The amount of protein used up during this time can be obtained by multiplying the nitrogen of the urine plus 1 grm. of nitrogen of the fæces by the factor 6·25, and is found to amount to 271·9 grm.

THE ENERGY BALANCE-SHEET OF THE BODY

The energy income of the body is measured by the potential energy of the foodstuffs, *i. e.* the amount of energy which can be evolved, either as heat, work, or in any other form, by the oxidation of the foodstuffs to the end-products which occur in the body. Since it is convenient to have a uniform method of expressing the total potential energy of a foodstuff, we generally express it in *calories*, and speak of the heat-value of a foodstuff. The heat value of any given food is the amount of large Calories[1] which it evolves on complete combustion with oxygen, and is determined by burning a weighed quantity of the dried foodstuff in oxygen in the bomb calorimeter. The following heat values have been obtained for different foodstuffs:

Substance	Heat value
Lean meat	5·656 (or 5·345 Rubner)
Lard	9·423
Butter	9·231
Grape sugar	3·692
Cane sugar	4·116
Starch	4·191

[1] A calorie is the amount of heat necessary to raise a gramme of water from 15° C. to 16° C. A large Calorie (printed with a capital C) is the heat required to raise a kilogramme of water from 15° C. to 16° C., and is therefore equal to 1000 small calories.

In the case of some foodstuffs it is necessary to draw a distinction between the absolute heat value and the physiological heat value. Since carbohydrates and fats undergo complete oxidation in the body to carbonic acid and water, their physiological heat values, *i. e.* the values of these foodstuffs to the organism, are identical with their absolute heat values. Proteins however do not undergo complete oxidation. When they are oxidised in the bomb calorimeter the nitrogen is set free in a gaseous form. In the animal body no nitrogen is eliminated in the gaseous form, the whole of it being excreted as urea and allied substances still endowed with a considerable store of potential energy, which can be set free when their oxidation is completed in a calorimeter. In order to determine the physiological heat value of protein, we must subtract from its absolute heat value the heat value of the excretory products in the form of which it leaves the body. The physiological heat value of proteins has been determined by Rubner in the following way: A dog was fed with the same protein which had served for the determination of the absolute heat value. While the dog was receiving this food its urine was collected, dried, and its heat value determined by combustion in the calorimeter. It was found that for each gramme of protein which had undergone disintegration in the body an amount of urine was passed corresponding to a heat value of 1·0945 Calories. The heat value of the fæces formed under the same diet was 0·1854 Calorie for each gramme of protein. Rubner further reckoned that a certain amount of heat would be required for the solution of the proteins and of the urea, and reckoned this at 0·05 Calorie. The reduced or physiological heat value of protein is therefore equal to $5{\cdot}345 - (1{\cdot}0945 + 0{\cdot}1854 + 0{\cdot}05) = 4{\cdot}015$ Calories.

A determination of the heat values of the various foodstuffs shows minute differences between individual members of the same class. Since it is impossible to reckon out accurately the relative amounts of the different kinds of protein, carbohydrate, etc., contained in each diet, Rubner has calculated the *average* physiological heat values of the three classes of foodstuffs. These figures have been universally adopted, and are as follows:

1 grm. protein	= 4·1 Calories
1 grm. fat	= 9·3 „
1 grm. carbohydrate	= 4·1 „

These figures are accurate only for a diet containing the normal proportion of vegetable to animal foods—60 to 40. The heat value of vegetable protein is, as a rule, less than that of animal protein. It has been pointed out that these figures are rather too low for the food as ingested and too high if taken to represent food as digested. Taking the normal mixture of foods used in civilised countries, the following figures give more accurately the energy available from any given diet (allowing for the loss in digestion):

Carbohydrates	Proteins	Fats
4 Calories per gramme	4 Calories per gramme	8·9 Calories per gramme

Careful experiments have shown that just as there is no loss of matter in the body, so also the sum of the energies put out by the body is equal to the sum of the energy obtained by the oxidation of the tissues and of the

foodstuffs in the body during the same time. In an earlier chapter I have quoted the results of an experiment by Rubner on a dog, which demonstrated this equivalence, as proving the important fact that the fundamental doctrine of the Conservation of Energy applies to the organised as to the inanimate world. Similar results have been arrived at by Atwater in a series of experiments with a special calorimeter on man. It may be sufficient here to give the figures from one such experiment:

	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i
Date	Cals.	Cals	Cals	Cals.	Cals.	Cals	Cals.	Cals	%
Dec. 9–10 .	2519	110	142	−85	+ 3	2349	2414	+65	+2·8
10–11 .	2519	110	133	−25	−44	2345	2386	+41	+1·7
11–12 .	2519	110	132	−21	−93	2391	2413	+22	+0·9
12–13 .	2519	110	133	−14	−55	2345	2375	+30	+1·3
Total 4 days .	10,076	440	540	−145	−189	9430	9588	+158	
Average one day	2519	110	135	−36	−47	2357	2397	+40	+1·7
	Heat of combustion of food eaten	Heat of combustion of fæces	Heat of combustion of urine	Estimated heat of combustion of protein gained (+) or lost (−)	Estimated heat of combustion of fat gained (+) or lost (−)	Estimated energy of material oxidised in the body a − (b + c + d + e)	Heat determined	Heat determined greater (+) or less (−) than estimated g − f	Heat determined greater (+) or less (−) than estimated h − f

If we take into account the great difficulties of such an experiment, we cannot but be impressed with the closeness of agreement between the total output of energy reckoned as heat and measured by the warming of a given volume of water and the total income of energy as estimated from the chemical reactions involved in the metabolic changes which had taken place during four days of the experiment. The important result which comes out in such experiments is that the foodstuffs produce the same amount of energy when oxidised in the body as when burnt to the same end products outside the body, so that it becomes easy in any given research to sum accurately the energy income of the body.

The Atwater calorimeter has been improved to such an extent by Benedict and his fellow-workers that it has practically replaced all other forms for physiological purposes. It consists of a room or chamber with double non-conducting walls. All round the inner wall of the room are fitted coils of pipes through which a stream of water flows. The pipes are fitted with discs so as to take up rapidly heat produced in the room. The current of water is accurately adjusted so as to maintain the temperature of the inner wall constant. As the inner wall and outer wall are kept at the same temperature, no heat is lost to the exterior, the whole of the heat produced by

the animal or individual in the chamber being communicated to the water passing through the chamber. The temperatures of the entering and leaving water are taken by accurate thermometers reading to a hundredth or a thousandth of a degree Centigrade. Knowing the amount of water that has passed through in a given time and the difference in temperature during the same time, it is easy to calculate the amount of heat given off by the animal under investigation. It is generally convenient to maintain a constant difference of temperature between the entering and leaving water by appropriate adjustment of the amount of water passing through the apparatus. The equality of temperature between the inner and outer casing is recorded

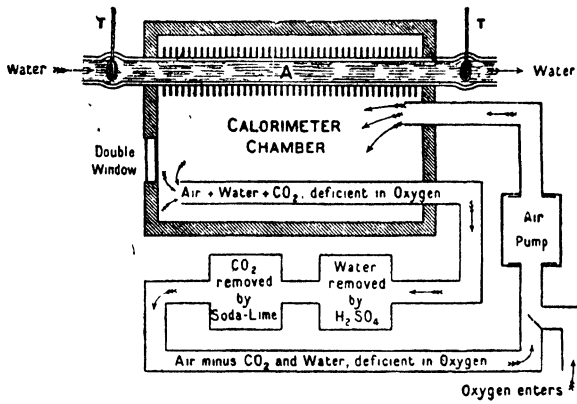


FIG. 331. Diagram to show the principle of the Atwater-Benedict calorimeter. (After HALLIBURTON.)

by electric thermo couples, any difference of temperature being at once compensated by electrically warming the cooler part. The chamber contains a bicycle or other arrangement for the performance of mechanical work. It is adequately ventilated by a current of air passing through an apparatus similar to that of Benedict, described on p. 663. It is thus possible to estimate simultaneously the total heat production of an individual as well as the respiratory changes, including both carbon dioxide output and oxygen intake. The general principle of the calorimeter is shown in the diagram (Fig. 331). The calorimeter is also supplied with bed, table, chair, etc., and food can be introduced through a double window so that an experiment may be continued over two or three days on one and the same individual.

SECTION II

METABOLISM DURING STARVATION

It will tend to simplify our task if we deal first with the results of the experiments which have been made on the metabolic exchanges of animals during starvation, *i. e.* during a period when the whole energy involved in the maintenance of the movements of respiration and circulation, and in the maintenance of the body temperature, etc., is derived from the animal's own tissues. It must be remembered that the tissues of an animal comprise two distinct classes. In the first class must be placed the living machinery of the body, generally composed of proteins or their near allies. In the second class are the fatty tissues of the body, which form no part of the ordinary machinery, but function simply as a storehouse of material which can be utilised for the production of energy. In addition to the store of fat there is, in a well-fed animal, a certain reserve of carbohydrate in the form of glycogen, deposited in the liver and the muscles. This store of glycogen is drawn upon to a large extent at the beginning of a period of starvation. The total amount of glycogen present at any time is generally so small in comparison with the fat of the body that it cannot provide the energy necessary for the maintenance of life during prolonged inanition, although it plays an important part during the first one or two days of a period of starvation.

Contrary to general belief, the condition of an animal which is completely deprived of food is not a painful one. For this statement we have not only such evidence as can be derived from inspection of animals placed in this condition, but also evidence derived from men who have voluntarily or involuntarily been deprived of food for considerable periods. Especially instructive in this connection are the cases of the so-called professional 'fasting men,' two of whom, Succi and Cetti, have been subjected to complete metabolic investigation during the period of their starvation. During the first day or two there is a craving for food at meal-times. This however passes off, and during the later portions of the experiment even the desire for food may be entirely absent. As might be expected, the restriction of food is followed by a diminution in the amount of water required by the animal. The essential characteristic of the state of inanition is an ever-increasing weakness, accompanied by a strong disinclination to undertake any mental or physical exertion whatsoever. The animal passes its time in a state of sleep or semi-stupor. In the case of Succi, who fasted for thirty days, considerable muscular exertion was undertaken on the twelfth and on the twenty-third day of starvation without any appreciable ill-effects. A strong effort of the will must have been necessary in his case to overcome the automatic instinct to preservation of life by the utmost economy in the expenditure of energy. The pulse rate and the body temperature remain

nearly normal until a few days before death, which is ushered in by an increase in the somnolent condition of the animal and by a gradual slowing of respiration and fall of temperature. The urine is naturally diminished with diminution in the output of urea and in the amount of water consumed. Some fæces are formed, and may be voided during or at the close of the starvation period. In Succi their amount varied from 9·5 to 22 grm. a day and contained from 0·3 to 1·0 grm. nitrogen. On microscopic examination they consisted of an amorphous material enclosing a number of crystals of fatty acids.

During the whole of the starvation period, energy is being used up in the body for the maintenance of its temperature and the vital movements of respiration and circulation. Since this energy is derived from the destruction and oxidation of the tissues of the body, there must be a steady loss of body weight. In experiments on man the daily loss of weight during the first ten days amounts to between 1 and 1·5 per cent. of the original total weight. This loss of weight does not affect all parts of the body alike. It might be imagined that, since the loss of weight is determined by the using up of the tissues of the body for the production of energy, those organs which are most active should show also the greatest loss of weight. The very reverse of this is the case, as will be seen from the following Table:

PERCENTAGE LOSS OF WEIGHT OF DIFFERENT ORGANS AND TISSUES DURING STARVATION. (VOIT.)

Tissue	Percentage loss of weight of fresh tissue	Percentage loss of dry tissue
Fat	97	—
Spleen	67	63
Liver	54	57
Testes	40	—
Muscles	31	30
Blood	27	18
Kidneys	26	21
Skin and hairs	21	—
Intestine	18	—
Lungs	18	19
Pancreas	17	—
Heart	3	—
Brain and spinal cord	3	0

Those organs of the body which are most necessary for the maintenance of life, the brain, the heart, the respiratory muscles, such as the diaphragm, undergo very little loss of weight. Of the other tissues the fat, which is a mere reserve to provide for such contingencies, is drawn upon first, and during starvation 97 per cent. of the total fat of the body may be consumed. The nitrogen needs of the body during starvation seem to be supplied chiefly at the expense of the muscles and glands, which waste to a very marked degree. The muscles being used simply as reserve material, it is easy to understand the condition of lethargy and muscular inactivity which charac-

terises the state of inanition. During the starvation all tissues of the body undergo a process of slow autolysis or disintegration, giving up the products of this process to the common circulating fluid. The nutritional demands of a tissue are determined by its activity. Hence the active tissues of the body take up the material set free from all the other cells of the body and so maintain their weight at the expense of all other parts. A similar predominance of the nutrition of active over inactive tissues is to be observed in cases of partial starvation, *i. e.* where the deprivation of food applies only to a single food constituent. Thus Voit, in a series of experiments, fed pigeons on a food which, while normal in all other respects, contained a deficiency of calcium salts. On killing the birds after a certain length of time, it was found that while the bones used in the necessary movements of the animals presented a normal appearance, the others, such as the sternum and skull, showed a marked deficiency of lime salts and had undergone a process of rarefaction giving rise to the condition known by pathologists as osteoporosis. Many other instances of the sacrifice of a temporarily useless tissue on behalf of tissue of high physiological value are known. Thus the salmon and its congeners, which live part of the year in the sea, lay their eggs and undergo their early development in the fresh water of the upper reaches of rapid streams. An adult salmon leaves the sea in the early summer months in a magnificent state of muscular development, fit to perform the prodigious feats of swimming which are required in order to get it over the rapids of the river which it has to ascend. It takes no food. In the upper reaches of the stream or river there is a growth of the genital glands, ovaries, or testes. The whole material for the growth of these large organs is derived from the atrophy of the skeletal muscles. In this case we have the growth of an active tissue at the cost of an inactive one, the activity however being determined, not by the direct call upon it from the environment, but by what we may speak of as the 'physiological habit' of the animal.

The animal organism, in the complete absence of food, deals with the resources of its bodily tissues with the utmost possible economy. The total metabolism therefore sinks rapidly during the first two days of starvation, and then remains practically constant. There is indeed a slight continuous diminution with the fall in body weight, but the total metabolism per kilo body weight till within a day or two before death is a constant quantity. This is shown in the following Table of the output of energy in man during a five days' period of starvation (Tigerstedt):

METABOLISM DURING STARVATION (MAN)

Day of experiment	Nitrogen output	Fat oxydised	Total Calories	Calories per kilo. body weight
1 . . .	12·16	204·8	2231	33·3
2 . . .	12·85	190·3	2112	32·1
3 . . .	13·62	179·9	2032	31·3
4 . . .	13·67	176·4	2003	31·3
5 . . .	11·44	180·0	1979	31·4

THE METABOLISM OF CARBOHYDRATE, FAT, AND PROTEIN DURING STARVATION

Since during starvation no energy is supplied to the body from without in the shape of foodstuffs, we can regard the whole expenditure of the animal during its period of starvation as occurring at the expense of its capital. The amount of carbohydrate which can be stored up as glycogen or other forms is strictly limited. In many experiments the glycogen metabolism has therefore been entirely disregarded, and it has been estimated that the chemical capital of the body consisted entirely of proteins and fats. The glycogen metabolism however, during the first day of a period of starvation, may form a considerable fraction of the total metabolism of the body, and can hardly be excluded without introducing serious errors.

The relative parts played by protein, carbohydrate, and fat respectively in the chemical exchanges of a starving animal may be determined in the following way: The amount of protein consumed is given by estimating the total nitrogen of the excreta by Kjeldahl's method and multiplying the result by the factor 6·25. The loss of weight of the body *minus* the protein consumed may be roughly taken as equivalent to the fat plus carbohydrate consumption. But this is only a rough method, since the quantity of water in the tissues may undergo considerable variations, and so affect the total weight of the body. For any accurate results the respiratory exchanges must be measured, including both oxygen intake and carbon dioxide output. After deducting the carbon dioxide, due to the combustion of the carbon of the proteins, which does not appear in the urine in combination with nitrogen, the remainder of the carbon dioxide is derived entirely from carbohydrate and fat metabolism. Knowing the respiratory quotient and the total amount of carbohydrate and fat metabolism, it is possible to come to a conclusion as to how much of the carbon dioxide is derived from oxidation of glycogen and how much from the oxidation of fat. A very efficient check on this calculation is furnished if the individual or animal can be placed at the same time in an accurate calorimeter, as in Benedict's experiments, owing to the fact that a gramme of fat, when converted into carbon dioxide and water, produces more than double the amount of heat which would be evolved by the complete oxidation of glycogen. In Benedict's experiments the heat value of the metabolism calculated by the above method agreed with the heat as actually measured by the calorimeter within 0·5 per cent., whereas if the total carbon of the first day had been reckoned as fat, the discrepancy would have been as high as 5 per cent. in many cases. The influence of glycogen metabolism on that of protein during the first and second days of fasting is shown in the following experiments (Benedict):

	First day			Second day		
	Glycogen metabolised		N. eliminated	Glycogen metabolised		N eliminated
	Total	Per kilo		Total	Per kilo.	
S.A.B. .	181·6	3·15	5·84	29·7	0·52	11·04
S.A.B. .	135·3	2·31	10·29	18·1	0·31	11·97
S.A.B. .	64·9	1·09	12·24	23·1	0·39	12·45
H.C.K. .	165·6	2·33	9·39	44·7	0·64	14·36
H.R.D. .	32·8	0·59	13·25	41·6	0·76	13·53

The total metabolism per kilo body weight very soon attains a constant level. The relative part taken in the production of the total energy by fats

and proteins respectively may vary from animal to animal according to the amount of fat available in the body. If the animal has been receiving previous to the experiment a diet rich in protein, the excretion of nitrogen and urea in the urine diminishes rapidly during the first days of starvation. During the first two days therefore a considerable proportion of the necessary energy is obtained at the expense of protein. Between the third and fifth day however, the nitrogenous excretion reaches a minimum, at which point it remains approximately constant to within a day or two before death. If the animal has been receiving a diet very poor in protein the excretion of nitrogen may be low throughout the whole course of the experiment. These facts are illustrated by the curves in Fig. 332, which show the output

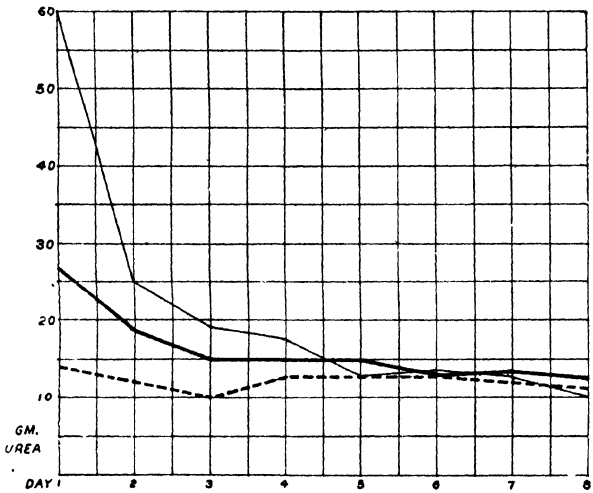


FIG. 332. Three experiments on the output of urea during starvation (dog). (TIGERSTEDT, after VOIT.)

In (1) (thin line), the dog received 2500 grm. meat per day before the experiment; in (2) (thick line), the diet was 1500 grm. meat; and in the third experiment the meat was reduced to a minimum.

of urea in three experiments on a dog under different conditions of nutrition. In the first experiment the dog, before the experimental period, had been receiving 2500 grm. of meat daily; in the second it had been receiving 1500 grm. of meat, and in the third only a small quantity, which was not accurately measured. Although there is a great difference between the urea output during the first day of the experiments, the urea output during the sixth to eighth days is identical. In many cases for a few days before death there is a rise of protein metabolism. This rise is synchronous with a practically complete disappearance of fat from the body. The animal now has to supply all its requirements at the expense of the protein tissues, which therefore waste rapidly and account for the increased excretion of nitrogen. This is shown in the following experiment of Rubner on a rabbit:

Days	Average daily output of nitrogen	Average amount of fat oxidised daily
1–3	1·67 grm.	10·3 grm.
4–5	1·46 „	10·3 „
6–8	3·21 „	2·4 „

We see therefore that during starvation, apart from the first day or two, the animal derives the main portion of its necessary energy from the combustion of fats, provided that there is a sufficient store of these substances in the body. A certain consumption of protein is unavoidable. Since protein comes from the working tissues of the body they are spared so far as possible, and it is only when the stored fat is used up that any large call is made on the tissue protein.

BASAL METABOLISM

During starvation the energy output of the body furnished by the consumption of its own tissues is determined (*a*) by the amount necessary to keep the body alive—*i. e.* to maintain its warmth and to furnish the energy for respiratory movements, contractions of the heart, etc.; (*b*) the energy necessary to carry out any work that is performed.

The energy requirements under (*a*) represent the 'Basal Metabolism' of the body. We have already seen that this varies with the weight of the individual; but if a number of different animals are compared, their metabolism per kilo is found to be greater the smaller the animal, as is shown in the following table:

	Body weight, kilos.	Calories per kilo. body weight
Man	70·6	32·9
Dog 1	30·4	35·3
Dog 2	17·7	45·0
Dog 3	3·1	85·3
Rabbit 1	2·9	50·2
Rabbit 2	2·05	58·5
Guinea pig	0·672	223·1

This is due to the fact that the chief expenditure of energy is devoted to maintaining the temperature of the body, and the smaller the animal the larger is its surface and therewith its heat loss relatively to its weight. The basal metabolism therefore is a function of the surface of the body, and in the above table a comparison of metabolism per square metre body surface shows that it is practically the same in all cases. As shown in the following Table, we may say that a warm-blooded animal requires a daily expenditure of about 1000 Calories per square metre body surface in order to maintain its temperature and carry out such motor processes as are essential to life.

	Body weight	Calories per square metre body surface
Animal 1 . . .	30·40	977
„ 2 . . .	23·70	1069
„ 3 . . .	19·20	1135
„ 4 . . .	17·70	1040
„ 5 . . .	10·90.	1109
„ 6 . . .	6·45	1054
„ 7 . . .	3·10	1091

The same thing applies to man. If we desire to determine the basal metabolism of any given individual we must find out his surface. If we know the height and weight, the surface can be calculated by the following formula (Du Bois):

$$S = \cdot 007184 \times W^{0 \cdot 425} \times H^{0 \cdot 725}$$

where S is the surface in square metres,
W the weight in kilograms,
H the height in centimetres.

In adult man the basal metabolism according to Du Bois is about 40 Calories per square metre per hour. The basal metabolism however is not the same in the same individual under all kinds of conditions, but depends on the state of nutrition of the animal. Thus in fattening an animal the basal metabolism increases steadily as the animal gets fatter. It requires much more food to keep a fat animal fat than to maintain it before fattening in its original condition. The figure 40 Calories per square metre per body surface applies to a well-nourished individual. If the food normally supplied to the individual be diminished, he can go on working as before, obtaining his energy at the expense of the fat and muscular tissues of his own body. But when under this regime the weight has fallen about 12 per cent. it is found that the basal metabolism—*i. e.* the requirements of the individual merely to keep himself alive—is also largely reduced. Thus in a squad of men investigated by Benedict, the food normally taken ranged from 3200 to 3600 Calories per day. After these men had by restriction of diet suffered a loss of 12 per cent. in their body weight, they were able to maintain themselves at this reduced weight and to carry out the same work as before on a diet of 2300 Calories. In one case where a man 5 ft. 2 in. had on a restricted diet been reduced in weight from 115 lb. to 84 lb., his basal metabolism was found to be diminished from 40·5 to 33 Calories per square metre of body surface per hour.

SECTION III

THE EFFECT OF FOOD ON METABOLISM

DURING the starvation the energy requirements of the animal are supplied by the actual consumption of the tissues of the body. When food is taken it has to supply the losses effected in this way. It is convenient however to consider food as having a twofold destiny, viz. (1) to supply the energy necessary to maintain the body alive and for the performance of work; (2) to replace the wear and tear of the body. So far as the latter function is concerned the proteins of the food take a position apart from the other two classes—fats and carbohydrates. Every working cell of the body and every muscle fibre consist for the most part of proteins with only small amounts of fats and carbohydrates. To repair the wear and tear of the machine of the body therefore proteins are absolutely necessary. To supply the energy requirements of the body any or all of the three classes of foodstuffs can be utilised.

A starving man is diminishing in weight and is putting out energy as a result. In the example cited on p. 672 the man was losing about 13 grm. nitrogen a day and was putting out about 2000 Calories. These Calories came partly from the combustion of protein and partly from the oxidation of the fat. It would manifestly be useless to try to stay the loss from the body by giving the man 13 grm. of nitrogen in the food in the form of protein, since this would give him only 320 Calories towards his basal requirements of 2000. We should find, in fact, that the effect of such an administration would be practically to double the output of nitrogen from the body and to increase slightly the total output of energy. In the dog it would be possible to stop the diminution of the body weight and the waste of tissues by giving an amount of protein equal to five times the loss during starvation. In man such an amount would be too great for his assimilating powers, and it would be necessary to give in addition to the protein fats and carbohydrates. Since the body reacts somewhat differently to these three different classes of foodstuffs, it will be convenient to deal with them separately.

THE INFLUENCE OF PROTEINS

The protein taken in with the food on a pure protein diet has a twofold function to perform. In the first place, every functional activity of the living tissues is probably associated with a certain amount of wear and tear, and results in the production of disintegration products which are not in a condition to be resynthetised into living working protoplasm. We know

for instance that, from every mucous surface, dead cells are being continually cast off and that a constant disintegration of red blood corpuscles goes on, resulting in the production of the bile pigments; and we are warranted in extending the operation of these changes of which we have ocular evidence to the case of other cells, such as those of the liver and of the muscles, where direct proof of destruction of tissue during normal metabolism is more difficult to obtain. It is certain that some portion of the nitrogen excreted during complete starvation must come from this source, and that one of the functions of protein food is the replacement of tissue which has been lost in this way. When however we are feeding an animal on a pure protein diet, by far the larger portion of the food is utilised for meeting the energy requirements of the body. In this function protein food, apart from accidents of digestibility and structural adaptation of the animal's digestive arrangements to its habits of life, presents no apparent advantages over the other two classes of foodstuffs. Its value to the animal is represented by its physiological heat value. It may be represented therefore numerically as 4·1, and is equivalent to the value of carbohydrate [1] and is far inferior to the value of fats with a heat equivalent of 9·3. If, instead of giving to the starving animal a pure protein diet, we administer a mixed diet containing a sufficient quantity of fat or carbohydrate, or of both substances, to meet the normal energy requirements of the body, we can restrict the utilisation of protein more nearly to the replacement of tissue waste in the body, and are therefore able to attain nitrogenous equilibrium with a much smaller proportion of protein than is possible when this substance furnishes the whole diet. In omnivora, such as man, it is easy to attain nitrogenous equilibrium on a mixed diet with a smaller nitrogen turnover than is found during starvation. In the experiment given on p. 672 the average nitrogen output during starvation was about 12 grm. of nitrogen. In Succi, the fasting man, the nitrogen output varied from 11·19 grm. on the fifth day to 2·82 grm. on the twenty-first day.

Daily Nitrogen Excretion of Succi in Starvation

Day	N.	Day	N.	Day	N.
1	17·0	8	9·74	15	5·05
2	11·2	9	10·05	16	4·32
3	10·55	10	7·12	17	5·4
4	10·8	11	6·23	18	3·6
5	11·19	12	6·84	19	5·7
6	11·01	13	5·14	20	3·3
7	8·79	14	4·66	21	2·82

Chittenden has shown that in man a perfectly normal nutrition may be maintained on a mixed diet containing about 7 grm. of nitrogen daily. In the cases investigated by Chittenden the energy output of the men could be regarded as normal, corresponding to 32–35 Calories per kilo body weight. If the amount of fat and carbohydrate be very largely increased it is possible to maintain nitrogenous equilibrium on even smaller quantities of protein.

[1] This may be expressed by saying that protein is isodynamic with an equal weight of carbohydrate.

Thus nitrogenous equilibrium was attained by Siven on a diet containing 33 grm. of protein daily (= 5 grm. of nitrogen), but in this case the carbohydrates and fats were increased to such an extent that the man was taking in 78·5 Calories per kilo per day. These results suggest that the qualitative metabolism of the body is determined by the relative amount of foodstuff supplied to the body and circulating in its juices at any given time, and that preponderance of one foodstuff will tend to excite the cells of the body to the utilisation of this foodstuff at the expense of the other two. That such is the case is shown by a study of the effect of increasing each class of food on the metabolism of the body as a whole.

Most of the experiments on the influence of variations in the quantity of protein food have been made on carnivora, such as the dog and cat. Within very wide limits the output of nitrogen is proportional to the intake. This is shown in the Tables by Voit given below, representing two experiments on dogs.

In Experiment I the animal had been fed for some days with 500 grm. of meat per diem. The fact that he was excreting nitrogen corresponding to 547 grm. shows that this amount was insufficient and that he was not yet in a condition of nitrogenous equilibrium. Each day he was using up 47 grm. of the protein tissues of his body in addition to the 500 grm. supplied in the food. On increasing his food threefold to 1500 grm. the nitrogenous output was also increased, but a state of nitrogenous equilibrium was not reached until the eighth day of the experiment. During the six days intervening 778 grm. of meat had been retained in the body, *i. e.* there had been a retention of protein, probably in the form of increased muscular substance. The amount is too great to be accounted for by retention of the disintegration products of the protein in the body. It must have been stored up in the form of protein and probably, to a large extent at any rate, as actual living tissue.

Experiment I			Experiment II		
Day	Daily meat ration	Flesh loss per day	Day	Daily meat ration	Flesh loss per day
1 . .	500	547	1 . .	1500	1500
2 . .	1500	1222	2 . .	1000	1153
3 . .	1500	1310	3 . .	1000	1086
4 . .	1500	1390	4 . .	1000	1088
5 . .	1500	1410	5 . .	1000	1080
6 . .	1500	1440	6 . .	1000	1027
7 . .	1500	1450			
8 . .	1500	1500			

In the second experiment the diminution of the protein of the food was followed by a loss of protein from the body, the output being greater than the income. The excess however was rapidly diminishing and equilibrium had been practically attained on the last day of the experiment. During this time the animal had excreted 14·8 grm. of nitrogen more than it had

received in its food, which would correspond to a diminution of the protein store of its body, reckoned as muscular substance, by 434 grm. Many such experiments have been performed, and they all agree in showing that in carnivora a very appreciable storage of nitrogen can take place in the body. In cats it is sometimes possible to double the body weight by administration of a large protein diet. Since no fat is laid on at the same time and the animals are in a fine healthy condition, one must conclude that the greater portion of the storage takes place by a growth of muscle substance. The degree to which the storage can take place is however variable and is generally smaller in dogs than in cats. However much protein is given, the limit is finally arrived at where no further laying on of protein tissues of the body is possible, and the animal then enters into a state of nitrogenous equilibrium, when he excretes a quantity of nitrogen exactly equal to that taken in. This equivalence of income and output signifies that the extent of the total metabolism of the body is affected by the amount of protein supplied in the food, and, as a matter of fact, the *total energy output* of the body rises and falls with the quantity of protein in the food. This is shown in the following Table by Pettenkofer and Voit, in which the figures have been recalculated by Pflüger.

	Nitrogen in food	Nitrogen output	Fat gain or loss	Total Calories
1 . .	0	5·61	−98	1067
2 . .	17	20·37	−61	1106
3 . .	34	36·69	−43	1360
4 . .	51	51·00	−24	1552
5 . .	61	59·74	−36	1893
6 . .	68	69·50	+ 8	1741
7 . .	85	85·41	+ 4	2181

We see therefore that carnivorous animals can satisfy their total energy requirements at the expense of protein. When the protein income is in excess of their requirements a small amount is laid on, probably as increased muscular tissue. The most marked effect is however an increased metabolism, which rises in proportion to the nitrogenous income. The limit to this increase is set by the powers of the alimentary canal to digest the protein. The rise in metabolism consequent on protein food is very rapid and affects the gaseous exchanges as well as the output of nitrogen. Magnus Levy and Falk found that a large protein meal might increase the respiratory exchanges 40 per cent., an increase which lasted seven hours. The nitrogenous output also rises immediately after a protein meal, so that 50 per cent. of the nitrogen of the ingesta may appear in the urine within seven hours after the meal.

The whole of these results cannot be strictly applied to omnivorous animals, such as man. In these it is impossible to supply all the energy requirements of the body on a pure protein diet. Even if a man eats as much meat as he can, he will be unable to obtain sufficient energy for his daily

requirements. Whereas the average daily requirements of a man amount to about 3000 Calories, 1 lb. of lean meat (*i.e.* entirely devoid of fat) would yield only about 400 Calories, and even if he took 4 lb. of meat daily, an amount which is impossible for most individuals, he would only be obtaining about 1600 Calories. The cures for obesity, in which a large protein diet plays an important part, owe their efficiency to this fact. They are in all cases practically equivalent to a state of semi-starvation. Many experiments have been made on the influence of variations in the quantity of protein in a mixed diet. Within wide limits the output of nitrogen is strictly proportional to the intake. A normal adult man seems to be unable to store up protein in any form, and differs in this respect from carnivora, such as the dog or cat. The only way in which protein can be laid on in the body is by furnishing a physiological stimulus to the growth of muscle, *i. e.* by constant exercise. Without this it is not possible to produce growth of the muscles of the body, however much protein we may gave in the diet. The conditions are however different when dealing with an individual in whom from some cause or other the muscular tissues have not attained their full development. Thus in growing individuals a certain amount of the protein of the food is always retained in the body and laid on as tissue protein. In convalescence after severe fever, during which a great wasting of the muscles has taken place, forced feeding with large amounts of protein has been found to give rise to a considerable retention of protein in the body. This process goes on only until the muscles have attained their normal condition of development. When the tissues have, so to speak, reached ' par,' the possibility of laying on protein tissues ceases. On the other hand, protein food has in man, as in animals, a specific stimulating effect on metabolism, so that the respiratory exchanges are largely increased as a result of a heavy protein meal. This effect has been named by Rubner the ' specific dynamic effect ' of protein. We shall have occasion later to discuss its significance.

THE INFLUENCE OF FATS AND CARBOHYDRATES

If either fats or carbohydrates be given to a starving animal a certain sparing of the fat of the body takes place, but this effect, according to some observers, is accompanied by a distinct increase in the metabolic exchanges of the body. As regards the protein metabolism, Cathcart finds that while administration of fat increases the nitrogen output during starvation, carbohydrate food causes a diminution in the nitrogen output, and thus exercises a marked sparing effect on the proteins of the body. Voit found that during starvation or with an insufficient protein diet addition of fat to the food increased the total metabolism. When sufficient protein was being supplied, the addition of fat caused no increase in the total metabolism, the whole of the fat in the food being laid on as fat in the body. The stimulating effect of fat on metabolism is but slight. Magnus Levy found that the increase in the metabolism on the administration of fat to a starving animal was minimal and never exceeded 10 per cent.

Carbohydrates have a somewhat greater influence on metabolism. This

stimulating influence on metabolism is however much less than that observed on the administration of large doses of protein, and is hardly noticeable after a moderate carbohydrate meal in a normally nourished individual. If carbohydrate be given in excess of the daily energy requirements, the greater proportion of it remains in the body, being stored up to a small extent as glycogen but mainly in the form of fat.

SECTION IV

THE EFFECT OF MUSCULAR WORK ON METABOLISM

WHEN an animal performs muscular work the energy for the work is derived, as we have already seen, from the oxidation directly of the tissues of the body but ultimately of the foodstuffs. This increased oxidation must result in increased respiratory exchanges; both the intake of oxygen and the output of CO_2 must be raised. It is a matter of common experience that any muscular exertion is attended with deeper and more rapid breathing which, if the exertion is severe, may attain to a condition of dyspnœa. In order to determine the quantitative relationship between the increased oxidative processes of the body and the actual work accomplished, we must investigate the respiratory exchanges of an individual by one of the methods described on p. 662, in the first place during complete rest, in the second place while he is doing a measured piece of work. The following Table represents the respiratory exchanges in a trained muscular subject during complete rest and while doing moderate or severe work, viz. riding a bicycle with a brake. Each observation lasted from ten to fifteen minutes.

Condition	CO_2 eliminated per minute	Oxygen absorbed per minute	Respiratory quotient	Pulse rate	Rate
Lying . .	200	243	·83	56	20
Moderate work.	1720	1834	·94	150	32
Severe work .	2227	3265	·98	166	38

The 'severe work' in this table was carried to exhaustion, so that the respiratory exchanges represent the maximal augmentation of which the individual was capable. This augmentation may amount to between ten and fourteen times the normal resting exchanges. Similar results are obtained in observations extending over longer periods of time. Thus in one experiment the average output of CO_2 during a six hours' period of rest and starvation was 189·6 grm. During a rest experiment with food the average output for the same period was 230·4 grm. During work the average output in the same individual during six hours rose to 705 grm. of carbon dioxide on a carbohydrate diet, and to 634·8 grm. on a diet containing a large amount of fat. The oxidation of carbon was therefore increased more than threefold as a result of muscular work.

We can find out the relation between the actual work done and the energy expended on doing the work, either directly by allowing the work to

be done in a calorimeter and measuring the total output of heat by the individual at rest and during work, or by calculating from the respiratory exchanges the amount of heat which must be set free by the oxidation of the constituents of the body consumed in the performance of muscular work. In the following Table are given the results of an experiment by Atwater in which the total energy output of a man was reckoned in the form of heat by means of the calorimeter. The work done by the man on a stationary bicycle with a brake was also accurately determined, and is given in the Table in terms of its heat equivalent, viz. as Calories.

ENERGY PER DAY

Nature of experiment	Heat eliminated			External work in Calories	Total in Calories
	By radiation and conduction	In urine and fæces	In water vaporised from lungs and skin		
Rest with food (average of four days) . . .	1850	26	521	—	2397
Rest fasting (four experiments) (average of five days)	1605	21	561	—	2187
Work (fourteen experiments) (average of forty-six days) .	3802	29	743	546	5120

In the above experiments, the mean expenditure of energy on the work days was 5120, and on the rest days (with food) 2397 Calories, a difference of 2723 Calories. This represents the excess metabolism over resting requirements, which must take place in order that the body may perform work equal to 546 Calories. The fraction $\frac{\text{work}}{\text{total energy evolved } \textit{minus} \text{ resting metabolism}}$ is spoken of as the 'mechanical efficiency' of the body. In the above case it equals one-fifth, and the body is said to have a 20 per cent. efficiency. Of course a certain proportion of this excess of energy over work done is accounted for by the increase in the work which must be performed by the respiratory muscles and heart in the state of greater activity which is imposed upon them by the external work, and is necessary for the proper provision of the active muscles with increased food-supply and oxygen. Even if we neglect these factors altogether, the efficiency of the body as a machine corresponds to between 16 and 25 per cent., an efficiency which exceeds that of the best of our steam-engines and is only equalled by certain internal-combustion engines.

In some cases the mechanical efficiency may attain even a higher figure, so that as much as 30 per cent. of the increased metabolism accompanying muscular work may be transformed into mechanical energy. Can we employ these results to throw light on the nature of the constituents of the body which undergo oxidation to furnish the energy of muscular work?

In the experiment already quoted the oxidation of carbon was increased more than threefold during a six-hour period of work. This carbon might form part of the molecule of protein, fat or carbohydrate; but if we compare the protein metabolism of the same individual during these experiments no corresponding alteration is observed. During rest and starvation the average output of nitrogen per day corresponded to the destruction of 82 grm. of protein. During rest and with an approximately sufficient amount of food the average daily consumption of protein was 98·8 grm. During a work day, in which the individual received the same amount of protein in the food and a somewhat insufficient quantity of carbohydrates and fats, the consumption of protein was 109·4 grm. Thus there was a three- to fourfold increase of the carbon metabolism of the body, but only a 10 per cent. increase in the protein metabolism.

There is another method by which we can arrive at some idea of the nature of the material which is furnishing by its oxidation the necessary energy for the performance of muscular work. It is evident, if we compare the formulæ of a carbohydrate and a fat respectively, that it will require a relatively larger amount of oxygen to oxidise the fat than is necessary in the case of the carbohydrate. In the latter there is sufficient oxygen to combine with all the hydrogen present and form water. The whole of the oxygen therefore which is taken in is employed in the oxidation of the carbon, and one volume of oxygen will produce one volume of carbon dioxide. Thus: $C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2 = 6H_2O + 6CO_2$. If the whole of the animal's energy requirements were furnished by the oxidation of carboydrates, the output of carbon dioxide expired would be exactly equal in volume to the oxygen inspired, and the *respiratory quotient* of the animal, namely, $\frac{CO_2 \text{ expired}}{O_2 \text{ inspired}}$ would be equal to unity. In fats the amount of oxygen is only sufficient to combine with four atoms of the hydrogen of the molecule. When fats undergo oxidation, of the oxygen used only a portion is devoted to the formation of carbon dioxide, the rest being employed in the oxidation of hydrogen to water. In an animal using only fats the carbon dioxide output of the body would be considerably less than the oxygen intake and its respiratory quotient would be less than unity. The respiratory quotients for protein, fats, and carbohydrates are given in the following Table.

Material	Respiratory quotient $\frac{CO_2}{O_2}$
Carbohydrates	1·0
Animal fat	0·707
Protein	0·81

The respiratory quotient in an animal at any given time is therefore determined by the nature of the substances which are undergoing oxidation in its body. If the performance of muscular work involved special chemical processes, a metabolism of one of the main constituents of the body in preference to either of the others, this sudden change in the quality of the metabolism should show itself in the respiratory quotient.

According to Speck and Löwy, moderate muscular work which is not associated with dyspnœa, although attended by a large increase in the carbon dioxide output and the oxygen intake of the body, does not alter the respiratory quotient. This is probably correct if the respiratory changes are taken over a sufficient length of time, when the respiratory quotient must depend on the food which is furnished to the body however the energy of this body is expended. When, however, as in Benedict's and Cathcart's experiments, quoted in the Table on p. 683, the observations are of short duration, muscular exercise is almost always found to be associated with a rise in the respiratory quotient, which lasts too long to be accounted for by a mere washing out of the carbon dioxide from the blood and the body tissues. After the cessation of the exercise the respiratory quotient sinks below normal. The respiratory quotient however rarely rises even during exercise to 1, as it would if the muscular work were performed solely at the expense of carbohydrates.

These results suggest that, while muscular work can be performed at the expense of any of the foodstuffs or of the three classes of constituents of the body, carbohydrate is the immediate or the most readily available source of muscular energy. When the body passes suddenly from a resting to an active condition, the first call is therefore on the carbohydrates of the blood and those stored up in the muscles and liver, whereas after exercise these carbohydrate stores are slowly replenished probably at the expense of the proteins. The fact that the body can draw on its fat stores for the performance of muscular work suggests that this substance may also serve as a source of muscular energy, and in default of evidence that the body is able to convert fats into carbohydrates, we must assume that under certain conditions the fats or their decomposition products may be directly utilised by the muscles.

The lowering of the respiratory quotient which follows severe exercise suggests either that the metabolic processes of the body are being performed at the expense of proteins and fats while the body is replenishing its limited stores of carbohydrates, or else that carbohydrates—*e. g.* sugar or glycogen—are being manufactured out of proteins and possibly fats in order to make good the exhaustion of carbohydrate resulting from the exercise.

Since the carbonic acid secreted during exercise may result from the oxidation of protein, fat, or carbohydrate, we cannot deduce directly the total energy set free in the body by an estimation of the CO_2 output alone. The respiratory quotient must also be determined in order to throw light on the real amounts of fat and carbohydrate consumed, and in accurate experiments the output of nitrogen in the urine must be also measured. Every gramme of nitrogen in the urine, if resulting from the oxidation of protein, corresponds to the intake of 8·4 grm. oxygen and to the output of 9·35 grm. carbon dioxide. If the amounts of CO_2 and oxygen corresponding to the protein metabolism be deducted from the total respiratory exchanges, the remainder must be due to the metabolism of fat and carbohydrate, and the respiratory quotient obtained after deducting the gaseous

exchanges due to protein metabolism will give the proportions of fat and carbohydrate oxidised. The following Table gives the relative combustion of carbohydrate and fat for a given respiratory quotient:

R.Q.	Carbohydrate	Fat	Calories for one litre oxygen
1·00	100 per cent.	0 per cent.	5·047
0·95	83 „	17 „	4·985
0·90	66 „	34 „	4·924
0·85	49 „	51 „	4·863
0·80	32 „	68 „	4·801
0·75	15 „	85 „	4·739
0·707	0 „	100 „	4·686

Since we know the amount of heat given off on oxidation of each gramme of carbohydrate or fat metabolised in the body, we can now measure accurately the total energy available from the chemical changes thus determined. The number of Calories set free in the body for every litre of oxygen taken in are also given in the above table.

It will be noticed that in contradiction to popular opinion the proteins do not play any special part in relation to muscular exercise. The special value of protein is for building up the body and for repairing directly wear and tear. As a source of energy it presents no advantages over carbohydrate and fat; in fact, it may be in some respects inferior to this latter substance or, at any rate, less economical, owing to the fact that ingestion of protein causes an increased metabolism, the whole of which appears in the form of heat. If an animal after a protein meal be made to work, the increased metabolism due to the specific dynamic action of the protein is still observed over and above that due to the performance of work. The output of energy of a man on a large meat diet doing a certain amount of work will therefore be greater than if the same amount of work were performed on a diet consisting largely of carbohydrates and fats. On the other hand, in training we have to consider not only the performance of work done during the training, but also the necessity of building up the muscular tissues of the body. Under these conditions therefore, there is some reason for a plentiful supply of protein in the diet. When however a man has to undertake a certain amount of muscular exercise every day and has arrived at the full development of his muscular system, there is no need to attempt to supply the energy for his movements at the expense of foods rich in protein, such as meat. In many cases the beneficial effects of so-called meat are due to its content in fat—this foodstuff presenting advantages over carbohydrates when large quantities have to be ingested to supply the daily energy requirements of the body.

SECTION V

THE SIGNIFICANCE OF THE FOODSTUFFS

In order to keep an animal alive a certain amount of food must be supplied to replace the loss to the body of its tissues and of its reserves of carbohydrates and fat, which are being continually consumed for the provision of the energy necessary to keep the animal warm and for the performance of the internal and external movements of the body. The actual amount of food required will depend on the size of the animal, on the temperature of the surrounding medium and on the muscular work performed. For supplying this energy any of the three classes of foodstuffs may be utilised, the value of each being given by the Calories which are evolved when the foodstuff is oxidised to the end stages which it attains in the body. Thus carbohydrates and proteins are *isodynamic*—i. e. give rise to the same amount of energy in the body for a unit weight—one gramme of each giving out 4·1 Calories. Weight for weight fat has double the value of either of these two classes, its Calorie value being 9·3. This isodynamic equivalence of the foodstuffs is however interfered with to a certain extent by the specific dynamic action already spoken of, in virtue of which protein has an excitant action on the processes of oxidation occurring in the body, so that an animal fed on a largely protein diet will give out more heat and consume more food than if it were fed on a diet of the same Calorie value but in which carbohydrates preponderate. This specific dynamic action is not altogether lacking to carbohydrates and fats. Thus, according to Rubner's experiments, for every 100 Calories of protein ingested there is an increased heat production over the fasting level of 30 to 35 Calories, while fat gives an increased heat production of about 12 per cent., and sugar of about 5 per cent. On account of this specific dynamic action an average mixed diet, in order to maintain the body in a state of equilibrium, must have a Calorie value of 13 to 14 per cent. higher than the sum total of the Calories given off during fasting. Thus, supposing a man while fasting and in bed gives off 1800 Calories a day, which would be derived from using up the tissues of his body, he would under the same circumstances give off about 2000 Calories if he received a minimum mixed diet just sufficient to maintain his body weight constant. This specific dynamic action of protein might be regarded as mere waste or '*luxus consumption*,' since it results only in the production of heat and cannot be utilised for the performance of muscular work. It must be remembered however that a certain amount of heat production is necessary in order

to maintain the temperature of the body, and this must be greater the lower the temperature of the surrounding medium. In cold surroundings a large amount of the food must always be applied to maintain the body temperature, and for this purpose the excess heat involved in the ingestion of protein, and to a less extent of other foods, can be, and is, utilised. Hence it comes about that in order to exhibit this specific dynamic action, the animal must be kept at a temperature of about 33° Centigrade. Below this temperature the specific dynamic action of the foodstuffs becomes less and less apparent, and is finally merged in the heat production necessary, whether food is taken or not, to keep up the temperature of the body.

Even regarded simply as a source of energy, proteins are distinguished from carbohydrates and fats by the fact that no means are provided for the storage of proteins in the body other than by the growth of muscular and other tissues. This growth is normal in the young animal, and in the adult in convalescence from wasting diseases and during recovery from a period of starvation or of insufficient feeding. There is a certain maximum of growth beyond which the living tissues of the body cannot attain. Arrived at this stage the body cannot add to its protein store, and all the protein therefore that is ingested and absorbed from the alimentary canal is at once broken down and burnt up in the body. If we examine the curve of nitrogenous excretion in the urine we find that practically all the nitrogen taken in as protein in the food is turned out within twelve to sixteen hours. Thus, if a man is on a mixed diet sufficient for his daily needs, a doubling of the protein in the diet, leaving the other constituents unchanged, will result in a doubling of the nitrogenous excretion and a storing of the fats and carbohydrates that would otherwise have been consumed, so that these will be laid on as fat in the body. On the other hand, an increase of the fats or carbohydrates will not increase the carbon metabolism of the body, but any excess above the daily needs, if absorbed, is stored up in the body in the form of fat. To increase the protein metabolism therefore, all that is necessary is to increase the protein in the body; to increase the carbohydrate and fat metabolism it is necessary to increase the metabolism as a whole either by increased muscular exercise or by exposure to cold.

Protein is also distinct from fats and carbohydrates in that it is essential for the repair of the wear and tear of the tissues. We may thus speak of the protein of the food as having a twofold destiny. A certain proportion is used to repair tissue waste; the amino-acids into which it is resolved in the intestines circulate in the blood, and each living cell picks out those amino-acids which are essential to building up the protoplasm of the cell. Protein with this destiny exerts no specific dynamic action, and this action is therefore lacking in the infant, which is storing up in the form of new tissue the greater proportion of the protein which it takes up in its food. The rest of the protein, after resolution to amino-acids, loses its nitrogen, which appears in the urine chiefly in the form of urea, and the remaining part of the protein molecule then undergoes rapid oxidation. The nitrogen of the urine is therefore derived partly direct from the nitrogen rapidly split

off from the protein of the food, partly from the disintegrated proteins, which have formed part of the living fabric of the cells.

Folin has brought forward a number of facts which point not only to a twofold origin of the nitrogen of the urine but also to a qualitative difference in the two orders of protein metabolism. Whereas in the urine of man on a normal diet the urea nitrogen forms 85 per cent. or more of the total nitrogen, a reduction of the protein ration to the minimum necessary to meet the nutritional requirements of the body causes not only an absolute diminution of the urea but a large relative diminution when compared with the other constituents of the urine, such as creatinin. He concludes therefore that the nitrogenous end-products of nutritional metabolism are different from those of the energy metabolism. There is also a difference in the time-relations of the two orders of metabolism. Whereas the nitrogen, which furnishes no energy to the body, is rapidly eliminated when protein is being utilised for the supply of energy to the body, the occurrence of increased tissue waste causes a rise of nitrogenous excretion, which comes on slowly, often after the lapse of a day, and may last two or three days. The process of protoplasmic disintegration appears therefore to occur in a series of stages, which occupy a considerable time and end in the production of substances qualitatively distinct from that substance, urea, which is the almost exclusive nitrogenous end-product of the energy metabolism of protein.

ACTION OF THE PRODUCTS OF PROTEIN DIGESTION

Proteoses, Peptones and Amino-acids. In the digestion of the naturally occurring proteins, the first products of hydration consist of a mixture of substances known as proteoses and peptones. In the further processes of digestion, under the influence of the ferments of the pancreas and small intestine, these substances are converted into the amino-acids which we have learnt to regard as the proximate constituents of the protein molecule. Many experiments have been performed in order to determine the nutritive value of these digestive products. In nearly all cases it has been found that the meat in the diet of an animal can be replaced by a corresponding quantity of the products of digestion of the same meat without interfering with the nitrogenous equilibrium of the animal, and Loewi and others have shown that the same result may be attained by feeding an animal on the products of pancreatic digestion of protein, *i. e.* a mixture consisting almost entirely of amino-acids. Since the proteins of the body differ in their composition from the majority of the proteins of the food, it is evident that each food-protein molecule has to be entirely disintegrated and reconstructed before it can take its place in the body fabric; and it is therefore only natural that, so far as metabolism is concerned, the results should be identical whether we feed the animal with the ordinary food-protein or with the products of its metabolism. This latter mode of feeding cannot however be regarded as presenting any advantages. Under normal circumstances the food molecules are broken down by degrees. Their

products of hydrolysis are set free in small quantities at a time and can be therefore absorbed and disposed of in proportion as they are set free. On the other hand, a sudden flooding of the alimentary canal with a large quantity of the products of digestion introduces an abnormal factor which must tend to produce wastage of nitrogen in the body and to disturb the normal chain of processes involved in the regular course of digestion.

THE BIOLOGICAL VALUE OF DIFFERENT FORMS OF PROTEIN

In consequence of the wide variation in the composition of the proteins contained in the different tissues of the body, it is necessary that the food shall include all the amino-acids in proper quantities and proportions. Hence it follows that all proteins are not equivalent as regards their capacity for replacing tissue waste or serving for the growth of the animal body. Those, in which nearly all the amino-acids are represented and which contain these in proportions approximating the average of those found in the chief animal proteins, will be more valuable than those in which one or more of the chief amino-acids are absent, or in which there is a large preponderance of one or more of the amino-acids which are required only in small proportions for building up the tissues of the animal body. As an example of the first type we may instance collagen and gelatin, and zein the chief protein of maize. Collagen and gelatin on digestion yield the ordinary amino-acids of the fatty series and also a certain amount of phenyl alanine and proline. The oxyphenyl group which occurs in other food proteins in the form of tyrosine, as well as the indol-containing group tryptophane, are absent, so that gelatin if pure gives neither Millon's test nor the Hopkins-Adamkiewicz' test. Hence gelatin cannot entirely replace the proteins of the food. As its capacity for yielding energy to the body equals that of any other protein, and since it supplies also a number of the amino-acids, it can replace to a large extent, but not entirely, other forms of protein which are not deficient in the above-mentioned amino-acids. Physiologists have indeed succeeded in maintaining animals for a short time in a state of nitrogenous equilibrium on a diet containing as its sole nitrogenous constituent a mixture of gelatin with tyrosine and tryptophane. In the same way zein yielding no tryptophane nor tyrosine is incapable by itself of supporting life, though this can be accomplished if lysine, tyrosine and tryptophane are administered at the same time.

As an example of the second type we may instance the protein of wheat flour. A reference to the Table on p. 89 shows that, whereas caseinogen, the protein of milk, contains only 15 per cent. of glutamic acid and serum albumin only 7 per cent., gliadin, the chief protein of flour, contains as much as 36 per cent. If wheat flour is the main or sole source of protein to the body it is evident that a large amount of glutamic acid will be in excess of the amount required to replace tissue waste. These differences in chemical composition between the proteins are of significance when the protein of the food is reduced to the minimal amount required to replace tissue waste, and under such circumstances marked differences are observed between the

biological value of proteins. These differences in nitrogen value were determined by Thomas in the following way. On a diet containing large quantities of starch and sugar and only a trace of protein he found the minimal loss of body protein. He then investigated how much of each of the various proteins must be added to the diet in order to prevent any loss of tissue protein. He arrived at the following biological values for the proteins investigated:

Ox meat	104	Cherry juice	79
Cows' milk	100	Yeast	71
Fish	95	Casein	70
Rice	88	Nutrose	69
Cauliflower	84	Spinach	64
Crab meat	79	Peas	56
Potatoes	79	Wheat flour	40
		Cornmeal	30

The practical outcome of this experiment is that when there is scarcity of protein, animal protein is more economical than vegetable protein, and that if it is necessary to live on a purely vegetable diet this should be mixed, so that all the amino-acids required in the body may be represented in the diet.

THE INORGANIC FOODSTUFFS

If an animal be fed with the proper quantities of fats, proteins, and carbohydrates, from which all the salts have been removed as completely as possible, it rapidly shows a distaste for the food, becomes ill, and dies in a shorter time than if it were receiving no food at all. Part of the symptoms which occur in these cases are due to the production of acid substances, *e. g.* sulphuric acid, in the course of metabolism of the proteins. It is possible to obviate this acid intoxication by administering sodium carbonate with the food. This admixture however suffices to prolong the life of the animal only for a short time. It is evident therefore that the inorganic constituents of the food, although yielding no energy to the body, are as essential for the maintenance of life as the energy-yielding foodstuffs, namely, proteins, carbohydrates, and fats. In the course of this work we shall have occasion to study the intimate dependence of the functions of various tissues, such as skeletal and heart muscle, on the presence of salts in normal proportions in the fluids with which they are bathed. Animals in a state of salt hunger show by the disorders of digestion which occur that the presence of salts is equally requisite for the due performance of the processes of secretion and absorption. Towards the end of the experiment the animal vomits its food, which shows no signs of digestion even when it has lain some hours in the stomach. Forster has shown that in salt-hunger the body is continually giving off inorganic constituents in the urine. The amount of these is smallest when it is supplied richly with organic foodstuffs. It seems that the salts of the body exist in a state of unstable combination with the tissue constituents, especially the proteins. If the amount of food supplied is insufficient, the animal lives on its own tissues, thus setting free salts which appear in the

urine. The loss of salts to the body will therefore be in direct proportion to the degree in which the animal is living at the expense of its own tissues.

ACCESSORY FOOD SUBSTANCES OR FOOD HORMONES

If we feed an animal on a mixed diet containing proteins, fats, carbohydrates and salts in the proper proportions but in a state of purity, *e.g.* a mixture of caseinogen, starch, sugar, salts and lard, we find that the animal becomes ill, ceases to grow if a young animal, and finally dies. This is due to the fact that practically all fresh foods contain small traces of substances whose chemical nature has not been determined, but which are essential for the utilisation of the food, for the maintenance of health, and for the production of growth. These substances are destroyed by prolonged heating or exposure to an alkaline medium, or often by simple drying of the tissue in which they exist. Different accessory substances are contained in different foods or in different parts of the same food. Thus, for instance, in races whose staple diet consists of rice, prolonged feeding with polished rice—*i. e.* rice in which the husks have been removed—leads to the production of the disease known as beri-beri. This is distinguished by the occurrence of pains, weakness in the limbs, loss of sensibility in the skin, œdema, and heart weakness. A similar disease in which the affection of the nerves (polyneuritis) is the main disorder may be produced by the same means in fowls or pigeons. If whole rice be eaten this disease does not occur and the disease may be cured by adding the polishings—*i. e.* the part of the rice grain which has been removed —to the polished rice before eating. It is evident that some substance is present in the outer layer of the rice grain which is essential to the normal nutrition of the body. The same substance occurs in the husks and germ of wheat, in yeast, and in smaller quantities in various vegetables and milk.

Another 'deficiency disorder'—viz. scurvy—has been long known and described. It occurs usually when bodies of men are cut off for a long time from fresh food, especially vegetables. Its main symptoms are weakness, skin disorders, small hæmorrhages under the skin, hæmorrhage from the gums and other mucous membranes. Scurvy is prevented or cured by the administration of fresh food, especially that belonging to the crucifer order, and of fruit juices, the best being juices of oranges and lemons.

It seems that the normal process of growth in a young animal is dependent on the existence of another accessory substance which is soluble in fat and exists in considerable quantities in milk and milk fat (butter). It is also present in other animal fats, but not in lard. It is probable that this substance is present also in fresh green vegetables, and is taken by the animal with its food and deposited in the fat of its tissues or excreted with the fat of the milk. The absence of the substance in lard may be due to the fact that pigs are fattened not as a rule on green vegetables, but on grain, especially maize; further investigations are necessary on this point. In the absence of this substance growth may cease. Its deficiency may lead to the production of rickets, a disease of young children characterised by

swelling of the ends of the long bones at the junction of the epiphysis with the shaft and by softening of the bones as a whole, so that these bend under the weight of the body, giving rise to bow legs, deformities of the pelvis, etc.[1]

At the present we are justified in defining three kinds of food hormones, viz.:

(1) Fat-soluble substance A, which is contained in butter and is essential to growth. This substance is also present in many green vegetables.

(2) Water-soluble substance B, present in the outer parts of most grain, in eggs, yeast, etc. The absence of this substance leads to the production of beri-beri. It is sometimes known as the anti-neuritic substance.

(3) A substance present in fresh vegetables, destroyed by boiling or even by drying of the vegetables, and to a smaller extent in meat and fresh milk. The absence of this substance gives rise to scurvy, so it can be spoken of as an anti-scorbutic substance.

[1] Funk has suggested the name of Vitamine for these substances, but although this term is often used it is misleading, since there is no evidence that this substance as a class is either basic in nature or has any relation to amines.

SECTION VI

THE NORMAL DIET OF MAN

HAVING learnt the significance of food in general and of the different foodstuffs in the animal economy, we are in a position to examine the actual requirements of the normal human individual. This involves a consideration not only of the total energy requirements of man according to age, size, sex and occupation, but also of the proper distribution of the foodstuffs in the diet.

We have seen that the energy requirements of a warm-blooded animal are a function of its surface. Knowing the weight and height of a man we can determine his surface by Du Bois' formula (p. 676). The average height and weight of English adults is 171 cm. and 70·3 kilos, corresponding to a surface of 1·772 square metres. The basal metabolism of a man is equal to 40 Calories per square metre per hour, so that the average man will have an hourly basal metabolism of 71 Calories. This is the energy output in bed and during sleep. When he is taking food this amount must be increased by about 10 per cent., and if he is up and about a further increase in metabolism will be evoked by the muscular movements, exposure to cold, etc. If we divide the twenty-four hours into three portions—eight hours' sleep, eight hours awake and eight hours' work—we must allow the basal metabolism for the eight hours' sleep, basal metabolism increased by about 30 per cent. for the eight hours during which the man is up and about and taking meals, and the basal metabolism plus an additional amount for work during the eight working hours. It is by no means easy to decide what figure should be accepted as representing the average work of an adult man. It is usual to take this as involving an energy output of 1000 Calories. Of these Calories 20 per cent., or even more, may under favourable conditions be transmuted into mechanical work, so that 1000 Calories would be sufficient to provide for the performance of about 100,000 kilogrammetres of external work. With these assumptions we arrive at the following energy requirements for an adult working man :

8 hours' sleep at 71 (Basal Metabolism) . . .	568 Calories.
8 hours awake at 92 (Basal Metabolism plus 30 per cent.)	736 ,,
8 hours' work (Basal Metabolism plus 1000 Calories) .	1568 ,,
Total	2872 ,,

Some additional expenditure of energy will be involved in travelling, so that we are justified in accepting the figure usually given for the energy

output of an average working man as 3000 Calories. It must be remembered that this figure is only an average—that is to say, it applies to a man of average size and weight and doing a certain amount of work. A small man will require less and a tall man more. A man in sedentary employment—*e. g.* typewriting, clerking, etc.—may not expend more than 200 to 400 Calories in the performance of external work; mental exertion causes no appreciable rise in the metabolic exchanges. Such a man would therefore have a total energy output of not more than 2400 Calories a day. On the other hand, a heavy worker, such as a navvy, may easily expend 2000 or more Calories a day in the performance of external work. It is not surprising therefore that investigation of the diets actually in use among different classes of men shows very wide divergencies. An examination of the actual energy output as measured by the CO_2 excretion during work gave the following approximate energy requirements for men in different occupations:

Occupation	Energy Requirements
Tailor	2500
Bookbinder	2800
Shoemaker	2850
Metal worker	3200
Painter	3250
Carpenter	3200
Stone mason	4400
Woodcutter	5000

The energy requirements of women will show corresponding variation according to occupation, but will be in general less in consequence of their smaller size and surface. Du Bois has shown that, in addition to the influence of size, women have a lower basal metabolism per square metre of surface, viz. 37 Calories per hour as against 40 in the case of men. The average height and weight of Englishwomen are 159·3 cm. and 55·7 kilos, corresponding to a surface of 1·511 square metres and to an hourly output of 56 Calories. In estimating the total energy requirements of an average woman we may reckon her work as two-thirds that of a man, and as involving an expenditure of 660 Calories per day. We then arrive at the following table for the energy requirements of the average woman:

8 hours' sleep at 56	448 Calories.
8 hours awake at 73 (Basal Metabolism plus 30 per cent.)	584 „
8 hours' work (Basal Metabolism plus 660 Cals.)	1108 „
Total	2140 „

It must be remembered that woman's work is rarely finished when she goes home from her occupation, so that a certain amount ought to be reckoned for housework. We shall not be far wrong then in accepting the usual estimate of a woman's requirements as four-fifths of those of a man, viz. 2400 Calories. Here again it must be remembered that this is merely an average figure, and that the requirements of different women correspond to their occupation and environment, and may vary from 1800 Calories up to 3000 Calories, or even more.

In children a computation of the energy requirements is rendered more difficult by two factors. In the first place the processes of growth are attended with an active metabolism, so that the metabolism is more energetic in the young animal than in the adult, even if we take into account the relative surfaces in the two cases. Thus the basal metabolism per square metre in boys of varying ages was found by Du Bois to be as follows :

Mean Age	Basal Metabolism per square metre per hour
6·5	57·5
12·6	50·4
13·7	49·4
16·5	43
19·25	40·7

In addition to this increased basal metabolism, if the processes of growth are to occur normally, there must be an excess of matter taken with the food over that excreted, since the growing animal is always putting on weight. Between the ages of eleven and sixteen both sexes put on weight at about 4 kilos a year, which is equivalent to adding to the body a store of about 800 Calories per month. The second difficulty is due to the fact that, while children do not perform any measurable work, they are in a constant state of muscular activity, and this aimless activity of a child is of great value in determining its healthy nervous and muscular development. The amount of this activity seems related to the amount of food taken—the increased energy of a child directly after a meal is a familiar phenomenon. If food is withheld or diminished this activity declines, but in this way energy is saved and the whole of the lessened food may go to maintain the temperature of the body and the normal processes of growth.

We may thus obtain a development of the child not differing appreciably from the normal on widely varying amounts of food, and it becomes difficult to say what is the average or the optimum amount that a child should have. Judging from the analysis of the food actually taken in the families of working men and others in receipt of sufficient incomes, it would appear that the amounts laid down by Lusk do not err on the insufficient side, although they are far less than are actually given in many well-to-do families and in high class schools, where great importance is attached to games and other forms of exercise. Lusk expresses the requirements of the different classes and ages in terms of the ' average man ' taken as 1.

Class	Coefficient	Energy Requirements
Average man	1	3000
Average woman	0·83	2500
Children 0–6 (both sexes)	0 5	1500
„ 6–10 „ „	0·7	2100
„ 10–14 „ „	0·83	2500
Girls 14 upwards	0·83	2500
Boys 14 upwards	1	3000

These figures represent the actual energy output of the average individual, and are therefore equivalent to the food which must be digested and absorbed

from the alimentary canal in order to make good the loss. No food undergoes complete digestion, the average loss being about 10 per cent. with an ordinary mixed diet, as is shown in the following Table:

Percentage of Foodstuffs Absorbed

	Protein	Fat	Carbohydrate	Ash	Total Energy
Average of 5 experiments	92·6	94	97·7	77·4	90·5

Three thousand net Calories (*i. e. energy* requirements) require therefore an intake of food with a Calorie value of 3300. If the food consists mainly of vegetable products it may be necessary to increase still further the allowance for loss in digestion, since on a diet such as rye bread as much as 33 per cent. of the total energy of the food may be lost in the fæces. The Table of *food* requirements for various ages and sexes will be as follows:

Children	0–6	1650 Calories.
,,	6–10	2300 ,,
,,	10–14	2750 ,,
Females	14 and upwards	2750 ,,
Males	14 and upwards	3300 ,,

These values are for average well-nourished individuals. It has already been pointed out that in a state of semi-starvation, accompanied by loss of weight, the basal requirements may be reduced considerably. As a result of a number of experiments Chittenden came to the conclusion that there was a definite advantage to be gained by reducing not only the protein intake of the body but also the total food. For a prolonged period Chittenden himself lived on a diet containing about 6 grm. of nitrogen daily with a heat value of about 1600 Calories, and in another individual the intake of nitrogen was 9·9 grm. and the heat value of the food 2500 Calories. Although such a limitation of the diet may be advantageous in a certain number of cases, there is no evidence which would warrant its general application; and the experience of Germany during the last three years of war has shown that a forced limitation of food to about two-thirds of what we have put down as normal has resulted finally in a decrease of efficiency of mind and body and in a marked diminution in the resistance to infection, especially tuberculosis.

DISTRIBUTION OF FOODSTUFFS IN A NORMAL DIET

A Committe of the Royal Society has laid down the following as a proper diet for the 'average man':

Protein	Fat	Carbohydrate	Total energy value
100 grammes	100 grammes	500 grammes	3400 Calories.

Since the energy for muscular work and that necessary to maintain the body temperature may be furnished by any of the three classes of foodstuffs, wide variations are possible in the relative proportions of the foodstuffs without injury to health. It is important however to consider the limits within which these variations are permissible.

Proteins.—As a rule an average mixed diet with a Calorie value of 3300 will contain about 100 grm. of protein. If the diet is mainly vegetable the proportion of protein will tend to fall. We have already seen that a certain amount of protein is essential to replace tissue waste. This amount may be

determined by finding the minimum quantity on which nitrogenous equilibrium can be maintained, while the Calorie needs of the body are sufficiently satisfied at the expense of carbohydrate and fat. Under these conditions it has been found that 35 to 40 grm. of protein may suffice. In these experiments the protein was largely milk protein. Where animal protein is entirely absent from the food a larger amount of vegetable proteins will be necessary, since they are of lower 'biological value,' and it is safe to lay down as a rule that for an average man the protein ration should not be diminished below 70 grm. per day. This should include different kinds of protein and if possible a certain proportion of animal protein, so as to ensure that all the essential amino-acids are supplied in the food.

Some authorities have recommended the diminution of protein to the minimum amount on the idea that the kidneys and other organs may suffer from the strain of eliminating excess of nitrogenous waste products. But the energy metabolism of protein results almost entirely in the formation of urea, an innocuous substance, which can have little harmful effect on the kidneys, even if we make the unjustifiable assumption that these organs, unlike other organs of the body, suffer as a result of their normal functional activity. There is no doubt that many of the disorders of middle life may be put down to over-feeding and lack of muscular exercise, but there is just as much reason to ascribe these evils to the carbohydrates as to the proteins of the diet. Indeed, it has been found that for men leading a sedentary life a moderate protein and fat diet is more suitable than one consisting chiefly of carbohydrates. In this case the normal stimulation to oxidation of the foodstuffs—viz. muscular exercise—is absent, and the stimulating effect of proteins on metabolism, their specific dynamic action, useless when muscular work has to be performed, is under these conditions of real value to the organism.

Carbohydrates are, as a rule, the most abundant and cheapest constituents of any diet, and form the greater part of cereals and tubers and of the pulses. Only in the arctic regions may there be a lack of this constituent of the diet. A certain amount of carbohydrate is essential for man. We shall see later that sugar is always present in the circulating blood and is necessary for the normal functioning of the tissues, especially of the muscles. In the absence of carbohydrate in the food this sugar is manufactured by the body out of protein. Moreover under the same circumstances there is a deficient oxidation of the fats, so that the half-oxidised products of fat metabolism accumulate in the body, giving rise to acid intoxication. However in temperate climates a shortage of carbohydrates can arise only under artificial conditions, and no need exists for laying down a minimum below which this constituent of the diet should not be reduced.

Fats can be produced by the animal body from carbohydrate. It would thus seem that, given sufficient carbohydrates in the food, there should be no absolute need for fats in the diet. It is stated by Hindhede that a man can be kept alive and can work normally on a diet in which fat is practically absent. In such cases it is essential that plenty of green food be provided in order to supply the fat-soluble accessory substance normally contained in the fats of milk and of meat. This statement may be true, but it is certain that it cannot be applied to all human beings. In practice we have to provide for each race a minimum desirable quantity of fat, which will

differ in different races and be larger in northern than in southern races. Thus the Japanese soldier is content with 20 grm. of fat daily, while in our country the average man would not be content with less than 75 grm. of fat per day. Seventy-five grammes of fat has a Calorie value of about 680—*i. e.* nearly 25 per cent. of the daily requirements, and we may conclude as a general rule that one-fourth of the total energy of the diet should be supplied in the form of fat.

There are probably three reasons for this craving for fat. In the first place, fat is easily assimilated and is almost entirely absorbed in the alimentary canal; but whereas the greater part of the carbohydrate food is absorbed three hours after food has been eaten, the chief absorption of fat occurs between five and six hours after a meal. On this account a meal lacking in fat is deficient in staying power, and individuals deprived of fat get hungry sometimes before the next meal and their work and efficiency diminishes. The lumbermen of Canada satisfy their huge needs in Calories—6000 to 8000 a day—by a diet in which there is a large proportion of fat pork and in which the fat represents 35 to 40 per cent. of the Calories.

In the second place, the bulk of food must be of considerable importance, especially when the total food required by the energy needs of the body is very large. Weight for weight fat has more than double the Calorie value of starch and sugar. But the difference in bulk is still greater, since fat is taken without admixture in a pure form, whereas the other foods are all mixed with a considerable proportion of water. The proteins in meat form only 15 to 20 per cent. of the total bulk. Starch cannot be taken except mixed with large quantities of saliva. When ordinarily cooked it is swollen up with probably five to ten times its amount of water. Even after absorption the same necessity for increasing the bulk of carbohydrates with water persists. Even glycogen does not occur to a larger amount in the liver than 12 per cent., a figure which may be largely surpassed by fat, and in adipose tissue there may be as much as 80 per cent. of fat. When carbohydrate goes into the circulation it is changed into sugar, and as sugar it needs twenty times its weight of water to carry it. It acts therefore to some extent in the same way as common salt. Just as an extensive diet of salt may produce dropsy, so a diet of carbohydrate increases in the first place the water content of the body, and this factor, when associated with inanition and fat shortage, may itself produce actual dropsy. The question of bulk is probably one of the most important factors in determining the need for fat. The human alimentary canal, at any rate in the races of Western Europe, has been developed so as to cope with a diet in which 20 to 25 per cent. of the energy is presented in the form of fat. In order to get the same energy from carbohydrates the alimentary canal would have to be much larger. Theoretically then the absence of fat can be made up by an increased supply of carbohydrates. But this can be carried out only in a certain number of individuals and under certain conditions. The ordinary individual deprived of fat diminishes his total intake of food and

exists on a lower metabolic level. It is a notable fact that during the shortage of fat in this country in 1918 there was no appreciable increase in the consumption of cereals. It was easier to live on the stored-up fat of the body than to adopt a stuffing process with carbohydrates.

In the third place, it seems that carbohydrates are more subject to fermentative changes in the intestines than fats. Overloading the intestines with carbohydrates in many individuals leads to abnormal fermentation, the production of gases, and general discomfort. We may conclude then that, although man can dispense with fat provided he receives a *full* diet of proteins and carbohydrates with the proper accessory substances, yet to develop his full efficiency as a working machine, fat is an essential ingredient of his diet and should furnish not less than 20 to 25 per cent. of the total energy of his food.

The significance of Meat.—Butcher's meat, according to the cut, contains from 15 to 20 per cent. protein, and from 15 to 30 per cent. fat. Its importance in the dietary is greater in northern latitudes, depending in part on questions of supply and of racial habit. A diet rich in meat is a diet rich in animal protein and fat, and the protein of such a diet will be considerably more than is required for the mere repair of tissue waste. Under these conditions the fate of proteins in the body is somewhat different to that of the other foods, viz. fats and carbohydrates. These other foods are either stored up in the body in the form of fat, if in excess, or they are burnt up in proportion to the needs of the working tissues. Proteins however, unless there is actual need of repair of wasted muscles in consequence of antecedent disease or starvation, are not stored up in the body of the adult, but are burnt up in proportion as they are supplied in the food. Every protein meal therefore raises the production of heat in the body, and this production of heat is in addition to the heat which is produced by any muscular work undertaken at the same time. A large meat diet, apart from its content in fat, is of no special advantage for the performance of muscular work, and is a distinct disadvantage when this work has to be accomplished at a high external temperature. On the other hand, a diet in which there is a large proportion of meat is of value to men in sedentary occupations in a cold or temperate climate, since it enables them to maintain their body temperature without the necessity of bodily exercise. The idea that the heavy worker requires a large supply of butcher's meat is of doubtful foundation, though there is no doubt that, in occupations involving exposure to cold and wet, a large supply of meat will add to the comfort of the individual by keeping him warm.

One other fact is of importance in this connection. Meat is not only easily cooked and presented in a palatable form, but its flavour renders other kinds of foods acceptable, at any rate to most inhabitants of the temperate and northern parts of Europe. It is thus habit rather than strict physiological principles which will probably govern the quantity of meat regarded as desirable in the normal diets of such people.

The significance of Sugar.—Sugar is the only food which is chemically purified before forming part of the diet. As a source of energy to the body it is nearly equivalent to an equal weight of starch. Its taste however renders it of value by increasing the palatability of other foods, and on this account a sufficient supply of sugar should be available for those classes whose facilities for cooking are defective. Sugar is readily absorbed from the alimentary canal and is the most useful food for sustaining muscular effort.

We thus see that a dietary to maintain a man in health and efficiency must fulfil the following requirements:

(1) It must have a sufficient Calorie value (3300 for the average man).

(2) It must contain protein, fats and carbohydrates. The quantity of

each of the first two should be not less than 70 grm. a day. The protein should have a mixed origin and should include a certain amount of animal protein.

(3) It should include a certain proportion of fresh foods, such as green vegetables, meat and eggs, and in the case of children, milk, in order to supply the necessary accessory food substances.

(4) It must contain a proper proportion of the salts, especially sodium, calcium, potassium, chlorides and phosphates.

(5) It must be palatable. Appetite is an essential factor for the secretion of the digestive juices and therefore for the digestion and assimilation of the food, so that good cooking becomes an important condition for the maintenance of health. The use of various flavouring agents and condiments, which is general throughout all races, is therefore physiologically justified.

ALCOHOL. When alcohol is taken by man in moderate quantities, the greater part of it undergoes oxidation and leaves the body as carbon dioxide and water. About 10 per cent. which escapes oxidation is excreted unaltered by the lungs and urine. This oxidation of alcohol is a result of true utilisation, since the addition of a certain amount of alcohol to the food does not result in an increase of the output of carbon dioxide. In small quantities therefore alcohol can act as a food. This function however is quite unimportant, and is overshadowed by the poisonous action of this substance. A man unaccustomed to its action cannot take more than 16 to 25 grm. without experiencing its poisonous effects. This amount of alcohol represents a total heat value only of 112 to 175 Calories, *i. e.* only about 5 per cent. of the total energy requirements of the body. Very rarely therefore can we be justified in administering alcohol as a food. Its value in a diet is entirely that of an accessory or adjuvant in exciting appetite by its taste and smell, an advantage largely counterbalanced by the danger of introducing a poison into the body which on long continuance tends to set up various degenerative changes in the tissues; and if taken in any quantity at one time, it causes a temporary abolition of those processes of inhibition and control which have been the determining factors in the survival of the race throughout the struggle for existence.

CHAPTER X

THE PHYSIOLOGY OF DIGESTION

CHANGES UNDERGONE BY THE FOODSTUFFS IN THE ALIMENTARY CANAL

THE use of the process of digestion is to alter the foodstuffs so as to fit them for absorption into the blood, by means of which they may be carried to all parts of the body. In most cases the foodstuffs cannot be utilised in their original form by the living cells. When we nourish ourselves at the expense of an animal or plant, we are taking in not only the current coin of the organism which is being used for the supply of energy to its vital processes, but also, and to a much larger extent, the framework forming the machinery of the organism as well as its stores of carbohydrate or fat. The foodstuffs as we ingest them are in the most inactive form possible. Practically all are colloidal, neutral, and tasteless, and present no tendency to unite with oxygen or indeed to undergo any change whatsoever, apart from the interference of living organisms such as bacteria. In a starving animal the stores of carbohydrate and fat and the protein structure of the inactive living cells have to be converted into a soluble form—transformed, so to speak, into currency—before they can be utilised by other living cells, such as those of the heart, for the discharge of their normal functions and the maintenance of the life of the animal. In the same way, when we take these colloidal or insoluble substances into our alimentary canal, they have to be rendered soluble or diffusible, in order to allow of their easy transference across the wall of the gut into the blood and their transport to the tissue cells. The cells of the body cannot deal with all kinds of carbohydrate. Most animal cells will starve when presented with starch, dextrin, or any of the disaccharides, such as maltose, lactose, or cane sugar. It is necessary therefore that all the carbohydrates shall be reduced in the alimentary canal or in its walls to the form of monosaccharides. As regards proteins, the processes of digestion have a different significance according as we are dealing with their value as givers of energy or their value as builders up of the living protoplasm. If the proteins of the food are to be oxidised and utilised as a source of energy, they must be rendered soluble so as to enable them to be absorbed and carried to those parts of the body where they may undergo deamination and complete oxidation. If they are to be built up as integral parts of living cells, to take the place of molecules which have been destroyed

in the wear and tear of functional activity, the change must be almost equally profound. The proteins of the cells from different parts of the body have different molecular constitutions. Not only do they differ among themselves, but they differ very largely from many of the proteins which may be taken in with the food. A child is able to obtain material for the growth of his brain cells, his muscle cells, or his liver cells, from a diet containing protein in the form of caseinogen, or of vegetable gluten, or of meat fibrin. A reference to the Table on p. 89 will show the striking difference in composition between the various proteins of the food and the proteins which have to be formed from them in the living tissues. It is evident that to form serum albumin, for instance, out of wheat gliadin, an entire reconstruction is necessary. This can only be accomplished by taking the protein molecule to bits, and by selecting certain of its constituent parts and building these up in the proper proportions to make a new protein molecule. For the purposes of nutrition therefore, the changes in the protein molecule must be greater the more variation there is in the composition of the protein of the food from the composition of the proteins of the tissues.

In primitive alimentary canals every cell lining the canal may be endowed with amœboid properties and capable of devouring the food particles, the subsequent changes in the latter to fit them for their journey through the rest of the body being performed in the body of the cell itself. In all the higher animals however including ourselves, the greater part of the preparation of the food is accomplished extracellularly in the lumen of the alimentary canal, and the changes are effected by means of special digestive juices, which are formed by the activity of masses of cells produced as outgrowths from the wall of the canal. The digestive juices attack the foodstuffs by means of ferments, and in every case the action of these ferments is hydrolytic, the foodstuffs taking up one or more molecules of water and undergoing dissociation into simpler molecules. Since each class of foodstuff requires a different ferment, a great variety of ferments is concerned in the processes of digestion.

As the end-result of digestion the many kinds of food taken by man are reduced to a fairly small number of simpler bodies. These end-products are:

(1) Carbohydrates. The monosaccharides: glucose, fructose or lævulose, and galactose.

(2) Fats. Fatty acids, or (in alkaline medium) soaps, and glycerin.

(3) Proteins. Here we have a great variety of mono- and diamino-acids, which may be enumerated as follows:

MONO-AMINO-ACIDS

Glycine (aminoacetic acid)	Monobasic acids of fatty series
Alanine (aminopropionic acid)	
Serine or oxyalanine (oxyaminopropionic acid)	
Aminovalerianic acid	
Leucine (aminoisobutylacetic acid)	
Isoleucine (aminocaproic acid)	

Aspartic acid	Dibasic acids
Glutamic acid	
Phenylalanine	Benzene (aromatic) derivatives
Tyrosine (oxyphenylalanine)	
Proline (pyrrolidine carboxylic acid)	Heterocyclic compounds
Oxyproline (oxypyrrolidine carboxylic acid)	
Tryptophane (indolaminopropionic acid)	

DIAMINO-ACIDS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS

Lysine (diaminocaproic acid)	The 'hexone bases'
Arginine (guanidinaminovalerianic acid)	
Histidine (iminazolalanine)	
'Diaminotrioxydodecoic acid'	Derived from a 12-carbon acid
Cystine (derived from aminothiopropionic acid)	Sulphur-containing body

Those constituents of the food which undergo no oxidation in the body, such as the water and salts, are practically unchanged in the alimentary canal, and are absorbed in their original form into the blood.

SECTION I

DIGESTION IN THE MOUTH

It is a common experience that, when food is taken into the mouth, there is a flow of a liquid, 'saliva,' into this cavity. Saliva is the product of secretion of three pairs of large salivary glands situated in the neighbourhood of the mouth and pouring their secretions into this cavity by means of ducts. It is possible to collect the fluid secreted by each of these glands separately; and it is found that the saliva varies in properties according to the gland from which it is derived. In addition to these large glands the whole mucous membrane of the mouth is beset with small glands.

Fig. 333. Dissection to display the salivary glands.
a, sublingual gland; *b*, submaxillary gland; *c*, parotid gland; *d*, common opening of ducts of submaxillary and sublingual glands; *i*, opening of duct of parotid gland.

The saliva is in most cases a mixture of the secretions of all three pairs of salivary glands as well as of the small glands of the mucous membrane. When collected it forms a colourless cloudy liquid, slimy in character. The cloudiness is due to the presence of a number of formed elements consisting of desquamated epithelial cells, disintegrating leucocytes, and gland cells, as well as coagulated clumps of mucin. Its reaction is in healthy individuals slightly alkaline. Its specific gravity varies between 1002 to 1008. Its chief constituents are coagulable proteins, mucin, and in some cases a diastatic ferment, ptyalin, and traces of potassium sulphocyanate. Its average composition is as follows:

100 parts mixed saliva contain:

Total solids	0·5 to 1·0
Inorganic solids	0·4 „ 0·6
Organic solids (mucin, serum albumin, serum globulin)	0·1 „ 0·4
Potassium sulphocyanate	0·00 „ 0·016

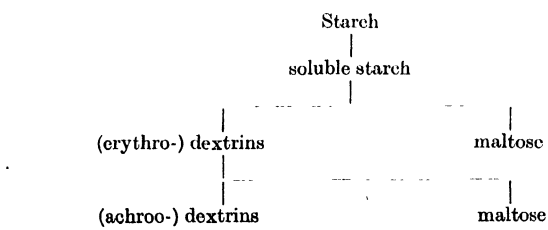
Freezing-point ($\triangle$) = — 0·07 to — 0·34

Potassium sulphocyanate is an almost constant constituent of human saliva, though it is often absent in that of other animals, such as the dog. It is generally present to the extent of ·01 per cent., so that on the addition of a drop of ferric chloride to

saliva a definite red colour is obtained. So far as we know it is formed in the body whenever cyanides or organic nitriles in small quantities make their appearance in the circulating fluid, either as the result of administration or perhaps as by-products in the normal processes of metabolism. The conversion of the poisonous cyanides into the almost innocuous sulphocyanates seems to be a means by which the organism protects itself against the poisonous effects of the former. The channels of excretion of the sulphocyanate are by the salivary glands, the kidneys, and possibly by the gastric juice.

THE USES OF SALIVA

The main function of saliva is to moisten the food and so facilitate its mastication and deglutition. The presence of the mucin is of special value for the latter process since it renders the mass of food slippery. In animals such as dogs, where the saliva is devoid of any digestive ferment, this must represent its sole function. In man and some of the herbivora the saliva exerts a well-marked digestive effect on one of the foodstuffs, namely, starch. If a warm solution of starch be taken into the mouth, kept there for one minute, and then expelled into a test-tube, the starch will be found to have entirely disappeared, its place being taken by a reducing sugar. The stages of the action of saliva on boiled starch can be followed more easily if its action is retarded by keeping the mixture cool, or at a temperature not above 25° C. The first change is a conversion of the opalescent gelatinising starch solution into a clear solution which no longer sets on cooling, but still gives a blue colour with iodine. The fluid contains what is known as soluble starch. The soluble starch then undergoes hydrolytic dissociation into a dextrin, which gives a red colour with the iodine and is therefore known as erythrodextrin, together with maltose. The erythrodextrin is then hydrolysed into an achroodextrin (giving no colour with iodine) and maltose, and the achroodextrin is still further broken up into dextrin and maltose. The conversion of starch into maltose is never complete, though if the maltose be removed by dialysis as it is formed, it was found by Lee to be possible to convert as much as 95 per cent. of the starch into reducing sugar. The stages in the conversion are represented in the following Table:



The process by which the huge starch molecule is converted into dextrins and maltose is a very complicated one, and a number of intermediate compounds of dextrins and maltose can exist between those whose presence is revealed by their varying reaction to iodine.

Ptyalin is most active in a neutral medium, so that the addition of minute traces of acid to the saliva increases its diastatic power. In the presence of ree mineral acid ptyalin is rapidly destroyed, ·003 per cent.

hydrochloric being sufficient for this purpose. It acts most rapidly at the body temperature. At 0° C. its action is still just perceptible. If heated to 60° C. it is destroyed.

We have seen that boiled starch solution is changed by saliva when kept only a few seconds in the cavity of the mouth. When the starch is in the solid condition, as in biscuits and most farinaceous foods, its stay in the mouth during the normal process of mastication is not long enough to allow of any considerable hydrolysis occurring. When a meal is taken, the food which is swallowed forms a mass lying in the fundus of the stomach. This mass is penetrated only with difficulty by the acid gastric juice secreted by the mucous membrane of the stomach within five minutes of the taking of food. Even half an hour after a meal the interior of the mass of food in the stomach may be still found to be neutral or slightly alkaline. The food therefore, thoroughly moistened by and mixed with saliva, remains in the stomach for thirty to forty minutes before the salivary ferment is destroyed by the penetration of the acid gastric juice. During this time the ptyalin continues to exert its effect, so that we may say that the chief part of the salivary digestion occurs actually in the stomach, and results in an almost complete alteration of the starch into dextrins and maltose. Unboiled starch is attacked with extreme slowness by the diastatic ferments either of the saliva or the pancreatic juice, so that, if taken by man, large quantities are unutilised and reappear in the fæces. Thirty to forty minutes after a meal the food becomes thoroughly soaked with the acid gastric juice, and salivary digestion gives place to gastric digestion.

THE SECRETION OF SALIVA

The mucous membrane of the mouth, especially on the under surface of the tongue, presents a number of small glands which contribute by their secretions to the moistening of the mouth. The greater part of the saliva is formed in man by three pairs of glands, viz. the sublingual and the submaxillary glands, situated in the floor of the mouth below the jaw, and the parotid gland, lying in the cheek over the ramus of the inferior maxilla.

The arrangement of these glands, especially of those in the floor of the mouth, varies somewhat in different animals. In the dog and cat the sublingual gland is wanting, its place being taken by a gland situated somewhat further back and known as the retrolingual gland. In the pig both retrolingual and sublingual glands are present in addition to the submaxillary, and one may sometimes find traces of the retrolingual gland in man. Many animals, *e. g.* the dog, also possess a gland situated in the orbit, which pours its secretion into the mouth—the orbital gland. These glands can be divided, according to their structure and the nature of the secretion which they form, into several classes. Among the salivary glands of the mucous membrane we may distinguish two types, the *mucous gland* and the *serous gland*. In specimens hardened and stained by the ordinary methods, the mucous gland is distinguished by the fact that its short duct opens into wide alveoli, the lining cells of which are distended with mucin and therefore present a clear unstained space in the section. In the other type, the serous gland, the duct lined with columnar cells branches into a series of acini which present a well-marked lumen and are lined with small granular cells with a very distinct and well-staining nucleus. The same general distinction can be made out in the large salivary glands. The parotid gland in man and in

all the higher mammalia is a typical serous gland, though here and there a mucous cell may be occasionally seen. The orbital gland of the dog represents practically one of the mucous glands of the general mouth cavity on a large scale. The sublingual and submaxillary glands in man represent a third type. Most of the alveoli are mucous in character. At the ends of the alveoli are seen crescent-shaped cells between the mucin-distended cells and the basement membrane. These are known as the *demilune cells*, or the *Crescent cells* of Gianuzzi. In some cases these mucous alveoli with demilunes may be found alongside of typical serous alveoli.

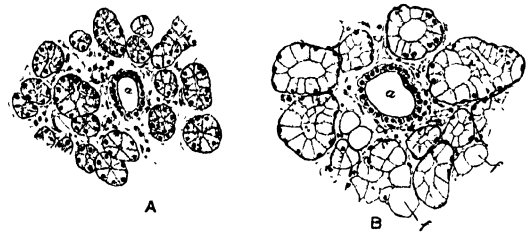


FIG. 334. A, serous gland; B, pure mucous gland from mouth. (KÖLLIKER.)
a, ducts; *f*, fat-cells.

Thus in man the submaxillary gland is usually a mixed gland, the serous alveoli predominating. The sublingual gland is also mixed, but with a predominance of the mucous alveoli. In the monkey the submaxillary gland is almost entirely serous. In the dog the submaxillary gland is a pure mucous gland with demilunes, while the retrolingual and sublingual gland when present are of the mixed type. In the rabbit the submaxillary gland is serous, while the sublingual gland is mucous. In the cat the submaxillary is mucous, the retrolingual is mixed, and the sublingual, when present, is mixed, with predominance of the mucous type.

The normal behaviour of the salivary glands during digestion is best studied by aid of a method used long ago by de Graaf and reintroduced with considerable elaboration of late years by Pawlow. It is possible without any disturbance of the animal's nutrition to transplant the papilla, on which the duct opens, to the outside, so that the saliva from any particular gland shall flow externally instead of into the cavity of the mouth. By attaching a small funnel to the fistulous opening, it is easy to collect the pure saliva unmixed with the secretion of any other of the glands.

By this method it has been found that as soon as food is introduced into the mouth there is a secretion of saliva, the relative extent to which different glands are involved varying according to the nature of the stimulation. Thus with meat there is only a small amount of secretion, which is derived chiefly from the submaxillary and sublingual glands, and is rich in organic constituents. When dry material, such as dry powdered meat, is introduced the flow of juice is more copious and more watery. The same effect may be produced in the dog by psychic excitation. Thus salivation may be induced by showing food to the dog, or even by the suggestion that dry powder is to be introduced into the mouth. A comparison of the juices obtained from different glands shows that the serous and mucous glands differ, as might be expected, in the nature of their secretion. A serous gland, such as the parotid, gives a thin watery secretion almost free from mucin, but containing small traces of coagulable protein. The mucous gland delivers

a secretion which is viscid from the presence of mucin, and contains also a small trace of coagulable protein. Both in parotid and mucous saliva the percentage of salts is very low, so that the freezing-point of these fluids is considerably higher than that of the blood plasma. In the dog the saliva is free from any ferments. In man ptyalin—the starch-splitting ferment—is found in the saliva from both kinds of gland, though it predominates in that obtained from the parotid gland. The total amount of saliva which may be obtained varies, of course, in different animals. Each gland may however in the course of the day give an amount of juice far exceeding, *e. g.* ten or twelve times, its own weight. In man it is reckoned that over one litre of saliva may be formed every twenty-four hours, and in the herbivora, such as the horse, the total diurnal production must amount to many litres; 500 grm. of hay alone may evoke the secretion of a litre of saliva.

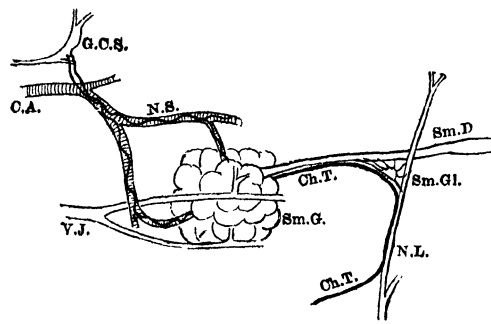


FIG. 335. Diagram of nerve supply to submaxillary gland.
Sm.G, submaxillary gland; N.L, lingual nerve; Ch.T, chorda tympani; Sm.Gl, submaxillary ganglion; Sm.D, Wharton's duct; V.J, jugular vein; C.A, carotid artery; G.C.S, superior cervical ganglion; N.S, sympathetic fibres ramifying on facial artery. (After FOSTER.)

The intimate dependence of the secretion of saliva on the events occurring in the mouth shows that the activity of the salivary glands must be excited by reflex means. The afferent nerves in this reflex are those that supply the mucous membrane of the mouth, *i. e.* the fifth nerve and the glossopharyngeal. The efferent channels of the reflex were discovered by Ludwig. Each one of the large salivary glands receives nerve fibres from two sources, viz. from the cerebro-spinal and from the sympathetic system. It is probable that the cerebro-spinal supply is derived always from one part of the cerebral axis, namely, from the filaments which make up the nervus intermedius. From this point they diverge in their course to the glands. The fibres to the submaxillary, the sublingual, and the retrolingual glands pass into the facial nerve, and then from this nerve along the chorda tympani to the lingual division of the fifth nerve. The lingual nerve passes below the duct, and just before it crosses the two ducts of the submaxillary and retro- or sub-lingual glands, it gives off a small branch backwards, namely, the *chorda tympani*, which runs along the submaxillary duct to be distributed to the glands, and in its course gives off fibres also to the retrolingual (Fig. 335).

The fibres are apparently finally distributed to the secreting alveoli, where they end freely on the secreting cells just below the basement membrane. They do not however take an uninterrupted course. By means of the nicotine method Langley has shown that all the fibres to the sublingual and the submaxillary glands end somewhere near the glands in connection with ganglion cells. From the ganglion cells fresh relays of fibres are given off which pass to the gland cells themselves. The fibres going to the submaxillary gland are connected with scattered cells lying in the substance of the gland itself; in the cat those passing to the retrolingual gland are connected for the most part with the ganglion cells which make up the so-called 'submaxillary ganglion.' The fibres to the sublingual gland in man probably take a similar course.

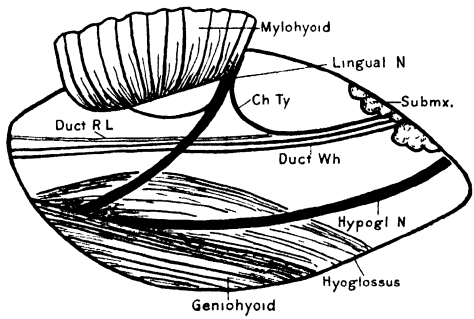


FIG. 336. Diagram of the arrangement of the nerve supply to the submaxillary gland, as exposed in an actual experiment.
Duct, Wh, Wharton's duct (of submaxillary); Duct.R.L, retrolingual duct; Ch.Ty, chorda tympani nerves. (ALCOCK and ELLISON.)

The fibres to the parotid gland pass along the glossopharyngeal nerve and its tympanic branch (nerve of Jacobson) to the tympanic plexus. Hence the fibres are carried by the small superficial petrosal nerve to the otic ganglion, and thence by the auriculo-temporal, which is a branch of the third division of the fifth nerve.

The sympathetic supply to all these glands is contained in fine filaments on the walls of the arteries with which they are supplied. The fibres are derived ultimately from the spinal cord, whence they issue by the upper three anterior dorsal nerve roots. They pass into the stellate ganglion, round the ansa Vieussenii to the inferior, and so to the superior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic. Here the fibres end around the cells of the ganglion, and a fresh relay of fibres, chiefly non-medullated, arise from the cells and travel on the walls of the branches of the external carotid artery to their destination.

The effect of stimulating the peripheral ends of the cerebro-spinal nerves going to the glands presents a general resemblance, whichever be the gland involved. Within a period of half to two seconds after the stimulation has been applied, a secretion of saliva is produced, presenting similar characters

to that which would be obtained from the gland under normal conditions if it were provided with a permanent fistula. The concentration of the saliva as well as its rate of secretion depends on the strength of the stimulus. The following Table (Heidenhain) shows the effect on the amount and composition of submaxillary saliva obtained by weak and strong stimulation of the chorda tympani nerve:

Strength of stimulus	Quantity in one minute	Per cent. of organic solids	Per cent. of salts
Weak . . .	0·17	0·84	0·20
Strong . . .	0·72	2·06	0·46
Weak . . .	0·17	1·67	0·26

With the strong stimulus the amount of saliva was increased over four-fold, while the percentage of organic substances in the saliva was raised from 0·84 to 2·06 per cent. There was at the same time an increase in the percentage of salts. If the excitation be continued for a considerable time, there is a gradual rise in the percentage of inorganic salts and a fall in the percentage of organic matter.

The cranial nerves going to these glands have another important effect, namely, vaso-dilatation. It was shown by Claude Bernard that on exciting the chorda tympani the flow from the vein of the submaxillary gland might increase four to eight times, and indeed to such an extent that the blood passing through the gland did not stay there long enough to lose its oxygen. Moreover, the dilatation of the arterioles removes the normal resistance which serves to damp and obliterate the pulse between the arteries and the veins. As the result of exciting the chorda therefore, the blood coming from the vein may show distinct pulsation, and may have a brilliant scarlet hue just as if it were derived from an artery. The same dilatation has been observed to attend excitation of the cranial supply to the parotid gland.

The effects of exciting the sympathetic nerve supply differ according to the gland and the animal which is the subject of experiment. In the dog excitation of the cervical sympathetic causes the secretion of a few drops of thick viscid saliva from the submaxillary gland. In this animal no secretion is obtained at all from the parotid gland on exciting the sympathetic, but the influence of the excitation is shown by the occurrence of histological changes in the gland cells. In the cat the submaxillary saliva obtained on sympathetic excitation may be as copious as and even more watery than the saliva obtained from the submaxillary on stimulation of the chorda tympani. We shall have later on to discuss how far these results are to be ascribed to a fundamental difference in the point of attack of impulses carried to the secreting cells by the two sets of nerve fibres, and how far to the varying effects of the cranial and sympathetic nerves respectively on the blood vessels. It must be remembered that the sympathetic nerve carries the vaso-constrictor fibres to most or all of the vessels of the head and

neck, and therefore in most cases we should expect, and we find, that stimulation of this nerve causes vascular constriction in the gland affected. Before attempting to decide this point we must study in somewhat greater detail the changes which occur in the gland concomitantly with the secretion.

CHANGES IN THE GLAND ACCOMPANYING SECRETION

The fact that a sub-maxillary gland of the dog under favourable conditions will secrete its own weight of saliva in five minutes, and will continue to secrete for many hours afterwards, shows that there must be a continual renewal of the fluid which is turned out in the secretion. The source of this fluid must be the blood which is circulating through the gland. If we refer to the diagrammatic representation of the elements which make up a secreting lobule and which may be involved in the act of secretion (Fig. 337), we see that between the lumen of the duct and the blood, which must be regarded as the source of the fluid, the following layers of cells intervene: (1) the endothelium of the blood capillaries; (2) the basement membrane; (3) the epithelial cells of the gland proper. We have, in the first place, to decide to which of these elements can be ascribed the chief part in the act of secretion.

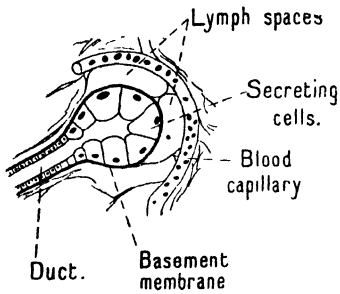


FIG. 337. Diagram to show relation of the secreting cells of a gland to the blood and lymph supply.

The secretory activity of the submaxillary gland, whether evoked reflexly by the introduction of acids into the mouth or directly by the injection of pilocarpine or by stimulation of the peripheral end of the chorda tympani nerve, is always associated with a considerable dilatation of the vessels of the gland, and a consequent large increase in the blood-flow through the gland, which may amount to between three and eight times the quantity passing during rest. Such an increase in the supply of blood is necessary in order to afford a source for the large quantity of fluid which is turned out in the saliva. Another effect of the dilatation will be to raise the pressure in the capillaries of the gland. We cannot however regard this rise of pressure in the capillaries as an essential factor in the act of secretion. If atropine be administered, excitation of the chorda causes the same vasodilatation as before, though no secretion is produced. Moreover Ludwig showed that the force with which the secretion is turned out into the ducts of the gland is greater than that represented by the blood pressure. The blood pressure in the capillaries must be considerably lower even with full vascular dilatation than the pressure in the carotid artery. If two manometers be connected, one with the carotid artery and the other with the duct, it will be found that, on stimulating the chorda tympani nerve the secretion will be excited, and the mercury will be driven up by the pressure

of the secretion in the corresponding manometer until it attains a height which may be double that of the mercury in the manometer connected with the carotid artery, and therefore must be still greater than the pressure in the capillaries of the gland. This experiment, which is easy to repeat, showed the impossibility of the act of secretion being in any way determined by a process of filtration. We have now further evidence that work is done in the production of the salivary secretion, evidence which was not available when Ludwig first carried out the experiment just described. When a fluid containing salts in solution is filtered through a porous membrane, the filtrate has the same content in salts as the original fluid. We can effect a separation of dissolved salts from a fluid by filtration under pressure through some membrane which is impermeable to the salts, *e. g.* a membrane of copper ferrocyanide —a so-called semipermeable membrane. Under these circumstances a very large pressure is necessary in order to cause the filtration of any fluid at all, a pressure which is equal to the osmotic pressure exerted by the substances in solution. Thus if we were filtering a 1 per cent. solution of NaCl through a semipermeable membrane, we should have to exert a pressure of about seven atmospheres in order to obtain a filtrate free from sodium chloride. To obtain a filtrate containing half the amount of sodium chloride, if such were possible, would therefore need a pressure of about three and a half atmospheres. On comparing the osmotic pressures of saliva and blood respectively—and for this purpose we can employ the depression of freezing-point as our index—we find that the molecular concentration of saliva, and therefore its osmotic pressure, is always very much less than that of the blood plasma, and may vary between half and three-quarters of the latter. Supposing the membrane separating the lumen of the duct from the

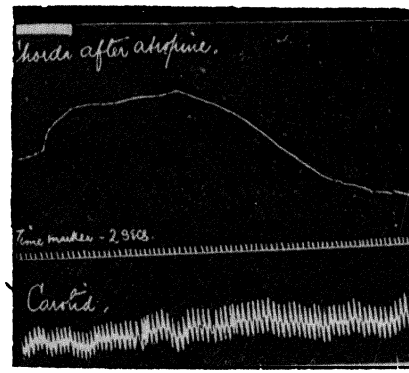


FIG. 338. Tracing of volume of submaxillary gland, showing effect of stimulation of the chorda after administration of 10 mg. atropine. The blood pressure (lowest line) was unaltered by the stimulation. (BUNCH.)

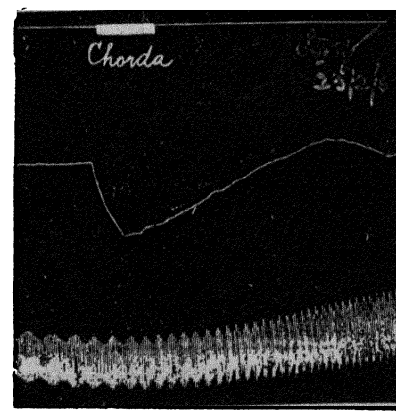


FIG. 339. Tracing of volume of submaxillary gland, showing decrease on excitation of chorda. (BUNCH.)

blood vessels could be regarded as endowed with the properties of a semi-permeable membrane, we should need, in order to effect the separation, a pressure ten to twenty times as large as the arterial blood pressure. We must conclude then that work, both osmotic and mechanical, is performed in the separation of the fluid from the blood and its transference in the form of saliva to the duct. A very simple experiment will suffice to show that this work must be effected, not by the endothelial cells of the blood-vessels, but by the gland cells themselves. The fluid passes from the blood vessels first into the lymphatic spaces, whence it is taken up by the secretory cells. If the first act in secretion consisted in an increased exudation of fluid from the blood into the lymph spaces, the first effect of exciting the chorda tympani nerve should be to cause an accumulation of fluid in the lymph spaces, some increase in the lymph flow from the gland, and the swelling of the whole gland. By placing the gland in a plethysmograph we can record the actual changes in its volume which ensue on excitation of the chorda tympani. If all secretion be prevented by the previous administration of atropine, stimulation of this nerve produces, as might be anticipated, an increased volume of the gland in consequence of the dilatation of its vessels (Fig. 338). If however the gland be allowed to secrete we obtain, in spite of the simultaneous increase in size of the vessels, an actual diminution in the size of the gland itself, showing that the first effect of the stimulation is on the cells of the alveoli (Fig. 339). Under the stimulus these empty themselves of the fluid they contain, replenishing their loss at the expense of the fluid in the lymph spaces. The increased passage of fluid from blood to lymph space is therefore a secondary and not a primary effect of the nerve stimulation, and the first effect on the gland is a diminution of volume and not an increase, as one would expect if the vascular endothelium were primarily responsible for the act of secretion.

HISTOLOGICAL CHANGES DURING SECRETION

The process of secretion is associated with marked changes in the structure of the cells composing the secretory alveoli. The changes are of the same general character whatever class of glands we investigate, though the ease with which they are to be demonstrated varies with the reactions of the various glands to the hardening fluids usually employed. If a small fragment of a mucous gland be teased in blood serum or in 2 per cent. NaCl solution, the cells are found to be packed with a mass of coarse, highly refractive granules. (Fig. 340). If a corresponding specimen be made from a serous gland (Fig. 341) the cells are also packed with granules, which, however, are much finer in structure. On making similar specimens from glands which have been forced to secrete for six or seven hours, the individual cells are found to be much smaller and the protoplasm of the cell is absolutely or relatively increased in amount, while the granules are much fewer and are now confined almost entirely to the inner margin of the cell. Activity is thus associated certainly with a discharge of granules, and probably with some increased building up of protoplasm. We may regard the act of

secretion as determined by the alteration of the granules and their discharge, together with water and salts, to form the specific secretion of the gland. During rest the granules are re-formed by precipitation in or modification of the protoplasm surrounding the nucleus. We have evidence that although the granules form the secretion, they represent, not the secretion itself, but a precursor of some at any rate of its constituents. Thus if acetic acid be added to the saliva obtained from the submaxillary gland, the mucin is precipitated as threads and films. If the granules in the secreting cells also consist of mucin we should expect acetic acid to have a coagulating effect upon them. We find, on the contrary, that on allowing acetic acid to flow over a section of the fresh gland the granules at once swell up and burst.

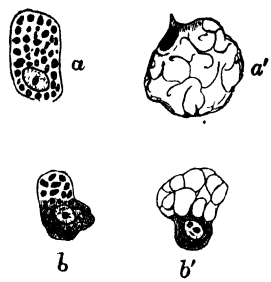


FIG. 340. Mucous cells from a fresh submaxillary gland of a dog. (LANGLEY.)

a, mucous cell examined fresh from a resting gland; *a'*, the same cell treated with weak alcohol; *b* and *b'*, cells from a discharged gland before and after treatment with weak alcohol.

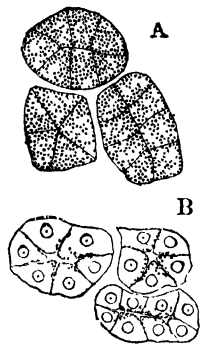


Fig. 341. Acini of a serous salivary gland. (LANGLEY.)

A, resting condition; B, discharged condition.

We must regard these granules therefore, not as mucin, but as a precursor of mucin, mucigen. The effect of ordinary hardening reagents, such as dilute alcohol up to 70 per cent. or Müller's fluid, is to cause these granules to swell up so that the cells become filled with a mass of mucin giving the typical hyaline appearance of ordinary sections of these glands. In the case of the serous glands the granules (Fig. 342) are apparently protein in nature. Where ptyalin is a constituent of the saliva, we are probably justified in assuming that it is contained either pre-formed or more probably as a precursor in the granules. In the glands of the stomach we have evidence that the granules are not pepsin—the characteristic ferment of gastric juice—but a precursor of this substance, namely, pepsinogen. It is very customary, therefore, to speak of the granules in a secreting gland as *zymogen* granules, *i. e.* the precursors of zymins or ferments. It is probable that we ought to regard these granules not merely as material precursors of the constituents of the secretion, but as little machines or cell laboratories in which proceed a whole series of chemical and osmotic changes which determine the production of the fully formed secretion directly from the protoplasm and indirectly from the ordinary constituents of the surrounding lymph.

From an examination of the stained specimens of glands the following stages in the production of secretion have been described:

(1) In the neighbourhood of the nucleus, and probably with its active co-operation, a differentiation of the protoplasm occurs with the production in most cases of a basophile substance which in hardened specimens generally takes the appearance of filaments. Since these filaments are sometimes regarded as the working part of the protoplasm, they have been given the name of *ergastoplasm* (Fig. 343, C and D).

FIG. 342. Submaxillary gland of rabbit. (SCHAFER after E. MÜLLER.)

The cells, all serous, are in different functional states: *a*, a loaded cell; *b*, a discharged cell; *c*, a secretory canaliculus penetrating into a cell.

(2) By a modification of the ergastoplasm granules are formed. After their first appearance these granules undergo gradual modification, as is shown by the fact that the staining reactions of the granules near the base of the cell differ from those of the granules at the free margin.

(3) When the secretion is excited, the fully formed granules take up water and salts in varying proportions, swell up, and discharge their contents into the lumen of the alveolus as the secretion proper to the gland.

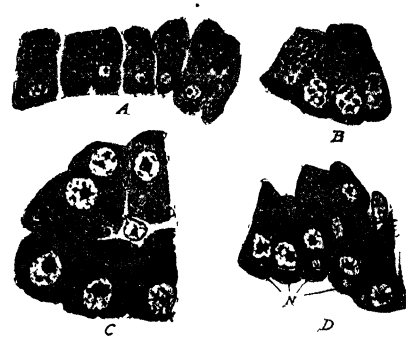


FIG. 343. Cells of pancreas, showing successive stages in activity, A,B,C,D. A, resting; D, discharged gland. (MATHEWS.)

ELECTRICAL CHANGES

Every localised chemical change in a system permeated by electrolytes must give rise to electrical differences of potential. It is therefore natural that electrical changes should accompany the intense chemical activity which is associated with secretion. The interpretation of these changes is difficult, owing to the simultaneous operation of another factor which may determine electrical differences of potential, namely, the movement of fluids through porous membranes. If the hilum of the submaxillary gland and its outer surface be connected with a galvanometer, a resting difference of potential is nearly always found, generally in such a direction that the outer surface is positive to the hilum. The current through the gland is therefore from within out. On exciting the chorda tympani nerve a diphasic effect is generally obtained,

the resting difference being first increased and later on diminished. On excitation of the sympathetic nerve we generally obtain a purely negative variation of the resting difference. These results were interpreted by Bayliss and Bradford as due to the co-operation of the two factors, chemical change in the gland cells and movement of fluid through the cells. The positive variation, *i. e.* the current from within out, was ascribed to the movement of fluid, whereas the negative variation of the resting difference was thought to be due to the chemical changes in the gland cells.

THE SIGNIFICANCE OF THE DOUBLE NERVE SUPPLY TO THE GLANDS

According to Heidenhain, although the parotid gland gives little or no secretion on stimulation of the sympathetic nerve, prolonged stimulation of this nerve causes histological changes in the gland even more marked than those produced by the cranial nerve. Similar histological changes were found by him in the submaxillary gland. He was therefore led to put forward the hypothesis that the salivary glands are supplied by two fundamentally different classes of fibres, namely: (1) trophic fibres, which determine the chemical changes in the gland responsible for the production of the specific constituents of the secretion, and (2) secreto-motor fibres, excitation of which causes the cells to take up water and salts from the lymph and blood, and pass them in large quantities into the duct. According to this view the sympathetic nerve supply to the gland would consist almost entirely of trophic fibres, whereas secreto-motor fibres would predominate in the cranial nerve supply. The action of atropine would appear at first sight to favour this hypothesis. In minute doses it entirely annuls the action of the chorda tympani nerve or the corresponding nerve to the parotid, while it is without effect on the sympathetic nerve supply unless given in huge doses. The preponderating effect of the sympathetic on the histological structure of the gland-cells has not been confirmed by later observers, and the varying effects of atropine on the two sets of nerve fibres may be conditioned by morphological rather than by functional differences between their nerve endings. According to Langley and Carlson, the difference in the action of the chorda tympani and of the sympathetic on the sub-maxillary gland is due to the synchronous action of these nerves on the blood supply to the gland, the sympathetic causing vaso-constriction, while the chorda tympani causes vaso-dilatation. In confirmation of this explanation they have shown that clamping the carotid artery during chorda stimulation diminishes the amount of saliva secreted but increases the percentage of solids in the fluid. This theory is however inadequate to explain the differences observed in the secretion of saliva reflexly aroused by introduction of substances into the mouth. In a dog with a permanent submaxillary fistula a copious flow of saliva may be caused by the introduction of 0·25 per cent. hydrochloric acid or of meat powder. The amount of saliva secreted under the two circumstances is approximately the same, but that evoked by the introduction of meat powder contains about twice as much solid contents as that which follows the introduction of acid into the mouth. Babkin has shown that the same differences are found after complete section of the sympathetic and that there is the same acceleration of the circulation through the gland whether the secretion is aroused by introduction of meat powder or of acid. It is impossible therefore to explain the difference in the composition of the saliva obtained under these two circumstances as due to differences in the blood supply to the gland, and we must conclude either that the chorda tympani contains different kinds of fibres which are excited to varying extent according to the nature of the reflex stimulations, or that one and the same nerve fibre can convey specifically different impulses. The latter explanation would not be in accord with the generally accepted Müller's law of specific irritability, but is the explanation to which Babkin himself inclines. At any rate it is certain that according to the nature of the reflex stimulus either the secretion of water and salts or the secretion of organic

solids may preponderate, altogether apart from changes in the circulation simultaneously evoked.

THE ENERGY INVOLVED IN THE ACT OF SECRETION

The source of the energy must be sought in the processes of oxidation occurring in the cells of the gland, and Barcroft has attempted to determine the total amount of energy put out by the gland in the act of secretion by measuring its respiratory exchanges under the conditions of rest and activity. He found that the resting submaxillary gland in a small dog took up 0·25 c.c. of oxygen per minute and put out 0·17 c.c. CO_2, while during active secretion it absorbed 0·86 c.c. O_2 and gave off 0·39 c.c. CO_2. Assuming that the total oxygen taken up is employed in the oxidation of a food substance, such as glucose, and that the whole of the energy of the chemical changes is set free in the form of heat, we find that a resting gland weighing about six grammes produces about 1·1 calories per minute. We know however that a certain amount of external work is performed in the secretion of a saliva containing less salts than the original blood, and also, when there is any resistance to the flow of saliva through the duct, in raising the hydrostatic pressure of the saliva in the duct to a height greater than that in the blood capillaries.

Can we from all these data form a conception of the total changes occurring in the gland and involved in the formation of the secretion? Even during rest, changes are going on in the gland cells, changes which involve the taking up of food material and its assimilation under the influence of the nucleus, perhaps into the nucleus itself, and certainly into the undifferentiated cytoplasm. In this cytoplasm a further change occurs, leading to its transformation into granules. When activity is excited by the stimulation of secretory nerves, the primary change appears to involve simply the granules. These structures must absorb water, apparently against osmotic pressure. Those nearest the lumen swell up, become converted into spheres containing water and salts in smaller proportion than exists in the lymph bathing the cells (and presumably in the protoplasm surrounding the granules), and in this swollen form are discharged or ruptured on the periphery of the cell into the lumen, so giving rise to secretion. This discharge of a fluid with a smaller molecular concentration than the cell or surrounding blood plasma must lead to an increased concentration in the remaining parts of the cell. The increased concentration would naturally induce a flow of water from lymph into cell, and the consequent concentration of the lymph would in the same way cause a flow of water from blood to lymph. This pull of water by the cell from the blood is still further increased in another way. The act of secretion, involving as it does the expenditure of energy, can be carried out only at the expense of chemical changes in the cell. These chemical changes, as in all other metabolic processes of the body, will result in the formation of a number of small molecules from the great colloid molecules of the protoplasm. The products of metabolism, or *metabolites*, will therefore accumulate in the cell, pass into the lymph, and increase the concentration of the latter. The increased concentration will call forth an increased transudation of

fluid, *e. g.* water, from the blood vessels, and the transudation thus evoked will be greater than that necessary to provide the water of the saliva, and will therefore produce a distention of the lymphatic spaces of the gland and an increased discharge of lymph along its efferent lymphatics. As a secondary result of the activity, perhaps in consequence of the removal of the products of the resting metabolism of the gland, there is increased growth of protoplasm, increased activity of the nucleus, and therefore a tendency to increased assimilatory changes and a preparation of the cell for further secretory changes either immediately or hereafter.

In the gland as in muscle, when we attempt to form a conception of the mechanism of the chemical machine in the living cell, we are brought up against insuperable difficulties. One might perhaps conceive of the secretory granules being bounded by a membrane impermeable to intermediate metabolites and salts, but permeable to carbon dioxide. If the first effect of stimulation of the secretory nerves were to produce an explosive disintegration of the complex molecules making up the granules, we should have a sudden multiplication of molecules within the granules. This would cause a large rise of the osmotic pressure in these granules and the consequent absorption of water from the surrounding protoplasm. This process however could only result in the production of a fluid in the granules having the same osmotic pressure as the surrounding medium, whereas we know that saliva has a molecular concentration which is only one-half that of the blood or lymph. We should therefore have to make a second assumption, namely, that, before the extrusion of the solution from the granules, there is a further breakdown of the metabolites by a process of oxidation, with the production of carbon dioxide which diffuses into the surrounding protoplasm. We have however no evidence of either of these processes or for any of these assumptions, and I have only adduced them in order to show how far we are still from the actual comprehension of the events occurring in every living cell, and underlying its conditions of rest and activity.

SECTION II

THE PASSAGE OF FOOD FROM THE MOUTH TO THE STOMACH

THE food after mastication is carried to the stomach by a complex series of co-ordinated movements involving the muscles of the pharynx and the œsophagus (Fig. 344). Various methods have been used to study the process of deglutition in man and the higher animals. Important information can be obtained by allowing a man or animal to swallow either a fluid or solid with which bismuth is mixed, and observing the passage of the opaque substance under the Röntgen rays. The subnitrate of bismuth may be mixed with milk for a fluid or with bread and milk for a semi-solid substance, or may be enclosed in a cachet and swallowed as a solid bolus. The time of entry of the food into the stomach may be determined by auscultating with a stethoscope over the region of the cardiac orifice. Since a certain amount of air is always swallowed at the same time as the food, the escape of this air through the small cardiac orifice gives rise to a bubbling noise which can be easily heard. In the horse the movement of a bolus down the œsophagus can be seen or felt from the outside of the neck. The relative time-relations of the events at different parts of the œsophagus may be obtained by passing sounds provided with rubber balloons to different levels in the tube and connecting these sounds with recording tambours

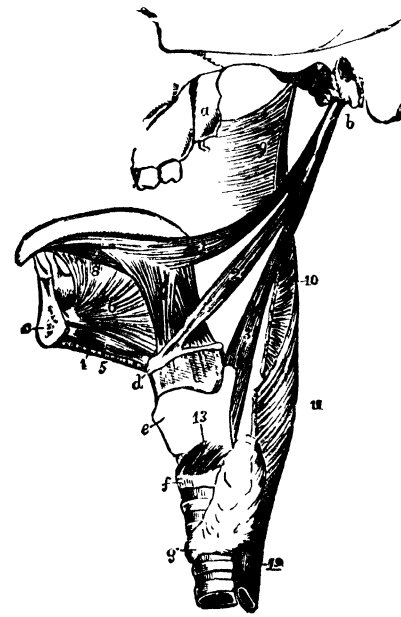


FIG. 344. Dissection to show muscles employed in deglutition.

b, styloid process, from which arise 1, the styloglossus; 2, the stylohyoid; 3, the stylopharyngeal muscles; *c*, section of lower jaw; *d*, hyoid bone; *e*, thyroid cartilage; *g*, isthmus of thyroid gland; 4, cut edge of mylohyoid muscle; 5, 6, 7, 8, muscles of tongue; 9, 10, 11, superior, middle, and inferior constrictors of pharynx; 12, œsophagus. (ALLEN THOMSON.)

or piston recorders. This method has been employed both in men and in animals.

When a mouthful of water is taken two sounds may be heard on auscultating over the œsophagus. The first sound immediately follows the beginning of the act of swallowing and is probably due to the impact of the fluid against the posterior pharyngeal wall, brought about by the sudden contraction of the mylohyoid and other muscles which throw the fluid from the back of the tongue across the pharynx. The second sound is heard best by listening over the epigastrium. It begins from four to ten seconds after the first sound, and lasts for two or three seconds. The interval between the two sounds is not constant, and may vary in the same individual. If the observation be carried out on a man lying on his back, the trickling second sound is changed into a series of sounds which have been described as squirts, which vary from two to five in number, each lasting about one second. The second sound may be absent when a solid bolus is swallowed. On observing the process by Röntgen rays, very much the same time-relations are obtained. If a mouthful of milk mixed with bismuth carbonate be swallowed, it will be seen passing rapidly down the œsophagus to the cardiac orifice of the stomach. Here the passage becomes slow, and the fluid escapes slowly in a narrow stream into the stomach. The average time which elapses between the beginning of deglutition and the disappearance of the last trace of fluid from the œsophagus is about six seconds. The same course of events is induced when the food swallowed is semi-solid. If however the bolus be dry, such as a cachet of bismuth carbonate, it may pass down the œsophagus with extreme slowness and may take as much as fifteen minutes to reach the cardiac orifice, although the individual who has swallowed it is quite unaware of its continued presence in the œsophagus. If, as would normally be the case, the cachet be well moistened with saliva or water before swallowing, it passes much more rapidly, the total time taken being between eight and eighteen seconds.

It has been customary since the time of Magendie to divide the act of swallowing into three stages: during the first the bolus of food is carried past the anterior pillars of the fauces; during the second through the pharynx, past the openings of the nasal cavities and of the larynx; and during the third through the œsophagus into the stomach. There is however no pause between these various stages. The act of deglutition is one, and the initiation of the first stage inevitably involves the completion of the third. The food is masticated, and is collected as a bolus on the dorsum of the tongue. A pause then takes place in the movements of mastication, a slight movement of the diaphragm usually occurs known as 'respiration of swallowing,' and then a sudden elevation of the tongue throws the bolus back through the anterior pillars of the fauces. In this movement the chief factor is the contraction of the mylohyoid muscle, which presses the tongue against the palate and pushes it backwards. The backward movement of the tongue may also be aided by the contraction of the styloglossus and palatoglossus muscles which pull the base of the tongue suddenly backwards.

These muscles, especially the palatoglossi, serve to close the isthmus faucium, thus preventing any return of the food towards the mouth.

As the food is passing through the upper part of the pharynx, it traverses a region common to the respiratory as well as the digestive passages. Its passage through this region is therefore rapid, and is associated with a closure of the two openings of the air passages into the pharynx. The nasal cavity is shut off by a simultaneous contraction of the levator palati and palato-pharyngeal muscles and azygos uvulæ, by which means the soft palate is raised (Fig. 345) and the posterior pilars are approximated to the

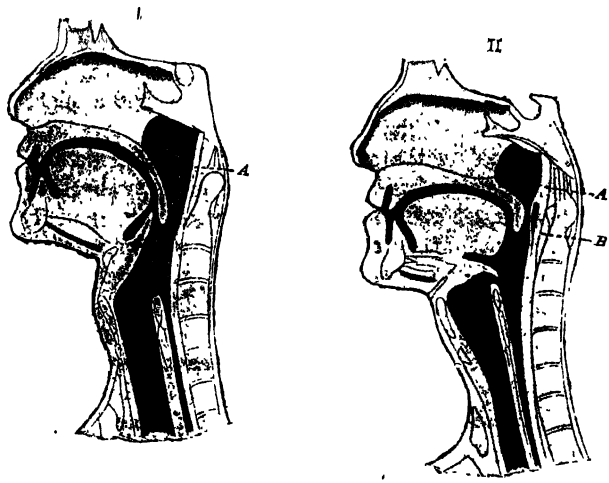


FIG. 345. Diagram (after TIGERSTEDT) to show the position of the soft palate. I, during rest; II, during the act of swallowing.

uvula. The upper and back wall of the palate is thus formed into a tense sloping roof which guides the bolus down the pharynx.

More important is the shutting off of the lower air passages. The contraction of the mylohyoid muscles, which initiates deglutition, is followed almost immediately (at an interval of 0·47 sec.) by an elevation of the larynx, and this elevation is accompanied by closure of the glottis as well as of the superior opening of the larynx. The laryngeal opening is bounded in front by the epiglottis, behind by the tips of the arytenoid cartilages, and at the sides by the aryteno-epiglottidean folds. When deglutition takes place the arytenoid cartilages, which normally lie against the posterior wall of the pharynx, are rotated and move inwards and forwards, so that the laryngeal opening assumes the form of a tri-radiate fissure, the vertical limb being short, while the transverse limb is rounded owing to the pulling inwards of the margins of the epiglottis. At the same time both the true and false vocal cords come together, while the movement of the dorsum of the tongue backwards enables the closed laryngeal orifice to lie directly under the back part of the tongue. The muscles which are actively involved in this closure

reflexly with the beginning of the act of deglutition. When a second act of deglutition succeeds the first with a sufficiently short interval, the reflex inhibition due to the second act may prevent the development of any wave of contraction in the œsophagus. This tube thus remains in a lax condition

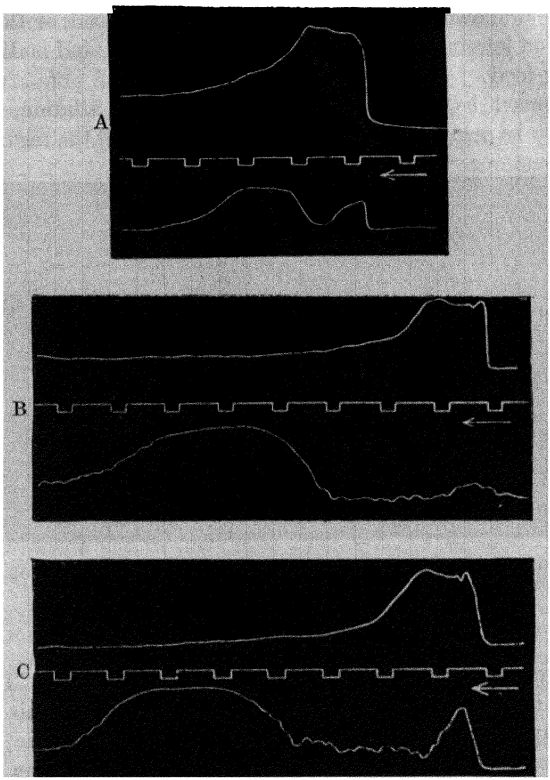


FIG 346. Curves obtained during swallowing by placing two rubber balloons, one (the upper curve) in the pharynx, the other (lower curve) in the œsophagus. (KRONECKER and MELTZER.)

In A the second balloon was 4 cm.; in B 12 cm.; and in C 16 cm. from the upper end of the œsophagus. In each curve it will be noticed that the excursion of the upper lever is followed *immediately* by an excursion of the lower lever (due to passage of the swallowed fluid and transmitted rise of pressure), and then, after an interval of time varying with the distance between the balloons, by another rise due to the peristaltic contraction of the wall of the œsophagus.

and allows the free rapid passage of the food downwards until the movements of deglutition have come to an end, when a peristaltic contraction occurs and sweeps all remaining adherent particles of food into the stomach. The circular fibres of the lower end of the œsophagus which form the cardiac sphincter of the stomach are normally in a state of tonic contraction. When one mouthful of food is swallowed, it may be either squirted directly into the stomach, or may remain at the lower end of the œsophagus until the following

peristaltic wave forces it through the orifice. When several acts of deglutition succeed one another, the cardiac sphincter shares in the inhibition of the œsophageal walls, and offers no resistance to the direct propulsion of food from the mouth to the stomach.

Cannon has shown that the relaxation of the cardiac orifice which accompanies swallowing extends also to the cardiac end of the stomach. This relaxation lowers the pressure within the stomach, and makes room for the incoming food.

If the stomach be filled with a fluid such as starch solution, the cardiac sphincter may be seen to relax rhythmically, allowing of the regurgitation of

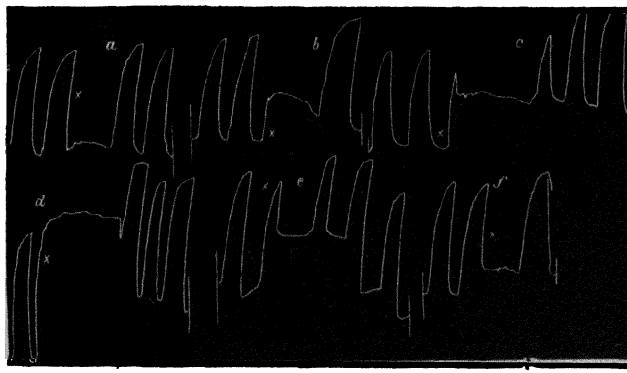


FIG. 347. Tracings of respiratory movements to show the effect of stimulating the central end of the glossopharyngeal nerve. (MARCKWALD.)
The point of stimulation is marked with a cross. Note that the stoppage may occur at any phase of the respiratory movement.

the stomach contents into the lower part of the œsophagus. Their entry into this tube is at once followed by a peristaltic contraction of this part of the œsophagus (apparently entirely unconscious), which drives the fluid back into the stomach. These movements of regurgitation become more and more infrequent as the gastric contents become acid, and are not observed at all if the stomach be filled with a fluid already acid. This phenomenon has been spoken of as the 'acid control of the cardia.'

THE NERVOUS MECHANISM OF DEGLUTITION

Deglutition is a reflex act. When we swallow voluntarily we supply the necessary initial stimulus either by touching the fauces with the tongue or by forcing a certain amount of saliva into the fauces. The afferent channels of the reflex are contained in the second division of the fifth nerve, the glossopharyngeal nerve, and the pharyngeal branches of the superior laryngeal nerve. We can excite a single act or a whole series of acts of deglutition by electrical stimulation of the central end of the last-named nerve. The efferent fibres which determine the contraction of muscles engaged in the act of deglutition travel by the hypoglossal nerve to the muscles of the

tongue, by the fifth to the mylohyoid, by the glossopharyngeal, the vagus, and the spinal accessory nerves to the muscles of the fauces and pharynx. The closure of the larynx is effected by impulses which travel through the superior and inferior laryngeal branches of the vagus. The centre for the act is situated in the medulla oblongata, and can be considered as consisting of a chain of centres stimulation of one of which involves the firing off of all the others in orderly sequence. Thus, as Meltzer has shown, the propulsion of the contraction down the œsophagus is determined by the intracentral nervous connections, and does not require the integrity of the muscular tube itself. If the œsophageal nerves be divided, the act of deglutition is abolished, the upper part of the œsophagus becoming permanently relaxed, while the lower part, including the cardiac sphincter, enters into a state of tonic contraction. On the other hand, the œsophagus may be ligatured or cut across without interfering with the propulsion of the wave of contraction, started in the pharynx, from one end of the tube to the other. Stimulation applied to the mucous surface of the œsophageal tube is without effect.

There is an important interdependence between the functions of respiration and deglutition. If an inspiratory or expiratory movement were going on during the act of deglutition, food might be drawn into the lungs or driven into the nasal cavities. Such an accident is prevented by the fact that every act of swallowing inhibits a respiratory movement. This inhibition is effected reflexly through the glossopharyngeal nerve. Stimulation of the central end of this nerve at once causes cessation of respiration in whatever phase it may happen to be (Fig. 347). This cessation lasts for five or six seconds, *i. e.* a sufficient length of time for a whole series of acts of deglutition. Respiration then recommences, and the inhibition cannot be prolonged by continuing the stimulation of the glossopharyngeal nerve. This inhibition of the activity of the respiratory centre can be shown on oneself. If the breath be held until the feeling of dyspnœa, *i. e.* the need to breathe, becomes insistent, relief is at once experienced by swallowing, and the feeling of relief will last for three or four seconds.

SECTION III

DIGESTION IN THE STOMACH

GASTRIC JUICE

WITHIN five minutes of the taking of food into the mouth, a secretion of gastric juice begins from the multitude of tubular glands which make up the greater part of the mucous membrane of the stomach. As the food, masticated and thoroughly mixed with saliva, is swallowed in successive portions, it accumulates in a mass in the fundus of the stomach, and the mass thus formed is penetrated with difficulty by the juice which is continually being poured out by the walls of the stomach, so that salivary digestion can be continued for a considerable time.

The gastric juice, which is so poured out, can be obtained in various ways, most of them yielding it mixed more or less with the foodstuffs. In clinical practice it is the custom to give a definite meal, and then at a given interval after the meal to wash out the stomach, so obtaining a mixture of gastric juice and partially digested food.

A method of obtaining the juice in a perfectly pure condition has been devised by Pawlow. A case had been previously described by Richet in which, as the result of the accidental taking of a corrosive alkali, the œsophagus had become occluded by the cicatrisation of the ulcer produced. In order to preserve the individual from starvation, it was necessary to perform gastrostomy, *i. e.* to make an artificial opening into the stomach through which he could be fed. Although in this patient the passage of the saliva from mouth to stomach was completely prevented, it was observed that merely taking food into the mouth was followed by the secretion of gastric juice. Pawlow produced this condition artificially in dogs. The œsophagus was divided and the two ends brought to the surface of the neck. At the same time an opening was made into the stomach. The animals could be fed either through the opening of the œsophagus in the neck, or with solid food through the gastric fistula. They could eat also and swallow food as usual, but the food thus swallowed simply fell out of the opening in the neck without passing into the stomach. Under these circumstances it is found that the taking of food is quickly followed by a secretion of gastric juice, which can be collected in vessels connected with the fistulous opening. If taken from a fasting animal, such a juice is perfectly free from admixture and can be regarded as pure gastric juice. It is quite clear, strongly acid, without smell. It contains about 0·3 to 0·6

per cent. total solids; it contains no peptone, but traces of protein. The following Table represents its average composition:

Hydrochloric acid . . .	0·46 to 0·58 per cent.
Chlorine	0·49 „ 0·62 „
Total solids	0·43 „ 0·60 „
Ash	0·09 „ 0·16 „

If the juice be allowed to stand in the ice chest for a day, it becomes cloudy and deposits a fine granular precipitate, which apparently represents the active agent of the juice and may perhaps be regarded as pepsin in a pure form.

The actions of gastric juice are due partly to the acid, partly to the combined action of the acid and the ferments. The acid of the gastric juice, when obtained free from admixture, is entirely hydrochloric acid. Dog's juice contains on the average about 0·6 per cent. HCl; human gastric juice probably contains less, about 0·2 per cent. When however we examine the gastric contents, composed of a mixture of gastric juice and semi-digested food, we always find, besides the hydrochloric acid, other acids present, among which the most prominent is lactic acid. So constantly is this latter acid present that it was formerly thought by some physiologists to be the chief acid of the gastric juice. It is produced by processes of fermentation occurring in the food. Whenever we take carbohydrates, we swallow at the same time micro-organisms, and these in the warm moist mass quickly attack the carbohydrates, converting them into sugar and then into lactic acid. As the gastric juice gradually soaks into the food and renders it acid, it stops this lactic acid fermentation, so that whereas in the early stages of gastric digestion both acids are present in considerable quantity, towards the end of gastric digestion lactic acid is almost entirely absent.

In some pathological conditions free hydrochloric acid may be entirely wanting from the gastric juice, and the detection of this acid in gastric juice becomes therefore a matter of considerable clinical importance. For this purpose we can employ various indicators, which change colour in the presence of a free strong acid such as HCl, but are unaffected by weak acids such as lactic acids, or the fatty acids. Chief among these indicators are Congo red, which turns blue with mineral acids, and a slaty colour with lactic acid; and tropaolin 00, which turns a brilliant red in the presence of a free mineral acid, but is unaltered by lactic acid. The reagent which is most employed is Gunzberg's reagent. This is a mixture of phloroglucin and vanillin dissolved in absolute alcohol. A drop of this is evaporated to dryness in a porcelain capsule. A drop of the fluid suspected to contain free acid is then added, and also evaporated to dryness. If free HCl be present, the residue on drying becomes a brilliant red colour, an effect which is not produced by the presence of free lactic or free fatty acids.

Great stress has been laid on the determination of the actual amount of free H ions present, and for this purpose the acidity of gastric juice or of digestive mixtures has been tested by determining its inverting power on cane sugar, or its power to hasten the saponification of ethyl acetate. The acidity estimated in this way is diminished considerably by the presence of albumens, and still more by the presence of albumoses or peptones. But it does not seem that the adjuvant action of the acid on the proteolytic

powers of the gastric ferment is in any way affected by the diminution of its acidity caused by the presence of peptone. The coloured indicators mentioned above however serve as trustworthy guides to the amount of free acid present, considered with regard to its digestive functions.

In order to determine quantitatively the amount of free HCl, the following procedure is employed (Mörner and Sjöqvist): Ten cubic centimetres of the gastric juice are neutralised with barium carbonate (litmus being employed as an indicator). The mixture is dried in a platinum dish, incinerated, and the ash extracted with warm water and filtered. In this process the organic acids are destroyed and converted into barium carbonate. The solution therefore contains merely the barium which was taken up to combine with the free HCl. Estimation of the barium in the filtrate gives the amount of BaCl present, and therefore the amount of hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice. The barium is determined by titrating in presence of sodium acetate and acetic acid with potassium bichromate solution, 'tetra paper' being used as an indicator. This turns deep blue in the presence of free bichromate in solution.

THE ACTIONS OF GASTRIC JUICE ON FOODSTUFFS

By the action of the hydrochloric acid certain changes are induced in the foodstuffs. Cane sugar is inverted to glucose and fructose; some proteins, such as blood fibrin, are swollen up to form a jelly-like mass. The caseinogen of milk is precipitated, the collagen of the connective tissues is swollen up. It is possible that a certain amount of hydrolysis also takes place in the dextrins and maltose produced by the action of ptyalin on starch.

The chief digestive function of the gastric juice is dependent on the action of the ferment pepsin. This substance, which is inactive in neutral medium, needs the co-operation of an acid, hydrochloric acid being the most effective, though its place may be taken by phosphoric, sulphuric, or lactic acid. Its main effect is on the proteins of the food. The stages in its action may be best studied on blood fibrin. If fibrin be immersed in 0·4 per cent. hydrochloric acid, it swells up to a gelatinous mass. On then stirring in an extract of gastric mucous membrane, or any preparation of pepsin, the gelatinous mass rapidly undergoes solution. If the mixture be boiled and neutralised, immediately after solution has occurred, nearly the whole of the protein is thrown down in a coagulated form. The first effect therefore is the production of coagulable soluble proteins from the insoluble fibrin. If the action be allowed to proceed for some hours, a whole series of products of hydrolysis are found in the mixture. On neutralising the fluid, a precipitate may be thrown down consisting chiefly of acid albumen. The greater proportion of the protein remains in solution. This remainder may be purified from any unaltered coagulable protein by boiling in slightly acid solution and filtering. The filtrate contains a mixture of bodies belonging to the class of hydrated proteins, viz. proteoses and peptones.

By means of fractional precipitation with ammonium sulphate or zinc sulphate, these mixtures can be subdivided into various substances, although in no case can we be certain that we are dealing with chemical individuals. The Table on p. 731 represents the chief bodies obtained by Pick by this

Fractions	Percentage of salt to precipitate	Albumoses	Limit of solubility in alcohol	Composition per cent. C	H	N	S	O	Biuret test	Millon's test	Xantho-proteic test	Indol formed by fusion with KHO	Carbo-hydrate reaction	Lead sulphide reaction
Hetero- and proto-albumose fraction	$(NH_4)_2SO_4$ 24–42	Hetero-albumose	Insoluble in 32%	55·12	6·61	17·98	1·22	19·07	Present	Very weak	Present	Very weak	Absent	Present
		Proto-albumose	Soluble in 80%	55·64	6·80	17·66	1·21	18·69	,,	Strong	,,	Very strong	,,	,,
Deutero-albumose	$(NH_4)_2SO_4$ 54–62 in neutral	Thio-albumose	Insoluble in 60–70%	48·96	6·90	16·02	2·97	25·15	,,	Present	,,	Present	,,	Very strong
	47–59 in acid reaction	A Albumose poor in sulphur	Soluble in 70%	53·11	7·16	17·86	0·80	21·07	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Present
A Fraction	$ZnSO_4$ 54–68 in acid reaction	BI Albumose	Insoluble in 35%	—	—	16·94	—	—	,,	,,	,,	—	,,	,,
B Fraction	$(NH_4)_2SO_4$ 70–95 in neutral	BII Albumose, Glucoalbumose	Insoluble in 60–70%	48·72	7·03	13·76	30·49		,,	,,	,,	Weak	Very strong	,,
	63–77 in acid reaction	BIII α Albumose	Soluble in 80%	43·98	6·41	14·25	1·63	33·23	,,	,,	,,	Strong	Absent	Absent
	$ZnSO_4$ 68–80 in acid reaction	BIII β Albumose	Soluble in 80%	52·32	7·32	15·36	1·21	23·79	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
		Peptomelamin	Soluble in 80–90%	60·70	6·68	11·46	21·16		Absent	Absent	—	,,	,,	,,
C Fraction	$(NH_4)_2SO_4$ 100 + Acid	C Albumose (Fibrin)	Soluble in 67–80%	34·52 52·68	5·85 6·83	17·24 16·91	42·89 1·10	(22·48)	Present	Faint trace	Very strong	Faint trace	,,	,,

			Biuret test	Millon's test	Xantho-proteic test	Indol formed by fusion with KHO	Carbo-hydrate reaction	Lead sulphide reaction
Peptone A	Not precipitated by $(NH_4)_2SO_4$	Insoluble in 96% alcohol	Present	Absent or trace	Present	Absent	Strong	Absent
Peptone B	Not precipitated by $(NH_4)_2SO_4$	Soluble in 96% alcohol	Present	Present	Present	—	Absent	Absent

method from 'Witte's peptone,' a commercial preparation containing proteoses and peptones.

The following careful analysis of the constituents of protoalbumose and heteroalbumose (or protoproteose and heteroproteose) respectively shows that the different proteoses really correspond to different groupings of the amino-acids making up the original protein molecule:

RESULTS OF THE COMPLETE HYDROLYSIS OF HETERO- AND PROTOALBUMOSE

	Heteroalbumose	Protoalbumose
Glutaminic acid	9·51	0·63
Leucine	3·05	5·79
Isoleucine	2·96	1·62
Valine	3·54	0·76
Alanine	3·39	2·50
Valine-alanine mixture	1·86	0·00
Proline	4·27	4·96
Phenylalanine	2·45	4·35
Aspartic acid	4·73	2·98
Glycocoll	0·15	1·44
Tyrosine	3·48	4·58
Arginine	7·30	7·72
Histidine	3·90	2·77
Lysine	8·90	8·40
Cystine	1·36	0·68
Ammonia	1·28	0·92

The results obtained by Pick by hydrolysis of these different bodies show that, in the breakdown of protein by gastric juice, there is really a division of the complex molecule into smaller molecules, which are qualitatively different. Thus of the fractions which he obtained, some contain the greater part of the sulphur originally present in the protein molecule, another contains the greater part of the carbohydrate group, while others are free altogether from the tryptophane group which is responsible for Hopkins' reaction obtainable in the original protein.

Proceeding from primary through secondary albumoses to peptones, there is probably a continuous diminution in the size of the molecule. During the time which gastric juice has to exert its influence, a maximum, say, of twelve hours, the breakdown of proteins never passes beyond the albumose and peptone stage, and it is in this form that the proteins of the food pass on through the pyloric orifice into the small intestine.

ACTION ON THE CONNECTIVE TISSUES AND OTHER FOODSTUFFS ALLIED TO PROTEINS

COLLAGEN. The connective tissues are made up chiefly of white fibres more or less modified, which consist of *collagen*. This substance forms the main basis of areolar tissue, of white fibrous tissue, and of bone. On

prolonged boiling, it is converted into gelatin. The gastric juice dissolves collagen, converting it, probably through the stage of gelatin, into gelatoses and gelatin peptones, bearing the same relation to the original substance as is borne by the proteoses and peptones to the proteins. On account of this action, adipose tissue (which consists of protoplasmic cells distended with fat and bound together by connective tissue) is broken up into its constituent cells. The protoplasmic pellicle is dissolved, and the fat floats freely in the gastric juice.

ELASTIN, which also occurs in varying amounts as the chief constituent of the elastic fibres of connective tissues, is slowly acted upon by gastric juice. Under the conditions of natural digestion however, it may be regarded as indigestible.

MUCIN, which forms a considerable proportion of the ground substance of connective tissues, is converted by gastric juice into peptone-like substances, and into reducing bodies probably allied to glycosamine.

The NUCLEO-PROTEINS, the chief constituents of cells, and therefore ingested in large amounts with foodstuffs such as sweetbreads, are first dissolved by the acid of the gastric juice, and are then broken up into two moieties. The protein half is converted into proteoses and peptones, while the nuclein moiety is precipitated in an insoluble form.

On PHOSPHO-PROTEINS gastric juice acts in a somewhat similar manner. The protein of milk, caseinogen, undergoes special changes in the stomach. The first effect of gastric juice, even in neutral medium, is to convert the caseinogen into an insoluble casein. This action is generally ascribed to the presence of a distinct ferment of the gastric juice, named *rennin*, or *rennet ferment*. But, according to some authorities, it is due directly to the pepsin, *i. e.* rennin and pepsin are identical. For the conversion of caseinogen into the solid clot of casein the presence of lime salts is necessary. The addition of rennet to an oxalated milk apparently produces no effect, but clotting ensues if a soluble lime salt, such as calcium chloride, is then added to the mixture. Under the action of the acid gastric juice the solid clot of casein is dissolved, but a precipitate is left containing a small proportion of the original phosphorus of the caseinogen. This precipitate is sometimes spoken of as para-nuclein, or *pseudo-nuclein*. It does not yield purine bases on hydrolysis with acids, but contains phosphoric acid in organic combination. By prolonged digestion with strong gastric juice it is possible to dissolve the whole of this precipitate. It is therefore thought that, in the clotting of milk, the caseinogen under the action of the rennet first undergoes a conversion into a soluble casein, or perhaps a splitting into a soluble casein and some other protein. The soluble casein then, under the influence of the lime salts, forms an insoluble casein, which is precipitated and causes the solidification of the milk. In the absence of lime salts, the conversion or splitting of caseinogen takes place, but the second stage of the process cannot occur until the lime salts are added.

THE EFFECT OF GASTRIC JUICE ON CARBOHYDRATES

On account of the fact that cane sugar undergoes inversion into equal molecules of glucose and fructose in the stomach, it has been sometimes thought that gastric juice contains a ferment, invertase. It seems however that the inversion which takes place in the stomach can be completely accounted for by the action of hydrochloric acid present, and that there is no need to assume the presence of a special ferment.

In the same way inulin, the variety of starch which gives rise to the lævorotatory sugar, fructose, on hydrolysis, and is found in dahlia tubers and certain other reserve structures of plants, is converted by the acid of gastric juice into fructose. The inulin is therefore completely utilised in the alimentary canal of animals, although there is no definite ferment *inulase* provided for its hydrolysis.

THE EFFECT OF GASTRIC JUICE ON FATS

The chief action of this juice on fats is the solution of their connective tissue framework and protoplasmic envelopes, so as to set the fat free in the gastric contents. After a fatty meal it is found moreover that a considerable proportion of the fat in the stomach has undergone hydrolysis and conversion into free fatty acid. In this hydrolysis two factors are involved, viz. (1) the action of the warm dilute hydrochloric acid; (2) the action of a special fat-splitting ferment or lipase, which is secreted by the walls of the stomach, and acts especially at the beginning of gastric digestion before the contents have attained a high degree of acidity. The action of this ferment is marked only if the fat be present in a finely divided form, *e. g.* as in yolk of egg. The chief digestion of fat takes place in the next segment of the alimentary canal, namely, in the duodenum.

THE SECRETION OF GASTRIC JUICE

Pawlow has shown that, if an animal provided with gastric and œsophageal fistulæ be given food when hungry, it will eat with avidity, and since the food cannot reach the stomach and so satisfy its hunger, it will continue to eat for two or three hours. Five minutes after the beginning of this sham feeding, gastric juice begins to drop from the fistulous opening; and in this way large quantities of juice, free from any admixture with other substances, can be easily obtained. By this means we obtain a secretion of gastric juice, which is excited by the presence of food in the mouth. This method does not however enable us to determine whether the character of the juice will be altered in any way by the changes which the food undergoes in the stomach itself. In order to form an idea of the normal course of secretion of gastric juice, when food is taken into the stomach in the ordinary way, Pawlow has devised another procedure. A small diverticulum representing about one-tenth of the whole stomach is made at the cardiac or pyloric end, in direct muscular and nervous continuity with the rest of the stomach, but shut off from the main part of the viscus by a diaphragm of mucous membrane. The method in which this operation is carried out will be evident by reference to

the diagram (Fig. 348). In a dog treated in this way it is found that the amount of juice secreted by the small stomach bears always the same ratio to the amount secreted by the large stomach, while the digestive power of the juice obtained from the small stomach is equal to that obtained from the large. This is shown in the following Table :[1]

SECRETION FROM GASTRIC FISTULÆ AFTER SHAM MEAL

Hours	Small stomach		Large stomach	
	Quantity	Strength[2]	Quantity	Strength
1	7·6 c.c.	5·88 mm.	68·25 c.c.	5·5 mm.
2	4·7 c.c.	5·75 mm.	41·5 c.c.	5·5 mm.
3	1·1 c.c.	5·5 mm.	14·0 c.c.	5·38 mm.
Total.	13·4 c.c.	—	123·75 c.c.	—

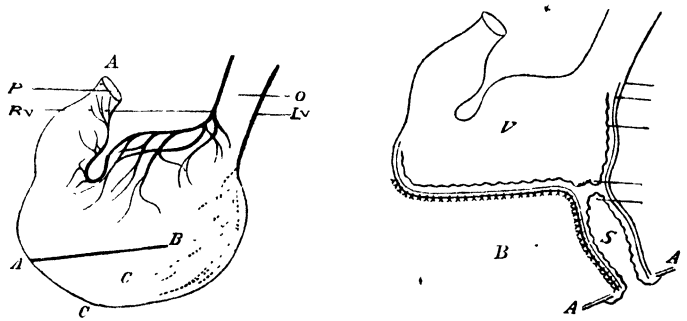


FIG. 348. Diagram to show Pawlow's method of making a cul-de-sac of the cardiac end of the stomach, with vascular and nerve supply intact.

In A the line of the incision into the gastric wall is shown. B represents the operation as completed.

In A: *O*, œsophagus; *R.v*, *L.v*, right and left vagus nerves; *P*, pylorus; *C*, cardiac portion of stomach; *A*, *B*, line of incision.

In B: *V*, main portion of stomach; *S*, cardiac cul-de-sac; *A*, abdominal wall; *c*, *c*, mucous membrane reflected to form diaphragm between the two cavities.

In this case a fistulous opening had been established into the large stomach, so that the juice could be obtained simultaneously from both sections of this organ. Secretion was excited by a sham meal, in which the food taken by the animal was not allowed to reach the stomach, but dropped out of an opening in the neck. It will be seen that the secretions in the two sections of the stomach run parallel to one another, while there is an almost

[1] Pawlow, *The Work of the Digestive Glands* (translated by Sir W. H. Thompson, M.D.), p. 80.

[2] The strength of the juice was determined by measuring the number of millimetres of coagulated egg-white (in Mett's tubes) which were digested in eight hours.

exact equivalence between the strengths of the juices obtained from each section. We may therefore regard the secretion obtained from the small stomach as a sample of that produced by the large, and from the changes in this small stomach judge of the effects occurring in the whole organ. By this method it is possible to study the effects of a normal meal in which the food is swallowed, or of a sham meal in which the food is merely masticated in the mouth, or of a meal in which the food is directly introduced into an opening into the large stomach.

The method which we must adopt for the collection of gastric juice shows that we have to do, in the first place, with a reflex nervous mechanism, since an active secretion is excited by the presence of food in the mouth and by its mastication. Moreover a secretion, which is at least as vigorous as that produced by a sham meal, can be evoked by merely arousing in the dog the idea of a meal. If the animal be hungry, it is sufficient to show it the food to produce a secretion. In the experiment from which the following Table is taken, the dog was continually excited by showing it meat during a period of an hour and a half. At the end of this time the animal, which had an œsophageal fistula, was given a sham meal. It will be observed that the psychical secretion obtained during the first period of the experiment was rather greater than the secretion produced by the introduction of food into the mouth.

PSYCHICAL SECRETION OF GASTRIC JUICE (PAWLOW)

Time	Quantity
8 minutes	10 c.c.
4 „	10 „
4 „	10 „
10 „	10 „
10 „	10 „
8 „	10 „
8 „	10 „
19 „	10 „
9 „	3 „

SHAM FEEDING

Time	Quantity
17 minutes	10 c.c.
9 „	10 „
8 „	10 „

The afferent channels for this reflex may be therefore either the afferent nerves from the mouth or, when the *idea* of food is involved, any of the nerves of special sense, such as sight, smell, or hearing, through which these ideas are called forth. The efferent channels can be only one of two nerves, viz. the vagus and the sympathetic, since these are the only two which are distributed to the stomach. That it is the former of these nerves which is involved is shown by the fact, recorded by Pawlow, that psychical secretion, as well as the results of a sham meal, is entirely abolished by division of both

vagi. On this account division of both vagi may give rise to entire absence of gastric digestion, and death of the animal may ensue from inanition, or from poisoning by the products of decomposition of food in the stomach, even when care has been taken to avoid injury to the pulmonary and tracheal branches of these nerves.

The converse experiment of exciting secretion by direct stimulation of the vagus presents greater difficulties. Stimulation of the vagus in the neck causes stoppage of the heart, and consequent anæmia of the mucous membrane of the stomach. Moreover the stomach seems to be much more susceptible than the salivary glands to the action of poisons, such as anæsthetics. Its activity is also easily affected by inhibitory impulses arising in the central nervous system as the result of either painful impressions or emotional states of the animal. In order to avoid these disturbing factors Pawlow proceeded as follows: An animal with fistulæ of œsophagus and stomach had one vagus nerve divided. A thread was attached to the peripheral end of the cut vagus and allowed to hang out through the wound. Four days after the operation the vagus was drawn out of the wound by carefully pulling on the thread, so as not to hurt or frighten the animal in any way, and its peripheral end stimulated by means of induction shocks. No effect was produced on the heart, owing to the degeneration of the cardio-inhibitory fibres, which is well known to occur within this period after section. Five minutes after the commencement of the stimulation the first drop of gastric juice appeared from the gastric cannula, and a steady secretion of juice was obtained with continuation of the stimulation. This experiment furnishes the decisive and final evidence that the secretory nerves to the stomach run in the two vagi. There is one marked difference however between the action of these nerves and the action of the chorda tympani nerve on the submaxillary gland, namely, the great length of the latent period before gastric secretion begins. The length of this latent period has not yet been satisfactorily explained. It cannot be due to delay occurring between the vagus fibres and the local nervous mechanism in the stomach. It may be that the chemical changes finally resulting in secretion require a longer period for their accomplishment than is the case in the salivary gland. Physiologically there is indeed no special need for a rapid secretion of gastric juice, whereas in the mouth it is essential that the introduction of food should be immediately followed by the production of saliva, for the tasting and testing of the food and for its subsequent mastication or rejection.

These experiments show conclusively that an important—probably the most important—part of the gastric secretion is determined by a nervous mechanism. This nervous secretion does not however account for the whole of the gastric juice obtained as the result of a meal. If an animal provided with two gastric fistulæ, one into a diverticulum and the other into the main stomach, has both its vagi divided, it is found that the introduction of meat into the large stomach is followed, after a period of twenty to forty-five minutes, by the appearance of a secretion of gastric juice from the small stomach. Moreover, when an animal is given a normal meal and is allowed to swallow the food after mastication, the total amount of gastric juice obtained is greater than that produced by the sham feeding alone and the flow is of longer duration. In fact, we may say that the gastric juice secreted in response to a normal meal consists of two parts, viz. (1) a large amount, the secretion of which begins within five minutes of the taking of the food and is determined by the reflex nervous mechanism described above; and (2) a smaller portion, the secretion of which is excited by the presence of the

food in the stomach. This combined character of the gastric juice produced by a normal meal is shown in the following Table (Pawlow):

SECRETION OF GASTRIC JUICE

Hours	Normal meal. 200 grm. meat into stomach		150 grm. meat direct into stomach		Sham meal		Sum of two last experiments
	Quantity c.c.	Strength mm.	Quantity c.c.	Strength mm.	Quantity c.c.	Strength mm.	Quantity c.c.
1	12·4	5·43	5·0	2·5	7·7	6·4	12·7
2	13·5	3·63	7·8	2·75	4·5	5·3	12·3
3	7·5	3·5	6·4	3·75	0·6	5·75	7·0
4	4·2	3·12	5·0	3·75	0	0	5·0

In the first column is given the result of a normal meal on the secretion from the gastric diverticulum. In the second column are given the amount and digestive power of the juice which is excited by the direct introduction of 150 grm. of meat into the large stomach of the animal, care being taken not to excite in any way the nervous reflex mechanism. In the third column are given the amount and digestive power of the juice which is evoked by a sham meal of 200 grm. of meat. In the fourth column is given the sum of the last two experiments. It will be seen that the total effect of the sham meal *plus* the direct introduction of meat into the stomach is almost identical with the secretion obtained when the food is taken in a normal way and allowed to pass through the œsophagus into the stomach.

The second phase of the gastric secretion cannot be ascribed to the intervention of the reflex vagal mechanism. Since it occurs after cutting off the stomach from its connections with the central nervous system, it must have its causation in the gastric walls themselves. That it cannot be due to mechanical stimulation is shown by the fact, previously mentioned, that it is impossible by local stimulation of the mucous membrane, by rubbing, by introduction of sand, or any other method, to evoke a secretion. Moreover it is not produced by all sorts of food. The introduction of white of egg, of starch, or of bread into the stomach causes no secretion. On the other hand, if bread be mixed with gastric juice and allowed to digest for some time, the introduction of the semi-digested mixture into the stomach evokes a secretion. We have already seen that meat produces a secretion; still more potent than meat however is a decoction of meat, or bouillon, or Liebig's extract of meat, or certain preparations of peptone. Pure albumoses and peptones have no effect, so that the exciting mechanism must be some chemical substances present in meat, and produced in various other foods under the action of the first gastric juice secreted in response to nervous stimuli. Popielski has shown that this secretion occurs after complete severance of the stomach from the central nervous system, as well as after destruction of the sympathetic nervous plexuses of the abdomen. Since

the injection of bouillon directly into the circulation has no effect, this author concludes that the second phase of secretion is determined by the stimulation of the local nerve plexus, and that we have here, in short, a peripheral reflex action, the centres of which are situated in the walls of the stomach itself. There is yet another possible explanation for this second phase of secretion. Although the peptogenic substances, those substances which evoke gastric secretion on introduction into the stomach, have no effect on the gastric glands when injected directly into the blood stream, it is possible that they may have an influence on the cells which line the cavity of the stomach, and that they may produce, in these cells, some other substance which is absorbed into the blood and acts as a specific excitant of the gastric glands. A process of this nature is known to occur in the next segment of the alimentary canal, viz. the duodenum, where it determines the secretion of the pancreatic juice and the bile.

Edkins has carried out a series of experiments to determine whether such a chemical mechanism may not also account for the secretion of gastric juice, which is excited by the introduction of substances into the stomach. Edkins' experiments were carried out in the following way: The animal, dog or cat, having been anæsthetised, the abdominal cavity was opened, and a ligature passed round the lower end of the œsophagus so as to occlude the cardiac orifice and effectually crush the two vagus nerves. A glass tube was then introduced through an opening in the abdomen into the pyloric part of the stomach, and fixed in this position by a ligature tied tightly round the pylorus. The glass tube was connected by means of a rubber tube with a reservoir containing normal salt solution at the temperature of the body. By means of this reservoir, a certain amount of fluid was introduced into the stomach and kept there at a constant pressure; the quantity of fluid introduced varied from 30 to 50 c.c. It has been shown by Edkins, as well as by von Mering, that no absorption of water or saline fluid occurs in the stomach. It is therefore possible to recover the whole of the fluid an hour after it has been introduced, by simply lowering the reservoir below the level of the animal's body. If secretion of gastric juice has occurred into the cavity of the stomach, the fluid will be increased in amount and will contain hydrochloric acid as well as pepsin. In a series of control observations Edkins showed that the mere introduction of this fluid into the stomach caused no secretion of gastric juice, the fluid removed at the end of an hour having the same bulk and the same neutral reaction as the fluid which had been injected. Edkins then tried the influence of injecting substances into the blood stream. The injection of peptone, of acid, of broth, or of dextrin into the blood stream produced no secretion of gastric juice. If however in the course of the hour during which the fluid was allowed to remain in the stomach, a decoction made by boiling pyloric mucous membrane with acid, or with water, or with peptones was introduced in small quantities every ten minutes into the jugular vein, the fluid removed at the end of the hour was found to be distinctly acid in its reaction and to possess proteolytic properties. The injection of these substances had therefore caused the secretion of a

certain amount of gastric juice containing both hydrochloric acid and pepsin. In order to produce this positive effect, it was necessary to employ pyloric mucous membrane, extracts made by infusing or boiling cardiac mucous membrane with any of these substances being without effect. Edkins concludes therefore that the secondary secretion of gastric juice is determined, not, as Pawlow and Popielski imagined, by a local stimulation of the reflex nervous apparatus in the gastric wall, but by a chemical mechanism. The first products of digestion act on the pyloric mucous membrane, and produce in this membrane a substance which is absorbed into the blood stream, and carried to all the glands of the stomach, where it acts as a specific excitant of their secretory activity. This substance may be called the gastric *secretin* or gastric *hormone*. It is noteworthy that it is produced in that portion of the stomach where the process of absorption is most pronounced.

The normal gastric secretion is therefore due to the co-operation of two factors. The first and most important is the nervous secretion, determined through the vagus nerves by stimulation of the mucous membrane of the mouth, or by the arousing of appetite in the higher parts of the brain. The second factor, which provides for the continued secretion of gastric juice long after the mental effects of a meal have disappeared, is chemical, and depends on the production in the pyloric mucous membrane of a specific substance or hormone, which acts as a chemical messenger to all parts of the stomach, being absorbed into the blood and thence exciting the activity of the various secreting cells in the gastric glands. It is still a moot point whether this gastric hormone is formed only in the pyloric mucous membrane, or whether it may not be also produced in the lower sections of the gut. Popielski has stated that the introduction of bouillon into the small intestine excites a secretion of gastric juice in animals, even after extirpation of the abdominal sympathetic plexuses and division of both vagi. On the other hand, introduction of the same substance into the large intestine has no influence on gastric secretion. Popielski ascribes this secretion again to a local reflex; but it is more probable that the mechanism in this case is the same as that involved in the secretion which is excited by the presence of semi-digested food in the stomach itself.

Pawlow has shown that the second phase of the gastric secretion is largely influenced by the character of the contents of the stomach. Thus the ingestion of large quantities of oil diminishes considerably the amount of gastric juice secreted, and Pawlow has suggested the administration of oil or oily foods as a possible remedy in cases where the production of gastric juice, and especially of hydrochloric acid, is in excess. It has long been imagined that the secretion of gastric juice was stimulated by the taking of alkalies. This idea has been shown by Pawlow to be erroneous. Whereas the formation of gastric juice is increased by the administration of acids, especially after a meal, it is largely diminished by the administration of alkalies such as sodium bicarbonate. In fact, sodium bicarbonate diminishes the activity of the digestive glands throughout the alimentary tract, and can be used as

a means of diminishing the secretion of gastric juice as well as of pancreatic juice.

A further important question has been propounded by Pawlow, namely, whether there is any alteration in the constitution and amount of gastric juice with variations in the character of the food. So far as concerns the first phase of secretion, the psychical or 'appetite' juice, this observer has shown that, whatever the previous diet of the animal, the juice always has the same characters, the same digestive power, and the same percentage of hydrochloric acid. He finds, however, that in the case of the second, or what we may call 'chemical' secretion, *i. e.* that produced by local changes in the stomach, there is considerable variation in the nature of the juice. Whereas the secretion of juice is greatest in amount after a meal of meat, the digestive power of the juice is greatest after one of bread, and Pawlow regards these differences in the juice as determined by the variations in the stimulus applied to the gastric mucous membrane. It is doubtful however whether these results justify us in ascribing a number of specific sensibilities to the gastric mucous membrane. We have seen that the psychical juice depends merely on appetite, and therefore will be greater in amount the more welcome the food is to the animal. On the other hand, the juice secreted in the second phase must vary according to the quantity of gastric hormone produced in the pyloric mucous membrane, and therefore with the nature and amount of the substances produced in the preliminary digestion of the gastric contents by means of the psychic juice. The amount of juice may vary also with the salts contained in the food, according to their alkaline or acid character, and the percentage of pepsin in the juice may vary with the intensity of stimulus as well as with the quantity of fluid available for the formation of the gastric juice. These factors will co-operate in determining the characters of the whole juice secreted after any given meal, and it seems possible to explain the variations, observed on such different diets as meat and bread, without having recourse to the difficult assumption of a specific sensibility of the gastric mucous membrane to such inert substances as dextrin or egg albumin.

SECTION IV

THE MOVEMENTS OF THE STOMACH

THESE can be best studied by Cannon's method—that is, by direct observation of the movements in a living unanæsthetised animal by means of the Röntgen rays. In order to make the shape of the stomach visible, the food—bread and milk—is mixed with a quantity of bismuth subnitrate or bismuth oxychloride (Hertz). The presence of this salt does not interfere with the processes of digestion, but renders the gastric contents opaque to the Röntgen rays. On examining by this means the stomach of a cat which has just taken a meal, the whole of the food is seen to be lying in the fundus. It is marked off by a strong constriction, the 'transverse band,' from the pyloric portion. In about twenty to thirty minutes faint waves of contraction begin a little to the cardiac side of the transverse band and travel slowly towards the pylorus. These waves succeed one another so that the pyloric part of the stomach may present a series of constrictions. Their effect is to force towards the pylorus the food which has been digested by gastric juice and detached from the surface of the mass in the fundus. The pylorus remaining closed, the food cannot escape, and therefore is squeezed back, forming an axial reflux stream towards the cardiac end. These contractions last throughout the whole period of gastric digestion, and become more marked as digestion proceeds. By their action the whole of the food is brought in close contact with every particle of pyloric mucous membrane and a thorough mixture of food and gastric juice results. At varying periods after a meal, according to the nature of the food taken, the arrival of one of these waves of contraction at the pylorus causes a relaxation of the orifice, and a few cubic centimetres of gastric contents are squirted into the first part of the duodenum. While

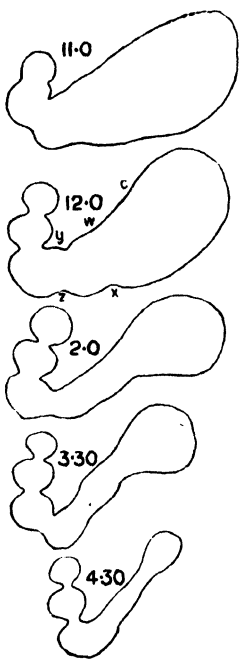


FIG. 349. Shadow sketches of the outlines of the stomach of a cat, immediately after a meal (11.0), at various intervals afterwards (12.0, 2.0, 3.30, 4.30). c, situation of œsophageal opening; *yz*, 'transverse band'; *wx*, junction of cardiac and pyloric portions. (W. B. CANNON.)

these movements of the pyloric mill are going on, the cardiac portion of the stomach is exercising a steady pressure on its contents in consequence of a tonic contraction of its muscular wall, so that each successive portion of the food mass which is loosened by the digestive action of the gastric juice is forced on into the pyloric mill. As digestion proceeds the opening of the pylorus becomes more frequent. The stomach empties itself more and more, until finally the whole of the viscus has the shape of a curved tube (Fig. 349).

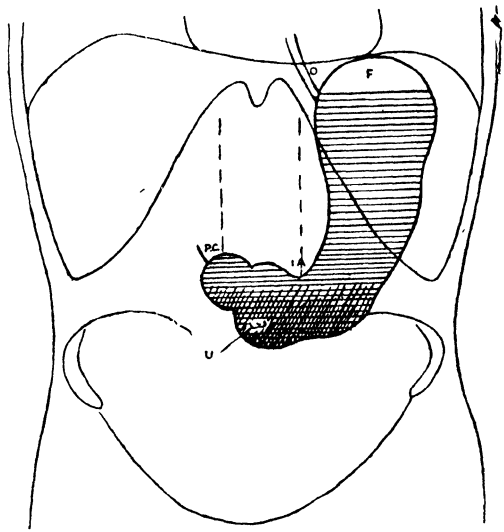


FIG. 350. Sketch of human stomach, in erect position, shortly after a bismuth meal. (HERTZ.)

F, fundus; U, umbilicus; IA, incisura angularis; PC, pyloric canal; O, œsophagus.

At the very end of digestion the pylorus may open to allow the passage even of undigested morsels of food.

Very similar are the changes in the human stomach, as shown by Hertz. The term fundus is by him limited to that part of the stomach situated above the cardiac orifice (in the erect position). The *body* of the stomach is marked off, more or less, by the *incisura angularis* on the lesser curvature corresponding to what we have called the transverse band. The pyloric portion consists of the *pyloric vestibule* and the *pyloric canal*, the latter being a tubular portion about 3·0 cm. in length, especially well marked in infants. When a small quantity of food has been swallowed (in the erect position) its weight is sufficient to overcome the resistance of the contracted gastric wall, and it rapidly passes to the pyloric part. Peristalsis begins almost at once, each constriction starting near the middle of the stomach, and deepening as it slowly progresses towards the pylorus (Fig. 350). About one inch from the pyloric canal it is so marked that part of the pyloric vestibule becomes almost completely separated from the rest of the stomach.

The part thus cut off then diminishes in size in every direction, part of its contents being forced through the pyloric canal, while the remainder escapes back as an axial reflux stream into the stomach. The waves recur at regular intervals of fifteen to twenty seconds, and three or four are present simultaneously. They continue without cessation until the stomach is empty—from one to four hours after the meal according to its bulk and composition.

The foregoing descriptions apply especially to the events which succeed the taking of a considerable meal. If warm fluid alone, *e. g.* water, be swallowed, the opening of the pylorus occurs within a very short time after the fluid has reached the stomach. Thus if a large draught of water be taken to quench thirst, it may arrive in the duodenum within a minute or two after being swallowed, and it is from the duodenum and small intestine that any absorption takes place. When a meal is undergoing digestion, there is a distinct relation between the amount of acid present in the gastric contents and the opening of the pylorus. One may indeed say that acidity of the gastric contents exercises a direct inhibitory stimulus on the pyloric sphincter.

These movements of the two portions of the stomach may be observed also on anæsthetised animals and even on a stomach which has been excised and placed in warm salt solution. They must therefore have their origin in the walls of the stomach itself. Although the co-ordination between the two parts of the stomach, between the tonic contractions of the fundus and the rhythmic contractions of the pyloric part, may be carried out by the local nervous system—Auerbach's plexus—situated between the layers of the muscular coat, it is probable that the advancing waves of contraction observed in the antrum are myogenic, *i. e.* directly originated in and determined by the muscle fibres themselves. Cannon has shown that these movements persist after complete division of Auerbach's plexus by 2 to 6 circular incisions carried through the entire muscular coat of the stomach; and it is evident that they do not partake of the nature of a true peristalsis, since they are not preceded by a wave of relaxation. The opening of the pylorus, on the other hand, which occurs at increasingly frequent intervals at the end of a wave, must be ascribed to a nervous mechanism. Although the local mechanism probably plays the greater part in this act of relaxation, the normal emptying of the stomach is also largely dependent on the integrity of the connection of this viscus with the central nervous system. If both vagus nerves be divided in a dog below the point at which they give off their branches to the lungs and heart, a large amount of food may remain in the stomach in an undigested condition. The secretion of gastric juice is deficient, and the opening of the pylorus is not easily carried out. Such dogs therefore tend to die of sapræmia, being poisoned by the absorption of products of putrefaction from the gastric contents. Pawlow has shown that animals can be kept alive for months after division of both vagi if a gastric fistula be made, the animals be carefully fed, and care be taken to wash out adherent non-digested portions of food from the stomach.

The opening of the pylorus depends not only on intragastric events but also on the condition of the duodenum. It has been shown by Serdjukow

that the pylorus remains firmly closed so long as the contents of the duodenum are acid. If alkaline fluid be introduced into the stomach, this is rapidly passed into the duodenum. If however some acid be introduced at the same time into the duodenum by means of a duodenal fistula, the pylorus remains firmly closed, and no fluid passes into the duodenum until the acid

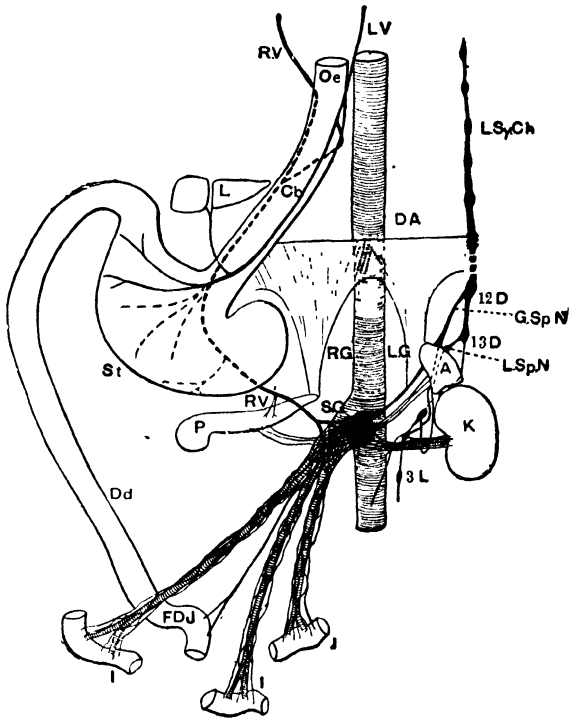


FIG. 351. Distribution of the vagus in the abdomen of the dog. (M. H. NAYLOR.)

RV, LV, right and left vagi. The right vagus runs behind the œsophagus (Oe) and stomach (St), and in those places is represented by a discontinuous line. Cb, connecting branch between right and left vagi; P. pancreas; Dd, duodenum; FDJ, flexura duodeno-jejunalis; I, I, I, intestine; L, liver; K, kidney; A, suprarenal capsule; RG, LG, right and left cura of diaphragm; L.Sy.Ch, left sympathetic chain; 12 D, 13 D, twelfth and thirteenth dorsal ganglia; 3 L, third lumbar ganglion; G.Sp.N, L.Sp.N, great and small splanchnic nerves; S.G, left semilunar and superior mesenteric ganglia; D.A, dorsal aorta.

which was placed there has been neutralised by the secretion of pancreatic juice and succus entericus. We have probably in the walls of the alimentary canal a local nervous mechanism for the movements of the pyloric sphincter. This may be played upon by impulses starting either in the stomach or in the duodenum, probably by the contact of acid with the mucous membrane. Increasing acidity on the side of the stomach causes relaxation of the orifice, whereas acidity on the duodenal side causes contraction of the pyloric

sphincter. The exact parts played in this mechanism by the local system and by the central nervous system respectively have not yet been thoroughly made out, though there is no doubt that these movements may proceed independently of any connection with the central nervous system.

Stimulation of the peripheral end of the vagus nerves may exercise varying effects on the gastric wall as well as on its sphincters. In the normal animal stimulation of the peripheral end of the vagus as a rule causes strong contractions of the œsophagus as well as of the cardiac sphincter. After the administration of atropine, stimulation of the same nerve will occasion dilatation of the cardiac sphincter. On both cardiac and pyloric portions of the stomach the vagus exercises inhibitory as well as augmentor effects. So far as concerns the musculature of the fundus or body of the stomach, the most usual result is an inhibition during stimulation of the vagus succeeded by an augmented tonus immediately the stimulus is removed. If the vagus be excited a number of times, the tonus of the muscular wall augments with each stimulus. On the pyloric portion stimulation of the vagus also causes inhibition, followed by contraction. The inhibition may however be very short and in rare cases altogether absent, so that during the excitation this inhibition is followed by a series of large rhythmic contractions. The prevailing motor effect of the vagus therefore is in the fundus increased tonus, in the pyloric portion augmented peristaltic waves. On the pylorus itself we may obtain from vagal stimulation either increased or diminished contraction. The conditions under which each of these may be evoked have not yet been definitely ascertained. Whether the splanchnic nerve, *i. e.* the sympathetic system, has a direct influence on the movements of the stomach has been disputed. According to Page May any effect produced by stimulation of this nerve, generally consisting in diminished motor activity, is probably due to the simultaneous influence on the vascular supply to the organ; the blood vessels being constricted, an artificial anæmia is produced which in itself is sufficient to account for diminished activity. Other observers regard the splanchnic as having an influence on the stomach similar to its action on the intestine, and regard it as the chief inhibitory nerve to this organ. It is possible that the extent to which the stomach is brought under the control of the sympathetic system may vary in different species of animals.

· Cannon has shown that the 'pangs of hunger' are associated with and probably due to rhythmic contractions of the stomach wall, which come on about meal time, especially if this be delayed.

VOMITING

Expulsion of the stomach contents may occur as a result of overdistension of this organ, of the presence of irritating material in its contents, or from abnormal conditions of the brain. It is generally preceded by a feeling of nausea, which is associated with salivation. The large quantities of saliva swallowed still further distend the stomach and assist the opening of the cardiac orifice. In the act of vomiting itself the first event is a deep inspiration. The glottis is then closed, and this is followed by a strong

contraction of the diaphragm and of the abdominal muscles. At the same time the cardiac orifice is relaxed. By means of X-rays it may be seen that at this time a strong contraction occurs at the incisura angularis, dividing the stomach into two separate portions. The dilated body of the stomach is pressed between the abdominal muscles and the diaphragm, so that its contents are expelled through the relaxed œsophagus and out through the mouth. As vomiting proceeds the stomach contracts down on the remaining contents, but the main factor in the expulsion is the contraction of the abdominal muscles and diaphragm. In fact, vomiting may be excited in an animal in which the stomach has been replaced by a bladder.

NERVOUS MECHANISM OF VOMITING

Normally the action of vomiting is reflex. It can be excited by tickling the back of the throat, when the afferent nerves are the trigeninal and the glossopharyngeal, or by irritation of the stomach through the afferent fibres of the vagus. But it may be excited from almost any of the abdominal viscera, *e. g.* uterus, kidney, intestines, etc. It may also be excited reflexly through the labyrinth or through the eyes, as in vomiting of sea-sickness, and is a marked symptom in many cases of disease of the cerebrum and cerebellum. The efferent impulses are carried by the vagi to the stomach, by the phrenics to the diaphragm, and by the various spinal nerves to the abdominal muscles. There are also inhibitory impulses descending the vagi to the œsophagus and cardiac sphincter. The reflex act depends on the integrity of the medulla, so that a 'vomiting centre' is sometimes said to be situated in the medulla.

Drugs may produce vomiting either by irritating the stomach, *e. g.* mustard and water, zinc sulphate, ipecacuanha, or by direct action on the medullary centres, *e. g.* tartar emetic, apomorphine, etc.

INTESTINAL DIGESTION

THE products of gastric digestion, after being worked up in the pyloric half of the stomach, are passed at intervals into the first part of the duodenum. Here they meet the secretions of three glands, namely, the pancreas, the liver, and the tubular glands of the intestine. In addition to these must be mentioned the secretion of Brunner's glands, which are situated at the very beginning of the duodenum. The glands of Brunner extend only over about half to one and a half inches in the carnivora, such as the dog or cat, but in the herbivora they may be found occupying the upper six inches of the intestine. The secretion of these various juices is practically simultaneous and is aroused by the very act of entry of the acid chyme into the duodenum. Although they co-operate in their action on the foodstuffs, it will be convenient to deal separately with each, both as regards their action and the mechanism of their secretion.

SECTION V

THE PANCREATIC JUICE

PURE pancreatic juice can be obtained either from an animal with a permanent fistula or from one with a temporary fistula by the injection of secretin into the animal's veins. A flow of pancreatic juice may also be produced by the administration of pilocarpine. This drug acts however as a poison on many tissues of the body, not confining its action to the pancreas or even to the secreting glands. It is not to be wondered at therefore that the pancreatic juice obtained by its injection differs in quality from that obtained by the more natural method of injection of secretin. The average composition of pancreatic juice is shown in the Table on p. 749.

It is a clear or slightly opalescent fluid, strongly alkaline from the presence of sodium carbonate, its alkalinity varying between $\frac{N}{10}$ and $\frac{N}{7}$ Na_2CO_3. It is therefore about as alkaline as gastric juice is acid, and it will be found that equal quantities of gastric juice and pancreatic juice, when added together, practically neutralise one another. The proteins of the juice may be roughly divided into three groups, a small amount of nucleo-protein precipitated on acidification, a protein coagulating at 55° C., and another at about 75° C. The juice tends to become poorer in proteins and richer in alkali as secre-

	A	B		C
Alkalinity:		(*a*)	(*b*)	
Number of c.c. $\frac{N}{10}$ NaOH equal to 10 c.c. juice	12·7	12·4	9	5·5
I. e. in terms of Na in 100 c.c.	0·2921	0·2852	0·2587	0·1166
Total solids in 100 c.c.	1·6 1·56	2·25	1·5	6·38 6·40
Total proteins in 100 c.c.	0·5	—	—	4·8
Ash in 100 c.c.	1·00 0·92	1·00	1·00	1·3
Chlorides in 100 c.c	0·2808 0·2966	—	—	0 2695
Total nitrogen	—	—	—	0·735

A. Secretin juice from three dogs. Sp. gr. 1014.
B. Secretin juice, specimen collected at beginning (*a*), and at end (*b*).
C. Pilocarpine juice.

tion proceeds. The concentrated juice obtained by injection of pilocarpine, which may contain as much as 6 per cent. total solids, is always considerably less alkaline than the more dilute juice got by injection of secretin. The most interesting and important constituents of the juice are its ferments or precursors of ferments. The juice on arrival in the intestine has, or develops, an effect on all three classes of foodstuffs, namely, proteins, fats, and carbohydrates, due to the presence of distinct ferments, viz. trypsin, steapsin or lipase, and amylopsin.

ACTION ON PROTEINS

Although the digestive action of pancreatic juice on proteins was pointed out by Corvisart, little attention was paid to this effect either by Claude Bernard or subsequent authorities, until Kuhne subjected the action of extracts of the gland to a thorough investigation. The neglect of this action by Claude Bernard must be ascribed to the fact that he worked with pancreatic juice. It has been shown more recently that pancreatic juice as secreted is free from proteolytic effects, and that for the development of this power it is necessary that some change should be brought about in the juice itself, namely, a conversion of trypsinogen into trypsin. This change under normal circumstances is brought about directly the juice enters the gut, by the action of a substance—enterokinase—contained in the succus entericus. The pancreatic juice thereby acquires a proteolytic activity superior to that of any other digestive juice, so that the proteins of the food undergo a very thorough disintegration. The different constituents of the protein molecule show a varying resistance to the action of trypsin. The greater part of the molecule is rapidly broken down into its proximate constituents, namely, amino-acids, and the same change is undergone by the proteoses and peptones resulting from the gastric digestion of proteins. Within a few minutes therefore after the chyme has reached the small intestine, a certain amount

of amino-acids will have been formed. Some of the groups present a resistance to disintegration. After tryptic digestion for a few hours, the mixture will be found still to contain a considerable quantity of peptone, which in consequence of its resistance to further alteration was designated by Kühne 'antipeptone.' The antipeptone of Kühne certainly included some of the diamino-acids, which at that time had not been isolated. There is always a part however which gives the biuret reaction and is only slightly broken down after the prolonged action of trypsin. Even when the trypsin has acted for weeks and the biuret reaction has entirely disappeared, the mixture will be found to contain, in addition to the separate amino-acids, some members of the polypeptide class, composed of two or more molecules of amino-acid united together. One of these polypeptides has been isolated by Fischer and Abderhalden from the products of tryptic digestion of the protein of silk, and has been found to contain glycine, alanine, and proline. The stages in tryptic digestion, *e. g.* of fibrin, may be set out as follows:

(1) After one hour's digestion—soluble coagulable protein, deutero-albumose, peptone, amino-acids, with a small amount of alkali metaprotein produced by the action of the alkali of the juice.

(2) After digestion for one day—deutero-albumose, 'antipeptone,' amino-acids, polypeptides.

(3) After digestion for one month—amino-acids, polypeptides.

Among the amino-acids tyrosine is one of the first to be split off, and this substance, with leucine, was among the earliest known products of pancreatic digestion. The action of trypsin is thus seen to resemble very closely the action of boiling concentrated hydrochloric acid. Like the latter it attacks the protein molecule at the—CO—NH—coupling, introducing water at this point and therefore breaking up the polypeptide groupings into simple amino-acids. Why it always leaves a certain remnant of the polypeptides unattacked is not at present explained. The investigation of its action on the polypeptides has shown that very minute differences in the grouping of the molecule may determine whether or not the molecule is attacked by trypsin. Apparently it will only attack such molecules as are present in the naturally occurring proteins. Thus under the action of trypsin the following polypeptides undergo hydrolytic dissociation: alanyl glycine, alanyl alanine, alanyl leucine A; while the closely similar polypeptides, glycyl alanine, glycyl glycine, alanyl leucine B are left untouched.

CONDITIONS OF TRYPTIC ACTIVITY

Since the pancreatic juice is strongly alkaline, it might be expected that trypsin would be most effective in an alkaline medium. It must be remembered however that the alkaline juice, when secreted, meets the correspondingly acid contents discharged from the stomach, and that the resulting mixture is practically neutral. This neutrality exists throughout the small intestine, the reaction of the contents of the gut being similar to that of a fluid containing alkali which has been saturated by the passage of carbonic

acid, viz. alkaline to such indicators as methyl orange, and acid to such indicators as phenolphthalein. On investigating the action of trypsin outside the body, it is found that, at any rate as concerns its earlier stages, this ferment is more active in the presence of sodium carbonate. It is usual to make up an artificial digestive mixture by dissolving commercial trypsin in 0·2 to 0·3 per cent. sodium carbonate. The optimum amount of sodium carbonate depends on the strength of the solution in trypsin: the more trypsin present the higher is the optimum amount of sodium carbonate. It is stated that, although an alkaline reaction is more advantageous for the earlier stages of tryptic activity, the later stages take place best in a neutral medium. This result is probably due to the fact that trypsin in alkaline medium is extremely unstable so that, when prolonged digestions are carried out, the trypsin would be rapidly destroyed if the medium were strongly alkaline. The destructibility of trypsin, as well as its action, is largely affected by the presence of proteins or their digestion products in solution. Bayliss has adduced evidence to show that, when trypsin acts upon protein, it enters into some form of combination with the protein molecule. This combination protects the trypsin from the destructive action of alkali. The velocity of the reaction, which takes place under the influence of trypsin, gradually diminishes, owing probably to a combination of the trypsin with the products of digestion, *e. g.* with the peptones or amino-acids, and its consequent removal from the sphere of action. If by any means the amino-acids be removed the action of the trypsin is renewed. Destruction of the ferment occurs in the intestine itself. If the intestinal contents be collected by means of a fistula at the lower end of the ileum, they show little or no proteolytic activity. Trypsin is therefore an extremely active ferment, which carries out its function of protein hydrolysis at the upper part of the gut and is destroyed before reaching the lower end.

THE ACTIVATION OF PANCREATIC JUICE

It was observed by Kühne that extracts of the fresh pancreas did not develop their full activity for some considerable time, the development being aided by preliminary treatment with a weak acid. When a pancreatic fistula is made according to Pawlow's method, the juice obtained always presents some proteolytic activity. It was shown by Pawlow and Chepowalnikoff that the development of the activity of the juice was due to the action of a constituent of the succus entericus which they named *enterokinase*, and it has since been found that, if care be taken to avoid contact of the juice with the mucous membrane surrounding the orifice of the duct, it is, when secreted, entirely inactive. The enterokinase acts like a ferment on a body, trypsinogen, present in the juice as secreted, converting this into trypsin. Pawlow therefore called this body the 'ferment of ferments.'

This view of the action of enterokinase has been challenged, especially by Delezenne, according to whom there is an actual combination between the enterokinase and the trypsinogen, trypsin itself being a mixture or combination of the two bodies. He compared the reaction to that of the hæmolysins, which, as is well known, involve in

their action the co-operation of two bodies, the amboceptor and the complement. If this were correct, there should always be a proportionality between the quantities of trypsinogen and enterokinase respectively which are necessary to form trypsin. It has been shown by Bayliss and Starling that this proportionality is not present. The smallest quantity of enterokinase is sufficient to activate any amount of trypsinogen if sufficient time be allowed. The effect of increasing or diminishing the amount of enterokinase is not to alter the total amount of trypsin finally produced, but merely the time taken for its production. This behaviour characterises a ferment, and we may therefore conclude that the view originally put forward by Pawlow is correct, namely, that trypsin is produced from trypsinogen under the action of a ferment, enterokinase. If pancreatic juice be allowed to stand, even with the addition of toluol to prevent bacterial infection, it gradually acquires a certain degree of activity. If however sodium fluoride be used as an antiseptic, the juice remains permanently inactive. The spontaneous activation of the juice may be hastened by neutralisation. The most potent means next to enterokinase is the addition of lime salts. If a few drops of 10 per cent. calcium chloride solution be added to fresh pancreatic juice, the calcium being in such a quantity as to suffice to combine with all the carbonate present in the juice, complete activation of the juice occurs within a couple of days, no further increase in its digestive powers being obtained on subsequent addition of enterokinase. It has been suggested that the action of calcium is in some way to assist in the production of an enterokinase from some precursor of this body already present in the juice. According to Mellanby, the calcium acts simply by neutralising the juice and thus allowing minute traces of enterokinase already present in the juice to exert their effect. It is not likely that this calcium activation plays any part in the normal processes of digestion, since for its completion it needs twelve to sixteen hours, whereas the enterokinase present in the succus entericus will effect the activation of the juice within a few minutes.

THE ACTION OF PANCREATIC JUICE ON MILK

On the addition of pancreatic juice to milk a clot is produced which speedily redissolves. If re-solution takes place too rapidly the production of a formed clot may be missed. In every case however, on heating the milk a few minutes after the addition of the trypsin, a clot is obtained. How far this action is to be ascribed to the proteolytic ferment trypsin, or how far it is due to the presence of a free rennet-like ferment in the juice, is not yet definitely settled. Since the rennet action is parallel to the proteolytic activity of the juice, it is probable that we must regard the clotting of milk as the first stage in its proteolysis.

THE ACTION OF PANCREATIC JUICE ON CARBOHYDRATES

The pancreatic juice, as well as fresh extracts of the pancreas itself, contains a strong amylolytic ferment, diastase, amylase, or amylopsin. If a few drops of pancreatic juice be added to a 1 per cent. solution of boiled starch, within a few seconds the solution clears, and in half a minute, on the addition of iodine, a red colour is obtained, showing the presence of erythro-dextrin. At the end of a few minutes no colour is produced with iodine, and the solution contains maltose. The stages in the hydrolysis of starch brought about with pancreatic juice are exactly similar to those effected by ptyalin. If the juice be neutralised, the process of hydrolysis goes on to the formation of dextrose or glucose. This further conversion is due to the presence in the juice of a second ferment—maltase—which converts

the disaccharide maltose into the monosaccharide glucose. The juice in the gut is therefore able to effect the further digestion of the products of salivary digestion. On the other disaccharides pancreatic juice is without effect. It contains no invertase, nor does it, in spite of certain statements to the contrary, ever contain lactase. It has therefore no effect on either cane sugar or milk sugar.

THE ACTION OF PANCREATIC JUICE ON FATS

Fresh pancreatic juice contains a strong lipase or fat-splitting ferment, by means of which, in the presence of water, neutral fats, *e. g.* the triglycerides of palmitic, stearic, and oleic acids, are broken up into glycerin and the corresponding fatty acids. This ferment is active either in alkaline, neutral, or very slightly acid reaction. If the reaction be alkaline, the fatty acids produced by the lipolysis combine with the alkali present with the formation of soaps. The ferment may be obtained from extracts of the fresh gland, but is rapidly destroyed if active trypsin be present. It is also contained in some of the dried commercial preparations of trypsin. It is apparently insoluble in distilled water, and is therefore found in the residue after extracting these commercial preparations with water. It is easily soluble in glycerin. The velocity with which lipolysis occurs is much increased (four to five times) by the addition of bile. This adjuvant action of bile is not destroyed by boiling, and is due entirely to the bile salts. These act in two ways. In the first place, by their physical qualities they diminish the surface tension between water and oil, so enabling a closer contact to be effected between the watery solution contained in the juice and the oil which is presented to it. Moreover they may aid in the solution of the ferment itself. In the second place, bile salts have a solvent action on soaps as well as on fatty acids in slightly acid medium. Bile may be regarded therefore as a favourable excipient or medium for the interaction of the lipase and the neutral fats. The lipase of pancreatic juice will also hydrolyse the esters of the fatty acids, such as ethyl butyrate or monobutyrin. On the phosphorised fats or phosphatides, such as lecithin, its action is still a subject of doubt. According to certain authors extracts of the pancreas have the power of splitting off choline from lecithin. It is not known whether the same property is present in pancreatic juice itself, or whether any other dissociations are brought about in the complex molecule of lecithin under the action of this digestive fluid.

THE SECRETION OF PANCREATIC JUICE

In order to study the relation of the secretion of pancreatic juice to the other processes of digestion, observations must be carried out on an animal with a permanent pancreatic fistula.

Such a fistula was established by Claude Bernard by bringing the duct of the pancreas to the surface and inserting into it a lead or silver tube. The arrangement was unsatisfactory, since after a few days the tube dropped out and the natural course of the duct from pancreas to intestine was restored. In order to avoid the disadvantages

of this proceeding Heidenhain and Pawlow independently devised another method to enable us to determine the causes of pancreatic secretion. The pancreas in most cases possesses two ducts, the upper one opening along with the bile duct, the lower one a short way down. The relative sizes of these two ducts vary in different animals, the lower one being larger in the dog, while in man and the cat the upper one is larger. In order to establish a pancreatic fistula in a dog, a small quadrilateral piece of the duodenal wall is exsected, having the papilla of the lower duct opening in the middle of its mucous surface. The integrity of the gut is restored by suturing in a single line of stitches the margins of the wound in the duodenum, and the exsected piece is brought to the surface and stitched in the middle of the abdominal wound. The greater part of the pancreatic secretion will escape by the fistula, and can be collected either by the insertion of a cannula into the duct or by attaching a glass funnel below its orifice. Great care has to be taken in the after treatment of such animals. The pancreatic juice, which flows over the papilla, acquires in so doing strong proteolytic powers, and tends therefore to dissolve and irritate the adjacent abdominal wall. This can be prevented by taking care to collect all the juice, and to allow none to flow away over the surface of the body. Another drawback is that the continual loss of pancreatic juice in many cases seriously affects the animal's health. This may be obviated to a certain extent by keeping the animal on a milk diet with the addition of sodium bicarbonate to replace the loss of this salt by the juice. With great care Pawlow has succeeded in keeping such animals in a perfectly healthy condition.

In the fasting condition there is, as a rule, no secretion of juice, though the escape of a few drops may be observed at long intervals. If a meal be administered to the animal, a flow of juice begins in one to one and a half minutes. From this time there is a steady, slow rise of the rate of secretion, which lasts for two to three hours, and then gradually diminishes. The greatest increase in flow is observed at the time when the first portions of digested food escape from the stomach into the duodenum. The secretion must therefore be determined in some way by the entry of this food into the duodenum. By experiments on dogs possessing a gastric as well as a pancreatic fistula, it has been shown that the introduction of acid, *e. g.* 0·4 per cent. HCl, into the stomach evokes, as soon as it passes into the duodenum, a rapid flow of pancreatic juice. A similar, but smaller, effect is produced by the passage of oil from the stomach into the duodenum. The introduction of alkalies is without effect. Weak acids are also effective exciters of secretion if they be introduced directly into the duodenum itself or into a loop of small intestine. The effect gradually diminishes as the loop which is chosen comes nearer to the cæcum, and as a rule the injection of dilute acid into the lower foot or eighteen inches of ileum is without effect on the pancreas. The striking resemblance between the secretion thus evoked and that produced in the salivary glands by injection of acid into the mouth suggests that we have here to do with a reflex of the same kind as that which affects the salivary glands. In the search for the channels of this reflex Heidenhain showed that stimulation of the medulla oblongata occasionally produced a flow of pancreatic juice. He was unable however to obtain any secretion on stimulation of the vagus nerve. The pancreas receives fibres from the vagi as well as from the splanchnic nerves (sympathetic system). According to Pawlow the ill success of Heidenhain's experiments was due to the fact that in any operation a gland is played upon by reflex impulses partly of an inhibitory, partly of a secretory nature,

in which the inhibitory predominate, and by the further fact that the pancreas is extremely susceptible to alterations in its blood supply, so that any stimulation of the vagus which caused inhibition of the heart would *ipso facto* prevent the effect of simultaneous excitation of secretory fibres from making its appearance. Pawlow noticed that if in an animal with a permanent fistula the vagus on one side were cut and left for four days in order to allow the cardio-inhibitory fibres to degenerate, repeated stimulation of the peripheral end of the nerve evoked a flow of pancreatic juice. He obtained the same results by stimulating this nerve below the point at which it had given off its cardio-inhibitory fibres, in animals in which the reflex inhibitions from the operation itself were prevented by total section of the medulla. Under certain circumstances he obtained also secretion on stimulation of the splanchnic nerves, and therefore concluded that these two nerves—splanchnics and vagi—were the efferent channels in the reflex secretion set up by the introduction of the acid into the duodenum. It was shown later however independently both by Popielski, a pupil of Pawlow, and by Wertheimer, that the injection of acid into a loop of small intestine was followed by secretion of juice even after section of both vagi and destruction of the sympathetic ganglia at the back of the abdominal cavity. On repeating these experiments Bayliss and Starling found that a secretion of juice was produced even when the acid was introduced into a loop of the small intestine entirely freed from any possible nervous connections with the rest of the body. It was evident therefore that the stimulus or message from the intestine to the pancreas which causes the secretion of the latter must be carried, not by the nervous system, but by the blood stream. Since the injection of acid into the portal vein was without effect on the pancreas, it was concluded that something must be produced in the epithelial cells of the gut under the influence of acid, and that this product of the epithelial cells was absorbed in the blood stream and was the active agent in exciting the pancreas. On pounding up some scrapings of the intestinal mucous membrane with dilute hydrochloric acid and filtering, and injecting the filtrate, a copious flow of pancreatic juice was produced. This chemical messenger or hormone from the intestine to the pancreas is called 'secretin,' or 'pancreatic secretin' to distinguish it from possible other members of the same class. It is produced in the mucous membrane from a precursor—pro-secretin. The latter has not been isolated, but that it is present in the mucous membrane is shown by the fact that secretin can be extracted by the action of acids from mucous membrane which has been killed by heat or by the prolonged action of alcohol.

Secretin itself is not a ferment. In order to prepare it the mucous membrane is ground up with sand, boiled with 0·4 per cent. hydrochloric acid, and then neutralised while boiling by the cautious addition of sodium hydrate. The coagulable proteins are in this way precipitated, and the filtered solution contains the secretin. It is not precipitated by the ordinary alkaline reagents, and diffuses slowly through animal membranes Though stable in acid solutions, it is very rapidly destroyed in alkaline or neutral

solutions, especially under the influence of bacteria. It is apparently oxidised with extreme ease. A similar, or more probably the same, body may be produced from intestinal mucous membrane by treating this with solutions of soap.

In this secreting mechanism we have a very striking example of a correlation between the activities of two different portions of the body effected by chemical means. The strongly acid chyme enters the first part of the duodenum. Immediately a certain amount of secretin is produced by the acid in the cells of the mucous membrane. The secretin is carried by the blood stream to the cells of the pancreas and excites there the secretion of strongly alkaline pancreatic juice. As soon as sufficient juice has been secreted to neutralise the acid chyme, the formation of secretin and therefore the further secretion of pancreatic juice, comes to an end. If the stomach still contains food, the process is however renewed, in virtue of the local reflex mechanism which we have just studied regulating the opening and closure of the pylorus. So long as the contents of the duodenum are acid, the pylorus remains firmly closed. As soon as these are neutralised, the pylorus relaxes and allows the entrance of a further portion of acid chyme. Thus the formation of secretin proceeds afresh, and the whole chain of processes goes on until the stomach is empty and all its contents have passed into the intestine.

In view of the efficacy of this chemical reflex mechanism, the question arises whether the results first obtained by Pawlow were really due in some way to the formation of secretin. Stimulation of the vagus may cause contraction of the stomach, opening or closing of the pylorus, and it seems possible that under its action there might have been an escape of acid gastric contents into the intestine, and therefore the formation of secretin, which would suffice to arouse the pancreatic secretion. Later experiments by this observer, in which the escape of any gastric contents was effectively prevented by ligature of the pylorus while the stomach itself contained an alkaline solution, have shown that even with these precautions a flow of juice may be obtained on stimulation of the vagus nerve. The flow however is very small in comparison with that obtained by injection of secretin, and one must conclude that, although the nervous system may play a small part in the excitation of the activity of this gland, the main factor involved is the chemical mechanism which has just been described.

The amount of pancreatic juice obtained after a meal varies with the nature of the latter. The Table on p. 757 represents the results obtained on an animal fed with 600 c.c. of milk, 250 grm. of bread, and 100 grm. of meat respectively.

The differences between these results seem largely determined by the duration of gastric digestion, and therefore the amount of acid secreted in the stomach and passed on to the duodenum. It was suggested by Walther that, apart from this quantitative adaptation, there was a qualitative alteration in the constitution of the juice according to the nature of the food ingested, that, *e.g.*, excess of protein causes an increase of the trypsin,

while excess of carbohydrate would cause an increase in the amylase of the juice. Later researches have failed to confirm this view. Apparently when the pancreas is excited to secrete, it turns out its various ferments in constant proportion, depending on the amounts of these already present and stored up in the gland.

SECRETION OF PANCREATIC JUICE (WALTHER)

Hours after meal	600 c.c. milk	250 grm. bread	100 grm. meat
1	8·5 c.c.	36·5 c.c.	38·75 c.c.
2	7·6 c.c.	50·2 c.c.	44·6 c.c.
3	14·6 c.c.	20·9 c.c.	30·4 c.c.
4	11·2 c.c.	14·1 c.c.	16·9 c.c.
5	3·2 c.c.	16·4 c.c.	0·8 c.c.
6	1·0 c.c.	12·7 c.c.	—
7	—	10·7 c.c.	—
8	—	6·9 c.c.	—

THE STRUCTURAL CHANGES IN THE PANCREAS ACCOMPANYING SECRETION

The ease with which secretin may be prepared and used to arouse the activity of the pancreas has rendered it possible to study more closely the changes which in this gland accompany activity. Kühne and Sheridan Lea succeeded in observing the gland of the rabbit in a living state under the

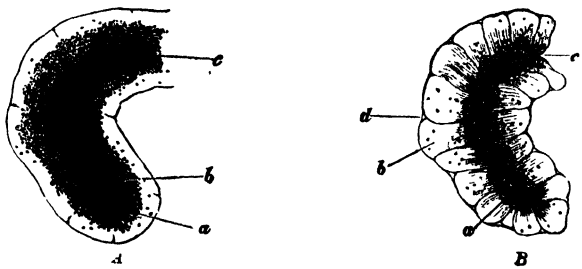


FIG. 352. A terminal lobule of the pancreas of the rabbit. (KÜHNE and SHERIDAN LEA.)

A, in resting condition; B, after active secretion.

microscope. They noted that activity, excited by pilocarpine, was associated with a discharge of granules, a clearing up of the cells, and a diminution in size and the appearance of a lumen to the gland alveoli (Fig. 352). A normal resting gland is of an opaque, yellowish-white colour and of firm consistence. On section it is seen to consist of numerous secreting alveoli which open into narrow intercalary tubules, and these in their turn into wide collecting tubules. The lining epithelium of the intercalated tubules is often continued into the secreting part, where they lie internal to the secreting cells, as the so-called centro-acinar cells. The secreting cells themselves

present two well-marked zones, a narrow peripheral zone in which the nucleus is embedded, which is strongly basophile, and a central part which is turned towards the lumen, occupying two-thirds or three-quarters of the cell, and is closely packed with highly refractive granules strongly acidophile and presumably containing or composed of the precursors of the various constituents of the pancreatic juice (Fig. 353). If the activity of the gland be aroused by injection of secretin and the injection be continued until the

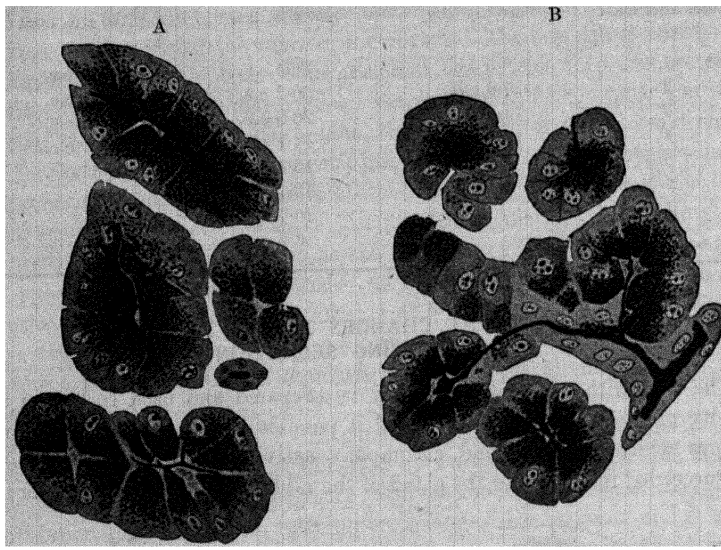


FIG. 353. Alveoli of dog's pancreas. (BABKIN, RUBASCHKIN and SAWITSCH.)
A, resting; B, after moderate secretion with discharge of granules.

rate of secretion evoked by each injection diminishes considerably, *i. e.* the gland shows signs of fatigue, marked changes are observed both macroscopically and under the microscope. The gland is now pink and transparent in appearance, moist and soft in consistence. On section the lumen of each alveolus is enlarged, the cells are shrunken, and the granules are found to lie only along the border of the cell turned towards the lumen, the rest of the cell, which is much reduced in size, being made up of the basophile protoplasm. Similar effects are observed after long continued stimulation of the vagus (Fig. 353 B).

SECTION VI

THE LIVER AND BILE

THE liver, the largest gland in the body, is, like the other glands associated with the alimentary tract, formed in the embryo by an outgrowth of the hypoblast lining the alimentary canal. At first it resembles in structure other secreting glands, such as the pancreas, being composed of branch tubules which pour their secretion into a common duct. In the adult however, the relation of the liver cells to the ducts is entirely subordinated to their relation to the blood vessels of the liver, and it requires special histological methods to make out the relations between the liver cells and the bile ducts. The liver, on section, is seen to be divided off into lobules composed of columns of polygonal cells, radiating from the centre like the spokes of a cart-wheel. The portal vein, which drains the blood from the alimentary canal, breaks up into branches which lie at the periphery of the lobules, forming the interlobular veins, and send off numberless capillaries which pass inwards between the columns of cells to join the intralobular vein lying at the centre of the lobule. From the intralobular the blood passes by the large sublobular vein into the hepatic veins and inferior vena cava. In an injected specimen it is easy to see that every liver cell is connected with at least one blood capillary, and the liver thus forms a blood gland, lying as it does at the gate of entrance of blood from the alimentary canal into the general circulation. The portal vein conveys only venous blood to the liver. In order to supply oxygen to the working liver cells, this organ receives a second supply of arterial blood by the hepatic artery derived from the cœliac branch of the aorta. The branch of the hepatic artery runs with the branches of the portal vein in the connective tissue of Glisson's capsule surrounding the lobules, and breaks up into capillaries which are in free communication with the capillaries derived from the portal system and pour their blood finally into the hepatic vein.

As might be expected from its structure, the secretory functions of the liver represent but a small proportion of its activities in the body. The liver is, in fact, the greatest chemical factory of the body, receiving by the portal vein the products of digestion as they are absorbed from the alimentary canal. It converts these into other substances, breaking them down or building them up according to the needs of the body as a whole. Thus, when carbohydrates are being absorbed in quantity, it converts the glucose contained in the portal blood into glycogen which it stores up,

reconverting the latter into glucose and letting it loose into the circulation when this substance is required by the body tissues. In the complete absence of carbohydrate from the food, the liver may, as we shall see later, actually convert the products of protein digestion into sugar. In the same way the liver plays an important part in the metabolism of proteins and of fats, so that its functions will have to be dealt with in the various chapters concerned with the fate of the different foodstuffs and different constituents of the animal body. In this chapter we are merely concerned with its action as a secreting gland. The fact that its secretion is in so many animals poured into the intestine by an orifice common to it and the pancreatic juice suggests that these two fluids co-operate in their actions on the ingested foodstuffs, and points to a direct use of the bile in the processes of digestion. In addition to this function, the bile must also be regarded as an excretion, representing as it does the channel by which the products of disintegration of hæmoglobin—the red colouring-matter of the blood—are got rid of from the organism. As an excretion the production of bile must be continuous and related, not to the processes of digestion, but to the intensity of destruction of the red corpuscles. On the other hand, bile as a digestive fluid is needed in the gut only during the period that digestion is going on. The exigencies of the body therefore require a continuous excretion of bile by the liver, but a discontinuous entry of this fluid into the small intestine. This discontinuity in the entry of a continuous secretion into the intestine is secured, in the majority of animals, by the existence of the gall bladder, a diverticulum from the bile ducts, in which all bile, secreted during the intervals between the periods of digestive activity, is stored up. In the horse, where the gall bladder is absent, its place is taken to some extent by the great size of the bile ducts. Moreover in such an animal the process of digestion is much more continuous in character than it is in carnivora. Since the bile accumulates in the gall bladder during the whole time that digestion is not going on, and is only poured into the gut during digestion, in a fasting animal the gall bladder is distended, whereas in an animal some hours after a meal the gall bladder is practically empty.

During the period that the bile remains in the gall bladder it undergoes certain changes, as is shown by comparison of the composition of bile obtained from the gall bladder with that obtained from a fistula of the bile duct.

ANALYSES OF BILE (HUMAN)

From a biliary fistula (Yeo and Herroun) in 100 parts		From the gall bladder (Hoppe-Seyler) in 100 parts	
Mucin and pigments	0·148	Mucin	1·29
Sodium taurocholate	0·055	Sodium taurocholate	0·87
Sodium glycocholate	0·165	Sodium glycocholate	3·03
Cholesterin, Lecithin, Fats	0·038	Soaps	1·39
		Cholesterin	0·35
		Lecithin	0·53
Inorganic salts	0·840	Fats	0·73
Water	98·7		

During its stay in the bladder the bile is concentrated by the loss of water and by the addition to it of mucin or nucleo-albumen, derived from the cells lining the bladder. Of the other constituents of bile, the pigments must be regarded simply as waste products, and an index to the disintegration of hæmoglobin. Their mode of origin will be discussed in dealing with the history of the red blood corpuscles. They pass into the intestine and are there converted by the processes of bacterial reduction into stercobilin, which is excreted for the most part with the fæces, a small proportion being absorbed into the blood vessels and turned out in a more or less altered condition as the pigments of the urine. From the point of view of digestion, the important constituents of bile are the bile salts, with the lecithin and cholesterin held in solution by these salts. The time relations of the secretion, as well as of the flow of bile into the intestine in connection with the processes of digestion, can be learnt from animals in which the bile is conducted to the outside of the body by means of a permanent fistula.

For this purpose Pawlow has devised the following operation: In the dog the abdomen is opened, and the common bile duct sought as it passes through the intestinal wall. The orifice of the duct, with a piece of the surrounding mucous membrane, is cut out of the wall of the intestine, and the aperture thus made sutured. The excised portion of mucous membrane, with the opening of the duct, is then sewn on to the surface of the duodenum, and the loop of duodenum at this point is stitched into the abdominal wound. After healing, the natural orifice of the bile duct is thus made to open on the surface of the abdomen.

In an animal treated in this way the flow of bile from the fistula is found to run parallel to the pancreatic secretion. Although smaller in amount, it rises and falls with the latter. Thus a meal of meat produces a large flow of bile, a meal of carbohydrates only a small flow. Moreover, beginning almost immediately after taking food, it attains its maximum with the pancreatic juice in the third hour and then rapidly declines.

In the production of this flow of bile two factors may be involved: (1) the emptying of the gall bladder; (2) an increased secretion of the bile. In order to determine the relative importance to be ascribed to each factor, we must compare the results obtained on an animal possessing a Pawlow fistula with those obtained on an animal provided with a fistulous opening into the gall bladder, the common bile duct in the latter having been ligatured to ensure that the total secretion of bile passes out by the fistula. In such animals we find, as we should expect, that the secretion of bile is a continuous process, but that, synchronously with the great outpouring of bile into the intestine during the third hour after a meal, there is an increased secretion of this fluid. The passage therefore of the semi-digested food from the stomach into the duodenum causes not only a slow contraction and emptying of the gall bladder but also an increased secretion of bile by the liver. What is the mechanism involved in the production of these two effects? The muscular wall of the gall bladder, as has been shown by Dale, is under the control of nerves derived both from the vagus and from the sympathetic, the former conveying motor and the latter inhibitory impulses. It is usual to suppose that the entry of acid chyme into the duodenum

provokes reflexly the concentration of the gall bladder, but the exact paths and steps in this reflex act have not yet been fully determined. The increased *secretion* of bile, which is produced by the passage of the acid chyme through the pylorus, can be also evoked by the introduction of acid, such as 0·4 per cent. HCl, into the duodenum, and occurs even after division of all connection between the liver and the central nervous system. Since the presence of bile is necessary for the full development of the activities of the pancreatic juice, and its secretion is initiated by the same sort of stimulus, *i. e.* acid applied to the mucous membrane of the gut, the question naturally arises whether the mechanism for the secretion of bile may not be identical with that for the secretion of pancreatic juice. In order to decide this point we must make a temporary biliary fistula by inserting a cannula into the hepatic duct. A solution of secretin is then prepared from an animal's intestine. In making this solution we must be careful to avoid any contamination by bile salts, which may possibly be adherent to the mucous membrane of the gut and would in themselves, on injection, evoke an increased secretion of bile. It is therefore better to extract the pounded mucous membrane with boiling absolute alcohol, until this fluid, evaporated into a small bulk, shows no trace of bile salts. The dried and powdered gut is then boiled with dilute acid. On injecting the solution of secretin so obtained into the animal's veins, an increased flow of bile is at once produced. In one experiment, for instance, the injection into the veins of 5 c.c. of a solution of secretin, prepared in this way, increased the secretion of bile by the liver from twenty-seven drops in fifteen minutes to fifty-four drops in fifteen minutes. The rate of secretion was therefore doubled. We may conclude that the mechanism, by which the increased secretion of bile is produced at the time when this fluid is required in the intestine, is identical with that for the secretion of pancreatic juice, and that in each case one and the same substance—secretin—is formed by the action of the acid on the cells of the mucous membrane and, on absorption into the blood stream, excites both the liver and the pancreas to increased activity.

THE DIGESTIVE FUNCTIONS OF THE BILE

Bile contains a weak amylolytic ferment. Its uses in digestion are dependent however, not on the presence of this ferment, but on the peculiar action of the bile salts on the fermentative powers of the pancreatic juice. It was shown long ago by Williams and Martin that the amylolytic power of pancreatic extracts is doubled by the addition of bile or of bile salts. Pawlow has stated that the same holds good of the proteolytic power of this juice. Most important however is the part played by the bile in the digestion and absorption of fats. The fat-splitting action of pancreatic juice is trebled by the addition of bile, whether boiled or unboiled. This quickening action of the bile probably depends, like its function in the absorption of fats, on the peculiar physical properties of the bile salts, with those of the lecithin and cholesterin which they hold in solution. Not only does such a solution diminish the surface tension between watery and oily fluids, so

promoting the closer approach of the lipase of the pancreatic juice to the fats on which it is to act, but it has also the power of dissolving fatty acids and soaps, including even the insoluble calcium and magnesium soaps. It is probable that it aids also in holding in solution, and bringing in contact with the fat, the lipase of the pancreatic juice. It has been shown by Nicloux that the lipase contained in oily seeds, such as those of the castor plant, is insoluble in water, but soluble in fatty media. The dried ferment obtained from the pancreas in many cases yields no lipase to water, but gives a strongly lipolytic solution when extracted with glycerin. The digestive function of bile therefore lies in its power of serving as a vehicle for the suspension and solution of the interacting fats, fatty acids, and fat-splitting ferment. This vehicular function plays an important part in the absorption of fats. These pass through the striated basilar membrane bounding the intestinal side of the epithelium, not, as was formerly thought, in a fine state of suspension (an emulsion), but dissolved in the bile in the form of fatty acids or soaps and glycerin. On the arrival of these products of digestion in the epithelial cells, a process of resynthesis is set up. Droplets of neutral fat make their appearance in the cells, whence they are passed gradually into the central lacteal of the villus and so into the lymphatics of the mesentery and into the thoracic duct. The bile salts thus released from their function as carriers are absorbed by the blood circulating through the capillaries of the villi, and carried by the portal vein to the liver. On arrival they are once more taken up by the liver cells and turned out into the bile. Owing to the fact of their ready excretion by the liver cells, bile salts are the most reliable cholagogues with which we are acquainted. By this circulation of bile between liver and intestine, the synthetic work of the liver in the production of the bile salts is reduced to a minimum, and it has only to replace such of the bile salts as undergo destruction in the alimentary canal under the influence of micro-organisms, and are lost to the organism by passing out in the fæces as a gummy amorphous substance known as dyslysin. Further investigation is still wanted as to the exact method in which secretin acts on the liver cells, and especially as to whether it actually excites in them the manufacture of fresh bile salts, or whether it simply hastens the excretion of such bile salts as have been formed by the spontaneous activity of the liver cells or have arrived at them after absorption from the alimentary canal. Such questions can be decided only by studying the action of secretin on animals possessing a permanent biliary fistula.

The effect of various diets on the secretion of bile has been studied by Barbera. He finds that, whereas the secretion of bile is greatest on a meat diet, it is somewhat less on a diet of fat, and is insignificant on a purely carbohydrate diet. That is to say, the secretion of bile is greatest on those diets the digestion of which is attended by the passage of a large amount of acid chyme or of oil into the duodenum. Oil is almost as efficacious as acid in promoting the production of secretin in the living duodenum, the production in this case being probably determined by the formation of soap from the oil and the direct action of the soap on the prosecretin in the epithelial cells of the gut.

SECTION VII

THE INTESTINAL JUICE

For the development of one of its most important properties, namely, that of proteolysis, the pancreatic juice is dependent on the co-operation of the intestinal juice or succus entericus. Besides this activating power on the pancreatic juice, the intestinal juice has numerous other functions to discharge in the digestion of the foodstuffs. In spite of the great similarity which obtains between the microscopic structure of the wall of the gut at different levels from duodenum to ileocolic valve, functionally there are many differences between the upper, middle, and lower portions of the gut. Speaking generally, we may say that, whereas the processes of secretion are better marked in the upper portions of the gut, the processes of absorption predominate in the lower sections, *i. e.* in the ileum. Much of the divergence in the statements which have been made with regard to the factors determining secretion and absorption in the small intestine is due to the failure to appreciate this great difference between the activity of the mucous membrane at various levels.

The process of secretion in the small intestine may be studied by isolating loops by means of ligatures, and determining the amount of secretion formed in these loops in the course of a few hours' experiment on an anæsthetised animal. Better results however may be obtained by establishing permanent fistulæ. These fistulæ are of two kinds. Thiry's original method of establishing a fistula consisted in cutting out a loop of intestine, and restoring the continuity of the gut by suturing the two ends from which the loop had been severed. The upper end of the loop itself is closed and the lower end is sutured into the abdominal wound. For some purposes it is better to make a Thiry-Vella fistula. In this case the continuity of the gut is restored as in the simple Thiry fistula, but both ends of the excised loop are left open and brought into the abdominal wound. In such a fistula it is easy to introduce substances into the upper end and determine the flow of juice from the lower end, the constant emptying of the loop being provided for by the peristaltic contractions of its muscular coat.

In animals with intestinal fistulæ a number of different conditions have been found to give rise to a flow of succus entericus, and so far no qualitative difference has been recorded between the upper and lower ends of the gut. A condition which will cause a free flow of juice from a fistula high up in the intestine will generally cause a scanty flow from a fistula made from the ileum. In all cases it is found that a flow of juice is produced in consequence of a meal. If a dog with a fistula, which has been starved for twenty-four hours, be given a meal of meat, a flow of juice may begin within the next

ten minutes. The flow remains very slight for about two hours and then suddenly increases in amount during the third hour, corresponding thus very nearly to the flow of pancreatic juice excited by the same means. In this post-prandial secretion of juice it is not probable that the nervous system takes any very large share, though its intervention in the secretion has not been excluded by direct experiment.

There are certain facts which seem indeed to speak for an action of the central nervous system on the process of intestinal secretion, not in the direction of augmentation, but in the direction of inhibition of secretion. Thus it has been observed, on many occasions, that extirpation of the nerve plexuses of the abdomen or section of the splanchnic nerves causes a condition of diarrhœa which may last for two or three days. This condition might be determined either by an increased motor activity of the gut, or by removal of inhibitory impulses normally arriving at the intestinal glands. Such a view receives support from an experiment first performed by Moreau. The abdomen of a dog is opened under an anæsthetic, and three contiguous loops of small intestine are separated by means of ligatures from the rest of the gut. The middle loop is then denervated by destruction of all the nerve fibres lying on its blood vessels, as they course through the mesentery, care being taken not to injure the blood vessels themselves. The loops are then replaced in the abdomen and the animal left from four to sixteen hours. On killing the animal at the end of this time, it is often found that the middle loop, *i. e.* the denervated loop, is distended with fluid having all the properties of ordinary intestinal juice, whereas the other two loops are empty. A series of comparative experiments by Mendel and by Falloise have shown that the secretion begins about four hours after the operation, increases for about twelve hours, and then rapidly declines, so that at the end of two days all three loops will be found empty. This has often been interpreted as due to the removal of inhibitory impulses passing from the central nervous system to the local secretory mechanism, and we have no direct evidence which can be adduced against such a view. It is possible however that the hyperæmia of the gut, which is produced by the process of denervation, may be sufficient to account for the increased formation of intestinal juice, since the hyperæmia will tend to pass off as the vessels recover a local tone.

It is not possible to explain the flow of intestinal juice which follows a meal by any assumption of nervous impulses transmitted through the local nerve plexuses of the gut, since these have been divided in the making of the fistula. If we exclude a nervous reflex action by the long paths, namely, through the spinal cord and the sympathetic or vagus nerves, the flow which attends the passage of food into the first part of the duodenum must be excited by the formation of some chemical messenger. As to the existence of such a chemical messenger or hormone for the intestinal secretion there can be no doubt, but the evidence as to its precise nature is at present conflicting. It is stated by Pawlow that the most effective stimulus to the flow of succus entericus is the presence of pancreatic juice in the loop of gut. No evidence has yet been brought forward that injection of pancreatic juice into the blood stream will cause any flow of intestinal juice. On the other hand, Delezenne and Frouin have shown that, in animals provided with a permanent fistula involving the duodenum or upper part of the jejunum, intravenous injection of secretin always causes a secretion of intestinal juice. In the upper part of the gut therefore, the simultaneous presence of the three juices necessary for complete duodenal digestion is ensured by one and the same mechanism, namely, by the simultaneous

activity of the secretin, produced in the intestinal cells by the action of the acid chyme, on pancreas, liver, and intestinal glands. A further chemical mechanism for the arousing of intestinal secretion has been described by Frouin. According to this observer, the flow of juice can be excited by intravenous injection of intestinal juice itself. Since this juice is alkaline and does not produce any effect on the pancreas, it must be free from pancreatic secretin. It would seem therefore that the flow of juice in the upper part of the gut, excited by the pancreatic secretin, causes also a production of a different secretin or hormone, which can be absorbed from the lumen of the gut, travel by the blood stream to other segments of the small intestine, and there excite a secretion in preparation for the on-coming food. Further experiments are however necessary on this point.

The glands of the small intestine can also be excited by direct mechanical stimulation of the mucous membrane. The easiest method of exciting a flow of intestinal juice from a permanent fistula is to introduce into the intestine a rubber tube. The presence of the solid object in the gut causes a secretion, and within a few minutes drops of juice can be obtained from the free end of the tube. The object of such a sensibility to mechanical stimuli is obvious; it is of the highest importance that the onward passage of any solid object, especially if it be indigestible, shall be aided by the further secretion of juice in the portions of gut which are immediately stimulated. This mechanical stimulation probably acts on the tubular glands of the intestine through the intermediation of the local nervous system, the plexus of Meissner. It is stated by Pawlow that a juice obtained by mechanical stimulation differs from that produced by the introduction of pancreatic juice into the loop in containing little or no enterokinase, so that the pancreatic juice excites the secretion of the substance which is necessary for its own activation.

CHARACTERS OF INTESTINAL JUICE

The intestinal juice obtained from a permanent fistula has a specific gravity of about 1010. It is generally turbid from the presence in it of migrated leucocytes and disintegrated epithelial cells. It contains about 1·5 per cent. total solids, of which 0·8 per cent. are inorganic and consist chiefly of sodium carbonate and sodium chloride. It is markedly alkaline in reaction, but less so than the pancreatic juice. The organic matter, besides a small amount of serum albumin and serum globulin, includes a number of ferments, all of which are adapted to complete the processes of digestion of the foodstuffs commenced in the stomach and duodenum. Of these ferments two are concerned in proteolysis. Enterokinase we have already studied in detail. Possessing itself no action on proteins, its presence is necessary for the development of the full proteolytic powers of the pancreatic juice. In addition to this ferment another ferment has been described by Cohnheim under the name 'erepsin.' *Erepsin* or some similar ferment is present in the fresh pancreatic juice and in almost all tissues of the body. It

is distinguished by the fact that, although it has no power of digesting coagulated protein or gelatin, and only slowly dissolves caseinogen and fibrin, it has a rapid hydrolytic effect on the first products of proteolysis, converting albumoses and peptones into amino- and diamino-acids—their ultimate cleavage products.

The other ferments of the intestinal juice are connected with the digestion of carbohydrates. In all mammals the intestinal juice is found to contain *invertase*, which transforms cane sugar into glucose and lævulose or fructose, and *maltase*, which converts maltose into glucose. In mammals the intestinal mucous membrane also contains *lactase*, i. e. a ferment converting milk sugar into galactose and glucose. Such a ferment can be extracted from the mucous membrane of all young animals, but may be very slight or even absent in the intestines of older animals, when it is no longer needed for the ordinary processes of nutrition. By means of these three ferments, coming as they do after the digestion of the starches by the amylase of the saliva and pancreatic juice, it is provided that all the carbohydrate food of the animal is transformed into a hexose, in which form alone carbohydrate can be taken up and assimilated by the cells of the body. The seat of origin of these various ferments has been the subject of special investigations by Falloise. Whereas secretin can be obtained from the whole thickness of the mucous membrane, and is probably therefore contained in the form of prosecretin in the epithelial cells covering the villi as well as in those lining the follicles of Lieberkühn, a superficial scraping of the mucous membrane, which removes only the epithelial cells covering the villi with the adherent mucus and intestinal secretion, gives a much more active solution of enterokinase than a deeper scraping. The most active solutions of enterokinase are however to be obtained from the fluid found in the cavity of the intestine after the injection of secretin. It seems therefore that enterokinase is not present as such in the epithelial cells, but is first produced in the process of secretion and formation of the intestinal juice. The other ferments, namely, *erepsin*, *maltase*, *invertase*, and *lactase*, probably pre-exist as such in the epithelial cells, especially in those lining the tubular glands of the gut, since pounded mucous membrane in water yields a solution of these ferments which is generally more powerful in its action than the succus entericus itself. So great is the difference, in fact, that many physiologists have suggested that the chief action of these ferments occurs, not in the lumen of the gut, but in the passage of the foodstuffs through the epithelial cells of the small intestine on their way to the blood vessels.

SECTION VIII

FUNCTIONS OF THE LARGE INTESTINE

GREAT differences are found in the structure of the large intestine of different animals, differences which depend, not on the zoological position of the animal, but entirely on the nature of its food. In the carnivora the large intestine is short and narrow and possesses little or no cæcum. In herbivora the large intestine is well developed with sacculated walls, and the cæcum—*i. e.* that part of the large gut distal to the opening of the ileum into the colon—is very large. Man occupies a somewhat intermediate position between these two classes. The differences between the total length of the alimentary canal in various animals are largely determined by the varying development of the large intestine. The relation of these differences to the diet is seen if we compare the length of the intestine with the length of the animal. Thus in the cat the intestine is three times the length of the animal, in the dog from four to six times, in man from seven to eight times, in the pig fourteen times, and in the sheep twenty-seven times. The great development of the large intestine in vegetable feeders is due to the fact that, in this class of food, all the nutritious material is enclosed in cells surrounded by cellulose walls. In order that the foodstuffs—*e. g.* proteins, starch, etc.—may be dissolved by the digestive juices and absorbed by the wall of the gut, these cellulose walls must be disintegrated. In none of the higher vertebrates do we find any cellulose-digesting ferment, *cytase*, produced in the alimentary canal. The cellulose has therefore to be dissolved either by the agency of bacteria or by means of cellulose-dissolving ferments which may be present in the vegetable cells themselves. Thus in ruminants the masses of grass and hay are first received into the paunch, where they are kept warm and moist with saliva. In the paunch opportunity is thus given for the development of huge numbers of micro-organisms which can dissolve cellulose. From time to time portions of the sodden mass are returned to the mouth, chewed and then swallowed again to be subjected to the action of the proper digestive juices. In the horse and rabbit the chief part of the digestion of the cellulose occurs in the cæcum. Even after abstinence from food for some time the cæcum is still found to contain food material. In the cæcum, under the action of bacteria, the cellulose is dissolved and the cells are opened up so as to allow their contents to escape. The products of digestion of cellulose include a number of organic acids, chiefly of the lower fatty acid series, as well as methane, carbon dioxide, and hydrogen. In the paunch the acids accumulate so that fermentation occurs in an acid medium.

whereas in the cæcum the acids are neutralised by the secretion of alkalies and the reaction remains practically neutral. The products of digestion of cellulose, as well as the contents of the vegetable cells set free by the solution of the cell walls, are gradually absorbed by the walls of the large gut. In carnivora the large intestine has very unimportant functions to discharge in digestion and absorption. The proteins of meat are practically entirely absorbed by the time that the food has arrived at the ileocolic valve, and the same applies to fat. In man the importance of the large intestine will vary with the nature of his food. Under the conditions of civilised life the food material is almost entirely absorbed by the time that it reaches the lower end of the ileum. If however a large quantity of vegetable food be taken, such as fruit or green vegetables, or cereals roughly prepared and coarsely ground, a considerable amount of material may reach the large intestine unabsorbed. A certain proportion of this may undergo absorption in the large intestine, while the rest will pass out with the fæces, increasing their bulk.

It is hardly possible to speak of a secretion by the mucous membrane of the large intestine. In herbivora alkaline carbonates are secreted to neutralise the acids produced in the bacterial fermentation of the food, but the processes of absorption and secretion keeping pace, there is no accumulation of the products of secretion in the intestine. A section of the mucous membrane shows a number of simple tubular glands. The greater number of the cells lining these glands are typical 'goblet' cells and contain plugs of mucin. The secretion of mucus not only aids the passage of the fæces along the gut, but probably impedes the propagation of the bacteria which are present in countless numbers in the fæces. This may account for the fact that although bacteria are so numerous in the fæces, it is difficult to cultivate any large numbers, most of them being dead.

As an absorbing organ the large intestine of man is of little importance. From observations on fistulæ in man it has been calculated that about 500 c.c. of water pass the ileocolic valve in the twenty-four hours. Of these about 400 c.c. undergo absorption in the large intestine. The absorption of any of the food substances by this part of the gut is much slower than that which takes place on introduction by the mouth. Feeding by nutrient enemata is thus always very inadequate. In some cases after the introduction of large enemata into the large intestine, a certain amount may escape backwards into the ileum and may there undergo absorption. The isolated large intestine of man is able to absorb only about 6 grm. of dextrose per hour and about 80 c.c. of water. If egg albumin or caseinogen solutions be introduced by the rectum, no absorption can be detected after several hours. In observations extending over a considerable time, some disappearance has been observed of proteins and emulsified fats, as well as of boiled starch. This was due however to the action of bacteria on these substances, and was probably of very little value for the nourishment of the individual. Feeding by nutrient enemata is thus merely a method of slow starvation. If it is employed it should be limited to administration of water, salines, or solutions of glucose.

The chief value of the large intestine in carnivora and in civilised man would seem to be as an excretory organ, since it plays an important part in the excretion of lime, magnesium, iron, and phosphates. *Lime* salts are excreted partly with the fæces, partly in the urine. The path taken by the lime under different conditions varies with the character of the other constituents of the food. If phosphates are present in large quantities, the greater part of the lime will be excreted by the large intestine and escape with the fæces as insoluble calcium phosphate. If acids be administered, such as hydrochloric acid, the amount of lime in the urine will increase, that in the fæces will diminish. Thus in herbivora normally only about 3 to 6 per cent. of the lime is excreted with the urine, whereas in carnivora with an acid urine the proportion leaving the body by this channel rises to 27 per cent. The excretion of *magnesium* is determined by very similar conditions. Its phosphates are somewhat more soluble than those of lime. In man about 50 per cent. of the magnesium leaving the body is contained in the urine, whereas the amount of lime in the fæces is ten to twenty times as much as that contained in the urine. It must be remembered that the whole of this difference is not due to excretion of lime into the gut, since a certain proportion of this substance may be precipitated as an insoluble phosphate or carbonate in the upper part of the small intestine and pass through the gut without undergoing absorption.

The absorption of *iron* takes place in the duodenum and upper part of the jejunum. Only 1 or 2 milligrammes appear in the urine, all the rest being excreted in the large gut and appearing in the fæces, chiefly as sulphide of iron.

Of the acid radicals *phosphates* may pass out either with the urine or with the fæces, the exact path taken being determined by the relative amount of calcium and alkaline metals present in the food. If there is an excess of calcium most of the phosphates will leave with the fæces.

The large intestine is the main channel of excretion for certain substances which cannot be regarded as normal constituents of the food, *e. g.* the heavy metals, such as bismuth and mercury. If bismuth be administered subcutaneously, the fæces will be found to contain this substance, and the wall of the large intestine will be stained black from a deposit of sulphide of bismuth. This deposit stops short at the ileocolic valve. The excretion of mercury by the wall of the large intestine may account for the frequent presence of ulceration of this part of the gut in cases of poisoning by mercury.

SECTION IX

MOVEMENTS OF THE INTESTINES

THE movements of the intestines can be investigated either by observation of the exposed gut, or by the shadow method introduced by Cannon, in which the nature of the movements is judged from the shadows of food containing bismuth which are thrown on a sensitive screen by means of the Röntgen rays. These movements have been the subject of experimental investigation for many years, but with varying results. The great discrepancy which obtained between the statements of earlier observers is due to the fact that they failed to exclude the many disturbing impulses which can play on any segment of the gut, either reflexly through the central nervous system, or from other parts of the alimentary canal itself through the local nervous system. In order to observe the normal movements of the gut, it is necessary to exclude the disturbing influences due to reflexes through the central nervous system, either by extirpation of the whole of the nerve plexuses in the abdomen, or by division of the splanchnic nerves, or by destruction of the lower part of the spinal cord from about the middle dorsal region. If the abdomen of an animal, which has been treated in this way, be opened in a bath of warm normal salt solution, so as to exclude the disturbing influence of drying and cooling of the gut, the small intestine will be seen to present two kinds of movements. In the first place, all the coils of gut undergo swaying movements from side to side—the so-called pendular movements. Careful observation of any coil will show that these movements are attended with slight waves of contraction passing rapidly over the surface. If a rubber balloon, filled with air and connected with a tambour, be inserted into any part of the gut, it will reveal the existence of rhythmic contractions of the circular muscle repeated from twelve to thirteen times per minute. By means of a special piece of apparatus (the 'enterograph') it is possible without opening the gut to record the movements of either circular or longitudinal muscular coats; and it is then found that both coats present rhythmic contractions at the same rate, the two coats at any point contracting synchronously. When the contractions are recorded by means of a balloon, the constriction which accompanies each contraction is seen to be most marked at the middle of the balloon, *i. e.* at the point of greatest tension, and the amplitude of the contractions is augmented by increasing the tension on the walls of the gut. These movements are unaffected by the direct application of drugs such as nicotine or cocaine, which we might

expect to paralyse any local nervous structures in the wall of the gut. Bayliss and Starling concluded that these rhythmic contractions were myogenic,[1] that they were propagated from muscle fibre to muscle fibre, and that they coursed down the gut at the rate of about 5 cm. per second. Since however they may apparently arise at any portion of the gut which is subject to any special tension, it is not easy to be certain that a contraction recorded at any point is really propagated from a point two or three inches higher up. These contractions must cause a thorough mixing of the contents of the gut with the digestive fluids. On examining under the Röntgen rays the intestines of a cat which has taken a large meal of bread and milk mixed with bismuth some hours previously, a length of gut may be seen in which the food contents form a continuous column. Suddenly movements occur in this

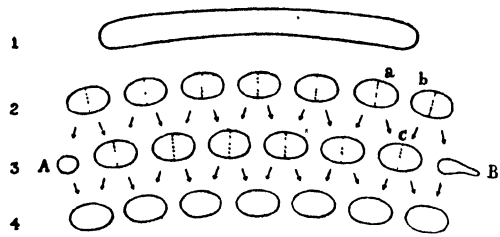


FIG. 354. Diagram of the 'segmentation' (pendular) movements of the intestines as observed by the Röntgen rays, after administration of bismuth. (CANNON.)

1. A continuous column, intestinal movements being absent. 2. The column broken up into segments. 3. Five seconds later, each segment divided into two, the halves joining the corresponding halves of adjacent segments. 4. Condition (2) repeated five seconds later.

column, which is split into a number of equal segments. Within a few seconds each of these segments is halved, the corresponding halves of adjasent segments uniting. Again contractions recur in the original positions, dividing the newly formed segments of contents and re-forming the segments in the same position as they had at first (Fig. 354). If the contraction is a continuous propagated wave, it is evidently reinforced at regular intervals down the gut, so as to divide the column of food into a number of spherical or oval segments. The points of greatest tension immediately become the points which are midway between the spots where the first contractions were most pronounced. The second contractions therefore start at these points of greatest tension, and divide the first formed segments into two parts, which join with the corresponding halves of the neighbouring segments. In this way every particle of food is brought successively into intimate contact with the intestinal wall. These movements have not a translatory effect, and

[1] Magnus has shown that strips of the longitudinal coat, pulled off from the small intestine of the cat, may continue to beat regularly in oxygenated Ringer's solution. He stated that these contractions occurred only if portions of Auerbach's plexus were still adherent to the muscle fibres, and concluded therefore that the rhythmic, like the peristaltic, contractions were neurogenic. Gun and Underhill however have obtained well-marked rhythmic contractions from strips of muscle entirely free from any remains of the nerve plexus, thus confirming the view enunciated above.

a column of food may remain at the same level in the gut for a considerable time.

The onward progress of the food is caused by a true peristaltic contraction, *i. e.* one which involves contraction of the gut above the food mass and relaxation of the gut below. If a balloon be inserted in the lumen of the exposed gut, it will be found that pinching the gut *above* the balloon causes an immediate relaxation of the muscular wall in the neighbourhood of the balloon. This inhibitory influence of the local stimulus may extend as much as two feet down the intestine towards the ileocæcal valve. On the other hand, pinching the gut half an inch below the situation of the balloon causes a strong continued contraction to occur at the balloon itself (Fig. 355).

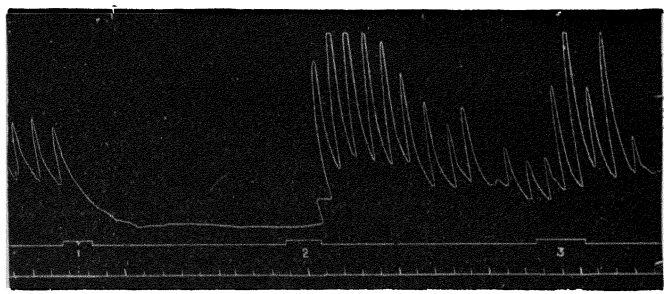


FIG. 355. Intestinal contractions (balloon method). In this dog all the abdominal ganglia had been excised, and both vagi cut. Showing propagated effects of mechanical stimulation above and below the balloon.

(1) pinch above, (2) pinch below, (3) pinch below balloon.

Stimulation at any portion of the gut causes contraction above the point of stimulus and relaxation below the point of stimulus (the 'law of the intestines'). The same effect is produced by introduction of a bolus of food, especially if it be large or have a direct irritating effect on the wall of the gut (Fig. 356). In this case the contraction above and the inhibition below cause an onward movement of the bolus, which travels slowly down the whole length of the gut until it passes through the ileocæcal opening into the large intestine. The peristaltic contraction involves the co-operation of a nervous system. Whereas in the œsophagus it is the central nervous system which is involved, the peristaltic contractions in the small intestine occur after severance of all connection with the brain and spinal cord. On the other hand, they are absolutely abolished by painting the intestine with nicotine or with cocaine. They must therefore be ascribed to the local nervous system contained in Auerbach's plexus, which we can regard as a lowly organised nervous system with practically one reaction, namely, that formulated above as the 'law of the intestines.' An antiperistalsis is never observed in the small intestine. Mall has shown that, if a short length of gut be cut out and reinserted in the opposite direction, a species of partial obstruction results, in consequence of the fact that the peristaltic waves, started above the point of operation, cannot travel downwards

over the reversed length of gut. The intestine above this point therefore becomes dilated. If however the reactions of the local nervous system be paralysed or inhibited, a reflux of intestinal contents is quite possible, since the contractions excited at any spot by local stimulation of the muscle have the effect of driving the food either upwards or downwards; the direction of movement of the food will be that of least resistance.

The movements of the small intestine are also subject to the central nervous system. Stimulation of the vagus has the effect of producing an initial inhibition of the whole small intestine, followed by increased irritability and increased contractions (Fig. 357). On the other hand, stimulation of the splanchnic nerves causes complete relaxation of both coats of the small gut (Fig. 358). It seems that the splanchnics normally exercise a tonic

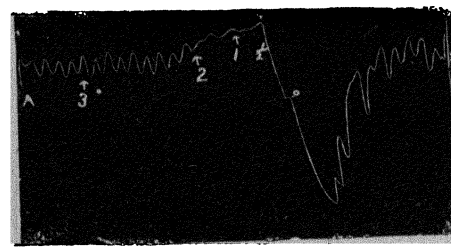


FIG. 356 Passage of bolus. Contractions of longitudinal coat (enterograph). The bolus (of soap and cotton-wool) was inserted into the intestine four inches above the recorded spot at A. The figures below the tracing indicate the distance of the middle of the bolus from the recording levers. As the bolus arrives two inches above the levers, there is cessation of the rhythmic contractions and inhibition of the tone of the muscle. This is followed, as the bolus is forced past, by a strong contraction in the rear of the bolus.

inhibitory influence on the intestinal movements, which can be increased by all manner of peripheral stimuli. On this account it is often impossible to obtain any movements in the exposed intestine so long as these remain in connection with the central nervous system through the splanchnic nerves. The relaxed condition of the gut which obtains in many abdominal affections is probably also reflex in origin, and is due to reflex inhibition through the splanchnic nerves.

As a result of the two sets of movements described above, the food is thoroughly mixed with the digestive juices, and the greater part of the products of digestion are brought into contact with the intestinal wall and absorbed. What is left—a proportion varying in different animals according to the nature of the food—is passed on by occasional peristaltic contractions through the lower end of the ileum into the colon, or large intestine. The lowest two centimetres of the ileum present a distinct thickening of the circular muscular coat, forming the ileocolic sphincter. This sphincter relaxes in front of a peristaltic wave and so allows the passage of food into the colon. On the other hand, it contracts as a rule against any regurgitation which might be caused by contractions in the colon. Although thus falling into line with the rest of the muscular coat as concerns its reaction to stimuli

arising in the gut above or below, it presents a marked contrast to the rest of the gut in its relation to the central nervous system. It is unaffected by stimulation of the vagus. Stimulation of the splanchnic however, which

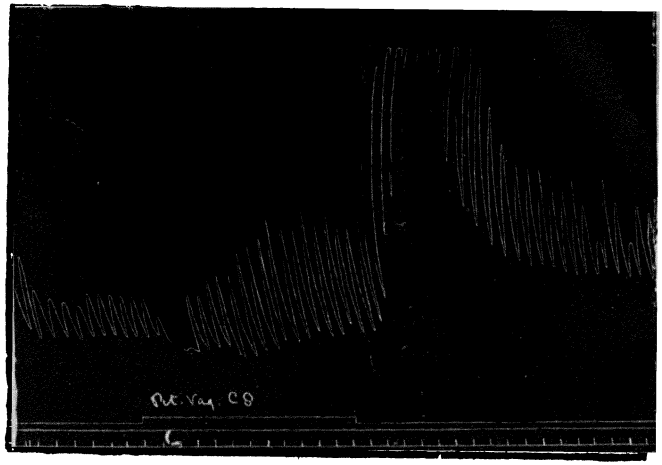


FIG. 357. Effect of stimulation of right vagus on intestinal contractions.

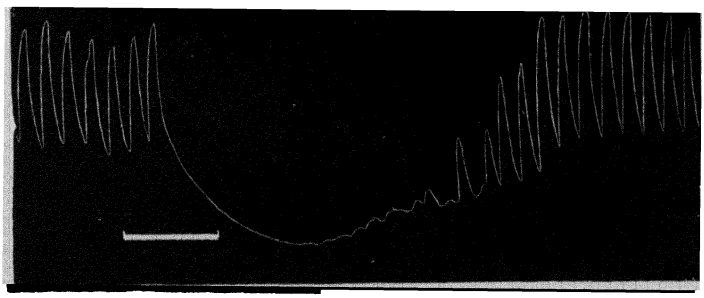


FIG. 358. Excitation of both splanchnic nerves. Balloon method. Intestine returned to abdomen.

causes complete relaxation of the lower part of the ileum with the rest of the small intestine, produces a strong contraction of the muscle fibres forming the ileocolic sphincter (Elliott).

MOVEMENTS OF THE LARGE INTESTINE

By means of the occasional peristaltic contractions, accompanied by relaxation of the ileocolic sphincter, the contents of the small intestine are gradually transferred into the large. In man these contents are considerable in bulk, are semi-fluid, and probably fill the ascending as well as the transverse colon.

The large intestine is supplied with nerves from the central nervous system. These run partly in the sympathetic system along the colonic and inferior mesenteric nerves, partly in the pelvic visceral nerves or *nervi erigentes*, which come off from the sacral cord and pass direct to the pelvic viscera. In addition it possesses a local nervous system, presenting the same structure as that found in the small intestine. The movements of the large intestine differ considerably in various animals, as has been shown by Elliott, according to the nature of the food and the part played by this portion of the gut in the processes of absorption. In the dog absorption is almost complete at the ileocolic valve, whereas in the herbivora a very large part of the processes of digestion and absorption occurs in the colon and cæcum. Man takes an intermediate position as regards his large intestine between these two groups of animals. Elliott and Barclay Smith divide the large intestine into four parts, according to their functions, viz. the cæcum, and the proximal, intermediate, and distal portions of the colon. Of these the dog possesses practically only the distal colon. We may take Elliott's account of the movements as they probably occur in man. They agree very closely with those observed by Cannon under normal circumstances in the cat by means of the Röntgen rays. The food as it passes from the ileum first fills up the proximal colon. The effect of this distension is to cause a contraction of the muscular wall at the junction between the ascending and transverse colon. This contraction travels slowly over the tube in a backward direction towards the cæcum, and is quickly succeeded by another, so that the colon may present at the same time several of these advancing waves. These waves are spoken of as anti-peristaltic; but as they do not involve also an advancing wave of inhibition, they must not be regarded as representing the exact antithesis of a peristaltic wave, as we have defined it. The effect of these waves is to force the food up into the cæcum, regurgitation into the ileum being prevented partly by the obliquity of the opening, partly by the tonic contraction of the ileocolic sphincter. As the whole of the contents cannot escape into the cæcum, a certain portion will slip back in the axis of the tube, so that these movements have the same effect as the similar contractions in the pyloric end of the stomach, causing a thorough churning up of the contents and its close contact with the intestinal wall. The movements are rendered still more effective by the sacculation of the walls of this part of the large intestine. The distension of the cæcum caused by this anti-peristalsis excites occasionally a true co-ordinated peristaltic wave which, starting in the cæcum, drives the food down the intestine into the transverse part. These waves die away before they reach the end of the colon, and the food is driven back again by waves of anti-peristalsis. Occasionally more food escapes through the ileocolic sphincter from the ileum, so that the whole ascending and transverse colon may be filled with the mass undergoing a constant kneading and mixing process. The result of this process is the absorption of the greater part of the water of the intestinal contents, as well as of any nutrient material; and the drier part of the intestinal mass collects towards the splenic flexure, where it may be

separated by transverse waves of constriction from the more fluid parts which are being driven to and fro in the proximal and intermediate portions. By means of occasional peristaltic waves these hard masses are driven into the distal part of the colon. The distal colon must be regarded as a place for the storage of the fæces and as the organ of defæcation. In the transverse colon, in the descending and iliac colon, the anti-peristaltic movements and consequent churning of the contents are probably slight. These therefore represent the intermediate colon, with propulsive peristalsis as its chief activity. The descending colon is never distended, and Elliott therefore

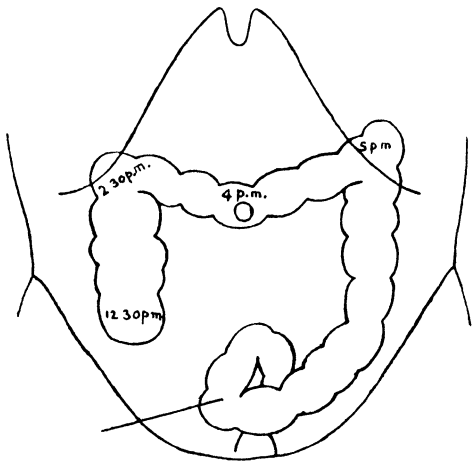


FIG. 359. Skiagram to show normal position of colon in man, and the position attained by its contents at different periods after a meal containing bismuth. The bismuth meal was taken at 8 A.M. The times of arrival at different levels are marked on the colon. (HERTZ.)

regards it as a transferring segment of exaggerated irritability. The storage of the waste matter takes place chiefly in the sigmoid flexure. This with the rectum represents the distal portion of the colon. The distinguishing feature of the distal colon is its complete subordination to the spinal centres. It probably remains inactive until an increasing distension excites reflexly through the pelvic visceral nerves a complete evacuation of this portion of the gut. Stimulation of these nerves in an animal, such as the cat, produces a rapid shortening of the distal part of the colon, due to contraction of the recto-coccygeus and longitudinal fibres of the gut, followed after some seconds by a contraction of the circular coat. This originates at the lower limit of the area of anti-peristalsis, *i. e.* probably at the upper end of the sigmoid flexure, and spreading rapidly downwards empties the whole of this segment of the gut. In man the emptying of the rectum itself is largely assisted by the contractions of the voluntary muscles of the abdominal walls and pelvic floor.

The last section of the rectum is emptied at the close of the act by a

forcible contraction of the levator ani and the other perinæal muscles, and this contraction also serves to restore the everted mucous membrane.

The carrying out of this reflex act is dependent on the integrity of a certain part of the lumbar spinal cord. If this 'centre' be destroyed, the tonic contraction of the sphincter muscles disappears. This centre may be either excited to increased action, or be inhibited by peripheral stimulation of various nerves or by emotion such as fear. Application of warmth to the region of the anus causes reflex relaxation of the sphincter; application of cold increases its tonic contraction.

In man, as Hertz has shown by the skiagraphic method, the pelvic colon becomes filled with fæces from below upwards, the rectum remaining empty till just before defæcation. In individuals whose bowels are opened regularly every morning after breakfast, the entry of fæces into the rectum gives rise to a sensation of fulness and acts as the call to defæcation. If no response be made, the desire to defæcate passes away, since the rectum relaxes and the fæcal mass no longer exercises pressure on its wall. Hertz has shown that the minimal pressure required to produce the call to defæcate varies from 30 to 40 mm. Hg., according to the length of the gut which is the seat of distension.

SECTION X

THE ABSORPTION OF THE FOODSTUFFS

THE ABSORPTION OF WATER AND SALTS

THE intake of water and probably of salts by the alimentary canal, in accordance with the requirements of the organism as a whole, seems to be regulated almost entirely by the central nervous system, the higher parts of this system, viz. those concerned with appetite, being particularly involved in the process. Thus in man any large loss of fluid to the body, as by sweating, diarrhœa, hæmorrhage, gives rise to an intense thirst that has its natural reaction in increased intake of water by the mouth. On the other hand, the property possessed by the alimentary canal of absorbing water and weak saline fluids contained in its interior is very little influenced by the state of depletion, or otherwise, of the water depots of the body. It is practically impossible, however large the quantities of fluid ingested, to evoke the production of fluid motions, the greater part of the ingested fluid being absorbed on its way through the alimentary canal. Thus a man may keep himself in perfect health and maintain the water content of his body constant whether he take one litre or six litres of water daily. The whole process of regulation, apart from that determined by appetite, is carried out at the other end of the cycle, viz. by the kidneys. As concerns absorption of water there is no chemical solidarity between the alimentary surface and the rest of the body. Whenever water is presented to this surface it is absorbed and passes into the circulation.

The absorption of water in the stomach may be regarded as nil. Although from this viscus alcohol and possibly peptone and sugar may be absorbed to a slight extent, water or saline fluids introduced into it are passed through the pylorus either without change or increased by the secretion of fluid from the gastric glands. In no case is there a diminution of fluid in the stomach.

The chief absorption of water occurs in the small intestine. It is on this account that the salient features of cases of dilatation of the stomach with stenosis, absolute or relative, of the pyloric orifice can be nearly all referred to the starvation of the body in water, and can be often relieved by the administration of water either subcutaneously or by the rectum, *i. e.* by the channels through which absorption is still possible. The introduction of water into the stomach simply increases the dilatation, but does not relieve the intense thirst of the patient. Water that has been swallowed

to quench thirst has first to be passed from the stomach into the small intestine before it can be absorbed and relieve the needs of the tissues. The intestinal contents at the ileocæcal valve contain relatively nearly as much water as they do at the upper part of the jejunum. Their absolute bulk is however much smaller, so that only a small proportion of the water that has been taken in by the mouth remains to be absorbed in the large gut—an amount probably much less than that which has been added to the contents of the small intestine in the form of secretion by the stomach, liver, pancreas, and intestinal tubules.

The main problem before us is therefore the mechanism of absorption of water and saline fluids by the villi of the small intestine. By means

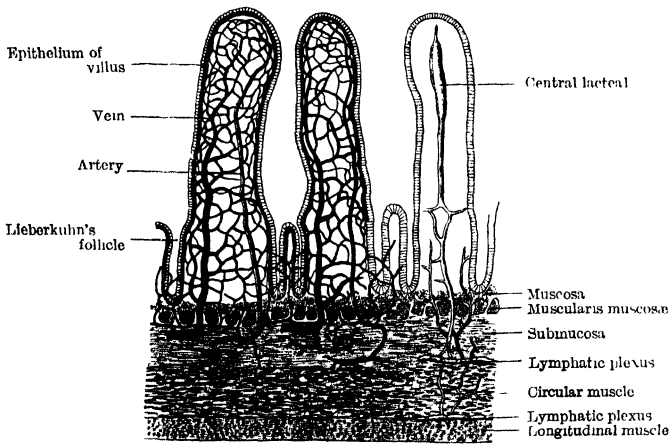


FIG. 360. Diagrammatic section through wall of small intestine to show vascular and lymphatic arrangements of mucous membrane. (After MALL.)

of these structures the absorbing surface of the intestine is largely increased. It has been calculated that each square millimetre of intestine represents an absorbing surface of 3 to 12 mm.^{2} Each villus (Fig. 360) consists of a framework of reticular tissue containing many leucocytes in its meshes, separated from the lumen of the gut by a continuous layer of columnar epithelial cells. These cells rest on an incomplete basement membrane and present on the side turned towards the lumen of the gut a striated border. The villus offers two channels by means of which material, which has passed through the epithelium, may be carried into the general circulation. In the centre of the villus is the central lacteal, a club-shaped vessel bounded by a complete layer of delicate endothelial cells. This leads into a plexus of lymphatics placed superficially to the muscularis mucosæ. From the superficial plexus communicating branches pass vertically to a corresponding plexus lying in the submucosa. The central lacteal and the superficial plexus are free from valves, which however are present in abundance in the deeper plexus, so that fluid can pass easily from the lacteal to the

deeper plexus, but not in the reverse direction. From the *muscularis mucosæ* unstriated muscle fibres pass up through the villus to be attached partly to the other surface of the central lacteal, partly by expanded extremities to the basement membrane covering the surface of the villus. Contraction of these muscle fibres will tend to empty the central lacteal into the deep plexus of lymphatics and may also cause an expulsion of the contents of the spaces of the retiform tissue of the villus into the central lacteal. The alimentary canal represents one of the few localities where a formation of lymph is constantly proceeding, even in a condition of complete rest. On placing a cannula in the thoracic duct of a dog an outflow of lymph is obtained which may vary in different animals between 1 c.c. and 10 c.c. in the ten minutes. The greater part of this lymph is derived from the alimentary canal, so that any of the intestinal contents which have made their way into the spaces of the villus might be entrained in this lymph current and carried away with it into the thoracic duct and so into the general blood system.

The other possible channel of absorption is by the capillary blood vessels of the villus. Each villus is supplied with blood from one or two arterioles which break up into a rich plexus of capillaries lying close under the basement membrane of the villus. The return blood is collected into one or two veins, which join the radicles of the portal vein in the submucosa and in the mesentery. In these capillaries the blood is circulating rapidly, so that a considerable amount of material may pass into them from the spaces of the villus within, say, one hour without altering appreciably the percentage composition of the blood. On the other hand, it must be remembered that the blood in these vessels is at a high pressure, probably not less than 30 mm. Hg., so that any absorption into the blood stream must occur against this pressure. It is probable therefore that, in explaining any absorption by the blood vessels, we shall have to place out of court any possibility of the passage occurring in consequence of hydrostatic differences of pressure, *i. e.* by a process of filtration.

When salt solutions are introduced into the small intestine, they are rapidly absorbed without the production of any corresponding increase in the rate of lymph flow from the thoracic duct. On the other hand, the absorption of large amounts of fluid may cause an actual diminution of the solids of the plasma, so that we are justified in regarding the capillary network of blood vessels at the surface of the villi as solely responsible for the absorption.

What are the forces which cause this transference of fluid and dissolved substances from one side to the other of the membrane composed of epithelial cells *plus* capillary endothelium? Like other cells, those of the intestinal epithelium are bounded on their free surface by a 'lipoid' membrane, *i. e.* one containing some complex of lecithin and cholesterin and permeable only by such substances as are soluble in lipoids. On the other hand, the cement substance between the cells may be of a different character and possibly permeable to water-soluble substances. The question has been

propounded whether the greater part of the substances, which enter the blood plasma from the gut, pass between the cells or through the cells. Water could of course pass in either way. Most of the inorganic salts such as sodium chloride, as well as the very important constituents of the food, the sugars, are insoluble in lipoids and would have to pass between the cells. When the question is investigated by the use of dyestuffs, soluble or insoluble in lipoids, it is found that the lipoid-soluble dyestuffs, such as neutral red or toluidin blue, pass into the cells, whereas the dyestuffs which are insoluble in such substances pass into the intercellular spaces. Too much stress however must not be laid on these experiments. All these dyestuffs are abnormal so far as the body is concerned. We cannot imagine that, at any time in the course of evolution of the properties of the intestinal epithelium, the cells were ever presented with or had to discriminate between different dyestuffs. The fact that absorption of these dyestuffs is determined by the physical conditions of the cell membrane is no proof that the absorption of the normal food constituents is determined in the same way. In fact, it is quite legitimate to assume that the lipoid membrane or limiting layer round every cell has as its main office, not the regulation of the access of foodstuffs to the cell, but its protection from any of the foodstuffs which it does not require for its metabolism. If it were not for such a membrane the assimilation of a salt would be determined entirely by its concentration in the immediate surroundings of the cell, whereas we know that assimilation by any living organism, whether uni- or multi-cellular, is regulated in the first place by the activity of the organism itself. According to this activity and the needs thereby induced, the uptake of food material may be large or small whatever its concentration in the surrounding medium. It would indeed be strange that the whole absorbing surface of the intestine should be covered by a membrane, of which the greater part was useless for the absorption of the common foodstuffs, as would be the case if these could only penetrate the membrane by the narrow chinks between the cells. It seems more probable that the absorption of the different foodstuffs, and probably also of the normal salts of the body, is effected by the cells themselves, in accordance with their nutritional needs, and this view is strengthened when we come to examine into the absorption even of normal saline solutions. If 50 c.c. of normal sodium chloride solution be introduced into a loop of intestine, it is absorbed steadily, so that at the end of an hour not more than about 20 c.c. may be recoverable. The absolute amounts absorbed differ in various experiments, but are fairly uniform for repeated observations on one and the same animal. The absorption of such a solution could be ascribed to the osmotic pressure of the colloids in the blood plasma or lymph within the spaces of the villi. If, instead of using isotonic solutions, hypertonic solutions are employed, *e.g.* a 2 or 3 per cent. NaCl solution, absorption still takes place, but may be preceded by an interval in which there is an actual increase of the fluid contained in the gut. Here again we might ascribe the absorption to the physical factors present, were it not that absorption is found to commence

before the fluid in the gut has attained isotonicity with the blood. In fact, employing a 1·5 per cent. salt solution, absorption may occur from the very beginning of the experiment. If such a solution is passed through the epithelial membrane into the blood plasma with a smaller tonicity, it is evident that work must be done in the process, work which can only be furnished by the cells of the epithelium. When sugar solutions are employed they behave in somewhat similar fashion to sodium chloride solutions, provided that the sugar is one of the absorbable hexoses, both sugar and water being rapidly absorbed. It is important to note that dextrose is absorbed from the gut almost as rapidly as sodium chloride, and quite as rapidly as sodium iodide, although its diffusibility is very considerably less than either of these salts. Moreover, great differences are found between the rate at which different sugars are absorbed, differences which are not referable to the diffusibility of the sugars in question. Thus the monosaccharides glucose, fructose, galactose are absorbed with double the rapidity of solutions of cane sugar and maltose, and it seems that, in the absence of hydrolytic splitting of the disaccharides, absorption from the gut would be entirely abolished. Lactose disappears from the intestine much more slowly than either of the other two disaccharides, so that large doses may give rise to a laxative effect. In animals devoid of lactase, the lactose-splitting ferment, in their intestinal epithelium milk sugar is apparently not absorbed at all.

The most cogent argument, perhaps, in favour of an active intervention of the cells of the gut in the process of absorption is furnished by the study of the absorption of blood serum. It has been shown that if an animal's own serum be introduced into a loop of its intestine the serum undergoes absorption. This absorption affects the water and salts more than the protein, so that the percentage of the proteins in the fluid remaining in the intestine is increased. Finally however the whole of the serum is absorbed. In this case the fluid within the gut is identical with the fluid within the blood vessels. There are no differences in concentration, quality of salts, or osmotic pressure of proteins. Nevertheless water passes through the cells of the gut from their inner to their outer sides, entraining with it the salts of the serum and a certain proportion of the indiffusible proteins. It is impossible to explain this result as due to the digestion of the proteins and their conversion into diffusible products, since the intestinal loops were washed free of any trypsin that they contained, and serum has itself a strong antitryptic action which would prevent its being attacked by a solution of trypsin.

The active intervention of the cells in the absorption of salt solutions and serum can be abolished by any means which diminishes or destroys their vitality, such as the addition of sodium fluoride to the fluid to be absorbed, or destruction of the epithelium by previous temporary occlusion of the blood vessels supplying the loop of intestine.

We must conclude that, when a fluid is introduced into the intestine, an active transference of water from the lumen into the blood stream is effected

by the intermediation of forces having their origin in the metabolism of the cells themselves. This work of absorption of the cells may be aided or hindered according to the physical conditions present. If these act against the cells, *e. g.* if the fluid be hypertonic, the absorption is effected more slowly, while with hypotonic solutions the physical conditions concur with the vital activity of the cells in bringing about a very rapid transference of fluid from the gut into the blood vessels. Among these physical conditions we must reckon the nature of the salts present in the solution. If these can pass easily into and through the cells, *e. g.* ammonium salts, sodium chloride, absorption is carried out rapidly. If on the other hand the salts in the intestinal contents are but slightly diffusible or have very little power of penetrating into the cells, the absorption of water by the cells causes an increased concentration of the salts, and therefore an increased osmotic pressure which offers a resistance to any further absorption; and the process comes to an end when the absorptive power of the cells is exactly balanced by the increased osmotic pressure, or attraction for water, of the intestinal contents.

Cushny and Wallace, as the result of their experiments on the relative absorbability of salt solutions from the gut, divide the salts into four main classes as follows:

I	II	III	IV
Sodium chloride, bromide, iodide, formate, acetate, propionate, butyrate, valerianate, caprate.	Ethyl sulphate, nitrate, lactate, salicylate, phthalate.	Sulphate, phosphate, ferrocyanide, caprylate, malonate, succinate, malate, citrate, tartrate.	Oxalate, fluoride.

Of these the first class contains those salts which are absorbed with great ease from the intestine. The second group of salts are absorbed with somewhat greater difficulty. The third group are absorbed so slowly, *i. e.* the salts retain the water in which they are dissolved so long that they increase peristalsis and act as laxatives or purgatives. The members of the fourth class are not absorbed at all. It is evident that this classification is independent of the diffusibility of the salts. Sodium acetate has a much smaller dissociation value and a lower diffusibility than sodium chloride or iodide, and yet is absorbed at approximately the same rate as these two salts. There is however, as Cushny pointed out, one physical or chemical character which apparently determines the non-absorbability (relative or absolute) of the members of the third and fourth classes. All these salts form insoluble compounds with calcium. This common character is not an explanation of the permeability of the cell wall, but is simply a general statement of one of the conditions which affect the power of the cells to take up salts from their solutions, this power being absent in the case of salts which furnish an insoluble calcium compound.

THE ABSORPTION OF FATS

Fats administered to an animal in excess of its diurnal requirements are stored up in the body in the form in which they are administered. Each cell of the body probably possesses in itself the mechanism for the utilisation of these neutral fats, and for effecting in them the various changes involved in the successive stages of their disintegration and oxidation through which they are finally converted to CO_2 and water. The problem therefore of fat

absorption is ultimately one of the simplest with which we have to deal, and involves merely the transference of the neutral fat of the food to the circulating fluids in such a form that it can be carried by them to the place where it is required for the metabolism of the body or where it may be stored up as a reserve substance.

The processes of digestion of fat result in the production of glycerin and fatty acids, if the reaction be neutral or slightly acid. If the reaction of the gut be alkaline, the alkali will combine with the fatty acids to produce soaps. Analyses of the contents of the gut after a fatty meal show that the greater proportion of the fats are present as a mixture of fatty acids and soaps, the amount of these substances as compared with unchanged fat increasing as we descend the gut.

In studying the absorption of fats the investigator is able to take advantage of the fact that the micro-chemical detection of this substance is usually very easy. Globules of fats or fatty acids containing any proportion of the unsaturated fatty acids have the property of reducing osmic acid, and therefore of being stained black by this reagent. Practically all the fats which occur in the food or in the cells of the body contain oleic acid or the glyceride of this acid in association with palmitic or stearic acid, and therefore give the typical micro-chemical fat reactions. In many cases it is useful to employ the specific stains for fats, such as Sudan red or alkanna red. It is important to remember that the intensity of the fat reaction given by a cell is only an expression of the fat or fatty acid contained in a free state in the cell, and is no criterion of the total amount of fat which may be present. Thus a normal heart muscle in section gives only a diffuse light brown coloration with osmic acid. After poisoning by phosphorus or by diphtheria toxin, every muscle cell may be found studded with minute black granules of fat. Chemical analysis shows however that the normal heart muscle contains as much fat as the degenerated muscle. Our micro-chemical methods will therefore throw no light on the amount of fat which is actually in combination with the cell protoplasm.

If an animal be examined a few hours after the administration of a meal rich in fats, the lymphatics of the intestine are seen to be distended with a milky fluid—*chyle*—and the same fluid is found filling the *cisterna lymphatica magna* and the thoracic duct. The lymph from the thoracic duct will also be milky, and chemical analysis shows that the opacity is due to the presence of minute granules of neutral fat. The fat in such chyle may amount to over 6 per cent., so that in a moderate-sized dog 12 grammes of fat may be carried in the course of an hour from the intestine to the blood by this means. This great access of fat to the blood during fat absorption introduces corresponding changes in the blood. The plasma itself becomes milky, and if the blood be allowed to clot, the serum expressed from the clot is also milky. On standing, a layer of fat globules like cream may rise to the surface of the serum. Fat is found in a free state in this finely divided condition in the blood plasma so long as it is being absorbed in the intestine. During starvation it disappears entirely, the serum becoming perfectly clear. Thus part, at any rate, of the fat which is absorbed from the gut is carried thence by the lymphatic channels in the form of neutral fat to the blood stream, by which it is distributed to the various tissues of the body, gradually leaving the blood stream in a manner which at present has not been determined. Not all the fat which is absorbed takes this path by way of the

lymphatics and the thoracic duct. Ligature of the thoracic duct, if effective, certainly impedes the absorption of fat, but does not abolish it. If the thoracic duct lymph be collected during the absorption of a given quantity of fat from the intestine, not more than 60 per cent. of the fat which has disappeared from the gut can be recovered from the lymph. What happens to the remainder we do not know. Apparently it does not reach the blood in a finely divided condition. If the thoracic duct be ligatured, the percentage of fat in the blood rapidly falls to a minimum which remains constant, even during starvation. If now fat be administered, although a considerable proportion of it may be absorbed, the percentage of fat in the

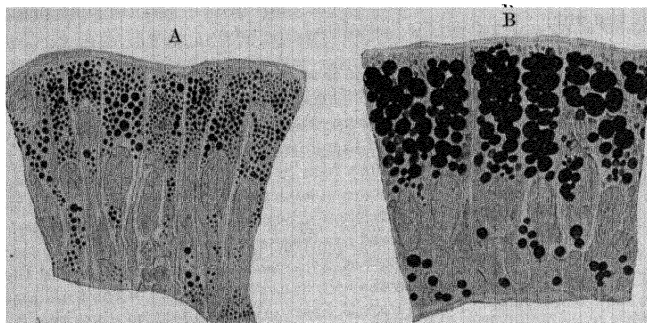


FIG. 361. Columnar epithelium from small intestine of frog stained with osmic acid to show fat absorption.

A, five hours after a meal of olive oil; B, three hours later. It should be noticed that the fat globules first formed grow in size in the course of digestion, pointing to a gradual deposition of fat on the globules from solution in the protoplasm. (SCHAFER.)

blood is not raised. If therefore the fat is absorbed directly into the blood, it cannot be in the particulate condition, and it must be in such small quantities at a time that it is at once removed from the blood by the tissues through which this fluid flows. It is difficult to imagine that any large proportion of this lost fraction of the fat is absorbed into the blood stream in the form of soaps, since, as Munk has shown, soaps injected into the blood stream act as poisons and give rise to a great fall of blood pressure, incoagulability of the blood, and a condition of coma. We must therefore leave out of account for the present the mechanism of absorption of this lost fraction and endeavour to trace the course of the absorption of that part of the fat which makes its way into the lymphatics.

Microscopic examination of a section of the villus during fat absorption shows that the absorption occurs for the most part through the epithelial cells. These are found closely packed with fat granules (Fig. 361) which, small at the beginning of the process of absorption, rapidly enlarge till they occupy the greater part of the cell lying between the nucleus and the basilar striated border. Most observers are agreed that no fat globules are to be seen within the border itself.

According to Altmann the fat granules found in the cells during absorption are themselves produced by a transformation of fuchsinophile granules which are present in the cell even during the fasting condition. At an early stage the small fat granules can be stained so as to show a distinct fuchsinophile envelope. Altmann interprets this appearance as showing that the epithelial cells take up the fat in a dissolved form, probably in a hydrolysed condition, and that a process of synthesis then occurs in the granules leading to the formation and accumulation of fat. When the process of absorption is proceeding actively, the meshes of the villus contain a number of free fat granules, and the leucocytes in these meshes are generally found also full of these granules. According

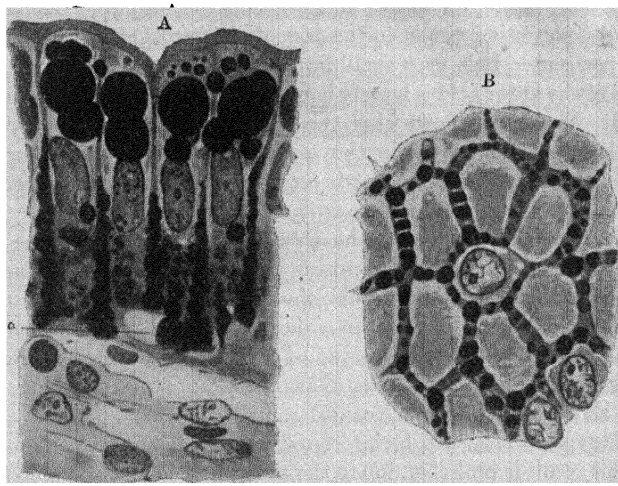


FIG. 362. A. Vertical section through intestinal epithelium of a rat during fat absorption. B. Horizontal section through deeper parts of the cells, showing excretion of fine fat globules into the intercellular clefts. (REUTER.)

to Schafer an important function in the transfer of the granules from epithelial cells to central lacteal was performed by the leucocytes. These were supposed to take up the fat granules extruded by the epithelial cells at the base of the villi, to wander into the central lacteal where they broke down, furnishing in this way the molecular basis of the chyle as well as its protein constituents. This view was strongly combated by Heidenhain, who pointed out that many of the granules staining darkly with osmic acid were not necessarily fat, and that the number of leucocytes within the villi were hardly sufficient to account for the amount of material observed. According to Reuter the epithelial cells take up fat in a dissolved condition through the striated border, and deposit it as granules of neutral fat in the inner portion of the protoplasm. From here the fat is passed on by the protoplasm by the side of the nucleus and extruded in the form of very fine granules in the deeper parts of the inter-epithelial clefts, which thus function as true excretory channels for the epithelial cells (Fig. 362).

It is probable that the muscular mechanism of absorption described many years ago by Brücke plays an important part in the absorption of fats, but it is difficult to furnish any experimental proof of the manner in which this mechanism works. Repeated contractions of the muscle fibres of the villus would tend to empty the spaces into the central lacteal, and this in its turn into the submucous plexus of lymphatics, so that the lymph in the spaces is constantly renewed and passes laden with absorbed fat particles into the valved lymphatics of the mesentery.

It was long considered that the fats were taken up by the ephithelial cells from the intestine as fine particles of neutral fat, the chief use of the pancreatic juice being to aid the formation of an emulsion of fat in the intestines. There seems to be little doubt that this was an error, and that the fats are absorbed, *dissolved* in the bile, either as soap or as fatty acid. The arguments for this view can be shortly summarised as follows:

(1) Although the bile does not dissolve neutral fats, it has a strong solvent action on fatty acids, on soaps, and even on the insoluble calcium soaps. This solvent power is greatest in the case of oleic acid, of which bile can dissolve 19 per cent. It is very small in the case of pure stearic acid, but the solubility of the latter acid is largely increased if it be associated as usual with oleic acid. Moore has shown that this solvent action is chiefly conditioned by the bile salts, aided by the lecithin and cholesterin also present in the bile, a solution of lecithin and cholesterin in bile salts having a greater solvent power than the salts alone.

(2) The presence of bile in the intestine is essential for the normal absorption of fat. If the bile be cut off by occlusion of the bile ducts or by the establishment of a biliary fistula, the utilisation of fat sinks from about 98 per cent. to about 40 per cent., the unabsorbed fat appearing in the fæces. This large undigested residue of fat hinders also the absorption of the other foodstuffs by covering them with an insoluble layer, so that nutrition as a whole may suffer considerably.

(3) Absorption may also be interfered with by ligature of the pancreatic duct. This result is probably due to the absence of the fat-splitting ferments of the pancreatic juice from the intestine. If the fæces be analysed it is found that a very large proportion of the fat has been split into fatty acids in the course of its passage through the alimentary canal. This lipolysis has however been carried out by the agency of micro-organisms, *i.e.* in the lower segments of the gut where the greater part of the bile has been already reabsorbed into the portal circulation. If fat, in a finely divided form such as cream or milk, be given to animals deprived of their pancreas, a certain proportion of it is absorbed. Under these conditions a considerable degree of lipolysis may occur in the stomach itself, so that the fats would be already hydrolysed when they came in contact with the bile in the duodenum.

(4) It was shown by Schiff, by means of his amphibolic fistula, that the bile which is poured into the gut undergoes a circulation, being re-absorbed from the lower parts of the digestive tube, carried to the liver by the portal vein, and re-secreted in the bile. The same quantity of bile salts may therefore be used over and over again as a vehicle for the transfer of the fatty acids and soaps from the lumen of the gut into the epithelial cells.

(5) Substances which are physically almost identical with fats, *e.g.* petroleum or paraffin, are not absorbed even when introduced into the intestine in the finest possible emulsion. If neutral fat be melted with a soft paraffin and the resulting mixture made into a fine emulsion and administered, it is found that the intestine rejects the paraffin, but takes up the neutral fat. This result can be explained only by assuming that the fat in the

particles has been actually dissolved out by the digestive juices and has been absorbed in a state of solution.

We may sum up the processes involved in digestion and absorption of fat as follows: Neutral fat is hydrolysed into fatty acid and glycerin under the action of the gastric juice, the pancreatic juice, and the succus entericus, the effect of the gastric juice being however extremely limited unless the fat be presented to it in a finely divided condition. The lipolytic action of the pancreatic juice and succus entericus is largely aided and increased by the simultaneous presence of bile which, in virtue of the bile salts and lecithin and cholesterin it contains, enables the pancreatic juice to enter into close relation with the fat, and dissolves the products of the activity of the ferment, so that this can attack renewed portions of the neutral fat. As a result of this lipolysis there are formed glycerin, which is soluble in water, and fatty acids or soaps, according as the reaction of the medium is acid or alkaline. The alkaline soaps are soluble in water, the soaps of magnesium and calcium are soluble in bile, free fatty acids are soluble in bile acids. The fat is thus reduced to a condition in which it is soluble in the intestinal contents whatever their reaction. In this state of solution its constituents are taken up by the cells of the intestinal mucosa. Within the cells a process of synthesis takes place, the soaps being split and the fatty acids thus set free or absorbed, being combined with glycerin with the elimination of water to form neutral fat, which appears as fine granules in the cell protoplasm. By an active process of excretion these granules are extruded in a somewhat more finely divided form into the intercellular clefts and into the spaces of the villus, whence by the contractions of the musculature of the villus they are forced with the lymph transuding from the capillary blood-vessels into the central lacteal, and thence along the mesenteric lymphatics to the thoracic duct. This description would apply to about 60 per cent. of the fat which is absorbed. It is probable that all the fat which is absorbed is taken up in a dissolved condition, but whether the remaining 40 per cent. enters the blood stream, or is utilised and broken down in the tissues of the intestinal wall itself, we have no means of judging. Under normal circumstances the utilisation of fat is almost complete. By the time the intestinal contents have arrived at the lower end of the ileum 95 per cent. of the fat has been absorbed. Removal of the whole large intestine was found by Vaughan Harley not to affect fat absorption in the dog.

THE ABSORPTION OF CARBOHYDRATES

As a result of the action of the various digestive juices, all the carbohydrate constituents of the normal diet of man are reduced to the state of monosaccharides. The absorption of these digestive products may take place at any part of the alimentary canal, the greatest part in the act of absorption being taken by the small intestine. By the time that the food has arrived at the ileocæcal valve, practically the whole of the carbohydrate constituents of the food have been absorbed. All experimenters are agreed that the carbohydrates pass into the body by way of the vessels of the portal

system. The lymph from the thoracic duct contains no more sugar than does the arterial blood taken at the same time, whereas several observers have obtained an increased percentage of sugar in the portal blood during the absorption of a big carbohydrate meal.

Of the carbohydrates of the food, some, like starch, dextrin, glycogen, are colloidal and indiffusible; others, such as the disaccharides, cane sugar, milk sugar, and maltose, are soluble and diffusible; and the products of the action of digestive ferments on these two classes, namely the monosaccharides, mannose, fructose, glucose and galactose, are also soluble and diffusible. The problem as to the mechanism involved in the passage of these substances across the intestinal wall into the blood vessels has been already dealt with in treating of the absorption of water and salts. The most striking fact is the relative impermeability of the intestinal wall to the disaccharides as compared with the monosaccharides. The intestinal wall is apparently able to take up in any quantity only such sugars as can be utilised by the cells of the organism. For this purpose the disaccharides are useless; cane sugar or lactose introduced into the blood vessels or subcutaneously is excreted quantitatively in the urine and, as might be expected, does not increase in any way the glycogen of the liver. When maltose is injected in the same manner, a certain proportion of it is utilised owing to the fact that the blood and fluids of the body contain a ferment, maltase, capable of converting the disaccharide into the monosaccharide, glucose. The absorption of these disaccharides occurs therefore much more slowly from the intestine than does the absorption of monosaccharides, the process of absorption being always preceded by and waiting for the process of hydrolysis. Thus huge doses of cane sugar may be taken without causing the appearance of cane sugar in the blood or urine. It has been found that sugar does not appear in the urine until as much as 320 grm. of cane sugar have been ingested, whereas any quantity of glucose over 100 grm. may give rise to glycosuria. Lactose is absorbed still more slowly and, in animals whose intestine is free from the ferment lactase, is not absorbed; large doses of lactose in such animals therefore give rise to diarrhœa. The behaviour of the intestinal wall to the non-assimilable sugars of artificial origin has not yet been sufficiently investigated. It would be interesting to inquire whether the rate of absorption of the different sugars is in any way determined by their stereomeric configuration, whether, for instance, *l*-glucose would be absorbed as rapidly as the ordinary *d*-glucose.

THE ABSORPTION OF PROTEINS

In very few departments of physiology has there been so great a revolution in our ideas as in that relating to protein absorption, especially as to the form in which it is absorbed from the alimentary canal, and its fate after absorption. As to the channel by which it obtains entry into the circulation, practical agreement reigns that it is absorbed by the blood vessels. Almost every physiologist who has occupied himself with the investigation of the lymph flow from the thoracic duct has been impressed by the fact that the

variations in the amount of lymph to be obtained in this way bear no relation to the condition of the animal as regards the state of digestion. Nor do we find any appreciable increase in the amount of lymph flow or in the amount of proteins contained in this lymph during digestion. The small increase observed by Asher and Barbara would be sufficiently accounted for by the increased blood supply to the intestines during digestion, and is insufficient to account for the absorption of any appreciable quantity of the protein which is being taken up from the alimentary canal. Moreover it was shown by Schmidt Mülheim that the absorption of proteins was not interfered with as the result of ligature of the thoracic duct and that, after this duct had been ligatured, the ingestion of proteins was followed at the usual interval by the increased output of urea, which is the invariable concomitant of protein absorption and assimilation. We must therefore conclude that the products of protein digestion are taken up by the epithelial cells and passed on by these into the blood vessels.

During the absorption of a protein meal changes have been described by various observers in the structures of the villus. In nearly every case there is marked increase in the number of mitotic figures in the epithelium lining the follicles of Lieberkühn. According to Hofmeister there is during absorption an increase in the number of leucocytes in the villi, and this observer ascribed an important function to these cells in the absorption of protein. Heidenhain showed that this increase of leucocytes was not constant in all animals, and bore no relation to the amount of absorption that was taking place, and was quite inadequate to account for the total absorption that was carried on. On the other hand, several observers have described changes in the epithelium as the result of protein digestion. According to Reuter the epithelial cells become swollen, their protoplasm stains less deeply, and at their basal ends the cells' limits disappear, the protoplasm being apparently distended with hyaline coagulable material (Fig. 363). Reuter regards this appearance as a direct expression of the taking up of proteins in a dissolved form and their conversion near the bases of the cells into coagulable proteins; but further evidence on this subject is necessary before we can attach much importance to such an interpretation of the appearances observed.

Under the influence of the gastric juice the proteins of the food are resolved during their stay in the stomach into albumoses and peptones. In the small intestine the process of hydration is carried further, the trypsin of the pancreatic juice carrying the proteins through the stage of secondary albumoses and peptones, and converting them into a mixture of amino-acids and polypeptides. The same end-products result from the action of the erepsin of the intestinal wall on the albumoses and peptones produced by gastric digestion. The digestive juices finally reduce the proteins therefore to a mixture of amino-acids, with a certain remainder of polypeptides consisting of two or three of the amino-acids associated together, which do not undergo further disintegration under the action of the intestinal ferments. The final products give no biuret test. The first question we have to decide is to what extent the proteins are reduced to their ultimate hydration products before absorption. We have evidence that protein may be absorbed by the small intestine without having undergone any hydration whatsoever The absorption of serum protein has been discussed already in dealing with the mechanism of absorption of salt solutions from the gut. In a series of

experiments made by Friedländer, the absorptions of various proteins were compared after their introduction into loops of the small intestine which had been washed free from ferment. During a period of three hours this author found that 21 per cent. of the proteins of egg white or of blood serum were absorbed. During the same period, of alkali albumin which had been introduced into the loops, 69 per cent. was absorbed. On the other hand, when

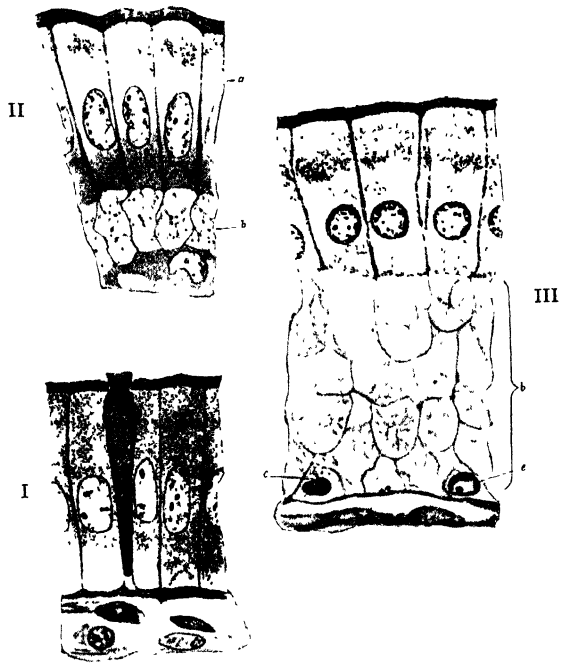


FIG. 363. Figures (from REUTER) showing changes in intestinal epithelium induced by absorption of protein.
I, epithelium of fasting rat; II, initial stage; III, later stage of protein absorption.

syntonin and casein were introduced into the intestine, no absorption whatever was observed. As to the condition in which such unchanged protein reaches the blood stream, our knowledge is still imperfect. Foreign proteins, such as egg albumin, or the serum of other species introduced into the blood stream, may cause poisonous effects and give rise to albuminuria, to lowering of blood pressure, or to alteration of the coagulability of the blood. If injected in small quantities they excite, as a reaction on the part of the organism, the production in the blood serum of a *precipitin*, and the presence of the precipitin may be looked upon therefore as a test by which we may decide whether these proteins have passed through the intestinal wall unchanged. In most cases it is found that, however abundant the amount of protein administered in the soluble form, none of it appears in the urine,

nor is any precipitin formation aroused. Ascoli has however observed such events occasionally to follow the administration of large doses of egg white, and it has been shown that there is a difference in the behaviour of animals to the introduction of soluble protein into their alimentary canal, according as they are new born or are more than a few days old. It seems that during the first few days of life the cellular lining of the alimentary canal is permeable to foreign proteins, whereas later on any protein which is taken up unchanged from the gut does not arrive in the same unchanged condition in the blood stream.

The absorption however of unchanged proteins can play but a small part in the assimilation of protein as a whole. Animals very rarely take coagulable proteins in a condition in which they will arrive at the small intestine in a state of solution unchanged. Even in the carnivora the living tissues taken into the stomach will undergo coagulation by the acid, and will then be dissolved by the gastric juice. In man practically all the proteins of the food are either insoluble or are rendered insoluble by the process of cooking. For absorption to take place it is therefore necessary that this insoluble or coagulated protein should be brought into solution, and this process is accomplished, together with hydration, by means of the ferments of the gastric and pancreatic juices.

This process of solution has long been regarded as the chief object of the digestive ferments. Although both Kühne and Schmidt Mulheim were aware of the production of amino-acids such as leucine and tyrosine as the result of digestion, they regarded their production as evidence of a waste of material. Proteoses and peptones are soluble, diffusible, and rapidly absorbed from the alimentary canal, and there is no doubt that a large proportion of the products of protein digestion are taken up by the absorbing membrane in this form. For many years physiologists were occupied with the problem as to the fate of these peptones and proteoses after their entrance into the mucous membrane. They do not pass as such into the blood. The injection of small quantities of proteose and peptone into the blood gives rise to the excretion of these substances by the kidneys; injection of larger quantities has pronounced poisonous effects, which were first studied by Schmidt Mülheim and Fano. If samples of blood be taken either from the portal vein or from the general circulation after a heavy protein meal, no trace either of proteose or of peptone is to be found in the blood. The observations of Hofmeister and others to the contrary depend on the fact that these observers employed a method for the separation of coagulable protein, as an antecedent to the testing for proteoses, which was in itself capable of producing small traces of these substances. Hofmeister showed that during the absorption of a protein meal the mucous membrane either of the stomach or of the intestine, if rapidly killed by plunging into boiling water directly it was taken from the animal, always contained a considerable amount of peptone, and similar observations were made by Neumeister. If however the mucous membrane was kept warm for half an hour after removal from the body, the peptone disappeared. Salvioli, under Ludwig's guidance, introduced peptone into a loop of gut which was kept alive by passing defibrinated blood through its vessels. At the end of some hours the loop was found to contain a certain amount of coagulable protein, but no trace of peptone, nor was any trace of the latter substance found in the blood which had been passed through the vessels. These observations were interpreted as pointing to a regeneration in the intestinal wall of coagulable protein from the proteose and peptone taken up from the gut, and opinions were divided whether the most important part of this regeneration was to be ascribed to the leucocytes of the villi (Hofmeister) or to the epithelial cells of the mucous membrane itself.

It is evident that such a conclusion was not justified by the experiments. All that

these experiments showed was that the proteoses and peptones disappeared, *i. e.* were converted into something which did not give the biuret test. The discovery of the ferment erepsin by Cohnheim led this observer to repeat the experiments of Hofmeister and Neumeister with a view to testing the conclusions drawn by these physiologists. Cohnheim found that, although it was perfectly true that proteose and peptone disappeared when intestinal mucous membrane and peptone were placed together in the presence of either blood or of Ringer's fluid, this disappearance was due, not to a regeneration of coagulable protein, but to the fact that the erepsin of the mucous membrane carried the process of hydrolysis a step further, converting the proteoses and peptones into the ultimate crystalline products of protein hydrolysis. Similar observations were made by Kutscher and Seemann, who showed that at any time after a protein meal these end-products, especially leucine, tyrosine, lysine, and arginine, were to be found in the contents of the small intestine. A repetition of Salvioli's experiment by Cathcart and Leathes deprived this also of much of its significance. It was found that the artificial circulation, although sufficient to maintain the activity of the muscular wall of the intestine, as evidenced by the peristaltic movements, was insufficient to keep the mucous membrane alive. After one hour's experiment the loop contained a mass of epithelial cells mixed with the products of the action of erepsin on the introduced peptone solution. In no case was there any diminution in the amount of uncoagulable nitrogen, *i. e.* there was no formation of coagulable protein, while the processes of absorption had been brought by the desquamation entirely to a standstill.

All the evidence shows that protein, however introduced, whether as coagulated protein or as albumose and peptone, undergoes complete hydrolysis either in the gut or in the wall of the gut before entering the blood stream. It should thus be possible to feed an animal on a diet in which the necessary protein had been replaced by the corresponding amount of ultimate products of protein hydrolysis, *i. e.* by a mixture which would give no biuret reaction.

Such a possibility was formerly negatived on theoretical grounds by Kühne and by Bunge. It was thought by these observers either that the animal body lacked the power of synthesis of proteins from these crystalline products (hydration products), or that any complete hydration occurring in the intestine would involve such a loss of energy to the body as to be unteleological. Neither of these theoretical objections is justified in fact. We know from the researches of Fischer and others that, although the different proteins in our food present a marvellous qualitative similitude, in that all of them yield on hydrolysis the same kinds of amino-acids, there are great differences in the relative amounts of these amino-acids contained in different proteins. Thus in gelatin, glycine is contained in considerable quantities, but is absent in many of the other proteins. Caseinogen is distinguished by the large amount of leucine that it yields, while gliadin, the chief protein of wheat flour, contains very large amounts of glutamic acid. It is difficult to imagine how, for instance, muscle protein could be formed from wheat protein, a process continually occurring in the growing animal, unless we assumed that the protein molecule is first entirely taken to pieces, and that its constituent molecules are then selected by the growing cells of the body and built up in the order and proportions which are characteristic of muscle protein. Moreover, when we measure the amount of energy change involved in the hydrolysis of the proteins, we find it is relatively small. There is not a loss of 5 per cent. of the total energy available—*i. e.* the heat of combustion of the products of pancreatic digestion would differ from that of the original protein submitted to digestion by less than 5 per cent. The energy of the protein as evolved in the body lies, not in the coupling of the amino-acids with one another, or indeed in the coupling of the nitrogen to the carbon but, like that of the other foodstuffs, in the carbon itself, and is derived from the combustion of the carbon of the molecule under the influence of the oxidising processes of the body into carbon dioxide.

The experimental decision of this question was first attempted by O. Loewi, who found that it was possible to keep a dog in a state of nitrogenous equilibrium on a diet containing fat, starch, and a pancreatic digest of protein which contained no substances giving the biuret test. These results have been confirmed for carnivora by Henderson, by Lüthje, by Abderhalden and Rona, and by Henriques and Hansen. According to Abderhalden, it is possible to keep an animal alive when the nitrogen in his food is represented entirely by the end-products of pancreatic digestion. The same result cannot be attained by the administration of the products of acid hydrolysis of protein, but this may be due either to the racemisation of the amino-acids under the action of the strong acid, or to the fact that the acid splits up certain polypeptide groupings which are still contained in the trypsin digest, and which possibly cannot be synthetised by the cells of the body.

We are justified therefore in concluding that while a certain small proportion of the proteins of the food may be absorbed unchanged, a much larger proportion is taken up as proteoses and peptones or as amino-acids. The proteoses and peptones are however rapidly changed in the mucous membrane itself into amino-acids, which we may regard as the form in which practically all the protein of the body is presented to the absorbing mechanisms of the alimentary canal for absorption and for passing on into the circulating fluids.

THE FATE OF THE AMINO-ACIDS AFTER ABSORPTION BY THE INTESTINAL EPITHELIUM. During a condition of starvation the normal protein requirements of the body, or rather of the active tissues, are met at the expense of the less active tissues. The protein characteristic of any tissue can be taken down, removed to another part of the body, and built up into the protein characteristic of some other active tissue. It is difficult to conceive that such a transference and transformation could occur in any other way than by a more or less thorough disintegration of the protein molecule at one place and its synthesis at the other, and we know from the researches of Hedin and others that every tissue contains intracellular ferments which are capable of effecting the disintegration of the protein molecule, and are responsible for the autolytic degeneration of tissues after death. If therefore the normal interchange of protein between the tissues is accomplished, as we know it to be in plants, by the disintegration of the proteins into their constituent amino-acids and their subsequent reintegration, there is no *a priori* reason to believe that the blood carries the proteins from the alimentary canal to the tissues in any other form than that of amino-acids. The experimental proof of this conclusion was hardly possible before the invention of a reliable method for the detection of small quantities of amino-acids in the blood and tissues. This is rendered possible by van Slyke's method in which, after the separation of coagulable proteins by alcohol, the amino-acids are determined by measuring the nitrogen evolved on addition of nitrous acid. Van Slyke has shown that the blood always contains a certain amount of amino-acids even during fasting. After a

protein meal there is a considerable increase in the amount of amino-acids. Thus the blood of fasting animals contains from 3·1 to 5·4 milligrams amino-acid nitrogen per 100 c.c. Blood taken after food contains 8·6 to 10·2 milligrams amino-acid nitrogen per 100 c.c. of blood. The question of the fate of amino-acids thus absorbed from the intestine to the blood is decided by an estimation of the amino-acid content of the different tissues after the injection of amino-acids into the blood. Van Slyke has found that after the injection of amino-acids only a certain proportion is excreted with the urine, and that the rest of the amino-acids rapidly disappears from the blood and is taken up by the tissues without undergoing any immediate chemical change, though in the case of certain tissues, such as the muscles, a definite saturation point exists which sets the limit to the amount of amino-acids that can be absorbed. On the other hand, the capacity of the internal organs, and especially of the liver, for the absorption of amino-acids is much greater.

It is worthy of note however that the absorption of amino-acids by the tissues from the blood is never complete, *i. e.* the amino-acids of the blood must be in a state of equilibrium with those of the tissues, although the concentration in the latter may be much greater than in the former. If several hours be allowed to elapse after the injection of amino-acids before the analysis of the tissue is undertaken, it is found that the amino-acid nitrogen content of the liver may have returned to normal, although the concentration in the muscles has suffered no appreciable fall. Since we have evidence that the circulation of amino-acids through the liver gives rise in this organ to the formation of urea, we must conclude that this organ is especially responsible for the breakdown of the products of protein digestion which are not directly required for replacing tissue waste. This breakdown must involve a process of deamination. We may therefore conclude that the amino-acids normally produced by a protein digestion are absorbed without further change into the blood stream. They then circulate throughout the body, a certain proportion of them being built up in each tissue into the proteins characteristic of that tissue in order to replace the waste caused by wear and tear. The rest, probably the major part of the protein, is taken up by the liver, where it undergoes deamination, the nitrogen moiety being rapidly converted into urea and excreted by the kidneys, while the non-nitrogenous moiety is carried to the working tissues to which it serves as a ready and immediate source of energy.

The fact that not only the blood but also the tissues contain amino-acids, even after complete starvation for some days, shows that these substances are intermediate steps not only in the synthesis but in the breaking down of body proteins. Free amino-acids are thus the protein currency of the body, just as glucose is the carbohydrate currency. In the fasting body we must regard the processes of autolysis as the main source of the amino-acids found in the tissues, and it is by autolysis that the proteins of the resting tissues are made available in starvation for those whose continued working is essential for the maintenance of life. The fact that high protein feeding does not

appreciably increase the amino-acid content of the tissues, shows that any storage of nitrogen in the organism must take place, not in the form of amino-acids, but as body protein.

It was formerly thought that the deamination of amino-acids occurred on a large scale in the wall of the alimentary canal, on the grounds that a larger amount of ammonia was present in the portal blood than in the arterial blood. It seems probable however that the source of this excess of ammonia is to be found in intestinal bacterial changes, and that the major portion of the amino-acids is actually absorbed unchanged. The view of Abderhalden that the amino-acids are synthetised in the intestinal wall to serum proteins, and absorbed in that form into the blood stream, need here only be mentioned, since it lacks experimental support.

THE ACTUAL COURSE OF DIGESTION

In a recent series of papers London describes the course of digestion of meals of various characters in dogs which had been provided with fistulæ in one of the following places: (*a*) gastric fistula (into the fundus of the stomach); (*b*) pyloric fistula (on the duodenal side of the pylorus); (*c*) duodenal fistula (about one foot below the pylorus); (*d*) jejunal fistula (about the middle of the small intestine); (*e*) ileum fistula (just above the cæcum).

We may take as an example the course of digestion of a meal composed of 200 grm. of bread. This is eaten by the animal, mixed with the saliva and swallowed. On arriving in the stomach it gives rise to the secretion of gastric juice. In a series of special experiments London found that on the average 200 grm. of bread evoked the secretion of 20 grm. of saliva, about 10 grm. of mucus from the coats of the stomach, and about 315 grm. of gastric juice. The secretion of gastric juice is continuous during the whole time that the food remains in the stomach. In the animal with a pyloric fistula, one to two minutes after the meal had been taken, a few drops of alkaline fluid were extruded from the opening. From three to eight minutes after the conclusion of the meal small quantities of clear acid gastric juice were repeatedly extruded. The first admixture of the food with the outflow from the fistula occurred at eight to twelve minutes after the completion of the meal, and after this time the pylorus continued to open at regular intervals of ten to forty seconds, discharging each time a small amount of fluid composed of particles of undigested bread mixed with gastric juice. One and a half hours later the pylorus began to open less regularly and the fluid became of a more pasty consistence, devoid of lumps of undigested bread. In the fourth, fifth, and sixth hours after the meal the pylorus opened only once every one or two minutes, and towards the end of this period the fluid extruded was clear. The following Table shows the percentage amount of food taken which had left the stomach at the end of each hour after the meal:

First hour	32·6	per cent.
Second hour	17·9	,,
Third hour	29·5	,,
Fourth hour	1·87	,,
Fifth hour	6·66	,,
Sixth hour	4·21	,,

The large proportion of the ingested food leaving the stomach during the first two or three hours can hardly be regarded as normal. Since in these experiments there was a free outflow from the pylorus and the food was not allowed to enter the duodenum, the local reflex, evoked by the presence of acid in the duodenum, was absent. The gastric contents obtained in this way were analysed in order to find what changes had been wrought on the food by the gastric juice. It was found that 32 per cent. of the bread had been brought into solution. This solution had affected the proteins more than the carbohydrates. Thus 67 per cent. of the nitrogen had been brought into soluble form, consisting chiefly of proteoses and peptones. No amino-acids were

formed. Only 25 per cent. of the starch of the bread had been rendered soluble, and of this, 21 per cent. was in the form of dextrine and 4 per cent. in the form of sugar. No absorption however either of the digested proteins or of the digested carbohydrates was ever found to take place in the stomach.

DUODENAL DIGESTION. The influence exerted by the pancreatic juice, bile, and succus entericus, poured out on the food in the duodenum, was studied by analysis of the intestinal contents leaving the intestine by a fistula, either at the lower end of the duodenum, or in the jejunum, or in the ileum. From the duodenal fistula the expulsion of food occurs at repeated intervals, but in a somewhat irregular fashion, its movements being determined partly by the contractions of the stomach and partly by those of the duodenal wall. Usually a large gush is followed by a series of small gushes. Although only a foot intervenes between the duodenal fistula and the pyloric fistula, a great difference is observed in the character of the intestinal contents obtained in the two cases. The outflow from the duodenum, being mixed with the pancreatic juice and the bile, is yellow in colour and increased in amount. With a meal of 200 grm. there is secreted on the average 130 grm. of bile and 140 grm. of pancreatic juice. During its passage through the duodenum the carbohydrates of the food undergo considerable changes, so that even one foot below the pylorus we find that one-half to three-fifths of the carbohydrates have been converted into dextrine and sugar. A further digestion of the proteins also takes place amounting to about one-tenth of the whole protein taken with the food.

On deducting the amount of juices which have been added to the food, it is found that even in this short length of intestine absorption has taken place of about one-sixth of the ingested food, about one-fourth of the carbohydrates having been absorbed and about one-eighth of the proteins.

In a dog with a fistula about the middle of its small intestine, the outflow began six to fifteen minutes after the meal, and lasted six or seven hours. The outflow was by small gushes repeated at intervals of five to ten seconds, separated by intervals of one to five minutes, during which nothing appeared at the orifice of the cannula. The material obtained was quite different in character from that flowing from the duodenal fistula. The pasty character had disappeared, the material forming a frothy, orange-yellow, even jelly-like mass with practically no trace of undigested bread.

From a fistula in the ileum the outflow occurred at long intervals of three to fifteen minutes and was much scantier than that obtained from the jejunal fistula, consisting of a thick jelly-like, orange-coloured mass. Both proteins and carbohydrates were entirely digested, and in the case of the former the chief products of digestion consisted of amino-acids. Thus in one experiment, after four large meals of 500 grm. of meat each had been given in order to obtain sufficient quantity for analysis, 175 grm. of soluble substances were obtained. From this were isolated tyrosine, leucine, alanine, aspartic acid, lysine, and traces of arginine and histidine.

From a fistula in the cæcum there was no outflow until four or five hours after the meal had been taken. The material from the gut was then extruded in fæcal-like masses at long intervals of one half to one hour. This regular outflow lasted for about six hours. The reaction of the contents was strongly alkaline, with no food particles, and the material contained merely débris of cells, with small traces of sugar, dextrine and unaltered starch. The absorption of the foodstuffs is thus practically complete by the time that the food has reached the lower end of the small intestine.

The following Table gives the total amounts obtained in a series of experiments from the different fistulæ after administration of 200 grm. of bread, and also the percentage amount of foodstuffs which had been absorbed before the food had arrived at the level of the fistula in question:

	Total amounts obtained from 200 grm. of bread	Absorbed per cent.
Pyloric fistula	691 grm.	0
Duodenal fistula	691 ,,	17·45
Jejunal fistula	585 ,,	37·77
Ileum fistula	412 ,,	67·65
Cæcal fistula	80 ,,	94·34

SECTION XI

THE FÆCES

THE fæces are often regarded as representing the undigested or indigestible constituents of the food which have escaped solution and absorption in their passage through the alimentary canal. This view is hardly correct as applied to man or to the carnivora. In these the absorption of the constituents of a meal, whether consisting of fats, proteins, or carbohydrates, is practically complete by the time that the food has arrived at the lower end of the ileum. The fæces, in fact, are not derived from the food, but are produced almost entirely in the alimentary canal itself. This is shown by the fact that on analysing the fæces no soluble carbohydrates or proteins, albumoses, peptones, or amino-acids are to be found. After a meal of meat microscopic examination of the fæces reveals no trace of striated muscle fibres. Moreover, animals in a state of complete starvation form fæces which do not differ in their composition from the fæces which are found after feeding with meat, eggs, sugar, or cooked starch, though the amount is less in a state of inanition than under normal circumstances. In one experiment Hermann isolated a loop of gut, joining its ends together so that a continuous ring was formed. The continuity of the gut was then restored by suturing the two free ends. After some weeks the isolated loop was found to contain a semi-solid material similar to fæces in appearance, consistence, and chemical composition. It contained a large amount of phosphoric acid, lime, and iron.

So long as vegetables or coarsely ground cereals are excluded from the diet, the nature of the latter does not alter the chemical constitution or appearance of the fæces. Under these circumstances the fæces have the following composition:

Water . . .	65 to 67 per cent.
Nitrogen . . .	5 to 9 „
Ether extract . .	12 to 18 „
Ash	11 to 22 „

The ash consists chiefly of lime and phosphoric acid with some iron and magnesia. The ethereal extract contains fatty acids and a small amount of lecithin. Neutral fat is present in very small proportions. The fæces also contain small quantities of cholalic acid and its products of decomposition, dyslysin, and coprosterin, a body allied to cholesterin, and a certain amount of purine bases consisting of guanine, adenine, xanthine, and hypoxanthine. On the average the fæces contain about 0·11 grm. of purine bases per diem,

about seven times as much as is contained in the urine passed in the same time. The material basis of the fæces seems to be largely desquamated epithelial cells from the intestinal wall, and bacteria, of which countless numbers, chiefly dead, are present. It has been reckoned that as much as 50 per cent. of the fæces may consist of the dead bodies of bacteria.

Very different is the composition of fæces if the food contains a large amount of cellulose. Not only does the ingested cellulose pass unchanged into the fæces, but large quantities of other substances enclosed in the cellulose walls may also escape digestion and absorption. Moreover the increased bulk of the undigested residue stimulates peristalsis, and thus quickens the passage of the food through the gut to such an extent that the digestive ferments have not time to exert their full action on the digestible constituents of the food. The influence of the character of the food is well illustrated by a comparison of the amount and composition of the fæces on different kinds of bread (Rubner):

Kind of bread	Weight of moist fæces	Weight of fæces dried	Percentage of ingested food	Nitrogen (grms.)
Bread from fine flour .	132·7	24·8	4·03	2·17
Bread from coarse flour .	252·8	40·8	6·66	3·24
Brown bread . .	317·8	75·79	12·23	3·80

The following Table is also instructive. In this Table Rubner calculates the amount of fæces which a man would pass in twenty-four hours if he satisfied his energy requirements at the expense of one only of the different kinds of food enumerated. The numbers refer to the amount of organic material which would be excreted in the fæces:

Meat	26 grm.	Rice	50 grm.
Eggs	26 „	Maize	51 „
Macaroni	27 „	Turnips	101 „
Wheaten bread . . .	36 „	Potatoes	133 „
Milk	42 „	Coarse brown bread . .	146 „

The indigestible cellulose in the food is not without value. It has been shown previously that the peristaltic contractions of the intestine are roused primarily by the mechanical stimulus of distension. If the food is capable of entire digestion and absorption, the amount of fæces formed is limited to that produced by the intestinal wall itself. The small bulk exercises very little stimulating effect on the intestine, and the movements of the latter will therefore tend to be sluggish, especially in the absence of the mechanical stimulus determined by muscular exercise. The presence of a certain amount of cellulose in the diet may therefore be of considerable advantage by giving bulk to the fæces and ensuring the proper regular evacuation of the lower gut. It is probable that the constipation which is so common a disorder in civilised communities is due as much to the refinement in the preparation of the food as to the prevalence of sedentary occupations incident on the working of such communities.

CHAPTER XI

THE HISTORY OF THE FOODSTUFFS

SECTION I

PROTEIN METABOLISM

In dealing with the metabolism of the body as a whole we saw reason to believe that the proteins taken in with the food might be regarded as having a twofold destiny. One part, and under normal circumstances the greater part, is applied to the production of energy, in this respect discharging a function which might equally well be performed by the fats and carbohydrates of the food. In its second function protein cannot be replaced by any other foodstuff, since it alone contains the necessary elements as well as the groupings of these elements which are essential for the building up of the living tissues. We saw reason to believe that this tissue metabolism accounted however for a small part only of the nitrogen of the food. For this reason it is possible to ensure health and a condition of nitrogenous equilibrium with amounts of protein in the diet of man which might vary between 40 and 200 grm. per diem. The more protein that is taken in with the food the greater is the relative amount which is applied to the energy needs of the body. If therefore we would attempt to find out what are the end-products of the tissue metabolism, we should confine the energy metabolism of proteins within the smallest possible limits by reducing the quota of protein in the diet to its minimum. Folin has shown that if we compare the composition of the urine obtained under these two conditions, namely, on a diet containing a normal quantity of protein and on a diet containing a minimal amount, we find evidence of a qualitative difference between the two kinds of metabolism. The difference is well brought out in the Tables given here. On a large diet the greater part of the nitrogen can be regarded as derived directly from the food, whereas on a small diet a relatively larger proportion of it must come from protein which has been previously built up into the tissues. Folin distinguishes these two sources of the nitrogen of the urine as *exogenous*, *i. e.* that from the food, and *endogenous*, *i. e.* derived from the tissues. Two facts stand out in comparing these two urinary analyses. In the first place, on a normal protein diet the urea accounts for 87 per cent. of the total nitrogen of the urine. On an excessive protein diet this percentage may rise to 90 or 95. On the low protein diet the percentage

TABLES I AND II

'DISTRIBUTION OF NITROGEN IN URINE ON VARIOUS DIETS

	July 13 Ordinary diet	July 20 Low protein diet
Vol. of urine	1170 c.c.	385 c.c.
Total nitrogen	16·8 grm.	3·60 grm.
Urea	14·70 grm. = 87·5 %	2·20 grm. = 61·7 %
Ammonia	0·49 grm. = 3·0 %	0·42 grm. = 11·3 %
Uric acid	0·18 grm. = 1·1 %	0 09 grm. = 2·5 %
Creatinine	0·58 grm. = 3·6 %	0·60 grm. = 17 2 %
Undetermined	0·85 grm. = 4·9 %	0·27 grm. = 7·3 %
Total SO_3	3·64 grm.	0·76 grm.
Inorganic SO_3	3·27 grm. = 90·0 %	0·46 grm. = 60·5 %
Ethereal SO_3	0·19 grm. = 5·2 %	0·10 grm. = 13·2 %
Neutral S	0·18 grm. = 4·8 %	0·20 grm. = 26·3 %

of nitrogen appearing as urea is reduced to 60. On the other hand, practically identical amounts of creatinine are obtained under the two conditions, so that whereas on the full diet it amounts only to 3·6 per cent., on the low protein diet it forms as much as 17 per cent. of the total nitrogen output.

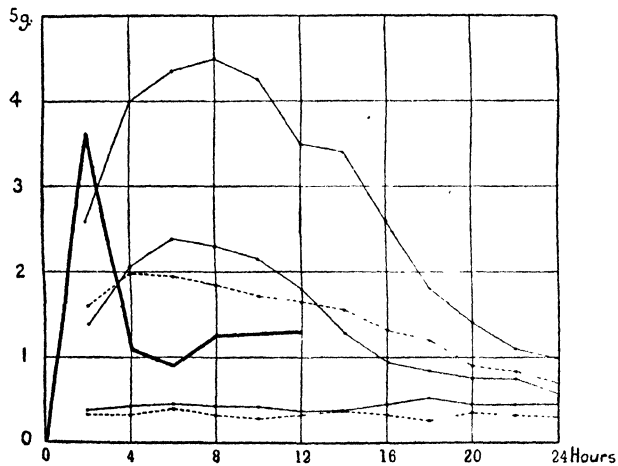


FIG. 364. The hourly variation in the excretion of nitrogen after a meal. The meal was given at 0. The thick line represents the average absorption of the food from the alimentary canal. The thin-lined curves represent the N. excretion (1) after a meal of 1000 grm. meat; (2) after 500 grm. meat and 150 grm. fat; (3) after a meal of 500 grm. meat; (4) and (5) both represent the excretion in a fasting animal. (From TIGERSTEDT after FEDER.)

We are therefore justified in regarding urea as to a large extent exogenous in origin, and as derived directly from the nitrogenous moiety of the protein molecule, which may not at any time have formed part of the living tissues of the body.

On giving a large protein meal to a dog, the urea in the urine rapidly rises, and at the end of four or five hours 50 per cent. of the total nitrogen taken in with the food has appeared in the urine as urea (Fig. 364). If we take into account that the digestion of a meat meal in this animal may go on for eight hours, we are justified in the statement that by far the greater portion of the protein nitrogen taken with the food is excreted almost directly after absorption as urea in the urine. Urea is therefore to be regarded in the first place as an index to the amount of protein absorbed. We have seen that the end-products of protein digestion in the intestine are the amino-acids; and that these are the immediate precursors of the urea is shown by the fact that the administration of these bodies is followed very rapidly by the appearance of the whole of their nitrogen in the urine as urea.

The formation of urea from the amino-acids is accomplished in a very simple fashion. If amino-acids be treated with the pulp of various organs, there is a production of ammonia, which is not observed when no amino-acids are added to the pulp. Thus leucine, glycine, tyrosine and cystine give rise to ammonia, while none of this substance is produced from phenylalanine. This production of ammonia is due to the presence of deaminising ferments in the cells of the various tissues. According to van Slyke the liver plays the chief part in the break-down of amino-acids, though there is no reason to deny the possession of similar powers to the other tissues, *e. g.* the muscles of the animal body. As a result of this deaminisation ammonia is set free in the body, and this ammonia is rapidly converted into urea. Whether the ammonia enters the circulation as ammonium carbonate or as ammonium carbamate is uncertain, but in either form it will be quickly changed into urea. This conversion involves a process of dehydration. The ammonium carbonate loses 2 molecules of water and the ammonium carbamate 1 molecule, as follows:

$$CO\begin{matrix}ONH_4\\OHN_4\end{matrix} - 2H_2O = CO\begin{matrix}NH_2\\NH_2\end{matrix}$$

or

$$CO\begin{matrix}ONH_4\\NH_2\end{matrix} - H_2O = CO\begin{matrix}NH_2\\NH_2\end{matrix}$$

Although there is normally a small amount of ammonia in the urine, it is not increased by injection or administration of ammonium carbonate or carbamate. Either of these two substances administered to man or to an animal gives rise simply to a corresponding increase in the urea of the urine. A large body of evidence points to the liver as being the chief seat of conversion of ammonia salts into urea. Thus Schröder has shown that the liver, even after removal from the body, has the power to transform ammonium carbonate into urea. Defibrinated blood mixed with ammonium carbonate was passed for one hour through a surviving liver. It was then found that the ammonium carbonate had disappeared and that its place was taken by urea, which could be extracted in a crystallised form.

Confirmatory evidence of this function of the liver was supplied by Schröder's experiments on birds. In these animals the chief nitrogenous excretion is not urea, but ammonium urate, 60 per cent. of the nitrogen of the semi-solid urine appearing in the form of uric acid. In birds there is naturally a communication between the portal system and the general venous system by means of the vein of *Jacobson*, which connects the lower branches of the portal vein with, as a rule, the left renal vein (Fig. 365). On this account the liver can be cut out of the body or of the circulation without entailing the rapid death of the bird, which may live for three or four days, and pass urine after the operation. The urine is however fluid, and the uric acid, instead of accounting for 60 per cent. of the total nitrogen, now forms only

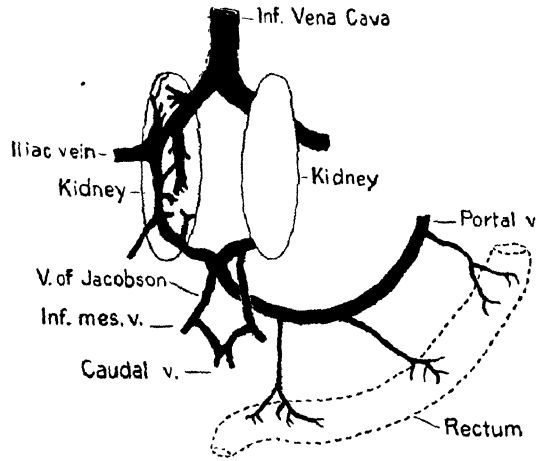


FIG. 365. Diagram to show the arrangement of the veins in the bird, with the communication of the renal and portal veins. (After MORAT.)

5 per cent. The place of the greater part of the uric acid has been taken by ammonium lactate, which therefore seems to be the chief immediate precursor of the uric acid in the urine of birds. We shall have occasion to consider the method of transformation of ammonium lactate to uric acid more fully when dealing with the origin of the latter body.

It is by no means easy to perform similar experiments in mammals, since it is difficult to cut off the flow of blood through the liver without altogether stopping the circulation through the abdominal viscera. Ligature of the portal vein, which would be a necessary step in the extirpation of the liver, causes the blood to be dammed up behind the ligature in the portal area. The intestinal wall gets full of effused blood, the blood pressure falls steadily, and the animal dies within a few hours, being bled to death, so to speak, into its portal vessels. A way of obviating this difficulty was suggested by a Russian surgeon, Eck, and was successfully carried out by Pawlow. Before ligature of the portal vein, this vessel was joined to the vena cava

for this view, but is rather a sign that the body, after satisfying its modest needs for the repair of its tissue waste, has no need for the rest of the nitrogenous content in its food, and that this must be got rid of before the really valuable part, the energy-giving part of the protein molecule, is admitted into the metabolic cycle of the cells.

The important problem in the *energy* metabolism of protein is thus not the origin of the urea, but the fate and nature of the substances that are left after deamination. We have seen that the protein when taken as a food, more than either of the other two foodstuffs, causes a direct augmentation of the respiratory exchanges of the body. Thus in one experiment by Rubner, an animal previously starved received on one day 57·4 Calories protein, on another day 54·2 Calories fat, and on the third day 57 Calories carbohydrates per kilo. body weight. During hunger the total metabolism per kilo. body weight amounted to 37·5 Calories; with meat, to 46 Calories; with fat, to 39·4 Calories; with carbohydrates, to 39·4 Calories. Compared with the metabolism during starvation the rise per cent. with protein was 24·3, and with fat and carbohydrates 5·1. This surplus output of energy resulting from the administration of protein cannot be ascribed to increased work thrown on the digestive organs. There is no evidence that this is greater in the case of proteins than it would be with carbohydrates or fats; and even if the capacity of these organs be strained to their utmost by administration of large quantities of bones, the increase in the CO_2 output which results is not so great as that following a large protein meal. It might be concluded that the CHO moiety of the protein undergoes oxidation more rapidly than either glucose or the ordinary fats of the diet, and that its metabolism is dependent rather on the quantity presented to the organism than on the actual needs of the cells of the body. The work of Lusk points however to the earlier view of Voit as being correct, according to which protein food acts as a stimulant to all the metabolic processes of the body. Lusk has shown that this specific dynamic action of protein is possessed also by certain of the amino-acids resulting from its decomposition, but not by all. Thus while glycine and alanine exert a well marked specific dynamic action, glutamic acid, leucine and tyrosine exert little or no effect upon heat production. The question then arises whether this increased heat production resulting from the ingestion of glycine is due to the rapid disintegration and oxidation of the glycine molecule itself, or is due to a direct stimulating action upon the body cells. The question was decided by giving glycine to an animal which had been rendered diabetic by the injection of the phlorhizine. Under these circumstances glycine is converted quantitatively into glucose, which is excreted in the urine, so that the CHO moiety of the glycine molecule undergoes no oxidation in the body. Notwithstanding this fact glycine produces the same augmentation of metabolism in the phlorhizinised animal as it would in a normal animal. The same results were obtained with alanine, so that it must be concluded that the specific dynamic action of protein is due to the quality possessed by certain of the amino-acids of stimulating the cells of the body and raising their rate of

intermediate products of metabolism may be excreted still attached to the benzene nucleus. In the α-amino-acids the point where disintegration first occurs is the α-group. Deamination Knoop finds most usually associated with oxidation. The primary product is therefore an α-keto-acid.

Further oxidation affects the CO group, so that carbon dioxide is eliminated

and the next lower acid in the fatty acid series is produced. Thus from alanine the body would produce pyruvic acid, $CH_3.CO.COOH$, and this on further oxidation would form acetic acid, $CH_3.COOH$, and carbon dioxide. On the other hand, these keto-acids may undergo reduction to an oxy-acid, or even a step further, to a fatty acid, though the conditions which determine whether oxidation or reduction shall take place have not yet been fully studied.

This loss of nitrogen diminishes little, if at all, the energy value of the amino-acids of the body. The following table shows the heat equivalents of some of the amino-acids and their corresponding fat and oxy-acids:

Substance	Calories per grm. molecule
Leucine	855
Isobutylacetic acid	837
Alanine	389
Propionic acid	367
Lactic acid	329
Pyruvic acid	not determined

These heat equivalents represent the heat evolved on the total oxidation of the substances in question. In the case of the amino-acids, part of the molecule is not oxidised, the nitrogen leaving the body not as free nitrogen but as urea. To obtain the total possible heat value of an amino-acid to the body, we must subtract from its heat equivalent half the heat equivalent of urea, (an amino-acid contains 1 atom of nitrogen, while urea contains 2 atoms, so that one molecule of urea is produced from 2 molecules of an amino-acid.) The heat equivalent of urea being 80, the physiological heat equivalent of leucine will be not 855 but 815, while the physiological heat equivalent of alanine will be 349, as against 329 for lactic acid. Thus even in the case of the smallest molecule, the loss of energy attendant on simple deamination and conversion into the corresponding oxy-acid amounts to little more than 5 per cent., and the proportion will be much smaller in the case of the larger molecules. We are accustomed to regard the urea excretion as an index to protein metabolism. In truth it is an index only of the deamination of the protein constituents, and it tells us nothing whatever about the fate of that part of the protein, the non-nitrogenous part, which contains 95 per cent. or more of the total energy of the protein food. The rise in the rate of excretion of urea after a protein meal was regarded both by Voit and Pflüger as a sign that the cells of the body prefer to use protein for all their requirements, if this substance were available. We see now that the rapid output of urea after a protein meal affords no basis

for this view, but is rather a sign that the body, after satisfying its modest needs for the repair of its tissue waste, has no need for the rest of the nitrogenous content in its food, and that this must be got rid of before the really valuable part, the energy-giving part of the protein molecule, is admitted into the metabolic cycle of the cells.

The important problem in the *energy* metabolism of protein is thus not the origin of the urea, but the fate and nature of the substances that are left after deamination. We have seen that the protein when taken as a food, more than either of the other two foodstuffs, causes a direct augmentation of the respiratory exchanges of the body. Thus in one experiment by Rubner, an animal previously starved received on one day 57·4 Calories protein, on another day 54·2 Calories fat, and on the third day 57 Calories carbohydrates per kilo. body weight. During hunger the total metabolism per kilo. body weight amounted to 37·5 Calories; with meat, to 46 Calories; with fat, to 39·4 Calories; with carbohydrates, to 39·4 Calories. Compared with the metabolism during starvation the rise per cent. with protein was 24·3, and with fat and carbohydrates 5·1. This surplus output of energy resulting from the administration of protein cannot be ascribed to increased work thrown on the digestive organs. There is no evidence that this is greater in the case of proteins than it would be with carbohydrates or fats; and even if the capacity of these organs be strained to their utmost by administration of large quantities of bones, the increase in the CO_2 output which results is not so great as that following a large protein meal. It might be concluded that the CHO moiety of the protein undergoes oxidation more rapidly than either glucose or the ordinary fats of the diet, and that its metabolism is dependent rather on the quantity presented to the organism than on the actual needs of the cells of the body. The work of Lusk points however to the earlier view of Voit as being correct, according to which protein food acts as a stimulant to all the metabolic processes of the body. Lusk has shown that this specific dynamic action of protein is possessed also by certain of the amino-acids resulting from its decomposition, but not by all. Thus while glycine and alanine exert a well marked specific dynamic action, glutamic acid, leucine and tyrosine exert little or no effect upon heat production. The question then arises whether this increased heat production resulting from the ingestion of glycine is due to the rapid disintegration and oxidation of the glycine molecule itself, or is due to a direct stimulating action upon the body cells. The question was decided by giving glycine to an animal which had been rendered diabetic by the injection of the phlorhizine. Under these circumstances glycine is converted quantitatively into glucose, which is excreted in the urine, so that the CHO moiety of the glycine molecule undergoes no oxidation in the body. Notwithstanding this fact glycine produces the same augmentation of metabolism in the phlorhizinised animal as it would in a normal animal. The same results were obtained with alanine, so that it must be concluded that the specific dynamic action of protein is due to the quality possessed by certain of the amino-acids of stimulating the cells of the body and raising their rate of

metabolism. But it is not the amino-acids themselves that are the stimulants. This is shown by the fact that when amino-acids are built up to form new tissues, as in the baby or in the animal recovering from starvation, they exert no specific dynamic action. This action only occurs *when the amino-acids undergo deamination*, and must therefore be the result of the *products of this deamination*. Lusk suggests that in the case of glycine and alanine, the stimulating substances may be glycollic and lactic acids, but there is no direct proof of this suggestion. We know in fact very little of the nature of the substances that are left after deamination. Since they contain only the elements carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, one would expect to find that they could replace either fat or carbohydrate. So far as concerns the production of energy this is true. Moreover, as we shall see in dealing with the metabolism of carbohydrates, we have definite evidence that part of this non-nitrogenous moiety of the protein molecule may be converted into sugar or glycogen. Thus, of the amino-acids formed by the digestion of proteins, glycine, alanine, aspartic acid and glutamic acid can be converted quantitatively under appropriate circumstances into glucose. On the other hand, leucine, phenylalanine and tyrosine yield no glucose, even in the diabetic animal, but may in the liver undergo conversion into aceto-acetic acid, which is a stage in the oxidative disintegration of fats. In spite of this latter fact we have no evidence that fat may be formed from this part of the protein molecule; at any rate, no fat which can be stored in the body and give rise to the production of adipose tissue. The reason why the CHO remainder of the protein molecule is so prone to oxidation and does not, like an excess of carbohydrates, undergo conversion into fats in the body, we shall have to consider in greater detail in dealing with the fate of this latter class of substances. We need however considerably more evidence as to the extent to which deamination occurs and as to its conditions and end-products before we can hope to determine the cause for the rapid breakdown of these end-products in the body.

The Synthesis of Amino-Acids

Many though not all of the processes in the body are reversible. If the body can effect deamination of an amino-acid, there seems no reason why it should not carry out the reverse change and synthesise an amino-acid from its corresponding fatty or oxy-acid and ammonia. Knoop has shown that, given a right molecular grouping, the fatty acid residue may in the body react with ammonia to form an amino-acid. The proof of this fact was facilitated by the discovery that the next higher homologue of phenylalanine, namely, phenyl-α-amino-butyric acid, when administered to an animal, was excreted in large quantities in the urine as an ether-soluble acetyl derivative, which was easily isolated in a state of purity. If then this amino-acid were formed in the body, one might expect to find it without difficulty in the urine. Knoop found that the administration of either phenyl-α-keto-butyric acid or phenyl-α-oxybutyric acid led to the excretion

of the corresponding amino-acid in the urine. Since keto-acids occur as the ordinary products of the breakdown of amino-acids and also as the intermediate products of oxidation of oxy-acids, *e. g.* lactic acid, it is evident that the animal body can assimilate ammonia and form amino-acids, provided only that it is supplied with the proper non-nitrogenous acids. These latter need not be derived from proteins at all but, like lactic acid, be a result of carbohydrate metabolism. Thus, if the fitting non-nitrogenous food be given (*e. g.* oxy-fatty acids, or carbohydrates, from which these bodies may be formed), part of the nitrogen set free by protein disintegration might be recombined with the formation of amino-fatty acids without giving rise to urea or appearing in any way in the nitrogen balance-sheet of the body. This possibility enjoins the necessity of caution in interpreting the results of metabolism experiments where the nitrogen excreted is taken to represent the total protein metabolism of the body.

Are the Amino-acids interconvertible?

Although the animal organism is apparently capable of synthetising amino-acids from ammonia and the corresponding keto- or oxy-fatty acid, it is unable to convert one amino-acid into another. On this account many proteins are inadequate as food substances since they do not contain the necessary amino-acid groups. Life cannot be supported on such bodies as zein or gelatin, which are lacking in the tryptophane and tyrosine groups. The failure in these cases is not, as has been generally supposed, owing to an inability to assimilate, *i. e.* synthetise, nitrogen as ammonia, but to the fact that in the animal the apparatus is wanting for the manufacture of some of the oxy-fatty acids and other radicals which form the non-nitrogenous part of the amino-acids. This view receives confirmation from the fact that the simplest of the amino-fatty acids, namely, glycine, can be easily manufactured in the body, acetic acid being one of the latest stages in the oxidation of most carbohydrates and fats. It has been shown that alanine too can be easily manufactured by the body, by the amination of the three carbon acids or oxy-acids derived from the breakdown of glucose or glycogen.

The Excretion of Ammonia

A large proportion of the urea appearing in the urine after a protein meal is exogenous and is derived by a rapid separation of ammonia from the proteins or their disintegration products almost immediately after their absorption. The greater part of the ammonia is converted in the liver into urea, which is excreted by the kidney. A certain small proportion of the nitrogen in the urine is generally turned out in the form of ammonia. This proportion is not increased by the administration of ammonium carbonate. If ammonium chloride be given to a starving rabbit, it appears in the urine unchanged, and so increases the proportion of ammonia in this fluid. If however the ammonium chloride be administered at the same time as the animal is receiving its ordinary vegetable diet, there is no increase in the ammonia in the urine, the whole of the ammonium chloride being converted

into urea. The factor, which determines the proportion of ammonia in the urine, is the relative proportion of acids and bases which have to be eliminated from the body. The normal reaction of urine, though acid as regards certain indicators, can be regarded as neutral since it contains no free acids, the 'acidity' being due to the presence in solution of such substances as acid sodium phosphate. If the fixed alkalies in the food are sufficient to combine with the whole of the acids excreted from the body, then the ammonia will be completely converted into urea and eliminated as such. If however a dose of mineral acid be administered to an animal, this must be excreted in combination with a base. If the fixed alkalies available do not suffice for this purpose, the neutralisation of the acid is effected by coupling with ammonia. The ammonia of the urine is therefore an index to the amount of acids which are excreted. These acids may be introduced directly with the food, as when mineral acids are administered by the mouth, or may be the product of abnormal metabolic processes occurring in the body. Thus under certain circumstances, *e. g.* in complete carbohydrate starvation, there is a failure in the last stages of the oxidation of fats, and oxy-fatty acids, viz. oxybutyric acid and aceto-acetic acid, are produced in the body in large quantities, but cannot undergo further disintegration. The alkalescence (electrical neutrality) of the fluid media of the body is a necessary condition for the continuance of the life of the cells and especially of the normal processes of oxidation. It is therefore essential for the preservation of life that the acids thus formed and accumulating as a result of the impaired oxidative processes should be neutralised, carried to the kidneys, and excreted by them in combination with some base. When these acids are produced in large quantities, the alkalies of the food and of the tissues do not suffice for their neutralisation. Ammonia, which is a constant intermediate stage in the production of urea, is then utilised for this purpose and the acids appear in the urine in combination with ammonia. The ammonia of the urine therefore gives valuable information, not as to the total nitrogenous exchanges of the body, but as to the formation of acids in abnormal quantities during the processes of metabolism.

The Fate of Arginine.

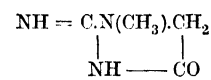
There is one other method in which urea may be formed by a rapid alteration of the proteins taken in with the food. Nearly all the ordinary proteins contain arginine as an integral part of their molecule. This substance can be regarded as formed by a coupling of guanidine with amino-valerianic acid and as analogous to the most prominent extractive of muscle, namely, creatine, which is methyl guanidine acetic acid. On heating either of these substances with baryta water, it undergoes hydrolysis and is decomposed with the formation of urea and, in the case of arginine, α-δ-diamino-valerianic acid; in the case of creatine, methyl amino-acetic acid or sarcosine. It has been shown by Dakin and Kossel that the same change may be effected under the agency of a ferment, arginase, which is contained in extracts of the intestinal wall or of the liver. We have every reason to

believe therefore that a certain small proportion of the urea, which appears in the urine after the ingestion of protein, is due to this hydrolytic splitting of the arginine contained in the protein molecule. The other moiety of the arginine, namely, the diamino-valerianic acid, probably undergoes the same changes as the other amino-acids, such proportion of it as is not required for the building up of the tissues of the body being deaminised and giving rise to urea and some CHO group in the manner already discussed.

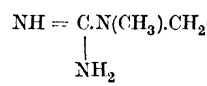
THE ENDOGENOUS OR TISSUE METABOLISM OF PROTEINS

On comparing the output of the various nitrogenous excreta given in Folin's Tables quoted above (p. 802), we see that on a low protein diet, when the exogenous or energy metabolism of this foodstuff is reduced to a minimum, the only substance which does not undergo simultaneous diminution is the creatinine. Whereas on an ordinary diet free from meat, it accounts only for about 3 per cent. of the total nitrogen output, on the low diet it forms as much as 17 per cent. The conclusion at once suggests itself that creatinine, more than all the other constituents of the urine, must be regarded as an index of the tissue metabolism of protein. Let us see what facts can be adduced in favour of this view.

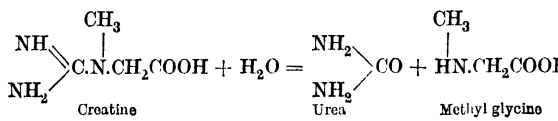
Creatinine has the formula :



and may be regarded as derived by a process of dehydration from creatine (methyl guanidine acetic acid).



It may be formed from this latter substance by boiling for three hours with strong hydrochloric acid. Creatine has long been known as the most abundant nitrogenous extractive in the body. It exists in relatively large quantities in muscle; and in meat extracts, such as Liebig's, it occurs to the extent of 10 or 12 per cent. It has been calculated that the body of a man at any time contains about 90 grm. of this substance. On boiling creatine with baryta water, it undergoes hydrolysis with the formation of urea and sarcosine or methyl glycine.



Owing to the ease with which this formation of urea from creatine may be brought about outside the body, it was natural that this substance should be regarded as an important precursor of the urea in the urine. The view

was held till recently however, on the ground of experiments by Voit, that creatine administered in the food appeared in its entirety as creatinine in the urine, so that if creatine were liberated from the muscles in their normal processes of metabolism, it would pass to the kidneys and be excreted as creatinine without undergoing further decomposition. On this account too, the creatinine in the urine was regarded as derived almost exclusively from the creatinine taken in with the food. The analyses given in Folin's Tables show that in one respect at any rate this view was incorrect. Creatinine is excreted in considerable quantities even when the man is on a creatine-free diet, or even when his food is almost free from protein. It has been found moreover by Folin that creatine administered by the mouth may disappear in the body. This is especially the case if the animal or man is on an insufficient protein diet, but there is no evidence of a corresponding increase in urea formation. If a larger amount be given, creatine appears as such in the urine. In most cases a certain minute proportion escapes and causes an increase in the quantity of creatinine. Under abnormal circumstances, *e. g.* during illness, when the physiological activities of the body are lowered, a portion of the creatine may be found in the urine in an unchanged condition. If creatinine is to be regarded in any way as the index of tissue metabolism, its amount ought to vary with the extent of this metabolism. Thus it should be increased when there is an exaggeration of the disintegrative processes in the tissues, and should be diminished when the nutritive changes in these tissues, especially in the muscles, are reduced to a minimum. The end-products of tissue metabolism therefore should be increased under the following conditions:

(1) Increased motor activity involving increased wear and tear of the muscular tissues.

(2) In fevers, especially in those where there is severe toxæmia and rapid wasting of the muscles of the body.

On the other hand, it should be diminished where the activity of the muscular tissue is reduced to a minimum, as under the influence of sleep or soporifics, or where the bulk of the muscular tissue is reduced as well as its activity, as in cases of widespread muscular atrophy and paralysis. The excretion of creatinine has been investigated under these various conditions by van Hoogenhuyze and Verploegh, and their results bear out the view expressed above as to the intimate relation of creatinine with the tissue metabolism of protein.

During protein starvation the uric acid output, though diminished, does not show a change which is at all proportional to that shown by the urea. This substance also might therefore represent an end-product of tissue metabolism. Since however uric acid is an outcome of the metabolism of a special group of bodies, the nucleins and purine bases, we shall have to devote a complete section to its consideration.

Although the urea is diminished in protein starvation, it still remains the most abundant nitrogenous constituent of the urine. We are therefore not justified in excluding this substance from the products of tissue metabolism.

If any creatine undergoes complete oxidation in the body during protein starvation, a certain proportion of the urea might be derived in this way. We shall see later that uric acid may possibly also undergo further oxidation with the formation of urea. Even during complete protein starvation, some of the urea which is turned out may be the expression of a utilisation of protein through deamination for the energy needs of the body. The active cells are bathed everywhere with a tissue fluid in which proteins form a preponderating constituent, and it is possible that, even in the times of greatest protein need, these cells utilise the proteins of their surrounding medium, though in a reduced degree, for the production of energy. In this case the active cell would initiate the utilisation by throwing off that part of the protein molecule, namely, NH_2, which is useless to the cell as a source of energy, so that deamination would be carried out in the working tissues, and not, as in the rapid formation of urea after a heavy meal, in the liver.

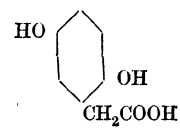
SULPHUR

Sulphur occurs in the urine in three forms, namely, as ordinary inorganic sulphates, as ethereal sulphates (indoxyl- and skatoxyl-sulphates), and in an unoxidised condition often termed neutral sulphur. There is no doubt that part of the latter consists of cystine, part of sulphocyanates, and in some animals mercaptan compounds. The excretion of the inorganic sulphates rises *pari passu* with that of the urea, so that very soon after the throwing off of the NH_2 group, there must be also a removal and oxidation of the greater part of the sulphur contained in the cystine group of the protein molecule. So far as regards the metabolism of the body as a whole, the ethereal sulphates may be classed with the inorganic sulphates. They are excreted in varying quantity according to the extent of the decomposition processes which are occurring in the intestine. Under the influence of these processes the tryptophane, produced in the pancreatic digestion of proteins, is converted into indol and skatol. These two substances, after absorption, are deprived of their poisonous qualities by oxidation and conjugation with sulphuric acid to form the indoxyl- and skatoxyl-sulphates of the urine, both of which are innocuous. If the processes of putrefaction are increased, as in intestinal obstruction, the relative amount of sulphate appearing in the conjugated form is also increased. On administration of phenol a large proportion of the sulphate appears in the urine conjugated with phenol or with products of its oxidation. If the normal putrefactive processes, which go on in the intestine, are abolished by the administration of intestinal antiseptics such as naphthalene or calomel, the ethereal sulphates practically disappear from the urine. We cannot therefore regard the absence or diminution of the ethereal sulphates during protein starvation as throwing any light on the endogenous protein metabolism. On the other hand, the fact that the neutral sulphur undergoes no decrease suggests that this part of the sulphur output of the organism may be connected with tissue metabolism. Further observations on the output of neutral sulphur during fever or wasting diseases are necessary before a definite conclusion can be arrived at on this point.

THE FATE OF THE AROMATIC AND OTHER CYCLIC GROUPS IN THE PROTEIN MOLECULE

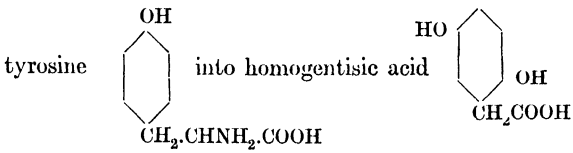
A typical protein such as can be utilised as a complete foodstuff contains, in addition to the amino-acids of the fatty series, a number of other nitrogenous derivatives of cyclic compounds, including benzene, indol, pyrrol, and iminazol. Substances such as gelatin, from which some of these groupings are absent, cannot, as we have seen, entirely replace protein in the food. So far we are acquainted with three compounds of the aromatic series among the products of disintegration of the protein molecule. These are tyrosine, phenylalanine, and tryptophane. Since these substances are also contained in the protein constituents of the tissues, we may assume that, after they have been set free by the digestive hydrolysis of proteins, they are absorbed and built up again with the other amino-acids in appropriate groupings. Like these they are susceptible of complete oxidation in the body, so that they can contribute to the supply of energy. Any one of these substances, administered with the food or subcutaneously, is entirely destroyed, with the production of urea, carbon dioxide, and water. In this respect they present a marked contrast to almost all other compounds of the aromatic series. In these we find that the benzene ring is extremely stable, so that, although changes may occur in its side-chains, the benzene ring itself appears intact in the urine, and is not broken up in the body. Thus benzoic acid, benzylalcohol, and phenyl propionic acid, when administered, are passed in the urine as hippuric acid (benzoyl glycine). Indol and skatol, which are closely allied to tryptophane, undergo oxidation in the body without further modification and appear in the urine as conjugated aromatic sulphates.

Some light is thrown on the conditions of breakdown of these aromatic bodies by the study of a rare disorder in metabolism, which may occur in certain families and is known as *alcaptonuria*. In this condition, which is congenital and lasts throughout life, the urine darkens considerably when made alkaline and exposed to the air. It has the power of reducing Fehling's solution, so that the presence of sugar might be suspected. On analysis the peculiarities of the urine are found to be due to the presence in it of a substance known as homogentisic acid. This is dioxyphenyl acetic acid.

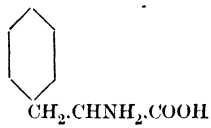


The amount of this substance in the urine bears a constant ratio to the nitrogen excreted. It does not disappear during starvation, and is much increased on a large protein diet. It must therefore be derived from the disintegration of proteins both exogenous and endogenous. If tyrosine or phenylalanine be administered to patients affected with this disorder, both substances are quantitatively converted into homogentisic acid. The ratio

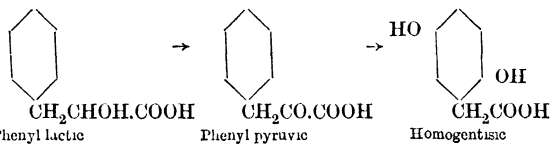
of this acid to the total nitrogen indicates that the whole of the tyrosine and phenylalanine of the protein molecule, whether set free in the alimentary canal or in the tissue metabolism, is converted into homogentisic acid. It is not possible to conceive of the direct conversion of



The tyrosine must first be reduced to phenylalanine



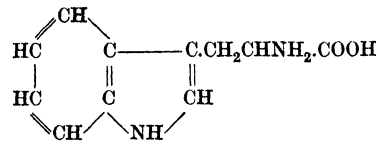
and then this substance must undergo oxidation into homogentisic acid. Since phenyl lactic acid and phenyl pyruvic acid, but not phenyl acetic acid, are also converted in alcaptonuric patients to homogentisic acid, it has been suggested that these two substances form stages in the conversion of phenylalanine into homogentisic acid. Thus



It is further thought that under normal circumstances the phenyl derivatives, tyrosine and phenylalanine, are oxidised to homogentisic acid as in the alcaptonuric patient. In the normal individual however, the introduction of two hydroxyl groups into the benzene ring leads to some process, perhaps of a ferment character, which breaks up the ring. This ferment is absent in the alcaptonuric, so that the transformation of the phenyl derivatives stops short at the stage of homogentisic acid (Garrod). The eminently specific character of this process is shown by the fact that, although these various substances undergo complete oxidation in the body, a slight modification in the chain of the processes renders the change impossible. Thus if the side group in phenyl lactic or phenyl pyruvic acid be converted to acetic acid before the introduction of the two OH groups into the phenyl ring, the phenyl acetic acid thus produced is incapable of undergoing further oxidation. Tyrosine in the intestine undergoes deamination to form oxyphenyl propionic acid and oxyphenyl acetic acid. These cannot be further oxidised, but appear in the urine as such or, after conversion into kresol or phenol, as sulphuric acid esters.

Somewhat similar conditions apply to the oxidation of tryptophane.

This body is an indol derivative and consists of a benzene ring and a pyrrol ring having two of their carbon atoms in common. Its formula



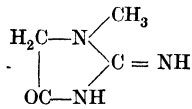
i. e. it is indol amino-propionic acid. It undergoes, like tyrosine, complete oxidation in the body. On the other hand, a very slight alteration in the molecule renders it incapable of this change. Thus the tryptophane, set free by the tryptic digestion of proteins under the influence of the putrefactive bacteria of the intestine, may undergo deamination and reduction with the production of indol propionic acid, and this by oxidation may be converted to indol acetic acid. The latter substance by decarboxylation may be converted into skatol or, by oxidation nearer the chain and further loss of carbon dioxide, into indol. Of these products of bacterial change, indol acetic acid may be found in the urine, and indol and skatol are oxidised to the corresponding phenols and pass into the urine conjugated either with sulphuric acid or with glycuronic acid.

Apart from these putrefactive changes due to bacteria, no indol derivatives pass into the urine. The amount of the indol and skatol esters serves therefore as an index of bacterial decomposition in the alimentary canal, but gives no clue to the total tryptophane metabolism of the body. If putrefaction be prevented by the administration of calomel or other intestinal antiseptic, these esters may entirely disappear from the urine. On the other hand, the partial obstruction to the onward passage of food, caused by dividing the small intestine in two places a few inches apart and replacing the intervening length of intestine the wrong way round, causes the indican excretion to be increased twenty or thirty fold. Subcutaneous injection of tryptophane in rabbits does not increase the indoxyl and skatoxyl sulphates (urinary indican) in the urine, whereas a considerable increase is brought about by subcutaneous injection of indol.

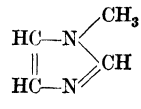
The pyrrol ring which occurs in proteins as proline and oxyproline (*i. e.* pyrrolidine carboxylic acid and oxypyrrolidine carboxylic acid) appears to undergo complete disintegration in the body. The steps in this conversion are unknown, though it is possible that the ring may be unlinked so as to produce from the pyrrol ring amino-valerianic acid, which would then undergo the process of deamination with which we are already familiar. This ring is of interest since it appears to take an important part in the building up of the molecule of hæmatin, the essential prosthetic group of the hæmoglobin molecule.

Another ring grouping, iminazol, occurs in histidine, which is iminazol α-amino-propionic acid. This too undergoes complete oxidation in the body. It is important to bear in mind that this ring may be produced synthetically by very simple means, *i. e.* by the action of zinc oxide and

ammonia on glucose, which results in a rich yield of methyl iminazol (*v.* p. 115). The same grouping is found in creatinine, as is seen by comparing the formulæ :



Creatinine



Methyl-iminazol

and it is possible that this may furnish a clue to the mode of formation of creatinine in muscle. Creatine has generally been regarded as the primary product of muscular metabolism, but it is possible that the ring-grouping is the original one and that creatine is produced by hydrolysis occurring in this ring.

The iminazol group is at present chiefly interesting in that it contributes to the formation of the complex ring compounds known as the purines. Since the purine metabolism is closely connected with the question of the origin of uric acid, we may consider these questions together.

SECTION II

NUCLEIN OR PURINE METABOLISM

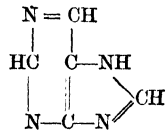
In an undifferentiated cell the proteins, as such, form but a small part, the mass of the cell being composed of conjugated proteins. The nucleo-proteins are especially abundant constituents of nuclei, and therefore occur to a greater or less extent in all the ordinary animal foods, eggs and milk excepted. Just as the metabolism of proteins is the metabolism of the amino-acids, so the metabolism of the nucleo-proteins and nucleins is essentially comprised in the history of its main constituents, *i. e.* the purines.

The nucleo-proteins themselves are bodies of very varying composition. If any cellular tissue such as thymus or liver be extracted with water or salt solution, a fluid is obtained from which a precipitate can be thrown down by the addition of acid. This precipitate as a rule is soluble in excess of acid or in alkalies. If subjected to gastric digestion it undergoes solution, leaving behind a residue of nuclein which is rich in phosphorus. The amount of this residue varies with the strength of the artificial gastric juice employed, so that the method cannot be looked upon as in any way quantitative, and the question arises whether the original nucleo-protein is to be regarded as an association or a combination of nuclein with ordinary protein. The most convenient source for the preparation of nucleins is from the heads of fish spermatozoa. All nucleins are associations or compounds of nucleic acids with proteins belonging to the class of protamines or histones. The nucleins of fish spermatozoa contain protamine as one of their constituents. On separating off the protamine, nucleic acids can be isolated. These acids have been named either according to their source or according to the purine base which is their most prominent constituent. Only from inosinic acid, the nucleic acid of muscle, has it been found possible to prepare crystalline derivatives, so that in all other cases it is difficult to decide whether we are dealing with chemical individuals or with mixtures.

On hydrolysing any of the nucleic acids by heating with strong mineral acid, they are broken down into a series of bodies belonging to the following four groups: (1) phosphoric acid, (2) purine bases, (3) pyrimidine bases, (4) a carbohydrate. The chief purine bases obtained from the hydrolysis of nucleic acid are guanine and adenine.

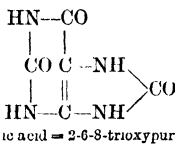
Hypoxanthine and xanthine are often obtained as products of decomposition of nucleic acid, but are generally formed by the deamination and oxidation of guanine and adenine. Fischer has shown that all these bodies

are derivatives of a base purine. They contain a central chain of three carbon atoms to which is attached on each side a urea group, so that they may be regarded as diureides. Purine itself has the formula



Purine

The relation of the purine bases obtained from disintegration of nucleic acid to purine itself has been given on p. 100. From these formulæ we see that adenine and hypoxanthine are related to one another, adenine being 6-aminopurine, while hypoxanthine is 6-oxypurine. In the same way guanine and xanthine are related, guanine being 2-amino-6-oxypurine, while xanthine is 2-6-dioxypurine. The investigation of the relationships of these bases was of interest to physiologists since it brought to light the close relation which they have to uric acid, a substance which has been known as a constituent of urine and urinary calculi for a long time, having been discovered in 1776 by Scheele. Uric acid is 2-6-8-trioxypurine and has the formula



Uric acid = 2-6-8-trioxypurine

The pyrimidine bases, which are also obtained from the hydrolysis of nucleic acid, are derived from a pyrimidine nucleus which is, so to speak, half a purine nucleus, consisting of a chain joined to a 3-carbon chain.

Three pyrimidine bases have been isolated from the decomposition products of nuclein, namely, thymine, cytosine, and uracil.

After separation of the purine and pyrimidine bases and phosphoric acid, a substance is left over which gives the reactions of a carbohydrate.

This carbohydrate differs in different nucleic acids. In plant nucleic acid, as well as in guanylic acid from the pancreas and inosinic acid from muscle, the carbohydrate is a pentose, d-ribose. Most nucleic acids of animal origin yield lævulinic acid on hydrolysis and must therefore contain a hexose.

FORMATION OF NUCLEINS IN THE BODY

In the case of the proteins we saw reason to believe that in the higher animals at any rate, there was no power of converting one amino-acid into another (with the exception of the lowest members of the series, namely, glycine and alanine), and that on this account the food had to contain representatives of every amino-acid (or perhaps of the corresponding oxy-

fatty acid) necessary to the building up of the tissue proteins. The nucleins, on the other hand, can certainly be synthetised by the animal. This is shown by the fact that the hens' egg before incubation contains practically no nuclein or purine bases. During incubation tissues are formed, and there is a rapid increase in the number of nuclei, so that the chick just before it is hatched contains a considerable amount of nuclein from which purine bases can be extracted. This nuclein must have been formed by a synthesis from the phospho-proteins and phosphatides (phosphorised fats) which form so important a constituent of the egg-yolk, and in the same way the purines must have been formed by a process of synthesis. This synthesis may occur by a conjugation of two urea molecules with the 3-carbon chain which is so prominent a feature in the proximate principles of the body (*e. g.* in lactic acid, alanine, and all the compound amino-acids of which alanine is a constituent). Methyliminazol, representing one-half of the purine ring, can be formed simply by allowing ammonia and glucose to stand in contact with zinc hydroxide. The power of synthesis of purines possessed by the body must complicate the question of their fate after ingestion, since it is evident either that they can be destroyed and excreted in some other form or that the products of their destruction may be built up into fresh purine or nuclein molecules. In the same way, in the growing child there is a rapid increase in the nuclein of the body, although the only food ingested is milk, which contains but an insignificant amount of nuclein.

FATE OF NUCLEINS IN THE BODY

Nucleins and nucleic acids are dissolved by the pancreatic juice, but no digestion of the nucleic acid occurs in the alimentary tract other than by the action of micro-organisms. We must assume therefore that the nucleic acid is taken up by the cells of the intestinal wall unchanged.

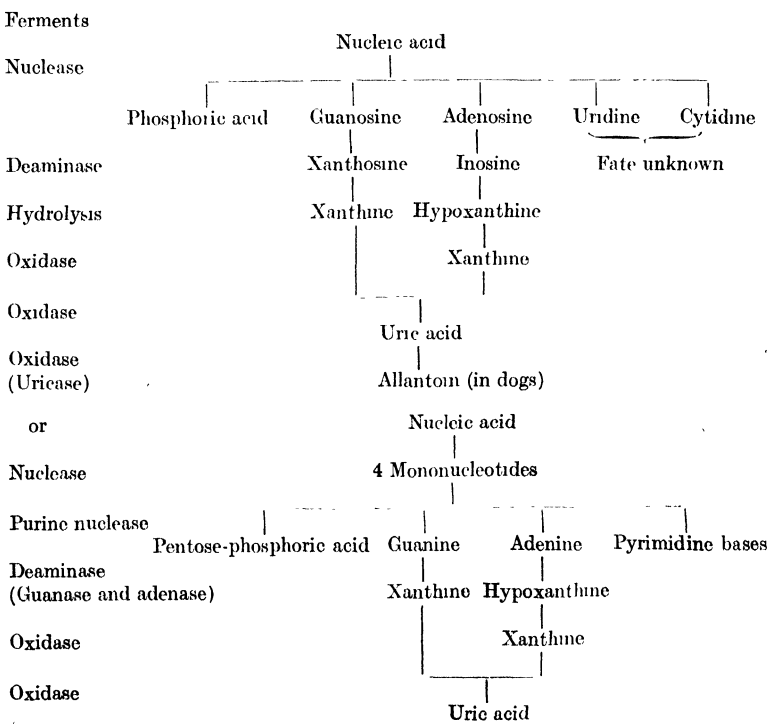
Ingestion of nucleic acid is, in man, followed by an increased excretion of uric acid in the urine, so that we regard this substance as the end-product of nuclein metabolism in the body. It is evident that the uric acid of the urine may be derived either from the nucleins of the food or from the nucleins of the tissues of the body, the uric acid in these two cases being spoken of as exogenous and endogenous respectively. By digestion of nucleic acids with animal tissues or extracts of animal tissues under varying conditions, it is possible to bring about all the changes involved in the conversion of the purine bases contained in them into uric acid. In the intestinal wall, or after absorption into other tissues of the body, the nucleic acid is subjected to hydrolytic changes by the agency of ferments which may be classed as nucleases. These are however of different kinds, the phosphonuclease splitting off the phosphoric acid and leaving the nucleosides, while the purine nucleases, which are more effective in a slightly alkaline medium, split off the purines, leaving the phosphoric acid combined with the carbohydrate. The purines set free in this way undergo further changes. The hypoxanthin derived from inosinic acid is converted under the action of an oxidase first into xanthine and then into uric acid.

This was one of the earliest facts discovered in the metabolism of purines. Horbaczewski showed that, if spleen pulp be digested with blood for some time, it is possible to extract a considerable amount of xanthine from the mixture. If however oxygen be bubbled through the fluid, the xanthine disappears, its place being taken by uric acid.

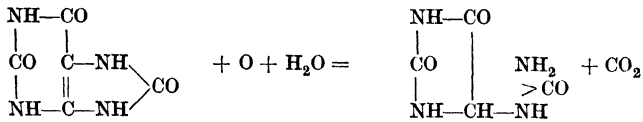
From the more complex nucleic acids the amino-purines, adenine and guanine, are set free. These first undergo deamination under the action of special ferments, adenase and guanase, and are thus converted into hypoxanthine and xanthine respectively. These bodies subsequently, under the action of oxidases, may be converted into uric acid.

All these changes occur in the living body, though not necessarily in the order just set out. Thus when the pyrimidine derivatives are administered to dogs, they pass out unchanged. If however free nucleic acid be administered to the animal, no trace of these derivatives can be found in the urine, so that they must have undergone complete oxidation. In the same way the dog's liver is able to deaminise completely the adenine group of nucleic acid, converting it into hypoxanthine, but is without effect on free adenine. It is evident therefore that the various ferments which have been described act partly on the whole nucleoside molecule, partly on the products of its decomposition, and that the results of the action of the body ferments are not the same in the two cases.

If we make this reservation, namely, that the constituent parts of the nucleic acid molecule may undergo changes while still bound to the other parts, we may represent diagrammatically the formation of uric acid from nucleic acid as follows:



The question arises whether the uric acid excreted by a man represents the whole of the nucleins which have been destroyed in the body. Although complete equivalence has been found between the amount of hypoxanthine ingested and the amount of uric acid excreted, the same equivalence has not been established in the case of nucleic acid, and the important question arises whether uric acid once formed is stable or whether it may undergo further changes before being excreted. In many animals, such as the dog, the amount of uric acid in the urine is only minute, the chief purine derivative in this fluid being allantoin. Allantoin is formed when uric acid is oxidised with potassium permanganate, the following changes taking place:



The same transformation can be effected by extracts made from the liver of the dog and probably of other animals. The ferment carrying out this change is known as uricase. No such ferment is found in human liver or any human organs, and, according to Jones and others, uric acid once formed in the human organism is not further oxidised. The small trace of allantoin which may occur in human urine is directly derived from the food. Modern research does not confirm the idea which was formerly held that a portion of the uric acid formed might undergo further oxidation in man with the production of urea.

On the other hand it is important to bear in mind the possibility that some of the uric acid which occurs in human urine may be formed by a process of synthesis. We have seen already that in the bird the greater part of the uric acid is formed not from purines at all but by a process of synthesis from lactic acid and ammonia, and though we have no evidence of a similar change occurring in the mammal, we are not able definitely to exclude its possibility.

EXCRETION OF URIC ACID

The complexity of these various processes in man renders it a difficult task to form a clear idea of the origin of the urinary uric acid and of the conditions which determine the variations in the amount excreted at different times. Under ordinary circumstances a man excretes about half a gramme of uric acid per day. In addition the urine contains a small amount of purine bases, the ratio of these bases to the uric acid being generally about 1 : 6. From 10,000 litres of human urine Krüger and Salomon succeeded in isolating the following purine bases:

Xanthine	10·1 grm.
Hypoxanthine . .	8·5 „
Adenine	3·5 „

The same urine would probably have contained about 500 grm. of uric acid. As we should expect, the amount of uric acid in the urine varies with the diet. The following Tables from Bunge give the composition of the urine secreted (1) on a mixed diet, (2) on a diet mainly composed of meat, (3) on a diet mainly composed of bread:

Twenty-four hours		Mixed	Meat	Bread
Quantity c.c.		1500	1672	1920
Urea	grm.	33	67	20
Uric acid	,,	·55	1·3	·25
Ammonia	,,	·9	2·1	·9
Creatinine	,,	·77	·9	·4
Hippuric acid	,,	·4	—	—
Sulphates	,,	2	4·6	1·2
Sodium chloride	,,	16·5	7·5	8·2
Phosphates	,,	3·16	3·4	1·6
Potassium	,,	2·5	3·3	1·3

Calcium, magnesium, iron, colouring matter, gases, ferments.

An attempt has been made to arrive at the amount of uric acid produced endogenously, *i. e.* from the breakdown of the tissues, from a study of the quantity of uric acid in the urine under varying conditions of food. During starvation, when the man is living on his own tissues, one might expect the uric acid to be increased in consequence of disintegration of the tissues. It has been suggested that the amount of the endogenous uric acid in the urine would be obtained by an analysis of the urine from patients taking a diet free from purine bases, but containing sufficient nitrogen to maintain nitrogenous equilibrium. It is impossible however to arrive at any constant figure for the endogenous uric acid. Even in the entire absence of purine derivatives from the diet, the amount of uric acid increases with the total nitrogenous metabolism. This fact is well shown in the Tables by Folin (already quoted) of the composition of the urine on a low and a high protein diet respectively. Although in each case care was taken to exclude purine-containing bodies from the food, the output of uric acid on the high nitrogenous diet was double as much as on the low diet. All we can say is that uric acid is constantly being derived from the tissue disintegration, but that it varies under different conditions of nutrition as well as under different conditions of activity of the body.

There are two main conditions which give rise to a marked increase in the output of endogenous uric acid. These are (1) severe muscular activity, (2) febrile states accompanied by increased nitrogenous metabolism. Since both these conditions are associated with an increased breakdown of muscle substance, we may regard the uric acid as derived especially from the hypoxanthine or its precursors, such as inosinic acid, contained in the muscle.

The foods which are especially effective in causing increase in the exogenous uric acid are those rich in nuclein, such as sweetbreads or liver, and those rich in hypoxanthine or its precursors, such as meat or meat extract.

When these foods are taken, or when nucleic acid itself is administered, a condition of leucocytosis is generally produced, the number of leucocytes in the blood being increased as much as three times. It has been suggested that the uric acid is actually formed by a disintegration of the newly formed leucocytes and not by a direct

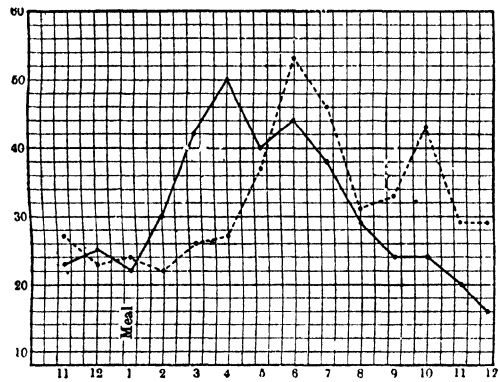


FIG. 366. Curves showing the hourly excretion of uric acid and urea after a single meal. (HOPKINS.) The continuous line = uric acid output; the dotted line = urea output.

conversion of the purines of the food. It is quite possible, as suggested by Schittenhelm, that the leucocytes play a part in the transference of the nucleins from the intestine to the circulation. But the absence of any absolute proportionality between the degree of leucocytosis and the amount of uric acid excreted points to the probability of a direct conversion of the purines of the food into uric acid.

URIC ACID IN GOUT

Gout is a condition in which deposits of urate of soda occur in the cartilages of the joints, the great toe joint being the seat of predilection for this disorder. The deposit is generally associated with an acute inflammation of the joint. In normal individuals the amount of uric acid in the blood is too small to be detected. Uric acid is readily excreted by the healthy kidneys. If the production of uric acid be largely increased by the administration in large quantities of foodstuffs rich in purines, it becomes possible to demonstrate the actual presence of uric acid in the blood. In gout there is constantly an increased amount of uric acid in the blood, probably in the form of sodium urate, even when the patient is on a purine-free diet, so that gout may be regarded, from one point of view at any rate, as a uricæmia of endogenous origin. On the other hand, the output of uric acid in the urine is not increased, and may in fact be somewhat smaller than normal. It might be thought that the presence of uric acid in the blood must therefore be due to diminished power of excretion of this substance by the kidneys. This view is difficult to reconcile with the fact that, if uric acid be injected subcutaneously into gouty subjects, it is stated to be excreted in the urine exactly in the same way and as rapidly as in normal persons. It has been suggested that gout consists essentially in a disturbance in the various fermentative mechanisms which are responsible for the changes undergone by the purines, so that

there is an increased amount not only of uric acid itself but of various intermediate products in its formation from the purine bases of the food and of the tissues. The deposit of the uric acid in the joint cartilages, characteristic of acute gout, appears to be simply a crystallisation of urate of soda from a supersaturated solution of this substance in the blood. The whole question of the pathology of gout and of the disordered metabolism, which may precede or intervene between actual acute attacks of the disease, is in need of further investigation. Especially is it important to determine the influence on this condition not only of the nucleins and proteins of the food, but of the other constituents such as carbohydrates and fats. Speaking broadly, gout is a disease of the well-to-do, of the person who, while pursuing a sedentary or no occupation, is not limited in his food-supply. It is almost unknown in the labouring class, where hard manual work is combined with a bare sufficiency of food. It seems therefore that it is not so much the supply of purines in the diet which must be controlled as the general conditions of nutrition, which determine the fermentative changes in the purines either of the food or tissues under normal conditions of metabolism.

SECTION III

THE HISTORY OF FAT IN THE BODY

FAT is found in the body in various situations. In a fat animal the largest amount occurs in the panniculus adiposus in the subcutaneous tissues. Large quantities are also found surrounding the abdominal organs and between the layers of the mesentery and great omentum. In this adipose tissue the fat is enclosed within and distends connective-tissue cells, the protoplasm of which is reduced to a thin pellicle round the fat globule. Fat is also found in the form of granules in more highly specialised cells, such as the secreting cells of the liver or the muscle cells. The condition of these cells is often spoken of as fatty infiltration, or fatty degeneration, according to the circumstances which are responsible for bringing about the deposition of fat. We shall have to discuss later on how far we are justified in assuming any real distinction between these two processes. From the physiological standpoint the most important intracellular depôt of fat is in the liver. If this organ be deprived of glycogen and fat by starvation, a fatty meal gives rise to a great deposition of fat in its cells. There is apparently an antagonism between the processes which lead on the one hand to the deposition of glycogen and on the other to the deposition of fat. Thus an excessive carbohydrate diet, which induces great deposition of fat in the subcutaneous tissues, causes only the formation of glycogen in the liver. The glycogen must be got rid of before it is possible to cause the deposition of fat. On this account, the normal content in fat of the livers of different animals varies with their ordinary diet. Fishes, *e. g.* the cod, which take but little carbohydrate in their food, have generally a very large quantity of fat in their livers. Herbivorous animals, as a rule, have practically no fat in the liver.

Fat also occurs in certain secretions, *e. g.* the milk and the sebum, its function in the latter case being mainly protective.

Besides the visible deposit of fat found in adipose tissue and in other situations, a large amount of fat is always present built up into the protoplasm of the cells in such a condition that its presence cannot be detected by histological means. The presence or absence of visible fatty globules affords very little clue to the total quantity of fat in the cells. Thus in one case the heart muscle, which had undergone extreme fatty degeneration and was loaded with fat globules, contained 19 per cent. of its dried weight of fat. A heart muscle taken from a normal animal at the same time, presenting no visible fat globules, contained 17 per cent. of fat.

COMPOSITION OF FAT

The fats occur generally in the form of triglycerides of various fatty acids. In adipose tissue the acids are chiefly stearic, palmitic, and oleic, the consistency of the fat depending on the relative amount present of triolein, with its low melting-point. In certain animals the glycerides of more unsaturated fatty acids occur. Thus lard contains about 10 per cent. of fats belonging to the linoleic series. The fats of cows' milk, though consisting chiefly of the three above-mentioned, include also the esters of butyric and caproic acids in fair amounts, and traces of the intermediate acids, caprylic, capric, lauric, and myristic acids.

The 'fat' extracted from the tissues (*e.g.* heart muscle) includes a considerable amount of 'phosphatides' (lecithins, etc.). It also contains a much larger proportion of unsaturated fatty acids of the linoleic and even lower series, so that its 'iodine value' is generally found relatively high (120 as compared with 40 to 60 in adipose tissue).

FUNCTIONS OF FAT

First and foremost must be mentioned the significance of fat as a reserve food store. The power of the organism to store up reserve carbohydrate is strictly limited. The liver of man can probably not accommodate more than 150 grm. of glycogen, and assuming that the muscles of the body may contain an equal amount, 300 grm. represents the extreme limit of storage of carbohydrates in the body. On the other hand, in most animals there is practically no limit to the amount of fat which can be laid down, and over-feeding, whether with carbohydrates or fats, leads to the deposition of fat. This fat does not enter into the normal metabolism of the body, but is available for use whenever the needs of the body are increased above its income.

As to the part taken by fat, especially the hidden fat of the working cells, in the chemical processes which determine the life of the cell, our knowledge is still very scanty. Fats enter into the constitution of the complex bodies, lecithin and myelin, which form important constituents of the limiting membrane of every living cell. As constituents of the membrane itself, fatty substances therefore have a protective action, and also regulate the passage of substances into the cell across the membranes.

The presence of lecithin as an integral constituent of all protoplasm, and of the first products of disintegration of protoplasm, suggests that this substance may play a part in the normal transformations which occur within the cell, and may represent, so to speak, the currency into which fat is transformed in order to participate in the vital processes, and that it is in this form that the energy of fat is utilised for the needs of the cell.

ORIGIN OF FAT IN THE BODY

Fat formation is the result of an excess of income over expenditure. As soon as the latter exceeds the former the fat store is drawn upon, so that

adipose tissue is the one which presents the greatest loss during starvation. As much as 97 per cent. of the total fat of the body may disappear during this process. We have therefore to consider what part is played by each class of foodstuffs in the formation of fat. Can this substance be formed from all three classes of foodstuffs?

FORMATION FROM THE FAT OF THE FOOD. Experiment has shown that the composition of the fat of any animal is by no means constant and can be varied within wide limits by alterations in the nature of the fat presented in the food. This dependence of the composition of the fat on the fats of the food is shown strikingly in an experiment performed by Lebedeff. Two dogs, after a preliminary period of starvation, were fed, one on a diet containing a large proportion of linseed oil, and the other on a diet containing much mutton suet. After some weeks, when the animals had put on a large amount of fat, they were killed, and it was found that whereas the fat of the dog which had been fed on mutton suet was solid at 50° C., that of the dog fed on oil was still fluid at 0° C. It has been shown moreover that, by feeding animals with fatty acids not usually found in the body, these are laid down in the adipose tissue. Thus colza oil contains a glyceride of erucic acid, and an animal, as Munk has shown, fed on colza oil lays on fat in which erucic acid is present. The same physiologist has observed that, after the administration of various fatty acids to a man with a chylous fistula, the glycerides of the corresponding fatty acids made their appearance in the chyle, whether these fatty acids were those normal to man or consisted of substances, such as erucic acid, not generally found in human fat. One must conclude therefore that the fats taken with the food, if not immediately required for the energy needs of the body, are laid down without change in the adipose tissues, as well as in the cells of the body. The mechanisms involved in the translation of fat from the alimentary canal to the tissues are of the simplest possible description and involve only changes of hydrolysis and dehydrolysis. The fats are hydrolysed in the gut and are resynthetised to a certain extent in their passage into the epithelium. In the chyle and blood they probably wander chiefly as neutral fats, to be rehydrolysed for their passage into the cells of the body, which they may enter either in the form of soaps or possibly as fatty acids dissolved in some of the constituents of protoplasm.

FORMATION OF FAT FROM CARBOHYDRATES. It has long been the experience of farmers that animals might be fattened on a diet in which carbohydrates predominate. The chemical difficulty involved in the transformation of carbohydrates into fats has often led to a doubting attitude on the part of chemists towards this transformation. Voit put forward the view that, when fats are formed in the body as a result of an excessive carbohydrate diet, they are formed, not directly by a transformation of carbohydrate, but from the proteins of the food, the *rôle* of the carbohydrates of the food being simply to protect the proteins from disintegration and oxidation, so that the whole of their carbon can be utilised for the formation of fat.

Definite evidence has however been brought forward, especially by Lawes and Gilbert, for the transformation of carbohydrates into fats. In these experiments two young pigs ten weeks old of the same litter, with approximately equal weights, were taken. One was killed and the fat and total nitrogen in the body estimated. From the amount of nitrogen the maximum possible quantity of proteins present was calculated. The second was fed on barley for four months. The barley was measured and analysed, as well as the amount of undigested fat and protein that passed through the animal. At the end of the four months the second animal was killed and analysed. It was found that the animal contained 1·56 kilos. more protein and 8·6 kilos. more fat. It had taken up with the food 7·49 kilos. more protein and 0·66 kilo. fat. If we subtract the protein added to the body (1·56) from that taken up with the food (7·49), there is a remainder of 5·93 kilos. which might possibly have given rise to fat. But 7·9 kilos. of fat had been added in the body—a far larger amount than could possibly have arisen from the maximum amount of protein left over for the purpose. At least 5 kilos. of fat in this experiment must have been derived from the direct conversion of the carbohydrates of the food. We must conclude that fat can be formed directly from carbohydrates, although how and where this conversion takes place is at present quite unknown. The fats formed on a carbohydrate diet are deposited chiefly in the subcutaneous tissue. For the reasons already given the liver is found free from fat under these conditions. In the fat formed from carbohydrate the two saturated acids, palmitic and stearic acid, predominate. On this account the fat has a firm consistency and a high melting-point. The fats of low melting-point, such as olein, are absorbed more readily from the intestine than those of high melting-point. Where the fat of the body is chiefly derived from the fat of the food, it tends to be of the more fluid acids and contains a larger percentage of olein.

Although it is impossible to trace out all the steps in the process of conversion of sugar into fatty acid, we are acquainted with certain reactions which may throw some light on the nature of the changes involved. If we compare the formula of dextrose with that of the corresponding fatty acid, caproic acid,

we see that the conversion involves a considerable loss of oxygen. In order to convert three molecules of glucose, $C_6H_{12}O_6$, into one molecule

of stearic acid, $C_{18}H_{36}O_2$, it is necessary to split off 16 atoms of oxygen. That this setting free of oxygen actually occurs in the transformation of carbohydrate into fat is shown by the study of the respiratory exchanges of animals which are rapidly laying on a store of fat at the expense of a carbohydrate food. Thus the marmot, towards the end of summer, eats large quantities of carbohydrate food and very rapidly lays on a thick layer of subcutaneous fat to last it during the winter. If glucose were entirely oxidised in the body, the amount of oxygen absorbed would be exactly equal to the amount of carbon dioxide evolved. Thus

$$C_2H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2 = 6CO_2 + 6H_2O.$$

In this case the respiratory quotient would be

$$\frac{6CO_2}{6O_2} = 1$$

If however oxygen is being set free by the conversion of part of the carbohydrate into fat, this oxygen will be available for the oxidation of other portions of the carbohydrate. The animal will not need to take in so much oxygen from outside for the production of the same amount of carbon dioxide, and the carbon dioxide output of the animal will therefore be greater than its oxygen intake. Pembrey has shown that under these conditions the respiratory quotient may be as high as 1·5. We cannot assume however that the process of conversion of glucose into fatty acids takes place by this simple process of deoxidation. The change is probably a more complex one, and occurs in separate stages. Glucose easily breaks up under the action of ferments into two molecules of lactic acid, and lactic acid can be equally easily converted into aldehyde and formic acid, thus:

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 = 2C_3H_6O_3 \text{ lactic acid, and}$$

$$\begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CHOH \\ | \\ COOH \end{array} = \begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CHO \end{array} + \begin{array}{l} H \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}$$

Now aldehydes possess a marked tendency to combine with other molecules of itself or other substances, *i. e.* to undergo polymerisation. Thus from two molecules of aldehyde we get one molecule of aldol,

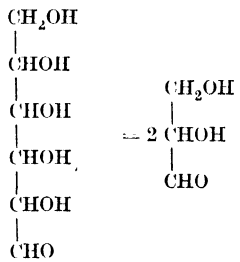
$$2 \begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CHO \end{array} = \begin{array}{l} CH_3 \\ | \\ CHOH \\ | \\ CH_2 \\ | \\ CHO \end{array}$$

which by a simple transposition of oxygen would give butyric acid, or by oxidation would give β-oxybutyric acid, a substance which occurs during various abnormal conditions of metabolism.

The fats occurring in the body, *e. g.* in milk, include only the fatty acids

with an even number of carbon atoms (*v.* p. 117). We may probably assume from this fact that the building up, as well as the breaking down, of fatty acids occurs by two carbon atoms at a time. Although heating aldehyde or aldol with potash or any other polymerising agent gives rise to a mixture of many substances, it is probable that under the catalytic agencies at the disposal of the living cell these synthetic changes are directed entirely in one direction, so that from butyric acid we shall have hexoic, caprylic, capric acid, and so on. The process would seem to take place more easily through pyruvic acid, as described on p. 119. Why the process comes to an end with the formation of the 16 and 18 carbon atoms it is difficult to see.[1] Possibly with the formation of acids whose melting-point is higher than that of the body temperature, a certain stability is imparted to them which prevents their further circulation and ready synthesis to the still higher acids.

With regard to the glycerine which is a necessary constituent of the neutral fats laid down in the body, there is no difficulty in accounting for its formation from the carbohydrates. By a simple splitting of glucose, we may obtain two molecules of glyceraldehyde,



which by reduction is readily converted into the corresponding alcohol glycerine, $CH_2OH.CHOH.CH_2OH$.

We may conclude then that fats are formed by the body with ease from carbohydrates, and that in all probability this change involves a building up of the fatty acid from the lower members by the successive addition of a group containing two atoms of carbon. The whole change, as Leathes has shown (*v.* p. 118), is an exothermic one. For the formation of one molecule of palmitic acid, four molecules of glucose would be required, and 12·5 per cent. of the total energy of the glucose would be set free as heat.

THE FORMATION OF FAT FROM PROTEINS. Among the decomposition products of proteins, the amino-derivatives of the fatty acids take a prominent part. Of these some may be converted into carbohydrate in the body, while others such as leucine and tyrosine may give rise to aceto-acetic acid. It seems therefore that these latter might in their turn be built up by the process we have just discussed into the higher members

[1] From the fats extracted from the kidney Dunham has isolated carnaubic acid, $C_{24}H_{48}O_2$.

of the series. For many years, as a result of the investigations of Voit, the proteins were indeed regarded as the chief, if not the sole, source of the fats of the body, and it needed the energetic assaults of Pflüger on this doctrine in 1891, before it could be clearly examined by physiologists.

Let us see what are the grounds for assuming a formation of fat from protein. In the first place, there is a well-known experiment by Voit. A dog was fed with large quantities of lean meat for a considerable time. Voit found that the whole of the nitrogen of the intake was excreted, but that a certain percentage of carbon was retained in the body, and that the percentage of this carbon was greater than could be accounted for by the deposition of glycogen in the liver and muscles. He therefore assumed that it must have been laid down as fat. Pflüger showed that these conclusions were not justified by Voit's results, and were really based on the fact that too high a figure had been assumed for the carbon of the meat. Whereas Voit found that the animal had laid on 56 grm. of fat during one day of the experiment, a recalculation of the same results by Pflüger shows that the animal could not have put on more than 3·9 grm. of fat, an amount which might quite well be accounted for by the fat and glycogen present in the meat. Pflüger has shown moreover that an animal may be fed in any quantities for weeks on the leanest meat that it is possible to procure, without putting on any fat at all; and, as we have seen, increasing the ration of protein increases simply the nitrogenous and general metabolism of the body.

Although therefore we must assume that the healthy body does not normally form fat from protein, there are certain pathological conditions which seem at first to tell in favour of such a conversion. Thus during certain diseases, such as diphtheria, pernicious anæmia, and as the result of poisoning by phosphorus, the majority of the organs of the body undergo acute fatty degeneration. The liver may be enlarged. All its cells are studded with fat granules which are apparently formed by a change in the protoplasm of the cells. This change was long interpreted as due to a direct conversion of protein into fat. More exact analyses have shown that during fatty degeneration the total fat in the body is not increased. Thus one observer took 124 pairs of frogs and poisoned one of each pair with phosphorus. The animals were then killed, and the whole of them analysed. The difference in the content of fat between the poisoned and unpoisoned animals fell within the limits of experimental error, so that there had been no increase in the fat of the body as the result of the poisoning. In some of these cases the liver is actually enlarged, but this deposition of fat in the cells is due to the immigration of the fat from other parts of the body and not to conversion of the protein of the cells. This is shown by the facts that the composition of the fat in the degenerated liver varies according to the composition of the fat in the rest of the body, and that, if abnormal fats are given with the food, such as erucic acid or iodine fats, these are found in the fat extracted from the liver. In fatty degeneration two processes are at work: one is the immigration of fats

from other parts of the body; the second, and probably the more important one, is a change in the relation of the fat to the protoplasm of the cell.

It was long stated that the fat of milk was not increased by feeding with fats, but only by feeding with proteins. More recent researches have given contrary results. The dependence of the composition of milk fat on the composition of the fat present in the body or administered in the food is shown by the fact that cows fed on oilcake may produce a butter which is useless for commercial purposes owing to its low melting-point. In one experiment, when a cow was fed on linseed oil, the iodine number of the milk fat rose from 30, its normal figure, to 70·4. After the introduction of iodine fat subcutaneously, iodine fats are found in the milk. In another experiment a bitch, which had been fed with mutton suet and had deposited in its tissues a fat of high melting-point, produced a milk the iodine number of which was the same as that of the mutton suet. In this case the fat of the milk had evidently been derived from the tissues, since during the lactation the animal was being fed on meat which was poor in fat. The same dependence of fatty secretion on diet has been found in geese, where the composition of the oil secretion of the feather glands has been altered by giving unusual fats, such as sesame oil, with the food.

We must conclude that the protein of the food does not give rise to fat in the body. A nearer consideration of the composition of the proteins, taken in connection with our discussion as to the mechanism by means of which the fat is built up in the body, might help to account for this fact. The fatty acids formed by the disintegration of proteins are chiefly the lower acids of the series, such as acetic and propionic, which would undergo rapid oxidation in the body. Butyric acid has not yet been found among the products of disintegration of the proteins, and the 6-carbon acid, derived from leucine, is not the normal acid, but is a branched chain, viz. isobutyl-acetic acid.

THE UTILISATION OF FATS IN THE BODY

The constant presence of fat, and bodies allied to fat, in protoplasm, from whatever source obtained, suggests that these substances can enter directly into the chemical changes on which the life of the cell depends and that they play an essential part in vital phenomena. The direct utilisation of fat for the needs of the body is also indicated by the results of experiments on man and the lower animals. After a few days' starvation the body may be regarded as practically free from stored carbohydrate. The sole source of the energy which is evolved under these circumstances must be fats and proteins, and it is possible to determine by an estimation of the nitrogen output the exact fraction of the total energy evolved which is to be ascribed to protein metabolism. Thus in the case of Cetti, the professional faster, it was found that the nitrogenous metabolism per unit of body weight remained fairly constant between the fifth and tenth days of starvation, and corresponded to an average of 1 grm. of protein per kilo body weight daily. In order to convert this amount of protein into

urea, carbonic acid, sulphuric acid, and water, nearly 2 grm. of oxygen would be required in the twenty-four hours, *i. e.* about 1 c.c. per minute. Cetti's total oxygen consumption was at the rate of 5 c.c. per kilo per minute, so that four-fifths of the oxygen absorbed was required for the oxidation of non-nitrogenous substances, and these, as we have seen, could only have been fats. In animals with a large store of fat the proportion of the energy obtained at the cost of the fats may be still greater. In dogs Rubner and Voit reckoned that only 10 to 16 per cent. of the total energy was derived from proteins, the rest, *i. e.* 84 to 90 per cent., being obtained from the oxidation of fats.

The oxidation of fats supplies energy not only for the production of heat but also for the performance of mechanical work, and it seems probable that the utilisation of the fat occurs in the muscular tissues themselves. Fat is found as a normal constituent of all muscle fibres, and the amount of this substance is greater in proportion to the activity of the muscles concerned. Thus the ever-active heart muscle, and the red muscles of the diaphragm, contain larger amounts of fat than the pale voluntary muscles which have to undertake only short periods of activity. In the human heart muscle 15 per cent. of the solids are soluble in ether, and more than one-half of the ether extract is composed of fat, and is sufficient to supply the energy of the contracting heart for six or seven hours' work.

The degree to which the muscles during contraction call upon each class of foodstuffs may be judged from the respiratory quotient. If the body has previously supplied the greater part of its needs at the expense of fats, it will continue to do so during muscular work. This is well shown in the following Table, in which the oxygen consumption and respiratory quotient are compared in a man resting and working on three different diets, one principally fat, one principally carbohydrate, and the other principally protein:

Diet principally	Resting		Working		kg. m. of work done	Per kg. m. of work	
	c.c. oxygen used per min.	Resp. quotient	c.c. oxygen used per min.	Resp. quotient		c.c. oxygen used	Cal
Fat . . .	319	0·72	1029	0·72	354	2·01	9·39
Carbohydrate .	277	0·90	1029	0·90	346	2·17	10·41
Protein . .	306	0·80	1127	0·80	345	2·38	11·35

We may conclude then that the tissues of the body are able to obtain their energy by the direct utilisation of the fats which they contain. The changes in the fat molecules, which are involved in the utilisation of their energy, are still to be determined. The energy of fat is available only on its oxidation. The transformation of fats into fatty acids or glycerine, or the synthesis of fats from aldehydes or from carbohydrates, which we

have discussed in the previous section, do not involve any large changes of energy. Weight for weight, butyric acid with its 4 carbon atoms has practically the same heat value as stearic acid with its 18 carbon atoms, or stearine with its 57 carbon atoms. We have therefore to determine what changes the great fat molecule undergoes before it is brought into a condition in which it may undergo oxidation and set free the energy required for the purposes of the body. The general tendency of metabolic research of recent years is to show that the living cell is in a position to effect all changes which do not involve a large evolution or absorption of energy in either direction. In the plant cell, at any rate, the fatty acids may be converted into amino-acids, or the latter may be deaminised, as occurs in the liver, into fatty or oxyacids. Dextrose may pass into maltose and starch, or starch may be converted into maltose or dextrose. If therefore fats are constantly being made from carbohydrates, or from the lower molecules such as aldehyde, by a process of repeated addition of a group containing two carbon atoms, it seems possible that the same change might go on in a reverse direction when fats are broken down previous to oxidation.

In the germination of oily seeds the utilisation of the fat is preceded by the splitting of the higher fatty acids into acids of lower molecular weight. Although we cannot trace out in the animal body the stages in the breakdown of a large fatty acid, such as stearic acid, we can, by a certain artifice much used in metabolic experimentation, bring forward evidence in favour of the view that the breakdown, like the building up of fats, occurs by two carbon atoms at a time. When, in the process of breaking down, a fat finally arrives at the four- or two-carbon stage, it is quickly oxidised and is therefore not traceable in the excretions or in the fluids of the body. This end stage may however be preserved from oxidation by hanging it, so to speak, on to an aromatic ring. If acetic acid or ethyl alcohol be administered in small quantities, it is entirely oxidised. If however these bodies be attached to a benzene ring and be administered as a phenacetic acid or phenylethyl alcohol, they are excreted in the oxidised form of phenaceturic acid, which is simply a combination of phenacetic acid with glycine. In the same way benzoic acid and benzyl alcohol are excreted in the form of hippuric acid, thus:

$$\underset{\text{Benzoic acid}}{C_6H_5.COOH} + \underset{\text{Glycine}}{NH_2.CH_2.COOH} = \underset{\text{Hippuric acid}}{C_6H_5.CO.NH.CH_2.COOH} + H_2O$$

Phenacetic acid, $C_6H_5.CH_2COOH$, is excreted as $C_6H_5.CH_2.CO.NH.CH_2COOH$. In each case the fatty side-chain is protected from further oxidation by its attachment to the benzene ring and by the tacking on of the glycine molecule.

With phenylpropionic acid two carbon atoms of the side-chain are oxidised, and the remaining benzoic acid excreted as hippuric acid. Phenylbutyric acid undergoes a similar change: two carbon atoms are oxidised away, leaving phenylacetic acid, which is excreted as phenylaceturic acid.

If phenyl valerianic acid be given, four carbon atoms are oxidised away and benzoic acid is left, and appears in the urine as hippuric acid. In each case the oxidation of the side-chain occurs by two carbon atoms at a time, and it seems probable that a similar change will occur in the ordinary fatty acid, the last stages, in the absence of any protective ring compound, being oxidised like the earlier groups and therefore not detectable in the excretions.

Evidence in the same direction is afforded by certain cases in which the oxidative power of the body for fats is inadequate, either by reason of morbid changes in the oxidative powers of the body, or as the result of what we may call an overstrain of the fat-oxidising powers. Such a condition is found in the acetonuria of acute acidosis, such as occurs in the end stages of diabetes. The oxybutyric and diacetic acids occurring in the urine in this condition were formerly thought to be derived from the carbohydrates of the food, or from sugar abnormally produced in the body. The condition of acidosis however is often brought on directly as the result of putting the patient on a strict anti-diabetic diet, *i. e.* one consisting chiefly or exclusively of fats and proteins, and may be produced in a healthy man by simple starvation, when the body has only at its disposal its stored-up fats and proteins. It occurs in a marked degree on the administration of a diet consisting almost entirely of fats. Thus in one experiment a healthy man took as his sole diet for five days a daily ration of 250 grm. of butter, 200 grm. of oil, and a little wine. The result was an intense acidosis, such as is only found in the severest cases of diabetes, diacetic acid, oxybutyric acid, and acetone being found in the urine in large quantities. On the last day of the experiment these acids caused so much of the nitrogen in the urine to appear as ammonia that of the 5·8 grm. total nitrogen excreted only 2·7 grm. were in the form of urea, while as much as 2·1 grm. were present as ammonia.

If, during a period of starvation in man, a day is interpolated on which 100 grm. of protein are taken, the amount of acetone excreted falls below that obtained on the other days when the individual is living chiefly at the cost of his own fat. These facts indicate that the chief source of the β-oxybutyric acid and the diacetic acid is the fat of the food or of the body. The condition of acidosis is more easily brought about by ingestion of butyric acid than of the higher acids, such as palmitic or stearic, suggesting that whatever fatty acid is given it is finally reduced to butyric acid before its oxidation, and that in the condition of acidosis it is merely the last stages of this oxidation which are at fault. We are thus justified in concluding that the oxidative breakdown of fats occurs always by an oxidation in the β position.

We take, for instance, the 6-carbon stage :

$$CH_3.CH_2.CH_2.CH_2.CH_2.COOH$$

the first change which probably occurs is the oxidation :

$$CH_3.CH_2.CH_2.CHOH.CH_2.COOH$$

A further change is the complete oxidation of the last two groups and the production of butyric acid:

$$CH_3.CH_2.CH_2.COOH$$

This then undergoes again oxidation in the β position, with the production of β-oxybutyric acid:

$$CH_3.CHOH.CH_2.COOH$$

and then again is converted to diacetic acid,

$$CH_3.CO.CH_2.COOH$$

In the normal individual this last stage undergoes complete oxidation, both oxybutyric acid and diacetic acid given to a healthy person being completely destroyed in the body. It is only under the abnormal conditions which we have mentioned above that these last stages fail of complete oxidation, and are excreted unchanged in the urine.

THE QUESTION OF THE FORMATION OF SUGAR FROM FAT

The ease with which the animal body performs the difficult chemical operation of transforming carbohydrate into fat suggests that under appropriate conditions it might effect the reverse change. Is there any evidence that in the animal body sugar may be derived from fat? Such a conversion is of normal occurrence during the germination of fatty seeds, starch sugar and cellulose being formed at the expense of the stored-up fats of the seeds. If such seeds be allowed to germinate over mercury in a confined volume of oxygen, they are found, like seeds containing chiefly carbohydrate reserves, to absorb oxygen and to give off carbon dioxide. Whereas however in the latter case the amount of carbon dioxide evolved is almost equal to the oxygen absorbed, in the case of the fatty seeds much less carbon dioxide is given out than would correspond to the volume of oxygen absorbed, so that the total volume of gas above the seeds diminishes.

The same change in the relation of oxygen intake to carbon dioxide output is found under certain conditions in animals. During hibernation, as Pembrey has shown, the marmot has a very low respiratory quotient, which may not be greater than 0·3 or 0·4. This means that the animal takes in more oxygen than the carbon dioxide which it gives out, and this intake of oxygen can be so marked as to cause an appreciable increase in the weight of the animal, which under such circumstances is literally living on air. This retention of oxygen can only be explained by assuming that there is a conversion of substances containing a small amount of oxygen into substances containing a larger amount of oxygen going on in the body, such a conversion as that of fats into carbohydrates. Just as the high respiratory quotient obtained from a marmot during the period of putting on fat was shown to be associated with a conversion of carbohydrate into fat, so does the abnormally low quotient obtained during hibernation indicate the reverse change of fat into carbohydrate.

The same conversion has been alleged to take place in certain cases of

diabetes. In many cases when the diabetic animal is living on a purely protein diet, a uniform ratio has been found to exist between the glucose or dextrose and the nitrogen excreted.

$$\frac{D}{N} \text{ equals generally } 2{\cdot}8.$$

In certain other cases a constant D : N ratio of 3·65 has been found. The former represents a conversion of 45 per cent., the latter of 58 per cent., of protein into sugar. In a few cases however, even during complete starvation, the ratio D : N has been found to be much greater than that given above and to amount to as much as 10 or 12. These animals are stated to be practically free from carbohydrates, so that the sugar excreted in the urine can come only from the breakdown of proteins or fats. It is impossible by any means whatever to break up a protein molecule so as to get from it ten times as much dextrose as corresponds to the nitrogen, and Pflüger concludes that in cases where such a high D : N ratio exists the dextrose must have been derived by a conversion of the fats of the body. This conclusion is by no means generally accepted (cp. p. 852). If correct, it would bear out the general statement made above, namely, that in the living body practically all the chemical changes are reversible, and that the living cell can so regulate the conditions of the reaction that the reversible reaction becomes practically complete in either direction, the direction being determined by the needs of the body at the time.

Accepting this generalisation, the chemical mechanism by which fats are converted into carbohydrates must be the reverse of that by which carbohydrates are changed into fats. The 2-carbon group split off from the large fatty molecules would be utilised for the building up of the sugar molecule. We know that such a synthesis can take place from such simple groups as formic, glycollic, or glyceric aldehyde. Though it is impossible to deny to any cell of the body the power of effecting the conversion of fats into carbohydrates, or carbohydrates into fats, the chief centre for such conversions is probably the chemical factory of the body, namely, the liver. It is significant that in the course of fatal diabetes, in which the fat disappears entirely from the body, and there is wasting of practically all the tissues, the liver is the only organ which retains its weight unchanged. During this disease there has been an enormous amount of work done in the conversion of proteins and possibly of fats into carbohydrates which could not be utilised by the body, and the large size of the liver at death suggests that the work of transformation has been performed by this organ.

SECTION IV

THE METABOLISM OF CARBOHYDRATES

All the carbohydrates which are taken in with the food are ultimately transformed in the alimentary tract, or in its walls, into the three monosaccharides, glucose, fructose, and galactose. These three, together with mannose, are the only sugars which are directly fermentable and directly assimilable by higher animals. A consideration of their structural formulæ shows that they are fairly easily interconvertible, galactose presenting the greatest divergence from the general type. This conversion actually takes place in watery solution. If a solution of any one be left for some months, it will be found to contain all four at the end.

Since these monosaccharides, for the greater part glucose, must enter the blood in large quantities during the absorption of a heavy carbohydrate meal, one would expect to find a greater proportion in the blood during such a meal than during a period of starvation. The amount of reducing sugar in the blood however is practically constant, and varies between 0·1 and 0·15 per cent.

Searching for the origin of this constant proportion of reducing sugar, Claude Bernard found that the blood of the hepatic vein in a fasting animal contained more sugar than the blood taken at the same time from the portal vein. Although the reliability of this experimental result has been put in doubt by more recent investigators, it was important in that it attracted Bernard's attention to the liver. If the liver be taken from an animal which has been dead for some time, and extracted with water, the extract is found to contain a large quantity of reducing sugar (glucose). If however it be removed immediately the animal is dead, its vessels washed out with ice-cold saline fluid, and it be then cut up and thrown into boiling water, ground and extracted, the extract, after separation of the coagulable proteins, contains hardly a trace of sugar, and no more than is present in the blood. The fluid is however opalescent; and Bernard found that this opalescence was due to the presence of a substance at that time new to science, belonging to the class of polysaccharides. This substance he called *glycogen*, *i. e.* the sugar-former.

After a carbohydrate meal, glycogen may be present in very large amounts in the liver, up to 12 per cent. of the weight of the fresh liver. From its solution in water it can be thrown down by the addition of alcohol to 60 per cent. When collected and dried, it forms a snow-white powder,

tasteless and odourless, with a formula identical with that of starch, viz. $C_6H_{10}O_5$. Like starch, it is hydrolysed by the action of acids and superheated water, or of amylolytic ferments, into dextrins, maltose, and finally glucose. It gives with iodine a mahogany-red colour, which disappears on boiling, but returns again on cooling.

It is not possible to extract the whole of the glycogen from a tissue by merely boiling it with water. Külz introduced on this account the method of dissolving the tissues in caustic alkali, then throwing down the protein with phosphotungstic acid, and in the filtrate precipitating the glycogen with alcohol. This method has been modified by Pflüger as follows: 100 grm. of the tissue (liver or muscle) are heated with 100 c.c. caustic potash containing 60 to 70 per cent. KHO for twenty-four hours in the water bath. The solution is then cooled, diluted with 200 c.c. of water, and treated with 800 c.c. alcohol of 96 per cent. The precipitate of glycogen is filtered off, and washed several times with 66 per cent. alcohol. The precipitate of glycogen is now washed with a little water into a small beaker, neutralised carefully with acetic acid, and then introduced into a 100 c.c. flask. To the solution 5 c.c. of hydrochloric acid of 1·19 sp. gr. are added, and the mixture is made up to 85 c.c. The flask is then heated in the water bath for three hours. By this means the whole of the glycogen is converted into glucose, which can be estimated by Fehling's method or by Allihn's method. In practice it is more accurate to estimate the glycogen in the form of sugar than to weigh it directly. If large quantities of glycogen are expected in the tissue, the inversion of the glycogen must be carried out in a larger beaker, and only an aliquot portion taken for titration.

The large amount of sugar found in the liver which has been left in the body is due to the conversion of glycogen into glucose. This conversion has been variously ascribed to the activity of the surviving liver-cells, or to the action of an amylase ferment present in the liver-cells. That it is really a ferment action is proved by the fact that the liver may be dehydrated with alcohol, dried and powdered, and kept for months in this condition without any alteration occurring in the glycogen. If however the coagulated liver be mixed with water and allowed to remain at the temperature of the body for some hours, the glycogen is found to disappear and give place to glucose.

FORMATION OF GLYCOGEN

Glycogen is most readily formed from the carbohydrates of the food. In order to obtain a large amount from the liver, the animal is fed twelve to twenty-four hours previously on a meal which is rich in carbohydrates. Not all carbohydrates will give rise to the formation of glycogen. Only those which we have mentioned as directly assimilable, *i. e.* which will give rise in the alimentary tract to mannose, glucose, fructose, or galactose, will cause an increased formation of glycogen. The conversion involves a direct polymerisation of the glucose, produced either directly from the foods or by a molecular rearrangement taking place in one of the other three of these monosaccharides.

Glycogen can also be formed from the proteins of the food, or from the products of their disintegration, the amino-acids. By means which we

shall consider shortly, it is possible to free the liver of animals entirely from glycogen: if such animals be fed on a diet of washed fibrin or of pure caseinogen, or even on the ultimate products of pancreatic digestion of proteins (containing therefore only amino-acids), and be killed shortly afterwards, the liver is found to contain glycogen. It does not seem to be possible for the liver to manufacture glycogen out of fats. At any rate, that is the interpretation which is generally placed on experiments on feeding with fats. In these experiments it is found that if fats be administered to an animal after the liver has been freed from glycogen, although the liver may store up fats it does not store up any glycogen.

If an animal be starved, the glycogen gradually disappears from the liver, although even at the end of ten or twelve days' complete deprivation of food small traces of glycogen may still be found in this organ. If starvation be combined with hard work; if, for instance, a dog be made to drag about a milk-cart on the second day of the starvation period, its liver becomes quite free from glycogen. The same disappearance of glycogen may be produced by any means which evoke an increased muscular activity, *e. g.* poisoning with strychnine. Of the various reserve materials which are available, the carbohydrate is the first to be called upon to meet the increased needs of the tissues during functional activity, such as muscular work or increased heat production. Thus the glycogen rapidly disappears from the liver of a rabbit which has been immersed in a cold bath.

The glycogen of the liver represents a reserve material analogous to the reserve carbohydrates stored up as starch in different parts of plants. When the blood is loaded with carbohydrates, a considerable proportion is laid down as the inert polysaccharide glycogen. As soon as the supply of sugar to the blood is withdrawn, the tissues continue to use the sugar of the blood, which is made up at the expense of the glycogen in the liver. In every liver-cell therefore, a twofold process is always going on, namely, a building up of glycogen by the activity of the liver-cells, and a breaking-down of glycogen under the action of the ferment formed in the liver-cells. Which of these two processes preponderates depends, in the normal animal, on the percentage amount of sugar in the blood which is circulating through the organ.

On account of the importance of glycogen as a reserve material it is produced and stored up in almost all growing tissues, to be utilised in their subsequent development. Thus it is found in large quantities in the placenta during a certain period, in fœtal muscles, and in various other situations. It is found in yeast, in oysters, and in the muscles of the body generally. In fœtal muscles it may amount to as much as 40 per cent. of the total dried solids. The glycogen of the adult muscle is apparently utilised during muscular work, and diminishes in amount with activity of the muscle. In adult muscles it never reaches anything like the percentage which is found in the liver. The average amounts found by Schöndorf in the different tissues were as follows:

	Maximum per cent. of fresh tissue	Minimum per cent. of fresh tissue
Liver	18·69	7·300
Muscle	3·72	0·720
Heart	1·32	0·104
Bone	1·90	0·197
Intestines	1·84	0·026
Skin	1·68	0·090
Blood	0·0066	0·0016

THE UTILISATION OF SUGAR IN THE BODY

Arterial blood is always found to contain between 0·12 and 0·15 per cent. of sugar in the form of glucose. The same amount is found whether the blood be taken from an animal after a heavy carbohydrate meal or from one in a condition of complete starvation. The constancy of the sugar content of the blood suggests that this substance is a necessary constituent of the circulating fluid, necessary, that is to say, for the nutrition of the tissues. That it is being used up in all the processes of the body is shown by the immediate alteration in the respiratory quotient which occurs when the food is changed from a mixed diet to one consisting mainly of carbohydrate. An important factor in the maintenance of a constant sugar content in the blood is the reconversion of the stored-up glycogen of the liver into sugar. The glycogen is not however the sole source of the sugar, since in complete starvation the sugar content of the blood remains constant even after the last traces of glycogen have disappeared from the liver. If the liver be cut out of the body or removed from the circulation, during the few hours that the animal survives there is a steady diminution in the blood sugar, pointing to the liver being the chief, if not the sole, source of the blood sugar. In some animals, *e. g.* the carnivora, it would seem that the liver can continue to supply sugar to the blood on a diet which includes only proteins and fats, and we have already seen that in such animals glycogen itself can be stored up at the expense of protein. It is doubtful whether a perfectly normal existence is possible in man in the total absence of carbohydrates from the food, though there is no doubt that in the northern nations, *e. g.* the Eskimos, the amount of carbohydrate consumed is very small in comparison with the fats and proteins. During muscular exercise the increased output of energy is associated with a corresponding increase in the absorption of oxygen and in the output of carbon dioxide, pointing to a consumption of carbohydrate and fat in the contracting muscles. We might therefore assume that sugar is being normally released by the liver into the blood-stream so as to maintain the proportion of this substance in the blood at a certain level, and that the sugar is as constantly being taken up and oxidised in the muscles, where it serves as a source of energy. According to Chauveau and Kaufmann the venous blood flowing from a contracting muscle contains less sugar than the arterial blood flowing to the muscle.

A similar consumption of glucose occurs in the isolated contracting mammalian heart when fed with Ringer's fluid containing a small trace of glucose. A heart, fed with blood and performing a normal amount of work, may use about 4 mg. sugar per gramme of heart muscle per hour. That the question of utilisation of sugar by the tissues is highly complex is shown by a study of the conditions under which sugar may appear in the urine. We learn thereby to appreciate to some extent the significance of carbohydrates both as sources of energy and as foods for the tissues, though we are still a long way from unravelling all the changes which the sugar must undergo in the cell before it appears once again in the oxidised products, carbon dioxide and water.

GLYCOSURIA

Normal urine always contains a small proportion of sugar, about 1 part per 1000, *i. e.* about the same as the blood itself. For the detection of these small traces of sugar in the urine special methods are necessary. The term glycosuria is not employed unless sugar appears in quantities large enough to give a reaction with Fehling's solution or with the phenylhydrazine test. Such a condition may easily be brought about by the injection of sugar subcutaneously or intravenously. It is then found that any trace of the disaccharides, cane sugar or lactose, introduced in the circulation, is excreted in the urine. A rather larger quantity of maltose may be injected slowly without appearing in the urine, since the blood serum contains a ferment, maltase, which converts the maltose into glucose. Glucose, fructose, mannose, or galactose, if introduced slowly into the circulation, are stored up as glycogen in the liver. If however the percentage of sugar in the blood rises above 2 parts per 1000, the sugar (generally glucose) appears in the urine. When this condition of hyperglycæmia (excess of sugar in the blood) is set up, the concentration of the sugar in the urine no longer corresponds to that in the blood. If the blood contains, *e. g.* 4 parts per 1000, the urine may contain from 2 to 7 per cent. of sugar. Up to a certain point then, blood-sugar is kept back by the kidneys as a necessary food material for the tissues. Any excess above the normal apparently acts as a foreign substance and is excreted by the kidneys in a concentration much greater than that in which it exists in the blood serum.

(1) **ALIMENTARY GLYCOSURIA.** A state of hyperglycæmia may be induced by the administration of abnormally large quantities of glucose by the mouth. The amount has to exceed in a healthy individual 100 grm. in order that it shall appear in the urine. In certain individuals the power of assimilating glucose may be deficient so that an alimentary glycosuria may be caused by any over-indulgence in carbohydrate food. In the healthy person it is hardly possible to produce glycosuria by the administration of starchy foods, since the liver can store up the excess of glucose as fast as it is produced from the starch by digestion and absorbed into the blood stream.

(2) **DIABETIC PUNCTURE.** It was shown by Claude Bernard that puncture of the floor of the fourth ventricle in rabbits is often followed

immediately by an excessive secretion of urine and the appearance of sugar in this fluid. The glycosuria may last from twenty-four to thirty hours. If at the end of this time the animal be killed, the liver is found to be free from glycogen. A sample of blood taken during the height of glycosuria may contain from 3 to 4 parts of sugar per 1000. In order that the experiment may succeed it is important that the animal be previously well fed. If the puncture or 'piqûre' be carried out on an animal that has been starved or whose liver has been freed by any means from glycogen, no glycosuria is produced. It is evident that the effect of the puncture has been to cause a rapid conversion of the glycogen previously stored up in the liver into glucose. The glucose so formed escapes into the blood, raising the sugar content of this fluid above the normal, and the excess is immediately excreted by the kidneys together with an increased amount of water. A similar temporary hyperglycæmia and glycosuria may be brought about by fright, struggling or the administration of anæsthetics; but the effect is absent, if both splanchnic nerves have been previously divided above the suprarenals. It has been shown (Elliott, Cannon) that all these conditions are associated with an increased discharge of adrenaline from the medulla of the suprarenals into the circulation. Since the injection of adrenaline itself causes a condition of diabetes similar in all its limitations and aspects to 'puncture diabetes,' it is now generally believed that the two conditions are identical, and that the diabetic puncture acts through the splanchnic nerves on the suprarenals, setting free adrenaline, which passing to the liver causes a rapid 'mobilisation' of the stored-up glycogen, and a consequent hyperglycæmia and glycosuria, lasting as long as the glycogen store holds out.

(3) **PHLORIDZIN DIABETES.** Phloridzin is a glucoside extracted from the root cortex of the apple-tree. It may be decomposed into a sugar and phloretin. When phloridzin or phloretin is administered by the mouth or subcutaneously, it gives rise to glycosuria, unaccompanied, at first at any rate, by any other symptom. The urine may contain from 5 to 15 per cent. of glucose. The glycosuria induced in this way differs from the forms already described in the fact that it is not due to hyperglycæmia. Analysis of the blood shows that the sugar is slightly diminished rather than increased. The excretion of glucose seems to be due to a specific effect of the drug upon the kidneys. If cannulæ be placed in the two ureters so as to collect the urine from each kidney separately, and a small dose of phloridzin be then injected by a hypodermic syringe into the left renal artery, the urine flowing from the left ureter will in two minutes be found to contain sugar, while the urine from the right kidney will not contain any sugar for another five or ten minutes. The effect therefore is rapidly to drain off sugar from the blood. In order to maintain the sugar content of the blood at its normal height, the liver must manufacture fresh sugar to take the place of that lost by the kidneys. In the first instance the liver will utilise its stored-up glycogen for this purpose. If a dose of phloridzin be given to each of two animals and one animal killed as soon as the excretion of sugar is coming to an end, the liver will be found free from glycogen. If now a

second dose of phloridzin be given to the other, which may be regarded as free from glycogen, glycosuria is produced as before, and the excretion of sugar can be continued indefinitely by repeated administration of the drug. So long as sufficient food is given, including carbohydrates, the loss of sugar does not entail any increase in the destruction of the tissues; but if the drug be administered to starving animals the waste of sugar has to be made good at the expense of material other than carbohydrate. The source of the sugar excreted under these circumstances is the protein of the tissues. The nitrogen excreted in the urine rises in amount in proportion to the quantity of sugar excreted, and there is a constant ratio between the amount of nitrogen and the amount of sugar excreted in the urine. In different experiments this ratio D : N varies from 2·8 : 1 to 3·6 : 1. If meat be administered to such starving animals with glycosuria, the D : N ratio does not alter; the amount of nitrogen in the urine increases, but the sugar increases in the same proportion. The sugar production is therefore proportional to the protein metabolism and must be derived from protein. The source of the sugar is the amino-acids of which the protein is composed. It has been shown by Lusk, Embden, and Dakin that the following amino-acids yield large amounts of glucose when administered to a phloridzinised animal: glycine, alanine, serine, cystine, aspartic acid, glutamic acid, ornithine, proline and arginine. We must assume that these amino-acids produced in digestion or by the autolysis of the tissues undergo deamination and that the sugar is formed by a process of synthesis from the oxyacids thereby produced. On the other hand leucine, tyrosine and phenylalanine give no increase in the output of sugar. It is however just these amino-acids which seem to follow the line of fat metabolism, since they are converted into aceto-acetic acid when perfused through a dog's liver; and the administration of fats to phloridzinised dogs is also without effect on the sugar excretion. The drain of sugar from the organism determined by the action of phloridzin on the kidneys thus necessitates a continued breakdown of the nitrogenous tissues of the body in the effort to maintain a normal supply of sugar to the tissues, and unless excessive feeding be employed the animal must waste. The great increase in the nitrogenous output resulting from the condition of phloridzin diabetes is shown in the following table (Lusk):

	Goat			Dog		
	D	N	D : N	D	N	D · N
Fasting . . .	—	3·72	—	—	4·04	—
Fasting . . .	—	3·71	—	—	4·17	—
Fasting and diabetic .	20·33	4·90	4·15	63·55	12·66	5·02 [1]
Fasting and diabetic .	26·08	8·83	2·95	65·30	18·76	3·38
Fasting and diabetic .	23·39	8·06	2·90	65·84	18·57	3·54
Fasting and diabetic .	19·01	6·84	2·78	64·60	17·29	3·74

[1] The high D : N ratio on the first day is evidently due to the conversion of the glycogen still present in the body.

The constant drain of sugar will in time involve a relative carbohydrate starvation of the tissues, which will make good their energy requirements as much as possible at the expense of protein and fat. The administration of meat will diminish the fat metabolism to a certain extent, but since it does not alter the D : N ratio, it would appear that the latter does not depend in any way on the quantity of fat undergoing oxidation. This is shown in the following respiration experiment (Mandel and Lusk) on a dog with phloridzin glycosuria, in which the metabolism during starvation and after ingestion of meat was determined :

	D·N	Calories from protein	Calories from fat	Calories total
Fasting . . .	3·69	80·2	274·4	354·6
300 grm. meat .	3·55	161·9	261·7	423·6

The enormous waste of energy involved in such a constant loss of sugar will be apparent if we consider that a D : N ration of 3·65 means that 52·5 per cent. of the energy in the protein taken as food or set free from the tissues is lost to the organism in the form of glucose. According to Rubner 28·5 of the energy of meat protein is not utilised in the body, but is liberated simply as heat (specific dynamic action). If we accept this view and add this 28·5 per cent. lost as heat to the 52·5 per cent. lost as sugar, there would remain a balance of only 19 per cent. actually available for the vital activities of the tissues. It is not to be wondered at that the nitrogenous metabolism may be increased three- to five-fold as a result of the artificial induction of the diabetic condition.

The carbohydrate starvation has other deleterious effects, since we have evidence that a certain amount of carbohydrate food is a necessary condition for both fat and protein metabolism. The necessity of carbohydrate for the assimilation of protein is brought out in an experiment by Cathcart. It has long been known that carbohydrate administration has a sparing effect on protein metabolism. If an animal or man be starved, the nitrogenous output sinks to a certain level and there remains practically stationary. If now pure carbohydrate food be administered sufficient to meet the energy requirements of the animal or man (about 35 Calories per kilo), there is at once a rapid drop in the output of nitrogen and therefore in the protein waste of the tissues. Fat has a much slighter or no sparing effect on the nitrogenous metabolism. Indeed in certain experiments by Cathcart the administration of fat caused an actual rise in the nitrogenous output.

The importance of carbohydrates is borne out by the results of feeding animals with proteins which have been digested with pancreatic juice until the biuret reaction has disappeared. After Loewi had shown that it was possible to maintain nitrogenous equilibrium in dogs with such a digest, Lesser was unable to confirm his results. But it has been pointed out that the essential difference between the two observers was that Loewi gave an abundant supply of carbohydrates with the digest, while Lesser omitted carbohydrates altogether and administered fats and protein digest alone.

The evidence that the carbohydrates play a necessary part in the metabolic history of fats has already been mentioned (*v.* p. 836). We have seen that in the absence of carbohydrates the last stages in the oxidation of fats make default, so that the partially oxidised fatty acids, oxybutyric acid and aceto-acetic acid, accumulate in large quantities and are excreted as such or as acetone in the urine. Not only does this involve a loss of energy to the body, but these organic acids require other bases for their neutralisation. Up to a certain point they will be excreted in the urine in combination with the fixed alkalies. When these are no longer present in sufficient quantity, the acids will be excreted in combination with ammonia, so that the ammonia of the urine is largely increased. If the condition of carbohydrate starvation be continued, this mechanism of neutralisation is insufficient and the phenomena of acidosis dyspnœa and coma ensue, resulting in the death of the animal.

Another effect of continued administration of phloridzin is fat infiltration of the liver. This is merely a result of the carbohydrate starvation. A similar condition of fat infiltration can be brought about by feeding with pure protein *plus* fat. The liver seems to be able to act as a storehouse either of fat or of carbohydrate, so that there is an inverse ratio between the amount of glycogen and the amount of fat stored up in the liver at any given time. It has been shown that the fat in the liver under these circumstances is simply fat which has been transferred to this organ from the ordinary fat depôts, subcutaneous tissues, etc., of the body.

(4) **PANCREATIC DIABETES.** Von Mering and Minkowski found that total excision of the pancreas gives rise to a severe and rapidly fatal diabetes, which presents many similarities to the severer cases of diabetes in man. Owing to the fact that the tissues of a diabetic are extremely prone to infection, it is often difficult after total excision of the pancreas, when diabetes has been set up, to procure healing of the wounds without suppuration. The operation is therefore usually carried out in two stages. In the first stage one small portion of the tail of the pancreas is transplanted under the skin of the abdomen, while the rest of the gland is excised. Such animals do not get diabetes and therefore recover quickly from the operation. When the wounds are quite healed the transplanted portion is removed through a simple skin incision. The second operation is followed in a few hours by the appearance of a large amount of sugar, 5 to 10 per cent., in the urine. The glycosuria persists, the animal rapidly wastes, and finally dies at the end of two or three weeks from diabetic coma. From the nature of the operation it is evident that the condition of diabetes observed under these circumstances has nothing to do with the presence or absence of the pancreatic secretion from the intestine, since this secretion is cut off at the first operation, and diabetes does not make its appearance until the second small portion of the gland is removed. Moreover ligature of the ducts of the pancreas or obstruction of the ducts by the injection of melted paraffin does not give rise to diabetes. The excretion of sugar by the kidneys is due to an increase in the sugar content of the blood. The blood-sugar may amount to between 4 and

5 parts per 1000. This state of hyperglycæmia and the excretion of sugar in the urine persist even when the animal is completely starved or is fed on a pure protein or protein *plus* fat diet. Moreover, as in phloridzin glycosuria, we find a constant ratio between the sugar and the urinary nitrogen, the D : N ratio being usually about 2·8. The administration of protein food to an animal previously starved increases the output of nitrogen, but increases at the same time the output of glucose. No similar increase in the glucose excretion is observed as a result of the administration of fat. We must conclude therefore that, in the absence of carbohydrate from the diet, the excess of sugar in the blood as well as that escaping by the urine is derived from the breakdown of the proteins of the tissues. On the other hand, the power of the animal to assimilate or utilise carbohydrate is diminished and sometimes entirely abolished, so that glucose administered to a starving animal with pancreatic diabetes may appear quantitatively in the urine. The amount absorbed by the alimentary canal is simply added to the amount which would have been excreted if no food had been given. In most cases, at any rate during the first week after total extirpation, there is apparently still some power of carbohydrate assimilation, since administration of glucose causes a transitory rise in the respiratory quotient (Moorhouse). Glycogen disappears entirely from the liver; but the muscles, especially the heart, may contain a normal or an increased amount of glycogen. There is a rapid wasting of all the tissues of the body, including the fats and proteins, and finally the animal is destroyed by the accumulation of the products of imperfect oxidation of the fatty acids.

It is still very difficult to say definitely why removal of the pancreas brings about this condition or what disturbance of metabolism is primarily responsible for it. Two views have been put forward. According to one, the primary disturbance is the diminished or absent power of utilisation of sugar by the tissues; according to the second, an increased production of sugar by the liver. There is no doubt that in the diabetic animal the power of utilising carbohydrates is deficient. This is shown by the low respiratory quotient and by the fact that administration of glucose to the animal causes an almost corresponding increase in the amount of glucose excreted in the urine. But the loss of power of utilisation is not absolute, at any rate in the first week of the disorder. Administration of glucose causes a slight and temporary rise in the respiratory quotient, and if 20 gms. of glucose be administered, it is often possible to recover only about 15 to 18 gms. from the urine. Moreover the increased amount of glycogen in the heart muscle of diabetic dogs points to a persistent power of assimilation of sugar by this organ. The heart from a diabetic animal, if fed with its own blood, can be shown to use up not only the sugar circulating in the blood but also its store of glycogen, and this utilisation is especially marked if the heart be made to work excessively by raising the arterial resistance and administering adrenaline; but taken as a whole the power of utilising glucose is very inferior to that possessed by normal animals. One of the most striking features of the condition caused by total

extirpation of the pancreas is the rapid diminution of the fat depôts of the body, attended by a marked condition of lipæmia and accumulation of fat in the liver. The blood is so full of fat globules that it has been compared in appearance to strawberries and cream. One of the first effects of extirpation of the pancreas is therefore a rapid fat mobilisation, and the respiratory quotient agrees with that obtained when the metabolic needs of the body are being mainly satisfied at the expense of the fat. The sugar of the urine, after the depletion of the glycogen store of the liver, is derived from the protein, and the protein tissues of the body therefore diminish as rapidly as the fat stores. On the theory of deficient utilisation, it is thought that these tissues suffer from carbohydrate starvation, even though they are bathed in a medium containing an increased amount of sugar, and that the liver in response to some call from the tissues turns first its glycogen and later on the proteins of the body into sugar to supply this lack—all to no purpose however since the tissues are unable to avail themselves of the sugar or ferment.

According to the second view, the primary disorder affects only the liver. This organ is freed from some restraining influence on its power of manufacturing sugar from glycogen and from protein, so that the blood is flooded with sugar, which is therefore excreted in the urine. Any deficient utilisation of the sugar would be regarded as secondary to a poisoning of the tissues by this overloading of their nutrient fluids with sugar. It is certain that the sugar production in diabetes is excessive, as is shown by the rapid wasting of the protein tissues to give rise to the sugar; and that this over-production takes place in the liver is proved by the fact that extirpation of this organ in the diabetic animal causes a rapid disappearance of the sugar from the blood.

According to the Vienna school (Rudinger, Falta, and others), a close interaction exists between the thyroid, the suprarenals, the pancreas, and the liver; the thyroid to a slight extent, the pancreas still more, inhibiting the glycogenic functions of the liver, while the suprarenals through their excretion of adrenalin stimulate this function. Glycæmia and glycosuria caused by extirpation of the pancreas would therefore be ascribed to an unchecked activity of the suprarenals. An important difference however seems to exist between the two conditions. Adrenalin glycosuria comes to an end when the glycogen store of the liver is exhausted, whereas pancreatic diabetes continues until the death of the animal, long after all traces of glycogen have disappeared from the liver. We do not yet know how the pancreas affects sugar production or utilisation in the normal animal. It is generally assumed that it secretes into the blood stream a hormone which may, according to the view of the nature of diabetes which we adopt, pass to the tissues and enable them to utilise sugar, or pass to the liver and inhibit the sugar production in this organ. A very small portion of the pancreas is sufficient for this purpose, but we have been unable to imitate the action of the pancreas still in vascular connection with the body by injection or administration of extracts of this organ. Even connection of a healthy

animal with a diabetic animal by means of its blood vessels, so as to allow the healthy blood, presumably provided with the products of secretion of the pancreas, to circulate through the diabetic animal, does not abolish the condition of hyperglycæmia in the latter, though connection of the portal vein of the healthy animal with that of the diabetic animal has, according to Hédon, had the effect of stopping the condition of glycosuria. Further work is required on this point.

We thus see that the pancreas has a two-fold function, namely, the secretion of a digestive juice into the intestine and the exercise by some

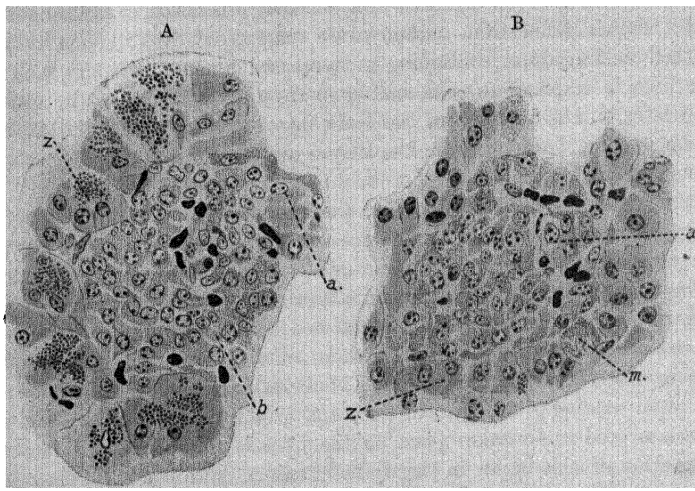


FIG. 367. (A) and (B) show an islet with the surrounding tissue in a resting gland (A) and after exhaustion with secretin (B). In (A) the secreting acini are charged with zymogen granules. In (B) these have entirely disappeared. On the other hand no change is noticeable in the cells of the islet. In the latter the granular cells are the *b* cells, and the clear hyaline cells are the *a* cells, (*m*) showing what are called Minkowski granules. The granulation of this cell is regarded by Bensley as due to postmortem changes.

means or other of an influence on general metabolism, the absence of which is followed by the supervention of diabetes. Corresponding with this two-fold function, two kinds of structures are present in the gland, the secreting acini and the islets of Langerhans. These latter, though arising in connection with the ducts, are solid masses of cells and have no communication with the lumen of the ducts. According to Bensley and Lane the islet cells may be divided into two varieties which have been given the name of A and B cells, according as their granules are fixed respectively by alcoholic or watery solutions. It has been shown both by Bensley and by Homans that these cells undergo no alterations when the gland is excited to secrete by the injection of secretin. On the other hand, if four-fifths of the pancreas be removed, the remaining part may gradually become inadequate to prevent diabetes, and Homans has shown that when under these circumstances diabetes supervenes, the granules disappear from the

B cells. Changes have also been found in the islets of Langerhans in fatal cases of diabetes in man. It seems therefore probable that what we may term, for lack of a better word, the *antidiabetic* functions of the pancreas, are associated with and dependent on the integrity of the islets of Langerhans.

(5) **DIABETES IN MAN.** In its severer forms the diabetes of man resembles very closely that produced in the dog by total extirpation of the pancreas. The output of urine is largely increased and the frequency of micturition is often the first symptom noticed. On examination the urine, though light in colour, is of a high specific gravity, 1030 to 1035, and may contain from 5 to 10 per cent. of sugar. The appetite is largely increased, but in spite of the large amount of food taken the body wastes. The excessive quantity of fluid lost by the body gives rise to a constant thirst. The patient may die after some months or years in a condition of diabetic coma. Warning of the onset of this condition is given by the rise of ammonia in the urine and by the appearance of oxybutyric and diacetic acids. The breath may smell of acetone, and this substance may also be present in the urine. On the other hand, the diabetic state is attended by diminished resistance of the tissues to infection. A pimple may become a carbuncle; a slight sore on the foot may give rise to a rapidly spreading gangrene of the lower extremity; tubercular infection of the lungs spreads rapidly to the whole organ so as to stimulate pneumonia. The patient may thus die of some such intercurrent infection before the onset of coma. In a few cases the pancreas is found to be atrophied or diseased, but in the large majority no marked pathological change is to be observed in this organ. Yet the condition is essentially similar to that which occurs in pancreatic diabetes. The radical defect is the inability, relative or complete, of the organism to assimilate carbohydrate. We may find all grades between such cases and those in which there is still a considerable power of assimilation. In order to determine the grade of the disorder, it is usual to give a test diet with a certain proportion of carbohydrate, *e.g.* 100 grm. of bread with meat, bacon, eggs, butter, green vegetables, cheese, lettuce, coffee and wine. If the urine remains free from sugar on this diet, the diabetes is mild in character. More bread may then be added to the diet from time to time until sugar appears in the urine and the limit of tolerance for carbohydrate has been reached. In many cases the sugar will disappear from the urine on the administration of a diet consisting entirely of proteins and fats. When this has been effected, carbohydrates may be added in small proportions to the diet until the limit is found at which the assimilatory powers of the patient are reached. It seems that administration of any carbohydrate in excess of this limit is of disadvantage to the patient and hastens the progress of his disorder. When the power of assimilating carbohydrates is entirely abolished, the prognosis is almost absolutely fatal. This point may be determined in two ways. In the first place, a patient with no power of carbohydrate assimilation will continue to excrete sugar in the urine on a pure protein-fat diet, and the D : N ratio will be 2·8 or higher. Information may also

be obtained from a study of his respiratory quotient. The production of dextrose from protein involves the absorption of oxygen. Oxygen will therefore be taken in which will not reappear as carbon dioxide in the expired air. In severe cases of diabetes therefore, the respiratory quotient will fall below that representing fat metabolism, *i. e.* below 0·7: In most cases of diabetes, where there is still some power of assimilating carbohydrate and of storing up glycogen, the respiratory quotient will be found approximately normal. A very low respiratory quotient is a sign of the severity of the disorder.

This study of the conditions of carbohydrate metabolism shows how all three classes of foodstuffs co-operate in the maintenance of the chemical processes which lie at the root of the existence and the activities of living organisms. We see how fallacious were the ideas that the proteins alone were necessary for life and that protoplasm was simply living protein. Protoplasm, *i. e.* the material substrate of life, must be regarded as a complex in which proteins, fats, carbohydrates, nucleins, salts, and water all play a part and of which each is an essential constituent. In the higher animals proteins are necessary to furnish the proteins of the tissues, and the food must contain just those amino-acids which are requisite for the building up of the proteins characteristic of each separate tissue. Moreover certain groups of the protein molecule appear to be destined to serve as mother-substances of hormones and other chemical compounds which play a dynamic rather than a static part in the phenomena of life, and supply conditions of activity rather than material for the production of energy. The carbohydrates not only act as sources of energy, but are necessary to the building up of the proteins into the protoplasmic complex. Without them moreover, this complex cannot properly utilise the fat contained in itself or supplied in its food. On the other hand, the carbohydrates by themselves are not available as food, but require some connecting link, which may be protein or nitrogenous in character, to enable their association with the active part of the protoplasm and their utilisation by oxidation. At the same time there is a certain possibility of interconversion between these different substances; sugar may be formed from proteins, fats from carbohydrates. On the other hand, the formation of fats from proteins is apparently impossible in the cells of the higher animals, and the evidence for the formation of sugar from fat is limited to the study of the respiratory quotient in hibernating animals. With the exception of a few cases quoted by Pflüger and von Noorden, no support for such a conversion is obtained from the conditions observed in the glycosuria caused by the administration of phloridzin or by extirpation of the pancreas.

CHAPTER XII

THE BLOOD

In the unicellular animals and in the lowest metazoa, the cells are bathed by the medium in which the organisms live, and are therefore exposed to all the changes in the composition of this fluid which may be brought about by cosmic events. With the evolution of a body cavity filled with fluid, the tissue cells are set free from the necessity of adapting their metabolism to wide ranges of chemical composition, being bathed by an internal medium which is maintained practically constant in its characters for any given type. With increasing differentiation the fluid of the cœlom, which may be called blood, becomes enclosed in branching systems of tubes, and its circulation is provided for by the development of contractile chambers at some point or points of the tubes. In all the higher animals, the blood, the common medium and means of exchange for all parts of the body, circulates through a closed system of tubes, a constant flow being kept up by the action of the heart. It is separated from the tissue elements themselves by the walls of the blood vessels. The free interchange of material between blood and tissues is facilitated by the tenuity of the vascular wall. The interstices of the tissues contain a fluid, the 'tissue fluid,' any excess of which is drained off by special channels known as lymphatics and carried back to the blood. Interchange between the blood and the tissue cells can be effected partly by diffusion, partly by a direct exudation or filtration of the fluid parts of the blood with certain of its constituents through the capillary walls. Since the function of the blood is to act as the common nutritive medium of all parts of the body, it has to convey food materials from the digestive organs and oxygen from the lungs to the tissues. From these it receives in exchange their waste products, namely, carbon dioxide and the results of nitrogenous metabolism, and carries them away to the excretory organs, such as the lungs and kidneys, by which they are eliminated. It is evident that the composition of the blood must vary from time to time and place to place according to the condition of activity and the function of the organ which it is traversing. The organs of the body are adjusted to respond to very minute changes in the composition of the circulating fluid, and add to or subtract from its constituents according as these are present in deficiency or excess. The changes are therefore kept within infinitesimal limits; in most cases they are within the limits of

errors of analysis, and we may therefore treat the blood as a fluid of approximately constant composition and qualities.

Blood obtained from a mammal is an opaque fluid varying in tint according to the vessel from which it is derived, being scarlet when taken from an artery, purplish in colour when taken from a vein, the difference being determined by the degree of oxygenation of the blood. On shaking venous blood with air, it takes up oxygen and acquires the scarlet colour characteristic of arterial blood. If examined in a thin layer under the microscope, its opacity is seen to be due to the fact that it is not homogeneous, but consists of a number of corpuscles of different kinds suspended in a light yellow transparent fluid. In order to make out the characters of these corpuscles the blood should be diluted with some 'normal' fluid, such as 0·9 per cent. sodium chloride. It is then seen to contain two classes of corpuscles. Much the most numerous are the 'red corpuscles.' These differ in appearance according as the blood is derived from a mammal or from one of the lower orders of vertebrates. In all the latter it is a nucleated cell. In the frog, for instance, it is an oval bi-convex disc containing an oval nucleus in the centre. In man and other mammals the red corpuscle is a bi-concave circular disc (Fig. 368), varying in size in different species. The average sizes of the corpuscles in man are given in the following Table:

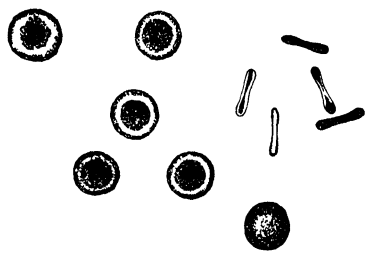


FIG. 368. Non-nucleated red blood discs of human blood. On the right of the figure the corpuscles are seen on edge. (SWALE VINCENT.)

Diameter	7·1 to 7·8 μ
Thickness (at periphery) . . .	2·5 μ
Thickness (at centre)	1·0 to 2·0 μ

In the blood of man there is an average of five million red blood discs in every cubic millimetre of blood.

The other kind of formed element, the white corpuscle or leucocyte, is present in much smaller numbers than the red corpuscle, there being in human blood an average of one leucocyte to every 500 red corpuscles. These leucocytes are colourless cells, somewhat larger than the red blood discs of man, presenting one or more nuclei and a granular or hyaline protoplasm. When examined on the warm stage they are seen to be amœboid, and many of them, like the amœba, have the power of ingesting granules of carmine, food, or dead bacteria with which they may come in contact.

In addition to these two classes, a third body is generally described under the name of 'blood platelets' or hæmatoblasts. These are especially well seen when the blood has been received directly into an excess of osmic acid. It is still doubtful whether they are pre-existent in the circulating blood or are formed in the plasma by a process of precipitation.

Unless special precautions are taken, the examination of blood obtained from a blood vessel is interfered with by the process of clotting, which ensues shortly after the blood has left the vessels. If blood be received into a beaker it is at first perfectly fluid, so that it can be poured from one beaker to another. After a space of time varying from three to eight minutes it begins to be viscous, and if poured out of the beaker leaves an adherent layer on the sides of the vessel. A minute later the whole mass of the blood becomes solid and the beaker can be inverted without spilling its contents. If a section be made of this blood clot, it is found to owe its solidity to a network of fine threads of a protein substance named

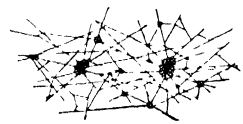


FIG. 369. Network of fibrin, after washing away the corpuscles from a film of blood that has been allowed to clot; many of the filaments radiate from little clumps of blood platelets. (SCHAFER.)

fibrin, which have formed throughout the plasma and enclosed the corpuscles in their meshes (Fig. 369). On leaving the clot for some hours, drops of yellow fluid appear on its surface and run together. The whole clot contracts, and finally there is a reduced clot floating or suspended in a yellowish fluid known as serum. If after the blood has left the vessels it be whipped with a bunch of twigs, or stirred with a glass rod, the filaments of fibrin as they are formed are deposited on the twigs. After three or four minutes the twigs can be withdrawn and the spongy fibrin collected. The blood which is left consists only of the corpuscles *plus* serum, and will not clot, since its fibrin has been removed. It is known as defibrinated blood. Since the corpuscles are apparently unchanged in the meshes of the clot and clotting can be produced in blood plasma entirely separated from corpuscles, we must look upon the process of coagulation as determined in the main by changes in the blood plasma. We can regard the blood therefore as a tissue consisting of a fluid matrix, which is extremely unstable and undergoes change when it leaves the vessels, and as having embedded in its matrix formed elements or cells of various kinds.

SECTION I

THE WHITE BLOOD CORPUSCLES

AMŒBOID cells are a constant constituent of the cœlomic fluid in all classes of animals. Even in the lower metazoa, where there is not yet a body cavity, wandering mesoderm cells are present which apparently discharge functions analogous in all respects to those of the white blood-corpuscles of mammals. On carefully examining a specimen of human blood, either fresh or in the form of a thin stained film, several varieties of these cells are seen to be present. In a fresh specimen we can distinguish the following varieties:

(*a*) A cell with a lobed nucleus and finely granular protoplasm;

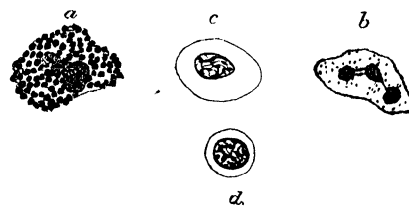


FIG. 370. Various forms of leucocytes.
a, eosinophile corpuscle; *b*, ordinary polynuclear leucocyte ('neutrophile'); *c*, hyaline corpuscle; *d*, lymphocyte.

(*b*) A small cell consisting almost entirely of a nucleus surrounded by a thin layer of protoplasm;

(*c*) A cell with a single nucleus and clear hyaline protoplasm;

(*d*) A cell with a lobed or reniform nucleus, the cytoplasm being beset with large coarsely refracting granules.

These four types are known as the finely granular or polymorphonuclear cell, the lymphocyte, the hyaline corpuscle, and the coarsely granular corpuscle.

The differentiation of the various types of leucocytes is more easily made if recourse be had to staining with mixtures of aniline dyes. This method was introduced by Ehrlich, who classified leucocytes according to the staining characters of their granules, dividing the latter into:

(*a*) Those staining with acid dyes, such as eosin—acidophile or eosinophile granulation;

(*b*) Those staining with basic dyes—basophile;

(*c*) Those staining only with a mixture of the acid and basic dyes and therefore spoken of as neutrophile.

An acid dye is generally a salt in which the colouring matter plays the part of an acid radical. Thus eosin is the sodium salt of the coloured acid tetrabrom-fluorescein. Basic dyes possess basic colour radicals. An example of this class, methylene blue, is the chloride of the coloured base tetramethyldiphenthiazine. Neutral dyes, according to Ehrlich, are those in which a colour base is combined with a colour acid, such as the eosinate of methylene blue, or the picrate of rosaniline.

In preparations stained with mixtures of these dyes we may distinguish the following types:

(1) The polymorphonuclear cells. These present a lobed nucleus, and their protoplasm contains abundant fine neutrophile granules. They form about 70 per cent. of the total leucocytes. If the specimen be overstained with eosin, the granules may take on a red stain.

(1*a*) A few cells are sometimes seen with a horseshoe or hour-glass nucleus and presenting a few neutrophile granules. These are spoken of as transitional cells, and have been supposed to represent an intermediate stage between large mononuclear or hyaline cells and the polymorphonuclear leucocyte. They do not form more than 1 per cent. of the leucocytes.

(2) The lymphocytes are small cells with a round nucleus surrounded by a thin layer of hyaline protoplasm which is free from granules. These form 23 per cent. of the leucocytes.

(3) Large mononuclear or hyaline corpuscles. These cells are two or three times the size of a red corpuscle, and possess a large oval nucleus which stains feebly with basic dyes. In normal blood not more than 2 per cent. of the leucocytes are of this type.

(4) In every well-stained blood film the eosinophile corpuscle is very evident, although forming not more than 3 per cent. of the white corpuscles. The nucleus is generally single, but is often crescent-shaped or reniform. The protoplasm is crammed with large discrete highly refractive granules which stain deeply with eosin and give micro-chemical reactions for iron as well as phosphorus. The granules, which in man, dog, and rabbit are spherical, are cuboidal in the horse, and in birds have the shape of short rods.

(5) A cell which is found with difficulty, but is apparently a normal constituent of human blood, is the basophile leucocyte. This, which is somewhat smaller than the polymorphonuclear cell, has a lobed or tri-lobed nucleus and presents a number of granules in its protoplasm which stain deeply with basic dyes. It is sometimes spoken of as a 'Mast' cell, the German term for the cell being used without translation. It does not form more than 0·5 per cent. of the total leucocytes of the blood. The granules are practically invisible in fresh specimens, in this respect presenting a contrast with the eosinophile granules. The leucocytes as a whole undergo variations in number according to the physiological state of the animal and are increased during digestion, specially of a protein

meal. They vary from one in 300 to one in 600 red corpuscles or, taken as a whole, from 18,000 to 9000 per cubic millimetre of blood.

FORMATION OF THE LEUCOCYTES

In classifying the white corpuscles of the blood, it is essential to know whether the different varieties we have described represent phases in one and the same corpuscle or a number of different cells of separate origin. The question as to the specificity of each kind of leucocyte cannot be regarded as settled. According to some observers, Gulland and others, all the leucocytes are derived from one kind of cell, namely, the lymphocyte. Ehrlich and his school, on the other hand, regard each type as forming a tissue *sui generis*, originating in separate localities and from distinct kinds of cells. Since division of the leucocytes in the blood itself appears to be an occurrence of the utmost rarity, we must locate the original seat of formation of these cells in two tissues. Lymphocytes are derived from the adenoid tissue forming the lymphatic glands and the lymph nodules surrounding so many of the mucous cavities. These lymphatic nodules present towards their centre a clearer zone, consisting of cells rather larger than those of the periphery and known as the 'germ centre.' The nuclei in these cells present a well-marked reticular arrangement, and nuclear figures are often to be seen. By the division of these cells lymphocytes are formed, pushing towards the periphery of the nodule, where they make their way into the lymph sinus and are carried slowly by the lymph into the blood. Some of these lymphocytes may possibly pass directly through the capillary wall into the blood stream.

The other tissue concerned in the formation of leucocytes is the bone marrow. This is the chief blood-forming tissue of the body, since it is responsible also for the production of all red blood corpuscles which are formed during adult life. In the red marrow are seen a number of cells known as myelocytes. These contain a single rounded nucleus and a well-marked protoplasm which may be non-granular or may contain granules, generally eosinophile in character but sometimes basophile. It is stated that all intermediate stages are to be found in the bone marrow between these 'myelocytes' and the polymorphonuclear leucocyte as well as the eosinophile leucocyte. It is certain that in the disease leukæmia, which is associated with an increased number of leucocytes in the blood, there may be an increase either of eosinophile cells or of neutrophile cells, and either condition is associated with changes in the red bone marrow. We may therefore provisionally arrange the leucocytes of the blood according to their origin as follows:

(1) Small lymphocyte derived from lymphoid tissue.

(2) Large mononuclear or hyaline corpuscle: doubtful whether derived by a growth of (1) or from a myelocyte.

(3) Polymorphonuclear leucocyte formed in bone marrow.

(4) Eosinophile cell derived from similar cells in the bone marrow. This origin of the eosinophile corpuscle is rendered more probable by the

fact that the shape of the granule, which differs from one species to another, is the same whether the cell be derived from the blood or the bone marrow.

The intermediate or transitional cell may be derived either from the lymphocyte or from a myelocyte. In many cases of leukæmia the myelocyte passes into the blood in large numbers without undergoing the changes necessary to convert it into the typical blood cell. We find then mononuclear cells which are either free from granules or contain eosinophile or basophile granules.

FUNCTIONS OF THE LEUCOCYTES

PHAGOCYTOSIS. We have seen that the leucocytes from whatever animal they be taken present two phenomena, viz. that of amœboid movement and that of ingesting foreign particles which may be presented to them. On account of this power of eating up foreign particles they are frequently spoken of as 'phagocytes,' in this respect resembling unicellular organisms and the undifferentiated cells of many kinds of tissue. All the phenomena connected with the process of *inflammation* in higher animals are directed to the assemblage of leucocytes at the spot which is the seat of injury or of infection, so that they may devour and remove either the injured tissue or the invading micro-organisms. This process plays therefore an important part in determining the immunity of any animal against infection; though in the higher animals it is assisted by a number of other mechanisms directed towards the same end, which we shall have to discuss in a subsequent chapter. The use of phagocytosis is not however confined to the protection of the organism against infection. Wherever any effete or dead tissue has to be cleared away, whether as the result of injury or in the course of metamorphosis of organs, the leucocytes play an important part. Thus in the great rearrangement of tissues which occurs in the larval state of insects, the removal of the muscle fibres which are no longer required is effected by the accumulation of phagocytes around them. The phagocytes may send processes into the muscle substance, which dissolve this tissue and then eat it up. The absorption of the tail of the tadpole is effected in the same way by means of phagocytes. In mammals, including man, the moulding of the long bone which occurs in the process of growth is effected by continual and coincident processes of absorption and new formation of bone. The absorption is carried out by means of special phagocytes formed by the aggregation of a number of leucocytes, the well-known 'giant cells' or myeloplaxes which form so prominent a constituent of bone marrow.

The blood corpuscles represent the *wandering* phagocytes of the body. There are *fixed* phagocytes, of which the myeloplaxes just mentioned may be regarded as a type. Other members of this class are the endothelial cells (Kupfer's '*Sternzellen*') which line the capillaries of the liver. If a suspension of carmine or of micro-organisms be injected into the blood stream, these endothelial cells are found a little later to have taken up large numbers of the foreign bodies. Under normal circumstances these

cells, as well as some similar cells in the spleen, take up effete red blood corpuscles and destroy them. During the process of degeneration of a peripheral nerve brought about by its separation from the ganglion cells of which its fibres are the processes, a marked proliferation of the nerve nuclei occurs. These become surrounded with protoplasm and act the part of phagocytes, loading themselves with the fat globules set free by the degeneration of the myelin sheath. To the same class of fixed phagocytes may possibly be ascribed certain of the plasma cells of the connective tissues.

That the polymorphonuclear leucocytes are endowed with these phagocytic properties is universally acknowledged, but some doubt still exists as to how far the other types of leucocytes, which we have described, can function as phagocytes. It is probable that the lymphocytes, and certainly the large mononuclear or hyaline corpuscles, are endowed with these properties. The granular corpuscles, namely, eosinophile and basophile, are thought by some to function as unicellular glands and to react to infection, not by englobing the micro-organisms, but by discharging substances stored up in their granules which have a poisonous effect on the micro-organisms, and so prepare them for subsequent ingestion by the polymorphonuclear leucocytes.

The other functions, which have been ascribed to leucocytes, are unimportant as compared with their *rôle* as phagocytes, and are all of them questionable. Thus some authors ascribe to leucocytes a significant part in the taking up of fat from the intestine and its carriage into the lymphatic system. In the coagulation of the blood the leucocytes have been supposed to act by the discharge of substances which may be precursors of the fibrin ferment. In the invertebrata the wandering mesoderm cells not only remove the injured tissue but apparently give rise to new connective tissues. The same function was formerly assigned to the leucocytes of mammals by Ziegler; and Metchnikoff believed that, after the removal of any injured tissue, the emigrated leucocytes undergo elongation to form so-called fibroblasts, by the further division of which are produced the white fibres of the connective tissues as well as the branched connective-tissue cells. Most authors at the present time have come to the conclusion that the work of the leucocytes is complete with the removal of dead or injured tissue, and that the process of regeneration is carried out by the plasma cells of the connective tissue, which enlarge, undergo division, and form the fibroblasts of the developing tissue. These plasma cells can change their position and act as phagocytes, eating up and digesting the polymorphonuclear leucocytes which have prepared the way for their regenerative activity. Their amœboid power is shown by the fact that if two sterile cover glasses be introduced under the skin, new connective tissue is formed between the cover glasses; and this method has been adopted by Ziegler for the study of the cellular changes involved in the regeneration of this tissue.

SECTION II

THE RED BLOOD CORPUSCLES

THE red blood corpuscles, or erythrocytes, in man and other mammals are nucleated bi-concave discs, about 7 to 8μ ($\frac{1}{3500}$ in.) in diameter and about one-third of this in thickness. The colour of a single corpuscle when viewed under the microscope is yellow, the red colour being apparent only when larger numbers are seen together. The red corpuscles form about 50 per cent. of the total mass of the blood, there being about 5,000,000 red corpuscles in every cubic millimetre of blood. They are soft, flexible, and elastic, so that they can readily squeeze through apertures and canals narrower than themselves without undergoing permanent distortion. Each red corpuscle consists of a framework or stroma, composed chiefly of protein material, containing in its meshes or in a state of loose chemical combination a red colouring matter, hæmoglobin, to which is due the colour of the corpuscles and of the blood itself.

It is only in mammalia that the red corpuscles are of the character described. In the camel they are oval in shape, but otherwise resemble the corpuscles of other mammals. In all other classes of vertebrata the red corpuscles are oval, nucleated cells. The hæmoglobin is diffused through the protoplasm of the cell body and does not extend to the nucleus. During the early part of fœtal life the corpuscles of mammals are also nucleated, but in the adult condition the erythrocytes, except under abnormal conditions, lose all traces of the nucleus before entering the blood stream. The small size and great number of the red corpuscles determine that a very large area of surface of red corpuscles is exposed to the plasma. The volume of each corpuscle has been estimated as ·0000000722 mm.^{3}, and its surface as ·000128 mm.^{2}, so that the total surface of red corpuscles in the blood of a man weighing about 70 kilos. (assuming his total blood as $\frac{1}{13}$ of the body weight) would be about 3000 sq. metres, or 1500 times the surface of the body itself. This great extent of surface is of importance in facilitating the exchange of material, especially oxygen, between the corpuscle itself and the surrounding plasma.

OSMOTIC RELATIONSHIPS OF THE RED CORPUSCLE. If the blood plasma be concentrated by evaporation or by the addition of neutral salts, its osmotic pressure rises and water diffuses from the corpuscles into the plasma in order to equalise the osmotic pressure within and without the corpuscle. The latter therefore becomes wrinkled or crenated. On the

other hand, dilution of the plasma diminishes its osmotic pressure below that of the corpuscles, and water therefore passes into the latter, which swell up and become spherical; and, if the plasma be made sufficiently dilute, the corpuscles burst with the liberation of the hæmoglobin they contain. The corpuscles of mammalian blood neither gain nor lose volume in a solution containing 0·9 per cent. sodium chloride. The osmotic pressure as determined by the freezing-point of such a solution is identical with that of the blood. For frogs' blood such a solution would be too concentrated and bring about crenation. The salt solution which is normal for frogs' blood contains only 0·65 per cent. sodium chloride.

Although the average molecular concentration of blood plasma in mammals is equivalent to that of a 0·9 per cent. sodium chloride solution, it may vary even in one animal within fairly wide limits, as is shown by the following determinations of the freezing-point of blood serum taken from animals under various circumstances:

Man (healthy)	−0·56 to −0·600
Dog	−0·55 „ −0·645
Ox	−0·55 „ −0·662
Rabbit	−0·55 „ −0·620

The behaviour of the red corpuscles, when immersed in solutions of sodium chloride of different concentrations, shows that its limiting membrane or most external layer is impermeable to sodium chloride. If this salt be added to defibrinated blood and the crenated corpuscles separated by the centrifuge, practically the whole of the added sodium chloride remains in the plasma or serum. The red corpuscle is impermeable to most neutral salts as well as to cane sugar and glucose. We may therefore make 'normal' solutions with sodium chloride, sodium sulphate, potassium nitrate, or cane sugar, taking care that each of the solutions shall be isotonic with a 0·9 per cent. solution of sodium chloride. On the other hand, a solution of urea behaves towards the corpuscles like distilled water. If some red corpuscles be added to a 1 per cent. solution of urea in normal salt solution, they neither shrink nor swell; and if the mixture be centrifuged, and the corpuscles and supernatant fluid examined separately, the percentage of urea in the two cases will be found identical, though there would be a great preponderance of sodium chloride in the supernatant fluid. If a 1 or 2 per cent. solution of urea in water be added to defibrinated blood, the corpuscles will swell up and burst just as if distilled water had been added. There are a large number of substances to which the corpuscles are permeable, *e.g.* alcohol, chloroform, ether, etc. In their permeability the corpuscles resemble most other vegetable and animal cells in permitting the passage of all those substances that are soluble in fats and the allied substances, cholesterin, lecithin, and protagon, which are invariable constituents of all living cells. According to Overton the external limiting pellicle of the red corpuscles, as in most living cells, is formed by a lecithin-cholesterin compound, whose solvent power determines the permeability of the cell by foreign substances. If therefore we wish to stain the living cell, we must

choose some dyestuff, such as methylene blue or neutral red, which is soluble in such lipoid bodies.

CHEMISTRY OF THE RED BLOOD CORPUSCLES

The red corpuscles consist of two parts, hæmoglobin and stroma, probably in a state of loose chemical combination. By various means it is possible to destroy this combination and to dissolve out the hæmoglobin, leaving the colourless swollen-up stroma floating in the plasma. At the same time the blood becomes darker but more transparent, and is spoken of as 'laked' blood.

It has been thought by Schwann, Schafer, and others that the red corpuscle consists of a solution of hæmoglobin included within an envelope which contains lecithin and cholesterin and forms the stroma. Though the hæmoglobin can be separated from the stroma by very simple means, it is difficult to believe that it is in watery solution. Thus the blood corpuscles contain a greater percentage of solids than any soft tissue of the body. The blood corpuscles have 36·7 per cent. solids, as against muscular tissue with 25 per cent. or nervous with 22 per cent. solids. Of these solids, 95 per cent. consist of hæmoglobin, so that the solution would have to contain at least 30 per cent. hæmoglobin. No solution of hæmoglobin of this strength can be prepared. In many animals, such as the rat and guinea-pig, it is sufficient merely to 'lake' the blood, *i. e.* to bring the hæmoglobin into solution in the surrounding plasma or serum, in order to make the hæmoglobin crystallise out. Some form of combination is therefore necessary in the corpuscles if merely to keep the hæmoglobin from separating out in a crystalline form.

Blood may be 'laked' by any of the following means:

(*a*) Addition of a small amount of ether.

(*b*) Free dilution with water.

(*c*) Alternate freezing and thawing of the blood.

(*d*) Addition of bile salts.

(*e*) The action of foreign blood serum or of various hæmolysins whose nature we shall have to discuss later.

From such laked blood we may prepare either hæmoglobin or stroma.

In order to separate the stroma from the hæmoglobin, blood, which has been defibrinated or prevented from clotting by the addition of a little sodium oxalate, is centrifuged until all the formed elements are thrown down as a solid cake at the bottom of the tube. The tube is then filled up with normal saline fluid and again centrifuged, and this process repeated twice in order to wash away adherent plasma or serum. After the final washing two volumes of distilled water saturated with ether are added to one volume of caked corpuscles. The corpuscles swell up and their hæmoglobin passes into solution into the surrounding fluid. The blood is laked. The fluid is once more centrifuged in order to throw down white blood corpuscles. A 1 per cent. solution of acid sodium sulphate is now added drop by drop until the solution acquires the opaque appearance presented by ordinary blood. The action of this salt, as of dilute acids, is to precipitate the swollen-up stromata, which reacquire the power of reflecting light from their surfaces and restore the opacity to the blood. On centrifuging, the stromata are thrown down, and can be collected and washed with distilled water several times on the centrifuge.

The stroma protein forms only about 4 per cent. of the total solids of the corpuscle. It is insoluble in dilute acids, but easily soluble in dilute alkalies. On gastric digestion the greater part dissolves, leaving a residue which is rich in phosphorus, and has been called nuclein. Stroma protein is therefore spoken of as a nucleo-protein. Wooldridge, who devised the method given above for the preparation of pure stromata, regarded the protein as a compound of protein and lecithin. The substance certainly contains a large quantity of lecithin, the greater part of which is present in the precipitate obtained on gastric digestion. According to Wright the nuclein residue yields purine bases on hydrolysis, and is therefore rightly classed with the other nucleins from tissue cells and contained in nuclei.

[1] From the laked solution of corpuscles, oxyhæmoglobin can be obtained in a crystalline form with varying readiness according to the animal from which the blood is derived. Thus in the case of the rat, the guinea-pig, the dog, and the horse it is sufficient merely to cool the laked blood, preferably in a freezing mixture to about — 10° C. in order to obtain a large crop of hæmoglobin crystals. Crystallisation is facilitated by the addition of 25 per cent. of absolute alcohol to the mixture, though the use of alcohol certainly tends to interfere with the subsequent purification and solubility of the hæmoglobin. Oxyhæmoglobin can be recrystallised by dissolving it in weak alkali at 35° C., cooling the solution to 0° C., and then adding cold alcohol to 25 per cent. and allowing the mixture to stand for some days at a temperature of — 5° to — 10° C. In the case of those bloods which yield oxyhæmoglobin crystals with greater difficulty, it is better to add to the laked blood an equal volume of a saturated solution of ammonium sulphate. The precipitate of globulins is filtered off and the filtrate allowed to stand in a cool place. Crystals of hæmoglobin then come down in quantity.

PROPERTIES OF HÆMOGLOBIN

The crystals thus obtained are as a rule microscopic in size. Most animals yield an oxyhæmoglobin which crystallises in rhombic prisms or needles belonging to the rhombic system. In the guinea-pig the crystals are tetrahedral in form, while the oxyhæmoglobin of the squirrel crystallises normally in the form of six-sided plates. On recrystallisation however, a squirrel's hæmoglobin can be obtained as a mixture of rhombic prisms with rhombic tetrahedra. The water of crystallisation of oxyhæmoglobin varies in different animals between 3 and 9 per cent. The solubility of the crystals differs according to the animal from which they have been derived, and is in direct proportion to the difficulty with which the crystals are obtained. They are more soluble in highly diluted solutions of ammonia and the caustic alkalies and their carbonates than in water. A solution of hæmoglobin will not diffuse through parchment paper; the elementary analysis of oxyhæmoglobin crystals gives somewhat varying

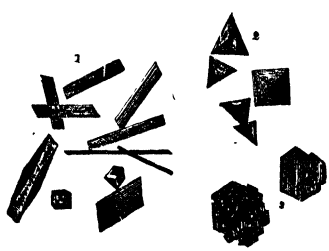


FIG. 371. Crystals of oxyhæmoglobin.
1. From rat. 2. From guinea-pig.
3. From squirrel.

results according to the animal employed. In the case of the oxyhæmoglobin of the dog, Jaquet obtained the following figures:

	In 100 parts	
C	53·91	54·97
H	6·62	7·22
N	15·98	16·38
Fe	0·333	0·336
S	0·54	0·568
O	22·62	20·93

The chief differences between different animals appear to have relation to the sulphur. Hæmoglobin from the hen contains 0·857 per cent. sulphur. All specimens are alike in containing a constant proportion of iron, as is shown in the following Table:

Oxyhæmoglobin of	Fe per cent.	Authority
Dog	0·336	Jaquet.
Horse	0·335	Zinoffsky.
Ox	0·336	Hüfner.
Hen	0·336	Jaquet.

On the assumption that each molecule of oxyhæmoglobin contains one atom of iron, its molecular weight would be 16,660, and this result is borne out by the volume of oxygen or carbonic oxide which can enter into combination with hæmoglobin. It has been suggested by Bunge that the enormous size of the hæmoglobin molecule finds a teleological explanation; if we consider that iron is eight times as heavy as water, a compound, which would float easily along with the blood current through the vessels, could be secured only by the iron being taken up by so large an organic molecule. Oxyhæmoglobin is a compound in definite proportions of oxygen and hæmoglobin or reduced hæmoglobin. It can be easily dissociated and is split up by such simple means as exposure to a vacuum. If, for instance, some arterial blood or solution of oxyhæmoglobin be introduced into a Torricellian vacuum, the fluid is seen to give off bubbles of gas, and the colour changes from a brilliant scarlet to a dull bluish red. In this process each gramme of oxyhæmoglobin gives off 1·34 c.c. of oxygen. The same change can be effected by treating a solution of oxyhæmoglobin with reducing agents such as an alkaline solution of ferrous tartrate (Stokes's fluid) or ammonium sulphide; in the latter case reduction is aided by gently warming the solution. Another reagent of value for effecting the reduction of oxyhæmoglobin is a solution of hydrazine. The oxygen in oxyhæmoglobin can be replaced by equivalent quantities of other gases. Thus if carbon monoxide gas be led through a solution of oxyhæmoglobin, oxygen is given off and its place is taken by an equal volume of carbon monoxide with the formation of a more stable compound, carbon monoxide hæmoglobin. This body is dissociated only with extreme slowness and is unaffected by the addition of reducing agents. By using special precautions to prevent oxidation of the gas, the carbon monoxide can be replaced in this compound by nitric oxide,

NO. We have therefore a series of three compounds which can be arranged in order of stability, thus :

NO-hæmoglobin.
CO-hæmoglobin.
O_2-hæmoglobin.

The poisonous properties of carbon monoxide are due to its power of turning out the oxygen from the oxyhæmoglobin, thus depriving the tissues of the oxygen which is normally carried to them by the red corpuscles.

Hæmoglobin and its derivatives give well-marked absorption spectra. Thus dilute solutions of oxyhæmoglobin placed in front of the slit of a spectroscope show two well-marked absorption bands between Fraunhofer's

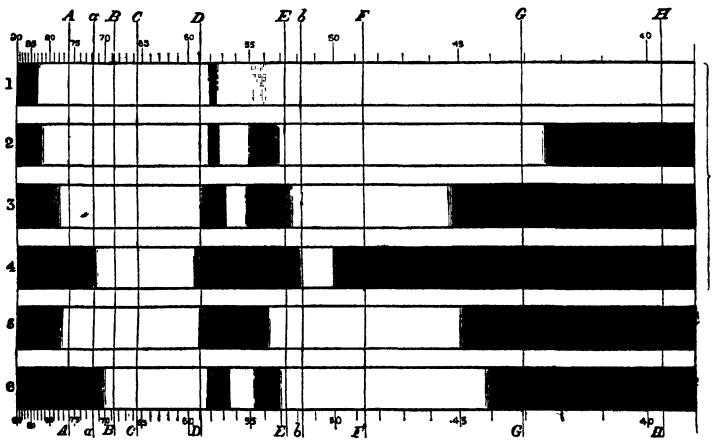


FIG. 372. The spectra of oxyhæmoglobin in different grades of concentration, of (reduced) hæmoglobin, and of carbon monoxide hæmoglobin. (After PREYER and GAMGEE.)

1 to 4. Solution of oxyhæmoglobin containing (1) less than ·01 per cent., (2) ·09 per cent., (3) ·37 per cent., (4) ·8 per cent. (5) Solution of (reduced) hæmoglobin containing about ·2 per cent. (6) Solution of carbon monoxide hæmoglobin. In each of the six cases the layer brought before the spectroscope was 1 cm. in thickness. The letters (*A*, *a*, etc.) indicate Fraunhofer's lines and the figures wave-lengths expressed in $\frac{1}{1000}$ millimetre.

lines D and E. The centre of the band nearest to D corresponds to λ 579, and is often spoken of as the band α, while the second band, the one next to E, which can be called the band β, is broader, has less sharply defined edges, and its centre corresponds approximately to λ 544. On concentrating the solution or using thicker layers, a point is reached at which the two bands fuse into one, and with a still stronger solution it will be found that the whole of the spectrum is absorbed with the exception of the red end.

The above figure shows the spectrum of oxyhæmoglobin in varying concentrations, a stratum one centimetre thick being examined. If a reducing agent be added to the solution of oxyhæmoglobin, the two bands disappear and their place is taken by a more diffuse band lying midway between the two (Fig. 372, 5), its centre corresponding to λ 555. This is the

absorption spectrum of hæmoglobin or reduced hæmoglobin. The spectrum of carboxyhæmoglobin is very similar to that of oxyhæmoglobin, the bands however being shifted slightly towards the red end. This solution is of a brighter red than oxyhæmoglobin. Its tint is best observed on diluting the blood to a large extent, when oxyhæmoglobin acquires a yellowish tint, while the pink colour of CO-hæmoglobin is retained so long as any colour is visible. The fact that CO-hæmoglobin is not altered by reducing agents can be shown by adding ammonium sulphide to CO-hæmoglobin and examining with the spectroscope, when no change is observed.

All these derivatives of hæmoglobin, besides their absorption bands in the visible spectrum, have characteristic absorption of light in the ultra-violet spectrum, as has been shown by Gamgee. In the case of oxyhæmoglobin this absorption causes a band (Soret's band) which occupies the greater part of the spectral region between Fraunhofer's lines G and H. In reduced hæmoglobin this band is displaced towards the visible part of the spectrum.

Another compound of hæmoglobin with oxygen is *methæmoglobin*. This substance, although not of normal occurrence in the body, is found in urine and in blood whenever there is a sudden breaking down of red blood corpuscles with the setting free of hæmoglobin in the blood plasma. It may be prepared by the addition of a ferricyanide, permanganate, or nitrite, or other oxidising or reducing agents to the laked blood or to solutions of oxyhæmoglobin. It is a chocolate-brown substance, crystallisable, and gives a distinct absorption band in the red between Fraunhofer's lines C and D. It is unaltered by exposure to a vacuum. On treatment with reducing agents however, such as Stokes's fluid, the methæmoglobin is converted into hæmoglobin, from which by shaking with air oxyhæmoglobin can be reformed. The fact that methæmoglobin cannot be reduced by exposure to a vacuum indicates that it is a compound of oxygen with hæmoglobin, in which the oxygen is in a different state of combination. According to Buckmaster methæmoglobin contains only half as much oxygen as oxyhæmoglobin, so that the composition of the two bodies might be represented.

$$\left.\begin{matrix} & O \\ Hb & | \\ & O \end{matrix}\right. \text{ (oxyhæmoglobin) and } Hb = O \text{ (methæmoglobin).}$$

The change from oxyhæmoglobin to methæmoglobin is not effected however by a simple shifting of the oxygen groups, but must be assumed to involve two distinct events. The whole of the oxygen in loose combination with hæmoglobin is given off, and the oxygen in the methæmoglobin molecule is derived from the oxidising agent added, so that ferricyanide of potash, for instance, is converted into ferrocyanide.[1] Since the whole of the oxygen in the oxyhæmoglobin is given off on the addition of potassium ferricyanide, we may use this fact in order to determine the total amount of oxygen in combination in the blood.

[1] When the change is effected by reducing agents, we must assume that the oxygen of the water or air is the source of that required for the oxidation of the reduced hæmoglobin to methæmoglobin.

DERIVATIVES OF HÆMOGLOBIN. Hæmoglobin is a compound of an iron-containing coloured group (the prosthetic group) with a protein, which probably varies somewhat in different animals. The prosthetic group is identical in every case where it has been examined. A separation of the prosthetic group from the protein moiety can be effected with extreme ease, and occurs whenever the hæmoglobin is treated with weak acids, with alkalies, or is heated above 70° C. The protein group is known as globin.

In order to separate globin, oxyhæmoglobin crystals are dissolved in water and treated with small quantities of very dilute hydrochloric acid. A precipitate of pigment forms which, if the hæmoglobin used be free from inorganic salt, rapidly dissolves in excess of the acid. Alcohol and ether are then added in such relative quantities that the ether separates rapidly from the aqueous solution. The colouring matter (hæmatin) dissolves in the ether, whilst the protein (globin) remains in solution in the water. The solutions are separated by a separating funnel and ammonia added carefully to the aqueous solution. This throws down a precipitate of the protein, which is soluble in acids and alkalies and coagulable on heating; the coagulum however is soluble in acids. It is precipitated by ammonia in the presence of ammonium chloride. It contains as much as 16·89 per cent. nitrogen, and yields a considerable amount of the basic derivatives on hydrolysis. It is therefore classified with the histones.

FIG. 373. Hæmin crystals.

Hæmoglobin yields about 94 per cent. of globin and about 4·5 per cent. of the chromogenic group, hæmatin. In order to obtain *hæmatin* in a pure condition, it is usual to start with the crystalline derivative of hæmoglobin known as *hæmin*. When some dried blood is heated with a crystal of common salt and placed in acetic acid on a slide, a residue is obtained in which a number of reddish-brown needles are embedded known as Teichmann's crystals or hæmin crystals (Fig. 373). The preparation of these crystals is often used as a convenient test for the identification of blood.

In order to obtain them in large quantities the following method, devised by Chalfejew, is employed. One volume of defibrinated blood is added to four volumes of glacial acetic acid previously heated to 80° C. As soon as the temperature has fallen to 60° C. the liquid is again warmed, and then allowed to cool. Crystals are formed which are allowed to stand for twelve hours and are then separated and washed by decantation, first with distilled water and then with graduated strengths of alcohol. In order to purify these crystals, the crude material is shaken for fifteen minutes with a mixture of chloroform and pyridine. The solution is filtered and then thrown into glacial acetic acid previously saturated with sodium chloride and heated to 105° C. A few drops of concentrated hydrochloric acid are then added and the mixture allowed to stand for twenty-four hours. The crystals which separate out are filtered off, washed with dilute acetic acid, and then dried.

Hæmin crystals have been regarded as hydrochloride of hæmatin. Elementary analysis shows that they have the following formula (Willstätter): $(C_{33}H_3O_4N_4Cl.Fe$. By dissolving hæmin in alkalies and throwing

the solution into an excess of acid, a precipitate is obtained which is hæmatin. Hæmatin forms a powder of bluish-black colour and metallic lustre. It is insoluble in water, alcohol, or ether, but is slightly soluble in glacial acetic acid and in absolute alcohol. It is easily soluble in concentrated sulphuric acid, but undergoes decomposition, losing its atom of iron and being transformed into *hæmatoporphyrin*, which forms a deep purple solution. The formula of hæmatin has not yet been ascertained with certainty. It is

FIG. 374. Absorption spectra of hæmoglobin and its derivatives.

1. Oxyhæmoglobin. 2. Reduced hæmoglobin. 3. Methæmoglobin. 4. Alkaline methæmoglobin. 5. Acid hæmatin in ether. 6. Alkaline hæmatin in rectified spirit. 7. Reduced hæmatin. 8. Acid hæmatoporphyrin. 9. Alkaline hæmatoporphyrin. (From MACMUNN.)

probably $C_{33}H_{32}O_4N_4Fe.OH$. Its compounds with acids and alkalies are spoken of as acid and alkaline hæmatin, and each gives a characteristic absorption spectrum (Fig. 374). The alkaline solutions exhibit one indistinct absorption band between C and D, the acid solutions an absorption band also between C and D but nearer to C, and resembling somewhat the band presented by methæmoglobin. According to Hoppe-Seyler and Gamgee, perfectly pure solutions of hæmatin in alkalies are quite unaffected by reducing agents; in the presence of certain foreign matters however, alkaline hæmatin, when treated with reducing agents, exhibits a spectrum known as that of reduced alkaline hæmatin, which is identical with that of

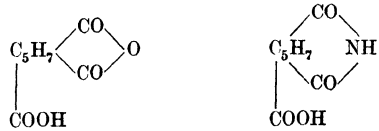
hæmochromogen. The same change is further observed when alkaline hæmatin, made by the action of alkalies on ordinary blood, is treated with reducing agents such as ammonium sulphide. Since this substance, hæmochromogen, is responsible for the respiratory functions of the hæmoglobin, *i. e.* the power of its molecule to form unstable compounds with oxygen, its preparation merits fuller consideration.

Hæmochromogen is prepared by the action of caustic alkalies on hæmoglobin in the absence of oxygen. For this purpose a test-tube containing a solution of sodium or potassium hydrate is placed in a bottle with two necks containing a solution of hæmoglobin, care being taken not to spill any of the alkaline solution. Hydrogen is then passed through the larger bottle until the hæmoglobin is entirely reduced and all the air is replaced by hydrogen. The bottle is then inverted so as to mix its contents with the caustic alkali, when hæmochromogen is formed and can be recognised by its characteristic colour and spectrum. The hæmochromogen in solution has a cherry-red colour, and when sufficiently diluted shows two well-marked absorption bands identical with those given by reduced alkaline hæmatin (Fig. 374, 7). Of the two absorption bands which are situated between D and E, that nearest to D has very sharply defined borders; the position of the two absorption bands may be given in terms of their wavelengths as follows: λ 567 to 547 and λ 532 to 518. The band nearest D is given by hæmochromogen solutions diluted until there is only one part of the pigment in 25,000 parts of water, so that the formation of reduced alkaline hæmatin is an even more delicate test for blood than the spectrum of oxyhæmoglobin itself. When CO-hæmoglobin is treated in the same way with alkali in the absence of oxygen, a body CO-hæmochromogen is formed which contains exactly the same volume of CO in combination as the original CO-hæmoglobin. This fact, combined with the possibility of reducing ordinary alkaline hæmatin by the action of ammonium sulphide or Stokes's fluid, indicates that the group of atoms which in hæmoglobin is responsible for taking up oxygen or carbon monoxide gas passes unchanged into the hæmochromogen molecule. Hæmochromogen therefore represents an iron-containing coloured radical which can combine with protein bodies to form hæmoglobin, and is responsible for the oxygen-combining powers of the latter. We may assume therefore that oxyhæmoglobin and CO-hæmoglobin contain oxyhæmochromogen and CO-hæmochromogen respectively.

Hæmatoporphyrin. If hæmoglobin, hæmatin, or hæmin be mixed with concentrated sulphuric acid, it dissolves forming a purple-red solution. On pouring this solution into a large quantity of water, hæmatoporphyrin is thrown down in the form of a brown precipitate. In order to prepare hæmatoporphyrin, pure crystallised hæmin is added to a saturated solution of hydrobromic acid in glacial acetic acid. The whole is allowed to stand for three or four days and then thrown into distilled water. The resulting mixture is filtered and the hæmatoporphyrin thrown down by careful neutralisation of the hydrobromic acid with caustic soda. Hæmatoporphyrin is easily soluble in alkalies and somewhat less readily so in acids,

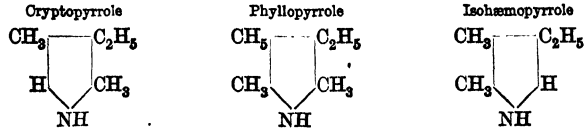
forming alkaline and acid hæmatoporphyrin respectively. The formula of hæmatoporphyrin has been given by Nencki and Sieber as $C_{16}H_{18}N_2O_3$, and is according to them isomeric with the chief bile pigment, bilirubin. According to Willstätter its formula is $C_{33}H_{38}N_4O_6$. An alcoholic solution of hæmatoporphyrin acidulated with hydrochloric acid shows two absorption bands: one, the fainter, between C and D; and the other, broader and more defined, midway between D and E. Solutions of alkaline hæmatoporphyrin show four absorption bands: a weak band between C and D; another between D and E; a more strongly marked band nearer to E; and a fourth band, darkest of all, between *b* and F. It will be observed that, in the formation of hæmatoporphyrin from hæmatin, the iron of the latter has been split off by the action of the strong acid. Laidlaw has found that the splitting off of iron occurs much more readily in the absence of oxygen. If reduced hæmoglobin be taken, or defibrinated blood which has been allowed to stand until it is thoroughly reduced, it is sufficient to add 15 per cent. hydrochloric acid in order not only to convert the greater part of the hæmoglobin to hæmatin but to split off the iron of the latter and form hæmatoporphyrin. Hæmatoporphyrin occurs in minute quantities in normal urine and in larger quantities in certain toxic conditions, especially in poisoning by sulphonal, when the urine may have a bright purple colour. It is important to remember that, although urine is acid from the presence of acid sodium phosphate, urinary hæmatoporphyrin is always alkaline hæmatoporphyrin and gives the spectrum of this body.

CHEMICAL RELATIONSHIPS OF HÆMATIN. Hæmatin, or hæmochromogen, is widely diffused through the animal kingdom, occurring in the form of hæmoglobin in a large number of the invertebrata, as well as in all the vertebrata except perhaps Amphioxus. Since the respiratory function of hæmoglobin depends on the power of its iron-containing radical to combine with a molecule of oxygen, forming an easily dissociable compound, it becomes of interest to try whether by a study of its disintegration products we can throw any light on its chemical relationships and on the conditions of its formation in the living organism. When hæmatin is oxidised with sodium bichromate and acetic acid, two new acids are formed, called the hæmatinic acids. One of these has the formula $C_8H_9O_4N$, and the other $C_8H_8O_5$. The first acid is converted into the second by the action of alkalies. The relationship of the two hæmatinic acids can be represented by the following formulæ:



If, on the other hand, hæmin or hæmatoporphyrin be reduced by the action of hydriodic acid dissolved in acetic acid with the addition of phosphonium iodide, and the product be distilled with steam, the distillate contains a mixture of substituted pyrroles formerly known as hæmopyrroes. The mixture readily oxidises to a red substance on exposure to the air. If ammonia be added to the coloured solution, the colour changes to yellow which, on the addition of an ammoniacal solution of zinc chloride, changes to pink with a green fluorescence. These reactions are also given by urobilin, one of the urinary pigments and the chief pigment of the fæces, as well as by hydrobilirubin, a substance obtained by the action of tin and sulphuric acid on an alcoholic solution of hæmatin.

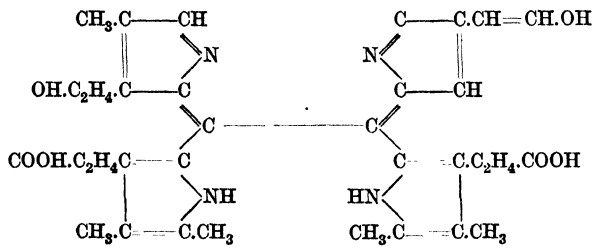
The hæmopyrroles, according to Willstätter, are three in number and have the following formula:



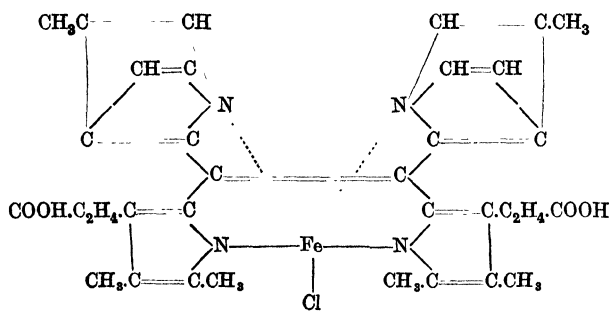
The same substances can be obtained from the chlorophyll of plants. On treatment with acid, chlorophyll loses magnesium and is converted into phacophytin. From this three COOH groups can be split off, leaving a substance, ætioporphyrin.

It is interesting that hæmatoporphyrin also can be readily converted into ætioporphyrin. On treatment with pyridine and alcoholic potash, it is converted into hæmoporphyrin and this heated with soda lime gives ætioporphyrin ($C_{31}H_{36}N_4$). Thus the same group forms the basis both of the substance which is responsible in the plant for the assimilation of carbon from carbon dioxide, and of the pigment which in the animal is the carrier of oxygen between the tissues and the surrounding medium. According to Willstätter, ætioporphyrin and hæmatoporphyrin are both built up of four substituted pyrrol rings.

Thus hæmatoporphyrin has the following structural formula:



and the same worker suggests the following formula for hæmin:



THE SYNTHESIS OF THE BLOOD PIGMENTS. Chemists have not yet succeeded in the artificial formation of hæmatoporphyrin. Given hæmatoporphyrin however, evidence has been brought forward both by Menzies and Laidlaw of the possibility of forming artificially both hæmatin and hæmoglobin, or some substance indistinguishable from the latter.

Reduced hæmoglobin is a compound of hæmochromogen and a protein, globin. The splitting off of the prosthetic chromatogenic group—hæmochromogen—can be effected either by acid or alkali. When the latter is employed, we obtain a red solution which is fairly stable and can be converted by shaking up with air into ordinary alkaline hæmatin. With acids the decomposition is easily carried further. Even with 2 per cent. hydrochloric acid a certain amount of hæmatoporphyrin is formed, and if the strength of the acid be increased to 15 per cent. the whole of the iron is split off and the hæmochromogen is converted entirely into hæmatoporphyrin.

If oxyhæmoglobin be treated in the same way, it yields acid or alkaline hæmatin directly, so that hæmatin must be regarded as an oxyhæmochromogen. The distinction drawn by Hoppe-Seyler between hæmochromogen and reduced alkaline hæmatin had its chief ground in the fact that pure hæmatin is not reduced to hæmochromogen by the action of such reducing agents as ammonium sulphide. The conversion can however be easily effected by using a strong reducing agent, such as hydrazine hydrate. Whether the hæmatin contains the whole of the oxygen of the oxyhæmoglobin is doubtful. According to Ham and Balean, when oxyhæmoglobin is converted by means of acids into acid hæmatin, exactly half the oxygen of the oxyhæmoglobin is given off, so that hæmatin would contain only one-half of the oxygen of the oxyhæmoglobin. There is a marked difference between the stability of hæmatin and hæmochromogen. In the oxidised form of hæmatin the iron is firmly bound and can be split off only by using strong sulphuric acid, concentrated hydrochloric acid being insufficient for the purpose.

It has been shown by Laidlaw that the change in the reverse direction, *i. e.* the combination of iron with hæmatoporphyrin to form hæmochromogen, may be effected with equal ease. One grm. hæmatoporphyrin prepared by Nencki's method is dissolved in dilute ammonia and warmed in a flask on the water-bath. Some Stokes's fluid, prepared from about 2 grm. ferrous sulphate, and a few drops of a 50 per cent. hydrazine hydrate solution are added. At the end of one or two hours the solution is seen to be of a bright red colour when examined in thin layers, and on dilution shows the typical absorption spectrum of hæmochromogen, which changes to that of alkaline hæmatin on shaking with air. Strong potash is added, and the ammonia is boiled off in an evaporating dish with free exposure to the air. The hydrazine is decomposed, and a solution of hæmatin remains which can be precipitated by acidification with hydrochloric acid. The pigment obtained in this way agrees in every respect with that prepared from oxyhæmoglobin. Analysis of the product gave 9·58 per cent. of iron, which agrees with Nencki's formula for hæmatin, $C_{32}H_{30}N_4O_3Fe$.

A pigment called turacin, occurring in the wing feathers of certain birds, was shown by Church to contain copper and to yield, on treatment with strong sulphuric acid, a substance indistinguishable from hæmatoporphyrin. Laidlaw has succeeded in synthetising this pigment by treating ordinary hæmatoporphyrin obtained from blood with ammoniacal copper solution, showing that it is a compound corresponding to hæmatin, in which the place of iron is taken by copper.

It was stated some years ago by Menzies that a solution of impure hæmochromogen, prepared by the action of ammonium sulphide on alkaline hæmatin obtained in the ordinary way from blood, on standing for some days was reconverted into reduced hæmoglobin. Ham and Balean have confirmed this observation, and have shown in addition that hæmochromogen, prepared by the action of ammonium sulphide on an alkaline solution of pure hæmin, though perfectly stable by itself, was rapidly reconverted into hæmoglobin if a solution of globin were added to the mixture. The same change took place if egg-white were used instead of globin. The hæmoglobin thus formed was changed into oxyhæmoglobin on shaking with air. Although in these experiments the oxyhæmoglobin was not separated in the crystalline form, its colour and spectral characters are so very distinctive that we are justified in concluding, not only that it is possible to effect a recombination of the hæmochromogen and globin, but also that other proteins can take the place of globin in the hæmoglobin molecule.

THE LIFE-HISTORY OF THE RED BLOOD CORPUSCLES

The growth of the embryo as well as of the young animal must be attended with a continual increase in the number of red blood corpuscles present in the body. In the developing embryo the first formation of red corpuscles occurs in the vascular area. In the chick, about the twentieth hour of incubation, the *area opaca*, which surrounds the blastoderm and will later become the *area vasculosa*, presents on examination under the low power a network of anastomising strands more opaque than the rest of the area. On section these strands are seen to be made up of cellular masses, the ordinary mesenchyma, with branched cells and amœboid corpuscles lying between. The cells in these cords are continually multiplying by indirect division. Those on the outer side of the cord become the endothelium of dilated blood vessels, while those in the interior acquire a yellowish colour from the laying down of hæmoglobin in their cytoplasm. The cords become canalised and, as soon as a connection is established with the vascular system of the embryo, the newly formed blood corpuscles move slowly on into the general circulation. The red corpuscles in the bird are true erythrocytes, *i. e.* are nucleated cells. The leucocytes seem to arise by the immigration of wandering cells from the surrounding mesenchyma. Other places in the fœtus where a similar growth of corpuscles proceeds throughout fœtal life are the liver and the spleen, and later on the bone marrow.

In the mammal the nucleated erythrocytes, though forming the majority of the red corpuscles in early fœtal life, become fewer and fewer in number as gestation advances, so that at birth practically the whole of the corpuscles are of the non-nucleated type. These however can be shown to be derived from nucleated red corpuscles by a process either of extrusion or of degeneration and solution of the nucleus (Fig. 375). The formation of red corpuscles does not cease with the end of fœtal life or even with the

attainment of full stature by the animal. We have definite proof that a continual formation of red corpuscles can proceed and is proceeding throughout the whole of adult life. In an adult the total volume of blood and the total number of corpuscles remain approximately constant. By bleeding an animal we can diminish the total amount of corpuscles. The first effect of such a bleeding is that the fluid parts of the blood are made up, so that the volume of the blood is restored to normal and the blood

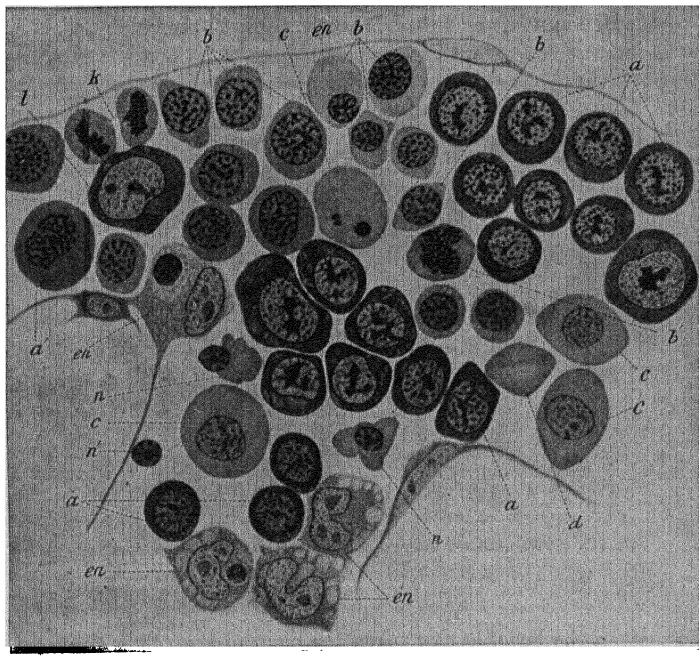


Fig. 375. Part of a blood vessel from the yolk sac of the rabbit embryo, showing the changes which occur in the formation of erythrocytes. (From Schafer after Maximow.)

a, megaloblasts; *b*, normoblasts changing into erythroblasts; *c*, erythroblasts, in which the nuclei are disappearing; *d*, an erythrocyte fully formed, but not yet disc-shaped; *en*, phagocytic endothelial cells; *l*, lymphocytes; *k*, a divided lymphocyte; *n*, erythroblasts, shrunken with atrophic nucleus.

therefore becomes relatively poor in corpuscles. In a few weeks however, the corpuscular content of the blood is found to be once more normal, showing that the loss of corpuscles has been followed by a compensatory regeneration. The fact that the pigments constantly leaving the body with the urine and fæces, namely, urochrome and urobilin or stercobilin, are derived by means of the liver from hæmoglobin, shows that a constant destruction of red corpuscles must be proceeding. Since the number of corpuscles remains unaltered, this loss of hæmoglobin must be made good by a continual regeneration of fresh hæmoglobin and new red corpuscles. The seat of the formation of red corpuscles in the higher vertebrates is the

bone marrow. Here we have a structure protected from pressure where the capillaries and veins are dilated and thin-walled, and allow a slow passage of blood and the entry of newly formed corpuscles through the imperfect walls into the blood stream (Fig. 376). That the marrow is involved in the process is shown by the fact that it is the only tissue of the body which undergoes an alteration in appearance when blood formation is stimulated by such means as repeated bleeding or destruction of corpuscles by the injection of toxic agents. Under such conditions the red marrow, which in adult mammals is present only in the epiphyses, is found to have increased in extent and in many cases to occupy the greater part

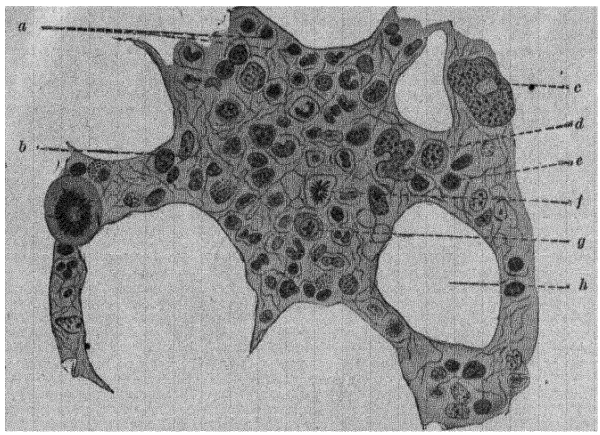


FIG. 376. Section of red marrow of mammal. (BOHM and DAVIDOFF.)
a, *e*, erythroblasts; *b*, recticulum; *c*, myeloplax; *d*, *g*, marrow cells; *f*, a marrow cell dividing; *h*, a space which was occupied by fat.

of the shaft of the bone, having taken the place of the yellow marrow. It is in the red marrow therefore that we must seek the precursors of the red blood corpuscles. In the bird the erythroblasts, *i. e.* the precursors of the nucleated red blood corpuscles, form a sort of inner lining to the dilated capillaries of the marrow (Fig. 377). Here we can see all grades between the colourless nucleated corpuscle which lies nearest the periphery and the adult red oval corpuscle containing hæmoglobin, lying next the lumen and ready to be carried away in the blood stream. If blood formation has been stimulated by repeated bleeding, this blood-forming tissue is found to occupy the greater part of the lumen of the marrow capillaries. If however blood formation has been reduced to its lowest extent by a process of chronic starvation, the erythroblasts form a single layer of cells just inside the dilated capillaries, and intermediate stages between the erythroblasts and the fully developed erythrocytes are almost entirely wanting. In the frog this process of blood-corpuscle formation occurs only at one period of the year, namely, in the early summer, and it is only at this time that the bones are found to contain red marrow. In mammals the process

is very similar. In the red marrow are a number of nucleated cells containing hæmoglobin, which are thought by Löwit to be themselves derived from colourless nucleated cells. In the confused medley of colourless cells which are found in the bone marrow and are precursors of all the varied corpuscles found in the blood, it is difficult to be certain of the identity of the colourless erythroblasts and to distinguish them from the smaller colourless cells engaged in bone formation or in the production of leucocytes. The hæmoglobin-containing cells are often to be seen in process of division, and the nucleated daughter-cells appear to undergo a process of nucleolysis, the nucleus being extruded or dissolved. When blood formation is quickened as the result of previous destruction or loss, some of these

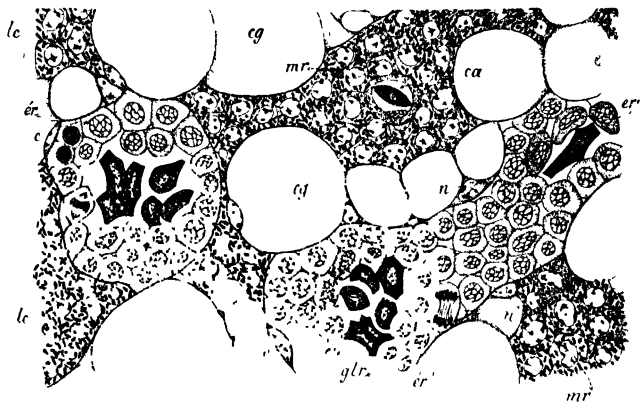


FIG. 377. Section of red marrow of pigeon. (DENYS.)

lc, eosinophile leucocytes; *cg*, fat cells; *é*, nucleus of endothelial cell of blood vessel; *ca*, blood capillary; *er*, erythroblasts lying within vascular endothelium; *glr*, fully formed red corpuscles.

immature nucleated blood discs may make their way into the circulation and be found in the blood, where they are spoken of as *normoblasts*.

How long a corpuscle continues to exist in the circulating blood is not known. The experiments, made to determine the length of time during which foreign corpuscles such as those of birds can be recognised after injection into the circulation of a mammal, are evidently beside the mark, since these foreign cells will be destroyed by the serum and rapidly taken up by the phagocytes of the body. Sooner or later however, every corpuscle undergoes disintegration, a process which is generally ushered in by the ingestion of the corpuscle by some phagocyte cells. Thus in the hæmolymph glands and in the spleen, we find large cells which have englobed red corpuscles and in which we can recognise pigment granules derived from their destruction. The chief place of disintegration of the hæmoglobin is certainly the liver, *i. e.* the organ where the hæmatin is converted into bile pigment. Injection of hæmoglobin into the circulation causes increased secretion of bile pigment. A section of normal liver immersed in potassium

ferrocyanide and then in acid alcohol shows the presence of iron by the assumption of a blue colour. The amount of iron which can be demonstrated in the liver in this way is enormously increased by any condition which augments the rate of blood destruction. In the pathological condition known as pernicious anæmia, as well as after poisoning by the injection of pyrogallic acid or toluylene diamine, both of which agents cause a great destruction of red blood corpuscles, the liver on treatment in this way assumes a deep blue colour. In some cases crystals of hæmoglobin have been seen within the nucleus of the liver cell. In the destruction of the corpuscles the hæmoglobin is dissociated first into its protein and chromogenic moieties; the hæmochromogen then loses its iron and is converted into bile pigment. The iron remains in the liver and is probably retained in the body and utilised for the formation of the fresh hæmoglobin necessary for the newly forming red blood corpuscles in the bone marrow.

SECTION III

THE BLOOD PLATELETS

THE very existence of these, the third class of formed elements of the blood, is still a matter of dispute. If a drop of osmic acid be placed on the finger, which is then pricked through the drop so that the shed blood may mix with the fixing fluid directly it leaves the vessels, a drop of the mixture when examined under high powers is seen to present a number of granular bodies from one-third to one-half the diameter of a red blood corpuscle. Their number has been variously stated from 180,000 to 800,000 per cubic millimetre, so that they rank second in point of number among the morphological constituents of the blood. Their shape varies considerably. Some are bi-convex structures; others are flatter with numerous processes. They may be isolated or agglutinated into clumps. Their shape, size, and number vary according to the fluid with which the blood is mixed or the method adopted for their demonstration.

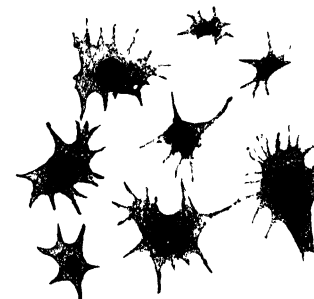


FIG. 378. Blood platelets, highly magnified, showing the amœboid forms which they assume when examined under suitable conditions, and also exhibiting the chromatic particle which each platelet contains, and which has been regarded as a nucleus. (After KOPSCH.)

When blood is examined in Hayem's fluid [1] nearly all the blood platelets appear as bi-convex discs. The best method for the display of platelets is apparently that given by Deetjen. The drop of blood is received directly from the vessels on to a sheet of solid agar jelly which is made with 0·6 per cent. sodium chloride solution with the addition of sodium metaphosphate and bipotassium phosphate. When examined on this medium large numbers of platelets are seen, each of them provided with numerous processes (Fig. 378). Their central part is more strongly refracting than the periphery and stains with basic dyes, so that it has been regarded as a nucleus.

Similar platelets are observed when the blood is received into normal salt solution; as the mixture clots, the filaments of fibrin can be seen

[1] Hayem's fluid is made up as follows:

Distilled water	200 c.c.
Sodium chloride	1 grm.
Sodium sulphate	5 grm.
Iodine in iodide of potassium	3·5 c.c.

often to radiate from a disintegrated blood platelet as from a centre. That the blood platelets are concerned in the production of clots is shown by the fact that in the living vessels blood platelets aggregate round any injured spot in the vessel wall, and later fuse together so as to form an adherent thrombus or clot which covers the seat of injury and helps to repair the damage and to prevent the escape of the contents of the blood vessel. Blood platelets have been found only in mammalian blood and are certainly absent from frogs' blood as well as from the blood of fishes and birds, nor can they be demonstrated in any of the serous fluids even in

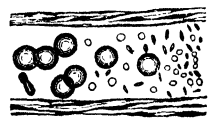


FIG. 379. Blood corpuscles and blood platelets, within a small vein. (SCHAFER after OSLER.)

mammals. Certain nucleated spindle-shaped cells have been described in frogs' blood as blood platelets, but these are probably immature red blood corpuscles and not homologous with the blood platelets of mammals. (Blood platelets themselves were regarded by Hayem as stages in the formation of red blood corpuscles.) If the blood of an animal be defibrinated by repeated bleeding, whipping and returning to the veins of the animal, it will be found for the next few days to be quite free from blood platelets. There is no doubt therefore that it is possible by the most varied means to demonstrate the existence of blood platelets in shed blood. According to the method adopted, so do the number and form of these platelets vary. Moreover they can be seen to be deposited from the circulating blood in the living animal on any injured portion of the vessel wall or on any foreign body introduced into the blood current (Fig. 379). On the other hand, it is possible to obtain blood in an uncoagulated state from the vessels in which no trace of platelets is to be observed. As Buckmaster has shown, a film of blood examined in a platinum loop and kept carefully at the temperature of the body presents no platelets on microscopic examination; and the same absence of platelets is to be noted when blood is received into sterile blood serum of the same species of animal and kept at the body temperature. On allowing these specimens of blood to cool, blood platelets make their appearance. Many specimens of non-coagulable plasma, such as peptone plasma or oxalate plasma, can be separated by means of the centrifuge from all formed elements. If the plasma be cooled to 0° C. for twenty-four hours, a precipitate indistinguishable from blood platelets is found to have been produced under the action of cold. We are therefore probably justified in concluding that the blood platelets do not form a constituent of normal living blood, but are produced in the plasma either on contact with foreign bodies or lowering of its temperature from 37° C. to 18° or 20° C. All the various

fixing fluids, which have been recommended for the display of blood platelets, may owe their virtues, not to the fact that they *preserve*, but to the fact that they *produce* platelets. These may therefore be regarded as precipitates produced in the plasma directly it undergoes alterations, their appearance being the first sign of changes in this fluid. They consist of some substance probably belonging to the class of nucleo-proteins, and like these yield a precipitate on gastric digestion, and have a specific affinity for basic dyes. Even after their first appearance they are unstable, tending to undergo further alteration and to give off to the surrounding plasma substances which play an important part in the formation of fibrin ferment and in the coagulation of the blood.

SECTION IV

THE COAGULATION OF THE BLOOD

In the process of coagulation, while the corpuscles remain to a large extent intact, the plasma becomes solid from the production in it of a network of fibrin, being converted into fibrin *plus* serum. The question of coagulation involves the consideration of the precursors of fibrin and of the conditions which determine the conversion of these precursors into fibrin. It is evidently impossible to arrive at any conclusions on these points during the few minutes which elapse between the time at which the blood leaves the vessels and the appearance of the clot. We must therefore find some means of retarding coagulation so that we may obtain the plasma free from corpuscles and be able to initiate coagulation in this cell-free fluid at will. Having succeeded in staying the process of coagulation, it is always possible to obtain a cell-free plasma either by allowing the blood to settle or, better still, by the employment of a centrifugal machine. Under the influence of centrifugal force the corpuscles are thrown rapidly down to the bottom of the tube and the clear supernatant plasma can be syphoned off.

METHODS OF PREVENTING COAGULATION

(1) So long as the blood is in contact with the uninjured vessel it remains fluid. If the jugular vein of a large animal such as the horse be tied in two places, the blood contained between the ligatures will remain fluid, sometimes for days. If the tube of vein be hung up, the corpuscles sink to the bottom and the plasma in the upper part of the tube can be poured from one vein to another without undergoing coagulation. On pouring it into a glass vessel or bringing it into contact with foreign substances, it undergoes coagulation.

(2) When an incision is made in the ordinary way into a blood vessel of a bird, the issuing blood clots very rapidly. The clotting is initiated by a substance contained in the tissues surrounding the vessels. If therefore the vessel be isolated and a perfectly clean glass cannula be inserted into it, care being taken not to bring the cannula in contact with any of the surrounding tissues, blood can be drawn off into a sterilised beaker perfectly free from dust and will remain unclotted for days. Such blood can be centrifuged and the cell-free plasma used for experiment. The same procedure does not apply to the mammal, where even the most scrupulous care to prevent contamination by the tissue juices will not prevent the blood from clotting on leaving the vessels.

(3) Clotting can be excited even in the living vein by introducing into the blood any solid substance which is wetted by the blood. If the contact of the blood with such substances be prevented by receiving it into vessels previously coated with oil or with paraffin and scrupulously free from dust, clotting may often be delayed for many hours.

(4) Cooled plasma. Horses' blood is received directly into a narrow vessel immersed

in ice, so as to cool it rapidly to between 0° C. and 1° C. At this temperature it remains fluid for an indefinite time. The corpuscles sink, and the supernatant plasma can be decanted and filtered.

(5) *Methods involving Mixture with Neutral Salts.* (*a*) Magnesium sulphate. Blood from any animal is received into one-quarter its bulk of a 25 per cent. solution of magnesium sulphate.

(*b*) Sodium sulphate. Blood is mixed on leaving the vessels with an equal volume of half-saturated sodium sulphate solution. The plasma obtained in either of these ways is known as salt plasma. Clotting is indefinitely delayed in either case, but it can be induced by suitable treatment of the separated plasma.

(6) *Methods depending on Decalcification of the Blood.* Oxalate plasma is obtained by receiving blood into a solution of sodium oxalate so that the total blood contains 1 per 1000 of the oxalate. Instead of oxalate we may use sodium fluoride, the proportion in this case being 3 parts of NaF per 1000 blood.

(7) *Methods depending on the use of certain Substances of Animal Origin.* (*a*) Peptone plasma is obtained by injecting rapidly into the veins of a dog or cat in a fasting condition a solution of commercial peptone in the proportion of 0·3 grm. peptone per kilo. of the animal. The effect of this injection is to cause a rapid fall of blood pressure and hurried respiration, and the animal then passes into a state of coma which may last an hour or two. On drawing off the blood immediately after the fall of pressure has taken place, it is found to be uncoagulable, and cell-free plasma can be obtained from it by the use of the centrifuge. A number of animal extracts act in a somewhat similar fashion, such as extract of crayfish, of mussels, etc.

(*b*) Leech extract or hirudin plasma. Peptone is efficacious in retarding clotting only when it is injected into the animal's veins directly, and has no influence in this direction if it be mixed with the blood as it flows out of the vessels. It has long been familiar to physicians that the bites made by leeches continue to bleed for a considerable time, and it was shown by Haycraft that this is due to the presence of an anticoagulating substance in the buccal glands of the leech. This substance, which has the properties of an albumose, can be extracted by boiling from the anterior half of the leech. It will destroy the coagulability of the blood either when injected into the blood stream or when blood is received into a solution of hirudin.

By any of these methods it is possible to obtain blood plasma free from formed elements. The conditions which will bring about coagulation in such plasmata are strikingly diverse. Thus in cooled plasma a simple rise of temperature is often sufficient to bring about coagulation, If however the cooled plasma be filtered several times through two thicknesses of filter-paper, being kept at a temperature of about 1° C. during the whole time, it loses this spontaneous coagulability on warming. It can still be made to clot by the addition of certain substances such as blood serum or the washings of a blood clot, and in some cases by the addition of tissue extracts.

Oxalate plasma clots on simple addition of lime salts. Sodium sulphate plasma clots on dilution. Magnesium sulphate plasma will not clot on dilution, but needs in addition the presence of some blood serum or some substance derived from blood serum. In both these cases tissue extracts have no influence. By a careful study of one or two forms of plasma we can arrive at a conception of the processes of coagulation, which enables us to understand the behaviour of all these various types. We may take as our type oxalate plasma. Oxalate plasma, as procured by centrifuging a specimen of horse's blood containing 0·1 per cent. sodium oxalate, is a clear yellow fluid, perfectly free from formed elements, which evinces no tendency

to clot. On adding a drop of calcium chloride to such plasma, we see that it contains an excess of oxalate from the production of a precipitate of calcium oxalate. If calcium chloride be added drop by drop so as to be present in slight excess, and the plasma be then kept warm, it will clot within a time varying from a few minutes to an hour. The clot thus formed is perfectly firm and the vessel can be inverted without any of its contents flowing out. Very often no retraction of the clot takes place, but if it be pressed with a glass rod or with the fingers a clear serum is squeezed out and a mass of pure fibrin remains. The place of lime can be taken by strontium, but barium and magnesium are powerless to initiate clotting. We must therefore conclude that the presence of a soluble calcium salt is one factor of those necessary for coagulation. This is borne out by the fact that a similar uncoagulable blood is produced by the action of sodium fluoride. Some difficulty however was felt when it was found that sodium citrate might be used instead of sodium oxalate or fluoride, since sodium citrate does not produce in the blood any precipitate of insoluble lime salts. Here then we have a blood containing lime in solution and yet uncoagulable. The difficulty has been cleared up by the work of Sabbatani and C. J. Martin. When sodium citrate is added to a lime salt, a double salt of sodium calcium citrate is formed, in which the calcium is in the anion and forms part of the acidic radical. The mere presence of dissolved calcium is not sufficient for clotting to take place. It is necessary that the calcium should be in the form of a salt and in an ionised condition, such as calcium chloride or calcium sulphate.

Though calcium is a necessary condition for the occurrence of coagulation, it cannot be regarded as a precursor of the protein, fibrin. If the composition of the plasma, before coagulation has been set up, be compared with that of the serum which has separated from the clot, it is found that plasma contains a protein, *fibrinogen*, not represented in the serum, which must therefore be the precursor of fibrin. Fibrinogen belongs to the class of globulins. It can be separated from oxalate plasma by half-saturation with common salt. An equal volume of a saturated solution of sodium chloride is added to plasma so that the whole mixture contains 16 per cent. sodium chloride. The fluid gradually becomes turbid from the production of a precipitate which, at first granular, rapidly aggregates to form a stringy, slimy solid, which adheres to the glass rod used for stirring. This mass can be taken out of the fluid, washed by kneading with half-saturated sodium chloride solution, and then redissolved by the addition of distilled water. With the salt adhering to the precipitate a dilute saline fluid is formed in which the fibrinogen is soluble. The fibrinogen can be purified by repeating the precipitation and solution, though it tends to lose its solubility in the process, so that purification is always attended with some loss. The solution of fibrinogen thus obtained is perfectly clear and colourless. On warming, practically the whole of its protein is thrown down between 56° and 60° C. The same precipitate is produced on heating the original plasma, whereas serum obtained by the expression of the clot does not give any

precipitate on heating until a temperature of 68° to 70° C. is reached. If a solution of fibrinogen, obtained by precipitating with sodium chloride and dissolving in distilled water, be treated with a drop or two of calcium chloride, it rapidly clots with the formation of typical fibrin. We might conclude from this experiment that fibrin was a compound produced by the union of calcium salts with fibrinogen. Further experiments show however the untenability of this hypothesis. If the fibrinogen has been thoroughly purified by repeated precipitation and re-solution, calcium salts are found to have entirely lost their power of causing coagulation. Such a purified fibrinogen can still be made to clot by the addition either of serum or of the washings of a blood clot, or of the watery extract of alcohol-coagulated serum. This power of serum to convert fibrinogen into fibrin is due to the presence in it of minute quantities of a substance which has been designated as ' fibrin ferment ' or *thrombin*. It has been regarded as a ferment because it is active in minimal quantities and is stated not to be appreciably used up in the process of clotting. Thus if we add some serum to a fibrinogen solution we can cause clotting, and then on squeezing the clot obtain a serum which will bring about coagulation when added to a fresh portion of fibrinogen. Considerable doubt however has been thrown on the ferment nature of thrombin by the recent work of Rettger in Howell's laboratory. Rettger shows, in the first place, that the statement of the preceding sentence is true only if a large excess of thrombin solution be made use of in the first instance. If small quantities of thrombin solution be added to large quantities of plasma or of pure solutions of fibrinogen, the amount of fibrin obtained is proportional to the amount of thrombin added. This is shown in the following experiment:

5	drops of thrombin	gave	0·2046	grm.	fibrin.
10	,,	,,	0·3573	,,	,,
20	,,	,,	0·6089	,,	,,
40	,,	,,	1·5872	,,	,,

Moreover the action of thrombin on fibrinogen solutions is almost independent of temperature, occurring practically as rapidly at 17° C. as at 40° C. It has been found that there is only a slight increase in the rate of action of snake venom on fibrinogen solutions when warmed from 20° to 40° C. Rettger therefore regards fibrin as formed by the union of thrombin and fibrinogen. This union is apparently very unstable. If fibrin be extracted with a 3 per cent. salt solution for some time, part of it goes into solution, and the solution is found to contain thrombin. In the same way the thrombin may be re-extracted from the fibrin if the latter be allowed to putrefy.

From all the different kinds of plasma which have been enumerated above, the purified fibrinogen can be obtained by the use of sodium chloride, and in every case can be made to clot by the addition of serum or of a solution of thrombin. The last change in the act of clotting is therefore the change from fibrinogen to fibrin, and this event is brought about by the intervention of

thrombin. It cannot be at this stage of the process that the calcium salts exercise their influence, since 'fibrin ferment' or thrombin will cause the coagulation of fibrinogen in the total absence of soluble calcium salts and even in the presence of a slight amount of ammonium oxalate. Moreover Hammarsten has shown that the calcium content of fibrin is no greater than that of the fibrinogen from which it is formed.

The fact that a solution of pure fibrinogen is made to clot by thrombin and by this alone renders such a solution an excellent reagent for the presence of the 'ferment.' By this means we can show that thrombin is absent in circulating blood. If blood be received direct from the vessels into absolute alcohol and the precipitate, after coagulation by alcohol, be extracted by water, the extract is found to contain no trace of ferment. The same statement applies to fresh oxalate plasma. If however oxalate plasma be made to clot by the addition of calcium salts, the serum squeezed from the clot is found to contain thrombin. In the process of coagulation therefore, not only is there a conversion of fibrinogen to fibrin, but there is an actual formation of the agent which is responsible for this change, namely, thrombin or fibrin ferment. Our next step therefore must be to inquire into the precursors of the thrombin and the conditions of its formation.

If oxalate plasma be cooled to 0° C. for two or three days, a scanty granular precipitate is produced. This can be centrifuged off or separated by filtration through several thicknesses of paper. It is then found that the remaining plasma can no longer be made to coagulate by the addition of lime salts, although it still contains fibrinogen, which is converted into fibrin on the addition of thrombin. If the precipitate be collected and treated with calcium chloride and the mixture added to the oxalate plasma, the latter clots. The same effect is produced if the precipitate *plus* calcium be added to a pure solution of fibrinogen. We must conclude that the precipitate, though itself not fibrin ferment, will give rise to fibrin ferment on treatment with lime salts. It was therefore designated by Hammarsten 'prothrombin,' and regarded as the precursor of thrombin.

Thus far practically all workers on the subject are agreed. Coagulation of the blood is due finally to the interaction of thrombin and fibrinogen. The fibrinogen is present as such in the circulating plasma. Thrombin is not contained in the circulating blood, but is produced from some precursor or precursors after the blood has been shed. For the production of thrombin the presence of calcium salts is necessary. Further research on the nature of the precursor 'prothrombin' has shown that the matter is not quite so simple as imagined by Hammarsten. In the following account we shall adhere chiefly to that given by Morawitz, reserving most of the criticisms and limitations to be made to this theory for the historical sketch of the theories of clotting at the end of this section.

Oxalate plasma, which has been separated from the precipitate of prothrombin, can be made to coagulate by the addition of extracts of almost any animal tissues together with lime salts, and these therefore were supposed to contain prothrombin similar to that obtained by cooling oxalate plasma.

These extracts even on mixture with calcium are however without effect on pure solutions of fibrinogen, and moreover the precipitate produced by cold, if thoroughly washed before treatment with lime salts, loses its power of evoking coagulation in fibrinogen solutions. Prothrombin is therefore unable by itself, even on addition of lime salts, to produce fibrin ferment, but needs the co-operation of some other substance, which is contained in oxalate plasma and which generally adheres in sufficient quantities to the precipitate produced by cooling. Three factors are therefore necessary for the production of fibrin ferment: first, lime salts; secondly, a substance present in the precipitate of prothrombin as well as in most animal tissues; and thirdly, a substance present in solution in oxalate plasma. These two latter substances have been designated by Morawitz thrombokinase and thrombogen. Thrombokinase is contained in tissues and also in the blood platelets. It can be obtained by extraction of the stroma of the red blood corpuscles or of the bodies of lymph cells or leucocytes. Separation of the blood platelets by cooling and filtration abolishes the spontaneous coagulability of any form of plasma. The thrombogen is contained in solution in oxalate plasma. It is therefore concluded that when blood leaves the vessels there is a disintegration of the blood platelets with the liberation of thrombokinase. This acts upon thrombogen in the presence of lime salts and produces thrombin. By the intermediation of the thrombin the fibrinogen also present in solution in the plasma is converted into fibrin. The changes occurring in shed blood and resulting in the production of a clot are therefore mainly concerned with the production of the fibrin ferment. This view of the essential characters of coagulation is borne out by observations on other forms of plasma, especially of plasma of birds' blood. This when obtained with scrupulous cleanliness so as to avoid any contamination with dust or with the tissues remains permanently uncoagulable. In the plasma got by centrifuging the blood no blood platelets are to be seen, and no precipitate is produced by exposure to a temperature of 0° C. We may say therefore that blood platelets with their contained thrombokinase are absent from birds' blood, and with them the property of spontaneous coagulability. It is also free from fibrin ferment, but contains thrombogen as well as soluble lime salts. It is only necessary therefore to add thrombokinase in the shape of a watery extract of any tissue in order to cause the appearance of fibrin ferment and the conversion of the fibrinogen already present in the plasma into fibrin.

In every case the initiation of the act of clotting would seem to depend on the setting free of thrombokinase in the plasma. In mammalian blood, although thrombokinase can be derived from red or white corpuscles, we have no reason to believe that there is any appreciable disintegration of these formed elements when the blood leaves the vessels. In oxalate blood leucocytes can be seen alive and exercising amœboid movements two or three days after the blood has left the vessels, and although certain observers have assumed the presence of explosive corpuscles which break up directly the

blood leaves the vessels, the presence of such corpuscles in the higher animals has not been demonstrated, though in some invertebrata they are certainly present. The sole source therefore of the thrombokinase is the very perishable formed elements of which we have spoken as the blood platelets. The very existence of this element is doubtful in normal blood. What is certain is that any slight change in the plasma, whether due to contact with a foreign object or to cooling of the blood, causes the appearance of these elements. The first act therefore in coagulation is the appearance of the blood platelet and its disintegration with the setting free of thrombokinase. The part played by the platelets in coagulation is of great importance in maintaining the integrity of the vascular system. If a fine needle be thrust through the wall of a venous capillary which is kept under observation by the microscope, it will be seen that the blood, as it flows past the injured spot, deposits blood platelets on the side of the puncture. These aggregate to form a plug closely adherent to the wall of the vessel, which effectively prevents any escape of the contents of the capillary. The blood platelets fuse so as to form a mass of fibrin, and later on by the growth of the adjacent endothelial cells the thrombus is organised, converted into connective tissue, and covered with a layer of endothelium continuous with the rest of the vessel. The same process occurs when any part of the lining membrane of a large vessel is injured. Thus destruction of a patch of endothelium in a vein leads to the deposition of blood platelets over the patch and the formation of a 'thrombus' adherent to the wall. From this thrombus coagulation may spread through the rest of the contents of the vessel and produce thrombosis of the whole vein. Under healthy conditions the thrombus serves simply to cover the bare area in the wall of the vein and is grown over later by endothelium, so restoring the integrity of the vessel wall. If we believe in the pre-existence of blood platelets in the circulating blood, we must assume the first act in coagulation to be the disintegration of these elements and the setting free of thrombokinase. If we disbelieve in their pre-existence, the first act in coagulation must be a change in the plasma itself (which perhaps can be regarded as a dropsical protoplasm), leading to the separation of an unstable substance, thrombokinase, in the form of a disc-like precipitate which rapidly undergoes further changes, reacting with the thrombogen remaining in solution in the plasma with the production of fibrin ferment.

Why does the blood not clot in the vessel? No theory of coagulation can be satisfactory which does not account at the same time for the preservation of the fluidity of the circulating blood. One factor at any rate in the prevention of intravascular clotting must be the nature of the surfaces with which the blood comes in contact. The blood, even of mammals, can be prevented for a time from clotting if it be kept carefully from contact with any foreign substance which is wetted by it, as for instance when it is received into vessels free from dust and coated with a layer of oil or paraffin. On the other hand, free contact with such substances, as occurs when the blood is whipped, materially hastens the process of coagulation. One must

therefore conclude that mere contact with a foreign body has a direct destructive action either on the plasma leading to the formation of blood platelets, or on the latter, leading to their disintegration and the discharge of thrombokinase. Birds' blood for instance can be made to clot without the addition of tissue juice if, by increasing the mechanical insult as by violent whipping, filtration through a clay cell, or addition of water, we destroy the leucocytes and red blood corpuscles so leading to the liberation of their contained thrombokinase. Another factor is probably the presence of what we may call antithrombins in circulating blood. Although evidence of the existence of these bodies is still somewhat uncertain, the fact that blood serum often has an inhibitory effect on the action of a solution of fibrin ferment points to the presence in the serum of some antibody to the ferment. One must assume too that processes of disintegration are continually occurring in the blood and involving the plasma, blood platelets, and leucocytes, just as we know them to affect the red blood corpuscles. In the healthy animal the liberation of thrombokinase, which must take place under these circumstances, has no influence in producing clotting. The organism therefore must possess means of neutralising the presence of small quantities either of kinase or of fibrin ferment. When small quantities of either of these substances are injected into the blood stream, no coagulation takes place, but the blood obtained after the injection clots with less readiness than before, a change which can be ascribed only to the production in the body of antikinase or of antithrombin. This production of anticoagulins must be continually taking place and must co-operate in the preservation of the fluid state of the blood while in the vessels.

INTRAVASCULAR CLOTTING. On account of the protective mechanisms with which the animal organism is endowed, the production of clotting in the vessels of the living animal is not readily effected by the injection of thrombin. Solutions obtained by Schmidt's method from alcohol-coagulated serum are generally without effect, and we have to inject a very strong solution of thrombin or the strong fibrin ferment contained in the venom of certain snakes in order to bring about coagulation of the blood in the vessels. Intravascular clotting is more easily effected by the injection of thrombokinase. It was shown by Wooldridge that normal saline extracts of tissues rich in cells, such as the thymus, lymph glands, or testis, causes invariably extensive thrombosis. If such extracts be acidified with acetic acid, a precipitate is produced which is soluble in dilute alkalies, and on gastric digestion yields a precipitate rich in phosphorus. Alkaline solutions of the acid precipitate bring about intravascular clotting when injected into the blood stream. According to Wooldridge the injected substance takes part in the formation of the clot, and he therefore gave it the name of 'tissue fibrinogen.' It is usual to regard these tissue fibrinogens as nucleo-proteins. They are certainly rich in lecithin, and the precipitate obtained from them on gastric digestion may contain as much as 25 per cent. of this substance. They must be derived either from the cytoplasm or from the interstitial fluid of the tissues, and it is still doubtful whether we are justified in giving

them the name of nucleo-proteins or whether we should not rather classify them with the phospho-proteins which play so great a part in the building up of the cytoplasmic part of the cell. We may explain the action of these tissue extracts as due to their containing thrombokinase.[1] Their injection would resemble therefore the liberation of thrombokinase which normally occurs when blood leaves the vessels. More difficult to understand is the result of injecting small amounts of these tissue extracts or large amounts in small doses. A minute quantity of tissue extract injected into the blood stream produces, not intravascular clotting, but a delay of the coagulation time. Repeated injections of small doses may absolutely annul the coagulability of the blood, which can be collected by opening the blood vessels and will remain unclotted for many days. The same double effect may be observed even with a larger dose. In rabbits and in dogs after a full meal the intravascular coagulation which occurs is complete, extending through the whole vascular system. If however the injection be made into a fasting dog the thrombosis produced is limited to the portal vein. There is a sudden fall of blood pressure, from which the animal gradually recovers. If a vessel be opened during the period of low pressure, the blood which flows out is totally uncoagulable, and if the animal be killed at this time a clot will be found filling up the whole portal vein. Wooldridge described these two effects of injection of tissue extracts, namely the coagulation and the loss of coagulability, as the *positive* and *negative phases* respectively. Since the negative phase has not been observed in any form of extravascular plasma, we must ascribe it to a reaction on the part of the living cells and probably, since it is so rapid in its establishment, to the action of the cells lining the blood vessels. The interest of these observations lies in the relation which they bear to the production of immunity. If a toxin such as that of diphtheria or tetanus be injected into an animal, an antitoxin is produced in the course of two or three days. If now further doses of toxin be injected, its first effect is to destroy the whole of the antitoxin present in the circulating blood. In the course of a day or two the antitoxin gradually returns, and at the end of three days is found in larger quantities in the blood than were present before the second injection. Every toxin has therefore a positive as well as a negative phase of action. Tissue extracts in their effect on coagulation have a similar positive and negative phase, but these phases are established within a few seconds instead of taking two or three days for their development. One cannot but believe that a renewed study of the conditions of intravascular clotting might shed important light on the chemical mechanism of production of immunity.

FATE OF THE FIBRIN FERMENT. The substances which interact for the production of thrombin in shed blood as well as thrombin itself are not entirely used up in the process of clotting. Blood serum, though free from fibrinogen, contains traces of thrombokinase (which can be precipitated by

[1] According to Howell, these tissue fibrinogens consist of phosphatides in association with protein. When separated from the protein they are thermostable, and their thromboplastic effect is due to their power of neutralising antithrombin.

the addition of dilute acetic acid) and thrombogen, as well as a fairly strong solution of thrombin. Thrombin however rapidly disappears from serum, so that a blood serum which has been kept for two or three days may be almost free from fibrin ferment. Such a serum can be reactivated by the addition of small traces either of acid or alkali. It has been suggested that the thrombin undergoes a modification into an inactive form which is called *metathrombin*. This substance has no relation to the precursors of fibrin ferment which we have already considered. It is unaltered by lime salts or by the addition of thrombokinase, but can be reconverted into thrombin by means of acids or alkalies. According to Rettger the disappearance of thrombin from serum is due to its combination with some of the proteins of the serum. This combination, like that of thrombin with fibrinogen to form fibrin, is unstable and can be broken up by the action of alkalies, acids, or even of putrefaction. Thrombin itself seems to be extremely stable and will withstand even the temperature of boiling water for a short time. If solutions containing thrombin be evaporated to dryness, the dry residue can be heated to 135° C. without destruction of the thrombin.

We are now in a position to see how far the theory of coagulation evolved from a study of two forms of plasma will serve to explain the behaviour of the many other kinds of plasma which have been the subject of investigation.

COOLED PLASMA contains the thrombokinase in the form of blood platelets or a disc-like precipitate. This precipitate can be separated by centrifuging at a low temperature or by filtration. The remaining plasma contains only thrombogen, lime salts, and fibrinogen, and can be made to clot by the addition of tissue extracts or of fibrin ferment, but will not clot on warming.

In SODIUM SULPHATE PLASMA the interaction of the fibrin factors is merely impeded by the excess of salt. All are still present, and it is therefore sufficient merely to dilute the plasma in order to produce clotting.

MAGNESIUM SULPHATE PLASMA behaves somewhat differently. If the blood be received directly into magnesium sulphate solution, and the mixture centrifuged while still warm, a clear magnesium sulphate plasma is obtained which will clot on simple dilution. If the blood be left for twenty-four hours before centrifuging, the plasma will not clot on dilution nor on addition of tissue extracts. It contains fibrinogen only and is therefore an excellent reagent for the presence of fibrin ferment. Magnesium sulphate not only hinders the interaction of the fibrin factors but actually slowly precipitates the thrombokinase, so that if time be allowed for this precipitation to be complete the remaining plasma contains only fibrinogen.

SODIUM FLUORIDE PLASMA might be expected to act like oxalate plasma since sodium fluoride is a precipitant of lime salts. This salt has however the additional property of causing a certain amount of fixation of the formed elements of the blood as well as of the blood platelets. If it be thoroughly centrifuged so that the plasma is obtained free from these constituents, it will no longer clot with lime salts [1] nor even with lime salts *plus* tissue extracts, but will clot readily on addition of thrombin. Although it still contains a certain amount of thrombogen, this is entangled and carried down in the precipitate of calcium fluoride which is produced by the addition of lime salts, so that the thrombokinase has nothing on which to exercise its effect. Sodium fluoride plasma is therefore useful, like magnesium sulphate plasma, as a test for the presence of thrombin. If water be added to the sodium fluoride blood, so as to destroy some of the formed elements and liberate their constituents into the plasma, it is possible to produce clotting by the simple addition of lime salts.

[1] According to Rettger this statement is incorrect.

HIRUDIN PLASMA. The action of hirudin is that of an antithrombin. It apparently combines with and neutralises fibrin ferment. Hirudin plasma can therefore be made to clot by the addition of fibrin ferment in sufficiently large quantities to combine with all the hirudin present and leave an excess over in the fluid.

PEPTONE PLASMA presents many difficulties in the explanation of its behaviour. Peptone itself has apparently no influence on the coagulation of the blood. Blood received into peptone solution clots as rapidly as when received into salt solution. On the other hand, if blood be received into peptone blood obtained by the injection of large doses of peptone into the veins of another animal, the mixture does not clot, showing that peptone blood contains some substance which inhibits the processes of coagulation. This 'anticoagulin' must be produced by the organism itself as a result of the injection of peptone, and evidence has been brought forward by Delezenne and others that the seat of formation of the anticoagulin is in the liver. Whether the anti-substance partakes of the characters of an antithrombin or of an antikinase has not yet been definitely ascertained. Peptone plasma can be made to clot by the addition of tissue extracts even in small quantities. It still contains all the fibrin factors, since it will clot on simple dilution or on the passage of a current of carbon dioxide. It needs however the addition of large quantities of fibrin ferment to bring about coagulation.

THE TRANSUDATIONS

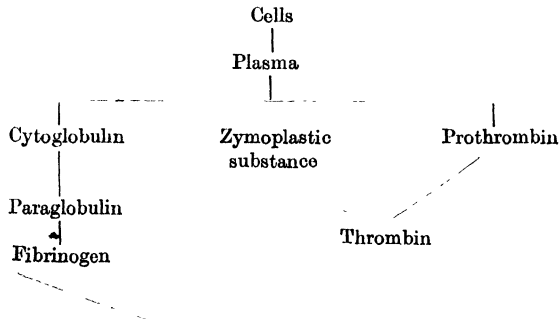
The earlier work on the mechanism of coagulation was largely carried out on the fluids obtained from the pericardial or pleural cavities or on hydrocele fluid from the *tunica vaginalis*. These as a rule can be kept indefinitely without clotting, but will clot readily on addition of a few drops of blood or the washings of a blood clot or fibrin ferment. They will not clot on the addition of tissue extracts containing thrombokinase. Though they contain leucocytes and even some red corpuscles, they are free from blood platelets. Their behaviour is readily explained by the assumption that they contain fibrinogen, but are free from thrombokinase or thrombogen. In order to produce coagulation it is therefore necessary to add two fibrin factors, thrombokinase and thrombogen, as happens when we add blood, or to treat them with fully formed thrombin or fibrin ferment.

HISTORY OF THE COAGULATION QUESTION. It is not surprising that the coagulation of the blood, with the antecedent changes which lead to the appearance of thrombin and probably represent the successive stages in the disintegration of a fluid labile protoplasmic molecule, *i. e.* the change from life to death of the plasma, should have been the subject of a very large number of investigations, and that even at the present time the interpretation of the salient facts presents many difficulties. Some help may be given to the future clearing up of these difficulties by a study of the steps by which our present standpoint has been arrived at. The universal practice of bleeding as a therapeutic measure naturally afforded many opportunities to physicians for observing the processes of coagulation under diseased as well as healthy conditions. The general result was however in most cases a crop of ill-founded and uncritical theories; and it is not till the time of Hewson (1772) that we meet with investigations of the question carried out on modern lines with reference to observation and experiment at each stage. We owe to Hewson the discovery that coagulation can be inhibited indefinitely by the addition of neutral salts, such as sodium sulphate, and it was by a study of such bloods that Hewson arrived at the conclusion that the formed elements of the blood take no part in the production of the clot. Johannes Müller in 1832 came to the same conclusion from a study of frog's blood. This he diluted with sugar solution and filtered through filter-paper. The large corpuscles were retained by the meshes of the filter-paper and the clear fluid which came through slowly underwent coagulation.

The beginning of our modern ideas on the subject must be ascribed to Buchanan, though many of the facts discovered by this observer escaped general recognition and were later re-discovered by Alexander Schmidt. Buchanan worked chiefly on hydrocele fluid and showed that this could be made to yield fibrin by treatment with fresh blood or by adding it to the washings of a blood clot. He compares the action of the latter to that of rennet on the protein of milk. His experiments showed that "fibrin has not the least tendency to deposit itself spontaneously in the form of a coagulum, that, like albumin and casein, fibrin often coagulates under the influence of suitable reagents, and that the blood, like most other liquids of the body which appear to coagulate spontaneously, only do so in consequence of their containing at once fibrin and substances capable of reacting upon it and so occasioning coagulation." He held therefore that the coagulation of the blood is due to the conversion of a soluble constituent of the *liquor sanguinis* into fibrin by an action exerted probably by the colourless corpuscles and comparable to the action which rennet exerts in effecting the coagulation of milk. Furthermore the liquid which accumulates in certain serous sacs may be made to yield a coagulum of fibrin when subjected to the action of liquids or solids rich in the cellular elements with which the coagulent action appeared to be associated (Gamgee).

Denis in 1856 attempted to separate this precursor of fibrin. He received the blood into one-sixth of its volume of saturated sodium sulphate, allowed the corpuscles to settle, and filtered off the supernatant plasma. On saturating this with sodium chloride a precipitate was produced which Denis designated 'plasmine.' This precipitate, on solution in water, slowly underwent coagulation and was apparently split into two substances—a solid fibrin and a soluble protein. Clotting therefore, according to Denis, was dependent on the splitting of a single protein into two different proteins, one of which was insoluble. A few years later the subject was taken up by Alexander Schmidt, who devoted the remaining thirty years of his life to the investigation of the coagulation of the blood. Working first, as Buchanan had done, on fluids obtained from serous cavities, he noticed that these could be made to clot by the addition of serum, and he concluded that coagulation was due to the interaction or combination of two different proteins, one fibrinogen, contained in the serous fluid, and the other 'fibrinoplastin,' which was contained in the serum and could be precipitated by acidification or by dilution and passage of a stream of carbon dioxide. This fibrinoplastin was identical with what we should nowadays call paraglobulin, but had adherent to it fibrin ferment. Schmidt later on found that in many cases it was not sufficient to mix these two substances together, but that a third factor was necessary, which could be obtained either from serum or from blood clot which had been coagulated by alcohol. This third factor he compared to a ferment, so that the theory put forward by Schmidt in 1872 was that coagulation depends on the interaction of two substances—fibrinogen and fibrinoplastin—under the influence of a third substance, fibrin ferment or thrombin. A few years later Hammarsten, of Upsala, in a very careful series of experiments, proved conclusively that the fibrinoplastin of Schmidt was not a necessary factor. Hammarsten discovered the method which we use at the present time for separation of fibrinogen, namely, precipitation by half-saturation with common salt, and showed that the fibrinogen obtained in this way and purified by repeated precipitation and resolution would yield a clot of fibrin on the addition of fibrin ferment prepared by Schmidt's process. According to Hammarsten therefore, clotting was due to the conversion of the fibrinogen present in the circulating plasma into fibrin by the action of fibrin ferment, which was probably yielded by the disintegration of the white blood corpuscles. Schmidt's later work was directed chiefly to determining the mode of origin of the fibrin ferment. Though his researches yielded a number of important facts, especially as to the part played by tissue cells in furnishing the precursors of the ferment or in influencing the processes of clotting, they did not result in clarifying the views of physiologists generally on the subject of clotting. Perhaps their most useful effect was to demonstrate the complexity of the processes which occur in the blood after it leaves the vessels, and to show that in the maintenance of the fluid condition in the vessels as well as in the production of a clot outside the vessels, there must be an interaction between the opposing factors, some of which hinder and some of which

favour the occurrence of coagulation. According to Schmidt the plasma is itself derived from the cells of the body, the fibrinogen being formed through the stages of paraglobulin and cytoglobulin. The thrombin is derived from a precursor prothrombin under the action of a zymoplastic substance also derived from the cells. In the presence of the proper concentration of salts the thrombin acts upon fibrinogen to produce fibrin. His views may be roughly expressed by the following schema given by Howell:



Soluble fibrin — Salts = Fibrin

Some important light was thrown on the subject by the researches of Wooldridge. Working chiefly with peptone plasma, he showed in the first place that such plasma contained all the factors necessary for the production of fibrin, and therefore that the co-operation of leucocytes was not a necessary part of the process. Peptone plasma, separated entirely from leucocytes and red corpuscles, could be made to clot by dilution, by the passage of a stream of carbon dioxide or filtration through a clay cell. This power of clotting without addition of any other substances depended on the presence in the plasma of a substance called by Wooldridge 'A-fibrinogen,' which was thrown down as a disc-like precipitate on cooling to 0° C. On separating this precipitate, which he regarded as equivalent to the blood platelets, by means of the centrifuge, the remaining plasma would clot only on the addition of extracts of tissues. Since neither the original plasma nor the plasma after separation of the A-fibrinogen would clot on the addition of fibrin ferment, Wooldridge thought that the fibrinogen of Hammarsten was absent from such plasma, which contained only two fibrinogens, A- and B-fibrinogen. Clotting therefore consisted essentially in an interaction between A- and B-fibrinogen, and was inaugurated by the appearance of A-fibrinogen as a disc-like precipitate. In this interaction he showed that ferment was produced, and the weakest part of his theory was that it gave practically no office to the ferment produced during the first steps of the process imagined by him. The B-fibrinogen could be thrown down by the action of dilute acid or of salt from the plasma after separation of the A-fibrinogen. After precipitation and re-solution two or three times it would clot with fibrin ferment, and was coagulated at a temperature of 56° C., and was therefore the typical fibrinogen of Hammarsten. According to Wooldridge therefore, previous observers had been working, not with the fibrinogens of the plasma, but with a fibrinogen altered by repeated precipitation and re-solution. One fact discovered by him, which at once attained universal recognition, was the production of intravascular clotting by the injection of tissue extracts. These tissue extracts contained tissue fibrinogens which he compared with A-fibrinogen. According to him clotting could be inaugurated either by the action of A-fibrinogen on the B-fibrinogen, or by the action of tissue fibrinogen on the B-fibrinogen of the plasma. In every case fibrin ferment resulted and could therefore effect the conversion of any C-fibrinogen of Hammarsten which might be present in the fibrin. It will be seen that this theory of Wooldridge presents a striking similarity to that which is generally accepted at the present day. If we change the names of A-fibrinogen to thrombokinase, of B-fibrinogen to thrombogen, we see that the only difference between Wooldridge's theory and that

of Morawitz is that the former ignored the importance of lime salts in the process and imagined that the interaction of thrombokinase and thrombogen resulted in the direct production of fibrin as well as ferment, instead of recognising that the interaction of the two substances was simply a first stage and that thrombin was formed in this process for the subsequent conversion of the fibrinogen into fibrin.

Attention however was largely diverted from Wooldridge's work by the discovery of the necessity of calcium salts for clotting. Green had already shown that the clotting of many forms of salt plasma could be hastened by the addition of calcium sulphate, whereas the coagulation of serous fluid was not affected by this salt. Green suggested that possibly a zymogen of the ferment was activated by the calcium salt. The absolute necessity for the presence of this salt was first demonstrated by Arthus and Pagés (1890) on oxalate and fluoride plasma. At first Arthus was inclined to regard the part played by calcium salts in the coagulation of the blood as analogous in all respects to that played in the coagulation of milk by rennet, and suggested that the conversion of fibrinogen into fibrin was actually the combination of fibrinogen with calcium salts, the combination being effected by the agency of the ferment. It was shown however by Pekelharing that the power of lime salts to produce clotting in oxalate plasma was annulled if the body precipitable by cold had been previously removed, and Hammarsten proved conclusively that the action of calcium salts was on the prothrombin and not on the fibrinogen, careful analyses of fibrinogen and fibrin respectively giving practically equal figures for calcium. Hammarsten pointed out moreover that fibrin ferment would convert fibrinogen into fibrin in the total absence of soluble calcium salts and even in the presence of a slight excess of oxalate.

Later experiments have had reference chiefly to the nature of the prothrombin precipitate and to the question of the origin of the fibrin ferment from the blood plasma. Recent advances in the subject were much facilitated by the discovery by Delezenne that bird's blood could be prevented from clotting by the simple expedient of collecting it free from any contact with the tissues. A careful study of this blood and a comparison of its behaviour with that of other forms of uncoagulable plasma by Fuld and Spiro, and especially by Morawitz, have resulted in the further separation of the precursor of fibrin into two substances, thrombokinase and thrombogen. Further investigations by Nolf have dealt especially with the question of the interaction, which is continually taking place between the vessel wall and the contained blood and which may result, according to the circumstances, in the diminution or increase in the coagulability of the blood. According to Nolf the essential factors in the production of blood clotting are three proteins, namely, fibrinogen, thrombogen, and thrombozym. The two former are produced in the liver, while the thrombozym is formed from the leucocytes. The clotting depends, not on a ferment action, but on a mutual interaction and precipitation of colloids with as a result either fibrin or thrombin. Thrombin differs from fibrin merely in containing less fibrinogen. For this reaction to take place the presence of calcium is necessary as well as certain thromboplastic substances which act as centres of precipitation. The fluid condition of the blood in the vessel depends on the presence of antithrombin formed in the liver. Nolf thus agrees with Wooldridge in regarding thrombin as a product of coagulation rather than a cause. Thrombin, according to him, is merely an unsaturated compound which is capable of taking up or uniting with more fibrinogen to form fibrin. Nolf would regard the formation of fibrin as an important preparatory step in the nutrition of the cells. He compares these actions occurring in the blood to the actions of digestive ferments on proteins. Just as casein is first precipitated and then digested by pepsin, so fibrinogen is first precipitated as fibrin by union with thrombozym and thrombogen. This fibrin is then hydrolysed and dissolved by the further action of the thrombozym, which he regards as essentially proteolytic in character. That the whole blood does not coagulate within the vessels he explains by assuming that the cells of the blood and tissues are covered normally with an ultramicroscopic layer of fibrin. This forms a neutral surface, like a paraffined vessel, which has no thromboplastic effect upon the plasma.

According to Mellanby the prothrombin in the plasma is constantly associated with the fibrinogen. It may be converted to thrombin either by the action of calcium and

thrombokinase, or by the action of calcium and alkali, or possibly by the action of calcium alone. The latest work on the subject by Rettger has tended somewhat to the simplification of this extremely complex problem. In the first place, he regards the formation of fibrin as non-fermentative in character, thus agreeing with Nolf, fibrin being produced by the simple union of fibrinogen and thrombin, though a very small amount of thrombin may produce a much larger amount (about 200 times its weight) of fibrin. He finds no evidence of the pre-existence in the blood of a thrombin or pro-ferment, and is inclined to regard the action of so-called kinases, which can be extracted from animal tissues, as similar to that of such agents as dust, threads of linen, which can produce a similar coagulating effect in birds' blood. The thrombin he regards as derived from the formed elements at the moment of their rapid disintegration when placed under abnormal circumstances. For the formation of active thrombin a minimal amount of calcium salts must enter into the molecular complex. We thus return to the simpler expression of the processes of coagulation as given by Pekelharing and Hammarsten, the prothrombin which is formed from the platelets and leucocytes by secretion or process of disintegration being activated to thrombin by the calcium salts present, and the thrombin so formed combining quantitatively with the fibrinogen to form fibrin. The prothrombin is not readily destroyed; it may remain in calcium free serum for days and when activated form thrombin quickly. Thrombin, on the other hand, disappears very rapidly from active serum in consequence of combining with some of the proteins of the serum. This property of combining with the fibrinogen and disappearing from the serum is not shared by the prothrombin.

SECTION V

THE QUANTITY AND COMPOSITION OF THE BLOOD IN MAN

A. THE TOTAL QUANTITY OF BLOOD IN THE BODY

THE amount of blood contained in the body can be estimated by Welcker's method. It is not sufficient simply to open one of the blood vessels and allow the animal to bleed to death, because it is not possible in this way to obtain the whole of the blood present in the body, and the blood which is obtained gradually becomes more dilute in consequence of absorption from the tissue spaces as bleeding continues. A small sample of blood is therefore taken from a blood vessel and diluted 100 times with distilled water to serve as a standard of comparison. The animal is then bled from a cannula placed in a large artery, while at the same time normal salt solution is led into a vein so as to maintain the vascular system as full as possible and allow of its being washed out by the action of the heart. When the heart ceases to beat, the blood vessels are thoroughly washed out by a stream of normal salt solution from the aorta. The animal is then minced up thoroughly and extracted with distilled water, so as to dissolve out the hæmoglobin still adherent to the tissues and especially contained in the red marrow. These washings are filtered and mixed with the whole diluted blood and the strength of the mixture in hæmoglobin is compared with that of the standard solution. In this way it is possible to estimate the total hæmoglobin present in the body in terms of the sample and so find the total amount of circulating fluid. It has been found that the dog contains about 7·7 per cent. of his body weight as circulating blood, and although smaller figures were obtained on other animals, such as the rabbit, the number of one-thirteenth has been taken as applicable to man on the basis of two observations made long ago on executed criminals. According to Haldane this estimate is too high, the average amount of blood in man being only about 4·9 per cent. of the body weight, *i. e.* about one-twentieth; in some cases, as in fat individuals, it may be as little as one-thirtieth. Since the determination of the total volume of the circulating blood plays an important part in the consideration of the pathology of certain diseases such as anæmia and heart disease, the ingenious method adopted by Haldane for this determination in the living animal may be here described. The method depends on the fact that carbon monoxide gas when inhaled

combines with hæmoglobin, expelling the oxygen from the oxyhæmoglobin. If we allow a man to breathe a certain volume of carbon monoxide until it is entirely absorbed and then find that one-fifth of the hæmoglobin in his blood is saturated with carbon monoxide, we know that the whole blood could take up five times the bulk of carbon monoxide which the man has inspired. In this way we determine the total 'carbonic oxide capacity' of the blood, and since CO-hæmoglobin contains the same volume of carbon monoxide as oxyhæmoglobin does of oxygen, the same figure gives us the total 'oxygen capacity.' The total oxygen capacity enables us to determine the total amount of hæmoglobin in the body, and if we know the

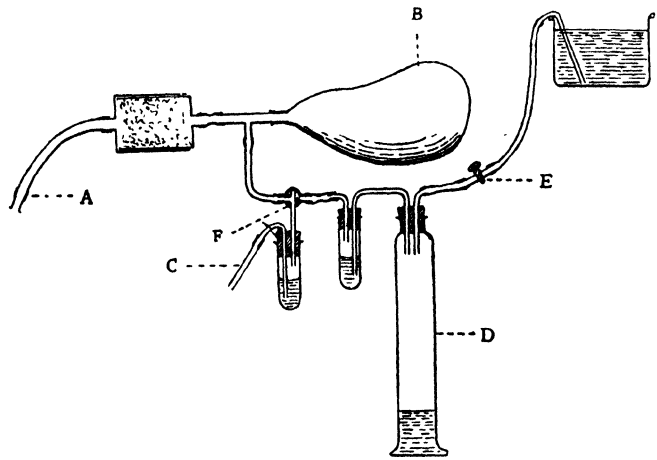


FIG. 380. Haldane's CO method for determining total blood volume in man.

percentage amount of hæmoglobin in the blood it is easy to calculate the total volume of circulating fluid.

Before the carbonic oxide is administered, the percentage oxygen capacity, *i. e.* the volume of oxygen capable of being taken up by the hæmoglobin of 100 c.c. of the blood, is determined as follows: The oxygen capacity of a sample of fresh ox blood is accurately measured by the ferricyanide method (*v.* p. 902). The ox blood is then compared colorimetrically with blood obtained in the ordinary way by means of a hæmoglobinometer needle from the finger of the subject of the experiment, and the oxygen capacity of the latter blood calculated from the result of the comparison. The subject is now made to breathe through a mouthpiece A (Fig. 380) into a bladder B of about 2 litres capacity. The carbon dioxide produced during the experiment is absorbed by the soda lime vessel between the mouthpiece and the bladder. The oxygen as it is used up is replaced from an oxygen cylinder through the tube C. D is a graduated vessel containing pure carbonic oxide gas. While the subject is breathing in and out of the bag, a given volume of carbon monoxide is admitted into the bag, being driven out from the tube D by allowing water to flow through the tap E. The required volume of carbon monoxide is gradually driven in from the measuring cylinder at the rate of about 30 c.c. every two minutes. When the required quantity has been driven in and pushed forward by the oxygen, an interval of two or three minutes is allowed to elapse. After this a drop of blood is taken for analysis. It contains a certain amount of CO-hæmoglobin.

The relative saturation of the blood in carbon monoxide is determined by the colorimetric method. A number of narrow test-tubes of exactly equal diameter and each holding about 6 c.c. are taken, and 2 c.c. of water saturated with air measured off into each. Two cubic millimetres of the blood of the subject are measured off in the ordinary way by means of a hæmoglobinometer pipette into each of the six tubes, the solutions being well mixed. Four cubic millimetres of this blood are thoroughly saturated with coal gas and placed in another shorter tube, which is filled full and tightly corked. In this tube the hæmoglobin is completely saturated with carbon monoxide. After the subject has breathed the carbon monoxide, a sample of his blood is taken and diluted as before. The solution in this tube is, of course, pinker than those in the other tubes. A standard solution of carmine is now added from a narrow burette to one of the tubes of normal blood solution until its tint is the same as that of the blood taken after the inhalation. Addition of the carmine is then continued until the tint is equal to that of the blood solution which is entirely saturated with carbon monoxide. Supposing that 0·45 c.c. of carmine was required to produce equality of tint with that of the blood taken during the experiment and 2·5 c.c. to produce equality of tint with that of the saturated blood, then as 2·5 c.c. of carmine in 4·5 c.c. of liquid were required to produce saturation tint, and only 0·45 c.c. of carmine in 2·45 c.c. of liquid to produce the tint of the blood under examination, the percentage saturation of the latter could be calculated by the following sum:

$$\frac{2{\cdot}5}{4{\cdot}5} \quad \frac{{\cdot}45}{2{\cdot}45} :: 100 : x$$

$$\therefore x = 33{\cdot}1$$

Although this method requires careful execution in order to avoid fallacies, it is possible to attain results, as has been shown by Douglas, closely agreeing with Welcker's method. The error is probably not greater than 10 per cent., which is negligible in comparison with the large changes in total blood volume which have been found to occur in certain cases of disease. The total record of two such observations by Haldane and Lorrain Smith may be here quoted:

NORMAL INDIVIDUAL

Body weight in kilogrammes.	Volume of dry CO. absorbed in c.c. at 0° C.	Percentage saturation of Hb with CO.	Dry oxygen capacity of blood in c.c.
72·9	116	18·9	614
89·0	116	22·7	511

Oxygen capacity per 100 c.c. of blood in c.c.	Total amount of blood in grammes.	Grammes of blood per 100 grm. of body weight.	C.c. of oxygen per 100 grm. of body weight.
18·7	3455	4·75	0·84
18·2	2970	3·34	0·57

In applying this method in cases of disease it is important not to give too large a dose of carbonic oxide gas. In a normal individual 30 per cent. of the hæmoglobin may be combined with carbon monoxide before any oxygen hunger is felt, and it is possible to saturate half the hæmoglobin with this gas, though with considerable discomfort to the individual. In cases such as heart disease, where the patient is at the very margin of his resources, even 30 per cent. diminution of the oxygen capacity of the blood may have serious results, and the carbon monoxide inspired must be therefore kept at the lowest limit at which it is possible to carry out a reliable determination of the relative carbonic oxide saturation of the blood sample.

A simpler method of determining the total blood volume has been worked out by Keith, Rowntree and Geraghty. The method consists in injecting a non-toxic, non-diffusible dye substance into the blood stream and estimating its dilution. The dye used is 'vital red,' a chemical compound belonging to the triphenyl-methane series. In performing the test 6 to 8 c.c. of blood are removed from an elbow vein. From 10 to 18 c.c. of a 1·5 per cent. solution of the dye in distilled water is then slowly injected by the same needle. Five minutes later a second specimen of blood is withdrawn into a third syringe. The blood samples are prevented from clotting by the addition of potassium oxalate. A part of this is drawn into a hæmatocrit tube and centrifuged for twenty minutes at a high speed in order to determine the relative volume of corpuscles and plasma. The rest of both samples of blood are centrifuged in order to obtain the plasma. Samples of plasma before and after are then compared in the following mixture:

Standard { 1 part of the diluted dye solution.
1 part of the plasma before dye injection.
2 parts 0·8 per cent. NaCl solution.

Test { 1 part of plasma after dye injection.
3 parts 0·8 per cent. NaCl solution.

The two solutions are compared in a colorimeter and the test solution read off as a percentage of the standard. The following formula will give us the plasma volume:

If R be the percentage reading of test solution.

$$\frac{200}{R} \times \text{c.c. dye injected} \times 100 = \text{c.c. plasma.}$$

The blood volume is calculated from the hæmatocrit reading.

$$\text{Total blood volume} = \frac{100 \times \text{c.c. plasma}}{\text{percentage plasma in blood.}}$$

The total blood volume probably varies appreciably with alterations in the condition of the animal, and may be found different on two succeeding days. It is certainly influenced by the height of the blood pressure as well as by the oxygen tension in the air breathed, and therefore alters with the altitude. Some of these variations we shall have to consider more fully in a later section. Any lowering of blood pressure causes an absorption of fluid from the tissues into the blood, so that the latter becomes more dilute. The blood content during the last stages of bleeding may contain little more than 50 or 60 per cent. of the hæmoglobin which was present in the first samples of blood, pointing to a corresponding dilution of the blood during these few minutes by means of tissue lymph. By this means, *i. e.* the absorption of fluid from tissues, the volume of circulating blood after a limited hæmorrhage is rapidly brought up to normal, so that there is a circulation of a fluid impoverished in corpuscles. The latter are made up in the course of a few weeks as a result of increased activity in the bone-marrow.

Relative Amount of Plasma and Corpuscles. The relative amount of corpuscles in a given sample of blood is most easily determined by Blix's method. The blood is mixed with a definite amount of 2·5 per cent. potassium bichromate, and the mixture is put into small graduated capillary tubes, which are then placed in a centrifuge revolving about 10,000 times per minute. The corpuscles rapidly accumulate in an almost solid mass at the bottom of the tube, and their volume

can be directly read off. It is often possible by working quickly to receive blood into such graduated capillary tubes and to centrifuge it rapidly before it has had time to coagulate. The corpuscles are hurried down to the bottom of the tube within two or three minutes and their volume can be in this way directly determined. An indirect method for the same purpose was devised by Hoppe-Seyler. The total proteins of defibrinated blood are determined and compared with the total proteins of the washed corpuscles and of the serum. Thus in one experiment 100 grm. of defibrinated pig's blood contained 18·90 grm. protein *plus* hæmoglobin. The blood corpuscles of 100 grm. of the same blood contained 15·07 grm. proteins *plus* hæmoglobin; therefore the serum of the same 100 grm. of blood contained 18·90 — 15·07 = 3·83 grm. proteins. One hundred grammes of serum contained 6·77 grm. protein. From these figures the amount of serum in the 100 grm. of defibrinated blood may be computed as follows:

$$\frac{3{\cdot}83}{6{\cdot}77} \cdot 100 = 56{\cdot}6 \text{ per cent. serum.}$$

$$100 - 56{\cdot}6 = 43{\cdot}4 \text{ per cent. blood corpuscles.}$$

The average volume of corpuscles in human blood can be taken as 50 per cent. of the total amount, different estimations having given figures varying from 48 to 54 per cent. In the horse the volume of corpuscles is 53 per cent., in the dog 36 per cent.

The Enumeration of the Corpuscles. In order to enumerate the red corpuscles, the blood is diluted with a known amount of an isotonic fluid and the number is counted in a measured volume of the mixture. The average number of red corpuscles is about 5,000,000 per cubic millimetre in adult men and rather fewer, about 4,500,000, in adult women. The enumeration of corpuscles is subject to considerable errors, probably not less than 10 per cent. Moreover different conditions of the circulation may cause variations in the relative distribution of plasma and corpuscles respectively in different parts of the circulation, so that the blood-count of a specimen from the capillaries of the finger or lobe of the ear may vary considerably from a similar count of the corpuscles in blood obtained directly from a minute vein or artery. More important therefore is the determination of the hæmoglobin. For this purpose a measured quantity of the blood, 2 to 5 c.mm., is obtained in a capillary pipette and mixed with a given volume of water. The red fluid thus obtained is compared with a standard. This latter in von Fleischl's instrument is a prism of coloured glass. In Oliver's instrument the standard consists of a series of tinted glasses, one of which represents the colour of a measured quantity of normal blood diluted with water and placed in a flat glass cell of a certain size, while the others represent percentages of hæmoglobin below and above the normal. The most accurate method is that due to Hoppe-Seyler and Haldane, namely, the conversion of the blood sample into CO-hæmoglobin and its comparison with a standard specimen of CO-hæmoglobin, which is stable in solution and can therefore be kept in a sealed glass vessel for any length of time.

The Oxygen Capacity of the Blood. Instead of determining the hæmoglobin we may measure directly the oxygen capacity of the blood, since

the oxygen-binding power of this fluid is entirely dependent on the amount of hæmoglobin it contains. For this purpose we may make use of the fact discovered by Haldane, that the combined oxygen in oxy-hæmoglobin is liberated rapidly and completely on addition of a solution of potassium ferricyanide to laked blood, and may thus be easily measured with the help of an apparatus similar to that used for determining urea in urine by the hypobromite method.

The following description of the method is given by Haldane:

'Twenty cubic centimetres of the oxalated or defibrinated blood, thoroughly saturated with air by swinging it round in a large flask, are measured out from a pipette into the bottle A, which has a capacity of about 120 c.c. As it is important to avoid

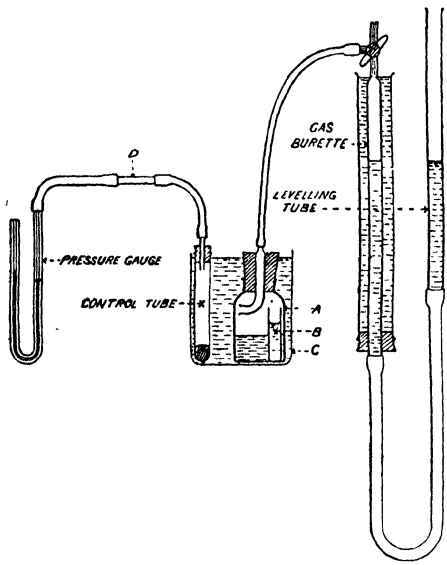


FIG. 381. Haldane's method for determining the oxygen capacity of the blood.

blowing expired air into the bottle, the last drops of blood are expelled from the pipette by closing the top and warming the bulb with the hand.' Thirty cubic centimetres are then added of a solution prepared by diluting ordinary strong ammonia solution (sp. gr. 0·88) with distilled water to $\frac{1}{300}$. The ammonia prevents carbonic acid from coming off, while the distilled water lakes the corpuscles. The blood and ammonia solution are thoroughly mixed by shaking, and at the end of this operation the solution should appear perfectly transparent when tilted up against the sides of the bottle.[1] About 4 c.c. of a saturated solution of potassium ferricyanide are then poured into the small tube B (the length of which should slightly exceed the width of the bottle) and placed upright in A. The rubber stopper, which is provided, as shown, with a bent glass tube connected with the burette by stout rubber tubing of about 1 mm. bore, is

[1] If the solution were not transparent this would indicate that the laking was incomplete, and more ammonia solution would need to be added.

then firmly put in, and the bottle placed in the vessel of water C, the temperature of which should be as nearly as possible that of the room and of the blood and water in the bottle. If the stopper is not heavy enough to sink the bottle, the latter should be weighted. By opening to the outside the three-way tap (or T-tube and clip) on the burette, and raising the levelling tube which is held by a spring clamp, the water in the burette is brought to a level close to the top. The tap is then closed to the outside, and the reading of the burette (which is graduated to ·05 c.c., and may be read to ·01 c.c.) taken after careful levelling.

The water-gauge (which has a bore of about 1 mm.) attached to the temperature and pressure-control tube is now accurately adjusted to a definite mark. This is easily accomplished by sliding the rubber tube backwards or forwards on the piece of glass tubing D. The control tube is an ordinary test-tube containing some mercury to sink it, and connected with the gauge by stout rubber tubing of about 1 mm. bore.

As soon as the reading of the burette is constant, which it will probably be within two or three minutes, the bottle is tilted so as to upset B, and is shaken as long as gas is evolved. During this operation B should be repeatedly emptied, as otherwise the oxygen dissolved in its liquid might not be completely given off. When the evolution of oxygen has ceased the bottle is replaced in the water. If, as is probable, the pressure-gauge indicates an alteration in the temperature of the water, cold water from the tap, or warmed water, is added till the original temperature has been re-established and the reading of the burette noted as soon as it is constant. The bottle is again shaken, etc., until a constant result is obtained, for which about fifteen minutes from the beginning of the operations are required. The temperature of the water in the jacket of the burette, and the reading of the barometer, are now taken, and the gas evolved is reduced to its dry volume at 0° and 760 mm. To calculate the oxygen evolved from 100 c.c. of blood, allowance must be made for the fact that a 20 c.c. pipette does not deliver 20 c.c. of blood, but only about 19·6 c.c. The actual amount of shortage for a given pipette can easily be determined by weighing the pipette after water, and again after blood, has been delivered from it. A further slight correction is necessary on account of the fact that the air in the bottle at the end of the operation is richer in oxygen than at the beginning, so that, as oxygen is about twice as soluble as nitrogen, slightly more gas will be in solution. With a bottle of 120 c.c. capacity and 20 per cent. of oxygen in the blood, the air in the bottle at the end will evidently contain about 27 per cent. of oxygen, so that, assuming that the coefficients of absorption of oxygen and nitrogen in the 54 c.c. of liquid within the bottle are nearly the same as in water, the correction will amount at 15° C. to ·06 c.c. in the reading of the burette, or + 0·30 per cent. in the result.

The Specific Gravity of the Blood. The specific gravity of the blood may be determined by directly weighing a sample, or more conveniently by collecting blood in a capillary tube and discharging drops of it into a series of vessels containing glycerin and water mixed in varying proportions. When it is found that the drop of blood as it leaves the capillary vessel neither rises nor falls in the glycerin and water mixture, we know that the specific gravity of the blood is identical with that of the mixture. A graduated series of these mixtures is kept in bottles and their specific gravity is generally determined before the experiment. Hammerschlag's method consists in placing a drop of blood in a mixture of chloroform and benzene and then adding chloroform or benzene, as the case may be, until the drop neither rises nor falls. The specific gravity of the mixture is then taken. The specific gravity varies in man between 1057 and 1066, and in woman from 1054 to 1061. It is increased by loss of water, as after profuse perspiration, or by passive congestion

of the part from which the sample is taken. It is also increased as a result of any operation upon a serous cavity in consequence of exudation of plasma in the inflamed or irritated part. It is diminished as the result of bleeding. The specific gravity of serum is 1028 to 1032, of corpuscles about 1090. It is interesting to note that the specific gravity of the blood is highest in the fœtus at full term, when it amounts to 1066, contrasting with that of the mother at the same time, the specific gravity of whose blood is only 1050. The specific gravity rapidly falls to the latter figure after birth.

THE REACTION OF THE BLOOD

The blood has long been described as alkaline owing to the fact that it turns neutral litmus paper blue. This fact can be demonstrated by allowing a drop to flow on a piece of glazed litmus paper and then wiping away the blood with a piece of linen moistened with distilled water or neutral saline solution. The alkalinity of the blood was determined by mixing a small definite quantity with sulphate of soda solution containing a definite amount of tartaric acid. The acid was then titrated against a decinormal solution of sodium hydrate until a drop of the mixture gave a blue stain and was placed on blue litmus paper. It must be noted however that this method gave, not the alkalinity, but a measure of the alkaline reserve—*i. e.* of the total amount of soda in combination with weak acids which can be replaced by the tartaric acid. This alkaline reserve consists almost exclusively of sodium bicarbonate, and the method indicated above is a means of estimating the total amount of this salt in the blood.

In van Slyke's method the alkaline reserve of the plasma is determined by finding out how much CO_2 is evolved from a given volume of the oxalated plasma (1 c.c.), when this is treated with 5 per cent. sulphuric acid so as to convert all the bicarbonate into sulphate. Since the amount of carbonic acid taken up depends on the partial pressure of the CO_2 in the atmosphere to which the plasma is exposed, the plasma is first shaken up with alveolar air provided by the experimenter himself, which always contains about 5·5 per cent. of CO_2.

Normal human blood plasma treated in this way yields between 0·6 and 0·7 c.c. of CO_2 per cubic centimetre.

The reaction of the fluid, strictly speaking, depends on the relative proportions of the H and OH ions present. Pure distilled water owes its neutrality to the fact that it contains equal amounts of H and OH ions. If the H ions increase and the OH ions diminish, the reaction becomes acid. The relative concentration of H and OH ions in a fluid can be measured electrically. In this method the potential difference is measured between the fluid and a platinum electrode immersed in it, which is kept saturated with hydrogen. In determining the reaction of the blood by this means, care must be taken to make the estimation at the body temperature, and also to keep a tension of 5 per cent. of an atmosphere of CO_2 in the gaseous mixture in contact with the blood or blood plasma. If blood is raised from

15° to 38° C., the alkalinity increases fourfold; moreover, since the reaction depends upon the relation of the free carbonic acid to the bases which are present in the fluid, any escape of CO_2 from the blood will diminish the hydrogen ions present and increase the alkalinity. An easier method than the electrical is to employ indicators which vary in their sensitiveness to changes of reaction. By previous experiment it has been determined what concentration of hydrogen ions is sufficient to cause a change of colour in the different indicators. In the following Table, taken from a paper by Roaf, are given the colours of a number of different indicators and the degree of acidity—*i. e.* the hydrogen ion concentration which just suffices to change their colours.

Indicator	Acid colour	Transitional colour	Alkaline colour	Hydrogen ion concentration at which colour change begins
Dimethylamido-azobenzol	Red	Orange	Yellow	1×10^{-3}
Congo red	Blue	Purple and brown	Red	1×10^{-4}
Vesuvin brown	Brown	—	Yellow	1×10^{-4}
Gallein	Colourless	Pink	Red	1×10^{-4}
Na alizarine sulphonate	Yellow	Orange	Red	1×10^{-4}
Lacmoid	Red	Purple	Blue	$1 \times 10^{-4} - 1 \times 10^{-8}$
Rosolic acid	Yellow	Orange	Red	1×10^{-5}
Litmus	Red	Purple	Blue	$1 \times 10^{-5} - 1 \times 10^{-8}$
Neutral red	Red	Orange	Yellow	1×10^{-8}
Alizarine	Yellow	Orange	Red	1×10^{-8}
Phenolphthalein	Colourless	Pink	Red	1×10^{-9}

It should be remembered that in distilled water of the highest state of purity the concentration of H and OH ions respectively is about 1×10^{-7}.

By these methods the hydrogen ion concentration of the blood at 38° is found to be $0{\cdot}4 \times 10^{-7}$ so that it is just on the alkaline side of neutrality. It might be thought that with such a feeble alkalinity the merest trace of acid added to the blood would suffice to make it acid. It is found however that a relatively large proportion of an acid must be added to the blood in order to produce an appreciable change in its reaction. This is due to the fact that the sodium bicarbonate acts as a 'buffer'—*i. e.* a substance which can take up acid or alkali with a minimal change of reaction. Thus, if some acid be added to the plasma, it combines with the sodium and the equivalent amount of CO_2 escapes, so that if the concentration of the latter gas be retained constant in the atmosphere to which the plasma is exposed, the reaction remains almost the same as before. In the same way, if some alkali be added to blood in contact with an atmosphere containing 5 per cent. CO_2, it combines with the CO_2 to form sodium bicarbonate, and the reaction is again practically unaltered. This property of the blood of retaining a

constant reaction, even though fixed acids are added to it, is of immense importance in the economy of the body. All cellular functions are acutely sensitive to changes in reaction, and, as we shall see later, the activity of the respiratory centre is primarily dependent on the hydrogen ion concentration of the blood with which it is bathed. This hydrogen ion concentration depends in the normal animal on the partial pressure of the CO_2 in the medium with which the blood is in contact, so that the slightest rise in the CO_2 tension in the alveolar air of the lungs causes at once a corresponding increase in the H ion concentration of the blood, to which the centre responds by increased activity. On the other hand, considerable quantities of lactic acid, for instance, can be produced by the muscles and poured into the blood without affecting more than a transitory alteration in the activity of the respiratory centre.

The alkaline reserve of the blood is significant, since any diminution indicates in all probability the production of fixed acids in the tissues, and a progressive reduction will precede the point at which the 'buffer' action of the sodium bicarbonate is lost, and the blood then responds to any addition of acid by an appreciable change in reaction. It is only when the alkaline reserve has been reduced to a minimum that a true condition of 'acidosis,' with its rapidly fatal effects, can come into being.

THE OSMOTIC PRESSURE OF THE BLOOD

Since the blood serves as a circulating medium, by means of which the composition of the tissues juices forming the immediate environment of all the cells of the body is maintained constant, its osmotic pressure must be of considerable importance in regulating the normal exchanges of the cells with their surrounding fluid. The osmotic pressure of the blood depends on its molecular concentration and can be determined by any of the methods mentioned earlier (p. 125). Of these the most convenient is the determination of the freezing-point. The depression of freezing-point, Δ, of mammalian blood is about 0·56 and varies between 0·54 and 0·60. The depression of the freezing-point observed in blood is equal to that of a 0·9 per cent. sodium chloride solution, which is therefore taken as isotonic with the blood. Since the corpuscles are in osmotic equilibrium with the plasma, their osmotic pressure must be equal to that of the plasma, and laking the blood does not alter its freezing-point or its osmotic pressure. The blood of the frog has a lower osmotic pressure, the normal saline fluid for the frog's tissues being equivalent to 0·65 per cent. sodium chloride solution.

THE ELECTRICAL CONDUCTIVITY OF THE BLOOD

In a solution it is only the dissociated ions which have the power of carrying electric discharges. The conductivity of a solution of pure urea or pure glucose would not differ appreciably from that of distilled water,

since neither of these substances is ionised in solution. The conductivity of blood serum is therefore determined almost entirely by its content in salts. Since this is approximately constant, the conductivity of serum varies within very narrow limits. The conductivity of blood varies however within wide limits, since the outer limiting layer of the corpuscles is impermeable to many of the ions of the salts of the serum. The corpuscles present a resistance to the passage of the charged ions and therefore of the electric current through them, so that the larger the number of corpuscles contained in a given specimen of blood the lower will be the conductivity of the latter. Stewart has made use of this fact as a basis for a method of determining the relative volume of corpuscles and plasma.

The relative amount of serum can be given by the formula:

$$p = \frac{\lambda\,(b)}{\lambda\,(s)}\ (174 - \lambda\,(b))$$

where p is the number of c.c. of serum in 100 c.c. of blood; $\lambda\,(b)$, $\lambda\,(s)$, the conductivity respectively of the blood and serum (both measured at or reduced to 5° C. and expressed in reciprocal Ohms $\times 10^8$). A reciprocal Ohm is the conductivity of a mercury column 1·063 metres long and 1 square millimetre in section.

THE GENERAL COMPOSITION OF THE BLOOD

The general composition of the blood has been determined by Karl Schmidt in man, and by Abderhalden in the horse and bullock. The results are given in the Tables on pages 908 and 909.

The important points to be drawn from these analyses may be summarised as follows. Human blood contains from rather over one-third to one-half of its weight of corpuscles. It contains from 20 per cent. to 25 per cent. solids. Blood plasma is resolved by clotting into serum and fibrin. The fibrin forms only 0·2 to 0·4 per cent. of the total weight of blood. The serum contains in 100 parts 8 to 9 parts of solids, of which 7 to 8 parts consist of proteins, while the salts make up about 1 part. The chief salt present in the serum is sodium chloride, which constitutes 60 per cent. of the ash. Next to this comes sodium carbonate, about 30 per cent., and besides these two we find traces of potassium, sodium, and calcium chlorides and phosphates. Traces of fats, cholesterin, lecithin, dextrose, urea, and other nitrogenous extractives are constantly found in the serum. The fats are much increased after a meal rich in them and may give the serum a milky appearance. The red corpuscles contain from 30 to 40 per cent. total solids. Of the solid constituents hæmoglobin forms nine-tenths; the other tenth corresponds to the stroma consisting of stroma protein (nucleo-protein), lecithin, cholesterin, and salts. There is a striking contrast between the salts of the corpuscles and those in the serum, the former consisting chiefly of potassium phosphate, the latter of sodium chloride which in some animals is entirely wanting in the corpuscles.

ANALYSIS OF HORSE'S BLOOD

1000 parts Blood contain by Weight		1000 parts Serum contain by Weight		1000 parts defibrinated Blood contain by Weight				1000 parts Corpuscles contain by Weight	
				529·7	Corpuscles.	470·3	Serum.		
Water	749·020	Water	902·05	Water	324·79	Water	424·23	Water	613·15
Solids	250·980	Solids	97·95	Solids	204·91	Solids	46·07	Solids	386·84
Hæmoglobin	166·900	——		Hæmoglobin	166·90	——		Hæmoglobin	315·08
Protein	69·700	Protein	84·24	Protein	30·08	Protein	39·62	Protein	56·78
Sugar	0·526	Sugar	1·176	Sugar	—	Sugar	0·551	Sugar	—
Cholesterin	0·346	Cholesterin	0·298	Cholesterin	0·206	Cholesterin	0·140	Cholesterin	0·388
Lecithin	2·913	Lecithin	1·720	Lecithin	2·105	Lecithin	0·8089	Lecithin	3·973
Fat	0·611	Fat	1·300	Fat	—	Fat	0·6113	Fat	—
Phosphoric acid as nuclein	0·060	Phosphoric acid as nuclein	0·020	Phosphoric acid as nuclein	0·0506	Phosphoric acid as nuclein	0·0094	Phosphoric acid as nuclein	0·095
Soda	2·091	Soda	4·434	Soda	—	Soda	2·0853	Soda	—
Potash	2·738	Potash	0·263	Potash	2·6143	Potash	0·1237	Potash	4·935
Iron oxide	0·828	Iron oxide	—	Iron oxide	0·8280	Iron oxide	—	Iron oxide	1·563
Lime	0·051	Lime	0·1113	Lime	—	Lime	0·0523	Lime	—
Magnesia	0·064	Magnesia	0·045	Magnesia	0·0429	Magnesia	0·0211	Magnesia	0·0809
Chlorine	2·785	Chlorine	3·726	Chlorine	1·0327	Chlorine	1·7523	Chlorine	1·949
Phosphoric acid	1·120	Phosphoric acid	0·240	Phosphoric acid	1·0072	Phosphoric acid	0·1128	Phosphoric acid	1·901
Inorganic phosphoric acid	0·806	Inorganic phosphoric acid	0·0715	Inorganic phosphoric acid	0·7724	Inorganic phosphoric acid	0·0336	Inorganic phosphoric acid	1·458

BLOOD OF A MAN TWENTY-FIVE YEARS OF AGE

One thousand Grammes of Blood contain

513·02 *Blood corpuscles.*

Water	349·69		
Substances not vaporising at 120°	163·33		
Hæmatin	7·70	(including 0·512 iron)	
'Blood-casein,' etc.	151·89		
Inorganic constituents	3·74	(excluding iron)	
Chlorine	0·898	Chloride of potassium	1·887
Sulphuric acid	0·031	Sulphate of potassium	0·068
Phosphoric acid	0·695	Phosphate of potassium	1·202
Potassium	1·586	Phosphate of sodium	0·325
Sodium	0·241	Soda	0·175
Phosphate of lime	0·048	Phosphate of lime	0·048
Phosphate of magnesium	0·031	Phosphate of magnesium	0·031
Oxygen	0·206		
		Total	3·736

486·98 *Interstitial Fluid (Plasma).*

Water	439·02		
Substances not vaporising at 120°	47·96		
Fibrin	3·93		
'Albumen,' etc.	39·89		
Inorganic constituents	4·14		
Chlorine	1·722	Sulphate of potassium	0·137
Sulphuric acid	0·063	Chloride of potassium	0·175
Phosphoric acid	0·071	Chloride of sodium	2·701
Potassium	0·153	Phosphate of sodium	0·132
Sodium	1·661	Soda	0·746
Phosphate of lime	0·145	Phosphate of lime	0·145
Phosphate of magnesium	0·106	Phosphate of magnesium	0·106
Oxygen	0·221		
		Total	4·142

Specific gravity = 1·0599

THE PROTEINS OF THE PLASMA

The plasma is generally described as containing a number of different proteins belonging to the class of coagulable proteins. No albumoses or peptones are present. Since the plasma in clotting gives rise to fibrin and serum, we may divide its protein constituents into those which are the precursors of fibrin and those which are still contained in the serum.

The Precursors of Fibrin. Most of these have been dealt with in discussing the causation of coagulation. It remains for us here only to mention some of the chemical features of fibrinogen and its product fibrin. Fibrinogen is best separated by Hammarsten's method, namely, half-saturation with sodium chloride, or by the use of ammonium sulphate.

Fibrinogen is precipitated between 13 and 28 per cent. saturation with ammonium sulphate, whereas no other globulins are precipitated until the saturation amounts to 29 per cent. of ammonium sulphate. Fibrinogen obtained in either of these ways can be purified by re-solution and re-precipitation, but loses its solubility in the process, so that every time it is precipitated some of the substance becomes insoluble. The insoluble fibrinogen resembles fibrin in many characters, but does not swell in the presence of dilute acids as fibrin does. Fibrinogen is soluble in dilute alkali, from which it may be precipitated by careful neutralisation. Fibrinogen in salt solution coagulates at 56° C. A small amount however remains in solution and is not coagulated until 65° C. is reached. Fibrinogen can be therefore described as a globulin occurring in the plasma and converted on coagulation into fibrin. The other precursors of fibrin, namely, those involved in the production of thrombin and called thrombokinase and thrombogen, seem to be phosphorus-containing proteins, perhaps belonging to the class of nucleo-proteins. Their chief characteristics have already been dealt with.

FIBRIN. Fibrin is easily obtained by whipping blood as it flows from the vessels with a bundle of wires or twigs, and then washing the stringy threads so obtained under a stream of water. As prepared in this way it always contains fragments of leucocytes, blood platelets, and stromata, which have become entangled in its meshes. In order to prepare fibrin in a pure state, it is necessary to get it by the action of fibrin ferment on a pure solution of fibrinogen. Fibrin is a white stringy substance insoluble in water and in dilute salt solutions. It slowly dissolves in 5 per cent. solutions of sodium chloride, sodium sulphate, potassium nitrate, etc., but is converted in this process into soluble globulins. It is probable that its solution is effected by the agency of minute traces of proteolytic ferment present in the blood and adherent to the fibrin as it is precipitated. This probability is strengthened by the fact that a certain amount of albumoses is always found in the fluid along with the soluble globulins. In dilute acid, such as 0·2 per cent. hydrochloric acid, fibrin swells into a clear jelly which very slowly undergoes solution with the formation of acid albumen and proteoses.

THE PROTEINS OF THE SERUM. The serum proteins are generally grouped in two classes, namely, the serum albumens and the serum globulins. All the proteins are completely precipitated by saturation with ammonium sulphate. By half-saturation with this salt only the globulins are precipitated and can be separated from the serum albumens by filtration. The proportion of globulin to albumen as determined in this way is known as the 'protein quotient.' It varies in different animals, but in the same individual it is almost constant in the blood, serum, lymph, and serous transudations, though the total amounts of protein in these may be very different.

SERUM ALBUMEN. Serum albumen remains in the serum after half-saturation with ammonium sulphate. It can be precipitated from this by

complete saturation with ammonium sulphate or sodio-magnesium sulphate, or in the crystalline form by slight acidification, as in Hopkins' method described on p. 73. Serum albumen is soluble in distilled water. Its solutions therefore can be dialysed indefinitely without any precipitation taking place.

THE GLOBULINS. The globulins of serum, known as paraglobulin or serum globulin, are obtained by half-saturation with ammonium sulphate. Their solutions in salt coagulate at about 75° C. Since globulin is insoluble in distilled water, it is precipitated on dialysing serum against distilled water. The precipitate obtained in this way is not however so great in extent as that obtained on half-saturation, and on this account the globulin fraction of the serum proteins has been divided into two fractions, namely, *euglobulin*, precipitable by dialysis, and *pseudo-globulin*, not precipitable by dialysis, but thrown down on half-saturation with ammonium sulphate.

A thorough study of serum globulin by Hardy has shown that this body forms adsorption combinations with acids, alkalies, or neutral salts. With acids and alkalies the globulin forms 'salts' which ionise in solution so that in an electric field the entire mass of protein moves. These salts cannot be precipitated by dialysis. In them the globulin acts much more strongly as an acid than as a base, so that a weak acid, such as acetic acid, has a much smaller dissolving power over globulin than has the equivalent amount of hydrochloric acid, and boracic acid has a very slight power indeed. The weak basic character of globulin causes its salt in weak acids to undergo hydrolysis with separation of globulin, so that in order to reach the same grade of solution with a weak acid as with a strong acid a great excess of the acid is necessary. Owing to the much stronger acid character of globulin it is found that weak ammonia dissolves it almost as well as strong alkalies. With neutral salts globulins form molecular compounds which are soluble, but are readily decomposed by water with liberation of the insoluble globulin. They are therefore stable only in the presence of a comparatively large excess of salt. The globulins differ from the albumens of the serum in containing constantly organic phosphorus as an integral part of their molecule. In all its solutions globulin is present in large molecular aggregates, so that it is impossible to filter a globulin solution through a porous clay cell.

THE CONDITION OF THE PROTEINS IN THE BLOOD SERUM

Although it is easy by such simple means as the addition or removal of neutral salts to separate one or more different forms of protein from serum, we have strong evidence that these proteins do not exist side by side in the serum, but are combined to form what we may term *serum protein*, which acts as a whole and differs in its qualities from many of those of its constituent globulins or albumens. When a current is passed through blood serum no movement of protein takes place (Hardy). Alkali globulin therefore cannot be present. Salt globulin might be assumed to be present since it does not ionise in solution, but serum is not precipitated by simple addition of acid, which would readily precipitate salt globulin in alkaline solution. Moreover serum can be readily filtered through a porous cell, and this method is adopted for obtaining it free from contamination by micro-organisms. Globulin in any of its solutions will not pass through a porous cell. If globulin be present as such in the

serum, it is therefore not ionised, but the agent which dissolves it must be something more than alkali or salt, since either alone or together they will not produce a solution which will pass through a porous cell. Serum has still the power of taking up globulin and will dissolve almost its own volume of precipitated globulin, though in oxalate serum there is not a trace of alkali globulin nor of any ionised protein. We are justified therefore in concluding that serum protein may be regarded as a complex unit. By simple means, such as dialysis, dilution, or addition of salt, this unit can be broken up with the separation of the various proteins which we have designated as serum albumen and serum globulin, etc. The question naturally suggests itself whether in plasma we have not a similar combination of all its varied colloidal constituents to form one labile mass of fluid protoplasm.

CHAPTER XIII

THE PHYSIOLOGY OF THE CIRCULATION

SECTION I

GENERAL FEATURES OF THE CIRCULATION

In order that the nutrition of the tissues may be properly carried out, and that they may receive a continual supply of nourishment from the alimentary canal, and of oxygen from the lungs, and be able to free themselves of their waste products, the blood which flows through them must be continually renewed. For this purpose every part of the body is supplied with tubes—blood vessels—of various sizes and structures.

In the tissues the blood is passing continuously through a thick meshwork of capillaries, hair-like vessels with walls consisting of a single layer of delicate endothelial cells, which permit of a free interchange of material by diffusion between the blood within and the tissue fluid outside the vessel. The movement of the blood is maintained by a hollow muscular organ, the heart, placed in the chest, the blood being brought from the heart to the tissues by thick-walled tubes, the arteries, and being carried back from the tissues to the heart by a system of thin-walled vessels, the veins.

In all the vertebrates the vascular system is closed, *i. e.* communicates at no point with the tissue spaces or cœlomic cavity. It is found in its simplest form in fishes (Fig. 382, A), where the heart consists of one auricle and one ventricle. The blood is received from the great veins into the auricle. The walls both of auricle and ventricle contract rhythmically. By the contraction of the auricle the blood is forced into the ventricle, and this, when it contracts, sends the blood on into the bulbus arteriosus. From the bulbus the blood passes through the branchial arteries into the gills, where it takes up oxygen from the surrounding water, and then flows on into the aorta, by which it is distributed to the various organs of the body. From the capillaries of these organs the blood is collected by the veins and is carried once more back to the auricle. The fish heart is thus entirely on the venous side of the vascular system.

In amphibia, such as the frog, the heart consists of two auricles and one ventricle. The right auricle receives venous blood from the body by means of the venæ cavæ and forces it by its contraction into the ventricle. From the ventricle the blood passes into the aorta, whence it is carried partly by the pulmonary artery to the lungs, partly by arteries to the different organs of the body. The blood, which has passed through the lungs and been arterialised, flows through the pulmonary veins to the left auricle, whence it passes into the ventricle and mixes with the venous blood which is arriving from the right auricle. The pulmonary circulation is thus merely a branch of the general or systemic circulation. The bulbus aortæ in the frog is divided into two parts

by means of a spiral valve, by which a partial separation of the blood coming from the right and left auricles is effected, and the venous blood from the right auricle directed especially into the pulmonary artery.

In birds and mammals the heart has become entirely divided into two halves, right and left, which have no communication with one another except by way of the blood vessels and capillaries. The right auricle receives the venous blood from all parts of the body and sends it on to the right ventricle, whence it is forced into the lungs along the pulmonary artery. In the lungs it takes up oxygen and becomes arterial and is returned by the pulmonary veins to the left auricle and so to the left ventricle. The rhythmic contractions of the left ventricle then force the blood into the aorta, whence by the branching arteries it is carried to all parts of the body.

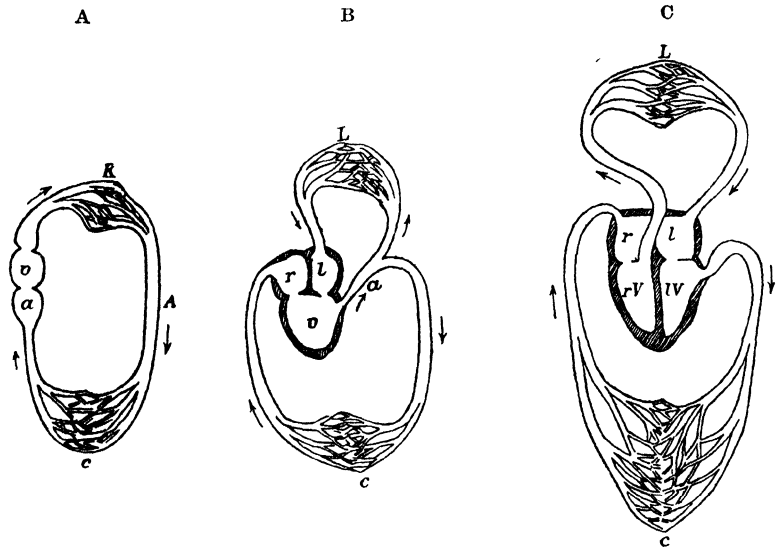


FIG. 382. Diagram of circulatory system in A, fish; B, amphibian (frog); C, mammal. *v*, ventricle; *a*, auricle; *K*, gill capillaries; *A*, aorta; *c*, systemic capillaries; *L*, lung capillaries; *r*, *l*, right and left auricles; *rV*, *lV*, right and left ventricles.

The whole vascular system is distensible and elastic, so that its capacity will increase with the pressure of the blood contained in it. Since the driving force is furnished by the heart, the pressure which causes the flow of blood through the system must decline as we pass from the arterial to the venous side. The chief function of the large arteries is to serve as elastic conduits, whereas the small arteries or arterioles leading from the arteries to the capillaries have in addition the function of regulating the amount of blood flowing through the capillary area of the organs which they supply. The veins have the function of conducting blood at a low pressure from capillaries to heart and of storing up any excess of blood which is not immediately taken up by the heart.

Corresponding to this difference in function we find variations in the structure of the blood vessels according to their situation in the circuit. The vessels which carry the blood from the heart to the tissues, the arteries, are thick-walled, and contain an abundance of muscular and elastic elements in their walls. The typical medium-sized

artery is described as consisting of three coats (Fig. 383): an *intima* lined by a continuous layer of flattened endothelial cells, which rest on a well-marked lamina of yellow elastic tissue; a *media* composed of unstriated muscular fibres arranged longitudinally and circularly; and an external coat or *adventitia* of fibrous tissue, with a number of longitudinal elastic fibres. Near the heart, in the great vessels such as the aorta and its

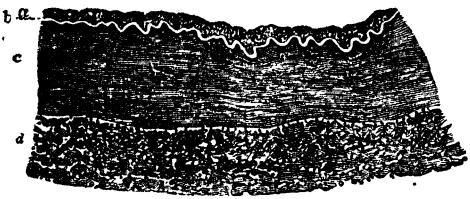


FIG. 383. Transverse section of part of the wall of the posterior tibial artery (× 75).

a, endothelial and sub-endothelial layers of intima; *b*, lamina of elastic tissue; *c*, media consisting of muscle fibres; *d*, adventitia. (SCHAFER.)

larger branches, there is a preponderance of elastic tissue as compared to the muscular; and we find in the media alternate layers of muscle fibres and fenestrated elastic membranes. In the smallest arteries on the other hand, the arterioles, the elastic element entirely disappears, so that the wall consists of muscle fibres, chiefly circular, lined by the endothelium. In the latter vessels a contraction of their walls may result in an entire obliteration of the lumen, so shutting off altogether the supply of blood to the capillaries beyond. In the veins the same three coats can be distinguished as in the typical artery, but the wall of the vessel is much thinner in proportion to the lumen. In the vein moreover there is a preponderance of the fibrous tissue elements, the muscular and elastic tissue being but little marked. On this account the vein collapses unless it is distended by some internal pressure.

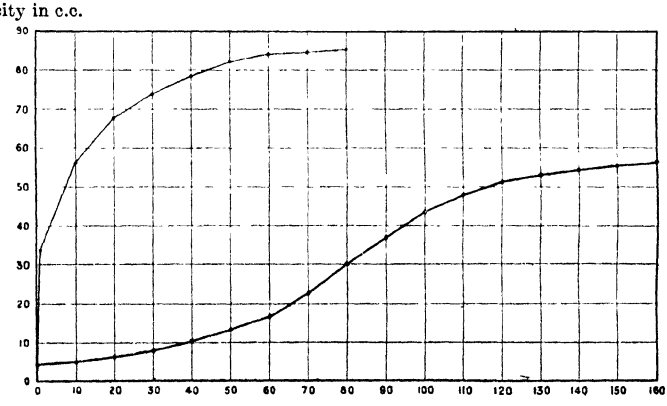


FIG. 384. Curves of distensibility of an artery (thick line) and of a vein (thin line). The figures at the left side of the diagram represent the capacity of a section of the vessel when distended under a certain pressure, expressed by the figures on the base line in mm. Hg. (Constructed from figures given by ROY.)

The histological difference between veins and arteries is of considerable importance for the understanding of the distribution of pressures in the vascular system, since the distensibility and reaction to pressure of these vessels are conditioned by their structure. In Fig. 384 is represented the

distensibility, *i. e.* the increase in capacity of an artery and a vein under gradually increasing internal pressure. It will be seen that an artery, which has a certain capacity at zero pressure, gradually distends with increasing pressure. The increase in capacity is small at first, and becomes most rapid between 90 and 100 mm. Hg. After this point every increment of pressure brings about a gradually diminishing increment of capacity. Thus a change of internal pressure causes the greatest change in capacity when the pressure in the artery corresponds, as we shall see, to the average arterial pressure in the normal animal. In the vein, on the other hand, the capacity, which is nothing at zero pressure, becomes considerable on raising the pressure to 1 mm. Hg. A further rise of pressure to 10 mm. Hg. causes a considerable increase in volume, but from this point the increments of volume with rising pressure rapidly diminish. Whereas the artery is most distensible at about 100 mm. Hg., the vein has its limits of optimum distensibility between 0 and 10 mm. Hg.

As the arteries branch, although each branch is smaller than the parent vessel, the total area of the two branches into which the vessel divides is greater. Thus there is a continual increase in the cross area of the bed of the blood stream as we pass from the heart towards the periphery. This increase is especially marked at the junction between the capillaries and the arterioles on one side and the venules on the other, so that the total area of the bed in the region of the capillaries can be taken as about 800 times that of the area of the aorta where the blood leaves the heart.

On cutting through an artery, blood escapes from the central end, *i. e.* that nearest the heart, with great force and in a series of jerks, each of which corresponds to a contraction of the ventricles. This manner of escape shows that in the arteries the blood is at a high pressure, and that the flow from the heart to the periphery is a pulsatory one. The same lesson may be learnt by connecting a long tube with the central end of a divided artery. This experiment, which was first performed by the Rev. Stephen Hales, may be described in his own words:

"In December I caused a mare to be tied down alive on her back; she was fourteen hands high, and about fourteen years of age, had a Fistula on her Withers, was neither very lean, nor yet lusty: Having laid open the left crural Artery about three inches from her belly, I inserted into it a brass Pipe, whose bore was one sixth of an inch in diameter; and to that, by means of another brass Pipe which was fitly adapted to it, I fixed a glass Tube, of nearly the same diameter, which was nine feet in length: Then untying the Ligature on the Artery, the blood rose in the Tube eight feet three inches perpendicular above the level of the left Ventricle of the heart: But it did not attain to its full height at once; it rushed up about half way in an instant, and afterwards gradually at each Pulse twelve, eight, six, four, two, and sometimes one inch: When it was at its full height, it would rise and fall at and after each Pulse two, three, or four inches; and sometimes it would fall twelve or fourteen inches, and have there for a time the same Vibrations up and down at and after each Pulse, as it had, when it was at its full height; to which it would rise again, after forty or fifty Pulses."

The method adopted by Hales of measuring the lateral pressure of blood in the vessels offers very considerable drawbacks. The manipula-

tion of such long tubes is awkward, and the blood which escapes into the tubes very soon clots and renders further observation impossible. It is therefore customary when we desire to gain an idea of the average pressure in any blood vessel, especially in an artery, to use a mercurial manometer for this purpose.

This instrument, which was first applied to physiological purposes by Ludwig, consists of a U-tube with two vertical limbs about eighteen inches in height, which is half-filled with clean mercury. On the surface of the mercury of one limb is a float of vulcanite from which a stiff fine rod of straw, glass, or steel rises, bearing on its upper end the writing-point. This point may be adjusted so as to write on the blackened glazed surface of a moving sheet of paper (Fig. 385). (The arrangement for imparting a continuous movement to a sheet of glazed paper is known as a kymograph.) Instead of smoking the paper, a pen may be fitted to the end of a rod and its excursions recorded in ink on a moving band of white paper. The other limb of the manometer is connected by a flexible inextensible tube with a small tube or cannula which is tied into the central end of an artery, a clip being previously placed on the artery so as to prevent the escape of blood during the insertion of the cannula. To the manometer is connected a three-way tap by means of which the manometer can be placed in communication with the artery alone, or with the artery and a pressure bottle. By means of the latter the whole system is filled with magnesium sulphate solution (25 per cent.) or a half-saturated solution of sodium sulphate, at a pressure of 150 mm. Hg. The pressure bottle is then cut off so that the manometer remains in connection only with the cannula, the mercury in one limb being 150 millimetres above that in the other. The clip is then taken off the artery. The pressure in the cannula being greater than that in the artery, a small amount of the fluid used to fill the tubes runs into the circulation. The mercury in the manometer drops to a height of 100 to 120 mm. Hg. and stays about that level, rising and falling slightly with each heart beat (Fig. 387). The blood which enters the cannula at each heart beat does not clot for a considerable time owing to its admixture with the saline fluid used for filling the cannula and connecting tubes.

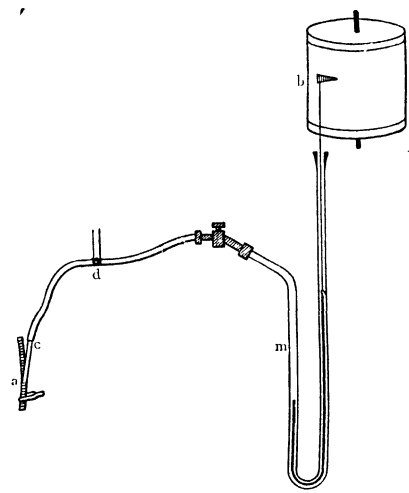


FIG. 385. Arrangement of an apparatus for taking blood-pressure tracing.

a, artery (carotid); *c*, cannula; *d*, three way cock; *m*, mercurial manometer; *b*, drum covered with smoked paper; *x*, tube to pressure bottle.

If a vein be ligatured, it swells up on the distal side of the ligature. In the vein be cut across, blood escapes chiefly from the peripheral end, and instead of spurting out to a considerable distance with each heart beat it flows steadily, but with very little force, so that light pressure by a bandage is sufficient to restrain the hæmorrhage. If a mercurial manometer be connected with the vein, the pressure in its interior is found to amount to only a few mm. Hg.

By taking the pressure at different parts of the circulation, we obtain a distribution which is represented roughly in the accompanying diagram (Fig. 386). The blood pressure, which is about 100 to 120 mm. Hg. in the large arteries near the heart, falls only slowly in these arteries, so that

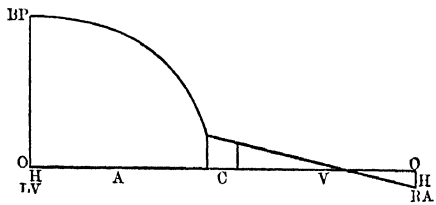


FIG. 386. Scheme of blood pressure in—A, the arteries; C, capillaries; and V, veins. OO, line of no pressure; LV, left ventricle; RA, right auricle; BP, height of blood pressure.

in the radial artery it is not very much below that in the aorta. Between the medium-sized arteries and capillaries there is a very extensive fall of pressure as the blood passes through the arterioles, so that in the capillaries the pressure on an average may be taken as 20 to 40 mm. Hg; from the capillaries to the veins the blood pressure falls steadily until in the big veins near the heart it may be negative.

SECTION II

THE BLOOD PRESSURE AT DIFFERENT PARTS OF THE VASCULAR CIRCUIT

THE ARTERIAL BLOOD PRESSURE. The arterial blood pressure as recorded by a mercurial manometer exhibits a series of pulsations corresponding to each heart beat (Fig. 387). These pulsations are due to the fact that the artery becomes fuller each time the ventricle forces more blood into it during its systole. Between the beats of the heart, *i. e.* during diastole, the aortic valves are closed, and blood escapes from the arteries into the capillaries and veins, so that the blood pressure falls. The mercurial manometer does not register these rapid changes of pressure in the artery with any accuracy. The inertia of the mercury is such that it takes some time to be set into movement by the rise of pressure in the artery, and before it has attained its full height the pressure in the artery has already begun to fall. With a very wide-tubed manometer the oscillations may be almost imperceptible owing to the mass of mercury that has to be moved at each heart beat. Such a manometer gives a true record of what is known as the 'mean arterial pressure.' In order to determine the true course of the pressure in the heart, it is necessary to diminish to the utmost possible extent the inertia of the moving parts of the recording instrument, and to employ some manometer such as that of Hürthle or of Frank, in which the pressure is measured by recording the stretching of an elastic membrane. Such instruments will be described later in dealing with the changes of pressure in the ventricle during contraction.

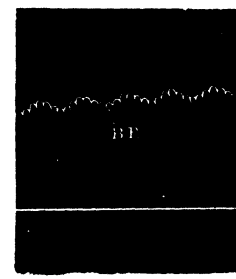


FIG. 387. Blood-pressure tracing taken with mercurial manometer (from carotid of rabbit).
A, abscissa or line of no pressure.

In the living animal the variation in the arterial pressure at each heart beat is much greater than would be anticipated from an inspection of the tracing given by the mercurial manometer. The highest pressure which occurs while blood is passing from the heart into the aorta is called the *systolic arterial pressure;* the pressure at the end of diastole, just before the heart begins to force a fresh quantity of blood into the aorta, is the *diastolic pressure;* and the range between these two extremes is known

as the *pulse pressure*. Thus in the dog, with a mean pressure of about 120 mm. Hg. in the aorta, the systolic pressure may be as much as 160, while the diastolic pressure is only 100 mm. In this case the pulse pressure would be 60 mm. Hg. In man the systolic pressure, as measured in the brachial artery, is under normal conditions about 110 mm., while the diastolic pressure is only 65 to 75 mm., so that the pulse pressure is about 45 mm. Hg. As we pass outwards towards the periphery the pulse pressure becomes less and less marked, until finally in the capillaries and veins there is no pulse wave perceptible.

THE DETERMINATION OF THE BLOOD PRESSURE IN MAN

It is important for clinical purposes to be able to determine even approximately the blood pressure in the different parts of the vascular system in man, and various methods have been devised for this purpose. The determination of the systolic blood pressure in the arteries is easily carried out by the use of Riva Rocci's sphygmomanometer. This apparatus (Fig. 388) consists of a leather or canvas band about 10 cm. wide, which

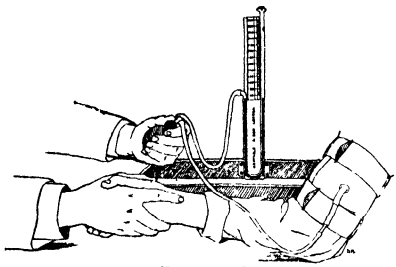


Fig. 388. Riva Rocci's sphygmomanometer. (C. J. Martin's pattern. Hawksley.)

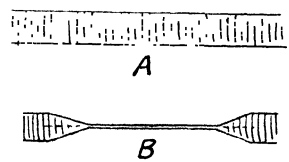


Fig. 389.

can be buckled closely round the upper arm. Inside this band is a rubber bag of the same shape, which communicates by a rubber tube with a mercurial manometer and by a three-way tap with a pressure bulb or bicycle pump, or with the external air. The band is buckled round the arm and the fingers of the observer are placed on the radial pulse. The bag is then distended with air so that it exercises a pressure on the arm, the pressure being indicated on the mercurial manometer. Air is forced in until the radial pulse disappears. By means of the three-way tap the air is then let slowly out of the bag until the radial pulse is just perceptible. The height of the mercurial manometer at this moment is equal to the systolic pressure in the main arterial trunk from which the brachial artery takes origin. The principle of this method will be made clear by reference to the diagram (Fig. 389). If we imagine A as a segment of the brachial artery passing through the tissues which are surrounded by the rubber bag, we see that so long as the pressure in the interior of the artery is greater than that exerted by the tissues on the exterior, the artery will be patent and the pulse can pass through. If however the pressure in the tissues becomes greater than the maximum pressure inside the artery at any time of the heart beat, the segment of artery will collapse (as in B), thus stopping the transmission of blood and of the pulse wave. If we exclude the elasticity of the tissues themselves, we may take the pressure in the bag as representing the pressure in the tissue fluids surrounding the artery, so that the pulse-obliterating pressure in the bag will correspond to the maximum or systolic pressure in the artery. By a slight modification of the apparatus it is possible to determine also the diastolic pressure. For this purpose the rubber bag is connected also with a manometer of small inertia, giving a true representation of the actual changes of pressure. It is evident

that, when the pressure in the bag and in the tissues surrounding the artery exactly corresponds to the diastolic pressure, the artery will be completely collapsed when the pressure arrives at its lowest point and will then dilate almost to the utmost with the systolic rise of pressure. If we are taking a record of the pressure changes in the bag in this way, the pulse waves as recorded by the manometer will slowly increase in size as the pressure in the bag is gradually raised. At one point the waves rapidly increase and reach a maximum, marking the pressure at which the artery is just completely collapsed at the lowest point of each pulse wave (the diastolic pressure). As the pressure is still further raised, the excursions of the manometer tend to diminish in size, first

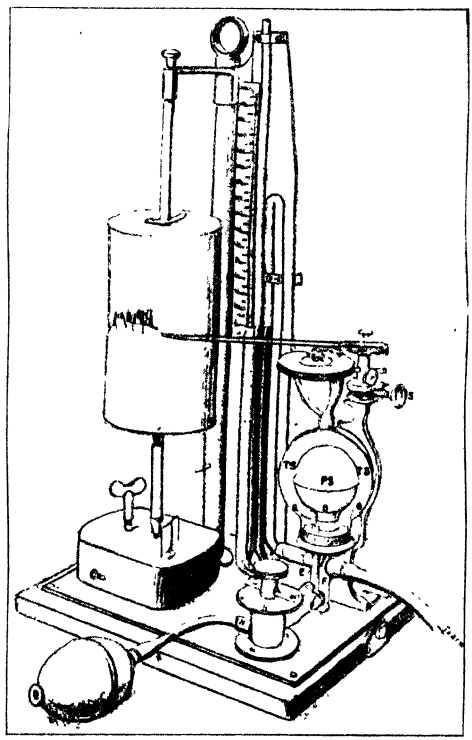


FIG. 390. Erlanger's apparatus for recording systolic and diastolic blood pressures.

slowly and then rapidly, and the point of rapid diminution corresponds to the systolic pressure. Above this point the manometer still shows small oscillations, due to the impact of the unoccluded stump of the artery on the upper border of the india-rubber bag.

Many different methods have been introduced for the purpose of recording the pressure oscillations in the bag. In Erlanger's apparatus the rubber bag is put into connection with a thick-walled rubber ball PS contained in a glass chamber. The chamber (Fig. 390) communicates with a sensitive tambour and also, by means of a capillary opening provided with a stop-cock, with the external air. By this means the slow expansion of the ball PS is not recorded by the tambour, which moves only with the sudden oscillations of pressure due to each heart beat. With this instrument it is easy to read on the accompanying mercurial manometer the point at which the

oscillations of pressure in the bag suddenly become maximal, and so to determine approximately the diastolic pressure in the artery.

VENOUS PRESSURE. To determine the venous pressure in man we may use some modification of von Recklinghausen's method. A circular, disc-shaped, incomplete rubber bag (Fig. 391) is made by cementing together at the circumference two rubber discs, each of which has a hole in the centre. This is placed over a peripheral vein and a glass plate laid on the top (Fig. 392). A tube leads from the interior of the annular rubber bag to a water manometer and to a bicycle pump or bellows for the injection of air. On blowing air into the bag the pressure in its interior rapidly increases. If the skin and glass plate have been previously smeared with glycerin, the air does not escape but distends the bag, pressing it against the skin on the one hand and the glass plate on the other. Through the hole in the rubber bag it is easy to see the pressure at which the vein collapses—that is to say, the point at which the pressure in the bag is equal to the pressure within the vein. By a similar method, using a smaller bag, we may determine the pressure which is just sufficient to obliterate the capillaries in any given area of the skin, so causing a blanching of the skin lying under the bag.

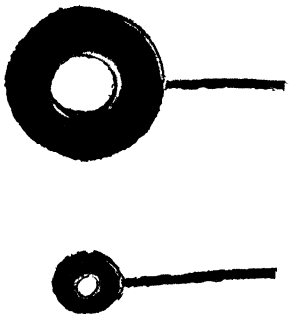


FIG. 391.

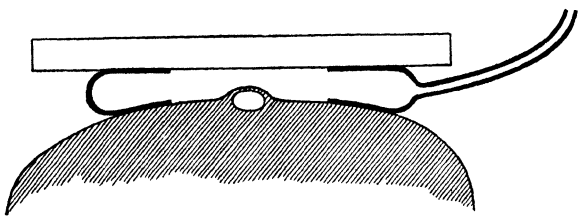


FIG. 392.

The following Table may serve to give an idea of the average height of the *mean* blood pressure (not systolic) at different parts of the vascular system in man, in the horizontal position. The pressures are all subject to considerable variations according to the activity of the individual and the physiological activity of the various parts and organs of the body:

Large arteries (*e. g.* carotid)	90 mm. mercury (65–110).
Medium arteries (*e. g.* radial)	85 mm. ,,
Capillaries	about 15 to 40 mm. mercury.
Small veins of arm	9 mm. mercury.
Portal vein	10 mm. ,,
Inferior vena cava	3 mm. ,,
Large veins of neck . . .	from 0 to −8 mm. mercury.

The cause of these peculiarities in the circulation in different parts of the vascular system will be rendered clearer by a study of a flow of fluid through a tube of uniform bore (Fig. 393). If the tube AG be connected with the reservoir R, fluid will flow from A to G under the influence of the pressure difference between the fluid in the reservoir and that at G. The pressure on the fluid at each part of the tube can be measured by attaching at a series of points—*e. g.* at B, C, D, E, F—vertical tubes in which the fluid will rise to a height corresponding to the lateral pressure existing at these several

points. When fluid is flowing from A to G, it will be found that the heights of the fluid in the tubes show a continuous descent, so that the line joining the tops of the fluid in the various tubes is a straight one. The movement of the fluid from B to C can be regarded as due to the difference of the pressure between B and C, *i. e.* P_2–P_3. It will be noticed in the diagram that the straight line joining the tops of the fluid does not strike the surface of the fluid in R, but falls a little below it. Of the total pressure in R, H, the large portion h' is employed in overcoming the resistance of the tube AG, while a small portion h represents the force necessary to give to the fluid as it leaves the reservoir

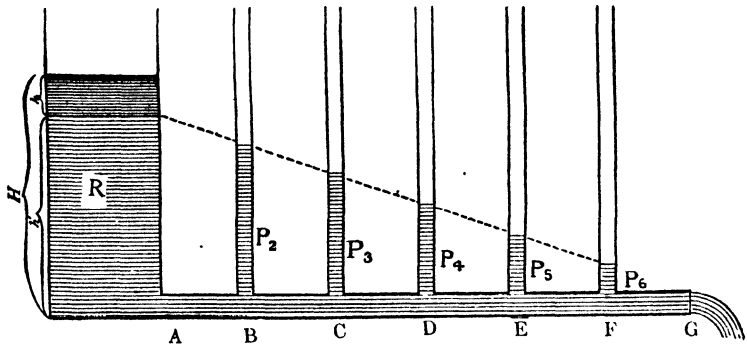


FIG. 393.

at A a certain velocity. If the flow of fluid be diminished by partially clamping the end at G, the rate of fall of the pressures will be diminished. The same effect will be produced either by raising the level of G or by lowering the level of the reservoir and so the pressure at A.

The difference of pressure between any two points, *i. e.* between D and E, may be regarded as that pressure which is necessary to maintain a certain velocity of the fluid

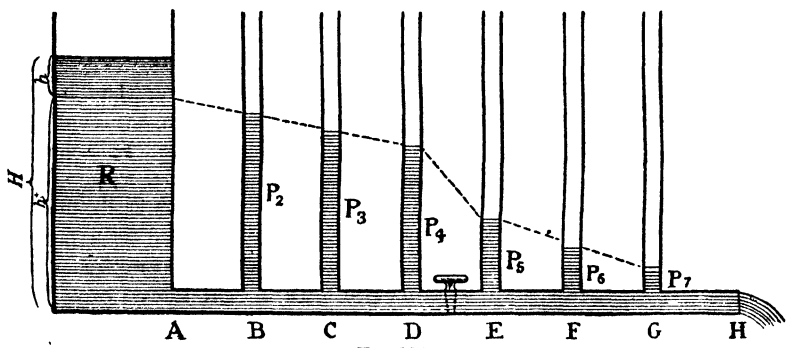


FIG. 394.

against the resistance offered by the friction of the fluid in contact with the walls of the tube. This friction, and therefore the resistance to the flow, can be altered by diminishing the diameter of the tube, when a larger difference of pressure will be necessary in order to maintain the same velocity of flow. This can be shown by introducing a resistance between D and E by partially clamping the tube at this point (Fig. 394). The continuity of the fall of pressures in the vertical tube is at once abolished. Between A and D there is a continuous fall, which is succeeded by a steep fall between D and E, and this again by a gradual fall between E and G. In any system of tubes therefore through which fluid is flowing, the fall of pressure between any two points

will be proportional to the velocity of the flow between these two points. The velocity, on the other hand, will vary directly as the difference of pressures, and inversely as the resistance between the two points. These relations may be expressed by the formula

$$V \propto \frac{P}{R}$$

In the vascular system, while the circulation is maintained, the largest difference of pressure exists between the arteries on the one side and the small veins on the other, a great fall occurring between the arteries and the capillaries themselves. This distribution of pressure points to the chief resistance in the vascular system as being situated in the arterioles. The resistance presented by these vessels is due to the fact that they are maintained in a state of tonic contraction by the agency of the central nervous system. The total bed of the stream in the region of the arterioles, while greater than that of the arteries, is considerably less than that of the rich meshwork of capillaries, while the difference between the diameters of arterioles and capillaries is not very great. On this account the velocity of the blood in the arterioles is very much greater than that obtaining in the capillaries, and since friction and therefore the resistance varies as the square of the velocity, the resistance to the flow of blood through the arterioles must be much greater than that presented by the capillaries. The large part taken by the arterioles in determining the difference of pressure between the arteries and veins is shown by the fact that this difference can be diminished to one-half by any means which causes a dilatation of the arterioles, as, for example, destruction of the vasomotor centre.

THE CONVERSION OF AN INTERMITTENT INTO A CONSTANT FLOW

Not only is the blood pressure in the veins much lower than in the arteries, but the flow of blood has been converted on its passage through the peripheral resistance from a pulsatory into a continuous flow. This change is connected with the distensible elastic nature of the arterial walls.

Since this is a purely mechanical question it will be more easily understood by a simple illustration. The heart may be regarded as a pump, forcing a certain amount of blood (in man about 60 c.c.) into the circulation at each stroke. If a pump be connected with a rigid tube, every time that a certain amount is forced into the beginning of the tube an exactly equal quantity will be forced out at the other end. Increasing the peripheral resistance by partial closure of the end of the tube will not affect the intermittent character of the flow, but will merely serve to diminish the quantity thrown in, as well as the quantity which escapes at the other end of the tube, supposing that the work done by the pump is equal in both cases. If instead of a rigid tube we employ an elastic tube and the end be left open so that no resistance is offered to the outflow of the fluid, the effect will be the same as when we used the rigid tube; the outflow will correspond exactly to the inflow and will be just as intermittent. But

now, if the end of the elastic tube be clamped so as to increase the resistance to the outflow, there will be a marked difference from the results obtained when the rigid tube was partially obstructed. Each stroke of the pump forces a certain amount of fluid into the tube. Owing to the peripheral resistance this cannot all escape at once, and so part of the force of the pump is spent in distending the walls of the tube, and part of the fluid that was forced in remains in the tube. The distended elastic tube tends to empty itself and forces out the fluid which over-distends it before the next stroke of the pump occurs. So now the outflow may be divided into two parts, one part which is forced out by the immediate effect of the stroke of the pump, and another part which is forced out by the elastic reaction of the tube between the strokes. If the strokes be rapidly repeated before the tube has time to empty itself thoroughly, it will get more and more distended. Greater distension means stronger elastic reaction, and therefore stronger outflow of the fluid between the beats. This distension goes on increasing till the fluid forced out between the strokes by the elastic reaction of the wall of the tube is exactly equal to that entering at each stroke, and the flow thus becomes continuous.

The same thing occurs in the living body. A man's heart at each beat or contraction forces about 60 c.c. of blood into the already distended aorta. The first effect of this is to distend the aorta still further. The elastic reaction of the walls drives on another portion of blood, which distends the next segment of the arterial wall, and so the wave of distension is transmitted with gradually decreasing force along the arteries. This wave of distension is what we feel on the radial artery, or any exposed artery, as the pulse. After each heart beat the arteries tend to return to their original size, and drive the blood on through the arterioles (the peripheral resistance) into the capillaries and so into the veins. By the time the blood has reached the veins, all trace of the heart beat has disappeared and the pressure has fallen to a few millimetres of mercury.

INFLUENCE OF THE CAPACITY OF THE VASCULAR SYSTEM ON THE CIRCULATION

So far we have only considered the influence of changes of pressure and resistance in a system of tubes with a head of pressure at one end and a free outflow at the other. In the body however the vascular system is a closed circuit of elastic tubes presenting varying resistances to the flow of blood, and of varying distensibility at different parts of their course. In this closed system is inserted a pump, the heart, with the function of driving the blood through the system. Since all the blood vessels are elastic and distensible, the capacity of the system is not fixed, but must vary with the internal pressure to which the vessels are subjected. Moreover the position of the different parts of the circulation must have an influence on the capacity of the system, since the dependent vessels will be distended, not only by the average pressure of the fluid throughout the

system, but also by the hydrostatic pressure due to the weight of the column of fluid pressing on them. The elasticity of the tubes is also a varying factor and can be considerably altered by the contraction of the muscular coats of the vessels, or by pressure on the vessels exerted by the surrounding muscular and elastic structures.

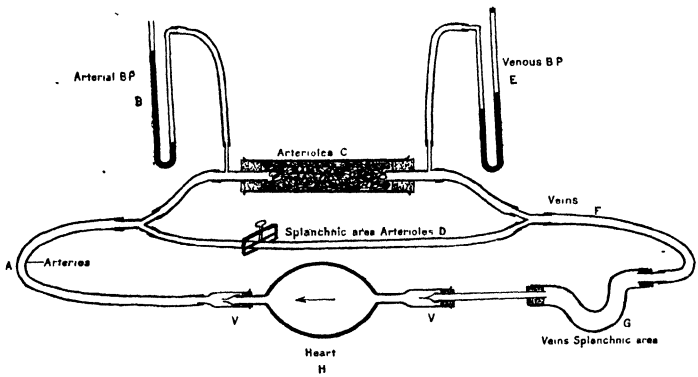


FIG. 395. Artificial schema to demonstrate the main features of the circulation. The heart is an enema syringe with valves at v and v. The artery is a thick-walled rubber tube. On the venous side is placed a length of wide thin-walled tubing, to represent the large thin-walled distensible veins. The arterioles and capillaries (peripheral resistance) are represented by wide glass tubes packed with sponges. By opening the clamp on the tube D ('splanchnic area arterioles') the peripheral resistance can be removed, and a free passage of fluid allowed from arterial to venous side.

It will simplify the discussion of the main factors of the circulation in a closed system if, for the present, we neglect the variable factors and see what would take place in such a system of elastic tubes all situated on one horizontal plane. Such a system is represented in the diagram (Fig. 396), and a working model of it in Fig. 395.

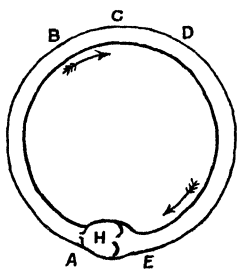


FIG. 396.

The heart H is interpolated at one part of the circuit, while the free outflow of the fluid from B to D is impeded by the presence of a peripheral resistance at C. Such a system would have a definite capacity at zero internal pressure, but a very much greater amount of fluid might be forced into it under a positive pressure. We will assume that the pressure throughout the system is equal to 10 mm. Hg., *i. e.* the elastic tubes are all slightly distended. If the heart H now begins to contract, it will pump fluid from E into A. The pressure in E will fall from 10 mm. to 0 mm., while that in A will rise to a corresponding extent, the resistance at C preventing the free escape of fluid from B to D and so causing the heart to pile up the fluid which it has taken from E into A.

If the texture of the tubes were uniform throughout the system, it is

evident that the rise of pressure in A would approximate very nearly to the fall of pressure in E. In the vascular system the veins are however much more easily distended than the arteries. In Fig. 384 (p. 915) is shown the distensibility of corresponding sections of arteries and veins under gradually increasing internal pressures. An artery has a certain capacity even at zero pressure. As the pressure in its interior is increased, the artery is distended, and its capacity rises first slowly and then more rapidly, the increment in capacity being greatest between 90 and 110 mm. Hg. The vein, on the other hand, is collapsed when there is no distending force in its interior, so that at zero pressure its capacity is nothing. The slightest rise of pressure, even of 1 mm. Hg. causes a considerable increase in its capacity, and the capacity rises rapidly with increasing pressure up to about 20 mm. Hg. Whereas the artery is most distensible at 100 mm. Hg., the vein is at its optimum distensibility at about 10 mm. Hg. If therefore the tubes at E are made of thin-walled rubber tubing, they will be considerably distended under a pressure of 10 mm. Hg., which has practically no influence on the thicker-walled arterial tube A.

A small amount of fluid taken from E would cause very little fall of pressure on this side. A considerable force will be necessary to send this fluid into the more resistant arterial tube, so that on pumping a given amount of fluid from E to A, the pressure in E may fall 5 mm., while the pressure in A has to be raised from 50 to 100 mm. Hg. in order to distend the arteries to such an extent that they will accommodate the fluid taken from E.

In such a system, when the heart is at rest, the pressure all over the system will be uniform, and in the example we have chosen the mean systematic pressure was 10 mm. Hg. When the heart contracts, it takes up fluid from the venous side and piles it up on the arterial side until the pressure on the arterial side is sufficient to cause exactly the same amount of fluid to flow through the peripheral resistance into the veins as is taken by the heart from the veins at each beat. This rise of pressure in the arteries may be many times greater than the fall of pressure in the veins. If more fluid is injected into the system when the heart is at rest, the whole system will be more distended and the *mean systemic pressure* will rise. When the heart contracts, it will raise the pressure on the arterial side and lower that on the venous side as before, but it is evident that, according to the force of the heart beat, the arterial pressure may be less than, equal to, or greater than the pressure attained before the introduction of fluid. Since however the mean systemic pressure is raised, the increased amount of fluid must be accommodated somewhere, so that if the arterial pressure is as great as before, the venous pressure must be greater. In the same way the withdrawal of a certain amount of fluid may lower the mean systemic pressure, say from 10 to 5 mm. Hg. It is still possible for the pump to maintain an arterial pressure equal to that produced when the mean systemic pressure was 10 mm. Hg., but to produce this effect the relative distribution of blood must be altered and the veins must be more

empty than they were previously. The maintenance of a constant arterial pressure with varying amount of fluid in the system can therefore be accomplished either by alterations in the work of the heart or by alterations in the peripheral resistance, and therefore in the ease with which the blood is allowed to escape from the arterial to the venous side.

Alterations of the capacity of the system will have the inverse effect to alterations of its contents. Thus diminution in the volume of veins, such as might be caused in the living body by the contraction of their walls and which may be imitated in our model by pressure on the veins from without, will drive the fluid into other parts of the system and therefore raise the mean systemic pressure. This rise of pressure may be confined to the arteries by increased action of the heart, or it may be confined to the veins by diminished action of the heart or decreased constriction of the arterioles forming the peripheral resistance.

Similar change in capacity may be brought about if we bring in the effects of hydrostatic pressure. If in the model illustrated (Fig. 395) we allow the thin-walled vein to hang over the edge of the table, the pressure of the column of fluid within it causes it to dilate and therefore to accommodate more fluid, and this increased capacity might be so great that the pressure in the section of the vein near the heart might sink to nothing and the heart receive no blood when it started to contract. The whole arterial system might in this way be allowed to drain under the influence of gravity into the distensible dependent segment of the venous tube.

All the conditions in our artificial schema have their exact analogue in the living body. The determination of the mean systemic pressure in the living body is difficult to carry out with accuracy. If, for instance, we stop the heart, which we can do by stimulation of the vagus nerve, the arteries will gradually empty themselves through the peripheral resistance into the veins, and this process will tend to go on until the pressures are identical throughout the system. Before this equilibrium is arrived at however, reaction takes place on the part of the animal, tending to restore the failing circulation. Thus the vessels contract strongly, so diminishing the capacity. Movements take place, causing pressure on the veins of the abdomen and the suction of the blood into the big veins of the thorax. Moreover the vessels in an animal are not all on one plane and, if the animal is in a vertical position, the hydrostatic pressure of the column of blood between the heart and the dependent parts of the body may distend the veins to such an extent that the whole of the blood is taken up in these veins and none returned to the heart. The fact that, after stoppage of the heart, the pressure is positive at all parts of the vascular system in the animal with open thorax shows that there is actually a mean systemic pressure, *i. e.* under normal circumstances, when the animal is in a horizontal position, all parts of the system are slightly distended. Direct measurement shows that this mean systemic pressure is about 10 mm. Hg. The smallness of this figure shows moreover that, under the influence of gravity alone, the pressure will be easily reduced to nothing at all in the

upper parts of the body. In a man in the vertical position, in the absence of the nervous reactive mechanism which we shall consider later on, the whole of the blood would accumulate in the abdomen and lower parts of the body, and the circulation would come to a standstill. On the other hand, the pressure may be altered in any part of the vascular system in any of the following ways:

(1) Alteration of capacity of the total system either by contraction of walls of the vessels or by pressure on them from without.

(2) Alteration of the total volume of the circulating fluid.

Either of these two factors would affect, in the first place, the mean systemic pressure. The distribution of pressure, *i. e.* the relative pressure in the arteries and veins, will be determined by

(3) Alteration in the output of the heart.

(4) Alteration in the peripheral resistance and therefore in the ease with which the blood can escape from arterial to venous side.

In any change either in arterial or venous pressure at least two of these factors are involved. Every constriction of arterioles causes not only an increase in the peripheral resistance but also a diminished capacity of the whole system, so that the arterial pressure is raised at the same time as the mean systemic pressure. Nearly always such a change will involve as its immediate consequence some corresponding alteration in the heart beat, so that at least three factors will co-operate in the production of the rise or fall of blood pressure. We shall have occasion to deal with many examples of these complex conditions when we are discussing the reactions of the vascular system as a whole.

THE DEPENDENCE OF ARTERIAL PRESSURE ON OUTPUT OF HEART

The importance of the heart beat in determining arterial pressure is connected with its output in a given time. The arterial pressure is due to the fact that the heart is taking up fluid from the venous side and pumping it into the arterial side. The pressure on the latter side must rise so long as the rate at which the fluid is put into the arterial system by the heart is greater than that by which it escapes through the peripheral resistance. Arterial pressure therefore is a resultant of the two effects:

(*a*) The amount of blood entering the arterial system from the heart;

(*b*) The amount of blood leaving the arterial system through the peripheral resistance.

It is evident that the pressure will be altered by altering either of the two factors—peripheral resistance or output of the heart. The cardiac output will depend on the amount of blood contained in the heart at the beginning of each contraction, on the strength with which the heart beats, and on the number of contractions of the heart in any given period of time. The filling of the heart at the beginning of each beat is in its turn dependent on the amount of blood which is available to fill the

cavities and therefore on the pressure in the great veins. Increased frequency of heart beat need not therefore necessarily increase the total output of the heart into the arterial system. If the heart is beating with optimum rate and force, it will keep the venous system, at any rate that part nearest the heart, practically empty, and it is not possible for it to obtain more blood to put into the arterial side, however frequently it may beat. There will be an optimum frequency of the heart beat which will depend on the state of filling of the great veins. The fuller these are the more rapidly the heart may beat and increase the total output. On the other hand, in a normal animal with the heart beating at its optimum rate and with effective contraction of its muscular walls, while slowing the heart rate will diminish the total output and therefore the arterial pressure increase in the frequency of the beat cannot raise the arterial pressure to any appreciable extent, though the heart may tend to wear itself out by beating at a greater rate than the optimum.

SECTION III

THE VELOCITY OF THE BLOOD AT DIFFERENT PARTS OF THE VASCULAR SYSTEM

WHEN fluid is flowing through a tube of uniform diameter, the amount passing between any two points is practically in proportion to the difference of pressure between these two points, and varies inversely as the resistance to be overcome. If the tube is of unequal bore, as represented in Fig. 397, since the amount of fluid passing *a* during a given interval of time must be equal to the amount passing *b*—where the bed of the stream is wider—the velocity of the flow must be smaller at *b* than at *a*. The same dependency of velocity on the total bed must apply in any closed system of tubes. Thus in a closed circuit (Fig. 396) with a steady flow from the arterial to the venous side, the amount of fluid leaving the heart and passing A during a minute must be exactly equal to the total amount of fluid passing from arteries to veins through the peripheral resistance B.

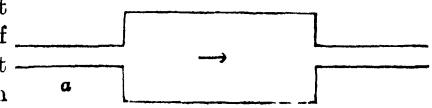


FIG. 397.

The total area at C is probably one thousand times that of the aorta at A, and we should expect therefore a proportionate slowing of the blood stream. As a matter of fact, while the velocity of the blood in the aorta of a large animal may be taken as about half a metre per second, the velocity of the blood in the capillaries is about half a millimetre per second. Moreover, since the total cross-section of the big veins near the heart under a normal distending pressure is about twice that of the first part of the aorta, the velocity of the blood in the great veins is only about half of that found in the aorta. In such a closed circuit increased output of the heart will increase the average velocity round the system, and the same effect may be produced by diminution of the peripheral resistance.

In the living body a great dilatation of the arterioles, causing a fall of the peripheral resistance, generally increases the total capacity of the system. The arterial relaxation therefore not only gives rise to an easier outflow from arteries to veins but also causes a diminished dilatation of the veins, and therefore decreased filling of the heart during diastole. The heart output is therefore also lessened, so that a final result of a dilatation of the arterioles may be a diminished instead of an increased velocity throughout the system.

The foregoing discussion of the factors, which determine the average velocity across a given cross-section of the whole vascular system, must not be applied directly to the changes in the velocity following on *local* alterations in the resistance presented by some particular vascular area. In this case the local changes are insufficient to affect the general arterial blood pressure, and the effect of diminution of peripheral resistance is to furnish a short cut for a small portion of the total output of the heart from the arterial to the venous side. Thus dilatation of the vessels of the sub-maxillary gland, while not altering the general blood pressure as registered in the carotid artery, causes the blood flow through the gland to be increased six to eight times; and the peripheral resistance in the gland may be so far diminished that the blood passes through the capillaries into the veins without losing the pulsatile force imparted to it by each heart beat. The pressures therefore in arterioles, capillaries, and veins are all increased by this local vaso-dilatation. On the other hand, constriction of the arterioles of any given part will diminish the velocity of the blood through this part and also the pressure in its capillaries.

The larger the area affected by the change in the peripheral resistance, the more difficult it is to predict *a priori* what will be the result on the velocity of the blood and on the circulation as a whole, or in the parts specially affected. Thus section of one splanchnic nerve in the dog causes an increased flow of urine from the kidney on the same side, the paralysis of the vessels in this organ causing an increased flow of blood through it and an increased pressure in its capillaries. Section of the corresponding nerve of the rabbit may cause a diminution rather than an increase in the amount of urine secreted, owing to the fact that the total area supplied by the splanchnic nerve is much greater relatively in the rabbit than in the dog. Thus section of this nerve may cause such a wide-spread dilatation that the blood pressure falls; and although the vessels in the kidney are relaxed, the arterial pressure is not sufficient to drive through these relaxed vessels as much blood as was previously driven through the normally contracted arterioles.

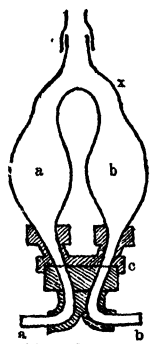


FIG. 398. Diagram of Ludwig's '*Stromuhr.*'

METHODS OF MEASURING THE VELOCITY OF THE BLOOD

The velocity in an artery is measured by placing some apparatus in the path of the blood without intercepting its flow; such an apparatus may be used to give the quick variations in the velocity which occur in the course of each heart beat, or the average flow of blood through the cross-section of the artery in a given space of time. For the latter purpose Ludwig's *Stromuhr*, or current clock (Fig. 398), has been most used. This instrument consists of two bulbs of equal size, *a* and *b*, communicating with one another above; their lower ends are clamped in the disc *c*, which is pierced by two openings serving to connect the lower orifices of the bulbs with the tubes *t*, *t*, cemented into the lower disc *ab*.

An artery such as the carotid, being clamped at its central end and divided, *a* is

inserted into its central end, and *b* into its peripheral cut end. The tube *a* is filled with oil and *b* with salt solution or defibrinated blood. On clamping the artery, blood flows into *a* and drives the contained oil over into *b*, the contents of *b* being meanwhile forced into the peripheral end of the artery. When blood has completely filled the bulb *a*, the two bulbs are reversed, and the blood now entering the artery displaces the oil in *b*, and forces the blood which had entered *a* on into the peripheral end of the artery. Knowing the capacity of the bulbs and the number of times it has been necessary to turn them in the course, say, of one minute, we know also the amount of blood which has passed across the section of the artery under experiment.

In order to determine from this volume the velocity of the blood across the section, *i. e.* through the artery, the total volume passing in the minute must be divided by the cross-section. This will give the velocity per minute. Many modifications of this

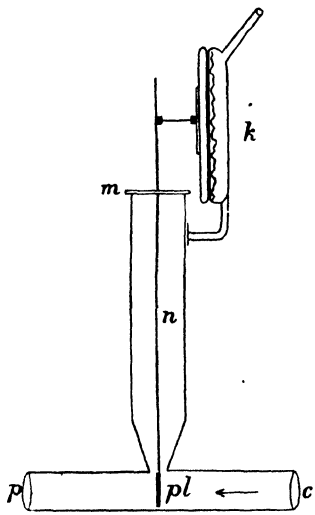


FIG. 399. Diagram showing the construction of Chauveau's hæmadromograph.

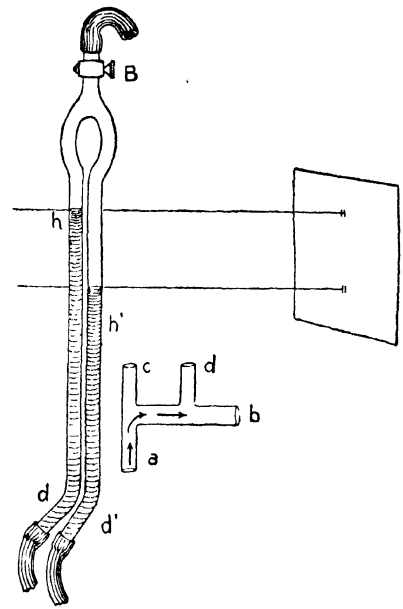


FIG. 400. Diagram to show principle of construction of Cybulski's photohæmatachometer.

apparatus have been devised, but none give any information of the rapid changes occurring in the velocity of the blood during a single pulse wave. For this purpose we must have recourse to some instrument such as Chauveau's hæmadromograph or Cybulski's photohæmatachometer. The *hæmadromograph* (Fig. 399) consists of a pendulum which is hung in a tube, through which the blood is allowed to flow, placed in the course of the artery. The deviation of this pendulum from the vertical will be in proportion to the velocity of the current, and if its upper end be connected, as in the diagram, with a tambour, the variations in velocity can be recorded on a blackened surface by means of a lever. The *photohæmatachometer* is based on an interesting application of Pitot's tubes. If a current of blood be directed along the tube *ab* possessing two vertical side tubes *c* and *d* (Fig. 400), the pressure at *c* will be greater than that at *d*, since at *c* the momentum of the moving mass of blood is added to the lateral pressure of the fluid. A tube of this shape is connected with an artery, such as the carotid, and the tubes *h* and *h'* are attached at the points *c* and *d*. These two

tubes are united at their upper extremities. In this case so long as the blood flows from *a* to *b*, the fluid in *h* will rise higher than in *h'*, and the difference in height of the fluid in the two tubes will be proportional to the velocity of the blood. A graphic record of this difference of pressure is obtained by allowing a narrow beam of light to throw an image of the menisci of the two columns of fluid through a slit on to a moving photographic plate. Such a record is given in Fig. 401. The width of the black space at any point is proportional to the velocity of the blood at the moment at which this part of

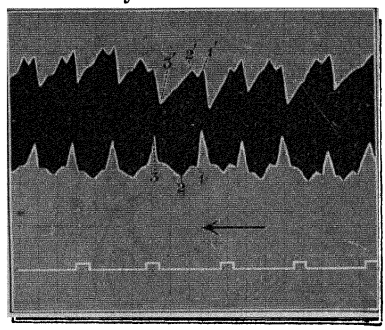


FIG. 401. Record of blood velocity in the carotid artery of the rabbit. (CYBULSKI.)

the record was being taken. Of course this instrument has to be calibrated if we wish to determine the velocity of the blood in absolute measure. In Fig. 401 the velocity at the points 1 and 1', corresponding to the cardiac systole, was 248 mm. per second. At 2 and 2', corresponding to the dicrotic elevation, the velocity was also 248 mm. At 3 and 3', towards the end of diastole, the velocity sank to 127 mm.

The velocity of the blood in the capillaries can be measured by direct observation of the capillaries under the microscope, and noting the time it takes for a blood corpuscle to move from one edge of the field to the other.

THE VELOCITY IN DIFFERENT PARTS OF THE VASCULAR SYSTEM

During systole the velocity of the blood in any part of the arterial system must be greater than during diastole; thus in the carotid of the horse the following figures were found:

	Velocity per second
During systole	520 mm.
During diastole	150 mm.

The following figures of the average velocity have been obtained from experiments on dogs (Tigerstedt):

Body weight	Artery	Volume per second	Linear velocity per second	Diameter of artery	B.P.	Remarks
kg.		c c	mm.	mm.	mm Hg.	
—	Crural.	0·63	128	2·5	77	Nerves uninjured.
14·6	Crural.	1·69	275	2·8	88	Nerves cut
14·1	Carotid.	1·95	241	3·3	93	Nerves uninjured

SECTION IV

THE MECHANISM OF THE HEART PUMP

In the mammal the two sides of the heart are in communication only by means of the blood vessels of the systemic and pulmonary area. Each side consists of an auricle into which the veins open, and a ventricle which receives the blood from the auricle and discharges it into the arterial trunk—either aorta or pulmonary artery. Since the auricles have to act merely as a receptacle for *part* of the blood which enters during the relaxation or diastole of the heart, their cavities are smaller than those of the ventricles, and their walls are thin, corresponding to the small amount of work thrown on them in propelling blood into the relaxed ventricle. The ventricles have the office of carrying on the main work of the circulation and of forcing blood through the peripheral resistance. Their walls are much thicker than those of the auricles. The right ventricle has a wall which is only about one-fourth the thickness of the left ventricle, in conformity with the much heavier work to be done by the latter. On cutting a section through the two ventricles in a contracted condition, the thin wall of the right ventricle is seen to lie in the form of a crescent round the circular left ventricle. The capacity of both ventricles is approximately equal, and amounts in man to about 140 c.c. for each ventricle when the heart is completely relaxed.

The auricles are separated from the ventricles by a fibrotendinous ring. From this ring take origin most of the muscular fibres of the heart walls. The muscular fibres of the auricles run in both circular and longitudinal directions, the circular fibres being continued round both auricles, and special rings of circular fibres surrounding the openings of the great veins. From the fibrotendinous ring between the auricle and the left ventricle and from the sides of the aorta, the muscular fibres forming the superficial layer of the ventricular wall pass obliquely downwards to the left towards the apex of the ventricle. Here they loop round into the interior of the ventricle and pass up near its inner surface to end either in the papillary muscles or in the auriculo-ventricular ring of fibrous tissue. Between these two layers we find a third median layer of muscular fibres which is in the form of a muscular cone. The fibres of this layer form complete loops round the left ventricle. The middle layer is connected by many strands of muscular fibres with both inner and outer layers.

Mall divides the muscular fibres of the mammalian heart into four groups, two superficial and two deep, as follows :

(1) The *superficial bulbo-spiral fibres.* These arise from the *conus arteriosus,* the left side of the aorta and the left side of the auriculo-ventricular ring, and take an

oblique course to the apex, where they make a spiral turn (the vortex) and reach the interior of the left ventricle, ending for the most part in the intraventricular septum and the papillary muscles.

(2) The *superficial sino-spiral fibres* rise on the dorsal side of the heart from the right auriculo-ventricular ring and run obliquely on the anterior surface of the right ventricle to the apex, where they also turn inwards, forming the anterior horn of the 'vortex,' and end chiefly in the papillary muscles of the right ventricle.

(3) The *deep bulbo-spiral fibres* form a complete cylinder around the left ventricle, and are attached chiefly to the dorsal side of the aorta.

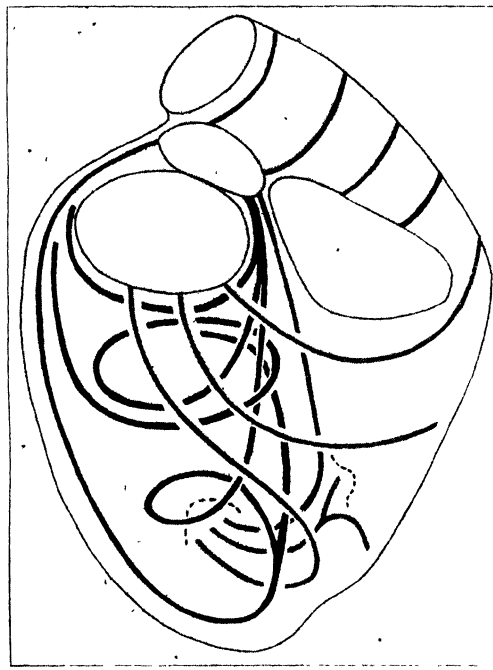


FIG. 402. View of the heart from behind, to show the course of the chief strands of muscle fibres. (MALL.)

The black lines represent the *bulbo-spiral* fibres, the grey lines the *sino-spiral* fibres.

(4) The *deep sino-spiral fibres* are attached to the dorsal aspect of the left auriculo-ventricular ring, whence they enter the right ventricle and turn upwards towards the base. The uppermost of these fibres form circular rings round the *conus arteriosus* at the base of the pulmonary artery.

The fact that the muscular fibres are continuous over both auricles and over both ventricles respectively ensures the practically simultaneous contraction of each of these parts of the heart. Although on coarse dissection there seems to be absolute division between the muscular tissue of auricles and ventricles, it has been shown by Kent, His, and others that there is continuity of muscular tissue between the two parts of the heart by a special band of muscular fibres, 'the bundle of His,' which rises in the wall of the right auricle and passes beneath the *foramen ovale* and across the auriculo-

ventricular junction into the inter-ventricular septum. The exact course of these fibres and their significance will be considered later.

The normal direction of the blood flow through the heart is determined mainly by the valves which guard the auriculo-ventricular orifices and the openings of the aorta and pulmonary artery. The auriculo-ventricular valves are tubular membranes attached round the entire circumference of the auriculo-ventricular ring. They are composed of fibrous and elastic

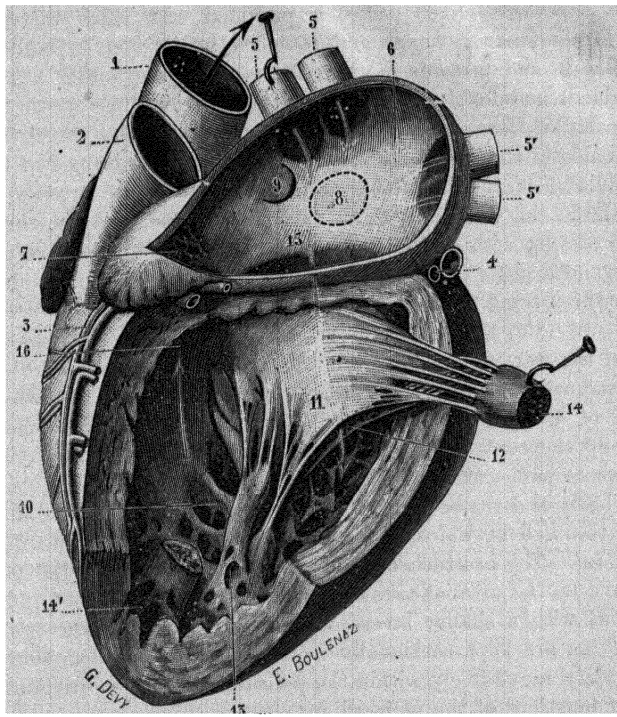


FIG. 403. Left auricle and ventricle, with outer side cut away to show chief points in anatomy of heart. (TESTUT.)

1, aorta; 2, pulmonary artery; 3, ant. coronary vessels; 5, 5', pulmonary veins; 6, left auricle; 7, auricular appendage; 10, cavity of left ventricle; 11, 12, mitral valves; 13, 14, papillary muscles, 16, arrow pointing to aortic orifice.

tissue, covered on each side with endocardium, and project downwards into the cavities of the ventricles. On each side the membrane is divided by deep incisions into large flaps, three in number on the right side (the tricuspid valves) and two in number on the left side (the mitral valves). The sail-like margins of these valves are connected by thin tendinous cords to the papillary muscles, which are nipple-shaped projections of the muscular walls of the ventricles. By this means the edges of the valves are kept close together and prevented from eversion under the strong pressure exerted by the contracting ventricle. By the downward pull of the papillary muscles on the valves during the contraction of the ventricles, closure is rendered more

complete, the inner surface of the valves being apposed over a considerable area. The action of the valves is aided by the contraction of the fibres surrounding the base of the heart, so that the auriculo-ventricular orifice is much smaller during systole than during diastole.

From a purely mechanical standpoint the valves guarding the arterial orifices are much more perfect than those just described, which depend for their efficiency on the proper contraction of the ventricular wall and of the *musculi papillares*. Each orifice is provided with three valves, each of which is semilunar in shape and attached by its convex borders to the arterial wall, and presents in the middle of its free border a small fibro-cartilaginous nodule, the *corpus Arantii*, from which fine elastic fibres pass to all parts of the valve. The extreme margin of the valve, the *lunula*, on each side of the *corpus Arantii* is very thin, being formed of little more than the endocardium. Whenever the pressure in the arteries is greater than that in the ventricles, these valves are closed, and the thin margins come in contact with similar portions of the adjacent valves, so preventing the reflux of a single drop of blood. The borders of the valves under these circumstances come together in the form of a star composed of three lines at angles of 120°, the three *corpora Arantii* being pressed together at the centre of the star.

No valves are found at the orifices of the great veins into the auricles, a reflux of blood in this situation during contraction of the heart being limited by the contraction of the muscular rings round the veins, which always accompanies the auricular contraction.

The heart and the roots of the great vessels lie almost free in a special cavity, the wall of which is formed by a tough fibrous membrane, the pericardium. This is attached below to the central tendon of the diaphragm, and above to the arterial trunks. It is lined by a layer of endothelium continuous with a similar layer covering the surface of the heart. The two surfaces are kept continually moist by the pericardial fluid, so that the heart can move freely within the pericardium without friction. One of the chief functions of the pericardium appears to be to check an excessive dilatation of the heart during conditions attended by a great rise of venous pressure.

THE SEQUENCE OF EVENTS IN THE CARDIAC CYCLE

On opening the chest of an anæsthetised animal, while artificial respiration is maintained, the heart is seen contracting rhythmically within the pericardium. On incising this sac its restraining power on the dilatation of the heart is shown by the fact that during diastole the wall of the heart bulges through the opening, and the increased diastolic filling, consequent on the removal of this restraining influence, is at once apparent, if in any way the frequency of the contractions of the heart be diminished so as to prolong the diastolic period.

Each beat of the heart begins by a simultaneous contraction of both

auricles, associated with a retraction of the auricular appendages, which become pale and bloodless. After a pause of not more than a tenth of a second, the contraction of the auricles is followed by that of the ventricles, and blood is thrown out into the large arteries. The contraction of the auricles lasts about a tenth of a second, that of the ventricles about three-tenths of a second. The period of relaxation or diastole lasts about four-tenths of a second. During this cycle of changes the following events are taking place within the heart:

In the diastolic period the aortic valves are closed and the arterial system is open only towards the capillaries. In consequence of the high pressure established within the arteries by the previous heart beats, the blood flows steadily through the arterioles, capillaries, and veins into the right heart, and similarly the pressure in the pulmonary artery causes a partial emptying of this vessel with its branches through the pulmonary capillaries into the left heart. The flow into the heart is assisted by the elastic retraction of the lungs, which causes a negative pressure in the structures between them and the chest wall, so that the blood is sucked from the other parts of the body towards the thorax. During diastole there is a continuous flow of blood from veins into auricles and from auricles into ventricles and, as the walls of both these cavities are relaxed, there is no impediment to the inflow of the blood until the dilating heart begins to stretch the pericardium.

Under normal circumstances the diastole comes to an end before the restraining influence of the pericardium can be effective. The contraction of the auricles drives their contents into the ventricles and so still farther increases their distension, no resistance being offered by the widely dilated auriculo-ventricular orifices or by the flaccid wall of the ventricles. As the blood rushes from auricle into ventricle through the funnel-shaped opening of the membranous tube formed by the valves, eddies are set up in the ventricle tending to close the valves, so that they are held, as the resultant of the two opposing currents, in a condition midway between closure and opening. The onset of the ventricular contraction is extremely rapid. There is a quick rise of pressure in the ventricle, which presses together the flaps of the mitral or tricuspid valves, while the bases of these valves are approximated by the contraction of the circular fibres at the base of the ventricles. As the heart shortens in systole the papillary muscles also shorten, so that the valves are prevented from eversion into the auricles, while the blood is pressed, so to speak, between the cone of the ventricular wall and the cone formed by the tubular valves.

The outflow of blood from the ventricles does not however commence immediately. Whereas at the beginning of systole the pressure in the ventricle cavity is quite small (only 2 or 3 mm. Hg.), there is a pressure in the aorta of 50 to 80 mm. Hg. Before the semilunar valves separating the lumen of the aorta from the ventricular cavity can be opened, the pressure in the left ventricle must rise to a point which is greater than that in the aorta, and similarly on the right side of the heart. As soon as this happens

the valves open and the outflow of blood commences, and continues so long as the pressure in the ventricles is higher than that in the great arteries. Directly however the ventricular pressure falls below the arterial pressure, the valves must close and the output of blood come to an end.

In order to obtain an accurate idea of the exact duration of each of these events in the cardiac cycle, it is necessary to study the changes occurring in the pressure within the auricles and ventricles during the various phases of the heart beat.

THE ENDOCARDIAC PRESSURE

A manometer which shall register accurately the changes in the pressure within the heart must be capable of responding to very rapid changes. Thus in the left ventricle at the beginning of the systole, there may be a rise of 130 mm. Hg. in ·06 sec., *i. e.* 2170 mm. Hg. per sec. In a heart beating rapidly and forcibly under the action of adrenalin, the rise may be still more

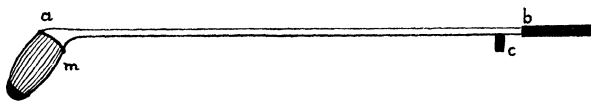


FIG. 404. Diagram of Marey's cardiac 'sound,' consisting of a long tube *ab*, terminating at one end in the ampulla *m*, which is covered with an elastic membrane. The side-piece *c* serves to indicate the position of the ampulla after it has been introduced into the vessels.

rapid, *e. g.* 150 mm. Hg. in ·025 sec. A mercurial manometer with its great inertia would be quite unequal to registering such rapid changes of pressure, and would moreover tend to enter into oscillations which would quite deform the curve. We require an instrument with very small weight of moving parts, so as to possess small inertia and be capable of registering a rapid rise of pressure without entering into oscillations of its own.

Several methods have been adopted for this purpose. In one (Chauveau and Marey) a cardiac 'sound' (Fig. 404) is passed down the jugular vein into the right auricle or ventricle, or down the carotid artery into the left ventricle. The cardiac sound is a

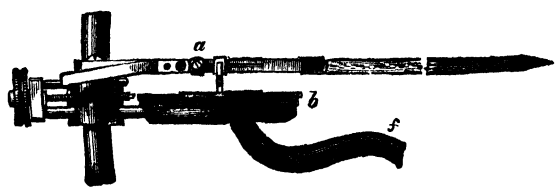


FIG. 405. Marey's tambour.

a, axis of lever; *b*, metal tray covered with rubber membrane, and communicating by tube *f* with free end of cardiac sound.

stiff tube having an elastic bulb or ampulla at the end which is to be inserted into the heart. The bulb is supported by a steel frame, so that it is not completely compressible by external pressure. The free end of the tube is connected with a writing tambour (Fig. 405), a small round metal tray covered with a delicate elastic membrane. To

the top of the membrane a lever is attached by which any change of pressure on the ampulla may be recorded on a moving smoked surface. The large size of these sounds makes it difficult to use them on any animal smaller than the ass or horse. In smaller animals, such as the dog, the question has been investigated by the use of a manometer such as that of Hürthle. In this instrument (Fig. 406) the changes of pressure are

Fig. 406. Diagram to show construction of Hurthle's membrane manometer.

recorded by the oscillations of a thick rubber membrane which covers a very small tambour. The tambour is filled with magnesium sulphate solution, which is also used to fill the tube connecting with the heart. This tube can be inserted in the same way as Marey's cardiac sound.

Even Hurthle's instrument is inadequate to give a correct representation of the very rapid changes of pressure occurring in the contracting ventricle. A study of the theory of recording instruments by Otto Frank has enabled him to lay down certain fundamental requirements of such a recording instrument. In order that an instrument may reproduce correctly rapid changes of pressure, the mass moved must be as small as possible in order to reduce the momentum, and therefore the tendency to overthrow of the instrument, to the greatest possible extent. Moreover the movement of fluid into and out of the instrument, which accompanies each change of pressure, must occur with the smallest possible friction. This is accomplished, as in Hurthle's instrument, by using a very small tambour, covered with a strong, tightly stretched membrane connected, by as short and wide a tube as is feasible, with the heart or blood vessel where it is desired to register changes of pressure. A lever is entirely got rid of, the minute oscillations of the membrane being recorded by means of a beam of light which impinges on

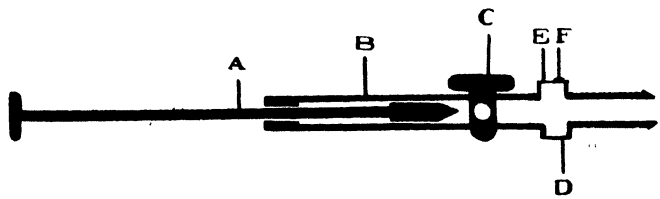


Fig. 407. Diagram of Piper's manometer.

a mirror attached to the rubber membrane and reflected on to a moving photographic surface. In Fig. 407 is represented the construction of Piper's manometer, built on the principles laid down by Frank.

It consists of a tube armed with a stilette, A, which fits it accurately. At C is a tap which, when opened, will permit the passage of the stilette, and can close the tube entirely when the stilette is withdrawn. About 2 cms. above the lower extremity of the tube is a small drum-like enlargement, closed on one side by a thick membrane, E. On the edge of this membrane is fixed by means of shellac a minute mirror, F, 1 mm. in diameter. With the stilette protruding, the manometer is thrust directly into the cavity of the heart, and fixed in position by a purse-string suture through the superficial part of the heart muscle, tied tightly round the end of the manometer. The stilette is then withdrawn and the tap turned off, but alterations in pressure in the cavity of the heart cause minute oscillations of the membrane, which can be recorded and magnified to any desired extent by means of a beam of light reflected from the mirror on to a moving

photographic plate or paper. The advantage of this optical method of registration is that the magnification can be increased to any extent without altering the mass moved. The 'figure of merit' of this manometer, *i. e.* its own period of vibration, when filled with fluid, is about 250 per second with a thick membrane, so that it can record with perfect accuracy all such rapid changes of pressure as may occur even in the left ventricle.

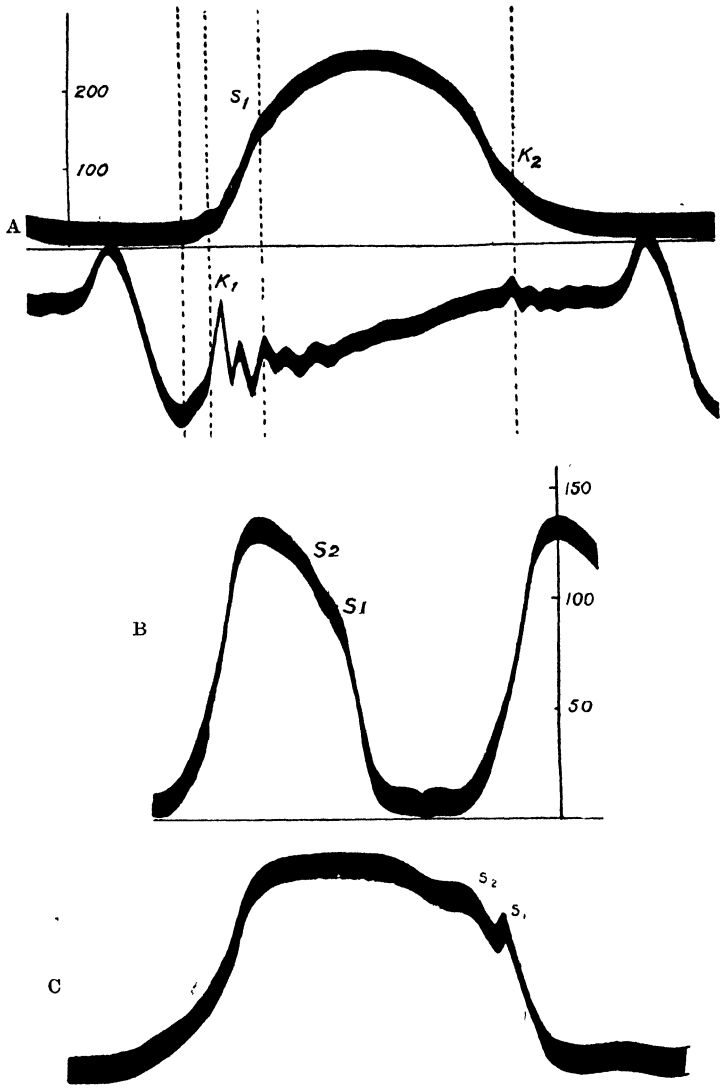


FIG. 408. Endocardiac pressure tracings, taken with Piper's manometer.

A, Simultaneous tracings from left ventricle and left auricle. To be read from left to right. B and C taken from left ventricle, C at a faster rate of recording surface than B. To be read from right to left. K_1 = closure of A.V. valves; S_1, opening of aortic valves; S_2, elastic oscillation or wave; K_2, opening of A.V. valves.

On registering the endocardiac pressure by the optical method, it is found that the curves vary in form according to the condition of the heart. In order to interpret these curves, we must utilise the knowledge obtained from a simultaneous record of the pressures in the auricle and ventricle, or in the ventricle and aorta. Fig. 408 represents the different forms of curve obtained from the left ventricle. Very often, as in A, the curve is not unlike a single muscle twitch or the curve of contraction of the frog's heart muscle. Nearly always however it is possible to see on the upstroke one or two elevations, the most noticeable being the elevation marked S_1. This can be shown to correspond to the opening of the aortic valves. This is still better marked in B, where the heart was beating very forcibly and

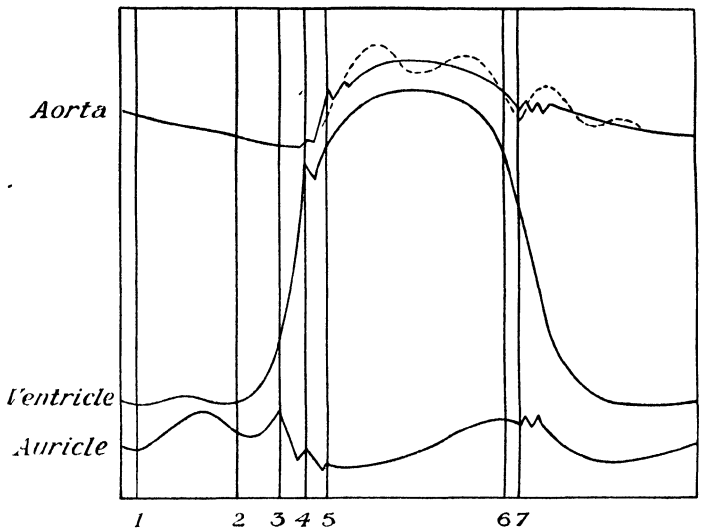


FIG. 409.

rapidly under the influence of adrenalin, and is also very evident in C. In some cases, as in A, the rise of pressure occurs distinctly more slowly after S_1 than before. In B there is a further rapid rise of pressure after S_1 before the curve begins to slope away and, at the change of velocity of rise, there is a second wave at the point S_2. This is also marked in C. The slope of the curve after S_1 or S_2 varies considerably according to the amount of blood the heart is sending out. In C the intraventricular pressure curve runs almost horizontal for a time, and this part of the curve is known as the systolic plateau, but, as is evident from A, a plateau in the strict sense of the term is not always present. At the end of the 'plateau' the pressure rapidly falls, and the period where the lines thin out, *i. e.* the point at which the fall is occurring most rapidly, corresponds to the closure of the aortic valves.

The average course of the changes of pressure in the heart during each beat is shown diagrammatically in Fig. 409 (Piper). The cardiac cycle

begins with the contraction of the auricle at 1, which may or may not give rise to a slight rise of pressure in the ventricles. As the auricular contraction dies away, the ventricular contraction begins at 2. This causes a very rapid rise of pressure. Almost immediately after the beginning of the rise, or sometimes synchronously, the auriculo-ventricular valves close at the point marked 3. The pressure then rises rapidly in the ventricular cavity. Directly it exceeds the pressure in the aorta, the aortic valves open at the point marked 4, and the aortic pressure thereafter rises with the ventricular pressure. During the whole duration of the ventricular contraction, the aortic pressure remains somewhat below the ventricular pressure, showing that blood is flowing continuously from ventricle into aorta. The rise of pressure in the aorta may be at first rapid and then slow off gradually. With the change of velocity of the rise of pressure, vibrations may be set up at 5 especially in the aorta and also, but to a less extent, in the ventricle. These vibrations are however often absent. At the end of the plateau the pressure in the ventricle falls rapidly as this organ begins to relax. Its pressure therefore falls below that of the aorta, and the aortic valves close, the closure of the valves being followed by the so-called dicrotic elevation or incisure at 7. The pressure in the ventricles then continues to fall, first rapidly and then more slowly, until it reaches the line of zero pressure, and remains at or near this line during the greater part of diastole. With a big inflow there may be a slight rise towards the end of diastole, which may be accentuated by the auricular contraction. If the chest is opened the pressure in the ventricle never sinks below zero during any part of diastole. The time relations of these events naturally varies with the frequency of contraction of the heart. In a dog's heart beating about 100 times a minute, the following phases in the ventricular tracing were determined by Hürthle.

(1) A small rise of pressure, due to contraction of the auricles, lasting about ·05 second.

(2) A very steep ascent, rather above the middle of which the aortic valves open. The beginning of the rise is generally marked by a sharp secondary wave or by a sudden change in the direction of the curve. This point is about ·02 to ·04 second after the beginning of the ventricular contraction.

(3) A prolonged stage, lasting about two-tenths of a second during which the ventricle is contracting. During this time the tracing may show a flattened top, the 'plateau,' or a rounded summit. Near the beginning of this plateau, a second wave may make its appearance if the rate, at which the pressure rises, falls off suddenly. This second wave is therefore most marked with a considerable output and a heart which beats forcibly and rapidly.

(4) A rapid fall, due to the relaxation of the ventricular muscle. Near the upper part of this fall the aortic valves close; but it is generally difficult, without comparison with the simultaneous aortic pressure curve, to make out the exact point of closure on the ventricular pressure curve.

(5) A period lasting about two-tenths of a second during which the

ventricle remains relaxed and the pressure is approximately zero, in some cases rising slightly towards the end.

The period of outflow of blood lasts from the moment at which the aortic valves open to the moment at which in the relaxing ventricle the pressure falls below that in the aorta and the aortic valves close. It therefore corresponds with the duration of that part of the curve which has been called the 'plateau.' The maximum pressure attained in the left ventricle naturally depends on the height of the aortic pressure and is always greater than this. Under normal conditions in the dog, with an average aortic pressure of 100 mm. Hg., the pressure in the ventricle may be 130 or 150 mm. Hg. The difference between the average pressure in the aorta and the maximum pressure attained during contraction of the ventricle will naturally be greater the larger the amount of blood which is thrown out at each contraction. Thus in one case in a dog of 10 kilos., with an average aortic pressure of 100 mm. Hg., the maximum pressure in the left ventricle was 145 mm. Hg. with an output of 2040 c.c. per minute, and 115 mm. Hg. with an output of 650 c.c. per minute. On the right side the maximum pressure is much less, corresponding to the low resistance of the pulmonary system of blood vessels. Otherwise the general course of the curves is very similar on the two sides of the heart. The maximum pressure in the right ventricle may be taken as varying between 25 and 35 mm. Hg. under ordinary conditions.

CHANGES OF PRESSURE IN THE AURICLES

Owing to the absence of valves between the right auricle and the venæ cavæ, changes of pressure within this cavity are transmitted along the veins. The venous pulsation is especially marked in circumstances which give rise to high venous pressure, so that the veins are not entirely emptied at any part of the cardiac cycle. The most superficial observation shows that the jugular vein pulsates twice for each heart beat. The exact form of the pressure tracing in the auricles varies considerably according to the inflow of blood and the state of filling of their cavities. A typical tracing with a moderate inflow of blood is given in Fig. 408 A, p. 942, and in this figure the relations of the different elevations in the auricular tracing to the intraventricular events can be made out. A somewhat different curve is given in Fig. 400, but it will be noted that the essential features of the curves are identical. In every case the auricle curve presents the following features:

(1) The first positive wave (pre-systolic wave) corresponding to the auricular systole.

(2) The second positive wave *k* (first systolic wave) occupying the beginning of the ventricular systole. This is caused by the sharp closure of the mitral valve.

(3) A third positive wave (second systolic wave) which may present secondary undulations. This rise of pressure is due to the gradual filling of the auricles while the auriculo-ventricular valves are still shut.

(4) A negative wave which corresponds to the 'post-systolic vacuum'

of Chauveau and Marey. At this point the ventricle is entirely relaxed and the auriculo-ventricular valves open, so allowing the blood to flow freely from the auricle into the ventricle. This negative wave is not always well marked, and is represented only by a series of small undulations in Fig. 408 A.

The pressure rises in the left auricle somewhat higher than in the right auricle. In the latter case the big veins act as a supplementary reservoir to the auricle, so that in no period of the cardiac cycle need the pressure in the latter chamber rise to any extent. In both the auricular tracings given the heart sounds are apparent as small oscillations in the curve.

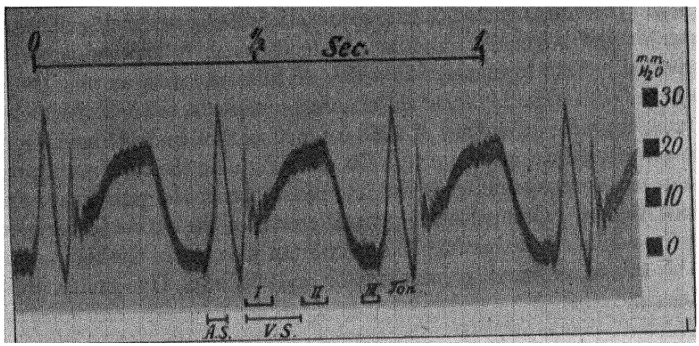


FIG. 410. Curve of pressures in left auricle of cat. (STRAUB.)
I, II, III Ton = 1st, 2nd, and 3rd heart sounds.

NEGATIVE PRESSURE. When the flow of blood through a tap is suddenly interrupted, the momentum of the fluid tends to make it continue its movement so that a diminution of pressure is produced in the rear of the moving column. In the tracings obtained by means of the older instruments, such as those of Hürthle, the lever at the end of the ventricular systole descended even below the base line, thus suggesting that for a short period of time there was actually a negative pressure in the ventricles. If the manometer be connected with the heart by a tube provided with a valve allowing the movement of fluid only in one direction, it becomes a maximum or minimum manometer according to the direction of the valve. This tube however increases the inertia of the whole system, so that the use of the minimum manometer tends to exaggerate the apparent negative pressure. According to some statements there may be a negative pressure of 40 to 60 mm. Hg. in the ventricle at some period during the cardiac cycle. Many explanations were put forward to account for this negative pressure, but they are all rendered unnecessary by the fact revealed by more perfect graphic methods that at no period in the cardiac cycle is there a negative pressure in the ventricles. Naturally under normal conditions the pressure in the chest outside the heart is negative owing to the elastic retraction of the lungs, and may vary from −3 to −30 mm. Hg., according as it is measured during normal expiration or during forced inspiration. This negative pressure may be transmitted to the interior of the heart, but the pressure within the ventricles never falls below the pressure obtaining outside the heart.

CHANGES IN FORM OF THE HEART

As the heart walls are perfectly flaccid during diastole, the shape of this organ as a whole will depend upon the position in which the heart is lying

and the direction of its support. Thus if the chest and the pericardium be opened and the animal be in the supine position, the heart during diastole will be flattened from before backwards as a result of the simple weight of its contents. In this position therefore, systole will be accompanied by a shortening in the lateral and vertical directions and a lengthening in the sagittal direction. During systole, when the heart becomes tense and all its fibres are firmly contracted, the heart, whatever its previous condition, takes the form of a truncated cone. Under normal circumstances the heart in the unopened chest lies in the pericardium, which is attached above to the great vessels and below to the central tendon of the diaphragm. It is supported laterally by the lungs which however, owing to their elasticity, have very little influence on its shape during diastole.

When the heart is freed from the pericardium, the obliquity of its fibres causes the apex to move forwards and to the right during systole; this movement is normally prevented by the attachment of the pericardium to the central tendon of the diaphragm, so that the most movable part of the heart comes to be the base. If three needles be passed through the chest wall so that their points lie, one in the base, one about the centre of the ventricles, and one in the apex of the ventricles, each ventricular systole is found to be accompanied by a movement of the needle in the base of the heart downwards, a slighter movement in the same direction of the needle in the middle of the ventricles, and practically no movement at all of the needle which is thrust into the apex. During systole the base of the heart moves downwards towards the apex. This movement is determined partly by the shortening of the fibres of which the ventricular wall is composed, partly by the lengthening of the great arteries as blood is forced into them under pressure from the ventricles.

The changes in the shape of the cavities of the heart during contraction have been studied in the stage of extreme contraction produced by heat rigour. In such hearts it is found that the cavities are never entirely obliterated, though the right ventricle is reduced to a narrow slit widening out slightly in the neighbourhood of the auriculo-ventricular orifices, while in the left ventricle a distinct cavity is left between the mitral valves and the free ends of the papillary muscles. During normal activity it is probable that the emptying of the cavities rarely proceeds to so great an extent.

THE APEX BEAT

The movement of the heart at each contraction is communicated to the chest wall, over a limited area of which it may be felt and seen, except in fat individuals. The region where the pulsation of the chest wall is most marked lies in the fifth intercostal space, a little to the median side of the left nipple. The pulsation is spoken of as the 'apex beat,' and was formerly thought to be due to the twisting forward of the apex at each systole. The apex of the heart is really situated lower down and as we have already seen, so long as the pericardium is intact, is relatively motionless. During diastole the ventricles form a flabby flattened cone lying against the chest

wall and slightly deformed by the latter. In systole the ventricles contract forcibly on the contained fluid and become hard and rigid, assuming the form of a rounded cone. This sudden recovery of shape and hardening of the ventricular wall pushes out that part of the chest wall in immediate proximity to the ventricles and so gives rise to the 'apex beat.'

The cardiac impulse may be registered by means of a cardiograph. In nearly all forms of this instrument a button resting on the chest wall transmits the movement of the latter to a tambour, which again is connected by a tube to a registering tambour. One such instrument is shown in Fig. 411.

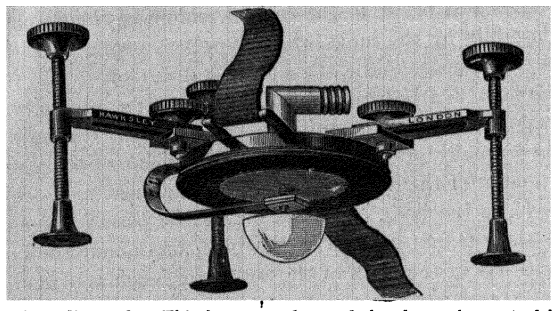


FIG. 411. A cardiograph. This is strapped round the chest, the central button is applied to the 'apex beat,' and its pressure on the chest wall regulated by means of the three screws at the sides. The tube at the upper part of the instrument serves to connect the drum of the cardiograph with a registering tambour such as that shown in Fig. 405.

The curves so obtained, which are known as cardiograms, may vary considerably in the same subject according to the pressure employed and the exact spot at which the tambour is applied. Their interpretation often presents difficulties owing to the fact that their form is conditioned by two factors, viz. (1) the actual size (antero-posterior

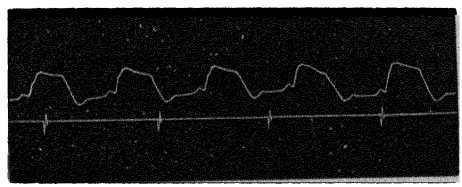


FIG. 412. Cardiogram. (HURTHLE.)

diameter) of the ventricles; (2) the resistance to distortion (*i. e.* the tension) of the ventricular wall; this factor will increase in importance with increasing pressure of the cardiograph button on the chest wall. Fig. 412 represents a cardiographic tracing or cardiogram which may be spoken of as typical. In order to interpret this curve we must record at the same time either the intraventricular pressure in animals or the heart sounds in man. This cardiogram presents considerable similarities to the endocardiac pressure curve; in both there is an ascending limb, a plateau, and a descending limb, and in many cases a small elevation occurs at the beginning of a curve during the contraction of the auricle. The exact point at which the auricular passes into the ventricular contraction varies from case to case and may be altered by altering the degree of pressure put on the recording button. In the first figure given the auricular systole finishes before the main rise of the lever occurs. In many cases however, the elevation due to the auricular systole may take up the greater part of the ascending limb of the curve, as in Fig. 413.

In the experiment from which this figure was taken, the heart sounds were recorded at the same time as the apex beat. It will be seen that the first heart sound, corresponding to the ventricular systole, begins, not at the commencement of the rise of the cardiogram but at the notch near the top of the ascent. The first part of the ascent is therefore caused by the increase in the volume of the ventricle, due to the sudden contraction of the auricles, the ventricular systole being marked by the notch near the top of the curve. Owing to the co-operation of the volume and pressure factors in the production of the cardiogram, the curve generally begins to decline with the diminution in volume which follows the sudden opening of the aortic valves. Here again however, the effect will vary with the pressure of the button. If an actual deformation of the ventricular muscle can be effected, as in thin patients, the plateau of the curve may last during the whole of the cardiac cycle. Other forms of curves may be obtained which show considerable deviation from the endocardiac pressure tracing; these are spoken of as atypical, and are generally conditioned by a faulty position of the cardiograph, the button being applied to the chest wall in the immediate vicinity of the apex beat instead of to the apex beat itself.

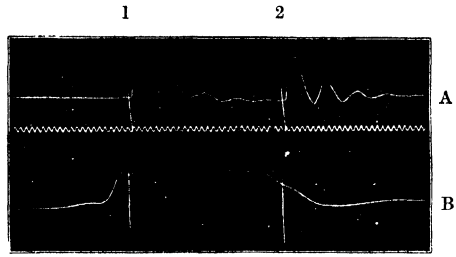


FIG. 413. Cardiogram (B) with simultaneous record of heart sounds (A). (HÜRTHLE.)
1, position of first heart sound; 2, position of second heart sound.

THE HEART SOUNDS

If we apply our ear to the front of a person's chest (it is more convenient to use the stethoscope for the purpose), we hear two distinct sounds accompanying each beat of the heart, followed by a pause corresponding to the diastole. The sounds are compared to the syllables *lubb, dup,* the first sound being low-pitched and prolonged, the second sound high and sharp. Thus the heart sounds may be represented: lubb, dup (pause), lubb, dup (pause).

The causation of the second sound is very simple and may be considered first. It is heard just over the second right costal cartilage, *i. e.* the place where the aorta lies nearest the surface. It comes at the end of the systole, as determined by the hardening of the apex of the heart, felt as the apex beat, and can be shown to be synchronous with the closure of the aortic valves. It is in fact caused by the sudden shutting and stretching of these valves, that occur directly the heart ceases to contract and to force the blood into the aorta. If the valves be hooked back in an animal by means of a wire passed down a carotid artery, the second sound disappears and is replaced by a murmur caused by the blood rushing back into the ventricle at the end of the systole. The same disappearance of the normal

second sound is observed in cases where the valves are prevented from closing by diseased conditions.

The pulmonary and aortic valves generally close simultaneously. In some cases however, the aortic may close slightly before the pulmonary, giving rise to a 'reduplicated second sound.' The pulmonary element of this sound is best heard over the second left cartilage, or in the second left intercostal space.

The first sound has probably a twofold origin, viz. from the sudden closure of the auriculo-ventricular valves and from the contraction of the thick muscular wall of the ventricle.

If the veins going to the heart be clamped so that the heart can no longer be distended with blood nor the valves put on the stretch, the first sound is altered in character, but not abolished. The first sound may indeed be heard on listening with a stethoscope to the beat of an excised heart. It is said that two notes may be detected in the first sound—a high note of short duration due to closure of the valves, and a low-pitched note due to the muscular contraction. The muscular element of the first sound has the same pitch as the sound produced by contracting voluntary muscle, and therefore as the resonance tone of the ear. This consideration prevents our arguing from the tone that a cardiac contraction is a tetanus. As we shall show later on, each ventricular contraction is analogous to a simple muscle twitch and not to a tetanus.

THE THIRD HEART SOUND. A number of observers have described a third heart sound as occurring in certain individuals during the diastole, a short time after the second sound. It is softer and of a lower pitch than the second sound, and is heard most distinctly over the apex beat. It is probably due to the vibrations set up in the fluid itself or in the auriculo-ventricular valves by the sudden inrush of blood from auricles to ventricles at the beginning of the diastole. The sound is shown objectively by the vibrations on the endocardiac pressure curve given in Fig. 410 (Straub). It has also been registered electrically by Einthoven.

CARDIAC MURMURS

When a fluid escapes through a narrow orifice into a wider space, vibrations are set up in the fluid and may be transmitted by any elastic medium to the ear, giving rise to the sensation of sound. Such a sound is produced when water is allowed to run from a tap into a vessel of water, or when air is blown out between the partially closed lips. The formation of such vibrations forms indeed the basis for the construction of many musical instruments. The same sort of vibration may be set up in the large vessels or in the heart, whenever the blood passes rapidly through a narrow orifice into a wider space.

In the normal individual sounds produced in this way are so slight that they may be neglected; under abnormal conditions, as after diseases affecting the valvular orifices of the heart, this vibration may occur during every heart cycle and be heard with ease on applying the ear to the chest. These murmurs, or *bruits* as they are called, are of paramount importance in enabling the medical man to form a judgment as to the condition of the

different valves of the heart. Thus injury to an aortic valve, so as to allow of leakage during diastole, involves the squirting of a small amount of fluid under high pressure from the aorta into the relaxed ventricle. On listening to the chest of a man with such a lesion, this regurgitation during diastole is heard as a rushing sound occurring in the place of or continuing the second sound up to the beginning of the next first sound, which denotes the commencement of systole.

In many cases the disease which occasions the inadequacy of the valve is followed by processes of repair and cicatrisation in which the valves become puckered and contracted and perhaps adherent, so that the orifices can never become thoroughly patent or thoroughly closed. Under such circumstances vibrations will be set up in the current of blood as it escapes through the narrow orifice into the aorta during systole, and on listening to the chest over the second right costal cartilage, a 'to and fro' bruit is heard composed of a systolic immediately followed by a diastolic murmur. In the same way incompetency of the mitral valve, or dilatation of the mitral orifice in consequence of weakness of the cardiac muscle, gives rise to a murmur which lasts during the whole of the ventricular contraction and is therefore *systolic* in character. Such a murmur is heard best over the apex beat, and is also transmitted backwards so that it can be heard on listening at the back of the patient. A narrowing of the mitral orifice in consequence of contraction of the valves will set up a resistance to the flow of blood from left auricle to left ventricle. The auricle becomes hypertrophied, its contraction prolonged, and the escape of blood through the contracted orifices gives rise to a murmur which is heard on listening over the apex beat as a *presystolic bruit*. This bruit is easily distinguished from a systolic murmur by noticing that it runs up to and ends with the apex beat, whereas a systolic murmur does not begin until the elevation of the apex commences.

Several physiologists have succeeded in recording heart sounds graphically. Hürthle's method consists in an application of the microphone. A special form of stethoscope is so arranged that by its means the vibrations corresponding to the heart sounds are transmitted to a contact between silver and carbon. A strong current is passing through this contact, as well as through an electro-magnet, which attracts an iron disc attached to the membrane of a Marey's tambour. Any vibration transmitted to the carbon-silver contact alters its resistance, and so the strength of the current passing through the electro-magnet. In this way the heart sounds can affect the pull exerted by the electro-magnet on the membrane of the tambour, and the change in the volume of the contained air is recorded by means of an ordinary registering tambour.

Similar results have been obtained by Einthoven, who has allowed the variations in the current passing through the microphone to be recorded directly by means of a very delicate capillary or string electrometer.

TIME RELATIONS

The time relations of the various events of the cardiac cycle are indicated in the accompanying diagram (Fig 414). In man the heart beats on the average about seventy-two times in the minute, so that each cardiac cycle—

i. e. systole *plus* diastole—can be regarded as occupying 0·8 sec. During five-tenths of a second the ventricles are relaxed; during the first four-tenths of this period, which corresponds to the diastole of the heart as a whole, blood is flowing in a steady stream from the veins through the auricles into the ventricles, so that the heart is gradually increasing in size. The systole of the auricle then occurs and lasts about 0·1 sec. This is followed by the ventricular systole, the immediate effect of which is to close the auriculo-ventricular valves on both sides of the heart. The whole ventricular contraction lasts 0·3 sec.; during the first period of this the ventricle is getting up pressure, the pressure rapidly rising until it equals the aortic pressure. This period, during which the ventricle is simply contracting isometrically on its contents without any flow of blood occurring, lasts

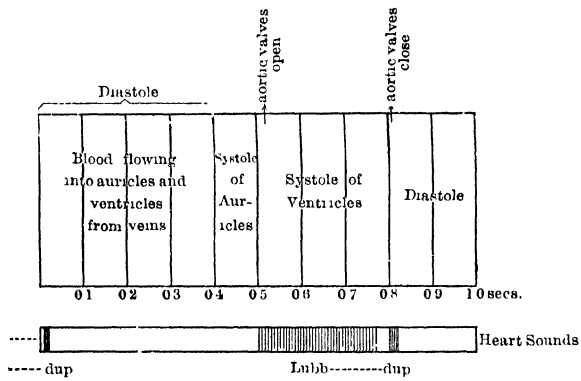


FIG. 414. Diagram of events constituting a cardiac cycle.

between ·02 and ·04 sec., and is, of course, longer the higher the pressure in the aorta. Directly the intraventricular pressure rises above this point the aortic valves open and blood is driven into the aorta. The outflow of blood continues throughout the whole of the ventricular systole, and may be taken as lasting about 0·2 sec. The ventricle then suddenly relaxes, the period of relaxation occupying about 0·5 sec.; the 'plateau' of the endocardiac pressure curve on the average lasts about 0·18 sec., and according to the condition of the heart and the peripheral resistance may present a gradual ascent or descent. Directly relaxation commences, the ventricular pressure falls below the aortic pressure or the pulmonary pressure, and the semilunar valves close, giving rise to the second sound. Systole is now at an end and the diastolic period of filling recommences. The first sound is synchronous with the commencement of the ventricular contraction, and the same event is signalled by the occurrence of the apex beat.

Although the pulse frequently may undergo considerable variations according to the condition of the individual, being higher during activity or under conditions of mental excitement, the greater part of the difference in duration of the cardiac cycle thereby induced falls upon the diastolic period. Thus to take wide limits the pulse rate may vary between 32

and 124 beats in the minute, while under the same circumstances the period occupied by the systole varies only between 0·382 and 0·190 sec.—and these of course are extreme limits. Variation therefore in the time occupied by each cardiac cycle is determined mainly by variation in the time occupied by the diastole.

FILLING OF THE HEART IN DIASTOLE

Since the heart is perfectly flaccid during diastole it is unable to exert any suction force on the blood in the veins. Its filling during diastole depends on the existence of a positive pressure within the veins, or at any rate of a pressure greater than that in the auricles and ventricles; the greater the pressure within the large veins the more rapidly will the blood enter the heart during diastole and the larger the amount of blood in this viscus when it begins its contraction. In this process an important part is played by the mechanical conditions existing in the thoracic cavity. Owing to the elasticity of the lungs and the fact that they are constantly tending to contract, the pressure in the thorax is less than that of the external atmosphere by the amount which is required to distend the lungs to fill the cavity.

At the end of expiration this difference amounts to about 5 mm. Hg. rising to 9 mm. Hg. at the end of inspiration and to 30 mm. Hg. at the end of a forced inspiration. On the other hand, the veins outside the thorax are exposed to a pressure which is a little above that of the atmosphere. When the thorax is at rest, the veins and auricles are therefore expanded and the flow of blood into them rendered more easy. The respiratory movements, by causing an alternating suction on the walls of the great veins, act like an accessory pump and cause an aspiration of blood into the veins of the thorax with each inspiration.

It is evident that, if the pressure within the thorax be sufficiently raised so as to cause a positive pressure on the big veins and auricles, the return flow of blood to the heart must come to an end. Thus during extreme muscular efforts the glottis is fixed and a positive pressure is produced in the thorax. The deficient circulation and the deficient aeration of the blood thereby induced are shown by the engorgement of the superficial veins and the blueness of the surface. Weber showed that by a forcible expiration, with the glottis closed, the pulse might disappear at the wrist and the circulation be brought for a time to a standstill, so that even loss of consciousness might supervene.

Since the heart during its systole diminishes its own volume by the expulsion of blood from the thorax, it becomes smaller, and the space thus provided in the chest cavity is taken up by an expansion of the veins, auricles, and lungs. To this systolic diminution of intrathoracic pressure is due the 'cardio-pneumatic' movements. These are recorded by attaching one nostril to a delicate tambour by means of a tube, while the other nostril and the mouth are kept closed. If a carotid pulse tracing be taken at the same time, it will be found that there is a fall of the lever attached to the nasal cavity, synchronous with the rise of the pressure in the arteries and due to the expulsion of blood from the heart.

The normal filling of the heart during diastole can be prevented by anything which hinders its expansion, such as the presence of fluid in the pericardial cavity. The same effect may be produced experimentally. If oil be allowed to flow into the pericardium, when the pressure of the oil rises to about 60 mm., the pressure of the vena cava rises to a height just above that obtaining in the pericardial cavity. On increasing the pressure, a point is finally reached at which no more blood can be driven from the veins to the heart, so that the arterial blood pressure falls to zero and death ensues.

In order to maintain the arterial pressure it is necessary that the amount of blood, driven into the arterial system by the contraction of the left ventricle, should be exactly equal to that leaving the arteries to pass into the capillaries during the period which elapses between each systole.

Over-filling of the heart is prevented to a certain extent by the resistance of its walls. The danger of over-filling is therefore most marked in the right ventricle. An important part is played moreover by the pericardium in this regard. Even when beating normally, the heart during diastole tends to protrude through a slit made in the pericardium, and Barnard has shown that the right auriculo-ventricular valve ceases to be entirely efficient when the pericardium has been freely opened, the closure of this valve being dependent on the support afforded to the heart by the pericardium.

SYSTOLIC OUTPUT OF THE HEART

The amount of blood which passes through the whole body and is available for the metabolic exchanges of all the tissues depends on the amount of blood which leaves the heart each minute. The height of the arterial pressure also depends on the relation between the amount of blood leaving the arterial system by the capillaries and that entering from the heart. The determination of the output of the left ventricle is therefore one of the most important problems in physiology. The output of the right ventricle must be equal to that from the left ventricle, otherwise the blood would accumulate on one or other side of the heart and bring the circulation to a standstill. It is therefore immaterial on which side of the heart the output be determined.

The methods which have been devised for determining the cardiac output fall into two classes. In the first class it is sought to determine the total volume of blood leaving the right or left ventricle in the course of a given time, say one minute. If this amount be divided by the number of heart beats in the same time, the output of each ventricle per beat is at once obtained. A second method consists in the determination of the volume changes in the ventricles at each beat of the heart. During diastole the ventricles are receiving blood and increase in volume, during systole they expel blood and therefore diminish in volume. The change in volume at each beat gives therefore the combined output of right and left ventricles and must be divided by half in order to give the output of either ventricle separately.

METHODS OF DETERMINING OUTPUT. In a method devised by the author it is possible to determine the output of the left ventricle under all manner of conditions and to vary at will the arterial resistance, the venous pressure, the filling of the heart, or the temperature of the blood supply to the heart. The arrangement of the apparatus is shown in Fig. 415. Artificial respiration being maintained, the chest is opened under an anæsthetic. The arteries coming from the arch of the aorta—in the cat, the innominate and the left subclavian—are then ligatured, thus cutting off the whole blood supply to the brain, so that the anæsthetic can be discontinued. Cannulæ are placed in the innominate artery and the superior vena cava. The cannulæ are filled beforehand with a solution of hirudin in normal salt solution so as to prevent clotting of the blood during the experiment. The descending aorta is closed by a ligature. The only path left for

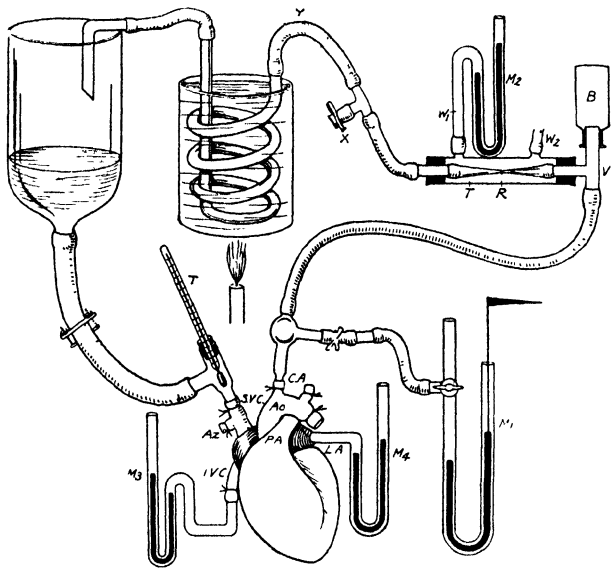


FIG. 415. Arrangement of apparatus for working on the isolated mammalian heart. ('Heart-lung preparation.') The different parts are not drawn to scale, and the lungs are not shown. (STARLING.)

the blood is by the ascending aorta and the cannula *CA* in the innominate artery. The arterial cannula communicates by a T-tube with a mercurial manometer *M'* to record the mean arterial pressure, and passes to another T-tube, *v*, one limb of which projects into a test-tube *B*. The air in this test-tube will be compressed with a rise of pressure and will serve as a driving force for the blood through the resistance. It thus takes the part of the resilient arterial wall. The other limb of the T-tube passes to the resistance *R*. This consists of a thin-walled rubber tube (*e. g.* a rubber finger-stall) which passes through a wide glass tube provided with two lateral tubulures *w*, *w*. One of these is connected with a mercurial manometer M^2 and the other with an air reservoir into which air can be pumped. When air is injected into the outer tube, the tube *R* collapses, and will remain collapsed until the pressure of the blood within it is equal or superior to the pressure in the air surrounding it. It is thus possible to vary at will the resistance to the outflow of the blood from the arterial side. From the peripheral end of *R* the blood passes at a low pressure through a spiral immersed in warm water into a large glass reservoir. From the reservoir a wide india-rubber tube leads to a cannula, which is placed in the superior vena cava *SVC*, all the branches of which

have been tied. This cannula is provided with a thermometer to show the temperature of the blood supplied to the heart. A tube placed in the inferior vena cava and connected with a water manometer shows the pressure in the right auricle. On the recording surface we thus have a record of the arterial pressure, and of the pressure within the right auricle. The output of the whole system can be measured at any time by opening the tube *X*, clamping *Y*, and allowing the blood to flow for a given number of seconds into a graduated cylinder.

This method, although of considerable importance in giving information as to the conditions which determine the output of the left ventricle and the maximum capacity of the heart as a pump, tells us nothing as to the output of the left ventricle under normal conditions in the intact animal. For this purpose some indirect means must be adopted which can be used on the intact animal and if possible on man himself, so that the output can be measured under different conditions of rest and activity. Moreover the output as measured on the other side of the artificial arterial resistance represents the ventricular output minus the blood flow through the coronary arteries. It is possible however to insert a cannula into the coronary sinus, and so to measure the blood flow through the heart muscle. The coronary circulation must be added to the flow through the arterial resistance in order to arrive at the correct total output of the left ventricle. The two chief methods for the determination of the ventricular output in the intact animal are those of Zuntz and of Krogh.

ZUNTZ'S METHOD. This is based on a comparison of the differences in gases contained in the arterial and venous blood and the actual amount of oxygen taken from the air in the lungs. Thus in one case he found that in a horse weighing 360 kilos. 2733 c.c. of oxygen were taken up in the lungs per minute, while the arterial blood contained 10·33 per cent. more oxygen than the venous blood. Since therefore every 100 c.c. of blood that passed through the lungs had taken up 10·33 c.c. of oxygen, and 2733 c.c. had been taken up in the course of a minute, it is evident that

$$\frac{100 \times 2733}{10{\cdot}33} = 26{,}457 \text{ c.c.}$$

of blood must have passed through the lungs in the time. Thus therefore was the output of blood by the right ventricle in a minute and was equivalent to ·00122 of the body weight per second.

In a similar experiment on a dog the output per second of the right ventricle was found to be ·00157 of the body weight. In order to get the output at each beat it will be necessary to divide the output per minute by the number of heart beats in the same time. From the results of determinations made in this way Zuntz concluded that the output of the right ventricle in man at each beat varies between 50 and 100 c.c. and may be taken on an average at 60 c.c.

KROGH'S METHOD. In Krogh's method an endeavour is made to determine the volume of blood flowing through the lungs in a given time by finding out how much nitrous oxide is taken up from a mixture of nitrous oxide and air, with which the lungs are filled. Nitrous oxide is chosen because it can be breathed in considerable proportions without injury, and is itself very soluble in water or in the blood. The estimation is carried out in the following way. A small recording spirometer is filled with about 4½ litres of a gas mixture containing 10 to 25 per cent. N_2O and 20 to 25 per cent. oxygen. The subject, seated in a chair or on a bicycle ergometer, expires to the greatest possible extent, and then takes a deep inspiration from the spirometer. He holds his breath for five to fifteen seconds, breathes out sharply into the spirometer, expiring at least one litre. At the end of this sharp expiration, a sample of his alveolar air is taken by connecting the tube from his face-piece with an evacuated glass bulb, as in Haldane's method of determining alveolar air. The breath is now held for a period varying between six and twenty-five seconds. He then makes a final sharp ample expiration into the spirometer, a sample of his alveolar air being taken at the end of this expiration. The excursions of the spirometer indicate exactly what volume of air he has breathed in and breathed out at each part of the experiment. These are

recorded on a travelling surface, so that the duration of the experiment is represented by the horizontal distance between the lines showing the moments of sampling (Fig. 416).

By comparison of the composition of ordinary alveolar air with the alveolar air obtained after the first sharp expiration, the amount of residual alveolar air is determined, so that the total volume of gas contained in the lungs at each part of the experiment is also known. During the time when the breath is being held, nitrous oxide is being taken up in solution by the blood as it passes through the lungs, its solubility being such that 1 c.c. of blood, if exposed to an atmosphere of pure nitrous oxide, will take up 0·43 c.c. of this gas. From the data obtained in this way, the amount of blood passing through the lungs during the period between the two expirations can be calculated. The following record of one experiment may serve as an example. The volume of air in the lungs at the beginning of the experiment was 3·25 litres and contained 12 per cent. nitrous oxide, so that the total quantity of nitrous oxide in the air of the lungs was 3250 c.c. $\times \frac{12}{100} = 390$ c.c. At the end of the period the total volume of air in the lungs was three litres, containing only 10 per cent. nitrous oxide, so that the lungs

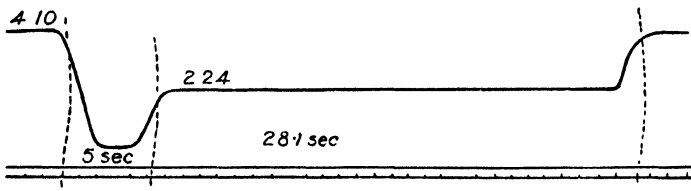


FIG. 416. (KROGH.)

now contained only 300 c.c. nitrous oxide, 90 c.c. nitrous oxide having been taken up by the blood. This 90 c.c. was taken up from an air in which the mean pressure of this gas was $\frac{12 + 10}{2} = 11$ per cent. During the period of observation, from a gas containing at atmospheric pressure 11 per cent. of nitrous oxide, each c.c. of blood will take up $\frac{\cdot 43 \times 11}{100} = 0{\cdot}047$ c.c. In order to take up 90 c c. therefore, 1·9 litres of blood must have passed through the lungs during the time of the observation. The experiment lasted twenty-eight seconds. The amount of blood passing through the lungs per minute was therefore 4 2 litres. This figure represents the output from the right ventricle during one minute, and if the pulse rate is 70 per minute, the output per beat will be $\frac{4200 \text{ c c.}}{70} = 60$ c.c. per beat. The figure, arrived at in this way for the average output of each ventricle in man during rest, thus agrees with the figure obtained by Zuntz. The output of both ventricles is of course the same.

According to Krogh, the ventricular output per minute in man may vary from 2·8 litres to 21 litres of blood per minute. The latter is an extreme figure and was obtained in a powerful athlete doing hard work. In the case of Krogh himself, the maximum output was about 12 litres per minute. It is interesting to note that the same performance may be obtained from a dog's heart in the heart-lung preparation, allowing for the difference in size between the hearts of the dog and man respectively.

CARDIOMETRIC METHOD. Of the various methods which have been devised for recording plethysmographically the changes in the volume of the heart at each beat (as first carried out by Roy), the simplest is that devised by Henderson. The chest and pericardium being opened, a glass cardiometer, of the shape shown in Fig. 417, is slipped over the heart. This cardiometer consists of a glass sphere with a wide opening. To the margin of the opening is tied a rubber diaphragm with a hole in it, which accurately fits the heart as it lies in the auriculo-ventricular groove. The tube of the cardiometer is

connected with some form of piston recorder or a tambour with a slack membrane. The disadvantage of this method is that the graphic record of rapid and ample changes in volume is one of the most difficult problems in experimental physiology, the inertia and friction of the moving piston tending to deform the shape of the curve obtained. Straub has therefore used a soap bubble as the volume measurer, photographing its edge and using the record as an index to the change in volume. It is possible however to obtain a piston recorder moving sufficiently freely to give a fairly correct reproduction of the volume changes of the heart, provided that these do not occur with too great rapidity. It has been suggested by Piper to convert the volume changes into small pressure changes, and to record these latter by one of the methods described above.

The factors which determine the output of the left ventricle are best studied in the heart-lung preparation. In this it can be shown that, provided the venous inflow remains constant, the output is also constant and is unaffected by considerable alterations of arterial resistance and of the

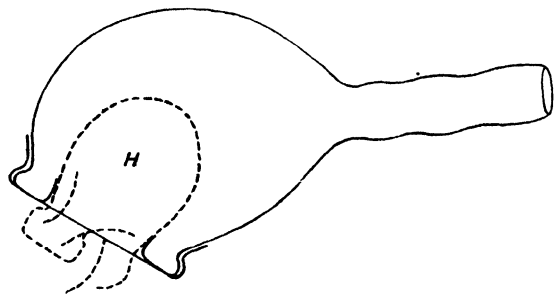


FIG. 417. Henderson's glass cardiometer.

rate of the heart. Thus with a moderate venous inflow the output remains constant whether we maintain the average arterial pressure at 60 mm. Hg. or at 160 mm. Hg. It is also unaffected by altering the rate of the heart from 80 beats per minute up to 160, or even 200, beats per minute. On the other hand, the output is at once altered by alterations in the venous inflow and, as already stated, can be altered in a heart weighing 50 gms. from a few c.c. up to 3000 c.c. per minute. The only essential in this preparation is that the output from the left ventricle shall be sufficient to maintain a circulation through the coronary vessels and so keep the active muscle properly supplied with blood.

With increasing inflow of blood into the heart the large veins, auricles, and ventricles naturally become more filled during diastole, and during systole of the ventricles, when the auriculo-ventricular valves are closed, the blood rushing in from the venous system must accumulate in the big veins and auricles to a still greater extent. The venous pressure therefore rises with increased venous inflow. In so far as venous pressure is an index of venous inflow, we may say that the output of the heart increases with the venous pressure so long as the heart is functionally capable of dealing with the blood it receives during diastole. But although the ventricular output is practically independent of the frequency of the heart beat and a constant venous inflow, the venous pressure tends to fall as

the heart beat increases in rate. The optimum venous pressure is that which fills the ventricle during its diastole to the maximum extent to which it is able to respond. As the rate of the heart increases, the inflow of blood can also be increased without causing over-distension of the ventricles. The increase of heart rate therefore is an important factor in enabling this organ to deal with the maximum amount of blood. Although increase of rate does not alter the output with constant venous inflow, it does increase the maximum amount of inflowing blood which the heart is able to expel.

We thus see that alterations in the vigour of the circulation depend in the first instance on the venous circulation. The greater volume of the blood that is brought up to the heart by the accessory factors of the circulation, the greater will be the output of this organ. The changes in rate and force of the heart which accompany its increased activity and increased output, *e. g.* during exercise, represent merely the means by which this organ is able to deal in the most advantageous manner with the increased inflow.

THE WORK OF THE HEART

The energy of the ventricular contraction is expended in two ways: first, in forcing a certain amount of blood into the already distended aorta against the resistance presented by the arterial blood pressure, which itself is directly conditioned by the resistance in arterioles and capillaries; and secondly, in imparting a certain velocity to the mass of blood so thrown out. Thus the energy of the muscular contraction is converted partly into potential energy in the form of increased distension of the arterial wall and partly into the kinetic energy represented by the momentum of the moving column of blood. The work done at each beat may be calculated from the formula:

$$W = QR + \frac{wV^2}{2g}$$

where W stands for work, w for the weight, and Q for the quantity (volume in c.c.) of blood expelled at each contraction; R is the average arterial resistance or pressure during the outflow of blood from the heart, and V is the velocity of the blood at the root of the aorta. In this equation QR is the work done in overcoming the resistance,[1] and $\frac{wV^2}{2g}$ is the energy expended in imparting a certain velocity to the blood.

If we take 60 c.c. as the average output of each ventricle, 100 mm. Hg. as the average pressure at the beginning of the aorta, and 500 mm. per

[1] This expression, QR, is only approximately correct. Supposing the pressure in the aorta at the beginning of systole is 50 mm. Hg. and at the end of systole 150 mm., the work could not be deduced accurately from the average pressure, but would need a simple application of the integral calculus for its determination. The expression employed above deviates from the real value by at most 10 per cent., and is therefore sufficiently accurate for our purpose.

second as the velocity imparted to the blood thrown into the aorta, we can calculate the work done by the human heart at each beat.

$$QR = 60 \times 0{\cdot}100 \text{ m.} \times 13{\cdot}6 = 81{\cdot}6 \text{ grammetres,}$$

or roughly 80 grammetres. On the other hand, the expression

$$\frac{wV^2}{2g} = \frac{60 \times (0{\cdot}5)^2}{2 \times 9{\cdot}8} = 0{\cdot}7 \text{ grammetres.}$$

It is evident that this latter factor is negligible, and that for all practical purposes we may regard the work of the heart as proportional to the output multiplied by the average arterial blood pressure. Taking the average pressure in the pulmonary artery at 20 mm. Hg., the work of the right ventricle at each beat would amount to about 16 grammetres, a total for the two ventricles of about 100 grammetres per beat, which is equivalent to about 10,000 kilogrammetres in twenty-four hours for a man at rest.

During muscular work this figure would be largely increased. Not only does QR become much larger, but the velocity factor is no longer negligible, since the work done in imparting velocity to the blood increases as the cube of the output per minute. If we take, as an example, a maximum effort on the part of an athlete, we may assume an output per beat of 180 c.c. and a pulse rate of 180 per minute (an output per minute of 32·4 litres) and an average arterial pressure of 120 mm. Hg.

Then

$$QR = 180 \times {\cdot}120 \times 13{\cdot}6 = 294 \text{ grammetres.}$$

To determine the velocity of output, we assume that 180 c.c. of blood are thrown out into the aorta during $\frac{3}{8}$ of $\frac{1}{3}$ second, the time of outflow being about $\frac{3}{8}$ of each cardiac cycle. This gives a velocity of 2·3 metres per second, assuming a cross section of 625 mm.^{2} at the root of the aorta. Therefore

$$\frac{wV^2}{2g} = \frac{180 \times (2{\cdot}3)^2}{2 \times 9{\cdot}8} = 5 \text{ grammetres.}$$

The total work of both sides of the heart will be :

$$\underset{\text{Left side.}}{294} + 5 + \underset{\text{Right side.}}{59} + 5 = 363 \text{ grammetres per beat, or 65 kilogrammetres per minute.}$$

This rate of work could probably not be maintained for more than a few minutes.

This work is done by a contraction of the muscle fibres surrounding the cavities of the ventricles. It is important to remember that the strain or tension, which is thrown on these fibres and which resists their contraction, will be determined not only by the blood pressure which has to be overcome, but also by the size of the ventricle cavities. Since the pressure in a fluid acts in all directions, the tension caused by any given pressure on the walls of a hollow vessel will increase with the diameter of the vessel. Thus if we take a sphere with a radius of 10 cm. filled with fluid at a pressure of 10 cm. Hg., there will be a pressure on each square centimetre of the inner surface of the sphere of 136 grm. The total distending force, *i. e.* the pressure on the whole of the inner wall of the sphere, will be equal to this pressure multiplied by the area,

i. e. to $136 \times 4\pi r^2 = 136 \times 4\pi \times 100$. If by a contraction of the walls the radius be reduced to 5 cm., the total pressure on the internal surface will be reduced to $136 \times 4\pi \times 25$, *i. e.* will be one quarter of the previous amount. Moreover in the case of the heart, with increasing distension the wall becomes thinner and the number of muscle fibres in a given area fewer, so that the larger the heart the more strongly will each fibre have to contract in order to produce a given tension in the contained fluid. At the beginning of systole the distended heart must therefore contract more strongly than at the end of the systole, in order to raise the blood it contains to a pressure sufficient to overcome that in the aorta.

It is evident that an unrestricted diastolic filling of the heart is not of unqualified advantage to this organ. If during diastole the heart be too forcibly distended, as may easily occur after opening the pericardium, or in cases of enfeeblement of the heart's action by chloroform poisoning or otherwise, the muscle fibres of the heart may be quite unable to contract against the distending force represented by a pressure in the heart equal to that in the aorta. Under such conditions we may have sudden heart failure, which can be relieved only by diminishing the diastolic distension, as, *e. g.* by letting blood from the veins opening into the heart.

SECTION V

THE FLOW OF BLOOD THROUGH THE ARTERIES

THE PULSE. Owing to the elasticity and distensibility of the arterial wall, the rhythmic rise of pressure corresponding to each heart beat causes an expansion, which can be felt by the finger placed on any exposed artery, such as the radial, and is spoken of as the pulse. Just as the blood pressure diminishes from heart to periphery, so the amplitude of the pulse decreases as we go farther away from the heart.

If the arterial system were perfectly rigid, the increased pressure due to the forcing of the blood into the arterial system at each ventricular systole would occur practically simultaneously at every point. The arteries are however elastic and distensible, so that the first effect of the flow of blood into the aorta is to distend the section of the aorta nearest to the heart. The elastic reaction of this forces a portion of the blood into the nearest section, so that the increased pressure is transmitted from segment to segment of the arteries in the form of a wave at the velocity of about seven metres per second.

It is important not to confuse the velocity of the pulse wave with that of the blood flow; the latter is never greater than 0·5 metre per second, and is very much less than this in the smaller arteries. Perhaps the difference between the two quantities may be made clearer by illustration: If the hindmost of a row of billiard balls be struck sharply with a cue, the foremost ball flies off and the others stop still; in this case the energy imparted to the first ball by the stroke has been transmitted from ball to ball, just as the effect of the ventricular contraction is transmitted from section to section of the arterial blood stream. If the balls are struck so that the cue continues pressing on the hindmost after the stroke is delivered, the front ball flies off, while the others move slowly along in the direction of the stroke. In the arteries this continuous pressure is furnished by the elastic reaction of the arterial wall, and we see how the impact of the blood may travel quickly as a wave of increased pressure, while the blood itself is moving slowly along, impelled by the reaction of the arterial wall.

If we imagine a rigid tube AB (Fig. 418) provided with a piston at the end A, and filled with an incompressible fluid, an inward movement of the piston at A will cause a simultaneous outflow of fluid at the end B. If the end B is closed, the piston at A cannot be moved at all. Pressure applied to the piston will raise the pressure simultaneously at all points in the tube AB. The increased pressure applied at A is therefore transmitted with practically no loss of time to all parts of the tube AB This immediate spread of the wave of pressure applies only to an incompressible fluid within a rigid tube. If the fluid were compressible, if it consisted, *e.g.* of

air, a sudden movement inwards of the piston at A would not be felt immediately at B. The propagation of the wave of pressure from A to B would take a finite period of time, its velocity being identical with that of the velocity of propagation of a wave of sound in air, *i. e.* 1100 feet per second.

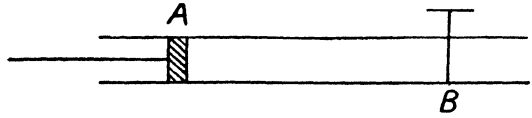


FIG. 418.

The same retarding effect will be produced if we have an incompressible fluid within a tube whose wall is distensible and elastic. If we imagine (Fig. 419) an elastic tube BC filled and distended with water and connected at B to a rigid tube, which is provided with a piston, the first effect of a rapid movement of fluid driven in by the piston will be a rise of pressure at the point immediately in front of the piston, viz. at *a*. The wall being distensible, and pressure being propagated along the fluid in every direction, the rise of pressure at *a* will be spent partly on the particles of fluid in

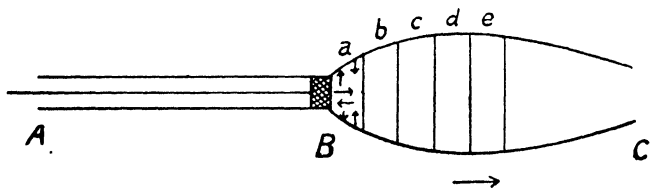


FIG. 419.

front of it, viz. at *b*, but also on the walls of the tube, so that this is stretched and the cross-section of the tube enlarged. The distended segment at *a* will then exert a pressure on the contained fluid, driving this backwards and forwards. The fluid on its side towards the piston will tend to come to a stop, while that towards the distal end of the tube will be accelerated. The distended wall therefore returns to its original diameter, and the next segment at *b* is stretched in its turn, so that a wave of increased pressure is propagated along the tube in the direction of the arrow.

The velocity with which this wave is propagated depends on the density of the fluid, *i. e.* its inertia, and on the resistance of the walls of the tube to distension, since this will determine the rapidity of its recovery. The velocity of propagation of the wave of increased pressure, or the wave of expansion of the artery, is expressed by the following formula :

$$v = k\sqrt{\frac{gea}{Dd}}$$

where v is the velocity per second,
g, the acceleration due to gravity,
e, the elastic coefficient of the wall,
a, the thickness of the wall,
d, the diameter of the tube,
D, the density of the fluid,
k, a constant.

If the end C of the tube is closed, the wave of a positive pressure on arriving at B will be reflected back as a positive reflected wave. If a tracing be taken of the oscillations or variations of pressure in the tube, two waves at least are seen, one of which is the primary wave due to the

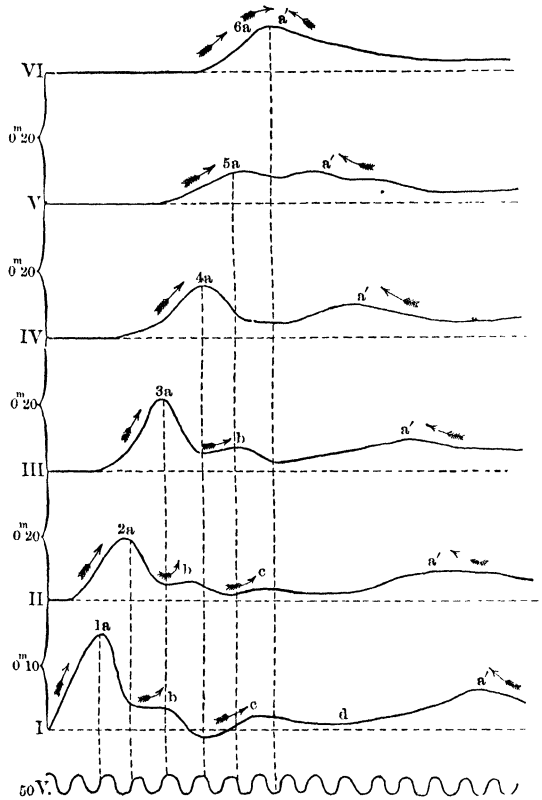


FIG. 420. Pulse curves described by a series of sphygmographic levers placed at intervals of 20 cm. from each other along an elastic tube, into which fluid is forced by the sudden stroke of a pump. The pulse valve is travelling from left to right, as indicated by the arrows over the primary (*a*) and secondary (*b*, *c*) pulse waves. The dotted vertical lines, drawn from the summit of the several primary waves to the tuning-fork curve below, each complete vibration of which occupies $\frac{1}{50}$ sec., allow the time to be measured which is taken up by the wave in passing along 20 cm. of the tubing. The waves (*a'*) are waves *reflected* from the closed distal end of the tubing; this is indicated by the direction of the arrows. It will be observed that in the more distant lever (VI) the reflected wave, having but a slight distance to travel, becomes fused with the primary wave, so that the rise of pressure in VI is actually greater than that in V. (From FOSTER, after MAREY.)

movement of fluid caused by the piston; the other is the secondary wave reflected back from the periphery. The fact that the secondary wave is a reflected one is shown by the fact that the nearer to the peripheral resistance the pulse is recorded, the nearer is the secondary to the primary wave as is seen in Fig. 420.

If the tube BC be widely opened a reflected wave is also observed, but this time of reversed sign, *i. e.* the wave is one of negative pressure. The production of this wave is dependent on the momentum of the moving column of fluid. If in the tube *ab*, with a tap at *c* and a manometer *m* (Fig. 421), the current of fluid be suddenly checked by turning the tap *c*, the column in front of the tap, having a certain momentum, will tend to go on moving and therefore produce a suction or negative pressure behind it. When a wave of positive pressure arrives at the open end of a tube, there is a sudden increase in the velocity of output, and the momentum of the mass of fluid which is thrown out causes a similar suction or negative pressure, which travels back the whole length of the tube. If the end of the tube is only partially closed, every primary positive wave will be transformed into a reflected one which is partly positive and partly negative. Since both these reflected waves travel through the tube with the same velocity and will mutually interfere, the result may be either a positive or a negative wave or nothing at all, according to the degree of constriction.

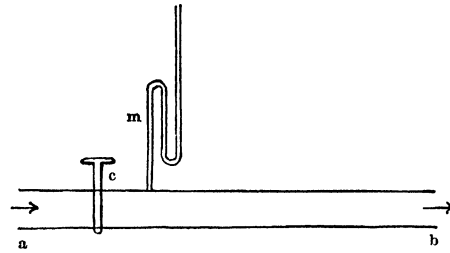


FIG. 421.

In a branching system of tubes, such as the arterial system, reflection of waves must take place at every dividing place. All the conditions for the origin of reflected waves and interference of such waves are present in the arterial system. It is impossible *a priori* however to say whether any reflected wave will form a marked feature on the pulse tracing. It is possible that the multitudinous reflections which must occur in every part of the arterial system may interfere with one another to such an extent that they mutually annul each other. The origin of any secondary wave in the pulse tracing must therefore be determined by experiment.

To study the pulse more fully it is necessary to obtain a graphic record of the expansion of the arteries or, what comes to the same thing, of the exact changes in pressure which produce this expansion. The curve obtained with the mercurial manometer shows elevations corresponding to the pulse; but the instrument is far too sluggish to record the finer variations of pressure. For this purpose a manometer which has very little inertia, such as Hürthle's or Piper's, must be used. The expansion of the artery is registered by means of a lever, which may be made to rest more or less heavily upon the artery, and the movements of which are recorded on a blackened surface. Such an instrument is called a *sphygmograph.* Of the many forms of sphymographs, Marey's or Dudgeon's is perhaps the most convenient for clinical purposes.

The principle of Marey's sphygmograph is shown in Fig. 422. The button *b* is adjusted so as to press on the radial artery. Its movements are transmitted to a lever

m. The screw on this works on a small cogged wheel at *o*, which is also the axis of the writing lever *l*. The movements of the button *b* thus transmitted to a point near the axis of *l* are reproduced by this lever highly magnified, and as such are recorded on a blackened surface. The pressure on the artery can be adjusted by means of a screw.

Dudgeon's sphygmograph (Fig. 423) is rather easier to use than Marey's, and is therefore largely employed for clinical purposes. It is provided with a dial by which the pressure on the artery can be graduated, and has a small clockwork arrangement for

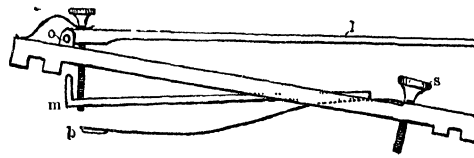


FIG. 422.

moving along the slip of smoked paper on which the records are taken. The arrangement of the levers in this form of sphygmograph is shown in Fig. 424, where F is the (adjustable) spring bearing by its button P on the artery. The up-and-down movements of P are transmitted to S, being much magnified and converted into side-to-side movements. The point of S rests on the blackened surface represented in section at A, and scratches on this, when moving, a magnified record of the expansion of the artery under the knob P.

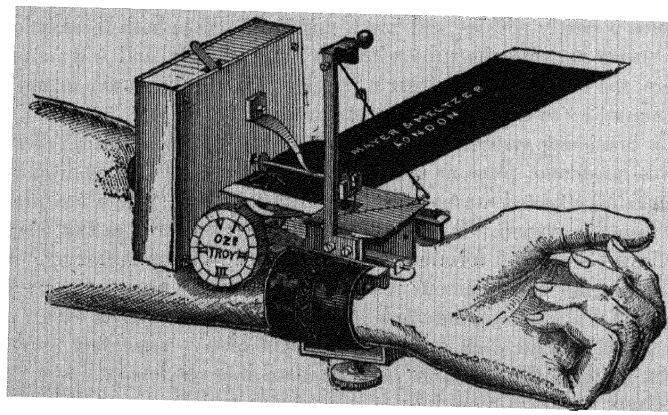


FIG. 423. Dudgeon's sphygmograph, showing its mode of application to the radial artery.

In all these sphygmographs, even the most perfect, the moving parts have a considerable amount of inertia, so that the curve they give is always more or less deformed. This fact must be borne in mind when comparing the pulse curves obtained by means of a sphygmograph with those given by the more perfect forms of manometer, such as Frank's or Piper's.

Either form of sphygmograph is generally applied to the radial artery since this is near the surface and is supported by bone, and the arm is well adapted for the application of the sphygmograph. The pulse curve obtained by means of a sphygmograph varies according to the artery employed and the force with which the lever presses on the artery, but all the curves present the same general features.

The velocity of the pulse can be measured by taking simultaneous tracings from two arteries separated by some distance from one another, such as the femoral artery and the *dorsalis pedis*, or from the carotid and radial arteries. In a healthy individual the velocity varies between 7 and 10 metres per second. The more rigid the arteries the greater will be the velocity, so that the velocity of propagation gradually increases with advancing age, and is higher in the arteries of the lower extremities than in the more distensible arteries of the arm.

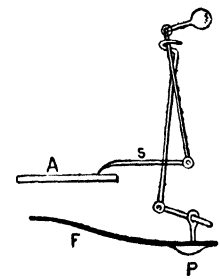


FIG. 424. Diagram of arrangement of recording lever in Dudgeon's sphygmograph.

The length of the pulse wave can be found by multiplying the velocity of transmission by the time occupied by the wave in passing any given point. The duration of the wave at any point corresponds to the time of a cardiac cycle, viz. 0·8 sec., so that if the velocity of transmission be taken as 7 metres per second, the length of the wave is about 5·6 metres.

FIG. 425. Pulse curve from radial artery.

The pulse wave thus reaches the periphery long before it has been completed in the aorta. Fig. 425 represents a pulse curve taken from the radial artery. The elevation due to the expansion of the artery is rapid and uninterrupted. We have already explained that this is due to the sudden pumping of blood into the first part of the aorta, whence the impulse is transmitted as a wave along the arteries. The curve descends gradually till the next beat occurs, since the elastic reaction of the arteries, which tends to keep up the pressure, acts more constantly and steadily than the heart beat. On this descending part of the curve occur two or three secondary elevations: *b* is the primary or 'percussion' wave, *c* the predicrotic or 'tidal' wave, and *e* the dicrotic wave. Elevations, which are called post-dicrotic waves, may occur on the curve after *e*. It is better to class the elevations before the dicrotic notch *d* as systolic elevations, and those afterwards, including the dicrotic elevation itself, as diastolic.

For the exact understanding of these elevations it is necessary to compare the pulse tracings taken from a small artery with the variations in pressure which occur at the same time in the aorta and in the left ventricle (Fig. 426). We are enabled in this way to dissociate the waves caused by the ventricular systole from those which have their origin in the arterial system. In Fig. 426 are given somewhat diagrammatically typical tracings of the intra-auricular, intraventricular, and aortic pressures during one heart beat. The dotted lines represent approximately the sort of curve which would be given by a sphygmograph applied to the aorta, taking

into account the greater inertia of the latter instrument. The auricular systole begins at the ordinate 1. It gives a slight rise of pressure in the ventricle, but as a rule is not transmitted to the aorta, though often some small traces of it can be seen. As the auricular contraction is dying away, the ventricular contraction begins at 2. The first effect of this rise of pressure is to close the auriculo-ventricular valves, as is shown by the elevation at 3 in the auricular curve, and the shock of the closure is occasionally transmitted to the aorta. The pressure in the ventricles then rapidly rises. At the point 4 it surpasses the pressure in the aorta and then rapidly rises above it. Since the aortic valves offer no resistance to the flow of blood from ventricles to aorta, they must open as soon as the

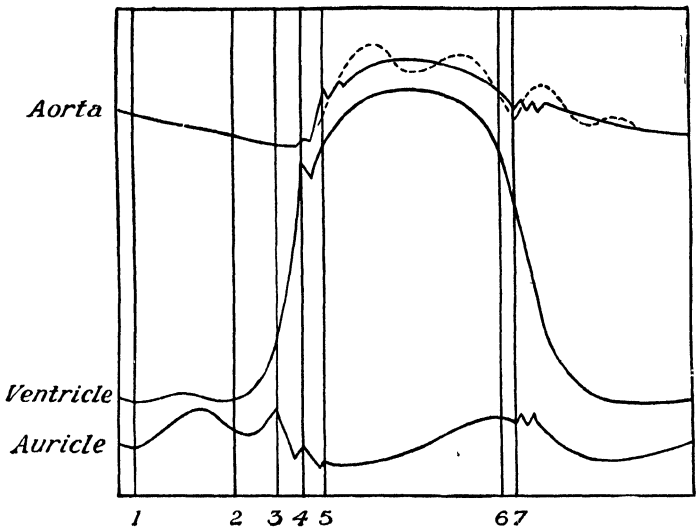


FIG. 426.

intraventricular exceeds the aortic pressure, and this is shown by the rise of pressure in the aorta at 5. The shock of the inrush of blood may give rise to a distinct secondary wave at this point. The pressure then continues for a time to rise rapidly both in the ventricle and in the aorta, blood flowing from the heart into the arterial system. As the first rush of blood diminishes and as the blood begins to escape more rapidly, under the influence of the rise of pressure, from the peripheral end of the arterial system, the rise of pressure in the ventricle and aorta slows off, and the junction between these two periods at 5, where the rise of pressure becomes suddenly slower, may be marked in the aortic curve by one or two secondary waves. It must be remembered however that all these secondary waves shown on the aorta at 4 and 5 may be absent, the one at 5 being the one which is most frequently seen. From 6 to 7 the ventricle is still contracting and forcing blood into the aorta. The curve of pressure is generally rounded. It may present a flat top, the plateau, or the top may be rounded with an inclination to fall

or to rise (cf. Fig. 408). At 6 the ventricle relaxes, the intraventricular pressure falls rapidly, and at 7 falls below the aortic pressure. The aortic valves must now close since the pressure is greater on their aortic side. The pressure in the ventricle now continues to fall until it becomes zero. In the aorta however there is a sharp elevation immediately after 7, *i. e.* immediately after the closure of the aortic valves. This is known as the dicrotic elevation, the previous depression being the dicrotic notch or incisure. It is at this point that the second sound of the heart is heard and is evidently due to the vibrations which are represented graphically in the record of intra-aortic pressure.

There are several factors at work tending to produce a secondary wave at this point. With the sudden cessation of the inflow of blood from the ventricles at the end of the ventricular contraction, a negative wave must be produced at the beginning of the aorta which, transmitted along the arterial system, will tend to produce a reflux of blood towards the heart. The movement so caused is reinforced by the elastic reaction of the arterial wall so that the returning blood is driven up against the aortic valves, closing them tightly and putting them on the stretch. Even in a rigid tube the sudden cessation of flow causes a negative wave, followed by a positive wave in the opposite direction in the aorta; this positive wave is increased by the elastic reaction of the stretched aortic valves. The blood is driven up against them by the wave of positive pressure and then rebounds, like a billiard ball from the elastic cushion, and gives rise to the dicrotic elevation.

The predicrotic waves in the pulse tracing are evidently due to the instrumental exaggeration of the wave, which may occasionally be seen even in a perfect pressure tracing at 5. The rapid rise of pressure in the aorta or in the more peripheral artery, which follows the opening of the aortic valves, sets up a tendency to secondary oscillations at this point. The greater the inertia of the instrument, the greater is the exaggeration of these waves. As is shown by the dotted line in Fig. 426, the lever of the sphygmograph is jerked up, practically leaving the artery, and then falls and rebounds again, so that the simple rounded top becomes resolved by instrumental error into a curve with two waves, which have been called the percussion wave and the predicrotic wave. In the same way the inertia of the instrument will tend to exaggerate the dicrotic elevation and possibly to give rise to slight post-dicrotic waves.

It would seem that the pulse curve, as recorded in the aorta and the arterial trunks given off from the aortic arch, can be referred entirely to events taking place in the heart during systole or at the beginning of the aorta at the commencement of diastole; and there seems no reason to assume the co-operation of waves reflected from the periphery to explain the production of any of the secondary waves observed on the pulse. A considerable difference is however noticeable between the pulse as recorded in the aorta and that recorded in the brachial or femoral arteries, or in the radial at the wrist. The effect of the propagation along an endless system of elastic tubes

of the sudden wave of pressure started in the aorta must be to diminish the rapidity of onset of each primary wave, and therefore to diminish the secondary vibrations of the curve. In an elastic system of tubes such as the arterial system, there are factors at work analogous in many respects to those responsible for the deformation of the curve given by an imperfect manometer. These would be of two kinds—viz. oscillations of the column of fluid within the stretched arterial wall, and the reflection of waves from different points in the periphery. Many of these reflections will interfere with and annul one another. But in the arterial system there are certain

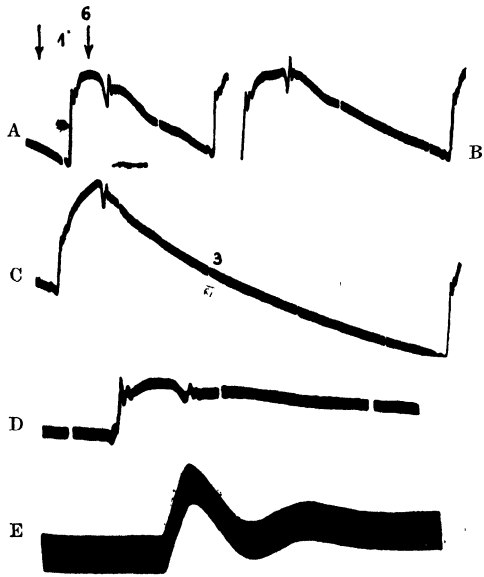


FIG. 427. Pulse-pressure curves taken by means of Frank's manometer (FRANK).

A, B, C, aortic pressure curves at different rates of the heart; D and E, aortic pressure curve, D, compared with simultaneous record of the pressure in the femoral artery E.

points where distinct reflections of waves can be expected– *e. g.* in the circle of Willis, at the bifurcation of the aorta into the two iliac arteries, and in the superficial and deep arterial arches in the hand and the foot. We have distinct evidence that such waves are set up and modify the form of the pulse in the femoral and brachial arteries and their branches. Thus in the Fig. 427 E, the primary rise of pressure in the femoral artery is higher than even the primary rise in the aorta. This condition of things is explicable only on the assumption of a reflected wave passing back along the artery just after the passage of the primary wave, so that the two are summated. In the same way, although the dicrotic depression in the curve, 427 E, is no doubt mainly the propagated effect of the incisure observed in the aortic pulse, it is probably deformed and the subsequent elevation exaggerated as a result of reflection of the post-dicrotic wave from the peri-

phery. The occurrence of reflected waves serves to explain why the systolic pressure in the femoral artery is found higher and the diastolic pressure lower than in the brachial. The femoral artery being more rigid than the brachial and the peripheral resistance more definitely localised, reflected waves occur in the artery at so short a time after the primary wave has passed down that there is summation of the two waves, with production of a higher maximum and a lower minimum than was present in the waves as started in the aorta. If the leg be plunged into hot water, so as to dilate all its arterioles, this difference between the arm and the leg systolic pressures disappears. The varying development of reflected waves on the two sides also explains why the systolic pressures in the two arms are rarely found to be identical.

The general form of the pulse curve varies with changes in the heart, in the arteries, and in the peripheral resistance. Thus some curves may present secondary elevations on the ascending part, and are called *anacrotic*, while in others all secondary elevations occur on the descending part. The latter type is called *catacrotic*, and is the tracing usually obtained from a normal radial artery. By comparing these two types of curves with the corresponding intraventricular pressures, we find that in both cases blood is flowing into the aorta during the whole time from the beginning of the primary elevation to the notch just before the dicrotic elevation. This is shown by the fact that the intraventricular pressure is all this time slightly higher than the aortic pressure. So long as this is the case blood must flow from ventricle into aorta. (This fact proves that there is normally no part of the cardiac cycle during which the ventricle remains contracted and empty, the ventricle in all cases relaxing before it has completely emptied itself of blood.)

Now it is easy to see the conditions which determine whether the systolic plateau shall be ascending or descending, and therefore when the pulse shall be anacrotic or catacrotic. If, after the first sudden rise of pressure in the aorta, the blood can escape more rapidly through the peripheral resistance than it is thrown into the beginning of the aorta, the 'systolic plateau' will sink, and a catacrotic pulse tracing is obtained. If, on the other hand, the peripheral resistance is high, or an extra large amount of blood be thrown into the aorta at each stroke of the heart (*e. g.* by prolongation of the diastole), the aortic pressure will rise so long as blood is flowing in, and we get an ascending systolic plateau and an anacrotic pulse. Thus we obtain an anacrotic pulse in old people with Bright's disease, in whom the peripheral resistance is very high, and also in animals when the heart is slowed by vagus action.

The production of the dicrotic elevation is favoured by any influence which increases the elastic resiliency of the arteries or causes the primary elevation of the pulse to be rapid and sharp. Thus it is much more pronounced in young people than in old people, whose arteries have become rigid. When the peripheral resistance is low through relaxation of the arterioles, and the heart is beating forcibly, as in many cases of fever and also to some extent after a good mea with alcohol, the dicrotic elevation

becomes very marked. Under such circumstances it may be easily felt with the finger at the wrist, and in many cases the mistake has been committed of taking the dicrotic wave for a normal beat, and so doubling the rate of the pulse. There can be little doubt that, in the production of such a marked dicrotism, reflection from the periphery plays an important part. With a high blood pressure and rigid arteries, a reflected wave will travel back very quickly and will tend to add itself to the primary wave. With a low blood pressure, dilated arteries, and the output of the heart thrown rapidly into a relatively empty arterial system, the primary wave will rise and fall very rapidly and the reflected wave will travel back along the arteries more slowly, so that its main effect will be to add to the dicrotic elevation normally proceeding outwards from the heart towards the periphery. The figure 420 VI represents the condition as it is found in the femoral artery under normal circumstances, when the reflected wave adds to the height of the primary wave. In 420 V the reflected wave 'a' would tend to add to any dicrotic elevation present at this point, and probably represents the relation existing in the arterial system with relaxed arteries and a heart beating forcibly but throwing out only a small amount of blood at each beat.

From time immemorial the physician has sought by feeling the pulse to come to some idea as to the condition of the circulation. A number of different qualities have therefore been distinguished. According to the number of beats per minute the pulse is designated as *frequent* or *rare*. The size of the pulse has reference to the amplitude of excursions of each beat and the pulse is distinguished as *large* or *small*. The *velocity* of the pulse expresses the speed with which the excursion is accomplished. The *quick* pulse is one in which the artery presses against the finger suddenly and then disappears suddenly, while in the *slow* pulse the period during which pressure can be felt is more prolonged. The hardness of the pulse is determined chiefly by the blood pressure. If the pulse is compressible it is spoken of as *soft*; if it can only be obliterated with difficulty it is *hard*. Certain combinations of these qualities are also described. Thus a large and hard pulse is spoken of as *strong*, a *weak* pulse being both small and soft. A small hard pulse is called *contracted*. If the rhythm of the heart beat is irregular the pulse is also *irregular*. An *intermittent* pulse is one in which one heart beat is dropped occasionally, *i. e.* once in every four or eight beats, and may be due to the interposition of a ventricular contraction which is too weak to send the pulse along so far as the radial artery.

Judgments as to the conditions of the heart and circulation from the feeling of the pulse oscillations must however be made with extreme caution. The pulse curve may indeed give approximate information as to the condition both of the heart and the arterial system. Thus the period between the beginning of the primary elevation and the dicrotic notch corresponds to the outflow of blood from ventricle to aorta. A large pulse curve does not necessarily indicate a big output, since the expansion of the artery is determined not only by events occurring in the aorta but also by

the tonus of the artery under the finger and the resistance in the peripheral branches.

Perhaps the best-marked condition of the pulse is that known as the '*water-hammer*' pulse, which is observed in cases where the aortic valves are injured or diseased so as to allow of regurgitation into the ventricle. The systolic rise of pressure in the arterial system is followed by an extremely rapid fall, so that towards the end of diastole the pressure in the arteries may be insufficient to keep the arterial system filled. Under such conditions, if the arm be held above the head and the wrist of the patient be grasped, the pulse in the arteries of the wrist is felt as a smart blow coinciding with each beat of the heart.

THE CIRCULATION THROUGH THE CAPILLARIES

The capillary circulation is most easily studied by examining under the microscope the tongue of the frog or the web of the frog's foot. Under a power of about 150 to 180 diameters a network of vessels is seen, consisting of small arteries, capillaries, and veins. The direction of flow in the arteries is opposite to that in the veins. In the capillaries the flow is from arteries to veins, though, on account of the reticular arrangement of these vessels, the direction of the stream through them is not quite constant and may occasionally be reversed. The flow of blood in the arteries is rapid, whereas in the veins it is generally possible to distinguish the individual blood corpuscles. Through the capillaries the flow is very inconstant. If a group of capillaries be watched for some time, the blood may at first hurry through a number of them with great rapidity; the flow then becomes slower and may quicken up to a moderate pace again. These variations in the capillary flow are probably associated with spontaneous alterations in the condition of contraction of the small arteries supplying the group of capillaries. It is easy to observe that the arterial flow is pulsatile, the pulsation disappearing in the capillaries and veins. Another difference between the circulation in these three kinds of vessels is to be found in the condition of the peripheral zone. In the arteries the blood stream is divided into two parts, the peripheral stream —about ·01 mm. wide, consisting only of colourless plasma with occasionally a stray leucocyte—and an axial stream, in which all the red blood corpuscles are being hurried along. In the veins there is a similar peripheral plasmatic zone, but here we find regularly scattered leucocytes which travel rather more slowly than the axial stream of red corpuscles. The formation of this axial zone is purely mechanical, and may be imitated in any fluid containing in suspension particles whose specific gravity is somewhat higher than that of the fluid. In the capillaries there is no separation of the two zones, since the lumen of these vessels as a rule allows the passage only of one or two corpuscles abreast, so that they are everywhere in contact with the wall. The corpuscles are evidently elastic structures, and may be seen to bend if they impinge on the dividing point of two

capillaries before they are finally swept off by the stream into one or the other.

The capillary wall is composed of a single layer of elongated flattened cells which present little resistance to the passage through them by diffusion of dissolved substances, such as sugar, salts, oxygen, or carbon dioxide. In this way the tissue cells obtain oxygen from the red blood corpuscles and nutriment from the plasma, and give off to the circulating blood carbon dioxide and other effete substances as the products of their metabolism. There is evidence that in some situations the cells forming the capillary wall may be contractile. According to Stricker and others, the cell substance is arranged in strands running from the nuclei around the capillary. By the contraction of these strands the vessel may be narrowed to obliteration. These phenomena have been observed in the nictitating membrane of the frog, but it is doubtful how far they may be extended to the other capillary systems of the body. If the contractile power is at all universally present, it must play an important part in determining the amount of blood flow through the capillaries of an organ, and will doubtless be largely affected by chemical substances produced as the result of the metabolism of the surrounding tissues.

The average length of a capillary is between 0·4 and 0·7 mm. The velocity of blood flow can be directly determined by observing under the microscope the time taken by any given corpuscle to travel a measured distance on the microscope stage. The mean velocity determined in this way varies from about 0·5 to 0·8 mm. per second.

The blood pressure in the capillaries may be measured approximately by applying pressure to the outer surface of the skin or mucous membrane, and noticing the point at which blanching of the surface is produced.

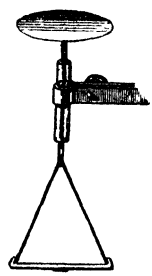


FIG. 428. Apparatus of von Kries for measuring capillary blood pressure.

In von Kries' method a small glass plate, from 2 to 5 sq. mm. in area, is placed on the last joint of the finger. Attached to this glass plate is a small scale pan on which weights are placed until the pressure is just sufficient to blanch the underlying skin. In using this method the calculation of the capillary pressure is made as follows :

Supposing that the size of the glass plate is 4 sq. mm. and 1 grm. in the scale pan is just sufficient to cause a change of colour in the skin, then

$$\text{a weight of 1 grm.} = 1 \text{ c.c. } H_2O = 1000 \text{ c.mm. } H_2O$$

is present on an area of 4 sq. mm. The height of the column of water supported by 1 sq. mm. is therefore $\frac{1000}{4} = 250$ mm. H_2O. The errors of this method are considerable, since the pressure thus determined is not the total capillary pressure, but this *minus* the pressure in the tissue spaces on the outer side of the capillary wall. The result will therefore vary not only with capillary pressure but also with the tension of the skin and the amount of fluid in the tissue spaces.

The pressure in the capillaries as found by this method necessarily varies with the

position of the part under investigation, *i. e.* with the hydrostatic pressure of the column of blood between it and the heart. The following figures were found by von Kries:

Finger:	Mm. H_2O		Distance of finger below head
	328	. .	0 mm.
	329	. .	205 mm.
	513	. .	490 mm.
	738	. .	840 mm.

Ear: 20 mm. Hg.
Gums of Rabbits: 33 mm. Hg.
Frog's Web (Roy): 100–150 mm. H_2O.

Capillary venous pressure of brain (Hill):

(1) Animal in horizontal position: 10 mm. Hg.
(2) „ „ feet-down position: zero or less.
(3) During strychnine convulsions: 50 mm. Hg.

Owing to the fact that a varying and unknown resistance—that of the arterioles—lies between the capillaries and the arteries, the pressure in the capillaries must stand in much closer relationship to that in the veins than to that in the arteries. One cannot therefore argue that a fall of arterial pressure necessarily involves a fall of capillary pressure in all parts of the body. We can only judge of changes in the capillary pressure by taking simultaneously the pressures in both the afferent and efferent vessels. If these both rise or fall together we may be certain that the capillary pressure also rises or falls. Where the arterial and venous pressures move in opposite directions, it is difficult to say what alterations, if any, will be produced in the capillary pressure.

The resistance to the flow of blood through the capillaries is determined by the internal friction, *i. e.* the viscosity of the blood; this varies in different animals between three and five times that of water. It has been calculated that the fall of pressure undergone by the blood in passing through any given capillary area is only about 20 to 60 mm. of blood, and at the most is never more than 150 mm. blood, *i. e.* about 10 mm. Hg. This bears out the conclusion to which we have already come, viz. that the chief seat of the resistance in the vascular system is in the arterioles, and it is in this region that the chief fall of pressure occurs.

No part of the circulation however shows greater variations than the capillary system. We must think of this as a vast irrigation system of canals—the greater part of which are closed under normal circumstances, and open only when the chemical changes in the tissue require a large increase in the supply of blood. In muscle the capacity of this irrigation system may be increased 750 times during activity. A similar opening up of capillary channels may be observed in the skin and connective tissues as a result of irritation or injury. It seems probable that such changes will affect arterial pressure by their influence on the total capacity of the vascular system (if of wide enough occurrence) rather than by alterations thereby produced in the peripheral resistance.

SECTION VI

THE FLOW OF BLOOD IN THE VEINS

In the veins there is a constant decrement of pressure as we pass from the periphery towards the heart. This decrement of pressure is the consequence of the pumping action of the heart, so that the flow through the veins must be ascribed to the same force as that which determines the flow through the arteries, viz. the heart beat. Owing to the fact that no appreciable resistance lies between the veins and the heart, the difference of pressure necessary to maintain a constant flow through these vessels is very small. Thus in the horizontal position the pressure in the femoral veins may be from 5 to 10 mm. Hg., and in the inferior vena cava from 1 to 5 mm. The pressure in the great veins near the heart is generally negative owing to the aspiration of the thorax, and this negative pressure is naturally increased during inspiration. Opening the thorax therefore causes a rise of pressure in all the large veins. In the latter the pressure depends chiefly on the heart activity, being lowered by vigorous action of the heart pump and raised when this fails in any way. In the peripheral veins the pressure is more dependent on the flow through the corresponding arteries. If an artery of a limb be ligatured, the pressure in the small veins of the limb sinks until it is reduced to the pressure in the nearest large trunk in which a flow of blood continues.

Each cardiac cycle causes variations in the pressure in the great veins next the heart in two ways:

(1) By the transmission along the veins of the alterations in the intra-auricular pressure.

(2) By the diminution in the volume of the heart in consequence of the expulsion of its blood along the arteries with each heart beat.

On this account the jugular veins show pulsations with each heart beat which are somewhat complex in character and resemble closely those occurring in the auricle (*vide* p. 946.) In Fig. 429 a tracing from the wall of the jugular vein is given. It will be seen that each heart beat gives rise to three variations in pressure within the veins. These three undulations are evidently exactly analogous to those given in Fig. 410 as occurring in the auricular tracing. We should therefore regard *a* as the auricular contraction, *c* as the elevation due to the closure of the auriculo-ventricular valves, *v* as the elevation due to the accumulation of blood in the auricles during the ventricular systole. The curve *c* is often spoken

of as the carotid elevation, and has been ascribed by Mackenzie to direct propagation to the jugular vein from the underlying carotid artery. He has come to this conclusion because he has not found it in tracings of the liver pulse in cases of incompetent tricuspid valves. There is no doubt however that the elevation can be seen on tracings from the inferior vena cava. The explanation of its absence from liver tracings is probably to be ascribed to the fact that the great mass of the liver substance is unable to transmit the very rapid oscillation of pressure due to the closure of the auriculo-ventricular valves. These venous pulsations are much more marked in cases of heart disease,where there is partial failure of the heart pump and overfilling of the venous system, often combined with incompetence of the auriculo-ventricular valves.

Besides the favourable influences exercised on the circulation through the veins by the aspiration of the thorax, a considerable part is played in the venous circulation by the contraction of the muscles of the body as well as by the passive movements of different parts. The adjuvant effect

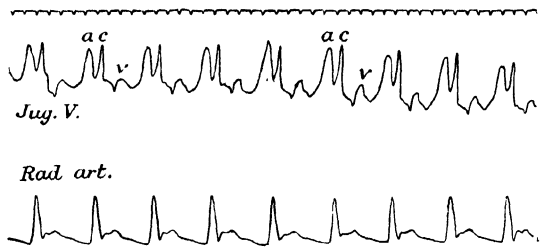


FIG. 429. Venous pulse tracing from jugular vein compared with the arterial pulse tracing from the radial artery.

of passive or active movement on the circulation through the veins is rendered possible by the existence in these vessels of valves, which are semilunar folds of the intima projecting into their lumen, and so arranged that they allow the passage of blood only towards the heart. Two such valves are as a rule situated opposite to each other. Every movement of a limb, active or passive, causes an external pressure on the veins and therefore empties them towards the heart. Thus in walking, each time the thigh is moved backwards the femoral vein becomes empty and collapses, and fills again as soon as the leg is brought forward to its former position or is flexed in front of the body. When muscular movements become general, as in walking or running, the active compression of the veins thus brought about plays an important part in hurrying the blood into the right heart, so that the output of this organ is increased and the arterial blood pressure is raised.

Since the blood in the vessels is subject to the influence of gravity, we should expect to find that the pressure in the veins of the foot was equal to the pressure in the veins, say, of the hand at the level of the heart *plus* the pressure equivalent to the column of blood between these veins and the heart, *i. e.* about a metre of blood. On measuring the pressure by von Recklinghausen's or by Hill's method in these veins, this is not found

to be the case. The pressure indeed in the veins of the foot is but little higher than that in the veins of the hand. Von Recklinghausen found that, after subtracting the distance between the foot and the heart, the pressure in the veins was negative by as much as 40 cm. In the same way, as Hill has shown, the pressure in the capillaries of the foot is about the same as in the capillaries of the hand. When a man assumes the upright position, the arteries of the leg and foot contract until, under the combined influence of the heart's contraction and gravity, the blood supply to the capillaries is sufficient only to keep the pressure in these vessels at a certain moderate height. The return of the blood from the dependent parts cannot be ascribed to the heart beat at all, but is due to the extrinsic mechanism of circulation through the veins, *i. e.* the contractions of the muscles of the limb which press all the deep and superficial veins, and in virtue of the valves force the blood contained therein by Poupart's ligament into the abdomen. The fact that circulation through the legs is dependent on the contractions of their muscles explains why it is so difficult to stand still for any length of time without moving, and emphasises the need of moderate exercise for the maintenance of a normal circulation.

SECTION VII

THE PULMONARY CIRCULATION

In the lungs there is an extensive system of wide capillaries presenting very little resistance to the flow of blood. The arterioles are wide and have only a slight amount of muscular fibre in their walls, so that a slight pressure suffices to drive the blood from the right to the left heart. The determination of the normal average pressure in the pulmonary artery presents considerable difficulties, but it probably does not exceed 15 to 20 mm. Hg., *i. e.* about one-sixth of the mean aortic pressure.

The capillaries of the lungs may vary passively in size according to the condition under which they may be placed. Thus, whereas at the height of inspiration the blood contained in the lungs is about one-twelfth of the whole blood in the body, this amount is diminished during expiration to between one-fifteenth and one-eighteenth, and by forcible artificial inflation of the lungs may be lessened to one-sixtieth. These changes exercise a considerable effect on the systemic blood pressure and are largely responsible for the respiratory variations observed therein. On the other hand, the distensibility of the lung capillaries may play an important part in enabling the lungs to act, so to speak, as a reservoir for the left side of the heart. If, in consequence of raised arterial pressure or other factor, there is a temporary excess of output on the right side that cannot be dealt with at once by the left heart, the excess is taken up for a time in the lung capillaries.

Vaso-motor fibres to the lung vessels have been described as running in the anterior roots of the third, fourth, and fifth dorsal nerves. Their action is however of little importance, and their very existence is questioned by some observers. The fact, that injection of adrenaline causes some vaso-constriction in the lungs, points to the presence of a vaso-motor sympathetic supply to those organs.

If we examine a tracing of the arterial blood pressure, we notice that it presents certain periodic oscillations which accompany the movements of respiration. With each inspiration the blood pressure rises; with each expiration it falls. The synchronism of the rise and fall with the respiratory movements is not exact, since the rise continues for a short time after the beginning of expiration before it begins to fall, and the fall continues right into the beginning of the next inspiration, so that the highest point of the curve occurs at the beginning of expiration and the lowest point at the beginning of inspiration. During the fall which accompanies expiration the heart beats may become less frequent. This change of rate is marked in the dog, but is by no means constant in man. On dividing both vagi,

this difference in the pulse rate during inspiration and expiration disappears, but the main features of the blood pressure curve remain the same; so that we must look for some mechanical explanation of the respiratory undulations.

We have already seen that under normal conditions the lungs are in a state of over-distension, and that in consequence of this condition they are constantly tending to collapse, and are therefore exerting a pull on the chest wall. As soon as we admit air into the pleural cavity by perforating the chest wall, the lungs collapse. The force with which the lungs tend to collapse amounts to 6 mm. Hg. at the end of a quiet expiration, so we say that in the pleural cavity there is normally a negative pressure of 6 mm. Hg. As the chest expands in inspiration it drags the lungs still more open. As these become more distended, their pull on the chest wall becomes greater, and hence the negative pressure in the pleura may be increased during forcible inspiration to 30 mm. Hg. It must be remembered that the heart and great veins and arteries are in the thorax separated from the pleural cavity only by a thin yielding membrane, so that they are practically exposed to any pressure, positive or negative, which may exist in the pleural cavity. Hence even at the end of inspiration the heart and large vessels are subjected to a negative pressure of 6 mm. Hg. Outside the thorax all the vessels are exposed to a positive pressure, conditioned in the neck by the elasticity of the tissues and in the abdomen by the contractions of the diaphragm and abdominal muscles.

Blood, like any other fluid, will always flow from a point of higher to a point of lower pressure. There must thus be a constant aspiration of blood from peripheral parts into the thorax. This aspiratory force will not influence arteries and veins alike. The arteries, having thick, comparatively non-distensible walls, will be very little affected by the negative pressure obtaining in the thoracic cavity, whereas the thin-walled distensible veins will be largely influenced by the same factor. The total result then of the negative pressure in the pleural cavities is to increase the flow of blood from the veins into the heart without affecting to any appreciable degree the outflow of blood from the heart into the arteries. The more pronounced the negative pressure in the thorax, the greater will be the amount of blood sucked into the heart from the veins. During inspiration therefore the heart will be better supplied with blood than during expiration, and this factor in itself will tend to raise the arterial blood pressure. The inspiratory descent of the diaphragm will moreover tend to increase the inflow into the heart by raising the positive pressure in the abdomen, so that blood is pressed out of the abdominal veins and sucked into the heart and the thoracic veins.

Another factor which must play some part is the influence of the respiratory movements on the circulation through the lungs. In trying to understand this influence, it must be remembered that the pulmonary capillaries lie in a certain amount of elastic and connective tissue and are separated, on the one side by the alveolar epithelium from air at the ordinary atmospheric pressure, and on the other by the pleural endothelium from the pleural cavity, where the pressure varies from 6 to 30 mm. Hg. below the atmospheric pressure. We may therefore consider the pulmonary capillaries as lying between, and attached to, two concentric elastic bags. Under normal conditions,

since these bags are always tending to collapse, the inner one must be pulling away from the outer one, and the outer one from the chest wall. Hence there must be a negative pressure in the tissues between these two bags—a negative pressure which in the expiratory condition will be something between 0 and – 6 mm. Hg., and in the inspiratory condition between 0 and – 30 mm. Hg. If we regard the average pressure within the pulmonary capillaries as constant, these capillaries must be more dilated in the inspiratory than in the expiratory condition. This dilatation of the pulmonary capillaries will have two effects. Their capacity will be increased and the resistance they present to the flow of blood will be diminished.

Let us now consider what effect these changes will have on the general arterial blood pressure. We will assume that during expiration the pulmonary vessels have a capacity of 25 c.c. and that the beat of the right heart is forcing through them 10 c.c. of blood per second. So long as the chest remains in the expiratory condition 10 c.c. of blood will be flowing into the left heart and into the aorta, so that the systemic blood pressure will remain constant. Now let us suppose that an inspiratory enlargement of the thorax takes place, the negative pressure in the pleura is increased, the two walls of the lungs are pulled farther away from one another, and there is a general enlargement of the pulmonary capillaries. We will assume that this enlargement increases the capacity of the pulmonary capillaries from 25 to 30 c.c. Owing to this increased capacity, the first 5 c.c. of blood which flows into the lungs after the beginning of inspiration will not flow out through the pulmonary vein, but will simply serve to bring the capillaries into the same state of distension as before. Hence at the beginning of inspiration the flow through the pulmonary vein will be diminished; there will be less blood discharged into the left heart, and therefore a fall in systemic pressure. As soon however as the increased capacity of the pulmonary vessels is made up, the dilating effect of the inspiratory movement of these vessels will aid the flow through the lungs, in consequence of the diminution of resistance, so that the same force of the right heart which drove 10 c.c. of blood per second through the former resistance during expiration will now drive more, say 12 c.c. of blood. There is thus more blood entering the left heart, and therefore a rise of systemic pressure during the last three-quarters of the inspiratory movement. Expiration will have exactly the reverse effect. At the beginning of expiration there is a diminution of capacity in the pulmonary vessels from 30 to 25 c.c. Hence during the first second of expiration the outflow of blood from the pulmonary vein into the left heart will be 17 c.c. (12 c.c. + 5 c.c.). After this, the increased resistance in the pulmonary capillaries in consequence of their constriction will come into play, and the flow of blood through them will fall once more from 12 c.c. to 10 c.c. Hence at the beginning of expiration the inflow of blood from the pulmonary vein into the left heart is greater than at any period. The arterial pressure will therefore rise to its greatest height at the beginning of expiration, and will fall during the last three-quarters of expiration, but will attain its minimum only at the beginning of the next inspiration.

In this way the effect of the respiratory movements on the systemic blood pressure could be entirely explained by the influence they exert on the lung vessels or lesser circulation. On the other hand, Lewis regards the pericardial pressure, *i. e.* the direct influence of the thoracic movements on the heart, as playing a much more important part than changes in the pulmonary circulation in the production of the respiratory undulations in the blood pressure. He shows moreover that in man the effect of respiration on arterial blood pressure may vary according to the type of respiratory movement, a deep intercostal inspiration (not prolonged) causing a pure fall, while a deep diaphragmatic inspiration gives a pure rise of blood pressure. In expiration the reverse effects hold. He concludes that in man it is not possible to make any *general* statement as to the nature of the blood pressure response to a particular respiratory act.

SECTION VIII

THE CAUSATION OF THE HEART BEAT

If the heart be cut out of the body of a cold-blooded animal, such as the frog or tortoise, it will continue to beat with the normal sequence of its different chambers for hours, or even days, provided that it be kept cool and moist. In the case of a warm-blooded animal, the heart is similarly capable of continuing its rhythmic contractions for some little time after excision. The period of survival of the heart is less in warm-blooded than in cold-blooded animals. The fact that in both cases the heart will continue to beat after removal from all its connections with the central nervous system, and when blood is no longer flowing through it, shows that the causation of the heart beat is to be sought in the walls of the heart itself.

The heart wall consists of a muscular tissue resembling in many respects voluntary muscle; like this, it presents longitudinal and transverse striations; like this, it is capable of contracting in response to direct stimulation. Normally voluntary muscle contracts only in response to impulses from the central nervous system. When Remak described the existence of collections of ganglion cells in the *sinus venosus*, it was natural that physiologists should ascribe to these collections of nerve cells the same automatic rhythmic functions that had been found by Flourens and others to be associated with the grey matter of the medulla oblongata in connection with the maintenance of the respiratory movements.

ANATOMY OF THE FROG'S HEART

The hearts of the frog and of the tortoise have figured so largely in the researches on the causation of the heart beat that it may be profitable to mention briefly the main points of their anatomy.

The frog's heart consists of the sinus venosus, which receives the anterior and posterior venæ cavæ, two auricles, one ventricle, and the bulbus arteriosus, which opens into the two aortæ. The venous blood from the body flows into the sinus venosus by the three venæ cavæ, and thence into the right auricle, while the left auricle receives the blood from the lungs. The ventricle thus receives mixed arterial and venous blood, the arterial blood being directed by the spiral valve of the bulbus aortæ so as to flow chiefly towards the head.

The muscular fibres of the heart are less highly developed than those of the mammalian heart. They are spindle-shaped, and only dimly cross-striated. The cross-striation becomes more distinctly marked as we proceed from sinus to ventricle, the sinus muscle fibre representing the most primitive condition. There is complete muscular continuity between all the cavities of the heart. The circular ring of muscle at the junction of sinus with auricles and of auricles with ventricles presents only slight traces of cross-striation (Gaskell).

The heart is well supplied with nerve fibres and ganglion cells. The two vagi enter

the sinus venosus and branch just under the pericardium. Here they become connected with a collection of nerve cells, known as Remak's ganglion. From the sinus the two vagi, now called septal nerves, pass down in the interauricular septum, one in front and the other behind. Near the auriculo-ventricular groove they enter two collections of ganglion cells, called Bidder's ganglia. From these ganglia non-medullated fibres are distributed to surrounding parts of the auricle and to the whole of the ventricle. In the upper third of the ventricle occur scattered ganglion cells attached to the nerve fibres. These are quite absent in the lower half or two-thirds.

In the tortoise (Fig. 431) the two auricles are bound together by a flat band of tissue, which serves also to connect the sinus with the ventricle. The septum between

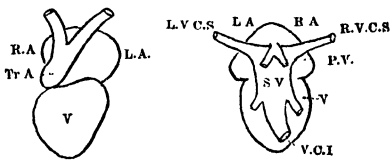


FIG. 430. Diagram of frog's heart. (After CYON.)
V, ventricle; R A, L.A, right and left auricles (atrium); S.V, sinus venosus; P.V, pulmonary veins; L.V.C S and R.V.C.S, left and right superior vena cava; V C.I, vena cava inferior· TR.A, truncus arteriosus.

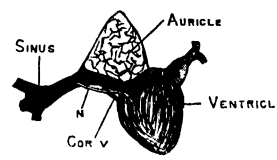


FIG. 431. Tortoise's heart (after GASKELL) as it appears when suspended for registering the auricular and ventricular contractions. N, nerve-trunk with fibres connecting Remak's and Bidder's ganglia; COR. V, coronary vein.

the auricles arises from the central line of this junction wall. The two vagus nerves pass into a large accumulation of ganglion cells in the sinus, and thence along the basal wall to the auriculo-ventricular groove, lying just under the pericardium. In the groove they pass into a collection of ganglion cells, whence fibres are given off to both auricles and ventricle. As they leave the sinus, a branch is always given off by the right nerve to accompany the coronary vein, which conveys blood from the ventricular wall to the sinus. Thus the nerves of the tortoise's heart are altogether more accessible than those of the frog's heart. In other points the tortoise's heart is similar to the frog's heart, though considerably larger.

THE AUTOMATIC CONTRACTION OF THE FROG'S HEART

The frog's heart in the body, or when removed from the body intact, beats regularly, the contraction starting in the sinus, then travelling to auricles, ventricle, and bulbus. If however the heart be removed by cutting it across the sino-auricular junction, or if the auricles be functionally separated from the sinus by a ligature round this junction (Stannius' ligature), the auricles and ventricle stop in an uncontracted condition (diastole), while the sinus goes on beating regularly. After the lapse of a period varying from five minutes to half an hour, the detached part of the heart begins to beat, at first slowly and then more rapidly, but never attaining the rate of the sinus. The auricles beat first, and then the ventricle. If now the ventricle be cut away by an incision in the auriculo-ventricular groove from the auricles, the latter go on beating; while the former, after a few beats due to the excitation of the incision, stops beating, and only after a considerable time may begin again to contract very slowly.

On the other hand, a ventricle-apex preparation (that is to say, the lower

two-thirds of the ventricle separated functionally from the rest of the heart), never beats again under normal circumstances. To single stimuli it responds with a single beat, not with a series of beats as the whole heart does. If the lower third of the ventricle be separated functionally in the living frog by crushing the ring of tissue between it and the upper third, it never gives a spontaneous beat again, although it is under the most normal conditions possible in the circumstances. There is thus a descending scale of automatic power in the different parts of the frog's heart—from the sinus, where it is highest, to the lower parts of the ventricle, where it is apparently absent. From this fact it has been thought that the automaticity of the frog's heart is dependent on the ganglia present in it. The contraction was supposed to be started by impulses proceeding from the sinus ganglion. If this were cut off, Bidder's ganglia or the scattered cells in the upper third of the ventricle could, it was thought, take up its task of originating impulses. The muscle cells under this hypothesis act as the servants of the ganglion cells, just as the voluntary muscles wait on the commands of the cells in the spinal cord and brain.

The view that the ganglion cell sends out rhythmic impulses had however to be discarded when it was discovered that the muscle forming the lower third of the ventricle either of the frog or the tortoise, though free from ganglion cells, could be excited by various means to rhythmic contractions. Thus it could be set into rhythmic action when supplied with salt solution under pressure through a perfusion cannula, or when excited by the passage of a constant current or of weak induction shocks. The fact that the heart muscle responded to continuous stimulation by a rhythmic discharge suggested that the function of the ganglion cells was to furnish a constant stimulation to the muscle cells and so maintain these in rhythmic activity.

The theory of the ganglionic origin of the cardiac rhythm was seriously affected by a series of researches carried out by Gaskell and by Engelmann. The arguments against the 'neurogenic' hypothesis may be summarised as follows:

(*a*) The cardiac muscle, free from any ganglion cells whatsoever, can be excited by various means to rhythmic contraction. When, in the living frog, the apex of the ventricle is crushed off from the base so as to leave only material continuity between the two parts, the circulation of the blood is maintained by the contraction of all the parts of the heart except the apex, which never resumes its activity. If however the intraventricular pressure be raised by clamping the aorta, the apex begins to beat at its own rhythm, which is independent of the rhythm of the rest of the heart. Moreover a strip free from ganglion cells can be cut from the apex of the tortoise's ventricle (Fig. 432) which, on keeping in a moist chamber and moistening occasionally with normal salt solution, enters into rhythmic contractions.

(*b*) In the frog it is possible to excise the interauricular septum with its ganglia, and a considerable portion of the ganglia in the sinus venosus and at the base of the ventricles, without interfering in any way with the cardiac rhythm. This experiment is still easier to carry out in the tortoise's heart

where the nerves and ganglia run in the basal portion of the auricles. This can be excised, leaving the two auricular appendages in connection with the sinus venosus and with the ventricles.

(*c*) The heart in the developing chick can be seen beating at a time when it is quite free from nerve cells, which only extend into it at a later date.

(*d*) Remak's ganglia are situated at the point where the two vagus nerves enter the heart, and under the microscope can be seen to be connected with the fibres of these nerves. We have now, from the discovery of Langley and Dickinson, a means of judging of the action of ganglion cells in the drug nicotine, which first stimulates and then paralyses nerve cells themselves, or the synapses between the cells and the nerve fibres in connection with them. Direct application of nicotine to the heart, after a primary period of slowing, leaves the heart beat practically unaltered, the normal sequence of beat in the various cavities being unaffected. After the application of the drug however, stimulation of the trunk of the vagus is without effect, though slowing or stoppage of the heart may still be produced by excitation of the post-ganglionic nerve fibres of the vagus, which arise from the cells of Remak's ganglia. These ganglia must therefore be regarded not as a motor centre for the heart, but merely as a distributing centre for the inhibitory fibres of the vagus. Since tetanisation of the heart with weak currents also causes local inhibition, it would seem that the finer nerve fibres ramifying throughout the muscular substance are, to a large extent at all events, inhibitory in their function. This is confirmed by the fact that atropine, which paralyses the inhibitory fibres of the vagus, also abolishes the direct inhibitory effect of tetanisation on the heart muscle. Gaskell and Engelmann therefore came to the conclusion that the source of the cardiac rhythm was to be found, not in the ganglia scattered about its cavities, but in the muscular cells themselves.

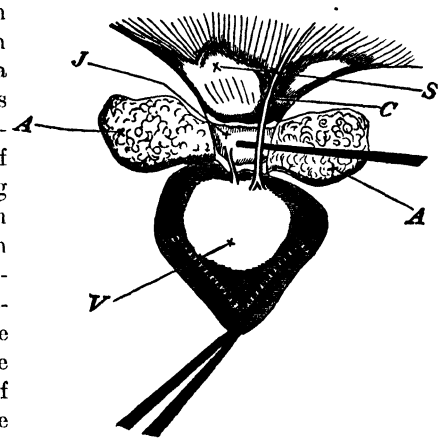


FIG. 432. Tortoise's heart from dorsal surface. (GASKELL.)

S, sinus; J, sino-auricular junction; A, auricles; C, coronary vein; V, ventricle. (The dotted line shows how a strip may be cut from the ventricle apex.)

The normal sequence of events—*i. e.* the subordination of the ventricle to auricles and auricles to sinus so that the beat always follows in the order, sinus, auricles, ventricle, bulbus—can be ascribed to the difference between the natural rhythms of these different cavities. It is possible to record the contractions of each of these parts of the heart separately, after having divided them either functionally by crushing the intervening tissue or by actual

section. Under such conditions it is found that there is a descending scale of rhythm from sinus to bulbus, the contractions of the sinus being most frequent, those of the ventricle and bulbus the least frequent. Thus it is impossible for the ventricle to beat at its own rhythm, since before it is ready to beat again after performing one beat, it receives an impulse from the auricles causing an excited beat. That the normal sequence of contractions is dependent simply on the natural rhythm of the sinus is shown by the fact that, by exciting the ventricle by means of induction shocks repeated at a rhythm slightly quicker than that of the sinus, it is possible to excite a reversed rhythm, the order of the beat being now ventricle, auricles, sinus venosus.

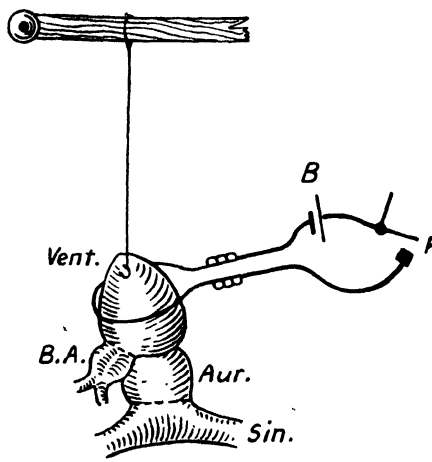


Fig. 433.

The dependence of the ventricular rhythm on the beat of the sinus may be shown by a simple experiment. The ventricle is connected with a lever suspended by a spring so as to record its contractions on a drum. A platinum loop connected with a galvanic battery is put round the heart, either round the sinus or round the ventricle (Fig. 433). When a current is allowed to pass through the inner loop, the corresponding part of the heart is warmed. When the ventricle alone is warmed, the beats become larger, but the rhythm is unaltered. On lowering the loop so as to warm the sinus, the rhythm of the whole heart is quickened, but the size of the ventricular beats is unaffected. The different rhythmic power of these parts of the heart is apparently connected with the histological characters of the muscle fibres at each part. The lowly differentiated sinus cell has well-marked rhythmic power and a quick rhythm of beat, but is not able to exert such force in its contraction. The more highly differentiated ventricle cell has only a slight rhythmic power, but beats forcibly and is a good servant of the sinus.

THE PROPAGATION OF THE WAVE OF CONTRACTION

The normal contraction started in the sinus venosus is propagated to the auricles, thence to the ventricle, and thence to the bulbus aortæ. Between the contractions of each of these cavities there is a slight pause, whereas the contraction spreads so rapidly over each cavity that all parts, say of the auricles or ventricle, appear to contract simultaneously. It is obvious that the excitatory wave might be propagated through the heart from one

muscle cell to another, or by means of nerve fibres which would excite the muscular tissue of each cavity to contract.

The distinct pause which intervenes between the contractions of auricles and ventricle was long regarded as evidence for the nervous character of the contraction, and as showing the operation of a nerve centre in the co-ordination of the contractions of different cavities. A contraction wave may however be started at any part of the heart and may travel from this to all other parts. Thus, although the normal direction of the contractions is from sinus to ventricle, it is possible, by stimulating the apex of the ventricle, to excite contractions in the reverse order, viz. from ventricle to sinus. Such a fact is at variance with all our present knowledge of excitation

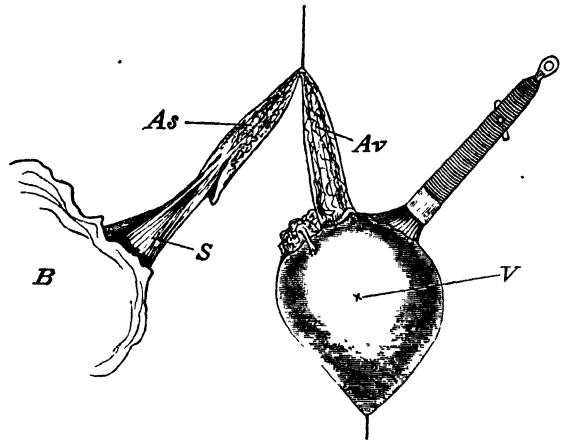


FIG. 434. Heart of tortoise with auricle slit up so as to cause a partial block. (GASKELL.)

of motor nerves. Excitation of the nerve going to the sartorius, or of any part of the nerve, may excite contractions of all the fibres of which the muscle is composed. On the other hand, excitation of a part of the muscle which is free from nerve fibres causes a contraction which is limited to the muscle fibres directly excited and does not extend to the nerves. If motor nerves arose from the hypothetical motor ganglion of the heart and passed to the ventricular muscle, one would not expect that contraction of the ventricular muscle could excite these nerves and so cause the propagation of a wave of contraction in the reverse direction.

That the propagation cannot be due to any nerve trunks running from sinus to ventricle is shown by various experiments of Engelmann and Gaskell. Thus, if the auricle is slit up by a series of interdigitating cuts, the contraction wave starting from the sinus travels along the auricular muscle around the end of each section and finally, on arrival at the ventricle, causes a contraction of this cavity. In the heart of the tortoise the nerve trunks run, not in the interauricular septum, but in a band of tissue joining the sinus to the ventricle; this band can be exercised with all its contained

nerves without interfering in any way with the normal sequence of contractions. Moreover the pause observed between the contractions of auricles and ventricles has been shown by Gaskell to be due to the retardation of the excitatory wave which occurs in its propagation through the muscular tissue in the auriculo-ventricular junction. A similar retardation of the wave can be produced at any point either in auricles or ventricle by diminishing the conducting muscular tissue to a sufficiently small extent. Thus, if the auricle of the tortoise be divided as in the diagram (Fig. 434), it will be noticed that the sinus first contracts, then the auricular half *As*: a distinct pause then occurs while the contractile process is passing over the 'bridge,' and finally *Av* contracts, followed by the ventricle. The apparent pause between the contraction of the auricles and ventricle is due therefore to a partial 'block' at the auriculo-ventricular junction. If the block be increased in the experiment just quoted, as, for instance, by allowing the bridge of tissue to dry or by making it still narrower, it may be found that only one out of every two contractions passes across the bridge (Fig. 435), and the slightest increase in the resistance to the propagation of the wave may lead to the block becoming complete. On moistening the bridge again every contraction may be seen to pass.

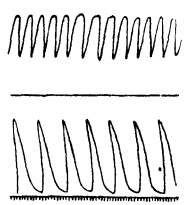


FIG. 435. Contraction of auricles and ventricle of tortoise heart. The auriculo-ventricular groove has been clamped so as to produce a partial block allowing only every second contraction to pass. (GASKELL.)

By the methylene-blue method it is possible to demonstrate a close network of non-medullated fibres surrounding all the muscle cells of the heart. It is obvious that the experiment just quoted would not exclude the possibility of propagation occurring through such a nerve network. The properties of the network would have to differ from those of any of the nerve tissues with which we are acquainted; whereas we know that under certain circumstances impulses may be transmitted from fibre to fibre, even in striated muscle, and such a mode of propagation is the most obvious explanation of the phenomena observed in the heart.

If the auricles be soaked for some time in distilled water, they enter into a condition of what is known as water-rigor (*Wasserstarre*). In this condition they are incapable of contracting, but can still propagate the wave from sinus to ventricle. This experiment has been regarded as a demonstration of the part taken by nerve fibres in the propagation of the wave, but such an explanation is not necessary, since a similar condition of water-rigor in a voluntary muscle fibre has been shown to allow the passage of an excitatory wave through the affected part to the normal portion of the muscle, which then responds by a contraction.

A series of interesting researches by Carlson on the mechanism of the heart beat in the king-crab *Limulus* has been thought to throw light on the vexed question of the automatism of the vertebrate heart.

In Limulus the heart forms a segmented tube of ordinary striated muscular fibres. In large specimens the tube may be from 10 to 15 cm. long and 2 to 2½ cm. broad.

Like the hearts of most other invertebrates and of all vertebrates, it has a local system of ganglion cells, but so situated that they can be cut away entirely from the muscular portions of the organ. The arrangement of the cardiac nervous system in Limulus is shown in Fig. 436.

The ganglion cells are collected chiefly in a dorsal nerve ganglion cord which runs almost the whole length of the heart. From this cord non-medullated nerve fibres pass directly into the substance of the heart, and also send branches to two lateral nerve trunks, by which fibres are distributed to all parts of the heart.

The heart normally contracts about forty times per minute. Each contraction affects all parts practically simultaneously, though in the dying heart the posterior portions apparently contract slightly before the anterior, and may continue to contract after the anterior end has come to a standstill.

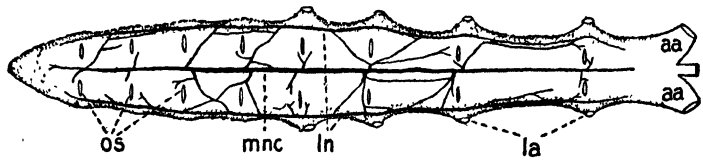


FIG. 436. Heart of Limulus from dorsal surface. (CARLSON.)
mnc, median nerve cord; *ln*, lateral nerve trunks.

Division of the muscular tissue leaving the nerve strands intact does not alter in any way the synchronism of contraction of the two ends of the heart. Division of the nervous cord into two parts, the section being carried between the posterior third and anterior two-thirds, causes complete lack of co-ordination between the two ends; both ends of the heart continue to contract, but at different rhythms. Extirpation of the nerve cord abolishes spontaneous contractions. If the anterior half of the dorsal ganglionic cord be excised, all parts of the heart will continue to contract in unison. If now the lateral nerve trunks be divided, the anterior half of the heart ceases to contract, showing that it was being excited by impulses arising in the posterior part of the

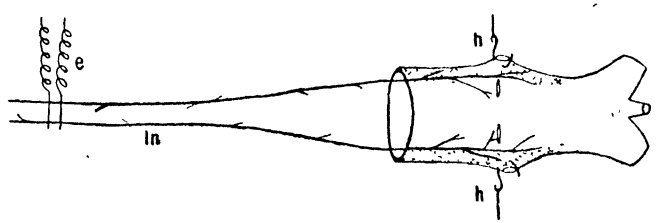


FIG. 437. 'Nerve-muscle preparation' of heart of Limulus consisting of the muscle of the two anterior segments, with the two lateral nerves. (CARLSON.)

ganglionic cord. It is possible therefore to make a nerve-muscle preparation of the anterior part of the heart, consisting of the muscle of the first two segments with a longer stretch of the lateral nerves (Fig. 437). Stimulation of the lateral nerves with a single shock causes a single beat of the anterior segments; tetanising shocks cause a continued contraction of the muscle preparation.

There seems to be no doubt that in this animal the beat of the heart is originated and co-ordinated by the action of the local ganglionic centres. Moreover Carlson has shown that the inhibitory nerve to the heart acts, not by direct influence on the muscle fibres, but by an inhibition of the automatic activity of the ganglionic cells, thus confirming for this special case the general view of inhibition long ago put forward by Morat, but not now generally accepted.

The heart muscle does not show a refractory period, but on direct stimulation with repeated shocks there may be a summation of contractions, which may fuse to a complete tetanus. The question naturally arises how far the heart of Limulus is to be

regarded as a special case, or how far we may transfer results gained from experience on this heart to those of other hearts in which a perfect separation between ganglion cells and muscle fibres is not so easily attainable. Carlson has sought to show the applicability of his results to the explanation of the cardiac mechanism in vertebrates by a series of observations on other invertebrates' hearts, where the muscular and nervous tissues are not so easily dissociable. Such hearts present phenomena very analogous to those of the frog's heart. According to him the phenomenon of the refractory period, the 'all or none' law of contraction, and the absence of tetanus in the heart of the frog is due, not to the peculiar functions of the muscle fibres, but to the fact that in all our experiments we are affecting muscular and nervous tissues simultaneously.

In the absence of more perfect knowledge of the properties of the nerve nets which surround involuntary and cardiac muscle fibres, a decision of the point is not yet possible. The muscle and nerve fibres of Limulus show however important differences from the cardiac muscle of the frog in their reaction to chemical stimuli. Acceptation of the neurogenic theory would necessitate the predication of a type of nervous tissue endowed with properties for which we have no analogy in any of the nerve tissues which have been the subject of exact investigation, whereas the myogenic theory ascribes only to the muscle cells of the heart properties which are the common attribute of all protoplasm or are displayed in a less marked degree by the ordinary skeletal muscle fibres. It would, at any rate, be premature to transfer unreservedly all the results obtained on the heart of the Limulus, the muscle fibres of which have the structure and behaviour of skeletal muscle fibres, to the explanation of the phenomena exhibited by the hearts of vertebrates.

THE HEART BEAT AS A WAVE OF CONTRACTION

If the beat of the frog's ventricle, or a strip of mammalian ventricle, be recorded, the curve obtained resembles closely the twitch of a voluntary muscle produced in response to a single excitation. Whereas however a single contraction with the subsequent relaxation of voluntary muscle lasts only about one-tenth of a second, the contraction of the mammalian ventricular muscle lasts three-tenths of a second, of the frog's ventricle about half a second, and of the tortoise ventricle about two seconds.[1] In the heart, as in a voluntary muscle fibre, the contractile process originates at the stimulated point and travels thence to all other points.

The progress of the excitatory wave is well seen if a record be taken of the electrical changes resulting in the frog's heart from a single stimulation. If the two ends of a strip of ventricular muscle be connected with the two terminals of a capillary electrometer, stimulation at one end causes a diphasic variation, showing that the excitatory process starts at the stimulated end and travels to the other end of the heart. Thus if the acid of the electrometer be connected with the base of the ventricle and the mercury of the capillary be connected with the apex, stimulation at the base causes a wave passing from base to apex. Directly after the stimulation therefore the base becomes negative and the column of mercury moves towards the acid; a moment later the contraction extends to the apex. All parts of the heart are now in a similar condition of excitation: there is no difference of potential between the two terminals, and the mercury comes back quickly

[1] The duration of the contraction depends on the temperature. The figures given are for the mammalian heart at 37° C. and for the amphibian heart at about 15° C.

to the base line. Relaxation, like contraction, starts first at the base and proceeds thence to the apex. There is thus a small period during which the apex is still contracted while the base is relaxed and the apex is therefore negative to the base. This terminal negativity of the apex is shown on the capillary electrometer by the excursion of the column of mercury away from the point of the capillary (cp. Fig. 87, p. 231).

Analogous effects are obtained on leading off the spontaneously beating heart in the frog or tortoise (Fig. 438). The conditions are however rather more complex, and the most usual variation, as Gotch has shown, is triphasic. In its most primitive form the vertebrate heart is composed of a simple tube, in which a contraction starts at the venous end and is propagated in a wave-like manner along the tube to the

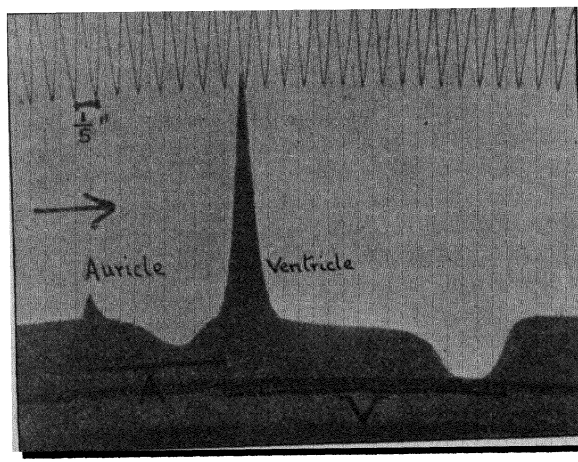


FIG. 438. Electrometer record of variation of spontaneously beating tortoise heart. (GOTCH.)

arterial end. In the higher vertebrates the heart at its first appearance has the same tubular form, but the simple tube very rapidly becomes modified, partly by twisting on itself, partly by the outgrowth of the dorsal or the ventral wall of the tube to form the cavities of the auricle and ventricle. Gotch suggests that the excitatory process follows the course of the original tube, and that the typical form of the curve is due to the base becoming excited twice, first at the part in continuity with the auricle, and secondly when the wave sweeps up to the bulbus aortæ. But it is possible that in the cold-blooded as in the mammalian heart, there may be a special conducting tissue which leads the excitatory process to many different parts of the ventricle almost simultaneously.

There is no doubt that the ventricular systole is comparable with a simple muscular twitch and cannot be regarded as the summation of several contractions. Since the excitatory process extends in the form of a wave

not only to all parts of the same cavity but to all parts of the heart, it is evident that the musculature of the heart is to be compared, not with skeletal muscle composed of many fibres, but to a single muscle fibre in which all parts are in functional continuity.

THE BEAT OF THE MAMMALIAN HEART

The mammalian heart, like the heart of cold-blooded animals, will beat for some time after it has been cut out of the body, and a perfectly rhythmic activity may be maintained for hours by feeding the heart from the coronary arteries either with defibrinated blood or with oxygenated Ringer's solution, with or without the addition of glucose.

Ganglion cells are found in the mammalian heart around the openings of the great veins, along the border of the interauricular septum, in the groove between auricles and ventricles, and in the basal parts of the ventricles.

The ventricles of mammals are endowed with a greater rhythmic power than the corresponding cavities in the frog and tortoise. It is possible to sever or crush all the nervous and muscular connections between auricles and ventricles without destroying their mechanical connection by means of fibrous tissue. Such a procedure does not, even for a moment, stop the contractions of the ventricles, which go on beating at a rhythm which is independent of and slower than that of the auricles. Porter has shown that a mere fragment of the ventricular wall, perfectly free from ganglion cells, may maintain rhythmic contractions for some hours if fed by an artificial circulation through a branch of the coronary artery. We may therefore conclude that in the mammalian as in the amphibian heart, the cause of the rhythm is to be sought in the properties of the muscle fibres themselves, and that every part of the heart muscle possesses the power of rhythmic activity, the normal sequence of the beats being determined by the greater frequency of the natural rhythm of the venous end of the heart.

In the mammalian as in the amphibian heart, the excitatory condition started at one point in the muscle spreads through the muscle in all directions, and the process of conduction of excitation seems to be independent of nerve fibres. The excitatory process may be conducted not only in the ordinary direction from auricles to ventricles, but also from ventricles to auricles. If the ventricles be excited at a rhythm of higher frequency than the natural beat which is starting at the venous end of the heart, we may obtain a reversed rhythm in which the order of the beats is ventricles—auricles. It is difficult to conceive of an arrangement of neurons which would propagate impulses impartially from auricles to ventricles or from ventricles to auricles. Such a condition would seem to be in contradiction to the law of forward direction which obtains throughout the nervous system. On the other hand the phenomena are easily explained on the assumption that the whole of the musculature of the heart acts in many respects as a single muscle fibre, along which an excitatory process may be propagated in any direction. But in the adult mammalian heart, on superficial dissection,

the muscle fibres both of auricles and ventricles are seen to arise from a fibro-cartilaginous ring surrounding the auriculo-ventricular junction, leaving apparently no muscular continuity between the two cavities. On this account it was thought for many years that the propagation of the contraction from auricles to ventricles must occur by means of nerve fibres, and it was only with the discovery by His of a distinct band of modified muscle fibres, passing from the auricles to the ventricles, the 'auriculo-ventricular bundle,' that an anatomical basis was furnished for the physiological behaviour of the heart. The heart is developed from a muscular tube in which at the beginning we must assume muscular continuity throughout. The primitive vertebrate heart is formed by a modification of this muscular tube. In this heart, as Keith has shown, we may distinguish five chambers, namely, the sinus venosus, the auricular canal, the auricle, the ventricle and the bulbus (Fig. 439). The musculature of these chambers is continuous throughout. In the adult heart, *e. g.* of man, the anatomical relations of the different cavities have become considerably modified in the course of development. The sinus venosus, *i. e.* the part where in the lower vertebrates the contraction wave takes its origin, is now represented merely by the termination of the superior vena cava and of the coronary sinus in the right auricle. These two veins are derived from the right and left ducts of Cuvier in the embryo. The sinus venosus is also represented by a small amount of tissue underlying the *tænia terminalis* of the right auricle, as well as by the remains of the Eustachian and venous valves. The auricular canal gives rise to the auricular septum and to the auricular ring surrounding the auricular-ventricular orifice, and in some hearts it is prolonged into the ventricle as the intraventricular or invaginated part of the auricular canal. In the adult heart two accumulations of more primitive tissue are found in the region corresponding to the sinus venosus of the embryo, and these are known as the *sino-auricular node* and the *auriculo-ventricular node*. The sino-auricular node (Fig. 440) lies in the groove between the superior vena cava and the right auricle. The auricular-ventricular node lies at the base of the auricular septum on the right side, below and to the right of the opening

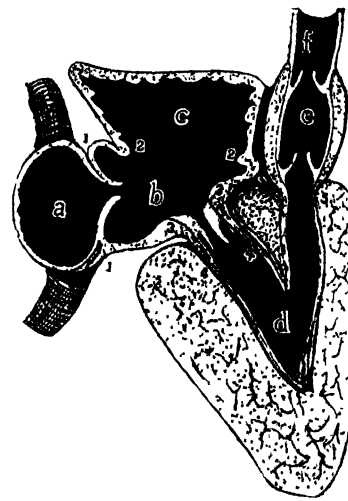


FIG. 439. A generalised type of vertebrate heart. (KEITH.)

a, sinus venosus; *b*, auricular canal; *c*, auricle; *d*, ventricle; *e*, bulbus cordis; *f*, aorta; 1–1, sino-auricular junction and venous valves; 2–2, canalo–auricular junction; 3–3, annular part of auricle; 4–4, invaginated part of auricle; 5, bulbo-ventricular junction.

of the coronary sinus. From this point a bundle of muscular fibres (the bundle of His or the auriculo-ventricular or A.V. bundle) runs along the top of the interventricular septum just below its membranous part and then divides into the right and left septal divisions, which pass down in each ventricle on the interventricular septum into the papillary muscle arising from the septum. Each half of the bundle gives off several branches which break up more and more, finally forming a reticulated sheet of tissue over the greater part of the interior of the ventricles just below the endocardium. The fibres composing this tissue are more primitive in character than the rest of the cardiac musculature and have long been distinguished as the

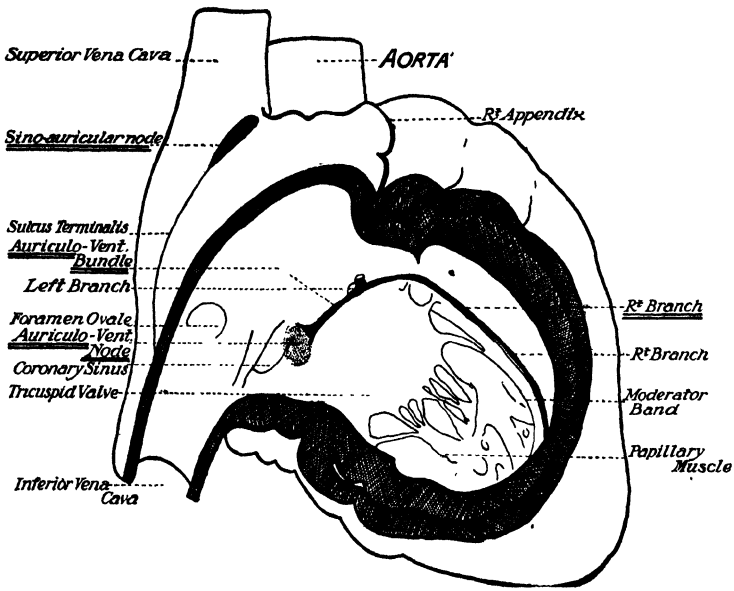


FIG. 440. Diagrammatic representation of course of A.V. bundle.

'fibres of Purkinje.' In them the fibrillation is confined to the periphery of the muscle cell. They are distinguished by a high glycogen content. They may be regarded as a part of the muscular wall of the heart specially differentiated for the rapid conduction of the excitatory process to all parts of the ventricles (Figs. 441 and 442).

Numerous nerve fibres and ganglion cells are found to accompany the muscle fibres of the auriculo-ventricular bundle. We have however no reasons for regarding the nervous structures as concerned in the propagation of the excitatory wave.

The auriculo-ventricular bundle forms the only continuous muscular tissue between the auricles and ventricles, and destruction of it causes complete abolition of the normal sequence of beat between auricles and ventricles. By leading off different parts of the heart to the string galvanometer, it is possible to determine the time relations of the excitatory process. It is then found that the mass of Purkinje tissue, known as the sino-auricular

node, is the starting-point of the excitatory process concerned in each heart beat. It is therefore spoken of as the ' pace-maker ' of the heart. At each beat a contraction starts at the sino-auricular node, spreads a short way up the great veins, and along the auricular muscle in all directions. When it

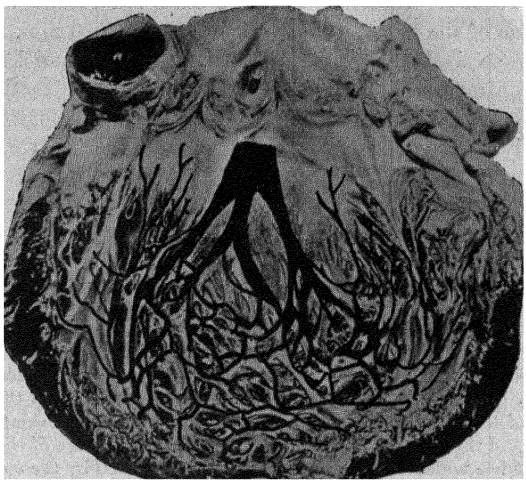


FIG. 441. Left ventricle, laid open to display the interventricular septum, on which the course of the left division of the auriculo-ventricular bundle and its ramifications are shown in black. (After TAWARA.)

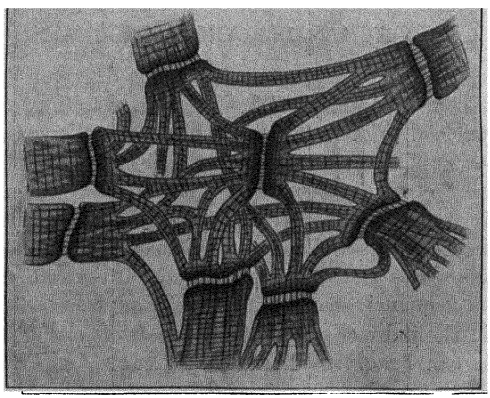


FIG. 442. Fibres of Purkinje, from the subendocardial network. (TAWARA.)

arrives at the auriculo-ventricular node, the impulse is carried on to the ventricles along the auriculo-ventricular bundle, spreading along the branches of this bundle to almost all parts of the ventricular muscle. Although normally the sino-auricular node initiates each heart beat, this node can be put out of action by injury or cooling without stopping the rhythmic sequence of the heart beat, the office of pace-maker being now taken up by

the auriculo-ventricular node. A specialisation of function accompanies the differentiation in structure which we find in the auriculo-ventricular bundle and its branches. Lewis has shown that the conduction of the excitatory process along the auriculo-ventricular bundle of the Purkinje tissue occurs about ten times as fast as the conduction through the ordinary muscular tissue of the heart, the rates being about 5000 mm. and 500 mm. per second respectively. Although all parts of the ventricles receive the impulse to contraction almost simultaneously, the contraction wave, as judged by the electrical changes, is found to commence slightly earlier at two points, namely, on the anterior surface near the apex to the right of the groove separating right and left ventricles, and at the extreme apex of the heart where the endocardiac tissue comes very close to the surface. On the other hand, the conus arteriosus is the last part of the heart to begin contracting.

The limitation of the muscular continuity to a single narrow bundle, which is endowed with greatly increased conducting powers and ends in a network of tissue endowed with similar powers, is evidently designed (to use an old-fashioned but convenient word) to ensure that all parts of the ventricles contract practically simultaneously. If this were not the case, the sudden contraction of the muscle fibres near the base of the ventricles would simply bulge out the still uncontracted portion near the apex, and there would be a risk of injury or even rupture of the uncontracted part of the ventricle under the stress of the pressure produced by the contracting part. On the other hand, if all parts of the heart were endowed with a similar rapid power of conduction, any part slightly more excitable or irritated than the rest, might serve as a centre for emitting excitatory waves, which would interfere with those transmitted from the auricles; and the tendency to heart delirium would be enormously increased.

THE HUMAN ELECTROCARDIOGRAM

The passage of the excitatory wave over the different heart cavities is associated with corresponding electrical changes resulting in differences of potential. If we lead off any two parts of the heart's surface to a string galvanometer or capillary electrometer, we obtain movements which are caused, partly by changes occurring in the muscle just underlying the electrode, partly by changes occurring at a distance and transmitted by the intervening muscle acting simply as a moist conductor. These two kinds of effect may be alluded to as direct and indirect. If we lead off, not from the heart itself, but from neighbouring tissues in contact with the heart, we shall still obtain the indirect effect of the electrical changes at each heart beat, and these can be obtained, as Waller has shown, when the intact animal is led off to the electrometer or galvanometer by his limbs. In an animal such as the dog the two fore limbs may form one lead and the two hind limbs the other. In man, where the heart lies asymmetrically, it is usual to lead off the right arm and left arm, the right arm and left leg, or the left arm and left leg, the hand or foot being immersed in salt water connected to the galvanometer by a zinc electrode contained in a porous pot full of saturated zinc sulphate solution. By this means an electrocardiogram is obtained similar to that shown in Fig. 443.

In view of the mechanism of the propagation of the excitatory wave in the ventricle, we should not expect the cardiogram obtained in this indirect fashion to be easy of interpretation, at any rate so far as regards the course of the wave through the ventricular muscle. Such an electro-

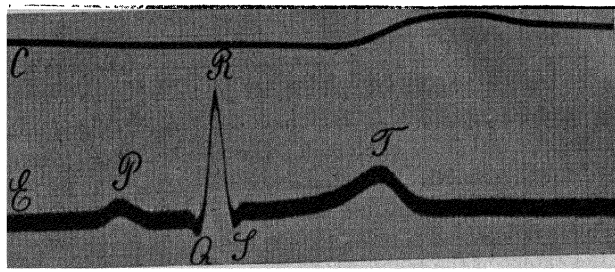


FIG. 443. Electrocardiogram of man, obtained by leading off from the two hands to a string galvanometer.

C is the carotid pulse tracing. The different parts of the curve are designated by the letters P, Q, R, S, T, first applied to them by Einthoven.

cardiogram however is of considerable use clinically, especially for the determination of the relation between the auricular and the ventricular contractions. The different points in a typical tracing, such as that contained in the figure, are designated by the letters P, Q, R, S, T, which were first applied to them by Einthoven and are retained because they do not involve any theoretical interpretation of the curves. Of these P is certainly due to

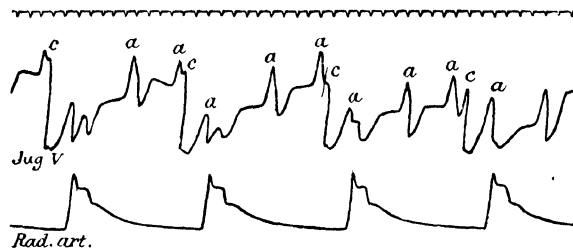


FIG. 444. Simultaneous tracings of the jugular venous pulse and the radial arterial pulse, from a case in which the A.V. bundle was destroyed by disease. The contractions of the auricles are marked by the *a* waves on the venous pulse. They are more rapid than and quite independent of the ventricular contractions. (MACKENZIE.)

the auricular contraction and Q marks the beginning of the ventricular contraction. The A.V. interval is given by the distance between P and Q, the total duration of the excitatory condition in the ventricle by the distance between Q and T.

The fibres of the auriculo-ventricular bundle may be destroyed by disease. In such cases we get a series of phenomena known under the name of Stokes-Adams' disease, the main characteristic of which is the slow contractions of the ventricle, accompanied by a rapid venous pulse at a rhythm entirely independent of the ventricular pulse. The automatic activities of auricle and ventricle are in fact dissociated (Fig. 444)

At certain intervals or at certain stages of the disease, the fibres of the bundle may present only a partial block, so that the ventricle responds once to every second contraction of the auricle. The existence of this disease is shown at once on the electrocardiogram by the dissociation of the normal relation between the auricular and ventricular variations. It may be also shown by a study of the venous pulse (Fig. 444).

THE PHYSIOLOGICAL PROPERTIES OF THE CARDIAC MUSCLE

THE RESPONSE OF HEART MUSCLE TO DIRECT EXCITATION

When a skeletal muscle is directly stimulated with induction shocks of varying strength, within narrow limits the height of the contraction is proportional to the strength of the stimulus. If the frog's ventricle, rendered motionless by a Stannius ligature, be stimulated with a single induction shock, if it responds at all it will respond with a maximal contraction, no change in the extent of the contraction being obtainable, however the stimulus may be increased. There is thus no proportionality in the heart between strength of stimulus and height of contraction. The heart, if it contracts at all, always contracts to its utmost, the height of the contraction being dependent, not on the strength of stimulus, but on other conditions affecting the muscle at the time of its response.

Although much stress has been laid on this supposed difference between heart muscle and voluntary muscle, a renewed investigation of the response of the latter to graded stimuli by Gotch and by Keith Lucas tends to show that the distinction is not so fundamental. According to these observers the fact, that the response to a minimal stimulus in skeletal muscle is smaller than the response to a maximal stimulus, is simply owing to the fact that in the former case only a small proportion of the muscle fibres is active, so that increasing the strength of the stimulus merely increases the number of fibres thrown into contraction. According to this view therefore a maximal contraction of skeletal muscle would be one involving all the fibres. In the heart muscle all the muscle fibres are functionally continuous, so that a stimulus, if it excites at all, must excite all the fibres, and every contraction must be analogous to the maximal contraction of a skeletal muscle. The existence of the 'all or none' law in any contractile tissue would be therefore dependent on the existence of functional continuity between all the contractile elements of the tissue.

In the retractor penis of the dog it is possible to get graded contractions with graded strength of stimuli, and in this case it is easy to observe that with increasing strength of stimulus a greater extent of the muscle is thrown into the contractile state. Closely connected with this manner of response is the fact that in heart muscle, under normal circumstances, it is not possible to get summation of contractions by putting in a stimulus, however strong, before the muscle has returned to rest. If however the propagation of the first contraction throughout the heart muscle be retarded or prevented by a partial death of the tissue, or by stimulus of the vagus nerve, it is possible, as Frank has shown, to obtain an apparent summation of two stimuli, *i. e.* a curve in which the second contraction is superposed on and rises higher

than the first. Such a result, on the explanation given above, would be due to a phenomenon of 'block,' limiting the propagation of the first contractile wave and yielding more to the second. This however is not the explanation given by the original observer.

SUMMATION OF STIMULI

If an isolated frog's ventricle, which is not beating, be stimulated with inadequate shocks, it may be found, on repeating these shocks at short intervals of time, that they become adequate and cause a contraction of the ventricle. A stimulus therefore, which is subminimal, may nevertheless cause some change in the heart muscle, so that the latter responds more readily to subsequent stimuli.

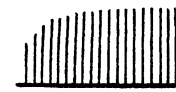


FIG. 445. Group of pulsations showing 'staircase' character.

A similar improving effect of previous stimulation on the condition of the heart muscle may be observed on the contractions themselves. Thus in a Stannius preparation, if the ventricle be excited with single induction shocks, once in every ten seconds, the first four or five contractions form an ascending series, each contraction being rather higher than the preceding one. This is often spoken of as the 'staircase phenomenon' (Fig. 445).

THE REFRACTORY PERIOD

At each contraction of the heart muscle there is a sudden decomposition of contractile material which, so far at least as concerns the incidence of an external stimulus, is maximal, *i. e.* complete. Directly this has occurred, a process of assimilation or re-formation of contractile material begins. This lasts throughout the diastolic period, and the store of contractile material is at its maximum just before the next contraction. A mechanical analogy is furnished by a bucket into which a stream of water is constantly flowing, and which tips up automatically and empties out its contents as soon as the water reaches a certain height. It is evident that the power of the heart muscle to contract in response to a stimulus (its 'irritability') must be at a minimum immediately after the automatic discharge or decomposition has taken place, and will continually increase from this point as the store of contractile material grows, until it arrives at such a height that the explosive discharge occurs spontaneously. Hence in each cardiac cycle there is a period, known as the *refractory period*, in which stimuli applied to the heart have no effect. This will be followed by a period in which a stimulus is followed by an extra contraction, but with a prolonged latent period. Just before the next spontaneous contraction the irritability is at its height, and the heart muscle responds with a contraction to a minimal stimulus. These facts are well shown in Fig. 446.

When a tracing is being taken from part of the heart, *e. g.* the ventricle, which is beating rhythmically in consequence of a stimulus communicated to it from some other part such as the sinus venosus, an extra contraction is followed by a 'compensatory pause,' and in certain cases the first contraction

after the pause is considerably augmented. This is due to the fact that one of the impulses travelling from the sinus arrives at the ventricle during the refractory period ensuing on the application of the artificial stimulus; hence it produces no effect and the ventricle has to wait for the arrival of the next succeeding excitatory wave from the sinus before it gives its next beat.

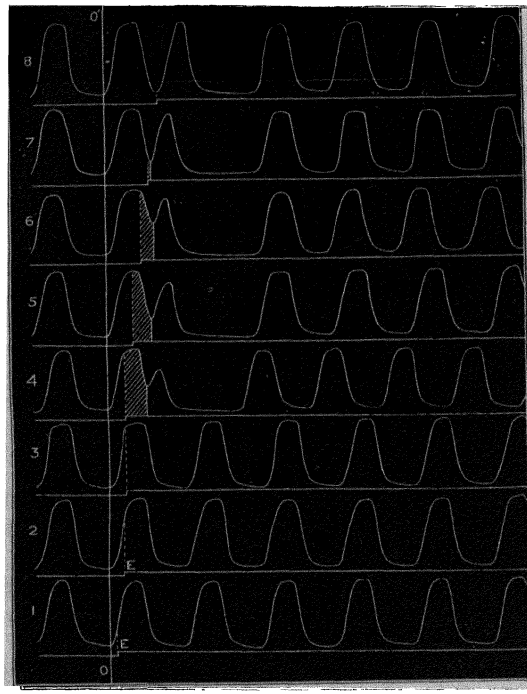


FIG. 446. Tracings of spontaneous contractions of frog's ventricle, to show refractory period. In each series the surface of the ventricle was stimulated by an induction shock at E, as indicated by the tracing of the signal. In 1, 2 and 3, this stimulus had absolutely no effect, since it fell during the refractory period. In 4, 5, 6, 7 the effect of the shock was to interpolate an extra contraction in the series, the latent period (shaded part) gradually diminishing from 4 to 7 (diastolic rise of irritability). In 8 the irritability of the preparation was already considerable, and the latent period inappreciable. The 'compensatory pause' after the extra beat is also well shown in 4, 5, 6, 7, 8. (MAREY.)

Hence the compensatory pause does not occur when we are testing the effects of artificial stimuli on the sinus venosus.

On account of the refractory period which ensues on the commencement of the contractile process on heart muscle, it is impossible to throw the muscle into a tetanus, since all the stimuli which fall during systole are entirely ineffective. By using very strong stimuli it is possible to intercalate extra contractions before the heart has returned to the base line, *i. e.* before diastole is complete. So that in this way one may obtain almost a continuous contraction (presenting however waves on its summit), which differs from the tetanus of skeletal muscle in the fact that its height is no greater than the height of a single contraction.

Only when the functional continuity of the heart muscle is impaired by the 'block' effect of vagal stimulation or by the administration of muscarine is it possible to obtain phenomena even superficially analogous to the summation of contractions in skeletal muscle.[1]

FACTORS MODIFYING THE ACTIVITY OF CARDIAC MUSCLE

INFLUENCE OF TENSION AND DISTENSION

When we examine the behaviour of a heart isolated from the central nervous system and from the rest of the body, as for instance in the heart-lung preparation (*vide* p. 955), we find that it has a marvellous power of adaptation, *i. e.* of regulating its activity according to the mechanical demands which are made upon it. Thus while we may maintain the venous inflow constant so that the heart is sending out a litre of blood per minute, it makes no difference to the output of the heart whether the average arterial pressure, and therefore the resistance to the outflow of blood, be maintained at 80 or 160 mm. Hg., although in the latter case the heart must do exactly twice as much work in order to maintain the outflow at the same level. Again if we maintain the arterial pressure constant and alter the venous inflow, we find that within very wide limits the heart is able to expel against the arterial resistance the whole of the blood which flows into it from the veins. In this way we can alter the output of a small heart of 50 gms. from 300 to 3000 c.c. per minute. As we should expect, this variation in the work done by the heart is associated with corresponding variations in the chemical changes which occur at each heart beat. Evans has shown that the respiratory exchanges of the heart increase *pari passu* with the work it has to do. Thus in an isolated dog's heart, weighing 70 grms., with a constant inflow and output of 35 litres per hour, raising the arterial pressure from 80 mm. Hg. to 140 mm. Hg. increased the oxygen consumption from 228 to 404 c.c. per hour. In another experiment with a heart of 59 grms., in which the arterial pressure was maintained constant at 80 mm. Hg., increasing the output from 9·3 to 92 litres per hour raised the oxygen consumption from 155 to 649 c.c. per hour. In these experiments the maximum efficiency of the heart $\left(\frac{\text{work done in calories}}{\text{total metabolism in calories}}\right)$ varied between 20 and 30 per cent., and was of the same order as that found for voluntary muscle.

Careful investigation of the volume and pressure changes of the heart under varying conditions of arterial resistance and venous filling enables us to throw some light on the mechanism of this power of adaptation. Let us take first the changes in volume as recorded by the cardiometer. A heart is contracting 100 times per minute and forcing out at each beat 10 c.c. of blood into the aorta against an average pressure of 80 mm. Hg., with systolic and diastolic pressures respectively of 100 and 60 mm. Hg. In order that the left ventricle may force 10 c.c. of blood against this resistance,

[1] According to Mines the effect of vagus excitation in enabling the production of summation is due to the shortening of the refractory period which results from vagal stimulation.

the pressure in its interior must rise at each heart beat above the maximum systolic pressure in the aorta, *e. g.* to 110 mm. Hg. The aortic valves will open as soon as the pressure rises above 60 mm. Hg. The arterial resistance is now increased so as to bring the average pressure up to 120 mm. Hg. The heart now may raise the pressure in its interior to 120 mm. Hg. This will be higher than the diastolic pressure in the aorta and a certain amount of blood will escape, but the outflow of blood will cease as soon as the pressure in the aorta is equal to that in the ventricle. Diastole will then occur, the ventricle will relax before it has emptied out 10 c.c. of blood. Let us assume it has forced out 3 c.c. of blood—it will then contain an excess of 7 c.c. of blood at the end of diastole. Meanwhile the venous inflow is proceeding at the same rate as before, so that at the end of diastole it has 7 c.c. more blood than it had at the end of the previous beat, *i. e.* its diastolic volume will be increased and the heart will be dilated. At the increased beat we find that the contraction of the ventricle is much more forcible. The maximum pressure now rises to 130 mm. Hg. and 8 c.c. of blood are sent out into the aorta. At the end of this beat the heart will be still fuller than before, containing an excess of 9 c.c. of blood. The third beat is still more forcible, the intraventricular pressure rising to a maximum of 140 mm. Hg., and 10 c.c. of blood are expelled. After this the heart goes on beating regularly, expelling 10 c.c. of blood at each beat, *i. e.* the same amount as it receives from the veins, and the arterial pressure is maintained constant at an average of 120 mm. Hg. But the heart remains more dilated than it was previously, since it contains an excess of 9 c.c. of blood. If now the arterial resistance be suddenly reduced to its previous amount, the first beat after the change may send out 17 c.c. of blood, the second beat 12 c.c. of blood and the third beat 10 c.c. as before. We see therefore that the energy set free at each contraction of the heart is increased by increasing the volume of the heart; but increased volume of the heart means increased length of the muscular

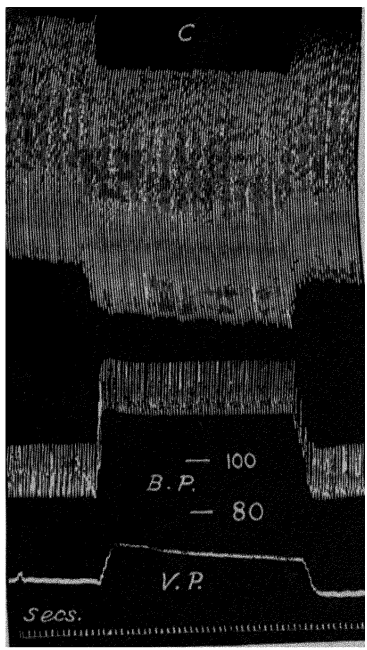


FIG. 447. Effect of increased arterial pressure on the volume changes of the heart, with a steady inflow of 154 c.c. blood per 10 seconds.

C. = cardiometer curve. B.P. = arterial blood pressure. V.P. = pressure in the inferior vena cava. The lines 100 and 80 show the height of the blood pressure in mm. Hg.

fibres composing its wall, so we arrive at a statement similar to that made previously for voluntary muscles, namely, that the energy of contraction is a function of the length of the muscle fibres, *i. e.* to the extent of active surface involved. This reaction of the heart to increasing distension has long been known but was ascribed to the excitatory influence of tension on the muscle fibres. It is evident that in a resting heart increasing distension of its cavities will tend to stretch its muscle fibres and therefore to exert a

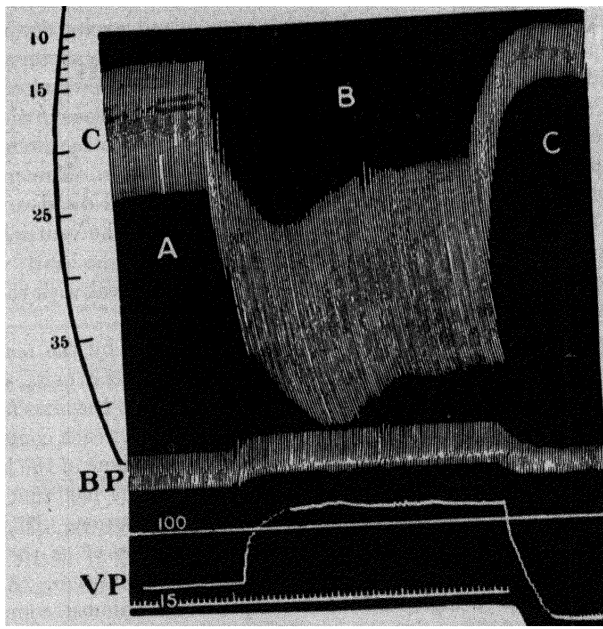


FIG. 448. Effect of alterations in venous supply on volume of heart. Heart, 67 gms.

	Arterial pressure		Venous pressure		Output of heart in 10 secs.
A . . .	124	=	95	=	86
B . . .	130	=	145	=	140
C . . .	124	=	55	=	33

The curved line at the side represents the value of the cardiometer excursions in capacity of ventricles in c.c.

tension on them. By an accurate record of the pressure changes within the contracting ventricle under varying conditions, it is possible to exclude the tension on the fibres as the determining factor. In a heart beating regularly the inflow of blood is proceeding during diastole, during the relaxation of the ventricles, *i. e.* the muscles are giving before the inflowing blood. The latter is therefore able to distend the heart without exercising more than a minimum pressure on its walls, and it is found that the pressure in the ventricles may be approximately zero at the end of diastole whether the heart is contracting against a resistance of 80 mm. Hg. or a resistance of 120 mm. Hg., or whether it is receiving 5 c.c. or 10 c.c. during the period of diastole.

With a larger outflow or a bigger resistance the energy of contraction is increased, although the tension on the heart wall at the beginning of the contraction is not altered. The only condition then, which always changes *pari passu* with the energy of contraction, is the distension of the heart cavities, *i. e.* the length of its muscle fibres; and we are therefore justified in regarding this last factor as the one which determines the energy of the response of the muscle to excitation. Naturally if the distension increased beyond a certain extent, it would be associated with increased tension on the muscle fibres. But the changes of initial tension and excitatory response are not proportional. It is evident that the capacity of the heart for adapting itself to changes in mechanical demands made upon it will be limited by the inability of the heart to dilate further, as is probably the case in the intact animal, where its dilatation is limited by the pericardium or by the mechanical disadvantage at which the further dilated heart acts. The more the heart attains a globular form, the greater the mechanical disadvantage of the muscle fibres in raising the pressure in the interior of the ventricles (*vide* p. 960), so that by continually increasing the demands on the heart, we shall finally arrive at a stage at which this organ is unable to deal with the blood applied to it and rapidly fails to expel any of its contents.

The physiological condition of the heart is measured by the maximum pressure which it is able to produce in its cavities when it contracts, starting from a certain initial size or length of fibres. As the heart becomes fatigued this pressure falls, so that the heart must dilate in order that each contraction shall produce the same maximum pressure as before. Fatigue of the heart is shown therefore, not by failure to do its work, but by the fact that it can do its work only when it is undergoing considerable dilatation. Dilatation is therefore a measure of fatigue. What is often spoken of as the tonus of the heart is really synonymous with physiological condition. A heart in good condition has a high tonus. It empties itself almost completely at each beat, even when receiving a considerable quantity of blood during diastole. A heart with a low tonus is in the condition of a fatigued heart. It is widely dilated and when it has finished contracting still contains a large amount of residual blood.

This property of the cardiac muscle is responsible for the power of 'compensation' possessed by a diseased heart. We may take as an example the destruction of one aortic valve, a lesion which can be produced experimentally in a dog. In this case, immediately after the lesion is established, no additional resistance is offered to the expulsion of the blood, and the ventricle will send the normal amount into the aorta. During the succeeding diastole the blood at a high pressure in the aorta will leak back into the ventricle through the damaged valve. The arterial pressure therefore falls rapidly, and the ventricle receives blood from two sides, *i. e.* by regurgitation through the aortic valves, and in the normal way from the auricles and veins. At the end of diastole the ventricle is therefore overfilled. Increased stretching of its fibres however has the effect of exciting an increased contraction, and the heart at its next systole throws out not only the normal

quantity of blood but also that which it has received back from the aorta. The arterial system thus receives at each beat the normal quantity of blood *plus* the amount which leaks back into the ventricle after each systole; so that the amount of blood remaining in the aorta and available for passage on to the capillaries is the same as in the normal animal. On this account, after a lesion of the aortic valves has been established, the average of the arterial pressure remains the same as before, although the oscillations of pressure with each heart beat are increased in extent. The augmented output by the ventricles naturally involves increased work on the part of their muscular walls, which react in the same way as skeletal muscle does to increased work, *i. e.* by hypertrophy. The final effect therefore is a heart bigger than normal, with hypertrophied and thickened walls, but capable of maintaining an adequate circulation throughout all parts of the body; in other words, in the healthy animal complete compensation has taken place.

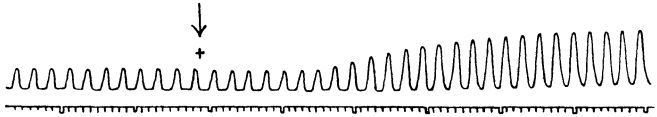


FIG. 449. Tracing of contractions of a frog's heart (by RINGER), showing effect of adding a trace of $CaCl_2$ to the NaCl solution used previously for perfusion. The arrow marks the point at which the addition was made.

INFLUENCE OF TEMPERATURE ON THE HEART RATE

The frequency of the heart varies directly with the temperature. The higher the temperature the greater the frequency. At 40° C. the contraction of the mammalian heart may be four times as frequent as at 25° C.

INFLUENCE OF THE CHEMICAL COMPOSITION OF THE SURROUNDING MEDIUM ON THE HEART MUSCLE

The tissues of the heart, like all other cells of the body, require for the normal display of their functions a definite osmotic environment, *i. e.* a certain molecular concentration of the fluid with which they are bathed. This is equivalent to a 0·65 per cent. sodium chloride solution for the frog's heart, and to a 0·9 per cent. solution for the mammalian heart. As Ringer first showed, the nature of the neutral salt employed for making up the normal solution is all-important to the heart muscle. Thus a strip of muscle from the apex of the tortoise's ventricle as a rule does not beat spontaneously. If it be immersed in a 0·7 per cent. solution of sodium chloride, it begins to beat rhythmically after a short latent period. The contractions soon reach a maximum and then gradually die away. Sodium chloride therefore acts as a stimulus to contraction, but is unable to maintain the beats for any considerable length of time. The strip of muscle ceases contracting in a condition of relaxation. On now adding

to the solution a trace of calcium chloride or calcium sulphate, the contractions begin again (Fig. 449). The relaxations after each contraction then become more and more incomplete, until finally the heart stops in a tonically contracted condition. If now a trace of potassium chloride or phosphate be added, the contractions recommence and may last for many hours, although the solution contains nothing which can furnish energy to the contracting muscle. It has been suggested that the rhythmic contractions of the heart muscle may be the result of the constant chemical stimulus of the inorganic salts present in the blood plasma, sodium acting as a stimulus to contraction, while the calcium salts are necessary for the maintenance of the systolic tone, and the potassium salts for the occurrence of relaxation.

The exact significance of these different salts for the functions of cardiac and other forms of muscular tissue, though they have been the subject of many detailed investigations, must be still regarded as an open question.

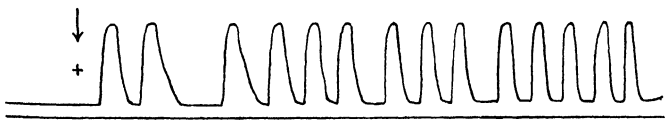


FIG. 450. A frog's heart, poisoned by excess of calcium salts, recovers its spontaneous rhythm on adding a trace of KCl to the perfusion fluid. (RINGER).

The fluids, containing the three salts mentioned above in slightly varying proportions, are commonly used to maintain the beat in an excised heart either of a cold- or of a warm-blooded animal. In the case of the latter it is necessary to keep the fluid saturated with oxygen. According to Locke the addition of glucose to the solutions enables the beats to go on for a longer period of time, and will in fact renew the rhythm of a heart which has ceased beating while being fed with pure saline solution.

The following represent the fluids most frequently used:

RINGER'S FLUID

(for frog's heart)

1	per cent.	sodium bicarbonate	1 c.c.
1	,,	calcium chloride	1 c.c.
1	,,	potassium chloride	0·75 c.c.
0·6	,,	sodium chloride . . .	to 100 c.c.

LOCKE'S FLUID

(for mammalian heart)

0·015 per cent. sodium bicarbonate,
0·024 ,, calcium chloride,
0·042 ,, potassium chloride,
0·92 ,, sodium chloride,
0·1 ,, glucose,
in distilled water.

The influence of the chemical composition of the medium on the contraction of the heart may be investigated in the following ways:

One of the simplest methods is that devised by Gotch, represented in the diagram (Fig. 451). The apparatus consists of a small glass jar with inlet and outlet tubes. A disc of cork is fixed on to a brass rod so that it can be let down into the fluid. On the upper end of the brass rod is poised a light lever with a paper point. To fix the heart in the apparatus, the top of the ventricle is transfixed by a fine hook to which is attached a thread connected with the lever. The heart is fastened to the cork by a pin through the bulbus aortæ. The glass jar is filled with the fluid whose action it is desired to investigate. It is usual to start with Ringer's fluid in order to obtain a normal beat, and then to try in turn the various constituents of this fluid.

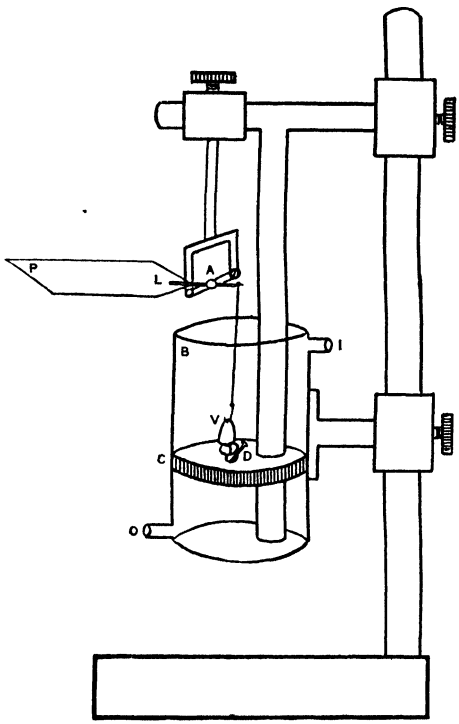


FIG. 451. Gotch's frog heart apparatus.

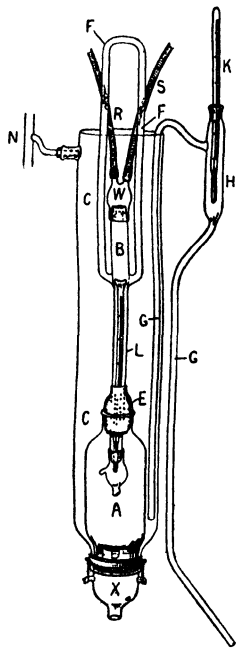


FIG. 452. Brodie's perfusion apparatus for the mammalian heart.

Another method of investigating the action of the heart of cold-blooded animals is by perfusing the heart cavities with the fluid under investigation. Two forms of perfusion are made use of. In the method first introduced by Williams a double cannula is tied into the ventricle, the rest of the heart being cut away. The tubes leading to and away from the perfusion cannula are armed with valves so as to allow the fluid to pass only in one direction. The contractions of the ventricle may be recorded either by connecting the outgoing tube with a manometer, which may be a mercurial or a membrane manometer, or by connecting some form of recording apparatus with the vessel in which the heart is contained, so as to register changes in the volume of the ventricle. A large number of different forms of apparatus have been devised for these purposes.

In another method the fluid is allowed to flow through the whole heart, passing in by the sinus and out by the aorta. Here again the activity of the heart may be registered either by recording the pulsations in the arterial column of fluid or by connecting a tambour or piston recorder with the vessel in which the heart is contained.

The heart of warm-blooded animals can also be investigated by a somewhat similar method. It was shown by Porter that the mammalian heart could be kept alive by transfusing oxygenated blood serum through the coronary vessels, and Locke found that the same results could be obtained by using oxygenated Ringer's solution, modified so as to have the same tonicity as mammalian blood. Brodie's apparatus for this purpose consists of a chamber A to contain the heart, and of a tube B, through which the perfusion fluid is carried to the heart (Fig. 452). Both are enclosed in a large outer jacket C, through which is kept flowing a stream of water at body temperature. The chamber A is bell-shaped and is fitted into the jacketing tube C by a ground-glass joint D. Its upper orifice is closed by a piece of rubber tubing of such size that the perfusion tube B slips through it easily. By means of the glass handle F, fused into the tube about half-way down, B can be drawn up or lowered into any desired position. To its lower end the heart cannula is attached by a ground joint. Its upper end is fitted by a second ground joint with a small bulb W, which has two tubes, R and S, fitted into it. These latter are connected by rubber tubing with aspirators containing the solutions to be perfused. The lower half of the tube B is nearly filled up with a thermometer L, the bulb of which projects into the heart cannula T. The upper half is almost filled with a piece of glass tubing sealed at both ends, so that the perfusion fluid passes in a thin layer down the tube and thus offers a large surface for heating purposes. Also by filling the interior of the tube in this way its capacity is reduced to a very small amount. The large outer tube C is kept supplied with warm water, entering through the tube G and overflowing through a side-tube at the top into a wide T-piece N. By raising or lowering this T-piece the level of the water in the jacket is adjusted. The water-supply comes from a cold-water tap, but on its passage to G passes through a metal spiral heated by a Bunsen burner. By varying the rate of flow and the position of the burner, the temperature of the water can be regulated with considerable accuracy. The upper end of the supply-tube G is provided with a thermometer so that the temperature of the inflowing water can be seen and regulated. In using the apparatus the heart cannula is removed, and the tube B is then passed through E and pushed down until its lower end issues just below the level of the chamber A. The circulation of the warmed water through the jacket is then started and adjusted to the proper temperature. One of the rubber tubes, S, is next attached to the reservoir containing the main perfusion fluid, and the tube B filled with fluid and left to warm while the heart is being prepared. The heart having been excised and washed well in saline so as to remove as much blood as possible, the cannula is tied into the aorta. The cannula is now held under the perfusion tube, filled with the warm saline, and at once attached in its proper position and the perfusion started. A bent pin, to which a long thread is tied, is hooked into the apex of the heart, and the perfusion tube pulled up until the heart lies quite within the warm chamber. When thus drawn up the bulb W lies just below the surface of the water in the outer jacket. The tube is held firmly in position by a clamp which fixes one arm of the handle F. The heart cannula is provided with a side opening V, on to which a long piece of fine rubber tubing is passed. This renders possible the removal of any gas bubbles that may collect in the cannula, or the washing out of the cannula with a stream of fluid if necessary. The beats of the heart are recorded by means of a simple lever attached by the thread previously fixed to the heart.

THE SIGNIFICANCE OF THE REACTION OF THE BLOOD FOR THE HEART BEAT. It was long ago shown by Gaskell that the reaction of the perfusing fluid has a marked influence on the frog's heart. When weak acids are transfused through this heart, there is a gradual diminution of tonus, the beats become smaller and finally disappear. A similar relaxation may be obtained as the result of the action of carbon dioxide. Weak alkalies on the other hand produce a gradual decrease of tonus, so that the heart is finally arrested in a contracted condition. There will thus be some reaction, intermediate between the weak acid and the weak alkaline

fluids, which will represent the optimum reaction for the beat of the frog's heart. Mines has shown that this optimum reaction differs for the different cavities of the heart, and also for the hearts from various animals, a shifting of the reaction of the transfusing fluid to the acid side always bringing about a diminished contraction and tonus, while the opposite effects are produced by an increase in the alkaline reaction. In the mammal under normal conditions, the chief factor affecting the reaction of the blood is the tension of carbonic acid in this fluid; and an increase in the carbonic acid of the blood, when sufficiently pronounced, always brings about dilatation of the heart. The resistance of the hearts of different animals is however not of the same strength. Thus, a dog's heart is much

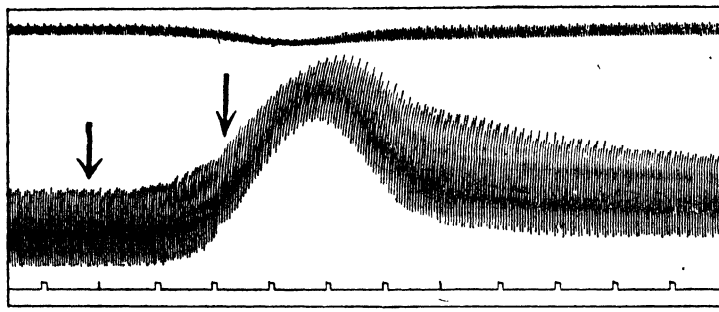


FIG. 453. Volume curve of ventricles (cat) (lower curve). The upper curve is the arterial pressure, maintained by an adjustable resistance at 130 mm. Hg. Between the arrows the air used for artificial respiration was replaced by a mixture containing 20 per cent. CO_2 and 25 per cent. oxygen. Note the dilatation with impaired contraction, followed by increased amplitude of contraction.

more susceptible to the presence of a small excess of carbonic acid in the blood than is the cat's heart (cp. Fig. 453). There is probably an optimum tension of carbon dioxide in the blood, varying between 5 and 6 per cent. of an atmosphere, at which the physiological condition of the ventricular muscle is at an optimum, but the tension may be reduced considerably below this without causing any marked change in the action of the heart.

Yandell Henderson found that vigorous artificial ventilation of the lungs brought about a condition in which the heart's contraction was very forcible and the heart's cavities almost empty. He ascribed this condition to the hypertonicity of the heart muscle produced by washing the carbonic acid out of the blood. These results were however probably due to the mechanical influence of the respiratory movements on the venous filling of the heart; and there seems no reason to believe that the condition of 'acapnia' (deficiency of carbon dioxide in the blood) had anything to do with the results observed. The improving effects of administration of carbon dioxide, described in the first edition of this work, have not been confirmed by more recent and accurate experiments.

THE NUTRITION OF THE HEART

In the frog's heart the muscle fibres are supplied directly by the blood within the cavities, the spongy ventricular wall permitting the access of

blood between the fibres. In the mammalian heart the muscular tissue is nourished through the coronary arteries, which break up into a meshwork of capillaries around all the fibres.

The flow of blood through the coronary circulation may be measured, either in the whole animal or in the heart-lung preparation, by introducing a cannula through the wall of the right auricle into the coronary sinus and collecting the blood from the latter outside the body. Another method is to feed a heart from the aorta through the coronary arteries with blood and collect the total outflow from the cut pulmonary artery. By a comparison of these two methods, it is found in the dog that the blood flow through the coronary sinus forms about three-fifths of the total blood passing through the coronary arteries. It is therefore possible to measure the flow through the coronary sinus in the heart-lung preparation under varying conditions of pressure and output. The figures so obtained multiplied by $\frac{5}{3}$ will represent approximately the total flow through the coronary circulation.

Blood enters the coronary arteries from the aorta both during systole and diastole, though it is probable that the systole of the ventricles exercises a direct effect in increasing the resistance to the flow of blood through the heart, and squeezes out the contained blood into the coronary veins. This may be one reason why the flow of blood through the coronary system is greater in a beating heart than in a heart which is quiescent. The most important factor in determining the flow through the coronary vessels is the arterial pressure. The marked effect of this factor is shown in the following Table:

Heart weight, 107 gms. Total output per minute, 1400 c.c.

Arterial pressure	Coronary circulation per minute
60	50
100	90
128	124
166	208
190	500

We see from this Table that the heart muscle is supplied with blood in proportion to its needs, since its work and its respiratory exchanges increase continuously with the rise of arterial resistance. Indeed in this particular experiment, under the severe test of contracting against an average pressure of 190 mm. Hg., over one-third of the whole blood leaving the heart was passing through its muscular walls, one gramme of muscular tissue being irrigated with 5 c.c. of blood per minute. Another important factor in determining the coronary flow is the effect of the metabolites produced by the contracting heart muscle itself. This is well shown when the heart is asphyxiated. Thus in one experiment while the arterial pressure was maintained constant, the total coronary flow was 56 c.c. per minute. Artificial respiration was then discontinued, and during the succeeding minutes the coronary circulation was 61, 72, 150, 180. The circulation then failed. Carbonic acid produces also an increase in the flow through the coronary arteries, but it is impossible with the highest attainable percentages of carbon dioxide in the blood to effect such an increase in the coronary flow as is observed during asphyxia. The dilatation of the coronary vessels, which

occurs in the latter condition, must therefore be ascribed to non-gaseous metabolites produced by the contracting muscle. Thus the heart contains in itself a mechanism for increasing the flow of blood through its tissues, whenever this becomes inadequate and the muscle is suffering for lack of oxygen. Mechanical and physiological factors thus co-operate in providing the most important muscle in the body with oxygen sufficient for its needs.

If a coronary artery be ligatured, the heart very often beats for one or two minutes with unimpaired force, then a beat is dropped occasionally, and very shortly afterwards the heart stops altogether and the blood pressure falls to zero. On inspection of the heart immediately after the blood pressure has fallen, its muscular wall is seen to be in a state of fibrillar contractions, or '*delirium cordis*.' All the strands of muscle fibres are contracting more or less rhythmically, but the rhythms of no two parts coincide, so that the heart dilates and is incapable of carrying on the circulation. It is probably in this way that sudden deaths occur in cases where the coronary arteries are diseased or calcified. In such cases a man may drop down dead, having previously shown no symptoms of heart mischief.

Delirium cordis may be explained as the result of block, produced by interference with the nutrition of a large part of the cardiac wall. The contractile wave arriving at this part, in some directions will not spread at all, in others will spread at a lower rate, so that different parts of the heart receive the impulse to contract at different times and a state of incoordination results. The same condition can be produced by freezing the apex of the ventricle, so causing a block, or by stimulating the surface of the ventricle at a rate which is greater than can be taken up by the ventricle as a whole, as, *e. g.*, by tetanising currents. Such a condition in the higher animals, as the dog and man, is practically irrecoverable, although in the rabbit, and very rarely in the dog, it is sometimes possible to bring the heart back to a state of rhythmic contraction by kneading it rhythmically.

According to Mines delirium cordis is susceptible of a simpler explanation. This condition is easily brought on in the mammalian heart by stimulation of its surface with strong faradic currents. The effects on the heart muscle of increased frequency of contraction are to decrease the rate of propagation and to decrease the length of the wave of excitation. Ordinarily in the naturally beating heart the wave of excitation is so long and spreads so rapidly, that it excites the whole of the ventricle at a considerable interval before it has ceased in any one part. When however the muscle is stimulated more frequently, the wave becomes slow and short, so that more than one wave can exist at one time in a single chamber. The main factor then, in the production of delirium cordis after obstruction of the coronary artery, would probably be a diminished rate of conduction through the affected part.

SECTION IX

THE NERVOUS REGULATION OF THE HEART

In order that the activity of the heart may be adapted to the needs of the body as a whole, its automatic mechanism must be subject to the central nervous system, which must be able to affect the heart in either of two ways, viz. by increasing or diminishing its activity. This subjection to the integrative action of the central nervous system is also necessary for the sake of the organ itself; otherwise the peripheral adaptation of the heart muscle to change in arterial resistance might result in its exhaustion and permanent damage.

The regulation is effected through the intermediation of afferent and efferent nerve fibres connecting the heart with the central nervous system. The importance of these nerves is shown by the behaviour of animals in which they have been extirpated. Thus a dog, in whom all the nerves of the heart had been divided, survived the operation for eight months, the pulse reading during the time not having appreciably altered and the animal being in a fair condition of health. Although he regained his normal weight after the operation, he was found incapable of carrying out even a moderate amount of work, such as that represented by running, since the mechanism for increasing the action of the heart in response to the needs of the muscles had been lost.

THE EFFERENT CARDIAC NERVES

The heart in vertebrates is supplied with nerve fibres from two sources: from the medulla oblongata along the vagus nerve, and from the upper dorsal region of the spinal cord through the mediation of the sympathetic system.

The fibres, which run through the sympathetic system, take a somewhat different course in the animals on which the regulation of the heart's activity has been chiefly studied, viz. the frog and the mammal. In the frog (Fig. 454) the sympathetic fibres leave the spinal cord by the anterior root of the third spinal nerve; they then pass through the ramus communicans to the corresponding sympathetic ganglion, whence they run up through the second ganglion and the annulus of Vieussens to the first ganglion; they then pass into the cervical sympathetic strand to the *ganglion trunci vagi*; here they join the vagus and pass down with the true vagus fibres to the heart.

In the dog (Fig. 455) the sympathetic fibres leave the spinal cord by the anterior roots of the second and third dorsal nerves, run in the

white rami communicantes to the stellate ganglion, and thence by the annulus of Vieussens to the inferior cervical ganglion. Cardiac branches convey the sympathetic fibres to the heart and are given off from the stellate ganglion, the inferior cervical ganglion, and from the trunk of the vagus.

By the nicotine method it is possible to trace out the cell connections of these fibres. As they leave the cord they are medullated nerve fibres, similar to the

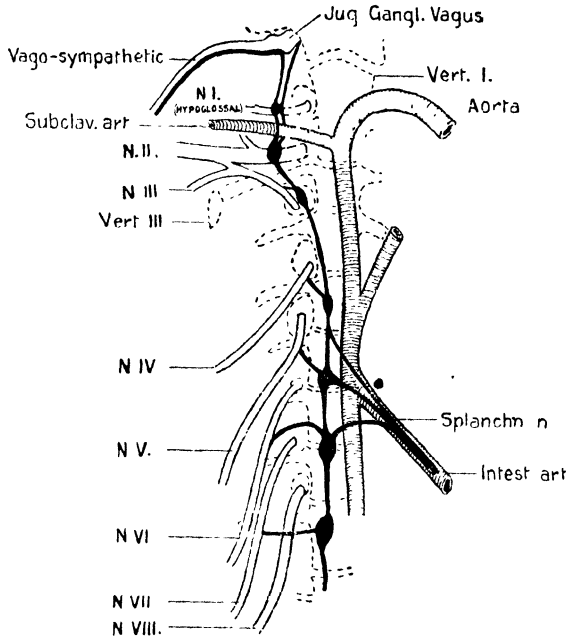


FIG. 454. Sympathetic chain of frog (right side) to show connection with vagus nerve. The sympathetic ganglia with their branches are black. Of the peripheral branches only the splanchnic nerve is represented. (Modified from ECKER)

other fibres making up the visceral outflow throughout the dorsal region; the white fibres pass along the ramus communicans to the stellate ganglion, where they end, forming *synapses* with the cells of the ganglion. Here fresh relays of fibres, which are non-medullated, start and carry the impulses to the heart along the various cardiac nerves just mentioned. In the heart these fibres are distributed to the muscle fibres without the intervention of any other ganglion cells. On the other hand the fibres, which leave the vagus to pass to the heart, make connection with the cells of Remak's ganglion, and probably with all the other intrinsic cardiac ganglia described above, whence non-medullated fibres carry their impulses to the heart muscle.

ACTION OF THE VAGUS

The action of the vagus fibres on the heart is almost identical in frog and mammal. If in the dog the peripheral end of the cut vagus be stimulated,

while the arterial blood pressure is being recorded by means of a mercurial manometer, the pulse is seen to become slower, or with a stronger stimulus to cease altogether, and the blood pressure falls towards zero. On discontinuing the stimulus, the heart begins to beat again and the pressure rises after a few beats to normal (Fig. 456).

If the stimulation of the vagus be prolonged, the blood pressure, on dis-

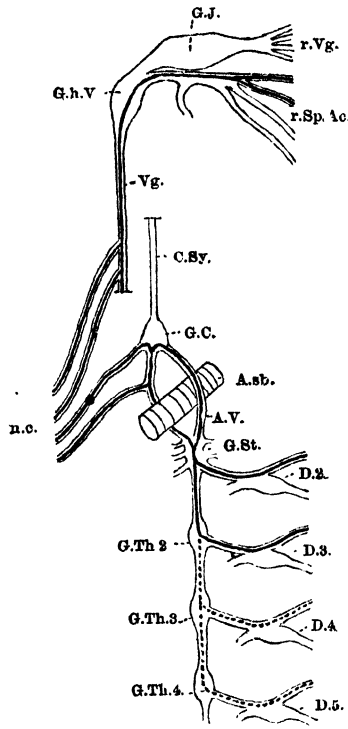


FIG. 455. Diagram of cardiac inhibitory and accelerator fibres in the dog. (From FOSTER.)

r.Vg, roots of the vagus; r.Sp.Ac, roots of the spinal accessory; G.J, ganglion jugulare; G.h.V, ganglion trunci vagi; Vg, trunk of vagus nerve; C.Sy, cervical sympathetic; G.C, inferior cervical ganglion; A.V, annulus of Vieussens; A.sb, subclavian artery; n.c, cardiac nerves; G.St, ganglion stellatum; D2, D3, D4, D5, second, third, fourth, and fifth dorsal spinal roots; G.Th, ganglia of the thoracic chain.

continuance of the stimulus, may rise above normal owing to the asphyxia of the vaso-motor centres produced by the prolonged cessation of the circulation. Even during the application of the stimulus the heart often begins to beat again with a slow rhythm. In this case we speak of an 'escape' of the heart from the vagus influence. This escape is generally confined to the ventricles, and the heart beats are found on opening the chest to be purely ventricular, the auricles and great veins remaining in a state of

diastole. Vagus escape is favoured by distension of the heart cavities, and is often synchronous with the respiratory efforts, which supervene after a certain duration of inhibition as a result of the asphyxia of the respiratory centre.

When the arterial system is dilated, so that the mean systemic pressure, and consequently the venous pressure during cardiac inhibition, are low, or when the asphyxial gasps of the animal are prevented by anæsthesia or by a section of the spinal cord, the heart may fail to recover from the inhibition produced even by a transitory stimulation of the vagus. In such cases it is necessary to knead the heart in order to restore its rhythmic action.

To study the influence of the vagus on the auricles and ventricles respectively, it is necessary to work with the chest opened and to record separately the contractions of the different segments of the heart. It is then

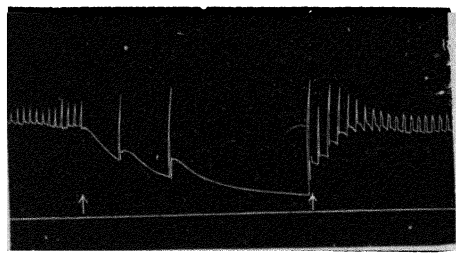


FIG. 456. Blood pressure tracing from carotid of dog (taken with Hürthle's manometer), showing effect of excitation of vagus (between the arrows). o, abscissa line of no pressure.

found that the vagus may affect the heart in one of several ways. Its most marked action is on that part of the heart where it enters, viz. the venous end. It may affect that part of the auricle corresponding to the primitive sinus venosus, where the rhythm of the whole heart is determined. In this case the sole effect of the vagus on the auricles and ventricles will consist in an alteration of rhythm. They may cease to beat altogether or they may give beats of normal strength but at a slower rhythm than before. Often indeed under these conditions the beats of the ventricles may be increased in size, since the strength and extent of their contractions are determined, not by the strength of the stimulus arriving from the auricles, but by the length of their fibres, and this will be greater with any prolongation of the diastolic period, and consequent increased diastolic filling of the ventricle.

If the vagus acts on the auricles without affecting the sinus part of the auricles (sino-auricular node), the rhythm will be unaltered, but the response of the auricles to the impulses received by them will be diminished, and the amplitude of the excursions of the lever attached to them will therefore be considerably reduced. Indeed the auricular contractions may be reduced to such an extent that they cause no movement of the lever. It is only by observing their surface that one may perceive a slight contraction of

their fibres. Under such circumstances the rhythm of the ventricles will be unchanged.

Generally the vagus absolutely stops the action of all parts of the auricles; in such cases the ventricles also cease beating. Very often after a short pause the ventricles commence to beat at a slow rhythm, and it is then seen that they are contracting independently of the auricles and sinus. That the ventricle is really inaugurating the beat is shown by the fact that occasionally one may observe a reversed beat, *i. e.* a contraction of the auricle following instead of preceding each ventricular contraction. Whether the vagus has a direct action on the mammalian ventricle is still doubtful; its effect is at any rate very slight as compared with that on the venous end of the heart. The fact that stimulation of the vagus causes as a rule temporary cessation of the ventricular beat, while functional separation of the ventricles from the auricles causes no such temporary stoppage, would seem to indicate that this nerve has a direct, though slight, action on the ventricles.

Finally the vagus may affect the tissue which conducts the excitatory process from one cavity to another. Under vagus stimulation the auricles may beat at a greater rhythm than the ventricles, a block having been produced in the tissue passing from auricles to ventricles, viz. the auriculo-ventricular bundle.

Engelmann has described these effects of vagus excitation as negatively *chronotropic* (diminution of rhythm), negatively *inotropic* (diminished strength of contraction), and negatively *dromotropic* (diminished conductivity), and has distinguished a fourth action, viz. one on the irritability of the muscle to direct stimuli, which he calls negatively *bathmotropic*. He ascribes these four actions to four different sets of nerve fibres, but it is evident that they are due not so much to a difference in the nature of the impulse as to a difference in the place of incidence of the impulse.

Thus, if the vagus fibres which are distributed to the remains of the sinus are specially active, we shall get alterations of rhythm affecting the whole heart. If those which supply the A.V. bundle are excited, the most pronounced effect will be on the propagation of the excitatory process from auricles to ventricles.

Practically the same description will apply to the action of the vagus on the frog's heart. Since it is easy in this animal to register the contractions of the empty heart, it is possible to show that the vagus has a direct inhibitory action on the ventricles, diminishing the strength of its contraction in response to the stimuli transmitted to it from the venous end. This action of the vagus on the ventricle is not however universal, and in the tortoise it is impossible to show any such action. In both these animals the auricles show the same effects as in the mammal, viz. an influence limited to the rhythm when only the sinus is affected, or a diminution of the strength of contraction when the sinus is unaffected and the chief action of the vagus is on the auricular muscle.

Ever since the discovery in 1845 by the brothers E. H. and E. F. Weber of the action of the vagus on the heart, much work has been expended with a view to determining the intimate nature of the inhibitory process. In the former neurogenic theory it was supposed that the vagus altered the

activity, perhaps by a process of 'interference,' of the ganglion cells responsible for the origination of the rhythm. Many facts however point to the inhibitory impulses as being continued to the heart muscle itself. Thus tetanisation of any portion of the frog's ventricle, especially if it be filled with blood, causes an evident relaxation of the part between the electrodes. Application of nicotine to the heart prevents stimulation of the trunk of the vagus from having any influence on the heart, presumably from paralysis of the cells of Remak's ganglion, which lie at the termination of the vagus fibres, or of the synapses between the vagus fibres and the ganglion cells. It is still possible to inhibit the heart by direct stimulation either of the fibres leaving this ganglion in the sino-auricular junction, or of the nerve trunks which run in the inter-auricular septum. We must conclude therefore that the inhibition of the heart muscle is peripheral and depends on the direct action of the nerve fibres on the muscle cells themselves. These nerve fibres are paralysed by atropine, after administration of which no inhibitory effects can be produced by stimulation of nerve or muscle or any part of the heart. On the other hand, muscarine apparently stimulates the inhibitory nerve-endings, and when applied to the isolated auricle or ventricle causes weakening of the beat and finally complete inhibition, an effect which can be removed by its antagonist atropine.

Two views have been held as to the essential nature of the inhibitory process. According to that put forward by Claude Bernard, the natural tendency of any tissue during rest is towards anabolism. Activity involves disintegration or breaking down of the living material, and this disintegration must be succeeded by a process of building up or anabolism, which restores the tissue to its previous functional condition. On this view the state of inhibition would merely prolong the period of rest intervening between two periods of activity, so allowing a greater time for restitution to take place, with a corresponding improvement in the functional capacity of the tissue. According to Hering and Gaskell a state of anabolism can be induced in a tissue comparable to the state of sudden disintegration which is associated with activity. Excitation of the vagus nerve does not merely allow the normal process of building up, which goes on during rest, to take place, but actually hastens this process, just as the excitation of a motor nerve to a skeletal muscle induces an active breakdown of the contractile tissue, or the excitation of the augmentor nerve to the heart induces an increased rate of beat and therefore increased functional activity.

If stimulation of an inhibitory nerve induces the opposite chemical change to that occurring during activity, one would expect to find that, just as an active part of a tissue is negative to an inactive part, so a part of the tissue which is under the influence of an inhibitory stimulus should be electro-*positive* to any part which is not being so stimulated. According to Gaskell this condition is realised in the heart of the tortoise. The auricles are brought to a standstill by separating them from the sinus venosus. The apex of one auricle is then injured by heat, and the injured point and uninjured base are led off to a galvanometer. The usual demarcation current,

dependent on the difference of potential between the injured and uninjured portion, is thus observed. If the vagus be now stimulated, the auricles remain at rest but the demarcation current is increased, *i. e.* a positive variation is produced—an electrical condition opposed in sign to that which would take place when the auricles contract. Doubt still exists however as to the exact interpretation to be put on this experiment.

It was mentioned above that potassium salts promote relaxation of the ventricle, so acting as antagonists to calcium salts. If potassium salts be present in a sufficient concentration in the circulating fluid, the heart is brought to a standstill in a condition of diastole, as if the vagus mechanism were in action. On removal of the excess of K ions, the heart at once starts beating again. Howell has shown that during stimulation of the vagus the amount of potassium in a diffusible form in the heart muscle is increased. He has therefore suggested that the action of the vagus in stopping the heart is due to the liberation of potassium salts. Potassium normally exists in a large percentage in the heart muscle, but in a combined form; and Howell assumes that stimulation of the vagus effects a dissociation of this combined potassium, so that the liberated ions are able to exert their inhibitory influence on the heart.

THE TONIC ACTION OF THE VAGUS

If both vagi of a mammal be divided, the heart as a rule beats more frequently, showing that under normal circumstances tonic impulses are constantly descending the vagi and holding the heart's action in check. The extent of the quickening, which is produced by section of the vagi, varies in different animals and is apparently associated with the conditions of life of the animal and its powers of carrying out prolonged muscular exertions. Thus in the dog or horse the pulse, which is normally slow, may be doubled in frequency by section of the vagi. In the rabbit, which has a frequent pulse and is able to run only for a short distance, division of both vagi causes very little alteration in the pulse rate. It is stated that the tonic action of the vagi is much greater in the hare than in the rabbit.

This tonic action may be increased by various conditions of the blood, *e. g.* the presence of drugs such as morphia.

ACTION OF THE SYMPATHETIC CARDIAC NERVES

Stimulation of the sympathetic cardiac nerves at any part of their course has an effect on the heart the exact reverse of that produced by stimulating the vagi. In most cases the pulse frequency is increased in consequence of the action of these nerves on that part of the heart from which the rhythm starts. The frequency, which is attained by maximal stimulation of the accelerator nerves, is independent of the previous rate of the heart beat. The increase in rate involves a shortening of the time of the cardiac cycle, which chiefly affects the diastolic period. The size of the auricular and ventricular contractions may be increased at the same time as their rate. In fact, like the vagus nerves, the sympathetic fibres of the heart can influence rhythm, strength of contraction, or conduction from auricle to ventricle, according to the part of the heart muscle which is affected.

The augmentor effect on the strength of the ventricular beats is often very marked. The sympathetic fibres are much less easily tired than the vagus fibres, and have a longer latent period. Whereas the latent period of the vagus in the mammal is considerably less than one second, that of the accelerator nerves may amount to ten or even twenty seconds (Fig. 457).

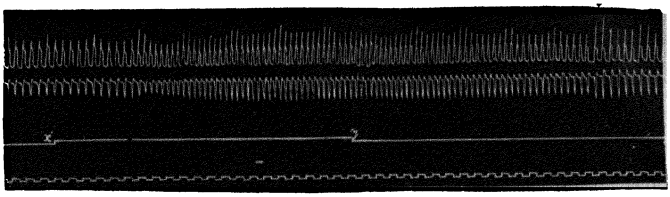


FIG. 457. Tracings of ventricular (upper curve) and auricular contractions (lower curve).
From x to y the accelerator nerves stimulated. Lowest line = seconds.

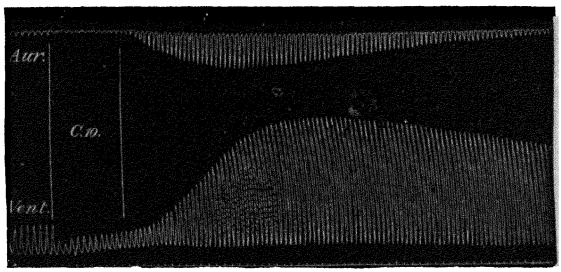


FIG. 458. Tracing to show effect of stimulation of the vago-sympathetic nerve on the frog's heart. The rhythm is unaltered, but the beats of auricle and ventricle are much decreased in size. On ceasing the stimulation the beats become augmented. (GASKELL.)

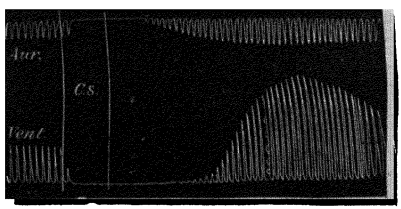


FIG. 459. A tracing similar to Fig. 458. In this case however, the stimulation caused complete stoppage (inhibition) of both auricular and ventricular beats. (GASKELL.)

Hence if the vago-sympathetic of the frog be stimulated, the first effect is inhibition due to vagus action. The vagus nerve-endings then become fatigued, and the influence of the accelerator fibres makes itself apparent; the heart commences to beat, and the beats become more rapid and forcible than before (Figs. 458, 459).

Like the vagus, the sympathetic nerve fibres appear to exercise a tonic influence on the heart so that, after extirpation of the stellate ganglion on each side, the pulse frequently becomes permanently slowed.

THE ACTION OF ADRENALINE ON THE HEART

The medullary part of the suprarenal glands forms and secretes into the blood stream a substance, adrenaline, which has a marked action both on the heart and blood vessels and plays therefore an important part in the regulation of the circulation. Whether this secretion is a constant one has not yet been fully ascertained, but there is no question that under certain specified conditions there may be a marked influx of this substance into the blood stream. The action of adrenaline on any part of the body is practically identical with that of excitation of the sympathetic nerve supply to the same part. Its isolated action on the heart is best studied on the perfused heart or

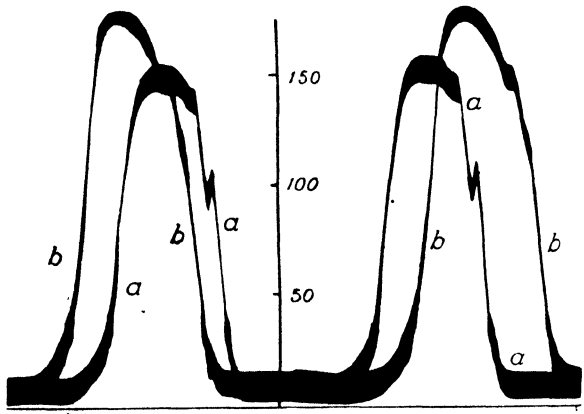


FIG. 460.

Intraventricular pressure tracings (left ventricle) from dog's heart (heart-lung preparation). (To be read from right to left.) The scale shows pressure in mm. Hg.

a. Under influence of adrenaline.
b. Under simultaneous influence of adrenaline and CO_2 (15 per cent.) (PATTERSON).

in the heart-lung preparation. On adding $\frac{1}{10}$ mgm. of this substance to the 500 c.c. of blood circulating through the heart-lung preparation, a maximum effect is at once produced and this lasts for 15 to 20 minutes. The action is, like that of the sympathetic nerve, accelerator and augmentor. Through its influence on the sinus or the sino-auricular node, the rhythm of the heart is markedly increased, in the dog to about 240 per minute. At the same time the energy of each contraction is augmented. This is especially shown in a heart which is beginning to fail and is therefore undergoing a certain degree of dilatation. Directly the adrenaline reaches the heart, the contractions become extremely energetic so that the heart rapidly diminishes in volume, the venous pressure falls, and the blood flowing into it at each diastole is thrown out with violence into the aorta. The more powerful beat enables the output of the heart at each beat to be maintained or even increased, in spite of the shorter duration of the systole. With each beat the maximum pressure in the ventricle therefore rises to a marked extent (*see* Fig. 460).

The strain on the ventricular wall of this sudden contraction, which is necessary to empty the heart during the period of systole, is often so great that small hæmorrhages are produced throughout the substance of the muscle. The stimulation effect of adrenaline is shown moreover by the considerable rise in the respiratory exchanges of the heart under the influence of this substance, the oxygen intake being increased two or three times above that which obtained before the administration of the adrenaline. The action of adrenaline therefore is in general to enable the heart to cope with a bigger strain, either in the shape of arterial resistance or increased venous inflow, than it could do without the stimulus of this substance.

The wonderful adaptation of the heart to its functions is illustrated moreover by the fact that adrenaline, which increases the metabolism of the heart to such an extent, exercises at the same time a dilator effect on the coronary vessels, so that apart from the high arterial pressure and the metabolites produced by the contracting heart muscle, the vessels are dilated by the action of the same hormone which evokes the need for an increased flow of blood through the working muscle.

There is thus a marked antagonism in the influence of the two common hormones on the heart, both of them being produced during general muscular activity. Carbonic acid in excess causes dilatation of the heart, diminished functional activity, slowing of rhythm. Adrenaline causes increased functional activity, diminution of cardiac volume, and increased rhythm. The action of adrenaline is so pronounced that it is possible to administer 20 or 30 per cent. carbonic acid to a heart-lung preparation without altering its output, if adrenaline be administered at the same time. The heart is slowed by the carbonic acid, but the beat is maintained and contraction is effective in emptying the heart of its content.

THE HEART REFLEXES

The part of the nervous system chiefly concerned in the central co-ordination of the various afferent impulses which act on the heart is the medulla oblongata. It is in this situation that we find the nerve cells giving origin to the efferent fibres of the vagus nerves, and also the collection of grey matter in which the afferent fibres of the vagus terminate. Direct stimulation of the vagus centre may cause slowing and stoppage of the heart. The tonic influence of the vagi can be abolished by destruction of this centre. In this region we also find the vaso-motor centre, so that the activity of one can affect that of the other. This cardiac centre may be played upon by impulses arriving at it through various afferent nerves or from the higher parts of the brain and giving rise to the changes of the pulse rate associated with the emotional conditions, or it may be directly affected by the composition of the blood circulating through its capillaries.

The nerve cells, which give off the accelerator or augmentor fibres, are situated in the intermedio-lateral tract of the spinal cord, near the point of origin of these fibres. We might therefore speak of an augmentor centre in

this region; but it seems probable that the activity of these cells is subordinate to impulses arriving at them from the common meeting-place of visceral impulses, viz. the medulla.

The most important of the afferent nerves, which affect reflexly the action of the heart, are the nerves coming from the heart itself and the aorta. In the mammalian ventricle, nerve fibres can be seen running over the surface of the ventricle which are entirely afferent, stimulation of their peripheral ends causing no effect on the heart beat. Stimulation of their central ends may cause one of four conditions:

(*a*) Slowing of the heart.
(*b*) Rise of blood pressure from constriction of the splanchnic area.
(*c*) Fall of blood pressure by dilatation of the arterioles of the body.

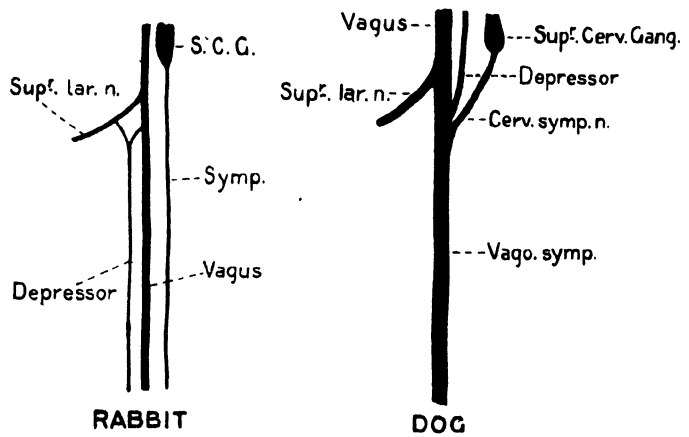


FIG. 461. Diagrams of the connections of the depressor nerve in the rabbit and dog, according to Cyon. It will be noticed that in the latter animal the depressor nerve runs in the vagus trunk, together with the sympathetic nerve, for the greater part of its course.

(*d*) Reflex movements. The heart does not seem to be provided with the nerves of ordinary or tactile sensibility. There is no doubt however that under abnormal circumstances impulses arising in the heart can give rise to sensations of pain, which are referred not so much to the heart as to the surface of the body over the left side of the chest and left arm, in the region of the distribution of the cutaneous branches of the second and third dorsal roots.

An important afferent nerve coming from the heart, or rather from the beginning of the aorta, is the *depressor nerve*. In the rabbit this rises by two roots, one from the trunk and the other from the superior laryngeal branch of the vagus, and runs parallel with the vagus to the cardiac plexus (Fig. 461). It is purely afferent, stimulation of its peripheral end causing no effect. On stimulating its central end, fall of blood pressure (Fig. 462) and reflex slowing of the heart are produced, the latter effect being abolished by section of both vagi. It has been shown by Bayliss that the depressor effect

is due to universal dilatation of the blood vessels of the body, the greater part however being played by the splanchnic area. This nerve is probably brought into action whenever the pressure in the aorta is so high as to constitute a serious check to the expulsive action of the heart. It is stated that under these conditions a current of action may be detected in the trunk of the depressor nerve and that, if both depressor nerves be cut when the aortic pressure is high, the blood pressure rises still higher. It presents a means by which the heart can be relieved of a load too great for its powers, and therefore dangerous to its future welfare. In many animals the depressor fibres are bound up with the trunk of the vagus and cannot be excited separately.

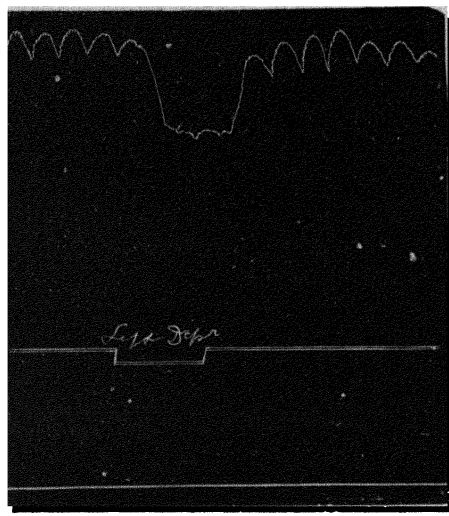


FIG. 462. Blood-pressure curve from rabbit, showing effect of excitation of central end of depressor nerve (mercurial manometer). (BAYLISS.)

Stimulation of the central end of the vagus generally causes reflex slowing of the heart through the cardiac centre and the other vagus. Inflation of the lungs causes acceleration of the heart—whether due to diminution of the tonic action of the vagi, or to reflex excitation of the accelerator nerves, is not known. Most sensory nerves of the body when stimulated give either a slowing or a quickening of the heart. Stimulation of the fifth nerve, as in the nasal mucous membrane, always causes reflex inhibition.

There are two very important reflex mechanisms associated with the heart itself. If the arterial pressure be raised, either by stimulation of the splanchnic nerves or by obstruction of the aorta, the heart is slowed. In this slowing, which is effected through the vagus, two factors are concerned. In the first place any rise of arterial pressure within the skull raises the intracranial pressure and excites the vagus centre directly. In the second place impulses starting in the root of the aorta and in the left ventricle travel to the central nervous system chiefly by way of the depressor fibres and cause a reflex slowing of the heart. According to 'Marey's law' *the pulse rate*

varies inversely as the blood pressure. This relation, though general, is not universal. Thus the rise in blood pressure and the increased filling of the heart associated with muscular exercise are attended by an increased pulse rate. In the quickening of the heart, which accompanies bodily exercise, another reflex mechanism comes into play, to which attention has been called by Bainbridge. Any distension of the right auricle evokes a reflex quickening of the pulse rate, chiefly by diminishing the vagus tone but also probably to a less extent by reflex stimulation of the reflex accelerator nerves. It thus seems that the heart is connected with the heart centre in the medulla, governing its rate of beat, by two sets of afferent nerves, which are stimulated by a rise of pressure within the cavities to which they are distributed. Stimulation of the one set coming from the arterial end—*e. g.* the left ventricle, causes a reflex slowing of the heart. Stimulation of the other set, which are distributed to the venous end of the heart, evokes increased frequency of the heart beat. Both these sets of impulses are of great importance in correlating the activity of the heart and the amplitude of the circulation with the metabolic needs of the body as a whole.

THE PULSE RATE IN MAN

The normal pulse rate in man is about 72 per minute. It is largely influenced by bodily movements. It varies considerably with age. The following Table represents the average pulse rate in man at different ages:

Age in years		Pulse rate per minute
0	. .	136
5	. .	88
10–15	. .	78
15–60	. .	68–72

It must be remembered that marked differences in the pulse rate may be found in different individuals without having any pathological significance. Thus pulse rates of 30 per minute and 120 per minute have been observed in men who were otherwise perfectly healthy. The pulse rate is raised by warmth and diminished by cold applied to the surface of the skin. It is also increased somewhat by the taking of food. The act of swallowing causes a reflex quickening of the rate by inhibition of the tonic vagus action.

SECTION X

THE NERVOUS CONTROL OF THE BLOOD VESSELS

DURING muscular activity the metabolism of the body as a whole, judged by its gaseous interchanges, may be increased six or eight fold. This increase is due almost exclusively to the additional metabolic changes consequent on muscular activity. The muscles therefore during activity require a greater supply of blood in order to obtain from it the oxygen necessary for their contraction, and to get rid of the carbon dioxide, which is the end-result of their activity. In the same way every organ of the body requires an increased blood supply during activity. Blood must be diverted from the inactive to the active tissues. All parts of the body must co-operate in subordination to the activity of that tissue whose function for the time being is of the greatest importance to the organism. This subordination of the part to the whole, *i. e.* of every part to the organ whose activity is specially evoked by the needs of the whole organism, is chiefly effected through the central nervous system, though local and chemical mechanisms also play some part in the process.

Our knowledge of the nervous control of the blood vessels dates from the discovery by Claude Bernard that nerve fibres run in the cervical sympathetic to the blood vessels of the head and neck, and maintain them in a state of tonic constriction. Bernard showed that if in the rabbit the cervical sympathetic on one side be divided, the vessels in the corresponding ear dilate. Vessels come into prominence which were previously invisible, and on account of the greater flow of blood thus produced, the ear on the side of the section becomes warmer than the normal ear. If the head end of the divided sympathetic nerve be stimulated, all the vessels of the ear contract, and the ear becomes colder than that of the other side. The fact, that the dilatation of the vessels is produced by section of the cervical sympathetic and lasts for a considerable time after any irritant effect of the section must have passed off, shows that the ear vessels are *continually* under the influence of tonic constrictor impulses proceeding to them along the nerve fibres of the cervical sympathetic.

It can be easily shown that these impulses take their origin in the central nervous system. The paralysis of the ear vessels, though lessening the resistance to the flow of blood there, affects too small a vascular area to have any marked influence on the total resistance of the circulation and therefore on the arterial blood pressure. If the spinal cord be divided on a level with the origin of the first dorsal nerve, the blood pressure sinks considerably.

In the dog it may fall from 120 mm. Hg. to 40 or 50 mm. Hg. The heart after the section beats more rapidly than before, so that the fall of pressure must be ascribed to a change affecting the blood vessels and lowering the resistance to the flow of blood. Since a maximal effect on the blood pressure is produced by section of the cord at this level, one may conclude that the tonic constrictor impulses to all the vessels of the body pass through this segment of the cord before leaving it to be distributed to the arterial walls. The source of these impulses may be made out by studying the effect of sections through different levels of the nervous system. Division of the cord at about the first or second lumbar nerve causes no effect on the blood pressure. On making a section at the sixth dorsal root a considerable fall of pressure is produced, almost but not quite as great as that observed after section at the first dorsal segment; stimulation of the lower end of the cut cord causes almost universal vascular constriction and a large rise of blood pressure. On the other hand, the fall of pressure is maximal when the section is carried through the first dorsal segment or through any part of the cervical cord. Section of the crura cerebri, or of the brain stem at the upper border of the fourth ventricle, leaves the blood pressure unaffected. Destruction of a small region of the medulla situated on each side of the middle line in the neighbourhood of the facial nucleus, *i. e.* in the forward prolongation of the lateral columns after they have given off their fibres to the decussating pyramids, causes an immediate and maximal lowering of the blood pressure.

We must therefore conclude that all the vessels in the body are kept in a state of tonic contraction by impulses arising in this portion of the medulla oblongata, travelling down the cord as far as the dorsal region, and then passing out of the cord by the dorsal and upper lumbar nerves. This conclusion is confirmed by the fact that, whereas stimulation of the anterior roots of the cervical and lower lumbar and sacral nerves has no influence on the blood pressure, a rise of arterial pressure can be obtained by stimulating any of the anterior roots from the first or second dorsal to the second or third lumbar. The same effect is produced by stimulation of the white rami communicantes from these roots to the sympathetic system, or by excitation of the sympathetic system itself.

The portion of the medulla concerned with the sending out of the tonic vaso-constrictor impulses is spoken of as the vaso-motor centre. In this region it is exposed to and played upon by afferent impulses from all portions of the body, from the higher centres of the brain and the cortex cerebri, and especially by afferent impulses travelling by the vagi from the viscera of the chest and abdomen. Whether in the absence of all afferent stimuli the centre would be active is doubtful; all we know is that the sum of the stimuli arriving at the centre produces a state of average continued activity, which is responsible for the maintenance of arterial tone and for the regulation of the arterial blood pressure.

The centre may also be affected directly by changes in its blood supply, or in the composition of the blood flowing through it. Thus anything which

interferes with the gaseous exchanges of the centre, whether obstruction to respiration, absence of oxygen in the air breathed, or a failure of the blood supply as by ligature of the cerebral arteries, calls forth an increased state of activity of the centre. This can be best studied by observing the changes in the blood pressure produced in a curarised animal by the cessation of artificial respiration.

These changes depend partly on the stimulation of the vaso-motor and vagus centres by the venous blood, and partly on the affection of the heart itself. We will first consider them with both vagi cut, in order to shut out the action of the vagus centre. The blood pressure is registered by means of a mercurial manometer in connection with the carotid artery. On leaving off the artificial respiration, the blood pressure may remain at the same height for some seconds, the only change noticed being the absence of the respiratory oscillations. Sooner or later the blood pressure suddenly rises rapidly (Fig. 463, A), and in another ten seconds may reach a height twice as great as it was previously. The heart beats a little more forcibly in consequence of the increased cardiac tension, but its frequency is almost unaltered. The blood pressure remains at this height for about a minute and then gradually falls, the heart beats becoming smaller and smaller until the pressure has sunk to a point very little above the abscissa line (level of no pressure). *This fall in pressure is due to the failure of the heart.* The heart, badly supplied with oxygen, cannot overcome the high resistance presented by the contracted arterioles; it gets overfilled, and gradually loses the power of expelling any of its contents. If, when the blood pressure has sunk to its lowest point, the heart be rapidly cut out of the body, it will begin to beat fairly forcibly, being relieved of the excessive internal tension. The vessels however remain constricted until the death of the animal. This is shown by two facts. If, while the pressure is sinking, artificial respiration be recommenced, the heart supplied with oxygen at once begins to beat more forcibly, and the blood pressure may rise to an even greater height than immediately after the commencement of the asphyxia. Again, if the volume of the kidney be recorded by means of the oncometer, the rise of general blood pressure produced by asphyxia is seen to be accompanied by a marked shrinking of the kidney, and this shrinking endures until the animal dies, showing that the fall of blood pressure following the rise is due, not to a giving way of the arterial resistance, but to failure of the heart.

Similar results are obtained when the vessels to the brain are ligatured, or when the animal has to respire an indifferent gas free from oxygen, such as nitrogen (Fig. 463, B) or hydrogen. In the uncurarised animal the rise of blood pressure is associated with increased respiratory movements and finally with convulsive spasms which may involve practically every muscle of the body.

We have spoken above of the phenomena of asphyxia as being due to the circulation of venous blood. There are however two factors which may be concerned and which may influence the medullary centres and the heart.

When the renewal of the lung ventilation is stopped by ligature of the trachea or by cessation of the respiratory movements, the increasing venosity of the blood involves a diminished percentage of oxygen and an increased percentage of carbon dioxide; and when asphyxia is excited by cessation of the circulation through the medullary centres, these centres may suffer at the same time from lack of oxygen and from the accumulation of carbon dioxide. The question arises whether one or both of these factors are concerned. It is easy to investigate the action of each separately. A pure oxygen lack may be brought about by allowing an animal to breathe some inert gas, such as nitrogen or hydrogen, or in the curarised animal one of these gases may be administered by the pump used for artificial respiration. The effects of accumulation of carbon dioxide in the blood and tissues may be

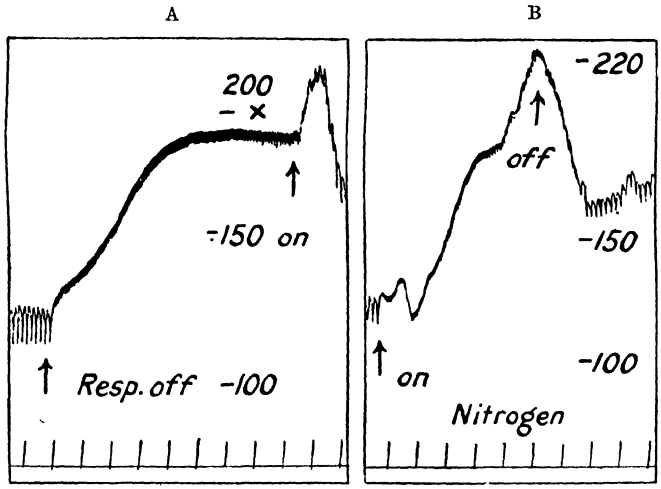


FIG. 463. Blood-pressure changes in a cat. A, after cessation of respiratory movements. B, as a result of artificial respiration with nitrogen. (MATHISON.)

produced by the administration of gaseous mixtures containing excess of oxygen, *i. e.* 30 to 40 per cent., with varying percentages of carbon dioxide. In the first case, the tension of the carbon dioxide in the blood will be kept below normal; in the second case, the tension of oxygen in the blood will be kept above normal. In order to obtain results uncomplicated by the influence of anæsthetics, the experiments may be carried out in animals which have been deprived of consciousness by destruction of the brain above the superior corpora quadrigemina. At different times physiologists have been inclined to ascribe the excitatory phenomenon of asphyxia either to absence of oxygen or to excess of carbon dioxide. Mathison has shown that both conditions may concur in the production of the rise of blood pressure in asphyxia. In Figs. 463 and 464 the rise of arterial pressure produced by a short period of asphyxia is compared with that produced by oxygen lack, by a surplus of carbon dioxide, and by the injection of lactic acid into the circulation. There are certain minor details in these curves which are of

interest. When the oxygen of the lungs is rapidly washed out with a neutral gas, the asphyxial rise comes on about half a minute later than it would with pure asphyxia. In the latter case it seems that the first rise is due to the accumulation of carbon dioxide. The rise however under nitrogen, when it occurs, is extremely abrupt, and the subsequent fall of blood pressure, *i. e.* the heart failure, is earlier in onset and more rapid than with ordinary asphyxia. When excess of carbon dioxide is administered, *i. e.* 5 to 10 per cent., a marked rise of pressure occurs which, like that produced by oxygen lack, is almost entirely conditioned by stimulation of the vaso-motor centres and resulting constriction of the peripheral arterioles. If a loop of intestine be placed in a plethysmograph, it will be seen that the rise of

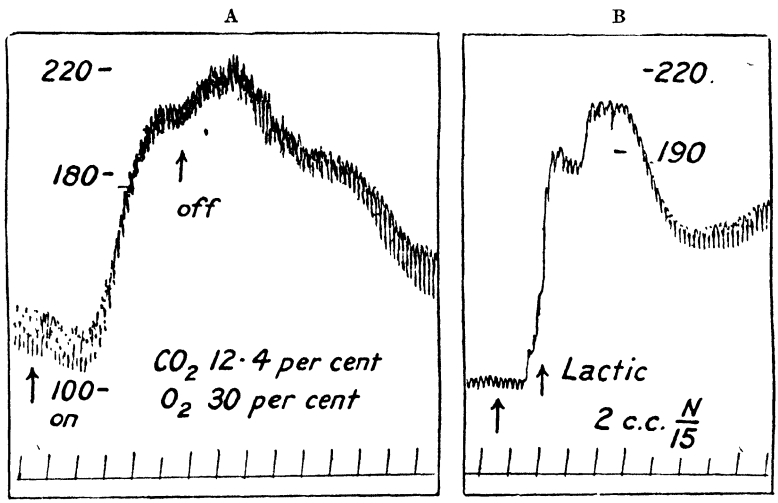


FIG. 464. Asphyxial blood-pressure changes in curarised cat. A, inhalation of CO_2. B, injection of lactic acid. (MATHISON.)

pressure coincides with a shrinkage in volume of the intestine, pointing to a vascular constriction (Fig. 465). The rise of blood pressure due to the vascular constriction may be maintained for a considerable period, *e. g.* ten to fifteen minutes, and we do not get the rapid fall of pressure due to failure of the heart that is observed in an ordinary asphyxia tracing. If partial oxygen lack or abnormally increased tension of carbon dioxide be continued for some time, a state of narcosis or paralysis finally ensues which affects not only the higher centres but also those of the medulla, so that death may result without convulsions or excessive rise of blood pressure.

Is there any common factor in the two conditions of oxygen lack and carbon dioxide excess, which may account for the similarity in their effects? It has been shown that, whenever there is a deficiency of oxygen, the metabolism of the tissues undergoes alteration, so that as a result of activity, *e. g.* in muscles, lactic acid is formed instead of carbon dioxide. Lactic acid can

therefore be detected in the blood whenever violent exercise is taken sufficient to produce dyspnœa, or when the access of oxygen is diminished by poisoning with carbon monoxide, or by reducing the tension of this gas in the air breathed. Oxygen lack can be regarded therefore as synonymous with the production of lactic acid. Lactic acid introduced into the blood stream, as is shown in the curve in Fig. 464, B, is equally efficacious with oxygen lack or with carbon dioxide excess in the production of a rise of blood pressure indistinguishable from the asphyxial rise. It seems therefore that the common factor in asphyxia is the increased acidity or H′ ion concentration of the blood. We shall have occasion to return to this question in dealing with the regulation of the respiratory movements.

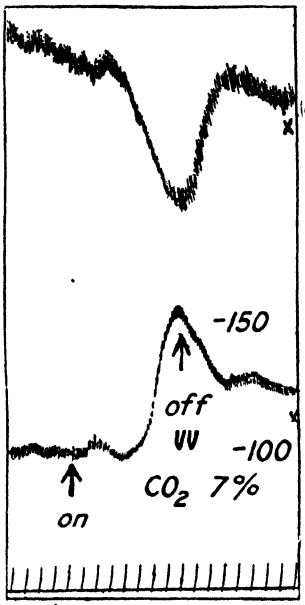


FIG. 465. Tracing of arterial blood pressure and of intestinal volume, to show the influence of a moderate increase in the CO_2 tension of the blood. (MATHISON.)

If in the dog, and to a less extent in other animals, the vagi be left intact, the blood pressure tracing during asphyxia has quite another appearance. At the point of the tracing, corresponding to the rapid rise in the previous experiment, there is in this case only a slight rise of pressure, but the heart begins to beat very slowly. At each beat it necessarily sends out a greater volume of blood than when it is beating more frequently, and hence the oscillations on the blood pressure curve caused by the heart beats become very large. This slow beat is due to the action of the vagus centre, and is at once abolished by section of the two vagi. The sparing of the heart by means of this vagus action enables it to last longer, and the final fatal fall of blood pressure due to heart failure comes on rather later than when the vagi are divided. In the increased vagus action, which occurs during asphyxia, two factors are probably involved. The cardio-inhibitory centre in the medulla probably partakes of the general excitation of the medullary centres due in the first place to carbon dioxide excess, in the second to oxygen lack. More important is the direct action of the rise of blood pressure on the medullary centre. The rise of arterial pressure causes increased intracranial tension, and any increase of the latter excites the vagus centre and produces slowing of the pulse. The vagus slowing is therefore absent in asphyxia if the arterial blood be allowed to escape through a mercury valve so as to prevent any rise of pressure in the brain cavity.

During the period of increased pressure, waves are often observed on the blood-pressure curve. These are of two kinds. In completely curarised animals we may observe oscillations of blood pressure corresponding with the respiratory rhythm before the administration of curare, or if the vagi are cut, presenting a rhythm similar to that usual in animals with divided vagi. They are certainly due to irradiation of impulses from the excited respiratory centre to the vaso-motor centre in the medulla. In fact if the curarisation is not complete, a slight twitch of the diaphragm, insufficient by itself to have any mechanical influence on the circulation, may be observed, to accompany each rise on the blood-pressure curve. Besides these curves others are occasionally seen which must arise in a slow rhythmic variation of the constrictor impulses sent out from the vaso-motor centre. These waves are known as the Traube curves and are not to be confused with the waves on an ordinary pressure curve due to respiration, being much slower in their rhythm than the latter. They are observed not

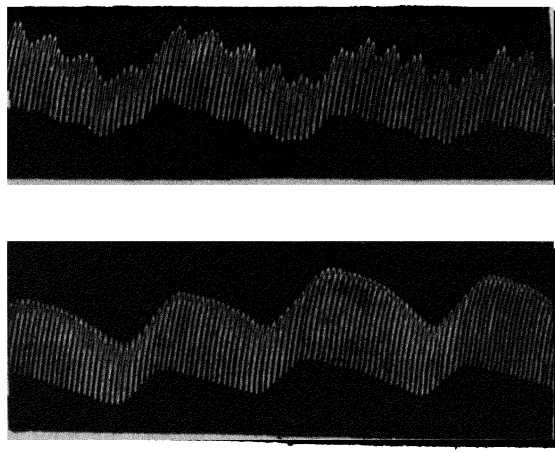


FIG. 466. Blood-pressure tracings showing Traube curves. (C. J. MARTIN.)

only during asphyxia, but may occur in blood-pressure tracings from normal dogs, and are frequent in dogs poisoned with morphia. Fig. 466 represents tracings obtained from a dog under the influence of morphia and curare. The upper curve, taken while artificial respiration was being carried on, shows the three forms of curves—the oscillations due to the heart beat next in size those due to the respiratory movements, which in their turn are superposed on the slow prolonged curves. The lower curve is taken immediately after cessation of the artificial respiration, and shows only the heart beats and the Traube curves. The presence of these waves may generally be ascribed to a state of abnormal excitation of the vaso-motor centre. This excitation may arise in various ways. A very frequent cause is the one just described, viz. increased venosity of the blood supplied to the centre. Well-marked Traube curves are often observed in cases of hæmorrhage. In spite of the loss of blood, the vaso-motor centres maintain a normal arterial blood pressure by means of vascular constriction. As the bleeding continues, this means becomes inadequate, and at this point the 'efforts' of the centres take on a rhythmic character, giving well-marked Traube curves, just as the arm of a man holding up a weight begins to shake before he is obliged to give way through fatigue. If the bleeding still continues, the pressure sinks steadily and the curves disappear. The curves may also be often observed during operations involving exposure of the cord, and may possibly be ascribed in this case to abnormal irritations ascending the posterior columns.

The vaso-motor centre may also be directly affected by drugs such as digitalis or strophanthus, both of which cause a rise in general blood pressure from stimulation of the centre.

SPINAL CENTRES

The great fall of blood pressure observed after section of the cord in the lower cervical region is not permanent. After one or two hours the pressure begins to rise, and if the animal be kept alive, may attain a height only a little inferior to that found in normal animals.

If the spinal cord of such an animal be destroyed, the blood pressure sinks practically to zero and the circulation comes to an end, because the animal has been, so to speak, bled to death into its own dilated blood vessels. In addition to the chief vaso-motor centre in the medulla there is a series of subsidiary centres in the spinal cord, centres which we may probably locate in the portions of grey matter situated in the lateral horns of the cord and giving origin to the fibres which go to make up the white rami

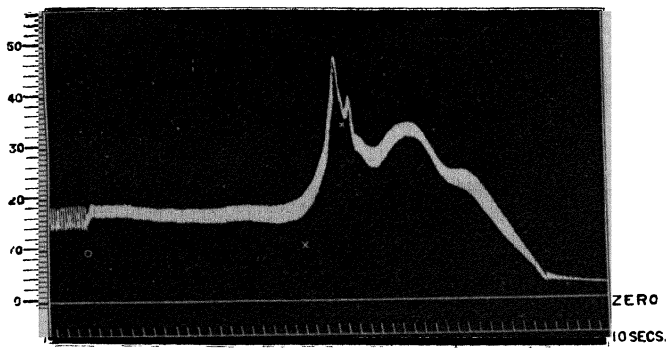


FIG. 467. Blood-pressure tracing taken by a mercurial manometer from carotid artery of a dog, three hours after section of the cord, just below the medulla oblongata. At o the artificial respiration was discontinued. A general spasm of the skeletal muscles occurred between x and x. The muscles then relaxed, and were flaccid during the rest of the rise of blood pressure.

communicantes. By means of these spinal centres a certain degree of adaptation is possible between the blood supply of the various parts of the trunk. The important co-ordination between the state of the blood vessels and the condition of the central pump, the heart, is however wanting, since the blood vessels are now cut off from the cardiac centres and from the part of the central nervous system which receives the afferent impulses carried by the vagi.

The spinal centres, like the chief vaso-motor centre, are susceptible to changes in the composition of the blood supplied to them. If an animal be kept alive by means of artificial respiration for a little time after division of the cord just below the medulla, the blood pressure slowly rises as the spinal centres begin to take on their automatic functions. If artificial respiration be now discontinued the asphyxia excites the centres of the cord. The motor discharge to the skeletal muscles reveals itself in a single prolonged spasm, since the respiratory centre is unable to take any part in directing the motor discharges. Simultaneously with the spasm of the skeletal muscles general constriction of the blood vessels occurs which outlasts the muscular spasms and causes a considerable rise of blood pressure (Fig. 467).

In this rise of pressure the main factor is lack of oxygen, and precisely similar curves are obtained whether the asphyxia be produced by cessation of artificial respiration or by administration of nitrogen. The same effect may be produced by a very large excess of carbon dioxide, or by the injection of acids into the circulation. There is a striking difference between the sensibility of the spinal centres to these substances as compared with the medullary centres. Thus the medullary vaso-motor centre is readily excited by ventilation with 5 per cent. carbon dioxide, whereas a rise of blood pressure is obtained from the spinal animal only when mixtures containing 25 per cent. and upwards of carbon dioxide are employed. The excitation of the medullary centre comes on about thirty seconds after the administration of nitrogen has commenced, in contrast to that of the spinal centres which does not occur until two minutes or more have elapsed. In the intact animal a maximal stimulation of the vaso-motor centre is produced in the cat by the injection of 2 c.c. N/20 lactic acid, whereas 5 c.c. of N/2 acid are required to excite spinal cord centres. Here therefore, as in the medulla, the common factor is probably increased H ion concentration, the excitation threshold for the medullary centres being only about one-fifth that of the spinal centres.

The local spinal centres are connected with the medullary vaso-motor centre on each side by tracts of nerve fibres which descend in the lateral columns of the cord.

THE PERIPHERAL TONE OF THE BLOOD VESSELS

Division of the sciatic nerve causes an immediate dilatation of the vessels of the lower limbs in consequence of their severance from the tonic activity of the vaso-motor centres. This dilatation passes off in a day or two and the vessels acquire a tone, *i. e.* remain in a state of average constriction which can be increased or diminished by local conditions. This recovery of tone has been ascribed by many physiologists to the existence of a third set of nerve centres in the walls of the arteries. In the absence of any direct histological evidence of the existence of such centres, it seems more rational to ascribe the tonus to the automatic activity of the muscular fibres themselves.

THE COURSE AND DISTRIBUTION OF THE VASO-MOTOR NERVES

Since the blood vessels, like the heart, are the seat of an automatic activity, complete nervous control of these tubes can be secured only by the provision of two sets of nerves: one set—augmentor or motor—which will increase the state of constriction of the vessels; another set—inhibitor or dilator—which will diminish the tone of the arteriole muscle and cause vascular dilatation. Our knowledge of the existence of this second class of nerve fibres to the vessels we owe also to Claude Bernard, who observed that stimulation of the chorda tympani nerve not only evoked secretion from the submaxillary gland but also increased the blood flow through its vessels five or six fold. Subsequent researches have revealed the fact that

nearly all the vessels of the body receive vaso-constrictor fibres, and that many receive also vaso-dilator fibres. In order to determine the course and distribution of the vascular nerves, it is necessary to have means at our disposal for investigating the condition of the blood flow through different parts and organs of the body. Let us see what effects will ensue on the local circulation by constriction or dilatation of the arterioles with which it is supplied. If the arterioles A in the organ B dilate (Fig. 468), the first effect is a diminution of the resistance to the flow of blood into the capillaries beyond. Supposing that the arterial pressure in the trunk C remains constant, a local diminution of resistance in A will at once determine an increased flow of blood through the arterioles, and the fall of pressure from A to the capillaries will be less than when the arteriole was constricted. If the organ is distensible and elastic, the increased pressure in the arterioles and capillaries will cause dilatation of these vessels, and a consequent dilatation of the whole organ. The same effect on intracapillary pressure, and therefore on the volume of the part, may be caused by obstruction to the flow of blood from the veins. *Provided that there is no obstruction to the flow of blood through the vein*, and that the general blood pressure in C remains constant, dilatation of an organ may be taken as an expression of vaso-dilatation in the arteries with which it is supplied. The diminution of the resistance in A may also increase the velocity of the flow through the part, since the amount of blood flowing in a given period of time through any vessel varies directly as the difference of pressure, and inversely as the resistance in the vessel.

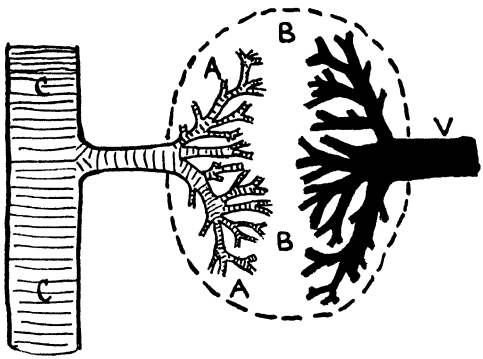


FIG. 468.

We can therefore use the following criteria for the occurrence of a vaso-dilatation in the arterial supply to any part or organ:

(1) If the surface of the part is translucent, the increased filling of the blood vessels will cause redness or blushing.

(2) The increased size of the vessels will cause an *increase in the volume* of the organ concerned.

(3) An increased velocity of blood flow will, if the part be normally below the temperature obtaining in the central organs of the body, raise its temperature, and vaso-dilatation can thus be detected by the application of the hand or of a thermometer.

(4) Any of the methods mentioned in a previous chapter may be used to determine the velocity in the arteries going to the part, and an increased velocity may be interpreted as due to vaso-dilatation.

(5) The increased flow through the part may be detected by cutting

the main efferent vein and measuring the total volume of blood which flows from it in a given time.

Of these methods the two most used are those based on determination either of the volume of the part, or of the venous outflow from the part. A fallacy may however arise, unless means be taken to ensure that the general arterial pressure remain constant during the experiment. A rise of general blood pressure will cause an expansion of the vessels and of the part supplied, and also increased velocity of blood flow through the part. In all cases therefore where it is desired to investigate the conditions of the local circulation, it is necessary to combine a determination of the general blood pressure with some means of estimating changes in the local conditions. We may take as an instance an experiment on the blood supply to the kidney.

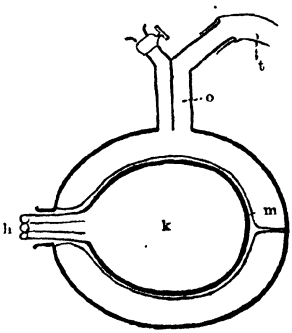


FIG. 469. Diagram of oncometer.

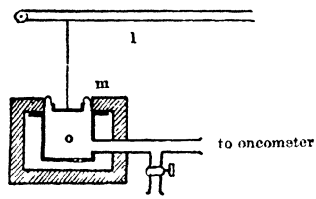


FIG. 470. Diagram of oncograph.

For this purpose we may use a kidney plethysmograph or oncometer. The structure of Roy's oncometer is shown in Fig. 469. The oncometer is a metal capsule, the two halves of which are hinged together and come in contact at the whole of their circumference except at *h*, where a small depression is left in each half for the passage of the kidney vessels and ureter. A piece of peritoneal membrane is attached to the rim of each half of the oncometer, the space between this and the brass capsule being filled with warm oil. The kidney rests in the oncometer on this bed of warm oil, from which it is separated by a membrane. A tube leads from the cavity between the brass capsule and membrane to a registering apparatus, or oncograph (Fig. 470), which is a piston recorder containing oil. Any swelling of the kidney will drive oil out of the oncometer into the cylinder of the oncograph and so raise the piston, the excursions of which are recorded by a lever writing on a blackened surface.

Schafer's plethysmograph (Fig. 471), which can be adapted to almost any organ of the body, is made of vulcanite[1] previously moulded to the size of the organ whose volume is the object of investigation. In one side of the box a depression is left sufficient to accommodate easily the vessels, nerves, or ureter going to the organ. The oncometer is covered with a glass lid which is made air-tight by means of vaseline, the space between the lid and the vessels being also packed with cotton-wool and vaseline. A glass tube is fixed into one corner of the plethysmograph and leads to a piston recorder or tambour. Every variation in the volume of the organ causes a movement of air into or out of the oncometer and thus gives rise to a corresponding movement of the recording lever.

[1] A very good material for this purpose is 'Stent's composition,' used by dentists for taking a mould of the jaw in fitting artificial teeth.

The kidney being placed in some such apparatus, a cannula is inserted in the carotid artery and connected with a mercurial manometer, so that two tracings are obtained at the same time on the moving blackened surf[redacted]

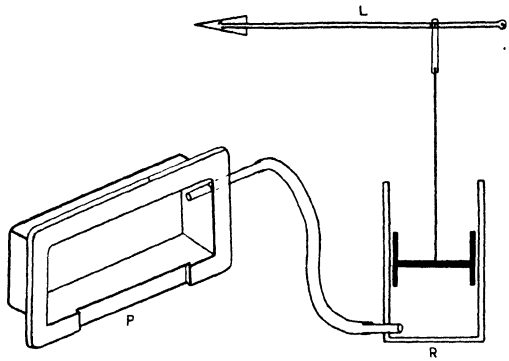


FIG. 471. Diagram of Schafer's air plethysmograph.

In the Figure given (Fig. 472), the upper curve represents the carotid blood pressure, while the lower is the tracing of the oncograph lever. At the beginning of the experiment the lower dorsal nerve roots had been dissected out and prepared for stimulation. The peripheral end of the anterior root

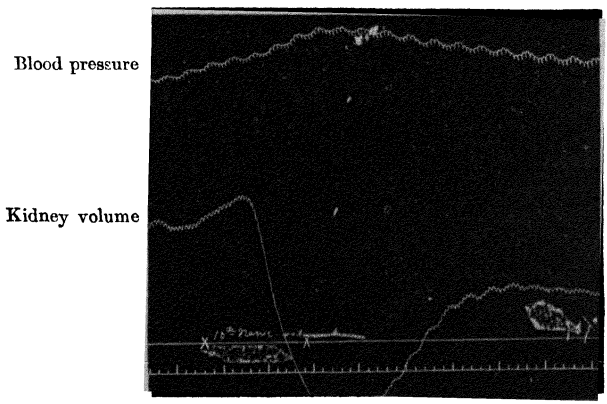


FIG. 472. Simultaneous tracings of carotid blood pressure and volume of kidney. Between × and × the peripheral end of the divided tenth dorsal nerve was stimulated. Time-marking = seconds. (BRADFORD.)

of the tenth dorsal nerve was excited by means of an interrupted current at the point marked with a cross on the tracing. This stimulation was followed by a rise of blood pressure together with a diminution in the kidney volume. The increased blood pressure would by itself tend to force more blood into the kidney and so increase its volume. The fact that the kidney volume diminished shows that there must have been active contraction of

the arterioles of the kidney, emptying this organ of blood and so causing it to decrease in size. This contraction of the vessels would tend to cause a rise in general blood pressure and must have taken some part at any rate in the rise actually observed. If the oncometer in this experiment had been used alone, it would have been impossible to determine whether the shrinkage of the kidney might not be due to a lowering of general blood pressure, in consequence of vaso-dilatation occurring elsewhere, or in consequence of the failure of the heart's activity. On the other hand, without the oncometer it would have been possible to determine only that there was increased peripheral resistance somewhere or other in the body.

Instead of taking the volume of the kidney, we might have determined the blood flow through its vessels either directly by means of a cannula in the renal vein, or by the indirect method of Brodie. This method depends on the fact that under normal conditions the amount of blood leaving an organ is equal to that entering it during any short space of time. If the efferent vein be clamped for five or ten seconds, the blood entering the organ during this time cannot escape, and therefore accumulates in the organ and increases its volume. If the organ be in a plethysmograph, the increase of volume during this period may be measured and is exactly equal to the volume of blood passing through the artery into the organ during the five or ten seconds of the closure. The vein must not be obstructed too long, otherwise the increasing distension of the organ will appreciably increase the resistance to the entry of blood, and so diminish the velocity of the blood in the artery.

The direct determination of the venous outflow is not well adapted to large organs on account of the very rapid loss of blood which occurs through the open vein. The method is however of great value in dealing with the circulation through small organs such as the submaxillary glands. In such a case it is usual to hinder or prevent the clotting of the blood by the preliminary injection of leech extract, and then, after placing a cannula in the efferent veins of the organ, to allow blood from the cannula to drop on to a mica disc attached to a Marey tambour. This tambour is connected by a tube with a registering tambour, every drop on the disc giving rise to a small elevation of the lever of the second tambour.

COURSE OF THE VASO-CONSTRICTOR FIBRES

In investigating the course of the vaso-constrictor fibres we have to determine:

(1) The origin of the fibres from the central nervous system;

(2) The course of the fibres on their way to their peripheral distribution in the blood vessels;

(3) Their connections with nerve cells.

The two first details can be found by stimulating various nerves and nerve roots in different parts of their course and observing the effects produced on the local and general circulation. The importance of the third heading is due to the fact that the vascular nerves, like the visceral nerves generally, do not have their last cell station in the spinal cord. The fibres carrying vaso-constrictor impulses, on leaving the cord, do not pass direct to the blood vessels, but come to an end in a collection of ganglion cells, which may belong to the main chain of the sympathetic, or be situated more peripherally and belong to the group of collateral or peripheral ganglia.

These fibres, as they leave the central nervous system, are small medullated nerves. They end in the ganglion by arborising round ganglion cells, whence a fresh relay of fibres starts and carries the impulses on to the muscle fibres of the blood vessels. The post-ganglionic fibres differ from the pre-ganglionic fibres in being non-medullated.

The discovery of the ganglia, with which any given set of nerve fibres is connected, is rendered easy by the fact that in many animals the sympathetic ganglion cells are paralysed by nicotine (Langley). The nicotine may be painted on the ganglion or may be injected into the blood stream. The first effect of the drug is a powerful stimulation of the ganglion cells, so that, if the drug be injected, there is an enormous rise of blood pressure owing to the universal vaso-constriction that is produced. The stimulation gives place to a condition of paralysis; the blood pressure falls below normal, owing to the cutting off of the peripheral vascular nerves from the vaso-motor centre. Stimulation of the pre-ganglionic fibres is now without effect, although the normal results follow stimulation of the post-ganglionic non-medullated fibres.

By these methods it has been determined that all the vaso-constrictor nerves of the body leave the spinal cord by the anterior roots of the spinal nerves from the first dorsal to the third or fourth lumbar inclusive. From the roots they pass by the white rami communicantes to the ganglia of the sympathetic chain lying along the front of the vertebral column. Here they take different courses according to their destination.

The fibres to the head and neck leave by the first four thoracic nerves, pass into the sympathetic chain through the ganglion stellatum and ansa Vieussenii to the inferior cervical ganglion, and up the cervical sympathetic trunk to the superior cervical ganglion. Here they end, and the impulses are carried by a fresh relay of fibres, which start from cells in this ganglion and travel as non-medullated fibres on the walls of the carotid artery and its branches.

The constrictors to the fore limb in the dog leave the cord by the white rami of the fourth to the tenth thoracic nerves. The fibres run up the sympathetic chain to the stellate ganglion, where they all end in *synapses* round the cells of this ganglion. The impulses are carried on by non-medullated fibres along the grey rami of the sympathetic to the cervical nerves which make up the brachial plexus, and run down in the branches of this plexus to be distributed to the vessels of the fore limb.

The constrictor impulses to the hind limb in the dog arise from the nerve roots between the eleventh dorsal and third lumbar roots. All the fibres end in connection with cells in the sixth and seventh lumbar and first and second sacral ganglia of the sympathetic chain, whence the impulses are carried by grey rami to the nerves making up the sacral plexus.

The most important vaso-motor nerve of the body is the *splanchnic nerve*. This nerve receives most of the fibres forming the white rami from the lower seven dorsal and upper two or three lumbar roots, the latter fibres

often taking a separate course as the lesser splanchnics. The fibres can be seen to pass through the sympathetic chain of the thorax without interruption, and for the most part have their cell station in the large ganglia, especially the semilunar ganglia, of the solar plexus, whence a thick meshwork of non-medullated fibres is distributed along all the vessels of the abdominal viscera. The area of the vessels innervated by this nerve is so large that section of this nerve on each side causes a considerable fall in the general blood pressure. This fall is more marked in animals such as the rabbit and other herbivora, in which the alimentary canal is proportionately very much developed and has a correspondingly large blood supply.

VASO-DILATOR NERVES

Since the arteries are in a constant condition of moderate contraction, a dilatation might be brought about by a relaxation of this tone by an inhibition of the normal constrictor impulses proceeding to the vessels from the vaso-motor centre. We find however in many parts of the body evidence of the existence of a nerve supply to blood vessels antagonistic in its function to the vaso-constrictors. Thus, if the *chorda tympani* nerve going to the submaxillary gland be cut, no change is evident in the blood vessels of the gland. But if its peripheral end be stimulated, there is instantly free secretion of saliva from the gland, and all the blood vessels are largely dilated. In consequence of this dilatation the blood rushes through the capillaries so quickly that it has no time to lose much of its oxygen; the blood flowing from the vein is therefore bright arterial in colour, and is increased to six or eight times the previous amount. If atropine be injected into the animal, the action of the chorda tympani on the blood vessels is unaffected, although the secretion on stimulation is abolished. The chorda tympani is therefore said to contain vaso-dilator fibres for the vessels of the submaxillary gland. Other examples of vaso-dilator (or dilatator) nerves are the *small petrosal* nerve to the parotid gland, the *lingual* nerve to the blood vessels of the tongue, and the *nervi erigentes* or *pelvic visceral* nerves to those of the penis.

The course of these typical dilator nerves differs widely from that of the constrictors. Whereas the latter leave the central nervous system over a limited area of the cord, the vaso-dilators take their origin together with any of the cerebro-spinal nerves. Thus the chorda tympani fibres, and probably those contained in the petrosal nerve, arise from the *nervus intermedius* between the seventh and eighth cranial nerves. The *nervi erigentes* leave the lower end of the cord by the anterior roots of the second and third sacral nerves. All of them, like the vaso-constrictors and probably all visceral nerve fibres, are interrupted by ganglion cells before reaching to their destination. These cells however lie, not in the lateral chain of the sympathetic, with which the nerves have no connection at all, but peripherally, and are generally embedded in the organs to which the nerves are distributed. Thus the chorda tympani fibres to the submaxillary glands are

interrupted by cells embedded in the gland itself. The *nervi erigentes* pass to ganglion cells in the hypogastric plexus lying on the neck of the bladder.

Whether any large numbers of the fibres making up the sympathetic system of nerves are vaso-dilator in function is still uncertain. In the dog dilatation of the vessels of the soft palate and gums can be produced by stimulation of the cervical sympathetic of the same side, or of the stellate ganglion or its *rami communicantes*. The effect has not yet been observed in any other animals. It is probable that the splanchnic nerves convey vaso-dilator fibres to the vessels of the abdomen, since stimulation of these nerves may cause a fall of blood pressure, provided that the constrictor fibres, which predominate, have been paralysed by the previous administration of large doses of ergotoxin, derived from ergot.

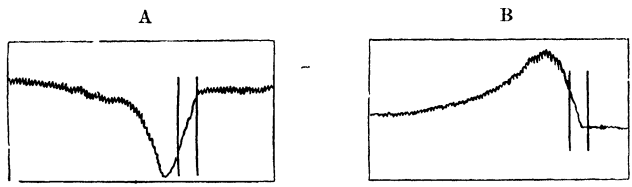


FIG. 473. Plethysmographic tracing of hind limbs, showing effect of stimulating the sciatic nerve on the volume of the limb, A, immediately after section of the nerve; B, four days after section. The nerve was stimulated between the two vertical lines. Curves to be read *from right to left*. (BOWDITCH and WARREN.)

The presence of vaso-dilator fibres in the nerves going to the limbs has been the subject of much debate. Since these nerves contain also constrictor fibres, the effect of the constriction overpowers any effects due to simultaneous stimulation of possible dilator fibres. Moreover the dilators apparently do not conduct any tonic influences to the blood vessels, so that the only effect of section of a mixed nerve is that due to the removal of the tonic constrictor influences, and the vessels in the area of distribution of the nerves are dilated.

Various methods have been employed to show the presence of dilator fibres in such a mixed nerve trunk. Of these the chief two are those depending on the unequal time taken for the two sets of fibres to degenerate and on the varying excitability of the two sets of fibres to different kinds of stimulation. Thus, if the sciatic nerve be cut, a primary dilatation of the vessels of the leg and foot is produced which however passes off after two or three days. If now the peripheral end of the divided nerve be stimulated, dilatation of the vessels is brought about (Fig. 473). Apparently the constrictor fibres degenerate before the dilator fibres so that, at a certain period after the nerve section, only the latter respond to stimulation. On the other hand, it is often possible in the freshly cut nerve to obtain dilatation by stimulating its peripheral end with induction shocks repeated at slow intervals—one to four per second. The effects of different rates of stimulation on the limb nerves of the cat are shown in Fig. 474.

When we endeavour to trace these limb dilator fibres back to the cord, we find no trace of their passage through the sympathetic system. It was shown by Stricker and Morat that dilatation of the vessels of the hind limb can be produced by stimulating the posterior roots of the nerves going to the limb, *i. e.* far below the point of origin from the cord of the constrictor fibres to the same part of the body. Since it has been definitely shown by embryologists and histologists that in higher mammals all the fibres making up the posterior roots have their origin in the cells of the posterior root ganglion, this observation was widely discredited, until it was confirmed by Bayliss

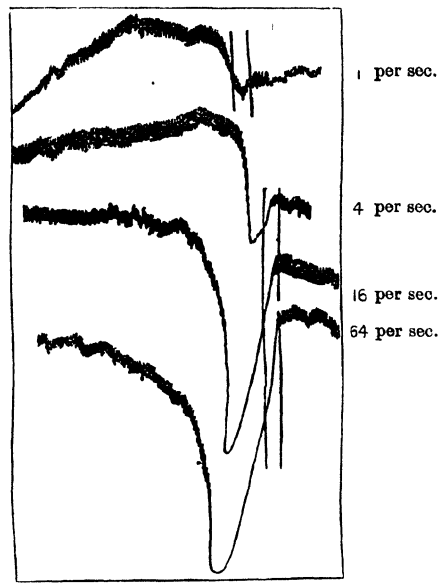


FIG. 474. Effect on the volume of the hind limbs of the cat of stimulating the sciatic nerve with induction shocks at different rates. It will be noticed that with one shock per second there is hardly any constriction, but considerable dilatation, whereas with 64 shocks per second the only effect produced is vaso-constriction. Curves to be read *from right to left.* (BOWDITCH and WARREN.)

for all manner of stimuli. Stimulation of the posterior roots, either before or after they have passed through the ganglia, causes dilatation of the vessels in the area of the supply of the roots, whatever be the nature of the stimulus employed, whether electrical, chemical, or mechanical (Fig. 475). This effect is not destroyed by previous section of the posterior roots on the proximal side of the ganglia, showing that the fibres by means of which the dilatation is produced have the same origin and course as the ordinary sensory nerves to the limbs. Since the vaso-dilator impulses pass along these nerves in a direction opposite to that taken by the normal sensory impulses, Bayliss has designated them as *antidromic* impulses. So far this phenomenon of a nerve fibre functioning (not merely conducting) in both directions is almost without analogy in our knowledge of the other nerve functions of

the body. There is no doubt however that similar antidromic impulses are involved in the production of the so-called trophic changes, such as localised

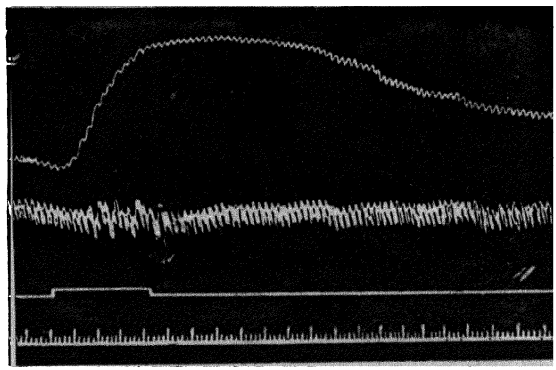


FIG. 475. Effect of excitation of peripheral end of the seventh lumbar posterior root in the dog. (BAYLISS.)

Uppermost curve, volume of left hind limb; next below, arterial blood pressure; the third line marks the period of stimulation; bottom line, time-marking in seconds.

erythema or the formation of vesicles (as in *herpes zoster*), which may occur in the course of distribution of a sensory nerve, and is always found to be associated with changes, inflammatory or otherwise, in the corresponding

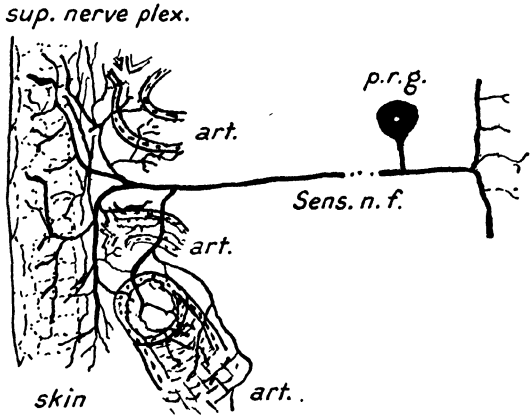


FIG. 476. Diagram to illustrate the production of vaso-dilatation in the area of distribution of a sensory nerve.

prg, posterior root ganglion; *sens.nf*, sensory nerve fibre, branching to supply dilator fibres to the skin arteries, and sensory fibres to the skin.

posterior root ganglion. Moreover evidence has been brought forward that these fibres may take part in ordinary vascular reflexes of the body, that in fact they are normally traversed by impulses in either direction.

Some observations by Hans Meyer and Bruce tend to indicate that in the antidromic vaso-dilatation, as well as in the reddening and inflammatory changes ensuing on local excitation, we are dealing with *axon reflexes*, perhaps

the only remains of the local reflexes of a primitive peripheral subcutaneous nervous system. If croton oil or mustard oil be applied to the skin or to the conjunctiva, redness, swelling, and all the signs of a local inflammation are produced. The course of events is not altered by destruction of the central nervous system or by section of the sensory nerve roots (posterior spinal root or trigeminus) on the central side of the ganglion. If however they be divided peripherally of the ganglion, and time be allowed for complete degeneration of the nerve fibres to their peripheral terminations, the application of croton or mustard oil, even to the delicate conjunctiva, is without effect. The same results may be produced if the peripheral terminations of the nerves be paralysed by the subcutaneous injection of local anæsthetics. We must assume that the axons of the peripheral sensory nerves branch, some branches going to the surface, others to the muscle cells of the cutaneous arterioles, as indicated in the diagram (Fig. 476).

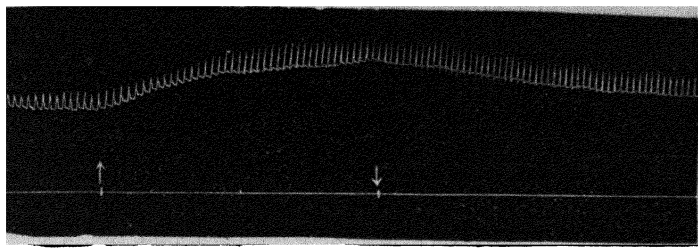


FIG. 477. Blood-pressure curve from carotid of dog. Between the arrows the central end of a sensory nerve was stimulated. (HÜRTHLE'S manometer.)

Gaskell has drawn an analogy between the nerves distributed to the blood vessels and those going to the heart, which is indeed only a specialised part of the general blood tubes of the body. These nerves, according to their action on the metabolic activity of the tissues supplied, are divided by Gaskell into *anabolic* and *catabolic* nerves. The anabolic nerves, as indicated by their name, cause a building up or regeneration of the contractile tissue. They therefore act as inhibitory nerves. This class would include the vagus and the vaso-dilator fibres. The catabolic nerves cause an increased activity of the contractile tissue, and active contraction is associated with and derives its energy from disintegration or catabolism of the muscular substance. An ordinary motor nerve to a muscle is therefore a catabolic nerve. This class would include the accelerator nerves to the heart, and the vaso-constrictors. The course of these two sets of nerves bears out this comparison, the path taken by the accelerator nerves being identical at first with that of the vaso-constrictor fibres to the head and neck.

VASO-MOTOR REFLEXES

The vaso-motor centre with its efferent tracts is constantly played upon by impulses arriving at it from the vascular system, including both heart and blood vessels, from the viscera, from the muscles, and from the surface of the body. The reflex effects produced by stimulation of the various

afferent nerves may be classified, according as they affect the general blood pressure or the circulation through restricted areas of the body, as general and local.

The afferent impulses affecting the general blood pressure are distinguished as *pressor* and *depressor*, and these names are sometimes applied to the nerves which carry the impulses. A *pressor reflex* is one which induces a rise of general blood pressure by constriction of the blood vessels, especially in the splanchnic area (Fig. 477). Effects of this kind are produced by stimulation of nearly all the sensory nerves of the skin. Practically all impulses, which if consciousness were present would be attended with pain, cause also a rise of general blood pressure. A rise of pressure may be produced by the stimulation of such nerves as the fifth, the central end of the splanchnic nerves, or of the nerves distributed to the surface of the body. This rise occurs in all animals under morphia and curare. In the rabbit, when anæsthesia is induced by means of chloral or chloroform, stimulation of sensory nerves may cause a fall of blood pressure.

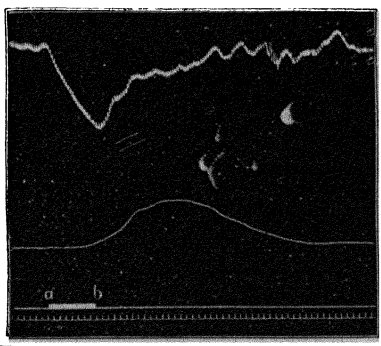


FIG. 478. Simultaneous tracing of arterial blood pressure and splenic volume from a rabbit, showing the marked swelling of the spleen associated with fall of general blood pressure on stimulation of the central end of the depressor nerve. The nerve was excited between *a* and *b*. (BAYLISS.)

The chief example of a *depressor* nerve we have already studied in dealing with the reflexes from the heart. The fall of pressure produced by stimulation of this nerve is effected chiefly by dilatation of the splanchnic area (Fig. 478), though, as Bayliss has shown, practically all the vessels of the body partake in the relaxation. The lowering of blood pressure produced by stimulation of this nerve differs from that obtained on stimulating the sensory nerves of the rabbit under chloral, in that its effect lasts as long as the stimulation is continued, whereas in the latter case the effect shows signs of fatigue and disappears before the excitation is shut off.

So far as the general blood pressure is concerned, the most important impulses arriving at the centre are those from the vascular system, especially from the heart itself, and those from the higher parts of the brain. Whatever the condition of the heart, the brain always demands a normal arterial pressure, since on this depends the supply of a proper quantum of blood to the master tissues of the body. A failing heart therefore evokes indirectly constriction of the blood vessels, a fact which may lead to a vicious circle in cases where the heart is unable to perform its normal functions and to empty itself against the resistance of the blood vessels. In this case the heart dilates more and more, until the slightest increase in the demands upon it, as by a slight muscular exertion, may suffice to stop its action altogether.

Under normal circumstances every part of the body receives just so much blood as it needs for its metabolic requirements. Hence activity must be associated with an increased flow of blood through the part. Two mechanisms are involved in the production of this adaptation. In the first place, stimuli arising in any part of the body may affect the vascular system in two directions, causing reflexly dilatation of blood vessels in the part which is the origin of the impulses and constriction of the blood vessels in the rest of the body, so that a normal or raised blood pressure is available for driving an increased supply of blood through the dilated vessels of the part. Thus, if both hind limbs of an animal be placed in a plethysmograph, it will be seen that stimulation of the anterior crural or peroneal nerve in the left leg causes dilatation of this leg and constriction of the leg of the other side. At rest the organs of the chest and abdomen contain more than half of the total quantity of blood in the body, so that very little change in the capacity of these organs suffices to furnish the extra supply of blood needed by any part during a state of increased activity.

THE CHEMICAL REGULATION OF THE BLOOD VESSELS

Another factor, which is possibly involved in the production of the increased blood flow through active organs, is a chemical stimulation of the vessels themselves, by means of substances (metabolites) produced as a result of the chemical changes accompanying activity. The great increase in the flow through the muscles which accompanies muscular exercise is probably brought about largely by this means. It has been shown that the passage of blood containing lactic acid or carbon dioxide (both results of muscular metabolism) causes a marked dilatation of the blood vessels of a limb. The Table given below shows the influence of activity on the blood flow through various organs.

We thus see that carbon dioxide, which is the universal hormone set free in the circulation when the activity of the body as a whole is increased, has a double effect on the blood vessels—a central effect through the vaso-motor centres, medulla and spinal cord, causing contraction of the blood vessels, and a local peripheral effect causing dilatation of the blood vessels. The general result therefore will be to cause dilatation of the blood vessels of the part where the carbon dioxide is produced and where it is present in greatest concentration, and vascular constriction elsewhere under the influence of the sensitive nervous centres.

FLOW IN CUBIC CENTIMETRES PER MINUTE PER 100 GRM. TISSUE

	At rest	Active
Levator labii superioris (of the horse)	17·5	85
Kidney	—	140
Hind limb	3·4	—
Hind limb (after section of nerves)	9·9	—
Thyroid gland	590·0	—
Rabbit's brain	136·0	—
Heart	—	500

ACTION OF ADRENALINE. This substance, produced by the suprarenal glands, has a marked influence on the calibre of the blood vessels. If 1 c.c. of a 1 in 10,000 solution of this substance be injected into the jugular vein, there is at once a universal constriction of the arterioles with the exception of those of the brain. If the vagi are cut, we obtain a simultaneous augmentor action of this drug on the heart and constrictor effect on the blood vessels, so that the arterial pressure rises to an enormous extent, up to 300 mm. Hg. or more. The same result occurs after section of the vaso-

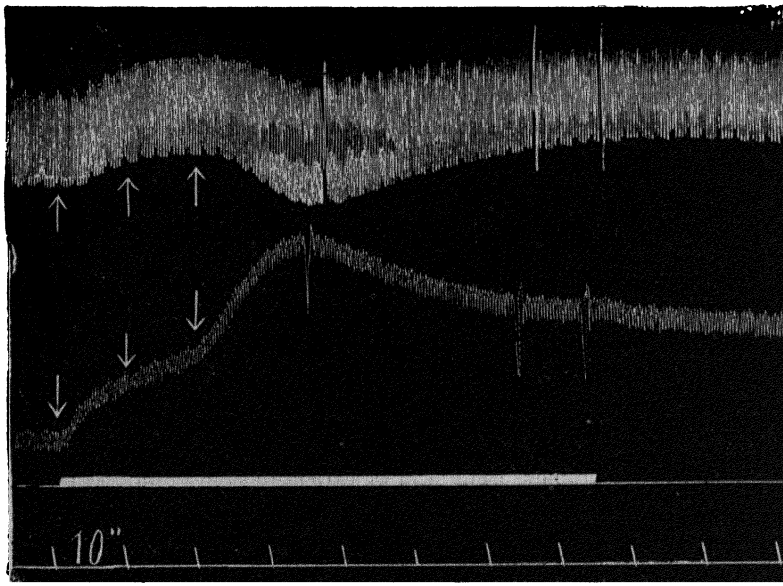


FIG. 479. Curve showing the effect of a sudden rise in the arterial resistance on the output and volume of the ventricles. Systole causes a downward movement of the lever.

H, heart volume; BP, arterial blood pressure; S, signal showing duration of stimulation of splanchnic nerve; T, time marker, 10 secs.

motor nerves or after destruction of the brain and spinal cord, so that there is no doubt that adrenaline acts directly on the blood-vessel wall. The action of this drug as a whole is therefore largely to augment the energy of the circulation. The arterial pressure rises, and the blood will be therefore travelling at a much greater pace through any part of the body where the vessels are maintained in a dilated condition, *e. g.* in an active muscle, or where there are no vaso-motor nerves, as in the vessels of the brain. It is therefore not surprising that we have evidence of the secretion of adrenaline in increased quantities into the blood during any condition of stress. Whenever the splanchnic nerve is stimulated, there is an increased production of adrenaline. On this account the rise of pressure produced under these circumstances shows a stepped curve, the first rise being due to the direct action of the vaso-motor nerves of the blood vessels, the second being

brought about by the stimulation of the suprarenals and the discharge of adrenaline into the general circulation. Simultaneously with this second rise of blood pressure, we notice in the curve given in Fig. 479 a diminished volume of the heart due to more effective contraction of this organ.

This diminished volume of the heart is often associated with a marked quickening of the heart rate, both effects being due to the action of adrenaline on the heart. During asphyxia the rise of arterial pressure is largely brought about through the intermediation of the splanchnic nerves and is therefore also associated with the discharge of adrenaline. It is on this account that

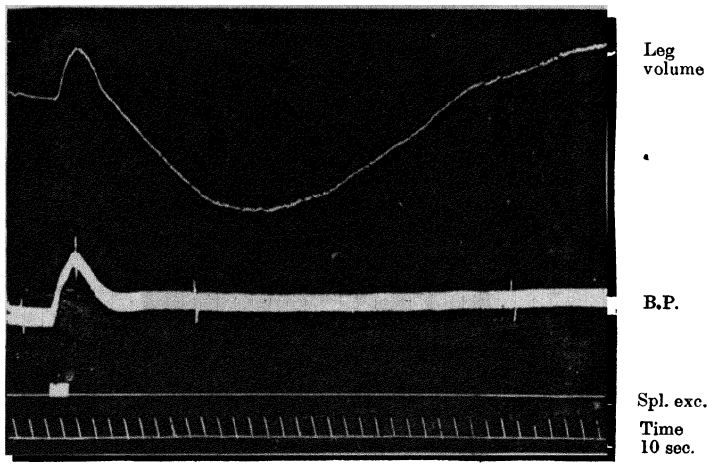


FIG. 480. Effect of excitation of splanchnic nerves on the blood pressure and on the volume of the denervated hind limb of the cat. (BAYLISS.)

in the whole animal, provided that sufficient oxygen is supplied, very large percentages of carbon dioxide may be inhaled without causing fatal dilatation of the heart, the effect of the adrenaline discharged into the blood stream serving to counteract the injurious influence of carbon dioxide on the heart muscle. These two chemical influences, the local production of carbon-dioxide and the discharge of adrenaline into the general circulation, must always be kept in mind in trying to account for the behaviour of the blood vessels under the most various conditions. Thus in Fig. 480 is shown the effect of temporary stimulation of the splanchnic nerve on the blood pressure and on the volume of the hind limb of the cat. It will be noticed that the volume of the hind limb increases passively with the rise of pressure and then diminishes much below its previous amount. This diminution is due to the discharge of adrenaline into the blood stream as the result of stimulation of the splanchnic nerve, and is absent if the suprarenals have been previously destroyed. The curve shown in Fig. 481, which with the foregoing one was taken by Bayliss to indicate a local adaptation of the blood vessels to their internal pressure, is probably brought about by the local production of carbon dioxide (von Anrep). Temporary occlusion of the abdominal aorta is here

shown to cause first a diminution of the volume of the hind limb, followed by a marked increase. During the period of obstruction the circulation of the hind limb was interrupted, and there was thus accumulation of carbon dioxide in the tissues and around the blood vessels. This caused a relaxation of the blood-vessel walls and a corresponding increased volume of the limb when the blood was allowed once more to flow by release of the aortic obstruction.

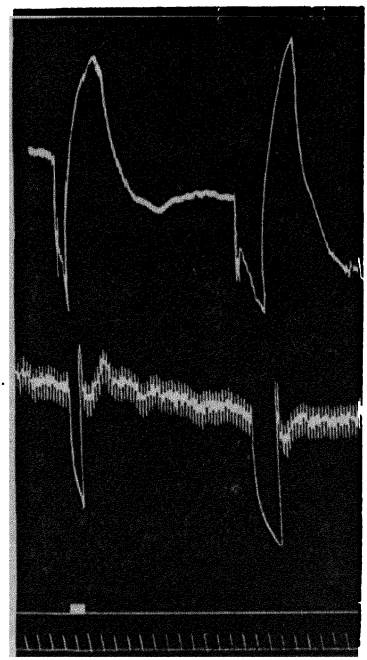


FIG. 481. Effect of temporary compression of the abdominal aorta on the volume of the denervated hind limb. Two compressions, the second not marked by the signal. Blood pressure taken in the femoral artery of one hind limb, the other hind limb being in the plethysmograph. (BAYLISS.)

THE REGULATION OF THE BLOOD FLOW THROUGH THE CAPILLARIES

Up to the present we have emphasised only two factors as regulating the blood flow through the peripheral parts of the body, viz. the general blood pressure, and the state of contraction or tone of the arterioles supplying those parts. We have regarded the capillaries as a close meshwork of canals, the calibre of which depends entirely on the extent to which they were distended by the pressure of blood within them. There is no doubt however that both the calibre of and the resistance to the flow of blood through the capillaries are intimately dependent on the nutritive condition of the cells composing their walls. Certain observers have described spontaneous changes taking place in the diameter of the capillaries, and

have ascribed them to active contraction or change of form of the endothelial cells, which was apparently independent of concomitant arterial alteration. In a subsequent chapter we shall have occasion to study in the capillary circulation the impressive changes following slight injury, chemical, thermal or mechanical, which give the salient features to the picture of inflammation. But it is certain that nutritive changes of less degree, falling within normal physiological events, also influence considerably the flow through the capillaries, either by increasing their lumen or by altering the resistance to the passage of blood through them. Thus during activity the total capacity of the capillaries of muscle may be increased from 0·02 per cent. to 15 per cent. of the total volume of the muscle (Krogh). The phenomena of dropsy show us that the capillary wall is very sensitive to the continued absence of oxygen, oxygen starvation rapidly increasing its permeability; and it seems that the presence of oxygen is an essential condition of any reactivity to moderate nutritional changes on the part of the capillaries. The dilator effect we have already studied of carbonic acid and other weak acids on the arterioles seems to be shared by the capillaries. In such a case it is difficult to dissociate the effects of arterial dilatation from those of capillary dilatation. At least one chemical substance is known however, which has diametrically opposite effects on the two sets of vessels. Histamine, the amine produced by the decarboxylation of histidine, has been shown by Dale to have a constrictor effect on the arterioles and a dilator effect on the capillaries. It has been suggested that the production of histamine or of other substances with a similar action plays an important part in giving rise to the symptoms of surgical shock. In this condition, which is found notably after widespread laceration, especially of the muscles, and consequent destruction of the tissues, there is a continually increasing depression of the blood pressure due to the ever lessening volume of blood in circulation. Since this lowering of blood pressure does not depend on any direct action of the heart nor is it associated with vaso-motor paralysis, it has been concluded that the prime factor at work is a general dilatation of the capillaries, leading to stagnation of the blood in these vessels and an increased exudation into the tissues, thus causing a constant leak of blood fluid from the general circulation.

No evidence has yet been brought forward for a direct action of the central nervous system on the capillaries. Certain facts however point to a connection between nerve lesions and the calibre of the capillaries supplied by the nerves. Thus if in the cat the sciatic nerve be cut on the right side, for the next few hours the pad of the foot on that side is flushed and warmer than the left foot. The next day the flush has disappeared, in fact the pad of the right foot may be paler than that of the left foot. The right foot is however still a degree or two warmer than the left foot. This condition may be explained on the assumption that the immediate effect of cutting the sciatic nerve is to cause dilatation both of the arterioles and of the capillaries. The capillary dilatation passes off, so that on the day after the section, although the arterioles are still dilated and there is a more rapid

flow of blood through the pad and a correspondingly higher temperature than on the sound side, the capillaries are contracted so that the pad contains less blood and is paler than on the opposite side. These observations suggest a question whether the whole of the antidromic effects, observed by Bayliss to follow stimulation of sensory nerves, may not really be confined to, or have their chief seat in, the capillaries. It is indeed certain that the closely allied phenomena of herpes zoster and the erythematous eruptions along the course of a nerve, and having their origin in morbid conditions of the nerve or of the posterior root ganglion, are due to changes in the capillaries or in the tissues immediately around them. This question must however be left for further investigation.

SECTION XI

THE CIRCULATORY CHANGES DURING MUSCULAR EXERCISE

In the preceeding sections we have studied separately a number of mechanisms by which the heart or the vessels react to this or that condition, in order to bring about an appropriate modification of the circulation. In so doing we have analysed somewhat artificially the factors which are normally involved simultaneously in the adaptation of the circulation to the necessities of the body, as determined by the exigencies of its environment. This adaptation is in fact a necessary condition of the survival of the individual in the struggle for existence. Our view of the working of the circulation as a whole is imperfect until we can effect a synthesis of these isolated mechanisms, and trace out the chain of events concerned in that intimate co-operation of all parts of the circulation with all other systems and organs of the body which must be involved in every act of life. For this purpose we cannot do better than take as an example the complex of adaptations which are involved in muscular exericse. Though for purposes of experiment the exercise may be that involved in working a stationary bicycle, we must remember that it is the same series of processes as are brought into play in the supreme struggle for life against an enemy or rival, or in the chase for food which is necessary to avoid death by hunger. For the analysis of the different events in the circulation, we have hitherto had large recourse to animal experiments; but with the facts thus gained at our disposal, we can proceed to investigate the subject in man himself, with the added advantages of his voluntary co-operation and of the absence of abnormal conditions such as anæsthetics, etc.

On initiating such experiments in man we meet at once with a new fact —viz. that under normal circumstances a reflex and automatic adaptation of the heart and vessels is preceded and reinforced by the active intervention of impulses proceeding from the brain. Thus the willed effort, or the emotion of fear or anger which normally initiates extensive muscular movements, gives rise at the same time to impulses starting in the brain centres, which excite changes in the circulatory and respiratory systems of the same character as those which will be later excited reflexly or automatically as a result of the exercise. Thus during muscular movements we find the respiratory exchanges and the ventilation of the lungs increased, the blood pressure raised, and the pulse quickened. With a man seated on a stationary bicycle the mere question "Are you ready?" evokes increase of muscular tone in the act of attention, increased pulmonary ventilation, and a rise of pulse rate

and of blood pressure. And these changes are increased as soon as the word "go" is given and the man starts to pedal, *i.e.* before the increased metabolic changes in the muscles can have had time to affect the medullary centres, or the muscular contractions the vigour of the circulation. The reinforcing impulses from the cortex, which stimulate the medullary centres and put these various mechanisms into action, are effective especially at the beginning of muscular work. In any steady work produced without particular effort or attention, the subsequent adaptations of the different organs of the body are probably chiefly automatic, the central reinforcing impulses being of especial importance when, under emotional stress of any description, the animal has to put forth its maximum effort.

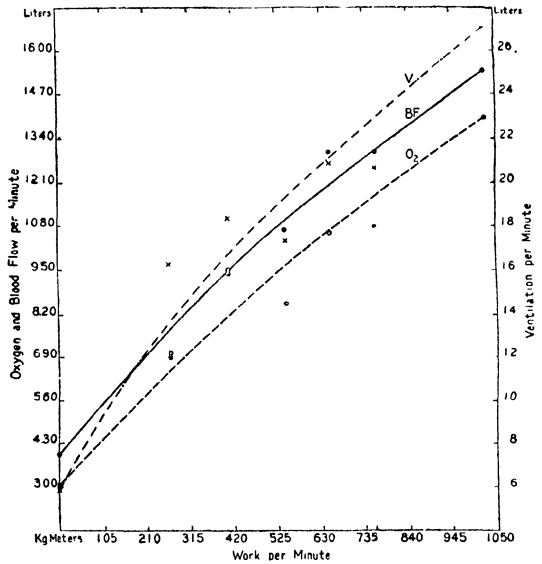


FIG. 482. Chart showing the effect of increasing amounts of muscular work on the total ventilation of the lungs V, on the blood flow BF, and on the oxygen absorption O_2. (From MEANS and NEWBURGH)

Increased work means increased metabolism. We have seen that the oxygen intake and the CO_2 output may undergo a ten or twelve fold augmentation during violent muscular effort carried out for a short time, and a five fold increase is not uncommon and may last for many hours. The muscles of a warm-blooded animal become rapidly fatigued on being deprived of an adequate amount of oxygen. A necessary condition then of all muscular exercise is that the muscles shall be supplied with oxygen in proportion to their requirements. Since the arterial blood is under normal conditions 90 to 95 per cent. saturated with oxygen, no appreciable further amount can be provided by increasing the saturation of the hæmoglobin in the blood; so that an eight to twelve fold increase in the oxygen usage by the muscles must

imply a corresponding increase in the blood supplied to these organs. This increased blood flow to the muscles involves in its turn an increase in the blood flow through the lungs and in the ventilation of the lungs. In the next chapter we shall have occasion to study the method by which the respiratory centre is enabled to adjust its activity, and therewith the rate at which the air in the pulmonary alveoli is renewed, in exact proportion to the needs of the body for oxygen. We are concerned here chiefly with the mechanism by which the circulation through the lungs and muscles can be and is increased in like proportion. The measurement of the circulation through the lungs is identical with the measurement of the output of the right ventricle. This has been investigated by Krogh and Lindhard and by Means and Newburgh in the healthy man during rest and during exercise. In Fig. 482 are shown results obtained by the two last-named observers. It will be seen that the blood flow through the lungs, or the output of the right ventricle per minute, increases in a manner almost absolutely proportional to the consumption of oxygen, and that both increase *pari passu* with the work done per minute. How is this admirable adjustment of the activity of the heart and circulation to the oxygen needs of the muscles effected? The output of the heart depends on the inflow into this organ, so that our problem is to determine the factors which increase the inflow into the heart in proportion to the needs of the muscles. At or before the onset of muscular exercise, unless this is quite moderate, there is contraction of the splanchnic vessels, so that the blood is diverted from the viscera to the muscles and later on also to the skin. Every muscle as we have seen acts as an accessory heart, the muscular contractions emptying the capillaries into the veins, and in the latter driving on the fluid towards the heart in virtue of the valves present in these vessels. The more active the muscles therefore, the more rapidly the blood which enters them is passed on with force towards the big veins and the heart. The circulation through the big veins of the abdomen and chest is aided by the respiratory movements, which are also augmented in proportion to muscular activity, each inspiration driving the blood out of the big veins in the abdomen and aspiring it into the veins and heart cavities within the thorax. The blood flow into the heart is thus increased in proportion to the activity of the muscles. Under resting conditions it seems probable that the filling of the heart is what Krogh has described as 'inadequate'—*i. e.* the amount of blood entering the heart during each diastole is not sufficient to fill this organ up to the limits set by the fibrous and inextensible pericardium. The first effect of muscular exercise will be to increase the filling of the heart and therefore the output at each beat, and this will go on until the filling during each diastole has become 'adequate.' The heart therefore, at the beginning of muscular exercise, automatically reacts by increasing the output per beat. Whether diastolic filling of the heart be adequate or inadequate, the pressure in its cavities just before systole will be approximately zero. If now the inflow be still further increased, the diastolic pressure within the heart and in the big veins will begin to rise, since the heart cannot further increase appreciably its output per beat. Now comes in the reflex mechanism

described by Bainbridge. The increasing tension on the venous side of the heart evokes reflexly a quickening of the heart rhythm, chiefly by inhibition of the vagus tone, possibly also by reflex stimulation of the sympathetic accelerator nerves. Further increase in the inflow into the heart is met by corresponding quickening of the heart rhythm. Distension of the big veins is thus prevented, and the output of each ventricle per minute is increased seven, ten or even twelve times. The part played by increase of output per beat and by increase of pulse rate respectively in augmenting the total output of the heart is shown in Fig. 483. In this figure the first rise in pulse rate from sixty-eight to ninety-eight and the corresponding increase in output per beat can be regarded as associated with the initial changes originated by the act of attention and volition. It will be seen that between 270 to 600 kilogrammetres' work per minute the pulse rate remains practically unchanged, while the output per beat increases steadily with the work. After this point there is very little further increase in the output per beat, which towards the end begins to diminish, while there is a steady increase in the pulse rate.

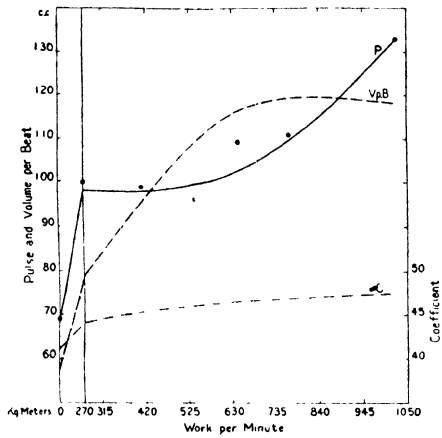


FIG. 483 Chart showing the effect of increasing amounts of muscular work on the pulse rate P, shown by dots; on the heart output per beat, VpB, and on the co-efficient of oxygen utilisation in the blood, C. (From MEANS and NEWBURGH.)

By this means the blood is driven through the lungs at a rate corresponding to the increased needs of the muscles for oxygen. The passage of this blood through the muscles is provided for by two mechanisms. In the first place we have the contraction of the splanchnic vessels, so that the blood pressure is raised and all the available blood can be driven through the working tissues. In the second place the muscles in their activity produce lactic acid, CO_2, and possibly other metabolites, which cause dilatation of the arterioles and capillaries in the muscles themselves. During rest it is probable that the majority of the capillaries are closed; during activity these dilate and are filled with blood, so that the capillary bed in the muscles may be increased many times in area, and each element of the muscle is brought into close relation with a dilated capillary through which is flowing a rapid stream of oxygenated blood. Krogh has shown that the number of blood-containing capillaries in each square millimetre cross-section of the muscle may be increased 40 to 100 times during maximal activity of the muscle. As a result the oxygen tension in the muscle fibres becomes almost equal to that in the capillaries themselves.

This production of acid products in the muscles aids also dissociation of the oxyhæmoglobin passing through the capillaries and therefore sets free oxygen for the use of the muscles. On this account we find almost invariably that the utilisation of the oxygen taken in from the lungs is more complete during exercise. The oxygen utilisation per litre of blood as it flows round the circulation is known as the 'co-efficient of utilisation.' Thus if 328 c.c. of oxygen were used per minute and the blood flow were 4·5 litres per minute, $\frac{328}{4{\cdot}5} = 73$ c.c. oxygen would be utilised per litre of blood. If the oxygen capacity of the blood were 193 c.c. per litre, the co-efficient of utilisation would be $\frac{73}{193} = 38$ per cent. In Fig. 483 the co-efficient of the oxygen utilisation is given by the curve C.

It has been shown by Cannon that every state of excitement, and especially fear and anger, is attended with increased secretion of adrenaline into the blood stream. During the violent exercise associated or caused by emotional stress, there will be an excess of adrenaline circulating in the blood, which will reinforce the activity of the circulation. Thus it will increase the constriction of the splanchnic area already excited by the central effects of the increased CO_2 or lactic acid in the blood. In the heart the adrenaline will increase the contractile power and also the rate of beat, while by its dilator action on the coronary vessels it will aid the supply of oxygen to the heart muscle. At the same time, as we have seen (p. 844), adrenaline will cause a rapid conversion of the glycogen of the liver into sugar, so that the contracting muscles may be rapidly supplied with the food which they can utilise with the greatest ease and readiness. It is doubtful whether these adjuvant effects of adrenaline are to be reckoned with except in cases of severe emotional stress.

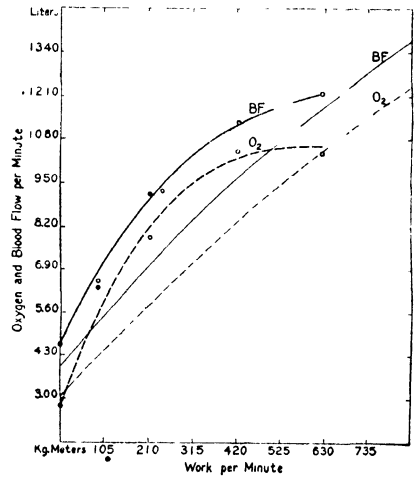


FIG. 484. Chart showing the effects of muscular work on the blood flow and oxygen consumption in a subject with aortic disease, as compared with a normal individual (shown in lighter lines). (From MEANS and NEWBURGH.)

(For oxygen consumption omit the decimal point and read in c.c.s.)

Training. The muscular efficiency of a man is measured by the extent to which he can call upon his body for increased efforts, *i. e.* by his margin of response. This margin in normal individuals may be 600 per cent., *i. e.* over a moderate period of time the individual may increase his muscular work, his respiratory exchanges, and the rate of his circulation six times

above that obtaining during rest. This margin in a normal individual can be increased by training, the essential features in which are graduated exercise and healthy diet, so that the muscle grows and becomes free from interstitial fat, while the fluid parts of the body and of the blood are diminished so that a larger amount of oxygen can be carried per unit volume of blood. The well-trained individual may have a margin of as much as 120 per cent. Disease is marked by a diminution of the margin. In Fig. 484 is given diagrammatically the response of the circulation and respiration of a man with heart disease affecting the aortic and mitral valves. This man had no discomfort and was able to do ordinary work without ill effects. On testing him on measured muscular tasks, it will be seen that, although at first he reacts like the normal individual, his margin is diminished, and when doing only 315 kilogram-metres of work per minute, the rise in the oxygen intake and in the heart output fails to keep pace with the increase in the work and loses also the parallelism which is so marked a feature in normal individuals. With increasing disease the time would finally come when the margin was reduced to 50 per cent. or 100 per cent., so that even the act of changing from a recumbent to an erect position might be too much for the enfeebled adaptive mechanisms of the body and the patient would have to keep his bed. There is thus no definite dividing line between health and disease, the change from one to the other being but a progressive diminution of margin or extent of adaptation.

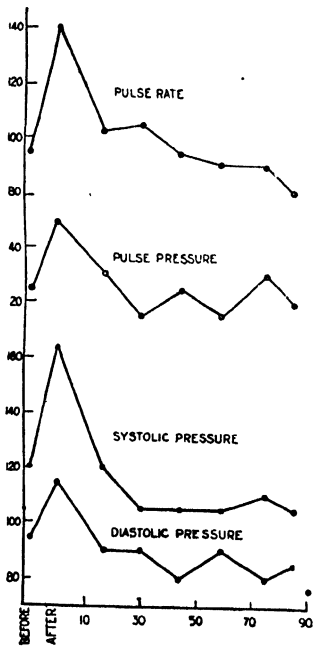


FIG. 485. Curves showing the influence of exercise on the circulation. The exercise was a six-mile run. Ordinates = mm. Hg. pressure and rate per minute. (O. S. LOWSLEY.)

We have seen that the physiological condition of the heart is measured by the degree of dilatation of its cavities, *i. e.* the length of its muscle fibres, required in order that in its beat it may set up a contractile stress adequate to expel its contents against the arterial resistance. Thus a degree of filling of the heart, which in a well-trained man may be adequate to excite a contraction sufficient entirely to empty its cavities, in a weaker heart would be inadequate, so that blood would accumulate at each diastole until the stretching of the fibres was sufficient to ensure that the amount entering during diastole was expelled at each systole. The trained man—*i. e.* with a heart in good condition—will therefore have a considerable range over which the output per beat can be increased with increasing inflow without alteration of rhythm. In the untrained man this margin will be smaller,

so that the second mechanism of adaptation, viz. quickening of the heart beat, will be sooner brought into action to cope with the increased inflow associated with muscular exercise. Thus one finds a considerable difference in the effect of exercise on the pulse rate in trained and untrained individuals respectively, and this is specially shown in the rate of recovery in the pulse when the exercise comes to an end, the effects lasting much longer in the untrained. In all cases exercise not carried to exhaustion tends to be followed by a prolonged diminution both in pulse rate and in blood pressure (cf. Fig. 485).

fluid would be to increase the mean systemic pressure, and therefore one would expect to find a large increase both in arterial and venous systems. But the organism prevents the rise on the arterial side by relaxing the whole system of arterioles, so that the distribution of pressures is altered, and the venous approximates more closely to the arterial pressure. This arterial dilatation augments the velocity of the blood : it has been found that the velocity may be accelerated to six or eight times the normal rate by

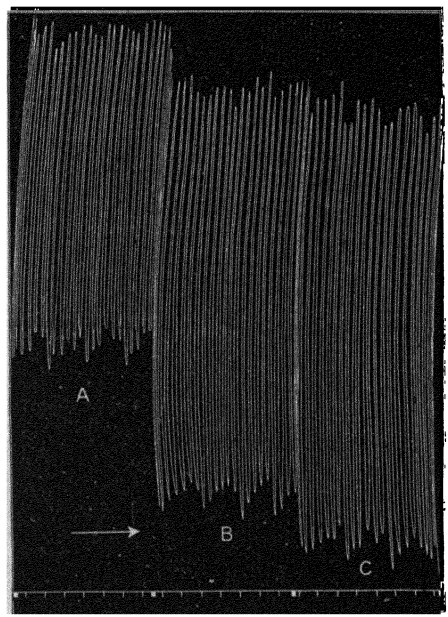


FIG. 487. Cardiometer tracing from dog's heart to show effect of increasing the volume of circulating blood (hydræmic plethora) on the total output and the volume of the heart. Between the parts A and B 30 c.c. of warm normal salt solution were injected intravenously, and between B and C 20 c.c. more. It will be noticed that both the systolic and the diastolic volume are increased, *i. e.* the heart is more distended during diastole, and does not contract to its normal size in systole. The contraction volume, and therefore the output, is very largely increased. (ROY.)

injecting an amount of salt solution equivalent to 50 per cent. of the total blood.

The high venous pressure causes increased diastolic filling of the ventricles, and therefore augments the strength of the beat. The frequency is also generally raised if the vagi are intact in consequence of the greater distension of the auricles. Thus the work of the heart is increased in three ways, viz. by

(1) Rise of arterial pressure.

(2) Greater frequency of beat.

(3) Increased output at each beat (Fig. 487).

These series of changes result in the relief of the vascular system. The

heightened pressure in the abdominal veins and capillaries causes a great leakage of fluid in the form of lymph from the capillaries of the intestines and liver, while the increased pressure and velocity of the blood in the glomeruli of the kidney induce a copious secretion of urine, so that within a couple of hours after the injection of salt solution the volume of the circulating fluid may have returned to normal.

This recovery is effected with greater difficulty if the plethora has been brought about by the injection of defibrinated blood, since this fluid cannot escape rapidly from the capillaries, nor can it be excreted unchanged by the kidneys. Hence it is easy to kill an animal by wearing out its heart, if too large quantities of defibrinated blood be injected. The ultimate fate of the injected blood is to be used as food by the tissues, and to be eliminated by the ordinary channels.

It must be remembered that the blood serum of one animal is often poisonous for the corpuscles of another. Thus a few cubic centimetres of dog's serum injected into the peritoneal cavity of a rabbit will cause death. This poisonous action is also shown by mixing dog's serum with defibrinated rabbit's blood, in which case the red corpuscles of the latter are broken up, setting free hæmoglobin (*hæmolysis*).

THE EFFECTS OF HÆMORRHAGE. ANÆMIA

Any diminution of the total volume of the blood, as by bleeding, would tend to lower the pressure on both sides of the system. The vaso-motor centre however strives to maintain the normal arterial pressure, and so the circulation through the brain, unaltered. This object is attained by a general vascular constriction, which diminishes the total capacity of the system and alters the distribution of pressures throughout the system, so as to keep the blood as much as possible on the arterial side. Thus a slight loss of blood has no influence on the arterial blood pressure, but causes a fall of pressure in the veins, blanching of the abdominal organs, and diminished flow of urine. The heart beats more frequently, and so aids in emptying the venous into the arterial system.

The deficiency of circulating fluid caused by bleeding is soon remedied by a transfer of fluid from the tissues to the blood. This transfer is independent of the flow of lymph from the thoracic duct into the blood, and is the direct consequence of the universal fall of capillary pressure which results from the bleeding. The abstraction of fluid from the tissues is responsible for the extreme thirst which is the result of hæmorrhage, and which directs the animal to take up by the alimentary canal the fluid which is wanting to the body. The transfer of fluid from tissues to blood is extremely rapid; even during the course of a bleeding it is found that the later samples of blood are more dilute than those obtained at the beginning. This mechanism suffices only to make up the supply of circulating fluid. After a bleeding however, an animal has lost proteins and blood corpuscles, and these constituents of the blood are but slowly restored, the former directly from the food, the latter by an increased activity of the blood-forming cells in the red marrow.

CHAPTER XIV

LYMPH AND TISSUE FLUIDS

In no part of the body does the blood come in actual contact with the living cells of the tissue. In all parts the blood flows in capillaries with definite walls consisting of a single layer of cells, and is thus separated from the tissue-elements by these walls and by a varying thickness of tissue. In some organs, such as the liver and lung, every cell is in contact with the outer surface of some capillary; while in others, such as cartilage (which is quite avascular), a considerable thickness of tissue may separate any given cell from the nearest capillary. A middleman is thus needed between the blood and the tissues, and this middleman is the tissue fluid or lymph which fills spaces between all the tissue elements, so that any tissue can be regarded as a sponge soaked with lymph.

Throughout these spaces we find a close network of vessels, lined and separated from the tissue spaces by a layer of extremely thin endothelial cells, and this plexus communicates with definite channels—lymphatics, by which any excess of fluid in the part is drained off. The lymphatics all run towards the chest, where those of the hind limbs join a large vessel (the receptaculum chyli), which receives the lymph from the alimentary canal, to form the thoracic duct. This runs up on the left side of the œsophagus, and after receiving the lymphatic trunks from the left fore limb and the left side of the neck, opens into the venous system at the junction of the left internal jugular with the subclavian vein. A small vessel on the right side drains the lymph from the right fore limb and right side of the chest and neck.

The lymph may be looked upon as a part of the plasma which exudes through the capillary wall, bathes all the tissue elements, passes between the endothelial cells into the peripheral lymphatic network, whence it is carried by lymphatic trunks into the thoracic duct, by which it is returned again to the blood.

It is easy to obtain lymph for examination by putting a cannula (a small tube of glass or metal) into the thoracic duct, and collecting the fluid that drops from it in a glass vessel.

We may also tap in a similar way one of the large lymphatic trunks of the limbs; but in the latter case we have to use artificial means to induce a flow of lymph, since little or none can be obtained from a limb at rest, the only part of the body where there is normally a constant flow of lymph being the

alimentary canal. And thus we cannot regard the flow of lymph from a part as any index of the chemical changes going on at that part. In a limb at rest foodstuffs are being taken up from the blood and burnt up by the muscles with the production of CO_2, although we may not be able to obtain a drop of lymph from a cannula in one of the lymphatics. The lymph is thus truly a middleman; as any substance, oxygen or foodstuff, is taken up by a tissue cell from the lymph surrounding it, this latter recoups itself at once at the expense of the blood. Thus there would seem to be no need for lymphatics to drain the limb, were it not that under many conditions which we shall study directly, the exudation of lymph from the blood vessels is so excessive that, if it were not carried off at once and restored to the blood, it would accumulate in the tissue spaces, give rise to dropsy, and by pressure on the cells and blood vessels affect them injuriously.

PROPERTIES OF LYMPH

Lymph obtained from the thoracic duct of an animal varies in composition and appearance according to the condition of the animal, whether recently fed or fasting. From a fasting animal the lymph is a transparent liquid, generally slightly yellowish, and sometimes reddish from admixture of blood corpuscles. When obtained from an animal shortly after a meal, it is milky from the presence of minute particles of fat that have been absorbed from the alimentary canal. In the latter case, if the intestines be exposed, the small lymphatics are to be seen as white lines running from the intestine to the attached part of the mesentery. It is owing to this fact that these lymphatics have received the special name *lacteals*, the lymph in them being called the *chyle*. The fatty particles form the *molecular basis* of the chyle.

On microscopic examination the transparent lymph of fasting animals presents colourless corpuscles similar to those of blood, or perhaps we ought to say identical, since the leucocytes of the blood are partly derived from the corpuscles that have entered with the lymph through the thoracic duct.

All the lymphatics pass at some point of their course through lymphatic glands, which we may look upon as factories of leucocytes, since these are much more numerous in the lymph after it has traversed the gland than before. Leucocytes are also formed in all the numerous localities where we find adenoid tissues, such as the tonsils, air passages, alimentary canal (Peyer's patches and solitary follicles), Malpighian bodies of the spleen, and thymus.

The lymph from the thoracic duct is alkaline, has a specific gravity of about 1015, and clots at a variable time after it has left the vessels, forming a colourless clot of fibrin, just like blood plasma. It contains about 6 per cent. of solid matters, the proteins consisting of fibrinogen, paraglobulin, and serum albumen. The salts are similar to those of the liquor sanguinis, and are present in the same proportions.

THE PRODUCTION OF LYMPH

Many physiologists have thought that, in the transudation of the fluid which forms the lymph, there is an active intervention on the part of the endothelial cells forming the capillary wall, and that lymph is therefore to be regarded as a true secretion. A careful investigation of the known experimental facts has failed to show that the endothelial cells act otherwise than passively, as filtering membranes of variable permeability. The factors which are responsible for the transudation of lymph may be divided into two classes—mechanical and chemical, the former depending largely on the pressure of the blood in the vessels, and the latter chiefly on the metabolism of the cells outside the vessels.

According to the views here laid down, the formation of lymph may be compared to a process of filtration. If this be correct the amount of lymph formed in any given capillary area must be dependent on the difference of pressure between the blood in the vessels and the fluid in the extravascular tissue spaces. This latter pressure is normally extremely low, so that in attempting to test the truth of this view we must try the effects of altering the pressure inside the vessels, in the expectation of finding that the lymph production will rise and fall as the capillary pressure is increased or diminished. On attempting to carry out such experiments in different parts of the body, we have to recognise another factor besides the capillary pressure, viz. the permeability of the vessel wall. Whereas the capillary walls in the limbs and connective tissues generally present a very considerable resistance to the filtration of lymph through them, and keep back the larger portion of the proteins of the blood plasma, the intestinal capillaries are much more permeable, giving at moderate capillary pressures a continual flow of lymph and separating off only a small proportion of the proteins. It is in the liver however that we find the greatest permeability. Here a very small pressure sufficies to produce a great transudation of lymph, containing practically the same amount of protein as the blood plasma from which it is formed.

The ease with which fluid passes out from the capillaries of the liver is probably due to the fact that these vessels, unlike most other capillaries of the body, have not a complete endothelial lining. Thus it is impossible to display a continuous endothelial lining by means of silver nitrate. The cells surrounding the capillaries are large and branched, and possess marked phagocytic powers, so that after an injection of carmine granules or bacteria into the blood stream, these bodies are found in quantity within the cells. Owing to the incompleteness of this investment the liver cells in many places abut on the lumen of the capillary. On injecting the blood system of the liver the injection is found to run with ease into channels situated within the cells themselves, and it is reasonable to conclude that the blood plasma takes the same course through these intracellular channels, by which it passes into the lymphatics which lie at the periphery of the lobules.

In experiments on the lymph production in the limbs, alterations of capillary pressure have but slight effect. The lymph flow from a limb lymphatic is practically unaltered by changes in its arterial supply, although

a definite increase may be obtained by ligaturing all the veins of the limb so as to cause a very great rise of capillary pressure. The lymph flow from the intestines can be measured by collecting the lymph from the thoracic duct. If the lymphatics which leave the liver in the portal fissure be previously ligatured, the whole of the thoracic duct lymph in an animal at rest is derived from the intestines. It will be found that lowering of the capillary pressure in these organs by obstructing the thoracic aorta stops the flow of lymph absolutely, whereas a rise of capillary pressure, such as that produced by ligature of the portal vein, causes a four or five fold increase of the lymph.

The effect of rise of capillary pressure on the lymph flow is still more striking in the case of the liver. If the inferior vena cava be obstructed just above the opening of the hepatic veins, there is a great fall of arterial pressure but, owing to the damming back of the blood, a rise of pressure in the liver capillaries to three or four times the normal height. This rise causes a large increase in the lymph flow from the thoracic duct. The lymph may be increased eight to ten times in amount, and it contains more protein than before. If the portal lymphatics be previously ligatured, obstruction of the inferior vena cava has no effect on the lymph flow, showing that the whole of this increase is derived from the one region of the body where the capillary pressure is increased, viz. the liver.

We must conclude that, in those regions of the body where the capillaries are fairly permeable, the most important factor in lymph production is the intracapillary pressure.

In the case of the limbs and connective tissues generally, the pressure factor is probably under normal conditions of less importance, so that the second factor, the chemical, comes here more into prominence. The capillary wall not only permits of filtration under certain pressures but also allows the passage of water and dissolved substances by diffusion and osmosis. These osmotic interchanges between blood and cell through the intermediation of the lymph are constantly going on in the normal life of the tissue, and are quite independent of the amount of lymph produced. Thus a gland cell may use up oxygen, calcium, or sugar, and create a vacuum of these substances in the layer of lymph immediately surrounding the cell. There is at once a disturbance of the equilibrium, and a flow of these substances from blood to lymph is set up. In consequence of the wonderful arrangements in the tissues for ensuring the intimate contact of blood and lymph without intermingling, these changes can occur with great rapidity. We find, for instance, that if a very large amount (40 grm.) of dextrose be injected into the circulation, osmotic equilibrium between blood and lymph is established within half a minute of the termination of the injection. In this case the rise of osmotic pressure caused by the injection of the sugar attracts water from the tissue fluid, and this in its turn from the tissue cells, until the osmotic pressure inside and outside the vessels is the same. By this means the volume of the circulating blood is increased at the expense of the tissues. A process of this character may however work under normal

circumstances in the reverse direction, and lead to a passage of fluid from blood to tissues and tissue spaces. Every active contraction of a muscle, for instance, is attended by the breaking down of a few large molecules into a number of smaller ones, and this increase in the number of molecules causes a rise of osmotic pressure in the muscle fibre and surrounding lymph, and therefore a passage of fluid from blood to lymph. In the same way a cell of the submaxillary gland, when stimulated by means of its nerve, pours out a quantity of fluid into the gland duct, and so into the mouth. This fluid comes in the first instance from the cell itself, but the cell recoups itself from the surrounding lymph, raising the concentration of this fluid, and the difference in concentration thus caused at once induces a passage of water from blood to lymph. Hence salivary secretion is associated with a large flow of fluid through the capillary walls of the gland. In this passage the endothelial cells of the capillaries play no part, the whole process being conditioned by changes in the extravascular gland cell. We have only to paralyse the gland cell by means of atropine in order to see that the active flushing of the gland, which accompanies activity, produces merely a minimal increase in the lymph flow from the gland.

The influence of tissue activity in the production of lymph is still better shown in the case of a large gland, such as the liver. Stimulation of this organ by the injection of bile salts into the blood stream causes a large increase in the lymph flow from the organ, and therefore in the lymph flow from the thoracic duct.

It is important to remember that the relative insusceptibility of the limb capillaries to pressure holds only for the absolutely normal capillary. Any factor which leads to impaired nutrition of the vascular wall, such as deficiency of supply of blood or oxygen, the presence of poisons in the blood or in the surrounding tissues, scalding or freezing, increases at the same time its permeability. Under such conditions the limb capillary reacts to changes of pressure like a liver capillary, the slightest increase of pressure causing an appreciable increase in the lymph production. This increased lymph production may be too great to be carried off by the lymphatic channels, so that the exuded fluid stays in the tissue spaces, distending them and causing the condition known as œdema or dropsy.

LYMPHAGOGUES. Among the substances which have a direct action on the vessel wall are a number of bodies which were described by Heidenhain as lymphagogues of the first class. As their name implies, these bodies on injection into the blood stream cause an increased flow of lymph from the thoracic duct (Fig. 488). They may be extracted from the dried tissues of crayfish, mussels, or leeches by simple boiling with water. Commercial peptone has a similar effect. Heidenhain regarded these bodies as direct excitants of the secretory activities of the endothelial cells. They are however general poisons, having a special action on the vascular system, and their effect on lymph production is probably due simply to their deleterious action on the capillary wall. Although these bodies act chiefly on the liver capillaries, so that the main increase in the thoracic duct lymph is derived from the liver,

they can be shown also to have some effect in the same direction on the intestinal and skin capillaries. In fact the injection or ingestion of these bodies often gives rise to a copious eruption of nettle-rash, *i. e.* swellings of the skin due to an increased exudation of lymph into the meshes of the cutis.

An increased lymph flow from the thoracic duct may be produced also by the injection of large amounts (10 to 40 grm.) of innocuous crystalloids, such as dextrose, urea, or sodium chloride, into the circulation. In this case the lymph becomes much more dilute. The explanation of the action of these bodies is very simple. We have already seen that injection of large amounts of dextrose into the circulating blood raises the osmotic pressure of this fluid. The blood therefore imbibes water from the tissues and

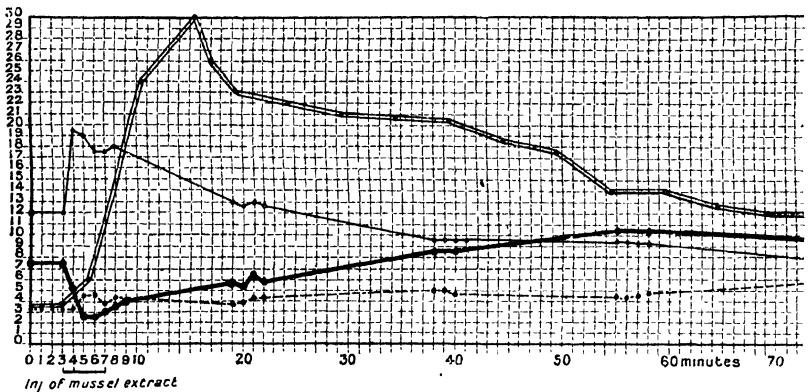


FIG. 488. Changes in lymph flow in portal, inferior cava, and arterial pressures, resulting from injection of a member of the first class of lymphagogues (extract of mussels). (STARLING.)

swells up, *i. e.* a condition of hydræmic plethora is brought about as surely as if several hundred cubic centimetres of normal salt solution were injected into the circulation. This increase in the total volume of the blood causes a rise of pressure throughout the vascular system—arteries, capillaries, and veins—and the increased capillary pressure, combined with the watery condition of the blood, induces a great transudation of lymph, especially in the abdominal organs (Fig. 489). The lymph is more watery because the blood also is diluted. That the action of these bodies is purely mechanical is shown by the fact that, if the rise of capillary pressure be prevented by bleeding the animal immediately before the injection, the increase in the lymph flow is also prevented (Fig. 489, B), although the concentration of the sugar or salt in the blood is still greater than in the experiments in which bleeding was not performed.

MOVEMENT OF LYMPH

In the frog the circulation of lymph is maintained by rhythmically contracting muscular sacs, which are placed in the course of the main lymph

channels and pump the lymph into the veins. In the higher animals and in man the onward flow of lymph is effected partly by the pressure at which it is secreted from the capillaries into the interstices of the tissues, but also to a large extent by the contractions of the skeletal muscles. In the smaller lymph radicles the pressure of lymph may attain 8 to 10 mm. soda solution.

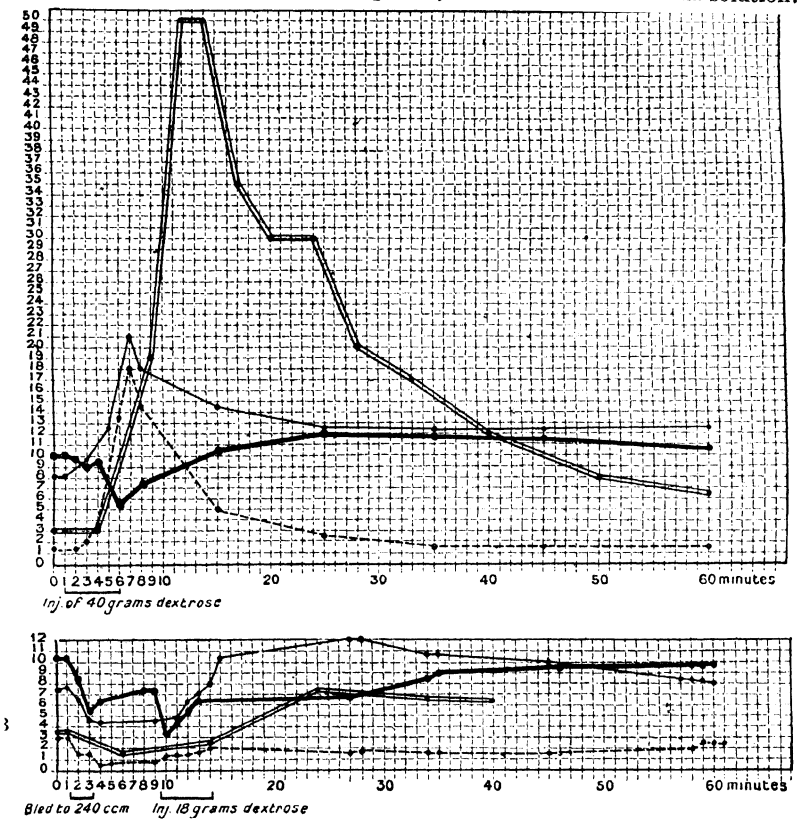


FIG. 489. Effect on lymph flow and on arterial and venous pressures of injection of concentrated solution of glucose.

In B the animal was bled to 240 c.c. before the injection. The double line = lymph flow in c.c. per ten minutes; thin line = portal vein; thick line = carotid artery; dotted line = inferior vena cava.

In the thoracic duct, at the point where it opens into the great veins of the neck, the pressure is obviously the same as in these veins, that is to say, from — 4 to 0 mm. Hg., the negative pressure being occasioned by the aspiration of the thorax. This difference of pressure is sufficient to cause a certain amount of flow. It must be remembered however that under normal circumstances no lymph at all flows from a resting limb. The only part of the body which gives a continuous stream of lymph during rest is the alimentary canal, the lymph in which is poured out into the lacteals, and thence

makes it way through the thoracic duct. Movement, active or passive, of the limbs at once causes a flow of lymph from them. Since the lymphatics are all provided with valves (Fig. 490), the effect of external pressure on them is to cause the lymph to flow in one direction only, *i. e.* towards the thoracic duct and great veins. Hence we may look upon muscular exercise as the greatest factor in the circulation of lymph. The flow of lymph from the commencement of the thoracic duct in the abdominal cavity to the main part of it in the thoracic cavity is materially aided by the respiratory movements; since, with every inspiration, the lacteals and abdominal part of the duct are subjected to a positive pressure, and the intrathoracic part of the duct to a negative pressure, so that lymph is continually being sucked into the thorax.

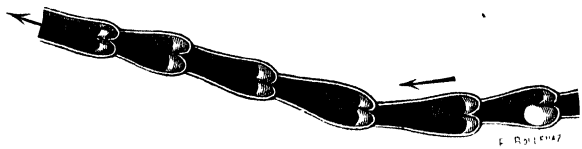


FIG. 490. A lymphatic vessel laid open to show arrangement of the valves. (TESTUT.)

THE ABSORPTION OF LYMPH AND TISSUE FLUIDS

On injecting a coloured-solution or suspension into the connective tissues of any part of the body, and gently kneading the part, it is found that the fluid fills all the lymphatic channels running from the part; and we can in this way inject the lymphatics of the limb and trace their course on to the thoracic duct. The same path is taken by micro-organisms as they spread in the tissues, or by particles of carmine or Indian ink which have been introduced in tattooing. It is on account of these facts that the lymphatics are often spoken of as the 'absorbent system.'

This process of lymphatic absorption, except in the case of the pleural and peritoneal cavities, is however a slow one unless aided to a large extent by passive or active movements of the surrounding parts, and cannot therefore account for the rapid symptoms of poisoning which supervene within two or three minutes after the hypodermic injection of a solution of strychnine or other poison. That this absorption is not dependent on the lymphatics is shown by the fact that the symptoms occur almost as quickly when all the tissues of the limb have been severed, with the exception of the main artery and vein. In the same way, after injecting methylene blue or indigo carmine into the pleural cavity or subcutaneous tissues, the dyestuff appears in the urine long before any trace of colour can be perceived in the lymph flowing from the thoracic duct. The absorption in these cases is by the blood vessels, and consists in an interchange between blood and extravascular fluids, apparently dependent entirely upon processes of diffusion between these two fluids. So long as any difference in composition exists between the intra- and extravascular fluids, so long will diffusion currents be set up, tending to equalise this difference.

More difficulty is presented by the question of the mechanism of absorption by the blood vessels of the normal tissue fluids—such an absorption as we have seen to occur after loss of blood by hæmorrhage. It seems probable that this absorption depends on the small proportion of protein contained in the tissue fluid as compared with the blood plasma, and is due to the osmotic pressure of the protein. If blood serum be placed in a bell-shaped vessel (the mouth of which is closed by a gelatinous membrane which does not permit the passage of protein), and suspended in normal salt solution, it is found that the serum absorbs the salt solution until the manometer attached to the bell-jar indicates a pressure of 25–30 mm. Hg. Thus we may conceive that there is normally a balance in the capillaries between the processes of exudation and of absorption, the former being conditioned by the capillary blood pressure and the latter by the difference in protein content, and therefore of osmotic pressure between the blood plasma and tissue lymph. A rise of capillary pressure will upset this balance in favour of transudation and the blood will become more concentrated, whereas a fall of pressure will turn the scale in favour of absorption and the volume of blood will be increased at the expense of the tissue fluids.

THE PART PLAYED BY THE LYMPH IN THE NUTRITION OF THE TISSUES

The fact that the tissue cells are separated by the lymph and the capillary wall from the blood shows that, in all interchanges between the blood and tissues, the lymph must act as the medium of communication. The lymph flow plays very little part in this process. The muscles of a resting limb are taking up nourishment as well as oxygen from the blood and giving off their waste products—carbonic acid and ammonia, though not a drop of lymph may flow from a cannula placed in a lymphatic trunk of the limb. In fact the interchange of material between tissue cell and blood through the mediation of the lymph is carried out in the same way as are the gaseous interchanges, viz. by a process of diffusion. This explanation however holds good only for the diffusible constituents of the blood and will not account for the supply of the indiffusible protein molecules to the cell. Apparently the only way in which the tissues can obtain their supply of protein is from the small proportion of this substance which has filtered through the vessel wall into the lymph. The increased exudation of concentrated lymph to the tissues, which occurs in inflammatory conditions or as the result of injury, is therefore of advantage, since it furnishes an abundant supply of protein food to be used up in the regeneration of the damaged cells.

CHAPTER XV

THE DEFENCE OF THE ORGANISM AGAINST INFECTION

SECTION I

THE CELLULAR MECHANISMS OF DEFENCE

One of the main distinctions, perhaps the most important, between the animal and vegetable kingdoms lies in the inability of animals to build up their tissues at the expense of inorganic salts, and especially to synthetise the various groups necessary for the formation of the protein molecule. They are thus rendered dependent on the assimilative powers of the vegetable kingdom, and have to supply their needs by using the members of this kingdom as food. The protozoa, for example, subsist largely on bacteria. To obtain a pure culture of any form of amœba it is necessary to cultivate this along with some form of bacteria. The power of the unicellular animals to digest bacteria meets with a response on the part of the latter, many of them developing, by way of self-defence, the habit of forming and excreting poisons which will deter the amœba from taking them up or will injure it after it has ingested them. There is thus a continuous struggle among the various grades of unicellular organisms in which sometimes one, sometimes another type survives. An amœba placed in contact with most kinds of bacteria, living or dead, will rapidly englobe and digest them. There is however a small organism known as *microsphera* which is taken up by the amœba, but is not thereby destroyed. Retaining its vitality, it reproduces itself rapidly in the body of its host and finally leads to disintegration of the latter. In the same way the flagellate protozoa are often infected by a species of fungus known as *chytridium*, and die in consequence.

The liability of organisms to infection, by others endeavouring to live a parasitic existence at their expense, extends throughout the whole of the animal and vegetable kingdoms. In some cases the host and the parasite arrive at a compromise in which each benefits the other. This condition is known as *symbiosis*. We have examples of it in the union of fungi and algæ which occurs in lichens; in the association of nitrogen-fixing bacteria with many plants, especially those belonging to the natural order Leguminosæ. In herbivorous animals the presence of specific bacteria in the paunch or cæcum causes the breakdown of the cellulose walls of the food and may indeed lead to a building up of protein from amino-acids or

even from salts of ammonia. It is probable that in these cases the animal is decidedly benefited from the presence of these bacteria in its alimentary canal, so that here also we may speak of a symbiosis. In most cases invasion of a higher animal or plant by some lower organism is fraught with danger to the host, so that special mechanisms have to be provided for the protection of the tissues from infection. The most primitive means of defence, and one which is found throughout the whole animal kingdom, is exactly analogous to the process by which the amœba destroys and utilises any bacteria present in its environment. The prevention of infection is of course the function of the external layers of the organism, *i.e.* the epithelial covering, either of the skin or of the surface of the gut. Protection here may be of a physical or chemical character. The cells may secrete a horny or chitinous layer which presents a mechanical obstruction to the entry of

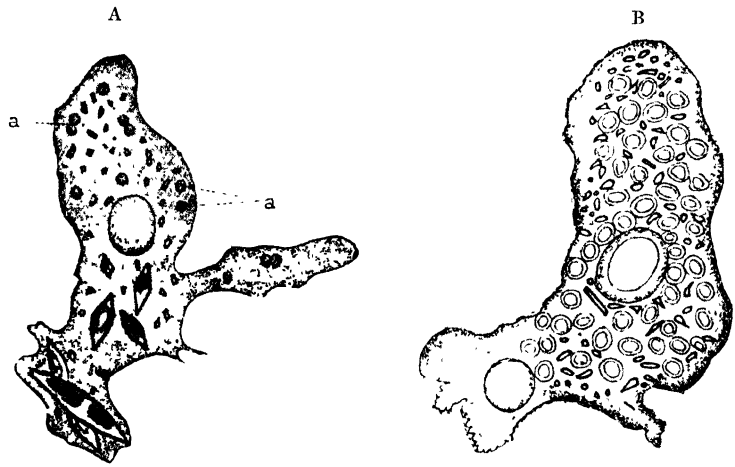


FIG. 491. A, amœba, infected by *Microsphæra*: *a*, early stage. B, a dying amœba, full of parasitic *Microsphæræ*. (METCHNIKOFF.)

bacteria. They may secrete mucin, which entangles and hinders the movements of invading micro-organisms, or they may secrete substances which actually destroy the life of such organisms. When however a micro-organism has obtained entrance to the interior of the body, *e. g.* through a wound of the surface epithelium, the task of dealing with the invader becomes the office of a special type of cells belonging to the mesoblast. These cells are similar in character to the amœba. They have the power of extruding pseudopodia, of wandering from place to place, and of englobing and digesting particles of food or bacteria with which they come in contact. On account of these latter properties they have been called by Metchnikoff *phagocytes*, and the whole process by which foreign material or the animal's own dead tissues are got rid of is spoken of as *phagocytosis*. The process can be well studied, as has been shown by Metchnikoff, in the sponge or in the larva of the echinoderm. At one stage in the development of the latter the larva consists of a sac which is involuted at one extremity to form the

alimentary cavity, while the mesoblast is represented by amœboid cells suspended in a semi-liquid substance filling the body cavity. If a particle of foreign substance be introduced into the body cavity, the wandering mesoderm cells collect round the particle and fuse into plasmodial masses, thus forming a wall, as it were, around it. If bacteria be introduced, the phagocytes may be seen to adhere to and ingest the still living bacteria, which are then rapidly digested and destroyed. A similar process may be observed in the transparent crustacean known as the water-flea (Daphnia), and here it may be noted that the process of phagocytosis is not always successful in maintaining the health or life of the host. Thus if the spores of a yeast-like organism, the *Monospora*, be introduced into the body cavity of Daphnia, the leucocytes may, if the spores be few in number, lay hold of

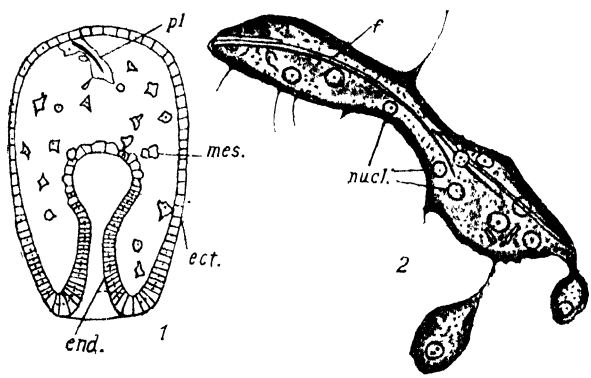


FIG. 492. 1, gastrula stage of starfish embryo, with a foreign substance, *pl*, in its body cavity; *end*, endoderm; *ect*, ectoderm; *mes*, wandering mesoblastic cells. 2, the foreign body of 1, surrounded by a plasmodium of phagocytes (highly magnified). (After METCHNIKOFF.)

the latter and digest them. If the spores be in excess, the phagocytes may fail to ingest them or may indeed be destroyed as soon as they approach them. In this case the spores germinate, fill up the body cavity, and finally lead to the death of the host. The same process of phagocytosis may be studied in its simple form by injuring or infecting some tissue which is free from blood vessels. Thus the tail fin of an embryonic axolotl may be cauterised with silver nitrate, or a small quantity of fluid containing carmine granules may be introduced by means of a hypodermic syringe. In either way a certain number of cells are destroyed and the dead tissue thereupon acts as a foreign body. As a result the wandering mesoderm cells or leucocytes move from the surrounding tissues towards the seat of the injury, and the day after the injury has been inflicted a collection of leucocytes can be seen, many of which contain particles of carmine or débris of the destroyed tissue which they have taken up. The cells finally wander away from the part, and the destruction is made good by the proliferation of the connective tissue cells and of the epithelium immediately adjoining the injury. In the lowest types of metazoa it is impossible to speak of more

than one type of wandering mesoderm cell. It is probable indeed that the same type of cell may at one time act as a scavenger and at another as the chief agent in the formation of connective tissues. Even in Daphnia, according to Hardy, only one form of leucocyte is present, whereas in the much more highly organised crayfish, belonging however to the same family, three different types of leucocyte may be distinguished. These leucocytes may be present free in the body cavity or they may form an element of the connective tissues. With the formation of a closed vascular system many of the wandering mesoderm cells became attached to this system, so that we may distinguish a group of blood leucocytes or phagocytes and a group of connective tissue or body-cavity leucocytes. Moreover by the formation of a blood vascular system, all the tissues of the body are brought into material relationship with one another, so that many distant parts may be drawn upon to supply the needs of any one part. It is evident that injury of a tissue in a higher animal containing blood vessels will involve more complex consequences than a similar injury or infection of the avascular tissue of an invertebrate, and that the accumulation of cells for the defence of the organism against invading microbes will be much more effective if the blood vessels participate in the process so that, by their means, the phagocytic resources of all parts of the body can be drawn upon to ward off a localised attack. The process of phagocytosis thus in the higher animals becomes merged into the more complex series of phenomena to which the term 'inflammation' has been applied. This process can be studied by observing the effects of slight injury to some transparent part of the body, *e. g.* the frog's tongue or mesentery or the web of the frog's foot. For this purpose a small piece of the skin of the frog's web is snipped off with fine curved scissors, the section being sufficiently deep to remove the skin without causing hæmorrhage. The first effect noticed in the immediate neighbourhood of the injury is a dilatation of the vessels, especially of the venules, with acceleration of the blood flow. In the course of an hour the capillaries also become dilated, and many capillary channels, previously invisible, are now occupied with blood. Through the dilated capillaries there is a rapid blood stream, the corpuscles occupying the axis of the vessel, so that there is a periaxial layer of plasma. A little later this acceleration gives place to a slowing of the blood stream, and simultaneously the leucocytes of the blood are seen to be adherent to the capillary wall. Apparently the latter becomes what we may call 'sticky,' the effect of the stickiness being to increase the resistance to the passage of the blood through the vessel and also to cause the adhesion of the leucocytes to the wall. As the current becomes still slower, the distinction between axial and peripheral streams disappears. The corpuscles are closely packed together, the white corpuscles being predominant at the margins of the capillary, where they form a lining to the vessel (Fig. 493). The next stage is the emigration of the leucocytes. These may be observed to thrust a process through the vessel-wall (according to Arnold this process of emigration always occurs through the stigmata, *i. e.* the points where the endothelial cells come in contact—

Fig. 494). The prolongation enlarges on the outer side of the vessel, while the portion of the leucocyte within the vessel becomes smaller, so that finally the whole leucocyte passes through and lies in the lymph spaces outside the capillary. In the course of five or six hours all the capillaries and small veins in the neighbourhood of the injury may show a crowd of leucocytes

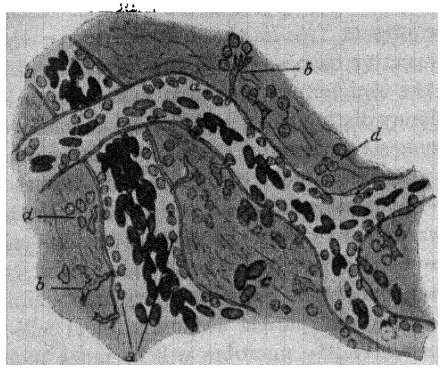


FIG. 493. Inflamed mesentery of frog, to show margination of leucocytes in the inflamed capillaries, *a*; migration of leucocytes, *b*; escape of red corpuscles, *c*; accumulation of leucocytes outside the capillaries, *d*. (From ADAMI after RIBBERT.)

along their outer surfaces. The use of this emigration seems to be to remove the tissue injured by the primary lesion. As soon as this is effected, regeneration of the injured tissue occurs by a proliferation of the connective tissue corpuscles and the epithelium, while the leucocytes move away and disappear. The essential phagocytic character of the inflammatory process may be shown if the primary lesion be attended with infection. Thus if a small quantity of the staphylococcus be injected into the subcutaneous tissue

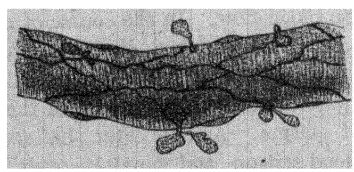


FIG. 494. Emigration of leucocytes through capillary wall. (ARNOLD.)

of the rabbit, the vessels surrounding the point of injection may within four hours be found densely filled with corpuscles. In ten hours' time the leucocytes are present in large numbers outside the vessels, while the injected cocci have spread for some distance along the lymphatic spaces and, while partly free, have been to a large extent ingested by the leucocytes. In twenty hours' time the connective tissue fibrils at the point of injection are found to be widely separated by the aggregation of leucocytes. In forty-eight hours' time a well-defined abscess is produced. At the centre all traces of previous connective tissue have disappeared and its place has been taken by a dense mass of leucocytes, many in a state of degeneration,

mingled with staphylococci, partly within, partly outside the cells. The margin of the abscess is formed by connective tissue infiltrated with living leucocytes. A certain number of cocci are to be seen free in the tissue outside this layer, but in the course of a day or two these free cocci disappear, and there is thus a continuous layer of phagocytes surrounding the abscess cavity and preventing any further invasion of the body as a whole from the seat of infection. The abscess subsequently discharges on to the exterior by a process of necrosis of the superjacent skin, and regeneration of tissue takes place in the same manner as in the more trivial injury. Inflammation in warm-blooded animals thus gives rise to dilatation of vessels and increased vascularity of the part, to alteration of the vessel wall and therefore to increased effusion of fluid. There are warmth and redness of the part from the vascular dilatation, swelling from the effusion of lymph, and very often, as a result of the injury or the swelling and the consequent involvement of sensory nerves, pain. The four cardinal symptoms of inflammation, namely, *rubor*, *calor*, *turgor*, and *dolor*, which have been described for generations as typical of this condition, leave out of account altogether the phenomenon which Waller's and Cohnheim's observations, in the light of the comparative studies of Metchnikoff, have shown us to be the essential feature of the process. This is phagocytosis, the accumulation of wandering mesoderm cells round the seat of injury with the objects of removing injured tissue, of destroying micro-organisms, of protecting the body from general infection, and of preparing the way for reintegration of tissue.

Prior to the work of Metchnikoff, the changes in the blood vessels fettered the attention of physiologists, and the accumulation of leucocytes was regarded as secondary to these changes. Though the alteration of the capillary wall, by permitting the adhesion of the leucocytes, must no doubt favour their emigration and their passage from all parts of the body into the inflamed part, we know that the same accumulation of leucocytes occurs in the entire absence of a vascular system. The movement of the corpuscles towards dead or injured tissue must therefore have some other explanation. We have abundant evidence to show that the essential factor in this aggregation of leucocytes is their chemical sensibility, and that the phenomenon is simply one of *chemiotaxis*. A capillary glass tube containing a suspension of dead micrococci, or peptone, or broth extracted from dead tissue, if introduced into the anterior chamber of the eye or into the subcutaneous tissue, is found after a short time to be full of leucocytes. We must assume that the chemical products diffusing out of the ends of the capillary tube have acted like the malic acid discharged by the cells forming the female organ, the archegonium, of ferns. Just as the latter causes a movement of the antherozoids, the male cells, towards the ovule, so the chemical substances diffusing from the capillary tube have occasioned a positive chemiotaxis on the part of the leucocytes. It is worthy of note that the positive chemiotactic influence exerted by any given species of pathogenic bacterium is roughly inversely proportional to its virulence. A culture lacking in virulence may

cause a very pronounced aggregation of leucocytes which speedily ingest and destroy the micro-organism, whereas if a culture of a more virulent variety of the same microbe be injected, there may be all the signs of inflammation, swelling, and large effusion of fluid, but the tissues may contain very few leucocytes. Under these circumstances the micro-organism rapidly proliferates and spreads from the seat of the lesion, giving rise finally to general infection.

So far we have spoken merely of leucocytes or phagocytes, and have not attempted to distinguish between the parts played by the various types of leucocyte which are found in the blood and connective tissues. In the higher animals there are however very many varieties of leucocytes belonging partly to the blood, partly to the connective tissues. The following Table, modified from Adami, enumerates the leucocytes which may be concerned with inflammation in a mammal or man :

Polymorphonuclear (polynuclear, finely granular oxyphile, neutrophile, or amphophile cell). Eosinophile (coarsely granular oxyphile, macroxycyte).	Originating in adult mammals from the bone marrow, and migrating from the blood into the inflammatory area.
Lymphocyte (? of two types). Plasma cell (? histogenous). Endotheloid leucocyte (mononuclear leucocyte, hyaline cell (in part), ' epithelioid cell ' (in part).	Originating from lymphoid tissue and from vascular and other endothelia respectively; present in inflamed area *either* by migration from blood *or* as result of local proliferation.
Connective tissue wandering cell (including clasmatocyte).	Originating locally as result of tissue proliferation.

The part played by each of these forms is still to a large extent the subject of discussion. There is no doubt that, in all active inflammations, the polymorphonuclear leucocyte is the form which is attracted first and in largest numbers to the seat of injury. It is the characteristic cell from which pus is formed, and is actively phagocytic. It has nothing to do with the regeneration of the destroyed tissue. The eosinophile corpuscle is also present at an early stage around the inflammatory focus, but is never present in numbers at all comparable with those of the polymorphonuclear leucocyte. It is especially abundant in chronic inflammations of certain tissues, such as the skin. According to Kanthack and Hardy, these cells discharge their granules into the surrounding fluid, rendering this fluid toxic for bacteria. Although later observations have failed to confirm these views, no other satisfactory explanation has been given as to the part played by these cells. They are rarely seen to ingest bacteria and therefore cannot be spoken of as phagocytic. The lymphocyte predominates in certain chronic inflammations, especially in those caused by the tubercle bacillus. They do not ingest bacteria. The histogenous wandering cells appear in the inflammatory area at a later period than the polymorphonuclear and eosinophile cells. They are actively phagocytic and are motile. As a rule their phagocytic properties are exerted, not on bacteria, but on other cells and cell débris.

After an acute inflammation their chief office is to clear away the remains of the polymorphonuclear leucocytes and dead tissues so as to prepare the way for subsequent regeneration. It is possible that these cells may take a part in the formation of new connective tissue. They are indistinguishable from the immature form of connective tissue cells. It is therefore difficult to be certain whether the wandering and the fixed connective tissue corpuscles are of identical or of different origin. Metchnikoff speaks of these cells as *macrophages*, to distinguish them from the polymorphonuclear type, which he terms *microphages*.

We thus see that several types of the wandering cells of mesoblastic origin, which take part in inflammation, do not exert active phagocytic properties and cannot therefore destroy bacteria or other invading organisms by the process of ingestion and digestion. Yet we have evidence that the part played by such cells in the defence of the organism is no less important than that of the actively phagocytic cells. In the alimentation of the more primitive invertebrata, the cells lining the digestive cavity take up the particles of food directly, and the processes of digestion are carried out in vacuoles within the cells themselves. In the higher animals this process of intracellular digestion has almost disappeared, and the cells lining the alimentary tract have become differentiated into those which secrete digestive ferments and those which absorb the products of the action of the ferments on the foodstuffs. Digestion has thus become extracellular. It seems that a similar modification has taken place to some extent in the means adopted by the organism for its defence from infection, and that the leucocytes destroy bacteria, not only by the process of intracellular digestion but also by the excretion into the surrounding body fluids of substances which have a deleterious influence on bacteria. Thus normal blood serum is found to have a strong destructive influence on most species of bacteria, whether pathogenic or not. Since this property is not shared to anything like the same extent by the blood plasma, it may be ascribed to the breaking down of leucocytes in the process of clotting and the consequent liberation of bactericidal substances. Extracts made from any collection of leucocytes have a similar bactericidal effect, and it has been shown by Wright that the ingestion of bacteria by normal leucocytes goes on much more rapidly in the presence of blood serum or if the bacteria have been previously subjected to the action of blood serum. This adjuvant action of blood serum on phagocytes is destroyed if the serum be heated to 55° C., so that it must be due to the presence in the serum of some chemical substance, which is unstable and destroyed by heat at a temperature far below the coagulation point of the serum proteins. Moreover there are many species of pathogenic bacteria which cannot infect the animal as a whole. These nevertheless may multiply on the surface of the body or in an abscess cavity, and lead to the death of the host, in consequence of the production by the bacteria of soluble toxins which are absorbed into the blood stream. Examples of such micro-organisms are those which are associated with tetanus and diphtheria. The process of intracellular digestion is obviously

inadequate to deal with such cases and, since we have the power of resisting and recovering from these diseases, there must be other mechanisms at the disposal of the body for the neutralisation of these toxins. The protection of the body against destruction by bacterial toxins involves in fact a whole series of chemical mechanisms, which we must regard as of equal importance and as co-operating with the phagocytic mechanism.

SECTION II

THE CHEMICAL MECHANISMS OF DEFENCE

IMMUNITY. All infectious diseases are caused by the agency of micro-organisms. The greater number of these, the bacteria, belong to the class of fungi or schizomycetes; a certain number must be classed with the yeasts, while others are protozoal in character. It is especially in the first class of diseases, namely, those due to bacteria, that the organism has developed chemical mechanisms of defence. In the protozoal diseases the micro-organisms occur for the greater part as intracellular parasites. One attack of the disease does not as a rule confer immunity, and the treatment has to be sought along the lines of medication by drugs rather than by the development of methods of protection normally displayed or developed by the animal which is the subject of the infection. The diseases due to bacteria include diphtheria, tetanus, tubercle, anthrax, pyæmia, and many others. In these diseases we have to deal with a number of phenomena more or less common to all. The infection in each case is due to the actual transference of the specific organism from one animal to another. After the micro-organism has attained entrance into the system there is a period of incubation before the disease actually breaks out. When this occurs, the specific microbe is to be found in large quantities either in the blood or in the tissues of the body. The disease is generally characterised by fever and often by local lesions, such as the intestinal ulcers of typhoid, or the glandular swellings of bubonic plague. The micro-organisms may develop in the animal until its death, or the disease may terminate in recovery and the total disappearance of the microbes from the body. After recovery it is found that the patient is protected from reinfection by the bacterium which was the cause of the disease, and this condition of immunity may last as long as the patient lives. The incidence of these bacterial diseases is not the same for all animals, so that in the case of many diseases we can speak of a natural immunity of certain animals for the diseases in question.

The pathogenic micro-organisms can, in a number of cases, be cultivated on artificial media outside the body. It is then found that they may be divided into two classes. One class, of which the diphtheria and tetanus bacilli are examples, secrete in the surrounding culture-fluid substances which act as virulent poisons when injected into animals. Other bacteria do not form such extracellular toxins, but in their case it is found that, if the bodies of the bacilli be broken up, the injection of the contents of the bacteria is attended with poisonous effects. The bacteria may be thus

classified according as they produce extracellular or intracellular toxins. We may deal first with the manner in which the body reacts to the toxins excreted by the first class. If a culture of diphtheria or tetanus bacilli be filtered, the clear filtrate free from bacilli is found to exercise as poisonous results as if the culture itself of the living bacilli had been employed. The toxins contained in these fluids are extremely potent. Thus five-millionths of a gramme of tetanus toxin is a fatal dose for a mouse, and ·00023 grm. would kill a man. These weights apply to the mixture obtained by the evaporation of the solution of toxin, so that the pure toxin must be even more powerful than is represented in these figures. We have at present no means of preparing a toxin in a pure condition, nor we do know to what class of compounds it should be assigned. The toxin is an unstable body and is destroyed by heating to 65° C. Similar toxins are widely distributed throughout the vegetable and animal kingdoms. Thus they form the active constituent of snake venom and of the poison of scorpions and spiders. They also occur in the seeds of castor oil and of jequirity, the toxins of which seem to be of protein character and are known as *ricin* and *abrin*. There is a great variability in the reaction of different animals to these toxins. Thus to the poison of tetanus the rabbit is weight for weight two thousand times and the hen twenty thousand times more resistant than the guinea-pig. As in the case of infection by bacteria themselves, a certain incubation time is necessary after the introduction of the toxin before its effects are displayed. There is a striking difference in this respect between the action of these complex bodies and the action of drugs, such as strychnine or morphine. Thus by increasing the dose of strychnine it is possible to kill an animal within half a minute. The period of survival after the injection of a dose of toxin cannot be reduced beyond a certain limit, however much toxin be injected. Thus a lethal dose of diphtheria toxin kills a guinea-pig in fifteen hours. If ninety thousand such doses be injected into a guinea-pig, it is not possible to reduce the time of survival below twelve hours. Another characteristic of these toxins is the specificity of their action. One kind of toxin may act chiefly on the central nervous system, another on the peripheral nerves, another on the red blood corpuscles. In this respect of course they resemble ordinary drugs. Associated with, and apparently a necessary condition of, this specific action is the actual combination which occurs between the toxin and the organ on which it exerts its effect. Thus tetanus toxin has a specific affinity for the central nervous system, and may be removed from a solution by shaking the latter up with an emulsion of brain. In spite of the excessively fatal character of these toxins it is possible to render an animal immune to their action. If a dose of diphtheria or tetanus toxin which is smaller than the fatal dose be injected into an animal, the latter may show signs of injury from which it recovers. When recovery is complete, it is found that three or four times the fatal dose may be injected without producing any evil effects; and this process of injection of toxin may be repeated in continually increasing doses until the animal is able to withstand a dose one hundred thousand times

as large as that which would have been fatal to it in the first instance. When a condition of immunity has been produced in this way, it is found that the blood serum of the animal has the power of neutralising the toxin. Thus if the blood serum from a horse, which has been treated with large doses of diphtheria toxin, be mixed with an equal quantity of the toxin itself, the mixture may be injected into susceptible animals without the production of any effect. It is possible in this way to get a serum, 1 c.c. of which will neutralise many fatal doses of the toxin; and, this antitoxic serum may be injected into a susceptible animal and used to confer an artificial immunity on the latter, or it may be injected into a diseased animal and used thus as a curative agent. Antitoxin thus plays a great part in modern therapeutics, especially of diphtheria. In the case of tetanus the toxin has a specific affinity for the nervous system and apparently travels up the axis cylinders of the nerves to the central nervous system. By the time that it has arrived at the central nervous system, and the spasms typical of tetanus have broken out, the toxin is already so firmly bound to the reacting tissue that the injection of antitoxin into the blood stream has little or no effect on the course of the disorder. The use of the tetanus antitoxin is therefore chiefly as a prophylactic agent.

The question of the manner in which the antitoxin is able to combine with and neutralise the toxin is one of considerable practical importance. In this process we have relations presenting marked analogies with the neutralisation of acids by bases. If we define a unit of toxin as that amount which possesses a certain power, *i. e.* which will kill a guinea-pig in so many days, or will cause the complete hæmolysis of 1 c.c. of blood in two and a half hours, we can find the amount of anti-body which is just sufficient to neutralise this effect, and this amount of anti-body can be regarded also as one unit. If instead of one unit of each we take 100 units, the neutralisation is effected in the same way. The process is found however to be more complex when we take 100 units of toxin or lysin and attempt to neutralise them by the fractional addition of antitoxin. In the case of a strong acid and strong alkali we know that, if 100 c.c. of alkali are just sufficient to neutralise 100 c.c. of acid, the addition of 50 c.c. of alkali will leave half the acid unneutralised. If however we try the same experiment in the case of mixtures of toxin and antitoxin, it will be found that the addition of 50 units of antitoxin will neutralise much more than half of the toxin, and the same applies to other bodies of this class. Ehrlich attempted to explain this result by assuming that in any toxin there is a mixture of substances, some having a strong affinity for the antitoxin, and others, which he calls toxones, possessing only a slight affinity. In the 50 units of toxin first added, the toxins would satisfy all their combining powers, whereas the toxones would not begin to combine until they were present in large excess. Arrhenius and Madsen have drawn an analogy between the neutralisation of toxin by antitoxin and the neutralisation of a weak acid, such as boracic acid, by a weak base, such as ammonia. They show that in this case the general course of events would be similar to that observed by Ehrlich. At no time

would there be complete neutralisation, owing to the fact that hydrolysis constantly occurs, so that when equivalent quantities of each substance had been added, the fluid would still contain a certain amount of free base alongside of free acid, in addition to the salt produced by the combination of the two. It is impossible however to account in this simple manner for all the phenomena presented in the neutralisation of toxin by antitoxin. Thus seventeen parts of ammonia would neutralise exactly an equivalent quantity of boracic acid, whether these substances were dissolved in 10 c.c. or in 100 c.c. of water. If however it be found that 1 c.c. of antilysin exactly neutralises 1 c.c. of lysin, these two substances will no longer be in equilibrium when the whole is diluted up to 10 c.c. with water. If a neutral mixture of lysin and antilysin be taken and filtered under pressure through a gelatin filter, no lysin or antilysin passes through the filter, so that the residue on the filter becomes concentrated. On examining this residue it is found that it has a strong hæmolytic action, and the same is true of the substance which may be obtained by melting the gelatin out of the pores of the filter. It is evident that, even in a neutralised mixture, both free lysin and free antilysin, or free toxin and free antitoxin, are present, and it needs only the alteration of the physical condition of the mixture in order to display the action of one or other of these bodies. How then are we to regard this combination of toxin with antitoxin? Craw has pointed out that the combination is in all respects comparable to that which occurs between absorbing surfaces and many dyestuffs. If we place some filter paper in a solution of fuchsin or Congo red, the filter paper will take up the dye substance. The amount taken up by the paper will increase with increase in concentration of the solution. There will however be a tendency to the formation of false equilibrium points, as in the case of the reaction of toxin and antitoxin. Thus if two solutions of fuchsin be made and to each a sheet of filter paper be added, but in one case it be added at once, and in the other case in three parts at intervals of twelve hours, at the end of thirty-six hours the paper which has been added in parts will have removed more dyestuff from the solution than is the case where the whole amount of paper was added at once. In the same way, when treating a suspension of bacilli with an agglutinating serum, it is found that the successive addition of the bacillary suspension to the serum removes more agglutinin from the solution than when the addition is made at one time.

The interactions therefore between these bodies must be looked upon as special examples of the group of phenomena known as adsorption, such as the adsorption of iodine from solutions by charcoal, of iodine from water by starch, or of ammonia by charcoal. The exact adsorption which takes place must be a function of the chemical configuration of the substance forming the surface, since otherwise it would be impossible to account for the extremely specific character of the interaction between toxins and their corresponding antitoxins. The interaction must therefore be assigned to that special class, in which we have already placed the action of ferments, which is not

entirely chemical nor entirely physical, but depends for its existence on a co-operation of both chemical and physical factors.

How are we to account for the production of the antitoxin as a result of the injection of toxins into the body, a production which is proportional to, but far transcending in amount, the toxin injected? In all the speculations on the mode of production and action of antitoxins, an important part has been played by a conception put forward by Ehrlich in 1885 of the nature of the living protoplasmic molecule. According to this conception, which is spoken of as the 'side chain theory,' each unit of living matter consists of a centrally placed protein group with a number of side-chains attached to it, on the analogy of the hypothetical configuration of the benzene ring, to each corner of which may be attached an aliphatic chain. To explain the phenomena of nutrition and oxidation, Ehrlich regarded some of these side-chains as corresponding to unoxidised food substances, while others of the side-chains had a strong affinity for oxygen and might be regarded, when fully saturated with this substance, as peroxide in character. Activity in such a unit would be associated with interaction between these two sets of side-chains. As a result the food chain would be converted to carbon dioxide and an affinity left unsaturated until it could take up another food molecule. In the same way the oxygen side-chain, having lost the greater part of its oxygen, would have a strong affinity for this element and would re-saturate itself at the expense of the oxygen brought to it by the blood. Ehrlich regards the toxins as partaking essentially of the same character as the protoplasmic molecule, as being in fact protoplasmic fragments differing only from the protoplasm of the cell in the greater simplicity of arrangement of their side-chains. According to him the central group, or nucleus, of the toxin possesses two side-chains, one of which by its stereomeric configuration is peculiarly adapted to fit on to the organ or cell of the body which the toxin or active body attacks, and is known as the *haptophore* group; and another side-chain, the *toxophore* group, which is responsible, when the toxin is once anchored, for the destructive changes wrought by the toxin on the cell of the body. The antitoxins or antilysins are thus supposed to act in virtue of their adaptation to the haptophore group, so as to combine with the toxin or lysin and prevent these from exercising their injurious effects on the body. Ehrlich has shown that, in many toxins, the toxophore can undergo weakening or destruction without any alteration of the haptophore group; such modifications he designates as '*toxoids*.' They have the same combining power for antitoxins as is possessed by the ordinary toxins, but are either without physiological effect, or their poisonous characters are only a fraction of that possessed by ordinary toxin.

The formation of antitoxins is accounted for (or rather *described*) on this hypothesis in the following manner. When a receptor side-chain of the cell is occupied by becoming attached to the haptophore group of the toxin, this side-chain is, so to speak, shut out from the normal activities of the cell. A defect is thus produced in the cell, to which the latter endeavours to adapt

itself by the production of other side-chains of the same character. It may be regarded as a general rule in living tissues that a reaction tends to be an over-reaction, so that the compensation by the cell should more than make good the defect produced by the attachment of the toxin. We thus get, not one, but a number of side-chains produced of the same character as that occupied by the toxin molecule, and therefore able also to act as receptors for the haptophore group of the toxin. These new receptor side-chains, being produced in excess, are supposed by Ehrlich to be thrown off

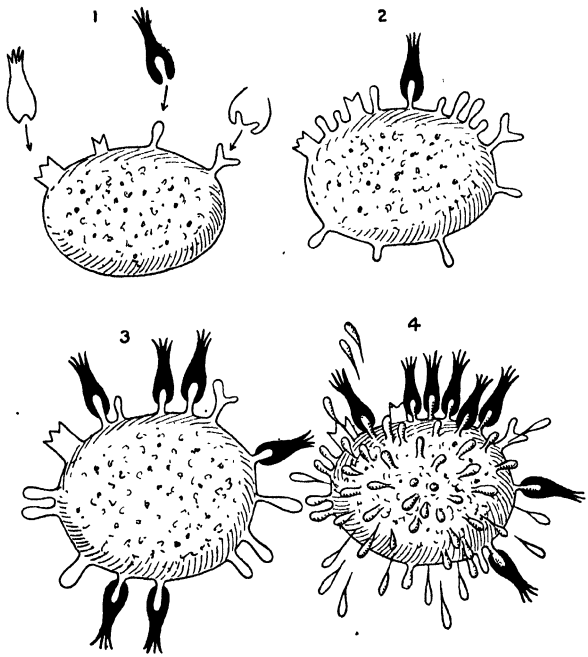


FIG. 495. Schematic representation of formation of antitoxin as side-chains of protoplasmic molecule. The black bodies are the toxin molecules which fit by their haptophore end on to the side-chains of the cell. (EHRLICH.)

from the cell and to circulate in the body fluids (Fig. 495, 4). A number of protoplasmic fragments are thus set free which have a specific power of uniting with the toxin, and it is this excess of side-chains thrown off from the cell which represents the antitoxin molecules found circulating in the blood after the injection of toxins. It will be noted that this theory, though chemical in form, is really purely biological. It does not explain the phenomena by reference to the known laws of chemistry, but is a manner of viewing the biological phenomena, which facilitates their description and discussion and enables us to classify the very complex phenomena of immunity in a more or less imperfect fashion.

The property of giving rise to anti-bodies on injection into an animal is not confined to toxins, a large number of substances, *e.g.* egg albumin,

serum, proteins, ferments, albumoses, partaking of the same property. All such substances are classed together as *antigens*. Thus human serum injected into a rabbit produces in the rabbit's serum some body which will give a precipitate when mixed with human serum even in minute traces. This *precipitin* formation is specific, so that it may be used as a test for the origin of any unknown specimen of serum. In the same way rennet ferment when injected gives rise to the production of an anti-rennin which will neutralise the action of this ferment on milk. Antigens are all colloidal in character and probably optically active. Ordinary drugs do not give rise to the formation of anti-bodies, a necessary condition being apparently some similarity in the molecular structure of the antigen to the protoplasm of the animal on which it acts and to which it becomes linked by its haptophore group.

CYTOLYSINS. The bacteria of tetanus and diphtheria cannot exist in the body, infection by them being limited to a surface or abscess cavity. When a disease involves infection of the tissues themselves by living micro-organisms, somewhat more complicated mechanisms are brought into play for the defence of the organism. We have already seen that normal blood serum may exert a paralytic or destructive action on bacteria. Light has been thrown on the factors involved in this destruction by a study of the phenomenon of *hæmolysis*, i.e. the destruction of red blood corpuscles. Normal goat's serum may be mixed with the red blood corpuscles of the sheep without any injury to the latter. If however sheep's corpuscles, previously washed in normal saline, be injected at intervals of a few days into a goat, the goat's serum is found to have acquired the power of rapidly dissolving the red blood corpuscles. This hæmolytic power can be proved by mixing the serum and the washed blood corpuscles together and allowing the mixture to stand in a narrow tube. The corpuscles rapidly sink to the bottom, leaving the colourless serum above, unless hæmolysis has occurred, in which case the serum will be of a transparent red colour. If the hæmolytic serum be heated to 55° C. it is found to have lost its power of dissolving sheep's corpuscles. This power is at once restored if to the heated serum be added any normal blood serum, even of the sheep itself. It seems therefore that two substances are involved in the hæmolysis, namely, (*a*) a substance present in most normal sera which is destroyed at a temperature of 60° C. and has been called the *complement*, and (*b*) a substance present in the serum only as a result of the previous injection of some species of red blood corpuscle, which is resistant to the action of heat and is called the *amboceptor*. The reason for these names will be at once apparent from the following experiment. Hæmolytic goat's serum is mixed with sheep's red blood corpuscles and the whole mixture kept at 0° C., at which temperature hæmolysis is indefinitely delayed. After some time the corpuscles are separated by means of the centrifuge. On testing the supernatant fluid it is found to have no action on sheep's corpuscles, though it still possesses the power of activating another specimen of serum which has been heated. The serum separated from the corpuscles has thus lost the

amboceptor, but retained the complement. The amboceptor is found to have attached itself to the red blood corpuscles. If these be washed and then added to normal sheep's serum, *i. e.* serum containing the complement, they are rapidly dissolved. When solution has taken place, both complement and amboceptor are found to have disappeared. The function of the amboceptor thus seems to be to enable the complement already present in normal serum to act upon the red blood corpuscles. We may regard the amboceptor therefore as having two haptophore groups, one of which anchors on to the red blood corpuscle, while the other attaches itself to the complement (Fig. 496, 7). The amboceptor *plus* the complement thus comes to resemble the toxin molecule, having a free haptophore group at one end and a toxophore group (the complement) at the other end. The reaction to the injection of the red blood corpuscles consists in the formation of the amboceptor, which is essentially the anti-body of the red blood corpuscle (Fig. 496, 8).

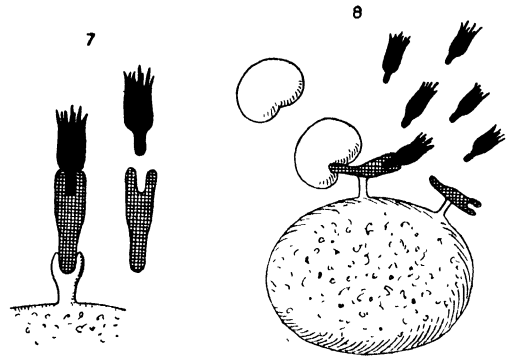


FIG. 496. Diagram to show the relation of amboceptor and complement to the animal cell (7) and to red corpuscles (8). (EHRLICH.)

Similar specific anti-bodies effecting the dissolution of cells or organisms may be produced by the injection of various species of bacterium or of animal cells, such as leucocytes, spermatozoa, liver cells, etc., and there can be no doubt that bacteriolytic substances play a considerable part in acquired immunity.

OPSONINS. In some cases the anti-bodies produced by the injection of living or dead micro-organisms do not bring about actual destruction of the bacteria, but alter them in such a way as to make them more susceptible to the action of the phagocytes. If washed white blood corpuscles be mixed with micrococci, such as those found in an ordinary boil, they are found to take up the micro-organisms in considerable numbers. The numbers taken up are much increased in the presence of serum derived from an individual who has received repeated minute injections of the dead micrococci in question. To the substances in the serum, which thus prepares the micrococci for ingestion by the phagocytes, Wright has given the name of opsonins. The opsonic index of the leucocytes of any individual, in reference to a given species of microbe, is determined by observing the number of the microbes

taken up by the leucocytes after treatment with the serum of the individual, and then comparing it with the number taken up by the same leucocytes when the bacteria have been treated with the serum of an average individual.

We thus see that immunity, whether innate or acquired, is extremely complex in character and may depend on one or more of many factors. The immunity of an animal to any given infection may be determined by the absence of receptor groups in his body for the toxin excreted by the microbe responsible for the infection, or by the fact that the receptor groups are present but are confined to tissues on which the toxophore group can have no influence. Thus *e. g.* an attachment of the tetanus toxin to a connective tissue cell would be without effect on the health of the body. Again, immunity may be due to the efficacy of the phagocytes, either of the fluids or the connective tissues, in ingesting and destroying the micro-organisms, and this, as we have seen, may again be dependent on the presence or absence in the body fluids of substances which, while not destroying the micro-organisms, render them more accessible to the action of the phagocytes. In those cases where the infecting organism secretes a specific toxin, the main line of defence and the main factor in the production of immunity is the formation of specific antitoxins to the poison in question. Finally there may be produced as a result of the excess of micro-organisms substances such as the amboceptors, which render the micro-organisms susceptible to destruction by the complements or cytases normally present in the circulating fluids and possibly themselves derived from the activity or destruction of the leucocytes and other phagocytes of the body.

In this short description we have been able to touch only upon the most salient features of the immunity problem. The question enters strictly into physiology since, as we have seen, it involves adaptations on the part of the organism to change in itself or its environment. For the practical application of these facts, as well as the consideration of the minuter details and exceptions, we must refer the student to works especially dealing with the subjects of infectious diseases and immunity.

CHAPTER XVI

RESPIRATION

SECTION I

THE MECHANICS OF THE RESPIRATORY MOVEMENTS

In unicellular animals the interchange of gases, *i. e.* the intake of oxygen and the output of carbon dioxide, is as a rule carried out by processes of diffusion occurring at the surface of the cell. With increased size of the organism the surface becomes insufficient for this purpose, and special organs make their appearance for presenting a large extent of surface to the surrounding medium. In the multicellular animals the actual process of tissue respiration is carried out between the internal medium, lymph, blood, etc. and the individual cells; and the use of the special organ of respiration is to bring the circulating internal medium in intimate relation over a large area with the surrounding fluid, whether air or water. In insects we find a large branched system of tubes, the tracheæ, which contain air and are distributed to the finest tissues, renewal of the air in the tubes being provided for by special respiratory movements. In most water animals the respiratory organ is known as the gills, and presents a large surface well supplied with circulating blood over which a continual stream of the surrounding water is kept up. In all these animals therefore we can distinguish two processes, viz. (1) the interchange of gases between the tissue cells and the surrounding lymph, 'internal respiration'; (2) the interchange of gases between the circulating fluid and the external medium, 'external respiration.' In all air-breathing vertebrates the organs of external respiration, the lungs, arise as paired diverticula of the anterior part of the alimentary canal. The renewal of the air in the air sacs formed from these diverticula is effected by alternate increase and diminution in their size caused by the movements of respiration, while a rapid circulation of blood is carried out through a fine meshwork of capillaries just underneath the surface of the sacs.

In man the organs of external respiration, the lungs, are built up in the following way: The trachea or windpipe, a wide tube about 4½ inches long, divides below into two main branches—*bronchi*; and these subdivide again and again, becoming gradually smaller. The terminal ramifications or *bronchioles* open into rather wider parts—the *infundibula*, the walls of which are beset with a number of minute cavities, the *alveoli*. The larger tubes are kept patent by rings or plates of cartilage in their walls. The

smaller tubes have no cartilage, their walls being composed of fibrous and elastic tissue and a coating of unstriated muscular fibres, which are able by their contraction to occlude the passage. The whole system of tubes is lined with a layer of epithelium—ciliated columnar in the trachea, bronchi, and bronchioles, and cubical over the parts of the infundibulum not occupied by air cells. The alveoli are the special respiratory parts of the lung. Their walls are composed of connective tissue containing a large number of elastic fibres, and are covered internally by a single layer of extremely thin large flattened cells. The alveoli are closely packed together, so that in a section of the lung an alveolus is seen to be in contact with others on all sides. Immediately below the squamous epithelium ramify blood-capillaries derived from the pulmonary artery. These form a close network, and the blood in them is in proximity to air on two sides, being separated from the air in the alveoli only by the thin endothelial cells of the capillary wall and the flattened cells lining the alveoli.

The lungs in their development grow out from the fore part of the alimentary canal into the front part of the body cavity on each side—the pleural cavity. The surrounding body walls become strengthened by the formation of the ribs, so that the lungs are suspended in a bony cage-work, the thorax. Their outer surface is covered with a special membrane, the *pleura*, which is reflected on to the wall of the thorax from the roots of the lungs, and completely lines the cavity in which they lie. The surface of the pleura facing the pleural cavity is lined with a continuous layer of flattened endothelial cells, and is kept moist by the secretion of lymph into the cavity. Thus, being attached to the thorax only where the bronchi and great vessels enter, the lungs are able to glide easily over the inner surface of the thorax, with which under normal circumstances they are in intimate contact.

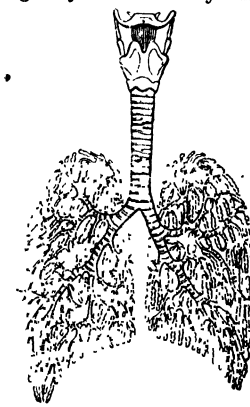


FIG. 497. Diagrammatic representation of the structure of the lungs. The trachea branches into two bronchi, which subdivide again and again before ending in the infundibula. (From YEO.)

A constant renewal of the air in the lungs is secured by movements of the thorax, which constitute normal breathing. With inspiration the cavity of the thorax is enlarged, and the lungs swell up to fill the increased space. The capacity of the air passages of the lungs being thus increased, air is sucked in through the trachea. The movement of inspiration is followed by that of expiration, which causes diminution of the capacity of the thorax and expulsion of air. At the end of expiration there is normally a slight pause. The number of respirations in the adult is about 17 or 18 a minute. This is however much influenced by various conditions of the body, and also by the age of the individual. Thus a newborn child breathes about 14 times a minute, a child of five about 26 times, a man of twenty-five about 16, and of fifty about 18. The frequency is increased by any muscular effort, so that even standing up increases the number of respirations. These movements are much affected by psychical activity; they are to a certain extent under the control of the will, although they can occur in an animal deprived of its brain, and are normally carried out without any special act of volition. We can breathe fast or slow at pleasure, and can even cease breathing for a time. It is impossible however to prolong this respiratory

standstill for more than a minute; the need of breathing becomes imperative, and against our will we are forced to breathe.

With every inspiration the cavity of the thorax is enlarged in all dimensions, from above downwards by the contraction of the diaphragm, and in its transverse diameters by the movements of the ribs.[1]

The diaphragm is a sheet separating the cavity of the chest from that of the abdomen. It consists of a central tendon which forms an arched double cupola, to the circumference of which are attached muscle fibres. The diaphragmatic muscles present two main divisions, namely, (1) the spinal or crural part, the fibres of which arise from the upper three or four lumbar vertebræ and from the arcuate ligaments and are inserted into the posterior margin of the central tendon; and (2) the sterno-costal part, which arises by a series of digitations from the cartilages and adjoining bony parts of the lower six ribs and from the back of the ensiform process. These latter fibres pass backwards as they ascend. In the cavity of the larger dome on the right side lies the liver, while the smaller dome on the left side is occupied by the spleen and stomach. These viscera in the normal condition are pressed against the under-surface of the diaphragm by the elasticity of the abdominal walls. The central part of the diaphragm is thus pressed up into the chest, partly by the intra-abdominal pressure and partly by the elastic traction of the distended lungs. The upper surface of the central tendon is united to the pericardium. This part, during expiration, is the deepest part of the middle portion of the diaphragm. Towards the back of the pericardial attachment the central tendon is pierced for the passage of the inferior vena cava. In expiration the lateral muscular zone of the diaphragm lies in contact with the lower part of the thoracic wall. During inspiration the muscle fibres contract and draw the central tendon downwards, so that the lower surface of the lungs descends. The enlargement of the lungs at the lower part of the thorax is aided by the abduction of the floating ribs, produced by the contraction of the *quadratus lumborum* and *deep costal* muscles. In this contraction the diaphragm presses on the contents of the abdomen, so that the abdomen swells up with each inspiratory movement. The middle of the central tendon, where the heart lies, moves less than the two domes, and the part where the vena cava passes through the tendon is practically stationary during normal respiration. In deep inspiration however both this part as well as the rest of the pericardial attachment is forcibly depressed towards the abdomen. In quiet breathing, when observed by the Röntgen rays, the mean descent

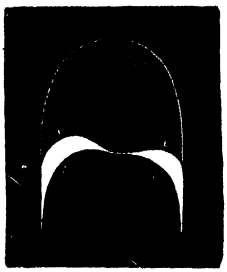


FIG. 498. Diagram showing movements of diaphragm in respiration.

i i, inspiratory position; *e e*, expiratory position. (YEO.)

[1] The student is advised to consult the article by Keith on the "Mechanism of Respiration in Man" for a fuller account of this subject (L. Hill's "Further Advances in Physiology," 1909).

of the right dome in inspiration has been found to be about 12·5 mm., and of the left dome 12 mm. We may say, roughly, that the average descent of the diaphragm during normal respiration is about half an inch. The viscera and the intra-abdominal pressure play an important part in determining the movement of the diaphragm, and especially in preserving the abduction of the lower ribs and so furnishing a fixed point for the muscular fibres of the diaphragm. If the contents of the abdomen are removed from a living animal the ribs are drawn inwards every time the diaphragm contracts. In children with weak chest walls and with respiratory obstruction we may often see a depression round the lower part of the chest corresponding to the lower border of the lungs. It corresponds to the line at which the diaphragm leaves the chest wall, so that the distending force of the abdominal pressure on the bony walls of the thorax abruptly gives place to the pull of the distended lung. The contraction of the diaphragm lasts four to eight times longer than a simple contraction or muscle twitch. It may be regarded therefore as a short tetanus.

The enlargement in the other diameters is effected by an elevation of the ribs. Each pair of corresponding ribs, which are articulated behind with the spinal column and in front with the sternum, forms a ring directed obliquely from behind downwards and forwards. With each inspiratory movement the ribs are raised, the obliquity becomes less, and the horizontal distance between sternum and spinal column is therefore increased. Moreover the ribs from the first to the seventh increase in length from above downwards, so that when they are raised, the sixth rib, for instance, occupies the situation previously taken by the fifth, and the transverse diameters of the thorax at this height are increased. With each inspiration there is a rotation of the ribs. In the expiratory condition they are so situated that their outer surfaces are directed not only outwards but also downwards. As they are raised by the inspiratory movements, they rotate on an axis directed through the fore and hind ends of the rib, so that their outer surfaces are turned directly outwards. In this way a certain enlargement of the thorax cavity is produced. As the thorax is raised there is always some stretching of the rib cartilages.

In expiration the processes are reversed, and the cavity of the thorax is diminished in all three dimensions.

The movements of the thorax are effected by means of muscles. Inspiration is performed by the following muscles:

The diaphragm, which is the most important, and almost suffices alone to carry out quiet respiration.

The external intercostal muscles, which shorten and so raise the ribs.

The serratus posticus superior.

It is probable that an important part is played even under normal circumstances in the respiratory movements by the extension of the spinal column. This movement, which is specially marked at the upper part of the thorax, causes an increase on all three diameters of this cavity. The *levatores costarum*, which are often included in the inspiratory muscles, are

so inserted into the ribs as to be unable to influence their movements. They are concerned, not in respiration, but in lateral movements of the spine.

These muscles are the only ones normally engaged in carrying out inspiration. When, in consequence of muscular exertions or from any other cause, the inspiratory efforts become more forcible, a large number of accessory muscles are brought into play. These are:

The scaleni,
Sterno-mastoid,
Trapezius,
Pectoral muscles,
Rhomboids, and
The serratus anticus.

Normal expiration is chiefly effected passively. When the inspiratory muscles cease to contract, the lungs, which were stretched by the previous inspiration, contract by virtue of the elastic tissue they contain, and the thorax itself sinks by its own weight, and by the elastic reaction of the stretched costal cartilages.

It must be remembered however that in a position of rest the elasticity of the thorax is opposed to the elasticity of the lungs. Elasticity of the chest wall would therefore tend to produce inspiration. This factor would tend to make inspiration easier at its onset, but would also present an impediment to the carrying out of expiration, so that towards the end of this act there is need for the active co-operation of muscular contractions. It seems possible that more or less muscular activity of the expiratory muscles is alternated with that of the inspiratory muscles. In fact Sherrington's results on the co-ordination of muscular movements would tend to make us assume inhibition of the tone, *e. g.* of the abdominal muscles, during inspiration, and active augmentation of their tone during expiration. Where the tone of the muscles is entirely lost, *e. g.* in the condition of viscero-ptosis, it has been observed that the diaphragm is thrown out of action, breathing being chiefly carried out by an elevation of the upper part of the thorax. Probably under normal circumstances the internal intercostal muscles also contract with each expiration.

Although the action of the intercostal muscles has been a subject of debate, physiological experiments serve on the whole to confirm the view first put forward by Hamberger and based on a consideration of the direction of the fibres. The external intercostals pass from one rib to the next below downwards and forwards. Hence if a pair of ribs be isolated from the rest of the chest wall, leaving the vertebral and costal attachments intact, contraction of these muscles will cause a rise of both ribs. This result will be evident from a consideration of Fig. 499, where *ab* is a fibre of the external intercostal muscles, passing from the rib *vs* to be attached to the rib *v's'* at *b*. When *ab* contracts, the tension it exerts on its two attachments can be resolved into two components *ac* acting downwards and *bd* acting upwards. *bd* however acts at the end of the long lever *bv'*, whereas *ac* acts at the end of the short lever *av*. Hence the raising effect will overcome the depressing effect, and both ribs will rise.

The fibres of the internal intercostals run in the opposite direction to the external

muscles, and from a consideration of Fig. 500 it is evident that their effect will be to depress any pair of ribs, thus acting as expiratory muscles.

Owing to the fact that the costal cartilages make an angle with the bony ribs, the fibres of prolongation of the internal intercostals, *musculi intercartilaginei*, have the same relation to their attachments that the external intercostals have to the bony ribs. Their action therefore must be to raise the cartilages and flatten out the angle between the cartilaginous and bony ribs so that they must act with the external intercostals as inspiratory muscles.

In forced expiration a large number of muscles may take part—such as the serratus posticus inferior and the muscles forming the wall of the abdomen, *i. e.* the rectus, obliquus, and transversus abdominis muscles.

As the lungs are distended with each inspiration their position changes in relation to the thoracic wall. All parts are not equally distensible in the normal position of the lungs. There are three areas which are in contact with the nearly stationary parts of the thoracic wall and cannot therefore be directly expanded. These are (1) the mediastinal surface in contact with

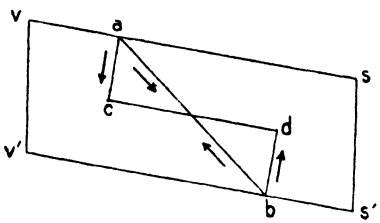


Fig. 499.

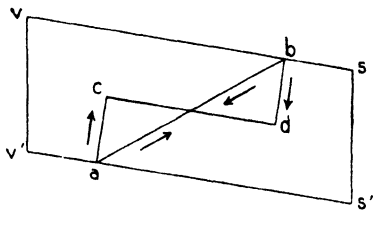


Fig. 500.

the pericardium and structures of the mediastinum; (2) the dorsal surface in contact with the spinal column and with the spinal segments of the ribs; (3) the apical surface lying in contact with the deep cervical fascia at the root of the neck. The roots of the lungs move with inspiration somewhat forwards and downwards. The front parts of the lungs move downwards and inwards, so that their inner borders in front approach one another. The extent and boundaries of the lungs can be easily ascertained in the living subject by means of percussion. On tapping the finger laid on the chest a sound is emitted which varies with the nature of the subjacent tissues. If this is lung tissue filled with air, a clear resonant tone is obtained; where it is solid tissue, such as the heart, or a lung consolidated with inflammatory products, or the liver, a dull sound is obtained. It is easy to show that the resonant area of the chest increases with each inspiration. The apices of the lungs extend about one inch above the clavicle anteriorly and behind reach as high as the seventh spinous process. During moderate expiration the lower margin of the lungs extends in front from the upper border of the sixth rib at its insertion to the sternum, and runs obliquely downwards to the level of the tenth rib at the back of the chest. During the deepest inspiration the lungs descend in front to the seventh intercostal space and behind to the eleventh rib, while during deepest possible expiration the

lower margins of the lungs are elevated almost as much as they descend during inspiration. In the front of the chest a triangular space can be always marked out over the heart where the note obtained on percussion is dull. This space is bounded on the right by the left border of the sternum and extends out as far as the cardiac apex, being bounded above by the fourth costo-sternal articulation and below by the sixth costal cartilage.

BREATH SOUNDS. If the ear be applied to the chest wall, either directly or through the medium of a stethoscope, each inspiration is found to be accompanied by a fine rustling sound, the 'vesicular murmur.' It is thought to be caused by the sudden dilatation of the air vesicles during inspiration or perhaps by the current of air passing from the narrow terminal bronchioles into the wider infundibula. It is important to remember that this sound is heard only during inspiration and over healthy lungs. On listening over the larger air passages, *i. e.* the larynx, trachea, and bronchi, we hear a much louder sound which accompanies both expiration and inspiration and may be compared to a sharp whispered *hah*. This is known as the 'bronchial murmur.' It can be heard also at the back of the chest between the scapulæ at the level of the fourth dorsal vertebra, where the trachea bifurcates. In all other parts of the chest the healthy lung prevents the propagation of this sound to the chest wall. If however the lung is solid, as occurs in pneumonia, it conducts the sound easily from the large air tubes to the chest wall. Bronchial breathing at any part of the chest other than that immediately over the air tubes is therefore a distinctive sign of consolidation of the lung. Absence of breath sounds at any part of the chest implies either that air is not entering that part of the lung, or that the lung is separated from the chest wall by effused fluid.

INTRATHORACIC PRESSURE. Even at the end of expiration the lungs are in a stretched condition. This is shown by the fact that if in an animal or in the corpse an opening be made into the pleural cavity, air rushes into the opening and the lungs collapse, driving a certain amount of air out through the trachea. Since the lungs are always tending to collapse, it is evident that they must exert a pull on the thoracic wall. This pull of the lungs gives rise to a *negative pressure* in the pleural cavity. If we connect a mercurial manometer with the pleural cavity, we find that the pull of the lungs amounts in the corpse to 6 mm. of mercury. If the lungs are fully distended, as after full inspiration, the elastic forces are more brought into play, and the negative pressure in the pleura may amount to 30 mm. Since the lungs are always tending to collapse, respiration becomes impossible directly free openings are made into the pleural cavities on both sides. With each inspiratory movement air rushes in through these openings, so that the thoracic movements can no longer exert any influence on the volume of the lungs. The negative pressure in the thorax is diminished by any factor decreasing the elasticity of the lung tissue. Thus in an old man, where the elastic tissue is degenerated and the alveoli are enlarged, giving rise to the condition known as *emphysema*, the lungs may collapse only slightly or not at all on opening

the chest. The lungs do not collapse on making an opening in the chest of a new-born mammal; but this is owing to the fact that they completely fill the thorax in the expiratory position, and it is only later that, with the growth of the ribs, the thorax gets, so to speak, too large for the lungs which are therefore stretched to fill it.

The force exerted by the inspiratory muscles is nearly all spent in overcoming the elastic resistance of the lungs and costal cartilages. A free access of air is provided for by contractions of certain accessory muscles of respiration. With each inspiration the glottis is widened by abduction of the vocal cords. When the glottis is observed by means of the laryngoscope, a rhythmical separation and approximation of the vocal cords are observed, synchronous respectively with inspiration and expiration (Fig. 312, p. 622). When inspiration is laboured, the alæ nasi are dilated by the action of the dilator nasi. This movement of the nostril, which is constant in many animals, becomes very marked in children suffering from any respiratory trouble.

If a manometer be connected with one of the nostrils, so as to register the pressure in the air cavities, it is found that there is a negative pressure of — 1 mm. Hg. with inspiration, and a positive pressure of 2 or 3 mm. with expiration. With forced inspiration the negative pressure may amount to — 57 mm. Hg., and with forced expiration there may be a positive pressure of + 87 mm.

PULMONARY VENTILATION. Under no circumstances can we by forced expiration empty the lungs of air. At the end of the most forcible exe piration, if the pleura were perforated, the lungs would collapse and drivmore air through the trachea. When breathing quietly a man takes in and gives out at each breath about 500 c.c. of air, measured dry and at 0° C. If measured moist and at the temperature of the body, viz. 37° C., the volume would be about 600 c.c. This amount is known as the *tidal air*. By means of a forcible inspiratory effort it is possible to take in about 1500 c.c. more (*complemental air*). At the end of a normal expiration a forcible contraction of the expiratory muscles will drive out about 1500 c.c. more (*supplemental air*). These three amounts together constitute the 'vital capacity' of an individual. This total may be determined by means of the instrument known as the spirometer, which is merely a small gas-meter with a gauge by which the amount of air in it can be at once read off. The person to be tested fills his lungs as full as possible, and then expires to the utmost into the spirometer. The air left in the lungs after the most vigorous expiration is known as the *residual air*.

The residual air may be determined by letting a person expire to the utmost extent and then connecting with his mouth or nose a bag of known capacity filled with hydrogen. The subject of the experiment then inspires and expires into the bag two or three times, ending in the same state of forced expiration as he began. Any diminution of the total volume of gas in the bag will represent the gas lost during the experiment by diffusion into the blood vessels. By analysis of the gaseous mixture in the bag, it is possible to determine the amount of air in the lungs at the beginning of the experiment. Supposing, for example, the bag held 4000 c.c. hydrogen, after two respirations the total volume is

unaltered, but the gas is found to consist of 3000 c.c. hydrogen and 1000 c.c. oxygen, nitrogen, and CO_2, *i. e.* pulmonary gases. Since the gas in the lungs must have the same composition and 1000 c.c. hydrogen have disappeared from the bag, it is evident that the lungs will contain 1000 c.c. hydrogen and $\frac{1000}{3}$, *i. e.* 330 c.c. pulmonary gases. Thus the total volume of gas left in the lungs at the end of the forced expiration was 1330 c.c., which is the residual volume for the individual.

The above example is purely imaginary. As a result of actual determinations carried out, we may assume the residual air in the lungs as something between 600 and 1200 c.c.

Of the 500 c.c. of tidal air taken in at each inspiration, only a certain part reaches the alveoli, part being required to fill the air tubes, trachea, bronchi, and bronchioles which lead to the air cells. The volume of the air tubes has been reckoned to amount to 140 c.c., so that of the 500 c.c. about 360 c.c. reach the alveoli. For the same reason the expired air represents the air from the alveoli (360 c.c.) diluted with 140 c.c. of air which has remained in the air tubes and undergone very little change, other than the elevation of temperature and saturation with aqueous vapour. We have therefore to allow for this air contained in the so-called 'dead space' of the lungs when we seek to arrive at the composition of alveolar air from an analysis of expired air.

THE BRONCHIAL MUSCULATURE

Both the large and smaller air tubes have a coating, consisting of unstriated muscle fibres, which in the bronchioles is complete. Contraction of these fibres must have the following effects: (1) a constriction of the bronchi and bronchioles; (2) a diminution of the air space of the lungs and therefore of the volume of the lung; (3) an increased resistance to the passage of the air into and out of the alveoli. Changes in the condition of contraction of these muscle fibres may be studied in two ways. In the first method artificial respiration is carried out, a constant volume of air being blown in and sucked out at each respiration. Any diminution in the calibre of the bronchioles must increase the resistance to the incoming current of air and so cause a rise of pressure in the tracheal tube. Einthoven, in investigating this subject, has made use of an arrangement by means of which a mercurial manometer is connected with the trachea for a brief space of time during one part of the inspiratory phase. Any resistance to the current of air raises the pressure during the whole inspiration and therefore at the moment at which the manometer is put into connection with the tracheal tube, and a rise of the mercury in the manometer is thus produced. By this method was obtained the tracing shown in Fig. 501. By the second method artificial respiration at a constant pressure is made use of. Any changes in the bronchioles will in this case affect the *volume* of air entering the lungs at each stroke of the pump, and can be measured by recording either the passive respiratory movements of the chest or the changes in volume of a lobe of the lung enclosed in a plethysmograph

(Brodie and Dixon). By both these methods it has been shown that stimulation of the peripheral end of either vagus causes constriction of the

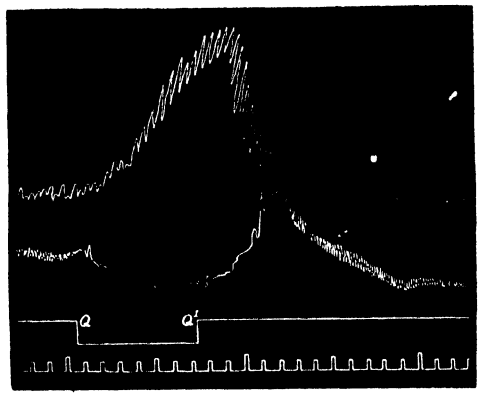


FIG. 501. Tracings of blood pressure (middle curve) and of intra-tracheal pressure (upper curve) taken by Einthoven's differential manometer. Between Q and Q' the peripheral end of one vagus was stimulated. Time marking = seconds.

bronchioles (*vide* Figs. 502 and 503). As a rule there is little tonic action of the vagi, section of both vagi leaving the respiratory pressure curve unaltered or lowering it slightly by 2 to 10 mm. H_2O. It is very easy to bring about

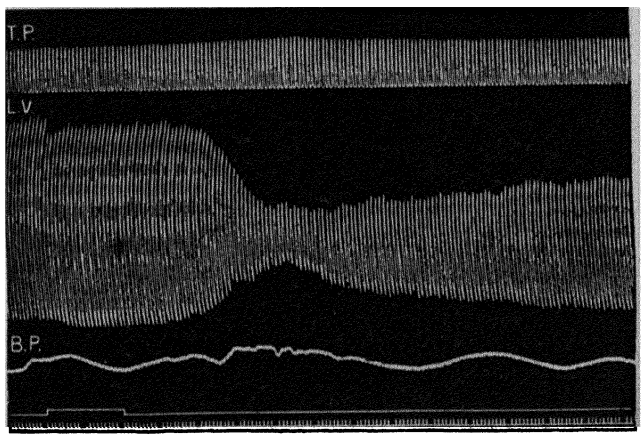


FIG. 502. Tracings of the volume changes of the lung, with constant variations of tracheal pressure. (BRODIE and DIXON.) T.P tracheal pressure. L.V. lung volume, B.P. blood pressure (Zero B.P. 17 mm. below time marker). Showing constriction of bronchial musculature as a result of vagus excitation.

a vagus tonus by allowing the animal to inhale air containing 3 to 4 per cent. carbon dioxide. A peripheral tonus may also be produced by administration of muscarine or pilocarpine. In the latter case Brodie and Dixon have shown that stimulation of the vagus may cause relaxation

of the bronchioles, so that this nerve appears to contain both motor and inhibitory fibres to the bronchioles.

THE EFFECTS OF BRONCHIAL CONSTRICTION: ASTHMA. Under the influence of vagal stimulation or of carbon dioxide, the pressure necessary to drive the normal amount of air into the lungs may be raised in the dog from 125 to 300 mm. H_2O.. We should therefore expect that, in cases where bronchial constriction is present, there would be difficulty both in inspiration and expiration. There is however a difference in the mechanical conditions of the bronchi during the two phases of a respiratory movement. Normally the elastic structure of the lungs is drawing upon the bronchial wall, tending to maintain it patent, and so opposing the action of

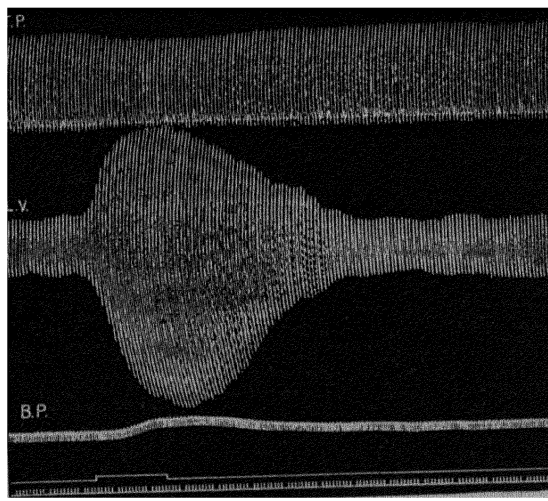


FIG. 503. Tracing showing inhibitory effect of vagus on the bronchial tonus produced by 0·01 grm. pilocarpine.

the bronchial muscle. During inspiration this expanding force is increased, so that in the presence of bronchial constriction the access of air is rendered the easier, the more powerful the contraction of the inspiratory muscles. In expiration all parts of the lung collapse, drawing with them the chest wall; the pull of the lung tissue on the bronchial wall is lessened, but is still present. If however the expiratory muscles contract vigorously, the intrapleural pressure becomes positive, and the pull of the lung tissue on the bronchial walls is changed into a pressure tending to obliterate their lumen and so impede the outflow of air.

It is evident therefore that, in the presence of a spasmodic contraction of the bronchial muscles, the inspiration will be forcible and rapid, but all contractions of muscles must be avoided so far as possible during expiration, which must be left to the elastic reaction of the lungs and becomes slow

and prolonged. Moreover it will be of advantage to keep the lung as nearly as possible in the inspiratory position, so as to reinforce the elastic forces which dilate the bronchioles and aid expiration. We thus get the typical breathing which occurs in man in cases of spasm of the bronchial muscles, known as *asthma nervosum*. This type of breathing is often described as being marked by *expiratory dyspnœa*. This description is however erroneous. It is the inspiratory muscles, which in these cases are contracted to their uttermost; the expiratory muscles, such as the abdominal, will be found to be quite flaccid even during expiration.

SECTION II

THE CHEMISTRY OF RESPIRATION

THE energy of the body is derived almost entirely from the oxidation of the carbon and hydrogen of the foodstuffs. An adult man during the twenty-four hours produces on the average 250 c.c. of carbon dioxide per kilo. per hour. A man of 70 kilos. will therefore excrete $250 \times 70 \times 24 = 420{,}000$ c.c. carbon dioxide in the course of twenty-four hours. During sleep the output of carbon dioxide is lowered with the diminution in all the metabolic processes of the body and amounts to only 160 c.c. per kilo. per hour. If we assume that eight hours of the twenty-four are given to sleep, this will leave 295 c.c. per kilo. per hour as the average excretion of carbon dioxide during the waking hours. Since the access of oxygen to the body and the removal of carbon dioxide is effected by the pulmonary ventilation, the expired air will differ from the inspired air in containing more carbon dioxide and less oxygen. The oxygen intake is not however absolutely proportional to the carbon dioxide output. This is owing to the fact that carbon is not the only element which leaves the body in an oxidised condition. Fats, for example, contain a number of unoxidised atoms of hydrogen, which in the metabolic processes of the body are fully oxidised, to be excreted as water. Oxygen will also leave the body in combination with carbon and nitrogen in the urine, so that a certain amount of oxygen which is taken in does not reappear as carbon dioxide in expired air. There is thus an absolute diminution in the volume of expired air as compared with that of inspired air. This diminution, due to loss of oxygen, is greater in carnivora whose food consists mainly of proteins and fats, than in herbivora which feed principally on carbohydrates, and depends on the respiratory quotient, *i. e.* the ratio $\frac{CO_2 \text{ expired.}}{O_2 \text{ inspired.}}$

In man the average respiratory quotient can be taken as 0·85. On this basis the amount of oxygen which will be taken in during the waking hours will be 347 c.c. per kilo. per hour. Taking round figures, we may say that, when awake, a man takes in 350 c.c. oxygen and gives out 300 c.c. carbon dioxide per kilo. per hour. From these figures we can calculate the normal composition of expired air when a man is breathing quietly. Under these conditions the tidal air amounts to 500 c.c. If he breathes seventeen times a minute, the total pulmonary ventilation during the hour will be $500 \times 17 \times 60 = 510{,}000$ c.c. per hour. If the man weighs 70 kilos., his expired air

will contain 300 × 70 c.c. = 21,000 c.c. carbon dioxide. Hence the percentage of carbon dioxide in the expired air will be 4·1 per cent. In the same way we can reckon the percentage of oxygen in the expired air at 16·4 per cent. Exact experiments have shown that the volume of nitrogen is unchanged during respiration, this gas taking no part in the ordinary metabolic processes of the body. We may therefore compare the ordinary composition of inspired and expired air as follows:

Inspired Air	
Oxygen	20·96 vols. per cent.
Nitrogen (including argon)	79·00 ,, ,,
Carbon dioxide	0·04 ,, ,,
Expired Air	
Oxygen	16·4 vols. per cent.
Nitrogen	79·5 ,, ,,
Carbon dioxide	4·1 ,, ,,

The increase in the figure for nitrogen refers of course only to the percentage amount, since the total volume of air breathed is decreased by the disappearance of a certain amount of oxygen without the production of a corresponding amount of carbon dioxide, so that the relative amount of nitrogen is slightly increased. These figures for the composition of inspired and expired air refer to dry air at a temperature of 0° C. and a pressure of 760 mm. Under normal circumstances inspired air contains a variable amount of aqueous vapour and has a variable temperature corresponding with the time of year. Expired air is fully saturated with aqueous vapour and has the temperature of the body, 37° C. The aqueous vapour at this temperature is by no means negligible. Its tension amounts to 50 mm. Hg. Thus when a man is breathing dry air at a pressure of 760 mm. Hg., the pressure of the mixture of gases in the alveoli of his lungs will be only 760 — 50, *i. e.* 710 mm. Hg.

Only a certain percentage of the 500 c.c. of tidal air reaches the alveoli, 100 to 140 c.c. being required to fill the trachea and bronchial tubes. Hence the alveolar air must contain more carbon dioxide and less oxygen than the tracheal air; and it is found that, if we take the air from the alveoli instead of that expired through the mouth or nose, the differences between it and the inspired air are much more pronounced.

A sample of alveolar air may be obtained for analysis in the following way (Haldane): A piece of india-rubber tubing is taken of about 1 inch diameter and 4 feet long. Into one end (Fig. 501) is fitted a mouthpiece, the other being left open or connected with a spirometer. About 2 inches from the mouthpiece is fixed a gas sampling-bulb, which is provided with three-way taps at the upper and lower ends. Before an experiment the bulb is filled with mercury, if the lower end is open, or else it is completely exhausted. The subject of the experiment, after breathing normally a few times, at the end of a normal inspiration puts his mouth to the tube, expires quickly and deeply, and closes the mouth-piece with his tongue. The tap of the sampling-bulb is then turned, and the air last expelled from the lungs (which is therefore pure alveolar air) rushes into the bulb. The tap of the bulb is then turned off, and the gas may be removed for analysis. A

similar sample is then taken, in which the subject expires deeply at the end of a normal expiration. This sample will, of course, contain more CO_2 and less O_2 than that obtained at the end of inspiration. The mean of the two samples is taken as the average composition of alveolar air.

The difference between the composition of expired air and alveolar air is determined by the dilution of the alveolar air with that contained in the dead space. Hence with shallow breathing there will be a large difference, but this will decrease with increased depth of respiration. Thus, if the alveolar air contained 6 per cent. CO_2 and the dead space amounted to 150 c.c., the expired air would contain only 3 per cent. CO_2 when the person was taking in only 300 c.c. at each respiration. If however he was breathing slowly and deeply so as to raise the tidal air to 1500 c.c., only one-tenth of this would be represented by the dead space, and the expired air would contain nine-tenths as much CO_2 as the alveolar air, *i. e.* 5·4 per cent.

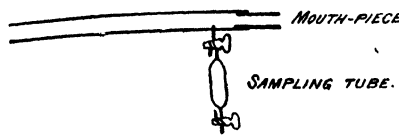


FIG. 504.

The changes in the composition of alveolar air with respiration are by no means so marked as those produced in the tidal air, since the latter forms only a small proportion of the total air in the lung alveoli. Thus at the end of a normal expiration the alveoli still contain 2500 c.c. of gases. In inspiration 360 c.c. atmospheric air is taken into this space and mixed with the 2500 c.c. already there. The 'ventilation coefficient' in quiet breathing is therefore only one-seventh, and the change in the oxygen and carbon dioxide content of the alveolar air produced by this access of 360 c.c. will amount to less than one-half per cent. This is illustrated by the following figures from Haldane, giving the alveolar content in carbon dioxide at the end of inspiration and at the end of expiration respectively.

ALVEOLAR CO_2 TENSIONS

Individual	Alveolar CO_2 at end of inspiration. (Mean of twelve observations)	CO_2 at end of expiration	Mean
J. S. H.	5·54	5·70	5·62
J. G. P.	6·17	6·39	6·28

We can thus speak of an average composition of alveolar air which, in spite of the constant ventilation, differs from the external air in containing an excess of carbon dioxide and a relative lack of oxygen. Lavoisier, who was the first to study the chemical changes in respiration accurately, regarded the lungs as the seat of the formation of carbon dioxide and the consumption of oxygen. This view was generally accepted until it was shown by

Magnus, in Heidenhain's laboratory, that the blood passing to the lungs contained more carbonic acid gas and less oxygen than that passing away from the lungs. The effects of this discovery were to transfer the chief seat of oxidation to the tissues of the body, and to show that the blood acts simply as a carrier of the oxygen from the lungs to the tissues, and of the carbon dioxide from the tissues to the lungs. We thus learnt to distinguish between external and internal respiratory processes. A consideration of the

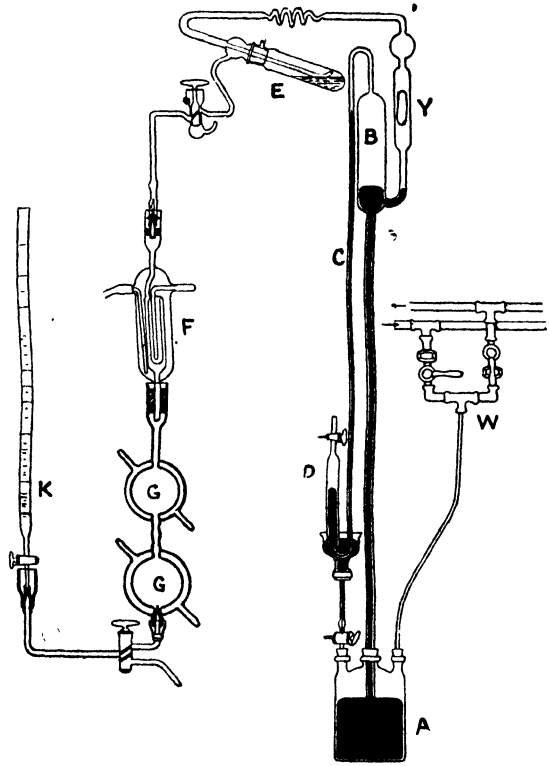


FIG. 505. Barcroft's modification of the Töpler pump.

chemical mechanisms, involved in the process of external respiration, includes therefore an investigation of the manner in which gases are held by the blood and of the factors which are responsible for the transfer of oxygen and carbon dioxide from blood to alveolar air, and from alveolar air to blood.

If blood be exposed to a Torricellian vacuum at the ordinary temperature, the whole of its contained gases is given off. For the purpose of extracting the blood gases, a great variety of pumps have been devised. In every case a glass vessel is evacuated by means of the mercury pump, and is then put into connection with a reservoir containing blood which has been defibrinated, or has been prevented from clotting by the addition of oxalate

or citrate. In all these pumps the main difficulty arises in the exclusion of atmospheric air, and it is therefore important to dispense so far as possible with taps. One of the best modifications of the Töpler mercury pump is that employed by Barcroft (Fig. 505), which differs little from the pump devised by Bohr.

The construction of the pump is shown in the diagram. The actual pump consists of the parts A, B, C, D. The bulb B is prolonged below by a wide tube dipping into the mercury in the Woulf bottle A. The upper part of the bottle is filled with water and connected by two taps at W with the water-supply and with a sink. The water being turned on, mercury is forced up into B; as it rises into Y it carries before it a glass valve which prevents its further passage, so that it can escape only by the tube C, driving before it all the air previously contained in B. The water-supply is now turned off, and the tap to the sink turned on. The mercury runs back. Air cannot enter by C, since this tube is sealed by mercury. The valve Y therefore sinks and allows the air in the blood receivers G, G and the rest of the apparatus to escape into B. The process is repeated many times until a high vacuum is produced in the whole apparatus. A measured quantity of blood is now let into the lower bulb G. F is a condenser through which cold water is constantly flowing (to prevent all the blood boiling away), while warm water circulates round the bulbs G, G to facilitate the giving off of the blood gases. The blood boils in the vacuum, and the gases escape into B, and may be driven off and collected over mercury in a cylinder D by raising the mercury in B. The process of exhaustion is repeated until no more bubbles rise into D on filling the bulb B with mercury. E is a sulphuric acid chamber for drying the gases as they pass from the blood to the bulb B.

In this way, from 100 c.c. of blood, about 60 c.c. of mixed gases may be obtained, consisting of oxygen, carbon dioxide, nitrogen, and argon. Argon is present only in insignificant quantities, about ·04 volume per cent. The nitrogen also forms only between one and two volumes per cent. and is present in the same proportion in both arterial and venous blood. The amounts of oxygen and carbon dioxide in these two kinds of blood differ however within wide limits. The following Table represents the average composition of the gases obtained from an artery and a vein of the dog:

From 100 vols.	May be obtained		
	Of oxygen	Of carbon dioxide	Of nitrogen
Of arterial blood	20 vols.	40 vols.	1 to 2 vols.
Of venous blood	8 to 12 vols.	46 „	„ „

Measured at 760 mm. and 0° C.

The principle introduced by Haldane (*vide* p. 902) for the determination of the oxygen combined in the form of oxyhæmoglobin may be successfully applied to small quantities of blood, such as 1 c.c. or even 0·1 c.c., and in the same sample of blood the carbon dioxide may also be determined. In this way it becomes practicable to make blood-gas analyses in a patient, or in experiments on small organs where it is desired to determine their gaseous metabolism by comparing the arterial with the venous blood. Barcroft's apparatus for dealing with 1 c.c. of blood is shown in Fig. 506 A.

The apparatus consists of two bottles of identical size (about 30 c.c.) attached to a manometer, the tubing of which is 1 mm. bore. The manometer is filled with clove oil of known specific gravity. To fill it take out the centre tube, pour in clove oil at A, put in the centre tube with the glass tube B open and some pressure on the rubber tube C. The oil should stand about half way up each tube. Seal B in a flame. The constant of the apparatus must be determined, viz. the capacity of the bottles and with their connections.

It is determined by finding what rise of pressure in the apparatus is produced by the liberation of a known volume of oxygen from hydrogen peroxide, which is placed in the bottle, the liberation being effected by the addition of potassium.

To determine the oxygen capacity of a sample of blood. Place 2 c.c. of ammonia solution (made by adding 4 c.c. of strong NH_3 to a litre of water) in one of the bottles and add 1 c.c. of blood. *Thoroughly lake the blood.* Rub vaseline on the large and small stoppers. Put 0·2 c.c. of a saturated solution of potassium ferricyanide in the small tube in the stopper of the bottle containing the blood (this is best done with a fine pipette which goes down this tube). Insert the small stopper. Place the apparatus on the side of a large water bath (such as a pail) with both taps open. In about five minutes close the tap on the side of the blood and rotate the bottle on the stopper till the ferricyanide trickles into the laked blood. Shake thoroughly, replace in the bath, and repeat this several times till a constant difference of level is obtained. By means of the screw clamp

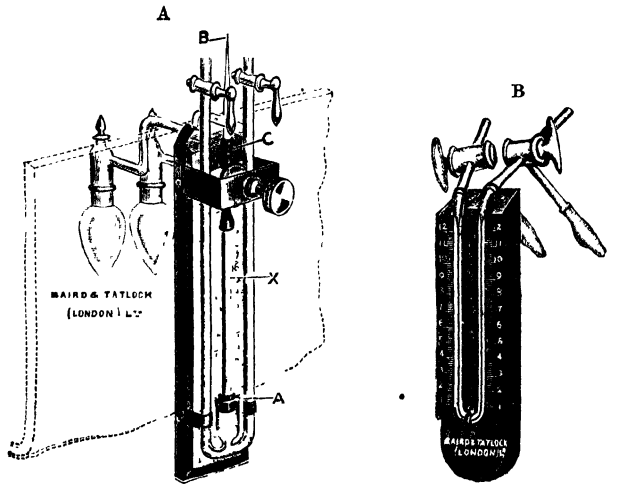


FIG. 506. Barcroft's blood-gas apparatus.
A, for 1 c.c.; B, for 0·1 c.c. blood.

bring the column of oil on the side of the blood to its original level, and then measure the difference of level between the two sides. Let this difference of level be y mm.; let p be the height of the barometer in millimetres of clove oil, and x the volume of oxygen given off in cubic millimetres; then $x = y\left(\frac{V}{p}\right)$. Except in the most exact work p may be taken as 10,000 mm., in which case the expression $\frac{V}{p}$ may be determined once for all and called C, the constant of the apparatus: then $x = y \times C$.

To determine the gaseous contents of a given blood. If we wish to determine the actual amount of oxygen as oxyhæmoglobin in the sample, the blood must be carefully introduced so as to lie *below* the ammonia and not to come in contact with the air. The stopper is then replaced in the bottle and immersed in the bath, with both taps open until it has attained a constant temperature. The tap is then closed and the height of the column of oil noted. The blood is then laked by rotating the apparatus, and after allowing five minutes for complete laking the ferricyanide is run in. The rest of the determination is carried out as above.

The carbon dioxide may be determined in the same sample of blood by adding tartaric acid in the same way as potassium ferricyanide was previously added. It is necessary always to determine the oxygen before the carbon dioxide, since the mere

acidification of the blood causes the evolution of a certain amount of oxygen. The results obtained for carbon dioxide are not so accurate as those for the oxygen, owing to the larger error introduced by the increased solubility of this gas in watery media.

The same apparatus may be used as a *differential blood-gas manometer*, where it is desired to compare the oxygen contents of two samples of blood, *e. g.* of arterial and venous blood. For this purpose 1 c.c. of the arterial blood is introduced into one bottle and 1 c.c. of the venous blood into the other bottle, in each case under 1½ c.c. of weak ammonia. The bottles are then placed on the apparatus and immersed in the water bath until no change occurs in the height of the column of oil. The two taps are then closed and the apparatus is vigorously shaken. The blood on each side is laked and, in contact with the air in the bottles, becomes completely saturated with oxygen. No carbon dioxide is given off, since this combines with the weak ammonia. If the two bloods contain the same amount of oxyhæmoglobin, no difference will be produced in the level of the oil in the two tubes. If however one be arterial and the other venous, the venous blood will absorb more oxygen from its bottle than the arterial blood from its side of the apparatus, so that the oil will rise in the tube on the side of the venous blood. From the degree of rise the difference in the amount of oxygen taken up by the blood on the two sides can be reckoned, and this figure will express the relative saturation of the hæmoglobin in the two samples of blood.

For clinical purposes it is possible to work with 0·1 c.c. of blood. Fig. 506 B represents the form of apparatus devised by Barcroft for dealing with these minute quantities. The principle of the apparatus is the same as that of the larger type.

The condition of the gases in the blood can be judged by the amount of gas which the blood will take up when exposed to different pressures of the gas. If a gas is in simple solution the amount of it dissolved varies directly with the pressure. Thus, if water takes up a certain bulk of a gas at a given temperature and pressure, it will take up twice as much if the pressure of the gas be doubled. Since the volume of a gas varies inversely as the pressure, we may say that a fluid will dissolve the same volume of gas whatever the pressure. The absorption coefficient of a liquid for a gas is expressed by the number of cubic centimetres of gas which will be taken up at 0° C. by 1 c.c. of the liquid when the gas is at a pressure of 760 mm. Hg. The absorption coefficient diminishes with rise of temperature. The following Table represents the absorption coefficients for oxygen, carbon dioxide, carbon monoxide, and nitrogen, in water at various temperatures between 0° and 40° C.:

Temperature	Oxygen	Carbon dioxide	Carbon monoxide	Nitrogen
0	0·0489	1·713	0·0354	0·0239
10	0·0380	1·194	0·0282	0·0196
20	0·0310	0·878	0·0232	0·0164
30	0·0262	0·665	0·0200	0·0138
40	0·0231	0·530	0·0178	0·0118

From this Table we see that 100 c.c. of water at 0° C. will absorb 4·89 c.c. oxygen at 760 mm. Hg., *i. e.* at one atmosphere. If the pressure be raised to two atmospheres, the volume of gas absorbed will be the same, but if these gases be measured at the original pressure, *i. e.* at one atmosphere, the amount dissolved will be 9·78 volumes. If therefore we plot out the

absorption of the gas on a curve of which the ordinates represent the amount of gas dissolved and the abscissa the different pressures of the gas, we shall find that the curve is a straight line. The relation between the amount absorbed is not altered by the presence of other gases at the same time. The pressure of the whole atmosphere is 760 mm. Since the atmosphere consists roughly of four parts of nitrogen with one part of oxygen, the atmospheric pressure is due as to one-fifth to the oxygen and as to four-fifths to the nitrogen. If we shake up water at 0° C. with the atmospheric air at the ordinary pressure, 100 c.c. of water will absorb 4·89 c.c. $\times$ $\frac{1}{5}$ of oxygen, and of nitrogen 2·39 c.c. $\times$ $\frac{4}{5}$. We may therefore extend our statement as to the solubility of gases in fluids and say that the amount of gas dissolved in a fluid is proportional to the partial pressure of the gas.

When water is shaken up with a gas until it will take up no more, *i. e.* until it is saturated for that pressure, a state of equilibrium exists between the gas dissolved in the fluid and the gas in contact with the fluid. In this state of equilibrium the number of molecules of the gas entering the fluid is exactly equal to the number of molecules of the gas leaving the fluid. If we remove the liquid after saturation, say, at one atmosphere, to a vessel where it is in contact with gas at a pressure of half an atmosphere, the liquid will give off gas until the amount left in solution is diminished to one-half. The gas dissolved in a liquid thus has a pressure or tension which tends to make it escape from the liquid. The only way in which we can measure this tension is by finding what pressure of gas is in exact equilibrium with the liquid. Thus if we take some water containing carbon dioxide in solution, divide it into two parts, and shake up one part with a gaseous mixture containing 4 per cent. of carbon dioxide and the other part with a mixture containing 5 per cent. of carbon dioxide, and find that the solution loses gas to the former and takes up carbon dioxide from the latter, we may conclude that the tension of carbon dioxide in the original fluid was something between 4 and 5 per cent. of an atmosphere. It is by some such means that the tensions of gases in the blood are measured, the instruments for this purpose receiving the name of *aerotonometers*.

The solvent power of water for gases is diminished if the water contains other solid substances in solution. Blood plasma or blood corpuscles will therefore have a smaller solvent power for gases than has pure water. It has been shown by Bohr that the depression of solubility caused by the presence of proteins or salts in solution is the same for all gases. The absorption coefficient of blood plasma for gases is reduced to 97·5 per cent. of pure water, and of blood to 92 per cent., that of the blood corpuscles being as low as 81 per cent. We may thus reckon the absorption coefficient of blood plasma, blood, and blood corpuscles for oxygen, nitrogen, and carbon dioxide.

From the following Table we see that 100 volumes of blood at 38° C. might contain 2·2 c.c. of oxygen in solution if the blood had been exposed to oxygen at a pressure of one atmosphere. The blood in the lungs is however exposed to air which contains only about one-sixth of its volume of oxygen,

so that the total amount of oxygen present in arterial blood in solution cannot be more than one-sixth of 2·2, *i. e.* about 0·36 c.c. per cent. Since arterial blood, or blood saturated with oxygen by shaking with air, will yield as much as twenty volumes per cent. of oxygen to a Torricellian vacuum, the oxygen cannot be in simple solution, but must be in some form of combination with some of the constituents of the blood. Of this oxygen practically the whole is contained in the red blood corpuscles in combination with hæmoglobin, the plasma containing no more than can be accounted for by simple solution.

	Oxygen		Nitrogen		Carbon dioxide	
	15°	38°	15°	38°	15°	38°
Blood plasma .	0·033	0·023	0·017	0·012	0·994	0·541
Blood . .	0·031	0·022	0·016	0·011	0·937	0·511
Blood corpuscles .	0·025	0·019	0·014	0·010	0·825	0·450

One gramme of crystallised hæmoglobin can absorb 1·34 c.c. of oxygen. If a solution of oxyhæmoglobin be subjected in an air-pump to gradually diminishing pressure at the temperature of the body, very little oxygen is given off until the partial pressure of the oxygen is diminished to about 30 mm. Hg. (Fig. 508). At this point a large evolution of gas begins, and continues at falling pressure until at 0 mm. pressure all the oxyhæmoglobin is dissociated and converted into hæmoglobin. The same observation may be made in a reverse direction. If a solution of reduced hæmoglobin be exposed to gradually increasing pressures of oxygen, it will be found that the greatest absorption takes place between 0 and 30 mm. Hg. After this point the oxygen is more slowly absorbed up to the point of complete saturation.

Since there is no direct proportion between the partial pressure of the oxygen and the amount absorbed, it is evident that the oxygen combines with hæmoglobin to form an unstable chemical compound, and that this is not a mere question of solution. This is further proved by the fact that we can displace the oxygen (O_2) from the oxyhæmoglobin by equivalent amounts of CO or NO. Hæmoglobin is also supposed to form an unstable combination with carbon dioxide, since it takes up much more of this gas than the corresponding bulk of water or salt solution would do. Although carbon dioxide combines with hæmoglobin, it does not displace oxygen from the oxyhæmoglobin molecule. Thus we may have hæmoglobin saturated at the same time with oxygen and with carbon dioxide. The presence of carbon dioxide does however alter the ease with which oxyhæmoglobin dissociates.

The relation between the partial pressure of oxygen and the amount of oxyhæmoglobin formed under varying conditions can be investigated in the following way (Barcroft):

A large glass globe with a stop-cock at one or both ends (Fig. 507) is filled with a gaseous mixture of known composition containing oxygen. Into it are introduced 2 or 3 c.c. of blood or of hæmoglobin solution. It is then tightly stoppered and immersed in a horizontal position in a pail of water kept at a constant temperature. In the pail it is suspended between its two ends, so that it can be slowly revolved by means of a piece of string passing round its neck. In this way the blood is continually spread in a thin layer over the sides of the vessel. At the end of a quarter to half an hour it will have attained equilibrium with the gaseous mixture. It is then turned into an erect position so that the fluid can run down into the neck closed by a stop-cock, whence 1 c.c. may be drawn off for analysis in a Barcroft apparatus. A further portion of the same blood may be shaken up with air so as to saturate it completely, and the saturation of the two samples may be compared in the differential gas apparatus.

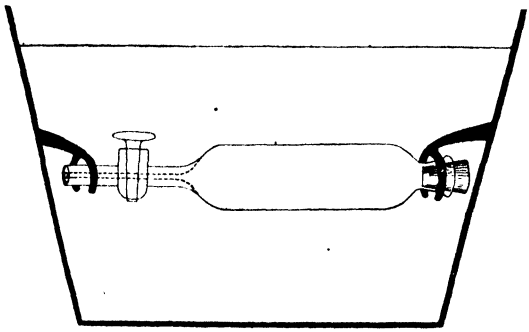


FIG. 507. Barcroft's apparatus for determining the curve of absorption of oxygen by hæmoglobin.

Barcroft has shown that the dissociation curve of hæmoglobin is largely altered by slight variations in the fluid in which the hæmoglobin is dissolved. The most important of these conditions are (1) the saline content of the fluid, (2) the reaction of the fluid. Under this latter heading must be classed the amount of carbon dioxide present, since its action on the dissociation curve is similar to that produced by the presence of weak acids such as lactic acid. The influence of dissolved salts on the dissociation curve is shown in Fig. 508.

It is interesting to note that the differences between the dissociation curve of blood and of hæmoglobin solution, as well as between bloods of different animals, have been shown by Barcroft and Camis to be dependent on the saline content of the solution in the various cases. Thus human hæmoglobin solution, with a concentration of salts similar to that of dogs' blood, gives the same dissociation curve as normal dogs' blood.

More important is the effect of reaction since, as we shall see, it is the reaction of the blood, controlled especially by carbon dioxide tension, that determines the activity of the respiratory centres. In Fig. 509 is represented the influence of varying tensions of carbon dioxide, and in Fig. 510 the effect of slight additions of lactic acid on the dissociation curve. It will be seen that the more acid the blood, or the greater tension of carbon dioxide it contains, the more readily does it undergo dissociation. This is especially marked at the very high tension of 420 mm. carbon dioxide. It

plays an important part in the lower tensions such as 40 and 80 mm. Hg. carbon dioxide. It must be remembered that 40 mm. carbon dioxide repre-

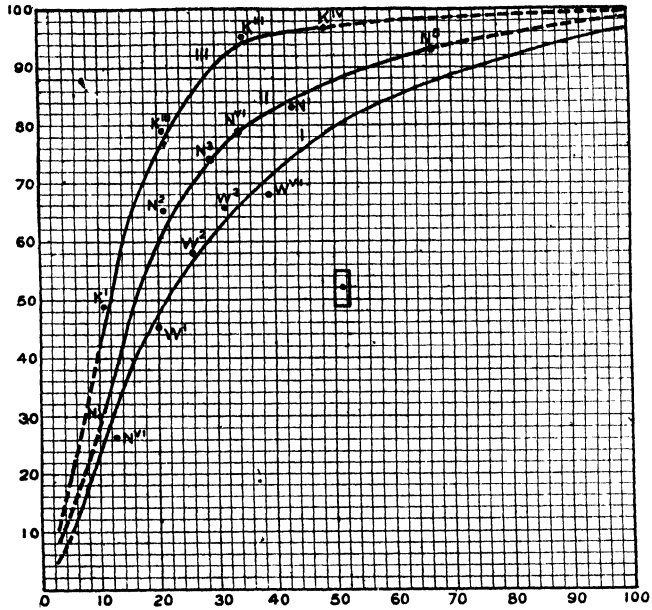


FIG. 508. Dissociation curve of hæmoglobin in various solvents. I, in water; II, in 0·7 per cent. NaCl; III, in 0·9 per cent. KCl. (BARCROFT.)

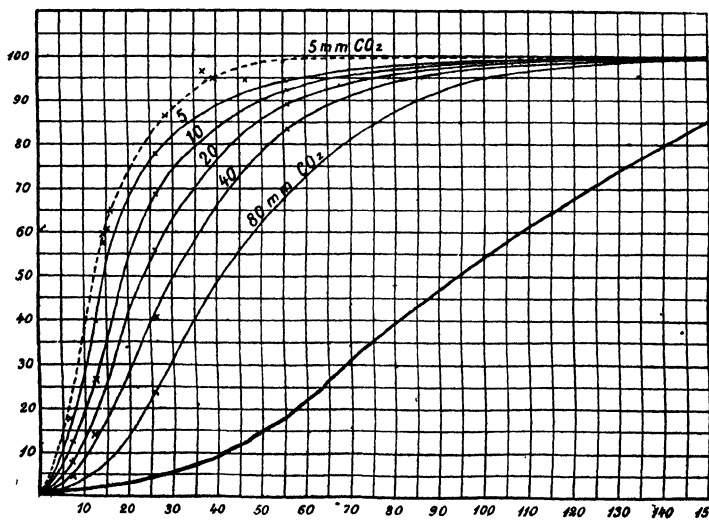


FIG. 509. Effect of varying tensions of CO_2 on the dissociation curve of oxyhæmoglobin. The lowest curve is the dissociation at a CO_2 tension of 420 mm. Hg. from observations by Barcroft. (BOHR.)

sents approximately the normal carbon dioxide tension in the blood. It is true that at 150 mm. oxygen pressure the blood is practically saturated with oxygen, whatever (within physiological limits) the pressure of the carbon dioxide. At lower pressures of oxygen however, the pressure of carbon dioxide makes a considerable difference. Thus at an oxygen pressure of 20 mm. Hg. the amount of oxyhæmoglobin formed is 67·5 per cent. at a carbon dioxide pressure of 5 mm., whereas at a pressure of carbon dioxide of 40 mm. the amount of oxyhæmoglobin is only 29·5 per cent. In consequence of this fact, in the tissues where the carbon dioxide tension is high,

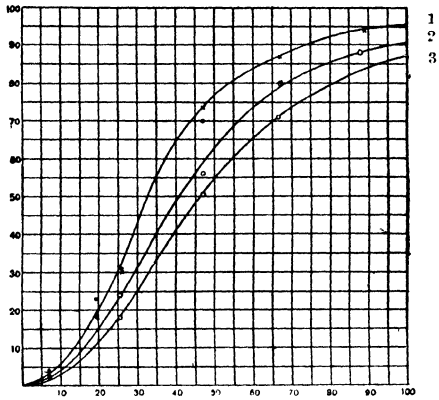


FIG. 510. Dissociation curve of sheep's blood.
1, normal blood; 2, blood containing 0·04 per cent. added lactic acid; 3, blood containing 0·08 per cent. added lactic acid.

the oxyhæmoglobin will be dissociated with greater ease, so that oxygen will be set free where it is most wanted.

We are now in a position to understand how the oxygen is taken up by the blood as it circulates round the pulmonary alveoli. Arterial blood, such as that which fills the pulmonary veins and the systemic arteries, is very nearly (*i. e.* about 90 per cent.) saturated with oxygen, and will take up only about 2 volumes per cent. more on shaking it with air at the body temperature. Venous blood requires 8 to 10 volumes per cent. of oxygen to saturate it; but we have already mentioned that, at a tension of 30 mm. oxygen, the blood becomes nearly saturated. The tension of oxygen in the alveoli is considerably above this. In the trachea the tension of oxygen is about $\frac{1}{6}$ of an atmosphere (since the air here contains 16 volumes per cent.), and the tension in the alveoli will be a little lower than this. If we take the oxygen tension in the alveoli at $\frac{1}{7}$ of an atmosphere,[1] it will still be something over 100 mm. Hence the venous blood brought to the alveoli by the pulmonary artery will, on there coming into intimate contact with the atmosphere, take up oxygen from it to saturation or to a point not far removed from it.

[1] The oxygen tension in the alveoli has been reckoned at about 12·6 per cent. to 13·5 per cent. of an atmosphere.

But in ordinary quiet respiration many parts of the lungs remain practically motionless, so that in some of the alveoli there is little or no renewal of the air. When alveoli are cut out from the respiratory movements, there appears to be a corresponding diminution in the blood flow through the capillaries surrounding them. A certain amount of blood will therefore escape oxidation in traversing the lungs, and this will be mingled with the large mass of blood which has undergone complete oxidation in passing round the ventilated alveoli. Hence in the arterial blood of an animal at rest, hæmoglobin is only about 90 per cent. saturated, corresponding to a tension of about 70 mm. Hg., which may be looked upon as the normal tension of oxygen in arterial blood. During muscular exercise more and more of the alveoli are involved in the increased respiratory movements, so that the percentage saturation of the hæmoglobin and the tension of oxygen in the blood may be actually increased during the hyperpnœa which accompanies this condition.

The blood, thus laden with oxygen, travels to the left side of the heart, and from there is sent through the arteries to all parts of the body. It must be remembered that neither in the lungs nor in the tissues does the hæmoglobin come in actual contact with the source of the oxygen, nor with the cells which it is to supply. In both cases the interchange is effected through the intermediation of the plasma and, in the tissues, of the lymph as well. Since the tissue elements are constantly using up oxygen, they absorb any oxygen that is present in the surrounding lymph. There is in consequence a descending scale of oxygen tensions from red blood corpuscle through plasma, vessel wall, lymph, and tissue element. The cell draws from the lymph, and the lymph from the plasma, so that the oxygen tension in the plasma sinks. This has the same effect as if we put the red corpuscles in a mercurial pump and lowered the pressure of gas. The immediate result is an evolution of oxygen, which is taken up by the plasma, to be in turn passed on to the lymph and the tissue cell.

The passage of oxygen out of the capillaries into the tissue cells must thus be proportional to the difference of tension between the oxygen in the capillaries and that in the cells. If Pb is the oxygen pressure in the capillary blood and Pt that in the tissues, the rate of flow of oxygen from capillaries to tissues must be proportional to Pb — Pt. If the blood is to lose oxygen during the whole of this passage through the tissues, we may take for Pb the tension of the oxygen in the venous blood as it leaves the tissues. This is generally about 30 mm. Hg. Pt, the tension of oxygen in the tissues, may be determined in various ways. Verzar's method is based on the following argument. If the oxygen pressure in the tissues is nothing, Pb — Pt will equal 30 — 0 = 30. In this case any diminution in the tension of the oxygen in the blood will diminish the steepness of fall of pressure between capillaries and tissues, and there must be a corresponding diminution in the consumption of oxygen by the tissues, as determined by a comparison of the oxygen contents in the blood flowing to and away from the tissue respectively. If however Pt is positive, *e.g.* 20 mm. Hg., Pb — Pt equals 30 — 20 = 10. Here a drop in the oxygen tension of the blood will give rise to a corresponding drop in the tension within the tissues: for instance, if the tension in the blood is diminished to 20 mm. Hg., that in the tissues will drop to 10 mm. Hg., and the difference on the two sides of the capillary

wall will remain the same, so that the consumption of oxygen by the tissues will be unaltered by changes of the oxygen tension in the blood. Tested by this method Verzar found that the submaxillary gland falls within the second case, and that its oxygen tension must be but little removed from that of the blood itself. Altering the oxygen tension of the blood by making an animal breathe a mixture poor in oxygen does not affect in any way the oxygen consumption in the gland. On the other hand, in resting muscle Verzar found that the oxygen tension is probably zero, so that its consumption could be widely affected by diminishing the oxygen tension in the air supply to the animal. Krogh has attacked the question in a different manner. In a series of experiments he first determined the rate of diffusion of oxygen through different thicknesses of various tissues (connective tissue, muscle, etc.) under varying pressures. Then, partly on the living muscle, partly on injected specimens, he estimated the relation of the number and size of the capillaries to the intercapillary muscular tissues. He found the pressure differences necessary to supply the muscle fibres with oxygen extremely small. Some of his results on the guinea-pig are shown in the accompanying Table.

Guinea-pig muscle	$C.C.O_2$ per minute per 100 c c. tissue	Capillaries per mm.^{2}	Pb — Pt mm. Hg.	Total surface capillary in 1 c c. muscle	Capacity of capillaries in 100 c c. muscle
Rest	0·5	31	45	3 cm.^{2}	0·02 c.c.
	0·5	85	12	8 ,,	0·06 ,,
	0·5	270	3	32 ,,	0·3 ,,
Massage	0·5	1400	·04	200 ,,	2·8 ,,
Work	5	2500	1·4	390 ,,	5·5 ,,
Maximum circulation	10	3000	1·2	750 ,,	15· ,,

The first thing that strikes us in this Table is the enormous difference between the capillary circulation of resting and that of active muscle. In the resting muscle the majority of the capillaries are empty and collapsed, so that large areas of muscle intervene between the few capillaries in which the circulation of blood is proceeding. Under these conditions the pressure difference necessary to supply the total oxygen consumed by the muscle, *e. g.* 45 mm. Hg., may fall below the venous oxygen tension, so that in parts of the muscle the oxygen tension may be zero, as maintained by Verzar. After massage a number of capillaries open, and the number is still further increased by work, so that there may be a hundredfold increase in the number of capillaries in every square millimetre of a cross-section of the muscle. Under these conditions the passage of oxygen from the capillaries is so facilitated that the oxygen pressure in the muscle tissues becomes practically equal to that of the blood. It would appear that, so far as the supply of oxygen to the muscle is concerned, the increase in the capillary area during muscular exercise is far ahead of the actual needs of the muscle.

Krogh suggests that this enormous increase in the number of patent capillaries may be brought about to meet requirements of the muscle other than those for oxygen. These observations afford further support for the view already put forward that the capillaries do not play a merely passive rôle in the circulation, but by active dilatation or constriction are largely responsible for determining the actual blood supply to each tissue in accord with its metabolic requirements.

Under normal circumstances a blood corpuscle never stays long enough in the proximity of the tissues to lose its whole store of oxygen. If however the further supply of oxygen to the blood be prevented, as in asphyxia, the last traces of oxygen disappear from the blood. The enormous avidity of the tissues for oxygen under these circumstances is shown by the following experiment (Ehrlich). If a saturated solution of methylene blue be injected

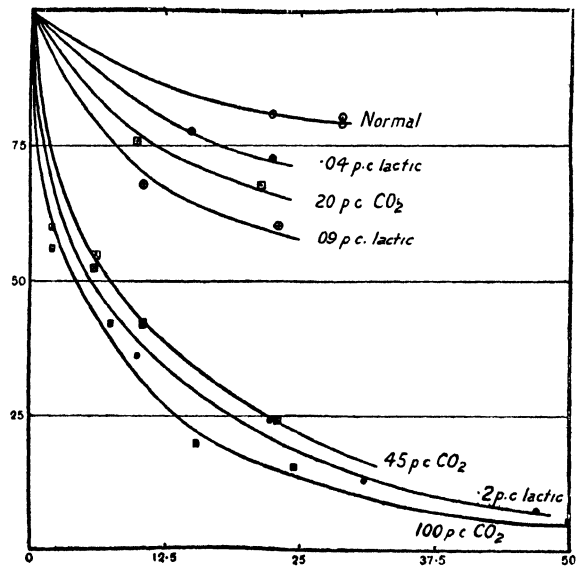


FIG. 511. Curves showing the rate at which arterial blood is reduced on bubbling through a gas free from oxygen, and the effect on the rate of the presence of CO_2 and of lactic acid. Ordinates = percentage saturation of oxyhæmoglobin. Abscissæ = time in minutes. (MATHISON.)

into the circulation of a living animal and the animal be killed ten minutes later, it is found on first opening the body that most of the organs present their natural colour, although the blood is a dark blue colour. On exposure to the atmosphere all the organs acquire a vivid blue colour. These phenomena are due to the production in the tissues of reducing bodies, whose avidity for oxygen is so great that they are able to decompose the methylene-blue molecule, with the formation of a colourless reduction product, which on exposure to the air undergoes oxidation again and re-forms methylene blue. If the tissues are able to effect the reduction of a comparatively stable body like methylene blue, it is easy to understand their power of

reducing oxyhæmoglobin, which is so unstable that it is decomposed by simple physical means such as exposure to a vacuum.

It was long debated whether the chief processes of oxidation take place in the blood or in the tissues. Our experiences with muscle would alone serve to convince us that, in some tissues at any rate, processes of oxidation take place, and the methylene-blue experiment shows that these processes of oxidation are intense in all the chief organs of the body. It has been found moreover that it is possible to keep a frog alive after substituting normal saline solution for its blood, if it be placed in absolutely pure oxygen, and that in this case indeed the metabolism of the animal goes on as actively as before. As the frog has no blood, it is evident that its metabolic processes, consisting of the taking up of oxygen and the giving out of carbon dioxide, must have their seat in the tissues.

As a result of the oxidative changes in the tissues, carbon dioxide is produced, and the tension of this gas in the tissues therefore rises. As Barcroft has pointed out, in cold-blooded animals the dissociation of oxy-hæmoglobin with the setting free of oxygen must be largely conditioned by the rise of carbon dioxide tension in the tissues, since at the normal temperature of these animals the evolution of oxygen from hæmoglobin is extremely slow. The alteration in reaction of the blood, caused by a rise in CO_2 tension or by the presence of small amounts of lactic acid, markedly quickens the rate at which oxyhæmoglobin gives up its oxygen, as is shown in Fig. 511. The carbon dioxide tension in the tissues may be approximately measured by taking the tension of this gas in fluids such as the bile or urine. Here it may amount to 8 or 10 per cent. of an atmosphere, and since the carbon dioxide in venous blood is rarely above 6 per cent. of an atmosphere, there is a descending scale of tensions from tissue to blood, just as there is an ascending scale in the case of oxygen. This gas therefore passes from the tissues through the lymph into the blood by a simple process of diffusion.

The carbon dioxide carried by the blood is, like the oxygen, chiefly in a state of chemical combination. From dogs' venous blood we may obtain by means of the pump about 50 c.c. of carbon dioxide per 100 c.c. blood. Water at the temperature of the body, if shaken up with an atmosphere of carbon dioxide at a pressure of 760 mm. Hg., would take up about 50 per cent. of the gas, and the plasma as a mere solvent would take up slightly less. The tension of carbon dioxide in the blood is however much less than 1 atmosphere. Shaken up with pure carbon dioxide at a pressure of 1 atmosphere, the blood would take up as much as 150 per cent. If we determine the tension of the carbon dioxide in the blood by one of the methods to be described later, we find that in venous blood this gas is at a pressure of only about 5 to 6 per cent. of an atmosphere (about 40 mm. Hg.). Taking the pressure of the carbon dioxide as $\frac{1}{20}$ of an atmosphere, and knowing that at a pressure of 1 atmosphere the blood might dissolve 50 volumes per cent., it is evident that at $\frac{1}{20}$ of an atmosphere the blood would dissolve only $\frac{50}{20}$ volumes per cent., *i. e.* about $2\frac{1}{2}$ volumes. All the rest of the carbon dioxide in the blood must therefore be in combination (cp. Fig. 512).

The carbon dioxide is contained chiefly in theplasma, though a certain amount is also in combination in the corpuscles. Part of the carbon dioxide must be in combination with some constituent common to both plasma and corpuscles. When blood plasma is calcined, the ash is found to be distinctly alkaline and to contain an amount of sodium greater than is necessary to combine with the other acid radicals, *e. g.* Cl, SO_4, and PO_4, and this excess becomes greater if we consider that a large part of the PO_4 and SO_4 is derived from the oxidation of the sulphur and phosphorus present in organic combination in the plasma. We may therefore conclude that a considerable part of the carbon dioxide exists in the plasma as sodium bicarbonate.

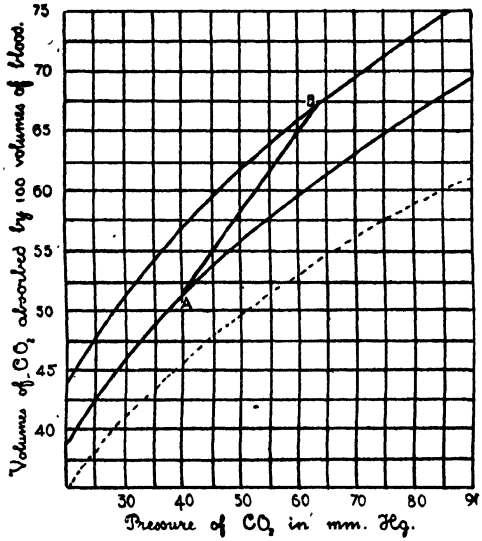


FIG. 512. Curve of CO_2 tension in blood.
(CHRISTIANSEN, DOUGLAS and HALDANE.)

This curve shows the influence of the saturation of the hæmoglobin with oxygen on the amount of CO_2 taken up by the blood at various pressures.
Upper curve = absorption of CO_2 by human blood in presence of hydrogen and CO_2.
Middle curve = absorption of CO_2 by human blood in presence of air and CO_2.
Lower curve = absorption of CO_2 in blood of ox and dog in presence of air.
The thick line A–B represents the absorption of CO_2 by human blood within the body (supposing the blood is completely deoxygenated in the tissues).
It is evident that an increase of 15 c.c. per cent. of CO_2 in the blood, as it passes through the tissues, would raise the tension of this gas in the blood only 22 mm. Hg. (from 40 to 62). Under normal conditions the rise of CO_2 pressure in the blood on passing through the tissues is not more than 5–7 mm. Hg.

The question arises whether the whole of the combined carbonic acid of the blood can be regarded as existing in the form of sodium bicarbonate. According to the analyses of Carl Schmidt given on page 909, the blood contains $4{\cdot}31 \times 10^{-2}$N sodium. On saturating blood with carbonic acid and making allowance for the amount of this gas in simple solution, it is found that 100 cc. of blood will take up about 100 c.c. of carbonic acid in chemical combination. Assuming this to exist entirely in combination with sodium, it would correspond to a concentration of about $4{\cdot}5 \times 10^{-2}$N sodium. This would be equivalent to 0·1035 per cent. sodium, or to 0·378 per cent. sodium bicarbonate in the whole blood. A difficulty in assuming that all the carbonic acid is in the form of sodium bicarbonate is presented by the fact that the behaviour of blood, when exposed to varying pressures of carbon dioxide, differs markedly from that of a solution of sodium bicarbonate. In Fig. 513 this difference is represented graphically.

The upper curve gives the dissociation of a sodium bicarbonate solution, and the lower that of blood at varying pressures of CO_2, the bicarbonate being of the strength which we have assumed to exist in blood, viz. $4{\cdot}83 \times 10^{-2}$N. A solution of pure bicarbonate has a very small tendency to dissociate and is completely stable at a pressure of 4 – 6 mm. Hg. CO_2. If the pressure is reduced below this the sodium bicarbonate slowly dissociates, but the dissociation never passes beyond the formation of sodium carbonate, so that in a complete vacuum sodium bicarbonate will give off only half the total carbonic acid that it contains.

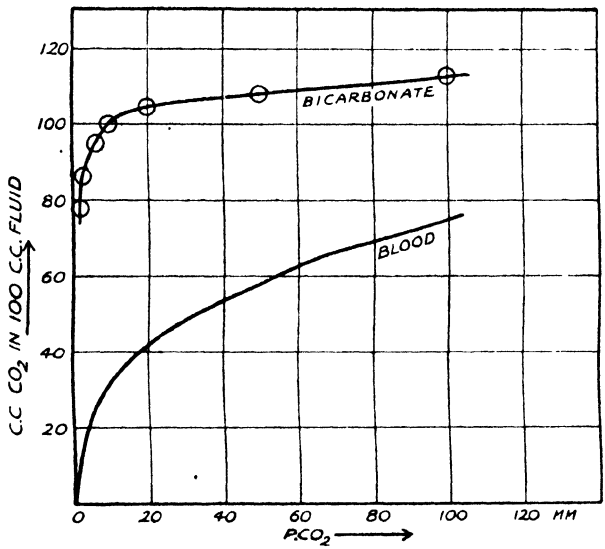


FIG. 513. Dissociation curve of a $4{\cdot}83 \times 10^{-2}$N solution of sodium bicarbonate (upper curve) compared with that of human blood, at 37°C., at varying tensions of CO_2. (From PARSONS.)

Blood on the contrary at a CO_2 pressure of 50 mm. Hg. is only about half saturated with CO_2, and to a vacuum gives off the whole of its content in carbonic acid, so that no further evolution is attained on the addition of acid. Are there any conditions in the plasma or in the whole blood which may, so to speak, loosen this attachment of carbonic acid to sodium in the bicarbonate, so as to enable this gas to be given off more rapidly on exposure to diminished pressure?

We may artificially make a fluid which behaves to carbon dioxide in the same way as blood, by mixing together sodium carbonate and sodium hydrogen phosphate Na_2HPO_4. From such a mixture the whole of the carbon dioxide may be given off when exposed to a vacuum. On the other hand, a large amount of carbon dioxide will be taken up with a very small difference in tension of the gases. The behaviour of the mixture is due to an interaction which occurs between the acid radicals PO_4 and CO_3. When

the mixture is exposed to a vacuum, any sodium bicarbonate present will undergo dissociation, carbon dioxide being given off and the carbonate Na_2CO_3 formed. This then reacts with the sodium phosphate in the following way:

$$2NaH_2PO_4 + Na_2CO_3 = 2Na_2HPO_4 + CO_2 + H_2O.$$

In this way the whole of the sodium enters into combination with the PO_4 and the carbon dioxide previously combined is given off. On exposing the mixture to an atmosphere containing carbon dioxide, the reverse change takes place, and we get once again sodium hydrogen phosphate and sodium carbonate, and finally sodium bicarbonate. It was formerly thought that in the blood plasma phosphates were an important factor in the evolution of the carbon dioxide. Blood plasma however contains the merest trace of phosphates, and the rôle of a weak acid competing with the carbon dioxide for the sodium seems to be played chiefly by the proteins (including hæmoglobin) of the corpuscles and plasma. It may be assumed that in a complete vacuum the whole of the soda is in combination with the protein and hæmoglobin. On exposure of the blood to increasing pressure of CO_2, the sodium leaves the protein to combine with this gas with the production of sodium bicarbonate. Under ordinary circumstances, with a CO_2 tension in the blood of 40 mm. Hg., rather more than half the sodium would thus be in combination with protein, and only when the CO_2 pressure exceeds 100 mm. Hg. would the whole of the sodium be taken up by the carbonic acid.

The exact mode in which carbonic acid is carried into the blood cannot be regarded as finally settled. If the above account is correct, it should be possible by the addition of blood protein to sodium bicarbonate to induce this latter to give up the whole of its carbonic acid to a vacuum. The protein would however have to be prepared free from sodium, and this ought to be possible by dialysing a serum or hæmoglobin solution against normal saline in the presence of excess of CO_2, *i. e.* maintaining a tension of this gas in the dialysing fluid of something over 100 mm. Hg., since only under these conditions would it be possible to free sodium from its attachment to the protein. It was pointed out by Bohr that hæmoglobin formed a combination with carbonic acid and that the dissociation curve of this compound resembled closely that of the carbonic acid in the whole blood. According to Buckmaster, carbonic acid exists in the blood in two modes of combination, viz. as sodium bicarbonate and as carbon dioxide hæmoglobin. He considers that the function of the sodium bicarbonate is to maintain the neutrality of the blood by acting as a 'buffer' substance, while the hæmoglobin compound is responsible for all the transference of carbonic acid which takes place in respiration. If however the crystallised hæmoglobin employed contains sodium in combination, it might act as a sodium protein system in the same manner as we have assumed for the whole blood. Further evidence is required on this question.

The red corpuscles may act in another way in favouring the giving up of the carbon dioxide of the plasma to a vacuum. There is evidence that an interchange of acid radicals takes place between the corpuscles and the plasma on exposure of blood to varying tensions of CO_2. According to Hamburger, when carbon dioxide is passed into defibrinated blood, the

alkaline reserve of the plasma increases while the chlorides diminish, and the reverse change must take place when the carbonic acid tension in the blood is diminished as on exposure of the blood to a vacuum.

EXCHANGE OF GASES IN THE LUNGS

A fluid gives off gas to or takes up gas from any other medium with which it is in contact, according to the relative pressures of the gas. The question arises whether the physical conditions in the lungs are such as to account for the absorption of oxygen and the evolution of carbon dioxide by the blood in its passage through these organs. In order to answer this question we must know the partial pressures or tensions of oxygen and of carbon dioxide in the alveolar air, in the venous blood coming to the lungs, and in the arterial blood leaving the lungs. In the alveoli the pressures are given by the analysis of alveolar air. The determination of the gaseous tensions in the blood presents however considerable difficulty. It is necessary to bring the blood in contact with gaseous mixtures containing various proportions of the gas whose tension in the blood it is desired to measure. By making various experiments a gaseous mixture will be found with which the blood is in equilibrium. If we know beforehand the amount of gas in this mixture, we know its tension and therefore the tension of the gas in the liquid.

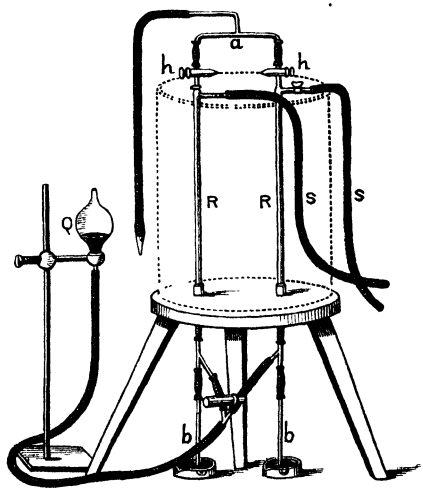


FIG. 514. Pflüger's aerotonometer.

Pflüger's aerotonometer (Fig. 514) consists of two glass tubes, R and R, contained in a vessel filled with water at the temperature of the body. The upper ends of the tubes are connected by the tube *a* with the artery or vein in which it is desired to estimate the tension of the blood gases. If, for instance, we wish to determine the tension of CO_2 in venous blood, where we expect the tension to amount to about 4 per cent. of an atmosphere, one tube R is filled with a gaseous mixture containing 3 per cent. CO_2, and the other tube R with a mixture containing 5 per cent. CO_2. *a* is now connected with the distal end of the jugular vein or with the central end of the carotid artery, and blood is allowed to flow in a thin stream down the walls of the tubes R and R, thus presenting a large surface to the contained gases. The blood collects in the lower narrower portions of the tubes, and runs out into the vessels *b*, *b*, whence after defibrination it is returned at intervals into the veins of the animal.

In all such instruments the main difficulty is in obtaining a sufficient surface of the blood exposed to the gaseous mixture. The interchange of

gases is thus very slow, and it is difficult to be certain at any time that the blood and the gas with which it is in contact are really in equilibrium. Krogh therefore adopted an ingenious device of limiting the volume of air to a small bubble, the superficial area of which is large in proportion to its bulk: This bubble, after it has been in a stream of blood for some minutes, is transferred to a special capillary tube in which its analysis can be carried out with a fair degree of accuracy.

The performance of a tonometer may be expressed by the ratio of the surface of blood exposed to the volume of the air used. The 'specific surface' of an aerotonometer is represented by $\frac{\text{area in sq. cm.}}{\text{volume in c.c.}}$. The specific surface of Pflüger's instrument is only 3·3 and of Bohr's only 5·2. In Krogh's microtonometer the absolute volume of air employed is reduced to a bubble of about 2 mm. in diameter, having a volume of ·004 c.c. and a surface of 0·125 sq. cm., so that its specific surface is 30. In such a bubble the equalisation of the tensions takes place with extreme rapidity and only a minute quantity of fluid is necessary. The microtonometer consists of the tonometer proper and the apparatus for the micro-analysis of the gas bubble. In the latter the measurement of the gas bubble is carried out in a capillary tube, the absorption of carbon dioxide and of oxygen being effected in the usual way with potash and with pyrogallic acid. The tonometer is represented in Fig. 515. It is kept in a small water-bath at the temperature of the blood to be examined. The tonometer is filled with saline solution and contains the gas bubble 2, which can be drawn up by means of the screw 4 into the narrow graduated tube 3, where its volume is measured. The blood from the artery or vein, in which we wish to examine the tension of the gases, passes by a cannula through the tube 1, and enters the tonometer as a fine jet. It forces its way up above the gas bubble, which is pressed a little down by the current, and kept oscillating with great rapidity. From the tonometer the blood flows back through the tube 7 and is collected in a vessel where it can be measured and afterwards drawn off and reinjected into the animal if necessary. Since the total pressure of the gases in the blood is nearly always negative, it is necessary to keep the pressure in the tonometer also negative.[1] This is accomplished by means of a mercury valve and can be regulated to any desired pressure.

During the course of a tonometric experiment the volume of the gas bubble is measured from time to time by drawing it up into the graduated tube, and the pressure is regulated until the volume of the bubble remains constant. After five minutes gaseous equilibrium will have been established between the gas bubble and the surrounding blood, and it is necessary then only to draw it up into the graduated tube and analyse it in order to determine the tension of the gases in the blood. Clotting of the blood is prevented by the injection of hirudin.

In these experiments the tension of the air in the alveoli of the animal's lungs or in the bifurcation of the trachea was determined by taking samples of the air. The results of the experiments show that the tension of the gases in arterial blood follows closely the tension of the corresponding gases in the alveolar air. The tension of carbon dioxide in arterial blood is either identical with or very slightly above the tension of the gas in the alveolar air. The oxygen tension of the blood is always lower than the alveolar oxygen tension, and the difference is generally 1 to 2—even 3 to 4—per cent. of an atmosphere. The results of a series of determinations of the tensions of the gases in the blood and alveolar air respectively are given in Figs. 516

[1] Otherwise the whole bubble would gradually go into solution and disappear.

and 517. In Fig. 517 A and B (Krogh) the composition of the alveolar air artificially altered by increasing the percentage of carbon dioxide and of oxygen respectively. It will be seen in each case that there was a corresponding alteration of the tension in the arterial blood, the tension of carbon dioxide being higher and that of oxygen lower in the blood than in the air throughout the experiment. We have no direct determinations of the tensions of the gases in the blood of man, though an approximate valuation of these tensions

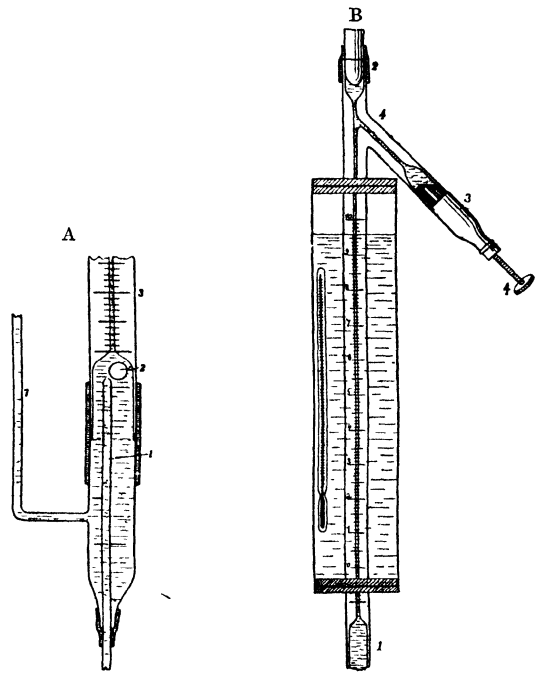


FIG. 515. A, Krogh's microtonometer. B, upper part of microtonometer showing capillary tube into which the bubble is returned for measurement and analysis.

can be obtained by knowing the degree to which the arterial and venous blood respectively is saturated with oxygen or carbon dioxide. An indirect method may be employed to measure the gaseous tensions in the venous blood coming to the lungs. It is possible, as Loewy has shown, to block the right bronchus in man by introducing a cathether through the larynx and trachea, so that the renewal of air in the right half of the lung is entirely stopped for some time. A sample of air in the blocked lung can be taken at any time by means of the catheter. The interchange of gases between alveolar air and blood will go on until the tension of gases in the air is the same as that coming to the blocked portion of lung. By this means the tension of the oxygen in the venous blood was found to be 5·3 per cent. = 37 mm. Hg., and that of the carbon dioxide 6 per cent. = 46 mm. Hg.

The tensions in the alveolar air of man may be taken as follows:

Oxygen	107 mm. Hg.
Carbon dioxide	40 „ „

As the venous blood enters the lungs there is thus a difference of pressure of 107 — 37 = 70 mm. Hg., which will tend to cause a flow of oxygen from

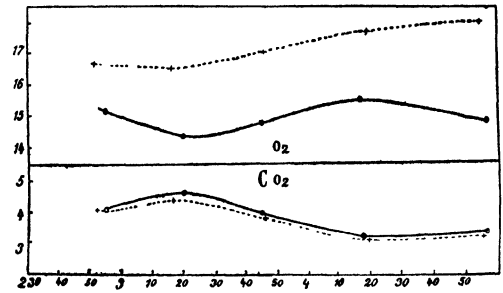


FIG. 516. Tensions of O_2 and CO_2 in alveoli compared with those in arterial blood of rabbit.

The dotted lines represent the tensions in the alveolar air, the uninterrupted lines the tensions of the gases in the arterial blood. (KROGH.)

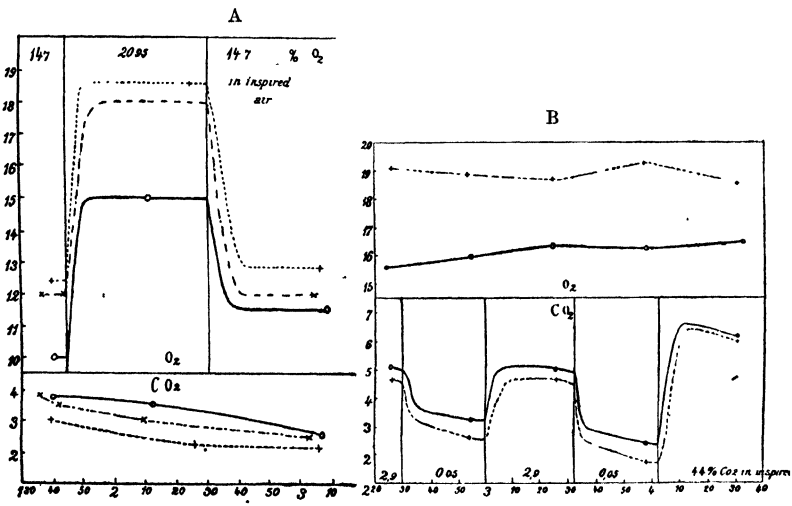


FIG. 517. Tensions of gases in alveolar air and in arterial blood.

A, during artificial increase of oxygen tension in alveoli; B, during artificial increase of CO_2 tension in alveoli.

alveolar air to blood and a difference of 46 — 40 = 6 mm. Hg., tending to cause a flow of carbon dioxide from blood to alveolar air. Is this difference sufficient to account for the amount of gas given off or taken up by the blood in its passage through the lungs? In a state of medium distension the 3000 c.c. of air contained by the lungs have been estimated to occupy seven hundred million alveoli, each of which has a diameter of 0·2 mm., so that the total surface over which the blood is exposed to the alveolar

air amounts to 90 square metres. This is a minimal figure, since no account in the calculation is taken of the augmentation of surface caused by the fact that the capillaries project into the lumen of the alveolus; and by Hüfner the total surface exposed is estimated at 140 square metres. The former figure however amounts to about 1000 square feet and is equivalent to the floor-space of a room 50 feet long by 20 feet wide. It is important to realise that the blood passing through the pulmonary artery suddenly spreads out into a layer which is not more than one blood corpuscle thick, and is exposed to the air over this huge area, whence it is picked up again and collected into the pulmonary veins. Such a means of facilitating rapid interchange of gases between the blood and a given volume of air we cannot possibly imitate artificially. The thickness of the tissue separating this layer of air from the alveolar air is on the average ·004 mm. Loewy and Zuntz have directly determined the velocity of diffusion of carbon dioxide and nitrous oxide through the frog's lung, and have calculated therefrom the rate at which oxygen would diffuse through a similar layer of tissue, taking into account the much greater solubility of carbon dioxide as compared with oxygen. They estimate that, under a constant difference of pressure of 35 mm. Hg., 6·7 c.c. of oxygen would pass in a minute through each square centimetre of the alveolar wall. Through the whole surface of the lung this would amount to an absorption of 6083 c.c. oxygen. The oxygen actually absorbed by a man at rest amounts to about 300 c.c. per minute, so that the physical conditions allow an ample margin for any increase in the consumption of oxygen; in fact, a difference of pressure of a couple of millimetres would suffice to cause a passage of the 250 c.c. per minute which is required by the resting man. In the same way it is easy to account for the passage of carbon dioxide in the reverse direction. This gas diffuses through a wet membrane about twenty-five times as rapidly as oxygen, so that a difference of pressure between the blood and the alveolar air amounting to only ·03 mm. Hg. would suffice to cause a passage outwards of the 250 c.c. normally expired per minute.

It is evident that the only limitation for the absorption of oxygen is given by the power of the hæmoglobin to combine with the oxygen which passes through the alveolar wall into the blood plasma.

If we look at the dissociation curve of the oxyhæmoglobin in mammalian blood given on p. 1110, we see that the amount of oxygen which can be taken up by hæmoglobin in the presence of the normal tension of carbon dioxide, *i. e.* 40 mm. Hg., begins to diminish very rapidly when the pressure of the oxygen falls below 50 mm. Hg. Thus at 40 mm. oxygen pressure and a carbon dioxide tension of 40 mm., oxyhæmoglobin is about 65 per cent. saturated, and at 30 mm. it is only 50 per cent. saturated. Under normal circumstances the blood leaves the lungs over 90 per cent. saturated with oxygen. If the saturation falls to 60 per cent. we should expect to obtain evidence of failure of oxygen supply to the tissues. According to Loewy the oxygen tension in the alveoli can sink to between 30 and 35 mm. Hg. before any signs of oxygen lack make their appearance. These results were

obtained by exposing a man in a state of complete rest to reduced pressure in an air-chamber. Under these conditions the slightest muscular exertion would at once tend to cause distress from deficient oxygen supply. The exact percentage of oxygen in the inspired air, which would give an alveolar oxygen tension of 30 to 35 mm., varies with the depth of respiration. Thus with shallow respiratory movements the pressure may sink to 35 mm. Hg. when the inspired air contains as much as 12 per cent. oxygen. If the movements be deeper, the oxygen content of inspired air may be reduced to 9 or 10 per cent. before respiratory distress is observed.

The view that, in the interchange of gases in the lungs, the membrane between the blood and the alveolar air plays simply a passive part was till recently by no means universally accepted. In Bohr's experiments on the tension of oxygen and carbon dioxide in the blood as determined with his aerotonometer, oxygen tensions were often found considerably higher in the blood than in the air of the alveoli, and in the same way the carbon dioxide tension of the blood leaving the lungs was found to be less than the carbon dioxide tension of the alveolar air. Krogh's experiments show conclusively however that these results are not reliable, and that the difference between the tensions in the alveoli and in the blood respectively is always such as to allow of the passage by diffusion of oxygen inwards and carbon dioxide outwards from the blood. Moreover, as Krogh points out, the structure of the pulmonary epithelium lends no support to the view that it acts as a secreting membrane. In mammals the cells are of two kinds, viz. small granular nucleated cells lying in the interstices of the capillaries, and larger extremely thin structureless plates, *without nuclei*, covering the capillaries. In birds, where the gaseous exchange is of all animals the most rapid and efficient, the existence of a lung epithelium has never been demonstrated, and the capillaries appear to be almost completely free and to be surrounded with air on both sides.

Bohr's view as to the secretory function of the pulmonary epithelium was supported as concerns the intake of oxygen by Haldane. This observer has devised a method of determining the oxygen tension of the blood in the lungs founded on the use of carbon monoxide. It has already been mentioned that carbon monoxide has the power of displacing oxygen from oxyhæmoglobin to form a much more stable compound, carboxyhæmoglobin. If blood be shaken up with a mixture of oxygen and carbon monoxide, the hæmoglobin distributes itself between the two gases. In order however to get an equal distribution, it is necessary to take a very small percentage of carbon monoxide, owing to its greater avidity for hæmoglobin. Thus, if hæmoglobin solution be shaken up with air containing ·07 per cent. of CO, the result is a mixture of equal parts of oxy and carboxyhæmoglobin. The affinity of CO for hæmoglobin would thus appear to be about $\frac{21}{\cdot 07} = 300$ times the affinity of oxygen for hæmoglobin.

Carbon monoxide is not destroyed in the body, so that if a mixture containing a small proportion of CO be breathed, this gas will be taken up until a certain percentage of hæmoglobin is converted into CO-hæmoglobin and the tension of CO in the tissues and fluids of the body is equal to that of the inspired air. The amount of hæmoglobin which is converted into carboxyhæmoglobin will serve as a measure of the relative tensions of CO and oxygen in the lungs. If the oxygen tension of arterial blood were the same as that of the alveolar air, we should expect that, with a given percentage of CO in the air breathed, the final saturation with CO of the blood within the body would be the same as the saturation of blood when shaken outside the body with air containing the same percentage of CO as in the air breathed. It was found by Haldane however that in all cases the percentage of CO hæmoglobin formed was much less in the body than outside the body. Thus in blood shaken up with air containing 20·9 per cent. oxygen and ·045 per cent. CO, the amount of carbon monoxide hæmoglobin formed was 31 per cent. of the whole hæmoglobin. When the same mixture was inhaled for three or four hours by a man, the percentage of CO hæmoglobin in his blood rose only to

26 per cent., at which figure it remained stationary. This would correspond to an oxygen tension of about 25 per cent. of an atmosphere, whereas we have already seen that the oxygen tension in the alveoli cannot be greater than 15 per cent. He therefore concluded that the epithelial cells of the alveoli play an active part in the respiratory interchange, taking up the oxygen on one side at a tension of 15 per cent. and piling it up on the other until the pressure in the blood is much higher than that in the alveolar air. Theoretically there is no reason to deny the possibility of such powers to the pulmonary epithelium. We know that the secreting cells of the kidney take up urea from the blood which contains only about ·02 per cent. of this substance, and excrete it into the renal tubule, into a medium containing about 2 per cent.; and if the data given by Haldane are correct we must ascribe an analogous function to the pulmonary epithelium. These data however were obtained by a colorimetric method working with very minute quantities of blood, and lacked the support of control experiments. As a result of further experiments, Haldane has modified his position so far as to allow that under normal conditions the absorption of oxygen from the alveolar air takes place in accordance with the difference of pressure, *i. e.* by a process of diffusion. He is still of opinion that under abnormal conditions, when the oxygen tension in the alveolar air is very low, there is an active absorption and transference of oxygen to the blood on the part of the pulmonary epithelium. Why animals should evolve a function which can be brought into play only on climbing mountains seems difficult to understand, and it does not seem probable that a reinvestigation of the tensions of oxygen in the blood under such conditions by Krogh's method will lend any confirmation to Haldane's conclusions.

An analogy has been drawn between the processes of gas interchange in the lungs and that in the swim bladder of the fish. Bohr has shown that the gas obtained by puncturing the bladder often contains considerable excess of oxygen. If the bladder be punctured and the fish then left in the water, the gas rapidly reaccumulates, and it is found, on tapping a second time, that the percentage of oxygen is largely increased, and may amount to between 60 and 80 per cent. of the total gases. This reaccumulation of the gases does not take place if both vagi are cut, and is therefore ascribed to a direct secretory activity on the part of the epithelium lining the swim bladder under the influence of the vagus nerves. Bohr, as the result of experiments by himself and some of his pupils, is inclined to endow the vagus nerves in the higher vertebrates, including mammals, with an analogous regulatory influence on the gaseous exchanges in the lungs. As regards the evolution of carbon dioxide, the facts elucidated by Haldane himself would make one hesitate in ascribing any special secretory activity to the pulmonary epithelium. We find, namely, that the respiratory centre reacts immediately to the slightest increase in the tension of the carbon dioxide in the alveolar air. Since this behaviour of the respiratory centre is independent of any nervous connections between the lungs and the brain, it seems to indicate, as indeed Krogh has found, that the tension of the carbon dioxide in the blood follows closely the tension of the carbon dioxide in the alveolar air. If the carbon dioxide were secreted by the pulmonary epithelium, we should expect the lungs to react to increased carbon dioxide in the alveoli by simply increasing their work so as to maintain the tension of carbon dioxide in the blood at a constant level. This at any rate is the way in which the kidney would behave under analogous circumstances. Moreover there is no likeness between the thick typical secreting cells of the 'red gland,' which is the gas-secreting part of the swim bladder, and the thin structureless plates which separate the capillaries of the lungs from the alveolar air.

SECTION III

THE REGULATION OF THE RESPIRATORY MOVEMENTS

EACH movement of inspiration involves the co-ordinated activity of a large number of muscles. Thus the diaphragm and the intercostal muscles must come into action at the same time, and the extent to which they contract will determine the depth of the inspiration. Similarly, they must cease to act simultaneously if the act of expiration is to take place. The rhythm and extent of the alternate contractions and relaxations of the respiratory muscles are determined, as we have seen, by the needs of the organism as a whole. These respiratory movements are regulated so that the total ventilation of the alveoli shall be sufficient to meet the gaseous exchanges of the body. Whether the organism consumes 250 or 1000 c.c. of oxygen per minute, the respiratory movements keep the composition of the gas in the alveoli at a practically constant level.

The muscles involved both in inspiration and expiration can be thrown into activity only by the intermediation of nerves. Each act of inspiration involves a discharge along a number of nerves, *e. g.* the facial to the muscles moving the alæ nasi, the vagus to the muscles of the larynx, the branches of the cervical and brachial nerves to the muscles of the neck, the phrenic nerves to the diaphragm, and the dorsal nerves to the intercostal muscles. The fibres making up these nerves are derived from nerve cells of the anterior horn, situated at various levels in the medulla and spinal cord. In each act of inspiration or expiration the activities of all these groups of cells must be brought into relation among themselves, as well as with the needs of the organism for oxygen and for the elimination of carbon dioxide. It is conceivable that the co-ordination of the activities of the various motor nuclei might be attained by the provision of communicating nerve paths joining the centres among themselves, and by a sensibility of all these centres to the gaseous contents of the blood as well as to the influence of afferent impressions from the periphery. A much more efficient co-ordination however would be effected by the subjection of these motor nuclei to the action of some specialised portion of the central nervous system, which would act as a receiving centre for afferent impressions from the lungs and surface of the body, and would be endowed with a special sensibility to changes in the composition of the blood circulating through its vessels. Experiment shows that the latter method is employed in the organism for the regulation of the respiratory movements. If the spinal cord be cut across

below the seventh cervical nerve roots, the action of the intercostal and abdominal muscles in respiration ceases permanently, although respiration is still continued by the rhythmic activity of the diaphragm and the other muscles supplied by nerves leaving the central nervous system above the point of section. Division of the cord at the first or second cervical nerve abolishes the action of the diaphragm, though the movements of the muscles supplied by the facial, vagus, and spinal accessory nerves continue. A section of the brain stem through the mid-brain leaves the respiratory movements unaltered, and the same absence of effect as concerns these movements may often be obtained when a section is carried across the upper part of the medulla about the level of the *striæ acousticæ*. We must conclude from these experiments that the motor nuclei of the cord are subject to and normally thrown into activity by impulses originating in the medulla oblongata and transmitted therefrom down the spinal cord.

Many experiments have been made with the idea of locating the position of the medullary respiratory centre more accurately. The first experiments on this point were made at the beginning of last century by Legallois, whose observations were confirmed and extended by Flourens. These observers described the respiratory centre as limited to a small area at the level of the apex of the *calamus scriptorius*, which they designated *nœud vital* on account of the fact that destruction of this area was at once fatal by paralysis of respiration. Later experiments have shown that the centre is not quite so circumscribed. In the first place, it is bilateral, each centre presiding more especially over the muscles of the same side of the body, so that longitudinal section in the middle line does not destroy the respiratory movements. Other observers have located the centre in the situation of the *solitary bundle* ('respiratory bundle of Gierke'), which is made up of the descending branches of the vagus nerve after they have entered the medulla, while, according to Gad, the respiratory centre is diffused over a considerable area of the *formatio reticularis* on either side of the medulla. There is no doubt that this centre is in close connection with the central terminations of the vagus nerves.

From the centre on each side the efferent impulses to the motor nuclei of the respiratory muscles pass down in the deeper portions of the lateral columns of the cord. Hemisection of the cervical cord, *e. g.* on the right side, causes cessation of the contractions of the diaphragm on the same side. There must however be commissural fibres joining the motor nuclei on the two sides. If the right phrenic nerve be divided, after hemisection on the left side, the left half of the diaphragm at once commences to contract rhythmically with each respiration (Porter). It is evident that the cessation of respiration after section of the cord is not due to a condition of shock of the lower spinal centres, since it is possible for impulses to pass down the cord and to cross over to the contra-lateral diaphragm nucleus *immediately* after hemisection of the cord on the side of the nucleus.

THE QUESTION OF SPINAL RESPIRATORY CENTRES. Several physiologists *e. g.* Brown-Séquard, Langendorff, and Wertheimer, have described respiratory centres

in the spinal cord. There is no doubt that, if the cord be cut across in the upper cervical region and artificial respiration maintained for some time, cessation of the respiration may be followed by rhythmic contractions of the respiratory muscles. These are especially marked in young animals and if the activity of the cord has been heightened by the injection of small doses of strychnine. Careful observation of the movements shows however that they cannot be spoken of as *respiratory*, since although rhythmic, they are not co-ordinate. The diaphragm may contract either simultaneously or in alternation with the intercostals, and muscles which are essentially expiratory at the same time as those which we are wont to regard as inspiratory. These experiments show merely that the motor centres of the cord can enter into rhythmic activity under the influence of asphyxial conditions. The movements affect the muscles of the limbs as well as those essentially respiratory in function.

THE AUTOMATICITY OF THE RESPIRATORY CENTRE

We have now to inquire what it is that keeps the respiratory centre in activity. Is the rhythmic discharge of inspiratory impulses from the centre due to rhythmic or continuous stimulation of afferent nerves, or is the centre so constructed that under the normal conditions of its environment the metabolic activity of its constituent parts tends, like that of the heart cells, to assume a rhythmic character? In other words, is the activity of the centre reflex or automatic? It has been found by Rosenthal that rhythmic respiratory movements are maintained even after complete section of the brain stem at the level of the superior corpora quadrigemina, section of the cord at the level of the seventh cervical nerve, and division of both vagi and of the posterior roots of all the cervical spinal nerves. It is true that if the sections of the brain stem be placed as low as the *striæ acousticæ*, the respiratory movements are profoundly modified and give place to a series of inspiratory spasms. We might argue from this that the centre was capable of a very imperfect degree of automatic action, but needed the stimulus of afferent impulses from the vagi or from the higher parts of the brain to render these actions adequate for the respiratory needs of the organism.

In the above experiment the centre cannot be regarded as free from all afferent stimuli, since the mere closure of the demarcation current in the cut ends of the nerves would cause a certain amount of excitation, and the animal does not survive sufficiently long to allow this condition to pass off. Hering has shown that in the 'spinal cord frog' (*i. e.* one in which the brain has been destroyed) section of all the posterior roots absolutely abolishes all mobility, the injection of strychnine being without effect. A typical spasm however can be at once produced by exposing and stimulating the stump of one of the cut posterior roots. We might suppose that the respiratory centre would be similarly devoid of automatism if absolutely free from afferent stimuli. It must be mentioned however that, according to Sherrington, it is possible to excite strychnine or asphyxial spasms in a dog or cat with isolated spinal cord, in which all the afferent roots below the transection have been divided six or seven hours previously. He therefore is of opinion that in the *mammal* the motor nervous mechanism can be set into activity apart from the incidence of afferent impressions. The respiratory centre tends to respond to all stimuli, continuous or rhythmic, by means of rhythmic discharges, and there can be no doubt that, if we take the medulla in connection with the rest of the hind- and mid-brain, we are justified in regarding its activity as automatic.

The automatic activity of the heart is intimately dependent on the saline constituents of the blood. It may be abolished or diminished by

modifying these constituents, and can be maintained for a considerable length of time by perfusing the heart with solutions containing inorganic salts in the concentration in which they exist in the blood plasma. When we speak of the automatic activity of the respiratory centre, we imply in the same way that its activity is dependent on the normal composition of the blood circulating through its vessels. In this case however it is the gaseous contents of the blood which are of supreme importance. If the normal ventilation of the lungs be prevented, as by ligature of the trachea or opening both pleural cavities, the blood becomes more and more venous. As this venous blood circulates through the medulla, the activity of the centre is continually increased, until finally the impulses discharged from the centre may set into activity practically every muscle of the body, producing asphyxial convulsions. On the other hand, the activity of the respiratory centre can be diminished or even abolished if, by an artificial ventilation of the alveoli, we maintain an over-arterialisation of the blood, so that the fluid passing to the brain contains more oxygen and less carbon dioxide than is the case under normal circumstances. What are the factors involved in this chemical regulation of respiration?

THE CHEMICAL REGULATION OF THE RESPIRATORY MOVEMENTS

If, the nervous centres being intact, the proper aeration of the respiratory centre be interfered with in any way, the respiratory movements increase in strength and frequency, and if the disturbing factor be not removed the animal dies, presenting a train of phenomena which are classified together under the term 'asphyxia.'

The phenomena of asphyxia may be divided into three stages:

(1) In the first stage, that of *hyperpnœa*, the respiratory movements are increased in amplitude and in rhythm. This increase affects at first both inspiratory and expiratory muscles. Gradually the force of the expiratory movements becomes increased out of all proportion to the inspiratory, and the first stage merges into:

(2) The second, which consists of *expiratory convulsions*, in which almost every muscle of the body may be involved. Just at the end of the first stage consciousness is lost, and almost immediately after the loss of consciousness we may observe a number of phenomena extending to almost all the functions of the body, some of which have been already studied. Thus the vaso-motor centre is excited, causing universal vascular constriction. There is often also secretion of saliva, inhibition or increase of intestinal movements, constriction of the pupil, and so on.

(3) At the end of the second minute after the stoppage of the aeration of the blood, the expiratory convulsions cease almost suddenly, and give way to *slow deep inspirations*. With each inspiratory spasm the animal stretches itself out and opens its mouth widely as if gasping for breath. The whole stage is one of exhaustion: the pupils dilate widely, and all reflexes are

cent. A rise of carbon dioxide to 3 per cent. increases the total ventilation of the alveoli by 126 per cent. An amount of carbon dioxide equivalent to 6 per cent. increases the depth of each respiration by 272 per cent., and the total alveolar ventilation by 757 per cent.

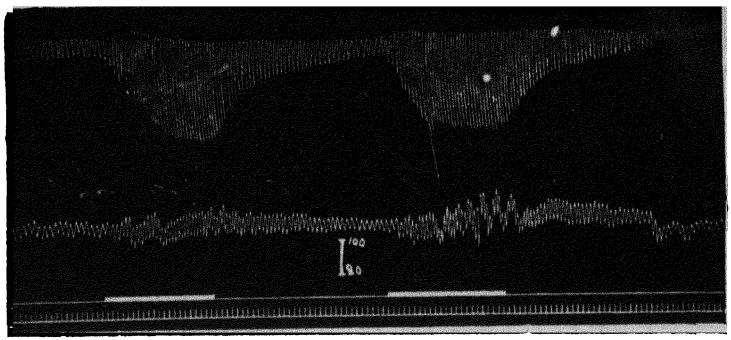


FIG. 518. Effect of CO_2 on respiratory movements of rabbit. (SCOTT.)

Upper line, tracing of diaphragm slip (Head's method). Lower tracing, carotid pressure. During the first period indicated on the signal line the animal breathed 9·6 per cent. CO_2 in air, and during the second period 10 per cent. CO_2 with 33 per cent. oxygen. Time tracing = 2 secs. Scale = mm. Hg. blood pressure.

Percentage CO_2 in inspired air	Average depth of respirations	Average frequency of respirations per minute	Ventilation of alveoli with inspired air (normal = 100)	CO_2 percentage in alveolar air
0·04	673	14	100 (6·60 litres per min.)	5·6
0·79	739	14	116	5·5
2·02	864	15	153	5·6
3·07	1216	15	226	5·5
5·14	1771	19	498	6·2
6·02	2104	27	857	6·6

If we examine the last column of figures in this Table, representing the percentage of CO_2 in the alveolar air, it will be seen that, in spite of the very large variations in the air breathed, the alveolar content in CO_2 remained practically constant until the CO_2 in the atmosphere was increased to such an extent that the processes of compensation were no longer efficient. We must conclude therefore that the respiratory centre is so arranged as to react to the slightest increase of CO_2 tension in the blood, any increase in this gas giving at once a compensatory increase in depth and frequency of respiration, so that the alveolar CO_2 content may be maintained almost constant.

That it is the tension of CO_2 in the alveolar air and therefore in the blood bathing the centres, and not the percentage amount of this gas which is the determining factor, is shown by a comparison of the composition of the

alveolar air under different atmospheric pressures. Thus, when the subject of the experiments from which the above Table was derived, was placed in an air-chamber compressed to a pressure of 1261 mm., the mean percentage of CO_2 in the alveolar air was 3·42, corresponding however to a *tension* of $3{\cdot}42 \times \frac{1261}{760} = 5{\cdot}6$ per cent. of an atmosphere, a figure almost identical with those given in the last column of this Table. At the top of Ben Nevis, where the barometric pressure was 646 mm., the percentage of CO_2 in the alveolar air was 6·6, corresponding to a tension of $6{\cdot}6 \times \frac{646}{760} = 5{\cdot}2$ per

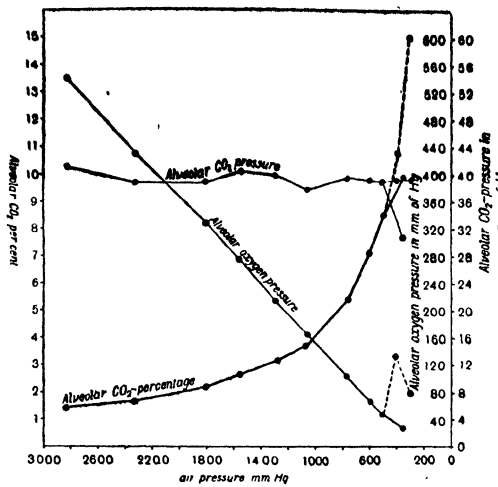


FIG. 519. Effects of alterations in the barometric pressure on the alveolar CO_2 *tension*, the alveolar CO_2 percentage, and in the alveolar O_2 tension. Note that the excitant effects of O. lack are not seen until the pressure falls below 500 mm. Hg. (BOYCOTT and HALDANE.)

cent. of an atmosphere, *i. e.* of 760 mm. Thus the pressure of CO_2 in alveolar air remains practically constant with widely varying limits of atmospheric pressure and with very different percentages of CO_2 in the inspired air, showing that the reactions of the organism are directed so as to maintain, by alterations in the respiratory depth and rhythm, a constant *tension* of this gas in the alveoli and therefore in the arterial blood.

Very different are the phenomena observed on alteration of the partial pressure of oxygen (Fig. 519). Here, within wide limts, the partial pressure of oxygen in the alveolar air is determined by its pressure in the inspired air. Thus, if we take the same series of observations with a pressure of 646 mm., the *percentage* of oxygen in the alveolar air was 13·19, corresponding to a *tension* of $13{\cdot}19 \times \frac{646}{760} = 10{\cdot}4$ per cent. At an atmospheric pressure of 755 mm. the percentage of oxygen in the alveolar air was 13·97, corresponding to a tension of 13·06 per cent., which we may take as the normal figure at the

sea-level. In air compressed to a pressure of 1261 mm. the percentage of oxygen was 16·79, corresponding to a tension of $16{\cdot}79 \times \frac{1261}{760} = 26{\cdot}8$ per cent. of an atmosphere of 760 mm.

Similar results are obtained by altering the percentage of oxygen in the air breathed. The oxygen tension or percentage in the inspired air can be lowered from its normal of 20·93 to 12 or 13 per cent. without altering in any way the depth or rhythm of respiration, and in fact without any change being noticed by the individual who is the subject of the experiment. A percentage of 13 per cent. of oxygen corresponds to an alveolar content in

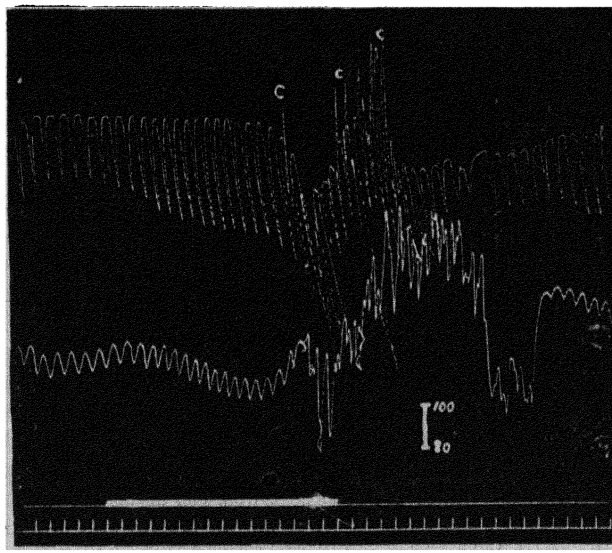


FIG. 520. Effects of oxygen lack. (SCOTT.)
Upper tracing, diaphragm slip; lower tracing, carotid blood pressure. During time indicated by signal, 5 per cent. oxygen in nitrogen was inhaled. C = convulsion.

oxygen of 8 per cent., and with a further reduction of the oxygen content there is increased pulmonary ventilation (Fig. 520), but the diminution in oxygen may be pushed to such an extent that the patient becomes blue from the deficient aeration of his hæmoglobin, without any considerable distress being caused. In fact in many cases the subject of such an experiment may lose consciousness suddenly before he has been aware of any serious deficiency in his aeration.

The difference in the sensitiveness of the centre to increase of carbon dioxide and lack of oxygen respectively is well shown by an experiment of Haldane's, in which the same person breathed in and out of a bag, in the first place allowing the carbon dioxide produced in respiration to accumulate, and in the second removing the carbon dioxide by means of soda lime, so that the sole effect of respiration was to produce a continual diminution in the percentage of oxygen. In the first case, when the carbon dioxide was

allowed to accumulate, it was found that extreme and intolerable hyperpnœa was produced when the gaseous content of the bag consisted of 5·6 per cent. carbon dioxide with 14·8 per cent. oxygen. When the carbon dioxide was absorbed, it was possible to breathe in and out of the bag for a much longer period. No hyperpnœa was produced, and the experiment was stopped as soon as the subject was becoming blue in the face and experienced slight throbbing in the head. The pulse frequently had gone up from 80 to 108. The bag was found to contain no carbonic acid and only 8·7 per cent. oxygen. In another similar experiment the oxygen had been reduced to 6·7 per cent. before it was necessary to stop the experiment.

We must conclude that the respiratory centre possesses a specific sensibility for carbon dioxide, which determines the normal depth and rhythm of the respiratory movements. Although the respiratory centre, in common with the rest of the central nervous system, is sensitive to and can be excited by lack of oxygen, this quality is rarely brought into play. Under all ordinary circumstances, an increased need for oxygen is associated with an increased production of carbon dioxide in the oxidative processes of the body, and the augmentation of respiration, produced by the excitatory effect of a small excess of carbon dioxide tension in the blood, suffices to provide fully for the increased needs of the organism for oxygen. The reactions of the organism have not been evolved in order to adapt it to balloon ascents or experiments in respiratory chambers. As an example of a normal adaptation, we may take the changes in respiration which occur in an animal as the result of muscular exercise. During their activity a large amount of carbon dioxide is produced in the muscles. The blood passing from the muscles to the heart will not be able to get rid of the excess of the carbon dioxide in passing through the lungs, and will reach the respiratory centre more highly charged with this gas, the tension of which will be raised. The respiratory centre is thus stimulated, and the increased pulmonary ventilation thereby produced lowers the alveolar carbon dioxide pressure, until a point is reached at which an equilibrium is maintained between the effect of the increased production of carbon dioxide in raising the arterial carbon dioxide tension and that of the increased respiratory activity in lowering it. Under these circumstances it is found that the increased consumption of oxygen in the contracting muscles is more than compensated, so that the oxygen tension in the alveoli and in the arterial blood is rather above than below normal.

In certain experiments Zuntz and Geppert found that, during muscular exercise, the respiratory movements were increased to such an extent as to bring the tension of carbon dioxide in the arterial blood below normal. In these experiments the muscular contractions were produced by tetanising, through the spinal cord, the lower limbs of an animal. Under these circumstances the activity of the muscle would be associated with a diminished blood flow, so that the contractions would be carried out in the absence of a sufficient supply of oxygen. In the absence of sufficient oxygen, muscular contractions result in the production, not of carbon dioxide but of lactic acid; and it is highly probable that in the experiments in question there was a discharge of acid substances into the blood, diminish-

ing the alkalinity of this fluid and therefore lowering its carrying power for carbon dioxide. As a matter of fact, one can produce dyspnœa by diminishing the alkalinity of the blood by the injection of acids; and attacks of dyspnœa are observed in the later stages of diabetes, when the alkalinity of the blood is decreased in consequence of the production of such bodies as oxybutyric acid. This dyspnœa has been ascribed to the fact that a diminished carrying power of the blood for carbon dioxide will raise the tension of this gas in the tissues where it is formed, so that a diminished alkalinity of the blood may cause a higher tension of carbon dioxide around the respiratory centre. It has been shown by Ryffel that even a short period of sufficiently violent muscular exercise, *i. e.* one giving rise to dyspnœa, causes a subsequent increase of lactic acid in the urine, and that the blood itself at the close of the period of exercise contains a demonstrable amount of this acid. Thus in one case the urine, passed thirty minutes after running one-third of a mile in two minutes, contained 454 mg. lactic acid as against a normal excretion of between 3 and 4 mg. lactic acid per hour. In another experiment blood was obtained from the fore-arm before exercise, immediately after exercise, and three-quarters of an hour later. The exercise, which consisted of running rapidly, lasted two minutes forty-five seconds. The following Table represents the results obtained:

	Lactic acid per 100 c c.
Blood before starting	12·5 mg.
Blood immediately after stopping . . .	70·8 „
Blood 45 minutes later	15·9 „

The production of lactic acid during muscular exercise may thus be regarded as a second line of defence for the organism, tending to maintain the increased ventilation of the lungs even when the supply of oxygen is insufficient to oxidise completely the materials consumed in the production of the muscular energy. This acid mechanism is however employed only when the supply of oxygen lags behind the respiratory needs of the body (cp. Fig. 521). Ordinary exercise, even when considerable (*e. g.* a twenty-four hours' track walking race), does not cause, as Ryffel has shown, any appreciable increase in the elimination of lactic acid by the urine. Under normal circumstances the depth and rhythm of respiration depend on the carbon dioxide pressure in the respiratory centre, a rise of 0·2 per cent. of an atmosphere in the tension of this gas in the alveoli being sufficient to double the amount of alveolar ventilation during rest.

The first phase in the phenomena of asphyxia is thus conditioned simply by the changes in the carbon dioxide tension. A little later the gradual exhaustion of oxygen in the blood round the centre begins to make itself felt. The respiratory centre shares with the rest of the central nervous system a sensitiveness to the absence of oxygen, deprivation of oxygen having first an excitatory and later a paralytic effect. In asphyxia the first centres to feel this effect are those of the cortex, and during the first stage there is mental excitation terminating rapidly in abolition of consciousness. During the second stage there is a discharge of energy, which

spreads throughout the whole nervous system, beginning in the bulbar centres and causing a great rise of blood pressure with slowing of the heart, and extending thence to all the spinal centres with the production of muscular spasms. At this stage too, there is a discharge of impulses giving contraction of the pupil, and a discharge along the whole sympathetic system, producing the various phenomena of vaso-constriction, erection of hairs, sweating, salivation, which are generally brought about by stimulation of different parts of this system. The phenomena of the third stage are due to exhaustion of the nerve centres, accompanied or preceded by exhaustion and dilatation of the heart, the circulation failing before the excitation of the lower centres has entirely come to an end. In this third stage it is impossible by the strongest stimuli to evoke any reflex.

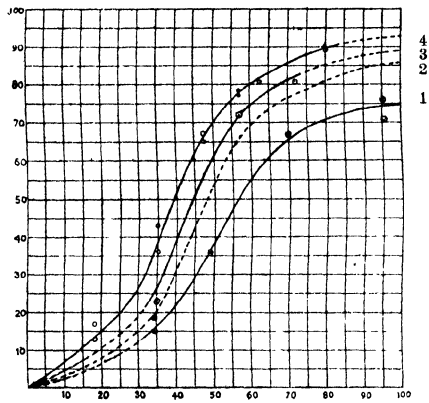


FIG. 521. Dissociation curve of oxyhæmoglobin in defibrinated cats' blood.

1, cat I, after partial occlusion of trachea and fifteen minutes breathing of gas of increasing poverty in oxygen; 4, cat II, at beginning of experiment; 3, cat II, after fifteen minutes gas respiration; 2, after twenty-one minutes ditto.

Considerable discussion has taken place as to the exact nature of the stimulation brought about by want of oxygen. The blood of animals, which have been killed by asphyxia, is known to contain reducing substances, so that oxygen added to it disappears and cannot be recovered in a vacuum. Pflüger therefore suggested that it was these reducing substances themselves which were effective exciting agents. It was shown many years ago by Hoppe-Seyler and his pupils that in conditions of chronic oxygen starvation there was an excessive production of lactic acid in the body, and we have seen that the same is true for the isolated muscle, and that to these substances has been ascribed the excitation of the respiratory centre which takes place in violent muscular exercise (Zuntz and Geppert). Haldane has suggested that in the hyperpnœa and convulsions, which occur as the result of breathing mixtures with very low percentages of oxygen, the effective stimulus is also lactic acid. Experiments were carried out by Ryffel on individuals who had been subjected in a respiratory chamber to very low oxygen tensions, sufficient to cause cyanosis, so that their oxygen alveolar tension was only about 6 per cent. After an experiment lasting four hours, there was a definite increase of lactic acid in the blood of the forearm (up to 23·6 mg. lactic acid per 100 c.c.). After one lasting only fifteen minutes, in which the oxygen shortage became very marked, no increase could be detected. When we expose an animal such as a rabbit to low percentages of oxygen, the hyperpnœa so produced disappears almost immediately

when a larger percentage of oxygen is supplied to the animal, whereas that produced by carbon dioxide excess dies away slowly on exposure to normal conditions. It would seem that, when the exposure to low oxygen tensions is of short duration, no lactic acid is produced in the blood. If therefore we ascribe the hyperpnœa to the production of lactic acid, we must locate the production of this acid in the respiratory centre itself. There are no inherent improbabilities in such an assumption, but it is difficult at present to see how it can be put to the test of experiment.

In dealing with the question of the blood alkalinity we defined neutrality as a condition in which there were equivalent concentrations of H and OH ions. In the blood the H ion concentration is about $0{\cdot}3 \times 10^{-7}$N. The alkalinity is expressed by concentration OH ions / concentration H ions. The acids and bases of the blood serum and of the tissue fluids generally are in such proportions as to maintain the approximate neutrality of these fluids even after considerable additions of acid or alkali. Thus hydrochloric acid may be added to the extent of ·025 N, or NaOH to the extent of ·005 N, without causing any marked alteration in the reaction of the blood. Although the change produced by the addition of acids or alkalies is so minute, it is appreciable by electrical methods, and it may still more readily be appreciated by and act as a stimulus for the cells of the body themselves. Thus we have not yet succeeded in determining electrically the change in hydrogen ion concentration caused by the change from arterial to venous blood. If however blood serum be saturated with carbon dioxide at a full atmosphere, the concentration of the hydrogen ions rises to $1{\cdot}4 \times 10^{-7}$N, while after removing the greater part of the carbon dioxide from the same serum by the passage of a stream of air, the concentration of the hydrogen ions sinks to $·008 \times 10^{-7}$N. As the respiratory centre responds to such minute changes of concentration as would be expressed by a difference of 0·2 per cent. of an atmosphere in the carbon dioxide tension of the circulating blood, it must possess a sensitivity greater than any of our physical means for measuring the concentration of hydrogen ions in a fluid. We may approach this delicacy of reaction by using a large molecule as our indicator. Thus, as we have seen, the dissociation curve of hæmoglobin is sensitive to the change in reaction caused by raising the tension of carbon dioxide in the hæmoglobin solution by 10 mm. Hg. (cp. Fig. 509).

The regulating factor in the blood is probably not carbon dioxide nor any special acid, but the concentration of hydrogen ions in this fluid or in the cells of the centre itself. Such a conclusion brings under one head all the several factors which we know to act upon the respiratory centre, namely, tension of carbon dioxide, presence of acids in the blood—especially lactic—and considerable diminution of oxygen supply to the cells. The respiratory centre would then not differ qualitatively from any other part of the central nervous system. Its special function would be determined simply by the evolution to a marked degree of a sensibility to hydrogen ions which is already possessed by the whole of the central nervous system and indeed by practically every tissue of the body.

We may conclude that mere lack of oxygen is not to be regarded in itself as an excitatory agent. Its influence will be rather to paralyse all activity. On the other hand, excitation is caused by the products of metabolism, which vary according as the oxygen supply is ample or insufficient for the needs of the cells. In the former case activity results in the production of carbon dioxide, in the latter of lactic acid, and perhaps other substances. Both these are acid substances and their production will therefore raise the concentration of the hydrogen ions in the cells where they are produced as well as in the blood. The nerve centres are extremely sensitive to minute changes in the hydrion concentration either in themselves or in the fluids surrounding them, and are thrown into activity by excess of these ions and inhibited, or put to rest, by relative deficiency

of the ions. In their relation to H and OH ions respectively the medullary centres have a sensibility five times as great as the spinal centres. The condition of apnœa, which is associated not only with cessation of respiratory movements but also with fall of blood pressure, may be ascribed to relative increase in the OH ions or diminution in the H ions.

Since the animal has developed a mechanism by means of which changes in the reaction of the blood can be rapidly adjusted by varying the excretion of carbon dioxide, whilst the excretion of other acids is relatively slow, carbon dioxide may be regarded as the normal respiratory hormone; and so far we may agree with Henderson in regarding carbon dioxide as maintaining the activities of the various nerve centres at their normal level. But it is the hydrion concentration which appears to be the essential factor, and the acid substances produced during oxygen lack are equally efficacious, but not

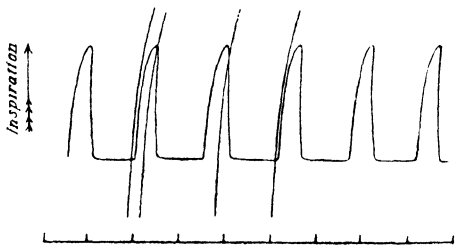


FIG. 522. Normal tracing of diaphragm slip (Head's method).

so convenient. Thus their production is not a steady process like that of carbon dioxide but, as Mathison pointed out, commences suddenly at a time when the executive side of the nerve cell is feeling the effect of oxygen starvation, so that the cell may be too much disorganised to respond to stimulation. "The broad margin of safety protecting the organism against paralysis of its cells by oxygen starvation is assured by the sensitiveness of the medullary centres to hydrogen ion concentration and therefore to carbon dioxide in common with other acids."

On the other hand, it must be remembered that excessive production of hydrogen ions may finally result in a condition of paralysis, which in the nervous centres is expressed by narcosis. These effects can be removed only by a free supply of oxygen. The concentration at which these results occur varies, as we have seen, in different parts of the nervous system and also in different tissues. Thus on the heart a slight increase in H ion concentration causes diminished tone, which may lead to dilatation and failure of this organ. The same effect is produced on the unstriated muscle fibre of the blood vessels. Since in the heart and blood vessels the reverse effect is produced by increasing the OH ion concentration, it is evident that the line of 'physiological' neutrality, at which neither stimulation nor paralysis results, must vary in different tissues.

It is an interesting question whether the electrical excitation of nerves may not be due to a similar alteration in the hydrion concentration at the cathode which is the seat of stimulation. If this were so, all the activities of protoplasm might be regarded as determined by the relative concentration of the H and OH ions within the cells or in the medium surrounding the cells.

THE REFLEX NERVOUS REGULATION OF RESPIRATION

Although the specific sensibility of the respiratory centre to CO_2 is the most important factor in determining the depth and rhythm of the respiratory movements, these movements and the condition of the respiratory centre itself are modified in a large degree by impulses arriving at the centre along both vagi. Through other sensory nerves of the body the respiratory movements can be altered reflexly, but it is only through the vagi that a continuous stream of impulses passes to the centre under normal circumstances, so that every respiratory movement is modified by these impulses.

In studying the nervous mechanism of respiration, it is necessary to have some accurate method of recording the respiratory movements. They may be registered by means of a tambour applied to the chest, communicating with another tambour provided with a lever, which is arranged to write on a blackened surface; or a side tube to a cannula in the trachea may be connected with the registering tambour. In the first case movements of the thorax are registered; in the second changes of intra-pulmonary pressure. These methods are obviously useless when it is wished to study the effects of artificial distension or collapse of the lungs. In this instance we may use the method described by Head. In the rabbit a slip of the diaphragm on either side of the ensiform cartilage is so disposed that the end of it may be freed and attached by a thread to a lever without injury to its blood- or nerve-supply. It is found that this slip contracts synchronously with the rest of the diaphragm, so that it serves as a sample of the diaphragm, the contractions of which may be recorded uninfluenced by passive movements of the chest wall or artificial increase of intra-pulmonary pressure.

If, while the respiratory movements are being recorded in one of the afore-mentioned ways, both vagi be divided,[1] a marked change in the respiratory rhythm is at once seen. The first effect is an increased inspiratory tonus, but this rapidly disappears, and the respiratory movements become less frequent and are increased in amplitude. If now the central end of one of the vagi be stimulated with an interrupted current, the respiration may be quickened or, as is more commonly the case, the inspiratory movements may be increased at the expense of the expiratory so that finally a condition of inspiratory standstill is produced, and the slip of the diaphragm enters into prolonged contraction.

[1] The division of the vagi is best effected by putting them on a hooked copper wire, of which the upper end is inserted in a freezing-mixture. In this way complete functional division of the nerves is obtained without any excitation. If the nerves be cut, a certain amount of stimulation takes place in consequence of the closure of the demarcation current produced by the cross-section.

With a very weak stimulus it is sometimes possible to produce augmentation of the *expiratory* movements or rather inhibition of the inspiratory, and this is the invariable result of passage of a *constant* current through the vagus in an ascending direction. This effect may be more strikingly brought about by stimulation of the central end of the superior laryngeal nerve, which produces first an inhibition of inspiration, so that the respiratory muscles come to a standstill in the position of expiration, and then a forcible contraction of the expiratory muscles. This illustration of the presence of expiratory fibres in the superior laryngeal nerve is not confined to laboratory experience, but is constantly occurring in everyday life. The superior laryngeal nerve supplies sensory fibres to the mucous membrane of the glottis, and we know that the slightest irritation of these fibres —the presence of a crumb or a particle of mucus—causes forcible expiratory spasms, with spasmodic closure of the glottis, which we term a cough.[1]

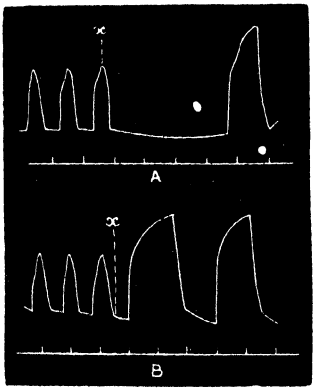


FIG 523. Effects of distension and collapse of lung. Both curves are described by a lever attached to a slip of the diaphragm of a rabbit. A contraction of the diaphragm (inspiration) raises the lever; during relaxation of the diaphragm the lever falls.

In A, the trachea is closed at *x*, the height of inspiration; a pause follows, during which the lever gradually sinks until an inspiration (a very powerful one) sets in.

In B, the trachea is closed at the end of expiration, *x*; there follow powerful inspirations. (FOSTER.)

So we see that the vagus nerve contains two kinds of afferent fibres, or at any rate afferent fibres with two distinct functions. Stimulation of the one kind stops inspiration and produces expiration; stimulation of the other stops expiration and produces inspiration. Since section of both vagi causes slowing of respiration, impulses which exert some influence on the respiratory centre and quicken respiration must travel up the vagi from the lungs. The respiratory movements cause an alternate distension and contraction of the lungs, and it has long been thought that it is these changes in the volume of the lungs which start the accelerating impulses that travel up the vagus nerves. To test the truth of this hypothesis it is necessary to study the two phases of respiration separately; that is, to see first the result on the respiratory impulses of distension of the lungs, and secondly the result of a sudden collapse or a contraction caused by sucking air out of the lungs. The effects of distension or collapse of the lung may be shown by simply closing the trachea at the end of inspiration or of expiration. The results of such an experiment are shown in Fig. 523.

[1] It must not be imagined that the fibres of the superior laryngeal nerves are concerned in the reflex maintenance of the normal respiratory rhythm. They are cited here merely because the result of their stimulation resembles that which would be caused by stimulation of the analogous expiratory fibres which run in the trunk of the vagus from the *lungs* to the respiratory centre.

A still more marked effect is produced if the lungs, by means of a tube in the trachea, be artificially inflated or if air be sucked out of them. The inflation produces an instantaneous and complete relaxation of the diaphragm (Fig. 524) which by clamping the tracheal tube may be prolonged for several seconds, while sucking air out of the lungs causes a tonic contraction of the diaphragm (Fig. 525). Somewhat similar results may be obtained by repeatedly inflating or deflating the lungs (positive and negative ventilation). The effects here are complicated by the fact that one is dealing in both cases with alternating movements of the lungs, viz:—expansion and contraction, both of which will have an influence on the respiratory centre.

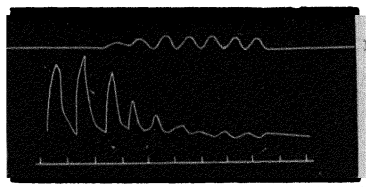


FIG. 524. Positive ventilation. (HEAD.)

Under the influence of positive ventilation, the inspiratory contractions of the diaphragm become less and less till they disappear completely.

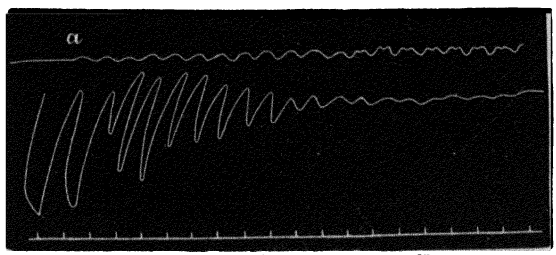


FIG 525. Negative ventilation. (HEAD)

At *a* negative ventilation was commenced. The expiratory relaxation of the diaphragm is seen to become more and more incomplete, until it finally enters into continued contraction

Moreover repeated forcible inflation of the lungs increases the ventilation of the pulmonary alveoli, thus lowering the normal carbon dioxide tension of the lungs. As a result of repeated ventilation we may obtain a condition of respiratory standstill. In this condition however, as we shall see later, the determining factor is rather chemical than mechanical.

These inhibitory and augmentor effects of changes in the volume of the lung must also result from the normal movements of these organs in respiration. Let us consider, for instance, what will happen if the influence of the two vagi could be suddenly thrown in after these nerves have been divided. (This experiment can, in fact, be realised more or less completely if the functional division of the vagi be effected by cooling or by ether narcosis.) The animal would be breathing slowly and deeply. If at the beginning of an inspiration the vagi became functional, the expansion of the lungs caused by the inspiratory movement would send inhibitory impulses

up to the vagus centre, which would stop the movement of inspiration. The movement of expiration would then begin, and the collapse of the lungs thereby produced would itself send impulses up the vagi which would tend to excite an inspiratory movement. Both inspiration and expiration would therefore be shortened, and the successive movements would follow one another at a shorter interval than if the vagi were not functional. In this way, under normal circumstances, the rhythm of the respiratory centre must be determined reflexly through the agency of the vagi, while the chief factor in determining the total pulmonary ventilation is, as we have seen, the carbon dioxide tension of the blood.

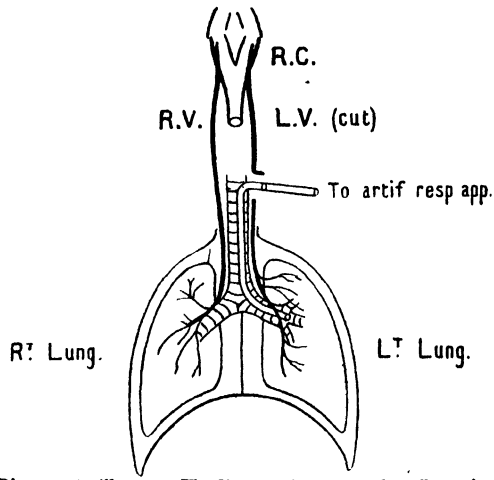


FIG. 526. Diagram to illustrate Head's experiment on the effect of collapse of the lung. R.C, respiratory centre; R.V, L.V, right and left vagi.

In the foregoing account we have spoken of the expiratory and inspiratory effects of the vagus as if they were of equal importance. It seems probable however that the inhibitory or expiratory impulses started by the inspiratory movement, the only or the more active part of normal respiration, play a more prominent part in the regulation of respiration than do the inspiratory impulses; and one observer (Gad) goes so far as to deny altogether the existence of two kinds of respiratory fibres in the vagus. According to Gad, the vagus, as regards the respiratory centre, is a purely inhibitory nerve. Hence the primary effect of dividing both vagi is an increased inspiratory tone. This view at first seems paradoxical, in that it explains the final slowing of respiration after section of the vagi as due to the cutting off of previous inhibitory impulses. But inhibition in all tissues has a twofold effect. Although the immediate effect is diminution of activity, yet the diminished disintegration necessarily associated with lowered activity means an increase of the anabolic at the expense of the catabolic processes of the tissues. In this way we explained the diminished excitability occurring in a nerve at the anode of a constant current, and it will be remembered that the secondary result of anelectroronus was increased irritability and consequent excitation at break of the constant current. The same sort of process must occur in the respiratory centre. A continued restraint of its rhythmic activity must lead to a heaping up of its irritable material, so that the final result is a state of hyperexcitability in which the centre, so to speak, boils over on the slightest provocation.

In this condition a cutting off of the inhibitory impulses must at first increase the

activity of the centre, leading to the increased inspiratory tonus already described. But unchecked by any reigning impulses, the centre enters upon a career of spendthrift activity. Each inspiratory contraction is maximal, but the centre, exhausted by the effort, has to wait a considerable time before it can accumulate sufficient energy for the next; hence the final result of section of both vagi is deepening and slowing of respiration.

Although Gad has rendered great service in emphasising the importance of the inhibitory or expiratory impulses which ascend the vagi, there is no doubt that he went too far in denying the existence of inspiratory fibres in the vagus. This is shown by the following experiment of Head. According to Gad's view, collapse of both lungs implies simply a removal of the normal inhibitory impulses ascending the vagi, and is therefore equivalent to division of these two nerves. If in the rabbit the left vagus be divided, a tube can be introduced into the left bronchus, and artificial respiration can be performed by alternate inflation and collapse of the left lung, without in any way affecting the respiratory centre, all connections with the latter being destroyed (*v.* Fig. 526). Meanwhile the animal carries out normal respiratory movements, which can be recorded by the diaphragm slip method. While the slip is contracting regularly, the right pleura is

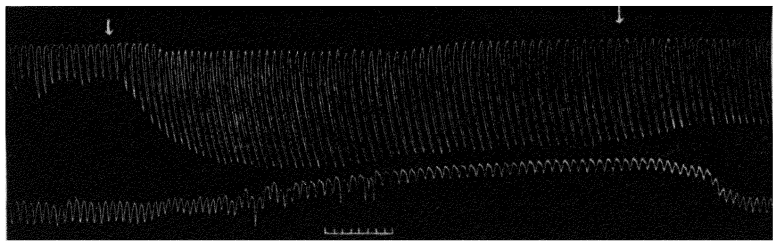


Fig. 527. Effect of 10·6 per cent. CO_2 in a mixture containing 23·3 per cent. O_2 on a rabbit with both vagi divided. The gas was administered between the arrows. Zero line of blood pressure is 32 mm. below bottom of tracing. Compare this Figure with Fig. 518, p. 1131. (F. H. Scott.)

opened and the right lung allowed to collapse. The effect of this collapse, carried up by the right vagus to the centre, is an extreme contraction of the diaphragm, and since the onset of asphyxia is prevented by the artificial respiration carried out on the left lung, the tonic standstill of the diaphragm may last over a minute. In this case therefore the effect of collapse of one lung is enormously greater than that produced by section of both vagi, showing that the effect is due, not to abolition of the ordinary tonic inhibitory stimuli, but to excitation of special inspiratory fibres in the vagus by the collapse of the lung.

By means of the string galvanometer it is possible to show definitely that a collapse of the lungs does set up a nervous impulse travelling up the vagus nerves. This impulse must be inspiratory in character, so that there is no reason to deny the existence of both kinds of fibres in these nerves. The effect of electrical stimulation, especially with an ascending constant current, is also strong evidence in the same direction.

After division of both vagi the total pulmonary ventilation does not as a rule undergo any marked changes, and in the absence of anæsthesia the aeration of the blood may be carried out almost, if not quite, as well as in the intact animal. The importance of the vagus action for the organism is shown however if we put an increased strain on the respiratory mechanism, as for instance by increasing the percentage of carbon dioxide in the air breathed. In the intact animal this procedure leads first to increased depth and later to increased frequency of respiration, the total ventilation being

thereby augmented to such an extent as to keep the alveolar tension of carbon dioxide almost constant. If the same percentage of carbon dioxide be administered to an animal after section of both vagi, the effect is deepening of respiration but not quickening (Fig. 527). Each inspiratory movement however is already considerable so that the margin by which increase of pulmonary ventilation is possible, by increase of depth of respiration alone, is not so great as in a normal animal. Moreover, since no quickening of respiration takes place, the increased ventilation rapidly becomes inadequate for the maintenance of the normal alveolar carbon dioxide tension. In the following Table the total amounts of pulmonary ventilation, obtained on administration of mixtures containing carbon dioxide to a rabbit before and after section of the vagi, are compared.

RABBIT, 3 KILOS.

	Respirations per minute	Vol. of each respiration	Total ventilation per minute
		c.c.	
Respiration with air	72	19	1368
„ 4·2 per cent. CO_2 .	96	25	2400
„ 8·6 per cent. CO_2 .	97	29	2813
„ air	72	20	1440
VAGI DIVIDED			
Respiration with air	45	29	1305
„ 4·2 per cent. CO_2 .	45	34	1530
„ 8·6 per cent. CO_2 .	42	38	1596

Whether we assume that the prevailing impulses travelling up the vagi are purely inhibitory or are both inhibitory and augmentor, the resultant effect, by reining in the activity of the centre, is to economise its energy and the energy of the respiratory muscles. The result of the vagal impulses will therefore be to increase the excitability of the respiratory centre and make it more susceptible to slight changes in the carbon dioxide tension of the blood, while maintaining a sufficient margin of energy to meet the increased needs thrown on the respiratory mechanism by augmented metabolism, such as occurs in violent muscular exercise.

The important part played by the vagi in the regulation of normal respiration is shown still more strikingly if the respiratory centre in the medulla be separated from the higher parts of the brain before the section of the vagi is carried out. Separation of the medulla from the higher parts of the brain, as by section just behind the corpora quadrigemina, has practically no influence on the respiratory rhythm. If now both vagi be divided, the normal respiratory movements cease entirely, being replaced by a series of inspiratory spasms, each of which lasts several seconds and is followed by a pause of half to one minute's duration. These spasms are

inadequate for the proper oxygenation of the blood. They become gradually less and less frequent, and in about half an hour the animal dies of asphyxia. We must conclude therefore that the medullary respiratory centre with the help of the vagi is able to carry out normal respiratory movements. If both vagi are cut, impulses arrive at the centre from the higher parts of the brain, regulating its activity and enabling it to carry out modified but sufficient respiratory movements. Removed from both these sources of afferent impulses, the centre discharges only a series of spasms which are totally inadequate for the renewal of the blood gases, so that the animal dies.

We may summarise these results as follows:

Respiratory centre with vagi—normal respiration.
Respiratory centre with brain—modified respiration.
Respiratory centre alone—inadequate spasmodic contractions of respiratory muscles, and death of animal.

The nature of the supplemental action of the mid-brain on the medullary respiratory centre has not yet been made out. It is apparently not dependent on afferent impulses arriving at the brain, since section of no cranial nerve affects in any way the activity of the centres. Certain observers have described 'accessory respiratory centres' in the mid-brain, in the region of the posterior corpora quadrigemina. Stimulation of this part causes increase in the rate of inspiratory movements and finally tonic spasm of the diaphragm. Expiratory effects have been produced by stimulation of the anterior corpora quadrigemina, and it would seem that a section has to pass through or behind these bodies in order to produce the results, already described, of cutting off the higher centres from the medulla oblongata after division of the vagi. Other localised spots in the brain from which effects on respiration have been obtained are the inner wall of the optic thalamus and the root of the olfactory tract. Further experiments are necessary before we can regard any of these centres as normally involved in the maintenance or regulation of the respiratory movements.

APNŒA. If artificial respiration be maintained so as to produce a somewhat greater ventilation than is effected by the normal respiratory movements of the animal, a standstill of respiration is brought about. This condition is called apnœa. The first explanation of this standstill was that it was due to over-oxygenation of the blood. The fact that it could be produced by artificial ventilation with inert gases, such as hydrogen and nitrogen, as well as the discovery of the inhibitory influence of distension of the lungs on the respiratory centre, led Head to ascribe it to the summation of a series of inhibitory stimuli. In these experiments however the fact was forgotten that forced ventilation of the lungs with air or any inert gases will reduce the carbon dioxide tension in the blood circulating round the pulmonary alveoli and therefore round the respiratory centre. A respiratory pause will thus ensue and last until the increasing accumulation of carbon dioxide in the blood raises its tension to the normal height, at which the respiratory centre is 'set,' so to speak, to respond by a respiratory discharge. If the carbon dioxide content of inspired air be increased to about 4·5 per cent., it is impossible to produce an apnœic pause, however rapidly the respiratory movements be carried out. It would seem therefore that

ordinary apnœa is entirely due to deficiency of carbon dioxide tension in the respiratory centre, and that although the vagus nerve is inhibitory of respiration, it is impossible to summate a series of vagus inhibitions by artificial respiration so as to produce a lasting cessation of respiratory movements. The chief use of the vagi in respiration seems to be for maintaining, by frequent inhibitions, the excitability of the respiratory centre at a maximum.

Miescher distinguished three types of apnœa, viz.:

Apnœa vera, due to the washing out of CO_2 from the lungs, and the consequent reduction of the tension of this gas in the blood.

Apnœa vagi, a stoppage of respiration caused by stimulation of the inhibitory fibres of the vagi. This stoppage is limited, as we have seen, to the immediate duration of the stimulus (whether electric or produced by distension of the lungs).

Apnœa spuria. Stoppage of respiration by stimulation of other nervous or sensory surfaces. Thus when a duck plunges there is immediate stoppage of respiration, which may last four or five minutes if the animal remains so long under water. The same stoppage may be produced by pouring water on the beak.

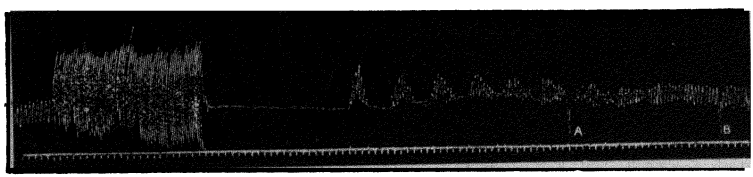


FIG. 528. Forced breathing of air for two minutes, followed by apnœa for two minutes, and periodic ('Cheyne-Stokes') breathing for about five minutes.

At A, sample of alveolar air contained O_2, 11·44 per cent.; CO_2, 5·58 per cent. Second sample at B, O_2, 13·55 per cent.; CO_2, 5·57 per cent. (DOUGLAS and HALDANE.)

'CHEYNE-STOKES' BREATHING

If a man desires to hold his breath for some time he takes first a series of deep breaths. The result is to diminish the carbon dioxide tension in the alveoli and therefore to take away the need and the desire to breathe until the carbon dioxide tension rises to normal as the result of the continued formation of carbon dioxide. By continuing forced respiratory movements for a minute or two, the carbon dioxide tension both in the alveoli and in the blood may be brought down to a very considerable extent. As a result there is a prolonged period of apnœa. During this period of cessation of respirations however, the oxygen is being used up, and the tension of this gas in the alveoli may fall to such an extent that the respiratory centre is excited by lack of oxygen before the carbon dioxide tension in the alveoli has risen to its normal value. As a result of the excitation by oxygen lack, a few breaths are taken, the carbon dioxide tension is once more lowered and the stimulation due to the oxygen lack disappears. There is thus again a cessation of respiration. These periods of cessation alternate with periods of respiration, so that we get a condition of periodic breathing which is spoken of as Cheyne-Stokes respiration. During the period of apnœa

resulting on forced breathing, the great diminution of oxygen tension in the alveoli is shown by the fact that the subject of the experiment becomes blue, and may indeed lose consciousness. There are at the same time rhythmic changes in the blood pressure, which rises towards the ends of the periods of the apnœa, falling during the periods of respiration. The first respiration after forced breathing is due to oxygen lack. The period of apnœa may therefore be considerably prolonged, if the onset of oxygen lack be postponed by increasing the tension of this gas in the alveoli at the commencement of the apnœic period. By forcibly breathing for a period of two minutes in an atmosphere of oxygen, men have succeeded in holding their breath for as long a period as eight minutes (Vernon).

'Cheyne-Stokes' breathing is almost invariably observed as one of the effects of exposure to high altitudes, and is then especially marked during sleep. It is often present when the activity of the respiratory centre is depressed, as in cases of uræmia or pernicious anæmia. Under these circumstances it may be temporarily removed by administering either oxygen or carbon dioxide (in small percentage) to the patient. The oxygen improves the condition of the centre; the carbon dioxide acts as an added stimulus and rouses its activity.

SECTION IV

THE EFFECTS ON RESPIRATION OF CHANGES IN THE AIR BREATHED

We have already seen that a moderate increase in the carbon dioxide percentage of the air breathed (*e. g.* up to 4 per cent.) causes a proportional increase in the ventilation of the lungs, so as to maintain the tension of this gas in the alveoli at the normal level. The same effect is observed whether the mixture breathed contains 18 or 50 per cent. of oxygen, showing that the slight diminution in oxygen content caused by mixing the air with carbon dioxide is in no way responsible for the effect. If the amount of carbon dioxide be increased to 12 or 15 per cent., it becomes almost impossible to continue the inhalation owing to the spasm of the glottis produced by the irritant effects of the carbon dioxide. If these high percentages be administered to an animal by a tracheal tube, violent dyspnœa is produced which gradually diminishes, and the animal passes into a condition of narcosis in which the respiratory movements become less, and the oxygenation of the blood is ineffectively carried out even in the presence of excess of oxygen. The administration of larger percentages, such as 30 or 40 per cent., causes rapid death and failure of the circulation and respiration, often preceded by convulsions. Coincident with the increased respiration brought about by moderate percentages of carbon dioxide, there is a rise of blood pressure determined by vascular constriction. With high percentages of carbon dioxide the curve of blood pressure obtained resembles that produced by lack of oxygen.

Oxygen itself exercises no excitatory effects on the respiratory movements. At the normal atmospheric pressure the tension of oxygen in the alveoli is about 107 mm. Hg., a pressure which, as we have seen, is amply sufficient to saturate the hæmoglobin passing through the vessels of the lungs. Since the depth and frequency of respiration are determined by the carbon dioxide tension in the alveoli, no alteration in respiration will be produced by increasing the tension of oxygen in the air breathed above its normal amount. The respiratory movements in an atmosphere of pure oxygen will, in the normal individual, remain unchanged.

This statement is true only for the healthy individual. If from failure of the heart and circulation, from diminished oxygen tension, or from severe loss of blood, the oxy-

genation of the blood is already insufficient, marked amelioration of the symptoms may be produced by inhalation of pure oxygen. Especially is this noticeable where there is failure of the heart. In these cases the heart, already affected, is unable to keep up an adequate circulation and to supply itself with sufficient oxygen. A vicious circle is thus established in which the heart tends to get steadily worse. By administration of oxygen an adequate supply of this gas to the heart muscle is assured; the heart beat therefore becomes more effective and the whole circulation is improved and therewith the provision of oxygen to the body at large.

If a warm-blooded animal be immersed in a chamber and submitted to pure oxygen at a pressure of four atmospheres, it dies as rapidly as if it were in an atmosphere of pure nitrogen. At this pressure the oxidative processes of the body as well as the intake of oxygen into the lungs are absolutely abolished. It is interesting to note that certain other oxidative phenomena, *e. g.* the spontaneous oxidation of phosphorus, also cease if the tension of the oxygen be sufficiently high. Exposure of an animal over a considerable period of time to a pressure of oxygen of two atmospheres may, as Haldane and Lorrain Smith have shown, set up severe inflammation of the lungs and thereby cause death indirectly.

CHANGES IN TENSION OF OXYGEN. If a man breathe a mixture of nitrogen and oxygen free from carbon dioxide, and the oxygen be gradually diminished, no feeling of 'want of breath' may be experienced. With percentages of oxygen as low as 12 per cent. there may be no change in the respiration, even though the deficient oxygenation of the blood may be shown by the blueness of the lips and face. If the oxygen be reduced still lower, a certain amount of hyperpnœa may occur, but in many cases the individual experimented on may not feel any ill effects until he suddenly becomes unconscious from lack of oxygen. If fresh oxygen be not supplied this unconsciousness may be followed by convulsive movements and death. If the administration of low percentages of oxygen, *e. g.* about 10 to 12 per cent. of an atmosphere, be continued for some time, the subject of the experiment may suffer considerable discomfort. One of the signs of oxygen lack is often severe headache, and this may be accompanied by vomiting or nausea and by a feeling of discomfort in the precordial region. Many experiments have been made both on animals and man by submitting them to a lowered atmospheric pressure in chambers specially built for the purpose. The limit to which the pressure may be reduced varies in different individuals, the variations being determined by the type of respiratory movement of the individual in question, since on the depth of respiration depends the relation between the tension of oxygen in the alveoli and that in the inspired air. The lowest limit at which life is possible corresponds to an oxygen tension in the alveoli of 27 to 30 mm. Hg.

MOUNTAIN SICKNESS. The phenomena, just described as ensuing on exposure of an animal to low oxygen tensions in a respiratory chamber for some length of time, are exactly similar to those which are regarded as characteristic of mountain sickness. The following Table shows the diminution in the atmospheric pressure at varying heights above the level of the sea:

Height above sea level, in metres	Barometer mm. Hg.	Per cent. of an atmosphere
0	760	100
1000	670	88
2000	593	78
3000	524	69
4000	463	61
5000	410	54
6000	357	47
7000	320	42

At a height of 5000 metres the pressure of the air is reduced to little over half an atmosphere, and the oxygen tension is therefore only about 11 per cent. of an atmosphere. It must be remembered that in most cases of mountain sickness, in addition to this absolute oxygen lack, there is increased consumption of oxygen, owing to the muscular exercise involved in climbing. Moreover a greater *volume* of the alveolar air must consist of carbon dioxide if the *tension* of this gas is to be kept constant (cp. Fig. 519, p. 1132). Since diminished oxygen tension, within fairly wide limits, does not excite any corresponding increase in the respiratory movements, there must, at these heights, be an actual diminution in the oxygen tension in the alveoli. This diminution in tension is shown by a series of observations carried out by Zuntz on himself and fellow-workers at different localities. It may be noted that on Monte Rosa, where the oxygen tension in the alveoli was reduced to between 37 and 57 mm. Hg., as against the normal 101 to 105 mm. Hg., all the members of the party were suffering from mountain sickness.

	Height above sea level, in metres	O_2 tension of air	Alveolar O_2 tension					
			A	B	C	D	E	F
Berlin . . .	54	157	105	101	—	105	103	104
Brienz . . .	500	148	84·5	94	80	88	86	91
Brienzer Rothorn .	2130	121	68	66	64	62	66	71
Col d'Olen . .	2900	110	57	—	—	60	68	68
Monte Rosa . .	4560	89	—	46	49	61	37	57

As a result of the oxygen starvation there is inadequate supply of this gas to the heart, so that the circulation tends to fail, especially on making the slightest muscular movements. At the same time the oxygen starvation of the brain produces failure of judgment and inability to carry out or to co-ordinate muscular movements properly. The symptoms as a rule do not increase until death results, so that, although there is an oxygen starvation of the body, there must be some means by which the respiration is modified so as to obtain a sufficiency of this gas for the lowered requirements of the body. That the adaptation is effective is shown by the fact that most

individuals, if they remain at a height, gradually recover from the mountain sickness and may finally be able to carry out muscular movements with almost as great precision and force as they could previously on the plains. The mechanism, by which increased ventilation of the lungs is attained, is that already mentioned (p. 1136) in dealing with the effects of lack of oxygen, namely, the production of acid substances in the body. The respiratory centre is thus stimulated by these acid substances, especially lactic acid, as well as by the carbon dioxide tension of the blood; and the joint action of these two substances (which probably co-operate in raising the hydrion concentration of the blood) determines the marked increase in the lung ventilation. Since the carbon dioxide is no longer the sole factor responsible for the ventilation, the tension of this gas in the alveolar air is diminished.

ACAPNIA. This diminution of carbon dioxide tension in the blood and alveolar air has been regarded by Mosso as the essential factor in the causation of mountain sickness and has been designated acapnia. It may be absent however in the most marked cases of mountain sickness, where the respiratory centre has failed to respond to the additional acid stimulation; and it may be present to a marked degree in individuals who are experiencing none of the ill-effects of this disorder.

Another important means of rapid adaptation is by means of the circulation. This is noticeable even in the case of persons, sitting quietly in a gas chamber, who are subjected to gradually lower pressures. It is evident that a deficient passage of oxygen from the alveoli to the blood may, so far as the tissues and heart are concerned, be accommodated for by increasing the rapidity of the circulation, and this is effected by a quickening of the pulse rate. The following Table shows the changes in the pulse rate caused by exposure to varying pressures in a gas chamber:

PULSE IN GAS CHAMBER

Pressure	Pulse
720	64
650	72
424	84

This quickening of the pulse is to be observed also in the trained mountain soldier, in individuals in whom there is no lowering of the alveolar carbon dioxide tension, so that apparently in such cases the whole adaptation to altered conditions is by means of the circulation. In cases where adaptation fails, it is in the circulation that the failure is most marked, so that the symptoms of severe mountain sickness resemble closely those produced by rapid heart failure. Dilated heart, cyanosis, muscular weakness, vomiting, mental torpor, inco-ordination, delirium, may all be observed in both cases. The disturbance of the central nervous system is shown by the almost invariable occurrence at great heights of Cheyne-Stokes breathing.

If the animal is able to withstand the immediate effects of exposure to a rarefied atmosphere, a process of adaptation comes into play which finally fits him for discharging his functions normally even at the high altitude. From the lack of sensibility of the respiratory centre to small changes in

oxygen tension, any diminution in oxygen tension must cause a corresponding diminution in the degree of saturation of the hæmoglobin of the blood. This change in oxygen saturation is at once felt by the blood-forming organs. As an immediate effect of change to a region of low atmospheric pressure, there is a relative increase in the blood corpuscles due to a concentration of the blood and a diminution of its plasma. Simultaneously however the blood-forming organs enter into a condition of increased activity, so that after a stay of four or five weeks' duration at a height, both corpuscles and hæmoglobin are considerably increased in total amount. The following Table shows the average number of red corpuscles contained in one cubic millimetre of blood from the inhabitants of regions at varying altitudes:

	Height above sea level, in metres	Red corpuscles
Christiania . .	0	4,970,000
Zurich . .	412	5,752,000
Davos . . .	1560	6,551,000
Arosa . . .	1800	7,000,000
Cordilleras . .	4392	8,000,000

There is of course a limit to the power of adaptation, a limit which varies in different individuals. Thus for some men it is impossible to stay any length of time in the high settlements in the Andes, while others, after two or three weeks' discomfort, become perfectly inured to their new conditions. It seems doubtful however whether any of the present race of men could become adapted to permanent residence at a height over 5000 metres, and though for a certain length of time by bringing into play the reserve mechanisms already described, they may raise themselves to a height considerably above 5000 metres, it seems questionable whether without artificial means, such as the inhalation of oxygen, it will be possible for any man to attain the highest points on the earth's surface, or at any rate to arrive there by his own unaided efforts. The highest summits in the Himalayas have a height approaching that attained by Tissandier with his two companions in his famous balloon ascent, namely, 8600 metres. In this ascent, although oxygen inhalation was used (somewhat ineffectively), two of the party succumbed.

The stimulating effect of oxygen lack on the blood-forming organs extends also to the muscular system, so that one of the effects of a residence in high altitudes is increased assimilation of nitrogen. For a time the nitrogen output is less than the nitrogen intake, and there is an actual building up of new tissue. The condition of the individual is similar to that of a growing animal, a fact which may explain the admirable results of a mountain holiday. We can hardly imagine that the power of the organism to react in this way was evolved through generations of mountain climbing. We are probably here making use of an adaptation which has been evolved for the purpose of retrieving loss of blood by hæmorrhage, such as must have

been of continual occurrence in the struggle of individual against individual, which has resulted in the survival of the animals of to-day.

ALTERATIONS IN THE NITROGEN TENSION. The nitrogen of the atmosphere plays no part in the metabolism of the body, and must be regarded as a purely inert gas. It is a matter of indifference whether under normal atmospheric pressure we breathe an atmosphere of pure oxygen or one containing one-fifth part of this gas diluted with four-fifths of nitrogen. The very inertness of nitrogen may be of danger to the body under certain conditions. If a man or an animal be exposed, as in a diving-bell, to a pressure of three, four, or six atmospheres, the respiratory functions are unaffected, but the amount of nitrogen dissolved in the fluids of the body is increased in direct proportion to the pressure. If the pressure be now suddenly released, the nitrogen, which cannot be used up by the tissues, is given off from the body fluids in the form of bubbles, just as carbonic acid gas rises in bubbles from soda-water when the pressure is removed by withdrawing the cork from the bottle. These bubbles occurring in all the capillaries obstruct the flow of blood, and therefore, if the evolution of gas is sufficiently large, the animal dies in convulsions. A similar evolution of gas may occur in the spinal cord, giving rise to destruction of the cord and paralysis ('divers' palsy'). In order to prevent this sudden evolution of gas it is necessary that the change from the high pressure to the ordinary atmospheric pressure should be carried out gradually, so as to give the blood plasma, supersaturated with nitrogen, time to get rid of its excess of nitrogen without the formation of bubbles.

OTHER GASES. Hydrogen and methane are, like nitrogen, indifferent gases. They may be respired if mixed with 20 per cent. of oxygen, and either of the gases may be used instead of nitrogen to dilute the oxygen that we breathe, without harm or inconvenience.

Carbon monoxide is rapidly poisonous by its action on the red corpuscles. It combines with hæmoglobin, forming CO-hæmoglobin, a compound which is much more stable than oxyhæmoglobin. The blood is therefore deprived of its oxygen carrier, and the animal dies of asphyxia. We have seen however that the displacement of oxygen by CO is not absolute, but only relative. Hence, although the avidity of CO for hæmoglobin is 140 times that of oxygen, we can convert the CO back into oxyhæmoglobin by increasing the mass influence of the oxygen. This may be done by giving the poisoned animal pure oxygen to breathe, or even oxygen under pressure. In pure oxygen at a pressure of two atmospheres an animal can breathe and live, even though the whole of its hæmoglobin is converted into CO-hæmoglobin, the amount of oxygen which is simply dissolved by the blood plasma being sufficient at this pressure for the respiratory needs of the animal (Haldane).

Other gases which have special poisonous properties are hydrocyanic acid, sulphuretted hydrogen, phosphuretted hydrogen (PH_3), arseniuretted hydrogen, etc.

IRRESPIRABLE GASES are those which are so irritating that they

produce spasm of the glottis. Such are ammonia, chlorine, sulphur dioxide, nitric oxide, and many others.

VENTILATION

A point of practical importance is the securing to each individual of sufficient fresh air, so that he may always have a plentiful supply of oxygen, and may be relieved of his waste products. It is found that a dwelling-room becomes unpleasant and stuffy when the percentage amount of CO_2 has reached 0·1 per cent. This stuffiness is supposed to be due to organic exhalations from the skin, lungs, and alimentary canal, some of which have a poisonous effect, giving rise to headache and sleepiness. Since these cannot be measured, it is taken as a cardinal rule in ventilation that the amount of CO_2 should never rise above 0·1 per cent.

Since in questions of ventilation we have generally to deal with trades in which the metric measure is not used, it may be convenient to give the data as to carbon dioxide production and the amount of air required in cubic feet.

An adult man gives off about 0·6 cubic foot of CO_2 every hour Hence in that time he raises the amount of CO_2 in 1000 cubic feet of air from ·04 per cent. (the normal amount in the atmosphere) to 0·1 per cent. He must therefore be supplied with 2000 cubic feet of air per hour in order to keep the amount of CO_2 down to ·07 per cent.

(Ordinary air contains ·04 per cent. CO_2, therefore 2000 cubic feet would contain 0·8 cubic foot CO_2, which with the 0·6 cubic foot given off by the man would be 1·4, which is ·07 per cent.)

In order that the air may be easily renewed without giving rise to excessive draught, a certain amount of cubic space must be allotted to each man. Each adult should have in a room 1000 cubic feet of space, and be supplied every hour with 2000 to 3000 cubic feet of air.

SECTION V

THE MECHANISMS OF OXIDATION IN THE TISSUES

THE blood in its passage through the capillaries takes up carbon dioxide from the tissues, giving oxygen to the latter in exchange. This interchange is determined by the differences in tension of the gases on the two sides of the capillary wall. Whereas the tension of oxygen in the plasma varies from 100 mm. Hg. in arterial to 25 mm. Hg. in venous blood, the tension of oxygen in the tissues outside the vessels in most cases approaches 0, as is shown by Ehrlich's methylene-blue experiment described on p. 1114. On the other hand, the tension of carbon dioxide in the tissues, as judged from the examination of fluids such as bile and urine, varies from 6 to 10 per cent. of an atmosphere. The continuous flow of oxygen into, and of carbon dioxide away from, the tissues points to the constant occurrence of oxidative changes in the tissue cells. By the blood the tissues receive not only oxygen but also foodstuffs, namely, proteins or amino-acids, fats, and sugars, derived from the alimentary canal or, in starvation, from other parts of the body. The activity of the tissues, whether motor as in the case of muscle, or secretory as in the case of glands, is derived from the energy set free in the partial or complete oxidation of these foodstuffs, which occurs within the active cells themselves. A study of the mechanism of oxidation in the body involves therefore a consideration of the processes which take place within the confines of each cell. The question is by no means an easy one. Although we speak of the 'burning' of foodstuffs, and compare the processes in the body to those which take place in combustion, *e. g.* in a candle-flame, the analogy is after all a very rough one. In the first place, the foodstuffs, even after absorption, belong to a class of substances which have been designated as *dysoxidisable*, since they present no tendency to combine with ordinary atmospheric oxygen. Thus sugars, proteins, or fats, if guarded from microbial infection, may be kept for years exposed to the air without undergoing any change. It is true that in certain cases, *e. g.* in alkaline solutions of sugar, we may obtain slow absorption of oxygen and oxidation of the sugar. The changes are however slight and limited in extent. All these foodstuffs are susceptible of combustion if raised to a sufficiently high temperature, but in the animal body the processes of oxidation have to go on at a temperature varying between 5° and 40° C., and in a solution which is almost neutral in reaction. It might be said that at the temperature of an ordinary flame the combustion of the foodstuffs is immediate and complete, whereas in the body the oxidation takes place by stages. Recent

research has tended to remove this point of distinction by pointing out that even in an explosion of a mixture of methane and oxygen there is a series of intermediary products, and that the whole process, if analysed, is made up of stages in which hydrolysis and oxidation go on simultaneously, so that on this account it is difficult to cause a combination, even of hydrogen and oxygen, in the complete absence of any watery vapour. The oxidations in the body are strictly limited both in nature and extent. The mere fact that a substance is readily or even spontaneously oxidisable (*autoxidisable*) affords no guarantee that it will undergo oxidation in the animal body. Thus phosphorus or pyrogallol taken by the mouth can be recovered in an unoxidised form from the urine. Carbon monoxide is excreted unchanged. There must apparently be some definite relationship between the molecular structure of the foodstuffs and that of the cells of the body. Thus ordinary proteins, which undergo complete oxidation, contain large quantities of leucine. This substance is lævorotatory and is designated *l*-leucine. If *l*-leucine be administered to rabbits it is completely oxidised. If its isomer *d*-leucine, resembling it in every particular, so far as we can see, except in its relation to polarised light, be administered to a rabbit, the greater part of the substance passes through the body unchanged. In the same way there are sixteen sugars of the formula $C_6H_{12}O_6$. Of these only four, namely, glucose, fructose, galactose, and mannose, can be oxidised in the animal body. Other sugars differing in so slight a degree from these four as, *e. g.*, *l*-glucose or *l*-fructose, cannot be utilised by the body. Not only must there be a distinct relation between the structure of the cell and the molecular structure of the foodstuff supplied, but there must be different mechanisms for the foodstuffs and their derivatives. Thus in certain cases of disease or of abnormal nutrition the body may lose absolutely the power of utilising, *i. e.* of oxidising, a whole class of foodstuffs. In severe diabetes, or after destruction of the pancreas, glucose behaves in the body as if it were one of the artificial unassimilable sugars. The normal oxidation of fats probably proceeds by stages in each of which two atoms of carbon undergo oxidation. The penultimate stage in the oxidation of any of the higher fatty acids is thus oxybutyric acid. In complete carbohydrate starvation, for some reason or other the body loses its power of completing this last stage, so that the oxybutyric acid undergoes no further oxidation, and either accumulates in the body or is excreted combined with bases in the urine. In the normal individual tyrosine, whether administered separately or in combination in protein, is completely oxidised, the benzene ring being broken up. In certain rare cases of disordered metabolism the patient, who is otherwise apparently well, is unable to effect the total oxidation of tyrosine, which is therefore excreted as homogentisic acid, after undergoing only the first stage of its normal transformation in the body. These various mechanisms are adjusted in each case to the functional activity of the cell and are limited therefore, not by the supply of oxygen or of foodstuff to be oxidised, but by the necessities of the cell, *i. e.* the adaptations induced in it by its environmental changes. In discussing the mechanism of intracellular oxidation

we have therefore to consider in the first place how the dysoxidisable foodstuffs are made to combine with the molecular oxygen diffusing into the cells from the blood in the capillaries; in the second place the means by which these oxidative changes are strictly limited in accordance with the necessities of the cell; and finally the nature of the specific oxidative mechanisms for each kind of foodstuff and for the various stages in the oxidation of each foodstuff.

We are very far as yet from being able to give a definite answer to any one of these questions. Even in the first problem, namely, the oxidation of dysoxidisable substances, we have to confine ourselves almost exclusively to speculation on possibilities. Although these substances will not unite with the oxygen of the air, in which the combining activities of the oxygen are satisfied by the combination of two atoms to form one molecule, many of them readily undergo oxidation if subjected to the action of 'atomic' oxygen or 'active' oxygen; and it has been suggested that the problem of the oxidation of the body is really bound up with the question as to the mode of activation of the molecular oxygen derived from the oxyhæmoglobin. Thus Hoppe-Seyler suggested that the activation of oxygen might occur through the intermediation of reducing substances. He supposed that reducing substances might be formed under the influence of ferments by hydrolytic splitting of the foodstuffs. A reducing substance is one that has sufficient affinity for oxygen at the ordinary temperature to tear asunder the bonds which unite two atoms of oxygen to form one molecule, and to combine with one or both of the atoms so set free. If the combination is with only one atom, the other atom of the oxygen molecule is set free in an active form, and is therefore able to oxidise dysoxidisable substances which may be present. Thus, when a mixture of ammonia and pyrogallol is exposed to the atmosphere, the oxygen is rapidly absorbed, forming a dark brown solution, pyrogallol being therefore a reducing agent. But at the same time a certain amount of the ammonia (a dysoxidisable substance) undergoes oxidation with the formation of nitrite. In the slow spontaneous oxidation of phosphorus, which occurs on exposing this substance to the atmosphere, ozone, O_2O, is always formed. As a type of the formation of reducing substances in hydrolytic fermentations may be adduced the butyric acid fermentation, in which sugar is converted into butyric acid, carbonic acid, and hydrogen:

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 = C_4H_8O_2 + 2CO_2 + 2H_2.$$

The hydrogen produced in this process would act as a reducing agent. There is no doubt that reducing substances are formed under normal circumstances in the tissues, as is shown by the methylene-blue experiment, and it is possible that such reducing substances may aid in activating oxygen and in bringing about certain oxidative processes. The activation of oxygen would however not explain the *specific* character of the various oxidations, and the accurate gradation of these oxidations to the necessities of the cell. In many cases reducing substances may themselves act as

carriers of oxygen, and their action be more or less specific. If for instance glucose be boiled with an ammoniacal solution of cupric hydrate, it undergoes oxidation, the cupric being reduced to cuprous hydrate. Cuprous hydrate in ammoniacal solution is a reducing substance; it absorbs oxygen from the air and is reconverted to cupric hydrate. A small amount of cupric hydrate therefore, in the presence of air, may act as a carrier of oxygen from the air to the sugar and may thus oxidise indefinitely large quantities of sugar. In the same way, if indigo in alkaline solution be boiled with sugar, it undergoes reduction with the formation of a colourless compound. On shaking the decolorised solution with air, it absorbs oxygen with the reproduction of indigo, so that here again minute quantities of indigo blue may serve to oxidise large quantities of glucose. The mode of action of these oxygen carriers resembles closely that of the various ferments which effect the transference of water from the menstruum to the substrate (*e. g.* trypsin, invertase, etc.). These hydrolytic ferments differ from ordinary hydrolytic agents, such as dilute acids, in the specific character of their action. Trypsin, for instance, will hydrolyse polypeptides of a type corresponding to those which make up the ordinary food products, but is powerless to hydrolyse polypeptides composed of artificial amino-acids which are the optical isomers of those occurring in the body. It seems possible that we might explain the specific oxidations occurring in the cell by assuming the presence of a number of ferments, oxidases, which would act as oxygen carriers, but each of which would be able to act only on a certain type of foodstuff or on molecules of a given configuration.

Such oxidative ferments have been described as existing in many animal and vegetable extracts. Many species of fungus contain a ferment known as *tyrosinase*, from the fact that, when it is added to solutions of tyrosine in the presence of air, the tyrosine is oxidised with the formation of a brown pigment. The same ferment is able to effect the oxidation of other aromatic substances. The browning of a freshly cut potato or apple on exposure to the air is similarly ascribed to the oxidation of a chromogen by the oxygen of the air, through the intermediation of an oxidase present in the cells. If benzyl alcohol or salicyl aldehyde be added to a suspension of liver cells in blood, and air be allowed to bubble through the mixture for some time, the alcohol or aldehyde is oxidised to the corresponding acid. In the same way xanthine ($C_5H_4N_4O_2$) added to a mixture of spleen pulp and defibrinated blood is converted into uric acid ($C_5H_4N_4O_3$).

Bach and Chodat have shown that in many cases the oxidase is not a single substance, but a mixture of an organic peroxide with a ferment, *peroxidase*, which has the property of splitting off atomic, *i. e.* active oxygen, from the peroxide. These peroxidases have the same effect on hydrogen peroxide: They must be distinguished from the ferment *catalase*, which is present in almost all animal and vegetable tissues, and which effects a rapid decomposition of hydrogen peroxide with the formation of molecular oxygen:

$$2H_2O_2 = 2H_2O + O_2.$$

In the case of a peroxidase the equation would be represented :

$$H_2O_2 = H_2O + O'.$$

In chemistry many reactions are known in which the part of a peroxidase is played by an inorganic catalyst. Thus hydrogen peroxide effects a slow oxidation of many organic substances, but the oxidation is enormously hastened if to the mixture be added a trace of a ferrous salt (Fenton's reaction). The same part may be played by salts of manganese, and it is interesting to note that manganese forms an essential constituent of the peroxidase *laccase*, which is present in many plants and is responsible for the formation of the Japanese lacquer. It effects a specific oxidation of hydroquinone and pyrogallol. The oxidations carried out by the use of hydrogen peroxide, with or without a catalyst or peroxidase, present a close resemblance to the oxidations occurring in the animal body. Thus Dakin has shown that saturated fatty acids, even the higher members of the series, are gradually oxidised if warmed gently with hydrogen peroxide in the presence of ammonia; and the course of the reaction resembles in many respects that which, on other grounds, we have assumed to take place in the normal metabolism of the body.

We have no evidence that hydrogen peroxide is formed at any time in the body, though there is some reason to assume its formation in the process of carbon assimilation in the green leaf. If we adopt the views of Bach and Chodat, we must assume that every animal cell contains organic peroxides as well as peroxidases, or else that it can under physiological conditions form these substances. Since there is also evidence of the presence of reducing substances in the cells, we may conveniently assume, with Ehrlich, that distinct side-chains of the protoplasmic molecule have specific affinities for oxygen. When all these affinities are saturated, these side-chains will act as peroxides, parting with their oxygen with extreme ease, whereas when the greater number are unsaturated, the resultant effect will be that of a reducing agent. The same protoplasmic molecule may therefore, according to its state of saturation with oxygen, act either as an oxidising or reducing agent, and can effect, probably through the intermediation of specifically adapted oxidases, the oxidation of the various foodstuffs stored up as the paraplasm of the cell. Since the oxidative processes are determined, not by the presence of oxygen but by the functional activities of the tissue, we must assume that the peroxidases are not preformed in the cell, but exist as precursors, zymogens, from which they can be set free in accordance with the necessities of the cell.

It is probable that many of the foodstuffs or other proximate constituents are not directly accessible to oxidation, and that the first step in their utilisation is a process of cleavage or hydrolysis, which itself involves the presence of specific ferments. Thus, so far as we can tell, the amino-acids undergo deamination before oxidation. They can thus be stored up in the cell either free or in the form of protein, and present no point of attack to oxygen until the process of hydrolysis and deamination has taken place. This course of events is certainly true for some of the members of the purine group.

CHAPTER XVII

RÉNAL EXCRETION

SECTION I

THE COMPOSITION AND CHARACTERS OF THE URINE

THE main product of the oxidation of carbon, namely, carbon dioxide, is discharged by the lungs and to a slight extent by the skin. Water, taken as such with the food but also derived to a slight extent from the oxidation of hydrogen, is got rid of by the lungs, skin, and kidneys. The salts of heavy metals, *e. g.* iron, bismuth, mercury, when administered, are excreted for the most part by the alimentary canal. A certain proportion of the pigmentary waste products of the body, derived from the breakdown of the blood pigment, is also eliminated with the fæces. With these exceptions, practically all the waste products resulting from metabolism are excreted in the urine by the kidneys. We have thus to seek in the composition of this fluid the last chapter in the metabolic history of a large number of the constituents of the body. Since moreover the kidneys may excrete almost any substance which circulates through their blood vessels, many of the intermediate metabolites may be found in minute quantities in the urine and may be isolated by working up large quantities of this fluid. Under pathological conditions these metabolites may appear in the urine in larger amounts and serve then as an index to some interference with the later stages in the metabolism of fats, carbohydrates, or proteins.

The composition of the urine must therefore be a variable one, according to the activity of the body, the quantity and nature of the food taken, and the relative amount of water escaping by the kidneys, lungs, and skin respectively. But just as we can describe a normal diet for an adult man of average weight, so we can describe an average composition for the urine. The history of the urinary constituents has been given for the most part in the chapter dealing with the metabolism of the proximate constituents of the food. It will be useful however to enumerate in this chapter the various constituents of the urine and to summarise their properties, preparation, and normal significance.

The urine of man is a clear yellow fluid which froths when shaken. On standing, a cloud of mucus is deposited, consisting of a very small amount of nucleoprotein derived from the epithelial lining of the bladder and urinary

passages. In concentrated urine a deposit occurs on cooling. This deposit dissolves when the urine is warmed, and consists of *urates*. Under certain circumstances urine is turbid as it is passed, but in this case the turbidity generally consists of earthy phosphates and is not cleared up by heating.

The *colour* of the urine varies with its concentration. After severe sweating the amount of water excreted by the kidneys is small, and the urine is therefore concentrated and of high colour. After copious draughts of liquid the urine may be very pale and dilute.

Ordinary urine has an aromatic *odour*, but this varies largely with the character of the food. Many food substances give characteristic odours, which may depend on alterations undergone by them in their passage through the body.

The *specific gravity* of the urine is proportional to its concentration. Normally it is 1016 to 1020, though it may rise as high as 1040 or sink as low as 1002.

The *molecular concentration* of the urine is almost always greater than that of the blood. Its osmotic pressure may be measured by determining the depression of freezing-point. The $\triangle$ of urine normally varies between 0·87 and 2·71 ($\triangle$ of blood = 0·56). After copious draughts of water the depression of freezing-point in the urine may be less than that of serum, and may be as small as 0·25.

The *reaction* of urine is generally described as acid. It is acid to litmus and to phenolphthalein. This is due to the fact that neutral constituents of the food give rise to acid end-products in metabolism. The sulphur of proteins is converted into sulphuric acid and the phosphorus of lecithin into phosphoric acid. There is thus a predominance of acid radicals over bases in ordinary urine. This statement however applies only to man and to carnivora. In the food of herbivora there is a predominance of alkaline bases. Vegetable acids, *e.g.* tartaric, malic, and citric acids, undergo oxidation to carbonic acid in the body, so that their bases leave the body as alkaline carbonates. The urine of such animals therefore contains an excess of alkaline carbonates, and is alkaline in reaction and froths on the addition of an acid. If a herbivorous animal be starved so that it has to live on its own tissues, it becomes for the time, so to speak, carnivorous, and its urine becomes clear and acid. The urine of man can be made alkaline by the ingestion of large quantities of vegetables or fruits. Under such circumstances the urine as passed is generally turbid from the presence of precipitated earthy phosphates. In determining the reaction of urine it is usual to adhere to one indicator, *e.g.* phenolphthalein, and to give the acidity in terms of decinormal acid, naming the indicator used. The acidity (*i.e.* the concentration of H ions) can also be determined by the electrical method. In this way Hoeber found the acidity of human urine to vary between $4{\cdot}7 \times 10^{-7}$ and 100×10^{-7}. On the average it was 49×10^{-7} in the litre.

THE AVERAGE COMPOSITION OF THE URINE. Several analyses

of the day's urine under varying conditions of food have already been given (*v.* pp. 802, 823). The following may be taken as a fair average for an adult man on ordinary mixed diet:

Total amount of urine = 1500 c.c.

This contains about 60 grm. of solids, of which 25 grm. are inorganic and 35 grm. organic. These are distributed as follows:

Inorganic Constituents		Organic Constituents	
Sodium chloride	15·0 grm.	Urea	30·0 grm.
Sulphuric acid	2·5 „	Uric acid	0·7 „
Phosphoric acid	2·5 „	Creatinine	1·0 „
Potassium	3·3 „	Hippuric acid	0·7 „
Ammonia	0·7 „	Other substances	2·6 „
Magnesia	0·5 „		
Lime	0·3 „		
Other substances	0·2 „		

The quantity of urine will naturally vary with the water leaving the body by the kidneys, and therefore according to the habit of the individual with regard to the intake of fluids and with his occupation. Thus after copious sweating the total amount may fall to 400 c.c. in the course of the day. If large draughts of liquid be taken it may rise to 3000 c.c. or more. There are also diurnal variations in the amount secreted, depending probably largely on the circulation through the kidneys. The secretion is at a minimum during sleep, and especially between 2 and 4 o'clock in the morning. It is at its maximum during the first hours after rising, and increases generally after each meal. Muscular exercise may also give an initial increase owing to the greater vigour of the circulation associated with exercise. If the exercise is severe enough to cause sweating or is carried to fatigue, there may be a consequent diminution in the amount of urine secreted.

THE INORGANIC CONSTITUENTS OF THE URINE

(*a*) **ACID RADICALS.** The *chlorides* of the urine are derived almost entirely from the chlorides of the food. Though essential constituents of the body fluids, it does not seem that the chlorides enter into organic combination with the constituents of the cells. The output of chlorides, which normally varies from 6 to 10 grm. Cl. in the course of the day, will therefore depend on the amount of chlorides taken in with the food. If these be withdrawn altogether, the chlorides may almost disappear from the urine, although the circulating blood contains practically the same amount of chlorides as in the normal individual, showing that the body retains the chlorides necessary for the proper carrying out of the vital processes as long as possible. Chlorides may also disappear from the urine temporarily under various pathological conditions. This is especially marked in cases of acute pneumonia.

Sulphates. The salts of sulphuric acid do not form an important constituent of the food. The sulphates of the urine are derived almost entirely from the oxidation of the sulphur of the protein molecule. The output of sulphates is therefore, like that of urea, an index of protein metabolism. As the nitrogen of the urine goes up, so the sulphates will increase. On an average diet the ratio of urinary nitrogen to SO_3 is about 5 : 1; though, owing to the varying content of different proteins in the sulphur, this ratio will alter with the nature of the protein taken as food. The daily output of sulphuric acid varies between 1·5 and 3 grm. SO_3. The greater part of the sulphate is present as sulphates of the alkaline metals. A certain proportion, about 10 per cent., is present in the form of conjugated or ethereal sulphates, chiefly indoxyl sulphate. A small proportion of the sulphur excreted in the urine is present in unoxidised form as so-called neutral sulphur. The neutral sulphur probably includes a number of different bodies, among which sulphocyanates and cystine are the best known.

Inorganic sulphates can be precipitated from the urine by the addition of hydrochloric acid and barium chloride. On filtering off this precipitate, the filtrate contains the ethereal sulphates. On boiling, the hydrochloric acid decomposes these substances, setting free sulphuric acid, which combines with the excess of barium present and is precipitated as barium sulphate. This second precipitate therefore, when weighed, gives the amount of ethereal sulphates present. To determine the neutral sulphur, the fluid after the separation of both kinds of sulphates is treated with sodium carbonate to precipitate the barium, filtered, and the filtrate evaporated to dryness. The residue is then ignited with potassium nitrate, cooled, and extracted with water. By this treatment all the neutral sulphur is converted into sulphates, which can be thrown down from the solution with barium chloride and weighed in the usual way.

Phosphates. The phosphates of the urine are derived partly from the phosphates of the food, partly from the oxidation of the organic phosphorus-containing constituents of the food and of the tissues, *e. g.* nuclein, lecithin, etc. If the food contains much calcium and magnesium, the amount of phosphates excreted by the urine diminishes, since these substances are excreted with the fæces as calcium and magnesium phosphates. According to the diet therefore, phosphoric acid may be excreted either by the intestine or by the kidneys. The amount of phosphates, reckoned as P_2O_5, excreted in the course of the day may vary between 1 and 5 grm. In the urine the phosphates exist as a mixture of the mono- and di-sodium phosphates, the relative amounts of the two varying with the acidity of the urine. If the urine is neutral or alkaline there is very often a deposit of earthy phosphates. Whether this deposit is present or not depends on the varying solubility of the different calcium and magnesium phosphates. Thus the mono-magnesium phosphate $MgH_4(PO_4)_2$ and the mono-calcium phosphate $CaH_4(PO_4)_2$ are both fairly soluble in water, and their solubility is increased by the presence of neutral salts. With increased acidity of the urine the proportion of the two bases present in these forms is diminished. The di-magnesium and di-calcium phosphates are only slightly soluble in water, and the latter would, if present in the urine, be deposited. One may indeed, in slightly acid urine, find the di-calcium phosphate occasionally present as a crystalline

deposit. On heating the urine the di-calcium phosphate breaks up into a mono-calcium phosphate and a tri-calcium phosphate, while the acidity of the urine is increased by the solution of the mono-calcium phosphate. Alkaline urine will always present a precipitate of tri-calcium phosphate $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$. When normal urine is allowed to stand, the urea is converted by the presence of micro-organisms into ammonium carbonate, and the urine becomes alkaline. Under such conditions we may often find a crystalline precipitate of ammonium magnesium phosphate, NH_4MgPO_4, the so-called 'triple phosphate.'

(*b*) **THE BASES OF THE URINE.** The bases include potash, soda, ammonia, magnesia, and lime.

The amount of *potash* excreted in twenty-four hours varies between 1·9 and 3·2 grm., according to the nature of the food taken. With a large meat diet, which contains considerable quantities of potassium, the output of this base is increased. In fasting there is also an increase in the output of potash, owing to the utilisation of the tissues of the body which themselves are rich in potassium.

The amount of *sodium* excreted in the twenty-four hours varies on the average between 4 and 5 grm., but depends very largely on the quantity of sodium chloride taken with the diet.

The alkaline earths, *lime* and *magnesia*, are invariably present in urine, but in much smaller quantities than the alkaline metals. The average amount of these two bases in the twenty-four hours varies in each case between 0·1 and 0·2 grm. Their output by the urine is no criterion of the amount taken in with the food or absorbed from the intestines, since both these bases may be re-excreted into the gut and appear as insoluble phosphates in the fæces.

Normal human urine always contains a small amount of *ammonia*, on an average between 0·6 and 0·8 grm. in the twenty-four hours. As we have already seen, in dealing with the origin of urea in the body, the quantity of ammonia in the urine is an index to the excess of acids over bases which have to be excreted by this fluid. Thus it is easily possible to increase the proportional amount of ammonia in the urine by the administration of mineral acids. An increase of the proportion of nitrogen excreted as ammonia, apart from the administration of acids with the food, is an important indication of the formation of abnormal acid substances in metabolism. Thus in diabetes, when the last stages of fat oxidation are in default, so that the oxy-fatty acids, β-oxybutyric and aceto-acetic acids, accumulate in the body, there is always a considerable rise in the ammonia of the urine.

It is usual to reckon *iron* among the bases which may be excreted by the urine. The amount of this substance in the urine is extremely small, as a rule less than 5 mg. in the day. It affords no clue to the iron metabolism of the body, since the main channel of excretion of this substance is the intestine.

ORGANIC CONSTITUENTS OF THE URINE

Almost all these constituents contain nitrogen, which in man is distributed among the various urinary constituents as follows:

Urea	85-90 per cent.
Ammonia	2-4 „
Creatinine	3 „
Uric acid	1-3 „

About 6 per cent. of the urinary nitrogen is in the form of other substances, such as hippuric acid, pigments, etc.

UREA or **CARBAMIDE**, $CO\langle^{NH_2}_{NH_2}$ can be regarded as derived from carbonic acid, $CO\langle^{OH}_{OH}$ by the replacement of each OH group by an NH_2 group. It is isomeric with ammonium cyanate, NH_4CNO. If a solution of potassium cyanate and ammonium chloride be warmed together and evaporated, crystals of urea may be obtained in long colourless prisms (Fig. 529) without any water of crystallisation. It is soluble in water and alcohol, and insoluble in ether. Its solutions are neutral in reaction, but it forms crystalline salts with strong acids. Thus urea nitrate, which is produced by treating strong solutions of urea with concentrated nitric acid, forms microscopic rhombic plates which are extremely insoluble, so that their formation may be used as a test for urea (Fig. 530): With oxalic acid urea solutions yield an insoluble oxalate, also in typical crystals. Urea when heated melts at about 130° C. On further heating it undergoes decomposition, giving off ammonia and forming biuret, as follows:

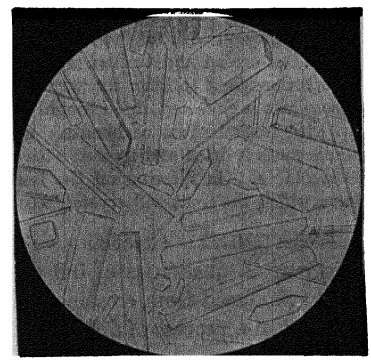


FIG. 529. Urea. (FUNKE.)

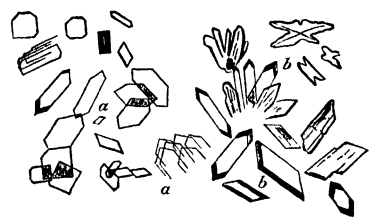


FIG. 530. Urea Nitrate. Urea oxalate.

$$2\left(CO\langle^{NH_2}_{NH_2}\right) = CO\langle^{NH_2}_{NH}\langle^{NH_2}_{NH_2} + NH_3.$$

At the same time a certain amount of cyanic acid is formed, and this polymerises to cyanuric acid, $H_3C_3N_3O_3$. On heating with alkalies or with strong acids, urea undergoes hydrolysis, with the production of carbon dioxide and ammonia:

$$CON_2H_4 + H_2O = CO_2 + 2NH_3.$$

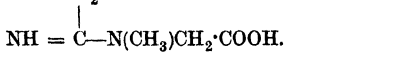
The same change is effected in urea by certain micro-organisms, *e.g.* the

micrococcus ureæ, which is responsible for the ammoniacal change which occurs in urine when exposed to the air.

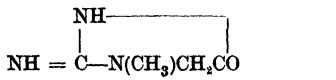
Urea, being the chief nitrogenous constituent of the urine, is the most important index to the protein metabolism of the body. As we have seen, urea may be regarded as partly exogenous, partly endogenous. The greater part of the 30 grm. excreted by a normal individual in the course of the day is derived directly from the proteins of the foods, as a result of the deamination of the amino-acids, which occurs shortly after their absorption. The ammonia thus formed is combined with carbonic acid and carried to the liver, where the ammonium carbonate undergoes dehydration with the production of urea. Its amount will therefore be directly proportional to the amount of protein taken as food. A smaller proportion is derived from the breakdown of the tissues of the body. This endogenous moiety may undergo considerable increase under any conditions which cause a rapid disintegration of the tissues. Thus in febrile conditions there is a large rise in the urea output, even in a starving individual.

In order to prepare urea from urine, advantage may be taken of the insolubility of its combination with nitric acid. Urine is concentrated to about one-sixth of its bulk. It is then cooled and treated with twice its volume of pure concentrated nitric acid, care being taken to keep the whole mixture cool. Urea nitrate is precipitated. The precipitate is collected, dried roughly by pressing between filter paper, and then rubbed up with fresh barium carbonate. Barium nitrate is formed and urea set free. The whole mass is dried and treated with hot absolute alcohol, in which the barium nitrate is insoluble. On filtering off the barium nitrate a pure solution of urea is obtained from which the urea will crystallise on allowing the alcohol to evaporate.

CREATININE. Creatinine is a normal constituent of urine, in which it occurs in quantities of 0·8 to 1·3 grm. in the twenty-four hours. It is easily produced from creatine by boiling the latter with strong hydrochloric acid, when a process of dehydration occurs. Creatine has the formula :



On dehydration it is converted into creatinine :



Creatinine may be obtained from urine in the following way. The urine is made alkaline with milk of lime and treated with calcium chloride and filtered. The filtrate is slightly acidified with acetic acid and evaporated on the water bath to a syrupy consistence. A little sodium acetate is added and the mixture extracted with alcohol. The filtered alcoholic extract is now treated with a concentrated neutral alcoholic solution of zinc chloride. A crystalline precipitate of creatinine zinc chloride is produced. After two days this precipitate is collected on a filter, washed with alcohol, dissolved in water, and then boiled for a quarter of an hour with lead hydrate. The mixture is then filtered and the filtrate evaporated to dryness. The dry residue is now extracted with cold alcohol and filtered. On allowing the alcohol to evaporate, crystals of creatinine separate out (Fig. 531). It gives the following tests :

(1) **WEYL'S TEST.** On treating a solution of creatinine with a small quantity of very dilute sodium nitroprusside solution and then with weak caustic alkali, a rich ruby red colour is produced which gradually changes to yellow. On now adding acetic acid and warming, the solution becomes green and then blue, and finally a precipitate of Prussian blue is formed.

(2) **JAFFE'S TEST.** On treating a solution of creatinine with a few drops of a watery solution of picric acid and dilute caustic potash, an intense red colour is produced. This reaction is made use of for the quantitative estimation of creatinine in the urine.

Like the other nitrogenous constituents, creatinine can be regarded as partly exogenous, partly endogenous in origin. The exogenous part is derived from the creatine contained in meat. When meat is excluded from

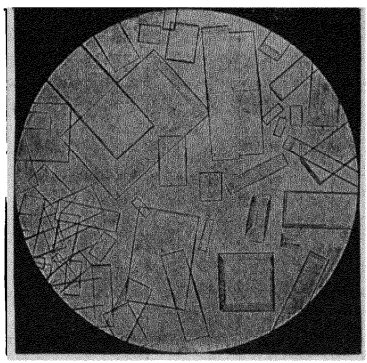


FIG. 531. Creatinine. (FUNKE.)

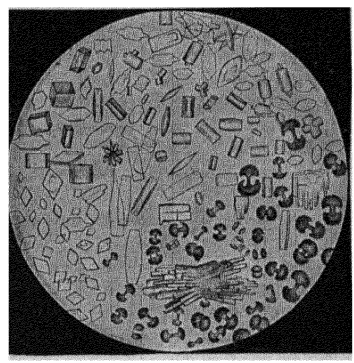
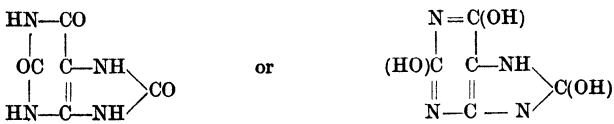


FIG. 532. Uric acid. (FUNKE.)

the diet, the output of creatinine becomes remarkably constant and is little affected by the total amount of proteins taken, the amount excreted during starvation being practically identical with that excreted on a full protein diet. It is said to be increased during febrile conditions and as a result of violent muscular exercise.

URIC ACID. Uric acid is 2-6-8-trioxypurine.



Uric acid forms small rhombic crystals. The crystalline form varies considerably in the presence of impurities. The different forms of uric acid crystal which may occur in the urine are shown in the accompanying figure (Fig. 532). It is extremely insoluble in pure water, one part of uric acid requiring 39,000 parts of water at 18° C. for its solution. It is easily soluble in concentrated sulphuric acid and alkalies.

It may be prepared from human urine or from guano, which consists almost entirely of urates. In order to prepare it from guano, this is dissolved with the aid of heat in dilute sodium carbonate, filtered, and the filtrate treated with a few drops of concentrated hydrochloric acid and boiled. On allowing to cool, the uric acid crystallises out.

From urine uric acid may be obtained by adding one-fiftieth of its volume of concentrated hydrochloric acid and allowing to stand for two days. The uric acid is thrown down in small dark red or brown crystals. They can be collected on a filter, dissolved in alkali, decolorised by boiling with animal charcoal, and the pure acid thrown down as before by means of hydrochloric acid.

A more convenient method of preparation from human urine is based on the fact that ammonium urate is insoluble in concentrated solutions of ammonium chloride (Hopkins). The urine is saturated with crystals of ammonium chloride and a few drops of strong ammonia added. A gelatinous precipitate of ammonium urate is produced. This is collected on a filter, washed off with a minimum amount of hot water into a beaker, and a few drops of hydrochloric acid added. The mixture is boiled and then allowed to cool, when the pure acid crystallises out.

TESTS FOR URIC ACID

(1) **MUREXIDE TEST.** If a small quantity of uric acid be treated with a little strong nitric acid and the whole evaporated to dryness on the water-bath, an orange-red residue is obtained, which on treatment with ammonia yields a fine purple colour. If a drop of sodium hydrate be now added the purple changes to blue. Instead of nitric acid, bromine water may be employed.

(2) **SCHIFF'S TEST.** If uric acid be dissolved in a little soda and a drop be placed on filter paper previously moistened with silver nitrate, a yellow or brown spot is produced.

(3) On boiling uric acid with Fehling's solution for some time, a yellowish precipitate of cuprous hydrate is produced.

(4) An alkaline solution of uric acid on treatment with a few drops of a solution of phosphomolybdic acid gives a dark blue precipitate with a metallic lustre, consisting of microscopic prismatic crystals.

(5) With sodium hypobromite uric acid is decomposed, giving off about half of its nitrogen as the free gas.

URATES. Of the four hydrogen atoms in uric acid, two can be replaced by metallic radicals. Uric acid thus acts as a weak dibasic acid. It forms three orders of salts, namely, the neutral urates, the bi-urates, and the quadri-urates. The neutral urates, $M'_2\bar{U}$, are very unstable, and exist only in the presence of caustic alkalies. They are decomposed even by the carbonic acid of the atmosphere. The bi-urates, $MH\bar{U}$, are the most stable of the urates. They may be prepared by dissolving uric acid with the aid of heat in weak solutions of the alkaline carbonates, from which they separate, on cooling, in stellar crystals.

The quadri-urates have the formula $H_2\bar{U}$, MHU. They may be prepared by boiling uric acid with dilute solutions of potassium acetate. On cooling the mixture the quadri-urate separates as an amorphous precipitate or in crystalline spheres. The quadri-urates are extremely unstable, and in the presence of water are broken up into the bi-urates and free uric acid. It is probable that under normal conditions the greater part of the uric acid in the urine is present in the form of a quadri-urate (Roberts), and the so-called lateritious deposit, the brick-red amorphous precipitate of urates which occurs in concentrated urine on cooling, consists of these quadri-urates. The exact condition of the urate however will depend on the reaction of the urine. A bi-urate, with acid sodium phosphate, is decomposed with the formation of uric acid in the following way :

$$MH\bar{U} + MH_2PO_4 = H_2\bar{U} + M_2HPO_4.$$

Thus the quadri-urates present in the urine immediately after its secretion will tend to undergo spontaneous decomposition into uric acid and the bi-urate, and the latter itself may be decomposed with the formation of uric acid and alkaline phosphate. We thus see that when the urine is acid, *i. e.* when there is a predominance of acid phosphates, there will be a tendency to the precipitation of uric acid in the urinary passages. If however the di-sodium phosphate be in excess, the uric acid may be kept in solution as the quadri-urate or even as the bi-urate.

The uric acid of the urine is derived almost entirely from the purine metabolism of the body. The uric acid may be endogenous or exogenous, *i. e.* may be derived from the breaking down of the nucleins of the cells or by a direct transformation of the nucleins contained in the food. The amount passed daily varies between 0·4 and 1 grm., according to the nature of the diet. It is not absent from the urine even during complete starvation. It is increased when foods are ingested rich in nucleins, such as liver or sweetbreads, or in any other precursors of uric acid, *e. g.* hypoxanthine, such as meat or meat extract. We have no evidence that the urinary uric acid in the mammal is formed by synthesis, though this is the manner in which the greater part of the uric acid excreted by birds and reptiles is formed.

Small traces of purine bases also occur in urine, namely, xanthine, hypoxanthine, and adenine. When tea and coffee are taken the methyl-purines may occur, namely, caffeine, theobromine, and their derivatives.

HIPPURIC ACID is a frequent, though not a constant, constituent of human urine. It is derived from benzoic acid or from an aromatic substance which on oxidation can give rise to benzoic acid. In the kidneys the benzoic acid is conjugated with glycine to form hippuric acid. The amount of hippuric acid excreted in the day may vary between 0·1 and 1 grm. After a diet rich in fruit or vegetables its amount may rise to 2 grm. It is present in considerable quantities in the urine of herbivora and may be most easily prepared from horses' urine. Hippuric acid has the formula:

$$\begin{array}{l} C_6H_5CO \\ | \\ HNCH_2COOH \end{array}$$

It can be obtained in milk-white crystals (Fig. 533), which are only slightly soluble in cold water, but easily soluble in alcohol, ether, and acetic acid. It is insoluble in petroleum, ether, and benzol. On heating, it is broken up into benzoic acid and glycine. On heating with concentrated nitric acid, it forms nitro-benzol, which can be recognised by its characteristic smell of bitter almonds.

In order to extract it from the urine, the urine is made alkaline with sodium carbonate, filtered, and the filtrate evaporated to a syrupy consistence. This is then treated with alcohol, the alcohol evaporated, and the residue repeatedly extracted with acetic ether. The acetic ether is collected, evaporated to dryness, and the residue repeatedly extracted with petroleum ether to remove the benzoic acid and fat. What is left behind is hippuric acid, which can be purified by recrystallisation from alcohol or ether.

AMINO-ACIDS. According to Levene and van Slyke, amino-acids are always present in the urine, and contribute about 1·5 per cent. of the total nitrogen.

OTHER AROMATIC SUBSTANCES. The chief of these is the so-called 'urinary indican' or potassium-indoxyl-sulphate. This is derived from the indol produced in the intestines from the tryptophane contained in the proteins of the food, the change being effected by the influence of the micro-organisms of putreiaction. The amount of the conjugated sulphates in the urine is thus an index of the extent of putrefaction in the intestines. In dogs, when the intestine has been disinfected by repeated doses of calomel, the conjugated sulphates entirely disappear from the urine. Urinary indican has the formula :

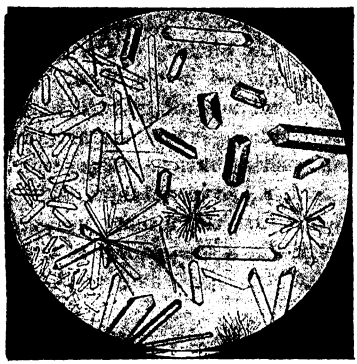
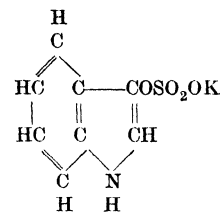


FIG. 533. Hippuric acid. (FUNKE.)



In addition to the tests for conjugated sulphates mentioned earlier, the indoxyl-sulphate can be detected by various methods dependent on the formation of indigo blue. The urine is treated with an equal volume of concentrated hydrochloric acid and several cubic centimetres of chloroform added. A solution of chloride of lime is now added drop by drop, shaking after the addition of each drop. A blue colour is produced which is extracted by the chloroform. It is important not to add too much chloride of lime, as otherwise the blue colour first produced will be destroyed by further oxidation.

THE URINARY PIGMENTS. Normal urine gives no definite absorption bands. It owes its colour to the presence of a yellow pigment, *urochrome*. In order to separate urochrome from urine, the urine is saturated with crystals of ammonium sulphate and filtered. The filtrate, which still contains nearly all the colour of the urine, is shaken up with alcohol, which withdraws the greater part of the colouring matter. On concentrating the alcoholic solution and pouring it into an equal volume of ether, an amorphous brown precipitate falls, which is the urochrome. Urochrome, on treatment with aldehyde, yields a pigment closely similar to urobilin. On the other hand, urobilin, treated with potassium permanganate, is converted into a substance practically identical with urochrome. Urochrome must therefore be derived from the same source as urobilin.

Urobilin is rarely present in normal urine, and then only in the form of a chromogen, from which it must be set free by acidification. In certain pathological conditions, especially in cirrhosis of the liver, urobilin may occur in the urine in considerable quantities.

In order to extract urobilin from such urine, the urates are first precipitated by saturation with ammonium chloride, and the filtrate is then saturated with ammonium sulphate and a drop of sulphuric acid added. On shaking the fluid up with a mixture of two parts ether and one part chloroform, the urobilin is taken up by the latter. The ether-chloroform solution is separated off and shaken up with caustic soda, when the urobilin passes entirely into the alkaline solution.

Urobilin in solution gives a single absorption band between the lines *b* and F, *i. e.* at the junction of the green and blue of the spectrum. On treating with zinc chloride and ammonia its solutions show a well-marked green fluorescence. The urobilin of urine is identical with stercobilin, the colouring matter of the fæces. It is formed from bile when the latter decomposes, and is probably produced in the intestines by the action of micro-organisms on bile pigment.

Other pigments which may occur in urine are uroerythrin and hæmatoporphyrin. *Uroerythrin* gives the pink colour to urate sediments. Its chemical nature is not known. It is distinguished by the fact that on addition of caustic soda the pink colour is changed to green. On suspending the red-coloured precipitate of urates in hot water and extracting with amyl alcohol, a pink solution is obtained which shows two absorption bands in the green part of the spectrum.

Hæmatoporphyrin is present only in very small amounts in normal urine, but under certain conditions, especially after poisoning with sulphonal, it may occur in such large quantities as to give the urine a deep purple colour. Under these circumstances it is found in the form of alkaline hæmatoporphyrin and gives the characteristic absorption bands of the latter.

Urorosein is a name that has been given to a pigment which is formed when the urine is treated with strong mineral acids. It is probably an indol derivative. It gives a single absorption band between the lines D and E.

ABNORMAL CONSTITUENTS OF THE URINE

A very large number of substances occur in the urine in minute traces and may be detected when large quantities of this fluid are worked up at one time. Most of the so-called pathological constituents may be detected in this way in normal urine. It is only when they occur in easily detectable amounts that their presence becomes of any significance.

COAGULABLE PROTEIN. Under normal circumstances urine is free from any coagulable protein except the small traces of mucinous material, nucleoprotein, which gives the cloudiness to the urine. If the kidney cells are damaged by disease, by interference with their blood supply, or by circulating poisons, the glomerular epithelium permits the passage of a certain amount of the proteins of the plasma. Under these circumstances, if small pieces of the kidney be plunged into boiling water, the coagulated protein may be seen in Bowman's capsule. The presence of coagulable protein (generally spoken of as albumin) in the urine is significant of the pathological conditions of the kidney associated with Bright's disease. A small trace will generally be found in the urine which is passed shortly after taking muscular exercise. Under this condition the presence of albumin in the urine has no pathognomonic significance.

The proteins generally found are identical with those of the blood plasma and consist of serum albumin and serum globulin. Their presence in the urine may be detected by the precipitate produced on boiling. In carrying out this test a few cubic centi-

metres of saturated salt solution should be added and one or two drops of dilute acetic acid. A more delicate test is that known as Heller's. Some strong nitric acid is placed in a test-tube and the urine is poured carefully down the side of the tube so as to form a layer on the surface of the nitric acid. If albumin be present, a white ring is formed at the junction of the two liquids.

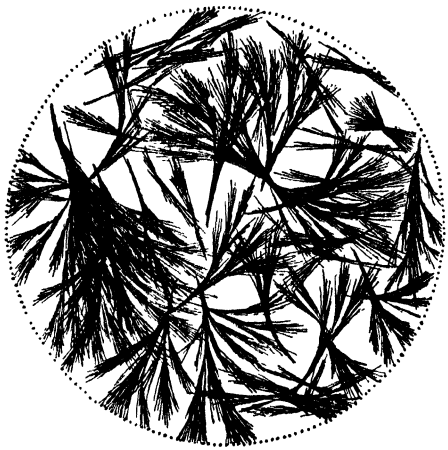


FIG. 534. Glucosazone.

SUGAR. Normal urine contains about one part per thousand of glucose. In diabetes the power of assimilating carbohydrates is diminished or destroyed. The amount of sugar in the blood is increased, and sugar appears in large quantities in the urine. The sugar is practically always glucose. Lactose may occur in the urine of nursing women even in conditions of health. Since both these sugars will reduce Fehling's solution, it becomes important to be able to distinguish between them.

The following tests are used for the detection of abnormal amounts of sugar in the urine:

(1) **FEHLING'S TEST.** The urine is boiled with Fehling's solution (an alkaline solution of copper sulphate to which Rochelle salt has been added to keep the cupric hydrate in solution). Under the action of glucose or lactose the cupric hydrate is reduced to an insoluble cuprous hydrate, which forms a yellow or red precipitate.

(2) The phenylhydrazine test may be carried out as follows: 2 c.c. of 50 per cent. acetic acid, saturated with sodium acetate, and two drops of phenylhydrazine are added to 5 c.c. of urine. The mixture is evaporated down to 3 c.c., rapidly cooled, and again warmed in a water bath. It is then allowed to cool slowly. Crystals of the corresponding ozazone separate out in the hot liquid in the case of glucosazone, on cooling in the case of lactosazone (Figs. 534, 535).

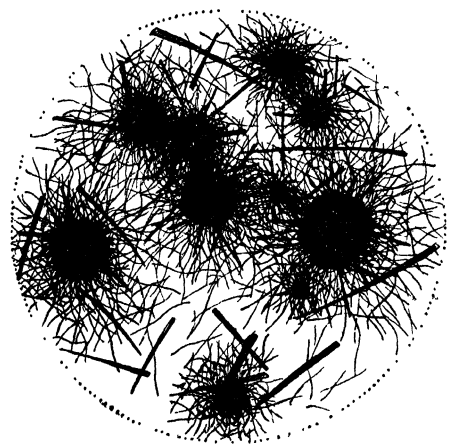


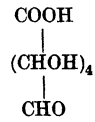
FIG. 535. Lactosazone. (PLIMMER.)

(3) The most convenient way of distinguishing between lactose and glucose is by adding a little yeast to the urine in an inverted test-tube. If glucose be the sugar present, it is fermented by the yeast with the production of carbon dioxide, which collects at the top of the test-tube.

In rare circumstances fructose or lævulose, or pentose may be found in the urine. The former would be detected by the fact that it rotates polarised light to the left instead of the right, as is the case with glucose.

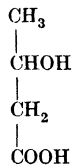
GLYCURONIC ACID. Small traces of this are present in normal urine. It occurs as a conjugated acid after the administration of various substances, *e. g.* camphor and chloral. If phenol, indol, or scatol be given to an animal which is receiving very little

protein in its diet, these substances will leave the body conjugated, not with sulphuric acid, but with glycuronic acid. Glycuronic acid may be regarded as the first product of oxidation of glucose, having the formula :

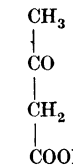


It reduces Fehling's solution and rotates the plane of polarised light to the left.

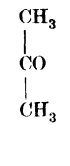
OXY-FATTY ACIDS AND ACETONE. These substances occur often associated with glucose in diabetes, especially towards the end of the disease. They represent the penultimate stages in the oxidation of the fats. Their relation to one another is seen from their formulæ :



Oxybutyric acid



Aceto-acetic acid



Acetone

They may also occur in any condition of carbohydrate starvation, relative or absolute. Thus they are found in the urine during absolute starvation as well as in individuals on a pure fat and protein diet. The two acids are generally found associated in the urine.

The presence of aceto-acetic acid may be detected as follows :

(1) To some urine add ferric chloride as long as a precipitate of ferric phosphate continues to form. Filter this off and to the filtrate add a few more drops of ferric chloride. If the acid be present a claret colour is produced.

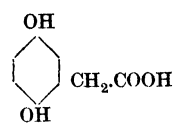
(2) On heating with dilute alkali, aceto-acetic acid is decomposed, with the production of acetone. This may be detected by its odour or by distilling off a small proportion of the fluid and testing the distillate in the following ways :

(*a*) On the addition of sodium hydrate and iodine and warming, iodoform is formed.

(*b*) Legal's test. A few drops of freshly prepared sodium nitroprusside solution is added and the mixture rendered alkaline with sodium hydrate. A deep red colour is formed. On acidifying with acetic acid this colour is changed to a reddish purple.

CYSTINE. This substance, which is a normal product of the hydrolysis of proteins, is found as a constant constituent to the amount of half a gramme a day in the urine of certain individuals. The condition of cystinuria represents, like alcaptonuria, an inborn error of metabolism. It is found in the child and persists throughout life. In such cases the cystine may give rise to urinary deposits or even to a urinary calculus.

HOMOGENTISIC ACID. This is an aromatic acid having the composition of dioxyphenyl acetic acid. Its formula is as follows :



It occurs as a constituent of the urine of certain individuals, who are said to be affected with *alcaptonuria*. The urine of these cases is remarkable for its resistance to putrefactive changes. It slowly darkens on exposure to the air, and on the addition of alkali and shaking with air it becomes rapidly brown or black. It reduces Fehling's solution, so that the presence of sugar may be suspected. Such urine contains homogen-

sulphuric acid and can be distilled off and received into a vessel containing a known amount of decinormal acid. By titrating this acid after the operation we can determine the quantity of ammonia which has been produced. To carry out this method 5 c.c. of urine are heated with 20 c.c. sulphuric acid and a small quantity of copper sulphate and potassium sulphate. The copper sulphate is to aid the oxidation of the organic substances, the potassium sulphate is to raise the boiling-point of the mixture. The boiling is continued for half an hour. The flask is then cooled and half filled with distilled water. A special form of distillation tube (Fig. 540) is now attached by a rubber cork which fits tightly, but just before this is done an excess of strong caustic soda sufficient to neutralise the concentrated sulphuric acid is run in under the acid. The other end of the distillation tube is at once arranged to dip under the surface of a measured quantity of standard acid (*e. g.* 10 c.c. $\frac{n}{10}$ H_2SO_4), diluted with water, and contained in a 600 c.c. Erlenmeyer flask. The flask is then shaken and heated. In about a quarter of an hour the ammonia is completely distilled off, and its amount can be determined by titrating the acid in the flask with $\frac{n}{10}$ NaOH, methyl orange being used as indicator.

UREA. The method usually adopted for estimating the urea is that devised by Hüfner. It depends on the fact that urea is decomposed by an alkaline hypobromite with the production of CO_2 and nitrogen. In the presence of an excess of alkali the CO_2 is absorbed, and the nitrogen may be collected and measured, and serves as an index of the amount of urea present. The reaction which occurs is as follows:

$$\underbrace{CO(NH_2)_2} + 3NaBrO + 2NaOH = 3NaBr + \underbrace{N_2} + Na_2CO_3 + 3H_2O.$$

60 grm. 22·4 litres = 28 grm.
1 grm. 372 c.c.

Actually however only 354·33 c.c. nitrogen are evolved by 1 grm. urea.

The disadvantage of this method is that other substances, such as ammonia, creatinine, and uric acid, give off a certain amount of their nitrogen with sodium hypobromite, so that the method is not strictly accurate, though enough so for most clinical purposes. In actually carrying out the method 5 c.c. of urine are treated with 25 c.c. of freshly prepared solution of sodium hypobrom te, and the nitrogen evolved is collected in a graduated tube over water.

Urease Method. A still simpler method is to employ *urease*, a ferment contained in soy bean, which splits urea with hydrolysis into ammonia and carbonic acid. Five c.c. of urine with 25 c.c. of water, and half a grm. of powdered soy bean are placed in a cylinder, which is kept at about 40° C. Air is drawn through the mixture and then through 25 or 50 c.c. of $\frac{n}{10}$ sulphuric acid for half to one hour. One grm. anhydrous sodium carbonate is then added to break up any ammonium salts, and air drawn through as before for another half hour. Titration of the acid then gives the amount of ammonia liberated, from which, after subtraction of the ammonia originally present in the urine, the percentage of urea may be calculated.

Folin's Method. In Kjeldahl's method all the nitrogenous constituents of the urine are converted into ammonia by boiling with strong sulphuric acid. This conversion occurs with extreme readiness in the case of urea, so that by using a weaker acid and carefully regulating the temperature the hydrolysis may be confined practically to the urea itself. This is the principle of Folin's method of estimating urea.

Five cubic centimetres of urine are measured into a 200 c.c. Erlenmeyer flask. Five cubic centimetres of concentrated hydrochloric acid, 20 grm. crystallised magnesium chloride, a piece of paraffin the size of a small hazel nut, and finally 2 or 3 drops of a 1 per cent. solution of alizarin red in water are added. A special safety tube is then inserted into the neck of the flask and the mixture boiled until each returning drop from the safety tube produces a very perceptible bump. The heat is then

reduced somewhat, and the heating is continued for a full hour. The alizarin red is used in order to ensure that the contents of the flask do not become alkaline. At the end of an hour the contents of the flask are put into a litre flask with about 700 c.c. water and 20 c.c. of a 10 per cent. sodium hydrate, and the ammonia is then distilled off into a measured quantity of acid. The results obtained in this way will give us the total amount of urea together with any ammonia which was preformed in the urine. It is therefore necessary also to determine the amount of this preformed ammonia.

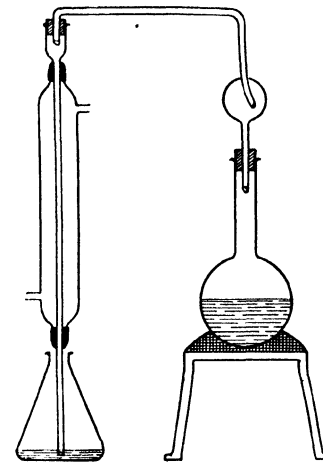


FIG. 540.

ESTIMATION OF AMMONIA. In Folin's method for the estimation of ammonia, this is set free by the addition of weak alkali (sodium carbonate) and is then removed from the urine at ordinary room temperature by passing a strong current of air through the liquid. The issuing current of air carrying the ammonia passes through a measured quantity of decinormal acid. If the air current be strong enough, one and a half hours is sufficient to remove the whole of the ammonia from 25 c.c. of urine. The decinormal acid is then titrated and the amount of the ammonia reckoned. In carrying out the method 25 c.c. of urine is measured into a cylinder 30 to 40 cm. high, and about a gramme of sodium carbonate and some petroleum (to prevent foaming) are added. The upper end of the cylinder is then closed by a doubly perforated rubber stopper through which pass two glass tubes, only one of which is long enough to reach below the surface of the liquid. The shorter tube, about 10 cm. in length, is connected with a calcium chloride tube filled with cotton, and this in turn is attached to a glass tube extending to the bottom of a wide-mouthed bottle, capacity about 500 c.c., which contains 20 c.c. decinormal acid in 200 c.c. of water.

A more convenient method for the estimation of ammonia is that originally proposed by Schiff and recently worked out by Malfatti. It depends on the fact that, when a neutral solution of an ammonium salt is treated with formaldehyde, combination occurs with the formation of hexamethylene tetramine (urotropine) and the liberation of a corresponding amount of acid, which can be estimated by titrating with decinormal alkali. The reaction which occurs is as follows:

$$\underset{\text{Formaldehyde}}{6CH_2O} + 2(NH_4)_2SO_4 = 6H_2O + \underset{\text{Hexamethylene tetramine}}{N_4(CH_2)_6} + 2H_2SO_4.$$

In carrying out this method 25 c.c. of urine are measured by means of a pipette into a flask or beaker and diluted with five times its volume of water. Four or five drops of phenolphthalein are then added and decinormal sodium hydrate is run in until there is a slight permanent pink colour. The amount of alkaline solution necessary to produce this colour is a measure of the acidity of the urine. Ten cubic centimetres of formalin, diluted with three volumes of water and previously neutralised to phenolphthalein with decinormal alkali, are then added. The colour disappears owing to the setting free of the acid radicals previously combined with ammonia. Decinormal alkali is then run into the mixture until a permanent pink colour is again obtained. The number of cubic centimetres of the decinormal alkali required in this second case corresponds to the amount of decinormal ammonia previously present in the 25 c.c. of urine.

This method gives somewhat higher figures than the method of Folin just described, owing to the fact that the small traces of amino-acids, which may be present in the urine, react to formalin in a very similar way. The difference does not exceed 10 per cent., so that the method is amply delicate for clinical purposes.

CREATININE. In Folin's method for the determination of creatinine, which is now universally employed, advantage is taken of the colour reaction given by creatinine (and by no other normal urinary constituent) with picric acid in alkaline solution (Jaffré's reaction), the colour being compared with that of a standard potassium bichromate solution. The reagents employed are decinormal potassium bichromate containing 24·55 grm. per litre; saturated picric acid solution containing about 12 grm. per litre; and a 10 per cent. solution of sodium hydrate. For the comparison of the colours a Duboscq colorimeter is employed.

Ten cubic centimetres of urine are measured into a 500 c.c. flask; 15 c.c. of picric acid and 5 c.c. of sodium hydrate are then added and the mixture allowed to stand for five minutes. Some of the potassium bichromate solution is placed into one of the cylinders of the colorimeter and its depth accurately adjusted to the 8 mm. mark. At the end of five minutes the contents of the 500 c.c. flask are diluted up to 500 c.c. with water, and some of the mixture placed into the other cylinder of the colorimeter, and the two colours are then compared. The calculation of the results is very simple. If, for example, it is found that it takes 9·5 mm. of the unknown urine picrate solution to equal the 8 mm. of the bichromate, then the 10 c.c. of urine contains

$$10 \times \frac{8{\cdot}0}{9{\cdot}5} = 8{\cdot}4 \text{ mg. creatinine.}$$

ESTIMATION OF URIC ACID. The best method for this purpose is a slight modification by Folin of the method devised by Hopkins.

For this method the following reagents are required:

(1) A solution of ammonium sulphate, uranium acetate, and acetic acid, made up as follows: 500 grm. ammonium sulphate, 5 grm. uranium acetate, and 60 c.c. 10 per cent. acetic acid are dissolved in 650 c.c. water. The volume of this solution is almost exactly 1000 c.c.

(2) Ten per cent. ammonium sulphate solution.

(3) $\frac{n}{20}$ potassium permanganate solution made by dissolving 1·581 grm. pure potassium permanganate in one litre of water; 1 c.c. = ·00375 grm. uric acid.

Measure 200 c.c. urine with a pipette into a 500 c.c. flask and add 50 c.c. of the ammonium sulphate and uranium acetate reagent. Mix the solutions and allow to stand for about half an hour so as to let the precipitate settle. This precipitate contains a mucoid substance (and phosphates) which, if not thus removed, renders the subsequent filtration and washing of the ammonium urate precipitate very slow. Filter off the supernatant liquid through a dry filter into a dry vessel, and measure out 125 c.c. (= 100 c.c. urine) of this with pipettes into a beaker. Add 5 c.c. concentrated ammonia, mix well, and allow to stand covered with paper for twelve to twenty-four hours.

Carefully decant the supernatant liquid upon a filter, wash the precipitate of ammonium urate on to the filter with 10 per cent. ammonium sulphate, and wash this once or twice with the same reagent to remove the chlorides as completely as possible.

Remove the filter from the funnel, open it, and with a fine stream of water wash the ammonium urate precipitate into a beaker. To the ammonium urate precipitate, suspended in about 100 c.c. water, add 15 c.c. strong sulphuric acid and titrate at once, without cooling, with the potassium permanganate solution. At first every small addition of the permanganate is decolorised before it diffuses through the liquid, but towards the end the decolorisation is slower, and the permanganate should be added two drops at a time until a faint pink colour is seen throughout the whole solution. The amount of uric acid can then be calculated, 1 c.c. of the permanganate solution being equivalent to ·00375 grm. uric acid.

CHLORIDES. The chlorides of urine are estimated by Volhard's method. The principle of this method consists in precipitating the chlorides by excess of a standard solution of silver nitrate in the presence of nitric acid. The excess of silver is then estimated in an aliquot part of the filtrate with a solution of potassium or ammonium

sulphocyanate which has been previously standardised against the silver solution, a ferric salt being used as indicator.

The following solutions are required:

(1) Standard silver nitrate solution either $\frac{n}{10}$ or so that 1 c.c. corresponds to ·01 grm. NaCl.
(2) Potassium sulphocyanate solution (8 grm. per litre).
(3) Pure HNO_3 free from chlorides.
(4) A saturated solution of iron alum.

The potassium sulphocyanate solution must be standardised against the silver nitrate solution. This is carried out as follows: Place 10 c.c. $AgNO_3$ solution with a pipette in a beaker, add 5 c.c. pure HNO_3, 5 c.c. iron alum solution, and 80 c.c. water. Now run in the sulphocyanate solution from a burette until a permanent red tinge is obtained. Note the amount required for the 10 c.c. $AgNO_3$ solution.

The method of analysis is carried out as follows: Place 10 c.c. urine in a 100 c.c. measuring flask with a pipette. Then add about 4 c.c. pure nitric acid and 10 or 20 c.c. with a pipette of the standard silver nitrate solution. Now fill up to the mark with distilled water, mix thoroughly, and filter into a dry vessel through a dry paper. Take exactly 50 c.c. of the filtrate with a pipette and titrate with the sulphocyanate solution until a permanent red colour is obtained, iron alum having been added before the titration is commenced. Calculation of results:

$$\begin{aligned} 50 \text{ c.c. filtrate} &= S \text{ c.c. KCNS} \\ \therefore 100 \text{ c.c. } \quad ,, &= 2S \text{ c.c. } \quad ,, \\ \text{Now } x \text{ c.c. KCNS} &= 10 \text{ c.c. } AgNO_3 \\ \therefore 2S \text{ c.c. } \quad ,, &= \frac{10 \times 2S}{x} AgNO_3 \end{aligned}$$

This is the excess not utilised to precipitate the chlorides

$$\therefore \left(20 - \frac{10 \times 2S}{x}\right) = \text{amount of } AgNO_3 \text{ solution used.}$$

From this the amount in grammes of NaCl passed in the urine in twenty-four hours can be calculated.

ESTIMATION OF PHOSPHATES. The method depends upon the precipitation of all the phosphates by a standard solution of uranium acetate or uranium nitrate in the presence of sodium acetate and acetic acid as $(UrO_2)HPO_4$. The determination of the end-point, when soluble uranium salt is in solution, is shown by means of potassium ferrocyanide, or by cochineal tincture which becomes green.

The following reagents are required:

(1) Acid sodium acetate solution (100 grm. $Na\bar{A}c$, 30 grm. $H\bar{A}c$, 1000 c.c. H_2O).
(2) Cochineal tincture (5 grm. cochineal extracted for several days with 150 c.c. alcohol and 100 c.c. water and then filtered).
(3) Standard uranium solution (1 c.c. = ·005 grm. P_2O_5 or 5 mg.).

This must be prepared by standardising against a standard phosphate solution. Generally sodium phosphate is employed; about 12 grms. are weighed out and dissolved in 1000 c.c. water; 50 c.c. of this solution are evaporated to dryness, incinerated, and weighed as pyrophosphate. From the weight of this the amount of P_2O_5 in 50 c.c. can be calculated and the remainder of the solution can be diluted, so that 50 c.c. contain 0·1 grm. P_2O_5. It is simpler to use acid potassium phosphate, KH_2PO_4, which can be weighed directly and dissolved in water, so that 50 c.c. contain 0·1 grm. P_2O_5. Fifty cubic centimetres of this solution are titrated with the uranium solution (36 grm. in one litre) in the manner described below, and the uranium solution is then diluted so that 1 c.c. = 5 mg. P_2O_5.

The method of analysis is carried out as follows: Place 50 c.c. urine with a pipette

in a 100 c.c. beaker, add 5 c.c. acid sodium acetate solution and a few drops of cochineal tincture. Heat the urine to boiling and run in slowly the standard uranium acetate solution from a burette as long as a precipitate is formed. Again heat to boiling and add the uranium solution drop by drop, until the red colour is changed to green. This end-point can also be tested by taking out a drop and placing it in contact with a drop of potassium ferrocyanide solution or on a little heap of this substance finely powdered on a white piece of porcelain. A brown colour or precipitate is formed when excess of soluble uranium salt is present in the solution. (A few more drops may be required to reach this point than to turn the cochineal green.)

The principle of the estimation of sulphates has already been described (p. 1163). It is not advisable to attempt this volumetrically.

SECTION II

THE SECRETION OF URINE

With the single exception of hippuric acid, all the constituents of the urine are formed in parts of the body other than the kidneys. Extirpation of both kidneys leads to an accumulation of these specific urinary constituents in the blood and tissues. The work of the kidney is therefore confined to an excretion of preformed constituents. Considered from a broad standpoint, the function of this organ is the preservation of the normal composition of the circulating blood. Whenever the latter contains an abnormal constituent or any of its normal constituents are present in abnormal quantities, the kidney excretes the substance in question until the composition of the blood is restored. We have to determine the conditions which influence the quantity and quality of the urine secreted by the kidneys, and to ascribe to each element in these organs its proper share in the total work of the kidney.

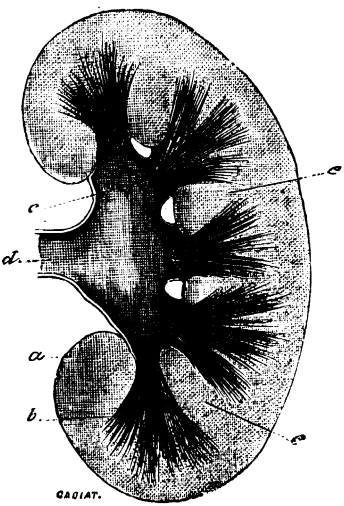


Fig. 541. Section of human kidney. (Cadiat.)

a, cortex; *b*, medulla or Malpighian pyramids; *c*, papilla; d, ureter; *e*, *e*, boundary zone.

In no other organ of the body are our views as to function so intimately dependent on our knowledge of structure as in the kidney. This organ is a branched tubular gland consisting in man of ten to fifteen nearly equal divisions, known as the Malpighian pyramids. In certain animals, such as the rabbit and rat, only one pyramid is present. It is divided into an outer portion or cortex, an inner portion, the medulla, and between these the 'boundary layer,' containing the larger branches of the renal blood vessels (Fig. 541). From the outer boundary of the Malpighian pyramids of the medulla, a number of processes, the medullary rays, pass out into the cortex towards the surface of the kidney. All parts of the kidney are made up of branched tubules embedded in scanty connective tissue and richly supplied with blood vessels. Each tubule begins by a blind dilated extremity in the cortex, known as Bowman's capsule, which surrounds a bunch of capillary blood vessels, the glomerulus, the two together forming the Malpighian body. From Bowman's capsule a short neck leads into a proximal convoluted tubule, and this into a U-shaped portion which passes down in a medullary ray

lined with cubical or columnar cells with a clear protoplasm. The marked differences between the structure of these various parts point to a differentiation of function and division of labour among them in the preparation of the fully formed urine. This conclusion is borne out by a study of the blood supply of the kidney. The large renal

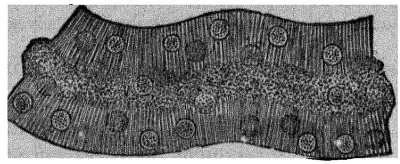


FIG. 543. A portion of convoluted tubule with 'rodded' epithelium. (HEIDENHAIN.)

artery divides in the pelvis into four or five branches, which pass up to the boundary zone and there give off arteries in different directions; those which run towards the surface are the interlobular arteries. Each of these, which is an end artery presenting no anastomoses with its fellows, gives off on all sides short wide branches, which pass to the glomeruli and constitute the *vasa afferentia* of these bodies. Each vas afferens has a thick muscular wall. The glomerulus itself consists of a number of anastomosing

A

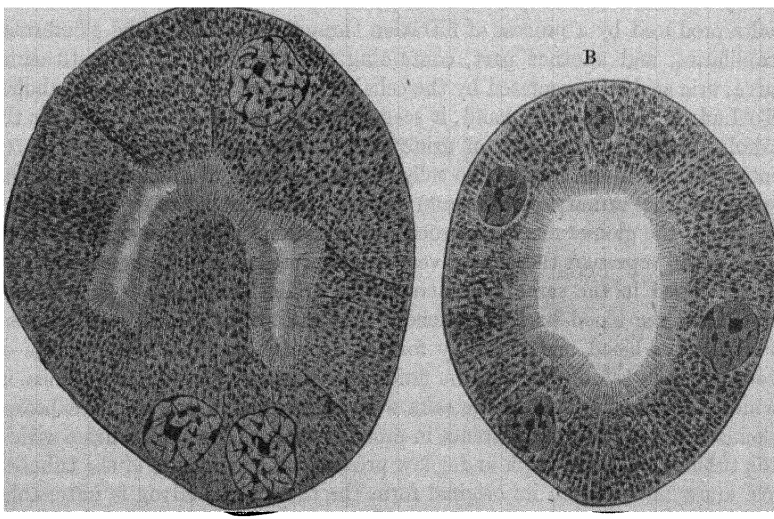


FIG. 544. Cross-sections of convoluted tubules from kidney of rat. (SAUER.) A, during slight secretion; B, during maximal secretion.

wide capillaries invested by an extremely thin wall, which is sometimes said to consist simply of a protoplasmic film devoid of nuclei. The glomerular capillaries are collected together to form an efferent vessel, the *vas efferens*, which is narrower than the vas afferens but, like the latter, presents a well-marked muscular coat. The vas efferens breaks up again into a second set of capillaries, which ramify round the tubules of the cortex and communicate with a similar network round the tubules of the medulla. The medullary pyramids are also provided with blood by a plexus of capillaries taking their origin from little bunches of vessels, the *vasa recta* (*v.* Fig. 542), which leave the concave side of the arterial arches of the boundary zone to run towards the papilla, and receive also a few vessels which spring from the vasa afferentia of the cortical vessels. From the

capillaries of the tubules the blood is collected again into veins, which leave the kidney partly by the cortex and capsular vessels, partly by large venous trunks which join to form the renal vein at the hilum of the kidney. The kidney is richly supplied with nerves, which are chiefly distributed to the muscular walls of its blood vessels. Some authors have described a fine nerve-plexus surrounding the tubules and sending branches between and into the cells of the convoluted tubules themselves.

The main points in the above description of the structure of the kidney were made out by Bowman in 1840, and suggested the theories of urinary secretion both of Bowman and of Ludwig (1844), theories which have furnished the basis of all our subsequent investigation of the subject. Both observers appreciated the great difference between the membrane covering the glomerular loop and the lining membrane of the tubule, and both drew attention to the difference in the circulation in these two portions of the kidney. The glomerular capillaries, supplied with blood through a short wide artery and drained by an efferent vessel smaller than the afferent, would represent a region of very high capillary blood pressure, whereas the pressure in the capillaries surrounding the tubules must be low and similar to that in other capillary regions. Bowman therefore suggested that the urine consisted of two parts, namely, one part containing the water and salts produced by a process of filtration through the walls of the glomerular capillaries, and another part, containing the specific urinary constituents, urea, uric acid, etc., secreted by the cells probably of the convoluted tubules. To Ludwig, on the other hand, it seemed possible at first to account for the whole process of formation of urine without the assumption of any active intervention on the part of the cells of the tubules. He imagined that the whole of the urinary constituents passed from the blood to the urinary tubule in the glomerulus by a process of filtration. The glomerular transudate would represent therefore a very dilute urine containing the crystalloids of the blood in the same concentration as in the blood and with no more urea than the blood itself contained. The great difference in urea content between the blood and the fully formed urine he ascribed to a process of concentration taking place in the fluid in its passage through the tubules, in which water and certain of the salts were reabsorbed, a process of reabsorption conditioned by the difference in protein content between the urine within the tubules and the lymph under low pressure on the outside of the tubules. We know now that in its original form the theory of Ludwig is untenable. If a process of concentration occurs within the tubules, it must involve the performance of work by the cells lining these tubules, and could not take place as a result of mere differences of colloid content between the two fluids. It was shown long ago by Hoppe-Seyler that, if urine be dialysed against serum, there is a passage of water, not from urine to serum, but from serum to urine, *i. e.* the latter is much more concentrated than the former. The movement of water from one fluid to another through a colloid membrane depends on the relative osmotic pressures of the two fluids, and this in turn is determined by the molecular concentration of the two fluids. It is easy to estimate the molecular concentration of any sample of serum or urine. The method which is most convenient is to determine the depression

of freezing-point in the two fluids. Whereas serum ordinarily freezes at — 0·56° C. to — 0·59° C., the freezing-point of urine is generally lower and may vary from this figure to as much as — 4·5° C. For the production therefore of urine from blood plasma, a certain amount of work has to be done, and the seat of this work we can locate only in the cells of the kidney. We may determine the *minimum* work, necessary to form a certain amount of urine of a given concentration, by measuring the amount of heat that must be imparted to the blood plasma in order to reduce it to the same concentration and volume, or we can calculate it if we know the freezing-points of the two fluids. A depression of freezing-point $\triangle = -1°$ C. corresponds to an osmotic pressure of 122·7 metres of water. To concentrate 100 c.c. of a saline fluid, such as urine, so as to halve its bulk and double its depression of freezing-point, *e.g.* from — 1° C. to — 2° C., would therefore require the expenditure of work equivalent to that which would be required to compress 100 c.c. of a gas at a pressure of 122·7 metres of water to half its bulk.

In this way can be determined the work necessary to change a fluid of $\triangle = -0{\cdot}56$ (such as plasma) to one of — 2·3 (urine). The work done in forming 200 c.c. of urine of this concentration from fluid plasma would amount to 42·9 kgm. metres. But the concentration in the kidney does not occur in this simple fashion. If we compare the composition of blood plasma with that of urine, we see that almost every constituent is changed in different proportions.

RELATIVE COMPOSITIONS OF BLOOD PLASMA AND NORMAL URINE IN MAN (CUSHNY)

	Blood plasma per cent.	Urine per cent.	Change in concentration in kidney
Water	90–93	95	—
Proteins, fats and other colloids	7–9	—	—
Dextrose	0·1	—	—
Urea	0·03	2	60
Uric Acid	0·002	0·05	25
Na	0·32	0·35	1
K	0·02	0·15	7
NH_4	0·001	0·04	40
Ca	0·008	0·015	2
Mg	0·0025	0·006	2
Cl	0·37	0·6	2
PO_4	0·009	0·27	30
SO_4	0·003	0·18	60

If we added up the work required to produce the change in concentration of each constituent, we should arrive at a figure probably ten times as great as that given above. The large amount of work done under some conditions by the kidneys in the formation of urine is indicated by measurements of the oxygen consumption of this organ. This may amount to ·04 to ·06 c.c. per gramme per minute, and in some forms of diuresis may rise to as much as ·28 c.c. per gramme per minute. It is worthy of note that this rise in oxygen consumption is found when the diuresis is caused by the intravenous injection of urea, sodium sulphate, or phlorhizin, but not when the diuresis is brought about by the injection of water, Ringer's solution or sodium chloride.

The abandonment of Ludwig's view as to the mechanism of the concentration does not however place his theory out of court. The question will still have to be discussed whether the chief object of the tubules is the concentration of the fluid produced in the glomeruli, or whether they add to this fluid by a further secretory process, or whether they may not possibly possess both functions and in their various parts alter the fluid flowing through them either by addition or by withdrawal of water or dissolved constituents. The common point in the two theories is the sharp distinction which is drawn between the nature of the glomerular activity and the nature of the activity of the tubules. The questions which we have to decide by experiment are:

(1) The nature of the glomerular activity and the conditions which determine the amount of fluid formed by the glomeruli, and especially whether the energy required for the formation of the glomerular fluid is furnished by the heart through the blood pressure within the capillaries or by the endothelium covering these capillaries.

(2) The function of the tubules, whether they secrete or absorb, and what part is played in these processes by the various segments of the tubules, which differ so widely in their histological characters.

FUNCTIONS OF THE GLOMERULI

It is generally assumed, as the best explanation of known facts with regard to the secretion of urine, that a watery exudation free from protein is formed in the glomeruli, and that this becomes concentrated on its way through the tubules, either by the absorption of water and certain salts or by the secretion and addition of urea, uric acid, etc. as well as such salts as acid phosphates. As to the nature of the glomerular functions two opinions have been held. According to the Ludwig school, the process is one simply of filtration, in which, under the pressure of the blood in the glomerular capillaries, the water and crystalloid constituents of the plasma are filtered through the glomerular epithelium, leaving behind the protein constituents. According to Heidenhain, the process cannot be regarded as one simply of filtration, but involves the secretory activity of the glomerular epithelium. If the glomerular urine is a filtrate, it must resemble blood plasma in practically all particulars except its protein content, since the blood pressure, which is the only force causing filtration, is too small to effect any appreciable separation of salts. On the other hand, a certain minimum difference of pressure between the two sides of the membrane must be present in order to separate the colloids from the other constituents of the plasma. We have seen in Chapter iv (p. 141) that, in order to produce a filtrate containing only water and salts from serum, a minimum difference of pressure of 30 mm. Hg. is necessary, corresponding to the osmotic pressure of the colloidal constituents of the blood plasma or serum. Thus in order to produce a filtrate, free from protein, from the blood plasma circulating through the glomerular capillaries, the pressure of the urine in the tubules and ureter must always

be at least 30 mm. lower than the pressure of the blood in the glomeruli. A direct determination of the latter figure is not possible. The anatomical arrangements are such as to bring this pressure up to a high point. Not only are the vasa afferentia very short, but the vasa efferentia are only two-thirds of the diameter of the vasa afferentia. Moreover the sudden increase of bed, which ensues as the blood passes from the vas afferens to the bundle of capillaries, must itself cause a rise of pressure in the latter, due to the transformation of the kinetic energy of the moving fluid into the statical energy represented by pressure on the walls of the vessels.

This point can be rendered clearer by the following considerations. If fluid is flowing in a tube of continuous bore *ab* (Fig. 545) there will be a continuous fall of pressure from *a* to *b*. If however in the tube *abc* the segment *b* be of much greater diameter than the segments *a* and *c*, although while the fluid is at rest the pressures will be equal at all points of the system, as soon as the fluid moves from *a* to *c*, although there is a fall of pressure between *a* and *c*, a manometer attached to *b* may show an actual greater pressure than a manometer inserted at *a*. Fluid is flowing from a place of lower to a place of higher pressure. The apparent paradox is due to the fact that the energy

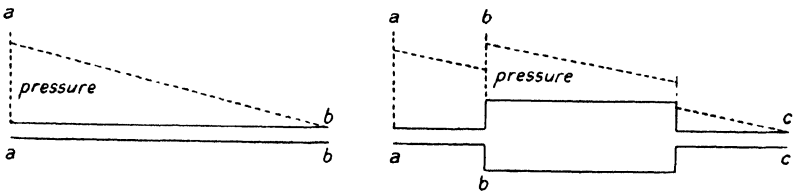


FIG. 545.

causing the fluid to move from *a* to *b* is of two kinds. It equals $\frac{1}{2}mv^2 + P$, *i. e.* represented by the kinetic energy of the moving mass of fluid as well as the difference of pressure between any two points of the tube. The total energy will diminish continuously from *a* to *c*, and is used in overcoming the resistance of the system. We may say then that the sum of these two, namely, $\frac{1}{2}mv^2 + P$, is greater at *a* than *b*, and is greater at *b* than *c*; but as the fluid passes from the narrow tube *a* into the wide tube *b*, there is a sudden fall of its velocity and a consequent diminution of the factor $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$. In order to provide for a continuous fall in the total energy of the fluid, namely, $\frac{1}{2}mv^2 + P$, the diminution in the factor $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$ must cause a corresponding increase in the factor P, *i. e.* in the lateral pressure exercised by the fluid on the vessel wall. As the total diameter of the bed of the stream in the capillaries may be twenty times that of the bed in the vas afferens, the velocity of the blood in these capillaries will be only one-twentieth of that in the artery and the kinetic energy of the blood only one four-hundredth. It is possible therefore that the pressure exercised by the blood on the walls of the capillaries may be even greater than that in the interlobular arteries, and this effect will be still further aided by the narrow diameter of the vas efferens. Although therefore the pressure in the ordinary capillaries of the body is probably not greater than 20 to 30 mm. Hg., the glomerular capillaries might present a pressure little inferior to that in the main arteries of the body.

The pressure in the ureter is under normal circumstances approximately nil, whereas that in the glomerular capillaries is probably not more than 20 mm. Hg. below that in the main arteries of the body, so that there is a difference of pressure on the two sides of the membrane more than sufficient to cause a constant filtration of a protein-free fluid from the blood plasma

coursing through these capillaries. On raising the pressure on the tubule side, the filtration ought to come to an end when the pressure approaches a figure which is 30 to 40 mm. Hg. below that in the glomerular capillaries. A number of observers have found that urinary secretion ceases when the blood pressure falls to between 40 and 50 mm. Hg. The urinary secretion can be stopped by raising the pressure in the tubules by means of ligature of the ureter. On applying the ligature the secretion continues for a time until the pressure in the ureter rises up to a certain point, when the secretion comes to an end. In one experiment the following pressures were obtained in a dog which was secreting urine copiously under the action of diuretin. Manometers were connected both with the carotid artery and with the ureters so that no outflow of urine was possible.

Arterial pressure	Ureter pressure
140	72
138	92
133	88

In this experiment therefore secretion came to an end with a difference of pressure between ureter and arteries of between 40 and 50 mm. Hg.

The absolute pressure attained within the ureter in any given experiment after ligature of these tubes will vary with several factors. In the first place, if the minimum secreting pressure is really conditioned by the colloid content of the blood plasma, it will be less the smaller the proportion of colloids in the plasma. In some experiments (Magnus) a flow of urine was observed with a blood pressure as low as 18 mm. Hg., but in this case the blood was extremely dilute as the result of the continuous injection into the blood vessels of normal salt solution. Barcroft and Knowlton have shown that the diuresis brought about by injection of saline (Ringer's) solution is inhibited by mixing with the saline fluid colloids, such as gelatin and gum, which possess an osmotic pressure. Colloids such as starch, with no measurable osmotic pressure, have no such effect.

On the other hand, the ureters, or at any rate the urinary tubules, cannot be regarded as absolutely water-tight. Not only are the cells of these tubules capable of taking up fluid, but it is probable that at high pressures a certain amount of actual filtration takes place between these cells. This process of reabsorption will tend to diminish the actual pressure of the fluid in the ureters, so that the secretion of urine may apparently come to a standstill when there is still a difference of pressure between blood and urine considerably over 50 mm. Hg. Under such circumstances the ureter pressure will be higher, and the difference of pressure between urine and blood less, the more rapid the formation of urine by the glomeruli. In a number of experiments by V. E. Henderson, it was found that the figure B.P. — U.P. tended to approximate 40 mm. Hg. the more rapid the secretion of urine was. With a slow secretion the flow of urine apparently ceased when there was as much as 80 mm. Hg. difference of pressure on the two sides of the glomerular membrane.

We may conclude that, for the production of any urine by the kidney, a certain minimum difference of pressure is necessary between the blood in the glomeruli and the urine in the tubule, and that this difference becomes less the smaller the protein content of the blood. Since the only work required in the formation of a protein-free filtrate from the blood is that due to the osmotic pressure of the proteins themselves, and the observed difference of pressure during secretion is greater than this osmotic pressure, we are justified in concluding, provisionally at any rate, that the mechanical factors

present at the upper end of the urinary tubule are sufficient to account for the production of a glomerular transudate free from protein, but containing the same proportion of water and salts as the blood plasma circulating through the capillaries.

If the process occurring in the glomeruli is simply one of filtration, three conditions must be realised:

(1) The amount of filtrate, so long as the ureter pressure is constant, must depend on the pressure and rate of flow of the blood in the glomerular capillaries, and must fall or rise with the latter.

(2) The constitution of the fully formed urine as it appears in the ureters, after modification by addition or subtraction on the part of the tubular cells, must approximate more closely to the supposed glomerular transudate, containing the same proportion of salts as the blood plasma, the more rapidly the formation of the glomerular transudate takes place: *i. e.* the quicker the flow of urine the more nearly must its composition, reaction, and osmotic pressure resemble those of the blood serum.

(3) The total quantity of solids excreted in any given time must be increased with any increase in the urinary flow. For, whatever the activity of the tubules, the glomeruli must blindly turn out a certain proportion of solids with every cubic centimetre of fluid that they form.

We may deal first with the influence of alterations in the renal blood supply on the flow of urine. Ligature of the renal vein diminishes and soon stops the flow altogether. Since this procedure must cause a large rise of pressure in the capillaries of the kidney, this result was regarded by Heidenhain as disproving any possibility of the glomerular process being of the nature of a filtration. At any given time however, the glomeruli contain but little blood. With total cessation of the renewal of this blood, their contents will rapidly become so concentrated that they will be little more than a mass of red corpuscles. No filtration of water and salts can take place unless there is a continual renewal of the fluid on the blood side of the filter.

On the other hand, alterations in the blood supply to the kidney, determined by changes on the arterial side, have pronounced effects on the amount of urine formed. The pressure in the glomerular capillaries and the rate of flow through these capillaries can be increased in either of two ways:

(*a*) By increase of the driving force, *i. e.* the general blood pressure;

(*b*) By a diminution of the resistance to the flow of blood through the kidneys, as by dilatation of the vessels of this organ.

The blood flow through the kidney can be investigated, either by recording the total volume of this organ, or by determining the amount of blood which leaves it through the renal vein, according to the methods described in Chapter xiii.

It is necessary at the same time to take a record of the arterial blood pressure by means of a mercurial manometer. It is evident that an expansion of the kidney may be caused by a rise of general arterial pressure or, the latter remaining constant, by a dilatation of the kidney vessels; and, conversely, a fall of kidney volume may be due either to a fall of general

blood pressure or to a constriction of the renal blood vessels. By taking these two records it is possible to tell whether a given increase of blood flow through the organ is of local or of general causation, *i. e.* is active or passive. Thus the volume of the kidney gives us an indirect clue to the pressure in and the flow through the kidney vessels. The flow through the vessels can be determined directly either by a cannula in the inferior vena cava, all veins other than the renal being clamped, or by Brodie's method, already described (p. 1037).

The results of the experiments carried out by these methods can be represented in the following tabular form:

Procedure	General blood pressure	Renal vessels	Kidney volume	Urinary flow
Division of spinal cord in neck	Falls to 40 mm.	Relaxed	Shrinks	Ceases
Stimulation of cord	Rises	Constricted	Shrinks	Diminished
Stimulation of cord after section of renal nerves	Rises	Passively dilated	Swells	Increased
Stimulation of renal nerves	Unaffected	Constricted	Shrinks	Diminished
Stimulation of splanchnic nerve	Rises	Constricted	Shrinks	Diminished
Division of one splanchnic nerve:				
(*a*) In dog	Unaffected	Dilated	Swells (?)	Increased
(*b*) In rabbit	Falls	Relaxed	Shrinks (?)	Diminished
Plethora	Rises	Dilated	Swells	Increased
Hæmorrhage	Falls	Constricted	Shrinks	Diminished

It will be seen that in every case, where an increased blood flow attended with a rise of blood pressure in the glomerular capillaries is brought about, the urinary flow is at the same time increased.

Another factor, altering the ease with which filtration of watery fluid and salts would take place through the glomerular capillaries, would be the composition of the blood plasma. Any dilution of this plasma must render filtration more easy, while a concentration would make it more difficult. As a matter of fact hydræmia, and especially hydræmic plethora caused by injection of normal saline into the circulation, evoke an increased flow of urine. A smaller effect is produced by injection of defibrinated blood, and if the blood has been previously concentrated by depriving the animals of water, there may be little or no increase in flow, in consequence of the high osmotic pressure of the proteins of the plasma injected.

If the glomerular function is that of mere filtration, we should expect that the more rapidly the process occurs, the more nearly would the urine which is turned out into the ureters resemble the blood plasma in composition, reaction, and osmotic pressure, since the glomerular filtrate hurried through the tubules would have very little time to undergo any changes resulting in its concentration. If, on the other hand, the diuresis produced by salt or sugar solutions is to be ascribed to a stimulation of the renal

epithelium, the differences between blood plasma and urine should be greatest at the height of the diuresis, when the concentration of the specific stimulant is also at its highest. The following experiment shows that the more rapid the secretion of urine, the more closely does its concentration, as indicated by its osmotic pressure and depression of freezing-point (Δ), approximate that of the blood plasma.

A dog received 40 grm. of dextrose dissolved in 40 c.c. of water. The following Table represents the relative concentrations of urine and blood serum at different stages in the diuresis thereby produced :

Time	Urine	Rate of flow	Δ of urine	Δ of blood-serum
11.30–12	10 c.c.	3·3	2·360	0·625 (at 12.0)
From 12.0 to 12.7 injected 40 grm. dextrose into jugular vein				
12.7 –12.15	35 c.c.	45	1·210	—
12.16–12.20	20 c.c.	50	0·975	0·700 (at 12.16)
12.20–12.30	52 c.c.	52	0·835	—
12.30–12.40	45 c.c.	45	0·825	0·700 (at 12.30)
12.40–12.50	22 c.c.	22	0·830	0·675 (at 12.40) 0·675 (at 12.50)

A still closer approximation of the concentration of the urine to that of the plasma was obtained by Galeotti in some experiments in which the modifying influence of the tubular epithelium on the glomerular transudate had been prevented by poisoning the animal with corrosive sublimate, which causes destruction of the epithelium but is said to leave the glomeruli intact.

Since the glomerular transudate must have a concentration approximately identical with that of the blood plasma, it would be impossible for a urine formed by mere filtration to have a concentration less than that of the blood plasma. It is however of frequent occurrence that, after copious potations of tea or light beer, urine is passed with an osmotic pressure and a molecular concentration considerably below that of the blood. In one case Dreser obtained a urine with a freezing-point of $\Delta = 0{\cdot}16°$ C., and the same result has been obtained on one or two occasions when the diuresis has been produced by the administration of caffeine. If we assume that this hypotonic fluid is formed by the glomeruli, we must at once give up any idea of the process in these structures being essentially one of filtration. But the fine adaptation of the kidney to slight changes in the composition of the blood is apparently an endowment of the tubular epithelium; and in those cases where large quantities of hypotonic urine are passed, there is not at any time any appreciable change either in the composition of the blood or in its total volume. Water is absorbed from the alimentary canal and is almost immediately excreted by the kidneys. When we attempt to produce the same effect by infusion of large quantities of water or hypotonic solutions into the blood stream, we get a flow of urine apparently determined entirely by the circulation through the kidney and having a concentration not inferior to that of the blood. The passage of hypotonic urine

can be ascribed to a modification of the glomerular transudate as it passes through the tubules, a modification which may be due either to the absorption of salts from the fluid, or to a secretion of water or extremely dilute salt solution by the cells of the tubules themselves. Possibly both processes are involved.

Certain other observations accord with our hypothesis that in Bowman's capsule a fluid is transuded having the same molecular concentration as blood plasma, and therefore considerably less concentrated than normal urine. Ribbert succeeded in extirpating the whole of the medullary portion of the kidney in the rabbit, leaving the cortex intact, and found in this case that during the survival of the animal the urine passed was much more dilute than normal. In cases where, while the glomeruli remain intact, there is destruction of the tubular epithelium either in consequence of disease or, as in Galeotti's experiments, as a result of poisons, we are accustomed to obtain a dilute copious urine; and the continual passage of such urine is in man regarded as a sign of one form of renal disease.

The experimental facts which we have passed in review do not therefore negative the view that the glomerular epithelium plays the part of a passive filter in the formation of urine, and that the energy of the process by which 'urine' is produced in Bowman's capsule is entirely furnished by the heart in driving the blood at a high pressure through the glomerular capillaries.

It is important however to remember that, however passive it may be in the formation of urine, the filtering membrane is composed of living cells, which may alter and lose their powers of filtration or their powers of retaining the colloid constituents of the blood plasma under any influences which impair their vitality. Thus obstruction of the renal artery for half a minute may suppress the formation of urine in the kidneys for half to several hours, and the urine, when again formed, is found to contain coagulable protein ('albumin') which can be shown to have transuded through the glomerular epithelium. The filtering properties of the membrane may be impaired to a lesser degree by slowing the circulation of the blood through the kidneys. In the venous congestion of heart disease, the presence of albumin in the urine is of frequent occurrence. The same effect on the permeability of the epithelium may be produced by many kinds of poisons, mineral or microbial, circulating in the blood.

FUNCTIONS OF THE RENAL TUBULES

Whatever the nature of the glomerular activity, it is evident that the multiform epithelium of the tubules may alter the glomerular transudate, either by the absorption or by the secretion of water or solid constituents. We may deal with the evidence for the occurrence of these two processes separately.

SECRETION BY THE RENAL TUBULES. Although it is impossible to collect the secretion of the glomeruli apart from that of the tubules, the arrangement of the blood vessels in certain animals enables us to influence separately the circulation to these two parts of the kidney. The amphibian kidney receives a blood supply from two sources. A number of renal

arteries leaving the aorta enter the kidney and supply the whole of the glomeruli, the vasa efferentia from which pass, as in the mammalian kidney, into the intertubular capillaries. These are also supplied with blood of venous character by the renal portal vein. If all the renal arteries be divided or ligatured, the glomeruli, as was shown by Nussbaum, are entirely cut out of the circulation, though the tubules continue to receive venous blood through the renal portal vein. Nussbaum stated that ligature of all the renal arteries caused cessation of the urinary secretion, which could be reinduced by injection of urea. He concluded that urea with water was secreted by the tubules, whereas peptone, sugar, and hæmoglobin were turned out by the glomeruli. Beddard showed that these results of Nussbaum must have been due to the fact that he had not obstructed the whole of the renal arteries. One or two of these small vessels will suffice to supply blood to a considerable number of the glomeruli. After *complete* obstruction of the arteries, no urinary flow could be induced even with subcutaneous injection of urea. But the cutting off of the arterial blood supply from the tubules caused a rapid destruction of the tubular epithelium, so that the result of the experiment could not be taken as negativing the possibility of this epithelium having, when in a normal state of nutrition, some secretory power. He therefore carried out, with Bainbridge, another series of experiments of the same description, in which the frogs, after ligature of the renal arteries, were kept in an atmosphere of pure oxygen. Under these circumstances sufficient oxygen diffused into the blood of the renal portal vein to maintain an adequate supply of this gas to the tubules. No desquamation of the epithelium resulted, and injection of urea produced a small flow of urine even when, by subsequent injection of the blood vessels, it was proved that every glomerulus had been cut out of the circulation.

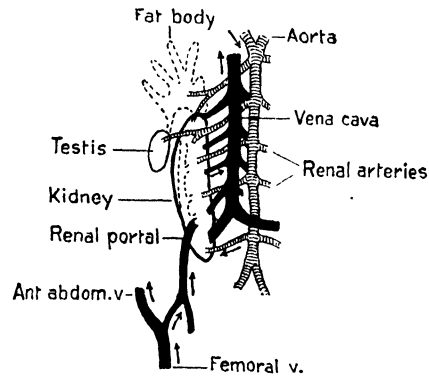


FIG 546. The vascular supply to the kidney in the frog.

In the cells of the convoluted tubules various kinds of granules and of vacuoles may be distinguished. Gurwitsch divides these vacuoles into three classes:

(1) Large granules staining densely with osmic acid, and probably rich in lecithin.

(2) Smaller very numerous granules consisting of some form of protein material.

(3) Large vacuoles lying close to the free margins of the cells, whose contents do not undergo coagulation with the ordinary fixing reagents, and therefore are free from protein, fat, or mucin. These vacuoles are especially marked in kidneys which are secreting at a great rate, in consequence of the injection of saline diuretics or of large quantities of normal salt solution. They have been regarded as excretory vacuoles, and as containing water or saline fluids which have been collected by the cells and are being passed on by them to the lumen of the tubules.

In a secreting gland such as the parotid, there is a marked change in the appearance of the granules according as the gland is resting or actively secreting. No such changes have been discovered in the granules of the renal cells, and the vacuoles that have been described might be either in process of secretion or might be evidence of copious absorption of watery fluids from the lumen of the tubule.

As a rule it is impossible to trace any definite constituent of the urine on its way through the cells of the tubules. But if massive doses of uric acid in piperazin be injected intravenously into a rabbit, the kidneys, taken twenty to sixty minutes after the injection, present tubules full of uric acid concretions. In the medullary portion of the kidney this uric acid precipitate is confined to the lumen of the tubules, but in the convoluted tubules granules of uric acid are to be found in the epithelial cells, especially towards their inner border.

Under the same circumstances masses of uric acid crystals are also found in the connective tissues between the tubules. It is therefore impossible to be certain that the granules observed within the epithelial cells are in process of excretion or are being absorbed from the lumen. Modern methods have failed to substantiate the older observations as to the occurrence of uric granules under normal conditions in the cells of the convoluted tubules of the bird's kidney.

Heidenhain has attempted to throw light on the excretive functions of the kidney by studying the mechanism by means of which it excretes certain dyestuffs, such as sulphindigotate of soda ('indigo carmine'). If the indigo be injected into the veins, it is excreted in a concentrated form, both by the liver and by the kidney, so that the urine assumes a dark blue colour. If the animal be killed when the excretion of the pigment is at its height, and the kidneys be rapidly fixed with absolute alcohol (which precipitates the dyestuff), all parts of the kidney present a blue colour, which is especially marked in the medulla. Under these circumstances the urine, which is being excreted by the glomeruli, rapidly carries down the dyestuff, wherever it may be turned out, into the tubules of the pyramids. In order to discover the exact locality of the cells involved in its excretion, we must stop the glomerular transudate by some means or other. This stoppage of the urinary flow can be effected in two ways, viz. by section of the spinal cord in the neck, so as to reduce the blood pressure to about 40 mm. Hg., *i. e.* below the minimum necessary for the production of urine, or by cauterising portions of the surface of the kidney by means of silver nitrate. If the indigo be injected into the veins after section of the cord, and the animal be killed half an hour later, and the kidneys fixed with absolute alcohol, they are found to be of a bright blue colour, although no urine has been secreted. On cutting into the kidneys the colour is seen to be confined to the cortex, and on making microscopic sections granules of the pigment are found within the lumen and in the epithelial cells of the convoluted tubules. If the kidneys have been cauterised, the stain is confined to the convoluted tubules of the cortex only under those areas which have been cauterised, and where the glomerular functions have been abolished.

All these appearances are susceptible however to another explanation. If indigo carmine is turned out by the glomerulus it will be so dilute that unless very large doses are injected the glomerulus will not be stained. As the glomerular transudate descends the tubules it undergoes concentration. The precipitation of the dyestuff in the tubules may be simply a result of this concentration, and the granular deposit in the cells may be evidence not of secretion but of absorption of the dyestuff by the cells. In fact we must acknowledge that the evidence for secretion by the cells of the convoluted tubules is very defective. Since all the microscopic appearances observed after the injection of dyestuff are susceptible of two explanations, there remains only the experiment of Nussbaum, as repeated by Bainbridge and Beddard, as evidence of secretion on the part of the tubular epithelium; and this evidence would lose its weight if one or two glomeruli in the operated kidney still received some blood supply, even though they failed to be injected with the injection mass used at the end of the experiment for controlling the completeness of occlusion of the renal arteries.

ABSORPTION BY THE RENAL TUBULES. The experiments of Ribbert, mentioned above, in which removal of the medullary portion of the kidney led to the formation of an increased quantity of a more watery urine, points to the possession by the tubules of a power of absorbing water. We have other evidence that this power of resorption is not confined to water, but may affect also the dissolved constituents of the glomerular transudate. It was pointed out by Meyer that, if two salts such as sodium sulphate and sodium chloride were present at the same time in the glomerular transudate, any process of resorption should affect chiefly the more diffusible salt, namely, sodium chloride. Such a differential resorption would account for the much greater diuretic power of sodium sulphate as compared with sodium chloride. In certain experiments Cushny produced a diuresis by the injection of equal parts of equivalent NaCl and Na_2SO_4 solutions into the veins of a rabbit. An increased flow of urine was produced which lasted two hours and a half. The chlorides of the urine rose with the diuresis and reached their maximum at the height of the urinary flow. They then sank, and in some experiments had practically disappeared from the urine towards the end of the observation. The concentration of the sulphates however continued to rise in the urine to the end of the experiment. Thus in the first of two identical experiments, when the rabbit was killed at the height of the diuresis, the serum contained 0·547 per cent. chlorine and 0·259 per cent. sulphate, while the urine contained 0·372 per cent. chlorine and 0·546 per cent. sulphate. In the second, in which the rabbit was killed when the rate of the urinary flow had considerably diminished, the serum contained 0·493 per cent. chlorine and 0·191 per cent. sulphate, while the urine contained ·094 per cent. chlorine and 2·0 per cent. sulphate. These results are illustrated in Fig. 547.

The difference between the two salts can be made still more striking if the process of secretion be slowed by increasing the pressure within the tubules by partial obstruction of one ureter. Thus in one experiment,

where diuresis was produced by the injection of 30 c.c. of a solution containing 5·85 per cent. NaCl + 14·2 per cent. Na_2SO_4, the right ureter was partially clamped so as to make the right kidney secrete against a pressure of 31 mm. Hg. The following results were obtained:

		Urine c.c.	Cl. grm.	SO_4 grm.
4.37 till 4.47	Left kidney	24	0·0809	0·1080
	Right kidney	8	0·0142	0·0667
	Difference (absorption)	16	0·0677	0·0413

We must conclude that the tubular epithelium possesses the power of modifying the glomerular transudate, not only by the absorption of water but also by the absorption of dissolved constituents, and that the relative

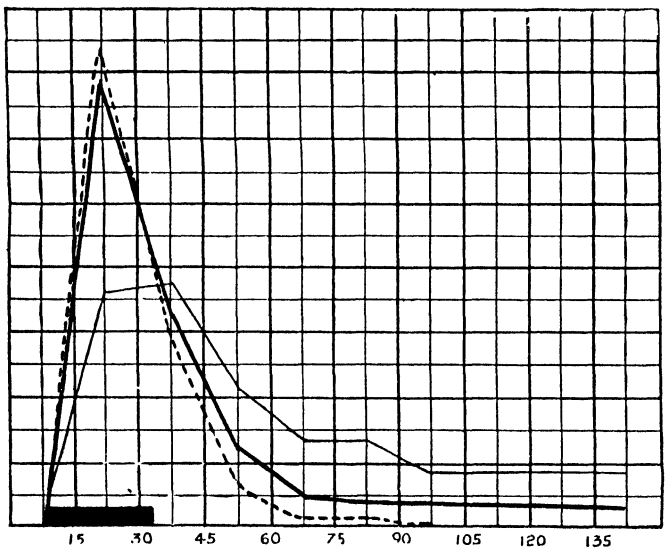


FIG. 547. Curves showing excretion of urine (thick line), of sulphate molecules ($\frac{SO_4}{96}$, thin line), and of Cl molecules ($\frac{Cl}{35·5}$, dotted line), after injection of 50 c.c. of a solution containing 1·775 grm. Cl and 4·8 grm. SO_4 per 100 c.c. The black line along the base marks the duration of the injection. (CUSHNY.)

permeability of the cells to the constituents is at any rate one factor in determining the substances absorbed. It is not however the only factor. The function of the kidney is to preserve the normal constitution of the body fluids by turning out those substances which are abnormal or present in too great an amount. The behaviour of the tubule cells with regard to any given substance will therefore depend to a certain extent on the previous nutritive history of the body.

If for instance, in consequence of the administration of sodium chloride

in large quantities to the animal during the few days preceding the experiment, the body is overloaded with this salt, it becomes an abnormal constituent and the kidney secretes a urine far richer in sodium chloride than is the blood plasma. Moreover, when diuresis is produced in such an animal by the injection of equivalent quantities of sodium chloride and sodium sulphate, there is no diminution of the NaCl in the urine towards the end of the diuresis, but its percentage rises steadily as the rate of urinary flow diminishes. On the other hand, a total deprivation of sodium chloride extending over several days, although not altering to any large extent the percentage amount of this salt in the blood plasma, leads to a total disappearance of the salts from the urine, the whole of the sodium chloride present in the glomerular transudate being absorbed on its way through the urinary tubules.

It has been suggested that the effects of certain diuretics on the kidney, such as caffeine, diuretine, or theocine, may be largely conditioned not so much by their influence on the glomerular circulation as by a paralytic effect on the absorptive functions of the tubules. According to Loewi, on injection of caffeine or diuretine, the increase of total amount of urine is not accompanied by any diminution in the percentage amount of NaCl. Perhaps however the strongest evidence in this direction is afforded by an experiment of Pototzky. A rabbit had been fed on a diet almost totally devoid of chlorides, and was therefore excreting a urine containing only ·08 per cent. NaCl. Under the influence of diuretine the urine was increased and the concentration of the NaCl rose to 0·64 per cent. The same increase in the percentage amount of sodium chloride in the urine has also been observed after the injection of theocine, which has therefore been specially recommended as a diuretic in cases of dropsy, where a diminution of the salt content of the body is a valuable means for the diminution of the dropsical fluid present in the tissue spaces.

THE RENAL MECHANISM

What conclusions can we draw from this mass of experimental data as to the functions of the kidney as a whole, and as to the part played by its various constituent elements in the secretion of urine? The amazing adaptability of its functions to the needs of the organism has been abundantly illustrated in the facts with which we have dealt. Its ordinary activity is determined by the production, as a result of the normal processes of metabolism, of soluble non-volatile substances in every cell of the body. These substances, together with the excess of water taken in with the food above that lost by respiration and cutaneous transpiration, are turned out by the kidney as urine. The activity of this organ must therefore be determined in the first place by chemical stimuli. If we accept a secretory function for the tubules, we may assume that the kidney reacts to the slightest deviation from normal of the blood composition in two directions:

(1) Under the influence of certain substances, such as urea, uric acid,

or water, the cells of the convoluted tubules may take up the substance, which is in excess, from the surrounding lymph and accumulate it in vacuoles, which are discharged on the inner surface of the cells into the lumen of the tubules.

(2) Besides this specific secretory activity of the cells of the convoluted tubules, the tubules as a whole are certainly endowed with the power of absorbing both water and dissolved substances from the fluid in their lumen. Whether this absorptive power is limited to the cells of Henle's loop, as was first suggested by Ludwig, or occurs also in the cells of the convoluted tubules, as might be imagined from the close analogy between the structure of these cells and that of the intestinal epithelium, we have not sufficient evidence to decide. We do know however that the quality of the absorption is strictly regulated according to the needs of the organism, so that the constituents which are precious are reabsorbed for service in the body, while those which are in excess or are of no value to the organism are allowed to pass out into the ureters. The process of resorption is indeed, as is shown by Cushny's experiments, largely dependent on the physical qualities of the substances undergoing absorption, and especially on the permeability of the renal cells to these substances. The physical conditions are however subordinated to the physiological, so that a salt so diffusible as potassium iodide is left in the fluid, while sodium chloride may be reabsorbed in large quantities.

The necessity for the endowment of the tubular epithelium with a resorptive function as well as any secretory function it may possess is determined by the presence at the beginning of the tubule of a mechanism—the glomerulus, devoid of the fine selective power or chemical sensibility which characterises the cells of the convoluted tubules. The production of urine by the glomerulus is regulated entirely by the pressure and velocity of the blood through its capillaries and by the colloid content of the blood plasma. We may assume that in Bowman's capsule there is under normal conditions a constant production of a fluid, free from protein but having the same crystalloid concentration as the blood plasma. With any rise of general blood pressure the amount of this transudate is increased; with any fall it is diminished. The small qualitative changes, which are constantly occurring in the blood as the result of the taking of food or the activity of different organs, probably produce but little effect on the amount of glomerular fluid. Only indirectly, as the result of these events on the general blood pressure, or possibly in consequence of the production of substances having a vasodilator effect on the renal vessels, will the amount of the urine turned out by the glomeruli be affected. These structures therefore have the twofold function of regulating the total amount of circulating fluid and of providing an indifferent fluid which will, so to speak, flush the kidney tubules and carry down any constituents excreted in a concentrated form by the cells of these tubules. The constant production of a glomerular transudate might result, especially in terrestrial animals, in the loss to the organism of water or, under certain nutritive conditions, of substances indispensable

as normal constituents of the serum, such as sodium chloride, which could not be made good at the expense of the food. It is for this reason that an absorptive mechanism sensitive to and reflecting the nutritive condition of the whole body, especially as concerns water and salts, should be present in the tubules.

According to Cushny, the whole of the changes by which the glomerular transudate is transformed into urine may be ascribed to processes of absorption occurring in the tubules, there being no need to assume the possession of any secretory functions by this part of the kidney. He would indeed deny any fine discrimination to the kidney, since the fluid absorbed is always the same whatever the needs of the organism at the moment. In the following Table are given the changes which must be effected in the glomerular transudate in order to transform it into urine.

	67 litres plasma contain		62 litres filtrate contain in all	61 litres re-absorbed fluid contain		1 litre urine contains	
	Per cent.	Total		Per cent.	Total	Per cent.	Total
Water . .	92	62 l.	62 l.	—	61 l.	95	950 c.c.
Colloids . .	8	5360 gr.	—	—	—	—	—
Dextrose .	0·1	67 gr.	67 gr.	0·11	67 gr.	—	—
Uric Acid .	0·002	1·3 „	1·3 „	0·0013	0·8 „	0·05	0·5 gr.
Sodium . .	0·3	200 „	200 „	0·32	196 „	0·35	3·5 „
Potassium .	0·02	13·3 „	13·3 „	0·019	11·8 „	0·15	1·5 „
Chloride .	0·37	248 „	248 „	0·40	242 „	0·6	6·0 „
Urea . .	0 03	20 „	20 „	—	—	2·0	2·0 „
Sulphate .	0 003	1·8 „	1·8 „	—	—	0·18	1·8 „

It will be seen that, while there is no absorption of urea and of sulphate, the whole of the dextrose is absorbed, a portion of the uric acid and the greater part of the sodium, potassium and chloride. The absorbed fluid thus resembles strongly Locke's fluid. According to this view the constituents of the glomerular transudate, *i. e.* the diffusible constituents of the blood plasma, may be divided into two classes, 'threshold substances' and 'no-threshold substances,' the former being only excreted in the urine so far as they exceed a certain threshold value, while the others are excreted in proportion to their absolute amount in the plasma. Thus, of the threshold substances, the dextrose of the plasma is normally below the threshold, and is therefore not present in normal urine. The sodium chloride also comes within the threshold class, but its threshold is more frequently exceeded in normal conditions, and the excess is then eliminated. When the sugar of the plasma rises, as in diabetes, to 0·3 per cent., it appears in the urine and then undergoes concentration just as urea does. Thus, so far as concerns the cells of the tubules, the no-threshold substances are not absorbed and must all escape by the ureter, whereas the threshold bodies

are absorbed in different proportions determined by their normal values in the plasma. The tubules absorb from the glomerular filtrate a slightly alkaline fluid containing sugar, amino-acids, chlorides, sodium and potassium in approximately the same proportions as they are present in normal plasma. "Thus the tubules, out of the glomerular filtrate, return to the blood the fluid best adapted for the tissues, and allow the rest to escape. If the plasma is too rich in sugar or chloride, the filtrate also contains those substances at or above the threshold value. The tubules however return them at the optimal or threshold concentrations and the remainder passes into the ureters. If much water has been ingested and the filtrate is correspondingly dilute, the subtraction of the optimal solution leaves the excess water in the urine along with the urea and other waste products" (Cushny).

The power of absorption possessed by the cells of the tubules is not indefinitely large, and the urine can therefore never exceed a certain concentration at which its osmotic pressure just equals the absorptive power of the cells. This limiting concentration differs in different animals, the cat being able to absorb against a resistance of fifty to sixty atmospheres, while the human kidney cannot concentrate against a resistance of more than twenty-five atmospheres. The presence of any inabsorbable substance in the glomerular fibrate, *e.g.* urea, sodium sulphate, or phosphate, must therefore limit the absorption owing to the osmotic resistance they offered to the absorptive powers of the cells. These substances will therefore act as diuretics. In the same way the threshold substances will act as diuretics, provided that they are present in the plasma in proportions above the plasma, so that they can no longer be absorbed by the cells of the tubules. It has been objected by Heidenhain and others to this view that, if we exclude the occurrence of secretion by the cells of the tubules, we must assume that, of the seventy litres passing the glomeruli in the course of twenty-four hours, no less than sixty-eight litres must be reabsorbed in the tubules in the formation of two litres of urine. But Cushny points out that we have many analogies to this process in the body. Thus the liver throws into the duodenum 500 c.c. of fluid in twenty-four hours, all of which is reabsorbed with the exception of a little pigment. The urine of birds passes down the ureter as a clear fluid, but in the cloaca almost all the water is absorbed, leaving a thick paste of urine. Nor is the work out of proportion to the mechanism provided. In a cat fed on meat, 100 c.c. of urine contained as much solids as twelve litres of plasma filtrate, so that for twelve litres filtered through the glomeruli 11·9 were reabsorbed in the tubules. Since each kidney contains about 16,000 glomeruli, the amount of fluid filtered by each glomerulus would amount to about ·055 c.c. per hour. Of this more than ·0144 c.c. was absorbed in passing along 3 cm. of tubule, leaving less than 1 mg. per hour from each capsule to enter the collecting tubule (Cushny). This cannot be regarded as too severe a task either for the glomeruli or for the tubules.

ACTION OF DIURETICS

Attempts have been made to solve the problem of renal secretion by studying the action of diuretics, *i. e.* substances which, injected into the blood stream or absorbed from the alimentary canal, increase the secretion of urine. These attempts have generally ended in trying to explain the action of diuretics by the theory preferred by the experimenter. A large increase in the urinary flow can be brought about by the intravenous injection of saline diuretics such as sodium sulphate or potassium nitrate, of neutral crystalloids such as urea or sugar. An increased production of urine may be due to augmented glomerular transudation or to increased secretion, or to diminished absorption in the tubules; and in many cases both mechanisms may be involved.

Three factors might be concerned in promoting an increased glomerular transudation. These are:

(1) A rise of pressure in the glomerular capillaries.

(2) Acceleration of the blood flow through the capillaries.

(3) Diminution of the amount of proteins in the blood plasma.

When a concentrated solution of salt is injected into the circulation, the osmotic pressure of the plasma is raised and water passes from the tissue cells into the blood stream, in consequence of the osmotic differences between the blood and cells so induced. As a result the total volume of the circulating fluid is increased by the addition to it of water derived from the tissues, *i. e.* a condition of hydræmic plethora is set up, just as if a large bulk of normal saline fluid had been injected into the circulation. So long as this hydræmic plethora continues, so long is there a rise both in arterial and venous pressures and in the velocity of the circulating blood. The kidney placed in an oncometer shows a great increase in volume. While the plethora lasts there are mechanical conditions at work in the kidneys, *i. e.* rise of pressure, greater rate of flow, and diminished concentration of plasma—all of which would concur in producing an increased glomerular transudation. With certain salts, such as sodium chloride, the diuresis may be coterminous with the hydræmic plethora, but with other members of this class, such as grape sugar, the diuresis always outlasts the plethora, so that the continued augmentation in the secretion of urine leads to an actual concentration and diminution of the volume of the circulating blood, as is shown in Fig. 548. If the kidney be placed in an oncometer, it is found that the dilatation of the kidney outlasts the plethora, and comes to an end only with the cessation of the increased urinary flow. Since however increased secretion of urine involves dilatation of the tubules, and therefore swelling of the whole kidney, the rise of the oncometer during diuresis is no proof that there is still a greater circulation through the kidney. In fact, however much glomerular change may be concerned in the initial increase in the urinary flow, the terminal increase must be ascribed to the effects of the injected substances on the tubules. As we have already seen, every substance which is not absorbed by the tubules from the glomerular

filtrate must act as a diuretic, since it will oppose osmotic resistance to the absorbing powers of the cells. Thus the no-threshold substances, urea, and sodium sulphate, nitrate, and phosphate, will act as diuretics in any concentration. The threshold substances will act as a diuretic so long as their concentration in the plasma surpasses their normal threshold value.

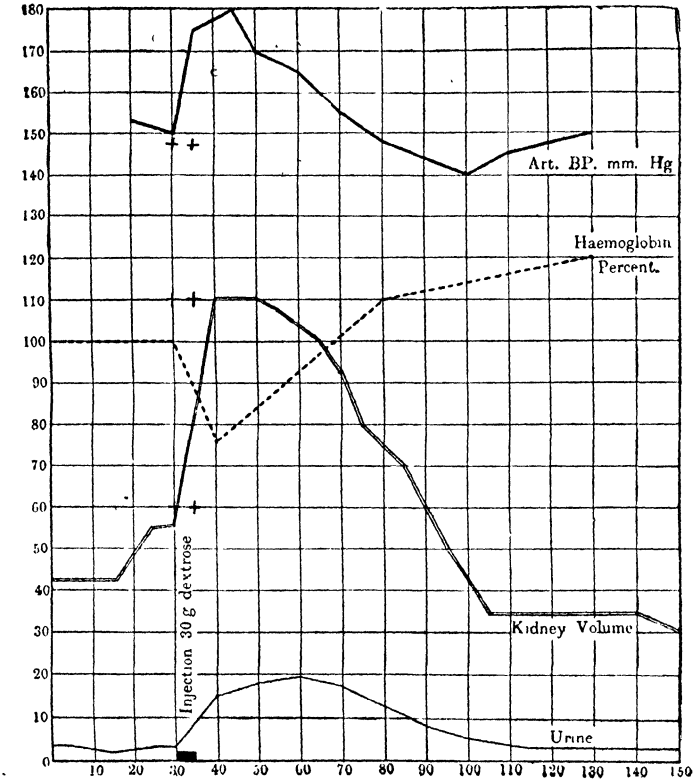


FIG. 548. A comparison of the effects of intravenous injection of 30 grm. glucose in concentrated solution on the arterial blood pressure, the concentration of the blood, the kidney volume, and the urinary flow. Abscissa = time in minutes.

With regard to the specific diuretics, such as caffeine, the question is not quite so clear. In most cases injection of caffeine in the rabbit brings about a dilatation of the kidney and a proportional increase in the secretion of urine. But cases have been recorded in which expansion of the kidney occurred without any increase in urinary flow, and, on the other hand, augmented urinary flow without any increase in the kidney volume or even in the rate of blood flow through the kidney (as determined by Brodie's method). The general rule however is that a greater rate of blood flow is obtained *pari passu* with the increased urinary flow; and a consideration of certain peculiarities in the renal circulation must prevent us from laying

too much stress on apparent exceptions to the rule. To the blood entering the kidneys by the renal arteries two ways are open. The blood may pass through the vasa afferentia, through the glomeruli and tubular capillaries, back to the renal vein. On the other hand, it may escape the glomeruli altogether, and pass through the vasa recta directly into the intertubular capillaries and so into the renal veins. It is a common experience, in injecting the blood vessels of the kidneys *post-mortem*, to find the renal arteries, intertubular capillaries, and veins filled to distension with the injection mass, but hardly any in the glomeruli. One must assume in such a case that there has been spasmodic contraction of the muscular coats of the vasa afferentia (cp. Fig. 549). The normal amount of blood might

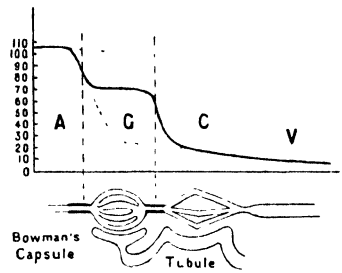


FIG 549 Diagram (after MORAT) to illustrate the effect of active changes in the vasa afferentia and efferentia on the pressure in the glomerular capillaries. If the vas afferens constricts, the pressure will be represented by the lower dotted line. On the other hand, constriction of the vas efferens would raise the pressure in the glomerulus till it almost equalled that in the renal artery, as is shown by the upper dotted line.

A, arteries; G, glomerular capillaries; C, tubular capillaries; V, vein.

therefore circulate through the kidney without any flowing through the filtering apparatus, *i. e.* the glomeruli. On the other hand, a dilatation of the afferent vessels and a slight constriction of the efferent vessels would cause a considerable rise of pressure in the glomerular capillaries, and a consequent increased transudation, without necessarily altering to any marked extent the total circulation of blood through the whole organ. The changes in the afferent and efferent vessels of the glomeruli are however beyond our control or powers of observation, so that it is impossible to devise at the present time any crucial experiment which might decide the nature of the process occurring in the glomeruli.

On the other hand, it seems probable that many diuretics—of which caffeine may be one—act by altering the activity of the tubules. If we accept the idea that the main function of these structures is that of secretion, we may assume that the diuretics increase their secretory power. It is more simple however to assume that any action these substances possess on the tubules is one of paralysis, complete or partial, of their powers of absorption. Thus the action of phlorhizin may be assumed to paralyse the absorptive powers of the tubular cells for glucose—*i. e.* to reduce glucose for this particular kidney to the state of a no-threshold substance. The glucose in the

glomerular transudate, in passing through the tubules, may thus be concentrated sixty to a hundred times. Since glucose is made in the body and supplied to the circulating blood in proportion to the needs of the body, so as to maintain its concentration in the plasma at a definite height, the loss of sugar in the urine will be continued, and the percentage in the plasma will not tend to diminish progressively with the increased secretion of urine, as would occur for example in the case of urea. We may assume that different diuretics have similar powers of paralysis on the absorptive mechanisms of the tubules, either general, or confined as in the case of phlorhizin to one or other of the normal constituents of the plasma.

SECTION III

THE PHYSIOLOGY OF MICTURITION

THE urine as it is formed passes through the ureters to the bladder, where it gradually accumulates, and is voided at intervals.

The ureters are muscular tubes lined by transitional epithelium. The muscular coat is composed of three layers of unstriated fibres, a middle circular coat lying between external and internal longitudinal coats. If the ureter be exposed in the living animal, contraction waves are seen to pass along its muscular coat from the pelvis of the kidney to the bladder, driving the contained fluid in front of them. The frequency of the contractions is increased by warming the ureter, and to a certain extent by distension, so that the waves are more frequent when the secretion of urine is profuse. The ureters enter the bladder at or near its base, at the two posterior angles of the region known as the trigonum. Their entrance is oblique, so that a valvular orifice is formed, which effectively prevents reflux of urine from bladder to ureter. Rhythmic waves of contraction are observed also in the excised ureters, when these are kept warm in normal saline solution. By Engelmann they were regarded as myogenic, since they were present in the middle third of the ureter, which he imagined to be entirely free from ganglion cells. As a matter of fact ganglion cells are found throughout the ureter, though in larger numbers at its two ends. The ureters are supplied with nerve fibres from the splanchnic nerves by way of the renal plexus, and at their lower ends from the hypogastric nerves. Stimulation of the latter as a rule increases the rhythm of the contraction presented by the lower end of the ureter. The splanchnic nerves have been stated to produce either acceleration or inhibition of the contractions at the upper end; their action is however uncertain. It is by the rhythmic advancing waves of contraction of the ureter that the urine is continuously passed on to the bladder, so that the pelvis of the kidney is kept empty of fluid whatever the position of the animal.

The bladder is lined by transitional epithelium, closely adherent to the underlying muscular coat. It is usual to describe in the latter three layers of muscular fibres:

(1) An outer layer composed of bundles running longitudinally from the neck of the bladder to the fundus, sometimes distinguished by the name of the *detrusor urinæ*. At the neck of the bladder these bundles send some fibres to be attached to the pubes as the pubo-vesical muscles. On the dorsal surface some bundles in the male pass on to the prostate and the

urerhra, while in the female they end in the tough connective tissue in the urethro-vaginal septum.

(2) The middle layer, which is the thickest of the three, is composed of fibres arranged circularly and forming a continuous layer.

(3) The inner layer is thin and incomplete, and is composed of anastomosing bundles of fibres with meshes in between them which are covered by the folds of the mucous membrane. The bundles of fibres run freely from one layer to the other, and there is no doubt that the name of *detrusor* ought physiologically to be applied to the whole of the three coats, which act as one in diminishing the capacity of the bladder. At the base of the bladder the structure of the wall is modified over the triangular region lying between the orifices of the ureters and of the urethra (the *trigonum*) by the differentiation here of fibres which serve as a sphincter and prevent the escape of urine. Over the trigonum the mucous membrane of the bladder is smooth and closely adherent to the subjacent muscular fibres, which themselves are much more closely packed than the rest of the bladder wall. From these muscular fibres the most important sphincter, the *sphincter trigoni*, is formed. Bundles of muscle fibres pass from the trigonal muscle obliquely forwards and downwards (the individual being considered in the erect posture), and form a loop around the orifice of the bladder, lying on the ventral side of the bladder below and quite distinct from the thick coat of circular fibres belonging to the bladder itself (ss, Fig. 550).

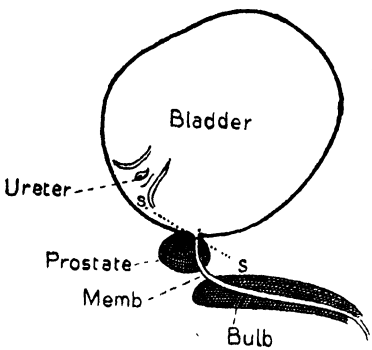


Fig. 550.

This sphincter is the most important mechanism for the retention of urine. If a catheter be passed into the urethra no urine escapes until its orifice has actually entered the bladder. The wall of the urethra is surrounded by circular muscular fibres which, by their tonic contraction, will also tend to prevent the escape of urine along the canal. This urethral muscle is strengthened by two sphincter muscles which are voluntary and composed of striated fibres. The chief one, which has been named by Kalischer the *sphincter urogenitalis* but is better known as the *compressor urethræ*, forms a flat ring around the second part of the urethra, extending in the male from the prostate to the bulb, where its function is taken up by the bulbo-cavernosus.

The bladder is therefore supplied with a powerful muscular wall, the contraction of which will cause its evacuation, and with sphincters of two kinds, one involuntary, the *sphincter trigoni*, at the upper neck of the bladder, and two voluntary, the *sphincter urogenitalis* and *bulbo-cavernosus* muscles, which can empty the lower parts of the urethra.

The nerve supply of the bladder (Fig. 552) is derived from two main sources, namely, from the upper four lumbar nerves through the sympathetic system, and from the second and third sacral nerves by means of

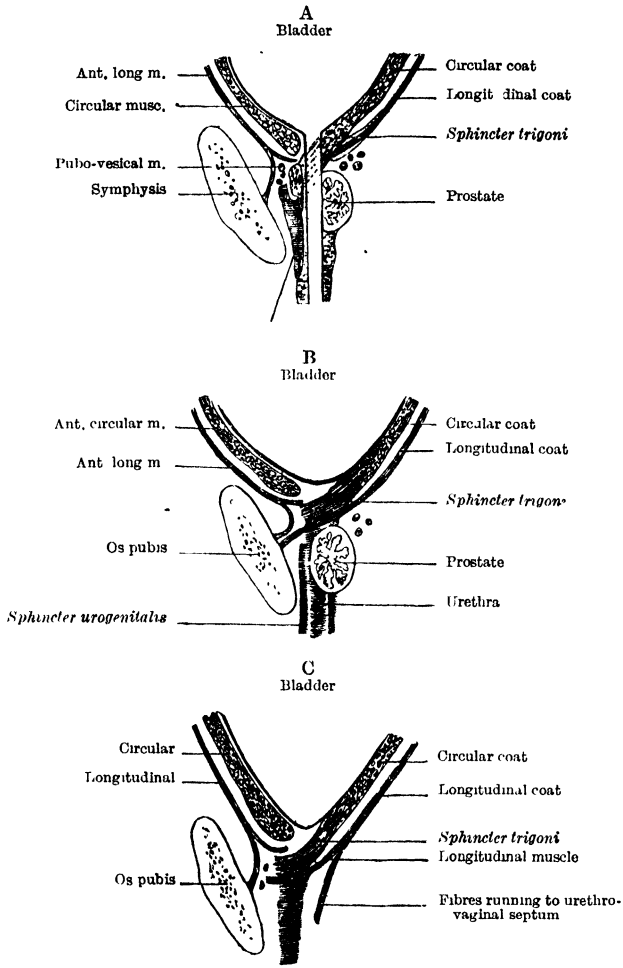


FIG. 551. Sagittal sections through neck of bladder. (METZNER after KALISCHER.)
A, in middle line (male); B, slightly to left of middle line (male); C, ditto (female).

the pelvic visceral nerves or *nervi erigentes*. The upper lumbar nerves send white rami communicantes to the lateral chain of the sympathetic, and thence to the collateral ganglia, which are grouped round the inferior mesenteric artery to form the inferior mesenteric ganglion. Most of the fibres end in this collection of ganglion cells, and a new relay of axons passes

by two main trunks, the hypogastric nerves, into the pelvis on each side of the rectum and ends in a plexus, the hypogastric plexus, at the base of the bladder. From this plexus fibres pass to the bladder wall. The pelvic visceral nerves are derived from the second and third sacral nerves. They make no connection with the sympathetic system, but pass directly to the

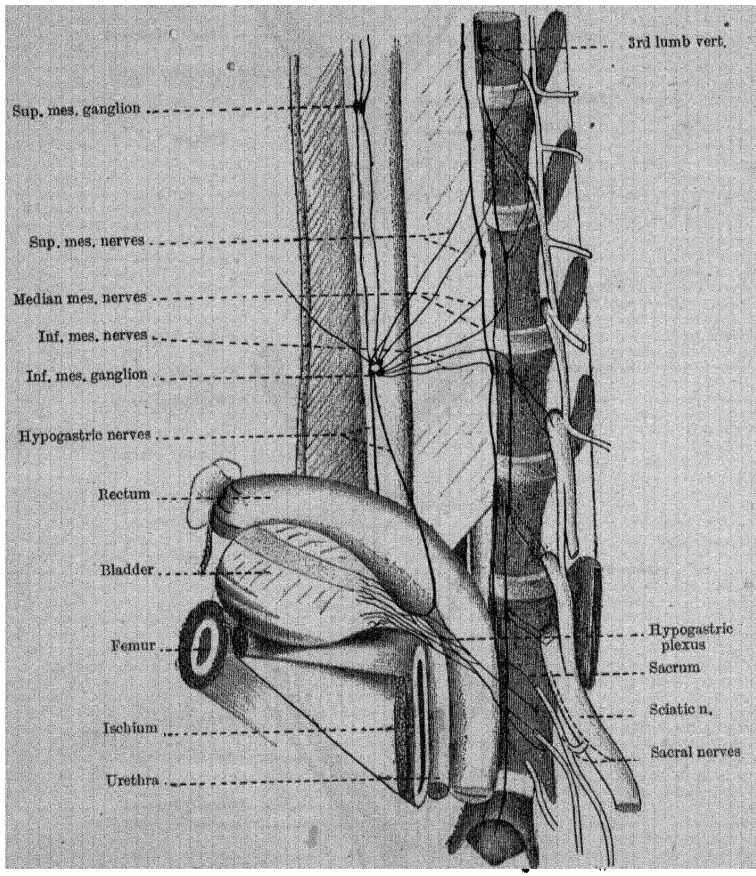


FIG. 552. Nerve supply to bladder of cat. (NAWROCKI and SKABITSCHEWSKY.)

hypogastric plexus and are carried with branches of this plexus to the neck of the bladder. The fibres do not run directly from the spinal cord to their ending in the bladder wall, but make connection with cells situated peripherally, partly in the hypogastric plexus, but chiefly in the walls of the bladder itself. Both sets of fibres supply also the rectum and the colon, and carry efferent impulses to the bladder. Afferent impulses from the bladder travel chiefly in the pelvic visceral nerves

THE FILLING OF THE BLADDER

Under normal circumstances the sphincters at the neck of the bladder are in a state of tonic contraction, presenting a resistance to the emptying of this organ which will vary according to their degree of contraction. Thus it requires a considerably greater pressure in the bladder to overcome the resistance of the sphincters during life than after death of the animal. In some cases after death they may permit the passage of urine when the pressure of the bladder is only about 20 mm. water, whereas in the normal animal the pressure has as a rule to be at least 160 mm. of water before any escape takes place. The urine therefore as it is secreted must accumulate and distend the bladder. The bladder wall reacts to a distending force in the manner which is characteristic of all muscular tissue, especially unstriated. An extending force applied to an unstriated muscle fibre has a double effect. In the first place, if the stretching force is applied very slowly, a considerable increase in length of the muscle may occur with the

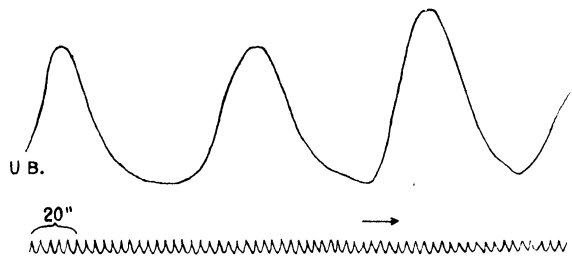


FIG. 553. Tracings of rhythmic contractions of urinary bladder. (SHERRINGTON)

application of a very small amount of force. If however the force be applied more rapidly, the sudden increase of tension acts as a direct excitant to the muscle, causing it to enter into contraction, which may be tonic or rhythmic. The effect of the entry of urine into the empty bladder on the tension in this organ will depend therefore on the rapidity with which the kidneys are secreting. Under normal circumstances micturition occurs in man when the intravesical pressure has risen to about 150 mm. water. Under these conditions the bladder will contain between 230 and 250 c.c. of urine. If however the secretion of urine has occurred very rapidly, the same pressure may be attained with a much smaller bladder content, and if the bladder be artificially distended by the injection of fluid through a catheter, 50 c.c. of fluid may suffice to raise the pressure to this level. As the urine is slowly secreted, the bladder wall at first gives to the incoming fluid, so that a considerable amount can be stored without any marked rise of pressure. Later on the pressure begins to rise more rapidly, and finally attains a pressure of between 120 and 150 mm. water. At this point the second effect of the stretching of the muscular wall makes its appearance. A manometer connected with the bladder shows a series of rhythmic contractions of the muscular wall (Fig. 553), each lasting about a minute, at first slight

in extent, but becoming more marked as the distension of the bladder augments. In a bladder entirely cut off from its connection with the central nervous system, these automatic rhythmic contractions gradually increase in force until one of them suffices to overcome the resistance presented by the tonically contracted sphincter. A partial emptying of the bladder therefore takes place, but the pressure falls below that necessary to overcome the resistance of the sphincter before the bladder has been quite emptied, so that there is always under these circumstances a certain amount of residual urine left in the bladder. This is the condition found in animals where the lower part of the spinal cord has been extirpated, or in man where the same part of the central nervous system has been destroyed as the result of accident or disease.

THE MECHANISM OF EVACUATION OF THE BLADDER

In the denervated bladder the factor finally causing partial evacuation is the gradual increase in the intravesical tension from the accumulation of fluid in this viscus. The same factor is prepotent in determining the onset of normal micturition in an animal with the nervous connections of its bladder intact. Apart from the control of the higher centres, micturition will take place each time that the tension in the bladder has reached a certain height, *i. e.* about 15 cm. water, the amount of fluid in the bladder at the time depending on the one hand on the rate at which the fluid has entered this organ from the ureters, on the other hand on the irritability of the bladder wall itself and of the nervous centres concerned with its motor innervation. The effect of the gradual accumulation of fluid and rise of tension is twofold. In the first place, it acts on the bladder wall, causing rhythmic contractions of ever-increasing intensity; in the second place, the mere stretching of the bladder originates impulses in the sensory nerve-endings in its wall, which are reinforced at every rise of tension caused by the rhythmic contractions. These impulses travel up to the spinal centres, and are summated until they result in a sudden discharge of efferent impulses of two kinds, namely:

(1) Motor impulses to the whole musculature of the fundus of the bladder (the detrusor in its widest sense);

(2) An inhibition of the tonic contraction of the sphincter. This inhibition may be determined by inhibitory impulses travelling to the sphincter and causing its relaxation, or by the central inhibition of the impulses normally going to the sphincter and maintaining its tonic contraction. The resultant of these two processes, the contraction of the detrusor and the relaxation of the sphincter, is a complete emptying of the bladder, and the act is completed by the contraction of the involuntary and voluntary muscles surrounding the urethra and causing complete expulsion of the contents of this tube.

THE INNERVATION OF THE BLADDER

ACTION OF THE PELVIC VISCERAL NERVES. In all animals excitation of the peripheral end of one pelvic visceral nerve causes a strong contraction of the same side of the bladder, involving all its coats and sometimes extending to a slight extent to the contralateral half of the bladder. When both pelvic nerves are stimulated simultaneously, contraction of both sides of the bladder causes a considerable rise of pressure in its interior (Fig. 554) which is always sufficient to overcome the resistance of the sphincter and to cause a complete emptying of the bladder. There is no doubt therefore that these nerves are the most important for the act of micturition. As to the action of these nerves however on the sphincter, the results of different experimenters are somewhat at variance. In the cat there seems to be no doubt that inhibition of the sphincter may result from

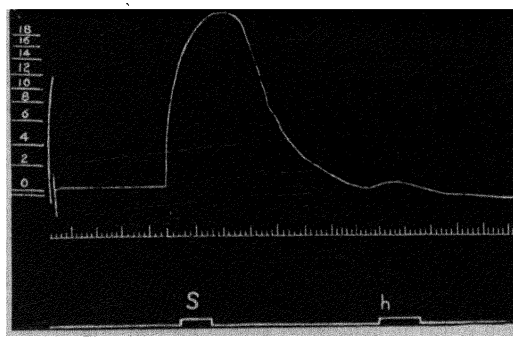


FIG. 554. Curve showing rise of pressure in the bladder caused by stimulation of S, sacral nerves; *h*, hypogastric nerves. (FAGGE.)
The scale indicates centimetres of water.

stimulation of the pelvic visceral nerves. On the other hand Fagge, working on the dog, found that, although micturition was excited by the stimulation of these nerves, the expulsion of urine did not occur until the intravesical tension had reached the point at which the resistance of the sphincter could be overcome without any alteration of its state of contraction, *i. e.* the point at which fluid injected into the bladder through the ureter began to escape from the urethra without stimulation of any nerves whatever.

Observations on man would support the view that an active relaxation of the *sphincter trigoni* is a necessary part of the act of micturition. Thus in experiments by Reyfisch a rigid catheter was introduced into the bladder, which was fully distended with fluid. On withdrawing the catheter until its opening lay just outside the bladder in the posterior urethra, the flow of urine stopped. The man however was able to micturate directly he was told to, and to stop again at will. It was impossible in this case for any of the urethral muscles to be concerned, since the rigid catheter

impeded their action. The relaxation of the sphincter must therefore be brought about by impulses descending the pelvic visceral nerves, which we may regard as motor to the detrusor and inhibitory to the sphincter of the bladder.

Section of the nerve on one side causes no abnormality in micturition. After three weeks, stimulation of the intact nerve causes contraction of the *whole* bladder, owing to the outgrowth of preganglionic fibres from the sound trunk to the decentralised ganglia of the opposite side (Elliott). Section of both nerves paralyses micturition, but power of partial evacuation of the bladder may return in a few weeks. If now the hypogastrics be cut, or even the sacral cord extirpated, the bladder is not completely paralysed, but its evacuation becomes unconscious and incomplete.

ACTION OF THE HYPOGASTRIC NERVES. These nerves, which are derived from the sympathetic system, show marked differences in their action, according to the animal which is the subject of investigation. In the dog the hypogastric nerves cause a strong contraction of the muscle fibres at the base of the bladder, especially of the trigonum and of the *sphincter trigoni*. When these nerves are stimulated simultaneously with the pelvic visceral nerves, a great rise of intravesical tension may be induced without any flow of urine taking place. In some cases prolonged stimulation of these nerves in the dog causes apparently an active relaxation of the sphincter of the bladder. On the other hand, in the rabbit and the cat these nerves cause an inhibition of the bladder wall. In other animals they may excite either contraction or relaxation (or both) of the detrusor. They always contain motor fibres to the sphincter of the bladder as well as to the constrictor fibres surrounding the urethra. Where this effect is tonic, micturition must be associated with a central inhibition of their tonic activity. On the other hand, the retention of urine and the distension of the bladder may be aided by a reflex dilatation of the bladder wall and a reflex constriction of the sphincter, in each case excited through these nerves. Normally therefore both sets of nerves are called into action. The hypogastrics play an especially active part during the accumulation of urine in the bladder, while the pelvic visceral nerves are necessary for the complete evacuation of the bladder which occurs at micturition.

THE CENTRAL CONTROL OF THE BLADDER

The nerve centre which presides over the tonus and contraction of the bladder is situated in the lumbo-sacral spinal cord. If this centre and its connections be intact, micturition may be carried out normally even after section of the cord in the dorsal region. The centre can be excited reflexly by stimulation of almost any sensory nerve, such as the sciatic or the fifth nerve. In many cases where, in consequence of obstruction to the passage of impulses from the higher parts of the central nervous system, micturition is delayed, this act may be excited by the application of cold or hot sponges to the perineum, and it is well known that almost any irritation

of the pelvic organs in children may give rise to reflex involuntary micturition.

In the adult the processes of retention and evacuation of urine are modified and controlled by voluntary effort. The normal action of the sphincter mechanism may be aided by the contraction of the perineal muscles which keep the urethra closed. The reflex process of evacuation may be set in motion by voluntary contraction of the abdominal muscles, by which the pressure in the bladder is increased and the normal sphincter action overcome. It is probable too that the individual has a certain degree of voluntary power over the unstriated muscles of the bladder, and that the contraction of the muscular wall may be directly augmented by impulses proceeding from the cortex to the upper part of the lumbar cord. This view is favoured by the fact that stimulation of the crus cerebri has been observed to cause contraction of the detrusor urinæ. In this experiment the abdomen was opened, so there could be no question of the contraction of the abdominal muscles.

CHAPTER XVIII

THE SKIN AND THE SKIN GLANDS

In all classes of animals the skin performs two functions. In the first place, it serves to protect the more delicate underlying parts from injury and from penetration or invasion by foreign organisms. In the second place, it serves as a sense organ, and is richly supplied with nerves, by means of which the activities of the body as a whole may be brought into relation with the changes going on in the environment and affecting the external surface of the body. In warm-blooded animals the skin plays an important part in the regulation of the body temperature, since the loss of heat from the body must occur almost entirely through its surface. In the present chapter we have to deal only with the first and third of these functions.

The development of the skin as an organ of protection shows wide modification in various classes of animals. Thus it may become the seat of formation of horny plates, as in the alligator; of poisonous glands, as in the toad; or of mucous glands, as in many varieties of fishes. In warm-blooded animals the development of hair from the deeper layers of the epidermis serves to diminish the loss of heat. Since the hair follicles are richly supplied with nerve fibres, the hairs act also as organs of sensation. In man, where the hairs are rudimentary except in certain localities, practically only this tactile function is retained. The external layer of the skin in man consists of a tough horny layer formed by the keratinisation of the external layers of cells of the epidermis. The skin is composed of two parts, the epidermis and the cutis (Fig. 555). The epidermis is a stratified squamous epithelium. The deeper layers form the *rete mucosum*, being soft and protoplasmic, while the superficial layers forming the cuticle are hard and horny. The most superficial layer of the rete mucosum is formed of flattened cells filled with granules of a material staining deeply with hæmotoxylin and eosin, known as *eleidin*. This layer is called the *stratum granulosum*. Immediately superficial to this layer is another in which the cells are indistinct. The cells are clear in section and form what is known as the *stratum lucidum*. These two layers evidently constitute the intermediate stages in the transformation of the cells of the rete mucosum into the horny scales which make up the superficial cuticle. The cutis or corium is composed of dense connective tissue, which becomes more open in texture in its deeper part, where it merges into the subcutaneous connective tissue. The most superficial layer of the corium is prolonged into minute papillæ over which the epidermis is moulded. These papillæ contain for the most part capillary vessels; a few contain touch corpuscles, special organs of tactile sensation. The blood vessels of the skin form a close capillary network immediately at the surface of the cutis, sending up loops into the papillæ. All parts of the skin, except the palms of the hands and the soles of the feet, are beset with hair follicles. The hair follicles are small pits which extend downwards into the deeper part of the corium, being downgrowths of the rete mucosum. The hair grows from a small papilla of cells at the bottom of the follicle, the part of the hair lying within the follicle being known as the hair root. The hair itself consists of long tapering, horny cells, the nuclei of which are still visible, though the cell substance has been almost entirely converted into keratin.

In order to keep the cuticle supple and preserve it from the drying effects of the atmosphere, it is kept constantly impregnated with a fatty material known as *sebum*. This material is formed by the sebaceous glands, which are distributed all over the surface of the skin wherever hair follicles are to be found, the mouths of the glands opening into the hair follicles. A sebaceous gland is a pear-shaped body, consisting of a secreting part and a short neck opening into the follicle. The gland proper is composed of a solid mass of cells. The outermost cells are flattened and generally show

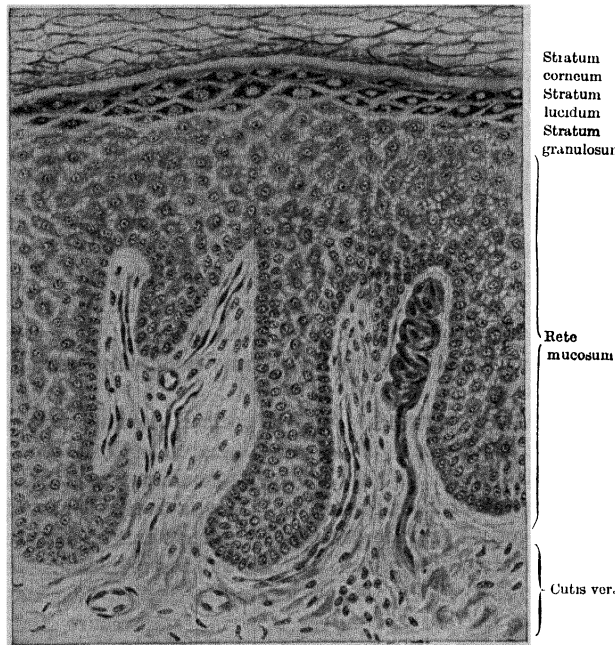


FIG. 555. Vertical section through the skin of the palmar side of the finger, showing two papillæ (one of which contains a tactile corpuscle) and the deeper layer of the epidermis. Magnified about 200 diameters. (SCHAFER).

signs of proliferation. The cells lying internal to these are much larger, and their protoplasm is transformed into a network, in the meshes of which are granules which may show the reaction of fat. Further inwards the protoplasmic network diminishes in amount, while the fatty granules increase in size, so that, in the lumen adjoining the duct, we find only a mass of cell débris and masses of fatty material. It has often been thought that the secretion of sebum depended simply on a fatty degeneration of the cells. The granules however, when they first appear, stain with acid fuchsin rather than osmic acid, and one must regard the formation of sebum as an act of true secretion, in which the secretory granules are gradually transformed into the special constituents of the sebum. For it must be noted that the sebum is not a true fat, nor does it correspond in composition with

the fat found in other parts of the body. It is true that it contains fatty acids, but these are for the most part in combination, not with glycerin but with higher alcohols, including cholesterol. A somewhat similar material, known as wool-fat or lanoline, may be extracted from wool as well as from the feather-glands of water birds, such as the goose and duck. It must be regarded rather as a wax than a fat. It presents many advantages over ordinary fat as a protective salve for the surface of the body. In the first place, it can take up a large amount, as much as 100 per cent., of water. In the second place, it is not attacked by micro-organisms, so that it does not tend to become rancid or to furnish a nidus for the growth of these organisms on the surface of the body.

The secretion of sebum is a continuous process, though it is probably quickened in conditions of increased vascularity of the skin. The extrusion of the products of secretion is determined by the presence of unstriated muscle fibres, the arrector pili, which pass from the surface of the cutis obliquely over the outer surface of the sebaceous gland. When these muscle fibres contract, the hair is erected and a certain amount of the sebum squeezed out on to the root of the hair and the surrounding skin. This contraction will occur whenever cold is suddenly applied to the skin. The contracted condition of all the muscles of the hair follicles is shown by the 'goose-skin' produced under such circumstances. There is no evidence that the secretion of sebum is in any way under the control of the central nervous system.

THE SWEAT GLANDS. Under normal circumstances in temperate climates the greater part of the water taken in with the food in the course of the day is excreted by the kidneys, a smaller proportion leaving by the lungs and by the surface of the skin. On an average we may say that about 700 c.c. are got rid of through the skin. The excretion of water by the skin is however mainly determined by the need for regulating the temperature of the body, so that the amount leaving in this way depends on the heat production of the body or on the external temperature, and is very little affected by alterations in the quantity of fluid drunk. A certain amount of water is constantly evaporated from the surface of the body as the so-called 'insensible perspiration.' If a man's body be enclosed in a vessel through which a current of air is passed, and the temperature of the air gradually raised, it will be noted that the amount of water given off rises slowly up to a certain degree and then rises rapidly. The sudden kink in the curve is due to the setting in of the activity of the sweat-glands, and we are therefore justified in regarding the insensible perspiration as being determined by evaporation of water from the surface of the cuticle itself, apart altogether from the sweat glands. These are distributed over the whole surface of the skin, and are especially abundant on the palm of the hand and on the sole of the foot. They are composed of single unbranched coiled tubes, which lie in the subcutaneous tissue and send their ducts up through the cutis, to open on the surface by corkscrew-like channels which pierce the epidermis. The secreting part of the tube consists of a basement membrane lined by a double layer of cells; the innermost of these are

cubical and represent the secreting cells proper. Between the secreting cells and the basement membrane is a layer of unstriated muscle fibres. The duct of the gland has an epithelium, consisting of two or three layers of cells with a well-marked internal cuticular lining, but there is no muscular layer.

The sweat formed by these glands is the most dilute of all animal fluids. As collected it generally contains epithelial scales and some admixture of sebum. After filtration it forms a clear colourless fluid of a specific gravity of about 1003. It contains over 99 per cent. of water. Among the solid constituents sodium chloride is the most prominent—it may contain from 0·3 to 0·5 per cent. of this salt. It is generally hypotonic as compared with the blood plasma. It may also contain small traces of protein. This constituent is especially marked in the horse. It generally contains also a small quantity of urea, which may become a prominent constituent in cases of renal disease. The quantity of sweat excreted in the day is very variable. The secretion is under the control of the central nervous system and is almost entirely adapted to the regulation of the body temperature. The nervous mechanism can be set into activity either centrally or reflexly. The most usual factor is a rise of the body temperature. If a man sit in a warm room, *e. g.* of a Turkish bath, the secretion of sweat commences as soon as the temperature of the body has attained a height of 0·5° to 1° C. above normal. In the case of muscular exercise the temperature will generally be found to be raised if it be taken at the instant that sweating has commenced. The effect of rise of temperature may however be either local or central, so that one arm enclosed in a hot-air bath may sweat while the rest of the body is dry. Under ordinary circumstances the central stimulation by the warm blood is the predominant factor. This is shown by an experiment of Luchsinger. In the cat sweating is to be observed only on the hairless pads of the front and hind paws. If one sciatic nerve be cut and the animal be placed in a warm chamber, sweating will commence as the temperature of the animal rises in the three intact paws, while the paw with the nerve cut will be quite dry. Sweating moreover, as has been shown by Kahn, may be induced in the cat's paws by warming the blood passing through the carotid arteries on its way to the brain, at a time when the temperature of the blood circulating through the rest of the body, including the paws themselves, has undergone no alteration. Sweating may also be aroused by asphyxia, and this result is found even in the spinal cat, *i. e.* after separation of the spinal centres from the medulla. The secretion of sweat resulting from stimulation of the sweat nerves, although generally associated with increased vascularity of the skin, is not in any way dependent thereon. Thus even in the amputated limb, stimulation of the sciatic nerve may cause the appearance of drops of sweat on the pad of the foot. If the sciatic nerve be stimulated in the intact animal, the secretion of sweat which is produced is associated with constriction of the vessels of the skin, due to simultaneous stimulation of the vaso-constrictor nerves running in the sciatic nerve.

As Langley has shown, the sweat nerves run entirely in the sympathetic

system. Leaving the cord by the white rami communicantes from the second dorsal to the third or fourth lumbar nerves, they pass into the sympathetic chain. Here the first relay of fibres ends in connection with the cells of the sympathetic ganglia, and a fresh relay of fibres, which are non-medullated, pass from the cells along the grey rami into the various spinal nerves, to be distributed to the whole surface of the skin. The secretion of sweat by the sweat glands may be roused by the injection of pilocarpine even after division of the sweat nerves, so that this drug must act peripherally on the glands. The action of pilocarpine, as well as the effects of artificial stimulation of the sweat nerves, is abolished by the administration of atropine.

THE GASEOUS EXCHANGES OF THE SKIN. In any animal with a thin moist skin, such as the frog, the absorption of oxygen and the excretion of CO_2 from the skin may be sufficient for the proper aeration of its blood, so that it may continue to live after the extirpation of its lungs. In man there is also a continuous output of CO_2 through the skin, but the amount leaving the body in this way is negligible compared with that which is exhaled through the lungs. The loss of CO_2 by the skin rises with increase of external temperature. Thus at a temperature of 29° to 33° C. the CO_2 output by the skin is about 0·35 grm. per hour, *i. e.* about 8·4 grm. in the twenty-four hours. When the external temperature rises above 33° C., the CO_2 output increases, so that at 34° it is doubled and at 38·5° it may amount to as much as 1·2 grm. per hour (Schierbeck). It is just at this temperature of 33° C. that a secretion of sweat begins to be noticeable, so it has been suggested that the increased CO_2 output may be due directly to the increased work and metabolism of the sweat glands during their activity.

ABSORPTION BY THE SKIN. In order to test the alleged influence of baths containing medicinal substances in solution, many experiments have been made to determine whether absorption is possible by the skin. It may be regarded as established that the uninjured skin is impermeable for watery solutions of salts or other substances. On the other hand, it is possible to produce a certain amount of absorption by the inunction of substances dissolved in fatty vehicles. Thus the administration of mercury is often carried out by the inunction of mercurial ointments, and the fact that mercurial salivation may be produced in these conditions shows that a certain amount of the mercury must have been absorbed. It is difficult to imagine that any appreciable amount of cod liver oil will be available for the nutrition of the infant when this substance is administered by rubbing it on the skin. On the other hand, the moist mucous surfaces, such as the conjunctiva or the mucous membrane of the respiratory passages, as well as raw surfaces of the skin, *e. g.* which have been deprived of their epidermal layer by the application of blisters, permit of the rapid passage of substances in watery or oily solution.

CHAPTER XIX

THE TEMPERATURE OF THE BODY AND ITS REGULATION

In dealing with the chemical changes in the body as a whole we have seen that the sum of the metabolic processes is associated with the evolution of heat. In man, under normal circumstances, while doing moderate work, the total energy requirements amount to about 3000 Calories. The whole of this is derived from the oxidation of the food, the combination of its

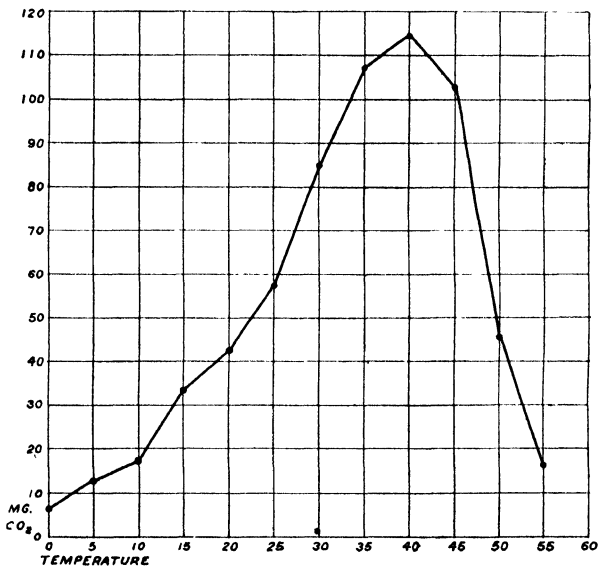


Fig. 556. Effect of temperature on the CO_2 output of a lupin seedling. Ordinates = milligrammes CO_2 per hour. Abscissæ = temperature in degrees Centigrade.

carbon and hydrogen with oxygen to form CO_2 and water, with the evolution of the corresponding amount of energy. Of this energy only a small proportion, on the average about one-twentieth, leaves the body as mechanical energy, the rest being evolved in the form of heat and being expended in the maintenance of the body temperature, or in the warming of the surrounding medium.

The evolution of heat is not confined to the higher animals, but is common to all living beings. It is very evident, for instance, in the germination of peas or barley. The atmosphere of a bee-hive is often ten degrees above that of the surrounding atmosphere. Whenever we can excite increased activity in an organ, we are able to show, except in the single case of the nerve impulse, that such activity is associated with the evolution of heat. This heat is derived from the chemical changes which proceed in the living cells. Since all chemical processes are quickened by rise of temperature, we should expect to find that the heat produced in the metabolic processes of organisms would tend in itself to quicken these processes. In most chemical reactions a rise of about 10° C. would increase the velocity of reaction from two and a half to three times, and the same rule is, within the limits of stability of living tissues, found to hold good for them also. The diagram (Fig. 556) shows the influence of temperature on the chemical changes in a lupin seedling, as measured by the output of CO_2 per hour per 100 grm. of plant. A marked increase in the rate of chemical decomposition is shown to follow a rise of temperature; but about 40° C. the rate of change is at an optimum, and thereafter rapidly declines, owing to the fact that the living tissues are being killed by the excessive temperature.

Hence in the animal organism we shall expect to find that the rate of the metabolism is also proportional to the temperature of the animal. This is universally the case whether we are dealing with warm-blooded or cold-blooded animals. In cold-blooded animals the temperature of the body, and therefore the rate of its metabolism and the amount of its heat production, is proportional to the external temperature (Fig. 557). The following Table gives the average CO_2 output per hour of five lizards placed in a chamber which could be maintained at varying temperature:

Temperature of bath	Temperature of lizards (average)	CO_2 produced in one hour
5·0° C.	5·5° C.	·0246
9·0° C.	9·2° C.	·0790
15·0° C.	15·2° C.	·0981
20·5° C.	20·4° C.	·1023
25·0° C.	24·5° C.	·1193
30·0° C.	29·3° C.	·1440
35·0° C.	34·8° C.	·1814
39·0° C.	38·5° C.	·5454

It might be thought that such a reaction in change of temperature would result in a vicious circle. Since the animal is continually producing heat and thus raising its temperature above that of its surroundings, one might expect to find that the higher the external temperature the greater would be the difference between this and the temperature of the animal, until finally the latter would rise to such a height that the animal would die of heat-stroke, its tissues being destroyed by the actual temperature attained. A certain protection is afforded to most cold-blooded terrestrial animals by the fact

that their surface is moist, and that with a rise of external temperature the rate of evaporation on the surface increases, so that the increase in the rate of cooling by evaporation more than corresponds to the rate of increase in the heat production, which would tend to raise the body temperature. Most of these animals however escape from any extreme rise of external temperature by burrowing underground or taking to the water, while in plants a rise of external temperature assists transpiration to such an extent that the temperature of the plant is generally several degrees below that of the surrounding atmosphere. The extreme variability in the metabolism of

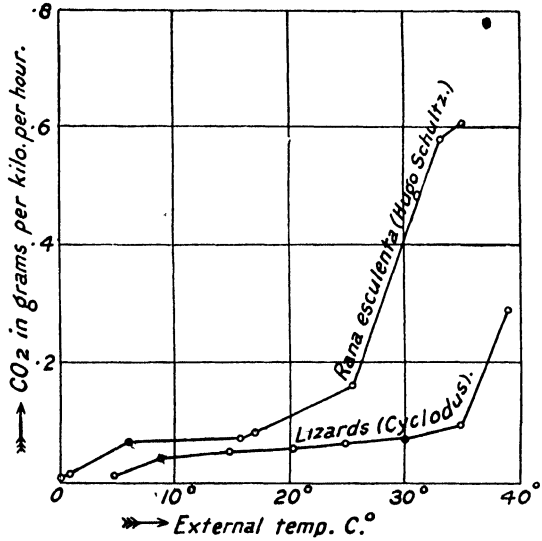


FIG. 557. Effect of alterations in the temperature of the surrounding medium on output of CO_2 in cold-blooded (poikilothermic) animals. (C. J. MARTIN.)

such animals implies a state of dependence of all the activities of the body on the environment, which would prevent the utilisation to the full of the available sources of energy. An animal whose metabolism was more or less independent of the surrounding temperature must have a great advantage over an animal liable to have his activities reduced and paralysed by a sudden spell of cold weather; this greater independence of the environment, which is characteristic of elevation of type, has been achieved by the warm-blooded animals including man. Such animals are often spoken of as *homoiothermic*, i. e. animals possessing a uniform temperature, in contradistinction to the cold-blooded animals, which are *poikilothermic* and possess a temperature varying with that of their surroundings.

Amongst the warm-blooded animals the body temperature may be very different according to the species. In birds it is generally from 39° to 40° C.; in mammals it varies from 35° to 40° C. The temperature of man varies within slight limits about 37° C. (98·4° F.).

THE DIURNAL VARIATIONS IN THE BODY TEMPERATURE

In any animal the seat of heat production, *e. g.* a contracting muscle, must be warmer than an inactive tissue, and this again than a tissue from which heat is being rapidly abstracted, such as the skin. Owing however to the rapidity of the circulation of the blood, the temperature of the internal organs can be regarded as approximately uniform. The temperature of man is usually taken in the mouth, rectum, or axilla. In the case of the mouth the temperature is liable to fluctuation with the rate of breathing, the mouth being cooled by the passage of the air through the nasal cavities. There is also probably loss of heat through the cheeks. In order to determine the temperature in this situation, the mouth should be kept shut for a few minutes and then the bulb of the thermometer inserted under the tongue, and the lips kept closed on the stem of the thermometer for five minutes. Except in cases where the cutaneous vessels are much dilated, the temperature of a thermometer in the axilla takes a considerable time to rise to that of a thermometer in the mouth; it should never be left less than ten minutes in this situation. The following Table represents the temperature of different parts of the body:

SURFACE	
Skin covered with clothes	33° to 35° C.
Naked skin in bath at 5° C.	17° C.
„ „ „ 25° C.	26·5° C.
MUSCLES 12 MM. BELOW THE SURFACE	
In bath at 5° C.	36·3° C.
„ „ 25° C.	36·9° C.

The body temperature of man shows variations of several tenths of a degree according to the time of day at which the temperature is taken. The highest temperature is obtained about six or seven in the evening, and the lowest at about four or five o'clock in the morning. With these diurnal changes in temperature are associated parallel oscillations in the rate of metabolism as shown by the elimination of carbon dioxide. They are probably determined by the changes in the movement and tension of the muscles occurring during the waking hours. If the habits of a man or animal be reversed, so that he sleeps in the daytime and performs his normal vocation by night, it is possible to reverse also the direction of the diurnal variations in temperature. The temperature may be also affected temporarily by various acts, such as the taking of food or muscular work; the influence of the latter factor is often very marked. In many individuals a hard game at tennis suffices to raise the temperature to 39° C. (102° F.), and even the healthiest individual will show some change in his temperature as the result of exercise. Pembrey found that the act of marching led to a considerable rise in temperature, a rise which is apparently responsible for the discomfort and fatigue observed under such circumstances. Such a change in the body temperature is merely temporary in its effects, and insignificant in comparison with the wonderful uniformity of temperature

observed in men of all races and of all climes under most varying conditions of food and activity.

Just as there are limits to the power of the organism to regulate its temperature when there is an excessive formation of heat in the body, so there are limits to the regulation of temperature to severe alterations in the temperature of the external medium. Thus if the body is subjected to excessive external cold, or the loss of heat be increased by absence of clothes, by depriving an animal of its fur, or by immersion in a co'd bath, the temperature of the body may sink continuously. This fall of temperature in the higher animals is very soon followed by paralysis of the highest nerve centres and loss of consciousness. The centres in the medulla are later on affected, so that the respiration is slowed and the blood pressure falls. If the temperature does not fall too low, it is possible to revive the animal or man by checking the loss of heat or by supplying artificial warmth. Recovery has in fact been observed in men in whom, as a result of exposure, the body temperature had fallen to 24° C. In the same way exposure to extreme heat, especially associated with muscular exercise and increased production of heat in the body, may cause a rise of the body temperature. A man or animal, whose temperature is raised above the normal, is said to be in a state of pyrexia. A rise of 2° or 3° C. is associated with all the phenomena which characterise fever, *i. e.* quickening of pulse and respiration, malaise, headache, and loss of muscular power. If the temperature rise to a greater degree than this, the patient may lose consciousness, and death ensues at a temperature of about 44° C.

The very small variation, presented by the body temperature in mammals, even under the influence of considerable variation in external temperature or in the production of heat in the body, connotes an accurate adaptation between the production of heat in the body and the loss of heat from the body. The regulation of the temperature can be effected either by regulation of heat production, by alteration in the rate of loss of heat, or by a combination of both mechanisms. It will be convenient to deal with these two methods of regulation under separate headings.

THE PRODUCTION OF HEAT IN THE BODY

The reactions mainly responsible for heat production in the body are those associated with oxidation; the processes of disintegration, such as are effected by means of hydrolytic ferments, account for a very small part of the heat evolved.

In these processes of oxidation all the organs participate, the most important, especially in relation to the regulation of heat production, being the skeletal muscles. These represent more than half the total weight of the soft tissues of the body, and even during rest are the seat of oxidative processes and therefore of heat formation. Heat formation varies with the state of tone of the muscles and is largely increased with every active

contraction. The effect of muscular activity on the total output of energy of the body is well represented in the Table given on p. 684.

It is probable that, in relation to their size at any rate, the glands are still more effective as heat producers. The liver and the blood flowing from the liver have been stated to present a higher temperature than any other part of the body. On the other hand, the nervous system, although dependent on a constant supply of oxygen for its activities, does not appear to be the seat of extensive metabolic changes, nor does the heat produced in this system play any great part in maintaining the temperature of the body.

The skeletal muscles are controlled by the central nervous system; if separated from their centres in the cord they become flaccid and rapidly atrophy. The heat production in the muscles is therefore also dependent on their connection with the central nervous system. If this connection be severed either by curare or section of the cord, or if the reflex play of impulses on the muscles be abolished by anæsthetics, the animal will react like a cold-blooded animal. The total metabolism of the body and the total production of heat sink to a minimum, and are diminished by application of cold, or increased by application of warmth, to the surface of the body. On the other hand, in the intact animal changes of temperature in the environment provoke, reflexly by their action on the muscles, changes in the opposite direction. Thus exposure to cold increases and to heat diminishes muscular metabolism and the heat production of the body.

The effects of variations in the external temperature on the metabolism of warm-blooded animals are well shown in the experiment, from which the following Tables are taken, on the CO_2 output in the ornithorhynchus and in the rabbit (Martin):

1. Ornithorhynchus. Weight, 693 grm.; Surface, 876 sq. centims.

Temperature of environment	Temperature of animal	Difference in temperature, animal and environment	CO_2 per hour, in grammes	CO_2 per hour per 1000 sq. centims., in grammes
5	31·8	26·8	1·090	1·244
10	32·0	22·0	·722	·825
20	32·6	12·6	·405	·463
32	33·6	1·6	·336	·383
35	35·3	·3	·377	·430

2. Rabbit. Weight, 750 grm.

Temperature of environment	Temperature of animal	Difference in temperature, animal and environment	CO_2 per hour, in grammes	CO_2 per hour per 1000 sq. centims., in grammes
5	37·5	32·5	1·426	1·543
10	38·0	28·0	1·038	1·124
20	38·7	18·7	·912	·987
35	40·5	5·5	·766	·829
40	41·6	1·6	·897	·971

In the former animal, where the regulation of the temperature of the body is effected almost entirely by changes in heat production, the effect of warming the environment of the animal on the CO_2 output is extremely marked. It will be noticed that the CO_2 per hour sinks continuously with rising temperature up to 32° C. When the temperature of the chamber was raised to 35°, the temperature of the animal rose considerably, *i. e.* the regulatory mechanism was failing, so that the same effect was produced on metabolism as is observed in working with cold-blooded animals. The

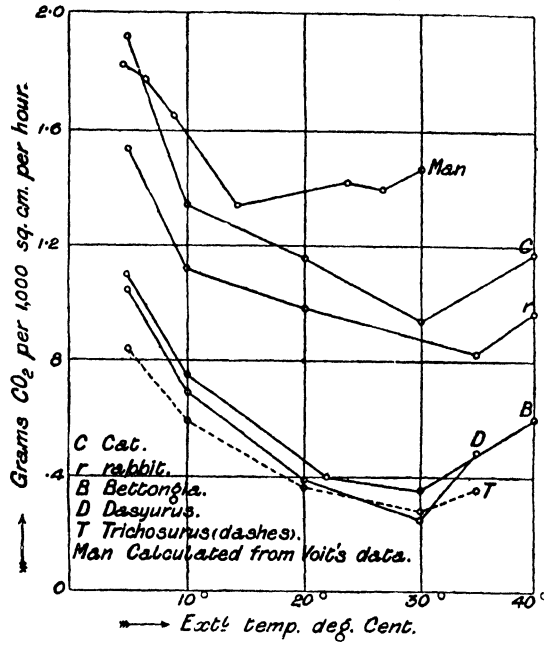


FIG. 558. Effect of variations in the external temperature on the CO_2 output (per 1000 cm.^{2} body surface) of warm-blooded animals. (C. J. MARTIN.)

same change, though less marked, is observed on exposing the rabbit to a gradually rising temperature. Here however the process of regulation is aided by alterations in the heat loss as well as in the heat production (Fig. 558). If the animals be observed whilst subjected to changes of temperature, it will be evident to any one that the regulation is associated with changes in muscular activity. At 30° to 35° C. the animals will lie perfectly flaccid, breathing rapidly, or may go to sleep. On cooling they at once become more vigorous and perform active movements in their cage. The same effects of changes in the external temperature are familiar in ourselves. The slackness and extreme disinclination to violent exercise observed in hot moist weather, contrasted with the stringing up of the tone of the muscles which follows exposure to cold, and which may be associated with voluntary exercise to keep ourselves warm, are indications of the

important part played by the muscles in determining the heat production of the body. As a rule the immersion of a man in a cold bath for a minute or two increases considerably his output of CO_2. It is possible however to sit in a bath and by an act of the will keep all the muscles in a state of relaxation. Under these circumstances the temperature of the body rapidly falls, and with it the rate of metabolism, as judged by the output of carbon dioxide.

This process of adjustment of the body temperature by variations in the heat production, so long as it represents the only method, is extravagant of energy directly the difference in temperature between animal and environment attains any considerable degree. In the very perfect adjustment of the temperature which is present in the higher mammals, regulation of the heat loss plays a greater part than regulation of heat production. The economy of adjustment by heat loss is well shown if we compare in echidna and rabbit respectively the percentage alteration in CO_2 production, when the difference in temperature between animal and environment varies from 10° C. to 20° C. This is for echidna 72 per cent., for mammals 16 per cent. In echidna variations in heat loss can be practically neglected, so that the whole of the work of regulating the body temperature falls on the heat production. As soon as the external temperature falls below a certain degree, the mechanism fails, the animal's temperature falls, and it passes into a state of hibernation.

THE REGULATION OF HEAT LOSS

In all temperate climates, and in fact in all climates except under certain exceptional conditions, the temperature of the warm-blooded animal is higher than that of his environment, so that there must be a constant loss of heat from the surface of the body. In the warm-blooded animals in the arctic regions, and in those which have adopted an aquatic existence, the thick layer of fat which underlies the skin protects the active portions of the body, the muscles and internal organs, from excessive loss of heat to the surrounding medium. In most terrestrial animals the loss of heat is also diminished by fur and feathers with which these animals are clothed, and in ourselves the same office is performed by clothes, which are capable of voluntary graduation to external conditions. The value of these different coverings depends on the fact that air is a very bad conductor of heat. In the case of a naked man the layer of air immediately in contact with the surface of the body is warmed, becomes lighter, and rises, its place being taken by fresh cold air. Loss of heat is increased by a draught, which quickens the rate at which the layers of air in contact with the surface are renewed. In the case of clothes the material encloses layers of air and hinders it from free circulation, and it is the air enclosed in the meshes of the garments and between the different layers of garments that plays the greater part in preventing loss of heat. The rapid cooling effect of wet clothes is partly due to the replacement of layers of air by water, which is a much better conducting fluid.

In addition to the loss of heat by *convection*, *i. e.* by warming the layers of air in contact with the body, heat is also lost by radiation, *i. e.* by an exchange of heat between the surface of the body and that of surrounding cooler objects. This loss is also prevented by clothing. Since the material of which clothes are made does not allow the passage of radiant heat, they absorb the heat leaving the body and become warm. This warm article of clothing may in its turn act as a centre for the loss of radiant heat, which may again be prevented by putting on another layer. It is a familiar experience that a multiplication of garments is more effective in retaining the heat of the body than merely increasing the thickness of the individual garments. The rate of loss of heat by radiation is diminished by a rise of the amount of watery vapour in the air, since this makes the air more opaque to the passage of radiant energy. Since the loss of heat depends on the difference of temperature between the surface of the body and the surrounding air or objects, it will be largely affected by the temperature of the skin, and therefore by the amount of blood flowing through the skin. The blood flow through the skin is under the control of the central nervous system, through the vaso-motor and vaso-dilator nerves, and it is by altering the size of the cutaneous vessels that the central nervous system chiefly acts in regulating heat loss. In cold weather or when the heat production in the body is low, the vessels are constricted, the skin is cold, and the heat loss is small. On the other hand, if the temperature of the surrounding air is high, or a large amount of heat is being produced in consequence of muscular exercise, the vessels are dilated and the skin is hot. In hot weather the dilatation in the cutaneous vessels is associated with muscular inactivity, so that there is a derivation from the muscles, where the blood is not required, to the skin, where a considerable circulation is necessary.

Loss of heat by radiation and convection can happen only when the temperature of the surrounding air is lower than that of the body. The body temperature can however be maintained at its normal height in an atmosphere with a temperature much higher than 37·5° C., and this in spite of the fact that the production of heat in the body is still going on. In this case there is a profuse secretion of sweat on the surface of the body. In the evaporation of the sweat, especially if aided by a draught of air, a large amount of heat becomes latent and is abstracted from the body, which is therefore kept at a temperature below that of the surrounding atmosphere. If the secretion of sweat is checked by depriving an animal or man of water, or if its evaporation be impeded by placing him in an atmosphere already saturated with aqueous vapour, the temperature of the body runs up rapidly and death ensues from hyperpyrexia or heat-stroke. Although a man can stand exposure to a temperature of 200° or even 250° F. for a considerable time provided that the air is dry, a temperature of 89° F. is rapidly fatal if the air be saturated with moisture. The same mechanism comes into play when the heat production in the body is very largely increased, as by violent exercise. Under these conditions a man may sweat profusely when the temperature of the surrounding atmosphere is at 0° C.

The main regulation of heat loss thus takes place by the control of the nervous system over the cutaneous circulation and the sweat glands. Besides these channels of heat loss, others may play an important part under certain conditions. Heat is lost to the body in warming the food and air which are taken in. It is also lost in respiration, in the evaporation of water, and the setting free of CO_2 from watery solution into the expired air. The following estimate by Tigerstedt represents the proportion of losses in an adult man by these different ways :

A. Warming the Food and Air

	Cal.
(1) 1500 g. water drunk at 15° C. and warmed to 37·5°—raised therefore 22·5°	= 33·75
(2) 1500 g. food eaten at 25° C. (mean) and warmed to 37·5°—raised therefore 12·5; specific heat 0·8	= 15·00
(3) 15,000 g. (= 11,500 l.) air respired at 15° C. and warmed to 37·5°—raised therefore 22·5°; specific heat 0·237	= 79·95
	128·70

B. Loss of Water and CO_2 in the Breath

(4) It is assumed that the inspired air is half saturated with watery vapour at 15° C. and that the expired air is fully saturated at 37·5° C. Approximately 450 g. of water would be given off therefore in the form of vapour from the respiratory passages; the latent heat of the water vapour is 0·537 Cal.	= 241·70
(5) The absorption of heat in the liberation of CO_2 from the lungs (800 g.); 0·134 Cal. per g.	= 107·20
	348·90
From above	128·70
Total	477·60

The sum of heat losses specified under these five headings amounts to 477·60 Cal. Estimating the total heat loss of an adult man at 2400 Cal., this sum represents only about 20 per cent. of the total. The remaining 80 per cent. (in round numbers) takes place through the skin.

If we estimate the total heat loss of an adult man at 2400 Calories, we may say that about 5 per cent. of the total heat loss takes place by warming the food and air, about 15 per cent. by the evaporation of water and CO_2 in respiration, and about 80 per cent. by radiation and convection and the evaporation of sweat from the skin. The proportion represented by the last factor will increase very largely in the presence of a high external temperature, or of an excessive heat production in consequence of violent muscular exercise.

THE NERVOUS MECHANISM FOR HEAT REGULATION

The accurate balance between heat production and heat loss, which is responsible for the nearly constant temperature of man, indicates the active co-operation of the central nervous system in every step of the process. Whether this function of temperature regulation can be specially localised at

any part of the central nervous system, so that it would be possible to speak of a heat centre in the same way as we speak of a respiratory or vaso-motor centre, is doubtful. Many observers have found that injury to the *corpus striatum* causes a rise of temperature associated with increase both in heat production and in heat loss. On the other hand, injury to or pathological lesions of the pons Varolii often lead to an increased production of heat in the body, which is not compensated for sufficiently by heat loss, and so causes death by hyperpyrexia. It has been suggested that the *thermogenic* centre, *i. e.* that responsible for regulating heat *production*, is situated at a lower level in the nervous system than the *thermotaxic* system, *i. e.* that which presides over and determines the *balance* between heat production and heat loss. The observations of Meyer and Barbour, that local cooling of the corpus striatum causes increased respiratory exchanges and heat production, while warming has the reverse effect, certainly point to a localisation of the thermotaxic centre in this part of the central nervous system. The centres for heat loss must be placed in the medulla, at any rate so far as concerns control of heat loss by alterations in the blood supply to the skin or in the secretion of sweat. The facts at our disposal are however too meagre to warrant any definite localisation of the heat-regulating function in the central nervous system, or any such accurate analysis of the regulating function as has been just suggested.

In many warm-blooded animals the ability to maintain a constant temperature is not fully developed until some time after birth. Pembrey has shown that in the guinea-pig and chick, in which the nervous system is fully functional at birth, the heat-regulating mechanism is also completely adequate, whereas animals such as rats, pigeons, or the human child, which are born in a helpless condition, only acquire the power of regulating their own temperature some time after birth. As we should expect, the development of the power of regulating heat production runs *pari passu* with the acquisition of control by the nervous system over the muscles of the body.

CHAPTER XX

THE DUCTLESS GLANDS

INTERNAL SECRETIONS

In unicellular organisms, as in the rest of the living world, activity consists in adaptation to external conditions. The changes in the environment which determine the reactions of these organisms may occur at their surface or at some distance. Among the stimuli which, acting from a distance, evoke the reaction of unicellular organisms, probably the most important are those accompanied by chemical changes. The interrelation of micro-organisms with one another is determined almost entirely by such chemical stimuli. Thus the antherozoids of ferns are attracted to the ovule in consequence of the production in the tissue surrounding the latter of substances such as malic acid. Among micro-organisms we find some which leave places rich in oxygen, while others move towards any spot in their environment where oxygen is most plentiful. These reactions of unicellular organisms to chemical stimuli are classed together under the term chemiotaxis. When the cells are united to form cell colonies or when, as in the metazoa, the multicellular aggregate is formed by the failure of the products of division of the ovum to separate one from another, the interrelations between the different cells of the organism are still largely determined by chemical stimuli. In fact, in the lowest metazoa such as the sponge, we know of no other means of correlating the reactions of different parts of the cell aggregate. If a foreign substance be introduced into the living tissue of a sponge, it becomes speedily surrounded with a collection of wandering phagocytic cells, called from the surrounding parts by the diffusion of chemical substances from the seat of the lesion into the fluids of the body. The same chemical sensibility determines the aggregation of leucocytes around bacteria or dead tissue, which forms the essential feature of the process of inflammation in higher animals.

When the reaction of distant parts of the body to a change occurring in any one part depends on the diffusion of some substance from a stimulated part, the total reaction must require a considerable time for its full development. A much more effective method of correlation was acquired by the evolution of a nervous system, by means of which the *consensus partium* could be maintained by the rapid propagation of molecular changes along differentiated paths in the protoplasm. The development of this second mode of

correlation of activities did not however do away with the necessity for the more primitive method. Even in the higher animals, where rapidity of reaction is not required, we find adaptations carried out in response to some change in distant parts of the body, the message having been chemical and not nervous in character (*e. g.* the secretin mechanism for pancreatic secretion).

When we speak of the chemical correlation of the activities of the different parts of the body, it is important not to confuse processes which have little or nothing in common. In one sense we may say that every cell in the body is chemically connected with and dependent on all the other cells in the body. This interdependence is a necessary consequence of the differentiation of function associated with increased complexity of the organism. Thus the foodstuffs are digested and absorbed by the cells lining the alimentary canal and are then transmitted, more or less changed by these cells, to all the other tissues of the body. The liver stores up glycogen and is ready to give of its store to any tissue in need of carbohydrate. All the tissues probably produce urea, which passes to the kidneys and is there excreted. All tissues produce carbon dioxide, which passes to the lungs to be eliminated, but as it traverses the respiratory centre it arouses respiratory movements, which are exactly proportioned to the tension of the carbon dioxide and therefore to the need of the whole body to get rid of this waste product. The liver receives ammonia from the alimentary canal and converts it into urea, thus shielding all the other tissues from the poisonous effects which would be produced by the entrance of the ammonia into the general circulation. Thus one organ may receive and modify any substance or foodstuff so as to prepare it for more ready assimilation by other tissues. It may shield these other tissues from the poisonous effects of certain waste products, either by converting these into harmless substances or by excreting them from the body. In all these cases the tissues are dealing with some substance which is utilised in bulk or which, by its accumulation, could exert a toxic influence on other tissues. We are probably justified in treating apart a group of phenomena in which the substance transmitted from one part of the organism to another is significant almost entirely as an excitatory agent, and has little or no value as a source of energy. When the adaptation to a change of A consists in the activity of an organ B, the activity of B can be evoked either by a nerve impulse passing from A to the central nervous system and from this to B, or by the production at A, as a direct consequence of the stimulus, of a specific chemical substance, which passes into the circulating blood to B, where in its turn it will excite the required state of action. Such chemical messengers are designated *hormones*, from ὁρμάω, 'I excite.' We have already met with several examples of such bodies. It may be interesting here to consider what must be their general character if they are to fulfil the part of chemical messengers.

(1) In the first place, they must not be antigens, *i. e.* their injection into the blood stream must not evolve the production of an anti-body. If this were the case, the hormone, on entering the blood stream, would meet

its anti-body and would be unable to exert any effect on the appropriate reacting organ. Practically all the complex colloid bodies allied to the proteins, *e. g.* ferments, egg albumin, peptone, sera of different animals, when injected into the blood stream, cause the production of the corresponding anti-body. The hormones must be simpler in character than such substances and probably have a precise and comparatively simple chemical or molecular constitution.

(2) Since they must be carried by the blood stream to the reacting organ, they must in most cases be susceptible to easy passage through the walls of the blood vessels if they are to excite a reaction within a fairly short space of time. This consideration would also tend to keep their molecular weight comparatively low.

(3) As a rule the chemical messenger must excite a state of activity in response to a change in some other part of the body. When the primary change passes away, the action of the hormone should also disappear. On this account it is necessary that the hormone should either be susceptible of easy destruction, by oxidation or otherwise, in the fluids of the body, or be readily excreted, so that its action may not be continued indefinitely.

In previous chapters we have already come across several examples of correlated activities of different tissues effected by chemical means. It is perhaps questionable whether we should regard carbon dioxide, or the lactic acid produced by a contracting muscle, as a hormone in the strict sense of the term, since both these substances are produced in large quantities as the final product of oxidation or disintegration of the foodstuffs. Carbon dioxide is however rapidly eliminated from the body, and lactic acid is equally rapidly oxidised in the body; and there is no doubt that the activity of the respiratory centre is determined by the presence of this substance in the blood and is thereby perfectly co-ordinated with the activities of the whole of the rest of the organism. In the alimentary canal the secretion of pancreatic juice, at the precise moment when it is required in the duodenum for the digestion of the food arriving there from the stomach, is evoked by the production in the cells of the intestinal mucous membrane under the agency of the acid of the gastric juice (the specific stimulus) of a substance, *secretin*. This substance, which is heat stable and diffusible but is easily destroyed by oxidation, is absorbed into the blood and carried to the pancreas, where it acts as a specific stimulus for the secretory cells. The same substance excites also the secretion of bile by the liver cells and the secretion of intestinal juice by the glands of the small intestine. These are perhaps the two best examples of chemical reflexes, *i. e.* adaptations effected by chemical means rather than by impulses passing along the nerve channels. There are however many other examples of a chemical influence exerted by one organ on another, in which the interaction probably depends on the production of minute quantities of some substance acting in virtue of its excitatory qualities rather than of its value as a source of energy. For many of the organs of the body we know, in fact, no other function than the production of some substance, the presence of which in the blood is a necessary

condition for the carrying out of the normal functions either of growth or activity of many other parts of the body. In other cases an organ may have a twofold function. Thus the pancreas gives an external secretion which is used for the preparation of the food for absorption, and an internal secretion which, passing into the blood, exercises an important influence on the metabolism of the foodstuffs after absorption. Other instances of these chemical correlations may be cited. The secretion of gastric juice, which results from the presence of peptones or other substances in the stomach, has been ascribed by Edkins to the production in the pyloric mucous membrane of a gastric hormone, which travels by the blood to the glands of the fundus, where it excites secretion of gastric juice. According to Frouin the injection of boiled succus entericus, free from secretin, provokes the secretion of intestinal juice. In the reproductive system we have many examples of such chemical correlations. The pancreas, by its internal secretion, probably influences not only the oxidation of the carbohydrates but also the assimilation of the foodstuffs by all parts of the small intestine. All these examples are discussed in fuller detail in other parts of this book. There is one class of organs in which a chemical influence exerted on the rest of the body is the only function with which we are acquainted. These are included under the term *ductless glands*. As examples, we may cite the suprarenal bodies, the thyroid and parathyroids, the thymus and the pituitary body.

THE SUPRARENAL BODIES

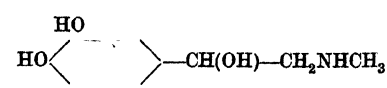
The suprarenal capsules in mammals are two small masses lying on the upper or oral side of the kidneys. They consist of two parts, the cortex and the medulla. The cortex is composed of cells arranged in columns or in a reticular fashion. The outermost layer of cells often presents an alveolar structure, the lumen however being but little marked. According to the arrangement of the cells the cortex is divided into three zones, the zona glomerulosa, zona fasciculata, and zona reticulata. The cells themselves are distinguished by the large amount of granules they contain, which give the ordinary reactions for fat but consist probably of lecithin compounds. In some animals *e. g.* the guinea-pig, the cells, especially towards the inner part of the gland, contain many yellow pigment granules. The medulla, much less extensive than the cortex, presents irregularly shaped cells, the outlines of which are but slightly marked. These cells contain granules which stain darkly with chromates and give a green colour with salts of iron. It is hence easy to delimit the area of the cortex in any section of a gland which has been hardened in a fluid containing chromates. The substance giving this reaction is known as chromophile or chromaffine substance. The suprarenals are richly supplied with blood, especially in the medullary part, the cells of which impinge directly on the endothelial lining of dilated capillaries. They also receive an abundant nerve supply from the sympathetic system, the nerves forming a thick meshwork, especially in the medulla, and presenting at intervals ganglion cells which may be isolated or combined to form small ganglia.

A study of the development of the suprarenal glands shows that we have here to do with two distinct tissues, probably differing in the part they play in the animal economy. Whereas the cortex is derived from that portion of the mesoblast, the 'intermediate cell mass,' from which the mesonephros is also developed, the medulla is produced by an outgrowth from the sympathetic system and may be said indeed to consist of profoundly modified nerve cells. In many fishes these two elements of the suprarenal gland remain separated throughout life, the cortex being represented by a series of

paired interrenal bodies lying on the front of the spinal column, and the medulla by a number of collections of chromaffine cells lying in close juxtaposition to the spinal nerves. In some animals accessory suprarenals are not infrequent in which both cortex and medulla may be represented. In all animals we find masses of tissue, the so-called paraganglia, in close association with the sympathetic system, which present the chromaffine reaction typical of the medulla. Since a watery extract or decoction of these bodies has the same influence on injection into the blood stream as an infusion of the medulla of the suprarenal body itself, we are probably justified in regarding these bodies as equivalent to accessory medullary portions of the suprarenal. They have the same origin, the same staining reactions, and the same physiological effect as the latter.

The functions of the suprarenal bodies were a matter of pure hypothesis before Addison in 1855 drew attention to the coincidence of degenerative destruction of these bodies with a disease which has been known since that time as Addison's disease. The three cardinal symptoms of this disorder are (1) bronzing of the skin, (2) vomiting, (3) excessive muscular weakness and prostration. The disease is almost invariably fatal. Addison's observations have been amply confirmed since that time, but we are not yet in a position to account for the occurrence of all these symptoms as a result of interference with the cortex and medulla of the suprarenals. The experimental destruction or extirpation of these bodies has naturally been frequently carried out. The operation always leads to the death of the animal within twelve to twenty-four hours. Even when the destruction is carried out by degrees it has been impossible to reproduce the bronzing which is so characteristic of Addison's disease. The one symptom which is observed as a result of the experimental extirpation is the excessive prostration, which is attended with muscular weakness and a lowered blood pressure. In a few cases it has been found possible to keep rats alive after total extirpation of these organs, but this result is probably due to the frequent presence in these animals of accessory suprarenals.

Schafer and Oliver in 1894 found that a watery extract or decoction of the suprarenal bodies, when injected into the circulation, caused a very great rise of blood pressure, brought about chiefly by constriction of all the blood vessels of the body. The active substance responsible for this rise was limited entirely to the medulla, infusions of the cortex being without influence on the blood pressure. Later on Takamine succeeded in isolating the active substance, to which he gave the name of *adrenaline*, and since that time physiological chemists have succeeded not only in determining the constitution of adrenaline but also in preparing it synthetically. The constitution of adrenaline is shown by the following formula:



Since it possesses an asymmetric carbon atom, a substance of this formula may be either lævo- or dextrorotatory. Both forms, as well as the racemic modification, have been prepared synthetically. The substance which occurs in the suprarenal gland is the lævorotatory modification, and Cushny has shown that it is only this modification which is active, injection of the

dextrorotatory compound having only one-twelfth the effect of the lævo-rotatory. Adrenaline is active in excessively minute doses, injection of one four-hundredth of a milligramme per kilo. body weight sufficing to evoke a definite rise of blood pressure. On injecting it into the circulation there is immediately a rise of blood pressure which, if the vagi are intact, is only moderate in amount but is accompanied by a marked slowing of the heart. This excitation of the vagus is however probably secondary to the rise of blood pressure and is not due to direct action of the drug on the vagus centre. If the vagi be divided, the injection of adrenaline evokes a huge rise of pressure which may amount to 300 mm. Hg. It may indeed be so great that the animal dies from heart failure or from pulmonary œdema. The rise of pressure is observed even after destruction of the central nervous system. The action is not limited to the blood vessels. It has been shown by Langley and by Elliott that adrenaline injected into the circulation arouses every activity which can be normally excited by stimulation of the sympathetic system. A list of the actions of adrenaline is therefore identical with a list of the chief functions of the sympathetic nervous system. In the head it causes dilatation of the pupil, secretion of saliva, and erection of the hairs. On the heart it has a strong augmentor and accelerator influence, so that this organ beats more effectively as a rule even against the enormously increased resistance offered by the constricted arterioles. Whereas a rise of blood pressure generally causes increased systolic volume of the heart, we may find after an injection of adrenaline and during the height of the rise of blood pressure that the heart empties itself more effectively than it did before the injection. On the lung vessels adrenaline has probably a slight constrictor influence. With regard to the vessels of the brain, we find the same divergence of opinion as in the case of excitation of possible vaso-motor nerves to this organ. Some observers, on perfusing the brain with defibrinated blood, have obtained constriction on adding adrenaline to the perfused blood, while others have been unable to obtain any positive results in this direction. In the abdomen intravenous injection of adrenaline causes complete relaxation of the musculature of the stomach, small and large intestines, but contraction of the ileocolic sphincter. On the bladder its effect varies according to the animal studied, but in every case is identical with that obtained by stimulating the hypogastric nerves. It has been shown by Dale that adrenaline may also excite vaso-dilator fibres or produce vaso-dilator effects when such effects are also obtained from stimulation of the sympathetic nerves. In order to evoke these results it is necessary to paralyse the vaso-constrictors by the injection of ergotoxin, one of the active principles of ergot. This drug, when injected, causes first active vaso-constriction and rise of blood pressure, followed by paralysis of the vaso-constrictor mechanism. Excitation of the splanchnic nerves or injection of adrenaline will now bring about a fall of blood pressure due to dilatation of the vessels in the splanchnic area.

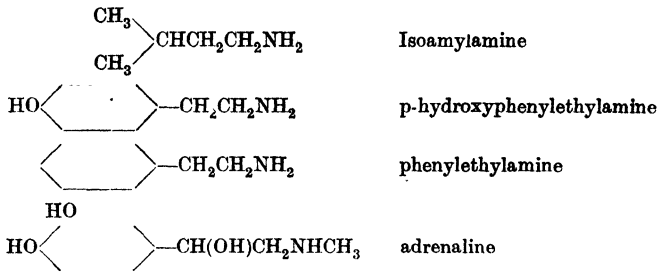
The point of attack of the adrenaline appears to be in the muscular or glandular tissues themselves, since it may be obtained not only after

destruction of the cord and sympathetic plexuses but even after time has been allowed for the peripheral (post-ganglionic) fibres to degenerate as a result of extirpation of the corresponding ganglia. Although the effect is not altered under these circumstances, and it may still produce either relaxation or contraction of muscles according to the original action of the sympathetic on these fibres, we are not justified in regarding it as acting on the contractile material of the cells themselves. Rather must we assume with Langley and Elliott that the action of adrenaline is on some substance mediating between the nerve and the responsive tissue. We may speak of this reactive material as the receptor substance (Langley), or we may locate it in the situation where the nerve joins the muscle or gland cell, and describe adrenaline as acting on the myoneural junction.

Each suprarenal receives a number of filaments from the splanchnic nerve on its own side. These pass to the medulla where they end apparently without the interposition of any ganglion cells on their course (Elliott), the cells of the medulla having themselves been developed by a modification of sympathetic ganglion cells. Stimulation of the peripheral end of the splanchnic nerve causes, as we have already seen, a discharge of adrenaline into the blood stream. This discharge accounts for the secondary rise, often accompanied with quickening of the heart, observed on a blood-pressure tracing as the result of stimulating the splanchnic nerve. Through the splanchnic nerves a discharge of adrenaline can be excited by many general conditions, such as pressure on the brain, puncture of the fourth ventricle, administration of anæsthetics, mental disturbances such as excitement or fright. Such a discharge is an important element in the adaptation to environmental stress and enables the animal to react for the preservation of its life either by offence or flight. If one splanchnic nerve be cut before the administration of anæsthetics or the maintenance of a condition of irritation or fright, the suprarenal gland on the corresponding side will be found to contain two or three times as much adrenaline as the gland which has been left in connection with the central nervous system. It is interesting that no such condition of exhaustion can be produced by electrical stimulation of the peripheral end of the divided splanchnic. It has been suggested therefore that the splanchnic nerve contains two sets of fibres, anabolic and catabolic, that only the latter are stimulated by central irritation, whereas electrical stimulation, exciting both sets of fibres, causes an increased production of adrenaline in the gland, which exactly keeps pace with the increased output.

When adrenaline is injected into the blood stream the effect is only temporary. It is not excreted in the urine, but rapidly disappears from the blood. Since it is easily oxidised and is extremely unstable in alkaline solution, we may conclude that after performing its excitatory function it is destroyed by oxidation in the fluids. Adrenaline is thus a typical hormone, a body of comparatively low molecular weight, having a drug-like excitatory action on specific tissues of the body, easily diffusible, and rapidly destroyed after discharging its office.

Owing to the rapid destruction of adrenaline, relatively enormous doses have to be given by the mouth in order to produce any effect on the blood pressure. There is however a whole series of substances, more or less allied to adrenaline in chemical constitution, which undergo less rapid destruction and can therefore be administered as drugs in the usual way. Dale and Barger have recently described three such substances as occurring in infusions of putrid meat and as forming the most important of the active principles of ergot. The constitution of these substances is shown in the following formulæ:



The formula of adrenaline is placed below in order to show the relation of these substances to the natural hormone. These bodies are produced from the amino-acids of proteins by a process of decarboxylation. Leucine would yield isoamylamine, tyrosine, hydroxyphenylethylamine, and phenylalanine would give phenylethylamine. Such substances may be formed in minute quantities during the normal processes of putrefaction which occur in the alimentary canal.

There seems little doubt that we must regard adrenaline as a true internal secretion, and therefore must ascribe to the medulla of the suprarenal capsules as well as to the other chromaffine tissue in the body, the function of maintaining the normal constriction of the arterioles and of facilitating in some way or other the functions of the sympathetic system generally. The absence of this secretion in cases of destruction by disease of the suprarenals would serve to account for the weakness, prostration, and lowered blood pressure of Addison's disease. The two other symptoms of this disease, namely, bronzing and vomiting, still remain to be accounted for. It is possible that the latter may be due to some involvement by the morbid process of the numerous fibres of the solar plexus, which run in close proximity to the suprarenals. We have no knowledge whatsoever of the functions of the cortical portion of these organs. It is possible that future work may show some connection between the cortex and the destruction of pigment in the body. At present it is only by a process of exclusion that we may guess at a causal relationship between the destruction of the cortex and the bronzing which occurs in Addison's disease.

There seems little doubt that the rapidly fatal effects of extirpation of both suprarenals is to be ascribed rather to the removal of the cortex than of the medulla. The functions of the latter can be more or less effectively maintained by the other chromaffine tissues found at the back of the abdomen. In the few cases, where animals have survived double extirpation, small masses of accessory cortical substance have been found embedded in

the kidney or elsewhere in the neighbourhood of the suprarenals. Hypertrophy or a tumour of the suprarenal bodies, involving the cortex, has been found associated in children with premature sexual maturity.

THE THYROID GLAND AND THE PARATHYROIDS

The thyroid gland consists of two oval bodies lying on either side of the trachea, joined in many animals across the trachea by an isthmus. Surrounded by a capsule of connective tissue, it is made up of an aggregation of vesicles varying in size from 15 to 150μ. The vesicles are lined by a single layer of cubical epithelial cells, and are filled with a translucent material known as colloid (Fig. 559), Of the cells, some present granules and resemble the cells of a secreting gland, while others contain masses of colloid, or have undergone colloidal degeneration. Between the vesicles may be seen, here and there, solid masses of cells which by some observers are regarded as destined to replace vesicles the epithelium of which has undergone complete degeneration. The colloid matter can be traced between the cells into the lymphatics lying between the vesicles. Since the gland possesses no duct, it is supposed that the cells furnish an internal secretion, which makes its way into the blood along the lymphatic efferents of the gland. The thyroid is richly supplied with blood by the superior, middle, and inferior thyroid arteries, and is surrounded with a plexus of veins lying immediately under the capsule. In development the thyroid is formed by an outgrowth from the foregut, but the connection with the gut disappears long before the end of fœtal life. In rare cases part of the duct may persist and, becoming gradually filled with fluid, give rise to a hyoid cyst which lies below the tongue and may require excision by the surgeon.

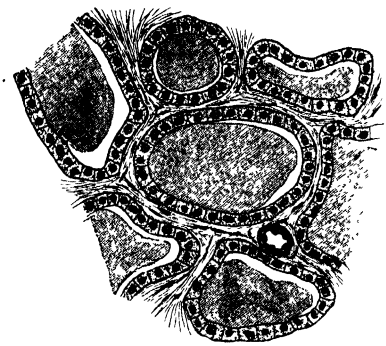


FIG. 559. Section of thyroid gland of dog. (SWALE VINCENT.)

As in the case of the other ductless glands, clinical observations have contributed materially to our knowledge of the functions of the thyroid. Although the gland had been extirpated in animals by Astley Cooper and by Schiff, the attention of physiologists and medical men was especially directed to the importance of this organ by the observations of surgeons, especially Kocher, on the untoward and even fatal effects following its complete removal in man in operations for extirpation of goitre. In this country attention had already been called to the connection of a disturbed condition of metabolism known as myxœdema with atrophy of the thyroid. A patient affected with myxœdema presents a gradually increasing blunting of his or her mental activities; speech is slow, cerebration delayed. With this nervous defect are associated changes in the connective tissues, the subcutaneous connective tissue becoming thickened, so that the face and hands appear swollen and puffy, looking at first sight as if œdema were present. The swelling is however due to newly formed connective tissue,

and not to the presence of an excess of interstitial fluid in the tissues. The patient often has a yellow waxy appearance with a patch of colour on the cheeks. The hair falls out, the pulse is slowed, and the temperature tends to be subnormal owing to the diminution of the rate of metabolism in the body. The intake of food and the excretion of urea are diminished. If the atrophy of the thyroid occurs in early life during the period of growth, *e.g.* in young children, the growth of the skeleton practically ceases. The bones of the limbs may grow in thickness but not in length. There is early synostosis of the bones of the skull and complete cessation of development of mental powers. Children so affected may live for many years, but when twenty-five or thirty present still a childish appearance (Fig. 560, c). Stunted, pot-bellied, and ugly, they have the intelligence of a child of four or five. They often present fatty tumours above each clavicle, and similar subcutaneous tumours of fat or loose fibrous tissue are found in cases of myxœdema in the adult.

When the thyroid is extirpated in man the result is often the production of typical myxœdema. In some cases, especially in young individuals, the results are more severe, a condition of tetany being set up in which there are tonic spasms of the muscles of the body, especially of the extremities. When the thyroid gland is extirpated in animals the results more closely resemble these acute cases. In certain instances a chronic condition of malnutrition is set up, but a typical myxœdema with thickening of the subcutaneous tissues by new growth of connective tissue has been described by Horsley only in monkeys. The effects are more pronounced in carnivora than in herbivora. In the former a condition of tetany is produced, accompanied with muscular tremors and clonic convulsions which come on at intervals and may be accompanied with severe dyspnœa leading to death within fourteen days. In herbivora, wasting, diminution of respiratory exchange, and disorders of nutrition are often the most prominent symptoms. These results were ascribed by Munk to interference with the recurrent laryngeal nerves during the operations, but the observations on man leave very little doubt that they are due entirely to the removal of the chemical influence of the thyroid gland. Many authorities were at first inclined to ascribe these results in man and animals to the circulation in the blood of toxic substances which would normally undergo destruction in the thyroid gland. This theory is put out of court by the results of administration of thyroid gland to patients with myxœdema or to animals deprived of their thyroids. Schiff first showed that the effects of extirpation of the thyroid might be prevented if, at the same time, the thyroid from another animal were transplanted into the subcutaneous tissue to take the place of the one removed. On removing the transplanted thyroid, the typical symptoms of thyroid destruction at once ensued. It was later found that similar good results could be obtained by subcutaneous injection of the expressed juice of the thyroid, and later that even this was not necessary, and that it was sufficient to administer the thyroid gland, either fresh, dried, or partially cooked, by the mouth. The administration of the thyroid gland in this way

is indeed one of the therapeutic triumphs of the last twenty years. An ugly and idiotic cretin can be converted by this means into a child of ordinary intelligence with normal powers of growth (Fig. 560). Given to myxœdemic patients, the thyroid gland reduces the swelling of the subcutaneous tissues, causes a new growth of hair, and restores the patient to his or her former state of mental health. Nor is the thyroid gland without influence on the healthy individual. If given in large doses either to man or animals, it quickens the pulse, even causing violent palpitation, and increases the metabolic activities of the body, so that the appetite is increased, the nitrogenous output rises above the intake, and the subcutaneous fat is diminished or

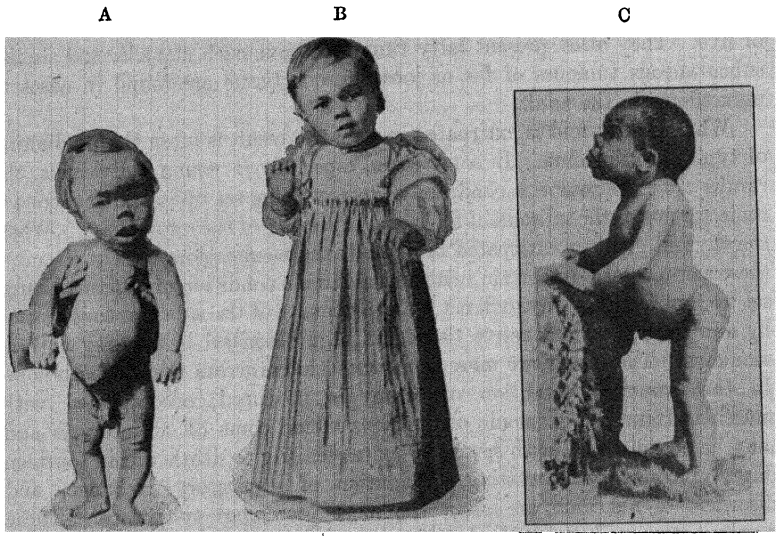


FIG. 560. A, a cretin, 23 months old. B, the same child, 34 months old, after administration of sheep's thyroids for 11 months. C, a cretin, untreated, 15 years old. (W. OSLER.)

disappears. It is possible that a moderate degree of thyroid inadequacy is not infrequent and that the beneficial effects on general health, in removing excessive corpulence and in promoting the growth of hair, which are observed on administering the drug to people of middle life, may be due to the actual replacement of a function which is being insufficiently discharged. The symptoms caused by excessive doses of thyroid gland are strikingly similar to those occurring in the disease known as exophthalmic goitre, where there is a true hypertrophy of the gland associated with cardiac palpitation, proptosis (bulging of the eyes), wasting, and muscular weakness.

All these facts warrant us in including the thyroid body among the glands with an internal secretion, the presence of which in the blood stream is a necessary condition for the normal growth and functions of almost all the tissues of the body. If this secretion is lacking we obtain the condition known as myxœdema in adults, as cretinism in young children. If it be

present in excess the symptoms of exophthalmic goitre are produced. The exact character of the internal secretion cannot be regarded yet as definitely established. It seems possible that it is identical with a substance containing iodine in organic combination, which was isolated by Baumann from the thyroid gland and is known as iodothyrin. In certain experiments the results of administration of iodothyrin were found to be identical with those obtained by giving the whole gland. Doubt has been thrown on the specific nature of this body on account of the fact that iodine may be wanting in the thyroid gland in certain animals, though Reid Hunt has

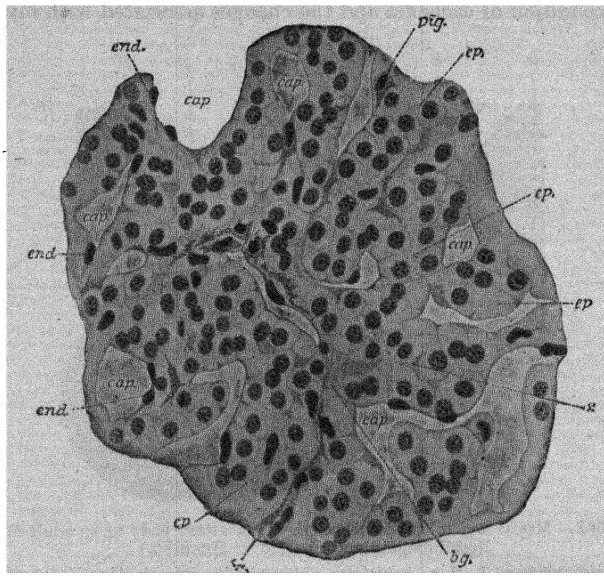


FIG. 561. Section of parathyroid. (KOHN.)
ep, secreting epithelium; *pig*, cells containing pigment; *cap*, sinus-like capillaries; *end*, endothelial cells.

shown that the physiological effects of thyroid extract are proportional to the amount of iodine contained therein.

SIGNIFICANCE OF THE PARATHYROIDS. The parathyroids are small bodies, varying in number, situated on the border of the thyroid gland or actually embedded in its substance. In histological appearance they differ widely from the thyroid, and consist of solid masses or columns of epithelial cells surrounded with connective tissue and richly supplied with blood vessels (Fig. 561). Considerable divergence of opinion still exists as to the significance of these bodies. In some animals *e.g.* in the dog, where they are embedded in the gland, they will be necessarily removed in any operation for the extirpation of the thyroid. In others such as the rabbit, where they lie outside the gland, it is easy to avoid them in the excision of the thyroid. To this varying distribution of the parathyroids have been ascribed the different results of extirpation of the thyroid in carnivora and

herbivora respectively. Forsyth has shown that, in man, the situation of the parathyroids corresponds almost exactly with the places in which are found occasionally accessory thyroids; and according to Edmunds, after excision of the thyroid, the parathyroids undergo histological alteration and are converted into thyroid tissue, the cells taking on an alveolar arrangement and producing colloid material. According to this view the parathyroids would represent simply immature thyroid tissue. On the other hand, it has been suggested (Biedl) that the parathyroids have a function entirely distinct from that of the thyroid gland, removal of the thyroids producing simply a condition of cachexia and the changes associated with myxœdema,

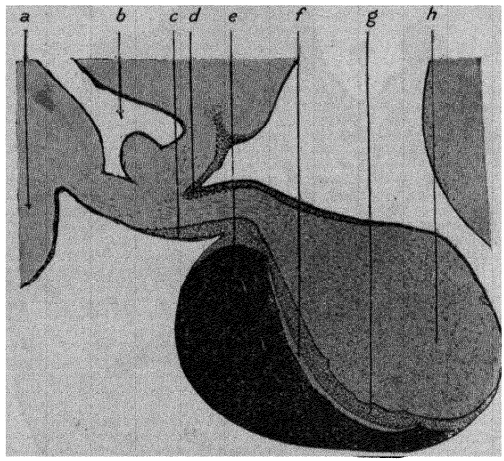


FIG. 562. Mesial sagittal section through the pituitary body of an adult monkey (semi-diagrammatic). (After HERRING.)

a, optic chiasma; *b*, third ventricle; *c*, tongue-like process of pars intermedia; *d*, epithelial investment of posterior lobe; *e*, anterior lobe; *f*, epithelial cleft; *g*, pars intermedia; *h*, posterior lobe.

while removal of the parathyroids is responsible for the nervous disturbances and tetany observed after total extirpation of these organs. The matter cannot yet be regarded as definitely settled.

THE PITUITARY BODY

The pituitary body consists of two parts which have separate modes of origin. An outgrowth from the buccal cavity in the embryo meets a hollow extension of the anterior cerebral vesicle. The buccal ectoderm gives rise to the anterior lobe and pars intermedia of the pituitary, while the neural epiblast becomes developed into the posterior lobe (Fig. 562). In some animals the posterior lobe remains hollow and retains its primitive connection with the third ventricle of the brain, but in man it becomes entirely solid. The anterior lobe in the adult consists of nests of epithelial cells (Fig. 563), many of which are filled with granules, and is richly supplied with large thin-walled capillary blood vessels. The anterior lobe is separated from the posterior lobe by a cleft which is the remains of the original hollow outgrowth from the buccal cavity. The epithelial tissue immediately surrounding this cleft differs somewhat from that constituting the

anterior lobe. The cells, which present but few granules, are arranged in islets, separated by an intervening tissue continuous with the main mass of the posterior lobe. Many of the islets are hollow and enclose a colloid material. The colloid material has been traced by Herring into the interalveolar connective tissue and into the prolongation of the infundibulum which enters the posterior lobe. One must therefore conclude that the colloid material secreted by the cells of this part passes directly into the third ventricle. The amount of colloid material increases in animals which have undergone extirpation of the thyroid gland.

Our first clue to the importance of this organ in the normal processes of the body was furnished by the observations of Pierre Marie, who found

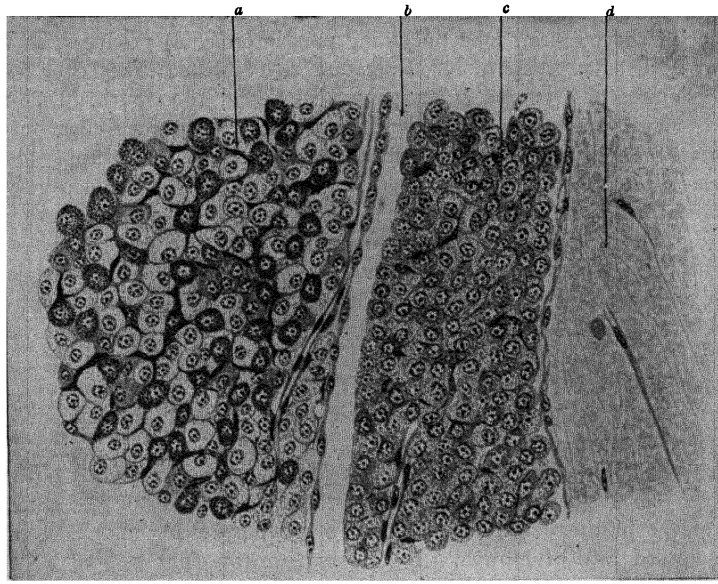


FIG. 563. Section of cat's pituitary body, passing through the cleft in the gland. (P. T. HERRING.)

a, pars anterior; *b*, cleft; *c*, pars intermedia; *d*, pars nervosa (posterior lobe).

that the morbid condition of *acromegaly* is associated with tumours of the pituitary gland. This disease consists in an increased growth of certain parts of the skeleton, especially the lower jaw and the extremities of the limbs. Headache is often present, and there may be polyuria and affection of the eyesight. When this disease occurs during the period of active growth, there may be an increase in length both of the limb-bones and of the trunk, and most of the giants, which are shown from time to time, are examples of this pathological condition of 'gigantism.' It seems probable that this condition is due to an over-action of the gland. In cases of acromegaly the tumour is generally an adenoma, *i. e.* an enlargement of the ordinary gland tissue. It has not been possible by transplantation to replace a removed pituitary body, since the transplanted organ has hitherto always undergone

degeneration. In a certain number of cases animals, especially if young, have survived extirpation of the pituitary body. In these the operation was followed by arrest of development—the animals remaining in an infantile condition, small, with an excess of fat, and absence of sexual development.

The most definite evidence we have as to the mode of action of the different parts of the pituitary gland has been furnished by experiments on administration or injection of the dried gland or its extracts. The posterior lobe seems to be practically inactive, extracts made from this lobe having the same influence as extracts from nervous tissue generally. If however the intermediate epithelial substance is included in the posterior lobe, marked effects may be obtained from the intravenous injection. An extract of the posterior lobe (including pars intermedia) produces, as was shown by Schafer, a rise of blood pressure and diuresis. The latter result also follows administration of the posterior lobes by the mouth. Dale has shown that the active principle exercises a direct excitatory effect on all unstriated muscle, the effect being unaltered whether the nerve supply to the muscle be present or not. Thus it produces contraction of the blood vessels, of the intestinal muscle, and of the uterus, and will act upon muscular tissues, such as the arteries of the lungs or heart, which do not receive constrictor impulses from the sympathetic system. The active principle is much more stable than the other hormones we have already studied. It is not destroyed by boiling, and after injection into the blood stream can be recovered from the urine. It is possible that the polyuria, which is not infrequently observed in association with head injuries or tumours of the brain, may be occasioned by an increased escape of this material into the general circulation.

Extracts from the anterior lobe have no definite effect when injected into the blood stream. Schafer found that the addition of the anterior lobe of the pituitary body to the food of young growing animals caused an increased rate of growth. In this experiment eight rats of a litter were taken: four were fed with bread and milk to which the anterior lobes of pituitary bodies had been added, while the other four, which served as controls, received bread and milk with a corresponding quantity of testis or ovary. Later experiments have not however confirmed these results. According to Mackenzie extracts of the pituitary body have a marked excitatory effect on the secretion of milk by the mammary glands.

It is evident that much further work is necessary before we can regard the functions of the pituitary body as definitely ascertained. The evidence we have at present would seem to point to the following conclusions:

(*a*) The anterior lobe furnishes some substance to the circulation which promotes growth, especially of the bony and connective tissues of the body.

(*b*) The intermediate part surrounding the cleft between anterior and posterior lobes, in addition to the production of some substance which is a general excitant for unstriated muscle and produces diuresis, also furnishes a colloid secretion which passes directly into the ventricles of the brain and may be assumed to have some influence on the growth or functions of the

central nervous system. Schafer regards the principle giving rise to diuresis as distinct from that causing contraction of unstriated muscle, since diuresis may occur without corresponding rise of blood pressure. The independence of the two phenomena, renal and vascular, cannot be regarded as proved.

(*c*) The posterior lobe consists mainly of neuroglia. We have no clue to its functions apart from the masses of intermediate cells which it may contain.

Very little can be said as to the other ductless glands. The thymus forms two large masses in the anterior mediastinum, which in man grow up to the second year of life and then rapidly diminish, so that only traces are to be found at puberty. It contains a large amount of lymphatic tissue and is therefore often associated with the lymphatic glands as the seat of formation of lymph corpuscles. The epithelial remains of Hassell's corpuscles found in the medullary part of its globules have not had any function assigned to them. In certain cases of arrested development or of general weakness in young people, the thymus has been found to be persistent. The effect of extracts made from the thymus do not differ from those of extracts made from any other cellular organ.

The pineal gland has so far not been proved to have any function in metabolism.[1] It is interesting as a vestigial remnant of a primitive dorsal eye. In certain lizards this organ still presents traces of its original structure, and is found to conform to the invertebrate type of eye. It is doubtful whether at any time in the history of vertebrates the pineal eye has been functional.

The carotid and coccygeal glands have often been grouped with the collections of chromaffine cells already described as associated with the sympathetic system. Their structure resembles more nearly that of the parathyroid bodies or the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland. They consist of a small collection of columns or masses of cells bound together by connective tissue with a rich supply of blood capillaries. Nothing is known as to their function.

The lymph and hæmolymph glands, and the spleen, are often grouped with these ductless glands. The essential activity of these bodies however lies in the production, not of a diffusible chemical substance, but of formed elements *e. g.* lymph corpuscles, and they do not properly fall within the scope of this chapter. As a matter of convenience, we may deal shortly here with the functions of the spleen.

THE SPLEEN

This organ is similar in many respects to a lymphatic gland. It is formed of a framework of connective tissue and unstriated muscular fibres, in the interstices of which is contained the *splenic pulp*. This consists of a fine fibrillar network, on the fibrils of which lie endothelial cells. The meshes contain the cells of the splenic pulp, which are fairly large polygonal

[1] Cases have been recorded in which tumours of the pineal body have been associated with obesity, premature sexual development and early maturity.

cells, and leucocytes. Just as in a lymphatic gland the cellular elements of the tissues are bathed by the lymph which flows through the gland, so in the spleen the walls of the capillaries become discontinuous, and the blood is poured out into the interstices of the tissue. The spleen is therefore the only tissue in the body where the blood comes in actual contact with the tissue elements themselves. The blood from the splenic pulp is collected into large venous sinuses, which run along the trabeculæ to the hilum, where they unite to form the splenic vein. The arteries to the spleen are beset in their course along the trabeculæ with small nodules of lymphoid tissue, which are known as the Malpighian follicles.

It is evident that the blood must meet with considerable resistance in passing through the close meshwork of the splenic pulp. In order to ensure a constant circulation through the gland, the muscular tissue of the capsule

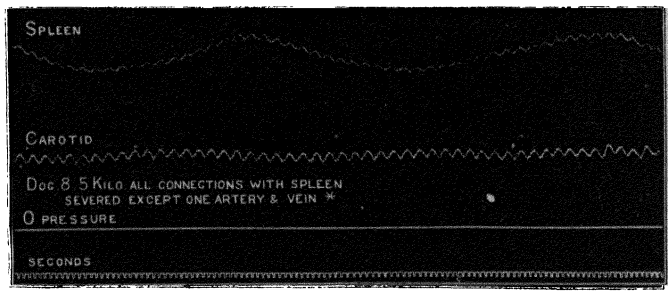


FIG. 564. Plethysmographic tracing of spleen (upper curve) from a dog, showing the spontaneous contractions of this organ. (Reduced from a tracing by SCHAFER.)

and trabeculæ has the property of rhythmic contraction. If the spleen be enclosed in a plethysmograph or splenic oncometer, and its volume be recorded by connecting this with an oncograph, it will be seen to be subject to a series of large slow variations, each contraction and expansion lasting about a minute and recurring with great regularity (Fig. 564). Superposed on these large waves are smaller undulations due to the respiratory variations of the blood pressure, and on these again the little excursions corresponding to each heart beat. The contractile power of the spleen is under the control of the nervous system, and a rapid contraction may be induced by stimulation of the splanchnic nerves.

FUNCTIONS OF THE SPLEEN

The structure of this organ suggests that the splenic cells must exercise a constant influence on the blood which surrounds them, and that this influence is not purely of a chemical nature. In the liver and kidneys, which exercise so powerful an effect on the composition of the blood passing through them, the proper cells of the organs are separated from the blood stream by the capillary wall. Microscopic examination of the cells of the splenic pulp shows us that these are full of particles of brown pigment or fragments of red corpuscles (Fig. 565). In many cases of infectious

disease, such as recurrent fever, the splenic cells are observed towards the end of the attack to be full of the organism—spirillum—which is the cause of the disease. In fact these cells are so arranged that they can take up solid particles held in suspension in the blood plasma. We must indeed look upon the spleen as the great blood filter, purifying the blood in its passage by taking up particles of foreign matter and effete red corpuscles. The process of phagocytosis, which was described under the cellular mechanisms of defence (p. 1071), is in the spleen a normal occurrence.

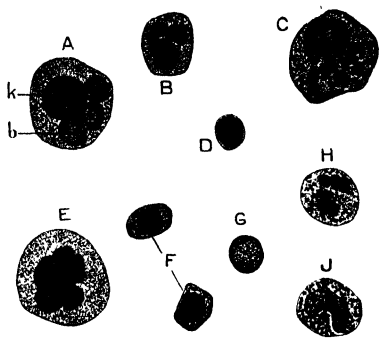


FIG. 565. Cells from a scraping of the spleen. (KÖLLIKER.)

A, splenic pulp cell containing red blood corpuscles, *b* (*k* = nucleus); B, leucocyte with polymorphous nucleus; C, pulp cell containing disintegrated red corpuscles; D, lymphocyte; E, giant cell; F, nucleated red corpuscles; G, normal red corpuscle; H, multinuclear leucocyte; J, eosinophile cell.

A function has also been assigned to the spleen in the formation of red blood corpuscles, but the evidence is not sufficient to determine whether such a process occurs normally.

Chemical analysis of the spleen reveals the presence of a large number of what are called extractives, such as succinic, formic, butyric, and lactic acids, inosit, leucine, xanthine, hypoxanthine, and uric acid. There is also a protein combined with iron, as well as several pigments probably derived from the hæmoglobin of the red corpuscles destroyed by the cells of the splenic pulp. The fact that, in cases where the spleen is pathologically enlarged as in leucocythæmia, the uric acid in the urine is largely increased points to a connection between the spleen and the formation of uric acid in the body. The numerous extractives which are found probably owe their origin to the destructive changes effected on the effete constituents of the blood by the agency of the splenic pulp cells.

BOOK IV

REPRODUCTION

CHAPTER XXI

THE PHYSIOLOGY OF REPRODUCTION

SECTION I

THE ESSENTIAL FEATURES OF THE SEXUAL PROCESS

THE two fundamental characteristics of protoplasm, which distinguish it above all others from unorganised matter, are *growth* and *activity*. Growth occurs at the expense of surrounding non-living material, while activity is in every case an adapted reaction to changes in the environment. The second characteristic would seem to involve a limitation of the first, and does in fact determine the conditions under which it may occur. In the process of growth of a minute spherical mass of protoplasm, its bulk and mass increase as the cube, while the surface increases only as the square, of the radius. Thus the proportion of surface to mass diminishes with increased size of the protoplasmic unit and, since activity is a function of the surface, the larger the unit the smaller must be its activity. It follows that there must be a limiting size to the living protoplasmic unit, and it is on this account that practically no unicellular animal or plant exceeds a fraction of a millimetre in diameter. If an organism is to attain any larger size, this can only be by a multiplication of units, each presenting the same relative amount of surface as a complete unicellular organism, though the surface may be exposed to an internal and not to an external medium. Another factor, limiting the size of the unicellular organism or of the unit of the multicellular organism, is the necessity for maintaining a certain proportion between the size of the nucleus and that of the cytoplasm composing the body of the cell. Observations on artificial division of cells have shown us that the functions of digestion, assimilation, and growth depend upon the presence of a nucleus. Hence, when for any reason it is advantageous that a cell should attain a large size, such a cell is almost always found to contain many nuclei. All the 'giant cells' found in the body of man under normal or pathological conditions are also multinuclear.

Thus the continuous display of the functions of assimilation and dissimilation, of growth and activity, is possible only so long as cell division keeps pace with growth. In unicellular organisms, under favourable conditions, this growth and multiplication occur with prodigious rapidity. It has been computed that a paramœcium, freely supplied with food material, would, by growth and division, in the course of a year represent a mass of protoplasm the size of the earth, assuming of course that no accidents or

destructive agencies intervened to destroy the paramœcia which were being formed. This computation, which may seem a fanciful one, is useful as indicating the enormous number of individuals brought under the action of natural selection, which very few survive. In unicellular organisms such as paramœcium or amœba, death cannot be regarded as a natural process. They may be eaten by higher organisms or serve as food to vegetable parasites, but so long as conditions are favourable and food supply sufficient, they will continue to grow and reproduce themselves eternally. In the course of its existence each individual may be brought under many varieties of conditions; some of these may be so harmful that the individual is destroyed and its race comes to an end. Other individuals, under circumstances of less severity, may undergo modifications in their molecular structure which will serve to neutralise the effect of the injurious environment. Any such modification in structure, morphological or molecular, must be transmitted to the next generation, so that with slowly varying external conditions there is a possibility of a corresponding slow variation in type, which may finally attain a form altogether different from that with which it set out. A new species may in this way be formed by gradual alteration of environment. It is not therefore difficult to understand in the case of such organisms either the maintenance of type by heredity under constant conditions, or the change of type with gradually varying conditions.

Reproduction by continuous growth and division is not however the only means, even in the unicellular animals, by which new generations may be produced. If protozoa such as paramœcia be kept for a long time in nutrient solutions, their rapidity of reproduction after a time falls off, while many die, and others become the easy prey to infectious diseases. Under these conditions a new phenomenon makes its appearance, viz. 'conjugation,' which is the analogue of the sexual reproduction of the higher animals. Infusoria contain two kinds of nuclei, a large and a small, known as the macro-nucleus and the micro-nucleus respectively. During conjugation the macro-nucleus breaks up and disappears in two cells, which become closely applied together, while in each the micro-nucleus divides twice to form four spindle-shaped bodies. Three of these degenerate, (like the polar bodies of the ovum), while the fourth divides into two. This is followed by an exchange of micro-nuclei, one micro-nucleus from A passing into B, while one micro-nucleus from B passes into A. The two cells then separate, a single micro-nucleus being formed in each by the amalgamation of the two. This micro-nucleus then divides three times, so that eight nuclei are formed, while the cell itself divides into four, two nuclei passing into each of the daughter cells. Of these one enlarges to form the macro-nucleus, while the other remains as the micro-nucleus. After conjugation has occurred, the colony of infusoria takes on, so to speak, a new lease of life, and there is a rapid production of new generations by simple division of the cells, in which both macro-nucleus and micro-nucleus take part. Conjugation apparently occurs only in the presence of adverse conditions, and may be prevented almost indefinitely by maintaining the colonies in as favourable conditions a

possible. In certain organisms, especially in Algæ, in which similar phenomena take place, each organism after conjugation may surround itself with a thickened wall and remain for a considerable length of time in a state of suspended animation. It is very difficult to understand the advantage of this interchange of nuclear material either to the individual or to the race. It has been suggested that, as soon as each individual concerned in the process receives the nuclear material from organisms which may have been

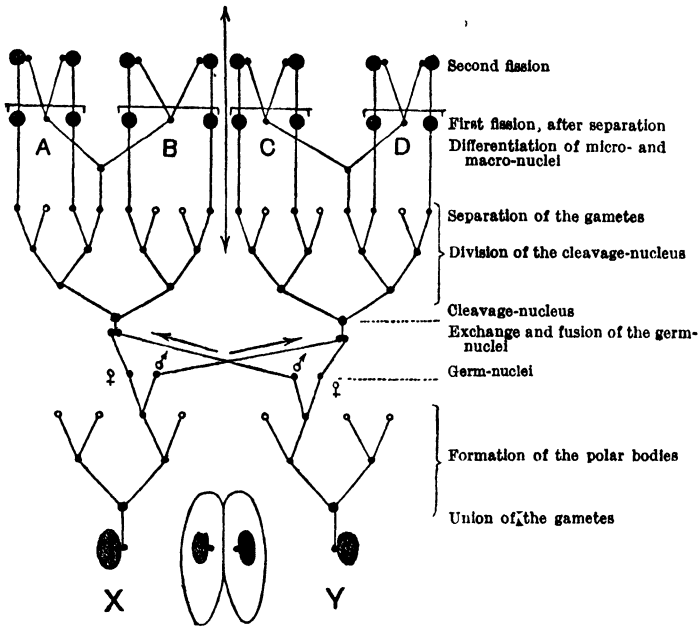


FIG. 566. Diagram showing the history of the micro-nuclei during the conjugation of paramœcium. (From WILSON after MAUPAS.)
X and Y represent the opposed macro- and micro-nuclei in the two gametes; circles represent degenerating and black dots persisting nuclei.

exposed to slightly different circumstances, corresponding changes will be introduced into the tendencies to growth of the product of the union. Some of these tendencies may be more advantageous than before, while others may be the reverse. Increased possibility of variation is however introduced by this admixture of nuclear material, and this may be the advantage of the process to the race. It should be noted that the half of the nucleus lost by each conjugating organism is qualitatively different from that which it retains and probably from that which it receives. A gamete in which the nucleus can be represented by *ab*, and which by simple division will produce similar organisms with nucleus *ab*, conjugates with an organism of slightly different structure, and therefore with a nucleus which can be represented as *cd*. After conjugation, the *ab* gamete will contain a nucleus represented by *ac*, while the *cd* gamete will contain a nucleus represented

by *bd*; *ac* or *bd* may be better or worse combinations than *ab* or *cd*. If either of them is better, that organism will survive under the less favourable conditions, and the race will continue with a slight, and to us inappreciable, change of type.

REPRODUCTION IN THE METAZOA

The numberless cells forming the bodies of the higher animals are all produced by a series of divisions from a single cell, the fertilised ovum. This cell is the result of a process of conjugation between two cells derived from different individuals. With the multiplication of cells forming a single organism there is, of course, an increased size of the organism. It is doubtful whether this of itself would be of any advantage, were it not that the multiplication of cells goes hand in hand with differentiation. groups of cells being modified structurally and set aside for one or other function of the body. Differentiation of function implies higher functional capacity. As a motor organ or as a means of locomotion, the differentiated muscle cells, with their attached parts, must be more effective than the undifferentiated protoplasm of the amœba. Specialisation of function involves changes of type in the cells resulting from the division of the primitive undifferentiated ovum. In most cases this change of type is permanent. An epithelial cell such as that forming the epidermis or the liver, when it divides, produces another cell of the same kind. One might almost speak of the evolution of a new species of cell, but that it takes place within the short period of the development of the multicellular individual, instead of occupying a long space of time and involving the destruction of countless individuals, as is the case when a change of type gradually occurs in unicellular organisms. Differentiation necessarily brings with it a limitation of the powers of reproduction. Any one of the descendants of a unicellular organism is in all respects equivalent to its ancestor, and can reproduce the same type of individual. The specialised liver or muscle cell can produce only a cell of the same type, one, that is to say, incapable of independent existence or of forming the divergent series of types necessary for the production of an individual. Differentiation of function therefore involves the setting aside of certain cells, *germ cells*, which retain their primitive character and are capable of indefinite division to form new generations each able to develop into a complete individual. These germ cells can often be recognised from the very earliest divisions of the fertilised ovum, which lead to the production of the mature individual. Thus in Ascaris, the progenitor of the germ cells differs from the somatic cells both by the greater size of its nucleus and in its mode of division (Fig. 567). In the cells destined to produce the somatic cells, a portion of the chromatin is cast out into the cytoplasm, where it degenerates; so that only in the germ cells is the sum total of the chromatin retained. Thus in the two-celled stage, in one cell all the chromatin is preserved, while in the other cell the thickened ends of the chromosomes are cast off into the cytoplasm and degenerate, only the thinner central portions being preserved. When these divide again, the

same process is repeated in only one of the daughter cells derived from a germ cell, and this recurs during five or six divisions, after which the chromatin elimination ceases and the two primordial germ cells thenceforward give rise only to other germ cells in which the entire chromatin is preserved. Thus "the original nuclear constitution of the fertilised egg is transmitted, as if by a law of primogeniture, only to one daughter cell, and

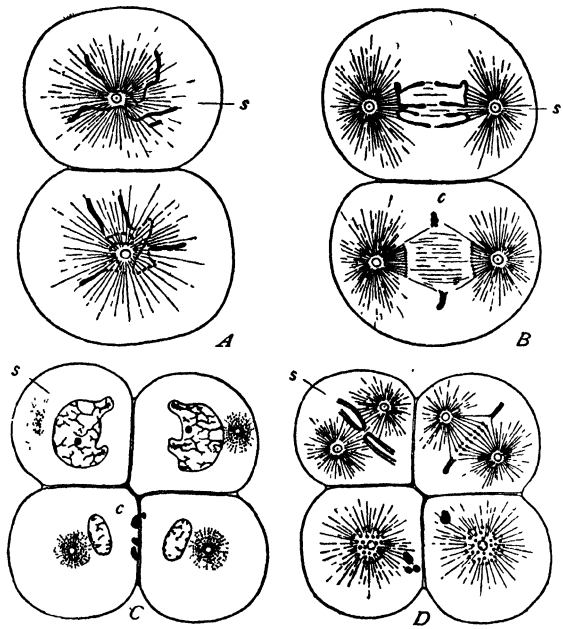


FIG. 567. Origin of the primordial germ cells and casting out of chromatin in the somatic cells of *Ascaris*. (WILSON and BOVERI.)

A, two-cell stage dividing; *s*, stem cell, from which arise the germ cells. B, the same from the side, later in the second cleavage, showing the two types of mitosis and the casting out of chromatin (*c*) in the somatic cell. C, resulting four-cell stage; the eliminated chromatin at *c*. D, the third cleavage, repeating the foregoing process in the two upper cells.

by this again to one, and so on, while in other daughter cells the chromatin in part degenerates, in part is transformed, so that all of the descendants of these side-branches receive small reduced nuclei" (Boveri, quoted by Wilson).

The immortality, which was the property of all the unicellular ancestors of the metazoa, has in the latter descended only to the germ cells. All the other cells of the body, which form the nervous and muscular tissues, glands, skin, etc., are mortal. They pass through a certain number of divisions; but although this number is large, it is limited, and on the number of divisions which are possible depends the normal duration of life of the organism to which the cells belong. We may thus regard the egg cell as dividing into two parts. From one part will be formed by differentiation

all the complex somatic mechanisms of the adult animal; the other part will divide, but will remain in an undifferentiated form, until its descendants can conjugate with germ cells from other individuals and form fertilised egg cells, destined to undergo the same series of changes.

The metazoan individual thus consists of a mortal host holding within itself the immortal sexual cells or gonads. Gaskell has pointed out that the development of the fertilised ovum involves two parallel processes—on the one hand, the elaboration of the elements forming the host; on the other, of those derived from the free-living independent germ cells. From the very beginning the somatic part of the organism, the host, is a reacting individual in which the nervous system acts as the integrator of all the activities of the body and as the middleman between the internal and external epithelial surfaces and the muscular system. The host may thus be regarded as a neuro-epithelial syncytium, every step in its evolution and differentiation being attended by increased control of all the units by a central nervous system.

The gonads were placed at first within the interstices of this syncytium, and escaped to form a new generation only after the death and disintegration of the host. But differentiation and division of labour affect also the free-living gonads. Some of these form a germ epithelium surrounding the body cavity, of which a few only of the elements pass out of the host as perfect germ cells, while the others are subordinated to the metabolic needs of these germ cells and are transformed into various elements, such as nurse cells, wandering mesoderm cells or phagocytes, yolk cells, and so on. Gaskell regards the greater part, if not the whole, of the connective-tissue framework of the body, as well as the wandering corpuscles of the blood and tissue fluids, as derived from these primitive germ cells. All these tissues, though useful to the host as well as to the finally successful germ cells, present the common feature of an absolute independence of the central nervous system. Thus the evolution of the animal kingdom means essentially the evolution of the host, and must therefore be closely connected with the evolution of the central nervous system, the ruling element in the neuro-muscular syncytium. On these grounds Gaskell has used the comparative morphology of the central nervous system as a means of tracing the origin of the vertebrate from the invertebrate type, and has come to the conclusion that the immediate ancestor of the vertebrate must be sought in the invertebrate group presenting the most highly developed central nervous system, namely, the Arthropoda.

All the complex mechanisms which are concerned in maintaining the life of the individual have apparently been developed in order to give the potentially immortal germ cells a better chance of survival in the struggle for existence. From the broad biological standpoint, as Foster points out, all the toil and turmoil of human existence may be regarded simply as the by-play of an ovum-bearing organism. From the same standpoint one must acknowledge that the mortality of the individual, resulting from the absence of an indefinite power of multiplication among the somatic cells, must be an advantage to the race. Throughout the living world the welfare of the individual is subordinated to that of the species. With each new generation there are possibilities of variation and of the production of individuals better or worse fitted for the maintenance of the race than those of the previous generation. Immortality of the individual would handicap the survival of the younger generations, and we should have the same retardation of progress in a race that we see in many civilised communities, where the power and the conduct of affairs are in the hands of the older members.

THE FORMATION OF GERM CELLS

In multicellular organisms the cells which conjugate to form a new cell, capable of developing into an individual, are of two kinds. One, which has generally a certain amount of reserve material stored up in its cytoplasm, is the female element and is called the *ovum*. The other cell, which consists of little more than nuclear material, is the male element and is called the *spermatozoon*. Both kinds of cells are derived from a mass of undifferentiated cells, the germ epithelium which, as we have seen, can often be traced directly back to the first divisions of the fertilised egg. The use of the reserve material in the ovum is to serve as food for the developing individual. The ovum and spermatozoon cannot be regarded as corresponding to complete cells. Before their union or conjugation both male and female germ cells undergo certain important changes which differentiate them from the ordinary somatic cells of the individual. The essential differences between a germ cell and a somatic cell can be best seen by a study of the nuclear changes which precede their formation. In division the nuclei of all somatic cells, whether of plants or animals, undergo a series of changes which, in their broad outlines, are similar throughout both animal and vegetable kingdoms (Fig. 568), and result in the production of qualitatively identical daughter nuclei.

The nucleus of the resting cell in its vegetative condition is generally separated from the cytoplasm by a nuclear membrane, and contains irregular masses of a material staining deeply with basic dyes, and known as chromatin. In the cytoplasm of most animal cells may be seen a small particle known as the centrosome. When division is about to take place, the clumps of chromatin arrange themselves into a filament which forms a continuous skein, the 'spireme stage.' This then breaks up into a number of segments, often V-shaped, the chromatin filaments or *chromosomes*. Each of the filaments, in large nuclei, may often be seen to be composed of rows of granules. While this change has been occurring, the nuclear membrane in most cases disappears, and the centrosome outside the nucleus divides into two parts, which travel to opposite ends of the nucleus. Round each centrosome the cytoplasm is modified and presents a radiate appearance, the *aster*, while joining the two centrosomes is a spindle of fine fibres, the *achromatic spindle*. The V-shaped segments of chromatin arrange themselves in a circle at the equator of the spindle midway between the two centrosomes. Each of the loops then splits longitudinally, and each half travels towards one or other of the centrosomes, thus forming two daughter nuclei. The half-loops then join to form a skein, and may return to the condition of a resting nucleus. These different phases in division are presented by all somatic cells, and have received the following names:

(1) *Prophase* (the formation of the spireme and of the achromatic spindle, and the breaking up of the spireme into chromatin loops or chromosomes).

(2) *Metaphase* (the splitting of the chromosomes).

(3) *Anaphase* (the travelling of each half-chromosome to the extremity of the spindle).

(4) *Telophase* (the retrogressive changes, leading to the conversion of the chromatin filaments into an ordinary resting nucleus, which are accompanied or preceded by a division of the cytoplasm across the equatorial part of the spindle).

When the spireme has broken up into separate chromatin loops, it is possible to count them, and it is found that the number present in any cell is constant for the species. Thus every human somatic cell has sixteen chromosomes in its nucleus. The same number is found in types so far apart as the ox, the guinea-pig, and the onion. In the mouse, the salamander, and the lily the number is twenty-four. Other types, such as the crustacean Artemia, are said to have as many as 168 chromosomes, while in Ascaris

the cells contain only two or four chromosomes. All these changes, which are included under the term *mitosis* or *karyokinesis*, seem to be adapted to ensuring an equal qualitative as well as quantitative distribution of the nuclear chromatin among the daughter cells resulting from the division of any cell. As we have seen in an earlier chapter, the nucleus, by its interaction with the cytoplasm, determines the processes of assimila-

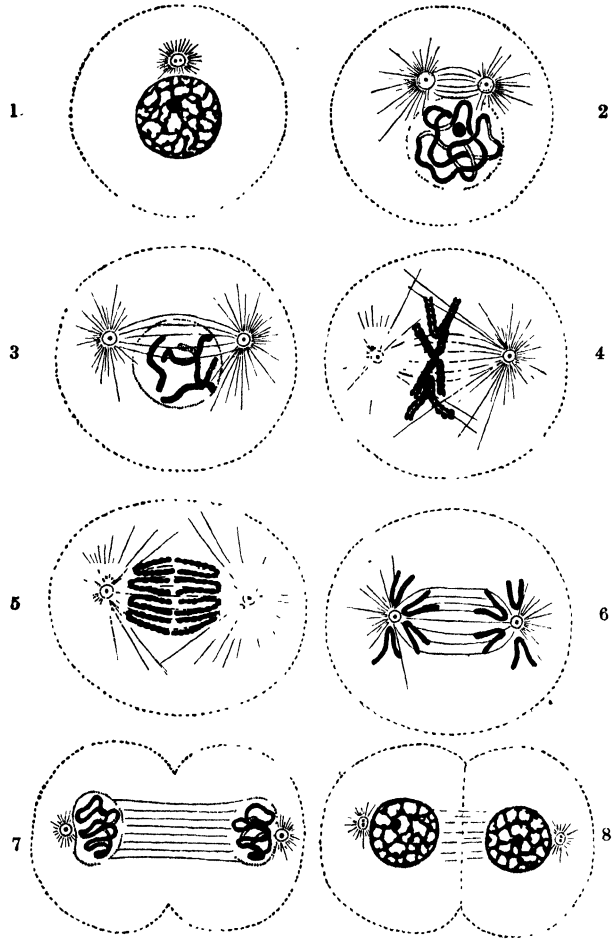


FIG. 568. Diagram showing the changes which occur in the centrosomes and nucleus of a cell in the process of mitotic division. (SCHAFER.)
The nucleus is supposed to have four chromosomes.

tion and growth of the whole cell. For the preservation of type in cell division it is therefore essential that the nuclei of the daughter cells shall be identical in all respects with the nucleus of the mother cell.

Sexual reproduction involves the conjugation of two cells, with union of their nuclei. If each of these nuclei consisted of the normal number of chromosomes, the fertilised egg cell would contain double the number

characteristic of the species, and since these chromosomes would divide by splitting, the number of chromosomes in each cell would be doubled with each generation. This doubling is obviated by the fact that, in the formation of the germ cells, the ovum and spermatozoon nuclei undergo a special type of division, which leads to the reduction of the chromosomes in the sexually mature cell to one-half of the number characteristic of the species. This mode of cell division is often called 'division by reduction,' or 'heterotype' mitosis, or 'meiosis' (Fig. 569).

We may take as an example the development of spermatozoa. The mother cells of the spermatozoa, the *spermatocytes*, divide twice, giving rise to four daughter cells, the *spermatids*, each of which develops into a functional spermatozoon. In the nuclear

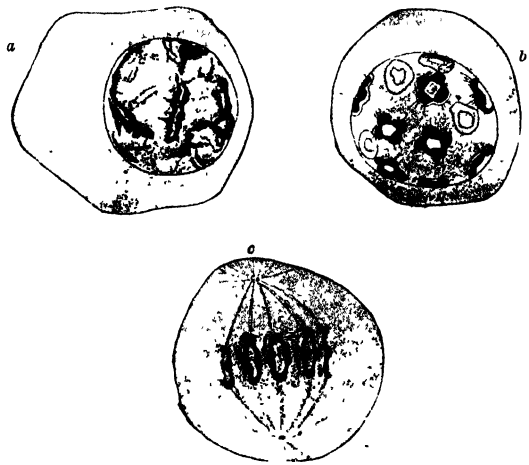


FIG. 569. Three stages of heterotype mitosis in spermatocyte of triton. (MOORE.)
a, germinal condition of chromosomes; *b*, gemini arranged in quadrate loops or tetrads; *c*, separation of tetrads into the duplex chromosomes of the daughter nuclei.

changes preparatory to the first division, the spireme, when it breaks up, gives rise to only half the normal number of chromosomes. Thus if the somatic number of chromosomes were four, we should find in the spermatocyte, after the breaking up of the spireme, only two chromosomes. These take up their position at the equator of the achromatic spindle and then divide; the division is effected however, not by splitting of the double chromosome, but by transverse division. Each chromosome breaks into half, one half going to each daughter cell. Since each of the reduced number of chromosomes can be regarded as made up of two normal chromosomes placed end to end or joined to form a ring, as in Fig. 569, *b*, the division in the middle provides for a qualitative difference between the two daughter cells. If we indicate the four normal chromosomes as *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, in ordinary somatic division, each daughter cell will also contain chromosomes which may be represented as *a*1, *b*1, *c*1, *d*1, and *a*2, *b*2, *c*2, *d*2. In the spermatocyte the two chromosomes may be represented as *ab* and *cd*. When they divide, one daughter cell receives *a* and *c*, while the other daughter cell receives *b* and *d*. The second division of these daughter cells takes place generally by splitting of the filaments, so that finally four spermatids are produced (Fig. 570), each with two chromosomes, two of them containing *a* and *c*, while the other two contain *b* and *d*. In the ovum, during maturation, analogous changes take place. Two successive cell divisions occur as in the formation of spermatozoa, but the daughter cells are of very unequal size. In the first division,

the heterotypical division, the chromosomes fuse in pairs and then divide as in the spermatocytes, so that each of the daughter cells contains one half the somatic number of chromosomes. The larger of the two resulting cells, which retains most of the cytoplasm, is still called the ovum, while the smaller one is spoken of as the 'first polar

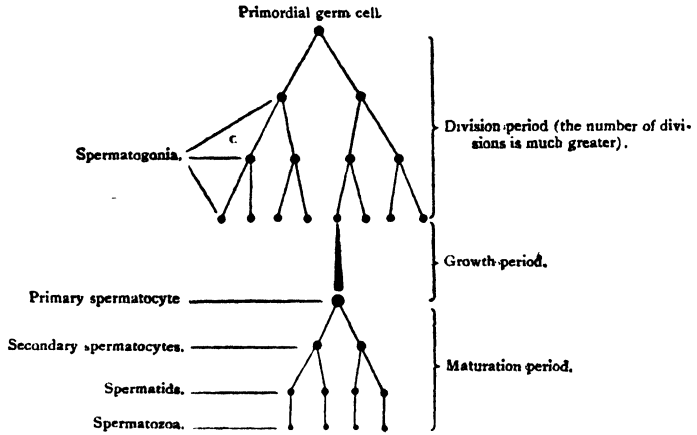


FIG. 570.

body.' The ovum now divides again and throws off a second polar body, the division being of the homotypical variety. The first polar body may also divide, so that from the original ovum three cells are produced, one of which retains the greater part of the cytoplasm, while the others are extruded, and degenerate (Fig. 571). The mature ovum has however only half the normal number of chromosomes, so that its nucleus is equivalent to the nucleus forming the head of the spermatozoon. The only difference

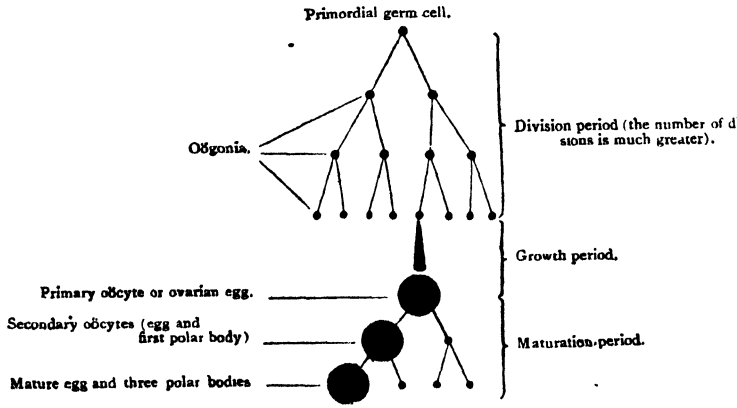


FIG. 571.

therefore between the formation of ovum and spermatozoon is that in the former case three of the cells formed by the division of the primitive ovum are abortive, whereas in the spermatozoon all four daughter cells produced from the spermatocyte remain functional. The production of these two kinds of sexual cell is represented in Figs. 570 and 571.

Since the nuclei of the mature ovum and spermatozoon contain only half the normal number of chromosomes, they are generally spoken of as *pro-nuclei*.

FERTILISATION

The essential features of fertilisation, *i. e.* the union of the sexual cells, are best studied in some of the lower invertebrates, such as ascaris or echinoderms. In the latter fertilisation takes place in the sea-water, into which

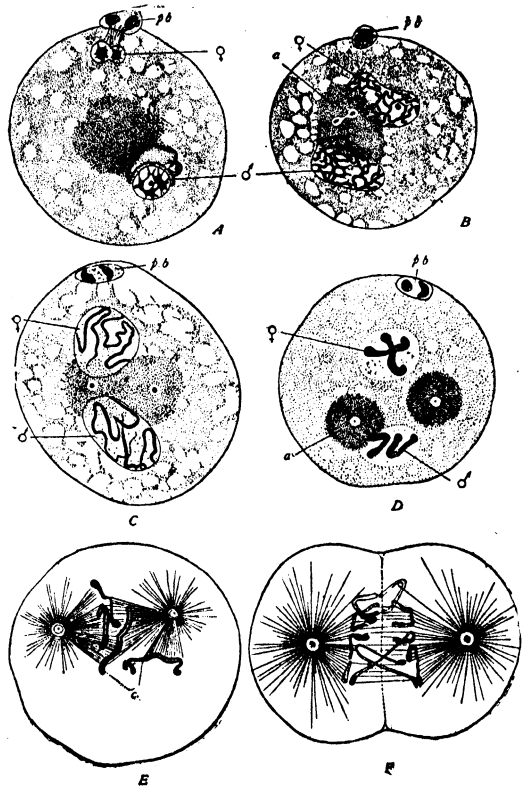


FIG. 572. Fertilisation and first division of ovum of Ascaris megalocephala. (Slightly modified from BOVERI and WILSON.)

A, second polar globule just formed; the head of the spermatozoon is becoming changed into a reticular nucleus (♂), which however shows distinctly two chromosomes; just above it, its archoplasm is shown: the egg nucleus (♀) also shows two chromosomes. B, both pro-nuclei are now reticular and enlarged; a double centrosome (*a*) is visible in the archoplasm which lies between them. C, the chromatin in each nucleus is now converted into two filamentous chromosomes; the centrosomes are separating from one another. D, the chromosomes are more distinct and shortened; the nuclear membranes have disappeared; the attraction spheres are distinct. E, mingling and splitting of the four chromosomes (c); the achromatic spindle is fully formed. F, separation (towards the poles of the spindle) of the halves of the split chromosomes, and commencing division of the cytoplasm. Each of the daughter cells now has four chromosomes; two of these have been derived from the ovum nucleus, two from the spermatozoon nucleus.

both ova and spermatozoa are extruded. The ovum of the echinoderm consists of a naked mass of protoplasm. Of the countless hordes of spermatozoa which may be in the neighbourhood of a given ovum, only one as a

rule enters. As soon as the spermatozoon has entered the ovum, a tough membrane is rapidly formed round the latter, so preventing the entrance of any further spermatozoa. The head of the spermatozoon enters the egg, while the tail atrophies and disappears. The head of the spermatozoon enlarges and assumes the character of a nucleus, the dense mass of chromatin breaking up first into a thread and then into the characteristic number of chromosomes (Fig. 572). The egg now contains two nuclei or pro-nuclei, exactly similar in appearance, one derived from the male and the other belonging to the egg itself. The two nuclei approach one another and join. In many cases there is an apparent fusion of the substance of the two nuclei. In others the chromatin filaments of male and female simply lie side by side, forming a complete nucleus with the somatic number of chromosomes. Fertilisation is rapidly followed by cell division. Each of the chromosomes splits longitudinally, half going to each of the daughter cells, and this process is repeated throughout the succeeding divisions which result in the formation of the new individual. Thus every cell of the body contains a nucleus of which exactly one half is paternal and the other maternal in origin. In ascaris it is often possible, in the first few divisions of the fertilised ovum, to distinguish in the daughter nuclei the chromatin filaments derived from the male from those derived from the female.

The strong impetus to cell division given by the process of fertilisation has naturally aroused much curiosity as to its intimate character. It might be thought that for cell division to take place a normal number of chromosomes is essential. As against this explanation may be adduced the fact that in many animals parthenogenesis occurs. The female pro-nucleus may, under certain conditions of environment or nutrition, start dividing and give rise to an embryo, each cell of which contains only half the normal number of chromosomes. In other cases of parthenogenesis only one polar body is extruded, or the second polar body joins again with the female pro-nucleus. In either case the ovum contains a nucleus, with a normal number of chromosomes, which divides and produces an individual resembling that resulting from the union of ovum and spermatozoon. It has been suggested that the impetus to division is given by the entry of the spermatozoon itself. In the series of divisions which precede the formation of the female pro-nucleus, the centrosome of the ovum generally disappears, whereas, in the formation of the spermatozoon, the centrosome persists and forms the middle part of the spermatozoon. In many cases the centrosomes divide in the spermatozoon itself, so that this contains two centrosomes when it enters the egg. These two centrosomes then become the centres of attraction spheres. They diverge, and between them is formed an achromatic spindle, along the equator of which the chromatin filaments of male and female pro-nuclei arrange themselves. It is doubtful however how far the centrosome can be regarded as a permanent cell structure. In echinoderm eggs, various modes of treatment will lead to the appearance of attraction spheres in the cytoplasm, and even to division of the non-fertilised egg. Loeb has suggested that the action of the spermatozoon is essentially

chemical in character. By alteration of the medium in which the eggs are contained, Loeb has succeeded in imitating exactly the changes which normally need the entrance of a spermatozoon for their occurrence. On immersing the eggs in a weak solution of formic or lactic acid, a membrane is formed. The eggs are then taken from the acid, placed in concentrated sea-water for a short time, and then removed to ordinary sea-water. Division rapidly occurs with the production of a normal larva. He suggests that the spermatozoon brings with it ferments or other chemical substances, which excite the egg nucleus and cytoplasm in the same way as the chemical measures adopted for this artificial induction of segmentation.

SECTION II

DEVELOPMENT AND HEREDITY

THERE is perhaps no phenomenon which is so impressive as the development from a minute speck of protoplasm, the fertilised egg, of an individual partaking of the minutest characteristics of both its parents. An egg cell has much the same appearance whether it belong to an echinoderm, a fish, or a man. In the process of development, by a simple repetition of a series of cell divisions, this undifferentiated protoplasm is formed into the complex organs with the potentialities and habits which distinguish the type from which the protoplasm has been derived. We cannot wonder that the intimate nature of this process has been the subject of speculation from the very birth of science. Running through these speculations are two main ideas, which have been labelled the theories of 'evolution' and of 'epigenesis.' By the 'evolutionists' the egg was believed to contain an embryo fully formed in miniature, as the bud contains the flower or the chrysalis the butterfly. Development was therefore only the unfolding of something already existing. If however this theory be pushed to its utmost and if the egg contain a complete embryo, this must itself contain eggs for the next generation, and so on *ad infinitum*, a conclusion which is of course absurd. According to the theory of epigenesis, the structure of the egg is wholly different from that of the adult, its development consisting in the continual formation one after the other of new parts previously non-existent as such. There is no doubt that this view is fundamentally correct. The difficulty with which we have to contend is the understanding of the orderly sequence and correlation of the cell divisions and differentiations which result in an adult individual of the same type as the parents. The fact that, under approximately identical conditions, one mammalian ovum will give rise to a mouse and the other to a man indicates that there must be some difference in structure, organisation, or composition of the primitive egg cell in each case, and the theory of 'evolution' has reappeared in later days in a somewhat modified form, according to which the differentiation of the ovum is causally connected with a preformed differentiation in the nuclear structures *e. g.* chromosomes, of the ovum itself. We have already seen that the germ cells in some types are separated off from the rest of the embryo at a fairly early stage. If, in the two-celled stage of the frog's egg, one cell be destroyed by means of a hot wire, the other cell develops to form half an embryo, thus suggesting that each cell of the two-celled embryo could give rise only to the corresponding half of the body. This limitation of development however occurs only if the intact cell be left in connection with the

cell that has been injured. If, in echinoderm larvæ, the cells be entirely separated, even as late as the eight-celled stage of division, each cell will give rise to a whole embryo, differing from a normal embryo only in respect of size. This difference suggests that the number of divisions that each cell can undergo is predetermined in the egg cell itself, but shows also that the cells into which the egg divides are, at first at any rate, equipotential. We must assume therefore that the reason why one cell under ordinary circumstances forms only one half of the embryo is that its development is regulated and determined by the presence of the other cell in connection with it and forming the other half of the embryo. That is to say, the development of the egg involves the adaptation to environment of a protoplasm of certain properties and powers of reaction. The final product of development depends (1) on the nature of the protoplasm (including the nucleus) of which the egg is composed, and (2) on the environmental conditions to which the egg is subjected during the rapid growth and multiplication attending its development. We could therefore speak of a morphology of inheritance, but the morphology would be ultra-microscopic and have relation to the molecular structure of the protoplasm of which the egg was composed.

In the transmission of the potentialities of development from parent to fertilised egg we must regard the nucleus as the essential structure. In ordinary development the spermatozoon furnishes only a nucleus and centrosome, the ovum supplying the whole of the cytoplasm. There seems however no grounds for assigning any directive power to the latter structure. In echinoderm ova it is possible to get rid of the nucleus and then by the introduction of spermatozoa to have an individual entirely paternal in origin, which on development produces a larva of the paternal character. In division of the egg the only part of the cell which divides, so that each daughter cell shall include an equal part of both parental germs, is the nucleus. The constant number of the chromosomes in each species, and their accurate division on mitosis, suggest that the hereditary transmission of the potentialities of the cell is bound up with the chromosomes. It has been suggested that every character is located in a chromosome or part of a chromosome. If this be the case one might regard the differentiation into various tissues, which occurs in the process of development, as occasioned by an actual loss or degeneration of the constituent parts of one or more chromosomes. There is no doubt that many tissues do become thus differentiated at a fairly early period in development, having undergone in the process an absolute modification of their potentialities, which must be at any rate shared by the chromosomes of their constituent cells. The extent to which this limitation of powers of development occurs varies widely in different animals. In the higher animals such as man, epithelium will reproduce epithelium and liver cells will reproduce liver cells, while nerve cells are absolutely incapable of multiplication. On the other hand, in crustacea a whole limb may be torn off and be regenerated from the tissues of the stump. Destruction of the optic lens in the salamander is followed by its regeneration from the anterior part of the optic cup, a tissue

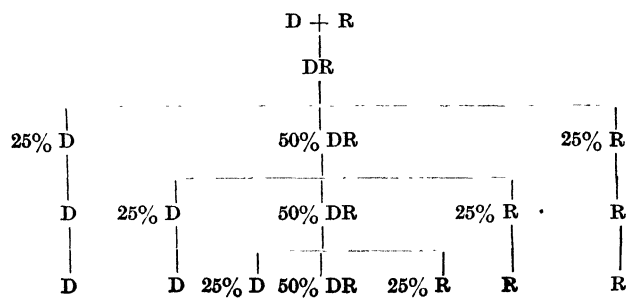
which had no part in its primary formation. Worms will form a new head after decapitation. In these animals therefore, the cells in many parts of the body possess the power of directed growth, if need arise in case of injury, and are able to form tissues of many different kinds.

I have mentioned the small size of the larva formed from isolated cells of the segmenting egg as a proof that the number of cell divisions of the somatic part of the developing animal is predetermined and limited. This conclusion must not be taken too absolutely. Many of the tissues, even of the highest animals, possess the power of almost unlimited regeneration by cell multiplication as a response to injury. Under normal conditions the growth of such tissues is limited, not by absence of power to divide, but as a result of a mutual interaction between them and the surrounding cells. We might almost speak of a struggle for existence between the various tissues of the body, which in the healthy organism results in an equilibrium or balance of multiplicative powers. If this balance is upset by any means, such as stimulation of certain cells by the presence of intracellular parasites, or their destruction by irritants or other abnormal conditions (*e. g.* exposure to X-rays), one tissue may enter into active growth at the expense of the surrounding tissues, and the result is a morbid growth such as cancer. It is possible that in the latter case a new factor comes into play. All tissues of the body, as we have seen, begin to die from the time that they are born. They have a certain span of life, a certain limitation to their generations, which results in the phenomenon of senescence, such as occurs in a culture of protozoa. In protozoa this phenomenon is the signal for rejuvenation by conjugation. It is possible that in cancer something of the same nature occurs. It is at any rate significant that in a rapidly growing cancer many of the dividing cells present the phenomenon of heterotype mitosis, a phenomenon which is otherwise found only in the sexual cells preparing for conjugation and for the production of a new individual. Given adequate conditions of nutrition, there seems to be no limit to the growth of cancer cells. In mice a cancer may be transferred from one individual to another by inoculation, and this process may apparently go on indefinitely, so that finally a mass of cancer cells may have been produced equal in volume to many thousands of mice, and persisting long after the mouse from which it was first taken would have died under natural conditions.

In sexual reproduction the new individual partakes of characteristics of both its parents. It therefore resembles neither of its parents in all details. The conjugation of the two parent cells, from which it is derived, has been preceded by a throwing out of half the chromosomes from each parent cell. It is therefore natural to ascribe the variations, which occur among the members of one family, to a qualitative difference in the chromosomes which have been eliminated in the formation of their respective egg cells. Can we regard the chromosomes as representing separate qualities of the individual, or must we assume that all qualities are represented to a greater or less extent in every chromosome? In the case of many qualities, especially those which distinguish the species as apart from the individual variation or family characteristic, we must probably accept the latter idea as correct.

In this case the child can be regarded as representing an arithmetical mean of both its parents. In certain respects however, a quality seems to be transmitted from parent to offspring either completely or not at all. This is specially applicable to those characters which have been rapidly produced by artificial selection, characters which, if artificial selection be abandoned, rapidly disappear, with reversion to the type from which the special strain was ultimately produced.

The way in which these characteristics are transmitted was first studied by Mendel and has been formulated as Mendel's law. Mendel's first experiments were carried out on peas. On crossing a tall plant with a dwarf plant, seeds were obtained from which all the plants were tall. On recrossing the plants of this generation among one another, a third generation was obtained in which 25 per cent. of the plants were dwarfs and 75 per cent. were tall. Crossing the dwarf plants among themselves led to the production of dwarf plants through successive generations. Of the 75 per cent. tall plants one-third and all their descendants continued to produce tall plants when self-fertilised, whereas of the remaining two-thirds of the tall plants 25 per cent. produced dwarfs and 75 per cent. produced tall plants. On continuing the process of breeding, the dwarf plants when self-fertilised always produced dwarfs, whereas of the tall plants 25 per cent. produced tall plants which bred true, while the remaining 50 per cent. produced the same percentage of tall and dwarf as in the preceding generations. Mendel explained these results by the assumption that a character could be *dominant* or *recessive*. If both characters were present together in one plant it would partake of the dominant type; the fact that this plant possessed the recessive character would be shown only by the results of breeding. In the case of the peas the tall character was dominant over the dwarf. Thus when the tall and dwarf pea were crossed the first generation of plants would exhibit the dominant character and be tall. In the second generation however, 25 per cent. of the individuals would be pure dominants (D + D), 25 per cent. would be pure recessive (R + R), while 50 per cent. would be mixed (D + R). The pure dominants bred together would always give rise to nothing but pure dominants, the recessive to recessive, while the mixed type would always, as before, give rise to 25 per cent. pure dominants, 50 per cent. mixed, and 25 per cent. pure recessives. These results may perhaps be made clearer by the following Table:



It has been suggested that a very large number, if not all, of the characters of an individual might be brought under this law. This might be done by indefinitely subdividing the characters, but the question would then become beyond the limits of analysis or experimental investigation. There is no doubt that many qualities are subject to Mendel's law, and that their study will be of considerable assistance in guiding the efforts of our breeders and horticulturists in the formation of new varieties desirable for their value to man. In respect of many qualities the Mendelian law seems to fail. Thus in man the progeny of a cross between a white and black race are more or less intermediate between the two and vary according to the amount of black and white blood introduced in succeeding generations. Definite black and white individuals are not produced, but merely individuals of various degrees of brownness.

SECTION III

REPRODUCTION IN MAN

THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE REPRODUCTIVE ORGANS

THE most marked example of chemical correlation is found in the influence exerted by the genital glands upon the other parts of the reproductive apparatus and upon the body generally. Thus castration, *i. e.* removal of the testes or ovaries, if carried out before the time of puberty, prevents the development of the secondary sexual characters, which normally occurs at this epoch in both sexes. Puberty denotes the period at which ripe spermatozoa and ova are produced in the testis and ovary respectively. In the human species this period is marked or preceded in the male by increased growth of the skeleton, by growth of the larynx, leading to a lowering in pitch of the voice, by the growth of hair on the face and pubes, and by the development of sexual desire. In the female we find at puberty enlargement of the breasts, attended by some growth of the mammary glands and by a moulding of the whole form, making it more fit for the bearing of children. The chief sign of puberty in the female consists in the periodic changes in the uterus, which give rise to menstruation, *i. e.* a flow of blood and mucus from the genital organs, lasting three to five days and repeated every four weeks. Menstruation persists so long as the ovary is functional, and is producing ripe ova. The activity of the ovary comes to an end between the forty-fifth and fiftieth year ('the climacteric' or 'change of life'). With the cessation of its activity menstruation also stops, and the uterus undergoes a process of atrophy. These secondary sexual characters must be ascribed to the influence of chemical substances produced in the ovary and testis respectively. Castration after puberty, though not causing any change in the skeleton, which has already assumed its permanent form, brings about retrogressive changes in the other genital organs, analogous to those occurring in the female at the climacteric. In animals the phenomena of 'coming on heat' or 'rut' seem to be analogous with menstruation in the human female, and like this depend on the normal activity of the ovary. They are permanently abolished by extirpation of the ovaries, but may be reinduced by implantation in the peritoneum of an ovary from another animal of the same species. This fact shows that the changes in the uterus responsible for rut, as well as for menstruation, are independent of any nervous connections between the ovaries and the rest of the body, and must therefore be brought about by the circulation in the blood of specific chemical substances produced in the ovaries. According

to some authors, the essential factors for the production of these genital hormones are the 'interstitial cells' found both in the testes and ovaries of various animals. These interstitial cells are not however universally present. It has been shown that, by means of the Röntgen rays, it is possible to destroy the germ cells in either testes or ovaries, so rendering the animal sterile. The interstitial cells, when present, are not destroyed by these rays, yet the effects on the accessory genital organs are stated to be as marked as after complete extirpation of either ovaries or testes.

The chemical correlations between the ovaries and the other organs concerned in reproduction are perhaps best marked in the changes which attend pregnancy. In this case the fertilisation of the ovum by a spermatozoon is followed by a great development, first of the mucous membrane and later on of the muscular wall of the uterus. The mucous membrane thickens, apparently in order to form a bed for the developing fertilised ovum. With this growth of the uterus there is a corresponding growth of the other parts of the genital tract, *e. g.* the vagina. At the same time rapid changes take place in the mammary glands. These changes may be studied experimentally in the rabbit, in which gestation lasts only about twenty-nine days. In a virgin rabbit of a year old it is difficult with the naked eye to see any trace of the mammary gland in the tissue lying under the nipples. Each gland is limited to an area not more than 1 cm. broad, and consists entirely of ducts lined with a single layer of flattened epithelial cells. With the occurrence of conception a marked change takes place. Four or five days after fertilisation, when it is still impossible with the naked eye to discover any embryos in the swollen uterine horns, on reflecting the skin from the abdomen each mammary gland appears as a circular pink area, about 3 c.m. in diameter. On section the gland consists of ducts which are in an active state of proliferation, their epithelial lining being two or three cells thick and presenting numerous mitotic figures. By the ninth day the whole abdomen is covered with a thin layer of glandular tissue; by the twenty-fifth day this tissue is ½ cm. in thickness and consists for the greater part of secreting alveoli, lined with cells containing numerous fat globules. At full term the alveoli contain ready-formed milk.

This hypertrophy of the mammary glands occurs during pregnancy after complete divisionof all possible nervous paths between the glands of the ovaries or uterus. In the guinea-pig a mammary gland has been actually transplanted to another part of the body, thus severing all its normal nervous connections, and yet it enlarged as usual during a subsequent pregnancy. Ancel and Bouin have brought forward evidence that the corpus luteum—the tissue produced in the ovary as a result of the discharge of an ovum—is intimately concerned with the growth of the mammary glands, and may indeed cause a certain degree of hypertrophy of these glands in the entire absence of any product of conception within the uterus.[1] The limited

[1] According to Ancel and Bouin, in the rabbit discharge of an ovum and formation of a corpus luteum occur only as a result of copulation. The same effect may be produced by artificial rupture of a ripe follicle, whereupon there is a development of the mammary glands. If no impregnation has taken place (*e. g.* if the buck has

growth of the glands, which occurs at puberty, can certainly not be ascribed to the presence of a fœtus in the uterus, and must be connected with the growth of ripe ova or, as suggested by the two French authors, with the growth of the tissue of the corpus luteum, resulting from the discharge of ova.

There seem also to be obscure relationships between the activity of the sexual organs and that of certain so-called ductless glands. Thus castration at an early age leads to persistence of the thymus gland, whereas normally this gland atrophies just before the sexual organs commence their functional activity. The existence of a connection between the thyroid and the ovaries has been a popular belief for 2000 years. In many individuals the thyroid is perceptibly enlarged at each menstrual period. On the other hand, extirpation of the thyroid before puberty brings about, among the other signs of cretinism, failure of development of the ovaries, so that puberty is delayed partially or completely.

We must thus regard the germ cells not only as representing the cells from which the individuals of the new generation may be developed, but also as concerned in the formation of chemical substances which, discharged into their hosts, affect many or all of the functions of the latter, with the object of finally subordinating the activities of the individual to the preservation and perpetuation of the species.

THE MALE REPRODUCTIVE ORGANS

In all the higher animals we may divide the reproductive organs into the essential organs, which form the germ cells, the spermatozoa and ova respectively, and the accessory organs, which have as their office the facilitation of the access of the spermatozoa to the ova (fertilisation), and in the female the nutrition of the product of fertilisation during the early period of its development.

The essential sexual organ of the male is represented by the testis. This is made up of a collection of convoluted tubules, the seminal tubules, which are contained in a number of compartments separated by fibrous septa. The tubules present few or no branches, each one being about 500 mm. long. The testis is formed in the first instance in the peritoneal cavity from the germinal epithelium, but early in life leaves the abdominal cavity by the abdominal ring to lie in a pouch of skin—the scrotum. Several tubules unite to form a straight tubule, which leads by a series of communicating spaces, the rete testis, into the vasa efferentia (Fig. 573). These join to form the duct of the epididymis, coiled into a mass lying at the

been sterilised by ligature of the vas deferens), the glands develop for fourteen days and then begin to atrophy. This period corresponds to the period of active growth of the corpus luteum. The continued growth during the latter half of pregnancy these authors ascribe to the production of another hormone by a special glandular tissue ('myometrial gland') which makes its appearance about the fourteenth day in the wall of the uterus, at the site of implantation of the placenta, and lasts until the end of pregnancy.

back of the testis. The epididymis is composed of the convolutions of this single duct, which is about 20 feet long. From the lower end of the epididymis the vas deferens, a tube with thick muscular walls, leads by the abdominal ring to the base of the bladder, where it opens into the beginning of the urethra in its prostatic part. Just before it joins the urethra each vas deferens presents a diverticulum, the seminal vesicle, which lies along, and is attached to, the base of the bladder. The prostate itself, which surrounds the first part of the urethra, is composed of a matrix of unstriated muscular fibres, enclosing numerous branched racemo-tubular glands. From the point of entry of the vasa deferentia to its orifice, the urethra represents

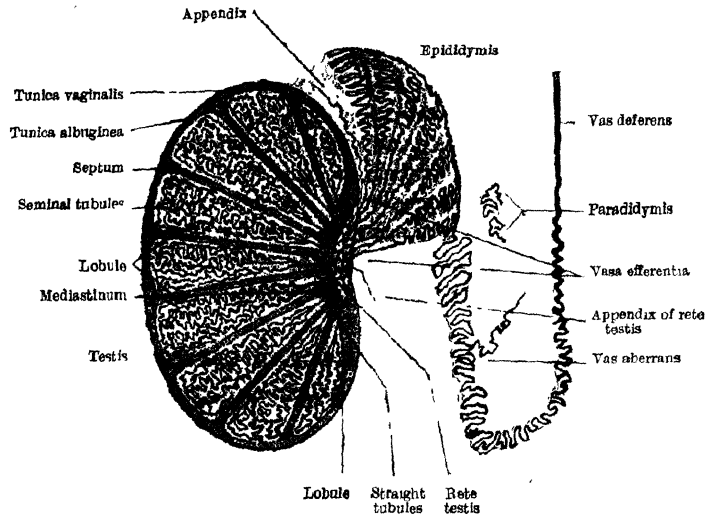


FIG. 573. Diagrammatic representation of the course of the seminal tubules in the testis and epididymis. (After NAGEL.)

a common passage for the urine and for the sexual products—the semen. It passes therefore through tissues, forming the penis, which are especially adapted for the purpose of intromission, *i. e.* the introduction of the semen containing the spermatozoa into the female. In the urethra we distinguish the prostatic, the membranous, and the penile portions. Into the beginning of the penile portion, the bulb of the urethra, open the ducts of the two glands of Cowper. In the penis itself the urethra is surrounded with erectile tissue, forming the corpus spongiosum, and lies between the two corpora cavernosa, which consist of the same kind of tissue. The erectile tissue is a spongy meshwork of elastic and unstriated muscle fibres, enclosing spaces in free communication with the efferent veins of the organ. The arterioles also open into these spaces, but under normal circumstances both the arterioles and the muscle tissues of the framework are contracted, so that the blood trickles very slowly from the arterioles into the spaces, whence it escapes readily by means of the veins. If the muscle fibres be

relaxed, so that blood can pass rapidly into and distend the spaces, the tissue swells and becomes harder, causing 'erection' of the organ.

In the immature testis, *i. e.* from birth up to puberty, the seminal tubules are filled with cells with large nuclei. Some of these are the spermatogonia, the mother cells of the future spermatozoa, while the others form the cells of Sertoli, whose function it is to act as nurse cells to the developing spermatozoa. The actual formation of spermatozoa begins at puberty, when the spermatogonia divide many times to form the spermatocytes, which in their turn undergo heterotype mitosis to form the spermatids, as already described. By a modification of the latter the fully formed spermatozoa are formed. These, when mature, pass by the tubules of the testis and of the epididymis into the vas deferens, whence they make their way into the seminal vesicles. Their movement is probably facilitated by the cells lining the tubule of the epididymis as well as by the secretion of the lining membrane of the seminal vesicles. It has been noted that the spermatozoa are practically motionless while in the seminiferous tubules of the testis, but become actively motile in the vas deferens, or when mixed with prostatic secretion. It is difficult to understand how the spermatozoa are conveyed through the resistance which must be offered by the huge length of the tubule of the epididymis, unless their onward motion is facilitated by the cilia-like structures attached to some of the cells lining this tubule. The formation of the spermatozoa is continuous, though the rate at which this occurs is variable and regulated by the sexual activity of the individual. In the fully formed semen the spermatozoa originating in the testis are mixed, not only with the fluid secreted by the lining membrane of the epididymis and of the seminal vesicle, but also with the mucous secretions of the prostatic glands and of Cowper's glands. Nevertheless it contains spermatozoa in enormous numbers, the semen emitted at a single act of coitus containing as many as 226,000,000 spermatozoa. Though the vast majority of these are probably capable of fertilising an ovum, this act is carried out by only one—a fact characteristic of the prodigality of nature when dealing with the perpetuation of the type.

THE FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE ORGANS

The essential organ of reproduction in the female is the ovary, the seat of production of the ova. The accessory organs include the oviducts or Fallopian tubes, the uterus, in which the fertilised ovum is retained during the first nine months of its development, and the vagina, which is especially adapted for the reception of the male organ in the act of impregnation.

Among the accessory organs we may also reckon the mammary glands, which undergo a special development during pregnancy, and serve for the nourishment of the young individual during the first period of extra-uterine life.

OVULATION. At birth the ovary consists of a stroma of spindle-shaped cells, and is covered by a layer of cubical epithelium (the germ epithelium) continuous with the endothelium lining the general peritoneal cavity.

Embedded in the stroma but especially numerous just underneath the epithelium, are a vast number of 'primordial follicles.' These are formed during fœtal life by downgrowths of the germinal epithelium. Of the cells prolonged in this way from the germinal epithelium, some undergo enlargement to form the primordial ova, while the others are arranged in a single layer of flattened nucleated cells, the 'follicular epithelium,' as a sort of capsule to the ovum. Of the primordial follicles, about 70,000 are to be found in the ovary of the newborn child. During the first twelve to fourteen years of

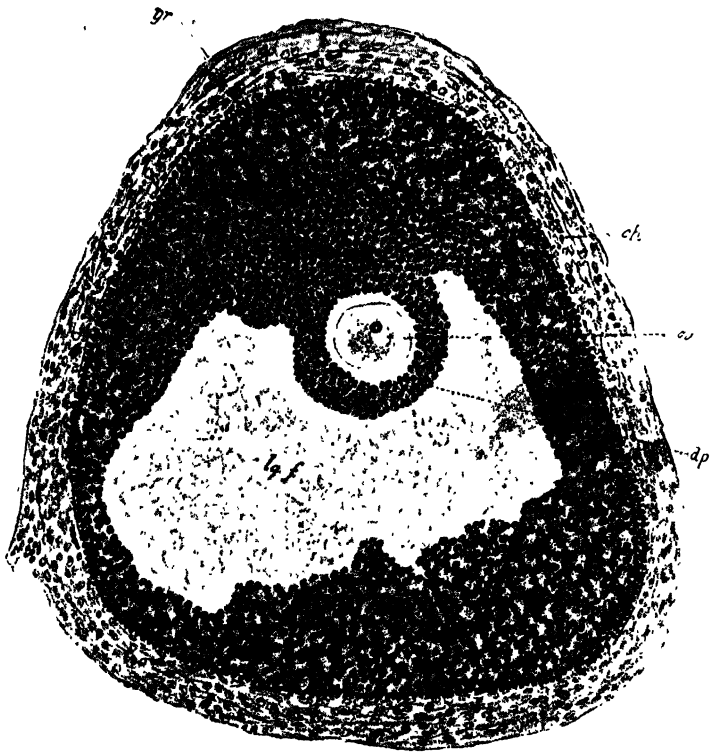


FIG. 574. Graafian follicle of mammalian ovary. (PRENANT and BOUIN.)
ov, ovum; *dp*, discus proligerus; *lq.f*, liquor folliculi; *ch*, theca; *gr*, membrana granulosa.

life they remain in a quiescent condition. With the onset of puberty one or more of the primordial follicles begin to develop. Indeed, this development may be regarded as the causative factor in the various phenomena which are characteristic of puberty in the female (*v.* p. 1269). The first stage in the growth of the follicle is a proliferation of the follicular epithelium, the cells of which become cubical and are arranged in several layers round the ovum. At one point in the mass of cells surrounding the ovum, a cavity appears filled with fluid, the *liquor folliculi*. The epithelium thus becomes

separated into two parts, *i. e.* the *membrana granulosa*, several layers thick, lining the whole follicle, and the *discus proligerus*, a mass of cells attached to one side of the follicle, in which is embedded the ovum (Fig. 574). Round the growing follicle the stroma assumes a concentric arrangement and forms a capsule, of which the internal layer consists chiefly of spindle-shaped cells richly supplied with blood vessels, while the outer layer—the *theca externa*—is made up of a tough fibrous tissue. With the growth of the follicle the ovum also becomes larger and surrounds itself with a distinct membrane, known as the *zona pellucida*. This membrane presents a fine radial striation, which is supposed to indicate the existence of canals through which the ovum can obtain sustenance from the surrounding cells of the follicular epithelium. The nucleus also becomes larger, and forms the *germinal vesicle* containing one or two well-marked nucleoli—*the germinal spot*. The mature Graafian follicle projects from the surface of the ovary as a transparent vesicle about the size of a pea. (Its diameter is about 15 mm.) In the process of growth the ovum has increased from a diameter of 25μ to 200μ. Before the ovum can undergo fertilisation, the double division of the nucleus or germinal vesicle has to take place, which leads to the formation and extrusion of the two polar bodies. This process probably occurs just before or just after the discharge of the ovum from the ovary.

With increasing size of the Graafian follicle the membrane covering it becomes progressively thinner. At certain periods, or under certain conditions, the membrane ruptures, and the ovum is discharged in the liquor folliculi, still surrounded by an adherent mass of the cells of the discus proligerus. In some animals this process of ovulation occurs at definite periods of the year. In others such as the rabbit, the occurrence of ovulation depends upon coitus taking place during the period of sexual activity. We shall have later to discuss the relation of ovulation in the human female to the periodic changes occurring in the other parts of the reproductive apparatus.

After the discharge of the ovum the remaining portions of the follicle undergo a characteristic series of changes, which result in the production of the *corpus luteum*. Immediately after the rupture the follicle becomes filled with blood, apparently resulting from the sudden release of the pressure on the capillaries in the walls of the follicle. The cells of the membrana granulosa rapidly increase in size, a few of them undergoing mitotic division, so that a dense mass of cells is formed, nearly filling the original follicle. At the same time the cells of the internal theca proliferate, with the formation of connective tissue, which grows in among the cells filling the Graafian follicle. These cells finally attain a size four or five times that of the cells of the membrana granulosa in the mature follicle. Blood vessels grow from the external theca towards the centre of the follicle. The cells within the follicle then undergo fatty degeneration and present a yellow colour due to a fatty pigment known as *lutein*. The corpus luteum, as the body so formed is called, attains its greatest size about a week after ovulation, and then gradually undergoes regressive changes. If however the ovum,

which has been discharged, undergoes fertilisation, and pregnancy results, the corpus luteum continues to grow for a considerable time and attains its largest size at about the third month of pregnancy. It does not entirely disappear until after the end of pregnancy. The big corpus luteum found in pregnancy is often spoken of as the 'true' corpus luteum, and is distinguished from the *corpus luteum spurium* of menstruation or of ovulation without fertilisation. There is no essential difference other than that of size between these two kinds of corpus luteum. It must not be imagined that all the 70,000 primordial follicles found in the ovary of a newborn child undergoes this series of changes; it is probable that in the human female ovulation occurs, as a rule, once every four weeks during the

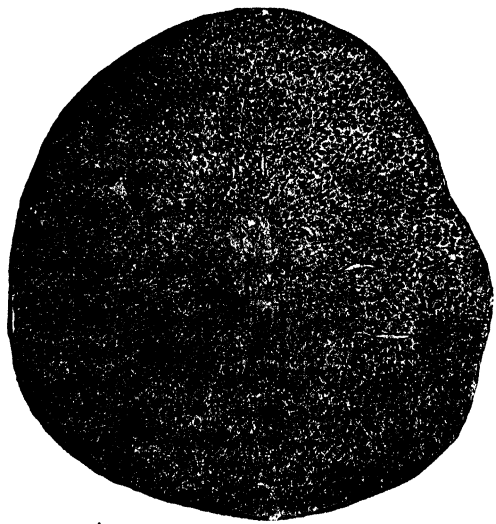


FIG. 575. Fully developed corpus luteum of the mouse. (SOBOTTA.)

thirty-five years of sexual life. A vast number of the Graafian follicles, after developing to a certain extent, undergo regressive changes, both during childhood and during adult life. The cellular elements degenerate, leucocytes wander into the follicle and attack the degenerating ovum, so that finally the follicle is replaced by connective tissue, without the formation of any corpus luteum.

MENSTRUATION. Puberty in the girl is marked by the onset of menstruation. Under this term is understood a flow of blood and mucus from the uterus, which recurs every four weeks and lasts each time from four to five days. Before the first menstrual period, other signs of puberty, *i. e.* of approaching sexual maturity, are usually observed. These include rapid growth, with changes in the skeleton, leading to the typically feminine type of pelvis, a development of the mammary glands, and the growth of hair on the pubes. At the same time there is increased development of the mental characteristics which are typical of the sex. The amount of blood

lost at each menstrual period varies between 100 and 300 grm. During the 'period' there are often disturbances of other functions of the body, which are so common that to be 'unwell' is the recognised polite description of the menstrual period. Thus it is often attended with pains in the abdomen, a feeling of weight and fulness, disturbance of digestion, headache, and neuralgias of various distribution. At the same time there is a general disinclination for exertion.

Menstruation is due to periodic changes in the uterine mucous membrane. During the few days previous to the period the mucous membrane undergoes a rapid hypertrophy, increasing in thickness from 2 mm. to 6 mm. At the same time there is increased vascularity of the membrane in consequence of dilatation of its blood vessels. At the commencement of the menstrual period there is an escape of the red blood corpuscles, chiefly by diapedesis, but partly by actual rupture of the blood capillaries into the spaces between the uterine glands. At this period sections of the uterine mucous membrane show numerous collections of red blood corpuscles, lying immediately under the superficial epithelium. In some cases this stage is followed by an almost complete desquamation of the superficial epithelium. Generally the desquamation is only partial, but in either case the blood escapes into the cavity of the uterus, where it becomes mixed with the increased secretion from the uterine glands and is discharged into and from the vagina as the menstrual fluid. With the occurrence of the menstrual flow the mucous membrane begins to diminish in thickness. The vascularity decreases, and much of the blood in the deeper parts of the mucosa becomes reabsorbed. The desquamated epithelium is replaced by proliferation of the cells which remain intact, so that finally the mucosa is completely regenerated and brought back to its original condition. This period of regeneration lasts about fourteen days. During the next few days the condition of the membrane is stationary, but this period of rest lasts but a short time, since signs of the pre-menstrual swelling can be detected as early as three days before the onset of the next menstrual period.

THE RELATION OF OVULATION TO MENSTRUATION

There is no doubt that menstruation depends on the functional activity of the ovary. Its onset coincides with the first production of ripe ova in the ovary, and it ceases with the cessation of ovulation at the climacteric or menopause. In cases where the ovaries have been removed before puberty menstruation never occurs. Removal of both ovaries during adult life generally brings about a premature menopause. It seems probable that the ripening of the ova in the human ovary occurs at periods corresponding to those of menstruation. But there has been much division of opinion as to the exact relation between the two processes. Fairly definite clinical and *post-mortem* evidence has been brought forward for the theory that ovulation precedes the menstrual flow. On this theory the degeneration of the uterine mucous membrane, which occurs at each period, represents, so

to speak, the undoing of a preparation for the reception of a fertilised ovum. The ovum has been discharged, the mucous membrane has been prepared for its reception, but fertilisation not having taken place, ovum and mucous membrane are cast out together in the menstrual flow. Unfortunately almost equally definite clinical evidence has been adduced for the view that ovulation occurs during or after the menstrual period. Light is thrown upon the question by the study of the phenomena of 'rut' or 'heat' in the lower animals. In most mammals impregnation and conception can only occur at certain definite periods of the year. At these seasons the female presents a swelling of the mucous membrane of the external genitals, and often a flow of blood or mucus. As a rule it is only when in this condition that it will permit the approach of the male. Thus the bitch 'comes on heat' as a rule twice in the year; the cat three or four times; most carnivora only once a year. At these periods the uterus shows well-marked histological changes, which may be divided into the following periods:

(1) The period of rest. During this time, which extends over the greater part of the year, the mucous membrane is thin and pale. The period of heat being known as the *œstrus*, this first period is denoted by Heape the *anœstrum*.

(2) The period of growth or congestion. This corresponds to the pre-menstrual thickening of the mucous membrane of the human female.

(3) Period of destruction, associated with hæmorrhages into the mucous membrane, desquamation of the superficial epithelial cells, and occasionally discharge of blood and mucus from the vagina. These two periods are grouped together as the *pro-œstrum*.

(4) Period of recuperation corresponding to the post-menstrual regeneration of the mucous membrane. It is during the first part of this period or at the very end of the last period that ovulation occurs in those animals where ovulation is independent of coitus. It is at this time too that the animal exhibits sexual desire and permits the approaches of the male. If fertilisation occurs, the mucous membrane undergoes rapid hypertrophy, much more marked than that occurring during the pro-œstrum. In the absence of impregnation the mucous membrane returns to the condition of rest, the stage of return being known as the metœstrum.

These results have been found by Heape and Marshall to apply to a large number of different mammals. We are therefore justified in concluding that menstruation is the physiological homologue of the pro-œstrum in the lower mammals, and that ovulation occurs, or at any rate that the ova attains maturity, after or at the very end of the menstrual flow. If we consider that the ovum may take some days to pass down the Fallopian tube to the uterus, and that the spermatozoa may retain their vitality for ten days or more in the Fallopian tubes or uterus, it is evident that in man impregnation may take place at any time between two menstrual periods. Sexual desire is thus not limited to certain seasons, as is the case with most of the lower animals.

FERTILISATION

The act of impregnation consists in the introduction of spermatozoa into the female genital tract, where they may come in contact with and fertilise the ovum, which is discharged from the ovary by bursting of a Graafian follicle. This is effected in the act of coitus or sexual congress by the insertion of the penis into the vagina of the female. Before this can occur erection of the male organ must take place. The mechanism of erection is twofold. The most important factor, as was shown by Eckhard and Lovén, is an active dilatation of the vessels of the penis, especially of the medium-sized and smaller arteries. If the penis be cut across while in the flaccid condition, venous blood merely trickles away from the cut surface, whereas, if erection be excited, the flow of blood from the cut surface is increased eight to ten times, and the blood becomes bright arterial in colour. It is thus possible to excite erection in an animal, in whom the second factor has been abolished by paralysing the muscles by means of curare. This second factor is the contraction of the *ischio-cavernosus* or *erector penis* muscle, certain fibres of which pass over the dorsal vein of the penis and compress this vessel when they contract. Since ligature of the veins coming from the penis does not produce erection, the contraction of this muscle must be regarded as simply aiding the effects of the arterial dilatation.

Before or at the beginning of coitus analogous changes occur in the female organs, leading to erection of the clitoris and of the erectile structures of the vulva. The glands of the vulva, especially the glands of Bartholini, secrete a mucous fluid, thus lubricating the passage into the vagina. The friction between the glans penis and the wall of the vagina causes a reflex discharge of motor impulses in both male and female (the 'orgasm'). In the former the muscular walls of the vasa deferentia and seminal vesicles enter into rhythmic contractions, thus forcing the spermatozoa they contain into the urethra. The spermatozoa, mixed with the secretions of the epididymis, the seminal vesicles, the prostatic glands, and the glands of Cowper, form the semen, which is pressed along the urethra by rhythmical contractions, from behind forwards, of the bulbo- and ischio-cavernosi muscles. It has been stated that movements take place coincidently in the uterus, so that its axis more nearly corresponds to that of the vagina. The movement of the semen along the uterus and Fallopian tubes is ascribed by certain observers to an antiperistaltic contraction of these organs. A more important factor is probably the movement of the spermatozoa themselves. As we have already seen, these are introduced into the female passage in countless numbers. They will be chemiotactically attracted by the alkaline mucus, secreted by and filling the cervix of the uterus. When they have entered this organ they will meet the downward stream of mucus impelled by the action of the cilia lining the uterus and Fallopian tubes. It seems probable that their reaction to this current is to swim [1] against it (*positive*

[1] Spermatozoa move in a straight line, at the rate of 2 to 3 mm. per minute. Thus

rheotaxis), so that they reach the upper part of the Fallopian tubes or the surface of the ovary itself. Fertilisation of the ovum occurs in most cases in the Fallopian tube, and the fertilised ovum is then carried slowly down the tube into the uterus.

NERVOUS MECHANISM OF IMPREGNATION. Although, in both sexes, coitus is attended by a high degree of psychical excitement, yet it is essentially a spinal reflex, and can be carried out when all impulses from the higher centres are cut off by section of the cord in the dorsal region. The centre presiding over the act is situated in the lumbar spinal cord. The external generative organs, like the bladder, are supplied from two sets of nerve fibres—from the lumbar nerves through the sympathetic, and from the sacral nerves. The fibres from the lumbar nerves arise in the cat from the second, third, and fourth, or the third, fourth, and fifth lumbar nerve roots, and in the dog from the thirteenth thoracic, and the first to the fourth lumbar roots. They run in the white rami communicantes to the sympathetic chain, whence they may take two paths.

(*a*) The great majority of the fibres run down the sympathetic chain to the sacral ganglia, whence fibres are given off in the grey rami communicantes to the sacral nerves; their further course is by the pudic nerves, none running in the nervi erigentes.

(*b*) A few fibres go by the hypogastric nerves to the pelvic plexus.

Excitation of these fibres causes contraction of the arteries of the penis, and of the unstriated muscles of the tunica dartos of the scrotum. In animals which possess a retractor penis muscle, excitation of the lumbar nerves causes strong contraction of the muscle.

The fibres from the sacral nerves can be divided into two classes—visceral and somatic. The visceral branches run in the pelvic nerves, or *nervi erigentes*. Stimulation of these fibres produces active dilatation of the arteries of the penis or vulva, and also inhibition of the unstriated muscle of the penis, of the retractor muscle of the penis, when present, and of the vulva muscles. The somatic branches supply motor nerves to the ischio- and bulbo-cavernosi, as well as to the constrictor urethræ. In the female they supply the analogous muscles, namely, the erector clitoridis (ischio-cavernosus) and the sphincter vaginæ (bulbo-cavernosus). Both these sets of fibres are therefore involved in the erection of the generative organs which accompanies coitus.

The internal organs, *i. e.* the uterus and vagina in the female, and vasa deferentia, seminal vesicles, and uterus masculinus in the male, differ from the external organs in receiving no efferent nerve fibres from the sacral nerves, as has been pointed out by Langley and Anderson. They are supplied with fibres, which pass out through the anterior roots of the third, fourth, and fifth lumbar nerves (in the rabbit and cat), and run through the sympathetic

---

they might traverse the distance of 16 to 20 cm. between the os uteri and the trumpet-shaped orifice of the Fallopian tubes in three-quarters of an hour. In animals spermatozoa have been found at the peritoneal end of the Fallopian tubes within an hour or two after coitus.

to the inferior mesenteric ganglia, whence they proceed by the hypogastric nerves. On stimulating these fibres, two effects are produced on the uterus and vagina, namely, a contraction of the small arteries leading to pallor of the organs, and a strong contraction of the muscular coats.[1] In the vagina the contraction can usually be seen to start from one end and spread to the other. The whole then remains for a time in a state of powerful tonic contraction, which affects both longitudinal as well as circular muscles. In the male stimulation of these nerves excites contraction of the whole musculature of the vasa deferentia and seminal vesicles, which may be strong enough to cause emission of semen from the penis. These effects on the uterus and seminal vesicles are not abolished by injection of atropine.

The course of the sensory fibres from the generative organs to the lumbo-sacral cord has not yet been fully made out, but it seems probable that it corresponds to the course taken by the efferent fibres.

An accessory genital muscle, the *retractor penis*, which is found in the dog, cat, horse, donkey, hedgehog (not in the rabbit or man), presents considerable physiological interest. It was first described by Eckhard as the *Afterruthenband*, and consists of a thin band of longitudinally arranged unstriated muscle (15 to 20 cm. long in a spaniel weighing about 15 kilos.), which is inserted at the attachment of the prepuce, and is continued backwards in a sheath of connective tissue to the bulb, when it divides into two slips which pass on either side of the anus. A few striated fibres are found in the back part of this muscle, derived from the external sphincter of the anus and the bulbo-cavernosus muscles. This muscle is extremely sensitive to changes of temperature, and is at the same time very tenacious of life. Thus it may be cut out of the body and kept in serum or blood in a cool place for two days. At the end of this time it will, on warming, relax and enter into spontaneous rhythmic contractions. At about 40° C. the muscle is quite flaccid. On cooling slightly (to 35°) it will shorten, and at the same time may enter into slow rhythmic contractions. If cooled to 15° C. the muscle will contract to about a quarter of its previous length. The same shortening may be produced on exciting the muscle with strong interrupted currents.

The muscle is innervated from two sources, the two nerves having antagonistic actions (cp. p. 247). The *motor* fibres to the muscle are derived from the lumbar sympathetic (*i. e.* the upper set of nerve roots), and run to the muscle in the internal pudic nerve. The pelvic nerves, on the other hand, carry *inhibitory* impulses to the muscle, thus enabling the concomitant vascular dilatation to take effect in producing erection of the penis.

[1] Under some circumstances stimulation of the sympathetic nerves may cause *relaxation* of the uterus.

SECTION IV

PREGNANCY AND PARTURITION

PREGNANCY

FERTILISATION of the ovum takes place, as a rule, in the Fallopian tube. Directly one spermatozoon has penetrated into the ovum, a membrane is formed round the yolk, which prevents the entrance of any other spermatozoa. The fusion of the male and female pronuclei is followed immediately by division of the fertilised ovum, so that, by the time it arrives in the uterus (about eight days after fertilisation), it consists of a mass of cells known as the morula. At this time the ovum has a diameter of about 0·2 mm. Pregnancy in the human being lasts about nine months, birth generally taking place 280 days, *i. e.* ten periods after the last menstrual period. During pregnancy menstruation is absent.

With the arrival of the fertilised ovum in the uterus, extensive changes begin in this and the neighbouring organs of generation. The virgin uterus is pear-shaped, and its cavity amounts to about 2–5 c.c. Just before birth the volume of the uterus is about 5000–7000 c.c., and the walls of the organ are thickened in proportion. In the hypertrophy of the uterine wall all its elements are involved, but especially the muscle cells. It is doubtful whether there is an actual new formation of muscle fibres, but each fibre grows in length and thickness, becoming finally between seven and eleven times as long and three to five times as thick as in the unimpregnated uterus (Fig. 576). There is at the same time a great growth of the blood vessels, which have to supply not only the growing wall of the uterus but also by means of a special organ—the placenta—the nutritional needs of the developing fœtus.

CHANGES IN THE UTERINE MUCOUS MEMBRANE. At the moment of conception the uterine mucous membrane begins to undergo hypertrophy. Within fourteen days it has attained a thickness of $\frac{1}{2}$ cm., and by the end of the second month, $\frac{3}{4}$ cm. On section it shows a compact layer, lining the cavity of the uterus, and beneath this, abutting on the muscular tissue, is a spongy layer three times as thick as the compact layer. The superficial epithelium becomes flattened, loses its cilia, and degenerates. In the spongy layer the uterine glands proliferate, the stroma cells are enlarged, and the blood capillaries are widely dilated. The stroma cells become converted into the large *decidual* cells. By the time the fertilised ovum arrives in the uterus, the process of hypertrophy of the

layers of the mucous membrane has already made some progress. As it lies on the mucous membrane, the outermost cells of the developing ovum exercise a destructive influence on the adjacent cells of the mucous membrane, apparently through some sort of digestion, so that the ovum sinks in the membrane and reaches the sub-epithelial connective tissue. Round the margins of the depression which the ovum has made for itself, the mucous membrane grows over the protruding part of the ovum (Fig. 577). When this has taken place, the different parts of the mucous membrane receive different names. Since (in man) they are all to be cast off with the fœtus at birth, each part is spoken of as the decidua, that lining the main body of the uterus being known as the *decidua vera*, that covering the protruding part of the egg as the *decidua reflexa*, while that to which the egg is immediately attached is the *decidua serotina* or *basalis*. It is from the latter that the placenta is formed. By the end of the second week the blood vessels in this situation are considerably enlarged. This enlargement proceeds, affecting especially the capillaries and veins, until these form venous sinuses at the junction between the mucous membrane and the muscular coat. Changes take place at the same time in the embryo. When it sinks into the mucous membrane it has a diameter of 1 mm. The blastoderm is fully formed with its three layers; the yolk sac, the body cavity, and the amnion are present. The outermost layer of the epiblast becomes specially modified to serve for the nutrition of the embryo, and gives rise to the production of numerous villi, the chorionic villi, so that the whole ovum has a shaggy appearance. Since this tissue takes no part in the further development of the embryo, but serves simply for its nutrition, it is often spoken of as the *trophoblast*. With the formation of fœtal blood vessels, these penetrate into the villi, together with mesoblast. The villi grow into the venous spaces, especially in the basal part of the decidua, so that at this period the fœtal villi are immersed in maternal blood, the fœtal blood vessels being separated from the maternal blood by a double layer of epithelium, one layer of which is maternal and the other fœtal in origin. Later these cells become reduced to a single layer.

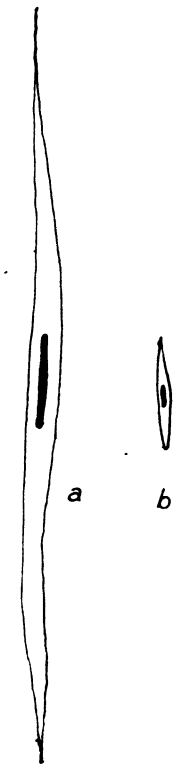


FIG. 576. Isolated muscle cells from the uterus, showing the hypertrophy during pregnancy.
a, fibre from uterus in ninth month of pregnancy; *b*, fibre from a non-gravid uterus. (After BUMM.)

NUTRITION OF THE EMBRYO. At the earliest period of its development the fertilised ovum is dependent for its nourishment on the remains of the cells of the discus proligerus adhering to it, or on the fluid of the

Fallopian tube in which it is immersed. The first blood vessels which are formed serve to take up nourishment from the yolk sac. In man this source of supply is insignificant, and from the second week onwards blood-vessels traversing the chorionic villi come into close relation with the maternal blood, from which henceforth the whole growth of the fœtus is to be maintained by a special development of these connections in the placenta.

In the fully formed fœtus blood passes from the fœtus to the placenta by the umbilical artery, and is returned by the umbilical veins. There is no communication between fœtal and maternal circulations. The placenta represents the fœtal organ for respiration, nutrition, and excretion. Thus

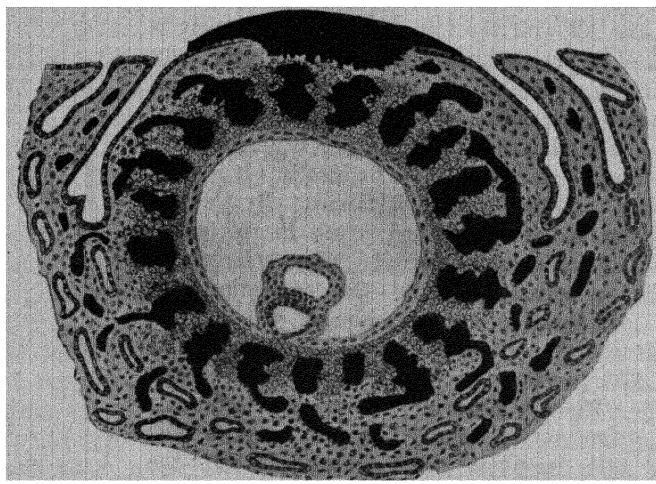


FIG. 577. Diagram to illustrate the imbedding of the ovum in the decidua, and the first formation of the fœtal villi in the form of a syncytial *trophoblast* (derived from the outer layer of the ovum) which is invading sinus-like blood spaces in the decidua. (After T. H. BRYCE.)

the umbilical artery carries to the placenta a dark venous blood, which in this organ loses carbonic acid and takes up oxygen, so that the blood of the umbilical vein is arterial in colour. The oxygen requirements of the fœtus are however but small. It is protected from all loss of heat, movements are sluggish or for the most part absent, and the only oxidative processes are those required in the building up of the developing tissues. On the other hand, the fœtus has need of a rich supply of foodstuffs, which it must obtain through the placental circulation. It is imagined that the epithelium covering the villi serves as an organ for passing on the necessary foodstuffs from the maternal to the fœtal blood in the form best adapted for the requirements of the fœtus. We know however practically nothing as to the changes or mechanism involved in this transference. Although most of the organs of the fœtus are fully formed some time before birth, they are for the most part in a state of suspended activity. The nitrogenous excreta are turned out by the placenta, so that the fœtal secretion of urine is minimal

or absent. The alimentary apparatus is for the most part ready. Thus pepsin can be extracted from the fœtal gastric mucous membrane. The pancreas contains trypsinogen and the intestinal mucous membrane prosecretin. Amylolytic ferments seem however to be absent both from the salivary glands and the pancreas. The liver stores up glycogen and secretes bile, which accumulates in the small intestine, forming the *meconium*. This is generally voided by the child shortly after birth.

THE FŒTAL CIRCULATION. In the fœtus, from the middle of intrauterine life, we find certain arrangements of the circulation which are directed to providing the forepart of the body, especially the rapidly growing brain, with oxygenated blood, while the less important tissues of the limbs and trunk receive venous blood (Fig. 578). The arterial blood coming from the placenta along the umbilical vein can pass directly into the liver. The greater part of it however traverses the ductus venosus to enter the inferior vena cava, by which it is carried to the right auricle. Here it impinges on the Eustachian valve, and is directed thereby through the *foramen ovale* into the left auricle, whence it passes into the left ventricle to be driven into the aorta. As this arterial blood passes into the inferior cava, it is of course mixed with the venous blood, returning from the lower limbs and lower part of the trunk. By the aorta this mixture, containing chiefly arterial blood, is carried to the head and fore limbs. The venous blood from these parts is carried by the superior vena cava to the right auricle, and thence to the right ventricle, by which it is driven into the pulmonary artery. Only a small part of the blood passes through the lungs, the greater part traversing the patent *ductus arteriosus* to be discharged into the aorta below the arch, whence it flows partly to the lower limbs and trunk, but chiefly to the placenta by the umbilical arteries. In the fœtus therefore the work of the circulation is largely carried out by the right ventricle. The greater thickness of the left ventricular walls, which is so characteristic of the adult, does not become evident until shortly before birth.

With the first breath taken by the newborn child all the mechanical conditions of the circulation are modified. The resistance to the blood flow through the lungs being diminished, the blood passes from the pulmonary arteries through the lungs into the left auricle. The pressure in the left auricle is thus raised, while that in the right auricle falls, so that the foramen ovale is maintained closed. Even before birth proliferation of the lining membrane may be seen both in the ductus arteriosus and in the ductus venosus; and with the mechanical relief of the vessels afforded by respiration and the changed conditions of the fœtus, this proliferation goes on to complete obliteration of the vessels.

PARTURITION

As the uterus increases in size and becomes more distended, its irritability becomes greater, so that it is easily excited to contract. The stimulus may be supplied from adjacent abdominal organs, from the brain, as by emotions, or by direct excitation of the internal surface of the uterus, in consequence

of movements of the fœtus. In many cases no antecedent stimulus can be discovered, and the automatic contraction of the uterus seems to be analo-

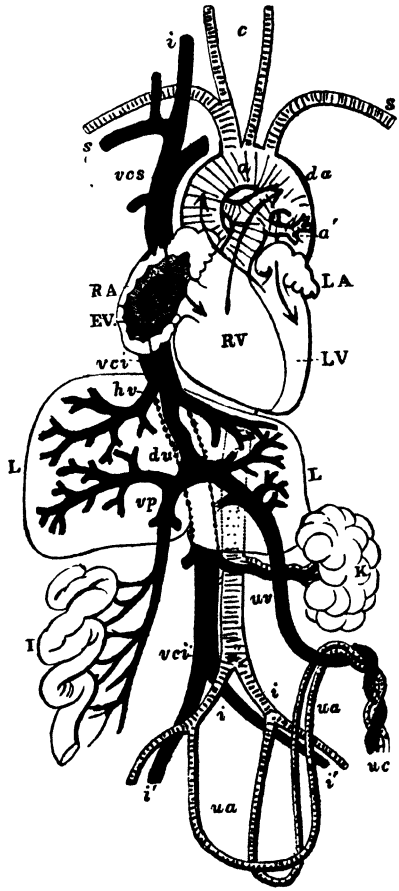


FIG. 578. Diagrammatic outline of the organs of circulation in the fœtus of six months. (After ALLEN THOMSON.)

RA, right auricle of the heart; RV, right ventricle; LA, left auricle; EV, Eustachian valve; LV, left ventricle; L, liver; K, left kidney; I, portion of small intestine; *a*, arch of the aorta; *a'*, its dorsal part; *a''*, lower end; *vcs*, superior vena cava; *vci*, inferior vena where it joins the right auricle; *vci'*, its lower end; *s*, subclavian vessels; *j*, right jugular vein; *c*, common carotid arteries; four curved dotted arrow-lines are carried through the aortic and pulmonary opening and the auriculo-ventricular orifices; *da*, opposite to the one passing through the pulmonary artery marks the place of the ductus arteriosus; a similar arrow-line is shown passing from the inferior vena cava through the fossa ovalis of the right auricle and the foramen ovâle into the left auricle; *hv*, the hepatic veins; *vp*, vena portæ; *x* to *vci*, the ductus venosus; *uv*, the umbilical vein; *ua*, umbilical arteries; *uc*, umbilical cord cut short; *ii'*, iliac vessels.

gous to that which occurs in the distended bladder. These contractions ordinarily give rise to no sensations, and are felt only when they are augmented in consequence of reflex stimulation. During the greater part of

pregnancy they have little or no effect on the contents of the uterus. During the last weeks or days of pregnancy however, these contractions, which have now become more marked, have a distinct physiological effect. Not only do they, by pressing on the fœtus, cause it in most instances to assume a suitable position for its subsequent expulsion but, affecting the whole body of the uterus including the longitudinal muscular fibres surrounding its neck, they assist the general enlargement of the organ in dilating the internal *os uteri*, so that the upper part of the cervix is obliterated and drawn up into the body of the uterus some little time before labour has commenced.

With these changes in the uterus are associated changes in the round ligaments and in the vagina and vulva. The muscular fibres of the round ligaments become much hypertrophied and lengthened, and these structures can therefore aid appreciably the uterine contractions in the subsequent expulsion of the fœtus. The vaginal walls become thickened and of looser texture, so as to afford less resistance to distension during the passage of the fœtal head.

Considerable discussion has taken place as to the cause for the onset of the processes comprised under the heading of labour or parturition at a nearly constant period of two hundred and seventy-two days after conception. Most of the explanations which have been suggested, such as the great irritability of the uterus at the termination of pregnancy, the loosening of the fœtal membranes, the return of the menstrual congestion after ten months, thrombosis of the placental sinuses, simply replace one question by another. According to Spiegelberg the phenomena accompanying the birth of twins, which are often born at a considerable interval from each other, the onset of contractions of the uterus at the right time in extra-uterine as well as in normal fœtation, the fact that the extra-uterine fœtus dies when it has become mature, all go to show that the reason why labour occurs at a definite time must be sought for in fœtal rather than in uterine changes. This author suggests that some substances which had previously been used up by the fœtus gradually accumulate in the maternal blood as the fœtus becomes mature, and provoke, by their direct action on the uterus or spinal cord, the uterine contractions which give rise to labour.

Actual parturition in the woman is generally divided into two stages. In the first stage the contractions are confined to the uterus, and chiefly act in dilating the os uteri. In this dilatation two factors are involved, namely, the active dilatation brought about by the contraction of the longitudinal muscular fibres which form the chief constituent of the lower part of the uterine wall; and in the second place, a passive dilatation by the pressure of the fœtal bag of membranes, which is filled with amniotic fluid, and forced down as a fluid wedge into the os by the contractions of the uterine fundus. The uterine contractions are essentially rhythmical, being feeble at first, and increasing gradually in intensity to a maximum which endures a certain time, and then gradually subsides. The frequency and duration of the contractions increase as labour advances.

As soon as the os uteri is fully dilated and the fœtal head has entered the pelvis, the contractions change in character, being much more prolonged and frequent, and attended by more or less voluntary contractions of the abdominal muscles. This action of the abdominal muscles is associated with fixation of the diaphragm and closure of the glottis, so that pressure is brought to bear on the whole contents of the abdomen, including the uterus. No expelling force can be ascribed to the vagina, since it is too greatly stretched by the advancing fœtus. In this way the fœtus is gradually thrust through the pelvic canal, dilating the soft parts which impede its progress, and is finally expelled through the vulva, the head being born first. The membranes generally rupture towards the end of the first stage of parturition.

A third stage of labour is generally described. This consists in a renewal of uterine contractions about twenty to thirty minutes after the birth of the child, and results in the expulsion of the placenta and decidual membranes.

NERVOUS MECHANISM. We possess little experimental knowledge of the nervous mechanism of parturition. The most important observation on this point is the already quoted experiment by Goltz, in which this physiologist observed the normal performance of menstruation (heat), impregnation, and parturition in a bitch whose spinal cord had been completely divided in the dorsal region during the previous year. On the other hand, destruction of the lumbo-sacral cord completely abolishes the normal uterine contractions of parturition, so that this act must be regarded as essentially reflex, presided over by a controlling 'centre' in the grey matter of the cord. The activity of the centre can be inhibited or augmented by impulses arriving at it from the peripheral parts of the body, as by the stimulation of sensory nerves, or from the brain, as under the influence of emotions. The nerve paths from the centre to the uterus have been already described.

SECTION V

THE SECRETION AND PROPERTIES OF MILK

LACTATION

DURING pregnancy the fœtus obtains the whole of its nourishment from the mother by means of the placenta. After birth the quality of the nutriment supplied to the young child depends on the activity of the cells of the mammary glands. Now however nutrition involves further activity on the part of the young animal, the alimentary canal being concerned in the digestion of the milk supplied by the mother, and the excretory organs, especially the kidneys, being made use of for getting rid of waste material. The preparation of the mammary glands for the subsequent nourishment of the newborn child begins in the first month of pregnancy, and is marked by swelling of the glands, rapid proliferation of the duct epithelium, and production of many new secreting alveoli. The development of these glands in the rabbit has been already described, and there is no doubt that in the human species the process follows very much the same course, being however spread over nine months instead of four weeks, as is the case with the rabbit. During the latter half of pregnancy a watery fluid can generally be expressed from the nipple. In certain mammals this watery secretion gives place to a secretion of true milk at the end of gestation or during the process of parturition itself. In the woman the secretion does not begin as a rule until the second or third day after birth, though the formation of milk may be anticipated if a child has been put to the breasts during the latter part of pregnancy. Secretion begins on the second or third day, even if the child has been born dead and no attempt at suckling has taken place. For the maintenance of the secretion the process of suckling is absolutely necessary. If the woman does not nurse her child, the swelling of the breasts gradually passes off, the milk disappears, and the glands undergo a process of involution. Under normal conditions the secretion of milk lasts for six to nine months and may in rare cases extend over more than a year. The amount secreted increases at first with the growth and size of the child. The Table on p. 1290 represents the average amount of milk secreted during the thirty-seven weeks after birth. It will of course be greater with strong big children, and smaller with weakly children.

COLOSTRUM. Before the secretion of true milk begins, the fluid which

is obtained from the breast is known as colostrum. It may be expressed from the breasts immediately after birth and is ingested by the child during the first two days after birth. The colostrum is formed only in slight quantities. It is an opalescent fluid, often somewhat yellowish, containing fat globules which, if the fluid be allowed to stand, form a yellowish layer on the top. Under the microscope, in addition to the fat globules, may be seen the so-called colostrum corpuscles, which consist of multinucleated cells loaded with particles of fat. They are probably leucocytes or phagocytes which have wandered into the alveoli and have taken up fat globules. Some of the corpuscles may be desquamated secretory cells. Colostrum is distinguished from true milk by containing little or no caseinogen. It contains about 3 per cent. of proteins, namely, lactalbumen and lactoglobulin, which coagulate on boiling. Lactose and salts are present in the same proportions as in ordinary milk. It is popularly supposed to have a laxative effect on the child.

TABLE SHOWING AMOUNT OF MILK SECRETED BY A NURSING WOMAN.

INCREASE

Time	Milk secreted
1st day	20 grm.
2nd ,,	97 ,,
3rd ,,	211 ,,
4th ,,	326 ,,
5th ,,	364 ,,
6th ,,	402 ,,
7th ,,	478 ,,
2nd week	502 ,,
3rd–4th week	572 ,,
5th–8th ,,	736 ,,
9th–12th ,,	797 ,,
13th–16th ,,	836 ,,
17th–20th ,,	867 ,,
21st–24th ,,	944 ,,
25th–28th ,,	963 ,,

DECREASE

29th–32nd week	916 grm.
33rd–36th ,,	909 ,,
37th week ,,	885 ,,

PROPERTIES OF MILK

Fully formed milk presents certain features which are common to all mammals. These have been chiefly studied in the case of cows' milk. We may therefore deal with the composition of cows' milk and point out later in what respects human milk differs therefrom. Milk is an opaque white fluid with characteristic odour and sweetish taste. Its specific gravity varies between 1028 and 1034. Its reaction to litmus is neutral, to lacmoid

it reacts alkaline, and to phenolphthalein, acid. One hundred cubic centimetres of fresh milk, when treated with lacmoid, require 41 c.c. $n/10$ acid for neutralisation. When treated with phenolphthalein the same amount requires 19·5 $n/10$ alkali for neutralisation. When exposed to the air, milk rapidly undergoes changes in consequence of infection by micro-organisms. The most common of these changes is the formation of lactic acid by the bacillus lacticus. In some cases the milk may undergo a species of alcoholic fermentation, as in the formation of *kephir*, which is made by the fermentation of mares' milk.

The opaque appearance of milk is due chiefly to the presence of multitudes of fine fatty particles. On allowing the milk to stand, the particles rise to the surface, forming cream, and by mechanical agitation, especially if the milk is slightly sour, they may be caused to run together with the formation of butter. Much discussion has arisen as to the reason why the fat globules do not run together naturally. By many authors it has been imagined that they are clothed with a special protein membrane (*haptogen* membrane) originating from the protoplasm of the cell in which the fat globules were originally formed. It must be remembered that in any protein solution, such as that in which the globules are suspended, the protein tends to aggregate, with the formation of a pellicle, at the surface, so that an emulsion once produced in such a fluid will tend to be more or less permanent. There seems no reason to assume the presence of a distinct membrane differing in composition from the proteins present in the surrounding fluid. The fats of milk consist for the greater part of the neutral glycerides, tripalmitin, tristearin, and triolein. In smaller quantities it contains the triglycerides of myristic acid, butyric acid (?), and capronic acid, with traces of caprylic, capric, and lauric acids.

The milk plasma, the fluid in which the fat globules are suspended, contains various proteins, a carbohydrate (lactose), and inorganic salts, with a small amount of lecithin and nitrogenous extractives.

THE PROTEINS OF MILK. The chief protein of milk is *caseinogen*, belonging to the class of phosphoproteins. Like other bodies of this class it presents distinct acid characteristics, being precipitated by acids and soluble in dilute alkalies. It may be prepared from separated milk by the addition of weak acids. A convenient method is to dilute one litre of milk with ten litres of distilled water and add to the mixture 10 c.c. of glacial acetic acid. The precipitate which is formed rapidly sinks to the bottom and may be washed two or three times by decantation. It may be purified by solution in dilute ammonia and precipitation by acetic acid two or three times. The precipitate finally obtained is extracted with alcohol and ether, and the dried caseinogen prepared in this way forms a snow-white powder which is practically insoluble in water and dilute salt solutions. It is easily dissolved on the addition of a little alkali, when it yields solutions which are acid to litmus. When rubbed up with chalk it dissolves, displacing the carbonic acid and forming a calcium caseinogenate. A solution of caseinogen in soda or potash is transparent and passes easily through a clay cell.

The calcium caseinogenate forms only opalescent solutions. Apparently the compound is dissociated by water with the formation of caseinogen acid which is in a state of partial solution as swollen-up aggregates. It is impossible therefore to filter calcium caseinogenate through a clay cell. It is mainly in this form that caseinogen is contained in milk, hence the opalescent appearance of the milk plasma. When calcium caseinogenate solution is boiled, it forms a pellicle on the surface in the same way as milk does. On treating the caseinogen with rennet ferment it is converted into a modification known as *paracasein*, which in the presence of lime salts is thrown out as insoluble casein. To this process is due the clotting of whole milk by rennet, which is made use of in the preparation of cheese, the curd consisting of a network of casein enclosing fat globules in its meshes. On allowing the clot to stand it shrinks, pressing out a milk serum.

From the milk serum or whey may be obtained two other proteins, known as *lactalbumen* and *lactoglobulin*. These resemble very nearly the albumen and globulin of blood serum. They are coagulated on heating. According to some authors a third protein is present in the whey, to which the name whey protein has been given, and which is supposed to be split off from the caseinogen under the action of the rennet ferment.

Milk can be boiled without undergoing any coagulation. If it be allowed to stand and become sour by the formation of lactic acid, at a certain degree of acidity boiling the milk causes its complete coagulation. Later on the acid produced is sufficient in itself to precipitate the caseinogen. Both these processes, namely, coagulation of half-sour milk by heating, and spontaneous clotting of milk by the production of acid, are made use of in different countries for the manufacture of cheese.

MILK SUGAR. The sugar of milk, or lactose, is most easily obtained from whey which, after separation of the clot, is boiled to precipitate the remaining proteins. On filtering and evaporating slowly, the milk sugar crystallises out. Lactose is a disaccharide and has the formula $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$. It is only known to occur in milk. It may be found in the urine of nursing women when the breasts are not kept empty, so that there is reabsorption of the lactose formed in the mammary glands. It is unaltered by ordinary yeast, so that the yeast test is the best means of distinguishing lactose from dextrose in the urine. It gives the ordinary tests for reducing sugar. The salts of milk include insoluble salts, soluble calcium salts, sodium and potassium, phosphates and chlorides.

Mere enumeration of the constituents of milk presents but little interest unless we realise how closely the composition of this fluid is adapted to the needs of the growing animal. In the first place, we find a proportionality between the total solids of the milk and the rate at which the young animal grows. It must be remembered that the milk taken by the animal serves only in part for the production of energy in its body, a great proportion of it being required for the building up of new tissue. In no respect is this correspondence seen better than in the comparative analyses of the ash of milk and of the young animal of the same species which were made by

Bunge. The following Table shows the composition of the ash of a rabbit fourteen days old, of the milk which it was receiving from its mother, of the ash of rabbit's blood and blood serum. Nothing could be more striking than the marvellous way in which the cells of the mammary gland have picked out from the salts of the circulating plasma exactly those salts which are needed for the growing animal and in the same proportion :

	Rabbit 14 days old	Rabbit's milk	Rabbit's blood	Rabbit's blood serum
Potash	10·8	10·1	23·8	3·2
Soda	6 0	7·9	31·4	54·7
Lime	35 0	35·7	0·8	1·4
Magnesia	2·2	2·2	0·6	0·6
Iron oxide	0 23	0·08	6·9	0
Phosphoric acid	41 9	39·9	11·1	3·0
Chlorine	4·9	5·4	32 7	47·8

This close correspondence is necessary only where growth is very rapid, so that the greater part of the constituents of the milk have to be utilised in the building up of the animal tissues. As Bunge has shown, the slower the growth of the animal the greater the divergence between the composition of the milk and that of the new-born animal. We may compare for instance the rabbit, which doubles its weight in six days, with the dog, which doubles its weight in ninety-six days, and the human infant, which takes one hundred and eighty days to double its weight at birth.

The last column of the following Table represents the composition of the ash of cow's milk, and shows how very inefficiently this milk can be regarded as replacing human milk, the natural food of the infant.

	Rabbit 14 days old	Rabbit's milk	Puppy few hours old	Bitch's milk	Infant some minutes after birth	Human milk	Cow's milk
Potash	10 8	10 1	11·4	15 0	8·9	35·2	22·1
Soda	6·0	7 9	10·6	8·8	10·0	10·4	13·9
Lime	35·0	35·7	29 5	27·2	33·5	14·8	20·0
Magnesia	2·2	2·2	1·8	1·5	1·3	2·9	2·6
Iron oxide	0·23	0·08	0·72	0·12	1·0	0·18	0·04
Phosphoric acid	41·9	39·9	39·4	34·2	37·7	21·3	24·8
Chlorine	4·9	5·4	8·4	16·9	8·8	19·7	21·3

The relation between rate of growth and protein content of food is well illustrated by a comparison of the composition of the milk in different animals. In the following Table (Proscher) it will be seen that the more rapidly an animal grows the greater is the protein content of the milk with which it is supplied :

	Time in which the body weight of the newborn animal was doubled. Days	100 parts of Milk contain			
		Protein	Ash	Lime	Phosphoric acid
Man	180	1·6	0·2	0·328	0·473
Horse	60	2·0	0·4	1·240	1·310
Cow	47	3·5	0·7	1·600	1·970
Goat	19	4·3	0·8	2·100	3·220
Pig	18	5·9	—	—	—
Sheep	10	6·5	0·9	2·720	4·120
Dog	8	7·1	1·3	4·530	4·930
Cat	7	9·5	—	—	—

We should expect that the milk, which is the sole food of the growing infant, should contain a relatively greater proportion of protein than is necessary in the case of the adult. In an experiment by E. Feer, quoted by Bunge, a child weighing 8226 grm. at the thirtieth week took 951 grm. of milk. Human milk contains:

Protein	1·6 per cent.
Fat	3·4 „
Sugar	6·1 „
Ash	0·2 „

The child was therefore receiving daily:

Protein	15·2 grm.
Fat	32·3 „
Sugar	58·0 „
Ash	1·9 „

According to the same proportions a man of 70 kilos. would take in:

Protein	129 grm.
Fat	275 „
Sugar	494 „
Ash	16 „

It is interesting to note that the protein of this diet differs but little from that in the diets ordinarily accepted as standard, but there is a large excess in the fat and in the total caloric value, as would be expected from the more rapid metabolism and the relatively larger body surface of the young child.

The fitness of caseinogen for building up the tissues of the body is evident when we compare, as in the Table on page 89, the products of its hydrolysis with those of all the proteins in other foodstuffs. It will be seen that practically every amino-acid and allied substance employed in the building up of the various proteins is represented in caseinogen. The only exception is glycine, which can be easily formed from other amino-acids.

In another point we find an adaptation of the milk to the growth of the young animal, and that is in its lecithin content. Lecithin is probably employed to the largest extent in the building up of the central nervous system, where it forms the most important constituent of the medullary

sheaths of the nerve fibres. There is a corresponding proportionality between the lecithin content of milk and the relative brain weight of the young

CHEMICAL CONSTITUTION OF DIFFERENT PROTEINS

	Salmin	Hæmoglobin	Serum-albumin	Serum-globulin	Caseinogen	Legumin	Gliadin wheat	Avenin oats	Gelatin	Silk-fibroin	Ox muscle
Glycine			0	3·5		0·4	0·1	1·0	16·5	36·0	2·0
Alanine		4·19	2·7	2·2	0·9	2·0	2·0	2·5	0·8	21·0	3·7
Valine	4·3			+	1·0		0·3	1·0	1·0		0·9
Leucine		29·04	20·0	18·7	10·5	8·0	5·6	15·0	2·1	1·5	11·1
Isoleucine											
Phenylalanine		4·24	3·1	3·8	3·2	3·7	2·4	3·2	0·4	1·5	3·1
Tyrosine		1·33	2·1	2·5	4·5	1·5	1·2	1·5		10·5	2·2
Serine	7 8	0·56	0·6		0·2	0·5	0·2		0·4	1·6	
Cystine		0·31	2·5	0·7	0·6		0·5			0	
Proline	11·0	2·34	1·0	2·8	3·1	3·2	7·0	5·4	5·2	+	5·1
Oxyproline		1·04			0·2				3·0		
Aspartic acid		4·43	3·1	2·5	1·2	5·3	0·6	4·0	0·6	+	4·1
Glutamic acid		1·73	7·7	8·5	11·0	13·8	37·4	18·4	0·9		15·1
Tryptophane		+	+	+	1·5	+	+			0	+
Arginine	87 4	5·42			4·8	10·1	3·2		7·6	1·0	7·1
Lysine	0	4·28			5·8	4·3	0·0		2·8	+	7·1
Histidine	0	10·96			2·5	2·5	1·0		0·4	+	1·1
Ammonia					1 6	2·0	5·1		0·4		1·0

animal. Thus in the calf the brain is only $\frac{1}{370}$ of the whole animal. In cow's milk lecithin is present in the proportion of 1·4 per cent. of the total protein. In the puppy the brain is $\frac{1}{30}$ of the whole body and the proportion of lecithin to protein in the milk is 2·11 per cent. In the infant the brain forms $\frac{1}{7}$ of the body weight, while the lecithin is 3·05 per cent. of the protein of human milk.

	Calf	Puppy	Infant
Relative brain weight	1 : 370	1 : 30	1 : 7
Lecithin content of milk in percentage of protein	1·40	2·11	3·05

We thus see that under normal conditions the young animal is supplied through its natural food with all the foodstuffs in the proportions which it requires for its normal nourishment and growth. It is impossible therefore satisfactorily to replace the natural milk of an animal by that of another species. In civilised communities it is becoming more and more the custom to endeavour to feed the child with cow's milk, more or less modified, in the vain endeavour to reproduce the properties of human milk. Among all classes this involves the administering of a milk differing in its qualities and in the relative proportions of its proteins, fats, carbohydrates, and salts, from human milk. So-called 'humanised' milk is only a rough imitation of the natural mother's milk. Among the poorer classes this artificial feeding means the replacement of a natural sterile food, throwing very little

work on the digestive organs of the child, by a foreign milk, very difficult to digest and often teeming with micro-organisms. There is no doubt that of the children dying during the first year of life four-fifths are murdered by this unnatural method of feeding. In some cases it is necessary to adopt artificial feeding because the mother is abnormal, and there is an insufficient secretion of milk. It is therefore important to know what are the main differences in composition between human and cow's milk. In human milk the caseinogen is not only absolutely but also relatively less than in cow's milk, while the latter is relatively poorer in milk sugar. Human milk is poorer in salts, especially in lime, containing only one-sixth of the amount present in cow's milk. Human milk is also said to be poorer in citric acid. The main differences may be summarised as follows:

	Water	Proteins		Fat	Milk sugar	Salts
		Caseinogen	Albumin			
Human milk . .	88·5	1·2	0·5	3·3	6·0	0·2
Cow's milk . .	87·1	3·02	0·53	3·7	4·8	0·7

The caseinogen of human milk presents several points of difference from the caseinogen of cow's milk. It is less easily precipitated by acids. When coagulated by rennet it does not form a firm clot, but is thrown out in a flocculent form. It is thus much more susceptible to the action of gastric juice. Whereas the caseinogen of cow's milk generally gives a precipitate of 'pseudonuclein' on digestion with pepsin and hydrochloric acid, a smaller or no precipitate is formed with human caseinogen.

Another important advantage of human milk for the infant lies in the presence of antitoxins. It has been shown by Ehrlich that, when a female animal has been immunised against any toxin and has produced in consequence antitoxins in its blood, these antitoxins will, if it has young, pass over into the milk. The same passage of anti-bodies into the milk has been proved in the case of various infective disorders. The ingestion of human milk will therefore not only nourish the infant, but will provide it with a certain measure of passive immunity against possible infection by diseases to which its species is liable.

THE SECRETION OF MILK. When fully formed, each mammary gland consists of fifteen to twenty lobes embedded in connective tissue. Each lobe is made up of a mass of secreting alveoli which lead by narrow ducts into one large lactiferous duct. These lactiferous ducts, one from each lobe, open on the nipple, undergoing in the nipple itself an oval enlargement. Before secretion begins, the alveoli as well as the ducts are lined with a cubical epithelium. When secretion commences a marked difference develops between the epithelium of the alveoli and that of the ducts. While that of the latter retains its previous character, the cells of the secreting epithelium grow in length and project into the lumen of the gland. In the innermost part of the

protoplasm numerous fat globules make their appearance. If sections be made of the gland during the various stages of its activity and stained by Altmann's method (acid fuchsin and picric acid), it will be seen that the commencement of activity is marked by the growth of the innermost part of the cells and the development in these of a number of granules (Fig. 579). These granules finally lengthen into shapes like spirilla, while others of them form fat and become metamorphosed into fat granules. The nuclei of the cells also divide, apparently in preparation for the replacement of some cells which undergo complete degeneration and are cast off into the secretion.

We know very little about the mechanism of milk secretion. It seems

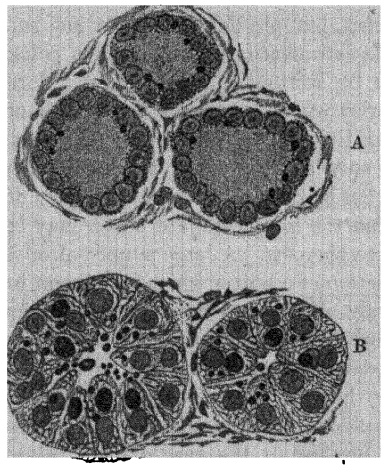


FIG. 579. Sections of mammary gland of guinea-pig (fat granules stained black with osmic acid).

A, during rest. B, during active secretion. It will be noticed that in this case the active formation of products of cell metabolism (granules, etc.) begins with the commencement of secretion, and does not occur almost exclusively during rest, as in the salivary glands. In the mammary gland, the active growth of protoplasm, the formation of granules from the protoplasm, and the discharge of these granules in the secretion appear to go on at one and the same time.

impossible at present to explain the very close adaptation between the activity of the secretory cells and the needs of the infant or young animal. Two at least of the constituents of milk, caseinogen and lactose, are peculiar to this secretion. It has been assumed that the caseinogen is produced by some sort of alteration in the nucleo-proteins of the gland cells, and that the lactose is derived in the same way from some sort of gluco-protein or gluco-nucleoprotein; but the evidence for either of these assumptions is very scanty. The growth of the mammary glands during pregnancy is largely determined by some form of chemical stimulation, the specific hormone being produced in the corpus luteum of the ovary and possibly also in the growing fœtus. It has been suggested by Hildebrandt that this stimulus is inhibitory in character—inhibitory, that is to say, of secretion—and therefore tending to the continuous growth of the gland cells. With the expulsion of the fœtus at birth

the source of the inhibitory stimulus is removed and the overgrown gland cells enter into a condition of spontaneous activity. However this may be, there is no doubt that the secretion of the gland, once formed, is continued independently of the fœtus or indeed of any of the pelvic organs. The onset of a new pregnancy brings the secretion to a close. Removal of the ovaries in a cow is sometimes employed as a means of prolonging the secretion of milk. The only condition in the human being, which is necessary for secretion to continue during six to nine months after birth, is the repeated emptying of the gland, *i. e.* the removal of the secreted milk. The process of suckling not only removes the milk already secreted but excites the secretion of more milk. The secretion is certainly subject to nervous influences, but physiologists have not succeeded in either producing secretion by stimulation of the nerves going to the glands, or in stopping secretion by section of these nerves. Moreover the food of the animal may be varied within very wide limits without altering the composition or amount of the milk secreted, provided that the food is sufficient in amount. The only constituent of the milk for which we have direct evidence of alteration by changes in the food supply of the mother is the fat. It is well known that the composition of butter may be affected according to the food supplied to the cow. A large supply of oilcake, for instance, may result in the production of a butter which is deficient in the higher fatty acids and is therefore oily at ordinary temperatures. Abnormal fats and fatty acids such as iodised fats or erucic acid, when administered to an animal in lactation, may appear among the fats of the milk. Not only can the secretion and composition of the milk be affected reflexly through the nervous system, as *e. g.* under the influence of emotions, but the influence may be reciprocal. This is especially marked in the case of the pelvic organs. The act of suckling excites tonic contractions of the uterus. Putting the child to the breast shortly after birth is therefore an important means of causing contraction of the uterus and stopping any tendency to hæmorrhage from the venous sinuses opened by the separation of the placenta and fœtal membranes. The nursing of the child is thus an important means of procuring a proper involution of the uterus after labour. Many uterine troubles among women may be ascribed to the previous neglect of this elementary duty.

INDEX

Absorption of fats, 784
of foodstuffs, 779
intestinal, 779
through membranes, 131
from tissues, 1068
Acapnia, 1151
Accelerator nerves, 470
Accessory food substances, 693
Accommodation, amplitude of, 527
effect of drugs on, 528
of old age on, 528
of eye, 496, 524
in birds, 504
innervation of, 527
in man, 504
mechanism of, 526
spasm of, 538
theories of, 524
Acetone in urine, 1173
Acid albumin, 96
intoxication, 810
Acidosis, 810
Acids, organic, 48
Acroodextrine, 68
Acrose, 62
Acrylic acid series, 54
Activity associated with disintegration, 4
Adaptation, 5, 177
dark, 556
sensory, 483
visual, 508, 570
Addison's disease, 1234
Adenine, 100
Adrenaline, 51
action of, 1234
on heart, 1020
on nerve endings, 278
on pupil, 509
influence of, 1046
in muscular exercise, 1055
production of glycosuria by, 840
Adsorption, 145
by protein, 72
Ærotonometer, 1107
Afferent impulses, 345
After image, 567
cause of, 574
fate of, 570
utility of, 574
Alanine, 80
Albumin, crystallisation of, 73
in plants, 44
Albuminoids, 104
Albumins, 95
Alcaptonuria, 814
Alcohol as food, 702
Alcohols, 46
Aldehydes, 47
Aldol condensation, 118
Aldoses, 60
Aleurone crystals, 72
Alexia, 456
Allantoin, 822
'All or none' law, 205
Alveolar air, analysis of, 1101
Amboceptor, 1085
Amines, 49
formation from amino-acids, 76, 154
Amino-acetic acid, 80
Amino-acids, 48, 75–95
action of bacteria on, 76
aromatic, 83
containing sulphur, 85
conversion into sugar, 845
into urea, 803
distribution in albumoids, 106
in proteins, 89
energy value of, 805
fate after absorption, 795
formation of, 154
in plants, 37
heterocyclic, 84
intestinal absorption of, 793
linkage of, 87
optical activity of, 78
pancreatic digestion of, 750
properties of, 77
separation of, 79
synthesis of, 808
in plant, 112
transformation of, 116
value as food, 690
Amino-propionic acid, 80
Ammonia, effects on muscle, 186
estimation in urine, 1177
excretion of, 809
formation of purines from, 115
of urea from, 803
Amœba, removal of nucleus in, 28
structure of, 14
Amœboid movements, 248
Amphoteric nature of amino-acids, 79
of colloids, 147
Amylodextrin, 68
Anacrotic pulse, 971
Anæsthesia, 454
Anæsthetics, influence on peripheral nerves, 260
Anelectrotonus, 265
Anisometropia, 539
Anode, 187
excitation at, 263
Antidromic impulses, 323, 1041
Antigens, 1085

Antithrombin, 889
Antitoxins, 1080
of milk, 1296
Aphasia, 454
Apnœa, 1145
Appetite, influence on gastric secretion, 736
Aqueous humour, 516
Arabinose, 61
Archipallium, 416
Arcuate fibres, 366
Arginine, fate of, 810
Aromatic compounds, 49
groups, metabolism of, 814
sulphates, 813
in urine, 1170
Arteries, blood flow through, 962
pressure in, 916
structure of, 915
Asparagine, 81
in seedlings, 112
Aspartic acid, 81
Asphyxia, 1129
influence on circulation, 1027
Assimilation, 2, 25
by cells, mechanism of, 24
relation of nucleus to, 31
Associated fibres of brain, 424
Association processes in brain, 451
Asthma, 1099
Astigmatism, 538
radial, 532
Ataxia, 346
Auditory ossicles, 602
sensations, 611
Auricles, pressure in, 945
Auriculo-ventricular bundle, 936, 993
Axis cylinder, electrolytes in, 172
Axon, 295, 301, 309
-reflexes, 323, 475

'Bahnung,' 305
Basal metabolism, 675
Batteries, electrical, 186
Beats (sound), 613
Benzene derivatives, 49
Bidwell's experiment, 572
Bile, 759–763
composition of, 760
digestive functions of, 762
secretion of, 762
Binocular vision, 588–594
Biogen molecule, 20
Biophore, 20
Biuret reaction, 92
Bladder, functions of, 1206
in spinal animal, 332
innervation of, 1211
in man, after transection of cord, 337
Blindness, 577
Blindspot, 549
Blood, 853–912
characters of, 854
circulation of, 913–1060
coagulation of, 882
conductivity of, 906
-corpuscles, 854
destruction of, 1085
enumeration of, 901
hæmolysis of, 23
red, 861
Blood corpuscles, red, life history of, 874
white, 856
functions of, 34
gases of, 1103
general composition of, 907
osmotic pressure of, 906
oxygen capacity of, 901
-pigment of cephalopods, 44
-plasma, absorption of, 891
collection of, 882
composition of, 909
properties of, 885
protein of, 909
relative amount of, 900
-platelets, 879
in coagulation, 887
-pressure, 916
dependence on heart output, 929
diastolic, 919
in different vessels, 922
distribution of, 919
effect of asphyxia on, 1027
of spinal centres on, 1032
influence on heart, 1023
of capacity on, 927
measurement of, 916
in man, 920
in spinal shock, 331
systolic, 919
venous, 922
quantity of, 897
reaction of, 904
regeneration of, 874
serum, composition of, 910
proteins of, 910
specific gravity of, 903
tension of gases in, 1107
velocity of, 931
methods of measuring, 932
-vessels, chemical control of, 1045
nervous control of, 1025
tone of, 1033
-volume, estimation of, 897
Body, material basis of, 36–120
Bone, composition of, 105
Brain. *See* Cerebral hemispheres.
chemical composition of, 58
development of, 360
nerve cells of, 426
path of motor impulses in, 389, 422
-pressure, 464
-stem, conduction in, 381
descending tracts of, 389
functions of, 390–394
structure of, 360–394
tracts of, 384
structure of, 416
vertebrate, comparative structure of, 363
Broca's convolution, 454
Bronchi, innervation of, 1096
Brown-Séquard paralysis, 359
Bulbo-spinal animal, 391
Burch's experiment, 573
Butyric fermentation, 119

Caffeine, 101
Calcium, 43

Calcium, importance for blood clotting, 884
Calorie value of normal diet, 695
Calorimeter, construction of, 668
Cane sugar, 67
Capillaries, blood flow through, 1048
circulation through, 973
in muscles, 1054
inflammatory changes in, 1074
measurement of pressure in, 974
Capillary electrometer, 173, 227
Capsule, internal, 375, 423
Carbamino-acids, 79
Carbohydrates, 45
absorption of, 789
chemistry of, 59–70
as constituent of protein, 86
of nucleins, 102
conversion into fat, 830
digestion of, 767
influence on metabolism, 681
metabolism of, 839
tests for, in proteins, 93
Carbon, assimilation of, 107–111
by plants, 37
as a constituent of protoplasm, 36
Carbon dioxide, assimilation by green plants, 108
in atmosphere, 38
condition in blood, 1015
effect on circulation, 1047
elimination in lungs, 1121
influence on nervous conduction, 261
production in isolated muscle, 216
reduction in plants, 37
as regulator of respiration, 1137
Carbon monoxide, influence on blood, 1153
Cardiac cycle, 938, 951
Cardinal points, 522
Cardiograph, 948
Cardiometer, 957
Cartilage, chemical composition of, 104
Caseinogen, 98, 730, 752, 1291
Castration, influence of, 1269
Catacrotic pulse, 971
Catalysis, 158
mechanism of, 159
specificity of, 159
Catelectrotonus, 265
Cathode, 187
excitation at, 263
Cell organs, 32
as structural unit, 13
structure of, 16
-wall, 22
Cells, chemical reactions in, 153
division of, 31, 35
histological differentiation of, 31
galvanic, 186
osmotic phenomena in, 22
of plants, 13
surface layer of, 21
vital phenomena of, 25
Cellulose, 22
properties of, 69
use in food, 800
Central nervous system, 288–311
Central nervous system, continuity in, 309
Centres, cortical, arrangement of, 431
motor, 439
sensory, 443
Cereals, proteins of, 96
Cerebellar functions in man, 403
tracts of cord, 354
Cerebellum, 370
functions of, 395–404, 451
influence on muscular tone, 336, 398
removal of, 402
stimulation of, 401
structure of, 398
tracts of, 387, 400
Cerebral cortex, connection with cord, 356
functions of, 394
influence on equilibrium, 654
localisation of functions in, 433
stimulation of, 435
structure of, 416, 426
hemispheres, 415–460
afferent tracts of, 421
association fibres in, 424
commissural fibres in, 425
effects of removal of, 439
efferent tracts of, 422
evolution of, 419
functions of, 433
general character of functions of, 449
higher associative functions of, 451
localisation in, 434
minute structure of, 426
motor functions of, 435
projection fibres of, 421
sensory functions of, 443
stimulation of, 435
structure of, 415
time relations of, 457
tracts of, 420
Cerebral vesicles, 361
Cerebrin, 58
Cerebro-spinal fluid, 462
Cetyl alcohol, 47
Charpentier's bands, 566
Chemical energy of dissolved substances, 128
sense, 639
Chemiotaxis, 27, 639, 1075
Cheyne-Stokes' breathing, 1146
Chitin, composition of, 65
Chlorides of urine, 1162
Chlorine, 43
Chloroform, influence on nervous conduction, 261
Chlorophyll, function of, 6, 37, 107
necessity of iron in formation of, 43
Chloroplasts, 17, 107
Cholesterin, 47
as constituent of surface layer, 23

Cholesterol, significance of, 56
esters, 56
Choline, composition of, 57
Chondroitin, 104
-sulphuric acid, 104
Chorda tympani nerve, 412
effect on secretion, 710
Choroid, 500
structure of, 506
Chromatic aberration, 530
Chromatin, 17
Chromoproteins, 99
Chromosomes, 31, 33
Cilia, 33
Ciliary body, structure of, 506
movement, 248
muscle, action of, 526
nerves, functions of, 511
Circulation, physiology of the, 913–1060
action of heart on, 935
through arteries, 919, 962
capacity of, 925
through capillaries, 973
capillary, regulation of, 1048
cerebral, 464
chemical relation of, 1045
coronary, 1010
influence of anæmia on, 1060
on lymph, 1066
of nervous system on, 1025
of plethora on, 1058
in invertebrates, 913
during muscular exercise, 1051
pulmonary, 979
through veins, 976
Circulatory system, evolution of, 34
Clark's column, 325
Clonus, 241, 336
Clotting of blood. *See* Coagulation.
Coagulation of blood, 855, 882–896
of colloids, 148
heat, 93, 148
history of, 892
intravascular, 889
mechanism of, 149
of muscle plasma, 212
of protein, 72, 93
theory of, 891
of transudations, 892
Cochlea, 606
Cochlear nerve, 411
central connections of, 379
Cœlenterata, differentiation in, 33
nervous system of, 289
Cœlomata, 33
Cœlum, 34
Coil, induction, 188
Coitus, physiology of, 1279
Collagen, digestion in stomach, 732
Colloidal compounds, influence on diffusion, 135
properties of protoplasm, 20
solution of metal, 138
Colloids, 72, 137–151
adsorption by, 145
amphoteric nature of, 147
classification of, 137
coagulation of, 148
combination between, 148
Colloids, definition of, 137
electrical charges on, 147
properties of, 144
imbibition by, 149
molecular weight of, 138
optical properties of, 143
osmotic pressure of, 140
precipitation of, 145
properties of, 137–151
surface phenomena in, 145
Colostrum, 1289
Colour blindness, 578
mixing, 562
triangle, 486
vision, effect of intensity on, 581
peripheral, 581
theories of, 583
Colours, complementary, 487
mixture of, 487
Combination tones, 616
Comma tract, 353
Commissural fibres in brain, 425
Complement, 1085
Complemental air, 1095
Complementary colours, 571
Concentration battery, 170
Conchiolin, 106
Condenser, 191
Conditioned reflexes, 453
Conduction in brain stem, 381
irreciprocal, in synapse, 275
in spinal cord, 351
Cones, function of, 583
Conjugated proteins, 98
sulphates, 813
Conjugation in metazoa, 1254
in protozoa, 1252
Consciousness, 9, 451, 481
Conservation of energy in living beings, 2
of mass in living beings, 2
Consonance, 614
Consonants, 625
Contractile stress of voluntary muscle, 200
tissues, 177–249
Contractility of muscle, 179
Contraction of muscle, 194–204, 234–238
arrested, 200
isometric, 197
isotonic, 197
osmotic theory of, 235
surface tension, theory of, 235
energy of, 236
in relation to surface tension, 24
secondary, 233
-wave in muscle, 228
Contrast, effect on sensation, 483
simultaneous, 571
successive, 571
Co-ordination of eye movements, 495
of movement in spinal animal, 331
muscular, 395
influence of eyes on, 406
part played by afferent impulses in, 345
Copper as necessary constituent of certain plants and animals, 44

Cornea, 500
structure of, 504
Coronary circulation, 1010
Corpora quadrigemina, 373, 392, 405
Corpus luteum, 1275
striatum, functions of, 442
Cortex, cerebral. *See* Brain.
Crampton's muscle, 504
Cranial nerves, connections and functions of, 414
Creatine metabolism, 811
Creatinine, origin of, 811
in urine, 1166, 1178
Cretinism, 1239
Crusta, 373
Crystallin, 95
Cuorin, 58
Curare, effect of, 185, 259
on nerve endings, 277
Currents, galvanic, 186
induced, 188
Cutaneous sensations, Head's classification of, 635
Cystine, 74, 85
Cytase, 70
Cytolysins, 1085
Cytoplasm contrasted with nucleus, 30
Cytosine, 102

DARK ADAPTATION, 556
Deamination, 153, 803
of amino-acids, 796
Death, 6
Decarboxylation, 154
of amino-acids, 76
Decerebrate rigidity, 392
Defæcation, 777
Defence, cellular mechanisms of, 1070–1078
chemical mechanisms of, 1079–1087
Degeneration of nerve fibres in cord, 320
retrograde, 320
Deglutition, 721–727
nervous mechanism of, 726
Delirium cordis, 1011
Demarcation current, 225, 233
Dendrites, 301
Depressor impulses, 1044
nerves, 1022
Depth perception, hypothesis of, 593
Development of egg, 1264
Dextrorotatory compounds, 52
Dextrose, 63
Diabetes, 838, 843, 851
glycogen in, 848
Diabetic puncture, 843
Dialysis, 134
Diamino-acids, 82
in histones, 95
Diamino-trioxydodecoic acid, 83
Diapedesis, 1073
Diaphragm, 1090
Dicrotic notch, 969
Diet, distribution of foodstuffs in, 698
influence on urinary composition, 802
of man, 695
Diffusibility in relation to electrical potential, 171
Diffusion, 122, 129–136
Digestion, 25, 703–800
Digestion, course in dog, 707
intestinal, 748–758, 767
loss of food in, 698
in mouth, 706–720
of protein, 76
in stomach, 728–741
Dilemma, 460
Diphasic variation, 229
Disaccharides, 61, 67
Discrimination, tactile, 631
Dissimilation, located in cytoplasm, 31
Dissociation of colloidal salts, 135
Dissonance, 613
Diuretics, action of, 1201
Diving, respiration in, 1153
Ductless glands, 1230–1247
interaction between, 849

EAR, INTERNAL, 600, 606
middle, 601
structure of, 600
Eck's fistula, 804
Edestin, 74
Edridge Green's theory of colour vision 566
Efficiency, mechanical, of body, 684
Egg albumin, 95
molecular weight of, 74
Elastin, 106
Electrical changes, in voluntary contraction, 241
in living tissues, 169–173
in muscle, 169, 224–233
in retina, 545
Electrodes, 187
Electrotonic current, 280
Electrotonus, 264, 280
Elements essential to life, 36
Embryo, nutrition of, 1283
Emulsions, formation of, 56
Emulsoids, 139
Endocardiac pressure, 942
Endplate, 275
fatigue situated in, 276
Energetic basis of body, 121–173
Energy balance sheets, 666
chemical, of dissolved substances, 128
evolved in fermentative changes, 155
income and output, 3
of muscular contraction, 201
muscular, effects of, 169
source of, 686
origin in cells, 25
from fat, 830
value of amino-acids, 805
Enterokinase, 751
Epiblast, 33
Epicritic sensibility, 636
Epilepsy, 437
analysis of spasms in, 241
Equilibration, 397
Equilibrium, maintenance of, 654
Erepsin, 766
Erythroblasts, 876
Erythrocytes. *See* Blood corpuscles, red.
Erythrodextrin, 68
Ether, influence on nervous conduction, 261
Eustachian tube, 604
Excitability, 26

Excitation, propagation in invertebrate nervous system, 296
in involuntary muscle, 246
Excitatory process, nature of, 284
Eye, abnormal refraction of, 534
accommodation of, 524–528
anatomy of, 500
central connections of, 405
chromatic aberration of, 530
comparative anatomy of, 502
diffraction in, 529
development of, 501
malnutrition of, 518
minute anatomy of, 504
movements, 409, 493–499
muscles, nuclei of, 406, 409
nourishment and protection of, 514–518
optical constants of, 521
defects of, 533
system of, 519–528
peripheral aberrations of, 532
reduced, 524
refraction in, 522, 529–539
refractive indices of, 522
spherical aberration of, 531
Eyeball, muscles of, 494
nerve supply to, 505
structure of, 500–513
Eyelids, anatomy of, 514
closure of, 514
Eyes, conjugate deviation of, 496
fixation of, 589

FACIAL NERVE, 412
Facilitation, 305
Fæces, 799
False image, produced by squint, 498
Faraday-Tyndall phenomenon, 143
Fasting, influence on metabolism, 666
Fatigue of muscle, 208
of nerves, 259, 285
of reflex arc, 304
of sense organs, 482
situated in endplates, 276
in synapse, 343
Fats, 45
absorption of, 784
chemistry of, 53–58
formation of, 155, 828
in plants, 37
sugar from, 837
history in body, 826–838
identification of, 56
influence of bile on digestion of, 763
on metabolism, 681
metabolism of, 826, 838
of milk, 55
origin of, 827
oxidation of, 155, 835
properties of, 55
significance in diet, 699
synthesis of, 117–120, 168
Fatty acids, 48
formation of, 118
list of, 54
Fatty degeneration, 832
Fechner's law, 485
Ferment action, 152–168
Ferment action, influence of concentration on, 162–165
mechanism of, 160
methods of investigation, 163
reversibility of, 166
Ferments, action of, 148
as catalysts, 158
chemical character of changes effected by, 153
colloidal character of, 157, 167
definition of, 156
list of, 157
as synthetic agents, 167
Fertilisation in man, 1279
nature of, 1262
nervous mechanism of, 1280
Fibrin, 884
-ferment, 885
Fibrinogen, 95, 884
tissue-, 99
Fibroin, 106
Fillet, 367
Filtration-angle of eye, 516
Fischer's methods of separating amino-acids, 79
Flicker, 568
-method, 565
Fluorine, 44
Focus, depth of, 530
Fœtus, circulation in, 1285
Food, changes during digestion, 704
effect on metabolism, 677
fæcal residue from, 800
in normal diet, 695
passage from mouth to stomach, 712
requirements of man, 696
of woman, 696
Foodstuffs, absorption of, 779
distribution in normal diet, 698
fate in body, 3
heat value of, 667
history in body, 801–852
inorganic, 692
significance of, 688
as source of energy, 2
Foramen of *Monro*, 375
Fore brain, 373
connection with cord, 356
structure of, 373
Formaldehyde, formation of amino-acids from, 114
from carbon dioxide, 109
as stage in carbon assimilation, 109
Fornix, 375
Fovea, 543
vision by, 548
Fructose, 63
formation in plant, 111

GALACTOSE, 64
as constituent of phospholipines, 58
structure of, 66
Galactosides, 58
Ganglia, 293
functions of, 474
inhibition in peripheral, 475
root development of, 298

Gastric digestion, 728–741
juice, 728
acidity of, 730
action on albuminoids, 732
on carbohydrates, 734
on food, 730
on milk, 733
effect of vagus on, 737
secretin, 740
secretion of, 734
chemical mechanisms in, 738
Gauss' theorem, 522
Gelatin, 105
diffusion through, 140
as food, 681
Gels, 137
properties of, 139
Gemmules, 20
Geniculate bodies, 373, 375, 386
Geotaxis, 27
Germ-cells, formation of, 1257
Glands, ductless, 1230–1247
mammary, 333, 1270, 1289
Glaucoma, 509, 517
Gliadins, 96
Globin, 868
Globulin, 74
precipitation of, 95
Glomeruli, functions of, 1192
Glossopharyngeal nerve, 413
Glucosamine, 65
from proteins, 86
Glucose, 67
conversion into lactic acid, 113
formation from amino-acids, 808
in plants, 111
tests for, 62
Glucosides, formation of, 65
hydrolysis of, 166
methyl-, 66
Glutamic acid, 81
Glutelins, 96
Glycerides, 53, 59
Glycerin, effects on muscle, 186
origin of, 119, 831
Glycerol, 53
Glycine, 80, 114
Glycocoll, 80
Glycogen in diabetes, 848
formation of, 840
in muscle, 218
preparation of, 839
properties of, 69
Glycoproteins, 103
Glycosuria, 843
Glycuronic acid, 65
in urine, 1173
Glyoxilic acid in plants, 114
Golgi method, 309
network, 309
Gout, nature of, 824
Gracilis experiment (*Kühne*), 254
nucleus, 365
Grape sugar, 63
Growth, 4
relation of nucleus to, 31
of tissues, 681
Guanine, 100

HÆMATIN, 868
chemical relations of, 870
Hæmatoblasts, 854
Hæmatocrit, 900
Hæmatocytes (blood platelets), 879
Hæmatoporphyrin, 870
Hæmin, 868
Hæmochromogen, 870
Hæmocyanin, 44
Hæmoglobin, 99, 863
crystallisation of, 73
derivatives of, 868
dissociation curve of, 1109
fate of, 877
molecular weight of, 90
osmotic pressure of, 75
properties of, 864
Hæmolymph glands, 1245
Hæmolysis, 23, 1085
osmotic pressure of electrolytes, 126
Hæmopyrroles, 872
Hæmorrhage, effects of, 1060
Halogen-proteins, 96
Hausmann's method of protein analysis, 90
Hearing, physiology of, 595–617
central paths of, 411
cortical localisation of, 448
Heart, 933–961
apex beat of, 947
arrangement of muscle fibres in, 935
-beat, causation of, 982
-block, 988
blood pressure in, 940
changes in form of, 946
compensation in, 1004
contraction wave in, 990
effects of potassium on, 1018
of salts on muscle of, 1005
of sympathetic on, 1018
electrical changes in, 230, 990–996
-failure in asphyxia, 1027
filling of, 953
frog's, anatomy of, 982
influence of length of muscle fibre on contraction, 1001
of reaction of blood on, 1008
of temperature on, 1005
of tension of, 1001
of vagus on, 1013
inhibition of, 1017
law of, 1003
of Limulus, 988
mammalian, contraction of, 992
origin of rhythm in, 994
mechanical measurement of, 935
methods of determining output, 955
-murmurs, 950
-muscle, excitation time of, 272
-nerves, circulation of, 1012
nutrition of, 1009
output of, 954
during exercise, 1052
physiological properties of muscle, 998
-pressure curves, 942
propagation in, 986
reflexes from, 1021
refractory period in, 999
rhythm of, 983
sequence of contraction in, 938

Heart sounds, 949
'staircase phenomena' in, 999
tone of, 1004
valves of, 938
work of, 959
during exercise, 1054
Heat-formation in muscle, 219–223, 237
-loss, regulation of, 1226
in isolated muscle, 291
in nerve, 285
-production in body, 3, 668, 1223
-value of foods, 667
Heller's test, 94
Helmholtz, theory of hearing, 611
Helweg's tract, 353
Hemianæsthesia, 445
Heminanopia, 553, 577
Hemiplegia, 445
Heredity, 1264–1268
Hering's theory of colour vision, 583
Herpes zoster, 349
Hexone bases, 82
Hexoses, 61
derivatives of, 64
in nucleins, 102
Hibernation, 837
Hind brain, connection with cord, 354
Hippuric acid in urine, 1169
Hippus, 512
His, bundle of, 936, 993
Histidine, 85
metabolism of, 816
Histological differentiation, 7
Histones, 95
Hofmann's test, 83
Homogentisic acid, 51, 814
Homoiothermic animals, 1221
Hopkins' reactions for tryptophane, 92
Hormones, 1230–1247
food-, 693
Horopter, 590
Hunger, influence of gastric movements on, 746
Hyaloplasm, 18
Hydenia, 1058
Hydrocarbons, 45
Hydrogels, 138
Hydrogen, sources of, 39
peroxide, production in green plant, 110
effect of platinum on, 158
Hydrolysis of protein, 97
Hydrosols, 137
properties of, 140
Hypermetropia, 534, 536
Hypoblast, 33
Hypoglossal nerve, 414
Hypoxanthine, 100

IMBIBITION BY COLLOIDS, 149
Iminazol, 84, 101
synthesis of, 115
Immunity, 1079
Ehrlich's theory of, 1083
Incisure, 969
Indol, 813
Inflammation, 1073
Inhibition, 26
in central nervous system, 306
of cord, effect of strychnine on, 347
Inhibition of heart, 1017
nature of, 1017
in peripheral ganglia, 475
of reflexes, 306
of voluntary muscles, 339
Inhibitory functions of cortex, 450
nerves, 248
Innervation, reciprocal. *See* Reciprocal innervation.
Inogen, 237
Inosite, 116
Insanity, 457
Intellectual processes in brain, 457
Intercostal muscles, 1092
Internal capsule, 375, 423
secretion, 1230–1247
Intestinal juice, 764
villi, functions of, 780
Intestines, large, functions of, 768
movements of, 775
law of, 773
small, movements of, 771
peripheral nervous system of, 469
secretion by, 764
Intraocular fluid, 516
pressure, 517, 526
Introduction, 1–9
Inulin, 69
Involuntary muscle, 243–248. *See* Muscle.
influence of temperature on, 247
propagation of excitability in, 246
Iodine, in living mechanisms, 44
in thyroid gland, 1241
Iris, functions of, 507
innervation of, 510
structure of, 505
Iron, excretion of, 43
in hæmoglobin, 74
oxidative functions of, 43
sources of, 42
Irradiation in cord, 339
Irreciprocal conduction in nervous system, 302
in synapse, 275
Irritability of muscle, 184
of nerves, 265
Isoleucine, 81
Isomerism in amino-acids, 77
Isometric method, 197
Isotonic method, 197

KERASIN, 58
Keratin, 105
'Kernleiter,' 281
Keto-acids, 49
Ketonic acids, formation of amino-acids from, 115
Ketose, 60
Keys, electrical, 178
Kidneys, function of, 1160–1213
structure of, 1181
Kjeldahl's method, 90, 1175
Knee jerk, 333, 451

LABYRINTH, ANATOMY OF, 652
auditory, 606
functions of, 396
Lactation, 1289

Lacteal, 780
Lactic acid, 804
formation in muscle, 215, 237
of amino-acids from, 113
as stage in fat synthesis, 117
tests for, 215
Lactose hydrolysis, 164
time relations of, 164
Lævorotatory compounds, 51
Lævulose, 64
Langerhans' islets, 850
Lanoline, 56
Lardaceous tissue, 104
Larynx, anatomy of, 618
Latent period of muscle, 198
Lateral nucleus, 369
Law of contraction in human nerves, 269
Pflüger's, 267
of the minimum, 36
Lecithin, composition of, 57
formation of, 43
in surface layer, 23
Lens, crystalline, 519
composition of, 95
influence on refraction of eye, 533
refraction by, 520
Leucine, 81
Leucinide, 87
Leucocytes, 858
action in inflammation, 1073
classification of, 1076
formation of, 858
functions of, 859
Leucocytosis after ingestion of nucleins, 824
Leucoplasts, 109
Liebermann's reactions for proteins, 92
Life, conditions of, 6
definition of, 4
fundamental phenomena of, 2
evolution of, 5
without oxygen, 26
Light, absorption of, 488
chemical changes due to, 490
diffraction of, 489
physical properties of, 486
-reflexes, 512
refraction of, 490
white, composition of, 486
Liminal stimulus, 193, 482
Limulus, heart of, 988
Linoleic series, 54
Lipæmia in diabetes, 849
Lipase, 168
Lipoid character of protoplasm surface, 23
Liver, formation of urea in, 803
secretory functions of, 759
Localisation, cerebral, 433
tactile, 632
Lock's fluid, 1006
Locomotion in spinal animal, 331
Lungs, circulation through, 979
exchange of oxygen in, 1111, 1120, 1124
movements of, 1089
Lymph and tissue fluids, 1061–1069
absorption of, 1068
movement of, 1066
Lymphagogues, 1065
Lymphatics of brain, 464
Lysine, 82
McDougall's theory of colour vision, 587
Magnesium, 43
Maltase, influence on glucosides, 166
Maltose, structure of, 66
Mammary glands, development of, 1270
growth in spinal animal, 333
secretion by, 1289
Mannose, 64
Marey's law, 1023
Marginal bodies, 291
Marie, tract of, 753
Meat, value of, 701
Mechanical efficiency of body, 684
Mechanism, 8
Medulla oblongata, 364
centres in, 414
functions of, 390
respiratory functions of, 1127
Medusa, nervous system of, 290
Membrana tympani, 601
Membranes, electrical differences at surface of, 171
passage of dissolved substances through, 129–136
Mendel's law, 1267
Menstruation, 1269, 1275
Metabolism, 659
of aromatic groups, 814
basal, 675
of carbohydrates, 839–852
of fat, 826–838
influence of fats and carbohydrates on, 681
of food on, 677
of muscular work on, 683
of proteins on, 677
methods employed in investigating, 660
of nuclein, 818–825
of protein, 801–817
of purine, 818–825
during starvation, 670–676
of sulphur, 813
tissue-, 801
Methyl glucosides, 66
Micellæ, 20
Micturition, 1205–1213
Mid brain, connection with cord, 356
structure of, 364, 372
Milk, action of gastric juice on, 733
composition of, 1290
fats of, 55
secretion of, 1289, 1296
in spinal animal, 333
sugar of, 67
Millon's reaction, 83, 92
Molisch's test, 63, 93
Monosaccharides, 61
Moore's test, 63
Motor centres, 439
end plate of muscle, 182
functions of nervous system, 434
impulses, path in brain, 389, 422
nerve roots, 322
Mountain sickness, 1149
Movement, ciliary, 248

Movement, dependent on differences of surface tension, 24
mechanisms of, 177–287
of co-ordinated, 338–348
sense of, 648
Movements of eye, 409, 493–499
Mucins, 86, 103
Mucoids, 104
Muller's law, 255, 481
Muscle, action of salts on, 210
of drugs on, 211
afferent, impulses from, 334
arrangement in frog's leg, 189
break-excitation of, 192
chemical changes in, 212–218
ciliary, action of, 526
conditions affecting mechanical response of, 205–211
contraction, 194–204
arrested, 200
isometric, 197
isotonic, 197
osmotic theory of, 235
surface tension, theory of, 235
effects of ammonia on, 186
of constant current on, 192
of glycerin on, 186
of length on contraction of, 201
of load on, 200–203
on polarised light, 182
of temperature on, 207
electrical changes in, 169, 224–233
energy of contraction of, 236
excitation of, 185–193
time of, 271
extensibility of, 203
fatigue in, 208
heart-, 178, 272
of insects, 182
intimate nature of contraction of, 234–238
involuntary, 178, 243–248
'all or none' law in, 205
double innervation of, 247
influence of temperature on, 247
inhibition of, 248
propagation of excitability in, 246
rhythmic contraction in, 244
stimulation of, 244
structure of, 243
summation in, 245
irritability of, 184
latent period of, 198
make excitation of, 192
mechanical changes during contraction, 194–204
methods of stimulating, 186–192
motor end-plate of, 182
oxidative changes in, 237
oxygen supply to, 1013
-plasma, 212
production of heat in, 219–223
Muscle, production of lactic acid in, 215, 237
of tension in, 202, 222
propagation of contraction in, 203
relation of energy of response to energy of stimulus, 27
of tension to length, 202
rigor of, 208, 214
sartorius, 189
-sound, 241
-spindles, 334, 648
summation in, 206
'threshold' or liminal stimulus, 193
tone of, 654
-twitch, 194–201
methods of recording, 194–198
unstriated. *See* involuntary.
varieties of, 178
voluntary, chemical composition of, 212
contraction of, 239–242
propagation in, 204
refractory period of, 206
structure of, 177–184
Muscular energy, source of, 686
exercise, effect on circulation, 1051
sense, 647
sensibility, 346
tone, 333
effect of cerebellum on, 336, 398
work, effect on metabolism, 683
on respiratory quotient, 686
Musical scale, 615
Myelin, 58, 251
Myelination in central nervous system, 319
Myogen, 213
Myographs, 194
Myopia, 534, 537
Myosin, 96, 212
Myosinogen, 212
Myxœdema, 1239

Nägeli's theory of protoplasm structure, 20
Negative variation, 226
Neopallium, 416
Nerve, physiology of, 250–287
characteristics of, 271
chemical changes in, 256
conduction in, 253
degeneration in, 274
effect of temperature on, 258, 262, 273
electrical changes in, 172, 256
stimulation of, 270–274
electrotonic changes in, 264
-endings, delay in, 276
effect of curare on, 277
function of, 276
excitability of, 261
excitation of, 262–269
influence of intrapolar length, 268
-time of, 271
fatigue in, 285
-fibre, degeneration in cord, 320
regeneration of, 30
human, electric stimulation of, 268
-impulse, 253
influence of anæsthetics on, 260

Nerve, influence of constant current on, 263
of curare on, 185, 259
of drugs on, 260
of fatigue on, 259
of injury on, 274
-junction with muscle fibres, 275
law of excitation in, 266
medullated, 251
methods of stimulating, 186–192
nature of excitatory process in, 284–287
non-medullated, 252
oxygen consumption by, 256
polarisation of, 260, 280–283
propagation in, 253–255, 281
rate of conduction in, 258
refractory period of, 273
-roots, distribution in cord, 356
functions of, 255
motor, 322
structure of, 250–252
summation of stimuli in, 272
velocity of conduction in, 253
Nerves, ciliary, functions of, 511
grafting of, 255
inhibitory, 248
irritability of, 265
Nerve cells, automaticity of, 314
of brain, 426
effects of section of axon on, 321
functions of, 310, 312 314
liberation of energy in, 313
structure of, 300
Nervous impulse, 256
conditions affecting, 258–261
processes, energy of, 464
system, blood supply of, 462
central, 288–477
of Coelenterata, 289
conduction in, 296, 301–389
connection with periphery, 299
control of co-ordinated movements by, 338–348
of crayfish, 294
development of, 297
of control in, 293
evolution of, 33, 288–296
function of cells in, 312–314
higher reflex functions of, 340–408
invertebrate, 288–296
irreciprocal conduction in, 302
law of forward direction in, 302
motor functions of, 434
of medusa, 290
nutrition of, 461
paths in, 299
psychical functions of, 433, 451
reflex action in, 303–311
sensory functions of, 443
structure of, 360–389, 415–432
trophic functions of, 349
Nervous system, vascular arrangements of, 461
of vertebrates, 297–302
Nervus origens, 473
Neural groove, 297
Neurilemma, 251
Neurine, composition of, 57
Neuro-blasts, development of, 298
Neuro-epithelial cells, 295
Neuro-fibrils, 251, 296, 307
of vertebrates, 301
Neuro-keratin, 105
Neuro-muscular function, 275
Neurons, definition of, 295
nature of connection between, 307–311
Neuro-pilem, 296
Neutral salts, action on protein, 94
Nicotine, action on nerve cells, 472
on nerve endings, 277
Nictitating membrane, 515
Night blindness, 578
Nissl bodies, 301
Nitrates, fate in plants, 114
Nitrification, 40
Nitrogen, assimilation of, 40
in cells, 40
distribution in protein molecule, 90
digestion in urine, 802
-fixing bacteria, 40
source of, 39
Nucleic acid, 99
decomposition of, 102
Nuclei of cranial nerves, 376–380
Nuclein, 99
decomposition of, 102
fate of, 821
formation of, 43
metabolism of, 818
phosphoproteins converted into, 116
Nucleoplasm, 17
Nucleoproteins, 98, 99
fate in stomach, 733
Nucleotides, 103
Nucleus, 14, 33
of *Bechterew*, 379
chemical composition of, 27
cuneatus, 365
of *Deiters*, 379, 389, 410
functions of, 27
gracilis, 365
red, 376
structure of, 16
Nutrition, influence of nervous system on, 349
mechanism of, 657–1247
Nystagmus, 656

OCULO-MOTOR NERVE, 409, 496
Œsophagus, action of, 724
Ohm's law (sound analysis), 616
Old age, effect on accommodation, 528
Olfactometer, 645
Olfactory apparatus, 420
bulb, connection of, 387
lobe, structure of, 420
Olivary body, 366, 381
Olivo-spinal tract, 353, 389
Ophthalmoscope, 553
Opsonins, 1086

Optic chiasma, 386, 405
cup, 502
disc, 554
radiations, 422
thalamus, 373
functions of, 393
tracts, 386, 405, 551
Optical activity, 51
in sugars, 60
Orbit, anatomy of, 493
Organ of *Corti*, 609
Organic compounds, chief, of body, 45
Organs, evolution of, 34
Ornithine, 82
Osazones, 62
Osmometer, 140
Osmosis, 129–136
Osmotic machine, 123
phenomena in cells, 22
pressure, 121
of blood, 906
of colloids, 140
of protein, 75
effects of, 134
measurements of, 123
by blood corpuscle method, 125
by depression of freezing point, 127
by plasmolysis, 125
by vapour tension, 127
relation to electrical changes, 171
Otolith organ, 397
Otoliths, functions of, 656
Ova, development of, 1273
Ovary, changes in, 1275
Ovulation, 1275
Oxidation in cells, 25
of fats, 155, 835
of fatty acids, 805
mechanism of, 156
relation to muscular contraction, 237
in tissues, 1155–1159
Oxyacids, 49
formation in plants, 114
Oxygen capacity of blood, 898
consumption by nerve, 256
functions of, 25
influence on muscular contraction, 217
lack of, 1138
life without, 26
source of, 39
supply to muscle, 1013
Oxyhæmoglobin, 99
molecular weight of, 74
Oxyproline, 84

PACCHIONIAN BODIES, 463
Pain, cause of, 634
referred, 476
in spinal animal, 331
Pancreas, effects of extirpation, 847
histological changes in, 757
Pancreatic juice, 748–758
activation of, 750
Pancreatic juice, action on carbohydrates, 752
on fats, 753
on intestinal secretion, 765
on milk, 752
on proteins, 749
conditions of activity, 750
secretion of, 753
Pangene, 20
Paradoxical contraction, 282
Paraglobulin, 95
Paralysis, cortical, 439
Paramucin, 104
Paramyogen, 213
Paramyosinogen, 95
Paraplegia, spastic, 336
Parathyroids, functions of, 1241
Parturition, 1285–1288
nervous mechanism of, 1288
Pelvic visceral nerves, 471
action on bladder, 1212
Pentose, 61
in nucleic acid, 102
tests for, 61
Pepsin, action of, 97
Peptones in gastric digest, 730
Perimeter, 549
Peripheral aberration of eye, 532
nervous system, 469
Permeability of membranes, 134
of surface layer of cells, 22
Peroxides, function in carbon assimilation, 110
Pflüger's law, 266
Phagocytosis, 859, 1071
Phenyl alanine, 77, 83
Phenyl hydrazine tests for sugars, 62
Phloridzin diabetes, 844
Phosphates of urine, 1163
estimation of, 1179
Phosphatides, 57
Phospholipines, 57, 58
Phosphoproteins, 98
conversion into nuclein, 116
digestion in stomach, 733
Phosphoric acid in nucleic acid, 100
Phosphorus, sources of, 43
Phototaxis, 27
Phrenosin, 58
Physiology, scope of, 1, 7, 35
Pilomotor nerves, 469
Pineal gland, 504, 1245
Pituitary body, 1242–1245
Placenta, formation of, 1284
Plants, assimilation of nitrogen by, 41
chemical process in, 38
Plasma, blood-, 854, 882
muscle-, 212
Plasmolysis, 22, 30, 125
Plasome, 20
Plastids, 17, 33
permanence of, 20
Plethora, 1058
Poikilothermic animals, 1221
Polarimeter, 51
Polypeptides, 88
isomerism in, 88
Polysaccharides, 62, 67
Pons *Varolii*, 368
functions of, 392

Posterior longitudinal bundle, 380, 389, 407
Postural tone, 450
Potassium, 43
Pregnancy, 1282
in spinal animal, 333
Pressor impulses, 1044
Pressure, intrathoracic, 1094
Principal point of eye, 522
Projection, tactile, 633
Proline, 84
Proprioceptive system, 395
Propriospinal fibres, 354
Protamines, 94, 99
Proteid, 98 (footnote)
Proteins, 45, 71–106
absorption of, 790
action of bacteria on, 76
of intestinal juice on, 766
of neutral salts on, 94
of pancreatic juice on, 749
alkaloidal reaction of, 93
amino-acids of, 80
aromatic constituents of, 83
behaviour with acids and alkalies, 147
biological value of, 691
of blood plasma, 909
building up of, 86
carbohydrates contained in, 86
chemical analysis of, 79
chemistry of, 71–106
coagulation of, 93
colour reaction of, 92
compounds with salts, 93
conjugated, 98
crystallisation of, 72
derivatives of, 96
digestion of, 76, 730, 749, 766
disintegration products of, 80
distribution of nitrogen in, 90
elementary composition of, 71
empirical formuli of, 74
formation of fat from, 831
gastric digestion of, 730
hydrolysis of, 75, 96
isomerism in, 88
metabolism of, 801–817
influence of carbohydrates, 846
molecular structure of, 75
weight of, 73, 90
origin of aromatic constituents, 116
osmotic pressure of, 75
physical structure of, 72
precipitation of, 94
putrefaction of, 76
significance of, 688
surface phenomena in, 21
specific dynamic action of, 681, 688, 804
sulphur in, 85
synthesis of, 87
in plant, 111–117
tests for, 92
transport in plant, 112
varying constitution of, 89
vegetable, 96
Proteoses, fractional separation of, 730
Protopathic sensibility, 635
Protoplasm, 14
Altmann's granules in, 17
definition of, 15
elementary constituents of, 36–44
fibrillar theory of, 18
granular theory of, 17
physical structure of, 17
proximate constituents of, 45–106
ultramicroscopic structure of, 20
Pseudo-ions, 147
Pseudomucins, 104
Pseudopodia, 33
Pulse, arterial, 962
causation of secondary elevations in, 967
-curves, 970
abnormalities in, 972
effect of exercise on, 1056
-rate, influence of altitude on, 1151
in man, 1024
velocity of transmission of, 967
Pupil, *Argyll Robertson*, 512
contraction of, 507
dilatation of, 509
effect of drugs on, 509, 513
movement of, 507
reflex paths of, 553
Purine bases, 100
origin in plants, 115
metabolism of, 818
synthesis of, 116
Purkinje's fibres of heart, 994
figures, 554
Putrefaction of protein, 76
Pyramidal tracts, 352, 422
decussation, 365
Pyrimidine, 101
Pyrrol, 84
metabolism of, 816
origin in plants, 115
Pyruvic acid, 804
as stage in fat formation, 119

QUOTIENT, RESPIRATORY. *See* Respiratory.

RACEMIC COMPOUNDS, 52
Rami communicantes, 468
Reaction of blood, 904
chemical, velocity of, 159
of urine, 1161
estimation of, 1175
based on consciousness, 482
cerebral, time relations of, 457
-time, 457
Receptor cells, 295
substance, 277
excitation time of, 277
Reciprocal innervation, 339
of eye movements, 497
in iris, 511
of voluntary muscles, 335
Recurrent sensibility, 323
Red marrow, 875
nucleus, 370
Reduced eye, 524
Reduction, mechanism of, 156

Referred pain, 476
Reflex action, 177
characteristics of, 303–306, 344
in nervous system, 303–311
peripheral, 474
'stepping,' 332
structural basis of, 299
arc, 177
of brain stem, 382
evolution of, 289
fatigue of, 304
irreciprocal conduction in, 202
of muscle, 335
axon-, 323
functions of brain stem, 393
mass, 337
Reflexes from heart, 1021
inhibition of, 306
light-, 512
segmental, 321
spinal, 328
structural basis of, 341
visual, 405
Refractory period of heart muscle, 999
of muscle, 206
of nerves, 273
Regeneration, influence of nucleus on, 29
Renal excretion, 1160–1213
Rennin, action of, 733
Reproduction, 4
physiology of, 1251–1298
in man, 1264–1281
Residual air, 1095
Resonance in ear, 611
Resonators (sound), 597
Respiration, 2, 1088–1159
action of vagi on, 1139
air movements in, 1095
blood changes in, 1104
changes in lungs, 1119
chemical regulation of, 1129
chemistry of, 1100–1125
Cheyne-Stokes', 1146
effect of altitude on, 1150
of changes in air breathed on, 1148
in diving, 1153
lung changes in, 1089
mechanics of, 1088
medulla oblongata in, 1127
-murmurs, 1094
of muscles, 1113
muscular mechanism of, 1090
nervous regulation of, 1129
under pressure, 1153
rib movements in, 1092
secretory processes in, 1124
by skin, 1218
-tissue, 1112, 1155–1159
Respiratory centre, functions of, 1127
exchanges, measurement of, 662
during starvation, 675
during work, 683
movements, influence on circulation, 980
quotient, 685, 830, 1100
effect of diet on, 834
Restiform body, 367
Reticulin, 105
Retina, abnormalities of, 577
development of, 543
central connections of, 551
connections with brain, 445
effect of light on, 544
of periodical stimuli on, 569
electrical changes in, 545
fatigue of, 570
histology of, 540
pigments of, 545
Retinoscopy, 535
Retractor penis, 1281
Reverser, 188
Rheocord, 192
Rheonome, 270
Rheoscopic frog, 225
Rhythm of bladder, 1209
of cortex, 241
of heart, 983
of intestinal muscle, 771
of medusa, 292
of nerve impulse, 241
respiratory, 1128
of voluntary muscle, 240
of ureters, 1205
Ribose, 61, 103
Rigidity, decerebrate, 392
'Rigor Mortis,' 208, 214
Ringer's fluid, 1006
Ritter-Valli law, 274
Rods, function of, 583
Roof nuclei of cerebellum, 381
Rotation, optical, 51
Rubner on heat production in body, 3
Rubro-spinal tract, 353, 389
Rut, nature of, 1269
Rutherford's theory of hearing, 613

Saccharose, 67
Saccule, 397
Saliva, different forms of, 708
digestion of starch, 707
secretion of, 708
uses of, 707
Salivary glands, 708
nerve supply to, 711
significance of double nerve supply, 718
Salmon, formation of generative glands in, 116
Salts, absorption of, 781
action on muscle, 210
electrical changes in, 169
precipitation of colloids by, 144
in urine, 1165
value in food, 692
Saponification, 46, 55
Sarcolemma, 179
Sarcomeres, 179
Sarcoplasma, 179
Sarcosine, 83
Sarcostyles, 179
Sarcous elements, 180
Sartorius muscle, 189
Sclera, 500
structure of, 506
Scleroproteins, 104
'Scratch' reflexes, 331
Sebaceous glands, secretion of, 56

Sebum, 1216
Secretin, gastric, 740
pancreatic, 755
Secretion, electrical changes accompanying, 169, 717
energy involved in, 719
histological changes during, 715
internal, 1230–1247
mechanism of, 713
of milk, 333, 1289, 1296
relation of nucleus to, 31
Seedlings, occurrence of asparagine in, 82
Semicircular canal, 652
Semipermeable, definition of, 123
Sensation bodies in brain, 421
cortical appreciation of, 446
disturbances of, 441
localisation of, 443
cutaneous, 626–638
gustatory, 640
histological elements involved, 637
in invertebrata, 293
labyrinthine, 651
localisation of, 303
measurements of, 479
of movement, 646
Muller's law of, 481
olfactory, 642
pain-, 634
paths of, 324
in central nervous system, 446
in cord, 357
projection of, 481
relation to stimulus, 478, 482
in eye, 555-568
spatial, 651
static, 646
tactile, 629
temperature-, 626
Weber's law of, 483
Sense organs, physiology of, 478–656
classification of, 479
fatigue of, 482
projicient, 293
of skin, 637
Sensibility, recurrent, 323
Sensoparalysis, 345
Sensory functions of cortex, 443
nerve roots, 322
tracts in brain stem, 384
Septo-marginal bundle, 353
Serine, 80
Serum albumin, 74, 95
colloids, molecular weight of, 142
globulin, 95
Sexual process, essential functions of, 1251
reproduction, 1254
Shock, nervous, 330
in man, 337
Silicon, significance of, 44
Skatol, 813
Skin, functions of, 1214–1218
innervation of, 326
structure of, 1214
Sleep, state of pupils in, 508
Smedley, theory of fat synthesis, 119
Smell, cortical localisation of, 449
Soaps, formation of, 55
Sodium, 43
Sols, 137
Solutions, energy of, 121
Sound analysis, 596
in ear, theories of, 609
appreciation of, 611
conduction of, 600
localisation of, 616
muscle-, 241
properties of, 595
Spastic paraplegia, 336
Specific dynamic action of protein, 681, 688, 804
irritability, law of, 255, 480
rotatory power, 52
Spectra luminosity, curves of, 556
Spectrum, 486
energy of, 489
Speech, central mechanism of, 453–457
mechanism of, 623–625
Spermatozoa, composition of, 95, 99
development of, 1271
formation of, 1259
Spherical aberration of eye, 531
Sphingosine, 58
Sphygmograph, 965
Spinal animal, 329
conduction, 344
cord, 315–359
anatomy of, 351
classification of nerve cells in, 318
as conductor, 351-359
course of fibres in, 319
development of, 297
effect of poisons on, 347
of transection, 330
in man, 336
grey matter of, 324
hemisection of, 359
methods of studying tracts in, 319
motor functions of, 327
paths in, 324
of impulses in, 356
reflex functions of, 322, 329
structure of, 315–321
tracts of, 352
trophic functions of, 349
visceral functions of, 327
nerve roots, central connection of, 324
dilator functions of, 323
functions of, 323–337
reflex, nervous paths of, 328
reflexes, structural basis of, 324
shock, 330
Spindles, muscle-, 334, 648
Spino-tectal tract, 354
Spino-thalamic tract, 354
Spleen, functions of, 1245-1247
Spongin, 106
Spongioblasts, 298
Spongioplasm, 18
Squint, 497
treatment of, 499
Stapedius muscle, 603
Starch, digestion by saliva, 707
formation in plants, 6, 17, 37, 107
molecular structure of, 69
properties of, 68
Starvation, loss of weight during, 671
metabolism during, 670
nitrogenous excretion during, 674

Stenopæic aperture, 536
'Stepping' reflex, 332
Stereo-isomerism in the sugars, 60
Stimulation of muscle, 186–192
of nerve, 262–269
of sense organs, 479
Stimulus, definition of, 26
energy of, 262
influence of strength on, 205
of stress on, 205
inhibitory, 26
liminal, 193, 482
relation of response to, 26
summation of, 245, 272, 304
Stomach, digestion in, 728–741
influence of vagus on, 737
movements of, 742–747
Strabismus, 497
from myopia, 538
String galvanometer, 227
Stroma of red corpuscles, 863
Structural basis of the body, 13–35
Strychnine, effects of, 347
Substrate, 163
Suckling, importance to mothers, 1298
Sugar in blood, 839
conversion into fats, 117
into lactic acid, 113
formation from amino-acids, 845
from fat, 837
of milk, 67
in urine, 843, 1172
synthesis of, 62
utilisation of, 842
value of, 701
Sugars, assimilable, 61
chemistry of, 59–67
reaction of, 62
Sulphates of urine, 1163
Sulphur in amino-acids, 85
in keratin, 105
metabolism, 813
in protein, 74
sources of, 42
test for in protein, 92
Summation in muscle, 206, 245
of stimuli, 245, 272
in reflex action, 304
Supplemental air, 1095
Suprarenal bodies, 1233–1238
Surface action in emulsions,
layer, properties of, 21
phenomena in soap solution, 56
tension in cells, 20
effect of electrical changes on, 172
in protoplasm, 19
Surfaces, electrical changes on, 172
Suspensoids, 139
Swallowing, 721–727
Sweat, secretion of, 1216–1218
Sympathetic action on heart, 1018
ganglia, 465
nerve, effect on blood vessels, 1037
on salivary glands, 712
-supply to eye-ball, 511
system, 465
Synapse, fatigue in, 343
functions of, 310
between nerve and muscle, 275
structure of, 298, 308

TACTILE DISCRIMINATION, 631
sensibility, 629
Taste, cortical localisation of, 449
nerves of, 411
sense of, 640
Tears, secretion of, 515
Tecto-spinal tract, 389
Tegmentum, 373
Teleology, justification of, 5
Temperature changes in muscle, 219
effect on excitability, 273
on ferment action, 159
on heart, 1005
on muscle, 207, 247
nervous mechanism of, 1228
regulation of, 443, 1219–1229
-sense, 626
Tendon phenomena, 333
reflex, 333
Tension of muscle, 202
relation to heat production, 222
Tensor tympani, 603
Tetanus, closing, 264
involuntary movement, 240
in muscle, 206
-toxin, 347
Thalamo-spinal tract, 353, 389
Thalamus, optic, structure of, 373
functions of, 393
Theobromide, 101
Thermopile, 219
Thigmotaxis, 27
Thorax movements in respiration, 1091
'Threshold value' of sensation, 482
Thrombin, 885
Thrombogen, 887
Thrombokinase, 887
Thrombosis, 880, 888
Thymine, 102
Thyroid gland, 1238–1241
Tidal air, 1095
Timbre, 597
Tissue fibrinogen, 99, 889
metabolism, 811
Tissues, electrical changes in living, 169–173
Tone of muscle, 333, 654
Tonus cerebella, 398
Touch, sense of, 629
Toxins, 148
influence of, 1080
Tracts of brain stem, 384
of cord, 352
optic, 386, 405, 551
Training, influence of, 1055
Traube curves, 1031
Triglycerides, 54
Trommer's test, 63
Trophic functions of 5th nerve, 411
of spinal cord, 349
Trypsin, 749
action of, 97
action of polypeptides on, 88
velocity of reaction, 165
Trypsinogen, 751

Tryptophane, 84
metabolism of, 815
Twilight vision, 547, 583
Twitch, muscle-, 194–201
methods of recording, 194–198
Tympanum, functions of, 604
Tyrosin, 50, 83
action of bacteria on, 76
metabolism of, 814

URACIL, 101
Urates, 1168
Urea, estimation of, 1176
origin of, 802
production from arginine, 810
from creatine, 83
in urine, 1165
Uric acid, 100, 819
excretion of, 822
formation in birds, 804
origin of, 821
in urine, 1167
Urinary deposits, 1174
Urine, abnormal constituents of, 1171
in blood plasma, 1181
composition of, 1160–1180
inorganic constituents of, 1162
phosphates in, 1163
pigments of, 1170
organic constituents of, 1155
quantitative estimation of chief constituents of, 1175–1180
salts in, 1165
secretion of, 1181–1204
sugar in, 843, 1172
Urobilin, 871
Uterus, changes during birth, 1287
during menstruation, 1275
Utricule, 397

VAGUS, ACTION ON HEART, 1013
on intestines, 775
on œsophagus, 726
on respiration, 1139
on stomach, 746
functions of, 473
respiratory fibres of, 413
Valves of heart, 938
of *Vieussens*, 370
Vaso-dilatation in salivary glands, 712
Vaso-dilator nerves, 1039
Vaso-motor impulses, path in cord, 359
nerves, 469
course of, 1033
reflexes, 1043
system, 1025–1050
Veins, blood flow in, 976
pulse in, 977
Ventricles. *See* Heart.
pressure in, 940
Veratrin, action on muscles, 211
Vertigo, 656
Vesicular murmur, 1094
Vestibular nerve, 379, 412
functions of, 396
Vestibulo-spinal tract, 353, 389
Viscera, sensibility of, 476
Visceral nervous system, 465–477
afferent functions of, 476
Vision, physiology of, 486–594
binocular, 588–594
colour threshold for, 557
cortical localisation of, 447
different thresholds for, 561
types of, 502
field of, 549
intensity threshold, 555
mechanism of, 490
monocular, 590
paths in brain, 386, 405
peripheral, 551
colour-, 581
psychic cortex, 430
sensation curve of, 566
sensory cortex, 430
size threshold for, 558
stereoscopic, 591
subjective phenomena of, 566–576
theories of colour-, 583
Visual acuity, 558
determination of, 535
colour threshold for, 561
field, 549
impulses, path of, 406
impressions, 447
persistence, 568
purple, 545, 583
Vital force, 8
Vitalism, 8
Vitamines, 693
Vocal cords, 620
Voice, mechanism of, 618
production of, 621
Volition, 451
Voluntary contraction, 239–242
electrical changes in, 241
movement, effect of hemisection of cord on, 359
muscle. *See* Muscle.
Vomiting, 746
Vowel sounds, 624

WALLERIAN METHOD, 320
Waller's theory of hearing, 613
Water, association to life, 6
Weber's law, 483
for touch, 631
Work of heart, 959
during exercise, 1054
of isolated muscle, 202

XANTHINE, 100
Xylose, 61

YOUNG'S THEORY OF COLOUR VISION, 583

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY
RICHARD CLAY & SONS, LIMITED,
BRUNSWICK ST., STAMFORD ST., S.E. 1,
AND BUNGAY, SUFFOLK